

**THE BOOK OF
MORMON**

**ZULU – ENGLISH
PARALLEL EDITION**

Version 1, published April 2023. bencrowder.net/book-of-mormon-parallel-edition/

This parallel edition © 2023 Benjamin Crowder. All rights reserved. You have permission to print this document for your own use. For other uses, send requests to ben.crowder@gmail.com.

Text of the Book of Mormon © 2023 Intellectual Reserve, Inc. All rights reserved.

The text of this edition is licensed from The Church of Jesus Christ of Latter-day Saints with the following disclaimer: *The Product offered by Benjamin Crowder is neither made, provided, approved, nor endorsed by, Intellectual Reserve, Inc. or The Church of Jesus Christ of Latter-day Saints. Any content or opinions expressed, implied, or included in or with the Product offered by Benjamin Crowder are solely those of Benjamin Crowder and not those of Intellectual Reserve, Inc. or The Church of Jesus Christ of Latter-day Saints.*

INcwadi kaMormoni

Indaba ebhalwe ngeSandla sikaMormoni ezingcwepheni ezithathwe ezingcwepheni zikaNefi

Ngalokho-ke, kungokufingqiwe kwemibhalo yabantu bakwaNefi, futhi ngokunjalo neyamaLamani—Yabhalelwa amaLamani, ayinsali yendlu ka-Israyeli; futhi ngokunjalo nakumJuda kanye nakoweZizwe—Yabhalwa ngendlela yokuyala, futhi ngokunjalo nangomoya wokuphrofetha kanye nowokwambulelwa—Yabhalwa futhi yavalwa, yafihlwa eNkosini, ukuze ingonakaliswa—Ukuze iphume ngesipho kanye nangamandla kaNkulunkulu mhla ihunyushwa—Yavalwa ngesandla sikaMoroni, futhi yafihlwa eNkosini, ukuze iphume ngesikhathi esifanelekile ngendlela yoweZizwe—Ukahunyushwa kwayo ngesipho sikaNkulunkulu.

Okufinyeziwe futhi okuthathwe encwadini ka-Etere, okungumbhalo wabantu bakwaJared, ababehlakazwe ngesikhathi iNkosi iphambanisa ulimi lwabantu, ngesikhathi bakha umbhoshongo ukuze bafinyelele ezulwini—Okuzokhombisa insali yendlu ka-Israyeli ukuthi yiziphi izinto ezinkulu iNkosi eyazenzela oyise; futhi nokuthi bazazi izivumelwano zeNkosi, nokuthi abalahliwe ingunaphakade—Futhi ngokunjalo nokukholisa iJuda kanye noweZizwe ukuthi UJESU UNGUKRISTU, UNKULUNKULU WAPHAKADE, ozibonakalisa kuzo zonke izizwe—Manje, uma kukhona amaphutha kungamaphutha abantu; ngalokho-ke, ungazigxeki izinto zikaNkulunkulu, ukuze utholakale ungenabala esihlalweni sokwahlulela sikaKristu.

*UKUHUNYUSHWA KOKUQALA KUSUKA
EZINGCWEPHENI KUYA ESINGISINI
NGUJOSEPH SMITH, OMNCANE*

The Book of Mormon

An Account Written by the Hand of Mormon upon Plates Taken from the Plates of Nephi

Wherefore, it is an abridgment of the record of the people of Nephi, and also of the Lamanites—Written to the Lamanites, who are a remnant of the house of Israel; and also to Jew and Gentile—Written by way of commandment, and also by the spirit of prophecy and of revelation—Written and sealed up, and hid up unto the Lord, that they might not be destroyed—To come forth by the gift and power of God unto the interpretation thereof—Sealed by the hand of Moroni, and hid up unto the Lord, to come forth in due time by way of the Gentile—The interpretation thereof by the gift of God.

An abridgment taken from the Book of Ether also, which is a record of the people of Jared, who were scattered at the time the Lord confounded the language of the people, when they were building a tower to get to heaven—Which is to show unto the remnant of the house of Israel what great things the Lord hath done for their fathers; and that they may know the covenants of the Lord, that they are not cast off forever—And also to the convincing of the Jew and Gentile that JESUS is the CHRIST, the ETERNAL GOD, manifesting himself unto all nations—And now, if there are faults they are the mistakes of men; wherefore, condemn not the things of God, that ye may be found spotless at the judgment-seat of Christ.

TRANSLATED BY JOSEPH SMITH, JUN.

UbuFakazi boFakazi abaThathu

Makwazeke kuzo zonke izizwe, izihlobo, izilimi, kanye nakubantu, lomsebenzi oyofika kubo: Ukuthi thina, ngomusa kaNkulunkulu uBaba, kanye neNkosi yethu uJesu Kristu, sizibonile izingcwephe eziqubethe lombhalo, okungumbhalo wabantu bakwaNefi, futhi ngokunjalo nowamaLamani, abafowabo, futhi ngokunjalo nowabantu baJarede, abaqhamuka embhoshongweni osekukhulunywe ngawo. Futhi siyazi ukuthi zihunyushwe ngesipho kanye nangamandla kaNkulunkulu, ngokuba izwi lakhe likushilo lokho kithi; ngalokho-ke sazi kahle ukuthi lomsebenzi uliqiniso. Futhi siyafakaza ukuthi siyibonile imifanekiso eqoshiwe esezingcwepheni; futhi sivezelwe yona ngamandla kaNkulunkulu, hhayi omuntu. Futhi siyaqinisa ngamazwi anesizotha, ukuthi ingelosi kaNkulunkulu yehla ivela ezulwini, futhi yaziletha futhi yazibeka phambi kwamehlo ethu, ukuze sizibuke futhi sizibone izingcwephe, kanye nemifanekiso eqoshiwe eyayikuzo; futhi siyazi ukuthi kungomusa kaNkulunkulu uBaba, kanye neNkosi yethu uJesu Kristu, ukuthi sizibone futhi sinikeza ubufakazi ukuthi lezi zinto ziliqiniso. Futhi kuyamangalisa emehlweni ethu. Nokho, izwi leNkosi lasiyala ukuthi sinikeze ubufakazi bakho; ngalokho-ke, ukulalela imiyalelo kaNkulunkulu, sinikeza ubufakazi ngalezi zinto. Futhi siyazi ukuthi uma sethembekile kuKristu, siyolisusa igazi labo bonke abantu ezingutsheni zethu, futhi sitholwe singenabala phambi kwesihlalo sokwahlulela sikaKristu, futhi siyohlala naye ingunaphakade emazulwini. Futhi udumo malube kuBaba, kanye nakuNdodana, kanye nakuMoya oyiNgcwele, okunguNkulunkulu munye. Amen.

U-OLIVER COWDERY
U-DAVID WHITMER
U-MARTIN HARRIS

The Testimony of Three Witnesses

Be it known unto all nations, kindreds, tongues, and people, unto whom this work shall come: That we, through the grace of God the Father, and our Lord Jesus Christ, have seen the plates which contain this record, which is a record of the people of Nephi, and also of the Lamanites, their brethren, and also of the people of Jared, who came from the tower of which hath been spoken. And we also know that they have been translated by the gift and power of God, for his voice hath declared it unto us; wherefore we know of a surety that the work is true. And we also testify that we have seen the engravings which are upon the plates; and they have been shown unto us by the power of God, and not of man. And we declare with words of soberness, that an angel of God came down from heaven, and he brought and laid before our eyes, that we beheld and saw the plates, and the engravings thereon; and we know that it is by the grace of God the Father, and our Lord Jesus Christ, that we beheld and bear record that these things are true. And it is marvelous in our eyes. Nevertheless, the voice of the Lord commanded us that we should bear record of it; wherefore, to be obedient unto the commandments of God, we bear testimony of these things. And we know that if we are faithful in Christ, we shall rid our garments of the blood of all men, and be found spotless before the judgment-seat of Christ, and shall dwell with him eternally in the heavens. And the honor be to the Father, and to the Son, and to the Holy Ghost, which is one God. Amen.

OLIVER COWDERY
DAVID WHITMER
MARTIN HARRIS

UbuFakazi boFakazi abayisiShiyagalombili

Makwazeke kuzo zonke izizwe, izihlobo, izilimi, kanye nakubantu, lomsebenzi oyofika kubo: Ukuthi uJoseph Smith, omNcane, umhumushi walomsebenzi, usibonisile izingcwephe lezo osekukhulunye ngazo, ezinesimo segolide; futhi amaningi amakhasi lo Smith oshiwo awahumusha nempela sawaphatha ngezethu izandla; futhi phezu kwalokho sayibona imifanekiso eqoshiwe lapho; yonke enesimo somsebenzi wasendulo, futhi owenziwe ngobuciko. Futhi ngalokhu sinikeza ubufakazi ngamazwi anesizotha, ukuthi uSmith oshiwo waziveza kithi, ngokuba sazibona futhi saziphakamisa, futhi sazi ngempela ukuthi uSmith oshiwo unazo lezo zingcwephe esikhulume ngazo. Futhi sinika amagama ethu emhlabeni, ukufakaza emhlabeni ngalokho esikubonile. Futhi asiqambi manga, uNkulunkulu ubunikile ubufakazi bakho.

UCHRISTIAN WHITMER

UJACOB WHITMER

UPETER WHITMER, OMNCANE

UJOHN WHITMER

UHIRAM PAGE

UJOSEPH SMITH, OMDALA

UHYRUM SMITH

USAMUEL H. SMITH

The Testimony of Eight Witnesses

Be it known unto all nations, kindreds, tongues, and people, unto whom this work shall come: That Joseph Smith, Jun., the translator of this work, has shown unto us the plates of which hath been spoken, which have the appearance of gold; and as many of the leaves as the said Smith has translated we did handle with our hands; and we also saw the engravings thereon, all of which has the appearance of ancient work, and of curious workmanship. And this we bear record with words of soberness, that the said Smith has shown unto us, for we have seen and hefted, and know of a surety that the said Smith has got the plates of which we have spoken. And we give our names unto the world, to witness unto the world that which we have seen. And we lie not, God bearing witness of it.

CHRISTIAN WHITMER

JACOB WHITMER

PETER WHITMER, JUN.

JOHN WHITMER

HIRAM PAGE

JOSEPH SMITH, SEN.

HYRUM SMITH

SAMUEL H. SMITH

INcwadi Yokuqala kaNefi

Ukubusa kanye nobuFundisi Bakhe

Indaba kaLebi kanye nomkakhe uSariya, kanye namadodana akhe amane, ayebizwa ngokuthi, (kusukela kwendala) uLamani, uLemuweli, uSamu, kanye noNefi. INkosi ixwayisa uLebi ukuthi emuke ezweni laseJerusalema, ngokuba wayeprofethe kubantu ngokuphatelene nobubi babo futhi befuna ukuyibhubbisa impilo yakhe. Uthatha ubambo lwezinsuku ezintathu uya eblane nomndeni wakhe. UNefi uthatha abafowabo ubuyela ezweni laseJerusalema ukuze ayolanda umbhalo wamaJuda. Indaba ngezinhlabeko zabo. Bathatha amadodakazi ka-Isamayeli aba ngomkabo. Bathatha imindeni yabo futhi bayemuka baya eblane. Izinhlabeko kanye nezinkathazo zabo eblane. Indlela ababamba ngayo. Bafika emanzini amaningi. Abafowabo baNefi bayamvukela. Uyabanqoba ngenkulumo, futhi wakba umkumbi. Indawo bayibiza ngegama lokuthi yiNala. Bawela amanzi amaningi baya ezweni lesethembiso, njalonjalo. Lendaba ingokokubbala kukaNefi; noma ngamanye amazwi, mina, Nefi, ngiwubhalile lombhalo.

1 Nefi 1

- 1 Mina, Nefi, ngizelwe ngabazali ababenegama elihle, ngakho-ke ngafundiswa ngandlelathize ngayo yonke imfundiso kababa; futhi sengibone izinkathazo eziningi ezinsukwini zokuphila kwami, nokho, ngithandiwe kakhulu yiNkosi ezinsukwini zonke zokuphila kwami; yebo, ngithole ulwazi olukhulu lobuhle kanye nezimfihlakalo zikaNkulunkulu, ngakho-ke ngenza umbhalo wezenzo zami ezinsukwini zokuphila kwami.
- 2 Yebo, ngenza umbhalo ngolimi lukababa, oluqukethe izimfundiso zamaJuda kanye nolimi lwamaGibithe.
- 3 Futhi ngiyazi ukuthi umbhalo engiwezayo uliqiniso; futhi ngiwenza ngesami isandla uqobo; futhi ngiwenza ngokolwazi lwami.

The First Book of Nephi

His Reign and Ministry

An account of Lebi and his wife Sariyah, and his four sons, being called, (beginning at the eldest) Laman, Lemuel, Sam, and Nephi. The Lord warns Lebi to depart out of the land of Jerusalem, because he prophesieth unto the people concerning their iniquity and they seek to destroy his life. He taketh three days' journey into the wilderness with his family. Nephi taketh his brethren and returneth to the land of Jerusalem after the record of the Jews. The account of their sufferings. They take the daughters of Ishmael to wife. They take their families and depart into the wilderness. Their sufferings and afflictions in the wilderness. The course of their travels. They come to the large waters. Nephi's brethren rebel against him. He confoundeth them, and buildeth a ship. They call the name of the place Bountiful. They cross the large waters into the promised land, and so forth. This is according to the account of Nephi; or in other words, I, Nephi, wrote this record.

1 Nephi 1

I, Nephi, having been born of goodly parents, therefore I was taught somewhat in all the learning of my father; and having seen many afflictions in the course of my days, nevertheless, having been highly favored of the Lord in all my days; yea, having had a great knowledge of the goodness and the mysteries of God, therefore I make a record of my proceedings in my days.

Yea, I make a record in the language of my father, which consists of the learning of the Jews and the language of the Egyptians.

And I know that the record which I make is true; and I make it with mine own hand; and I make it according to my knowledge.

- 4 Ngokuba kwenzeka ngokuqala konyaka wokuqala wokubusa kukaSedekiya, inkosi yakwaJuda, (ubaba, uLehi, esehlale eJerusalema izinsuku zonke zokuphila kwakhe); futhi ngawo lowo nyaka kwafika abaningi abaphrofethi, bephrofetha kubantu ukuthi kufanele baphenduke, noma idolobha elikhulu iJerusalema kufanele libhujiswe.
- 5 Ngalokho-ke kwenzeka ukuthi ubaba, uLehi, ngesikhathi ehamba wathandaza eNkosini, yebo, ngisho nange nhliziyi yakhe yonke, ethandazela abantu bakubo.
- 6 Futhi kwenzeka ngesikhathi esathandaza eNkosini, kwaqhamuka insika yomlilo yahlala phezu kwedwala phambi kwakhe; futhi wabona futhi wezwa okuningi; futhi ngenxa yezinto azibona futhi nazizwa wathuthumela futhi waqhaq hazela kakhulu.
- 7 Futhi kwenzeka ukuthi wabuyela endlini yakhe eJerusalema; futhi waziphonsa phezu kombhede wakhe, enganywe nguMoya kanye nezinto ayezibonile.
- 8 Futhi esanganywe nguMoya kanjalo, wathathwa ngombono, kangangokuthi wabona amazulu evuleka, futhi wabona uNkulunkulu ehlezi esihlalweni sakhe, ezungezwe yizixuku zezingelosi ezingabaleki zisesimweni sokucula nokudumisa uNkulunkulu wazo.
- 9 Futhi kwenzeka ukuthi wabona oYedwa ehla ephuma maphakathi nezulu, futhi wabona ukuthi ukukhazimula kwakhe kwakungaphezulu kwelanga phakathi nemini.
- 10 Futhi waphinde wabona abanye abayishumi nambili bemlandela, futhi okwabo ukukhanya kwakwedlula okwezinkanyezi emkhathini.
- 11 Futhi behlela phansi futhi bahamba phezu kobuso bomhlaba; owokuqala weza wema phambi kukababa, wamnika incwadi, futhi wamyala ukuthi ayifunde.
- 12 Futhi kwenzeka ukuthi ngesikhathi esayifunda, wagcwaliswa ngoMoya weNkosi.

For it came to pass in the commencement of the first year of the reign of Zedekiah, king of Judah, (my father, Lehi, having dwelt at Jerusalem in all his days); and in that same year there came many prophets, prophesying unto the people that they must repent, or the great city Jerusalem must be destroyed.

Wherefore it came to pass that my father, Lehi, as he went forth prayed unto the Lord, yea, even with all his heart, in behalf of his people.

And it came to pass as he prayed unto the Lord, there came a pillar of fire and dwelt upon a rock before him; and he saw and heard much; and because of the things which he saw and heard he did quake and tremble exceedingly.

And it came to pass that he returned to his own house at Jerusalem; and he cast himself upon his bed, being overcome with the Spirit and the things which he had seen.

And being thus overcome with the Spirit, he was carried away in a vision, even that he saw the heavens open, and he thought he saw God sitting upon his throne, surrounded with numberless concourses of angels in the attitude of singing and praising their God.

And it came to pass that he saw One descending out of the midst of heaven, and he beheld that his luster was above that of the sun at noon-day.

And he also saw twelve others following him, and their brightness did exceed that of the stars in the firmament.

And they came down and went forth upon the face of the earth; and the first came and stood before my father, and gave unto him a book, and bade him that he should read.

And it came to pass that as he read, he was filled with the Spirit of the Lord.

- 13 Futhi wafunda, ethi: Maye, maye, kuwe Jerusalema, ngokuba ngizibonile izinengiso zakho! Yebo, futhi ziningi izinto ubaba azifunda mayelana neJerusalema—ukuthi kumele ibhujiswe, kanye nabahlala kuyo; abaningi kumele babhujiswe ngenkemba, futhi abaningi bayomukiswa bathunjelwe eBabiloni.
- 14 Futhi kwenzeka ukuthi ngesikhathi ubaba esezifundile futhi wazibona izinto ezinkulu nezimangalisayo eziningi, wababaza eziningi izinto eNkosini; njengokuthi: Mikhulu futhi iyamangalisa imisebenzi yakho, O Nkosi Nkulunkulu Mninimandla Onke! Isihlalo sakho siphezulu emazulwini, futhi amandla, kanye nobuhle, kanye nesihawu sakho kuphezu kwabo bonke abahlala emhlabeni; futhi, ngoba unesihawu, ngeke uvumele abeza kuwe ukuthi babhujiswe!
- 15 Futhi kwakungalendlela akhuluma ngayo ubaba ngolimi lwakhe edumisa uNkulunkulu wakhe; ngokuba umphefumulo wakhe wajabula, futhi nenhliziyo yakhe yonke yagcwaliswa, ngenxa yezinto ayezibonile, yebo, lezo iNkosi eyayimtshengise zona.
- 16 Manje mina, Nepi, angenzi indaba ephelele yezinto ubaba azibhalile, ngokuba ubhale eziningi izinto azibona ngemibono kanye nasemaphusheni; futhi phezu kwalokho ubhale eziningi izinto aziphrofethayo nazikhuluma kubantwana bakhe, engingeke ngenze indaba ephelele ngazo.
- 17 Kodwa ngizokwenza indaba ngezenzo zami ezinsukwini zokuphila kwami. Bheka, ngifinyeza umbhalo kababa, ezingcwephehi engizenze ngezami izandla uqobo; ngalokho-ke, emuva kokuthi sengiwufinyezile umbhalo kababa ngizobe sengenza indaba ngempilo yami uqobo.
- 18 Ngalokho-ke, ngifuna ukuthi nazi, ukuthi emuva kokuthi iNkosi isimtshengise izinto eziningi ezimangalisayo ubaba, uLehi, yebo, mayelana nokubhujiswa kweJerusalema, bheka wahamba waya phakathi kwabantu, futhi waqala ukuphrofetha nokumemezela kubo izinto ayezibonile futhi nayeziwile.

And he read, saying: Wo, wo, unto Jerusalem, for I have seen thine abominations! Yea, and many things did my father read concerning Jerusalem—that it should be destroyed, and the inhabitants thereof; many should perish by the sword, and many should be carried away captive into Babylon.

And it came to pass that when my father had read and seen many great and marvelous things, he did exclaim many things unto the Lord; such as: Great and marvelous are thy works, O Lord God Almighty! Thy throne is high in the heavens, and thy power, and goodness, and mercy are over all the inhabitants of the earth; and, because thou art merciful, thou wilt not suffer those who come unto thee that they shall perish!

And after this manner was the language of my father in the praising of his God; for his soul did rejoice, and his whole heart was filled, because of the things which he had seen, yea, which the Lord had shown unto him.

And now I, Nephi, do not make a full account of the things which my father hath written, for he hath written many things which he saw in visions and in dreams; and he also hath written many things which he prophesied and spake unto his children, of which I shall not make a full account.

But I shall make an account of my proceedings in my days. Behold, I make an abridgment of the record of my father, upon plates which I have made with mine own hands; wherefore, after I have abridged the record of my father then will I make an account of mine own life.

Therefore, I would that ye should know, that after the Lord had shown so many marvelous things unto my father, Lehi, yea, concerning the destruction of Jerusalem, behold he went forth among the people, and began to prophesy and to declare unto them concerning the things which he had both seen and heard.

19 Futhi kwenzeka ukuthi amaJuda amhleka usulu ngenxa yezinto azifakaza ngawo; ngokuba ngempela wafakaza ngobubi kanye nangezinengiso zawo; futhi wafakaza ngokuthi izinto ayezibonile futhi nayeziwile, futhi ngokunjalo nezinto azifunda encwadini, zazibonakalisa ngokusobala ukuza kukaMesiya, futhi ngokunjalo nokuhlengwa komhlaba.

20 Futhi ngesikhathi amaJuda ezizwa lezi zinto amthukuthelela; yebo, ngisho nanjengabaphrofethi basendulo, ababa xosha, nababakhanda ngamatshe, nabababulala; futhi phezu kwalokho afuna impilo yakhe, ukuba ayithathe. Kodwa bheka, mina, Nephi, ngizonitshengisa ukuthi ubumnene besihawu seNkosi buphezu kwabo bonke labo ebakhethileyo, ngenxa yokholo lwabo, ukubenza babe namandla amakhulu ngisho namandla okukhululwa.

And it came to pass that the Jews did mock him because of the things which he testified of them; for he truly testified of their wickedness and their abominations; and he testified that the things which he saw and heard, and also the things which he read in the book, manifested plainly of the coming of a Messiah, and also the redemption of the world.

And when the Jews heard these things they were angry with him; yea, even as with the prophets of old, whom they had cast out, and stoned, and slain; and they also sought his life, that they might take it away. But behold, I, Nephi, will show unto you that the tender mercies of the Lord are over all those whom he hath chosen, because of their faith, to make them mighty even unto the power of deliverance.

1 Nefi 2

- 1 Ngokuba bheka, kwenzeka ukuthi iNkosi yakhuluma kubaba, yebo, ngisho ephusheni, futhi yathi kuye: Ubusisiwe wena Lehi, ngenxa yezinto ozenzile; futhi ngenxa yokuthi ubuthembekile futhi wamemezela kulaba bantu izinto engikuyale ngazo, bheka, bafuna ukuthatha impilo yakho.
- 2 Futhi kwenzeka ukuthi iNkosi yamyala ubaba, ngisho ephusheni, ukuthi kufanele athathe umndeni wakhe emuke aye ehlane.
- 3 Futhi kwenzeka ukuthi walilalela izwi leNkosi, ngalokho-ke wenza njengoba iNkosi imyalile.
- 4 Futhi kwenzeka ukuthi wemuka waya ehlane. Futhi washiya umuzi wakhe, kanjalo nezwe elaliyifa lakhe, kanye negolide lakhe, kanye nesiliva lakhe, kanye nezinto eziyigugu zakhe, futhi wangathatha lutho ukuba ahambe nakho, ngaphandle komndeni wakhe, kanye nezinto ayezidinga, kanye namatende, wemuka waya ehlane.
- 5 Futhi wehlela ezansi ngaseminceleni eduze nosebe loLwandle oluBomvu; futhi wahamba ehlane eminceleni eseduze noLwandle oluBomvu; futhi wahamba ehlane nomndeni wakhe, owawenziwa ngumama, uSariya, kanye nabafo wethu abadala, okwakungu Lamani, noLemuweli, kanye noSamu.
- 6 Futhi kwenzeka ukuthi ngesikhathi esehambe izinsuku ezintathu ehlane, wamisa itende lakhe esigodini ngasogwini lomfula wamanzi.
- 7 Futhi kwenzeka ukuthi wakha i-altare ngamatshe, futhi wenza umnikelo eNkosini, futhi wabonga eNkosini uNkulunkulu
- 8 Futhi kwenzeka ukuthi wawubiza lomfula, ngokuthi nguLamani, futhi wawuthululela oLwandle oluBomvu; futhi isigodi sasiseminceleni eduze kwesizalo sawo.
- 9 Futhi ngesikhathi ubaba ebona ukuthi amanzi omfula ayethululela emthonjeni woLwandle oluBomvu, wakhuluma kuLamani ethi: O sengathi ubungaba njengalomfula, njalo ugobhozela emthonjeni wakho konke ukulunga!

1 Nephi 2

For behold, it came to pass that the Lord spake unto my father, yea, even in a dream, and said unto him: Blessed art thou Lehi, because of the things which thou hast done; and because thou hast been faithful and declared unto this people the things which I commanded thee, behold, they seek to take away thy life.

And it came to pass that the Lord commanded my father, even in a dream, that he should take his family and depart into the wilderness.

And it came to pass that he was obedient unto the word of the Lord, wherefore he did as the Lord commanded him.

And it came to pass that he departed into the wilderness. And he left his house, and the land of his inheritance, and his gold, and his silver, and his precious things, and took nothing with him, save it were his family, and provisions, and tents, and departed into the wilderness.

And he came down by the borders near the shore of the Red Sea; and he traveled in the wilderness in the borders which are nearer the Red Sea; and he did travel in the wilderness with his family, which consisted of my mother, Sariah, and my elder brothers, who were Laman, Lemuel, and Sam.

And it came to pass that when he had traveled three days in the wilderness, he pitched his tent in a valley by the side of a river of water.

And it came to pass that he built an altar of stones, and made an offering unto the Lord, and gave thanks unto the Lord our God.

And it came to pass that he called the name of the river, Laman, and it emptied into the Red Sea; and the valley was in the borders near the mouth thereof.

And when my father saw that the waters of the river emptied into the fountain of the Red Sea, he spake unto Laman, saying: O that thou mightest be like unto this river, continually running into the fountain of all righteousness!

- 10 Futhi phezu kwalokho wakhuluma kuLemuweli ethi: O sengathi ubungaba njengalesi sigodi, ugxile ubambebele, futhi unganyakaziseki ekugcineni imiyalelo yeNkosi!
- 11 Manje lokhu wakukhuluma ngenxa yokuba ngontamo lukhuni kukaLamani kanye noLemuweli; ngokuba bheka bavungama ngezinto eziningi kuyise, ngoba wayeyindoda yemibono, futhi wayebaholile wabakhipha ezweni laseJerusalema, ukuze bashiye izwe okwakuyifa labo, kanye negolide labo, kanye nesiliva labo, kanye nezinto ezingamagugu zabo, ukuze babhubhele ehlane. Futhi bathi wayekwenze lokhu ngenxa yobuwula bemicabango yenhliziyi yakhe.
- 12 Futhi kungalendlela uLamani noLemuweli abavungamela ngayo uyise, kuyibo abadala. Futhi bavungama ngoba babengazazi izenzo zikalowo Nkulunkulu owayebadalile.
- 13 Futhi babengakholwa ukuthi iJerusalema, lelo dolobha elikhulu, lalingabhujiswa njengokusho kwamazwi abaphrofethi. Futhi babenjengamaJuda ayeseJerusalema, ayefuna ukuthatha impilo kababa.
- 14 Futhi kwenzeka ukuthi ubaba wakhuluma kubo esigodini sikaLemuweli, ngamandla, egcwaliswe ngoMoya, kwaze kwathi uhlaka lwemizimba yabo lwathuthumela phambi kwakhe. Futhi wabathobisa, kangangoba ababange besalokotha bakhulume ngokuphikisana naye; ngalokho-ke, benza njengoba wayebayalile.
- 15 Futhi ubaba wahlala etendeni.
- 16 Futhi kwenzeka ukuthi mina, Nepi, ngimncane kakhulu, nokho ngimkhulu ngimude, futhi nginezifiso ezinkulu zokwazi ngezimfihlakalo zikaNkulunkulu, ngalokho-ke, ngakhala eNkosini; futhi bheka nempela yangihambela, futhi yayithambisa inhliziyi yami kangangokuthi ngakholwa yiwo wonke amazwi ayekhulunye ngubaba; ngalokho-ke, mina angizange ngimvukele njengabafowethu.
- 17 Futhi ngakhuluma kuSamu, ngimazisa ngezinto iNkosi eyayizivezile kimi ngoMoya wayo oyiNgcwele. Futhi kwenzeka ukuthi wakholelwa emazwini ami.

And he also spake unto Lemuel: O that thou mightest be like unto this valley, firm and steadfast, and immovable in keeping the commandments of the Lord!

Now this he spake because of the stiffneckedness of Laman and Lemuel; for behold they did murmur in many things against their father, because he was a visionary man, and had led them out of the land of Jerusalem, to leave the land of their inheritance, and their gold, and their silver, and their precious things, to perish in the wilderness. And this they said he had done because of the foolish imaginations of his heart.

And thus Laman and Lemuel, being the eldest, did murmur against their father. And they did murmur because they knew not the dealings of that God who had created them.

Neither did they believe that Jerusalem, that great city, could be destroyed according to the words of the prophets. And they were like unto the Jews who were at Jerusalem, who sought to take away the life of my father.

And it came to pass that my father did speak unto them in the valley of Lemuel, with power, being filled with the Spirit, until their frames did shake before him. And he did confound them, that they durst not utter against him; wherefore, they did as he commanded them.

And my father dwelt in a tent.

And it came to pass that I, Nephi, being exceedingly young, nevertheless being large in stature, and also having great desires to know of the mysteries of God, wherefore, I did cry unto the Lord; and behold he did visit me, and did soften my heart that I did believe all the words which had been spoken by my father; wherefore, I did not rebel against him like unto my brothers.

And I spake unto Sam, making known unto him the things which the Lord had manifested unto me by his Holy Spirit. And it came to pass that he believed in my words.

- 18 Kodwa, bheka, uLamani noLemuweli abazange bawalalele amazwi ami; futhi ngidabukile ngenxa yobulukhuni bezinhliziyo zabo ngabakhalela eNkosini.
- 19 Futhi kwenzeka ukuthi iNkosi yakhuluma kimi, ithi: Ubusisiwe wena, Nepi, ngenxa yokholo lwakho, ngokuba ungifunile ngokukhuthala, nangokuthobeka kwenhliziyo.
- 20 Futhi kangangoba uyoyigcina imiyalelo yami, uyophumelela, futhi uyoholelwa ezweni lesethembiso; yebo, ngisho izwe engikulungisele lona; yebo, izwe elikhethiweyo ngaphezu kwawo wonke amanye amazwe.
- 21 Futhi kangangoba abafowenu beyokuvukela, bayohlukaniswa neNkosi.
- 22 Futhi kangangoba uyoyigcina imiyalelo yami, uyokwenziwa umbusi nomfundisi phezu kwabafowenu.
- 23 Ngokuba bheka, ngalolo suku abayongivukela ngalo, ngiyobaqalekisa ngisho nangesiqalekiso esibuhlungu, futhi ngeke babe namandla ngaphezu kwenzalo yakho ngaphandle uma nayo ingivukela futhi.
- 24 Futhi uma kwenzeka ukuthi bangivukele, bayokuba wuhlupho enzalweni yakho, ukuba bayivusele ezindleleni zokukhunjuzwa.

But, behold, Laman and Lemuel would not hearken unto my words; and being grieved because of the hardness of their hearts I cried unto the Lord for them.

And it came to pass that the Lord spake unto me, saying: Blessed art thou, Nephi, because of thy faith, for thou hast sought me diligently, with lowliness of heart.

And inasmuch as ye shall keep my commandments, ye shall prosper, and shall be led to a land of promise; yea, even a land which I have prepared for you; yea, a land which is choice above all other lands.

And inasmuch as thy brethren shall rebel against thee, they shall be cut off from the presence of the Lord.

And inasmuch as thou shalt keep my commandments, thou shalt be made a ruler and a teacher over thy brethren.

For behold, in that day that they shall rebel against me, I will curse them even with a sore curse, and they shall have no power over thy seed except they shall rebel against me also.

And if it so be that they rebel against me, they shall be a scourge unto thy seed, to stir them up in the ways of remembrance.

1 Nefi 3

- 1 Futhi kwenzeka ukuthi mina, Nefi, ngabuya ekukhulumeni neNkosi, ngaya etendeni likababa.
- 2 Futhi kwenzeka ukuthi wakhuluma kimi, ethi: Bheka ngiphuphe iphupho, okuthe kulo iNkosi yangiyala ngokuthi wena kanye nabafowenu niyobuyela eJerusalema.
- 3 Ngokuba bheka, uLabani unombhalo wamaJuda futhi ngokunjalo nomlando wesizukulwane sokhokho bami, futhi lokho kuqoshwe ezingcwepheni zethusi.
- 4 Ngalokho-ke, iNkosi ingiyalile ngokuthi wena nabafowenu kufanele niye endlini kaLabani, niyofuna lemibhalo, futhi nehle nayo niyilethe lapha ehlane.
- 5 Manje, bheka abafowenu bayavungama, bathi kuyinto elukhuni lena mina engiyifune kubo; kodwa bheka angiyifunanga mina kubo, kodwa kungumyalelo weNkosi.
- 6 Ngakho-ke hamba, ndodana yami, futhi uyothandwa yiNkosi, ngoba wena awuzange uvungame.
- 7 Futhi kwenzeka ukuthi mina, Nefi, ngathi kubaba: Ngizohamba ngizenze izinto iNkosi eyale ngazo, ngokuba ngiyazi ukuthi iNkosi ayiniki miyalelo kubantwana babantu, ngaphandle kokuthi iyobalungiselela indlela ukuze bakwazi ukufeza leyonto ebayale ngayo.
- 8 Futhi kwenzeka ukuthi ngesikhathi ubaba esezwe lamazwi wajabula kakhulu, ngokuba wayazi ukuthi ngase ngibusiswe yiNkosi.
- 9 Futhi mina, Nefi, kanye nabafowethu sathatha uhambo lwethu lwasehlane, namatende ethu, sakhuphukela ezweni laseJerusalema.
- 10 Futhi kwenzeka ukuthi ngesikhathi sesihambile sakhuphukela ezweni laseJerusalema, mina nabafowethu sabonisana omunye nomunye.
- 11 Futhi senza inkatho—ukuthi ngubani phakathi kwethu owayezongena emzini kaLabani. Futhi kwenzeka ukuthi inkatho yawela kuLamani; futhi uLamani wahamba wangena emzini kaLabani, futhi wakhuluma naye ngesikhathi ehlezi endlini yakhe.

1 Nephi 3

And it came to pass that I, Nephi, returned from speaking with the Lord, to the tent of my father.

And it came to pass that he spake unto me, saying: Behold I have dreamed a dream, in the which the Lord hath commanded me that thou and thy brethren shall return to Jerusalem.

For behold, Laban hath the record of the Jews and also a genealogy of my forefathers, and they are engraven upon plates of brass.

Wherefore, the Lord hath commanded me that thou and thy brothers should go unto the house of Laban, and seek the records, and bring them down hither into the wilderness.

And now, behold thy brothers murmur, saying it is a hard thing which I have required of them; but behold I have not required it of them, but it is a commandment of the Lord.

Therefore go, my son, and thou shalt be favored of the Lord, because thou hast not murmured.

And it came to pass that I, Nephi, said unto my father: I will go and do the things which the Lord hath commanded, for I know that the Lord giveth no commandments unto the children of men, save he shall prepare a way for them that they may accomplish the thing which he commandeth them.

And it came to pass that when my father had heard these words he was exceedingly glad, for he knew that I had been blessed of the Lord.

And I, Nephi, and my brethren took our journey in the wilderness, with our tents, to go up to the land of Jerusalem.

And it came to pass that when we had gone up to the land of Jerusalem, I and my brethren did consult one with another.

And we cast lots—who of us should go in unto the house of Laban. And it came to pass that the lot fell upon Laman; and Laman went in unto the house of Laban, and he talked with him as he sat in his house.

- 12 Futhi wacela kuLabani imibhalo leyo eyayiqoshwe ezingcwephezi zethusi, eyayiqukethe umlando wesizukulwane sikababa.
- 13 Futhi bheka, kwenzeka ukuthi uLabani wathukuthela, futhi wamxosha phambi kwakhe; futhi akafunanga ukumnikeza imibhalo. Ngalokho-ke, wathi kuye: Bheka ungumphangi, futhi ngizokubulala.
- 14 Kodwa uLamani wabaleka phambi kwakhe, futhi wazositshela izinto uLabani ayezenzile. Futhi saqala ukudabuka kakhulu, futhi abafowethu base bezobuyela kubaba ehlane.
- 15 Kodwa bheka mina ngathi kubo: Njengoba iNkosi iphila, futhi nathi siphila, asizukuya ezansi kubaba ehlane ngaphambi kokuba siyifeze leyonto iNkosi esiyale ngayo.
- 16 Ngalokho-ke, masethembeke ekugcineni imiyalelo yeNkosi; ngakho-ke masehlele ezweni eliyifa likababa, ngokuba bheka washiya igolide kanye nesiliva, kanye nayo yonke inhlobo yengcebo. Futhi konke lokhu ukwenze ngenxa yemiyalelo yeNkosi.
- 17 Ngokuba wayazi ukuthi iJerusalema kwakufanele ibhujiswe, ngenxa yobubi babantu.
- 18 Ngokuba bheka, bawenqabile amazwi abaphrofethi. Ngalokho-ke, uma ubaba wayengahlala kulelizwe emuva kokuthi eseyaliwe ukuthi abaleke aphume aphele kulo, bheka, naye ngokunjalo wayezobhubha. Ngalokho-ke, kufanele ukuthi abaleke aphume aphele kulelizwe.
- 19 Futhi bheka, kungukuhlakanipha kukaNkulunkulu ukuthi thina siyithole lemibhalo, ukuze sigcinele abantwana bethu ulimi lobaba bethu;
- 20 Futhi ngokunjalo ukuze sibagcinele amazwi akhulunywa ngemilomo yabo bonke abaphrofethi abangcwele, athunyelwa kubo ngoMoya kanye nangamandla kaNkulunkulu, kusukela ekudabukeni komhlaba, kwehle kuze kufike esikhathini samanje.
- 21 Futhi kwenzeka ukuthi ngabavumisa abafowethu ngalendlela yokukhuluma, ukuze bathembeke ekugcineni imiyalelo kaNkulunkulu.

And he desired of Laban the records which were engraven upon the plates of brass, which contained the genealogy of my father.

And behold, it came to pass that Laban was angry, and thrust him out from his presence; and he would not that he should have the records. Wherefore, he said unto him: Behold thou art a robber, and I will slay thee.

But Laman fled out of his presence, and told the things which Laban had done, unto us. And we began to be exceedingly sorrowful, and my brethren were about to return unto my father in the wilderness.

But behold I said unto them that: As the Lord liveth, and as we live, we will not go down unto our father in the wilderness until we have accomplished the thing which the Lord hath commanded us.

Wherefore, let us be faithful in keeping the commandments of the Lord; therefore let us go down to the land of our father's inheritance, for behold he left gold and silver, and all manner of riches. And all this he hath done because of the commandments of the Lord.

For he knew that Jerusalem must be destroyed, because of the wickedness of the people.

For behold, they have rejected the words of the prophets. Wherefore, if my father should dwell in the land after he hath been commanded to flee out of the land, behold, he would also perish. Wherefore, it must needs be that he flee out of the land.

And behold, it is wisdom in God that we should obtain these records, that we may preserve unto our children the language of our fathers;

And also that we may preserve unto them the words which have been spoken by the mouth of all the holy prophets, which have been delivered unto them by the Spirit and power of God, since the world began, even down unto this present time.

And it came to pass that after this manner of language did I persuade my brethren, that they might be faithful in keeping the commandments of God.

22 Futhi kwenzeka ukuthi sehlela ezansi ezweni eliyifa lethu, futhi saqoqela ndawonye igolide lethu, kanye nesiliva lethu, kanye nezinto zethu ezingamagugu.

23 Futhi emuva kokuthi sesiziqoqele ndawonye lezi zinto, sahamba futhi sakhuphukela emzini kaLabani.

24 Futhi kwenzeka ukuthi sangena saya kuLabani, futhi samcela ukuthi asinikeze imibhalo leyo eyayiqoshwe ezingcwepheni zethusi, ngayo thina esasiyomnika igolide lethu, kanye nesiliva lethu, kanye nazo zonke izinto zethu ezaziwigugu.

25 Futhi kwenzeka ukuthi ngesikhathi uLabani ebona impahla yethu, nokuthi yayiningi kakhulu, wayikhanukela, kangangokuthi wasixosha, futhi wathumela izinceku zakhe ukuthi zisibulale, ukuze athole impahla yethu.

26 Futhi kwenzeka ukuthi sabaleka ngaphambi kwezinceku zikaLabani, futhi saphoqeleka ukuthi siyishiye ngemuva impahla yethu, futhi yawela ezandleni zikaLabani.

27 Futhi kwenzeka ukuthi sabalekela ehlane, futhi izinceku zikaLabani azizange zisifice, futhi sacasha emgedeni wedwala.

28 Futhi kwenzeka ukuthi uLamani wangithukuthelela, futhi wathukuthelela nobaba; futhi ngokunjalo noLemuweli, ngokuba yena wayelalela amazwi kaLamani. Ngalokho-ke uLamani noLemuweli bakhuluma amazwi amaningi anzima kithi, abafowabo abancane, futhi basishaya ngisho nangenduku.

29 Futhi kwenzeka ukuthi ngesikhathi besishaya ngenduku, bheka, ingelosi yeNkosi yeza futhi yema phambi kwabo, futhi yakhuluma kubo, ithi: Nimshayelani umfowenu omncane ngenduku na? Anazi yini ukuthi iNkosi imkhethile ukuthi abe ngumbusi phezu kwenu, futhi lokhu ngenxa yobubi benu na? Bhekani nizokhuphuka niye eJerusalema futhi, futhi iNkosi izomnikela ezandleni zenu uLabani.

30 Futhi emva kokuthi ingelosi isikhulumile kithi, yemuka.

And it came to pass that we went down to the land of our inheritance, and we did gather together our gold, and our silver, and our precious things.

And after we had gathered these things together, we went up again unto the house of Laban.

And it came to pass that we went in unto Laban, and desired him that he would give unto us the records which were engraven upon the plates of brass, for which we would give unto him our gold, and our silver, and all our precious things.

And it came to pass that when Laban saw our property, and that it was exceedingly great, he did lust after it, insomuch that he thrust us out, and sent his servants to slay us, that he might obtain our property.

And it came to pass that we did flee before the servants of Laban, and we were obliged to leave behind our property, and it fell into the hands of Laban.

And it came to pass that we fled into the wilderness, and the servants of Laban did not overtake us, and we hid ourselves in the cavity of a rock.

And it came to pass that Laman was angry with me, and also with my father; and also was Lemuel, for he hearkened unto the words of Laman. Wherefore Laman and Lemuel did speak many hard words unto us, their younger brothers, and they did smite us even with a rod.

And it came to pass as they smote us with a rod, behold, an angel of the Lord came and stood before them, and he spake unto them, saying: Why do ye smite your younger brother with a rod? Know ye not that the Lord hath chosen him to be a ruler over you, and this because of your iniquities? Behold ye shall go up to Jerusalem again, and the Lord will deliver Laban into your hands.

And after the angel had spoken unto us, he departed.

31 Futhi emva kokuthi ingelosi isihambile, uLamani noLemuweli baqala futhi bavungama, bethi: Kungenzeka kanjani ukuthi iNkosi inikele uLabani ezandleni zethu na? Bheka, uyindoda enamandla, futhi angakhuza amashumi amahlanu, yebo, angabulala ngisho amashumi amahlanu; pho angekwenze ngani lokho kithi na?

And after the angel had departed, Laman and Lemuel again began to murmur, saying: How is it possible that the Lord will deliver Laban into our hands? Behold, he is a mighty man, and he can command fifty, yea, even he can slay fifty; then why not us?

1 Nefi 4

- 1 Futhi kwenzeka ukuthi ngakhuluma nabafowethu, ngithi: Asikhuphukeni futhi siye eJerusalema, futhi masethembeke ekugcineni imiyalelo yeNkosi; ngokuba bhekani inamandla ngaphezu komhlaba wonke, pho kungani ingebe namandla kunoLabani kanye nabangamashumi amahlanu bakhe, yebo, noma ngisho nabangamashumi ezinkulungwane bakhe na?
- 2 Ngakho-ke asikhuphukeni; asiqineni njengoMose; ngokuba ngempela wakhuluma emanzini oLwandle oluBomvu futhi ahlukana ngapha nangapha, futhi obaba bethu badabula phakathi, baphuma ekuthunjweni, baphumela emhlabathini owomileyo, futhi amabutho kaFaro alandela futhi aminza emanzini oLwandle oluBomvu.
- 3 Manje bhekani niyazi ukuthi lokhu kuliqiniso; futhi phezu kwalokho niyazi ukuthi ingelosi ikhulumile kini; ngalokho-ke kungani ningabaza na? Asikhuphukeni; iNkosi iyakwazi ukusikhulula, ngisho njengobaba bethu, futhi nokubhubhisa uLabani, ngisho njengabaseGibithe.
- 4 Manje ngesikhathi sengikhulume lamazwi, babesathukuthele, futhi babesaqhubeka nokuvungama; nokho bangilandela sakhuphuka saze safika ngaphandle kwezindonga zeJerusalema.
- 5 Futhi kwakusebusuku; futhi ngenza ukuthi bacashe ngaphandle kwezindonga. Futhi emuva kokuthi sebecashile, mina, Nefi, nganyonyoba ngangena edolobheni futhi ngahamba ngaya ngasendlini kaLabani.
- 6 Futhi ngangiholwa nguMoya, ngingazi ngaphambili ngezinto okwakufanele ngizenze.
- 7 Nokho ngaya phambili, futhi ngesikhathi ngisondela eduzane nendlu kaLabani ngabona indoda, futhi yayiwele phansi phambi kwami, ngokuba yayidakwe yiwayini.
- 8 Futhi ngesikhathi ngifika kuyo ngathola ukuthi kwakunguLabani.

1 Nephi 4

And it came to pass that I spake unto my brethren, saying: Let us go up again unto Jerusalem, and let us be faithful in keeping the commandments of the Lord; for behold he is mightier than all the earth, then why not mightier than Laban and his fifty, yea, or even than his tens of thousands?

Therefore let us go up; let us be strong like unto Moses; for he truly spake unto the waters of the Red Sea and they divided hither and thither, and our fathers came through, out of captivity, on dry ground, and the armies of Pharaoh did follow and were drowned in the waters of the Red Sea.

Now behold ye know that this is true; and ye also know that an angel hath spoken unto you; wherefore can ye doubt? Let us go up; the Lord is able to deliver us, even as our fathers, and to destroy Laban, even as the Egyptians.

Now when I had spoken these words, they were yet wroth, and did still continue to murmur; nevertheless they did follow me up until we came without the walls of Jerusalem.

And it was by night; and I caused that they should hide themselves without the walls. And after they had hid themselves, I, Nephi, crept into the city and went forth towards the house of Laban.

And I was led by the Spirit, not knowing beforehand the things which I should do.

Nevertheless I went forth, and as I came near unto the house of Laban I beheld a man, and he had fallen to the earth before me, for he was drunken with wine.

And when I came to him I found that it was Laban.

- 9 Futhi ngabona inkemba yakhe, futhi ngayihosha emgodleni wayo; futhi umphini wayo kwakungowegolide elimsulwa, futhi ukwakhiwa kwayo kwakungokusezingeni eliphezulu kakhulu, futhi ngabona ukuthi ukudla kwayo kwakungokwensimbi eyigugu elikhulu.
- 10 Futhi kwenzeka ukuthi ngaphoqelelwa nguMoya ukuthi ngimbulale uLabani; kodwa ngathi enhliziyweni yami: Angikaze nanoma yingasiphi isikhathi ngichithe igazi lomuntu. Futhi nganqikaza futhi ngingafuni ukumbulala.
- 11 Futhi uMoya waphinda wathi kimi: Bheka iNkosi innikele ezandleni zakho. Yebo, futhi ngangazi ukuthi wayekade efuna ukuthatha impilo yami; yebo, futhi wayengafuni ukulalela imiyalelo yeNkosi; futhi wayethathe impahla yethu.
- 12 Futhi kwenzeka ukuthi uMoya waphinda wathi kimi: Mbulale, ngokuba iNkosi innikele ezandleni zakho;
- 13 Bheka iNkosi ibulala ababi ukuze iveze izinhloso zayo zokulunga. Kungcono ukuthi umuntu oyedwa abhubhe kunokuthi isizwe sinciphe futhi sibhubhe ngokungakholwa.
- 14 Manje, ngesikhathi mina, Nefi, sengiwazwile lamazwi, ngawakhumbula amazwi eNkosi eyayiwakhulume kimi ehlane, isho lokhu: Kangangoba inzalo yakho iyoyigcina imiyalelo yami, iyophumelela ezweni lesethembiso.
- 15 Yebo, futhi ngaphinde ngacabanga ukuthi yayingenakukwazi ukugcina imiyalelo yeNkosi ngokomthetho kaMose, ngaphandle kokuthi ibe nomthetho.
- 16 Futhi ngaphinde ngazi ukuthi umthetho wawuqoshwe ezingcwephezi zethusi.
- 17 Futhi phezu kwalokho, ngazi ukuthi iNkosi yayimnikele uLabani ezandleni zami ngenxa yalesi sizathu—ukuze ngiyithole imibhalo njengokwemiyalo yayo.
- 18 Ngakho-ke nempela ngalilalela izwi likaMoya, futhi ngamthatha uLabani ngezinwele zekhanda, ngamnquma ikhanda lakhe ngenkemba yakhe.

And I beheld his sword, and I drew it forth from the sheath thereof; and the hilt thereof was of pure gold, and the workmanship thereof was exceedingly fine, and I saw that the blade thereof was of the most precious steel.

And it came to pass that I was constrained by the Spirit that I should kill Laban; but I said in my heart: Never at any time have I shed the blood of man. And I shrunk and would that I might not slay him.

And the Spirit said unto me again: Behold the Lord hath delivered him into thy hands. Yea, and I also knew that he had sought to take away mine own life; yea, and he would not hearken unto the commandments of the Lord; and he also had taken away our property.

And it came to pass that the Spirit said unto me again: Slay him, for the Lord hath delivered him into thy hands;

Behold the Lord slayeth the wicked to bring forth his righteous purposes. It is better that one man should perish than that a nation should dwindle and perish in unbelief.

And now, when I, Nephi, had heard these words, I remembered the words of the Lord which he spake unto me in the wilderness, saying that: Inasmuch as thy seed shall keep my commandments, they shall prosper in the land of promise.

Yea, and I also thought that they could not keep the commandments of the Lord according to the law of Moses, save they should have the law.

And I also knew that the law was engraven upon the plates of brass.

And again, I knew that the Lord had delivered Laban into my hands for this cause—that I might obtain the records according to his commandments.

Therefore I did obey the voice of the Spirit, and took Laban by the hair of the head, and I smote off his head with his own sword.

19 Futhi emuva kokuthi sengimnqume ikhanda lakhe ngenkemba yakhe, ngathatha izembatho zikaLabani ngazigqoka; yebo, zonke; futhi ngabhinca isivikelo sakhe okhalweni lwami.

20 Futhi emva kokuthi sengikwenzile lokhu, ngaqhubekela phambili endaweni yokugcina ingcebo kaLabani. Futhi ngesikhathi ngiqhubeka ngiya ngasendaweni yokugcina ingcebo kaLabani, bheka, ngabona inceku kaLabani eyayiphethe izikhiye zendawo yokugcina ingcebo. Futhi ngayithuma ngezwi likaLabani, ukuthi ihambe nami siye endlini yokugcina ingcebo.

21 Futhi yayicabanga ukuthi ngiyinkosi yayo, uLabani, ngokuba yayibona izingubo futhi ngokunjalo nenkemba ilenga okhalweni lwami.

22 Futhi yakhuluma nami mayelana nabadala bamaJuda, ngokwazi ukuthi inkosi yayo, uLabani, yayikade iphumile ebusuku iphakathi kwabo.

23 Futhi nami ngakhuluma nayo sengathi nginguye uLabani.

24 Futhi ngaphinde ngakhuluma kuyo ngithi kufanele ngithathe imibhalo, eyayiqoshwe ezingcwepheni zethusi, ngiyise kubafowethu abadala, ababengaphandle kwezindonga.

25 Futhi phezu kwalokho ngayiyala ukuthi ingilande.

26 Futhi yona, ngokucabanga ukuthi ngangikhuluma ngabafowethu bebandla, futhi nokuthi nganginguye ngempela uLabani lowo engase ngimbulele, ngalokho-ke yangilandela.

27 Futhi yakhuluma kimi izikhathi eziningi mayelana nabadala bamaJuda, ngesikhathi ngiqhubeka ngiya kubafowethu, ababengaphandle kwezindonga.

28 Futhi kwenzeka ukuthi ngesikhathi uLamani engibona wethuka kakhulu, futhi ngokunjalo noLemuweli kanye noSamu. Futhi bangibalekela; ngokuba babecabanga ukuthi kwakunguLabani, futhi nokuthi wayesengibulele esezofuna ukuthatha nezabo izimpilo futhi.

29 Futhi kwenzeka ukuthi ngabamemeza, futhi nempela bangizwa; ngalokho-ke bayeka ukungibalekela.

And after I had smitten off his head with his own sword, I took the garments of Laban and put them upon mine own body; yea, even every whit; and I did gird on his armor about my loins.

And after I had done this, I went forth unto the treasury of Laban. And as I went forth towards the treasury of Laban, behold, I saw the servant of Laban who had the keys of the treasury. And I commanded him in the voice of Laban, that he should go with me into the treasury.

And he supposed me to be his master, Laban, for he beheld the garments and also the sword girded about my loins.

And he spake unto me concerning the elders of the Jews, he knowing that his master, Laban, had been out by night among them.

And I spake unto him as if it had been Laban.

And I also spake unto him that I should carry the engravings, which were upon the plates of brass, to my elder brethren, who were without the walls.

And I also bade him that he should follow me.

And he, supposing that I spake of the brethren of the church, and that I was truly that Laban whom I had slain, wherefore he did follow me.

And he spake unto me many times concerning the elders of the Jews, as I went forth unto my brethren, who were without the walls.

And it came to pass that when Laman saw me he was exceedingly frightened, and also Lemuel and Sam. And they fled from before my presence; for they supposed it was Laban, and that he had slain me and had sought to take away their lives also.

And it came to pass that I called after them, and they did hear me; wherefore they did cease to flee from my presence.

30 Futhi kwenzeka ukuthi ngesikhathi incekukaLabani ibona abafowethu yaqala ukuqhaqhazela, futhi yayisizongibalekela iphindele edolobheni laseJerusalema.

31 Manje mina, Nepi, ngiyindoda ende enkulu, futhi phezu kwalokho ngithole amandla amakhulu eNkosini, ngakho-ke ngayibhozomela incekukaLabani, futhi ngayibamba, ukuze ingabaleki.

32 Futhi kwenzeka ukuthi ngakhuluma nayo, ukuthi uma yayingalalela amazwi ami, njengoba iNkosi iphila, futhi njengoba nami ngiphila, ngokujalo uma yayingalalela amazwi ethu, sasizoyisindisa impilo yayo.

33 Futhi ngakhuluma nayo, ngisho nangokufunga imbala, ukuthi akudingeki yesabe; nokuthi yayizoba yindoda ekhululekile njengathi uma nje yayingehla iye ehlane kanye nathi.

34 Futhi phezu kwalokho ngakhuluma nayo, ngithi: Ngempela iNkosi isiyalile ukuthi senze lento; futhi singekhuthale yini ukugcina imiyalelo yeNkosi na? Ngakho-ke, uma ungehla nathi uye ehlane kubaba uyokuba nendawo kanye nathi.

35 Futhi kwenzeka ukuthi uZoramu nempela wama isibindi ngamazwi engawakhulumayo. Manje uZoramu kwakuyigama lenceku; futhi wethembisa ukuthi uzokwehla aye ehlane kubaba. Yebo, futhi phezu kwalokho wenza isifungo kithi ukuthi wayesezohlala nathi kusukela kuleso sikhathi kuya phambili.

36 Manje sasinesifiso sokuthi ahlale nathi ngalesi sizathu, sokuthi amaJuda angaze azi mayelana nokubaleka kwethu ukuya ehlane, hleze asilandele futhi asibhubhise.

37 Futhi kwenzeka ukuthi ngesikhathi uZoramu esenze isifungo kithi, ukwesaba kwethu ngaye kwaphela.

38 Futhi kwenzeka ukuthi sathatha izingcwephe zethusi kanye nenceku kaLabani, futhi semuka saya ehlane, sathatha uhambo lokuya etendeni likababa.

And it came to pass that when the servant of Laban beheld my brethren he began to tremble, and was about to flee from before me and return to the city of Jerusalem.

And now I, Nephi, being a man large in stature, and also having received much strength of the Lord, therefore I did seize upon the servant of Laban, and held him, that he should not flee.

And it came to pass that I spake with him, that if he would hearken unto my words, as the Lord liveth, and as I live, even so that if he would hearken unto our words, we would spare his life.

And I spake unto him, even with an oath, that he need not fear; that he should be a free man like unto us if he would go down in the wilderness with us.

And I also spake unto him, saying: Surely the Lord hath commanded us to do this thing; and shall we not be diligent in keeping the commandments of the Lord? Therefore, if thou wilt go down into the wilderness to my father thou shalt have place with us.

And it came to pass that Zoram did take courage at the words which I spake. Now Zoram was the name of the servant; and he promised that he would go down into the wilderness unto our father. Yea, and he also made an oath unto us that he would tarry with us from that time forth.

Now we were desirous that he should tarry with us for this cause, that the Jews might not know concerning our flight into the wilderness, lest they should pursue us and destroy us.

And it came to pass that when Zoram had made an oath unto us, our fears did cease concerning him.

And it came to pass that we took the plates of brass and the servant of Laban, and departed into the wilderness, and journeyed unto the tent of our father.

1 Nefi 5

- 1 Futhi kwenzeka ukuthi emva kokuthi sesibuyele ezansi ehlane kubaba, bheka, wagcwala injabulo, futhi ngokunjalo nomama, uSariya, wathokoza kakhulu, ngokuba ngempela wayesekhale kakhulu ngenxa yethu.
- 2 Ngokuba wayecabange ukuthi sasesabhubha ehlane; futhi phezu kwalokho wayekhondile kubaba, emtshela ukuthi wayeyindoda yemibono; ethi: Bheka usiholile usisusa ezweni eliyifa lethu, futhi amadodana ami awasekho, futhi nathi siyabhubha ehlane.
- 3 Futhi umama wayemsole ngalendlela yokukhuluma ubaba.
- 4 Futhi kwakwenzekile ukuthi ubaba wayekhulume naye, ethi: Ngiyazi ukuthi ngiyindoda yemibono; ngokuba uma ngabe ngangingazibonanga izinto zikaNkulunkulu embonweni ngangingeke ngibazi ubuhle bukaNkulunkulu, kodwa ngangizohlala eJerusalema, futhi ngishabalale kanye nabafowethu.
- 5 Kodwa bheka, sengithole izwe lesethembiso, okuyizinto engithokozayo ngazo; yebo, futhi ngiyazi ukuthi iNkosi izowakhulula amadodana ami ezandleni zikaLabani, futhi iphinde iwabuyise lapha ezansi kithina ehlane.
- 6 Futhi ubaba, uLehi, wamduduza ngalendlela yokukhuluma umama, uSariya, mayelana nathi, ngesikhathi thina sihamba ehlane sikhuphukela ezweni laseJerusalema, ukuyolanda umbhalo wamaJuda.
- 7 Futhi ngesikhathi sesibuyele etendeni likababa, bheka injabulo yabo yagcwala, futhi umama waduduzeka.
- 8 Futhi wakhuluma, ethi: Manje sengiyazi ngeqiniso ukuthi iNkosi imyalile umyeni wami ukuthi abalekele ehlane; yebo, futhi phezu kwalokho ngiyazi ngeqiniso ukuthi iNkosi iwavikele amadodana ami, futhi yawakhulula ezandleni zikaLabani, futhi yawanika amandla okuthi akwazi ukufeza leyonto iNkosi ewayale ngayo. Futhi nempela wakhuluma ngalendlela.

1 Nephi 5

And it came to pass that after we had come down into the wilderness unto our father, behold, he was filled with joy, and also my mother, Sariah, was exceedingly glad, for she truly had mourned because of us.

For she had supposed that we had perished in the wilderness; and she also had complained against my father, telling him that he was a visionary man; saying: Behold thou hast led us forth from the land of our inheritance, and my sons are no more, and we perish in the wilderness.

And after this manner of language had my mother complained against my father.

And it had come to pass that my father spake unto her, saying: I know that I am a visionary man; for if I had not seen the things of God in a vision I should not have known the goodness of God, but had tarried at Jerusalem, and had perished with my brethren.

But behold, I have obtained a land of promise, in the which things I do rejoice; yea, and I know that the Lord will deliver my sons out of the hands of Laban, and bring them down again unto us in the wilderness.

And after this manner of language did my father, Lehi, comfort my mother, Sariah, concerning us, while we journeyed in the wilderness up to the land of Jerusalem, to obtain the record of the Jews.

And when we had returned to the tent of my father, behold their joy was full, and my mother was comforted.

And she spake, saying: Now I know of a surety that the Lord hath commanded my husband to flee into the wilderness; yea, and I also know of a surety that the Lord hath protected my sons, and delivered them out of the hands of Laban, and given them power whereby they could accomplish the thing which the Lord hath commanded them. And after this manner of language did she speak.

- 9 Futhi kwenzeka ukuthi bathokoza kakhulu, futhi banikela ngeminikelo nangemihlatshelo yokushiswa eNkosini; futhi babonga kuNkulunkulu ka-Israyeli.
- 10 Futhi emva kokuthi seabongile kuNkulunkulu ka-Israyeli, ubaba, uLehi, wathatha imibhalo eyayiqoshwe ezingcwephezi zethusi, futhi wayicwaninga kusukela ekuqaleni.
- 11 Futhi wabona ukuthi yayiqukethe izincwadi ezinhlanu zikaMose, ezazikhuluma ngendaba yokudalwa komhlaba, futhi ngokunjalo nango-Adamu no-Eva, ababengabazali bethu bokuqala;
- 12 Futhi ngokunjalo nombhalo wamaJuda kusukela ekuqaleni, kwehle njalo kuze kufike ekuqaleni kokubusa kukaSedekiya, inkosi yakwaJuda;
- 13 Futhi ngokunjalo neziphrofetho zabaphrofethi abangcwele, kusukela ekuqaleni, kwehle njalo kuze kufike ekuqaleni kokubusa kukaSedekiya; futhi ngokunjalo neziningi iziphrofetho ezazikhulunywe ngomlomo kaJeremiya.
- 14 Futhi kwenzeka ukuthi ubaba, uLehi, phezu kwalokho wathola kuzo izingcwephe zethusi umlando ngesizukulwane sawoyise; ngalokho-ke wabe esazi-ke ukuthi yena wayengowenzalo kaJosefa; yebo, ngisho lowo Josefa owayeyindodana kaJakobe, owathengiselwa eGibithe, futhi owagcinwa ngesandla seNkosi, ukuze yena akwazi ukugcina uyise, uJakobe, kanye nabo bonke abomuzi wakhe ekushabalalisweni yindlala.
- 15 Futhi phezu kwalokho baholwa baphuma ebugqilini kanye nasezweni laseGibithe, nguye lowo Nkulunkulu owayebagcinile.
- 16 Futhi kungalendlela ubaba, uLehi, athola ngayo umlando ngesizukulwane sawoyise. Futhi uLabani naye wayengowenzalo kaJosefa, ngalokho-ke yena kanye noyise babeyigcinile imibhalo.
- 17 Manje ngesikhathi ubaba ebona zonke lezi zinto, wagcwaliswa ngoMoya, futhi waqala ukuphrofetha mayelana nenzalo yakhe—
- 18 Ukuthi lezi zingcwephe zethusi kufanele ziqhubekela phambili kuzo zonke izizwe, imindeni, izilimi, kanye nakubantu ababengabenzalo yakhe.

And it came to pass that they did rejoice exceedingly, and did offer sacrifice and burnt offerings unto the Lord; and they gave thanks unto the God of Israel.

And after they had given thanks unto the God of Israel, my father, Lehi, took the records which were engraven upon the plates of brass, and he did search them from the beginning.

And he beheld that they did contain the five books of Moses, which gave an account of the creation of the world, and also of Adam and Eve, who were our first parents;

And also a record of the Jews from the beginning, even down to the commencement of the reign of Zedekiah, king of Judah;

And also the prophecies of the holy prophets, from the beginning, even down to the commencement of the reign of Zedekiah; and also many prophecies which have been spoken by the mouth of Jeremiah.

And it came to pass that my father, Lehi, also found upon the plates of brass a genealogy of his fathers; wherefore he knew that he was a descendant of Joseph; yea, even that Joseph who was the son of Jacob, who was sold into Egypt, and who was preserved by the hand of the Lord, that he might preserve his father, Jacob, and all his household from perishing with famine.

And they were also led out of captivity and out of the land of Egypt, by that same God who had preserved them.

And thus my father, Lehi, did discover the genealogy of his fathers. And Laban also was a descendant of Joseph, wherefore he and his fathers had kept the records.

And now when my father saw all these things, he was filled with the Spirit, and began to prophesy concerning his seed—

That these plates of brass should go forth unto all nations, kindreds, tongues, and people who were of his seed.

- 19 Ngalokho-ke, wathi lezi zingcwephe zethusi akufanele nakancane zishabalale; noma zifiphazwe futhi nayisikhathi. Futhi waphrofetha eziningi izinto eziphathelene nenzalo yakhe.
- 20 Futhi kwenzeka ukuthi kuze kube manje mina nobaba sasiyigcinile imiyalelo leyo iNkosi eyayisiyale ngayo.
- 21 Futhi sasiyitholile imibhalo leyo iNkosi eyayisiyale ngayo, futhi sayicwaninga futhi sathola ukuthi yayingethandekayo kakhulu; yebo, ngisho ingeyegugu elikhulu kithina, kangankuthi sasingakwazi ukugcinela abantwana bethu imiyalelo yeNkosi.
- 22 Ngalokho-ke, kwakungukuhlakanipha eNkosini ukuthi siyithwale kanye nathi, ngesikhathi sihamba ehlane siya ezweni lesethembiso.

Wherefore, he said that these plates of brass should never perish; neither should they be dimmed any more by time. And he prophesied many things concerning his seed.

And it came to pass that thus far I and my father had kept the commandments wherewith the Lord had commanded us.

And we had obtained the records which the Lord had commanded us, and searched them and found that they were desirable; yea, even of great worth unto us, insomuch that we could preserve the commandments of the Lord unto our children.

Wherefore, it was wisdom in the Lord that we should carry them with us, as we journeyed in the wilderness towards the land of promise.

1 Nefi 6

- 1 Manje mina, Nefi, anginiki umlando wobaba bami kulengxenye yombhalo wami; futhi angizukuwunikeza nanoma yingasiphi esinye isikhathi kulezi zingcwephe engibhala kuzo; ngokuba unikeziwe embhalweni ogcinwe ngubaba; ngakho-ke, angizukuwubhala kulomsebenzi.
- 2 Ngokuba kuyanganelisa ukusho ukuthi thina singabenzalo kaJosefa.
- 3 Futhi akubalulekile ukuthi ngicophelele ukunikeza indaba egcwele ngazo zonke izinto zikababa, ngokuba azinakulotshwa kulezi zingcwephe, ngokuba ngifuna isikhala ukuze ngibhale ngezinto zikaNkulunkulu.
- 4 Ngokuba inhloso yami ephelele kungukuthi ngivumise abantu ukuthi beze kuNkulunkulu ka-Abrahama, noNkulunkulu ka-Isaka, kanye noNkulunkulu kaJakobe, futhi basindiswe.
- 5 Ngalokho-ke, izinto ezithokozisa umhlaba angizibhali, kodwa izinto lezo ezithokozisayo kuNkulunkulu kanye nakulabo okungesibo abezwe.
- 6 Ngalokho-ke, ngiyonikeza umyalelo enzalweni yami, wokuthi ayiyikugcwalisa lezi zingcwephe ngezinto ezingabalulekile kubantwana babantu.

1 Nephi 6

And now I, Nephi, do not give the genealogy of my fathers in this part of my record; neither at any time shall I give it after upon these plates which I am writing; for it is given in the record which has been kept by my father; wherefore, I do not write it in this work.

For it sufficeth me to say that we are descendants of Joseph.

And it mattereth not to me that I am particular to give a full account of all the things of my father, for they cannot be written upon these plates, for I desire the room that I may write of the things of God.

For the fulness of mine intent is that I may persuade men to come unto the God of Abraham, and the God of Isaac, and the God of Jacob, and be saved.

Wherefore, the things which are pleasing unto the world I do not write, but the things which are pleasing unto God and unto those who are not of the world.

Wherefore, I shall give commandment unto my seed, that they shall not occupy these plates with things which are not of worth unto the children of men.

1 Nefi 7

- 1 Manje ngifuna ukuthi nazi, ukuthi emuva kokuthi ubaba, uLehi, eseqedile ukuphrofetha mayelana nenzalo yakhe, kwenzeka ukuthi iNkosi yakhuluma naye futhi, ithi kwakungafanele ukuthi yena, uLehi, athathe umndeni wakhe wodwa ukuya nawo ehlane; kodwa ukuthi amadodana akhe kufanele athathe amadodakazi abe ngomkawo, ukuze akhulise inzalo eNkosini ezweni lesethembiso.
- 2 Futhi kwenzeka ukuthi iNkosi yamyala ukuthi mina, Nefi, kanye nabafowethu, kufanele siphindele futhi ezweni laseJerusalema, futhi sehle no-Ishmayeli kanye nomndeni wakhe sibuyele nabo ehlane.
- 3 Futhi kwenzeka ukuthi mina, Nefi, nempela ngaphinda, kanye nabafowethu, ngaya ehlane ukuze sikhuphukele eJerusalema.
- 4 Futhi kwenzeka ukuthi sakhuphuka saya emzini ka-Ishmayeli, futhi nempela sazuzisa umusa emehlweni ka-Ishmayeli, kangangokuthi saze sakhuluma kuyena amazwi eNkosi.
- 5 Futhi kwenzeka ukuthi nempela iNkosi yayithambisa inhliziyi ka-Ishmayeli, futhi ngokunjalo nabomuzi wakhe, kangangokuthi bathatha uhambo lwabo kanye nathi sehlela ezansi ehlane etendeni likababa.
- 6 Futhi kwenzeka ukuthi ngesikhathi sisahamba ehlane, bheka uLamani noLemuweli, kanye namadodakazi amabili ka-Ishmayeli, kanye namadodana amabili ka-Ishmayeli kanye nemindeni yawo, basivukela; yebo, mina, Nefi, noSamu, kanye noyise, u-Ishmayeli, nomkakhe, kanye namadodakazi akhe amanye amathathu.
- 7 Futhi kwenzeka ukuthi ekusivukeleni kwabo, bona babefuna ukuthi babuyele ezweni laseJerusalema.
- 8 Manje mina, Nefi, ngikhathazekile ngobulukhuni bezinhliziyi zabo, ngakho-ke ngakhuluma nabo, ngithi, yebo, ngisho nakuLamani kanye nakuLemuweli: Bhekani nina ningabafowethu abadala, futhi kungani izinhliziyi zenu zilukhuni kangaka, futhi niyizimpumpu the nasemiqondweni yenu kangaka, ukuthi nize nidinge ukuthi mina, mfowenu omncane, ngize ngikhulume nani, yebo, futhi ngibe yisibonelo kini na?

1 Nephi 7

And now I would that ye might know, that after my father, Lehi, had made an end of prophesying concerning his seed, it came to pass that the Lord spake unto him again, saying that it was not meet for him, Lehi, that he should take his family into the wilderness alone; but that his sons should take daughters to wife, that they might raise up seed unto the Lord in the land of promise.

And it came to pass that the Lord commanded him that I, Nephi, and my brethren, should again return unto the land of Jerusalem, and bring down Ishmael and his family into the wilderness.

And it came to pass that I, Nephi, did again, with my brethren, go forth into the wilderness to go up to Jerusalem.

And it came to pass that we went up unto the house of Ishmael, and we did gain favor in the sight of Ishmael, insomuch that we did speak unto him the words of the Lord.

And it came to pass that the Lord did soften the heart of Ishmael, and also his household, insomuch that they took their journey with us down into the wilderness to the tent of our father.

And it came to pass that as we journeyed in the wilderness, behold Laman and Lemuel, and two of the daughters of Ishmael, and the two sons of Ishmael and their families, did rebel against us; yea, against me, Nephi, and Sam, and their father, Ishmael, and his wife, and his three other daughters.

And it came to pass in the which rebellion, they were desirous to return unto the land of Jerusalem.

And now I, Nephi, being grieved for the hardness of their hearts, therefore I spake unto them, saying, yea, even unto Laman and unto Lemuel: Behold ye are mine elder brethren, and how is it that ye are so hard in your hearts, and so blind in your minds, that ye have need that I, your younger brother, should speak unto you, yea, and set an example for you?

- 9 Kungani ningalilaleli izwi leNkosi na?
- 10 Kungani senikhohliwe ukuthi nayibona ingelosi yeNkosi na?
- 11 Yebo, futhi kungani ukuthi senikhohliwe yizinto ezinkulu kangaka iNkosi esisenzele zona, ekusikhululeni ezandleni zikaLabani, futhi ngokunjalo nokuthola umbhalo na?
- 12 Yebo, kungani senikhohliwe ukuthi iNkosi iyakwazi ukwenzela abantwana babantu zonke izinto ngokwentando yayo, uma nje kungukuthi benza ngokukholwa kuyo na? Ngalokho-ke masethembeke kuyo.
- 13 Futhi uma kungukuthi siyethembeka kuyo, siyolithola izwe lesethembiso; futhi niyokwazi esikhathini esizayo ukuthi izwi leNkosi liyogcwaliseka mayelana nokubhujiswa kweJeruselema; ngokuba zonke izinto iNkosi ezikhulumile mayelana nokubhujiswa kweJeruselema kufanele zigcwaliseke.
- 14 Ngokuba bhekani, uMoya weNkosi uyoyeka masinyane ukuthi uhlale kubo; ngokuba bhekani, babenqabile abaphrofethi, futhi noJeremiya bamphonse etilongweni. Futhi bafune nokuthatha impilo kababa, kangangokuthi babangela ukuthi abaleke ezweni.
- 15 Manje bhekani, ngithi kini uma nizophindela eJeruselema nani ngokunjalo nizobhubha kanye nabo. Manje, uma ninokukhetha, khuphukelani ezweni, futhi niwakhumbule amazwi engiwakhuluma kini, okuthi uma nihamba nani ngokunjalo nizobhubha; ngokuba uMoya weNkosi ungiphoqelegelele ukuthi kufanele ngikhulume ngalendlela.
- 16 Futhi kwenzeka ukuthi ngesikhathi mina, Nefi, sengikhulume lamazwi kubafowethu, bangithukuthelela. Futhi kwenzeka ukuthi bangibamba, ngokuba bheka, babethukuthele kakhulu, futhi bangibopha ngezintambo, ngokuba babefuna ukuthatha impilo yami, nokuthi babefuna ukuthi bangishiye ehlane ngishwabadelwe yizilwane zasandle.

How is it that ye have not hearkened unto the word of the Lord?

How is it that ye have forgotten that ye have seen an angel of the Lord?

Yea, and how is it that ye have forgotten what great things the Lord hath done for us, in delivering us out of the hands of Laban, and also that we should obtain the record?

Yea, and how is it that ye have forgotten that the Lord is able to do all things according to his will, for the children of men, if it so be that they exercise faith in him? Wherefore, let us be faithful to him.

And if it so be that we are faithful to him, we shall obtain the land of promise; and ye shall know at some future period that the word of the Lord shall be fulfilled concerning the destruction of Jerusalem; for all things which the Lord hath spoken concerning the destruction of Jerusalem must be fulfilled.

For behold, the Spirit of the Lord ceaseth soon to strive with them; for behold, they have rejected the prophets, and Jeremiah have they cast into prison. And they have sought to take away the life of my father, insomuch that they have driven him out of the land.

Now behold, I say unto you that if ye will return unto Jerusalem ye shall also perish with them. And now, if ye have choice, go up to the land, and remember the words which I speak unto you, that if ye go ye will also perish; for thus the Spirit of the Lord constraineth me that I should speak.

And it came to pass that when I, Nephi, had spoken these words unto my brethren, they were angry with me. And it came to pass that they did lay their hands upon me, for behold, they were exceedingly wroth, and they did bind me with cords, for they sought to take away my life, that they might leave me in the wilderness to be devoured by wild beasts.

- 17 Kodwa kwenzeka ukuthi ngathandaza eNkosini, ngithi: O Nkosi, ngokokholo lwami olukuwe, ungengikhulule yini ezandleni zabafowethu; yebo, ngisho unginike amandla okuthi ngizigqashule lezi zibopho engiboshwe ngazo.
- 18 Futhi kwenzeka ukuthi ngesikhathi sengiwashilo lamazwi, bheka, izibopho zaxegiswa ezandleni zami kanye nasezinyaweni, futhi ngema phambi kwabafowethu, ngaphinda ngakhuluma nabo futhi.
- 19 Futhi kwenzeka ukuthi bangithukuthelela futhi, futhi bafuna nokungibamba; kodwa bheka, eyodwa yamadodakazi ka-Ishmayeli, yebo, futhi ngokunjalo nonina, kanye neyodwa yamadodana ka-Ishmayeli, babancenga abafowethu, kangangokuthi bazithambisa izinhliziyzo zabo; futhi bayeka ukuzama ukuthatha impilo yami.
- 20 Futhi kwenzeka ukuthi badabuka, ngenxa yobubi babo, kangangokuthi bakhothama phambi kwami, futhi bangincenga ukuthi ngibathethelele ngento ababengenze yona.
- 21 Futhi kwenzeka ukuthi ngabathethelela ngokungabeki-mbandela ngakho konke abebekwenzile, futhi ngabanxusa ukuthi bathandaze eNkosini uNkulunkulu wabo ukuze bathethelelwe. Futhi kwenzeka ukuthi benze njalo. Futhi emuva kokuthi sebeqedile ukuthandaza eNkosini saphinda saqhubeka nohambo lwethu lokuya etendeni likababa.
- 22 Futhi kwenzeka ukuthi sehlela ezansi etendeni likababa. Futhi emuva kokuthi mina nabafowethu kanye nendlu yonke ka-Ishmayeli sesehlele ezansi etendeni likababa, babonga eNkosini uNkulunkulu wabo; futhi banikela nangomnikelo kanye nangemihlatshelo yokushiswa kuyo.

But it came to pass that I prayed unto the Lord, saying: O Lord, according to my faith which is in thee, wilt thou deliver me from the hands of my brethren; yea, even give me strength that I may burst these bands with which I am bound.

And it came to pass that when I had said these words, behold, the bands were loosed from off my hands and feet, and I stood before my brethren, and I spake unto them again.

And it came to pass that they were angry with me again, and sought to lay hands upon me; but behold, one of the daughters of Ishmael, yea, and also her mother, and one of the sons of Ishmael, did plead with my brethren, insomuch that they did soften their hearts; and they did cease striving to take away my life.

And it came to pass that they were sorrowful, because of their wickedness, insomuch that they did bow down before me, and did plead with me that I would forgive them of the thing that they had done against me.

And it came to pass that I did frankly forgive them all that they had done, and I did exhort them that they would pray unto the Lord their God for forgiveness. And it came to pass that they did so. And after they had done praying unto the Lord we did again travel on our journey towards the tent of our father.

And it came to pass that we did come down unto the tent of our father. And after I and my brethren and all the house of Ishmael had come down unto the tent of my father, they did give thanks unto the Lord their God; and they did offer sacrifice and burnt offerings unto him.

1 Nefi 8

- 1 Futhi kwenzeka ukuthi sasesiqoqele ndawonye zonke izimbewu ezinhlobo-nhlobo, okwezinhlamvu ezinhlobo-nhlobo, kanye nokwembewu yezithelo ezinhlobo-nhlobo.
- 2 Futhi kwenzeka ukuthi ngesikhathi ubaba ehlezi ehlane wakhuluma kithi ethi: Bhekani, ngiphuphe iphupho; noma, ngamanye amazwi, ngibone umbono.
- 3 Futhi bhekani, ngenxa yento engiyibonile, ngingesizathu sokuthokoza eNkosini ngenxa kaNefi futhi ngokunjalo noSamu; ngokuba ngingesizathu sokucabanga ukuthi bona, futhi ngokunjalo nabaningi benzalo yabo, bayosindiswa.
- 4 Kepha bhekani, Lamani nawe Lemuweli, ngiyesaba kakhulu ngenxa yenu; ngokuba bhekani, sengathi ngibone ephusheni lami, ihlane elimnyama nelithule.
- 5 Futhi kwenzeka ukuthi ngabona indoda, futhi yayembethe ingubo emhlophe; futhi yeza kimi yema phambi kwami.
- 6 Futhi kwenzeka ukuthi yakhuluma kimi, futhi yangiyala ukuthi ngiyilandele.
- 7 Futhi kwenzeka ukuthi ngisayilandela ngazibona ukuthi ngisendaweni emnyama nethule lapho kungekho lutho oluphilayo.
- 8 Futhi ngemuva kokuthi sengihambe isikhathi eside ebumnyameni, ngaqala ukuthandaza eNkosini ukuthi ibe nomusa kimi, ngobukhulu besihawu sayo esimnene.
- 9 Futhi kwenzeka ukuthi emva kokuba sengithandazile eNkosini ngabona insimu enkulu futhi evulekile.
- 10 Futhi kwenzeka ukuthi ngabona isihlahla, isithelo saso esasithandeka kakhulu ukwenza umuntu ajabule.
- 11 Futhi kwenzeka ukuthi nempela ngaqhubekela phambili ngasidla isithelo lesu; futhi ngabona ukuthi sasimnandi kakhulu, ngaphezu kwazo zonke engake ngazinambitha ngaphambili. Yebo, futhi ngabona ukuthi isithelo lesu sasimhlophe, ukwedlula bonke ubumhlophe engake ngabubona.

1 Nephi 8

And it came to pass that we had gathered together all manner of seeds of every kind, both of grain of every kind, and also of the seeds of fruit of every kind.

And it came to pass that while my father tarried in the wilderness he spake unto us, saying: Behold, I have dreamed a dream; or, in other words, I have seen a vision.

And behold, because of the thing which I have seen, I have reason to rejoice in the Lord because of Nephi and also of Sam; for I have reason to suppose that they, and also many of their seed, will be saved.

But behold, Laman and Lemuel, I fear exceedingly because of you; for behold, methought I saw in my dream, a dark and dreary wilderness.

And it came to pass that I saw a man, and he was dressed in a white robe; and he came and stood before me.

And it came to pass that he spake unto me, and bade me follow him.

And it came to pass that as I followed him I beheld myself that I was in a dark and dreary waste.

And after I had traveled for the space of many hours in darkness, I began to pray unto the Lord that he would have mercy on me, according to the multitude of his tender mercies.

And it came to pass after I had prayed unto the Lord I beheld a large and spacious field.

And it came to pass that I beheld a tree, whose fruit was desirable to make one happy.

And it came to pass that I did go forth and partake of the fruit thereof; and I beheld that it was most sweet, above all that I ever before tasted. Yea, and I beheld that the fruit thereof was white, to exceed all the whiteness that I had ever seen.

- 12 Futhi ngesikhathi ngisidla lesi sithelo sawugcwalisa umphefumulo wami ngentokozo enkulu kakhulu; ngalokho-ke, ngaqala ukufisa ukuthi sengathi umndeni wami ungasidla nawo futhi; ngokuba ngangazi ukuthi sasithandeka ngaphezu kwazo zonke ezinye izithelo.
- 13 Futhi ngesikhathi ngiphonsa amehlo ami ngiqalaza ngapha nangapha, ukuze mhlawumbe ngibone umndeni wami futhi, ngabona umfula wamanzi; futhi ugobhoza, futhi useduzane nesihlahla leso engangidla isithelo kuso.
- 14 Futhi ngabheka ukuze ngithole ukuthi uqhamuka kuphi; futhi ngayibona inhloko yawo buqamamana; futhi khona lapho enhlokweni yawo ngabona umama wenu uSariya, kanye noSamu, kanye noNefi; futhi babemi sengathi abazi ukuthi kufanele baye ngakuphi.
- 15 Futhi kwenzeka ukuthi ngabaqhweba; futhi ngaphinda ngasho kubo ngezwi elikhulu ukuthi beze kimi, futhi bazodla isithelo, leso esasithandeka ngaphezu kwazo zonke ezinye izithelo.
- 16 Futhi kwenzeka ukuthi nempela beza kimi futhi nabo basidla isithelo.
- 17 Futhi kwenzeka ukuthi ngaba nesifiso sokuthi uLamani noLemuweli beze nabo bazodla isithelo leso; ngalokho-ke, ngaphonsa amehlo ami ngasenhlokweni yomfula, ngicabanga ukuthi mhlawumbe ngizobabona nabo.
- 18 Futhi kwenzeka ukuthi ngababona, kodwa bona abavumanga ukuza kimi futhi bazodla isithelo.
- 19 Futhi ngabona induku yensimbi, futhi yayiqhubeka ngokulinganisene nosebe lomfula, futhi iholeleka esihlahleni leso engangimi ngakuso.
- 20 Futhi ngaphinde ngabona indlela eminyene engumcingo, eyayiza ngokulinganisana nenduku yensimbi, ngisho nasesihlahleni leso engangimi ngakuso; futhi phezu kalokho yaholeleka yaze yafika enhlokweni yomthombo, nakuleyo nsimu enkulu nevulekile, okungathi wumhlaba.
- 21 Futhi ngabona izixuku ezingabaleki zabantu, abanengi babo bephikelele phambili, ukuze bathole indlela leyo eholeleka esihlahleni leso engangimi ngakuso.

And as I partook of the fruit thereof it filled my soul with exceedingly great joy; wherefore, I began to be desirous that my family should partake of it also; for I knew that it was desirable above all other fruit.

And as I cast my eyes round about, that perhaps I might discover my family also, I beheld a river of water; and it ran along, and it was near the tree of which I was partaking the fruit.

And I looked to behold from whence it came; and I saw the head thereof a little way off; and at the head thereof I beheld your mother Sariah, and Sam, and Nephi; and they stood as if they knew not whither they should go.

And it came to pass that I beckoned unto them; and I also did say unto them with a loud voice that they should come unto me, and partake of the fruit, which was desirable above all other fruit.

And it came to pass that they did come unto me and partake of the fruit also.

And it came to pass that I was desirous that Laman and Lemuel should come and partake of the fruit also; wherefore, I cast mine eyes towards the head of the river, that perhaps I might see them.

And it came to pass that I saw them, but they would not come unto me and partake of the fruit.

And I beheld a rod of iron, and it extended along the bank of the river, and led to the tree by which I stood.

And I also beheld a strait and narrow path, which came along by the rod of iron, even to the tree by which I stood; and it also led by the head of the fountain, unto a large and spacious field, as if it had been a world.

And I saw numberless concourses of people, many of whom were pressing forward, that they might obtain the path which led unto the tree by which I stood.

22 Futhi kwenzeka ukuthi baqhubekela phambili, futhi baqala bangena endleleni leyo eyayiholeleka esihlahleni.

23 Futhi kwenzeka ukuthi kwabe sekuvuka inkungu yobumnyama; yebo, ngisho enkulu kakhulu inkungu yobumnyama, kangangokuthi labo abase beyiqalile indlela yabadukela indlela yabo, kangangokuthi badwanguza futhi balahleka.

24 Futhi kwenzeka ukuthi ngabona abanye bephikelela phambili, futhi beza phambili baze balibamba ichopho lenduku yensimbi; futhi baphikelela phambili kuyo inkungu yobumnyama, bebambelele kuyo induku yensimbi, kwaze kwaba nempela beza ngaphambili bazodla isithelo sesihlahla leso.

25 Futhi emuva kokuthi sebesidlile isithelo sesihlahla baqalaza ngapha nangapha kungathi banamahloni.

26 Futhi ngaphinde ngaqalaza ngapha nangapha, futhi ngabona, ngaphesheya komfula wamanzi, isakhiwo esikhulu nesivulekile; futhi simi sengathi sisemoyeni, siphakeme ngaphezulu komhlaba.

27 Futhi sasigcwele abantu, abadala kanye nabancane, abesilisa nabesifazane; futhi indlela yabo yokugqoka yayisezingeni eliphezulu; futhi babesesimweni sokubhinqa futhi bekhomba ngeminwe yabo kulabo abase bezile esihlahleni futhi sebesidla isithelo.

28 Futhi emuva kokuthi sebesinambithile isithelo baba namahloni, ngenxa yalabo ababe baklolodela; futhi bawela ezindleleni ezingavunyelwe futhi balahleka.

29 Manje mina, Nepi, angiwakhulumi wonke amazwi kababa.

30 Kodwa, ukufingqa ekubhaleni, bheka, wabona ezinye izixuku ziphikelela phambili; zafika zalibamba ichopho lenduku yensimbi; futhi nempela zaphikelela nendlela yazo yokuya phambili, njalo-njalo zibambe ziqinisile endukwini yensimbi, zaze zafika zawa phansi zasidla isithelo sesihlahla.

31 Futhi waphinde wabona ezinye izixuku ziphumputha indlela yazo eya lapho kuleso sakhiwo esikhulu futhi esivulekile.

And it came to pass that they did come forth, and commence in the path which led to the tree.

And it came to pass that there arose a mist of darkness; yea, even an exceedingly great mist of darkness, insomuch that they who had commenced in the path did lose their way, that they wandered off and were lost.

And it came to pass that I beheld others pressing forward, and they came forth and caught hold of the end of the rod of iron; and they did press forward through the mist of darkness, clinging to the rod of iron, even until they did come forth and partake of the fruit of the tree.

And after they had partaken of the fruit of the tree they did cast their eyes about as if they were ashamed.

And I also cast my eyes round about, and beheld, on the other side of the river of water, a great and spacious building; and it stood as it were in the air, high above the earth.

And it was filled with people, both old and young, both male and female; and their manner of dress was exceedingly fine; and they were in the attitude of mocking and pointing their fingers towards those who had come at and were partaking of the fruit.

And after they had tasted of the fruit they were ashamed, because of those that were scoffing at them; and they fell away into forbidden paths and were lost.

And now I, Nephi, do not speak all the words of my father.

But, to be short in writing, behold, he saw other multitudes pressing forward; and they came and caught hold of the end of the rod of iron; and they did press their way forward, continually holding fast to the rod of iron, until they came forth and fell down and partook of the fruit of the tree.

And he also saw other multitudes feeling their way towards that great and spacious building.

- 32 Futhi kwenzeka ukuthi abaningi baminza ekujuleni komfula wamanzi; futhi abaningi balahleka emehlweni akhe, bedwanguza emigwaqweni engaziwa.
- 33 Futhi sasisikhulu isixuku esangena kuleso sakhiwo esingejwayelekile. Futhi emuva kokuthi sesingene kuleso sakhiwo sangikhomba ngomunwe wokungiklolodela kanye nalabo ababedla isithelo futhi; kodwa thina asibanakanga.
- 34 Lawa ngamazwi kababa: Ngokuba ngobuningi balabo ababanakayo, bawa.
- 35 Futhi uLamani noLemuweli abasidlanga isithelo, kwasho ubaba.
- 36 Futhi kwenzeka ukuthi emuva kokuthi ubaba esewakhulumile wonke amazwi ephupho lakhe noma umbono, ayemangingi, wathi kithi, ngenxa yalezi zinto azibona embonweni, wesaba kakhulu ngoLamani noLemuweli; yebo, wesaba hleze baxoshwe phambi kweNkosi.
- 37 Futhi wabanxusa ngaleso sikhathi ngemizwa yonke yomzali omnene, ukuthi bawezwe amazwi akhe, nokuthi mhlawumbe iNkosi yayiyoba nesihawu kubo, futhi ingaze yabaxosha; yebo, ubaba nempela wabashumayeza.
- 38 Futhi emuva kokuthi esebashumayezile, futhi phezu kwalokho esephrofethile kubo ngezinto eziningi, wabayala ukuthi bagcine imiyalelo yeNkosi; futhi wabe eseyeka ukukhuluma nabo.

And it came to pass that many were drowned in the depths of the fountain; and many were lost from his view, wandering in strange roads.

And great was the multitude that did enter into that strange building. And after they did enter into that building they did point the finger of scorn at me and those that were partaking of the fruit also; but we heeded them not.

These are the words of my father: For as many as heeded them, had fallen away.

And Laman and Lemuel partook not of the fruit, said my father.

And it came to pass after my father had spoken all the words of his dream or vision, which were many, he said unto us, because of these things which he saw in a vision, he exceedingly feared for Laman and Lemuel; yea, he feared lest they should be cast off from the presence of the Lord.

And he did exhort them then with all the feeling of a tender parent, that they would hearken to his words, that perhaps the Lord would be merciful to them, and not cast them off; yea, my father did preach unto them.

And after he had preached unto them, and also prophesied unto them of many things, he bade them to keep the commandments of the Lord; and he did cease speaking unto them.

1 Nefi 9

- 1 Futhi zonke lezi zinto ubaba wazibona, futhi wazizwa, futhi wazikhuluma, ngesikhathi ehlezi etendeni, esigodini sikaLemuweli, futhi ngokunjalo nezinye izinto eziningi kakhulu, ezingenakubhalwa kulezi zingcwephe.
- 2 Manje, njengoba sengikhulumile maqondana nalezi zingcwephe, bheka akusizona izingcwephe engibhale kuzona indaba egcwele ngomlando wabantu bami; ngokuba izingcwephe engibhale kuzo ngendaba egcwele yabantu bami zona ngizinike igama likaNefi; ngalokho-ke, zibizwa ngokuthi yizingcwephe zikaNefi, ngegama lami; futhi lezi zingcwephe nazo zibizwa ngokuthi yizingcwephe zikaNefi.
- 3 Nokho, ngithole umyalelo eNkosini wokuthi kufanele ngizenze lezi zingcwephe, ngizenzele isizathu esibalulekile ukuze kube khona indaba eqoshiwe ngobufundisi babantu bami.
- 4 Kwezinye izingcwephe kufanele kuqoshwe indaba ngokubusa kwamakhosi, kanye nezimpi nemibango yabantu bami; ngalokho-ke lezi zingcwephe ziphathelene nenxenye enkulu yobufundisi; futhi ezinye izingcwephe ziphathelene nenxenye enkulu yokubusa kwamakhosi kanye nezimpi kanye nemibango yabantu bami.
- 5 Ngalokho-ke, iNkosi ingiyalile ukuthi ngenze lezi zingcwephe ngokwe nhloso yayo enokuhlakanipha, inhloso leyo engingayazi.
- 6 Kepha iNkosi yazi izinto zonke kusukela ekuqaleni; ngalokho-ke, ilungisa indlela ukuze kufezeke yonke imisebenzi yayo phakathi kwabantwana babantu; ngokuba bheka, inawo wonke amandla ngokwanele ukuba igcwalise wonke amazwi ayo. Futhi kunjalo-nje. Amen.

1 Nephi 9

And all these things did my father see, and hear, and speak, as he dwelt in a tent, in the valley of Lemuel, and also a great many more things, which cannot be written upon these plates.

And now, as I have spoken concerning these plates, behold they are not the plates upon which I make a full account of the history of my people; for the plates upon which I make a full account of my people I have given the name of Nephi; wherefore, they are called the plates of Nephi, after mine own name; and these plates also are called the plates of Nephi.

Nevertheless, I have received a commandment of the Lord that I should make these plates, for the special purpose that there should be an account engraven of the ministry of my people.

Upon the other plates should be engraven an account of the reign of the kings, and the wars and contentions of my people; wherefore these plates are for the more part of the ministry; and the other plates are for the more part of the reign of the kings and the wars and contentions of my people.

Wherefore, the Lord hath commanded me to make these plates for a wise purpose in him, which purpose I know not.

But the Lord knoweth all things from the beginning; wherefore, he prepareth a way to accomplish all his works among the children of men; for behold, he hath all power unto the fulfilling of all his words. And thus it is. Amen.

1 Nefi 10

- 1 Manje mina, Nefi, ngiyaqhubeka nokunikeza indaba kulezi zingcwephe ngezenzo zami, kanye nokubusa nobufundisi bami; ngalokho-ke, ukuqhubeka nendaba yami, kufanele ngikhulume okuthize ngezinto zikababa, futhi ngokunjalo nangezabafowethu.
- 2 Ngokuba bheka, kwenzeka ukuthi emuva kokuba ubaba eseqedile ukukhuluma amazwi ephupho lakhe, futhi ngokunjalo nokubanxusa ukuba bakhuthale kakhulu, wakhuluma nabo ngokuphathelene namaJuda—
- 3 Ukuthi emuva kokuthi esebhujisiwe, ngisho nalelodolobha elikhulu iJerusalema, futhi amaningi esethathiwe athunjelwa eBabiloni, ngokwesikhathi seNkosi esifanele, ayophinda abuye futhi, yebo, ngisho abuyiselwe emuva aphume ekuthunjweni; futhi emuva kokuthi esebuyiselwe emuva aphuma ekuthunjweni ayophinda futhi athole izwe eliyifa lawo.
- 4 Yebo, ngisho eminyakeni engamakhulu ayisithupha kusukela ngesikhathi ubaba ashiya eJerusalema, iNkosi uNkulunkulu iyovusa umphrofethi phakathi kwamaJuda—ngisho uMesiya, noma, ngamanye amazwi, umSindisi womhlaba.
- 5 Futhi waphinda wakhuluma ngokuphathelene nabaphrofethi, nokuthi babebaningi kangakanani ababefakaze ngazo lezi zinto, ngokuphathelene nalo Mesiya, ayekhuluma ngaye noma lo Mkhululi womhlaba.
- 6 Ngalokho-ke, bonke abantu babesesimweni sokulahleka kanye nesokuwa, futhi bayokuba kuso njalo ngaphandle kokuthi bathembele kuye lo Mkhululi.
- 7 Futhi waphinde wakhuluma ngokuphathelene nomphrofethi owayezofika ngaphambi kukaMesiya, ukuzolungisa indlela yeNkosi—
- 8 Yebo, ngisho nokuthi uyohamba futhi amemeze ehlane athi: Lungisani indlela yeNkosi, futhi nenze imikhondo yayo iqonde; ngokuba kukhona omile phakathi kwenu eningamazi; futhi yena unamandla kunami, umchilo wesicathulo sakhe engingafanele ukuwuthukulula. Futhi kuningi okwakhulunywa wubaba ngokuphathelene nalento.

1 Nephi 10

And now I, Nephi, proceed to give an account upon these plates of my proceedings, and my reign and ministry; wherefore, to proceed with mine account, I must speak somewhat of the things of my father, and also of my brethren.

For behold, it came to pass after my father had made an end of speaking the words of his dream, and also of exhorting them to all diligence, he spake unto them concerning the Jews—

That after they should be destroyed, even that great city Jerusalem, and many be carried away captive into Babylon, according to the own due time of the Lord, they should return again, yea, even be brought back out of captivity; and after they should be brought back out of captivity they should possess again the land of their inheritance.

Yea, even six hundred years from the time that my father left Jerusalem, a prophet would the Lord God raise up among the Jews—even a Messiah, or, in other words, a Savior of the world.

And he also spake concerning the prophets, how great a number had testified of these things, concerning this Messiah, of whom he had spoken, or this Redeemer of the world.

Wherefore, all mankind were in a lost and in a fallen state, and ever would be save they should rely on this Redeemer.

And he spake also concerning a prophet who should come before the Messiah, to prepare the way of the Lord—

Yea, even he should go forth and cry in the wilderness: Prepare ye the way of the Lord, and make his paths straight; for there standeth one among you whom ye know not; and he is mightier than I, whose shoe's latchet I am not worthy to unloose. And much spake my father concerning this thing.

- 9 Futhi ubaba wathi yena uyobhabhadisa eBathabara, ngaphesheya kweJordan; futhi waphinde wathi uyobhabhadisa ngamanzi; ngisho nokuthi uyobhabhadisa uMesiya ngamanzi.
- 10 Futhi emuva kokuthi esebhabhadise uMesiya ngamanzi, uyobona futhi afakaze ukuthi ubhabhadise iMvana kaNkulunkulu, ezosusa izono zomhlaba.
- 11 Futhi kwenzeka emuva kokuthi ubaba esewashilo lamazwi wakhuluma kubafowethu ngokuphathelene nevangeli eliyoshunyayelwa phakathi kwamaJuda, futhi ngokunjalo ngokuphathelene nokuncishelwa wukukholwa kwamaJuda. Emuva kokuthi esembulele uMesiya, lowo oyokuza, futhi emuva kokuthi esebulewe uyovuka kwabafuleyo, futhi uyoziBonakalisa, ngoMoya oyiNgcwele, kwabeZizwe.
- 12 Yebo, ngisho ubaba wakhuluma kakhulu mayelana nabeZizwe, futhi ngokunjalo nangendlu ka-Israyeli, ukuthi kufanele iqhathaniswe nesihlahla somnqumo, amagatsha aso okufanele anqunywe bese ehlahkwa ebusweni bonke bomhlaba.
- 13 Ngalokho-ke, wathi kufanele ukuthi thina siholwe nganhliziyonye ukuya ezweni lesethembiso, ukugcwalisa izwi leNkosi, lokuthi kufanele sihlakazeke ebusweni bonke bomhlaba.
- 14 Futhi emuva kokuthi indlu ka-Israyeli isihlakaziwe iyophinda ibuthelwe ndawonye futhi; noma-ke, ukuphetha, emuva kokuthi abeZizwe sebelitholile iVangeli elipheleleyo, amagatsha emvelo esihlahla somnqumo, noma insalela yendlu ka-Israyeli, iyoxhumelelwa, noma yazi ngoMesiya weqiniso, iNkosi yabo kanye noMkhululi wabo.
- 15 Futhi nempela ubaba waphrofetha futhi wakhuluma kubafowethu ngalendlela yokukhuluma, futhi ngokunjalo nangezinye eziningi izinto engingazibhali kulencwadi; ngokuba ngizibhalile eziningi zazo njengokuba kwakufanele kimi kwenye incwadi yami.
- 16 Futhi zonke lezi zinto, esengikhulume ngazo, zenzeka ngesikhathi ubaba ehlezi etendeni, esigodini sikaLemuweli.

And my father said he should baptize in Bethabara, beyond Jordan; and he also said he should baptize with water; even that he should baptize the Messiah with water.

And after he had baptized the Messiah with water, he should behold and bear record that he had baptized the Lamb of God, who should take away the sins of the world.

And it came to pass after my father had spoken these words he spake unto my brethren concerning the gospel which should be preached among the Jews, and also concerning the dwindling of the Jews in unbelief. And after they had slain the Messiah, who should come, and after he had been slain he should rise from the dead, and should make himself manifest, by the Holy Ghost, unto the Gentiles.

Yea, even my father spake much concerning the Gentiles, and also concerning the house of Israel, that they should be compared like unto an olive tree, whose branches should be broken off and should be scattered upon all the face of the earth.

Wherefore, he said it must needs be that we should be led with one accord into the land of promise, unto the fulfilling of the word of the Lord, that we should be scattered upon all the face of the earth.

And after the house of Israel should be scattered they should be gathered together again; or, in fine, after the Gentiles had received the fulness of the Gospel, the natural branches of the olive tree, or the remnants of the house of Israel, should be grafted in, or come to the knowledge of the true Messiah, their Lord and their Redeemer.

And after this manner of language did my father prophesy and speak unto my brethren, and also many more things which I do not write in this book; for I have written as many of them as were expedient for me in mine other book.

And all these things, of which I have spoken, were done as my father dwelt in a tent, in the valley of Lemuel.

- 17 Futhi kwenzeka ukuthi emuva kokuthi mina, Nefi, sengiwazwile wonke amazwi kababa, mayelana nezinto azibona embonweni, futhi ngokunjalo nezinto azikhuluma ngamandla kaMoya oyiNgcwele, amandla lawo awathola ngokholo kuyo iNdodana kaNkulunkulu—futhi iNdodana kaNkulunkulu kwakunguMesiya lowo owayezofika—mina, Nefi, nganginesifiso nami sokuthi ngibone, futhi ngizwe, futhi ngazi ngalezi zinto, ngamandla kaMoya oyiNgcwele, oyisipho sikaNkulunkulu kubo bonke labo abamfuna ngokukhuthala, ezikhathini zasemandulo njengasesikhathini lapho ayoziveza ngaso kubantwana babantu.
- 18 Ngokuba uyefana izolo, namuhla, naphakade; futhi indlela ilungiselelwe bonke abantu selokhu kwasekelwa umhlaba, uma nje kungukuthi bayaphenduka futhi beza kuye.
- 19 Ngokuba lowo ofuna ngokukhuthala uyozuza; futhi izimfihlakalo zikaNkulunkulu ziyokwambulwa kubo, ngamandla kaMoya oyiNgcwele, ezikhathini zamanje njengasezikhathini zasemandulo; ezikhathini zasemandulo njengasezikhathini ezizayo; ngalokho-ke, indlela yeNkosi yinye naphakade.
- 20 Ngakho-ke khumbula, O muntu, ngokuba ngazo zonke izenzo zakho uyo lethwa ekwahlulelweni.
- 21 Ngalokho-ke, uma ufune ukwenza ububi ezinsukwini zokuvivinywa kwakho, emuva kwalokho utholakala ungalanzekile phambi kwesihlalo sokwahlulela sikaNkulunkulu; futhi akukho nto engcolile engahlala noNkulunkulu; ngalokho-ke, kufanele ulahlwe ingunaphakade.
- 22 Futhi uMoya oyiNgcwele unginika igunya lokuthi ngizikhulume lezi zinto futhi ngingazigodli.

And it came to pass after I, Nephi, having heard all the words of my father, concerning the things which he saw in a vision, and also the things which he spake by the power of the Holy Ghost, which power he received by faith on the Son of God—and the Son of God was the Messiah who should come—I, Nephi, was desirous also that I might see, and hear, and know of these things, by the power of the Holy Ghost, which is the gift of God unto all those who diligently seek him, as well in times of old as in the time that he should manifest himself unto the children of men.

For he is the same yesterday, today, and forever; and the way is prepared for all men from the foundation of the world, if it so be that they repent and come unto him.

For he that diligently seeketh shall find; and the mysteries of God shall be unfolded unto them, by the power of the Holy Ghost, as well in these times as in times of old, and as well in times of old as in times to come; wherefore, the course of the Lord is one eternal round.

Therefore remember, O man, for all thy doings thou shalt be brought into judgment.

Wherefore, if ye have sought to do wickedly in the days of your probation, then ye are found unclean before the judgment-seat of God; and no unclean thing can dwell with God; wherefore, ye must be cast off forever.

And the Holy Ghost giveth authority that I should speak these things, and deny them not.

1 Nefi 11

- 1 Ngokuba kwenzeka ukuthi emuva kokuthi sengibe nesifiso sokwazi ngezinto ubaba ayezibonile, futhi ngikholwa ukuthi iNkosi yayikwazi ukuthi izembule kimi, ngesikhathi ngisahlezi ngizindla enhliziyweni yami ngahlwithwa nguMoya weNkosi, yebo, wangiyisa kwephakeme kakhulu intaba, engangingakaze ngiyibone ngaphambilini, futhi kwengangingakaze naphambilini ngilubeke olwami unyawo kuyo.
- 2 Futhi uMoya wathi kimi: Bheka, ngabe ufisani na?
- 3 Futhi ngathi: Ngifisa ukubona izinto ubaba azibona.
- 4 Futhi uMoya wathi kimi: Uyakholwa yini ukuthi uyihlo wabona isihlahla leso akhulume ngaso na?
- 5 Futhi ngathi: Yebo, uyazi ukuthi ngiyawakholelwa wonke amazwi kababa.
- 6 Futhi ngesikhathi sengiwakhulumile lamazwi, uMoya wakhala ngezwi elikhulu, uthi: Hosana eNkosini, uNkulunkulu ophakeme kakhulu; ngokuba unguNkulunkulu ophezu komhlaba wonke, yebo, ngisho nangaphezu kwakho konke. Futhi ubusisiwe wena, Nefi, ngokuba ukholwa kuyo iNdodana kaNkulunkulu ophakeme kakhulu; ngalokho-ke, uzozibona lezo zinto ozifisayo.
- 7 Futhi bheka lento izonikezwa kuwe njengesibonakaliso, ukuthi emuva kokuthi ususibonile isihlahla leso esasinesithelo uyihlo asinambitha, uzobona futhi indoda yehla iphuma ezulwini, futhi uyoyibona; futhi emuva kokuthi usuyibonile uyonikeza ubufakazi bokuthi iyiNdodana kaNkulunkulu.
- 8 Futhi kwenzeka ukuthi uMoya wathi kimi: Buka! Futhi ngabuka ngabona isihlahla; futhi sasifana nesihlahla leso ubaba ayesibonile; futhi ubuhle baso babedlulele kakhulu, yebo, babedlula bonke ubuhle; futhi nobumhlophe baso nempela babedlula ubumhlophe beqhwa elikhithikileyo.
- 9 Futhi kwenzeka ukuthi emuva kokuba sengisibonile isihlahla, ngathi kuye uMoya: Ngiyabona ungikhombisile isihlahla esiligugu ngaphezu kwazo zonke.
- 10 Futhi wathi kimi: Ngabe ufisani na?

1 Nephi 11

For it came to pass after I had desired to know the things that my father had seen, and believing that the Lord was able to make them known unto me, as I sat pondering in mine heart I was caught away in the Spirit of the Lord, yea, into an exceedingly high mountain, which I never had before seen, and upon which I never had before set my foot.

And the Spirit said unto me: Behold, what desirest thou?

And I said: I desire to behold the things which my father saw.

And the Spirit said unto me: Believest thou that thy father saw the tree of which he hath spoken?

And I said: Yea, thou knowest that I believe all the words of my father.

And when I had spoken these words, the Spirit cried with a loud voice, saying: Hosanna to the Lord, the most high God; for he is God over all the earth, yea, even above all. And blessed art thou, Nephi, because thou believest in the Son of the most high God; wherefore, thou shalt behold the things which thou hast desired.

And behold this thing shall be given unto thee for a sign, that after thou hast beheld the tree which bore the fruit which thy father tasted, thou shalt also behold a man descending out of heaven, and him shall ye witness; and after ye have witnessed him ye shall bear record that it is the Son of God.

And it came to pass that the Spirit said unto me: Look! And I looked and beheld a tree; and it was like unto the tree which my father had seen; and the beauty thereof was far beyond, yea, exceeding of all beauty; and the whiteness thereof did exceed the whiteness of the driven snow.

And it came to pass after I had seen the tree, I said unto the Spirit: I behold thou hast shown unto me the tree which is precious above all.

And he said unto me: What desirest thou?

- 11 Futhi ngathi kuye: Ukwazi incazelo ngaso—
ngokuba ngakhuluma naye njengomuntu
ekhuluma; ngokuba ngabona ukuthi wayesesimweni
somuntu; kodwa nokho, ngangazi ukuthi
kwakunguMoya weNkosi; futhi wakhuluma kimi
njengomuntu ekhuluma nomunye.
- 12 Futhi kwenzeka ukuthi wathi kimi: Buka! Futhi
ngabuka sengathi ngibuka kuye, futhi
angimbonanga; ngokuba wabe eshambile phambi
kwami.
- 13 Futhi kwenzeka ukuthi ngabuka futhi ngabona
idolobha elikhulu laseJerusalema, futhi kanye
namanye amadolobha. Futhi ngabona idolobha
laseNazaretha; futhi edolobheni laseNazaretha
ngabona intombi, futhi yayibukeka kahle kakhulu
futhi imhlophe.
- 14 Futhi kwenzeka ukuthi ngabona amazulu
evuleka; futhi ingelosi yehla yema phambi kwami;
futhi yathi kimi: Nefi, ubonani na?
- 15 Futhi ngathi kuyo: Intombi, enhle kakhulu futhi
ebukeka ngaphezu kwazo zonke ezinye izintombi.
- 16 Futhi yathi kimi: Uyakwazi yini ukuzehlisa
kukaNkulunkulu na?
- 17 Futhi ngathi kuyo: Ngiyazi ukuthi uyabathanda
abantwana bakhe; nokho, angiyazi incazelo yazo
zonke izinto.
- 18 Futhi yathi kimi: Bheka, intombi leyo oyibonayo
ingunina weNdodana kaNkulunkulu, ngokwesimo
sasenyameni.
- 19 Futhi kwenzeka ukuthi ngabona ukuthi
yahlwithwa nguMoya, futhi emuva kokuba
isihlwithwe nguMoya okwesikhashana ingelosi
yakhuluma kimi, ithi: Buka!
- 20 Futhi ngabuka ngayibona intombi futhi, igone
umntwana ezingalweni zayo.
- 21 Futhi ingelosi yathi kimi: Bheka iMvana
kaNkulunkulu, yebo, ngisho iNdodana kaBaba
ongunaPhakade! Uyayazi yini incazelo yesihlahla
leso uyihlo asibona na?
- 22 Futhi ngayiphendula ngithi: Yebo, wuthando
lukaNkulunkulu, oluzisabalalisa ndawo zonke
ezinhliziyweni zabantwana babantu; ngalokho-ke,
luthandeka kakhulu ngaphezu kwezinto zonke.

And I said unto him: To know the interpretation
thereof—for I spake unto him as a man speaketh; for
I beheld that he was in the form of a man; yet never-
theless, I knew that it was the Spirit of the Lord; and
he spake unto me as a man speaketh with another.

And it came to pass that he said unto me: Look!
And I looked as if to look upon him, and I saw him
not; for he had gone from before my presence.

And it came to pass that I looked and beheld the
great city of Jerusalem, and also other cities. And I
beheld the city of Nazareth; and in the city of
Nazareth I beheld a virgin, and she was exceedingly
fair and white.

And it came to pass that I saw the heavens open;
and an angel came down and stood before me; and
he said unto me: Nephi, what beholdest thou?

And I said unto him: A virgin, most beautiful and
fair above all other virgins.

And he said unto me: Knowest thou the conde-
scension of God?

And I said unto him: I know that he loveth his
children; nevertheless, I do not know the meaning of
all things.

And he said unto me: Behold, the virgin whom
thou seest is the mother of the Son of God, after the
manner of the flesh.

And it came to pass that I beheld that she was car-
ried away in the Spirit; and after she had been car-
ried away in the Spirit for the space of a time the an-
gel spake unto me, saying: Look!

And I looked and beheld the virgin again, bearing
a child in her arms.

And the angel said unto me: Behold the Lamb of
God, yea, even the Son of the Eternal Father!
Knowest thou the meaning of the tree which thy fa-
ther saw?

And I answered him, saying: Yea, it is the love of
God, which sheddeth itself abroad in the hearts of
the children of men; wherefore, it is the most desir-
able above all things.

23 Futhi yakhuluma kimi, ithi: Yebo, futhi luyintokozo enkulu emphefumulweni.

24 Futhi emuva kokuthi isisho lamazwi, yathi kimi: Buka! Futhi ngabuka, futhi ngabona iNdodana kaNkulunkulu ihamba phakathi kwabantwana babantu; futhi ngabona abaningi bewa phansi ezinyaweni zayo futhi beyikhonza.

25 Futhi kwenzeka ukuthi ngabona ukuthi induku yensimbi, leyo ubaba ayeyibonile, kwakuyizwi likaNkulunkulu, elaliholela emthonjeni wamanzi okuphila, noma emthini wokuphila; lawo manzi angumfanekiso wothando lukaNkulunkulu; futhi ngaphinda ngabona ukuthi umuthi wokuphila wawungumfanekiso wothando lukaNkulunkulu.

26 Futhi ingelosi yaphinda yathi kimi: Buka futhi ubone ukuzehlisa kukaNkulunkulu!

27 Futhi ngabuka futhi ngabona uMkhululi womhlaba, lowo ubaba ayekhulume ngaye; futhi ngaphinda ngabona umphrofethi owayezolungisa indlela phambi kwakhe. Futhi iMvana kaNkulunkulu yaya phambili futhi yabhabhadiswa nguye; futhi emuva kokuthi isibhabhadisiwe, ngabona amazulu evuleka, futhi uMoya oyiNgcwele wehla uvela ezulwini futhi wahlala phezu kwayo unjengesimo sejuba.

28 Futhi ngabona ukuthi yahamba isebenzela abantu, ngamandla nangenkazimulo enkulu; futhi izixuku zabuthana ndawonye ukuyizwa; futhi ngabona ukuthi bayixosha phakathi kwabo.

29 Futhi ngaphinda ngabona abanye abayishumi nambili beyilandela. Futhi kwenzeka ukuthi bahlwithwa nguMoya phambi kobuso bami, futhi angabe ngisababona.

30 Futhi kwenzeka ukuthi ingelosi yakhuluma kimi futhi, ithi: Buka! Futhi ngabuka, futhi ngabona amazulu evuleka futhi, futhi ngabona izingelosi zehlela kubantwana babantu; futhi nempela zabasebenzela.

And he spake unto me, saying: Yea, and the most joyous to the soul.

And after he had said these words, he said unto me: Look! And I looked, and I beheld the Son of God going forth among the children of men; and I saw many fall down at his feet and worship him.

And it came to pass that I beheld that the rod of iron, which my father had seen, was the word of God, which led to the fountain of living waters, or to the tree of life; which waters are a representation of the love of God; and I also beheld that the tree of life was a representation of the love of God.

And the angel said unto me again: Look and behold the condescension of God!

And I looked and beheld the Redeemer of the world, of whom my father had spoken; and I also beheld the prophet who should prepare the way before him. And the Lamb of God went forth and was baptized of him; and after he was baptized, I beheld the heavens open, and the Holy Ghost come down out of heaven and abide upon him in the form of a dove.

And I beheld that he went forth ministering unto the people, in power and great glory; and the multitudes were gathered together to hear him; and I beheld that they cast him out from among them.

And I also beheld twelve others following him. And it came to pass that they were carried away in the Spirit from before my face, and I saw them not.

And it came to pass that the angel spake unto me again, saying: Look! And I looked, and I beheld the heavens open again, and I saw angels descending upon the children of men; and they did minister unto them.

31 Futhi yaphinda yakhuluma kimi, ithi; Buka! Futhi ngabuka, futhi ngabona iMvana kaNkulunkulu ihamba phakathi kwabantwana babantu. Futhi ngabona izixuku zabantu ababegula, kanye nababenazo zonke izinhlobonhlobo zezifo, kanye nababendeveli kanye nemimoya engcolile; futhi ingelosi yakhuluma futhi yangibonisa zonke lezi zinto. Futhi baphiliswa ngamandla eMvana kaNkulunkulu; futhi odeveli kanye nemimoya engcolile kwakhishwa.

32 Futhi kwenzeka ukuthi ingelosi yakhuluma kimi futhi, ithi: Buka! Futhi ngabuka futhi ngabona iMvana kaNkulunkulu, ukuthi yathathwa ngabantu; yebo, iNdodana kaNkulunkulu ongunaphakade yehlulelwa ngumhlaba; futhi ngakubona lokho ngakufakazela.

33 Futhi mina, Nefi, ngabona ukuthi yaphakanyiselwa esiphambanweni futhi yabulawa ngenxa yezono zomhlaba.

34 Futhi emuva kokuthi isibulewe ngabona izixuku zomhlaba, ukuthi zazibuthene ndawonye ukulwa nabaphostoli beMvana; ngokuba babebizwe kanjalo abayishumi nambili yingelosi yeNkosi.

35 Futhi isixuku somhlaba sasibuthene ndawonye; futhi ngabona ukuthi sasikuso isakhiwo esikhulu nesivulekile, njengaleso sakhiwo ubaba asibonayo. Futhi ingelosi yeNkosi yakhuluma kimi futhi, ithi: Bheka izwe kanye nokuhlakanipha kwalo; yebo, bheka indlu ka-Israyeli ibuthene ndawonye ukulwa nabaphostoli abayishumi nambili beMvana.

36 Futhi kwenzeka ukuthi ngakubona lokho futhi ngakufakazela, ukuthi isakhiwo esikhulu nesivulekile kwakunguku zikhukhumeza kwezwe; futhi sawa, futhi ukuwa kwaso kwakukukhulu kakhulu. Ingelosi yeNkosi yakhuluma kimi futhi, ithi: Kuyoba njalo-ke nokubhujiswa kwazo zonke izizwe, imindeni, izilimi, kanye nabantu, abayokulwa nabaphostoli abayishumi nambili beMvana.

And he spake unto me again, saying: Look! And I looked, and I beheld the Lamb of God going forth among the children of men. And I beheld multitudes of people who were sick, and who were afflicted with all manner of diseases, and with devils and unclean spirits; and the angel spake and showed all these things unto me. And they were healed by the power of the Lamb of God; and the devils and the unclean spirits were cast out.

And it came to pass that the angel spake unto me again, saying: Look! And I looked and beheld the Lamb of God, that he was taken by the people; yea, the Son of the everlasting God was judged of the world; and I saw and bear record.

And I, Nephi, saw that he was lifted up upon the cross and slain for the sins of the world.

And after he was slain I saw the multitudes of the earth, that they were gathered together to fight against the apostles of the Lamb; for thus were the twelve called by the angel of the Lord.

And the multitude of the earth was gathered together; and I beheld that they were in a large and spacious building, like unto the building which my father saw. And the angel of the Lord spake unto me again, saying: Behold the world and the wisdom thereof; yea, behold the house of Israel hath gathered together to fight against the twelve apostles of the Lamb.

And it came to pass that I saw and bear record, that the great and spacious building was the pride of the world; and it fell, and the fall thereof was exceedingly great. And the angel of the Lord spake unto me again, saying: Thus shall be the destruction of all nations, kindreds, tongues, and people, that shall fight against the twelve apostles of the Lamb.

1 Nephi 12

- 1 Futhi kwenzeka ukuthi ingelosi yathi kimi: Buka, futhi ubone inzalo yakho, futhi ngokunjalo nenzalo yabafowenu. Ngabuka futhi ngalibona izwe lesethembiso; futhi ngabona izixuku zabantu, yebo, ngisho kwakungathi inani liningi ngangesihlabathi solwandle.
- 2 Futhi kwenzeka ukuthi ngabona izixuku zibuthene ndawonye ukuze zilwe, esinye sibhekene nesinye; futhi ngabona izimpi, kanye namahemuhemu ezimpi, kanye nokubulalana okukhulu ngenkemba phakathi kwabantu bami.
- 3 Futhi kwenzeka ukuthi ngabona eziningi izizukulwane zidlula, ngendlela yezimpi, kanye nemibango kulelizwe; futhi ngabona amadolobha amaningi, yebo, kangangokuthi angikwazanga ukuwabala.
- 4 Futhi kwenzeka ukuthi ngabona inkungu yobumnyama ebusweni bezwe lesethembiso; futhi ngabona imibani, ngezwa ukuduma, kanye nokuzamazama komhlaba, kanye nazo zonke izinhlobonhlobo zomsindo wokuxokozela; futhi ngabona phansi kanye namadwala, ukuthi kwadabuka; ngabona izintaba zidilika ziba yizingcezu; ngabona amathafa, ukuthi ayeklayekile; futhi ngabona amaningi amadolobha ukuthi ayeminzile; futhi ngabona amaningi ukuthi ashiswa ngomlilo; futhi ngabona amaningi ukuthi nempela adilikela phansi, ngenxa yokuzamazama kwaphansi.
- 5 Futhi kwenzeka ukuthi emuva kokuthi sengizibonile lezi zinto, ngabona inkungu yobumnyama, ukuthi yadlula ebusweni besifunda; futhi bheka, ngabona izixuku ezazingawanga ngenxa yobukhulu kanye nokwesabeka kwezahlulelo zeNkosi.
- 6 Futhi ngabona amazulu evuleka, futhi iMvana kaNkulunkulu yehla ezulwini; futhi yehla yazibonakalisa kuzo.
- 7 Futhi ngaphinda ngabona futhi ngakufakazela ukuthi uMoya oyiNgcwele wehlela phezu kwabanye abayishumi nambili; futhi bagcotshwa nguNkulunkulu, futhi bakhethwa.
- 8 Futhi ingelosi yakhuluma kimi, ithi: Bheka abafundi abayishumi nambili beMvana, abakhethiweyo ukuthi basebenzele inzalo yakho.

1 Nephi 12

And it came to pass that the angel said unto me: Look, and behold thy seed, and also the seed of thy brethren. And I looked and beheld the land of promise; and I beheld multitudes of people, yea, even as it were in number as many as the sand of the sea.

And it came to pass that I beheld multitudes gathered together to battle, one against the other; and I beheld wars, and rumors of wars, and great slaughters with the sword among my people.

And it came to pass that I beheld many generations pass away, after the manner of wars and contentions in the land; and I beheld many cities, yea, even that I did not number them.

And it came to pass that I saw a mist of darkness on the face of the land of promise; and I saw lightnings, and I heard thunderings, and earthquakes, and all manner of tumultuous noises; and I saw the earth and the rocks, that they rent; and I saw mountains tumbling into pieces; and I saw the plains of the earth, that they were broken up; and I saw many cities that they were sunk; and I saw many that they were burned with fire; and I saw many that did tumble to the earth, because of the quaking thereof.

And it came to pass after I saw these things, I saw the vapor of darkness, that it passed from off the face of the earth; and behold, I saw multitudes who had not fallen because of the great and terrible judgments of the Lord.

And I saw the heavens open, and the Lamb of God descending out of heaven; and he came down and showed himself unto them.

And I also saw and bear record that the Holy Ghost fell upon twelve others; and they were ordained of God, and chosen.

And the angel spake unto me, saying: Behold the twelve disciples of the Lamb, who are chosen to minister unto thy seed.

- 9 Futhi yathi kimi: Uyabakhumbula yini abaphostoli abayishumi nambili beMvana na? Bheka yibo labo abayokwahlulela izizwana eziyishumi nambili zakwa-Israyeli; ngalokho-ke, abafundisi abayishumi nambili benzalo yakho bayokwahlulelwa yibo; ngokuba nina ningabendlu ka-Israyeli.
- 10 Futhi laba abafundisi abayishumi nambili obabonayo bayokwahlulela inzalo yakho. Futhi, bheka, balungile ingunaphakade; ngokuba ngenxa yokholo lwabo abanalo kuyo iMvana kaNkulunkulu izingubo zabo zenziwa zabamhlophe egazini layo.
- 11 Futhi ingelosi yathi kimi: Buka! Futhi ngabuka, ngabona izizukulwane ezintathu zidlula zisekulungeni; izingubo zazo zazimhlophe ngisho njenge-zeMvana kaNkulunkulu. Futhi ingelosi yathi kimi: Lezi zenziwe zaba mhlophe egazini leMvana, ngenxa yokholo lwazo kuyo.
- 12 Futhi mina, Nefi, ngaphinda ngabona abaningi besizukulwane sesine abadlula nabo besekulungeni.
- 13 Futhi kwenzeka ukuthi ngabona izixuku zomhlaba zibuthene ndawonye.
- 14 Futhi ingelosi yathi kimi: Bheka inzalo yakho, ngokunjalo nenzalo yabafowenu.
- 15 Futhi kwenzeka ukuthi ngabuka futhi ngabona abantu benzalo yami bebuthene ndawonye ngezixuku bebhekene nabenzalo yabafowethu; futhi babebuthene ndawonye ukuze balwe.
- 16 Futhi ingelosi yakhuluma kimi, ithi: Bheka umthombo wamanzi angcolile lowo uyihlo awubona; yebo, ngisho nomfula lowo akhuluma ngawo; futhi ukujula kwawo kuwukujula kwesihogo.
- 17 Futhi inkungu yobumnyama yizilingo zikadeveli, eziphuphuthekisa amehlo, futhi zenze lukhuni izinhliziyi zabantwana babantu, futhi zibaholele kude-le emigwaqweni ebanzi, ukuze bashabalale futhi balahleke.

And he said unto me: Thou rememberest the twelve apostles of the Lamb? Behold they are they who shall judge the twelve tribes of Israel; wherefore, the twelve ministers of thy seed shall be judged of them; for ye are of the house of Israel.

And these twelve ministers whom thou beholdest shall judge thy seed. And, behold, they are righteous forever; for because of their faith in the Lamb of God their garments are made white in his blood.

And the angel said unto me: Look! And I looked, and beheld three generations pass away in righteousness; and their garments were white even like unto the Lamb of God. And the angel said unto me: These are made white in the blood of the Lamb, because of their faith in him.

And I, Nephi, also saw many of the fourth generation who passed away in righteousness.

And it came to pass that I saw the multitudes of the earth gathered together.

And the angel said unto me: Behold thy seed, and also the seed of thy brethren.

And it came to pass that I looked and beheld the people of my seed gathered together in multitudes against the seed of my brethren; and they were gathered together to battle.

And the angel spake unto me, saying: Behold the fountain of filthy water which thy father saw; yea, even the river of which he spake; and the depths thereof are the depths of hell.

And the mists of darkness are the temptations of the devil, which blindeth the eyes, and hardeneth the hearts of the children of men, and leadeth them away into broad roads, that they perish and are lost.

18 Futhi isakhiwo esikhulu nesivulekile, leso uyihlo asibona, yimicabango nje eyize kanye nokuziqhenya kwabantwana babantu. Futhi omkhulu kanye nowesabekayo umhosha uyabehlukanisa, yebo, ngisho nezwi lokulunga likaNkulunkulu oPhakade, kanye noMesiya oyiMvana kaNkulunkulu, lowo uMoya oyiNgcwele ofakaza ngaye, kusukela ekuqaleni komhlaba kuze kube yilesi sikhathi samanje, futhi kusukela kulesi sikhathi kuqhubeka futhi ingunaphakade.

19 Futhi ngesikhathi ingelosi ikhuluma lamazwi, ngabheka futhi ngabona ukuthi nempela inzalo yabafowethu yalwa nenzalo yami, njengokwezwi lengelosi; futhi ngenxa yokuziqhenya kwenzalo yami, kanye nezilingo zikadeveli, ngabona ukuthi inzalo yabafowethu nempela yabehlula abantu benzalo yami.

20 Futhi kwenzeka ukuthi ngabheka, futhi ngabona abantu benzalo yabafowethu ukuthi base bebanqobile abenzalo yami; futhi bahamba ngezixuku phezu kobuso balelizwe.

21 Futhi ngababona bebuthene ndawonye ngezixuku; futhi ngabona izimpi kanye namahemuhemu ezimpi phakathi kwabo; futhi kuzo izimpi kanye namahemuhemu ezimpi ngabona izizukulwane eziningi zidlula.

22 Futhi ingelosi yathi kimi: Bheka laba bayoncishelwa wukholo.

23 Futhi kwenzeka ukuthi ngabona, emuva kokuba sebencishelwe wukholo baba mnyama, futhi banengeka, futhi baba ngabantu abangcolile, abagcwele ubuvila kanye nayo yonke inhlobo yezinengiso.

And the large and spacious building, which thy father saw, is vain imaginations and the pride of the children of men. And a great and a terrible gulf divideth them; yea, even the word of the justice of the Eternal God, and the Messiah who is the Lamb of God, of whom the Holy Ghost beareth record, from the beginning of the world until this time, and from this time henceforth and forever.

And while the angel spake these words, I beheld and saw that the seed of my brethren did contend against my seed, according to the word of the angel; and because of the pride of my seed, and the temptations of the devil, I beheld that the seed of my brethren did overpower the people of my seed.

And it came to pass that I beheld, and saw the people of the seed of my brethren that they had overcome my seed; and they went forth in multitudes upon the face of the land.

And I saw them gathered together in multitudes; and I saw wars and rumors of wars among them; and in wars and rumors of wars I saw many generations pass away.

And the angel said unto me: Behold these shall dwindle in unbelief.

And it came to pass that I beheld, after they had dwindled in unbelief they became a dark, and loathsome, and a filthy people, full of idleness and all manner of abominations.

1 Nefi 13

- 1 Futhi kwenzeka ukuthi ingelosi yakhuluma kimi, ithi: Buka! Futhi ngabuka ngabona eziningi izizwe kanye nemibuso.
- 2 Futhi ingelosi yathi kimi: Ubonani na? Futhi ngase ngithi: Ngibona eziningi izizwe kanye nemibuso.
- 3 Futhi yathi kimi: Lezi yizizwe kanye nemibuso yabeZizwe.
- 4 Futhi kwenzeka ukuthi ngabona phakathi kwezizwe zabeZizwe ukwakhiwa kwebandla elikhulu.
- 5 Futhi ingelosi yathi kimi: Bheka ukwakhiwa kwebandla elinengekile kakhulu ngaphezu kwawo wonke amanye amabandla, elibulala abangcwele baNkulunkulu, yebo, futhi elibanqamulezayo libabophele phansi, elibafaka ijoka lensimbi, futhi elibabuyisela phansi ekuthunjweni.
- 6 Futhi kwenzeka ukuthi ngalibona leli bandla elikhulu nelinengekile; futhi ngabona ukuthi udeveli waye ngumqambi walo.
- 7 Futhi ngaphinda ngabona igolide, kanye nesiliva, kanye nawosilika, kanye nokubomvu, kanye nelineni elilukiwe elicolekileyo, kanye nazo zonke izinhlobo zezingubo eziyigugu; futhi ngabona eziningi izifebe.
- 8 Futhi ingelosi yakhuluma kimi, ithi: Bheka igolide, kanye nesiliva, kanye nawosilika, kanye nokubomvu, kanye nelineni elilukiwe elicolekileyo, kanye nezingubo eziyigugu, kanye nezifebe, kuyizifiso zalo leli bandla elikhulu nelinengekile
- 9 Futhi phezu kwalokho ngenxa yodumo lwasemhlabeni babhubhisa abangcwele baNkulunkulu, futhi babase phansi ekuthunjweni.
- 10 Futhi kwenzeka ukuthi ngabuka futhi ngabona amaningi amanzi; futhi ayehlukanisa abeZizwe nenzalo yabafowethu.
- 11 Futhi kwenzeka ukuthi ingelosi yathi kimi: Bheka intukuthelo kaNkulunkulu iphezu kwenzalo yabafowenu.

1 Nephi 13

And it came to pass that the angel spake unto me, saying: Look! And I looked and beheld many nations and kingdoms.

And the angel said unto me: What beholdest thou? And I said: I behold many nations and kingdoms.

And he said unto me: These are the nations and kingdoms of the Gentiles.

And it came to pass that I saw among the nations of the Gentiles the formation of a great church.

And the angel said unto me: Behold the formation of a church which is most abominable above all other churches, which slayeth the saints of God, yea, and tortureth them and bindeth them down, and yoketh them with a yoke of iron, and bringeth them down into captivity.

And it came to pass that I beheld this great and abominable church; and I saw the devil that he was the founder of it.

And I also saw gold, and silver, and silks, and scarlets, and fine-twined linen, and all manner of precious clothing; and I saw many harlots.

And the angel spake unto me, saying: Behold the gold, and the silver, and the silks, and the scarlets, and the fine-twined linen, and the precious clothing, and the harlots, are the desires of this great and abominable church.

And also for the praise of the world do they destroy the saints of God, and bring them down into captivity.

And it came to pass that I looked and beheld many waters; and they divided the Gentiles from the seed of my brethren.

And it came to pass that the angel said unto me: Behold the wrath of God is upon the seed of thy brethren.

- 12 Futhi ngabuka futhi ngabona indoda phakathi kwabeZizwe, eyayehlukaniswe nenzalo yabafowethu ngamanzi amaningi; futhi ngabona uMoya kaNkulunkulu, ukuthi wehlela phansi futhi wasebenza kuyo indoda; futhi yahamba kuwo lamanzi amaningi, ngisho nakuyo inzalo yabafowethu, eyayisezweni lesethembiso.
- 13 Futhi kwenzeka ukuthi ngabona uMoya kaNkulunkulu, ukuthi wasebenza nakwabanye beZizwe; futhi bahamba phezu kwamanzi amaningi baphuma ekuthujweni.
- 14 Futhi kwenzeka ukuthi ngabona eziningi izixuku zabeZizwe kulo izwe lesethembiso; futhi ngabona intukuthelo kaNkulunkulu, ukuthi yayiphezu kwenzalo yabafowethu; futhi babehlakazekile phambi kwabeZizwe futhi beshayiwe.
- 15 Futhi ngabona uMoya weNkosi, ukuthi wawuphezu kwabo abeZizwe, futhi nempela baphumelela futhi balithola lelizwe njengefa labo; futhi ngabona ukuthi babemhlophe, futhi bebukeka kahle kakhulu futhi bebahle, njengabantu bami ngaphambi kokuthi babulawe.
- 16 Futhi kwenzeka ukuthi mina, Nepi, ngabona ukuthi abeZizwe labo ababe hambe baphuma ekuthunjweni nempela bazithoba phambi kweNkosi; futhi amandla eNkosi aba nabo.
- 17 Futhi ngabona ukuthi onina babeZizwe babebuthene ndawonye phezu kwamanzi, futhi ngokunjalo nakulelizwe, ukuze balwe nabo.
- 18 Futhi ngabona ukuthi amandla kaNkulunkulu ayenabo, futhi nokuthi intukuthelo kaNkulunkulu yayiphezu kwabo bonke labo ababe buthene ndawonye ukuze balwe nabo.
- 19 Futhi mina, Nepi, ngabona ukuthi abeZizwe labo ababephume ekuthunjweni bakhululwa ngamandla kaNkulunkulu baphuma ezandleni zazo zonke ezinye izizwe.
- 20 Futhi kwenzeka ukuthi mina, Nepi, ngabona ukuthi nempela baphumelela kulelizwe; futhi ngabona incwadi, futhi yayidluliswa phakathi kwabo.
- 21 Ingelosi yathi kimi: Uyayazi yini incazelo yencwadi na?
- 22 Ngathi kuyo: Angiyazi.

And I looked and beheld a man among the Gentiles, who was separated from the seed of my brethren by the many waters; and I beheld the Spirit of God, that it came down and wrought upon the man; and he went forth upon the many waters, even unto the seed of my brethren, who were in the promised land.

And it came to pass that I beheld the Spirit of God, that it wrought upon other Gentiles; and they went forth out of captivity, upon the many waters.

And it came to pass that I beheld many multitudes of the Gentiles upon the land of promise; and I beheld the wrath of God, that it was upon the seed of my brethren; and they were scattered before the Gentiles and were smitten.

And I beheld the Spirit of the Lord, that it was upon the Gentiles, and they did prosper and obtain the land for their inheritance; and I beheld that they were white, and exceedingly fair and beautiful, like unto my people before they were slain.

And it came to pass that I, Nephi, beheld that the Gentiles who had gone forth out of captivity did humble themselves before the Lord; and the power of the Lord was with them.

And I beheld that their mother Gentiles were gathered together upon the waters, and upon the land also, to battle against them.

And I beheld that the power of God was with them, and also that the wrath of God was upon all those that were gathered together against them to battle.

And I, Nephi, beheld that the Gentiles that had gone out of captivity were delivered by the power of God out of the hands of all other nations.

And it came to pass that I, Nephi, beheld that they did prosper in the land; and I beheld a book, and it was carried forth among them.

And the angel said unto me: Knowest thou the meaning of the book?

And I said unto him: I know not.

- 23 Futhi yathi: Bheka iphuma emlonyeni weJuda. Futhi mina, Nefi, ngayibona; futhi yathi kimi: Incwadi leyo oyibonayo ingumbhalo wamaJuda, oqukethe izivumelwano zeNkosi, eyazenza kuyo indlu ka-Israyeli; futhi phezu kwalokho iqukethe eziningi iziphrofetho zabaphrofethi abangcwele; futhi ingumbhalo onjengalokho okuqoshiwe okusezingcwepheni zethusi, ngaphandle nje kokuthi aziziningi zona kakhulu; nokho, nazo ziqukethe izivumelwano zeNkosi, eyazenza kuyo indlu ka-Israyeli; ngalokho-ke, zingezibaluleke kakhulu kwabeZizwe.
- 24 Futhi ingelosi yeNkosi yathi kimi: Ubonile ukuthi incwadi iphume emlonyeni weJuda; futhi ngesikhathi iphuma emlonyeni weJuda ibiqukethe ivangeli elipheleleyo leNkosi, lelo abaphostoli abayishumi nambili abanika ubufakazi ngalo; futhi banika ubufakazi njengokweqiniso lelo elikuyo iMvana kaNkulunkulu.
- 25 Ngalokho-ke, lezi zinto ziphuma kumaJuda zimsulwa ziya kwabeZizwe, njengokweqiniso elikuNkulunkulu.
- 26 Futhi emuva kokuthi seziphumile zahamba ngesandla sabaphostoli abayishumi nambili beMvana, zisuka kumaJuda ziya kwabeZizwe, uyakubona ukwakhiwa kwalelo bandla elikhulu nelinengekile, elinengekile kakhulu ngaphezu kwawo wonke amanye amabandla; ngokuba bheka, bazisusile evangelini leMvana eziningi izinxenye ezisobala futhi eziyigugu elikhulu; futhi ngokunjalo neziningi izivumelwano zeNkosi bazisusile.
- 27 Futhi konke lokhu bakwenzile ukuze baphendukezele izindlela eziqondile zeNkosi, ukuze baphuphuthekise amehlo futhi benze lukhuni izinhliziyi zabantwana babantu.
- 28 Ngalokho-ke, uyabona ukuthi emuva kokuthi incwadi isidlulile ezandleni zalelo bandla elikhulu nelinengekile, ukuthi kube khona eziningi ezisobala futhi eziyigugu izinto ezikhishiwe encwadini, okuyincwadi yeMvana kaNkulunkulu.

And he said: Behold it proceedeth out of the mouth of a Jew. And I, Nephi, beheld it; and he said unto me: The book that thou beholdest is a record of the Jews, which contains the covenants of the Lord, which he hath made unto the house of Israel; and it also containeth many of the prophecies of the holy prophets; and it is a record like unto the engravings which are upon the plates of brass, save there are not so many; nevertheless, they contain the covenants of the Lord, which he hath made unto the house of Israel; wherefore, they are of great worth unto the Gentiles.

And the angel of the Lord said unto me: Thou hast beheld that the book proceeded forth from the mouth of a Jew; and when it proceeded forth from the mouth of a Jew it contained the fulness of the gospel of the Lord, of whom the twelve apostles bear record; and they bear record according to the truth which is in the Lamb of God.

Wherefore, these things go forth from the Jews in purity unto the Gentiles, according to the truth which is in God.

And after they go forth by the hand of the twelve apostles of the Lamb, from the Jews unto the Gentiles, thou seest the formation of that great and abominable church, which is most abominable above all other churches; for behold, they have taken away from the gospel of the Lamb many parts which are plain and most precious; and also many covenants of the Lord have they taken away.

And all this have they done that they might pervert the right ways of the Lord, that they might blind the eyes and harden the hearts of the children of men.

Wherefore, thou seest that after the book hath gone forth through the hands of the great and abominable church, that there are many plain and precious things taken away from the book, which is the book of the Lamb of God.

- 29 Futhi emuva kokuthi lezi zinto ezisobala futhi neziyigugu sezikhishiwe yedlulela kuzo zonke izizwe zabeZizwe; futhi emuva kokuthi seyidlulele kuzo zonke izizwe zabeZizwe, yebo, ngisho nangaphesheya kwamanzi amaningi lawo owabonile nabeZizwe labo abaphume ekuthunjweni, uyabona—ngenxa yalezo zinto ezisobala eziningi futhi neziyigugu ezikhishiwe encwadini, ezazisobala ukuthi ziqondwe ngabantwana babantu, njengalokho okusobala okukuyo iMvana kaNkulunkulu—ngenxa yalezi zinto ezikhishiwe evangelini leMvana, abaningi kakhulu bayakhubeka, yebo, kangangokuthi uSathane unamandla amakhulu phezu kwabo.
- 30 Nokho, uyabona ukuthi abeZizwe abaphuma ekuthunjweni, futhi baphakanyiswa ngamandla kaNkulunkulu ngaphezu kwazo zonke ezinye izizwe, ebusweni balelozwe elikhethiweyo ngaphezu kwawo wonke amanye amazwe, okuyizwe iNkosi uNkulunkulu avumelane ngalo noyihlo ukuthi inzalo yakhe kufanele ilithole kube yizwe eliyilifa labo; ngalokho-ke, uyabona ukuthi iNkosi uNkulunkulu ayinakuvumela ukuthi abeZizwe bayibhubhise nya ingxube yenzalo yakho, leyo ephakathi kweyabafowenu.
- 31 Futhi ayinakuvuma ukuthi abeZizwe babhubhise inzalo yabafowenu.
- 32 Futhi iNkosi uNkulunkulu ayinakuvuma ukuthi abeZizwe bahlale njalonjalo kuleso simo esibi kakhulu sokuphuphutheka, lesa obabone bekuso, ngenxa yezinxenye ezisobala futhi eziyigugu kakhulu zevangeli leMvana ezigodlwe yilo lelo bandla elinengekile, ukwakhiwa kwalo okubonile.
- 33 Ngalokho-ke ithi iMvana kaNkulunkulu: Ngiyokuba nesihawu kwabeZizwe, kangangoba ngiyohambela insali yendlu ka-Israyeli ngokwahlulela okukhulu.

And after these plain and precious things were taken away it goeth forth unto all the nations of the Gentiles; and after it goeth forth unto all the nations of the Gentiles, yea, even across the many waters which thou hast seen with the Gentiles which have gone forth out of captivity, thou seest—because of the many plain and precious things which have been taken out of the book, which were plain unto the understanding of the children of men, according to the plainness which is in the Lamb of God—because of these things which are taken away out of the gospel of the Lamb, an exceedingly great many do stumble, yea, insomuch that Satan hath great power over them.

Nevertheless, thou beholdest that the Gentiles who have gone forth out of captivity, and have been lifted up by the power of God above all other nations, upon the face of the land which is choice above all other lands, which is the land that the Lord God hath covenanted with thy father that his seed should have for the land of their inheritance; wherefore, thou seest that the Lord God will not suffer that the Gentiles will utterly destroy the mixture of thy seed, which are among thy brethren.

Neither will he suffer that the Gentiles shall destroy the seed of thy brethren.

Neither will the Lord God suffer that the Gentiles shall forever remain in that awful state of blindness, which thou beholdest they are in, because of the plain and most precious parts of the gospel of the Lamb which have been kept back by that abominable church, whose formation thou hast seen.

Wherefore saith the Lamb of God: I will be merciful unto the Gentiles, unto the visiting of the remnant of the house of Israel in great judgment.

34 Futhi kwenzeka ukuthi ingelosi yeNkosi yakhuluma kimi, ithi: Bheka, kusho iMvana kaNkulunkulu, emuva kokuthi sengiyihambele insali yendlu ka-Israyeli—futhi lensali engikhuluma ngayo iyinzalo kayihlo—ngalokho-ke, emuva kokuthi sengiyihambele ngokwahlulela, futhi ngayishaya ngesandla sabeZizwe, futhi emuva kokuthi abeZizwe sebekhubeka kakhulu, ngenxa yezinxenye ezisobala kakhulu futhi eziyigugu zevangeli leMvana ezigodlwe yilelobandla elinengekile, elingunina wezifebe, kusho iMvana—Ngiyokuba nesihawu kubo abeZizwe ngalolosuku, kangangokuthi ngiyoletha kubo, ngamandla ami, okuningi kwevangeli lami, okuyoba sobala futhi kube yigugu, kusho iMvana.

35 Ngokuba, bheka, kusho iMvana: Ngiyoziveza uqobo lwami kuyo inzalo yakho, ukuze ibhale izinto eziningi engiyobafundisa zona, eziyobe zisobala futhi ziyigugu; futhi emuva kokuthi inzalo yakho isibhujisiwe, futhi yancishelwa wukholo, futhi ngokunjalo nenzalo yabafowenu, bheka, lezi zinto ziyothukuswa, ukuze zivezwe kwabeZizwe, ngesipho kanye nangamandla eMvana.

36 Futhi kuzo kuyolotshwa ivangeli lami, kusho iMvana, nedwala lami kanye nensindiso yami.

37 Futhi babusisiwe labo abayofuna ukumisa iSiyoni yami ngalolo suku, ngokuba bayokuba nesipho kanye namandla kaMoya oyiNgcwele; futhi uma bebezela kuze kube sekupheleni bayophakanyiswa ngosuku lokugcina, futhi bayosindiswa embusweni waphakade weMvana; futhi nalabo abayomemezela ukuthula, yebo, izindaba zokuthokoza okukhulu, bayoba bahle kangakanani ezintabeni.

38 Futhi kwenzeka ukuthi ngabona insali yenzalo yabafowethu, futhi ngokunjalo nencwadi yeMvana kaNkulunkulu, eyayiphume emlonyeni weJuda, ukuthi yavela kwabeZizwe yaya kuyo insali yenzalo yabafowethu.

And it came to pass that the angel of the Lord spake unto me, saying: Behold, saith the Lamb of God, after I have visited the remnant of the house of Israel—and this remnant of whom I speak is the seed of thy father—wherefore, after I have visited them in judgment, and smitten them by the hand of the Gentiles, and after the Gentiles do stumble exceedingly, because of the most plain and precious parts of the gospel of the Lamb which have been kept back by that abominable church, which is the mother of harlots, saith the Lamb—I will be merciful unto the Gentiles in that day, insomuch that I will bring forth unto them, in mine own power, much of my gospel, which shall be plain and precious, saith the Lamb.

For, behold, saith the Lamb: I will manifest myself unto thy seed, that they shall write many things which I shall minister unto them, which shall be plain and precious; and after thy seed shall be destroyed, and dwindle in unbelief, and also the seed of thy brethren, behold, these things shall be hid up, to come forth unto the Gentiles, by the gift and power of the Lamb.

And in them shall be written my gospel, saith the Lamb, and my rock and my salvation.

And blessed are they who shall seek to bring forth my Zion at that day, for they shall have the gift and the power of the Holy Ghost; and if they endure unto the end they shall be lifted up at the last day, and shall be saved in the everlasting kingdom of the Lamb; and whoso shall publish peace, yea, tidings of great joy, how beautiful upon the mountains shall they be.

And it came to pass that I beheld the remnant of the seed of my brethren, and also the book of the Lamb of God, which had proceeded forth from the mouth of the Jew, that it came forth from the Gentiles unto the remnant of the seed of my brethren.

39 Futhi emuva kokuthi isivelile yaya kubo ngabona ezinye izincwadi, ezavela ngamandla eMvana, zivela kwabeZizwe ziya kubo, ekukholiseni abeZizwe kanye nensali yenzalo yabafowethu, futhi ngokunjalo namaJuda ayehlakazeke phezu kobuso bonke bomhlaba, ukuthi imibhalo yabaphrofethi neyabaphostoli abayishumi nambili beMvana iyiqiniso.

40 Futhi ingelosi yakhuluma kimi, ithi: Lemibhalo yokugcina, oyibonile phakathi kwabeZizwe, iyomisa iqiniso ngeyokuqala, okungeyabaphostoli abayishumi nambili beMvana, futhi iyokwazisa ngalokho okusobala kanye nangezinto eziyigugu ezikhishwe kuyo; futhi iyokwazisa kuyo yonke imindeni, izilimi, kanye nakubantu, ukuthi iMvana kaNkulunkulu iyiNdodana kaBaba ongunaPhakade, futhi ingumSindisi womhlaba; futhi nokuthi bonke abantu kufanele beze kuyo, noma ngeke basindiswe.

41 Futhi kufanele beze njengokwamazwi lawo ayomiswa ngomlomo weMvana; futhi amazwi eMvana ayokwaziswa emibhalweni yenzalo yakho, ngokunjalo nasemibhalweni yabaphostoli abayishumi nambili beMvana; ngalokho-ke yomibili iyohlanganiswa ibe yinye; ngokuba uNkulunkulu munye futhi noMalusi munye phezu komhlaba wonke.

42 Futhi isikhathi siyeza lapho eyoziveza ezizweni zonke, kumaJuda ngokunjalo nakubo abeZizwe; futhi emuva kokuthi esezivezile kuwo amaJuda futhi ngokunjalo nakubo abeZizwe, uyobe eseziveza kwabeZizwe futhi ngokunjalo nakumaJuda, futhi abokugcina bayokuba ngabokuqala, futhi nabokuqala babe ngabokugcina.

And after it had come forth unto them I beheld other books, which came forth by the power of the Lamb, from the Gentiles unto them, unto the convincing of the Gentiles and the remnant of the seed of my brethren, and also the Jews who were scattered upon all the face of the earth, that the records of the prophets and of the twelve apostles of the Lamb are true.

And the angel spake unto me, saying: These last records, which thou hast seen among the Gentiles, shall establish the truth of the first, which are of the twelve apostles of the Lamb, and shall make known the plain and precious things which have been taken away from them; and shall make known to all kindreds, tongues, and people, that the Lamb of God is the Son of the Eternal Father, and the Savior of the world; and that all men must come unto him, or they cannot be saved.

And they must come according to the words which shall be established by the mouth of the Lamb; and the words of the Lamb shall be made known in the records of thy seed, as well as in the records of the twelve apostles of the Lamb; wherefore they both shall be established in one; for there is one God and one Shepherd over all the earth.

And the time cometh that he shall manifest himself unto all nations, both unto the Jews and also unto the Gentiles; and after he has manifested himself unto the Jews and also unto the Gentiles, then he shall manifest himself unto the Gentiles and also unto the Jews, and the last shall be first, and the first shall be last.

1 Nefi 14

- 1 Futhi kuyokwenzeka, ukuthi uma abeZizwe beyoyilalela iMvana kaNkulunkulu ngalolo suku eyoziveza ngalo kubo ngezwi, futhi ngokunjalo nangamandla, nangezenzo uqobo, ukuze kususwe izikhubekiso zabo—
- 2 Futhi bangazenzi lukhuni izinhliziyi zabo ngokumelene neMvana kaNkulunkulu, bayobalwa kanye nenzalo kayihlo; yebo, bayobalwa kanye nendlu ka-Israyeli; futhi bayokuba ngabantu ababusisekile ezweni lesethembiso ingunaphakade; ngeke besaphinda nanini babuyiselwe phansi ekuthunjweni; futhi indlu ka-Israyeli ngeke isaphinde nanini ihlakazeke.
- 3 Futhi lowo mgodi omkhulu, obumbelwe bona yilelo bandla elikhulu nelinengekile, elasungulwa ngudeveli kanye nabantwana bakhe, ukuze aholele le imiphfumulo yabantu phansi esihogweni—yebo, lowo mgodi omkhulu ombelwe ukubhubhisa abantu uyogcwaliswa yilabo abawumbayo, ukuze babhujiswe baphele nya, kusho iMvana kaNkulunkulu; hhayi ukubhujiswa komphfumulo, ngaphandle kokuthi kube wukuphonswa kwawo esihogweni esingenasiphelo.
- 4 Ngokuba bheka, lokhu kuyindlela udeveli athumba ngayo, futhi ngokunjalo nendlela yokulunga kukaNkulunkulu, kubo bonke labo abayokwenza imisebenzi yobubi kanye nezinengiso phambi kwakhe.
- 5 Futhi kwenzeka ukuthi ingelosi yakhuluma kimi, Nefi, ithi: Ubonile ukuthi uma abeZizwe bephenduka kuyoba kuhle kubo; futhi phezu kwalokho uyazi mayelana nezivumelwano zeNkosi kuyo indlu ka-Israyeli; futhi phezu kwalokho uzwile ukuthi lowo ongaphenduki kufanele alahleke.
- 6 Ngakho-ke, maye kubo abeZizwe uma kungukuthi bazenza lukhuni izinhliziyi zabo ngokumelene neMvana kaNkulunkulu.

1 Nephi 14

And it shall come to pass, that if the Gentiles shall hearken unto the Lamb of God in that day that he shall manifest himself unto them in word, and also in power, in very deed, unto the taking away of their stumbling blocks—

And harden not their hearts against the Lamb of God, they shall be numbered among the seed of thy father; yea, they shall be numbered among the house of Israel; and they shall be a blessed people upon the promised land forever; they shall be no more brought down into captivity; and the house of Israel shall no more be confounded.

And that great pit, which hath been digged for them by that great and abominable church, which was founded by the devil and his children, that he might lead away the souls of men down to hell—yea, that great pit which hath been digged for the destruction of men shall be filled by those who digged it, unto their utter destruction, saith the Lamb of God; not the destruction of the soul, save it be the casting of it into that hell which hath no end.

For behold, this is according to the captivity of the devil, and also according to the justice of God, upon all those who will work wickedness and abomination before him.

And it came to pass that the angel spake unto me, Nephi, saying: Thou hast beheld that if the Gentiles repent it shall be well with them; and thou also knowest concerning the covenants of the Lord unto the house of Israel; and thou also hast heard that whoso repenteth not must perish.

Therefore, wo be unto the Gentiles if it so be that they harden their hearts against the Lamb of God.

- 7 Ngokuba isikhathi siyeza, kusho iMvana kaNkulunkulu, lapho ngiyokwenza umsebenzi omkhulu kanye nomangalisayo phakathi kwabantwana babantu; umsebenzi oyokuba ngowaphakade, kube yisimo esithile kolunye uhlangothi noma esinye ngakolunye—bakholiswe ukuze babe nokuthula kanye nokuphila okuphakade, noma bayekelwe ebulukhunini bezinhliziyo zabo kanye nasekuphuphuthekeni kwemiqondo yabo kuze kube badonseleka ekuthunjweni, futhi ngokunjalo nasekubhujisweni, ngokwemvelo kanye nangokomoya, ngokwendlela udeveli athumba ngayo, esengikhulume ngakho.
- 8 Futhi kwenzeka ukuthi ngesikhathi ingelosi isiwakhulumile lamazwi, yathi kimi: Uyazikhumbula yini izivumelwano zikaBaba kuyo indlu ka-Israyeli na? Ngathi kuyo, Yebo.
- 9 Futhi kwenzeka ukuthi yathi kimi: Buka, futhi ubone lelo bandla elikhulu nelinengekile, elingunina wezinengiso, umqambi walo okungudeveli.
- 10 Futhi yathi kimi: Bheka mabili kuphela amabandla; elilodwa yibandla leMvana kaNkulunkulu, kanti elinye yibandla likadeveli; ngalokho-ke, lowo ongeyena owebandla leMvana kaNkulunkulu ungowalelo bandla elikhulu, elingunina wezinengiso; futhi uyisifebe somhlaba wonke.
- 11 Futhi kwenzeka ukuthi ngabuka futhi ngasibona isifebe somhlaba wonke, futhi sasihlezi phezu kwamanzi amaningi; futhi sasibusa phezu komhlaba wonke, phakathi kwezizwe zonke, imindeni, izilimi, kanye nakubantu.
- 12 Futhi kwenzeka ukuthi ngalibona ibandla leMvana kaNkulunkulu, futhi inani lalo laliyidlanzana, ngenxa yobubi kanye nezinengiso zesifebe leso esasihlezi phezu kwamanzi amaningi; nokho, ngabona ukuthi ibandla leMvana, okwukungabangcwele baNkulunkulu, babekhona nabo ngokunjalo phezu kobuso bonke bomhlaba; futhi izindawo ezingaphansi kwabo ebusweni bomhlaba zazincane, ngenxa yobubi besifebe esikhulu engasibona.

For the time cometh, saith the Lamb of God, that I will work a great and a marvelous work among the children of men; a work which shall be everlasting, either on the one hand or on the other—either to the convincing of them unto peace and life eternal, or unto the deliverance of them to the hardness of their hearts and the blindness of their minds unto their being brought down into captivity, and also into destruction, both temporally and spiritually, according to the captivity of the devil, of which I have spoken.

And it came to pass that when the angel had spoken these words, he said unto me: Rememberest thou the covenants of the Father unto the house of Israel? I said unto him, Yea.

And it came to pass that he said unto me: Look, and behold that great and abominable church, which is the mother of abominations, whose founder is the devil.

And he said unto me: Behold there are save two churches only; the one is the church of the Lamb of God, and the other is the church of the devil; wherefore, whoso belongeth not to the church of the Lamb of God belongeth to that great church, which is the mother of abominations; and she is the whore of all the earth.

And it came to pass that I looked and beheld the whore of all the earth, and she sat upon many waters; and she had dominion over all the earth, among all nations, kindreds, tongues, and people.

And it came to pass that I beheld the church of the Lamb of God, and its numbers were few, because of the wickedness and abominations of the whore who sat upon many waters; nevertheless, I beheld that the church of the Lamb, who were the saints of God, were also upon all the face of the earth; and their dominions upon the face of the earth were small, because of the wickedness of the great whore whom I saw.

- 13 Futhi kwenzeka ukuthi ngabona ukuthi unina omkhulu wezinengiso nempela wazibuthela ndawonye izixuku phezu kobuso bonke bomhlaba, phakathi kwazo zonke izizwe zabeZizwe, ukuthi zilwe neMvana kaNkulunkulu.
- 14 Futhi kwenzeka ukuthi mina, Nefi, ngabona amandla eMvana kaNkulunkulu, ukuthi ehlela phezu kwabangcwele bebandla leMvana, kanye naphezu kwabantu besivumelwano beNkosi, labo ababehlakazeke phezu kobuso bonke bomhlaba; futhi babehloniyiswe ngokulunga kanye nangamandla kaNkulunkulu enkazimulweni enkulu.
- 15 Futhi kwenzeka ukuthi ngabona ukuthi intukuthelo kaNkulunkulu yathululwa phezu kwalo lelo bandla elikhulu nelinengekile, kangangokuthi kwabakhona izimpi kanye namahemuhemu ezimpi phakathi kwazo zonke izizwe kanye nemindeni yomhlaba.
- 16 Futhi ngesikhathi kuqala ukuthi kube khona izimpi kanye namahemuhemu ezimpi phakathi kwazo zonke izizwe okwakungezikanina wezinengiso, ingelosi yakhuluma kimi, ithi: Bheka, intukuthelo kaNkulunkulu iphezu kukanina wezifebe; futhi bheka, uyazibona zonke lezi zinto—
- 17 Futhi uma usuku selufika ukuthi intukuthelo kaNkulunkulu ithululwe phezu kukanina wezifebe, okuyibandla elikhulu nelinengekile lomhlaba wonke, umqambi walo okungudeveli, ngalolo suku, umsebenzi kaBaba uyoqala, wokulungisa indlela yokugcwalisa izivumelwano zakhe, azenza kubantu bakhe okungabendlu ka-Israyeli.
- 18 Futhi kwenzeka ukuthi ingelosi yakhuluma kimi, ithi: Buka!
- 19 Futhi ngabuka futhi ngabona indoda, eyayigqoke ingubo emhlophe.
- 20 Futhi ingelosi yathi kimi: Bheka omunye wabaphostoli abayishumi nambili beMvana.
- 21 Bheka, uyobona futhi abhale ngensalela yalezi zinto; yebo, futhi ngokunjalo nezinto eziningi ezike zaba khona.
- 22 Futhi phezu kwalokho uyobhala mayelana nokuphela komhlaba.

And it came to pass that I beheld that the great mother of abominations did gather together multitudes upon the face of all the earth, among all the nations of the Gentiles, to fight against the Lamb of God.

And it came to pass that I, Nephi, beheld the power of the Lamb of God, that it descended upon the saints of the church of the Lamb, and upon the covenant people of the Lord, who were scattered upon all the face of the earth; and they were armed with righteousness and with the power of God in great glory.

And it came to pass that I beheld that the wrath of God was poured out upon that great and abominable church, insomuch that there were wars and rumors of wars among all the nations and kindreds of the earth.

And as there began to be wars and rumors of wars among all the nations which belonged to the mother of abominations, the angel spake unto me, saying: Behold, the wrath of God is upon the mother of harlots; and behold, thou seest all these things—

And when the day cometh that the wrath of God is poured out upon the mother of harlots, which is the great and abominable church of all the earth, whose founder is the devil, then, at that day, the work of the Father shall commence, in preparing the way for the fulfilling of his covenants, which he hath made to his people who are of the house of Israel.

And it came to pass that the angel spake unto me, saying: Look!

And I looked and beheld a man, and he was dressed in a white robe.

And the angel said unto me: Behold one of the twelve apostles of the Lamb.

Behold, he shall see and write the remainder of these things; yea, and also many things which have been.

And he shall also write concerning the end of the world.

- 23 Ngalokho-ke, lezo zinto ayozibhala zilungile futhi ziyiqiniso; futhi bheka zibhaliwe encwadini leyo oyibone iphuma emlonyeni weJuda; futhi ngesikhathi ziphuma emlonyeni weJuda, noma, ngesikhathi incwadi iphuma emlonyeni weJuda, lezo zinto ezazibhaliwe zazisobala futhi zimsulwa, futhi ziyigugu elikhulu futhi zilula ukuqondwa ngabantu bonke.
- 24 Futhi bheka, izinto lomphostoli weMvana ayozibhala ziyizinto eziningi wena osuzibonile; futhi bheka, okuseleyo uzokubona.
- 25 Kodwa lezo zinto ozozibona emva kwalokhu awuzukuzibhala; ngokuba iNkosi uNkulunkulu igcobe umphostoli weMvana kaNkulunkulu ukuthi azibhale.
- 26 Futhi ngokunjalo nabanye ababekhona, kubo uzikhombisile zonke izinto; futhi bazibhalile; futhi zivaliwe zabekwa ukuze ziphume zimsulwa; ngokweqiniso lelo elikuyo iMvana, ngesikhathi esifanele seNkosi, ziye kuyo indlu ka-Israyeli.
- 27 Futhi mina, Nefi, ngezwa futhi ngiyafakaza, ukuthi igama lalomphostoli weMvana kwabe kunguJohane, ngokwezwi lengelosi.
- 28 Futhi bheka, mina, Nefi, ngenqatshelwe ukuthi ngibhale okuseleyo kwezinto engazibona futhi ngazizwa; ngalokho-ke izinto engizibhalile ziyangenelisa; futhi ngibhale kuphela inxenye encane yezinto engazibona.
- 29 Futhi ngiyafakaza ukuthi ngazibona lezo zinto ubaba azibona, futhi ingelosi yeNkosi yazembula kimi.
- 30 Manje sengenza isiphetho senkulumo yami mayelana nalezo zinto engazibona ngesikhathi ngihlwathiwe nguMoya; futhi uma ngabe zonke izinto engazibona zingabhaliwe, izinto engizibhalile ziyiqiniso. Futhi kunjalo nje. Amen.

Wherefore, the things which he shall write are just and true; and behold they are written in the book which thou beheld proceeding out of the mouth of the Jew; and at the time they proceeded out of the mouth of the Jew, or, at the time the book proceeded out of the mouth of the Jew, the things which were written were plain and pure, and most precious and easy to the understanding of all men.

And behold, the things which this apostle of the Lamb shall write are many things which thou hast seen; and behold, the remainder shalt thou see.

But the things which thou shalt see hereafter thou shalt not write; for the Lord God hath ordained the apostle of the Lamb of God that he should write them.

And also others who have been, to them hath he shown all things, and they have written them; and they are sealed up to come forth in their purity, according to the truth which is in the Lamb, in the own due time of the Lord, unto the house of Israel.

And I, Nephi, heard and bear record, that the name of the apostle of the Lamb was John, according to the word of the angel.

And behold, I, Nephi, am forbidden that I should write the remainder of the things which I saw and heard; wherefore the things which I have written sufficeth me; and I have written but a small part of the things which I saw.

And I bear record that I saw the things which my father saw, and the angel of the Lord did make them known unto me.

And now I make an end of speaking concerning the things which I saw while I was carried away in the Spirit; and if all the things which I saw are not written, the things which I have written are true. And thus it is. Amen.

1 Nefi 15

- 1 Futhi kwenzeka ukuthi emva kokuthi mina, Nefi, kade sengihlwathiwe nguMoya, futhi sengizibonile zonke lezi zinto, ngabuyela etendeni likababa.
- 2 Futhi kwenzeka ukuthi ngabona abafowethu, futhi babephikisana omunye nomunye mayelana nezinto lezo ubaba ayezikhulumile kubo.
- 3 Ngokuba ngempela wakhuluma izinto eziningi nezinkulu kubo, ezazinzima ukuthi ziqondakale, ngaphandle kokuthi umuntu abuze eNkosini; futhi ngenxa yokuthi babenezinhliziyi ezilukhuni, ngakho-ke abazange babheke eNkosini njengoba kwakufanele benze.
- 4 Manje mina, Nefi, ngangidabukile ngenxa yobulukhuni bezinhliziyi zabo, futhi, nangenxa yezinto engangizibonile, futhi ngazi ukuthi kwakufanele zenzeke ngokungenakuvinjelwa ngenxa yobubi obukhulu babantwana babantu.
- 5 Futhi kwenzeka ukuthi ngaphela amandla ngenxa yezinkathazo zami, ngokuba ngabona ukuthi izinkathazo zami zazinkulu ngaphezu kwazo zonke, ngenxa yokubhujiswa kwabantu bami, ngokuba ngangikubonile ukuwa kwabo.
- 6 Futhi kwenzeka ukuthi emuva kokuthi sengithole amandla ngakhuluma nabafowethu, nginesifiso sokwazi kubo isizathu sokuhlizisana kwabo.
- 7 Futhi bathi: Bheka, asikwazi ukuwaqonda amazwi ubaba awakhulumile mayelana namagatsha emvelo esihlahla somnqumo, futhi ngokunjalo mayelana nabeZizwe.
- 8 Futhi ngathi kubo: Senike nabuza yini eNkosini na?
- 9 Bona bathi kimi: Asizange; ngokuba iNkosi ayiyembuli into enje kithi.
- 10 Bheka, ngathi kubo: Kungani ukuthi ningayigcini imiyalelo yeNkosi na? Kungani ukuthi nizolahleka, ngenxa yobulukhuni bezinhliziyi zenu na?
- 11 Anizikhumbuli yini izinto iNkosi ezishilo na?— Uma ningayikuzenza lukhuni izinhliziyi zenu, futhi ningibuza ngokukholwa, nikholwa ukuthi nizonikwa, nikhuthele ekugcineni imiyalelo yami, ngempela lezi zinto ziyokwembulwa kini.

1 Nephi 15

And it came to pass that after I, Nephi, had been carried away in the Spirit, and seen all these things, I returned to the tent of my father.

And it came to pass that I beheld my brethren, and they were disputing one with another concerning the things which my father had spoken unto them.

For he truly spake many great things unto them, which were hard to be understood, save a man should inquire of the Lord; and they being hard in their hearts, therefore they did not look unto the Lord as they ought.

And now I, Nephi, was grieved because of the hardness of their hearts, and also, because of the things which I had seen, and knew they must unavoidably come to pass because of the great wickedness of the children of men.

And it came to pass that I was overcome because of my afflictions, for I considered that mine afflictions were great above all, because of the destruction of my people, for I had beheld their fall.

And it came to pass that after I had received strength I spake unto my brethren, desiring to know of them the cause of their disputations.

And they said: Behold, we cannot understand the words which our father hath spoken concerning the natural branches of the olive tree, and also concerning the Gentiles.

And I said unto them: Have ye inquired of the Lord?

And they said unto me: We have not; for the Lord maketh no such thing known unto us.

Behold, I said unto them: How is it that ye do not keep the commandments of the Lord? How is it that ye will perish, because of the hardness of your hearts?

Do ye not remember the things which the Lord hath said?—If ye will not harden your hearts, and ask me in faith, believing that ye shall receive, with diligence in keeping my commandments, surely these things shall be made known unto you.

- 12 Bhekani, ngithi kini, indlu ka-Israyeli yafaniswa nesihlahla somnqumo, nguMoya weNkosi owawukuye ubaba; futhi bhekani thina asihleshulwanga yini kuyo indlu ka-Israyeli, futhi asiyilo yini igatsha lendlu ka-Israyeli na?
- 13 Manje, into ubaba ayiqondile mayelana nokuxhumelelwa kwamagatsha emvelo ngokuphelela kwabeZizwe, kungukuthi ngezinsuku zokugcina, lapho inzalo yethu seyincishelwe wukholo, yebo, isikhathi esiyiminyaka eminingi, futhi izizukulwane eziningi emuva kokuba uMesiya eyobonakaliswa esenyameni kubo abantwana babantu, ngaleso sikhathi ivangeli elipheleleyo likaMesiya liyoza kwabeZizwe, futhi liyosuka kubo abeZizwe liye kuyo insalela yenzalo yethu—
- 14 Futhi ngalo lolo suku insalela yenzalo yethu iyokwazi ukuthi bona bayibo abendlu ka-Israyeli, futhi nokuthi bayibo abantu besivumelwano beNkosi; futhi ngaleso sikhathi bayokwazi futhi bafinyelele olwazini lokhokho babo, futhi ngokunjalo nasolwazini lwevangeli loMkhululi wabo, elafundiswa kokhokho babo nguye; ngalokho-ke, bayofinyelela ekumazini uMkhululi wabo futhi nangazo izihloko zemfundiso yakhe ngazinye, ukuze bazi ukuthi bangeza kanjani kuye futhi basindiswe.
- 15 Futhi ngalolo suku abayikujabula yini futhi banikeze udumo kuye uNkulunkulu wabo ongunaphakade, idwala labo, kanye nensindiso yabo na? Yebo, ngalolo suku, abayikuthola yini amandla kanye nokondleka kuwo umvini weqiniso na? Yebo, abayi kuza yini emhlambini weqiniso kaNkulunkulu na?
- 16 Bhekani, ngithi kini, Yebo; bayokhunjulwa futhi phakathi kwendlu ka-Israyeli; bayoxhunyelelwa, beyilo igatsha lemvelo lesihlahla somnqumo, kuso isihlahla seqiniso somnqumo.
- 17 Futhi yikho lokhu ubaba abekusho; futhi ubeqonde ukuthi lokhu akuyikwenzeka kuze kube ngemuva kokuthi sebehlakazwe ngabeZizwe; futhi ubeqonde ukuthi kuyofika ngendlela yabeZizwe, ukuze iNkosi ikhombise amandla ayo kwabeZizwe, ngaso leso sizathu sokuthi iyokwenqatshwa ngamaJuda, noma ngabendlu ka-Israyeli.

Behold, I say unto you, that the house of Israel was compared unto an olive tree, by the Spirit of the Lord which was in our father; and behold are we not broken off from the house of Israel, and are we not a branch of the house of Israel?

And now, the thing which our father meaneth concerning the grafting in of the natural branches through the fulness of the Gentiles, is, that in the latter days, when our seed shall have dwindled in unbelief, yea, for the space of many years, and many generations after the Messiah shall be manifested in body unto the children of men, then shall the fulness of the gospel of the Messiah come unto the Gentiles, and from the Gentiles unto the remnant of our seed—

And at that day shall the remnant of our seed know that they are of the house of Israel, and that they are the covenant people of the Lord; and then shall they know and come to the knowledge of their forefathers, and also to the knowledge of the gospel of their Redeemer, which was ministered unto their fathers by him; wherefore, they shall come to the knowledge of their Redeemer and the very points of his doctrine, that they may know how to come unto him and be saved.

And then at that day will they not rejoice and give praise unto their everlasting God, their rock and their salvation? Yea, at that day, will they not receive the strength and nourishment from the true vine? Yea, will they not come unto the true fold of God?

Behold, I say unto you, Yea; they shall be remembered again among the house of Israel; they shall be grafted in, being a natural branch of the olive tree, into the true olive tree.

And this is what our father meaneth; and he meaneth that it will not come to pass until after they are scattered by the Gentiles; and he meaneth that it shall come by way of the Gentiles, that the Lord may show his power unto the Gentiles, for the very cause that he shall be rejected of the Jews, or of the house of Israel.

18 Ngalokho-ke, ubaba akakhulumanga ngenzalo yethu kuphela, kodwa futhi nangayo yonke indlu ka-Israyeli, ekhombisa isivumelwano okufanele sigcwaliseke ngezinsuku zokugcina; leso sivumelwano iNkosi eyasenza kubaba u-Abrahama, ithi: Enzalweni yakho yonke imindeni yomhlaba iyobusiswa.

19 Futhi kwenzeka ukuthi mina, Nefi, ngakhuluma kabanzi nabo mayelana nalezi zinto; yebo, ngakhuluma kubo mayelana nokubuyiselwa kwamaJuda ngezinsuku zokugcina.

20 Futhi ngabalandisa amazwi ka-Isaya, awakhuluma mayelana nokubuyiselwa kwamaJuda, noma kwendlu ka-Israyeli; futhi emuva kokuthi esebuyiselwe ngeke esaphinde nanini axutshwe, noma aphinde ahlakazwe futhi. Futhi kwenzeka ukuthi ngakhuluma amaningi amazwi kubo abafowethu, kangankokuthi baxoliswa futhi nempela bazithoba phambi kweNkosi.

21 Futhi kwenzeka ukuthi baphinda bakhuluma kimi, bethi: Isho ukuthini lento ubaba ayibona ephusheni na? Sisho ukuthini isihlahla asibona na?

22 Futhi ngathi kubo: Kwakungumfanekiso womuthi wokuphila.

23 Futhi bathi kimi: Isho ukuthini induku yensimbi ubaba ayibona, leyo eyayiholeleka esihlahleni na?

24 Futhi ngathi kubo kwakuyizwi likaNkulunkulu; futhi labo ababeyolizwa izwi likaNkulunkulu, futhi babambelele baqine kulo, babengasoze balahleke nanini; futhi izilingo kanye nemicibisholo evuthayo yesitha ngeke kwabanqobela ekungazini, ukuze sibaholele le ekubhujisweni.

25 Ngalokho-ke, mina, Nefi, ngabanxusa ukuthi balinake izwi leNkosi; yebo, ngabanxusa ngawo wonke amandla omphefumulo wami, kanye nangalo lonke ulwazi lwami enganginalo, ukuthi balinake izwi likaNkulunkulu futhi bakhumbule ukugcina imiyalelo yakhe njalo kuzo zonke izinto.

26 Futhi bathi kimi: Usho ukuthini umfula wamanzi ubaba awubona na?

Wherefore, our father hath not spoken of our seed alone, but also of all the house of Israel, pointing to the covenant which should be fulfilled in the latter days; which covenant the Lord made to our father Abraham, saying: In thy seed shall all the kindreds of the earth be blessed.

And it came to pass that I, Nephi, spake much unto them concerning these things; yea, I spake unto them concerning the restoration of the Jews in the latter days.

And I did rehearse unto them the words of Isaiah, who spake concerning the restoration of the Jews, or of the house of Israel; and after they were restored they should no more be confounded, neither should they be scattered again. And it came to pass that I did speak many words unto my brethren, that they were pacified and did humble themselves before the Lord.

And it came to pass that they did speak unto me again, saying: What meaneth this thing which our father saw in a dream? What meaneth the tree which he saw?

And I said unto them: It was a representation of the tree of life.

And they said unto me: What meaneth the rod of iron which our father saw, that led to the tree?

And I said unto them that it was the word of God; and whoso would hearken unto the word of God, and would hold fast unto it, they would never perish; neither could the temptations and the fiery darts of the adversary overpower them unto blindness, to lead them away to destruction.

Wherefore, I, Nephi, did exhort them to give heed unto the word of the Lord; yea, I did exhort them with all the energies of my soul, and with all the faculty which I possessed, that they would give heed to the word of God and remember to keep his commandments always in all things.

And they said unto me: What meaneth the river of water which our father saw?

- 27 Futhi ngathi kubo amanzi lawo ubaba awabona kwakungukungcola; futhi umqondo wakhe wawuthatheke kakhulu ngezinye izinto kangangokuthi akakubonanga ukungcola kwamanzi.
- 28 Futhi ngathi kubo kwakungumhosha owesabekayo, owawuhlukanisa ababi emthini wokuphila, futhi ngokunjalo nakubo abangcwele baNkulunkulu.
- 29 Futhi ngathi kubo kwakungumfanekiso waleso sihogo esesabekayo, leso ingelosi eyathi kimi sasilungiselwe ababi.
- 30 Futhi ngathi kubo ubaba waphinda wabona ukuthi ukwahlulela ngokulunga kukaNkulunkulu kwabehlukanisa ababi kwabalungile; futhi nokukhanya kwakho kwakunjengo kukhanya kwelangabi lomlilo, elalenyukela kuNkulunkulu ingunaphakade, futhi lingenamkhawulo.
- 31 Futhi bathi kimi: Ngabe lento isho ukuhlushwa komzimba ezinsukwini zokuvivinywa, noma isho isimo sokugcina somphefumulo emuva kokufa komzimba wenyama, noma ngabe ikhuluma ngezinto ezingezesikhashana na?
- 32 Futhi kwenzeka ukuthi ngathi kubo kwakungumfanekiso wezinto zesikhashana kanye nezikamoya; ngokuba usuku luyeza lapho kufanele bahlulelwe ngokwemisebenzi yabo, yebo, ngisho imisebenzi leyo eyenziwa wumzimba wenyama ngezinsuku zokuvivinywa kwabo.
- 33 Ngalokho-ke, uma bengafela ebubini babo kufanele balahlwe futhi, ngokuphathelene nezinto zikamoya, lezo eziphathelene nokulunga; ngalokho-ke, kufanele baletwe bazoma phambi kukaNkulunkulu, ukuze bahlulelwe ngokwemisebenzi yabo; futhi uma imisebenzi yabo ibingeyokungcola kufanele ukuthi bangcolile; futhi uma bengcolile kufanele ukuthi bangekwazi ukuhlala embusweni kaNkulunkulu; uma kunjalo, umbuso kaNkulunkulu kufanele ungcole nawo futhi.
- 34 Kodwa bhekani, ngithi kini, umbuso kaNkulunkulu awungcolile, futhi akukho nto engcolileyo engangena embusweni kaNkulunkulu; ngalokho-ke kufanele ukuthi kube khona indawo yokungcola elungiselelwe lokho okungcolile.

And I said unto them that the water which my father saw was filthiness; and so much was his mind swallowed up in other things that he beheld not the filthiness of the water.

And I said unto them that it was an awful gulf, which separated the wicked from the tree of life, and also from the saints of God.

And I said unto them that it was a representation of that awful hell, which the angel said unto me was prepared for the wicked.

And I said unto them that our father also saw that the justice of God did also divide the wicked from the righteous; and the brightness thereof was like unto the brightness of a flaming fire, which ascendeth up unto God forever and ever, and hath no end.

And they said unto me: Doth this thing mean the torment of the body in the days of probation, or doth it mean the final state of the soul after the death of the temporal body, or doth it speak of the things which are temporal?

And it came to pass that I said unto them that it was a representation of things both temporal and spiritual; for the day should come that they must be judged of their works, yea, even the works which were done by the temporal body in their days of probation.

Wherefore, if they should die in their wickedness they must be cast off also, as to the things which are spiritual, which are pertaining to righteousness; wherefore, they must be brought to stand before God, to be judged of their works; and if their works have been filthiness they must needs be filthy; and if they be filthy it must needs be that they cannot dwell in the kingdom of God; if so, the kingdom of God must be filthy also.

But behold, I say unto you, the kingdom of God is not filthy, and there cannot any unclean thing enter into the kingdom of God; wherefore there must needs be a place of filthiness prepared for that which is filthy.

35 Futhi ikhona indawo elungisiwe, yebo, ngisho lesi hlobo esesabekayo engikhulume ngaso, futhi udeveli ungumlungisi waso; ngalokho-ke isimo sokugcina semiphefumulo yabantu ngukuhlala embusweni kaNkulunkulu, noma-ke kube wukulahlwa ngenxa yalokho kwahlulela ngokulunga engikhulume ngakho.

36 Ngalokho-ke, ababi bayenqatshwa kwabalungileyo, futhi ngokunjalo nakulowo muthi wokuphila, isithelo sawo esiyigugu elikhulu futhi esithandeka kakhulu ngaphezu kwazo zonke ezinye izithelo; yebo, futhi kuyisipho esikhulu kunazo zonke izipho zikaNkulunkulu. Futhi ngakhuluma ngalendlela kubafowethu. Amen.

And there is a place prepared, yea, even that awful hell of which I have spoken, and the devil is the preparator of it; wherefore the final state of the souls of men is to dwell in the kingdom of God, or to be cast out because of that justice of which I have spoken.

Wherefore, the wicked are rejected from the righteous, and also from that tree of life, whose fruit is most precious and most desirable above all other fruits; yea, and it is the greatest of all the gifts of God. And thus I spake unto my brethren. Amen.

1 Nephi 16

- 1 Manje kwenzeka ukuthi emva kokuthi mina, Nephi, sengiqedile ukukhuluma nabafowethu, bheka bathi kimi: Usitshela izinto ezinzima, ngaphezulu kokuthi thina singakwazi ukuzibezelela.
- 2 Futhi kwenzeka ukuthi ngathi kubo ngangazi ukuthi ngangikhulume izinto ezinzima ngokumelene nababi, ngokweqiniso; futhi abalungile angibabekanga cala, futhi ngafakaza ngokuthi bayophakanyiswa ngosuku lokugcina; ngalokho-ke, abanecala bathatha iqiniso ngokuthi linzima, ngokuba lidabula izibilini zabo ngqo.
- 3 Manje bafowethu, ukuba benilungile futhi nizimisele ukulalela iqiniso, futhi nilinake, ukuze nihambe ngobuqotho phambi kukaNkulunkulu, uma kunjalo beningenakuvungama ngenxa yeqiniso, nithi: Ukhuluma izinto ezilukhuni ngokumelene nathi.
- 4 Futhi kwenzeka ukuthi mina, Nephi, ngabanxusa abafowethu, ngayo yonke inkuthalo, ukuthi bagcine imiyalelo yeNkosi.
- 5 Futhi kwenzeka ukuthi nempela bazithoba phambi kweNkosi; kangangokuthi ngaba nokujabula kanye nethemba elikhulu ngabo, ukuthi bazohamba ezindleleni zokulunga.
- 6 Manje, zonke lezi zinto zashiwo futhi zenzeka ngesikhathi ubaba ehlala etendeni esigodini asibiza ngokuthi iLemuweli.
- 7 Futhi kwenzeka ukuthi mina, Nephi, ngathatha enye yamadodakazi ka-Ishmayeli ngayenza umfazi wami; futhi ngokunjalo, nabafowethu bathatha phakathi kwamadodakazi ka-Ishmayeli bawenza abafazi babo; futhi ngokunjalo noZoram wathatha indodakazi endala ka-Ishmayeli wayenza umfazi wakhe.
- 8 Futhi ngaleyondlela ubaba wabe eseyigcwalisile yonke imiyalelo yeNkosi ayenikezwe yona. Futhi phezu kwalokho, mina, Nephi, ngase ngibusisiwe kakhulu yiNkosi.
- 9 Futhi kwenzeka ukuthi izwi leNkosi lakhuluma kubaba ngobusuku, futhi lamyala ukuthi ngakusasa kwakufanele aqhubeke nohambo lwakhe oluya ehlane.

1 Nephi 16

And now it came to pass that after I, Nephi, had made an end of speaking to my brethren, behold they said unto me: Thou hast declared unto us hard things, more than we are able to bear.

And it came to pass that I said unto them that I knew that I had spoken hard things against the wicked, according to the truth; and the righteous have I justified, and testified that they should be lifted up at the last day; wherefore, the guilty taketh the truth to be hard, for it cutteth them to the very center.

And now my brethren, if ye were righteous and were willing to hearken to the truth, and give heed unto it, that ye might walk uprightly before God, then ye would not murmur because of the truth, and say: Thou speakest hard things against us.

And it came to pass that I, Nephi, did exhort my brethren, with all diligence, to keep the commandments of the Lord.

And it came to pass that they did humble themselves before the Lord; insomuch that I had joy and great hopes of them, that they would walk in the paths of righteousness.

Now, all these things were said and done as my father dwelt in a tent in the valley which he called Lemuel.

And it came to pass that I, Nephi, took one of the daughters of Ishmael to wife; and also, my brethren took of the daughters of Ishmael to wife; and also Zoram took the eldest daughter of Ishmael to wife.

And thus my father had fulfilled all the commandments of the Lord which had been given unto him. And also, I, Nephi, had been blessed of the Lord exceedingly.

And it came to pass that the voice of the Lord spake unto my father by night, and commanded him that on the morrow he should take his journey into the wilderness.

- 10 Futhi kwenzeka ukuthi ngesikhathi ubaba evuka ekuseni, futhi eya emnyango wetende, wamangala kakhulu ukubona phansi ibhola eliyindilinga elakhiwe ngobuciko; futhi lalakhiwe ngethushi elicolekile. Ngaphakathi kulo ibhola kwakukhona izinti ezimbili; olunye lwalukhomba indlela lapho kwakufanele thina siye ngakhona ehlane.
- 11 Futhi kwenzeka ukuthi saqoqela ndawonye zonke izinto okwakufanele sizithwale siya ehlane, kanye nayo yonke insalela yomphako wethu iNkosi eyayisinike wona; futhi sathatha imbewu enhlobonhlobo ukuze siyithwale siye ehlane.
- 12 Futhi kwenzeka ukuthi sathatha amatende ethu futhi semuka saya ehlane, ngaphesheya komfula uLamani.
- 13 Futhi kwenzeka ukuthi sahamba ibanga lezinsuku ezine, saqonda ngase ningizimu engasempumalanga, saphinda samisa amatende ethu futhi; futhi sayibiza lendawo ngegama elithi iShazeri.
- 14 Futhi kwenzeka ukuthi sathatha iminsalo kanye nemicibisholo yethu, sahamba saqhubekela ehlane ukuyozingelela imindeni yethu ukudla; futhi emva kokuthi sesiyizingelele imindeni yethu ukudla saphinda sabuyela kuyo imindeni yethu ehlane, endaweni yaseShazeri. Saphinda futhi sahamba saqhubeka ehlane, silandela yona leyo ndlela, sizigcina kulezozinxenye ezazivundile kakhulu zehlane, ezazisogwini maduzane noLwandle oluBomvu.
- 15 Futhi kwenzeka ukuthi sahamba ibanga lezinsuku eziningi, sizingela ukudla endleleni, ngeminsalo nangemicibisholo yethu futhi nangamatshe ethu kanye nezihlilingi zethu.
- 16 Futhi salandela indlela ngokuyalelwa yibhola, elasiholela kuleyo nxenye yehlane eyayivunde kakhulu.
- 17 Futhi emva kokuthi sesihambe ibanga lezinsuku eziningi, samisa amatende ethu okwesikhashana, ukuze sithole ukuphumula futhi siphinde sithole ukudla kwemindeni yethu.

And it came to pass that as my father arose in the morning, and went forth to the tent door, to his great astonishment he beheld upon the ground a round ball of curious workmanship; and it was of fine brass. And within the ball were two spindles; and the one pointed the way whither we should go into the wilderness.

And it came to pass that we did gather together whatsoever things we should carry into the wilderness, and all the remainder of our provisions which the Lord had given unto us; and we did take seed of every kind that we might carry into the wilderness.

And it came to pass that we did take our tents and depart into the wilderness, across the river Laman.

And it came to pass that we traveled for the space of four days, nearly a south-southeast direction, and we did pitch our tents again; and we did call the name of the place Shazer.

And it came to pass that we did take our bows and our arrows, and go forth into the wilderness to slay food for our families; and after we had slain food for our families we did return again to our families in the wilderness, to the place of Shazer. And we did go forth again in the wilderness, following the same direction, keeping in the most fertile parts of the wilderness, which were in the borders near the Red Sea.

And it came to pass that we did travel for the space of many days, slaying food by the way, with our bows and our arrows and our stones and our slings.

And we did follow the directions of the ball, which led us in the more fertile parts of the wilderness.

And after we had traveled for the space of many days, we did pitch our tents for the space of a time, that we might again rest ourselves and obtain food for our families.

- 18 Futhi kwenzeka ukuthi ngesikhathi mina, Nepi, ngiqhubekela phambili ngiyozingela ukudla, bheka, ngawephula umnsalo wami, owawakhiwe ngensimbi ecolokile; futhi emva kokuthi sengiwephulile umnsalo wami, bheka, abafowethu bangithukuthelela ngenxa yokulahlekelwa wumnsalo wami, ngokuba asitholanga kudla.
- 19 Futhi kwenzeka ukuthi sabuyela emuva emindenini yethu ngaphandle kokudla, futhi becobekile kakhulu, ngenxa yohambo lwabo, bahlupheka kakhulu ngokweswela ukudla.
- 20 Futhi kwenzeka ukuthi uLamani noLemuweli kanye namadodana ka-Ishmayeli baqala ukuvungama kakhulu, ngenxa yezinhlopheko zabo kanye nezinkathazo ehlane; futhi ngokunjalo nobaba waqala ukuyivungamela iNkosi uNkulunkulu wakhe; yebo, futhi bonke babedabukile kakhulu, kangangokuthi bayivungamela iNkosi.
- 21 Manje kwenzeka ukuthi mina, Nepi, sengihlushwe ngabafowethu ngenxa yokulahlekelwa wumnsalo wami, futhi eyabo iminsalo ilahlekelwe wukunwebeka kwayo, kwaqala ukuthi kube nzima kakhulu, yebo, kangangoba asikwazanga ukuthola ukudla.
- 22 Futhi kwenzeka ukuthi mina, Nepi, ngakhuluma kakhulu nabafowethu, ngoba base bezenze lukhuni izinhliziyi zabo futhi, ngisho nokuyisola iNkosi uNkulunkulu wabo.
- 23 Futhi kwenzeka ukuthi mina, Nepi, ngenza umnsalo ngokhuni, kanye nomcibisholo ngenduku eqondile; ngalokho-ke, ngahloma ngomnsalo kanye nangomcibisholo, ngesihlilingi kanye nangamatshe. Futhi ngase ngithi kubaba: Ngizoya ngakuphi ukuze ngithole ukudla na?
- 24 Futhi kwenzeka ukuthi wabuza eNkosini, ngokuba base bezithobile ngenxa yamazwi ami; ngokuba ngakhuluma eziningi izinto kubo ngamandla ami onke.
- 25 Futhi kwenzeka ukuthi izwi leNkosi lafika kubaba; futhi ngempela wathotshiswa ngenxa yokuyivungamela iNkosi, kangangokuthi wehliswa kakhulu ngisho nangokudabuka okukhulu.

And it came to pass that as I, Nephi, went forth to slay food, behold, I did break my bow, which was made of fine steel; and after I did break my bow, behold, my brethren were angry with me because of the loss of my bow, for we did obtain no food.

And it came to pass that we did return without food to our families, and being much fatigued, because of their journeying, they did suffer much for the want of food.

And it came to pass that Laman and Lemuel and the sons of Ishmael did begin to murmur exceedingly, because of their sufferings and afflictions in the wilderness; and also my father began to murmur against the Lord his God; yea, and they were all exceedingly sorrowful, even that they did murmur against the Lord.

Now it came to pass that I, Nephi, having been afflicted with my brethren because of the loss of my bow, and their bows having lost their springs, it began to be exceedingly difficult, yea, insomuch that we could obtain no food.

And it came to pass that I, Nephi, did speak much unto my brethren, because they had hardened their hearts again, even unto complaining against the Lord their God.

And it came to pass that I, Nephi, did make out of wood a bow, and out of a straight stick, an arrow; wherefore, I did arm myself with a bow and an arrow, with a sling and with stones. And I said unto my father: Whither shall I go to obtain food?

And it came to pass that he did inquire of the Lord, for they had humbled themselves because of my words; for I did say many things unto them in the energy of my soul.

And it came to pass that the voice of the Lord came unto my father; and he was truly chastened because of his murmuring against the Lord, insomuch that he was brought down into the depths of sorrow.

- 26 Futhi kwenzeka ukuthi izwi leNkosi lathi kuye: Buka kulo ibhola, bese ubheka izinto ezibhaliwe.
- 27 Futhi kwenzeka ukuthi ngesikhathi ubaba ebona izinto ezazibhalwe kulo ibhola, waba nokwesaba kanye nokuthuthumela okukhulu, futhi ngokunjalo nabafowethu namadodana ka-Ishmayeli kanye nabafazi bethu.
- 28 Futhi kwenzeka ukuthi mina, Nepi, ngabona izinkomba lezo ezazisebholeni, ukuthi zazisebenza ngokokholo nenkuthalo kanye nangokuzinaka esasikunikeza kuzo.
- 29 Futhi phezu kwalokho kwakubhalwe kuzo umbhalo omusha, okwakulula ukuwufunda, owawusinika ukuqonda maqondana nezindlela zeNkosi; futhi wawubhalwa futhi ushintshwe izikhathi ngezikhathi, ngokokholo kanye nenkuthalo esasiyinikeza wona. Futhi ngalendlela siyabona ukuthi ngezinto ezincane iNkosi ingaletha izinto ezinkulu.
- 30 Futhi kwenzeka ukuthi mina, Nepi, ngahamba ngaya phezulu esicongweni sentaba, njengokuyalelwa okwakunikezwe kulo ibhola.
- 31 Futhi kwenzeka ukuthi ngabulala izilwane zasendle, kangangokuthi nempela ngakuthola ukudla kwemindeni yethu.
- 32 Futhi kwenzeka ukuthi ngabuyela ematendeni ethu, ngithwele izilwane lezo engangizibulele; manje ngesikhathi bebona ukuthi ngase ngikutholile ukudla, yaba nkulu kangakanani injabulo yabo! Futhi kwenzeka ukuthi bazithoba phambi kweNkosi, futhi bayibonga.
- 33 Futhi kwenzeka ukuthi saphinda futhi sathatha uhambo lwethu, sihamba cishe ngayo leyondlela efanayo njengasekuqaleni; futhi emva kokuthi sesihambe ibanga lezinsuku eziningi samisa amatende ethu futhi, ukuze sithi ukuhlala isikhashana.
- 34 Futhi kwenzeka ukuthi u-Ishmayeli wafa, futhi wangcwatshwa endaweni eyayibizwa ngokuthi iNahomu.

And it came to pass that the voice of the Lord said unto him: Look upon the ball, and behold the things which are written.

And it came to pass that when my father beheld the things which were written upon the ball, he did fear and tremble exceedingly, and also my brethren and the sons of Ishmael and our wives.

And it came to pass that I, Nephi, beheld the pointers which were in the ball, that they did work according to the faith and diligence and heed which we did give unto them.

And there was also written upon them a new writing, which was plain to be read, which did give us understanding concerning the ways of the Lord; and it was written and changed from time to time, according to the faith and diligence which we gave unto it. And thus we see that by small means the Lord can bring about great things.

And it came to pass that I, Nephi, did go forth up into the top of the mountain, according to the directions which were given upon the ball.

And it came to pass that I did slay wild beasts, inasmuch that I did obtain food for our families.

And it came to pass that I did return to our tents, bearing the beasts which I had slain; and now when they beheld that I had obtained food, how great was their joy! And it came to pass that they did humble themselves before the Lord, and did give thanks unto him.

And it came to pass that we did again take our journey, traveling nearly the same course as in the beginning; and after we had traveled for the space of many days we did pitch our tents again, that we might tarry for the space of a time.

And it came to pass that Ishmael died, and was buried in the place which was called Nahom.

- 35 Futhi kwenzeka ukuthi amadodakazi ka-Ishmayeli akhala kakhulu, ngenxa yokulahlekelwa nguyise, futhi nangenxa yezinkathazo zabo ehlane; futhi bamvungamela ubaba, ngoba wayebakhiphe ezweni laseJerusalema, bethi: Ubaba usefile; yebo, futhi sesidwanguze kakhulu ehlane, futhi sesihlushwe yizinkathazo eziningi, yindlala, wukoma, kanye nokucobeka; futhi emva kwakho konke lokhu kuhlupheka kufanele sibhubhe lapha ehlane yindlala.
- 36 Futhi bavungama ngalendlela kubaba, futhi ngokujalo nakimi; futhi babefuna ukubuyela eJerusalema futhi.
- 37 Futhi uLamani wathi kuLemuweli ngokunjalo nakuwo amadodana ka-Ishmayeli: Bhekani, masimbulale ubaba, futhi ngokunjalo nomfowethu uNefi, osezithathele ukuthi abe wumbusi kanye nomfundisi wethu, esingabafowabo abadala.
- 38 Manje, uthi iNkosi ikhulume naye, futhi phezu kwalokho uthi izingelosi zimfundisile. Kodwa bhekani, siyazi ukuthi uqamba amanga kithi; futhi usitshela lezi zinto, futhi wenza eziningi izinto ngobuqili bakhe obunamacebo, ukuze akhohlise amehlo ethu, ecabanga, mhlawumbe, ukuthi angasiholela kude ehlane elithize elingejwayelekile; futhi emva kokuthi esasiholele kude, usecabange ukuthi azenze inkosi kanye nombusi phezu kwethu, ukuze enze kithi ngokwentando nangokwesifiso sakhe. Futhi umfowethu uLamani waziphehla ngalendlela izinhliziyi zabo ukuze bathukuthele.
- 39 Futhi kwenzeka ukuthi iNkosi yayinathi, yebo, ngisho izwi leNkosi lafika futhi lakhuluma amaningi amazwi kubo, futhi labajezisa kakhulu; futhi emva kokuthotshiswa ngezwi leNkosi nempela bakuyeka ukuthukuthela kwabo, futhi baphenduka ezonweni zabo, kangangokuthi iNkosi yasibusisa futhi ngokudla, ukuze singabhubhi.

And it came to pass that the daughters of Ishmael did mourn exceedingly, because of the loss of their father, and because of their afflictions in the wilderness; and they did murmur against my father, because he had brought them out of the land of Jerusalem, saying: Our father is dead; yea, and we have wandered much in the wilderness, and we have suffered much affliction, hunger, thirst, and fatigue; and after all these sufferings we must perish in the wilderness with hunger.

And thus they did murmur against my father, and also against me; and they were desirous to return again to Jerusalem.

And Laman said unto Lemuel and also unto the sons of Ishmael: Behold, let us slay our father, and also our brother Nephi, who has taken it upon him to be our ruler and our teacher, who are his elder brethren.

Now, he says that the Lord has talked with him, and also that angels have ministered unto him. But behold, we know that he lies unto us; and he tells us these things, and he worketh many things by his cunning arts, that he may deceive our eyes, thinking, perhaps, that he may lead us away into some strange wilderness; and after he has led us away, he has thought to make himself a king and a ruler over us, that he may do with us according to his will and pleasure. And after this manner did my brother Laman stir up their hearts to anger.

And it came to pass that the Lord was with us, yea, even the voice of the Lord came and did speak many words unto them, and did chasten them exceedingly; and after they were chastened by the voice of the Lord they did turn away their anger, and did repent of their sins, insomuch that the Lord did bless us again with food, that we did not perish.

1 Nepi 17

- 1 Futhi kwenzeka ukuthi saphinda futhi sathatha uhambo lwethu ehlane; futhi sahamba cishe sayela ngasempumalanga kusukela ngaleso sikhathi kuya phambili. Sahamba futhi sadlula kweziningi izinkathazo ehlane; futhi abafazi bethu bazala abantwana khona ehlane.
- 2 Futhi zazizinkulu izibusiso zeNkosi kithi, njengokuthi ngesikhathi siphila ngenyama eluhlaza ehlane, abafazi bethu bancelisa kakhulu abantwana babo, futhi babeqinile, yebo, babenjenga madoda imbala; futhi baqala ukumelana nohambo lwabo ngaphandle kokuvungama.
- 3 Ngakho-ke siyabona ukuthi imiyalelo kaNkulunkulu kufanele igcwaliseke. Futhi uma kungukuthi abantwana babantu bayayigcina imiyalelo kaNkulunkulu yena uyabondla, futhi abaqinise, futhi abanike amasu okuthi bakwazi ukufeza into leyo abayale ngayo; ngalokho-ke, wasinika amasu ngesikhathi sisahlezi isikhashana ehlane.
- 4 Futhi sahlala isikhashana isikhathi esiyiminyaka eminingi, yebo, ngisho iminyaka eyisishiyagalombili ehlane.
- 5 Futhi safika ezweni esalibiza ngokuthi iNala, ngenxa yobuningi bezithelo zalo futhi ngokunjalo noju lwasendle; futhi zonke lezi zinto zazilungiswe yiNkosi ukuze singabhubhi. Futhi sabona ulwandle, esalubiza ngokuthi i-Ireyantumu, okungukuthi, uma kuhunyushwa, ngamanzi amaningi.
- 6 Futhi kwenzeka ukuthi samisa amatende ethu eduze kogu lolwandle; futhi naphezu kokuthi sase sihlushwe eziningi izinkathazo kanye nobuningi ubunzima, yebo, ngisho kangangothi singeke sakubhala konke, sathokoza kakhulu ngesikhathi sesifika ogwini lolwandle; futhi sayibiza lendawo ngokuthi iNala; ngenxa yobuningi bezithelo zayo.
- 7 Futhi kwenzeka ukuthi emva kokuthi mina, Nepi, sengihlale ezweni leNala isikhathi esiyizinsuku eziningi, izwi leNkosi lafika kimi, lithi: Vuka, futhi uye entabeni. Futhi kwenzeka ukuthi ngavuka ngahamba ngakhuphukela entabeni, futhi ngakhala eNkosini.

1 Nepi 17

And it came to pass that we did again take our journey in the wilderness; and we did travel nearly eastward from that time forth. And we did travel and wade through much affliction in the wilderness; and our women did bear children in the wilderness.

And so great were the blessings of the Lord upon us, that while we did live upon raw meat in the wilderness, our women did give plenty of suck for their children, and were strong, yea, even like unto the men; and they began to bear their journeyings without murmurings.

And thus we see that the commandments of God must be fulfilled. And if it so be that the children of men keep the commandments of God he doth nourish them, and strengthen them, and provide means whereby they can accomplish the thing which he has commanded them; wherefore, he did provide means for us while we did sojourn in the wilderness.

And we did sojourn for the space of many years, yea, even eight years in the wilderness.

And we did come to the land which we called Bountiful, because of its much fruit and also wild honey; and all these things were prepared of the Lord that we might not perish. And we beheld the sea, which we called Irreantum, which, being interpreted, is many waters.

And it came to pass that we did pitch our tents by the seashore; and notwithstanding we had suffered many afflictions and much difficulty, yea, even so much that we cannot write them all, we were exceedingly rejoiced when we came to the seashore; and we called the place Bountiful, because of its much fruit.

And it came to pass that after I, Nephi, had been in the land of Bountiful for the space of many days, the voice of the Lord came unto me, saying: Arise, and get thee into the mountain. And it came to pass that I arose and went up into the mountain, and cried unto the Lord.

- 8 Futhi kwenzeka ukuthi iNkosi yakhuluma kimi, ithi: Yakha umkhumbi, ngendlela leyo engizokukhombisa yona, ukuze ngithwale abantu bakini bawele lamanzi.
- 9 Futhi mina ngathi: Nkosi, yikuphi lapho ngingaya ngakhona ukuze ngithole insimbi esatshe ngiyincibilikise, ukuze ngenze amathuluzi okwakha umkhumbi ngendlela leyo ongikhombise yona na?
- 10 Futhi kwenzeka ukuthi iNkosi yangitshela ukuthi kungaphi lapho ngingaya khona ukuze ngithole itshe elisansimbi ukuze ngakhe amathuluzi.
- 11 Futhi kwenzeka ukuthi mina, Nefi, ngakha izifutho zokuvuthela umlilo, ngezikhumba zezilwane; futhi emva kokuthi sengizakhile izifutho, ukuze ngazo ngivuthele umlilo, ngabe sengishaya amatshe amabili ukuze ngenze umlilo.
- 12 Ngokuba iNkosi kuze kube manje yayingakaze isivumele ukuthi sibase umlilo omkhulu, ngesikhathi sasihamba ehlane; ngokuba yathi: Ngiyokwenza ukudla kwenu kubemtoti, ukuze ningakupheki;
- 13 Futhi phezu kwalokho ngiyokuba wukukhanya kwenu ehlane; futhi ngiyonilungisela indlela phambi kwenu, uma kungukuthi niyoyigcina imiyalelo yami; ngalokho-ke, kangangoba niyoyigcina imiyalelo yami niyoholelwa ezweni lesethembiso; futhi niyokwazi ukuthi kungenxa yami ukuthi nyaholwa.
- 14 Yebo, futhi iNkosi yaphinde yasho ukuthi: Emva kokuthi senifikile ezweni lesethembiso, niyokwazi ukuthi mina, iNkosi, nginguNkulunkulu; futhi nokuthi mina, iNkosi, nganikhulula ekubhujisweni; yebo, nokuthi mina ngempela nganikhipha ezweni laseJerusalema.
- 15 Ngalokho-ke, mina, Nefi, ngazabalaza ukugcina imiyalelo yeNkosi, futhi ngabanxusa abafowethu ukuthi bathembeke kanye nokuthi bakhuthale.
- 16 Futhi kwenzeka ukuthi ngawenza amathuluzi netshe elisansimbi lelo engalincibilikisa edwaleni.
- 17 Futhi ngesikhathi abafowethu bebona ukuthi ngase ngizokwakha umkhumbi, baqala ukungivungamela, bethi: Umfowethu uyisiwula, ngokuba ucabanga ukuthi angakha umkhumbi; yebo, futhi ucabanga ukuthi angawela lamanzi amaningi.

And it came to pass that the Lord spake unto me, saying: Thou shalt construct a ship, after the manner which I shall show thee, that I may carry thy people across these waters.

And I said: Lord, whither shall I go that I may find ore to molten, that I may make tools to construct the ship after the manner which thou hast shown unto me?

And it came to pass that the Lord told me whither I should go to find ore, that I might make tools.

And it came to pass that I, Nephi, did make a bellows wherewith to blow the fire, of the skins of beasts; and after I had made a bellows, that I might have wherewith to blow the fire, I did smite two stones together that I might make fire.

For the Lord had not hitherto suffered that we should make much fire, as we journeyed in the wilderness; for he said: I will make thy food become sweet, that ye cook it not;

And I will also be your light in the wilderness; and I will prepare the way before you, if it so be that ye shall keep my commandments; wherefore, inasmuch as ye shall keep my commandments ye shall be led towards the promised land; and ye shall know that it is by me that ye are led.

Yea, and the Lord said also that: After ye have arrived in the promised land, ye shall know that I, the Lord, am God; and that I, the Lord, did deliver you from destruction; yea, that I did bring you out of the land of Jerusalem.

Wherefore, I, Nephi, did strive to keep the commandments of the Lord, and I did exhort my brethren to faithfulness and diligence.

And it came to pass that I did make tools of the ore which I did molten out of the rock.

And when my brethren saw that I was about to build a ship, they began to murmur against me, saying: Our brother is a fool, for he thinketh that he can build a ship; yea, and he also thinketh that he can cross these great waters.

- 18 Futhi abafowethu bangisola ngalendlela, futhi babenesifiso sokuthi bona bangasebenzi, ngokuba babengakholwa ukuthi mina ngangingawakha umkhumbi; futhi babengakholwa ukuthi ngangithunywe yiNkosi.
- 19 Manje kwenzeka ukuthi mina, Nefi, ngadabuka kakhulu ngenxa yobulukhuni bezinhliziyiyo zabo; manje ngesikhathi bebona ukuthi ngasengiqala ukudabuka bajabula ezinhliziyweni zabo, kangangokuthi bathokoza ngami, bethi: Besazi ukuthi awunakukwazi ukwakha umkhumbi, ngokuba besazi ukuthi awunawo umqondo okhaliphile; ngalokho-ke, awunakukwazi ukufeza umsebenzi omkhulu kangaka.
- 20 Futhi ufana nobaba, oholwa yimibono yobuwula yenhliziyiyo yakhe; yebo, usiholile wasikhipha ezweni laseJerusalema, futhi sesizulazule ehlane yonke leminyaka eminingi; futhi abafazi bethu bashikashikekile, bekhulelwe; futhi bazale izingane ehlane futhi bahlupheka kuzo zonke izinto, ngaphandle kokufa; futhi bekuyoba ngcono ukuthi bebefile ngaphambi kokuthi baphume eJerusalema kunokuthi bahlupheke ngalezi zinkathazo.
- 21 Bheka, leminyaka eminingi sihluphekile ehlane, okuyisikhathi engabe sithokozele lokho esinakho kanye nezwe eliyifa lethu; yebo, futhi ngabe sijabule.
- 22 Futhi siyazi ukuthi abantu ababesezweni laseJerusalema kwakungabantu abalungile; ngokuba bayigcina imithetho kanye nezahlulelo zeNkosi, kanye nayo yonke imiyalelo yayo, ngokomthetho kaMose; ngalokho-ke, siyazi ukuthi bangabantu abalungile; futhi ubaba ubahlulele, futhi wasiholela kude ngenxa yokuthi salalela amazwi akhe; yebo, futhi nomfowethu ufana naye. Futhi kungalendlela yokukhuluma abafowethu abakhononda futhi basivungamela ngayo.
- 23 Futhi kwenzeka ukuthi mina, Nefi, ngakhuluma kubo, ngithi: Niyakholwa yini ukuthi obaba bethu, ababengabantwana bakwa-Israyeli, babengaholwa bakhishwe ezandleni zamaGibithe ukuba babengalalelanga amazwi eNkosi na?
- 24 Yebo, nicabanga ukuthi babengakhishwa yini ebugqilini, ukuba iNkosi yayingathumelanga uMose ukuthi abakhiphe ebugqilini na?

And thus my brethren did complain against me, and were desirous that they might not labor, for they did not believe that I could build a ship; neither would they believe that I was instructed of the Lord.

And now it came to pass that I, Nephi, was exceedingly sorrowful because of the hardness of their hearts; and now when they saw that I began to be sorrowful they were glad in their hearts, insomuch that they did rejoice over me, saying: We knew that ye could not construct a ship, for we knew that ye were lacking in judgment; wherefore, thou canst not accomplish so great a work.

And thou art like unto our father, led away by the foolish imaginations of his heart; yea, he hath led us out of the land of Jerusalem, and we have wandered in the wilderness for these many years; and our women have toiled, being big with child; and they have borne children in the wilderness and suffered all things, save it were death; and it would have been better that they had died before they came out of Jerusalem than to have suffered these afflictions.

Behold, these many years we have suffered in the wilderness, which time we might have enjoyed our possessions and the land of our inheritance; yea, and we might have been happy.

And we know that the people who were in the land of Jerusalem were a righteous people; for they kept the statutes and judgments of the Lord, and all his commandments, according to the law of Moses; wherefore, we know that they are a righteous people; and our father hath judged them, and hath led us away because we would hearken unto his words; yea, and our brother is like unto him. And after this manner of language did my brethren murmur and complain against us.

And it came to pass that I, Nephi, spake unto them, saying: Do ye believe that our fathers, who were the children of Israel, would have been led away out of the hands of the Egyptians if they had not hearkened unto the words of the Lord?

Yea, do ye suppose that they would have been led out of bondage, if the Lord had not commanded Moses that he should lead them out of bondage?

- 25 Manje niyazi ukuthi abantwana bakwa-Israyeli babe sebugqilini; futhi niyazi ukuthi babe thweswe imisebenzi, okwakunzima ngisho ukuthi bayithwale; ngalokho-ke, niyazi ukuthi kwakufanele ukuthi kwakuyinto enhle kubo, ukuthi bakhishwe ebugqilini.
- 26 Manje niyazi ukuthi uMose wayeyalwe yiNkosi ukwenza lowo msebenzi omkhulu; futhi niyazi ukuthi ngezwi lakhe amanzi oLwandle oluBomvu ahlukana aya ngapha nangapha, futhi bawela emhlabathini owomileyo.
- 27 Kodwa niyazi ukuthi amaGibithe aminza oLwandle oluBomvu, lawo ayengamabutho kaFaro.
- 28 Futhi phezu kwalokho niyazi ukuthi bondliwa ngemana ehlane.
- 29 Yebo, futhi phezu kwalokho niyazi ukuthi uMose, ngezwi lakhe ngamandla kaNkulunkulu ayekuye, walishaya idwala, futhi lapho kwaphuma amanzi, ukuze abantwana bakwa-Israyeli bacime ukoma kwabo.
- 30 Futhi naphezu kokuthi beholwa, iNkosi uNkulunkulu wabo, uMkhululi wabo, ehamba phambi kwabo, ebahola emini futhi ebanikeza ukukhanya ebusuku, ebenzela zonke izinto ezazidingeka ukuthi umuntu azithole, bazenza lukhuni izinhliziyzo zabo futhi baphuphuthekisa imiqondo yabo, futhi bamthuka uMose kanye noNkulunkulu weqiniso ophilayo.
- 31 Futhi kwenzeka ukuthi ngezwi lakhe wababhubhisa; futhi ngezwi lakhe wabahola; futhi ngezwi lakhe wabenzela zonke izinto; futhi kwakungekho nto eyenziwa ngaphandle kokuthi kube ngezwi lakhe.
- 32 Futhi emva kokuthi sebewele umfula i-Jordani wabenza baba namandla ngokwanele ukuxosha abantwana balelozwe, yebo, ukubahlakazela ekubhujisweni.
- 33 Manje, nicabanga ukuthi abantwana balelozwe, labo ababesezweni lesethembiso, ababalekiswa ngobaba bethu, ngabe nicabanga ukuthi babelungile na? Bhekani, ngithi kini, Cha.
- 34 Ngabe nicabanga ukuthi obaba bethu babeyokhethwa ngaphezu kwabo ukuba babelungile na? Ngithi kini, Cha.

Now ye know that the children of Israel were in bondage; and ye know that they were laden with tasks, which were grievous to be borne; wherefore, ye know that it must needs be a good thing for them, that they should be brought out of bondage.

Now ye know that Moses was commanded of the Lord to do that great work; and ye know that by his word the waters of the Red Sea were divided hither and thither, and they passed through on dry ground.

But ye know that the Egyptians were drowned in the Red Sea, who were the armies of Pharaoh.

And ye also know that they were fed with manna in the wilderness.

Yea, and ye also know that Moses, by his word according to the power of God which was in him, smote the rock, and there came forth water, that the children of Israel might quench their thirst.

And notwithstanding they being led, the Lord their God, their Redeemer, going before them, leading them by day and giving light unto them by night, and doing all things for them which were expedient for man to receive, they hardened their hearts and blinded their minds, and reviled against Moses and against the true and living God.

And it came to pass that according to his word he did destroy them; and according to his word he did lead them; and according to his word he did do all things for them; and there was not any thing done save it were by his word.

And after they had crossed the river Jordan he did make them mighty unto the driving out of the children of the land, yea, unto the scattering them to destruction.

And now, do ye suppose that the children of this land, who were in the land of promise, who were driven out by our fathers, do ye suppose that they were righteous? Behold, I say unto you, Nay.

Do ye suppose that our fathers would have been more choice than they if they had been righteous? I say unto you, Nay.

35 Bhekani, iNkosi yazisa yonke inyama ngokufanayo; lowo olungile uyathandwa nguNkulunkulu. Kodwa bhekani, labantu bawenqaba wonke amazwi kaNkulunkulu, futhi base bevuthiwe ekoneni; futhi ulaka oluphelele lukaNkulunkulu lwaseluphezu kwabo; futhi iNkosi yaliqalekisa izwe ngokumelene nabo, futhi yalibusisela obaba bethu; yebo, yaliqalekisa ngokumelene nabo ukuze babhujiswe, futhi yalibusisela obaba bethu kangangoba bathola amandla phezu kwalo.

36 Bhekani, iNkosi idalile umhlaba ukuze kuhlalwe kuwo; futhi idalile abantwana bayo ukuze kube ngowabo.

37 Futhi ivusa isizwe esilungileyo, futhi ibhubhise izizwe zababi.

38 Futhi ihola abalungile ibayise emazweni ayigugu, futhi ababi ibabhubhise, futhi ibaqalekisele izwe ngenxa yabo.

39 Ibusa phezulu emazulwini, ngokuba ayisihlalo sayo sobukhosi, futhi lomhlaba uyisenabelo sezinyawo zayo.

40 Futhi iyabathanda labo abazoyenza ibe wuNkulunkulu wabo. Bhekani, yabathanda obaba bethu, futhi yenza isivumelwano nabo, yebo, ngisho no-Abrahama, no-Isaka, kanye noJakobe; futhi yazikhumbula izivumelwano eyazenza; ngalokhoke, yabakhipha ezweni laseGibithe.

41 Futhi yabaqondisa ehlane ngenduku yayo; ngokuba bazenza lukhuni izinhliziyi zabo, ngisho njengoba nani nenzile; futhi iNkosi yabaqondisa ngenxa yobubi babo. Yathumela izinyoka ezinomlilo ezindizayo phakathi kwabo; futhi emva kokuthi sebelunyiwe yalungisa indlela ukuze baphiliswe; futhi umsebenzi okwakufanele bawenze kwakungukuthi babuke; futhi ngenxa yokuba sobala kwaleyo ndlela, noma yokuba lula kwayo, baba baningi ababhubhayo.

42 Futhi bazenza lukhuni izinhliziyi zabo izikhathi ngezikhathi, futhi bamthuka uMose, futhi ngokunjalo noNkulunkulu; nokho, niyazi ukuthi baholelwa phambili ngamandla akhe angenakulinganiswa baya ezweni lesethembiso.

Behold, the Lord esteemeth all flesh in one; he that is righteous is favored of God. But behold, this people had rejected every word of God, and they were ripe in iniquity; and the fulness of the wrath of God was upon them; and the Lord did curse the land against them, and bless it unto our fathers; yea, he did curse it against them unto their destruction, and he did bless it unto our fathers unto their obtaining power over it.

Behold, the Lord hath created the earth that it should be inhabited; and he hath created his children that they should possess it.

And he raiseth up a righteous nation, and destroyeth the nations of the wicked.

And he leadeth away the righteous into precious lands, and the wicked he destroyeth, and curseth the land unto them for their sakes.

He ruleth high in the heavens, for it is his throne, and this earth is his footstool.

And he loveth those who will have him to be their God. Behold, he loved our fathers, and he covenanted with them, yea, even Abraham, Isaac, and Jacob; and he remembered the covenants which he had made; wherefore, he did bring them out of the land of Egypt.

And he did straiten them in the wilderness with his rod; for they hardened their hearts, even as ye have; and the Lord straitened them because of their iniquity. He sent fiery flying serpents among them; and after they were bitten he prepared a way that they might be healed; and the labor which they had to perform was to look; and because of the simplicity of the way, or the easiness of it, there were many who perished.

And they did harden their hearts from time to time, and they did revile against Moses, and also against God; nevertheless, ye know that they were led forth by his matchless power into the land of promise.

- 43 Manje, emva kwazo zonke lezi zinto, isikhathi sesifikile sokuthi babe ngababi, yebo, cishe sebeyavuthwa; futhi angazi kodwa sebeseduze nosuku lokubhujiswa; ngokuba ngiyazi ukuthi usuku kufanele lufike ukuthi babhujiswe, ngaphandle kwabambalwa kuphela, abayoholelwa ekuthunjweni.
- 44 Ngalokho-ke, iNkosi yayala ubaba ukuthi emuke aye ehlane; futhi amaJuda phezu kwalokho ayefuna ukuthatha impilo yakhe; yebo, futhi nani ngokunjalo nifuna ukuthatha impilo yakhe; ngalokho-ke, ningababulali ezinhliziyweni zenu futhi nani nifana nawo.
- 45 Niyashesha ukwenza okungalungile kodwa niyephuza ukukhumbula iNkosi uNkulunkulu wenu. Niyibonile ingelosi, futhi yakhuluma kini; yebo, nilizwile izwi layo izikhathi ngezikhathi; futhi ikhulumile kini ngezwi elincane elipholile, kodwa imizwa yenu ithuntubezekile, kangangoba anikwazanga ukuwezwa amazwi ayo; ngalokho-ke, ikhulume kini ngezwi lokuduma, elenza kuzamazame phansi sengathi kuzohlukana phakathi.
- 46 Futhi phezu kwalokho niyazi ukuthi ngamandla ezwi layo elikhulu ingenza ukuthi umhlaba udlule; yebo, futhi niyazi ukuthi ngezwi layo ingenza izindawo ezimangelengele zihleleke, futhi izindawo ezihlelekile zigeduke. O, pho, kungani, ukuthi nizenze lukhuni kangaka izinhliziyo zenu na?
- 47 Bhekani, umphefumulo wami udabukile ulusizi kakhulu ngenxa yenu, futhi inhliziyo yami ibuhlungu; ngiyesaba hleze niyoxoshwa ingunaphakade. Bhekani, ngigcwele uMoya kaNkulunkulu, kangangokuthi uhlaka lomzimba wami alusenamandla.

And now, after all these things, the time has come that they have become wicked, yea, nearly unto ripeness; and I know not but they are at this day about to be destroyed; for I know that the day must surely come that they must be destroyed, save a few only, who shall be led away into captivity.

Wherefore, the Lord commanded my father that he should depart into the wilderness; and the Jews also sought to take away his life; yea, and ye also have sought to take away his life; wherefore, ye are murderers in your hearts and ye are like unto them.

Ye are swift to do iniquity but slow to remember the Lord your God. Ye have seen an angel, and he spake unto you; yea, ye have heard his voice from time to time; and he hath spoken unto you in a still small voice, but ye were past feeling, that ye could not feel his words; wherefore, he has spoken unto you like unto the voice of thunder, which did cause the earth to shake as if it were to divide asunder.

And ye also know that by the power of his almighty word he can cause the earth that it shall pass away; yea, and ye know that by his word he can cause the rough places to be made smooth, and smooth places shall be broken up. O, then, why is it, that ye can be so hard in your hearts?

Behold, my soul is rent with anguish because of you, and my heart is pained; I fear lest ye shall be cast off forever. Behold, I am full of the Spirit of God, insomuch that my frame has no strength.

48 Manje kwenzeka ukuthi ngesikhathi sengiwakhulumile lamazwi bangithukuthelela, futhi babefuna ukungiphonsa ekujuleni kolwandle; futhi ngesikhathi beza ukuzongibamba ngakhuluma nabo, ngithi: Egameni likaSomandla uNkulunkulu, ngiyaniyala ukuthi ningangithinti, ngokuba ngigcwele amandla kaNkulunkulu, ngisho ukuba kushiswe inyama yami; futhi lowo oyongibamba uyobuna njengomhlanga owomileyo; futhi uyoba yize leze phambi kwamandla kaNkulunkulu, ngokuba uNkulunkulu uyomshaya.

49 Futhi kwenzeka ukuthi, mina, Nepi, ngathi kubo bangaphinde neze bamvungamele uyise; noma bangigodlele amandla abo, ngokuba uNkulunkulu ungiyalile ukuthi ngakhe umkhumbi.

50 Futhi ngathi kubo: Uma uNkulunkulu engiyalile ukuthi ngenze zonke izinto ngingakwazi ukuzenza. Uma engangiyala ukuthi ngithi kulamanzi, yiba yizwe, ayokuba yizwe; futhi uma ngingasho, kuyokwenzeka.

51 Manje, uma iNkosi inamandla amakhulu kangaka, futhi seyenze eziningi kangaka izimangaliso phakathi kwabantwana babantu, kungani ingenakungiyala, ukuthi ngakhe umkhumbi na?

52 Futhi kwenzeka ukuthi mina, Nepi, ngasho izinto eziningi kubafowethu, kangangokuthi bathotshiswa futhi ababange besakwazi ukubanga nami; futhi ababange besalokotha bangibamba noma bangithinta ngeminwe yabo, ngisho isikhathi esiyizinsuku eziningi. Manje abalokothanga bakwenza lokhu hleze babune phambi kwami, ayemakhulu amandla kaMoya kaNkulunkulu; futhi wasebenza kanjalo-ke phezu kwabo.

53 Futhi kwenzeka ukuthi iNkosi yathi kimi: Yelulela isandla sakho futhi kubo abafowenu, futhi abayikubuna phambi kwakho, kodwa ngiyobafaka ingebhe, kusho iNkosi, futhi lokhu ngiyokwenza, ukuze bazi ukuthi ngiyiNkosi uNkulunkulu wabo.

54 Futhi kwenzeka ukuthi ngaselulela kubo abafowethu isandla sami, futhi abazange babune phambi kwami; kodwa iNkosi yabavezelisa, ngisho nanjengokwezwi eyalikhulumile.

And now it came to pass that when I had spoken these words they were angry with me, and were desirous to throw me into the depths of the sea; and as they came forth to lay their hands upon me I spake unto them, saying: In the name of the Almighty God, I command you that ye touch me not, for I am filled with the power of God, even unto the consuming of my flesh; and whoso shall lay his hands upon me shall wither even as a dried reed; and he shall be as naught before the power of God, for God shall smite him.

And it came to pass that I, Nephi, said unto them that they should murmur no more against their father; neither should they withhold their labor from me, for God had commanded me that I should build a ship.

And I said unto them: If God had commanded me to do all things I could do them. If he should command me that I should say unto this water, be thou earth, it should be earth; and if I should say it, it would be done.

And now, if the Lord has such great power, and has wrought so many miracles among the children of men, how is it that he cannot instruct me, that I should build a ship?

And it came to pass that I, Nephi, said many things unto my brethren, insomuch that they were confounded and could not contend against me; neither durst they lay their hands upon me nor touch me with their fingers, even for the space of many days. Now they durst not do this lest they should wither before me, so powerful was the Spirit of God; and thus it had wrought upon them.

And it came to pass that the Lord said unto me: Stretch forth thine hand again unto thy brethren, and they shall not wither before thee, but I will shock them, saith the Lord, and this will I do, that they may know that I am the Lord their God.

And it came to pass that I stretched forth my hand unto my brethren, and they did not wither before me; but the Lord did shake them, even according to the word which he had spoken.

55 Manje, bathi: Sesiyasi ngokweqiniso ukuthi iNkosi inawe, ngokuba siyasi ukuthi ngamandla eNkosi lawa asivezelisayo. Futhi bawa phansi phambi kwami, futhi base bezongikhonza, kodwa angibavumelanga ngithi: Ngingumfowenu, yebo, ngisho umfowenu omncane; ngalokho-ke, khonzani iNkosi uNkulunkulu wenu, nihloniphe uyihlo nonyoko, ukuze izinsuku zenu zande ezweni iNkosi uNkulunkulu wenu eyoninika lona.

And now, they said: We know of a surety that the Lord is with thee, for we know that it is the power of the Lord that has shaken us. And they fell down before me, and were about to worship me, but I would not suffer them, saying: I am thy brother, yea, even thy younger brother; wherefore, worship the Lord thy God, and honor thy father and thy mother, that thy days may be long in the land which the Lord thy God shall give thee.

1 Nephi 18

- 1 Futhi kwenzeka ukuthi bayikhonza iNkosi, futhi bahamba nami; futhi sakha amapulangwe ngobuciko. Futhi iNkosi yangibonisa izikhathi ngezikhathi ukuthi kufanele ngiwasebenze kanjani amapulangwe omkhumbi.
- 2 Manje mina, Nephi, angizange ngiwasebenze amapulangwe ngendlela eyayifundwe ngabantu, noma ngakhe umkhumbi ngendlela yabantu; kodwa ngawakha ngendlela leyo iNkosi eyayingibonise ngayo, ngalokho-ke, kwakungeyona indlela yabantu.
- 3 Futhi mina, Nephi, ngakhuphukela entabeni njalo-njalo, futhi ngathandaza njalo-njalo eNkosini; ngalokho-ke iNkosi yangibonisa izinto ezinkulu.
- 4 Futhi kwenzeka ukuthi emva kokuthi sengiwuqedile umkhumbi, njengokwezwi leNkosi, abafowethu babona ukuthi wawumuhle, futhi nokuthi ukwenziwa kwawo kwakukuhle kakhulu; ngalokho-ke, bazithoba futhi phambi kweNkosi.
- 5 Futhi kwenzeka ukuthi izwi leNkosi lafika kubaba, lokuthi kufanele sivuke futhi sehlele ezansi emkhunjini.
- 6 Futhi kwenzeka ukuthi ngakusasa, emva kokuthi sesizilungisile zonke izinto, izithelo eziningi kanye nenyama ehlane kanye noju oluningi, kanye nakho konke okudingekayo njengalokhu iNkosi yayisiyalile, sehlela ezansi emkhunjini, nazo zonke izimpahla zethu nembewu yethu, kanye nakho konke esasifike nakho, wonke umuntu ngokweminyaka yakhe; ngalokho-ke, sonke sehla saya ezansi emkhunjini, nabafazi bethu kanye nezingane zethu.
- 7 Manje, ubaba wayesezele amadodana amabili ehlane; endala yayibizwa ngokuthi nguJakobe kanti encane kwakunguJosefa.
- 8 Futhi kwenzeka ukuthi emva kokuthi sonke sesehlile saya ezansi emkhunjini, futhi sesithathe imiphako yethu kanye nalezo zinto esasiyalwe ngazo, sathatha uhambo olwandle futhi saqhutshwa wumoya saya ezweni lesethembiso.

1 Nephi 18

And it came to pass that they did worship the Lord, and did go forth with me; and we did work timbers of curious workmanship. And the Lord did show me from time to time after what manner I should work the timbers of the ship.

Now I, Nephi, did not work the timbers after the manner which was learned by men, neither did I build the ship after the manner of men; but I did build it after the manner which the Lord had shown unto me; wherefore, it was not after the manner of men.

And I, Nephi, did go into the mount oft, and I did pray oft unto the Lord; wherefore the Lord showed unto me great things.

And it came to pass that after I had finished the ship, according to the word of the Lord, my brethren beheld that it was good, and that the workmanship thereof was exceedingly fine; wherefore, they did humble themselves again before the Lord.

And it came to pass that the voice of the Lord came unto my father, that we should arise and go down into the ship.

And it came to pass that on the morrow, after we had prepared all things, much fruits and meat from the wilderness, and honey in abundance, and provisions according to that which the Lord had commanded us, we did go down into the ship, with all our loading and our seeds, and whatsoever thing we had brought with us, every one according to his age; wherefore, we did all go down into the ship, with our wives and our children.

And now, my father had begat two sons in the wilderness; the elder was called Jacob and the younger Joseph.

And it came to pass after we had all gone down into the ship, and had taken with us our provisions and things which had been commanded us, we did put forth into the sea and were driven forth before the wind towards the promised land.

9 Futhi emva kokuthi sesiqhutshwe wumoya ibanga eliyizinsuku eziningi, bheka, abafowethu kanye namadodana ka-Ishmayeli futhi ngokunjalo nabafazi babo baqala ukuzijabulisa, kangangokuthi baqala ukugida, kanye nokuhlabela, futhi bakhuluma ngokukhulu ukwedelela, yebo, baze bakhohlwa nanokuthi imaphi amandla ayebalethe lapho; yebo, baphakama ngenxa yokwedelela okukhulu.

10 Futhi mina, Nefi, ngaqala ukwesaba kakhulu ukuthi hleze iNkosi isithukuthelele, futhi isishaye ngenxa yobubi bethu, nokuthi funa sigwinywe siye ekujuleni kolwandle; ngalokho-ke, mina, Nefi, ngaqala ukukhuluma nabo ngesikhulu isizotha; kodwa bheka bangithukuthelela, bethi: Ngeke sivume ukuthi umfowethu omncane abuse phezu kwethu.

11 Futhi kwenzeka ukuthi uLamani kanye noLemuweli bangithatha futhi bangibopha ngezintambo, futhi bangiphatha ngesikhulu isihluku; nokho, iNkosi yakuvumela lokho ukuze ikhombise amandla ayo, ekugcwaliseni amazwi ayo eyayiwakhulumile mayelana nababi.

12 Futhi kwenzeka ukuthi emva kokuthi sebengibophile kangangokuthi ngangingasakwazi nokunyakaza, inkombandlela, esasiyilungiselwe yiNkosi yama ukusebenza.

13 Ngalokho-ke, abazanga ukuthi kwakufanele bawugwedle umkhumbi bawuyise ngalaphi, kangangokuthi kwasuka isiphepho esikhulu, yebo, esikhulu futhi esesabekayo kakhulu isivunguvungu, futhi saqhutshwa saphindiswa emuva phezu kwamanzi ibanga eliyizinsuku ezintathu; futhi baqala ukwesaba kakhulu hleze baminze olwandle; nokho abazange bangiqaqe.

14 Futhi kwathi ngosuku lwesine, sisaqhutshwa sibhekiswa emuva, isivunguvungu saqala ukuba sibi kakhulu.

And after we had been driven forth before the wind for the space of many days, behold, my brethren and the sons of Ishmael and also their wives began to make themselves merry, insomuch that they began to dance, and to sing, and to speak with much rudeness, yea, even that they did forget by what power they had been brought thither; yea, they were lifted up unto exceeding rudeness.

And I, Nephi, began to fear exceedingly lest the Lord should be angry with us, and smite us because of our iniquity, that we should be swallowed up in the depths of the sea; wherefore, I, Nephi, began to speak to them with much soberness; but behold they were angry with me, saying: We will not that our younger brother shall be a ruler over us.

And it came to pass that Laman and Lemuel did take me and bind me with cords, and they did treat me with much harshness; nevertheless, the Lord did suffer it that he might show forth his power, unto the fulfilling of his word which he had spoken concerning the wicked.

And it came to pass that after they had bound me insomuch that I could not move, the compass, which had been prepared of the Lord, did cease to work.

Wherefore, they knew not whither they should steer the ship, insomuch that there arose a great storm, yea, a great and terrible tempest, and we were driven back upon the waters for the space of three days; and they began to be frightened exceedingly lest they should be drowned in the sea; nevertheless they did not loose me.

And on the fourth day, which we had been driven back, the tempest began to be exceedingly sore.

- 15 Futhi kwenzeka ukuthi sase sizogwinywa siye ekujuleni kolwandle. Futhi emva kokuthi sesiqhutshwe saya emuva phezu kwamanzi ibanga eliyizinsuku ezine, abafowethu baqala ukubona ukuthi izahlulelo zikaNkulunkulu zase ziphezu kwabo, futhi nokuthi kwakufanele babhubhe ngaphandle kokuthi baphenduke ebubini babo; ngalokho-ke, beza kimi, futhi bazixegisa izintambo ezazisezihlakaleni zami, futhi bheka zase zivuvukele kakhulu; futhi ngokunjalo namaqakala ami ayevuvukele kakhulu, babubukhulu ubuhlungu obabulapho.
- 16 Nokho, ngabheka kuNkulunkulu wami, futhi ngamdumisa usuku lonke; futhi angizange ngiyivungamele iNkosi ngenxa yezinkathazo zami.
- 17 Manje ubaba, uLehi, wayesho izinto eziningi kubo, futhi ngokunjalo nakuwo amadodana ka-Ishmayeli; kodwa, bheka, bafuthelana kakhulu besongela lowo owayengikhulumela; futhi abazali bami sebekhulile ngeminyaka, futhi sebezwe olukhulu usizi ngenxa yezingane zabo, behlela phansi, yebo, ngisho nasemibhedeni yabo yokugula.
- 18 Ngenxa yokudabuka kwabo kanye nosizi olukhulu, kanye nobubi babafowethu, basondezwa eduzane nokuba bafe ukuze bahlangane noNkulunkulu wabo; yebo, impunga yabo kwase kusondele ukuthi ilale phansi othulini; yebo, kwasekuseduze ngisho nokuthi balahlwe benosizi engcwabeni lamanzi.
- 19 Futhi uJakobe kanye noJosefa nabo, bebancane, besadinga ukondliwa okukhulu, badabuka ngenxa yezinkathazo zikanina; futhi ngokunjalo nomkami nezinyembezi kanye nemithandazo yakhe, futhi ngokunjalo nezingane zami, azizange zizithambise izinhliziyi zabafowethu ukuthi bangikhulule.
- 20 Futhi kwakungekho lutho ngaphandle kwamandla kaNkulunkulu, ayebasabisa ngokubhubha, ayengathambisa izinhliziyi zabo; ngalokho-ke, ngesikhathi bebona ukuthi kwase kusondele ukuthi bagwinywe bayoshona ezinzulwini zolwandle baphenduka ngaleyonto ababeyenzile, kangangokuthi bangikhulula.

And it came to pass that we were about to be swallowed up in the depths of the sea. And after we had been driven back upon the waters for the space of four days, my brethren began to see that the judgments of God were upon them, and that they must perish save that they should repent of their iniquities; wherefore, they came unto me, and loosed the bands which were upon my wrists, and behold they had swollen exceedingly; and also mine ankles were much swollen, and great was the soreness thereof.

Nevertheless, I did look unto my God, and I did praise him all the day long; and I did not murmur against the Lord because of mine afflictions.

Now my father, Lehi, had said many things unto them, and also unto the sons of Ishmael; but, behold, they did breathe out much threatenings against anyone that should speak for me; and my parents being stricken in years, and having suffered much grief because of their children, they were brought down, yea, even upon their sick-beds.

Because of their grief and much sorrow, and the iniquity of my brethren, they were brought near even to be carried out of this time to meet their God; yea, their grey hairs were about to be brought down to lie low in the dust; yea, even they were near to be cast with sorrow into a watery grave.

And Jacob and Joseph also, being young, having need of much nourishment, were grieved because of the afflictions of their mother; and also my wife with her tears and prayers, and also my children, did not soften the hearts of my brethren that they would loose me.

And there was nothing save it were the power of God, which threatened them with destruction, could soften their hearts; wherefore, when they saw that they were about to be swallowed up in the depths of the sea they repented of the thing which they had done, insomuch that they loosed me.

- 21 Futhi kwenzeka ukuthi emva kokuthi sebengikhululile, bheka, ngathatha inkombandlela, futhi nempela yasebenza njengoba ngangifisa. Futhi kwenzeka ukuthi ngathandaza eNkosini; futhi emva kokuthi sengithandazile umoya wanqamuka, kanye nesiphapho sanqamuka, futhi kwaba khona ukuthula okukhulu.
- 22 Futhi kwenzeka ukuthi mina, Nefi, ngawuqondisa umkhumbi, kangangoba saqhubekela ezweni lesethembiso.
- 23 Futhi kwenzeka ukuthi emva kokuthi sesihambe ibanga eliyizinsuku eziningi nempela safika ezweni lesethembiso; futhi saqhubekela phambili ezweni, futhi samisa amatende ethu; futhi salibiza ngezwe lesethembiso.
- 24 Futhi kwenzeka ukuthi nempela saqala salima umhlabathi, futhi saqala ukutshala imbewu; yebo, nempela sayifaka yonke imbewu yethu emhlabathini, esasifike nayo siphuma ezweni laseJerusalema. Futhi kwenzeka ukuthi yamila kahle kakhulu; ngalokho-ke sabusiswa ngenala.
- 25 Futhi kwenzeka ukuthi sathola khona ezweni lesethembiso, ngesikhathi sihamba ehlane, ukuthi kwakukhona izilwane ehlathini ezinhlobonhlobo, inkomazi kanye nenkabi, kanye nembongolo kanye nehhashi, nembuzi kanye nembuzi yasendle, kanye nazo zonke izinhlobo zezilwane zasendle, ezaziwusizo kubantu. Futhi sathola yonke inhlobo yensimbi esatshe, eyegolide neyesiliva, kanye neyethusi.

And it came to pass after they had loosed me, behold, I took the compass, and it did work whither I desired it. And it came to pass that I prayed unto the Lord; and after I had prayed the winds did cease, and the storm did cease, and there was a great calm.

And it came to pass that I, Nephi, did guide the ship, that we sailed again towards the promised land.

And it came to pass that after we had sailed for the space of many days we did arrive at the promised land; and we went forth upon the land, and did pitch our tents; and we did call it the promised land.

And it came to pass that we did begin to till the earth, and we began to plant seeds; yea, we did put all our seeds into the earth, which we had brought from the land of Jerusalem. And it came to pass that they did grow exceedingly; wherefore, we were blessed in abundance.

And it came to pass that we did find upon the land of promise, as we journeyed in the wilderness, that there were beasts in the forests of every kind, both the cow and the ox, and the ass and the horse, and the goat and the wild goat, and all manner of wild animals, which were for the use of men. And we did find all manner of ore, both of gold, and of silver, and of copper.

1 Nefi 19

- 1 Futhi kwenzeka ukuthi iNkosi yangiyala, ngalokho-ke ngenza izingcwephe zensimbi esatshe ukuze ngiqophe kuzo umlando wabantu bami. Futhi kulezi zingcwephe engazenza ngaqopha umlando kababa, futhi ngokunjalo nohambo lwethu ehlane, kanye neziphrofetho zikababa; futhi ngokunjalo neziningi iziphrofetho zami ngiziqophe kuzo.
- 2 Futhi angazanga ngesikhathi ngizenza ukuthi ngangizoyalwa yiNkosi ukuthi ngizenze lezi zingcwephe; ngalokho-ke, umlando kababa, kanye nomlando wesizukulwane soyise, kanye nenxenye enkulu yezenzo zonke zethu ehlane ziqoshwe kuzo lezo zingcwephe zokuqala engikhulume ngazo; ngalokho-ke, izinto ezenzeka ngaphambi kokuthi ngenze lezi zingcwephe, impela, ziphathwa kakhulu kulezi zingcwephe zokuqala.
- 3 Futhi emva kokuthi sengizenzile lezi zingcwephe ngendlela yokuyalwa, mina, Nefi, ngathola umyalelo wokuthi ubufundisi kanye neziphrofetho, ikakhulukazi leyo nxenye yazo esobala kanye neyigugu, kufanele ibhalwe kulezi zingcwephe; futhi nokuthi lezo zinto ezazibhaliwe kufanele zigcinelwe ukufundisa abantu bami, abayoba ngabanini balelizwe, futhi phezu kwalokho nangezinye izizathu zokuhlakanipha, ezaziwa yiNkosi.
- 4 Ngalokho-ke, mina, Nefi, ngenza umbhalo kwezinye izingcwephe, ositshela ngendaba, noma ositshela ngemininingwane yezimpi kanye nemibango kanye nokubhujiswa kwabantu bami. Futhi lokhu ngikwenzile, futhi ngabayala abantu bami ukuthi kufanele benzeni emva kokuthi mina sengingasekho; futhi nokuthi lezi zingcwephe kufanele zidluliselwe njalo kusukela kwesinye isizukulwane kuya kwesinye, noma kusuka komunye umphrofethi kuya komunye, kuze kufike eminye imiyalelo yeNkosi.
- 5 Futhi indaba yami yokwenza lezi zingcwephe izonikezwa emva kwalokhu; futhi emva kwalokho, bheka, ngiyaqhubeka njengoba kade ngikhulumile; futhi lokhu ngikwenzela ukuze izinto eziningi ezingcwele zigcinelwe ukuba abantu bami bazazi.

1 Nephi 19

And it came to pass that the Lord commanded me, wherefore I did make plates of ore that I might engraven upon them the record of my people. And upon the plates which I made I did engraven the record of my father, and also our journeyings in the wilderness, and the prophecies of my father; and also many of mine own prophecies have I engraven upon them.

And I knew not at the time when I made them that I should be commanded of the Lord to make these plates; wherefore, the record of my father, and the genealogy of his fathers, and the more part of all our proceedings in the wilderness are engraven upon those first plates of which I have spoken; wherefore, the things which transpired before I made these plates are, of a truth, more particularly made mention upon the first plates.

And after I had made these plates by way of commandment, I, Nephi, received a commandment that the ministry and the prophecies, the more plain and precious parts of them, should be written upon these plates; and that the things which were written should be kept for the instruction of my people, who should possess the land, and also for other wise purposes, which purposes are known unto the Lord.

Wherefore, I, Nephi, did make a record upon the other plates, which gives an account, or which gives a greater account of the wars and contentions and destructions of my people. And this have I done, and commanded my people what they should do after I was gone; and that these plates should be handed down from one generation to another, or from one prophet to another, until further commandments of the Lord.

And an account of my making these plates shall be given hereafter; and then, behold, I proceed according to that which I have spoken; and this I do that the more sacred things may be kept for the knowledge of my people.

6 Nokho, angibhali lutho kulezi zingcwephe ngaphandle kokuthi ngicabanga ukuthi kungcwele. Manje, uma ngiphambuka, ngisho nabo baphambuka abasendulo; hhayi ukuthi ngiyazixolela ngenxa yabanye abantu, kepha ngenxa yobuthakathaka obukimi, ngokwenyama, ngizozixolela.

7 Ngokuba izinto abanye abantu abazazisa kakhulu, enyameni kanye nasemphefumulweni, abanye bazenza ize futhi bazinyathele ngaphansi kwezinyawo zabo. Yebo, ngisho uNkulunkulu ka-Israyeli uqobo abantu bamnyathela phansi kwezinyawo zabo; ngithi, bamnyathela phansi kwezinyawo zabo kodwa ngizokhuluma ngamanye amazwi—bamenza ize, futhi bangalilaleli izwi lakhe lokuqondisa.

8 Futhi bheka uyeza, njengokwamazwi engelosi, eminyakeni engamakhulu ayisithupha kusukela esikhathini ubaba asuka eJerusalema.

9 Futhi umhlaba, ngenxa yobubi bawo, uyomahlulela njengento eyize; ngalokho-ke bayombhaxabula futhi avume; futhi bamshaye, futhi avume. Yebo, bayomfela ngamathe, futhi avume, ngenxa yomusa wakhe onothando olukhulu kanye nokuba nenhliziyo ende kwakhe kubantwana babantu.

10 Futhi uNkulunkulu wokhokho bethu, abaholwa baphuma eGibithe, baphuma ebugqilini, futhi phezu kwalokho abagcinwa nguye ehlane, yebo, uNkulunkulu ka-Abrahama, kanye noka-Isaka, kanye noNkulunkulu kaJakobe, wazidela, ngokwamazwi engelosi, njengomuntu, ezandleni zabantu ababi, ukuze aphakanyiswe, ngokwamazwi kaZenoki, futhi ukuze abethelwe, ngokwamazwi kaNewumu, futhi ukuze angcwatshwe ethuneni, ngokwamazwi kaZenoshe, awakhuluma mayelana nezinsuku ezintathu zobumnyama, okwakufanele zibe yisibonakaliso esasizonikezwa ngokufa kwakhe kulabo okwakufanele babe ngabahlali baseziqhingini zolwandle, ikakhulukazi esanikwa labo okungabendlu ka-Israyeli.

Nevertheless, I do not write anything upon plates save it be that I think it be sacred. And now, if I do err, even did they err of old; not that I would excuse myself because of other men, but because of the weakness which is in me, according to the flesh, I would excuse myself.

For the things which some men esteem to be of great worth, both to the body and soul, others set at naught and trample under their feet. Yea, even the very God of Israel do men trample under their feet; I say, trample under their feet but I would speak in other words—they set him at naught, and hearken not to the voice of his counsels.

And behold he cometh, according to the words of the angel, in six hundred years from the time my father left Jerusalem.

And the world, because of their iniquity, shall judge him to be a thing of naught; wherefore they scourge him, and he suffereth it; and they smite him, and he suffereth it. Yea, they spit upon him, and he suffereth it, because of his loving kindness and his long-suffering towards the children of men.

And the God of our fathers, who were led out of Egypt, out of bondage, and also were preserved in the wilderness by him, yea, the God of Abraham, and of Isaac, and the God of Jacob, yieldeth himself, according to the words of the angel, as a man, into the hands of wicked men, to be lifted up, according to the words of Zenock, and to be crucified, according to the words of Neum, and to be buried in a sepulchre, according to the words of Zenos, which he spake concerning the three days of darkness, which should be a sign given of his death unto those who should inhabit the isles of the sea, more especially given unto those who are of the house of Israel.

- 11 Ngokuba wakhuluma kanje umphrofethi: iNkosi uNkulunkulu ngempela iyoyivakashela yonke indlu ka-Israyeli ngalolo suku, abanye ngezwi lakhe, ngenxa yokulunga kwabo, kube wukujabula okukhulu kubo kanye nensindiso, futhi abanye ngokuduma kanye nangemibani yamandla akhe, ngesivunguvungu, ngomlilo, nangentuthu, kanye nangenkungu yobumnyama, kanye nangokuvuleka phansi, kanye nangezintaba eziyokhushulelwa phezulu.
- 12 Futhi zonke lezi zinto kufanele ngempela zenzeke, kusho umphrofethi uZenoshe. Futhi amadwala omhlaba kufanele adabuke; futhi ngenxa yokububula komhlaba, amaningi amakhosi eziqhingi zolwandle uMoya kaNkulunkulu uyosebenza kuwo, ukuze amemeze athi: UNkulunkulu wemvelo uzwa ubuhlungu.
- 13 Futhi mayelana nalabo abaseJerusalema, kusho umphrofethi, bayohlushwa yibo bonke abantu, ngenxa yokuthi bambethela uNkulunkulu ka-Israyeli, futhi bazenza lukhuni izinhliziyi zabo, bezenqaba izibonakaliso kanye nezimangaliso, kanye namandla nenkazimulo kaNkulunkulu ka-Israyeli.
- 14 Futhi ngenxa yokuzenza lukhuni izinhliziyi zabo, kusho umphrofethi, futhi bamedelela oNgcwele Oyedwa ka-Israyeli, bayozulazula besenyameni, futhi babhubhe, futhi babe yinhlekisa nesaga, futhi bazondwe phakathi kwezizwe zonke.
- 15 Nokho, uma lolo suku lufika, kusho umphrofethi, ukuthi bangabe besaphinda bazenze lukhuni izinhliziyi zabo ngokumelene noNgcwele ka-Israyeli, ngaleso sikhathi uyozikhumbula izivumelwano azenza koyise.
- 16 Yebo, ngaleso sikhathi uyozikhumbula iziqhingi zolwandle; yebo, kanye nabo bonke abantu okungabendlu ka-Israyeli, ngiyobaqoqa, kusho iNkosi, ngokwamazwi omphrofethi uZenoshe, kuwo amagumbi amane omhlaba.
- 17 Yebo, futhi wonke umhlaba uyoyibona insindiso yeNkosi, kusho umphrofethi; zonke izizwe, imindeni, izilimi kanye nabantu bayobusiswa.
- 18 Futhi mina, Nefi, ngibabhalele lezi zinto abantu bakithi, ukuze mhlawumbe ngibakhohlise ukuze bayikhumbule iNkosi uMkhululi wabo.

For thus spake the prophet: The Lord God surely shall visit all the house of Israel at that day, some with his voice, because of their righteousness, unto their great joy and salvation, and others with the thunders and the lightnings of his power, by tempest, by fire, and by smoke, and vapor of darkness, and by the opening of the earth, and by mountains which shall be carried up.

And all these things must surely come, saith the prophet Zenos. And the rocks of the earth must rend; and because of the groanings of the earth, many of the kings of the isles of the sea shall be wrought upon by the Spirit of God, to exclaim: The God of nature suffers.

And as for those who are at Jerusalem, saith the prophet, they shall be scourged by all people, because they crucify the God of Israel, and turn their hearts aside, rejecting signs and wonders, and the power and glory of the God of Israel.

And because they turn their hearts aside, saith the prophet, and have despised the Holy One of Israel, they shall wander in the flesh, and perish, and become a hiss and a byword, and be hated among all nations.

Nevertheless, when that day cometh, saith the prophet, that they no more turn aside their hearts against the Holy One of Israel, then will he remember the covenants which he made to their fathers.

Yea, then will he remember the isles of the sea; yea, and all the people who are of the house of Israel, will I gather in, saith the Lord, according to the words of the prophet Zenos, from the four quarters of the earth.

Yea, and all the earth shall see the salvation of the Lord, saith the prophet; every nation, kindred, tongue and people shall be blessed.

And I, Nephi, have written these things unto my people, that perhaps I might persuade them that they would remember the Lord their Redeemer.

- 19 Ngalokho-ke, ngikhuluma kuyo yonke indlu ka-Israyeli, uma kungukuthi bayozithola lezi zinto.
- 20 Ngokuba bheka, nginozwelo olukhulu emoyeni, olungenza ngibe nokukhathazeka kangangoba wonke amalungu ami abuthakathaka, ngalabo abaseJerusalema; ngokuba ukuba iNkosi ibingenaso isihawu, ukungikhombisa mayelana nabo, njengoba yenza kubaphrofethi basendulo, ngabe nami bengizobhubha futhi.
- 21 Futhi ngempela yababonisa abaphrofethi basendulo zonke izinto mayelana nabo; futhi ngokunjalo yababonisa abaningi mayelana nathi; ngalokho-ke, kufanele ukuthi sazi mayelana nabo ngokuba zilotshiwe kuzo izingcwephe zethusi.
- 22 Manje kwenzeka ukuthi mina, Nefi, ngabafundisa abafowethu lezi zinto; futhi kwenzeka ukuthi ngabafundela eziningi izinto, ezaziqoshwe kuzo izingcwephe zethusi, ukuze bazi mayelana nezenzo zeNkosi kwamanye amazwe, phakathi kwabantu basendulo.
- 23 Futhi ngabafundela eziningi izinto ezazibhalwe ezincwadini zikaMose; kepha ukuze ngibavumise ngokugcwele ukuthi bakholwe kuyo iNkosi uMkhululi wabo ngabafundela nalokho okwakubhalwe wumphrofethi u-Isaya; ngokuba ngayibhekisa kithi yonke imibhalo engcwele, ukuze ibe wusizo kithi futhi isifundise.
- 24 Ngalokho-ke ngakhuluma nabo, ngithi: Yizwani amazwi omphrofethi, nina eniyinsalela yendlu ka-Israyeli, eniyigatsha elihleshuliwe; yizwani amazwi omphrofethi, awabhalela yonke indlu ka-Israyeli, futhi niwabhekise kini, ukuze nibe nethemba njengabo abafowenu enihleshulwe kubo; ngokuba umphrofethi ubhale ngalendlela.

Wherefore, I speak unto all the house of Israel, if it so be that they should obtain these things.

For behold, I have workings in the spirit, which doth weary me even that all my joints are weak, for those who are at Jerusalem; for had not the Lord been merciful, to show unto me concerning them, even as he had prophets of old, I should have perished also.

And he surely did show unto the prophets of old all things concerning them; and also he did show unto many concerning us; wherefore, it must needs be that we know concerning them for they are written upon the plates of brass.

Now it came to pass that I, Nephi, did teach my brethren these things; and it came to pass that I did read many things to them, which were engraven upon the plates of brass, that they might know concerning the doings of the Lord in other lands, among people of old.

And I did read many things unto them which were written in the books of Moses; but that I might more fully persuade them to believe in the Lord their Redeemer I did read unto them that which was written by the prophet Isaiah; for I did liken all scriptures unto us, that it might be for our profit and learning.

Wherefore I spake unto them, saying: Hear ye the words of the prophet, ye who are a remnant of the house of Israel, a branch who have been broken off; hear ye the words of the prophet, which were written unto all the house of Israel, and liken them unto yourselves, that ye may have hope as well as your brethren from whom ye have been broken off; for after this manner has the prophet written.

1 Nefi 20

- 1 Lalela futhi uzwe lokhu, O ndlu kaJakobe, obizwa ngegama lika-Israyeli, futhi ophuma emanzini akwaJuda, noma emanzini ombhabhadiso, ofunga ngegama leNkosi, futhi ubize uNkulunkulu ka-Israyeli, kodwa abafungi ngeqiniso nangokulunga.
- 2 Nokho, bazibiza ngomuzi ongcwele, kodwa abahlali kuye uNkulunkulu ka-Israyeli, oyiNkosi yamaBandla; yebo, iNkosi yamaBandla yigama lakhe lelo.
- 3 Bheka, ngizimemezele izinto zokuqala kusukela ekuqaleni; futhi zaphuma emlonyeni wami, futhi ngazibonakalisa. Nempela ngazibonakalisa ngokushesha.
- 4 Futhi ngakwenza lokhu ngoba ngangazi ukuthi unenkani, futhi nentamo yakho ingumsipha wensimbi, futhi ibunzi lakho liyithusi;
- 5 Futhi ngisho kusukela ekuqaleni ngamemezela kuwe; ngaphambi kokuthi zenzeke lezi zinto ngazibonakalisa kuwe; futhi ngazibonakalisa ngokwesaba hleze uthi—Isithixo sami sizenzile lezi zinto, kanye nesithombe sami esibaziweyo, futhi nesithombe sami esibunjiweyo sibayalile.
- 6 Ukubonile futhi wakuzwa konke lokhu; futhi ngabe awuzukukumemezela na? Futhi nokuthi ngikubonisile izinto ezintsha kusukela kulesi sikhathi, ngisho nezinto ezifihlekile, futhi awuzazanga.
- 7 Zidaliwe manje, futhi hhayi kusukela ekuqaleni, ngisho nangaphambi kosuku ongazizwanga ngalo zamenyezelwa kuwe, hleze uthi—Bheka bengizazi.
- 8 Yebo, futhi awuzizwanga; yebo, awazanga; yebo, kusukela kuleso sikhathi indlebe yakho yayingavulwanga; ngokuba bengazi ukuthi uzoziphatha ngenkohliso, futhi wabizwa ngophambukayo kwasesizalweni.
- 9 Nokho, ngenxa yegama lami ngizoyilibazisa intukuthelo yami, futhi ngenxa yodumo lwami ngizozibamba ukuza kuwe, ukuze ngingakubulali.
- 10 Ngokuba, bheka, ngikucwengisisile, ngikukhethile esithandweni sezinkathazo.

1 Nephi 20

Hearken and hear this, O house of Jacob, who are called by the name of Israel, and are come forth out of the waters of Judah, or out of the waters of baptism, who swear by the name of the Lord, and make mention of the God of Israel, yet they swear not in truth nor in righteousness.

Nevertheless, they call themselves of the holy city, but they do not stay themselves upon the God of Israel, who is the Lord of Hosts; yea, the Lord of Hosts is his name.

Behold, I have declared the former things from the beginning; and they went forth out of my mouth, and I showed them. I did show them suddenly.

And I did it because I knew that thou art obstinate, and thy neck is an iron sinew, and thy brow brass;

And I have even from the beginning declared to thee; before it came to pass I showed them thee; and I showed them for fear lest thou shouldst say—Mine idol hath done them, and my graven image, and my molten image hath commanded them.

Thou hast seen and heard all this; and will ye not declare them? And that I have showed thee new things from this time, even hidden things, and thou didst not know them.

They are created now, and not from the beginning, even before the day when thou heardest them not they were declared unto thee, lest thou shouldst say—Behold I knew them.

Yea, and thou heardest not; yea, thou knewest not; yea, from that time thine ear was not opened; for I knew that thou wouldst deal very treacherously, and wast called a transgressor from the womb.

Nevertheless, for my name's sake will I defer mine anger, and for my praise will I refrain from thee, that I cut thee not off.

For, behold, I have refined thee, I have chosen thee in the furnace of affliction.

11 Ngenxa yami, yebo, ngenxa yami ngizokwenza lokhu, ngokuba angiyikuvuma ukuthi igama lami lingcoliswe, futhi angiyikuyinika omunye inkazimulo yami.

12 Lalela mina, O Jakobe, futhi nawe Israyeli obiziweyo wami, ngokuba nginguye; ngingowokuqala, futhi phezu kwalokho ngingowokugcina.

13 Isandla sami phezu kwalokho sisibekile isisekelo somhlaba, futhi nesandla sami sokunene siwenekile amazulu. Ngiyakubiza futhi kume ndawonye.

14 Nina nonke, buthanani, futhi nizwe; ngubani phakathi kwabo omemezela lezi zinto kubo na? INkosi imthandle; yebo, futhi izolifeza izwi layo elimemezele ngabo; futhi iyokwenza intando yayo ngeBabiloni, futhi ingalo yayo iyokuba phezu kwamaKaledi.

15 Phezu kwalokho, kusho iNkosi; mina Nkosi, yebo, ngikhulumile; yebo, ngimbizile ukuthi amemezele, ngimlethile, futhi uyokwenza indlela yakhe ichume.

16 Sondelani eduze nami; angikhulumanga ekusithekeni; kusukela ekuqaleni, kusukela esikhathini lapho kwamenezelwa ukuthi ngikhulumile; futhi iNkosi uNkulunkulu, kanye noMoya wayo, ingithumile.

17 Futhi isho kanje iNkosi, uMkhululi wakho, oNgcwele ka-Israyeli; ngimthumile, iNkosi uNkulunkulu wakho okufundisa ukuthi usizakale, okuhola endleleni okumele uhambe ngayo, ngikwenzile lokho.

18 O ukuba wawuyilalelile imiyalelo yami—ukuba bekunjalo ukuthula kwakho bekuyokuba njengomfula, futhi nokulunga kwakho njengamagagasi olwandle.

19 Nenzalo yakho phezu kwalokho beyiyokuba njengesihlabathi; nabantwana bezibilini zakho njengamatshana olwandle; igama lakhe ngabe alicishwanga noma lisuswe phambi kwami.

20 Phumani eBabiloni, balekelani amaKaledi, ngezwi lokuhlabelela kumemezeleni, shonini lokhu, kukhulumeni nasemikhawulweni yomhlaba; shonini nithi: INkosi iyihlengile inceku yayo uJakobe.

For mine own sake, yea, for mine own sake will I do this, for I will not suffer my name to be polluted, and I will not give my glory unto another.

Hearken unto me, O Jacob, and Israel my called, for I am he; I am the first, and I am also the last.

Mine hand hath also laid the foundation of the earth, and my right hand hath spanned the heavens. I call unto them and they stand up together.

All ye, assemble yourselves, and hear; who among them hath declared these things unto them? The Lord hath loved him; yea, and he will fulfil his word which he hath declared by them; and he will do his pleasure on Babylon, and his arm shall come upon the Chaldeans.

Also, saith the Lord; I the Lord, yea, I have spoken; yea, I have called him to declare, I have brought him, and he shall make his way prosperous.

Come ye near unto me; I have not spoken in secret; from the beginning, from the time that it was declared have I spoken; and the Lord God, and his Spirit, hath sent me.

And thus saith the Lord, thy Redeemer, the Holy One of Israel; I have sent him, the Lord thy God who teacheth thee to profit, who leadeth thee by the way thou shouldst go, hath done it.

O that thou hadst hearkened to my commandments—then had thy peace been as a river, and thy righteousness as the waves of the sea.

Thy seed also had been as the sand; the offspring of thy bowels like the gravel thereof; his name should not have been cut off nor destroyed from before me.

Go ye forth of Babylon, flee ye from the Chaldeans, with a voice of singing declare ye, tell this, utter to the end of the earth; say ye: The Lord hath redeemed his servant Jacob.

- 21 Futhi kabomanga; wabahola ogwaduleni; wenza amanzi ukuthi abagobhozele ephuma edwaleni; phezu kwalokho waqhekeza idwala futhi amanzi ampompoza ephuma kulo.
- 22 Futhi naphezu kokuthi esekwenzile konke lokhu, kanye nokukhulu futhi, akukho ukuthula kwababi, kusho iNkosi.

And they thirsted not; he led them through the deserts; he caused the waters to flow out of the rock for them; he clave the rock also and the waters gushed out.

And notwithstanding he hath done all this, and greater also, there is no peace, saith the Lord, unto the wicked.

1 Nefi 21

- 1 Phezu kwalokho futhi: Lalela, O wena ndlu ka-Israyeli, nonke nina enihlukanisiwe futhi nabalekiswa nakhishwa ngenxa yobubi babelusi babantu bami; yebo, nonke nina enahlukanisiwe, nasakazwa ndawozonke, nina eningabantu bami, O ndlu ka-Israyeli. Ngilaleleni, O ziqhingi, futhi lalelani nina bantu enikude; iNkosi ingibize esizalweni; ezibilini zikamama yenza ukuba igama lami likhunjulwe.
- 2 Futhi yenze umlomo wami waba njengenkemba ebukhali; ethunzini lesandla sayo ingithukusile, futhi yangenza umcibisholo ophucuziweyo; emgodleni wayo ingithukusile.
- 3 Futhi yathi kimi: Uyinceku yami, O Israyeli, ngawe ngiyodunyiswa.
- 4 Emva kwalokho ngathi, ngikhandlekele ize, ngichithe amandla ami ngokuyize nokungelutho; ngempela ukwahlulelwa kwami kuseNkosini, futhi nomsebenzi wami ukuNkulunkulu wami.
- 5 Manje, ithi iNkosi—eyangibumba kwasesizalweni ukuthi ngibe yinceku yayo, ukuze ngibuyisele uJakobe futhi kuyo—nakuba u-Israyeli engakaqoqwa, nokho ngiyokuba nenkazimulo enkulu emehlweni eNkosi, futhi uNkulunkulu wami uyokuba ngamandla ami.
- 6 Futhi yathi: Kuyinto elula ukuthi ube yinceku yami ukuze uvuse izizwana zikaJakobe, futhi ubuyisele abaseleyo bakwa-Israyeli. Phezu kwalokho ngizokubeka ube ngukukhanya kwabeZizwe, ukuze ube yinsindiso yami kuze kube semikhawulweni yomhlaba.
- 7 Isho kanje iNkosi, uMkhululi ka-Israyeli, oNgcwele wakhe, odelelwa ngumuntu, oyisinengiso ezizweni, kuyo inceku yababusi: Amakhosi ayobona futhi aphakame, nababusi nabo bayokhothama, ngenxa yeNkosi ethembekileyo.
- 8 Isho kanje iNkosi: Ngesikhathi esivumelekile nginizwile, O ziqhingi zolwandle, futhi ngosuku lwensidiso nginisizile futhi ngiyonilondoloza, futhi ngininike inceku yami njengesivumelwano sabantu, ukumisa umhlaba, ukubenza badle amafa achithekileyo.

1 Nephi 21

And again: Hearken, O ye house of Israel, all ye that are broken off and are driven out because of the wickedness of the pastors of my people; yea, all ye that are broken off, that are scattered abroad, who are of my people, O house of Israel. Listen, O isles, unto me, and hearken ye people from far; the Lord hath called me from the womb; from the bowels of my mother hath he made mention of my name.

And he hath made my mouth like a sharp sword; in the shadow of his hand hath he hid me, and made me a polished shaft; in his quiver hath he hid me;

And said unto me: Thou art my servant, O Israel, in whom I will be glorified.

Then I said, I have labored in vain, I have spent my strength for naught and in vain; surely my judgment is with the Lord, and my work with my God.

And now, saith the Lord—that formed me from the womb that I should be his servant, to bring Jacob again to him—though Israel be not gathered, yet shall I be glorious in the eyes of the Lord, and my God shall be my strength.

And he said: It is a light thing that thou shouldst be my servant to raise up the tribes of Jacob, and to restore the preserved of Israel. I will also give thee for a light to the Gentiles, that thou mayest be my salvation unto the ends of the earth.

Thus saith the Lord, the Redeemer of Israel, his Holy One, to him whom man despiseth, to him whom the nations abhorreth, to servant of rulers: Kings shall see and arise, princes also shall worship, because of the Lord that is faithful.

Thus saith the Lord: In an acceptable time have I heard thee, O isles of the sea, and in a day of salvation have I helped thee; and I will preserve thee, and give thee my servant for a covenant of the people, to establish the earth, to cause to inherit the desolate heritages;

- 9 Ukuze uthi kwababoshiweyo: Phumani; nakubo labo abahlezi ebumnyameni: Zivezeni. Bayozondla besezindleleni, futhi amadlelo abo ayokuba kuzo zonke izindawo eziphakemeyo.
- 10 Abayikulamba noma bome, futhi ukushisa nelanga akuyikuba shaya; ngokuba lowo onomusa kubo uyobahola, uyobaqondisa ngisho nasemithonjeni yamanzi.
- 11 Futhi ngiyozenza zonke izintaba zami zibe ziyindlela, futhi nezindlela zami ziyophakanyiswa.
- 12 Futhi emva kwalokho, O ndlu ka-Israyeli, bheka, laba bayoza bevela kude; futhi bheka, laba bephuma enyakatho kanye nasentshonalanga; futhi laba bephuma ezweni laseSinimi.
- 13 Hlabelelani, O mazulu; futhi uthokoze, O mhlaba; ngokuba izinyawo zalabo abasempumalanga ziyomiswa; futhi niqhumuke ngokuhlabelela, O zintaba; ngokuba abaseyikushaywa nanini; ngokuba iNkosi ibaduduzile abantu bayo, futhi iyokuba nomusa kwabahluphekile bayo.
- 14 Kepha, bheka, iSiyoni yathi: iNkosi ingishiyile, futhi iNkosi yami ingikhohliwe—kepha iyokhombisa ukuthi ayikhohlwanga.
- 15 Ngokuba owesifazane angakhohlwa yini wumntwana wakhe oncelayo, ukuthi angabi nabubele kuyo indodana yesizalo sakhe na? Yebo, bangakhohlwa, kodwa mina anginakukhohlwa nguwe, O ndlu ka-Israyeli.
- 16 Bheka, ngikuqophile entendeni yezandla zami; izindonga zakho ziphambi kwami njalo.
- 17 Abantwana bakho bayoshesha ngokumelene nalabo abakuchithayo; futhi nalabo abakwenza ize bayophuma kuwe.
- 18 Phakamisa amehlo akho nxazonke futhi ubheke; bonke laba aba qoqene ndawonye, futhi bayokuza kuwe. Futhi njengoba ngiphila, kusho iNkosi, impela uyobembatha bonke, njengemvunulo, futhi uzibhincise ngabo njengomakoti.
- 19 Ngokuba izindawo zakho ezichithekileyo neziyihlane, kanye nezwe lakho lembubhiso, liyokuba lincane kakhulu manje ngenxa yesizathu sabakhile kulo; futhi nalabo abakugwinyayo bayokuba kude.

That thou mayest say to the prisoners: Go forth; to them that sit in darkness: Show yourselves. They shall feed in the ways, and their pastures shall be in all high places.

They shall not hunger nor thirst, neither shall the heat nor the sun smite them; for he that hath mercy on them shall lead them, even by the springs of water shall he guide them.

And I will make all my mountains a way, and my highways shall be exalted.

And then, O house of Israel, behold, these shall come from far; and lo, these from the north and from the west; and these from the land of Sinim.

Sing, O heavens; and be joyful, O earth; for the feet of those who are in the east shall be established; and break forth into singing, O mountains; for they shall be smitten no more; for the Lord hath comforted his people, and will have mercy upon his afflicted.

But, behold, Zion hath said: The Lord hath forsaken me, and my Lord hath forgotten me—but he will show that he hath not.

For can a woman forget her sucking child, that she should not have compassion on the son of her womb? Yea, they may forget, yet will I not forget thee, O house of Israel.

Behold, I have graven thee upon the palms of my hands; thy walls are continually before me.

Thy children shall make haste against thy destroyers; and they that made thee waste shall go forth of thee.

Lift up thine eyes round about and behold; all these gather themselves together, and they shall come to thee. And as I live, saith the Lord, thou shalt surely clothe thee with them all, as with an ornament, and bind them on even as a bride.

For thy waste and thy desolate places, and the land of thy destruction, shall even now be too narrow by reason of the inhabitants; and they that swallowed thee up shall be far away.

- 20 Abantwana oyokuba nabo, emva kokuba usulahlekelwe ngabokuqala, bayophinda bathi ezindlebeni zakho: Lendawo ingumngcingo kakhulu kimi; ngiphe indawo ukuze ngihlale.
- 21 Ngaleso sikhathi uyothi enhliziyweni yakho: Ngubani ongizalele laba, lokhu mina ngiphuciwe abantwana bami, futhi anginzalo, ngingumthunjwa, futhi ngingozulazulayo na? Futhi ngubani okhulise laba na? Bheka, mina ngasala ngedwa; laba, bebekuphi na?
- 22 Isho kanje iNkosi uNkulunkulu ithi: Bheka, ngiyokuphakamisa isandla sami kubo abeZizwe, futhi ngimise isibonakaliso sami kubantu; futhi bayoletha amadodana akho ezingalweni zabo, futhi amadodakazi akho bayowathwala emahlombe abo.
- 23 Futhi amakhosi ayokuba ngoyihlo abakondlayo, futhi nezindlovukazi zabo ngomama bakho abakondlayo; bayokukhothamela ubuso babo bubheke phansi, futhi bakhothe uthuli lwezinyawo zakho; futhi uyokwazi ukuthi mina ngiyiNkosi; ngokuba abayikujabha abangilindayo.
- 24 Ngokuba iyokuswa yini impango kubo abanamandla, noma abathunjwe ngokomthetho bakhululwe na?
- 25 Kodwa isho kanje iNkosi, ngisho abathunjwa balabo abanamandla bayokuswa, futhi nempango yalabo abesabekayo iyokhululwa; ngokuba ngiyophikisana naye lowo ophikisana nawe, futhi ngiyobasindisa abantwana bakho.
- 26 Futhi ngiyobadlisa ngenyama yabo labo abakucindezelayo; bayodakwa yigazi labo uqobo njengewayini elimtoti; futhi yonke inyama iyokwazi ukuthi mina, Nkosi, ngingumSindisi wakho kanye noMkhululi wakho, onaMandla kaJakobe.

The children whom thou shalt have, after thou hast lost the first, shall again in thine ears say: The place is too strait for me; give place to me that I may dwell.

Then shalt thou say in thine heart: Who hath begotten me these, seeing I have lost my children, and am desolate, a captive, and removing to and fro? And who hath brought up these? Behold, I was left alone; these, where have they been?

Thus saith the Lord God: Behold, I will lift up mine hand to the Gentiles, and set up my standard to the people; and they shall bring thy sons in their arms, and thy daughters shall be carried upon their shoulders.

And kings shall be thy nursing fathers, and their queens thy nursing mothers; they shall bow down to thee with their face towards the earth, and lick up the dust of thy feet; and thou shalt know that I am the Lord; for they shall not be ashamed that wait for me.

For shall the prey be taken from the mighty, or the lawful captives delivered?

But thus saith the Lord, even the captives of the mighty shall be taken away, and the prey of the terrible shall be delivered; for I will contend with him that contendeth with thee, and I will save thy children.

And I will feed them that oppress thee with their own flesh; they shall be drunken with their own blood as with sweet wine; and all flesh shall know that I, the Lord, am thy Savior and thy Redeemer, the Mighty One of Jacob.

1 Nefi 22

- 1 Manje kwenzeka ukuthi emva kokuba mina, Nefi, sengizifundile lezi zinto ezaziqoshwe ezingcwephezi zethusi, abafowethu beza kimi futhi bathi: Zisho ukuthini lezi zinto obuzifunda na? Bheka, ngabe kufanele ziqondwe njengezinto zomoya, eziyokwenzeka ngokomoya hhayi ngokwasenyameni na?
- 2 Futhi mina, Nefi, ngathi kubo: Bhekani zabonakaliswa kumphrofethi ngezwi likaMoya; ngokuba ngoMoya zonke izinto zembulwa kubo abaphrofethi, eziyofika kubo abantwana babantu ngokwasenyameni.
- 3 Ngalokho-ke, izinto engizifundile yizinto eziphathelene nezinto zesikhashana kanye nezikamoya; ngokuba kubukeka sengathi indlu ka-Israyeli, ngokushesha noma kamuva, izohlakazwa kubo bonke ubuso bomhlaba, futhi ngokunjalo naphakathi kwezizwe zonke.
- 4 Futhi bhekani, kukhona abaningi vele asebehlukani siwe nalabo abaseJerusalema. Yebo, inxenye enkulu yezizwana zonke isiholelwe kude; futhi zisakazwe le na le eziqhingini zolwandle; futhi ukuthi zikuphi akekho namunye wethu owaziyo, ngaphandle kokuthi siyazi ukuthi baholelwa kude.
- 5 Futhi njengokuba babehlelwe kude, lezi zinto ziphrofethiwe mayelana nabo, futhi ngokunjalo mayelana nabo bonke labo abayosakazwa futhi baditshaniswe, ngenxa yoNgcwele ka-Israyeli; ngokuba bayoziqinisa izinhliziyi zabo ngokumelene naye; ngalokho-ke, bayosakazwa phakathi kwazo zonke izizwe futhi bayozondwa yiyo bonke abantu.
- 6 Nokho, emva kokuthi sebondliwe ngabeZizwe, futhi neNkosi isisiphakamisile isandla sayo phezu kwabeZizwe futhi yabamisa njengesibonakaliso, futhi abantwana babo sebebagonile ezingalweni zabo, futhi namadodakazi abo bawetshatha emahlombe abo, bhekani lezi zinto okukhulunywa ngazo zingezesikhashana; ngokuba zinjalo izivumelwano zeNkosi nobaba bethu; futhi kushiwo kithi ezinsukwini ezizayo, futhi ngokunjalo nakubo bonke abafowethu abangabendlu ka-Israyeli.

1 Nephi 22

And now it came to pass that after I, Nephi, had read these things which were engraven upon the plates of brass, my brethren came unto me and said unto me: What meaneth these things which ye have read? Behold, are they to be understood according to things which are spiritual, which shall come to pass according to the spirit and not the flesh?

And I, Nephi, said unto them: Behold they were manifest unto the prophet by the voice of the Spirit; for by the Spirit are all things made known unto the prophets, which shall come upon the children of men according to the flesh.

Wherefore, the things of which I have read are things pertaining to things both temporal and spiritual; for it appears that the house of Israel, sooner or later, will be scattered upon all the face of the earth, and also among all nations.

And behold, there are many who are already lost from the knowledge of those who are at Jerusalem. Yea, the more part of all the tribes have been led away; and they are scattered to and fro upon the isles of the sea; and whither they are none of us knoweth, save that we know that they have been led away.

And since they have been led away, these things have been prophesied concerning them, and also concerning all those who shall hereafter be scattered and be confounded, because of the Holy One of Israel; for against him will they harden their hearts; wherefore, they shall be scattered among all nations and shall be hated of all men.

Nevertheless, after they shall be nursed by the Gentiles, and the Lord has lifted up his hand upon the Gentiles and set them up for a standard, and their children have been carried in their arms, and their daughters have been carried upon their shoulders, behold these things of which are spoken are temporal; for thus are the covenants of the Lord with our fathers; and it meaneth us in the days to come, and also all our brethren who are of the house of Israel.

- 7 Futhi kusho ukuthi isikhathi siyeza lapho emva kokuba yonke indlu ka-Israyeli isihlakaziwe futhi yaditshaniswa, iNkosi uNkulunkulu iyovusa isizwe esinamandla phakathi kwabeZizwe, yebo, ngisho naphezu kobuso balo lelizwe; futhi ngaso inzalo yethu iyohlakazwa.
- 8 Futhi emva kokuthi inzalo yethu isihlakaziwe iNkosi uNkulunkulu iyoqhubeka nokwenza umsebenzi omangalisayo phakathi kwabeZizwe, oyokuba yigugu elikhulu kuyo inzalo yethu; ngalokho-ke, kufaniswa nokondliwa kwabo ngabeZizwe kanye nokugonwa ezingalweni zabo kanye nokwetshathwa emahlombe abo.
- 9 Futhi phezu kwalokho uyokuba yigugu kwabeZizwe; futhi hhayi kuphela-nje kwabeZizwe kodwa kuyo yonke indlu ka-Israyeli, ekwaziseni ngezivumelwano zika Baba wasezulwini ku-Abrahama, ethi: Kuyo inzalo yakho yonke imindeni yomhlaba iyobusiswa.
- 10 Futhi ngifuna, bafowethu, ukuthi nazi ukuthi yonke imindeni yomhlaba ayinakubusiswa ngaphandle kokuthi embule ingalo yakhe emehlweni ezizwe.
- 11 Ngalokho-ke, iNkosi uNkulunkulu iyoqhubeka yembule ingalo yayo emehlweni azo zonke izizwe, ekuletheni izivumelwano zayo kanye nevangeli layo kulabo okungabendlu ka-Israyeli.
- 12 Ngalokho-ke, iyophinda ibakhiphe ebugqilini, futhi bayoqoqana ndawonye emazweni angamafa abo; futhi bayokhishwa ekusithekeni nasebumnyameni; futhi bayokwazi ukuthi iNkosi ingumSindisi wabo kanye noMkhululi wabo, onaMandla ka-Israyeli.
- 13 Futhi igazi lalalo bandla elikhulu nelinengekile, eliyisifebe somhlaba wonke, liyophendukela emakhanda abo; ngokuba bayokulwa bodwa, futhi inkemba yezandla zabo uqobo iyowela phezu kwamakhanda abo; futhi bayodakwa yigazi labo.

And it meaneth that the time cometh that after all the house of Israel have been scattered and confounded, that the Lord God will raise up a mighty nation among the Gentiles, yea, even upon the face of this land; and by them shall our seed be scattered.

And after our seed is scattered the Lord God will proceed to do a marvelous work among the Gentiles, which shall be of great worth unto our seed; wherefore, it is likened unto their being nourished by the Gentiles and being carried in their arms and upon their shoulders.

And it shall also be of worth unto the Gentiles; and not only unto the Gentiles but unto all the house of Israel, unto the making known of the covenants of the Father of heaven unto Abraham, saying: In thy seed shall all the kindreds of the earth be blessed.

And I would, my brethren, that ye should know that all the kindreds of the earth cannot be blessed unless he shall make bare his arm in the eyes of the nations.

Wherefore, the Lord God will proceed to make bare his arm in the eyes of all the nations, in bringing about his covenants and his gospel unto those who are of the house of Israel.

Wherefore, he will bring them again out of captivity, and they shall be gathered together to the lands of their inheritance; and they shall be brought out of obscurity and out of darkness; and they shall know that the Lord is their Savior and their Redeemer, the Mighty One of Israel.

And the blood of that great and abominable church, which is the whore of all the earth, shall turn upon their own heads; for they shall war among themselves, and the sword of their own hands shall fall upon their own heads, and they shall be drunken with their own blood.

- 14 Futhi izizwe zonke eziyokulwa nawe, O ndlu ka-Israyeli, ziyophendukelana zodwa, futhi ziyowela kuwo lowo mgodi ezawumbela ukucupha abantu beNkosi. Futhi bonke labo abalwa neSiyoni bayobhujiswa, futhi naleso sifebe esikhulu, esiphendukezele izindlela eziqondile zeNkosi, yebo, lelo bandla elikhulu nelinengekile, liyowela othulini futhi kuyokuba kukhulu ukuwa kwalo.
- 15 Ngokuba bheka, kusho umphrofethi, isikhathi siyeza masinyane lapho uSathane engaseyikuba namandla phezu kwezinhliziyi zabantwana babantu; ngokuba usuku luyeza masinyane lapho bonke abaziqhenyayo kanye nalabo abenza ububi bayokuba njengamabibi; futhi usuku luyeza lokuthi bashiswe.
- 16 Ngokuba isikhathi siyeza masinyane lapho intukuthelo egcwele kaNkulunkulu iyothululwa phezu kwabo bonke abantwana babantu; ngokuba akayikuvumela ukuthi ababi babhubhise abalungileyo.
- 17 Ngalokho-ke, uyobalondoloza abalungileyo ngamandla akhe, ngisho noma ngabe kungukuthi intukuthelo yakhe egcwele kufanele ifike, futhi abalungileyo balondolozwe, ngisho kangangoba kubhujiswa izitha zabo ngomlilo. Ngalokho-ke, abalungileyo akumele besabe; ngokuba usho kanje umphrofethi, bayosindiswa, ngisho noma kungaba ngomlilo.
- 18 Bhekani, bafowethu, ngithi kini, lezi zinto kufanele zenzeke masinyane; yebo, ngisho igazi, kanye nomlilo, kanye nesisenti sentuthu kufanele kufike; futhi kufanele kube sebusweni balomhlaba; futhi kuza kubantu ngokwasenyameni uma kungukuthi bayozenza lukhuni izinhliziyi zabo kuye oNgcwele ka-Israyeli.
- 19 Ngokuba bhekani, abalungileyo abayikubhubha; ngokuba isikhathi ngempela kufanele sifike sokuthi bonke labo abalwa neSiyoni bahlukaniswe noNkulunkulu.

And every nation which shall war against thee, O house of Israel, shall be turned one against another, and they shall fall into the pit which they digged to ensnare the people of the Lord. And all that fight against Zion shall be destroyed, and that great whore, who hath perverted the right ways of the Lord, yea, that great and abominable church, shall tumble to the dust and great shall be the fall of it.

For behold, saith the prophet, the time cometh speedily that Satan shall have no more power over the hearts of the children of men; for the day soon cometh that all the proud and they who do wickedly shall be as stubble; and the day cometh that they must be burned.

For the time soon cometh that the fulness of the wrath of God shall be poured out upon all the children of men; for he will not suffer that the wicked shall destroy the righteous.

Wherefore, he will preserve the righteous by his power, even if it so be that the fulness of his wrath must come, and the righteous be preserved, even unto the destruction of their enemies by fire. Wherefore, the righteous need not fear; for thus saith the prophet, they shall be saved, even if it so be as by fire.

Behold, my brethren, I say unto you, that these things must shortly come; yea, even blood, and fire, and vapor of smoke must come; and it must needs be upon the face of this earth; and it cometh unto men according to the flesh if it so be that they will harden their hearts against the Holy One of Israel.

For behold, the righteous shall not perish; for the time surely must come that all they who fight against Zion shall be cut off.

- 20 Futhi ngempela iNkosi iyoyilungisa indlela yabantu bayo, ekugcwaliseni amazwi kaMose, awakhuluma, ethi: Umphrofethi iNkosi uNkulunkulu wenu iyomvusa kini, onjengami; niyomlalela kuzo zonke izinto ayozisho kini. Futhi kuyokwenzeka ukuthi bonke labo abangayikumuzwa lowo mphrofethi bayohlukaniswa nabantu.
- 21 Manje mina, Nepi, ngiyaqinisa kini, ukuthi lomphrofethi uMose akhuluma ngaye kwakunguye oNgcwele ka-Israyeli; ngalokho-ke, uyokwahlulela ngokulunga.
- 22 Futhi abalungileyo akumele besabe, ngokuba bayibo labo abangayikubhujiswa. Kodwa ngumbuso kadaveli, oyokwakhiwa phakathi kwabantwana babantu, lowo mbuso oyomiswa phakathi kwabo labo abasenyameni—
- 23 Ngokuba isikhathi siyoshesha sifike ukuthi wonke amabandla akhelwe ukuthola inzuzo, kanye nawo wonke lawo akhelwe ukuthola amandla phezu kwenyama, kanye nalawo akhelwe ukuthola udumo emehlweni omhlaba, kanye nalabo abafuna inkanuko yenyama kanye nezinto zomhlaba, kanye nokwenza zonke izinhlobo zokungalungi; yebo, ukuphetha, bonke labo abangabombuso kadaveli yibo okumele besabe, futhi baqhaqhazele, futhi bathuthumele; yibo labo okufanele behliselwe phansi othulini; yibo labo okufanele baqedwe njengamabibi; futhi lokhu kunjengokwamazwi omphrofethi.
- 24 Futhi isikhathi siyofika masinyane lapho abalungileyo kufanele baholwe njengamathole eya esitebeleni, futhi oNgcwele ka-Israyeli kufanele abuse ngokuphatha, ngobukhulu, nangamandla, kanye nangenkazimulo enkulu.
- 25 Futhi uqoqa abantwana bakhe kumagumbi amane omhlaba; futhi uyazibala izimvu zakhe, futhi ziyamazi; futhi kuyoba nomhlambi owodwa nomalusi oyedwa; futhi uyozondla izimvu zakhe, futhi kuye ziyothola idlelo.

And the Lord will surely prepare a way for his people, unto the fulfilling of the words of Moses, which he spake, saying: A prophet shall the Lord your God raise up unto you, like unto me; him shall ye hear in all things whatsoever he shall say unto you. And it shall come to pass that all those who will not hear that prophet shall be cut off from among the people.

And now I, Nephi, declare unto you, that this prophet of whom Moses spake was the Holy One of Israel; wherefore, he shall execute judgment in righteousness.

And the righteous need not fear, for they are those who shall not be confounded. But it is the kingdom of the devil, which shall be built up among the children of men, which kingdom is established among them which are in the flesh—

For the time speedily shall come that all churches which are built up to get gain, and all those who are built up to get power over the flesh, and those who are built up to become popular in the eyes of the world, and those who seek the lusts of the flesh and the things of the world, and to do all manner of iniquity; yea, in fine, all those who belong to the kingdom of the devil are they who need fear, and tremble, and quake; they are those who must be brought low in the dust; they are those who must be consumed as stubble; and this is according to the words of the prophet.

And the time cometh speedily that the righteous must be led up as calves of the stall, and the Holy One of Israel must reign in dominion, and might, and power, and great glory.

And he gathereth his children from the four quarters of the earth; and he numbereth his sheep, and they know him; and there shall be one fold and one shepherd; and he shall feed his sheep, and in him they shall find pasture.

- 26 Futhi ngenxa yokulunga kwabantu bakhe, uSathane akanamandla; ngalokho-ke, akanakukhululwa isikhathi esiyiminyaka eminingi; ngokuba akanamandla ezinhliziyweni zabantu, ngokuba bahlezi ngokulunga, futhi oNgcwele ka-Israyeli uyabusa.
- 27 Manje bhekani, mina, Nepi, ngithi kini zonke lezi zinto kufanele zenzeke ngokwasenyameni.
- 28 Kodwa, bhekani, zonke izizwe, imindeni, izilimi, kanye nabantu bayohlala ngokuphepha kuye oNgcwele ka-Israyeli uma kungukuthi bayaphenduka.
- 29 Manje mina, Nepi, ngiyaphela lapha; ngokuba anginakulokotha ngiqhubeke ngikhulume mayelana nalezi zinto.
- 30 Ngalokho-ke, bafowethu, ngifisa ukuthi nizindle ngokuthi lezi izinto ezibhalwe ezingcwepheeni zethusi ziliqiniso; futhi zifakaza ngokuthi umuntu kufanele ahloniphe imiyalelo kaNkulunkulu.
- 31 Ngalokho-ke, akumele nicabange ukuthi mina nobaba yithi kuphela esifakazile, futhi phezu kwalokho esifundise ngazo. Ngalokho-ke, uma niyoyihlonipha imiyalelo, futhi nibekezele kuze kube sekupheleni, niyosindiswa ngosuku lokugcina. Futhi kunjalo nje Amen.

And because of the righteousness of his people, Satan has no power; wherefore, he cannot be loosed for the space of many years; for he hath no power over the hearts of the people, for they dwell in righteousness, and the Holy One of Israel reigneth.

And now behold, I, Nephi, say unto you that all these things must come according to the flesh.

But, behold, all nations, kindreds, tongues, and people shall dwell safely in the Holy One of Israel if it so be that they will repent.

And now I, Nephi, make an end; for I durst not speak further as yet concerning these things.

Wherefore, my brethren, I would that ye should consider that the things which have been written upon the plates of brass are true; and they testify that a man must be obedient to the commandments of God.

Wherefore, ye need not suppose that I and my father are the only ones that have testified, and also taught them. Wherefore, if ye shall be obedient to the commandments, and endure to the end, ye shall be saved at the last day. And thus it is. Amen.

INcwadi yesiBili kaNefi

Indaba ngokufa kukaLehi. Abafowabo baNefi bayamvukela. INkosi ixwayisa uNefi ukuthi emuke aye eblane. Ubambo kwakbe eblane, njalo njalo.

2 Nefi 1

- 1 Manje kwenzeka ukuthi emva kokuthi mina, Nefi, sengiqedile ukufundisa abafowethu, ubaba, uLehi, naye wakhuluma eziningi izinto kubo, futhi wabalandisa, ukuthi zinkulu kangakanani izinto iNkosi eyabenzela zona ngokubakhipha ezweni laseJerusalema.
- 2 Futhi wakhuluma kubo mayelana nokumvukela kwabo emanzini, kanye nangesihawu sikaNkulunkulu ekuhlengeni izimpilo zabo, ukuthi bangagwinywa wulwandle.
- 3 Futhi phezu kwalokho wakhuluma kubo mayelana nezwe lesethembiso, ababelitholile —nokuthi sasingakanani isihawu seNkosi ekusixwayiseni ukuthi sibaleke siphume ezweni laseJerusalema.
- 4 Ngokuba, wathi, bhokani, ngibone umbono, ngawo ngiyazi ukuthi iJerusalema ibhujisiwe; futhi ukuba sahlala eJerusalema ngabe nathi ngokunjalo sibhubhile.
- 5 Kodwa, kwasho yena, naphezu kwezinkathazo zethu, silitholile izwe lesethembiso, izwe elikhethekileyo ngaphezu kwawo wonke amanye amazwe; izwe iNkosi uNkulunkulu evumelane ngalo nami ukuthi kuyoba yizwe eliyifa lenzalo yami. Yebo, iNkosi yenze isivumelwano ngalelizwe kimi, kanye nakubantwana bami ingunaphakade, futhi ngokunjalo nakubo bonke labo abayoholwa baphume kwamanye amazwe ngesandla seNkosi.
- 6 Ngalokho-ke, mina, Lehi ngiphrofetha njengokwemisebenzi kaMoya okimi, ukuthi akukho namunye oyoza kulelizwe ngaphandle kokuthi eyolethwa ngesandla seNkosi.

The Second Book of Nephi

An account of the death of Lehi. Nephi's brethren rebel against him. The Lord warns Nephi to depart into the wilderness. His journeyings in the wilderness, and so forth.

2 Nephi 1

And now it came to pass that after I, Nephi, had made an end of teaching my brethren, our father, Lehi, also spake many things unto them, and rehearsed unto them, how great things the Lord had done for them in bringing them out of the land of Jerusalem.

And he spake unto them concerning their rebellions upon the waters, and the mercies of God in sparing their lives, that they were not swallowed up in the sea.

And he also spake unto them concerning the land of promise, which they had obtained—how merciful the Lord had been in warning us that we should flee out of the land of Jerusalem.

For, behold, said he, I have seen a vision, in which I know that Jerusalem is destroyed; and had we remained in Jerusalem we should also have perished.

But, said he, notwithstanding our afflictions, we have obtained a land of promise, a land which is choice above all other lands; a land which the Lord God hath covenanted with me should be a land for the inheritance of my seed. Yea, the Lord hath covenanted this land unto me, and to my children forever, and also all those who should be led out of other countries by the hand of the Lord.

Wherefore, I, Lehi, prophesy according to the workings of the Spirit which is in me, that there shall none come into this land save they shall be brought by the hand of the Lord.

7 Ngalokho-ke, lelizwe lingcweliselwe lowo eyomletha. Futhi uma kungukuthi bayoyisebenzela njengokwemiyalelo eyinikezile, kuyoba yizwe lenkululeko kubo; ngalokho-ke, abasoze nanini babuyiselwa phansi ebugqilini; uma kunjalo, kuyoba ngenxa yobubi; ngokuba uma ububi banda liyoqalekiswa izwe ngenxa yabo, kodwa kwabalungileyo liyobusiswa ingunaphakade.

8 Futhi bhekani, kungukuhlakanipha ukuthi lelizwe kumele lifihlwe okwamanje ukuthi laziwe ngezinye izizwe; ngokuba bhekani, eziningi izizwe ziyoligcwalisa lelizwe, kangangoba ngeke kusaba khona indawo ezoba yifa.

9 Ngalokho-ke, mina, Lehi, ngithole isethembiso, sokuthi kangangoba labo iNkosi uNkulunkulu eyobakhipha ezweni laseJerusalema beyoyigcina imiyalelo yayo; bayophumelela ebusweni balelizwe, futhi bayogcinwa kuzo zonke izizwe, ukuze bathole lelizwe libe ngelabo. Futhi uma kungukuthi bayoyigcina imiyalelo yayo bayobusiswa ebusweni balelizwe, futhi akuyikuba bikho namunye oyobahlupha, noma athathe lelizwe labo eliyifa; futhi bayohlala ngokuphepha ingunaphakade.

10 Kodwa bhekani, uma isikhathi sifika sokuthi bancishelwe wukholo, emva kokuthi sebemukele izibusiso ezinkulu kangaka esandleni seNkosi—sebenolwazi lokudalwa komhlaba, kanye nabo bonke abantu, bazi emikhulu nemangalisayo imisebenzi yeNkosi kusukela ekudalweni komhlaba; benamandla abanikezwe wona okwenza zonke izinto ngokukholwa; benayo yonke imiyalelo kusukela ekuqaleni, futhi bebe belethwe ngobuhle bakhe obungapheliyo kulelizwe eliyigugu lesethembiso—bhekani, ngithi, uma usuku luyofika lokuthi bamphike oNgcwele ka-Israyeli, uMesiya weqiniso, uMkhululi wabo kanye noNkulunkulu wabo, bhekani, izahlulelo zakhe lowo olungileyo ziyokuba phezu kwabo.

11 Yebo, uyoletha ezinye izizwe kubo, futhi uyozinika amandla, futhi uyozithatha kubo izindawo zabo abanazo, futhi uyokwenza ukuthi bahlakazwe futhi bashaywe.

Wherefore, this land is consecrated unto him whom he shall bring. And if it so be that they shall serve him according to the commandments which he hath given, it shall be a land of liberty unto them; wherefore, they shall never be brought down into captivity; if so, it shall be because of iniquity; for if iniquity shall abound cursed shall be the land for their sakes, but unto the righteous it shall be blessed forever.

And behold, it is wisdom that this land should be kept as yet from the knowledge of other nations; for behold, many nations would overrun the land, that there would be no place for an inheritance.

Wherefore, I, Lehi, have obtained a promise, that inasmuch as those whom the Lord God shall bring out of the land of Jerusalem shall keep his commandments, they shall prosper upon the face of this land; and they shall be kept from all other nations, that they may possess this land unto themselves. And if it so be that they shall keep his commandments they shall be blessed upon the face of this land, and there shall be none to molest them, nor to take away the land of their inheritance; and they shall dwell safely forever.

But behold, when the time cometh that they shall dwindle in unbelief, after they have received so great blessings from the hand of the Lord—having a knowledge of the creation of the earth, and all men, knowing the great and marvelous works of the Lord from the creation of the world; having power given them to do all things by faith; having all the commandments from the beginning, and having been brought by his infinite goodness into this precious land of promise—behold, I say, if the day shall come that they will reject the Holy One of Israel, the true Messiah, their Redeemer and their God, behold, the judgments of him that is just shall rest upon them.

Yea, he will bring other nations unto them, and he will give unto them power, and he will take away from them the lands of their possessions, and he will cause them to be scattered and smitten.

- 12 Yebo, ngesikhathi isizukulwane esisodwa sidlulela kwesinye kuyokuba nokuchitheka kwegazi, kanye nokuhanjelwa okukhulu phakathi kwabo; ngalokho-ke, madodana ami, ngifuna ukuthi nikhumbule; yebo, ngifuna ukuthi niwalalele amazwi ami.
- 13 O sengathi beningavuka; nivuke ebuthongweni obukhulu, yebo, ngisho nasebuthongweni besihogo, futhi nivuthuze amaketanga amabi eniboshwe ngawo, okungamaketanga abopha abantwana babantu, kangangoba bayiswa kude ekuthunjweni ezansi emhosheni waphakade wezinhlupheko nosizi.
- 14 Vukani! nisukume othulini, nizwe amazwi omzali oqhaqhazelayo, omalunga akhe nifanele masinyane ukuwabeka phansi kwelibandayo kanye nelithule ithuna, lapho isihambi singenakukwazi ukubuya; sekuyizinsuku nje ezimbalwa bese ngihamba indlela yomhlaba wonke.
- 15 Kodwa bhekani, iNkosi iwukhululile umphefumulo wami esihogweni; ngiyibonile inkazimulo yayo, futhi ngizungezwe naphakade yizingalo zothando lwayo.
- 16 Futhi ngifisa ukuthi nikhumbule ukugcina imithetho kanye nezahlulelo zeNkosi; bhekani, lokhu selokhu kwaba yintshisekelo yomphefumulo wami kusukela ekuqaleni.
- 17 Inhliziyo yami ishone phansi ngenxa yokudabuka izikhathi ngesikhathi, ngokuba bengesaba, hleze ngenxa yobulukhuni bezinhliziyo zenu iNkosi uNkulunkulu wenu ize ngolaka olukhulu phezu kwenu, ukuthi nesuswe futhi nibhujiswe ingunaphakade;
- 18 Noma, ukuthi isiqalekiso size phezu kwenu esikhathini sezizukulwane eziningi; futhi nivakashelwe ngenkemba, kanye nangendlala, futhi nizondwe, futhi niholwe njengokwesifiso kanye nokuthunjwa ngudeveli.
- 19 O madodana ami, kwangathi lezi zinto bezingeze phezu kwenu, kodwa nibe ngabakhethiweyo kanye nabantu abathandiweyo beNkosi. Kodwa bhekani, intando yayo mayenziwe; ngokuba izindlela zayo zilungile ingunaphakade.

Yea, as one generation passeth to another there shall be bloodsheds, and great visitations among them; wherefore, my sons, I would that ye would remember; yea, I would that ye would hearken unto my words.

O that ye would awake; awake from a deep sleep, yea, even from the sleep of hell, and shake off the awful chains by which ye are bound, which are the chains which bind the children of men, that they are carried away captive down to the eternal gulf of misery and woe.

Awake! and arise from the dust, and hear the words of a trembling parent, whose limbs ye must soon lay down in the cold and silent grave, from whence no traveler can return; a few more days and I go the way of all the earth.

But behold, the Lord hath redeemed my soul from hell; I have beheld his glory, and I am encircled about eternally in the arms of his love.

And I desire that ye should remember to observe the statutes and the judgments of the Lord; behold, this hath been the anxiety of my soul from the beginning.

My heart hath been weighed down with sorrow from time to time, for I have feared, lest for the hardness of your hearts the Lord your God should come out in the fulness of his wrath upon you, that ye be cut off and destroyed forever;

Or, that a cursing should come upon you for the space of many generations; and ye are visited by sword, and by famine, and are hated, and are led according to the will and captivity of the devil.

O my sons, that these things might not come upon you, but that ye might be a choice and a favored people of the Lord. But behold, his will be done; for his ways are righteousness forever.

- 20 Futhi ithe: Kangangoba niyoyigcina imiyalelo yami niyophumelela ezweni; kodwa kangangoba ningezukuyigcina imiyalelo yami niyohlukaniswa nami.
- 21 Manje ukuze umphefumulo wami ube nokuthokoza kini, futhi nokuthi inhliziyo yami iwushiye lomhlaba ngenjabulo ngenxa yenu, nokuthi ningangibeki phansi ngosizi kanye nokudabuka ethuneni, sukumani othulini, madodana ami, futhi nibe ngamadoda, niphokophelele ukuba mqondomunye kanye nokuba nhliziyonye, nihlangane kuzo zonke izinto, ukuze ningehleli phansi ekuthunjweni.
- 22 Ukuze ningaqalekiswa ngesiqalekiso esibuhlungu; futhi phezu kwalokho, nokuthi ningazehlisele ukungathokozi kukaNkulunkulu olungileyo phezu kwenu, kangangoba nizobhujiswa, yebo, ngokubhujiswa kwaphakade komphefumulo kanye nokomzimba.
- 23 Vukani, madodana ami; gqokani isikhali sokulunga. Vuthuzani amaketanga eniboshwe ngawo, niphume ekusithekeni, futhi nisukume othulini.
- 24 Ningabe nisamvukela umfowenu nanini, imibono yakhe ebimihle kakhulu, futhi oyigcinile imiyalelo kusukela ngesikhathi sasuka eJerusalema; futhi obe yisu ezandleni zikaNkulunkulu, ekusiletheni ezweni lesethembiso; ngokuba ukuba kwakungave kungenxa yakhe, kwakufanele sibhujiswe yindlala ehlane; nokho, nazama ukuthatha impilo yakhe; yebo, futhi wezwa ubuhlungu obukhulu ngenxa yenu.
- 25 Futhi ngiyesaba kakhulu futhi ngiyaqhaqhazela ngenxa yenu, hleze ezwe ubuhlungu futhi; ngokuba bhokani, nimbeke icala lokuthi ufuna amandla kanye negunya phezu kwenu; kodwa ngiyazi ukuthi akazange afune mandla nagunya phezu kwenu, kodwa ufune inkazimulo kaNkulunkulu, kanye nenhlalakahle yenu uqobo yaphakade.

And he hath said that: Inasmuch as ye shall keep my commandments ye shall prosper in the land; but inasmuch as ye will not keep my commandments ye shall be cut off from my presence.

And now that my soul might have joy in you, and that my heart might leave this world with gladness because of you, that I might not be brought down with grief and sorrow to the grave, arise from the dust, my sons, and be men, and be determined in one mind and in one heart, united in all things, that ye may not come down into captivity;

That ye may not be cursed with a sore cursing; and also, that ye may not incur the displeasure of a just God upon you, unto the destruction, yea, the eternal destruction of both soul and body.

Awake, my sons; put on the armor of righteousness. Shake off the chains with which ye are bound, and come forth out of obscurity, and arise from the dust.

Rebel no more against your brother, whose views have been glorious, and who hath kept the commandments from the time that we left Jerusalem; and who hath been an instrument in the hands of God, in bringing us forth into the land of promise; for were it not for him, we must have perished with hunger in the wilderness; nevertheless, ye sought to take away his life; yea, and he hath suffered much sorrow because of you.

And I exceedingly fear and tremble because of you, lest he shall suffer again; for behold, ye have accused him that he sought power and authority over you; but I know that he hath not sought for power nor authority over you, but he hath sought the glory of God, and your own eternal welfare.

26 Futhi nivungamile ngenxa yokuthi ukhulume ngokucacile kini. Nithi usebenzise amazwi aqinile; nithi unithukuthelele; kodwa bhekani, ukuqina kwamazwi akhe kwaku ngokuqina kwamandla ezwi likaNkulunkulu, elalikusye; futhi lokho nina enikubiza ngokuthukuthela kwakuyiqiniso, njengalelo elikuNkulunkulu, ayengenakulivimba, ebonakalisa ngesibindi mayelana nokungalungi kwenu.

27 Futhi kufanelekile ukuthi amandla kaNkulunkulu abe naye, ngisho nasekunitsheleni ukuthi nilalele. Kepha bhekani, kwakungeyena, kepha kwakunguMoya weNkosi owawukuye, owavula umlomo wakhe ukuba akhulume kangangoba akakwazanga nokuwuvala.

28 Manje ndodana yami, Lamani, futhi ngokunjalo nawe Lemuweli kanye noSamu, futhi ngokunjalo nani madodana ami eningamadodana ka-Ishmayeli, bhekani, uma ningalalela izwi likaNefi aniyikubhubha. Futhi uma niyomlalela ngishiya kini isibusiso, yebo, ngisho nesibusiso sami sokuqala.

29 Kepha uma ningenakumlalela ngiyasithatha isibusiso sami sokuqala, yebo, ngisho nesibusiso sami, futhi siyoba phezu kwakhe.

30 Manje, Zoramu, sengikhuluma kuwe: Bheka, uyinceku kaLabani; nokho, ukhishwe ezweni laseJerusalema, futhi ngiyazi ukuthi ungumngani weqiniso wendodana yami, uNefi, ingunaphakade.

31 Ngalokho-ke, ngenxa yokuthi ubuthembekile inzalo yakho iyobusiswa kanye nenzalo yakhe, ukuthi bahlale empumelelweni isikhathi eside phezu kobuso balelizwe; futhi kungabi bikho lutho, ngaphandle kokuthi kube ngububi phakathi kwabo, obuyolimaza noma buphazamise ukuphumelela kwabo phezu kobuso balelizwe ingunaphakade.

32 Ngalokho-ke, uma niyogcina imiyalelo yeNkosi, iNkosi ilingcwelisile lelizwe ukuze kuvikeleke inzalo yenu kanye nenzalo yendodana yami.

And ye have murmured because he hath been plain unto you. Ye say that he hath used sharpness; ye say that he hath been angry with you; but behold, his sharpness was the sharpness of the power of the word of God, which was in him; and that which ye call anger was the truth, according to that which is in God, which he could not restrain, manifesting boldly concerning your iniquities.

And it must needs be that the power of God must be with him, even unto his commanding you that ye must obey. But behold, it was not he, but it was the Spirit of the Lord which was in him, which opened his mouth to utterance that he could not shut it.

And now my son, Laman, and also Lemuel and Sam, and also my sons who are the sons of Ishmael, behold, if ye will hearken unto the voice of Nephi ye shall not perish. And if ye will hearken unto him I leave unto you a blessing, yea, even my first blessing.

But if ye will not hearken unto him I take away my first blessing, yea, even my blessing, and it shall rest upon him.

And now, Zoram, I speak unto you: Behold, thou art the servant of Laban; nevertheless, thou hast been brought out of the land of Jerusalem, and I know that thou art a true friend unto my son, Nephi, forever.

Wherefore, because thou hast been faithful thy seed shall be blessed with his seed, that they dwell in prosperity long upon the face of this land; and nothing, save it shall be iniquity among them, shall harm or disturb their prosperity upon the face of this land forever.

Wherefore, if ye shall keep the commandments of the Lord, the Lord hath consecrated this land for the security of thy seed with the seed of my son.

2 Nefi 2

- 1 Manje, Jakobe, sengikhuluma kuwe: Wena uyizibulo lami ezinsukwini zosizi lwami ehlane. Futhi bheka, ebuntwaneni bakho uzizwile izinkathazo kanye nosizi olukhulu, ngenxa yokwedelela kwabafowenu.
- 2 Nokho, Jakobe, zibulo lami lasehlane, wena uyabazi ubukhulu bukaNkulunkulu; futhi uyozingwelisa izinkathazo zakho ukuze kube yinzuzo kuwe.
- 3 Ngalokho-ke, umphefumulo wakho uyobusiswa, futhi uyohlala ngokuphepha nomfowenu, uNefi; futhi izinsuku zakho uyozechitha ngokwenza umsebenzi kaNkulunkulu wakho. Ngalokho-ke, ngiyazi ukuthi ukhululiwe, ngenxa yokulunga koMkhululi wakho; ngokuba ubonile ukuthi ngokuphelela kwesikhathi uyofika alethe insindiso kubantu.
- 4 Futhi uyibonile ebusheni bakho inkazimulo yakhe; ngalokho-ke, ubusisiwe ngisho nanjengabo labo ayobafundisa esesenyameni; ngokuba uMoya uyefana, izolo, namhlanje, futhi ingunaphakade. Futhi indlela ilungisiwe kusukela ekuweni komuntu, futhi insindiso imahhala.
- 5 Futhi abantu bayafundiswa ngokwanele ukuze bazi okuhle kokubi. Futhi umthetho unikeziwe kubantu. Futhi ngomthetho ayikho inyama engenacala; noma, ngomthetho abantu bayasuswa. Yebo, ngomthetho wesikhashana basuswa; futhi phezu kwalokho, ngomthetho womoya bayalahleka kulokho okuhle, futhi bahlupheke ingunaphakade.
- 6 Ngalokho-ke, ukukhululwa kuza ngoMesiya oNgcwele; ngokuba ugcwele umusa neqiniso.
- 7 Bheka, uzinikela ukuze abe ngumhlathelo wesono, ukwanelisa izimfuno zomthetho, kubo bonke labo abanenziziyo edabukileyo kanye nomoya ophukileyo; futhi akukho namunye omunye okungathi ngaye izimfuno zomthetho zaneliseke.

2 Nephi 2

And now, Jacob, I speak unto you: Thou art my first-born in the days of my tribulation in the wilderness. And behold, in thy childhood thou hast suffered afflictions and much sorrow, because of the rudeness of thy brethren.

Nevertheless, Jacob, my firstborn in the wilderness, thou knowest the greatness of God; and he shall consecrate thine afflictions for thy gain.

Wherefore, thy soul shall be blessed, and thou shalt dwell safely with thy brother, Nephi; and thy days shall be spent in the service of thy God. Wherefore, I know that thou art redeemed, because of the righteousness of thy Redeemer; for thou hast beheld that in the fulness of time he cometh to bring salvation unto men.

And thou hast beheld in thy youth his glory; wherefore, thou art blessed even as they unto whom he shall minister in the flesh; for the Spirit is the same, yesterday, today, and forever. And the way is prepared from the fall of man, and salvation is free.

And men are instructed sufficiently that they know good from evil. And the law is given unto men. And by the law no flesh is justified; or, by the law men are cut off. Yea, by the temporal law they were cut off; and also, by the spiritual law they perish from that which is good, and become miserable forever.

Wherefore, redemption cometh in and through the Holy Messiah; for he is full of grace and truth.

Behold, he offereth himself a sacrifice for sin, to answer the ends of the law, unto all those who have a broken heart and a contrite spirit; and unto none else can the ends of the law be answered.

- 8 Ngalokho-ke, kubaluleke kangakanani ukwazisa ngalezi zinto kubantu basemhlabeni, ukuze bazi ukuthi akukho nyama engahlala phambi kukaNkulunkulu, ngaphandle kwezenzo ezinhle, nesihawu, kanye nomusa kaMesiya oNgcwele, obeka phansi impilo yakhe ngokwasenyameni, futhi aphinde ayithathe ngamandla kaMoya, ukuze afeze ukuvuka kwabafileyo, ebe engowokuqala oyovuka.
- 9 Ngalokho-ke, uyizithelo zokuqala kuNkulunkulu, kangangoba eyoncengela bonke abantwana babantu; futhi labo abayokholwa kuye bayosindiswa.
- 10 Futhi ngenxa yokubancengela bonke, bonke abantu beza kuNkulunkulu; ngalokho-ke, bami phambi kwakhe, ukuze bahlulelwe nguye ngokweqiniso kanye nangobungcwele obukuye. Ngalokho-ke, izimfuno zomthetho onikwe oNgcwele, zigcwalisa isijeziso esibekiwe, isijeziso esibekiwe esiphikisanayo nenjabulo ebekiwe, ukuze kugcwaliseke izimfuno zenhlawulo—
- 11 Ngokuba kufanele, ukuthi kube khona ukuphikisana ezintweni zonke. Uma kungenjalo, zibulo lami ehlane, ukulunga akunakugcwaliseka, ngokunjalo nobubi, ngokunjalo nobungcwele noma usizi, ngokunjalo nokuhle noma okubi. Ngalokho-ke, zonke izinto kufanele zibe yinhlanganisela eyodwa; ngalokho-ke, uma zingaba ngumzimba owodwa kuyodingeka zihlale njengezifile, zingenampilo nakufa, noma ukubola noma ukungaboli, ukujabula noma usizi, ngokunjalo nemizwa noma ukungabi namizwa.
- 12 Ngalokho-ke, kwakuzoba wukuthi zazidalelwe into eyize; ngalokho-ke kwakunge zukuba bikho nhloso kuyo injongo yokudalwa kwazo. Ngalokho-ke, lento ibiyoshabalalisa ukuhlakanipha kukaNkulunkulu kanye nezinhlalo zakhe zaphakade, futhi ngokunjalo namandla, kanye nesihawu, kanye nokulunga kukaNkulunkulu.

Wherefore, how great the importance to make these things known unto the inhabitants of the earth, that they may know that there is no flesh that can dwell in the presence of God, save it be through the merits, and mercy, and grace of the Holy Messiah, who layeth down his life according to the flesh, and taketh it again by the power of the Spirit, that he may bring to pass the resurrection of the dead, being the first that should rise.

Wherefore, he is the firstfruits unto God, inasmuch as he shall make intercession for all the children of men; and they that believe in him shall be saved.

And because of the intercession for all, all men come unto God; wherefore, they stand in the presence of him, to be judged of him according to the truth and holiness which is in him. Wherefore, the ends of the law which the Holy One hath given, unto the inflicting of the punishment which is affixed, which punishment that is affixed is in opposition to that of the happiness which is affixed, to answer the ends of the atonement—

For it must needs be, that there is an opposition in all things. If not so, my firstborn in the wilderness, righteousness could not be brought to pass, neither wickedness, neither holiness nor misery, neither good nor bad. Wherefore, all things must needs be a compound in one; wherefore, if it should be one body it must needs remain as dead, having no life neither death, nor corruption nor incorruption, happiness nor misery, neither sense nor insensibility.

Wherefore, it must needs have been created for a thing of naught; wherefore there would have been no purpose in the end of its creation. Wherefore, this thing must needs destroy the wisdom of God and his eternal purposes, and also the power, and the mercy, and the justice of God.

- 13 Futhi uma niyothi awukho umthetho, ngokunjalo futhi niyothi asikho isono. Uma niyothi asikho isono, ngokunjalo futhi niyothi akukho ukulunga. Futhi uma kungekho ukulunga ngeke ibe khona injabulo. Futhi uma kungekho ukulunga noma injabulo ngeke kubekhona ukujeziswa noma usizi. Futhi uma lezi zinto zingekho akekho noNkulunkulu. Futhi uma engekho uNkulunkulu nathi asikho, ngokunjalo nomhlaba; ngokuba bekungeke kube khona ukudalwa kwezinto, ngokunjalo nezinto okufanele zenze nezinto okufanele zenziwe; ngalokho-ke, zonke izinto beziyoshabalala ziphele.
- 14 Manje, madodana ami, ngikhuluma kini lezi zinto ukuze kube yinzuzo kini kanye nesifundo; ngokuba ukhona uNkulunkulu, futhi wadala zonke izinto, amazulu kanye nomhlaba, kanye nazo zonke izinto ezikuwo, izinto okufanele zenze futhi nezinto okufanele zenziwe.
- 15 Futhi ukuze kufezeke izinhloso zakhe zaphakade ngenjongo yomuntu, emva kokuthi esedale abazali bethu bokuqala, kanye nezilwane zasendle kanye nezinyoni zezulu, futhi ukuphetha, zonke izinto ezidaliwe, kwakufanelekile ukuthi kube khona ukuphikisana; ngisho nesithelo esasingavunyelwe sasiphikisana nomuthi wokuphila; owodwa umtoti omunye ubaba.
- 16 Ngalokho-ke, iNkosi uNkulunkulu yanika umuntu ukuthi azenzele ngokwakhe. Ngalokho-ke, umuntu akanakukwazi ukuzenzela ngokwakhe ngaphandle kokuthi ayengwe ngokukodwa noma ngokunye.
- 17 Futhi mina, Lehi, ngokwezinto engizifundile, zingenza ngicabange ukuthi ingelosi kaNkulunkulu, ngokwalokho okubhaliwe, yayiwile ezulwini; ngalokho-ke, yaba ngudeveli, ngokuba yafuna lokho okwakukubi phambi kukaNkulunkulu.
- 18 Futhi ngenxa yokuthi yayiwile ezulwini, futhi yaba lusizi ingunaphakade, ifuna futhi wonke umuntu abe lusizi. Ngalokho-ke, yathi ku-Eva, yebo, ngisho leyo nyoka endala, engudeveli, enguyise wawo wonke amanga, ngalokho-ke yathi: Dlana lesi sithelo esingavunyelwe, futhi awuyikufa, kepha uyokuba njengoNkulunkulu, wazi okuhle nokubi.

And if ye shall say there is no law, ye shall also say there is no sin. If ye shall say there is no sin, ye shall also say there is no righteousness. And if there be no righteousness there be no happiness. And if there be no righteousness nor happiness there be no punishment nor misery. And if these things are not there is no God. And if there is no God we are not, neither the earth; for there could have been no creation of things, neither to act nor to be acted upon; wherefore, all things must have vanished away.

And now, my sons, I speak unto you these things for your profit and learning; for there is a God, and he hath created all things, both the heavens and the earth, and all things that in them are, both things to act and things to be acted upon.

And to bring about his eternal purposes in the end of man, after he had created our first parents, and the beasts of the field and the fowls of the air, and in fine, all things which are created, it must needs be that there was an opposition; even the forbidden fruit in opposition to the tree of life; the one being sweet and the other bitter.

Wherefore, the Lord God gave unto man that he should act for himself. Wherefore, man could not act for himself save it should be that he was enticed by the one or the other.

And I, Lehi, according to the things which I have read, must needs suppose that an angel of God, according to that which is written, had fallen from heaven; wherefore, he became a devil, having sought that which was evil before God.

And because he had fallen from heaven, and had become miserable forever, he sought also the misery of all mankind. Wherefore, he said unto Eve, yea, even that old serpent, who is the devil, who is the father of all lies, wherefore he said: Partake of the forbidden fruit, and ye shall not die, but ye shall be as God, knowing good and evil.

- 19 Futhi emva kokuthi u-Adamu kanye no-Eva sebesidlile isithelo esingavunyelwe baxoshwa baphuma ensimini yase-Edene, ukuze bayolima umhlabathi.
- 20 Futhi bazala abantwana; yebo, ngisho umndeni womhlaba wonke.
- 21 Futhi izinsuku zabantwana babantu zelulwa, ngokwentando kukaNkulunkulu, ukuze baphenduke ngesikhathi besese nyameni; ngalokho-ke, isimo sabo saba yisimo sokuvinjwa, futhi isikhathi sabo selulwa, njengo kwemiyalelo iNkosi uNkulunkulu ayinika abantwana babantu. Ngokuba wanika umyalelo yokuthi bonke abantu kufanele baphenduke; ngokuba wabakhombisa bonke abantu ukuthi babelahlekile, ngenxa yeziphambeko zabazali babo.
- 22 Manje, bheka, ukuba u-Adamu akazange aqhambuke ngabe akazange awe, kepha wayeyohlala ensimini yase-Edene. Futhi zonke izinto ezazidaliwe kwakuyofanele zihlale kuleso simo esifanayo ezazikuso emva kokuthi zidaliwe; futhi kwakuyofanele zihlale ingunaphakade, futhi zingabi nasiphelo.
- 23 Futhi babengeke babe nabantwana; ngalokho-ke babeyohlala besesimweni sokuba msulwa, bengenanjabulo, ngokuba babengazi lusizi; bengenzi buhle, ngokuba babengazi sono.
- 24 Kodwa bheka, zonke izinto zenziwa ngokuhlakanipha kwakhe lowo owazi zonke izinto.
- 25 U-Adamu wawa ukuze abantu babekhona; futhi abantu bakhona, ukuze babe nokujabula.
- 26 Futhi uMesiya uyofika esikhathini esipheleleyo, ukuze akhulule abantwana babantu ekuweni. Futhi ngenxa yokuthi bakhululiwe ekuweni sebenenkululeko yaphakade, sebazi okuhle kokubi; sebezenzela bona ngokwabo futhi hhayi ukuthi kwenziwe kubo, ngaphandle kokuthi kube ngokujeziswa wumthetho ngosuku olukhulu kanye nolokugcina, njengokwemiyalelo uNkulunkulu ayinikezile.

And after Adam and Eve had partaken of the forbidden fruit they were driven out of the garden of Eden, to till the earth.

And they have brought forth children; yea, even the family of all the earth.

And the days of the children of men were prolonged, according to the will of God, that they might repent while in the flesh; wherefore, their state became a state of probation, and their time was lengthened, according to the commandments which the Lord God gave unto the children of men. For he gave commandment that all men must repent; for he showed unto all men that they were lost, because of the transgression of their parents.

And now, behold, if Adam had not transgressed he would not have fallen, but he would have remained in the garden of Eden. And all things which were created must have remained in the same state in which they were after they were created; and they must have remained forever, and had no end.

And they would have had no children; wherefore they would have remained in a state of innocence, having no joy, for they knew no misery; doing no good, for they knew no sin.

But behold, all things have been done in the wisdom of him who knoweth all things.

Adam fell that men might be; and men are, that they might have joy.

And the Messiah cometh in the fulness of time, that he may redeem the children of men from the fall. And because that they are redeemed from the fall they have become free forever, knowing good from evil; to act for themselves and not to be acted upon, save it be by the punishment of the law at the great and last day, according to the commandments which God hath given.

- 27 Ngalokho-ke, abantu bakhululekile ngokwasenyameni; futhi zonke izinto zinikeziwe kubo eziyizimfanelo zomuntu. Futhi bakhululekile ukukhetha inkululeko kanye nokuphila okuphakade, ngoMlamuli omkhulu wabo bonke abantu, noma ukukhetha ukuthunjwa kanye nokufa, ngokokuthunjwa kanye namandla kadeveli; ngokuba yena ufuna ukuthi bonke abantu babe lusizi njengaye.
- 28 Manje, madodana ami, ngifuna ukuthi nibheke kuMlamuli omkhulu, futhi nilalele imiyalelo yakhe emikhulu; futhi nithembele emazwini akhe, futhi nikhetha ukuphila okuphakade, ngokwentando kaMoya wakhe oyiNgcwele.
- 29 Futhi ningakhethi ukufa okuphakade, ngokwentando yenyama kanye nobubi obukuyo, obunika umoya kadeveli amandla okuthumba, ukuze anidonsele phansi esihogweni, ukuze abuse phezu kwenu embusweni wakhe uqobo.
- 30 Ngikhulume lamazwi ambalwa kini nonke, madodana ami, ezinsukwini zokugcina zokuvivinywa kwami; futhi ngikhetha indlela elungileyo, ngokwamazwi omphrofethi. Futhi anginayo enye inhloso ngaphandle kokuba kuzuze imiphefumulo yenu ingunaphakade. Amen.

Wherefore, men are free according to the flesh; and all things are given them which are expedient unto man. And they are free to choose liberty and eternal life, through the great Mediator of all men, or to choose captivity and death, according to the captivity and power of the devil; for he seeketh that all men might be miserable like unto himself.

And now, my sons, I would that ye should look to the great Mediator, and hearken unto his great commandments; and be faithful unto his words, and choose eternal life, according to the will of his Holy Spirit;

And not choose eternal death, according to the will of the flesh and the evil which is therein, which giveth the spirit of the devil power to captivate, to bring you down to hell, that he may reign over you in his own kingdom.

I have spoken these few words unto you all, my sons, in the last days of my probation; and I have chosen the good part, according to the words of the prophet. And I have none other object save it be the everlasting welfare of your souls. Amen.

2 Nefi 3

- 1 Manje sengikhuluma kuwe, Josefa, thumbu wami. Wena wazalelwa ehlane lezinkathazo zami; yebo, ezinsukwini zosizi lwami olukhulu kakhulu nempela umama wakho wakuzala.
- 2 Futhi sengathi iNkosi ingakungcwelisela lona nawe lelizwe, okuyizwe eliyigugu kakhulu, libe yifa lakho kanye nefa lenzalo yakho kanye nabafowenu, ukuze nivikeleke ingunaphakade, uma kungukuthi niyoyigcina imiyalelo yoNgcwele ka-Israyeli.
- 3 Manje, Josefa, thumbu wami, engamkhipha ehlane lezinkathazo zami, sengathi iNkosi ingakubusisa ingunaphakade, ngokuba inzalo yakho ngeke ibhujiswe iphele nya.
- 4 Ngokuba bheka, uyinzalo yokhalo lwami; futhi mina ngiyisizukulwane sikaJosefa owathwalwa wathunjelwa eGibithe. Futhi zazi zinkulu izivumelwano zeNkosi eyazenza noJosefa.
- 5 Ngalokho-ke, uJosefa ngempela walubona usuku lwethu. Futhi wathola isethembiso eNkosini, sokuthi kuyo inzalo yokhalo lwakhe iNkosi uNkulunkulu iyovusa igatsha elilungileyo kuyo indlu ka-Israyeli; hhayi uMesiya, kodwa igatsha elalizohleshulwa, nokho, ukuthi likhunjulwe ezivumelwaneni zeNkosi kangangoba uMesiya uyobonakaliswa kubo ezinsukwini zokugcina, ngamandla, ukuze baphume ebumnyameni babe sekukhanyeni—yebo, baphume ebumnyameni abakubo bengazi futhi baphume ekuthunjweni baye enkululekweni.
- 6 Ngokuba uJosefa ngempela wafakaza, ethi: Umboni iNkosi uNkulunkulu wami iyomvusa, oyokuba ngumboni okhethiweyo kuyo inzalo yokhalo lwami.
- 7 Yebo, uJosefa ngempela wathi: Isho kanje iNkosi kimi: Umboni okhethiweyo ngizomvusa uyophuma kuyo inzalo yokhalo lwakho; futhi uyokwaziswa kakhulu phakathi kwenzalo yokhalo lwakho. Futhi ngiyomnika umyalelo wokuthi uyokwenza umsebenzi wenzalo yokhalo lwakho, abafowabo, oyokuba ngobalulekile kakhulu kubo, ngisho nasekubaziseni ngezivumelwano engazenza koyihlo.

2 Nephi 3

And now I speak unto you, Joseph, my last-born. Thou wast born in the wilderness of mine afflictions; yea, in the days of my greatest sorrow did thy mother bear thee.

And may the Lord consecrate also unto thee this land, which is a most precious land, for thine inheritance and the inheritance of thy seed with thy brethren, for thy security forever, if it so be that ye shall keep the commandments of the Holy One of Israel.

And now, Joseph, my last-born, whom I have brought out of the wilderness of mine afflictions, may the Lord bless thee forever, for thy seed shall not utterly be destroyed.

For behold, thou art the fruit of my loins; and I am a descendant of Joseph who was carried captive into Egypt. And great were the covenants of the Lord which he made unto Joseph.

Wherefore, Joseph truly saw our day. And he obtained a promise of the Lord, that out of the fruit of his loins the Lord God would raise up a righteous branch unto the house of Israel; not the Messiah, but a branch which was to be broken off, nevertheless, to be remembered in the covenants of the Lord that the Messiah should be made manifest unto them in the latter days, in the spirit of power, unto the bringing of them out of darkness unto light—yea, out of hidden darkness and out of captivity unto freedom.

For Joseph truly testified, saying: A seer shall the Lord my God raise up, who shall be a choice seer unto the fruit of my loins.

Yea, Joseph truly said: Thus saith the Lord unto me: A choice seer will I raise up out of the fruit of thy loins; and he shall be esteemed highly among the fruit of thy loins. And unto him will I give commandment that he shall do a work for the fruit of thy loins, his brethren, which shall be of great worth unto them, even to the bringing of them to the knowledge of the covenants which I have made with thy fathers.

- 8 Futhi ngiyomnika umyalelo wokuthi akayikwenza namuphi omunye umsebenzi, ngaphandle komsebenzi lowo engiyomyala ngawo. Futhi ngiyomenza abe mkhulu emehlweni ami; ngokuba uyokwenza umsebenzi wami.
- 9 Futhi uyokuba mkhulu njengoMose, engathi ngiyonivusela yena, ukuze akhulule abantu bami, O ndlu ka-Israyeli.
- 10 Futhi uMose ngizomvusa, ukuze akhulule abantu bakho baphume ezweni laseGibithe.
- 11 Kodwa umboni ngizokumvusa kuyo inzalo yokhalo lwakho; futhi ngizomnikeza amandla okuthi alethe izwi lami kuyo inzalo yokhalo lwakho—futhi hhayi ukuletha izwi lami kuphela, kusho iNkosi, kepha ukubakholwisa ngezwi lami, eliyobe selivele selazisiwe phakathi kwabo.
- 12 Ngalokho-ke, inzalo yokhalo lwakho iyobhala; ngokunjalo nenzalo yokhalo lukaJuda iyobhala; futhi lokho okuyobhalwa yinzalo yokhalo lwakho, ngokunjalo nalokho okuyobhalwa yinzalo yokhalo lukaJuda, kuyokhula ndawonye, ukuze kuphikise izimfundiso zamanga futhi kuqede imibango, futhi kulethe ukuthula phakathi kwenzalo yokhalo lwakho, kanye nokuyiletha olwazini lokhokho babo ezinsukwini zokugcina, futhi ngokunjalo nasolwazini lwezivumelwano zami, kusho iNkosi.
- 13 Futhi ebuthakathakeni uyokwenziwa abe namandla, ngalolo suku ngesikhathi umsebenzi wami usuqala phakathi kwabo bonke abantu bami, ukuze nibuyiselwe, O ndlu ka-Israyeli, kusho iNkosi.
- 14 Futhi waphrofetha kanje uJosefa, ethi: Bheka, lowo mboni iNkosi iyombusisa; futhi labo abayofuna ukumbulala bayobhujiswa; ngokuba lesi sethembiso, engisithole eNkosini, ngenzalo yokhalo lwami, siyogcwaliseka. Bheka, nginesiqiniseko ngokugcwaliseka kwalesi sethembiso;
- 15 Futhi igama lakhe liyobizwa ngami; futhi liyokuba yigama likayise. Futhi uyokuba njengami; ngokuba leyonto, iNkosi eyoyiletha ngesandla sakhe, ngamandla eNkosi iyoletha abantu bami ensindisweni.

And I will give unto him a commandment that he shall do none other work, save the work which I shall command him. And I will make him great in mine eyes; for he shall do my work.

And he shall be great like unto Moses, whom I have said I would raise up unto you, to deliver my people, O house of Israel.

And Moses will I raise up, to deliver thy people out of the land of Egypt.

But a seer will I raise up out of the fruit of thy loins; and unto him will I give power to bring forth my word unto the seed of thy loins—and not to the bringing forth my word only, saith the Lord, but to the convincing them of my word, which shall have already gone forth among them.

Wherefore, the fruit of thy loins shall write; and the fruit of the loins of Judah shall write; and that which shall be written by the fruit of thy loins, and also that which shall be written by the fruit of the loins of Judah, shall grow together, unto the confounding of false doctrines and laying down of contentions, and establishing peace among the fruit of thy loins, and bringing them to the knowledge of their fathers in the latter days, and also to the knowledge of my covenants, saith the Lord.

And out of weakness he shall be made strong, in that day when my work shall commence among all my people, unto the restoring thee, O house of Israel, saith the Lord.

And thus prophesied Joseph, saying: Behold, that seer will the Lord bless; and they that seek to destroy him shall be confounded; for this promise, which I have obtained of the Lord, of the fruit of my loins, shall be fulfilled. Behold, I am sure of the fulfilling of this promise;

And his name shall be called after me; and it shall be after the name of his father. And he shall be like unto me; for the thing, which the Lord shall bring forth by his hand, by the power of the Lord shall bring my people unto salvation.

- 16 Yebo, waphrofetha kanjalo-ke uJosefa ethi: Nginesiqiniseko ngalento, ngisho nanjengoba nginesiqiniseko ngesethembiso sikaMose; ngokuba iNkosi ithe kimi, ngiyoyigcina inzalo yakho ingunaphakade.
- 17 Futhi iNkosi ithe: Ngiyovusa uMose; futhi ngizomnikeza amandla endukwini; futhi ngiyomnikeza ukwahlulela ngombhalo. Kepha ngeke ngilukhulule ulimi lwakhe, ukuthi akhulume kakhulu, ngokuba angiyiku menza abe yiciko ekukhulumeni. Kepha ngiyombhalela umthetho wami, ngomunwe wesandla sami uqobo; futhi ngiyomenzela umkhulumeli wakhe.
- 18 Futhi iNkosi yaphinda yathi kimi: Ngizovusa kuyo inzalo yokhalo lwakho; futhi ngizomenzela umkhulumeli. Futhi, bheka, ngizomnikeza ukuthi abhale umbhalo wenzalo yokhalo lwakho, abhalele inzalo yokhalo lwakho, futhi umkhulumeli wenzalo yokhalo lwakho uyokumemezela lokho.
- 19 Futhi amazwi ayowabhala ayokuba ngamazwi afanelekile ngokuhlakanipha kwami ukuthi adluliselwe kuyo inzalo yokhalo lwakho. Futhi kuyokuba sengathi inzalo yokhalo lwakho ikhale kubo isothulini; ngokuba ngiyalwazi ukholo lwabo.
- 20 Futhi iyokhala isothulini; yebo, ngisho ngokuphenduka kubafowabo, ngisho nasemuva kweziningi izizukulwane esezadlula ngabo. Futhi kuyokwenzeka ukuthi ukukhala kwabo kuyoya enzalweni yokhalo lwakho, ngisho njengokuba sobala kwamazwi abo.
- 21 Ngenxa yokholo lwabo amazwi abo ayoqhubekela phambili ephuma emlonyeni wami aye kubafowabo abayinzalo yokhalo lwakho; futhi ubuthakathaka bamazwi abo ngizobenza buqine okholweni lwabo, ukuze ngikhumbule isivumelwano engasenza koyihlo.
- 22 Manje, bheka, Josefa ndodana yami, nempela ubaba wakudala waphrofetha ngalendlela.
- 23 Ngalokho-ke, ngenxa yalesi sivumelwano wena ubusisiwe; ngokuba inzalo yakho ngeke ibhujiswe, ngokuba iyolalela amazwi alencwadi.

Yea, thus prophesied Joseph: I am sure of this thing, even as I am sure of the promise of Moses; for the Lord hath said unto me, I will preserve thy seed forever.

And the Lord hath said: I will raise up a Moses; and I will give power unto him in a rod; and I will give judgment unto him in writing. Yet I will not loose his tongue, that he shall speak much, for I will not make him mighty in speaking. But I will write unto him my law, by the finger of mine own hand; and I will make a spokesman for him.

And the Lord said unto me also: I will raise up unto the fruit of thy loins; and I will make for him a spokesman. And I, behold, I will give unto him that he shall write the writing of the fruit of thy loins, unto the fruit of thy loins; and the spokesman of thy loins shall declare it.

And the words which he shall write shall be the words which are expedient in my wisdom should go forth unto the fruit of thy loins. And it shall be as if the fruit of thy loins had cried unto them from the dust; for I know their faith.

And they shall cry from the dust; yea, even repentance unto their brethren, even after many generations have gone by them. And it shall come to pass that their cry shall go, even according to the simplicity of their words.

Because of their faith their words shall proceed forth out of my mouth unto their brethren who are the fruit of thy loins; and the weakness of their words will I make strong in their faith, unto the remembering of my covenant which I made unto thy fathers.

And now, behold, my son Joseph, after this manner did my father of old prophesy.

Wherefore, because of this covenant thou art blessed; for thy seed shall not be destroyed, for they shall hearken unto the words of the book.

24 Futhi kuyovuka omunye onamandla phakathi kwabo, oyokwenza okuningi okuhle, ekukhulumeni nasekwenzeni, uyokuba yisu ezandleni zikaNkulunkulu, abe nokukholwa okukhulu, kokwenza izimangaliso ezinkulu, futhi enze leyonto enkulu emehlweni kaNkulunkulu, ekugcwalisekeni kokubuyiselwa okuningi kuyo indlu ka-Israyeli, futhi nakuyo inzalo yabafowenu.

25 Manje, ubusisiwe, Josefa. Bheka, umncane; ngalokho-ke lalela amazwi omfowenu, uNefi, futhi kuyokwenziwa kuwe ngisho njengokwamazwi esengiwakhulumile. Khumbula amazwi kayihlo ofayo. Amen.

And there shall rise up one mighty among them, who shall do much good, both in word and in deed, being an instrument in the hands of God, with exceeding faith, to work mighty wonders, and do that thing which is great in the sight of God, unto the bringing to pass much restoration unto the house of Israel, and unto the seed of thy brethren.

And now, blessed art thou, Joseph. Behold, thou art little; wherefore hearken unto the words of thy brother, Nephi, and it shall be done unto thee even according to the words which I have spoken. Remember the words of thy dying father. Amen.

2 Nefi 4

- 1 Manje, mina, Nefi, sengikhuluma ngokuphathelene neziphrofetho ubaba akhuluma ngazo, ngokuphathelene noJosefa, owathwalwa wayiswa eGibithe.
- 2 Ngokuba bheka, ngempela waphrofetha ngokuphathelene nayo yonke inzalo yakhe. Futhi iziphrofetho azibhala, azikho ezinkulu ngaphezu kwazo. Futhi waphrofetha ngokuphathelene nathi, kanye nangezizukulwane zethu ezizayo; futhi zibhalwe ezingcwepheni zethusi.
- 3 Ngalokho-ke, emva kokuthi ubaba esenze isiphetho sokukhuluma ngokuphathelene neziphrofetho zikaJosefa, wabiza abantwana bakaLamani, amadodana akhe, kanye namadodakazi akhe, futhi wathi kubo: Bhekani, madodana ami, kanye namadodakazi ami, eningamadodana kanye namadodakazi ezibulo lami, ngingesifiso sokuthi sengathi beningawalalela amazwi ami.
- 4 Ngokuba iNkosi uNkulunkulu ishilo ukuthi: Kangangoba niyoyigcina imiyalelo yami niyophumelela ezweni; futhi kangangoba ningezukuyigcina imiyalelo yami niyokwehlukani nami.
- 5 Kodwa bhekani, madodana ami kanye namadodakazi ami, anginakukwazi ukuthi ngihambe ngehlele ethuneni lami ngaphandle kokuthi nginisiye nesibusiso; ngokuba bhekani, ngiyazi ukuthi uma nikhuliswa ngendlela okufanele nihambe ngayo aninakuphambuka kuyo.
- 6 Ngalokho-ke, uma niqalekiswa, bhekani, ngishiya isibusiso sami phezu kwenu, ukuthi isiqalekiso sisuswe kini bese abazali benu bephendula ngaso.
- 7 Ngalokho-ke, ngenxa yesibusiso sami iNkosi uNkulunkulu ngeke ivume ukuthi nibhubhe; ngalokho-ke, iyokuba nesihawu kini futhi nakuyo inzalo yenu ingunaphakade.
- 8 Futhi kwenzeka ukuthi emva kokuthi ubaba eseqedile ukukhuluma namadodana kanye namadodakazi kaLamani, wenza ukuthi amadodana kanye namadodakazi kaLemuweli aletwe phambi kwakhe.

2 Nephi 4

And now, I, Nephi, speak concerning the prophecies of which my father hath spoken, concerning Joseph, who was carried into Egypt.

For behold, he truly prophesied concerning all his seed. And the prophecies which he wrote, there are not many greater. And he prophesied concerning us, and our future generations; and they are written upon the plates of brass.

Wherefore, after my father had made an end of speaking concerning the prophecies of Joseph, he called the children of Laman, his sons, and his daughters, and said unto them: Behold, my sons, and my daughters, who are the sons and the daughters of my firstborn, I would that ye should give ear unto my words.

For the Lord God hath said that: Inasmuch as ye shall keep my commandments ye shall prosper in the land; and inasmuch as ye will not keep my commandments ye shall be cut off from my presence.

But behold, my sons and my daughters, I cannot go down to my grave save I should leave a blessing upon you; for behold, I know that if ye are brought up in the way ye should go ye will not depart from it.

Wherefore, if ye are cursed, behold, I leave my blessing upon you, that the cursing may be taken from you and be answered upon the heads of your parents.

Wherefore, because of my blessing the Lord God will not suffer that ye shall perish; wherefore, he will be merciful unto you and unto your seed forever.

And it came to pass that after my father had made an end of speaking to the sons and daughters of Laman, he caused the sons and daughters of Lemuel to be brought before him.

- 9 Futhi wakhuluma kubo, ethi: Bhekani, madodana ami kanye namadodakazi ami, eningamadodana kanye namadodakazi endodana yami yesibili; bhekani nginishiya nesibusiso esifanayo naleso engisishiye emadodaneni kanye nasemadodakazini kaLamani; ngalokho-ke, aniyikubhujiswa nya; kodwa ekugcineni inzalo yenu iyobusiswa.
- 10 Futhi kwenzeka ukuthi ngesikhathi ubaba eseqedile ukukhuluma kubo, bheka, wakhuluma kuwo amadodana ka-Ishmayeli, yebo, futhi ngisho nakubo bonke abomuzi wakhe.
- 11 Futhi emva kokuthi eseqedile ukukhuluma nabo, wakhuluma noSamu, ethi: Ubusisiwe wena, kanye nenzalo yakho; ngokuba uyokudla ifa lalelizwe njengomfowenu uNefi. Futhi inzalo yakho iyobalwa kanye nenzalo yakhe; futhi uyokuba ngisho njengomfowenu, futhi nenzalo yakho njengenzalo yakhe; futhi uyobusiswa kuzo zonke izinsuku zakho.
- 12 Futhi kwenzeka ukuthi emva kokuthi ubaba, uLehi, esekhulumile kubo bonke abomuzi wakhe, njengokwemizwa yenhliziyi yakhe kanye noMoya weNkosi owawukuye, wakhula wabamdala. Futhi kwenzeka ukuthi wafa, wangcwatshwa.
- 13 Futhi kwenzeka ukuthi kungakabi nazinsuku eziningi emva kokufa kwakhe, uLamani noLemuweli kanye namadodana ka-Ishmayeli bangithukuthelela ngenxa yeziyalo zeNkosi.
- 14 Ngokuba mina, Nefi, ngaphoqeleka ukuthi ngikhulume nabo, njengokwamazwi ayo; ngokuba ngakhuluma izinto eziningi kubo, futhi ngokunjalo nobaba, ngaphambi kokufa kwakhe; okuningi kwalokho akushoyo kubhaliwe kwezinye zezingcwephe zami; ngokuba inxenye eningi yomlando ibhalwe kwezinye zezingcwephe zami.
- 15 Futhi kulezi ngibhala izinto zomphefumulo wami, kanye nokuningi kwemibhalo engcwele eqoshwe ezingcwephehi zethusi. Ngokuba umphefumulo wami uyathokoza ngemibhalo engcwele, futhi inhliziyi yami iyazindla ngayo, futhi ngiyayibhala ukuze ifundwe futhi ibe yinzuzo kubantwana bami.
- 16 Bheka, umphefumulo wami uyathokoza ngezinto zeNkosi; futhi inhliziyi yami iyazindla njalonzalo ngezinto engizibonile futhi ngazizwa.

And he spake unto them, saying: Behold, my sons and my daughters, who are the sons and the daughters of my second son; behold I leave unto you the same blessing which I left unto the sons and daughters of Laman; wherefore, thou shalt not utterly be destroyed; but in the end thy seed shall be blessed.

And it came to pass that when my father had made an end of speaking unto them, behold, he spake unto the sons of Ishmael, yea, and even all his household.

And after he had made an end of speaking unto them, he spake unto Sam, saying: Blessed art thou, and thy seed; for thou shalt inherit the land like unto thy brother Nephi. And thy seed shall be numbered with his seed; and thou shalt be even like unto thy brother, and thy seed like unto his seed; and thou shalt be blessed in all thy days.

And it came to pass after my father, Lehi, had spoken unto all his household, according to the feelings of his heart and the Spirit of the Lord which was in him, he waxed old. And it came to pass that he died, and was buried.

And it came to pass that not many days after his death, Laman and Lemuel and the sons of Ishmael were angry with me because of the admonitions of the Lord.

For I, Nephi, was constrained to speak unto them, according to his word; for I had spoken many things unto them, and also my father, before his death; many of which sayings are written upon mine other plates; for a more history part are written upon mine other plates.

And upon these I write the things of my soul, and many of the scriptures which are engraven upon the plates of brass. For my soul delighteth in the scriptures, and my heart pondereth them, and writeth them for the learning and the profit of my children.

Behold, my soul delighteth in the things of the Lord; and my heart pondereth continually upon the things which I have seen and heard.

- 17 Nokho, naphezu, kobuhle obukhulu beNkosi, ekungitshengiseni imisebenzi yayo emikhulu nemangalisayo, inhliziyo yami yakhala yathi: O mina muntu wosizi! Yebo, inhliziyo yami idabukile ngenxa yenyama yami; umphefumulo wami ulusizi ngenxa yobubi bami.
- 18 Ngizungezwe macala onke, ngenxa yezilingo kanye nezono ezingihaqa kalula.
- 19 Futhi uma ngifisa ukujabula, inhliziyo yami iyabubula ngenxa yezono zami; nokho, ngiyazi ukuthi ithemba lami likubani.
- 20 UNkulunkulu wami uwudondolo lwami; ungiholile ezinkathazweni zami ehlane; futhi wangicina emanzini ajule kakhulu.
- 21 Ungigcwalisile ngothando lwakhe, ngisho ngokwanele ukuba kushiswe inyama yami.
- 22 Uzithobisile izitha zami, wazenza zaqhaq hazela phambi kwami.
- 23 Bheka, ukuzwile ukukhala kwami emini, futhi wanginika ulwazi ngemibono ebusuku.
- 24 Emini ngikhule ngaba nesibindi ekuthandazeni okukhulu phambi kwakhe; yebo, izwi lami ngilithumele phezulu; izingelosi zehlela phansi futhi zangifundisa.
- 25 Ngamaphiko oMoya wakhe umzimba wami uthathiwe wayiswa ezintabeni eziphakeme kakhulu. Amehlo ami abone izinto ezinkulu, yebo, ngisho ezinkulu kakhulu kumuntu; ngakho-ke ngayalwa ukuthi ngingazibhali.
- 26 O pho, uma ngibone izinto ezinkulu kangaka, uma iNkosi ekuzehliseni kwayo kubantwana babantu ibavakashele abantu ngesihawu esikhulu kangaka, kungani inhliziyo yami ilila futhi umphefumulo wami ulibala esigodini sosizi, futhi inyama yami idikibala, futhi amandla ami ehla, ngenxa yezinkathazo zami na?
- 27 Futhi kungani ngivumela isono, ngenxa yenyama yami na? Yebo, kungani ngivumela izilingo, ukuze omubi athole indawo enhliziyweni yami ukuze aqede ukuthula kwami futhi ahluphe umphefumulo wami na? Kungani ngithukuthela ngenxa yesitha sami na?
- 28 Vuka, mphefumulo wami! Ungabe usawela esonweni. Jabula, O nhliziyo yami, futhi ungabe usasinika indawo isitha somphefumulo wami.

Nevertheless, notwithstanding the great goodness of the Lord, in showing me his great and marvelous works, my heart exclaimeth: O wretched man that I am! Yea, my heart sorroweth because of my flesh; my soul grieveth because of mine iniquities.

I am encompassed about, because of the temptations and the sins which do so easily beset me.

And when I desire to rejoice, my heart groaneth because of my sins; nevertheless, I know in whom I have trusted.

My God hath been my support; he hath led me through mine afflictions in the wilderness; and he hath preserved me upon the waters of the great deep.

He hath filled me with his love, even unto the consuming of my flesh.

He hath confounded mine enemies, unto the causing of them to quake before me.

Behold, he hath heard my cry by day, and he hath given me knowledge by visions in the night-time.

And by day have I waxed bold in mighty prayer before him; yea, my voice have I sent up on high; and angels came down and ministered unto me.

And upon the wings of his Spirit hath my body been carried away upon exceedingly high mountains. And mine eyes have beheld great things, yea, even too great for man; therefore I was bidden that I should not write them.

O then, if I have seen so great things, if the Lord in his condescension unto the children of men hath visited men in so much mercy, why should my heart weep and my soul linger in the valley of sorrow, and my flesh waste away, and my strength slacken, because of mine afflictions?

And why should I yield to sin, because of my flesh? Yea, why should I give way to temptations, that the evil one have place in my heart to destroy my peace and afflict my soul? Why am I angry because of mine enemy?

Awake, my soul! No longer droop in sin. Rejoice, O my heart, and give place no more for the enemy of my soul.

29 Ungabe usathukuthela futhi ngenxa yezitha zami. Ungabe usawehlisa amandla ami ngenxa yezinkathazo zami.

30 Thokoza, O nhliziyoyami, futhi ukhale eNkosini, futhi uthi: O Nkosi, ngiyokudumisa ingunaphakade; yebo, umphefumulo wami uyothokoza ngawe, Nkulunkulu wami, kanye nedwala lensindiso yami.

31 O Nkosi, ungawukhulula yini umphefumulo wami na? Ungangikhulula yini ezandleni zezitha zami na? Ungangenza yini ukuthi ngithuthumele ngenxa yokubona isono na?

32 Kwangathi amasango esihogo abengavaleka njalonjalo phambi kwami, ngenxa yokuthi inhliziyoyami iphukile futhi nomoya wami udabukile! O Nkosi, ungaze wawavala amasango okulunga phambi kwami, ukuze ngihambe endleni yesigodi esiphansi, ukuze ngiqonde endleleni elula!

33 O Nkosi, ungangizungeza macala onke ngesambatho sokulunga kwakho! O Nkosi, ungayenza indlela yami yokubaleka phambi kwezitha zami! Ungayenza indlela yami iqonde phambi kwami! Ngicela ungasibeki isikhubekiso endleleni yami—kepha ucacise indlela yami phambi kwami, futhi ungangenzeli uthango endleleni yami, kodwa izindlela zezitha zami.

34 O Nkosi, ngethembele kuwe, futhi ngiyokwethembela kuwe ingunaphakade. Angiyikubeka ithemba lami engalweni yenyama; ngokuba ngiyazi ukuthi uqalekisiwe lowo obeka ithemba lakhe engalweni yenyama. Yebo, uqalekisiwe lowo obeka ithemba lakhe kumuntu noma owenza inyama ibe yingalo yakhe.

35 Yebo, ngiyazi ukuthi uNkulunkulu uyomnika ngomusa lowo ocelayo. Yebo, uNkulunkulu wami uyonginika, uma ngingaceli ngokungalungile; ngakho-ke ngiyoliphakamisela kuwe izwi lami; yebo, ngiyokhala kuwe, Nkulunkulu wami, dwala lokulunga kwami. Bheka, izwi lami liyokhuphukela phezulu kuwe ingunaphakade, dwala lami kanye noNkulunkulu wami waphakade. Amen.

Do not anger again because of mine enemies. Do not slacken my strength because of mine afflictions.

Rejoice, O my heart, and cry unto the Lord, and say: O Lord, I will praise thee forever; yea, my soul will rejoice in thee, my God, and the rock of my salvation.

O Lord, wilt thou redeem my soul? Wilt thou deliver me out of the hands of mine enemies? Wilt thou make me that I may shake at the appearance of sin?

May the gates of hell be shut continually before me, because that my heart is broken and my spirit is contrite! O Lord, wilt thou not shut the gates of thy righteousness before me, that I may walk in the path of the low valley, that I may be strict in the plain road!

O Lord, wilt thou encircle me around in the robe of thy righteousness! O Lord, wilt thou make a way for mine escape before mine enemies! Wilt thou make my path straight before me! Wilt thou not place a stumbling block in my way—but that thou wouldst clear my way before me, and hedge not up my way, but the ways of mine enemy.

O Lord, I have trusted in thee, and I will trust in thee forever. I will not put my trust in the arm of flesh; for I know that cursed is he that putteth his trust in the arm of flesh. Yea, cursed is he that putteth his trust in man or maketh flesh his arm.

Yea, I know that God will give liberally to him that asketh. Yea, my God will give me, if I ask not amiss; therefore I will lift up my voice unto thee; yea, I will cry unto thee, my God, the rock of my righteousness. Behold, my voice shall forever ascend up unto thee, my rock and mine everlasting God. Amen.

2 Nefi 5

- 1 Bheka, kwenzeka ukuthi mina, Nefi, nempela ngakhala kakhulu eNkosini uNkulunkulu wami, ngenxa yentukuthelo yabafowethu.
- 2 Kepha bheka, intukuthelo yabo nempela yakhula ngokumelene nami, kangangokuthi nempela bafuna ukuyithatha impilo yami.
- 3 Yebo, nempela bavungama ngokumelene nami, bethi: Umfowethu omncane ucabanga ukubusa phezu kwethu; futhi sesibenezinkathazo eziningi ngenxa yakhe; ngalokho-ke, manje masimbulale, ukuze singabe sisaphinda sihlushwe ngenxa yamazwi akhe. Ngokuba bhekani, ngeke simvumele ukuthi abe wumbusi wethu; ngokuba kungokwethu, thina esingabafowabo abadala, ukuthi sibuse phezu kwalaba bantu.
- 4 Manje angizukuwabhala kulezi zingcwephe wonke amazwi abavungama ngawo ngokumelene nami. Kepha kuyanganelisa ukusho, ukuthi nempela bafuna ukuyithatha impilo yami.
- 5 Futhi kwenzeka ukuthi iNkosi yangixwayisa, ukuthi mina, Nefi, ngemuke kubo ngibalekele ehlane, kanye nabo bonke labo ababefuna ukuhamba nami.
- 6 Ngalokho-ke, kwenzeka ukuthi mina, Nefi, ngathatha umndeni wami, ngokunjalo noZoram kanye nomndeni wakhe, noSamu, umfowethu omdala kanye nomndeni wakhe, kanye noJakobe benoJosefa, abafowethu abancane, ngokunjalo nodadewethu, kanye nabo bonke labo ababefuna ukuhamba nami. Futhi bonke labo ababefuna ukuhamba nami kwakuyilabo ababekhohlelwa ezexwayisweni kanye nasezambulweni zikaNkulunkulu; ngalokho-ke, nempela bawalalela amazwi ami.
- 7 Nempela sathatha amatende ethu kanye nazo zonke izinto esasingakwazi ukuzithatha, sahamba ehlane isikhathi esiyizinsuku eziningi. Emva kokuthi sesihambe isikhathi esiyizinsuku eziningi nempela sawagxumeka amatende ethu.
- 8 Abantu bami bafuna ukuthi siyibize indawo ngegama likaNefi; ngalokho-ke, nempela sayibiza ngoNefi.

2 Nephi 5

Behold, it came to pass that I, Nephi, did cry much unto the Lord my God, because of the anger of my brethren.

But behold, their anger did increase against me, insomuch that they did seek to take away my life.

Yea, they did murmur against me, saying: Our younger brother thinks to rule over us; and we have had much trial because of him; wherefore, now let us slay him, that we may not be afflicted more because of his words. For behold, we will not have him to be our ruler; for it belongs unto us, who are the elder brethren, to rule over this people.

Now I do not write upon these plates all the words which they murmured against me. But it sufficeth me to say, that they did seek to take away my life.

And it came to pass that the Lord did warn me, that I, Nephi, should depart from them and flee into the wilderness, and all those who would go with me.

Wherefore, it came to pass that I, Nephi, did take my family, and also Zoram and his family, and Sam, mine elder brother and his family, and Jacob and Joseph, my younger brethren, and also my sisters, and all those who would go with me. And all those who would go with me were those who believed in the warnings and the revelations of God; wherefore, they did hearken unto my words.

And we did take our tents and whatsoever things were possible for us, and did journey in the wilderness for the space of many days. And after we had journeyed for the space of many days we did pitch our tents.

And my people would that we should call the name of the place Nephi; wherefore, we did call it Nephi.

- 9 Futhi bonke labo ababenami banquma ukuthi bazibize ngabantu baNefi.
- 10 Futhi nempela sazama ukuthi sigcine izahlulelo, nemithetho, kanye nemiyalelo yeNkosi kuzo zonke izinto, ngokomthetho kaMose.
- 11 Futhi iNkosi yayinathi; futhi saphumelela kakhulu; ngokuba sahlwanyela imbewu, futhi saphinda savuna kwaba yinala. Futhi saqala ukukhulisa imihlambi yezimvu, nemihlambi yezinkomo, kanye nezilwane ezinhlobonhlobo.
- 12 Futhi mina, Nefi, phezu kwalokho ngangiyilethile nemibhalo eyayiqoshwe ezingcwephezi zethusi; futhi ngokunjalo nebhola, noma ikhampasi, eyayilungiselwe ubaba ngesandla seNkosi, njengoba kubhaliwe.
- 13 Futhi kwenzeka ukuthi saqala ukuphumelela kakhulu, futhi sanda ezweni.
- 14 Futhi mina, Nefi, nempela ngayithatha inkemba kaLabani, futhi ngakha eziningi izinkemba ezinjengayo, ngokwesaba ukuthi hleze noma ngayiphi indlela abantu labo manje abase bebizwa ngamaLamani beze bazosihlasela futhi basibhubhise; ngokuba ngangiyazi inzondo yabo kithi kanye nakubantwana bami kanye nalabo ababebizwa ngabantu bami.
- 15 Futhi ngabafundisa abantu bami ukwakha izakhiwo, kanye nokusebenza ngalo lonke uhlobo lokhuni, nolwensimbi, nolwekhopa, nolwethusi, nolwensimbi, nolwegolide, nolwesiliva, kanye nolwezinsimbi ezixubene namatshe eziyigugu, ezaziziningi kakhulu.
- 16 Futhi mina, Nefi, nempela ngakha ithempeli; futhi ngalakha ngendlela yethempeli likaSolomoni ngaphandle nje kokuthi lalingakhiwanga ngezinto eziningi kakhulu eziyigugu; ngokuba lezo zazingenakutholakala kulelizwe, ngalokho-ke, lalingenakwakhiwa njenge thempeli likaSolomoni. Kepha indlela yokwakhiwa kwakunjengethempeli likaSolomoni; futhi ukwakhiwa kwalo kwakukuhle kakhulu.
- 17 Futhi kwenzeka ukuthi mina, Nefi, ngenza abantu bami ukuthi bakhuthale, nokuthi basebenze ngezabo izandla.

And all those who were with me did take upon them to call themselves the people of Nephi.

And we did observe to keep the judgments, and the statutes, and the commandments of the Lord in all things, according to the law of Moses.

And the Lord was with us; and we did prosper exceedingly; for we did sow seed, and we did reap again in abundance. And we began to raise flocks, and herds, and animals of every kind.

And I, Nephi, had also brought the records which were engraven upon the plates of brass; and also the ball, or compass, which was prepared for my father by the hand of the Lord, according to that which is written.

And it came to pass that we began to prosper exceedingly, and to multiply in the land.

And I, Nephi, did take the sword of Laban, and after the manner of it did make many swords, lest by any means the people who were now called Lamanites should come upon us and destroy us; for I knew their hatred towards me and my children and those who were called my people.

And I did teach my people to build buildings, and to work in all manner of wood, and of iron, and of copper, and of brass, and of steel, and of gold, and of silver, and of precious ores, which were in great abundance.

And I, Nephi, did build a temple; and I did construct it after the manner of the temple of Solomon save it were not built of so many precious things; for they were not to be found upon the land, wherefore, it could not be built like unto Solomon's temple. But the manner of the construction was like unto the temple of Solomon; and the workmanship thereof was exceedingly fine.

And it came to pass that I, Nephi, did cause my people to be industrious, and to labor with their hands.

- 18 Futhi kwenzeka ukuthi bafuna ukuthi ngibe yinkosi yabo. Kepha mina, Nefi, ngangifisa ukuthi bangabi nayo inkosi; nokho, ngabenzela njengalokho okwakusemandleni ami.
- 19 Futhi bheka, amazwi eNkosi ayeseqwalisekile kubafowethu, eyawakhuluma mayelana nabo, okuthi ngiyokuba wumbusi wabo kanye nomfundisi wabo. Ngalokho-ke, ngaba nguyey umbusi wabo kanye nomfundisi wabo, ngokwemiyalelo yeNkosi, kwaze kwaba yisikhathi lapho befuna ukuthatha impilo yami.
- 20 Ngalokho-ke, izwi leNkosi lagcwaliseka eyalikhuluma kimi; isho ukuthi: Kangangokuba bengenakuwalalela amazwi akho bayohlukaniswa neNkosi. Futhi bheka, bahlukaniswa nayo.
- 21 Futhi yenza ukuba isiqalekiso sehlele phezu kwabo, yebo, ngisho isiqalekiso esibuhlungu, ngenxa yobubi babo. Ngokuba bheka, babezenze lukhuni izinhliziyzo zabo ngokumelene nayo, kangangokuthi base befana netshe eliqine kakhulu; ngalokho-ke, njengoba babe mhlophe, futhi bebukeka kahle kakhulu futhi bethandeka, ukuze bangabe besakwazi ukuyenga abantu bami iNkosi uNkulunkulu yenza ukuthi isikhumba sobumnyama sibe kubo.
- 22 Futhi yasho kanje iNkosi uNkulunkulu: Ngiyokwenza ukuthi banengeke kubantu bakho, ngaphandle kokuthi baphenduke ebubini babo.
- 23 Futhi iyoqalekiswa inzalo yakhe lowo ohlangana nenzalo yabo; ngokuba iyoqalekiswa ngisho nangesiqalekiso esifanayo. Futhi iNkosi yakukhuluma lokhu, futhi kwenzeka.
- 24 Futhi ngenxa yesiqalekiso sabo esasikubo nempela baba ngabantu abangamavila, abagcwele ukuganga kanye nobuqili, futhi nempela bafuna ehlane izilwane zasendle ezidliwayo.
- 25 Futhi iNkosi uNkulunkulu yathi kimi: Bayokuba wuhlupho kuyo inzalo yakho, ukuyiphehlela ukuthi ingikhumbule; futhi kangangoba ingenakungikhumbula, futhi ilalele amazwi ami, bayoyihlupha ngisho kuze kube sekubhujisweni.

And it came to pass that they would that I should be their king. But I, Nephi, was desirous that they should have no king; nevertheless, I did for them according to that which was in my power.

And behold, the words of the Lord had been fulfilled unto my brethren, which he spake concerning them, that I should be their ruler and their teacher. Wherefore, I had been their ruler and their teacher, according to the commandments of the Lord, until the time they sought to take away my life.

Wherefore, the word of the Lord was fulfilled which he spake unto me, saying that: Inasmuch as they will not hearken unto thy words they shall be cut off from the presence of the Lord. And behold, they were cut off from his presence.

And he had caused the cursing to come upon them, yea, even a sore cursing, because of their iniquity. For behold, they had hardened their hearts against him, that they had become like unto a flint; wherefore, as they were white, and exceedingly fair and delightsome, that they might not be enticing unto my people the Lord God did cause a skin of blackness to come upon them.

And thus saith the Lord God: I will cause that they shall be loathsome unto thy people, save they shall repent of their iniquities.

And cursed shall be the seed of him that mixeth with their seed; for they shall be cursed even with the same cursing. And the Lord spake it, and it was done.

And because of their cursing which was upon them they did become an idle people, full of mischief and subtlety, and did seek in the wilderness for beasts of prey.

And the Lord God said unto me: They shall be a scourge unto thy seed, to stir them up in remembrance of me; and inasmuch as they will not remember me, and hearken unto my words, they shall scourge them even unto destruction.

26 Futhi kwenzeka ukuthi mina, Nefi, nempela ngangcwelisa uJakobe, kanye noJosefa, ukuze babe ngabaphristi kanye nabafundisi ezweni labantu bami.

27 Futhi kwenzeka ukuthi saphila ngendlela yokujabula.

28 Iminyaka engamashumi amathathu yabe isidlulile kusukela ngesikhathi sasuka eJerusalema.

29 Futhi mina, Nefi, ngangiyigcinile imibhalo ezingcwepheeni zami, lezo engangizenzile, ngabantu bami kuze kube manje.

30 Futhi kwenzeka ukuthi iNkosi uNkulunkulu yathi kimi: Yenza ezinye izingcwephe; futhi uzoqopha eziningi izinto kuzo ezinhle emehlweni ami, ukuze bazuze abantu bakho.

31 Ngalokho-ke, mina, Nefi, ukulalela imiyalelo yeNkosi, ngahamba futhi ngazenza lezi zingcwephe engiqophe kuzo lezi zinto.

32 Futhi ngaqopha lokho okuthandekayo kuNkulunkulu. Futhi uma abantu bami bezithanda izinto zikaNkulunkulu bayoyithanda imibhalo eyenziwe ngokuqoshwa ekulezi zingcwephe.

33 Futhi uma abantu bami benesifiso sokwazi kabanzi ngenxenye ethize yomlando wabantu bami kufanele bacwaninge izingcwephe zami ezinye.

34 Futhi kuyanganelisa ukusho ukuthi iminyaka engamashumi amane yase idlulile, futhi sase sike saba nezimpi kanye nemibango nabafowethu.

And it came to pass that I, Nephi, did consecrate Jacob and Joseph, that they should be priests and teachers over the land of my people.

And it came to pass that we lived after the manner of happiness.

And thirty years had passed away from the time we left Jerusalem.

And I, Nephi, had kept the records upon my plates, which I had made, of my people thus far.

And it came to pass that the Lord God said unto me: Make other plates; and thou shalt engraven many things upon them which are good in my sight, for the profit of thy people.

Wherefore, I, Nephi, to be obedient to the commandments of the Lord, went and made these plates upon which I have engraven these things.

And I engraved that which is pleasing unto God. And if my people are pleased with the things of God they will be pleased with mine engravings which are upon these plates.

And if my people desire to know the more particular part of the history of my people they must search mine other plates.

And it sufficeth me to say that forty years had passed away, and we had already had wars and contentions with our brethren.

2 Nefi 6

- 1 Amazwi kaJakobe, umfowabo kaNefi, awakhuluma kubantu baNefi:
- 2 Bhekani, bafowethu abathandekayo, mina, Jakobe, ngibizwe nguNkulunkulu, futhi ngigcotshwe ngendlela yohlelo lwakhe olungcwele, futhi ngingcweliswe ngumfowethu uNefi, enimbuka njengenkosi noma umvikeli, futhi enincike kuye ukuthi aniphaphise, bhekani niyazi ukuthi ngikhulume kini izinto eziningi kakhulu.
- 3 Nokho, ngikhuluma kini futhi; ngokuba ngingesifiso sokuba kuzuze imiphefumulo yenu. Yebo, intshisekelo yami inkulu ngani; futhi nani uqobo lwenu niyakwazi ukuthi selokhu kwaba njalo. Ngokuba nginincengile ngayo yonke inkuthalo; futhi nginifundisile amazwi kababa; futhi ngikhulumile kini mayelana nazo zonke izinto ezibhaliwe, kusukela ekudalweni komhlaba.
- 4 Manje, bhekani, ngizokhuluma kini mayelana nezinto ezikhona, kanye nalezo eziyokwenzeka; ngalokho-ke, ngizonifundela amazwi ka-Isaya. Futhi lawo ngamazwi umfowethu afisa ukuthi ngiwakhulume kini. Futhi ngiwakhuluma kini ngenxa yenu, ukuze nifunde futhi nidumise igama likaNkulunkulu wenu.
- 5 Manje, amazwi engizowafunda yiwo lawo u-Isaya awakhuluma mayelana nayo yonke indlu ka-Israyeli; ngalokho-ke, ningawabhekisa kini, ngokuba ningabendlu ka-Israyeli. Futhi ziningi izinto ezakhulunywa ngu-Isaya ezingabhekiswa kini, ngenxa yokuthi ningabendlu ka-Israyeli.
- 6 Manje, yilawa amazwi; Isho kanje iNkosi uNkulunkulu: Bheka, ngiyophakamisa isandla sami kubo abeZizwe, futhi ngimise isibonakaliso sami kubantu; futhi bayoletha amadodana akho ezingalweni zabo, kanye namadodakazi akho bayowatshatha emahlombe abo.
- 7 Amakhosi ayoba ngoyihlo abakondlayo, nezindlovukazi zabo ngomama bakho abakondlayo; bayokukhothamela ubuso babo bubheke phansi, futhi bakhothe uthuli lwezinyawo zakho; futhi uyokwazi ukuthi ngiyiNkosi; ngokuba abayikujabha labo abangilindayo.

2 Nephi 6

The words of Jacob, the brother of Nephi, which he spake unto the people of Nephi:

Behold, my beloved brethren, I, Jacob, having been called of God, and ordained after the manner of his holy order, and having been consecrated by my brother Nephi, unto whom ye look as a king or a protector, and on whom ye depend for safety, behold ye know that I have spoken unto you exceedingly many things.

Nevertheless, I speak unto you again; for I am desirous for the welfare of your souls. Yea, mine anxiety is great for you; and ye yourselves know that it ever has been. For I have exhorted you with all diligence; and I have taught you the words of my father; and I have spoken unto you concerning all things which are written, from the creation of the world.

And now, behold, I would speak unto you concerning things which are, and which are to come; wherefore, I will read you the words of Isaiah. And they are the words which my brother has desired that I should speak unto you. And I speak unto you for your sakes, that ye may learn and glorify the name of your God.

And now, the words which I shall read are they which Isaiah spake concerning all the house of Israel; wherefore, they may be likened unto you, for ye are of the house of Israel. And there are many things which have been spoken by Isaiah which may be likened unto you, because ye are of the house of Israel.

And now, these are the words: Thus saith the Lord God: Behold, I will lift up mine hand to the Gentiles, and set up my standard to the people; and they shall bring thy sons in their arms, and thy daughters shall be carried upon their shoulders.

And kings shall be thy nursing fathers, and their queens thy nursing mothers; they shall bow down to thee with their faces towards the earth, and lick up the dust of thy feet; and thou shalt know that I am the Lord; for they shall not be ashamed that wait for me.

- 8 Manje mina, Jakobe, ngizokhuluma mayelana nalokho okuphathelene nalamazwi. Ngokuba bheka, iNkosi ingikhombisile ukuthi labo ababeseJerusalema, lapho saphuma khona, babulewe futhi bathwalwa bathunjwa.
- 9 Nokho, iNkosi ingikhombisile ukuthi bayophinda babuye. Futhi phezu kwalokho ingikhombisile ukuthi iNkosi uNkulunkulu, oNgcwele ka-Israyeli, uyozionakalisa kubo esenyameni; futhi emva kokuthi isizibonakalisile bayoyishaya futhi bayibethele, njengokwamazwi engelosi eyawakhuluma kimi.
- 10 Futhi emva kokuthi sebezenze lukhuni izinhliziyi zabo futhi baziqinisa izintamo zabo ngokumelene noNgcwele ka-Israyeli, bheka, izahlulelo zoNgcwele ka-Israyeli ziyokuza phezu kwabo. Futhi usuku luyeza lapho beyoshaywa futhi bahlushwe.
- 11 Ngalokho-ke, emva kokuthi sebebalekisiwe bayiswa emuva naphambili, ngokuba isho kanje ingelosi, abaningi bayozwa ubuhlungu enyameni, futhi abayikuyekelwa ukuthi babhujiswe, ngenxa yemithandazo yabathembekile; bayohlakazwa, futhi bashaywe, futhi bazondwe, nokho, iNkosi iyokuba nesihawu kubo, kuthi uma bethola ulwazi ngoMkhululi wabo, bayophinda baqoqelwe ndawonye emazweni ayifa labo.
- 12 Futhi babusisiwe abeZizwe, labo umphrofethi abhale ngabo; ngokuba bheka, uma kungukuthi bayophenduka futhi bangalwi neSiyoni, futhi bangazihlanganisi nalelo bandla elikhulu nelinengekile, bayosindiswa; ngokuba iNkosi uNkulunkulu iyozigcwalisa izivumelwano eyazenza kubantwana bayo; futhi ngalesi sizathu umphrofethi wazibhala lezi zinto.
- 13 Ngalokho-ke, labo abalwa neSiyoni kanye nabantu besivumelwano beNkosi bayokhatha uthuli lwezinyawo zabo; futhi abantu beNkosi abayikuba namahloni. Ngokuba abantu beNkosi yibo labo abayilindayo; ngokuba basakulindile ukuza kukaMesiya.

And now I, Jacob, would speak somewhat concerning these words. For behold, the Lord has shown me that those who were at Jerusalem, from whence we came, have been slain and carried away captive.

Nevertheless, the Lord has shown unto me that they should return again. And he also has shown unto me that the Lord God, the Holy One of Israel, should manifest himself unto them in the flesh; and after he should manifest himself they should scourge him and crucify him, according to the words of the angel who spake it unto me.

And after they have hardened their hearts and stiffened their necks against the Holy One of Israel, behold, the judgments of the Holy One of Israel shall come upon them. And the day cometh that they shall be smitten and afflicted.

Wherefore, after they are driven to and fro, for thus saith the angel, many shall be afflicted in the flesh, and shall not be suffered to perish, because of the prayers of the faithful; they shall be scattered, and smitten, and hated; nevertheless, the Lord will be merciful unto them, that when they shall come to the knowledge of their Redeemer, they shall be gathered together again to the lands of their inheritance.

And blessed are the Gentiles, they of whom the prophet has written; for behold, if it so be that they shall repent and fight not against Zion, and do not unite themselves to that great and abominable church, they shall be saved; for the Lord God will fulfil his covenants which he has made unto his children; and for this cause the prophet has written these things.

Wherefore, they that fight against Zion and the covenant people of the Lord shall lick up the dust of their feet; and the people of the Lord shall not be ashamed. For the people of the Lord are they who wait for him; for they still wait for the coming of the Messiah.

- 14 Futhi bheka, ngokwamazwi omphrofethi, uMesiya uyophinda aziveze okwesibili ukuze ababuyise; ngalokho-ke, uyoziveza kubo ngamandla kanye nangenkazimulo enkulu, kangangoba izitha zabo ziyobhujiswa, uma lolo suku lufika lapho beyokholwa kuye; futhi akukho namunye oyobhujiswa okholwa kuye.
- 15 Futhi labo abangakholwa kuye bayobhujiswa, ngomlilo, kanye nangesivunguvungu, nangokuzamazama komhlaba, nangokuchitheka kwegazi, nangomashaya bhucane, kanye nangendlala. Futhi bayokwazi ukuthi iNkosi inguNkulunkulu, oNgcwele ka-Israyeli.
- 16 Ngokuba kungani impango ingasuswa kubo abanamandla, noma abathunjwe ngokomthetho bakhululwe na?
- 17 Kepha isho kanje iNkosi: Ngisho nabathunjwa balabo abanamandla bayosuswa, futhi nempango yalabo abesabekayo iyokhululwa; ngokuba uNkulunkulu onamandla uyobakhulula abantu bakhe besivumelwano. Ngokuba isho kanje iNkosi: Ngiyophikisana nabo labo abaphikisana nawe—
- 18 Futhi ngiyodlisa labo abakucindezelayo, inyama yabo uqobo; futhi bayodakwa yigazi labo uqobo njengane wayini elimtoti; futhi yonke inyama iyokwazi ukuthi mina Nkosi ngingumSindisi wakho kanye noMkhululi wakho, onamandla kaJakobe.

And behold, according to the words of the prophet, the Messiah will set himself again the second time to recover them; wherefore, he will manifest himself unto them in power and great glory, unto the destruction of their enemies, when that day cometh when they shall believe in him; and none will he destroy that believe in him.

And they that believe not in him shall be destroyed, both by fire, and by tempest, and by earthquakes, and by bloodsheds, and by pestilence, and by famine. And they shall know that the Lord is God, the Holy One of Israel.

For shall the prey be taken from the mighty, or the lawful captive delivered?

But thus saith the Lord: Even the captives of the mighty shall be taken away, and the prey of the terrible shall be delivered; for the Mighty God shall deliver his covenant people. For thus saith the Lord: I will contend with them that contendeth with thee—

And I will feed them that oppress thee, with their own flesh; and they shall be drunken with their own blood as with sweet wine; and all flesh shall know that I the Lord am thy Savior and thy Redeemer, the Mighty One of Jacob.

2 Nefi 7

- 1 Yebo, ngokuba isho kanje iNkosi: Ngabe ngehlukene nawe, noma ngabe ngikulahlile ingunaphakade na? Ngokuba isho kanje iNkosi: Iphi incwadi kamama wakho yesahlukaniso na? Ngabe ngininike bani, noma yimuphi kwengibakweletayo enginithengise kubo na? Yebo, ngabe nginithengise kubani na? Bheka, ngenxa yobubi benu nizithengisile futhi ngenxa yeziphambeko zenu umama wenu ngehlukene naye.
- 2 Ngelokho-ke, ngesikhathi ngifika, kwabe kungekho muntu; ngesikhathi ngimemeza, yebo, akubanga bikho namunye ophendulayo. O ndlu ka-Israyeli, ngabe isandla sami sifinyeziwe yini sampela nje ukuthi asinakukwazi ukukhulula, noma ngabe anginamandla okukhulula na? Bheka, ngokukhuza kwami ngomisa ulwandle, ngenza imifula yabo ibe yihlane kanye nezinhlanzi zabo zinuke ngenxa yamanzi ashileyo, futhi ziyafa ngenxa yokoma.
- 3 Ngembathisa amazulu ngobumnyama, futhi ngenza indwangu yesaka ibe yisimbozo sawo.
- 4 INkosi uNkulunkulu inginike ulimi lwabafundileyo, ukuze ngikwazi ukukhuluma izwi ngesikhathi kini, O ndlu ka-Israyeli. Uma senikhathele ivuka ukusa nokusa. Ivusa indlebe yami ukuthi ngizwe njengabafundileyo.
- 5 INkosi uNkulunkulu iyivulile indlebe yami, futhi angizange ngihlubuke, noma ngibheke emuva.
- 6 Nganika umhlane wami kumshayi, kanye nezihlathi zami kulabo ababehluthula izinwele. Angibusithelisanga ubuso bami ehlazweni kanye nasekufelweni ngamathe.
- 7 Ngokuba iNkosi uNkulunkulu iyongisiza, ngakho-ke angiyikuthotshiswa. Ngakho-ke ngibumisile ubuso bami njengetshe eliqine kakhulu, futhi ngiyazi ukuthi angiyikujabha.
- 8 Futhi iNkosi iseduze, futhi iyongithola ngingenacala. Ngubani oyomelana nami na? Masime ndawonye. Ngubani oyisitha sami na? Makasondele eduze kwami, futhi ngiyomshaya ngamandla omlomo wami.
- 9 Ngokuba iNkosi uNkulunkulu iyongisiza. Kanye nabo bonke labo abayongisola, bheka, bonke bayoguga njengengubo, futhi inundu iyobadla.

2 Nephi 7

Yea, for thus saith the Lord: Have I put thee away, or have I cast thee off forever? For thus saith the Lord: Where is the bill of your mother's divorcement? To whom have I put thee away, or to which of my creditors have I sold you? Yea, to whom have I sold you? Behold, for your iniquities have ye sold yourselves, and for your transgressions is your mother put away.

Wherefore, when I came, there was no man; when I called, yea, there was none to answer. O house of Israel, is my hand shortened at all that it cannot redeem, or have I no power to deliver? Behold, at my rebuke I dry up the sea, I make their rivers a wilderness and their fish to stink because the waters are dried up, and they die because of thirst.

I clothe the heavens with blackness, and I make sackcloth their covering.

The Lord God hath given me the tongue of the learned, that I should know how to speak a word in season unto thee, O house of Israel. When ye are weary he waketh morning by morning. He waketh mine ear to hear as the learned.

The Lord God hath opened mine ear, and I was not rebellious, neither turned away back.

I gave my back to the smiter, and my cheeks to them that plucked off the hair. I hid not my face from shame and spitting.

For the Lord God will help me, therefore shall I not be confounded. Therefore have I set my face like a flint, and I know that I shall not be ashamed.

And the Lord is near, and he justifieth me. Who will contend with me? Let us stand together. Who is mine adversary? Let him come near me, and I will smite him with the strength of my mouth.

For the Lord God will help me. And all they who shall condemn me, behold, all they shall wax old as a garment, and the moth shall eat them up.

- 10 Ngubani phakathi kwenu oyesabayo iNkosi,
olilalelayo izwi lenceku yayo ohamba ebumnyameni
futhi engenakho ukukhanya na?
- 11 Bhekani nina nonke eniphemba umlilo, enizihaka
ngezinhlansi, hambani ekukhanyeni komlilo wenu
kanye nasezinhlansini lezo enizophembele.
Niyothola lokhu ngesandla sami—niyolala phansi
ngosizi.

Who is among you that feareth the Lord, that
obeyeth the voice of his servant, that walketh in
darkness and hath no light?

Behold all ye that kindle fire, that compass your-
selves about with sparks, walk in the light of your
fire and in the sparks which ye have kindled. This
shall ye have of mine hand—ye shall lie down in sor-
row.

2 Nefi 8

- 1 Ngilaleleni, nina enilandela ukulunga. Bhekani kulo idwala lapho eniqhezulwe khona, kanye nakuyo imbobo yomgodi enikhishwe kuwo.
- 2 Bhekani ku-Abrahama, uyihlo, kanye nakuye uSara, onizalayo; ngokuba nguye yedwa engambizayo, futhi ngambusisa.
- 3 Ngokuba iNkosi iyoyiduduza iSiyoni, iyoziduduza zonke izindawo ezichithiweyo zayo; futhi iyokwenza ihlane layo libe njenge-Edene, kanye nogwadule lwayo lube njengensimu yeNkosi. Injabulo kanye nentokozo kuyotholakala kuyo, ukubonga kanye nezwi lokuhlabelela.
- 4 Ngilaleleni, bantu bami; futhi ningiphe indlebe, O sizwe sami; ngokuba umthetho uyovela kimi, futhi ngiyokwenza ukwahlulela kwami kube ngukukhanya kubantu.
- 5 Ukulunga kwami kuseduze; insindiso yami isihambe phambili, futhi ingalo yami iyokwahlulela abantu. Iziqhingi ziyogilinda, futhi ziyothembela engalweni yami.
- 6 Phakamiselani amehlo enu emazulwini, futhi nibuke emhlabeni ngaphansi, ngokuba amazulu ayoshabalala njengomusi, futhi umhlaba uyoguga njengengubo; futhi labo abahlala kuwo bayokufa ngendlela efanayo. Kepha insindiso yami iyoma ingunaphakade, nokulunga kwami akuyikuqedwa.
- 7 Ngilaleleni, nina enazi ukulunga, abantu izinhliziyi zabo engibhale umthetho wami kuzo, ningakwesabi ukusolwa ngabantu, noma nesabe izethuko zabo.
- 8 Ngokuba inundu iyobadla njengengubo, nempethu iyobadla njengoboya bezimvu. Kepha ukulunga kwami kuyoma ingunaphakade, futhi nensindiso yami isizukulwane ngesizukulwane.
- 9 Vuka, vuka! Yembatha amandla, O ngalo yeNkosi; vuka njengasezinsukwini zasendulo. Ngabe awusiye yini lona owanquma uRahabi, futhi wagwaza udrako na?
- 10 Awusiyena yini lona owomisa ulwandle, amanzi olwandle olukhulu; owenza izinzulu zolwandle zaba yindlela yabahlangiweyo ukuze bawele na?

2 Nephi 8

Hearken unto me, ye that follow after righteousness. Look unto the rock from whence ye are hewn, and to the hole of the pit from whence ye are digged.

Look unto Abraham, your father, and unto Sarah, she that bare you; for I called him alone, and blessed him.

For the Lord shall comfort Zion, he will comfort all her waste places; and he will make her wilderness like Eden, and her desert like the garden of the Lord. Joy and gladness shall be found therein, thanksgiving and the voice of melody.

Hearken unto me, my people; and give ear unto me, O my nation; for a law shall proceed from me, and I will make my judgment to rest for a light for the people.

My righteousness is near; my salvation is gone forth, and mine arm shall judge the people. The isles shall wait upon me, and on mine arm shall they trust.

Lift up your eyes to the heavens, and look upon the earth beneath; for the heavens shall vanish away like smoke, and the earth shall wax old like a garment; and they that dwell therein shall die in like manner. But my salvation shall be forever, and my righteousness shall not be abolished.

Hearken unto me, ye that know righteousness, the people in whose heart I have written my law, fear ye not the reproach of men, neither be ye afraid of their revilings.

For the moth shall eat them up like a garment, and the worm shall eat them like wool. But my righteousness shall be forever, and my salvation from generation to generation.

Awake, awake! Put on strength, O arm of the Lord; awake as in the ancient days. Art thou not he that hath cut Rahab, and wounded the dragon?

Art thou not he who hath dried the sea, the waters of the great deep; that hath made the depths of the sea a way for the ransomed to pass over?

- 11 Ngakho-ke, abahlengiweyo beNkosi bayobuya, futhi beze ngokuhlabelela eSiyoni; intokozo engunaphakade nobungcwele kuyoba semakhanda abo; futhi bayothola ukujabula nentokozo; usizi nokukhala kuyobaleka.
- 12 Nginguye; yebo, nginguye lowo oniduduzayo. Bheka, ungubani wena, ukuthi ungesaba umuntu, oyokufa, futhi oyindodana yomuntu, oyokwenziwa abe njengotshani na?
- 13 Futhi ukhohliwe yini yiNkosi umenzi wakho, eyaneka amazulu, futhi yabeka isisekelo somhlaba, futhi wesabile njalonjalo mihla yonke, ngenxa yokufutheka komcindezeli, sengathi uselindele ukubhubhisa na? Futhi kuphi ukufutheka komcindezeli na?
- 14 Othunjiweyo osekudingisweni uyashesha, ukuze akhululwe, futhi ukuze angafeli emgodini, noma ukuze isinkwa sakhe angasesweli.
- 15 Kepha ngiyiNkosi uNkulunkulu wakho, omagagasi akhe ayahlokoma; iNkosi yamaBandla yigama lami.
- 16 Futhi ngiwafakile amazwi ami emlonyeni wakho, ngakusibekela esithunzini sesandla sami, ukuze ngitshale amazulu futhi ngizibeke izisekelo zomhlaba, futhi ngithi kuyo iSiyoni: Bhekani, ningabantu bami.
- 17 Vuka, vuka, usukume, O Jerusalema, wena ophuzile esandleni seNkosi inkomishi yokufutheka kwayo—wena ophuze amavovo enkomishini yokuthuthumela akhanyise—
- 18 Akekho namunye ongamhola phakathi kwawo wonke amadodana awazele; nokuba kube khona ongamthatha ngesandla, kuwo wonke amadodana awakhulusile.
- 19 Lamadodana amabili ezile kuwe, ngubani oyokukhalela—incithakalo kanye nokubhujiswa kwakho, kanye nendlala kanye nenkamba—futhi ngubani engingakududuza ngaye na?
- 20 Amadodana akho aqulekile, ngaphandle kwalawa amabili; wona alala esihlokweni semigwaqo yonke; njengenkunzi yasendle isenethini, bagcwele ukufutheka kweNkosi, ukukhuza kukaNkulunkulu wakho.

Therefore, the redeemed of the Lord shall return, and come with singing unto Zion; and everlasting joy and holiness shall be upon their heads; and they shall obtain gladness and joy; sorrow and mourning shall flee away.

I am he; yea, I am he that comforteth you. Behold, who art thou, that thou shouldst be afraid of man, who shall die, and of the son of man, who shall be made like unto grass?

And forgettest the Lord thy maker, that hath stretched forth the heavens, and laid the foundations of the earth, and hast feared continually every day, because of the fury of the oppressor, as if he were ready to destroy? And where is the fury of the oppressor?

The captive exile hasteneth, that he may be loosed, and that he should not die in the pit, nor that his bread should fail.

But I am the Lord thy God, whose waves roared; the Lord of Hosts is my name.

And I have put my words in thy mouth, and have covered thee in the shadow of mine hand, that I may plant the heavens and lay the foundations of the earth, and say unto Zion: Behold, thou art my people.

Awake, awake, stand up, O Jerusalem, which hast drunk at the hand of the Lord the cup of his fury—thou hast drunken the dregs of the cup of trembling wrung out—

And none to guide her among all the sons she hath brought forth; neither that taketh her by the hand, of all the sons she hath brought up.

These two sons are come unto thee, who shall be sorry for thee—thy desolation and destruction, and the famine and the sword—and by whom shall I comfort thee?

Thy sons have fainted, save these two; they lie at the head of all the streets; as a wild bull in a net, they are full of the fury of the Lord, the rebuke of thy God.

- 21 Ngakho-ke yizwa lokhu manje, wena
ohluphekileyo, futhi odakiweyo, kodwa hhayi
ngewayini:
- 22 Isho kanje iNkosi yakho, iNkosi futhi
enguNkulunkulu wakho icelela abantu bayo indlela;
bheka, ngithathile esandleni sakho inkomishi
yokuthuthumela, amavovo enkomishi yokufutheka
kwami; awuseyikuwaphuza futhi nanini.
- 23 Kepha ngiyoyibeka esandleni sabo labo
abakuhluphayo; abathe emphefumulweni wakho:
Khothama, ukuze sidlule—futhi uwendlalile
umzimba wakho njengomhlabathi
nanjengomgwaqo kubo abedlulayo.
- 24 Vuka, vuka, wembathe amandla akho, O Siyoni;
yembatha izingubo zakho ezinhle, O Jerusalema,
muzi ongcwele; kusukela manje kuyaphambili
akuseyikungena kuwe nanini ongasokile kanye
nongahlanzekile.
- 25 Zithintithe othulini; sukuma, hlala phansi, O
Jerusalema; zikhulule kuzo izibopho zentamo
yakho, O ndodakazi ethunjiweyo yaseSiyoni.

Therefore hear now this, thou afflicted, and
drunken, and not with wine:

Thus saith thy Lord, the Lord and thy God plead-
eth the cause of his people; behold, I have taken out
of thine hand the cup of trembling, the dregs of the
cup of my fury; thou shalt no more drink it again.

But I will put it into the hand of them that afflict
thee; who have said to thy soul: Bow down, that we
may go over—and thou hast laid thy body as the
ground and as the street to them that went over.

Awake, awake, put on thy strength, O Zion; put on
thy beautiful garments, O Jerusalem, the holy city;
for henceforth there shall no more come into thee
the uncircumcised and the unclean.

Shake thyself from the dust; arise, sit down, O
Jerusalem; loose thyself from the bands of thy neck,
O captive daughter of Zion.

2 Nefi 9

- 1 Manje, bafowethu abathandekayo, nginifundele lezi zinto ukuze nazi ngokuphathelene nezivumelwano zeNkosi eyavumelana ngazo nayo yonke indlu ka-Israyeli—
- 2 Ezikhulumileyo kumaJuda, ngomlomo wabaphrofethi bayo abangcwele, ngisho kusukela ekuqaleni kuya ezansi, isizukulwane ngesizukulwane, kuze kufike isikhathi lapho beyobuyiselwa ebandleni leqiniso kanye nakuso isibaya sikaNkulunkulu; lapho beyoqoqelwa ekhaya emazweni ayifa abo, futhi bamiswe kuwo wonke amazwe abo esethembiso.
- 3 Bhekani, bafowethu abathandekayo, ngikhuluma kini lezi zinto ukuze nithokoze, futhi niphakamise amakhanda enu ingunaphakade, ngenxa yezibusiso iNkosi uNkulunkulu eyozinika abantwana benu.
- 4 Ngokuba ngiyazi ukuthi nifune kakhulu, iningi lenu, ukwazi ngezinto ezisazokwenzeka; ngalokho-ke ngiyazi ukuthi niyazi ukuthi inyama yethu kufanele iguge futhi ife; nokho, emizimbeni yethu siyombona uNkulunkulu.
- 5 Yebo, ngiyazi ukuthi niyazi ukuthi uyoziveza kubo labo abaseJerusalema, lapho saphuma khona; ngokuba kudingekile ukuthi kube phakathi kwabo; ngokuba kudingekile ukuthi uMdali omkhulu avume ukuba ngaphansi komuntu esenyameni, futhi afele bonke abantu, ukuze bonke abantu babe ngaphansi kwakhe.
- 6 Njengokuba ukufa kufikile kubo bonke abantu, ukuze kugcwaliseke isu lomusa loMdali omkhulu, kufanele kube khona amandla okuvuka, futhi ukuvuka kufanele ukuthi kufike kumuntu ngesizathu sokuwa; futhi ukuwa kwafika ngesizathu sesiphambeko; futhi ngenxa yokuthi umuntu wawa babe sebhulkaniswa neNkosi.
- 7 Ngalokho-ke, kufanele kube khona inhlawulo engapheliyo—ngaphandle kokuthi kube khona inhlawulo engapheliyo lokhu okubolayo kungeke kwembathe ukungaboli. Ngalokho-ke, isahlulelo sokuqala esafika kumuntu kwakufanele ukuthi sihlale isikhathi esingapheliyo. Futhi uma kunjalo, lomzimba kufanele ulale phansi ukuze ubole futhi ubuthukele kunina womhlaba, ungabe usavuka nanini.

2 Nephi 9

And now, my beloved brethren, I have read these things that ye might know concerning the covenants of the Lord that he has covenanted with all the house of Israel—

That he has spoken unto the Jews, by the mouth of his holy prophets, even from the beginning down, from generation to generation, until the time comes that they shall be restored to the true church and fold of God; when they shall be gathered home to the lands of their inheritance, and shall be established in all their lands of promise.

Behold, my beloved brethren, I speak unto you these things that ye may rejoice, and lift up your heads forever, because of the blessings which the Lord God shall bestow upon your children.

For I know that ye have searched much, many of you, to know of things to come; wherefore I know that ye know that our flesh must waste away and die; nevertheless, in our bodies we shall see God.

Yea, I know that ye know that in the body he shall show himself unto those at Jerusalem, from whence we came; for it is expedient that it should be among them; for it behooveth the great Creator that he suffereth himself to become subject unto man in the flesh, and die for all men, that all men might become subject unto him.

For as death hath passed upon all men, to fulfil the merciful plan of the great Creator, there must needs be a power of resurrection, and the resurrection must needs come unto man by reason of the fall; and the fall came by reason of transgression; and because man became fallen they were cut off from the presence of the Lord.

Wherefore, it must needs be an infinite atonement—save it should be an infinite atonement this corruption could not put on incorruption. Wherefore, the first judgment which came upon man must needs have remained to an endless duration. And if so, this flesh must have laid down to rot and to crumble to its mother earth, to rise no more.

8 O ukuhlakanipha kukaNkulunkulu, umusa kanye nesihawu sakhe! Ngokuba bheka, uma inyama ingasenakuvuka nanini imimoya yethu kufanele ibe ngaphansi kwaleyo ngelosi eyawa phambi kukaNkulunkulu ongunaPhakade, futhi yaba ngudeveli, ukuthi ingabe isavuka nanini.

9 Futhi imimoya yethu bekufanele ifane naye, futhi sibe ngodeveli, izingelosi kudeveli, sivalelwe ngaphandle lapho kukhona khona uNkulunkulu wethu, futhi sihlale noyise wamanga, osizini, njengaye uqobo; yebo, kuye lowo muntu owakhohlisa abazali bethu bokuqala, oziguqula acishe afane nengelosi yokukhanya, futhi ophehlela abantwana babantu emaqenjini ayimfihlo okubulala kanye nazo zonke izindlela eziyimfihlo zemisebenzi yobumnyama.

10 O bukhulu kangakanani ubuhle bukaNkulunkulu wethu, osilungiselela indlela yethu yokuphunyuka ekubanjweni yilesi silwane esikhulu esesabekayo; yebo, leso silwane esikhulu, ukufa nesihogo, engisibiza ngokufa komzimba, futhi ngokunjalo nokufa kukamoya.

11 Futhi ngenxa yendlela yokukhululwa nguNkulunkulu wethu, oNgcwele ka-Israyeli, lokufa, lokhu esengikhulume ngakho, okungokwesikhashana, kuyokhulula abafileyo bakho, lokho kufa okuyithuna.

12 Futhi lokufa esengikhulume ngakho, okungokufa kukamoya, kuyokhulula abafileyo bakho; lokho kufa komoya okuyisihogo; ngalokho-ke, ukufa kanye nesihogo kufanele kukhulule abafileyo bakho, isihogo kufanele sikhulule imimoya yaso esekuthunjweni, ithuna kufanele likhulule imizimba yalo esekuthunjweni, futhi imizimba kanye nemimoya yabantu iyobuyiselwa omunye komunye; futhi kungamandla okuvuka koNgcwele ka-Israyeli.

O the wisdom of God, his mercy and grace! For behold, if the flesh should rise no more our spirits must become subject to that angel who fell from before the presence of the Eternal God, and became the devil, to rise no more.

And our spirits must have become like unto him, and we become devils, angels to a devil, to be shut out from the presence of our God, and to remain with the father of lies, in misery, like unto himself; yea, to that being who beguiled our first parents, who transformeth himself nigh unto an angel of light, and stirreth up the children of men unto secret combinations of murder and all manner of secret works of darkness.

O how great the goodness of our God, who prepareth a way for our escape from the grasp of this awful monster; yea, that monster, death and hell, which I call the death of the body, and also the death of the spirit.

And because of the way of deliverance of our God, the Holy One of Israel, this death, of which I have spoken, which is the temporal, shall deliver up its dead; which death is the grave.

And this death of which I have spoken, which is the spiritual death, shall deliver up its dead; which spiritual death is hell; wherefore, death and hell must deliver up their dead, and hell must deliver up its captive spirits, and the grave must deliver up its captive bodies, and the bodies and the spirits of men will be restored one to the other; and it is by the power of the resurrection of the Holy One of Israel.

13 O likhulu kangakanani isu likaNkulunkulu wethu! Ngokuba ngakolunye uhlangothi, iparadesi likaNkulunkulu kufanele likhulule imimoya yabalungileyo, ithuna likhulule umzimba wolungileyo; futhi umoya kanye nomzimba kubuyiselwe kukho uqobo lwakho futhi, futhi bonke abantu babe nokungaboli futhi bangafi, futhi babe ngabantu abaphilayo, babe nolwazi olupheleleyo njengathi esisenyameni, ngaphandle nje kokuthi ulwazi lwethu luyopheleliswa.

14 Ngalokho-ke, siyoba nolwazi olupheleleyo ngakho konke ukuba necala kwethu, kanye nokungahlanzeki kwethu, kanye nobuze bethu; futhi abalungileyo bayoba nolwazi olupheleleyo lwentokozo yabo, kanye nokulunga kwabo, futhi bembeswe ngokucweba, yebo, ngisho nangengubo yokulunga.

15 Futhi kuyokwenzeka ukuthi ngesikhathi bonke abantu sebedlulile kulokhu kufa kokuqala baya ekuphileni, kangangokuthi sebengasenkufu, kufanele bavele phambi kwesihlalo sokwahlulela soNgcwele ka-Israyeli; emva kwalokho kuza ukwahlulela, futhi emva kwalokho kufanele bahlulelwe ngokwahlulelwa okungcwele kukaNkulunkulu.

16 Futhi ngeqiniso, njengoba iNkosi iphila, ngokuba iNkosi uNkulunkulu ikukhulumile lokhu, futhi kuyizwi layo laphakade, elingasoze ladlula, lokuthi labo abalungileyo bayolunga njalo, futhi labo abangcolileyo bayongcola njalo; ngalokho-ke, labo abangcolileyo bangudeveli kanye nezingelosi zakhe; futhi bayokuya emlilweni waphakade, olungiselwe bona; futhi ukuhlupheka kwabo kunjengechibi lomlilo kanye nesibabuli, ilangabi laso elikhuphukela phezulu phakade naphakade futhi lingenamkhawulo.

17 O ubukhulu kanye nokulunga kukaNkulunkulu wethu! Ngokuba uyawenza wonke amazwi akhe, futhi aphume emlonyeni wakhe, futhi umthetho wakhe kufanele ugcaliseke.

O how great the plan of our God! For on the other hand, the paradise of God must deliver up the spirits of the righteous, and the grave deliver up the body of the righteous; and the spirit and the body is restored to itself again, and all men become incorruptible, and immortal, and they are living souls, having a perfect knowledge like unto us in the flesh, save it be that our knowledge shall be perfect.

Wherefore, we shall have a perfect knowledge of all our guilt, and our uncleanness, and our nakedness; and the righteous shall have a perfect knowledge of their enjoyment, and their righteousness, being clothed with purity, yea, even with the robe of righteousness.

And it shall come to pass that when all men shall have passed from this first death unto life, insomuch as they have become immortal, they must appear before the judgment-seat of the Holy One of Israel; and then cometh the judgment, and then must they be judged according to the holy judgment of God.

And assuredly, as the Lord liveth, for the Lord God hath spoken it, and it is his eternal word, which cannot pass away, that they who are righteous shall be righteous still, and they who are filthy shall be filthy still; wherefore, they who are filthy are the devil and his angels; and they shall go away into everlasting fire, prepared for them; and their torment is as a lake of fire and brimstone, whose flame ascendeth up forever and ever and has no end.

O the greatness and the justice of our God! For he executeth all his words, and they have gone forth out of his mouth, and his law must be fulfilled.

- 18 Kepha, bheka, abalungileyo, abangcwele boNgcwele ka-Israyeli, labo abakholwayo kuye oNgcwele ka-Israyeli, labo abazibekezelele izinhlupheko zomhlaba, futhi bangazinaka izethuko zawo, bayodla ifa lombuso kaNkulunkulu, elalungiselwa bona kusukela ekusekelweni somhlaba, futhi ukuthokoza kwabo kuyogcwala ingunaphakade.
- 19 O ubukhulu bomusa kaNkulunkulu wethu, oNgcwele ka-Israyeli! Ngokuba ukhulula abangcwele bakhe kuso lesi silwane esesabekayo udeveli, kanye nokufa, kanye nesihogo, kanye nakulelo chibi lomlilo kanye nesibabuli, elingukuhlupheka okungapheliyo.
- 20 O bukhulu kangakanani ubungcwele bukaNkulunkulu wethu! Ngokuba yena wazi zonke izinto, futhi akukho nto ngaphandle kokuba yena eyazi.
- 21 Futhi uza emhlabeni ukuze asindise bonke abantu uma beyolilalela izwi lakhe; ngokuba bheka, uzwa ubuhlungu babantu bonke, yebo, ubuhlungu bazo zonke izidalwa eziphilayo, abesilisa, abesifazane, kanye nabantwana, abangabomndeni ka-Adamu.
- 22 Futhi uzwa lokhu ukuze ukuvuka kuze kubo bonke abantu, ukuze bonke bame phambi kwakhe osukwini olukhulu nolokwahlulelwa.
- 23 Futhi uyala bonke abantu ukuthi kufanele baphenduke, futhi babhabhadiswe egameni lakhe, babe nokukholwa okupheleleyo kuye oNgcwele ka-Israyeli, noma ngeke basindiswe embusweni kaNkulunkulu.
- 24 Futhi uma bengezukuphenduka bakholwe egameni lakhe, futhi babhabhadiswe egameni lakhe, futhi babekezele kuze kube sekupheleni, kufanele bavinjelwe; ngokuba iNkosi uNkulunkulu, oNgcwele ka-Israyeli, ukukhulumile lokhu.
- 25 Ngalokho-ke, unikeze umthetho; futhi lapho kungekho mthetho onikiwe asikho isijeziso; futhi lapho kungekho sijeziso akukho ukubekwa icala; futhi lapho kungekho ukubekwa icala umusa woNgcwele ka-Israyeli ubabizela kuye, ngenxa yenhlawulo; ngokuba bakhululwa ngamandla akhe.

But, behold, the righteous, the saints of the Holy One of Israel, they who have believed in the Holy One of Israel, they who have endured the crosses of the world, and despised the shame of it, they shall inherit the kingdom of God, which was prepared for them from the foundation of the world, and their joy shall be full forever.

O the greatness of the mercy of our God, the Holy One of Israel! For he delivereth his saints from that awful monster the devil, and death, and hell, and that lake of fire and brimstone, which is endless torment.

O how great the holiness of our God! For he knoweth all things, and there is not anything save he knows it.

And he cometh into the world that he may save all men if they will hearken unto his voice; for behold, he suffereth the pains of all men, yea, the pains of every living creature, both men, women, and children, who belong to the family of Adam.

And he suffereth this that the resurrection might pass upon all men, that all might stand before him at the great and judgment day.

And he commandeth all men that they must repent, and be baptized in his name, having perfect faith in the Holy One of Israel, or they cannot be saved in the kingdom of God.

And if they will not repent and believe in his name, and be baptized in his name, and endure to the end, they must be damned; for the Lord God, the Holy One of Israel, has spoken it.

Wherefore, he has given a law; and where there is no law given there is no punishment; and where there is no punishment there is no condemnation; and where there is no condemnation the mercies of the Holy One of Israel have claim upon them, because of the atonement; for they are delivered by the power of him.

26 Ngokuba inhlawulo yanelisa izimfuno bokulunga kwakhe kubo bonke labo abangenawo umthetho onikeziwe kubo, ukuze bakhululwe kuleso silwane esesabekayo, ukufa kanye nesihogo, nodeveli, nechibi lomlilo nesibabuli, elingukuhlupheka okungapheliyo; futhi babuyiselwa kulowo Nkulunkulu owabanika umphefumulo, ongoNgcwele ka-Israyeli.

27 Kepha maye kuye lowo onikiwe umthetho, yebo, lowo onayo yonke imiyalelo kaNkulunkulu, njengathi, futhi lowo oyephulayo, futhi lowo ochitha izinsuku zokuvivinywa kwakhe, ngokuba isimo sakhe siyesabeka!

28 O lelosu lobuqili lomubi! O ubuze, kanye nobuntengentenge, nobuwula babantu! Uma sebefundile bacabanga ukuthi bahlakaniphile, futhi abasilaleli iseluleko sikaNkulunkulu, ngokuba basibeka eceleni, becabanga ukuthi bayazi, ngalokho-ke, ukuhlakanipha kwabo kuwubuwula futhi akunanzuzo kubo. Futhi bayobhubha.

29 Kepha ukufunda kuhle uma belalela izeluleko zikaNkulunkulu.

30 Kepha maye kuzo izicebi, ezicebile ngokwezinto zomhlaba. Ngokuba ngenxa yokuthi zicebile zidelela abampofu, futhi zihluphe abamnene, futhi izinhliziyi zazo zisengebweni yazo; ngalokho-ke, ingcebo yazo ingukulunkulu wazo. Futhi bheka, ingcebo yazo iyobhubha kanye nazo futhi.

31 Futhi maye kuzo izithuli ezingenakuzwa; ngokuba ziyobhubha.

32 Maye kuzo izimpumpethe ezingenakubona; ngokuba nazo ziyobhubha futhi.

33 Maye kubo abangasokile enhliziyweni, ngokuba ulwazi lobubi babo luyobashaya ngosuku lokugcina.

34 Maye kuye umqambimanga, ngokuba uyophonswa phansi esihogweni.

35 Maye kuye umbulali obulala ngabomu, ngokuba uyokufa.

36 Maye kubo labo abenza ubufebe, ngokuba bayophonswa phansi esihogweni.

37 Yebo, maye kubo labo abakhonza izithixo, ngokuba udeveli wabo bonke odeveli uyathokoza ngabo.

For the atonement satisfieth the demands of his justice upon all those who have not the law given to them, that they are delivered from that awful monster, death and hell, and the devil, and the lake of fire and brimstone, which is endless torment; and they are restored to that God who gave them breath, which is the Holy One of Israel.

But wo unto him that has the law given, yea, that has all the commandments of God, like unto us, and that transgresseth them, and that wasteth the days of his probation, for awful is his state!

O that cunning plan of the evil one! O the vainness, and the frailties, and the foolishness of men! When they are learned they think they are wise, and they hearken not unto the counsel of God, for they set it aside, supposing they know of themselves, wherefore, their wisdom is foolishness and it profiteth them not. And they shall perish.

But to be learned is good if they hearken unto the counsels of God.

But wo unto the rich, who are rich as to the things of the world. For because they are rich they despise the poor, and they persecute the meek, and their hearts are upon their treasures; wherefore, their treasure is their god. And behold, their treasure shall perish with them also.

And wo unto the deaf that will not hear; for they shall perish.

Wo unto the blind that will not see; for they shall perish also.

Wo unto the uncircumcised of heart, for a knowledge of their iniquities shall smite them at the last day.

Wo unto the liar, for he shall be thrust down to hell.

Wo unto the murderer who deliberately killeth, for he shall die.

Wo unto them who commit whoredoms, for they shall be thrust down to hell.

Yea, wo unto those that worship idols, for the devil of all devils delighteth in them.

38 Futhi, ukuphetha, maye kubo bonke labo abafela ezonweni zabo; ngokuba bayobuyela kuNkulunkulu, futhi babone ubuso bakhe, futhi bahlale ezonweni zabo.

39 O, bafowethu abathandekayo, khumbulani ukwesabeka kokona lowo Nkulunkulu oyiNgcwele, futhi ngokunjalo nokwesabeka kokuvumela iziyengo zalowo oyiqili. Khumbulani, ukunaka okwasemhlabeni wukufa, futhi ukunaka okukamoya ngukuphila okuphakade.

40 O, bafowethu abathandekayo, nikani indlebe emazwini ami. Khumbulani ubukhulu boNgcwele ka-Israyeli. Ningasho ukuthi ngikhulume izinto ezilukhuni ngokumelene nani; ngokuba uma nisho kanjalo, niyolithuka iqiniso; ngokuba ngikhulume amazwi oMenzi wenu. Ngiyazi ukuthi amazwi ayiqiniso anzima kukho konke ukungcola; kepha abalungileyo abawesabi, ngokuba bayalithanda iqiniso futhi abanyakaziseki.

41 O uma kunjalo, bafowethu abathandekayo, wozani eNkosini, koNgcwele. Khumbulani ukuthi izindlela zakhe zilungile. Bhekani, indlela yomuntu incane, kepha isemzileni oqondile phambi kwakhe, futhi umgcini sango nguyi oNgcwele ka-Israyeli, futhi akaqashe sisebenzi lapho; futhi ayikho enye indlela ngaphandle kwaleyo esesangweni; ngokuba yena akanakukhohliswa, ngokuba iNkosi uNkulunkulu yigama lakhe.

42 Futhi lowo onqongqothayo, uyomvulela; futhi abahlakaniphile, kanye nabafundileyo, kanye nalabo abacebileyo, labo abakhukhumele ngenxa yokufunda kwabo, kanye nokuhlakanipha kwabo, kanye nengcebo yabo—yebo, yibo labo angabanaki; futhi ngaphandle kokuthi balahle lezi zinto kude, futhi bazibone njengeziwula phambi kukaNkulunkulu, futhi behlele phansi ezinzulwini zokuthobeka, akanakubavulela.

43 Kepha izinto zabahlakaniphile kanye nabanokuqonda ziyofihlwa kubo ingunaphakade—yebo, lokho kuthokoza okulungiselwe abangcwele.

And, in fine, wo unto all those who die in their sins; for they shall return to God, and behold his face, and remain in their sins.

O, my beloved brethren, remember the awfulness in transgressing against that Holy God, and also the awfulness of yielding to the enticings of that cunning one. Remember, to be carnally-minded is death, and to be spiritually-minded is life eternal.

O, my beloved brethren, give ear to my words. Remember the greatness of the Holy One of Israel. Do not say that I have spoken hard things against you; for if ye do, ye will revile against the truth; for I have spoken the words of your Maker. I know that the words of truth are hard against all uncleanness; but the righteous fear them not, for they love the truth and are not shaken.

O then, my beloved brethren, come unto the Lord, the Holy One. Remember that his paths are righteous. Behold, the way for man is narrow, but it lieth in a straight course before him, and the keeper of the gate is the Holy One of Israel; and he employeth no servant there; and there is none other way save it be by the gate; for he cannot be deceived, for the Lord God is his name.

And whoso knocketh, to him will he open; and the wise, and the learned, and they that are rich, who are puffed up because of their learning, and their wisdom, and their riches—yea, they are they whom he despiseth; and save they shall cast these things away, and consider themselves fools before God, and come down in the depths of humility, he will not open unto them.

But the things of the wise and the prudent shall be hid from them forever—yea, that happiness which is prepared for the saints.

44 O, bafowethu abathandekayo, khumbulani amazwi ami. Bhekani, ngikhumula izembatho zami, futhi ngiyazithintitha phambi kwenu; ngithandaza uNkulunkulu wensindiso yami ukuthi angibheke ngeso lakhe elifuna konke; ngalokho-ke, niyokwazi ngosuku lokugcina, lapho bonke abantu beyokwahlulelwa ngemisebenzi yabo, ukuthi uNkulunkulu ka-Israyeli nempela wabona ukuthi ngabuthintitha ububi benu emphefumulweni wami, futhi nokuthi ngimi ngimsulwa phambi kwakhe, futhi ngilisuusile igazi lenu.

45 O, bafowethu abathandekayo, shiyani izono zenu; thintithani amaketanga akhe lowo ofuna ukunibopha aniqinise; wozani kulowo Nkulunkulu oyidwala lensindiso yenu.

46 Lungiselelani imiphefumulo yenu lolo suku lwenkazimulo lapho ukulunga kuyonikwa abalungileyo, ngisho usuku lokwahlulela, ukuze ningashwabaniswa wuvalo olwesabekayo; ukuze ningakhumbuli ukuba necala kwenu okwesabekayo ngokupheleleyo, futhi niphopheleleke ukuthi nimemeze nithi: Zingcwele, zingcwele izahlulelo zakho, O Nkosi Nkulunkulu Somandla—kodwa ngiyakwazi ukona kwami; ngiwuphulile umthetho wakho, futhi ukona kwami kungokwami; futhi udeveli ungitholile, ukuze ngibe yinyama osizini lwakhe olukhulu.

47 Kepha bhekani, bafowethu, kudingekile yini ukuthi nginivuse ngalamaqiniso asabekayo alezi zinto na? Bengingayivukuza yini imiphefumulo yenu ukuba imiqondo yenu beyimsulwa na? Bengingaba yini sobala kini njengokuba sobala kweqiniso ukuba benikhululiwe esonweni na?

48 Bhekani, ukuba beningcwele bengiyokhuluma kini ngobungcwele; kodwa njengoba ningekho ngcwele, futhi ningibuka njengomfundisi, kudingekile ukuthi nginifundise imiphumela yesono.

49 Bhekani, umphefumulo wami uyasenyanya isono, futhi inhliziyo yami iyathokoza ngokulunga; futhi ngiyolidumisa igama elingcwele likaNkulunkulu wami.

O, my beloved brethren, remember my words. Behold, I take off my garments, and I shake them before you; I pray the God of my salvation that he view me with his all-searching eye; wherefore, ye shall know at the last day, when all men shall be judged of their works, that the God of Israel did witness that I shook your iniquities from my soul, and that I stand with brightness before him, and am rid of your blood.

O, my beloved brethren, turn away from your sins; shake off the chains of him that would bind you fast; come unto that God who is the rock of your salvation.

Prepare your souls for that glorious day when justice shall be administered unto the righteous, even the day of judgment, that ye may not shrink with awful fear; that ye may not remember your awful guilt in perfectness, and be constrained to exclaim: Holy, holy are thy judgments, O Lord God Almighty—but I know my guilt; I transgressed thy law, and my transgressions are mine; and the devil hath obtained me, that I am a prey to his awful misery.

But behold, my brethren, is it expedient that I should awake you to an awful reality of these things? Would I harrow up your souls if your minds were pure? Would I be plain unto you according to the plainness of the truth if ye were freed from sin?

Behold, if ye were holy I would speak unto you of holiness; but as ye are not holy, and ye look upon me as a teacher, it must needs be expedient that I teach you the consequences of sin.

Behold, my soul abhorreth sin, and my heart delighteth in righteousness; and I will praise the holy name of my God.

50 Wozani, bafowethu, nonke nina enomileyo, wozani emanzini; futhi ongenamali, makeze azothenga futhi adle; yebo, woza uthenge iwayini kanye nobisi ngaphandle kwemali futhi nangaphandle kwentengo.

51 Ngalokho-ke, musani ukuchitha imali ngalokho okungenamsebenzi, noma nisebenzele lokho okungenakunanelisa. Ngilaleleni ngokukhuthala, futhi niwakhumbule amazwi engiwakhulumile; futhi nize koNgcwele ka-Israyeli, futhi nizitike ngalokho okungayikubhubha, noma okungayikonakala, futhi nivumele imiphefumulo yenu ithokoze ngamanoni.

52 Bhekani, bafowethu abathandekayo, khumbulani amazwi kaNkulunkulu wenu; thandazani kuye njalonzalo emini, futhi nibonge igama lakhe elingcwele ngobusuku. Izinhliziyo zenu mazithokoze.

53 Futhi bhekani zinkulu kangakanani izivumelwano zeNkosi, futhi kukhulu kangakanani ukuzehlisa kwayo kubantwana babantu; futhi ngenxa yobukhulu bayo, kanye nesihawu kanye nomusa wayo, isethembisile ukuthi inzalo yethu ngeke ibhujiswe nya, ngokwasenyameni, kodwa ukuthi iyoyigcina, futhi ezizukulwaneni ezizayo iyokuba yigatsha elilungileyo endlini ka-Israyeli.

54 Manje, bafowethu, ngifuna ukukhuluma nani kabanzi; kepha kusasa ngizonazisa insalela yamazwi ami. Amen.

Come, my brethren, every one that thirsteth, come ye to the waters; and he that hath no money, come buy and eat; yea, come buy wine and milk without money and without price.

Wherefore, do not spend money for that which is of no worth, nor your labor for that which cannot satisfy. Harken diligently unto me, and remember the words which I have spoken; and come unto the Holy One of Israel, and feast upon that which perisheth not, neither can be corrupted, and let your soul delight in fatness.

Behold, my beloved brethren, remember the words of your God; pray unto him continually by day, and give thanks unto his holy name by night. Let your hearts rejoice.

And behold how great the covenants of the Lord, and how great his condescensions unto the children of men; and because of his greatness, and his grace and mercy, he has promised unto us that our seed shall not utterly be destroyed, according to the flesh, but that he would preserve them; and in future generations they shall become a righteous branch unto the house of Israel.

And now, my brethren, I would speak unto you more; but on the morrow I will declare unto you the remainder of my words. Amen.

2 Nefi 10

- 1 Manje mina, Jakobe, ngikhuluma kini futhi, bafowethu abathandekayo, mayelana naleligatsha elilungileyo engikhulume ngalo.
- 2 Ngokuba bhekani, izethembiso esizitholile ziyizethembiso ngokwasenyameni; ngalokho-ke, njengokuba kukhonjisiwe kimi ukuthi abaningi babantwana bethu bayobhubha enyameni ngenxa yokungakholwa, nokho, uNkulunkulu uyokuba nomusa kwabaningi; futhi abantwana bethu bayobuyiswa, ukuze beze kukho lokho okuyobanika ulwazi lweqiniso ngoMkhululi wabo.
- 3 Ngalokho-ke, njengokuba ngishilo kini, kufanele ukuthi uKristu—ngokuba ngobusuku bayizolo ingelosi ikhulumile kimi ukuthi leli kuyokuba yigama lakhe—uyofika phakathi kwamaJuda, phakathi kwalabo abayinxenye yomhlaba enobubi obukhulu; futhi bayombethela—ngokuba ngalendlela kudingekile kuNkulunkulu wethu, futhi akukho nasinye esinye isizwe emhlabeni esiyobethela uNkulunkulu waso.
- 4 Ngokuba uma izibonakaliso ezinkulu zenzeka phakathi kwezinye izizwe ziyophenduka, futhi zazi ukuthi unguNkulunkulu wazo.
- 5 Kepha ngenxa yobuphristi-mbumbulu kanye nobubi obukhulu, abaseJerusalema bayoqinisa izintamo zabo ngokumelene naye, kangangoba uyobethelwa.
- 6 Ngalokho-ke, ngenxa yobubi babo, izimbubhiso, indlala, umashaya-bhuqe wezifo, kanye nokuchitheka kwegazi kuyoza kubo; futhi labo abangeyikubhujiswa bayohlakazwa phakathi kwazo zonke izizwe.
- 7 Kepha bheka, isho kanje iNkosi uNkulunkulu: Uma usuku lufika lapho beyokholwa kimi, ukuthi nginguKristu, uma sekunjalo ngavumelana noyise ukuthi bayobuyiselwa enyameni, emhlabeni, kuwo amazwe angamafa abo.
- 8 Futhi kuyokwenzeka ukuthi bayoqoqwa kukho ukuhlakazeka kwabo kwesikhathi eside, kuzo iziqhingi zolwandle, kanye nakuwo amagumbi amane omhlaba; futhi izizwe zabeZizwe ziyoba zinkulu emehlweni ami, kusho uNkulunkulu, ekubathwaleni baye emazweni abo angamafa abo.

2 Nephi 10

And now I, Jacob, speak unto you again, my beloved brethren, concerning this righteous branch of which I have spoken.

For behold, the promises which we have obtained are promises unto us according to the flesh; wherefore, as it has been shown unto me that many of our children shall perish in the flesh because of unbelief, nevertheless, God will be merciful unto many; and our children shall be restored, that they may come to that which will give them the true knowledge of their Redeemer.

Wherefore, as I said unto you, it must needs be expedient that Christ—for in the last night the angel spake unto me that this should be his name—should come among the Jews, among those who are the more wicked part of the world; and they shall crucify him—for thus it behooveth our God, and there is none other nation on earth that would crucify their God.

For should the mighty miracles be wrought among other nations they would repent, and know that he be their God.

But because of priestcrafts and iniquities, they at Jerusalem will stiffen their necks against him, that he be crucified.

Wherefore, because of their iniquities, destructions, famines, pestilences, and bloodshed shall come upon them; and they who shall not be destroyed shall be scattered among all nations.

But behold, thus saith the Lord God: When the day cometh that they shall believe in me, that I am Christ, then have I covenanted with their fathers that they shall be restored in the flesh, upon the earth, unto the lands of their inheritance.

And it shall come to pass that they shall be gathered in from their long dispersion, from the isles of the sea, and from the four parts of the earth; and the nations of the Gentiles shall be great in the eyes of me, saith God, in carrying them forth to the lands of their inheritance.

- 9 Yebo, amakhosi abeZizwe ayokuba ngoyise abondlayo, futhi nezindlovukazi zabo ziyokuba ngonina abancelisayo kubo; ngalokho-ke, izethembiso zeNkosi zinkulu kubo abeZizwe, ngokuba ikukhulumile lokhu, futhi ngubani ongakuphikisa na?
- 10 Kepha bheka, lelizwe, kusho uNkulunkulu, liyokuba yizwe eliyifa lakho, futhi abeZizwe bayobusiswa kulelizwe.
- 11 Futhi lelizwe liyokuba yizwe lenkululeko kubo abeZizwe, futhi akuyikuba-bikho makhosi kulelizwe, ayokhuliswa kubo abeZizwe.
- 12 Futhi ngiyoliqinisa lelizwe ngokumelene nazo zonke ezinye izizwe.
- 13 Futhi lowo olwa neSiyoni uyoshabalala, kusho uNkulunkulu.
- 14 Ngokuba lowo oyokhulisa inkosi ngokuphikisana nami uyoshabalala, ngokuba mina, Nkosi, inkosi yezulu, ngiyokuba yinkosi yabo, futhi ngiyokuba ngukukhanya kubo ingunaphakade, labo abezwa amazwi ami.
- 15 Ngalokho-ke, ngalesi sizathu, ukuze izivumelwano zami zigcwaliseke engazenza kubo abantwana babantu, ukuthi ngiyozenza kubo ngesikhathi besesenyameni, kufanele ngibhubhise imisebenzi efihlakeleyo yobumnyama, kanye neyababulali, kanye neyeziningiso.
- 16 Ngalokho-ke, lowo olwa neSiyoni, iJuda kanye noweZizwe, oboshiwe kanye nokhululekile, owesilisa kanye nowesifazane, uyoshabalala; ngokuba yibo labo abayisifebe somhlaba wonke; ngokuba labo okungesibo abami bamelene nami kusho uNkulunkulu wethu.
- 17 Ngokuba ngiyozigcwalisa izethembiso zami engazenza kubo abantwana babantu, zokuthi ngiyozenza kubo ngesikhathi besesenyameni—
- 18 Ngalokho-ke, bafowethu abathandekayo, usho kanje uNkulunkulu wethu: ngiyoyihlupha inzalo yakho ngesandla sabeZizwe; nokho, ngiyozithambisa izinhliziyi zabeZizwe, ukuze babe njengoyise kuyo; ngalokho-ke, abeZizwe bayobusiswa futhi babalwe nendlu ka-Israyeli.

Yea, the kings of the Gentiles shall be nursing fathers unto them, and their queens shall become nursing mothers; wherefore, the promises of the Lord are great unto the Gentiles, for he hath spoken it, and who can dispute?

But behold, this land, said God, shall be a land of thine inheritance, and the Gentiles shall be blessed upon the land.

And this land shall be a land of liberty unto the Gentiles, and there shall be no kings upon the land, who shall raise up unto the Gentiles.

And I will fortify this land against all other nations.

And he that fighteth against Zion shall perish, saith God.

For he that raiseth up a king against me shall perish, for I, the Lord, the king of heaven, will be their king, and I will be a light unto them forever, that hear my words.

Wherefore, for this cause, that my covenants may be fulfilled which I have made unto the children of men, that I will do unto them while they are in the flesh, I must needs destroy the secret works of darkness, and of murders, and of abominations.

Wherefore, he that fighteth against Zion, both Jew and Gentile, both bond and free, both male and female, shall perish; for they are they who are the whore of all the earth; for they who are not for me are against me, saith our God.

For I will fulfil my promises which I have made unto the children of men, that I will do unto them while they are in the flesh—

Wherefore, my beloved brethren, thus saith our God: I will afflict thy seed by the hand of the Gentiles; nevertheless, I will soften the hearts of the Gentiles, that they shall be like unto a father to them; wherefore, the Gentiles shall be blessed and numbered among the house of Israel.

- 19 Ngalokho-ke, ngiyolingcwelisa lelizwe kuyo inzalo yakho, kanye nalabo abayobalwa nenzalo yakho, ingunaphakade, kube yizwe eliyifa labo; ngokuba liyizwe elikhethiweyo, kusho uNkulunkulu kimi, ngaphezu kwawo wonke amanye amazwe, ngalokho-ke ngiyokwenza bonke abantu abahlala kulo ukuthi bangikhonze, kusho uNkulunkulu.
- 20 Manje, bafowethu abathandekayo, ngokubona ukuthi uNkulunkulu wethu onomusa usinikile ulwazi olukhulu kakhulu mayelana nalezi zinto, masimkhumbule, futhi sibeke eceleni izono zethu, singawalengisi amakhanda ethu, ngokuba asilahlwanga; nokho, sibalekisiwe sakhishwa ezweni eliyifa lethu; kepha siholelwe ezweni elingcono, ngokuba iNkosi yenze ulwandle lwaba yindlela yethu, futhi siphezu kwesiqhingi solwandle.
- 21 Kepha zinkulu izethembiso zeNkosi kulabo abaseziqhingini zolwandle; ngalokho-ke njengoba kuthiwa yiziqhingi, kufanele ukuthi kukhona ezingaphezulu kwalesi, futhi nazo ngokunjalo zigcwaliswe ngabafowethu.
- 22 Ngokuba bhekani, iNkosi uNkulunkulu ibaholele kude izikhathi ngezikhathi indlu ka-Israyeli, ngokwentando nangokwesifiso sayo. Manje bhekani, iNkosi iyabakhumbula bonke labo abahleshuliwe, ngalokho-ke iyasikhumbula sonke nathi.
- 23 Ngalokho-ke, thokozani ezinhliziyweni zenu, futhi nikhumbule ukuthi nikhululekile ukuzenzela ngokwenu—ukukhetha indlela yokufa okuphakade noma indlela yokuphila okuphakade.
- 24 Ngalokho-ke, bafowethu abathandekayo, buyisanani nentando kaNkulunkulu, futhi hhayi nentando kadeveli kanye neyenyama; nikhumbule, emva kokuthi senibuyisene noNkulunkulu, ukuthi kukuso futhi kungaso isihawu sikaNkulunkulu kuphela ukuthi niyasindisiwa.
- 25 Ngalokho-ke, sengathi uNkulunkulu anganivusa ekufeni ngamandla ovuko, futhi ngokunjalo nakukho ukufa okuphakade ngamandla enhlawulo, ukuze namukelwe embusweni ophakade kaNkulunkulu, ukuze nimdumise ngesihawu sikaNkulunkulu. Amen.

Wherefore, I will consecrate this land unto thy seed, and them who shall be numbered among thy seed, forever, for the land of their inheritance; for it is a choice land, saith God unto me, above all other lands, wherefore I will have all men that dwell thereon that they shall worship me, saith God.

And now, my beloved brethren, seeing that our merciful God has given us so great knowledge concerning these things, let us remember him, and lay aside our sins, and not hang down our heads, for we are not cast off; nevertheless, we have been driven out of the land of our inheritance; but we have been led to a better land, for the Lord has made the sea our path, and we are upon an isle of the sea.

But great are the promises of the Lord unto them who are upon the isles of the sea; wherefore as it says isles, there must needs be more than this, and they are inhabited also by our brethren.

For behold, the Lord God has led away from time to time from the house of Israel, according to his will and pleasure. And now behold, the Lord remembereth all them who have been broken off, wherefore he remembereth us also.

Therefore, cheer up your hearts, and remember that ye are free to act for yourselves—to choose the way of everlasting death or the way of eternal life.

Wherefore, my beloved brethren, reconcile yourselves to the will of God, and not to the will of the devil and the flesh; and remember, after ye are reconciled unto God, that it is only in and through the grace of God that ye are saved.

Wherefore, may God raise you from death by the power of the resurrection, and also from everlasting death by the power of the atonement, that ye may be received into the eternal kingdom of God, that ye may praise him through grace divine. Amen.

2 Nefi 11

- 1 Manje, uJakobe wakhuluma eziningi kakhulu izinto kubantu bami ngaleso sikhathi; nokho yilezi zinto kuphela engenze ukuthi zibhalwe, ngokuba izinto engizibhalile ziyangenelisa.
- 2 Manje mina, Nepi, ngibhala okuningi okungamazwi ka-Isaya, ngokuba umphefumulo wami uyathokoza emazwini akhe. Ngokuba ngizobhekisa amazwi akhe kubantu bami, futhi ngizowathumela kubo bonke abantwana bami, ngokuba ngempela wambona uMkhululi wami, ngisho njengoba nami ngimbonile.
- 3 Futhi umfowethu, uJakobe, ngokunjalo naye umbonile njengoba nami ngimbonile; ngalokho-ke, ngizowathumela amazwi abo kubo abantwana bami ukubaqinisekisa ukuthi amazwi ami ayiqiniso. Ngalokho-ke, ngamazwi abathathu, uNkulunkulu uthe, ngiyowamisa amazwi ami. Nokho, uNkulunkulu uthumela ofakazi abaningi, futhi uyawaqinisekisa amazwi akhe onke.
- 4 Bheka, umphefumulo wami uyathokoza ekuboniseni abantu bami iqiniso lokuza kukaKristu; ngokuba, ngalesi sizathu umthetho kaMose unikeziwe; futhi zonke izinto ezinikezwe nguNkulunkulu kusukela ekuqaleni komhlaba, ziya kumuntu, ziwuphawu lwakhe.
- 5 Futhi phezu kwalokho umphefumulo wami uyathokoza ezivumelwaneni zeNkosi ezenze kobaba bethu; yebo, umphefumulo wami uyathokoza kuso isihawu sakhe, kanye nasekulungeni kwakhe, kanye nasemandleni, kanye nasenseni omkhulu nesu laphakade lokukhululwa ekufeni.
- 6 Futhi umphefumulo wami uyathokoza ekuboniseni abantu bami ukuthi ngaphandle kokuthi uKristu afike bonke abantu kufanele babhubhe.
- 7 Ngokuba uma engekho uKristu ngeke abe khona uNkulunkulu; futhi uma engekho uNkulunkulu thina asikho, ngokuba beyingeke ibe khona indalo. Kepha ukhona uNkulunkulu, futhi unguKristu, futhi uyofika ngokuphelela kwesikhathi sakhe.

2 Nephi 11

And now, Jacob spake many more things to my people at that time; nevertheless only these things have I caused to be written, for the things which I have written sufficeth me.

And now I, Nephi, write more of the words of Isaiah, for my soul delighteth in his words. For I will liken his words unto my people, and I will send them forth unto all my children, for he verily saw my Redeemer, even as I have seen him.

And my brother, Jacob, also has seen him as I have seen him; wherefore, I will send their words forth unto my children to prove unto them that my words are true. Wherefore, by the words of three, God hath said, I will establish my word. Nevertheless, God sendeth more witnesses, and he proveth all his words.

Behold, my soul delighteth in proving unto my people the truth of the coming of Christ; for, for this end hath the law of Moses been given; and all things which have been given of God from the beginning of the world, unto man, are the typifying of him.

And also my soul delighteth in the covenants of the Lord which he hath made to our fathers; yea, my soul delighteth in his grace, and in his justice, and power, and mercy in the great and eternal plan of deliverance from death.

And my soul delighteth in proving unto my people that save Christ should come all men must perish.

For if there be no Christ there be no God; and if there be no God we are not, for there could have been no creation. But there is a God, and he is Christ, and he cometh in the fulness of his own time.

8 Manje ngibhala amanye amazwi ka-Isaya, ukuze noma ngubani kubantu bami abayowabona lamazwi baphakamise izinhliziyi zabo futhi bajabule ngabantu bonke. Manje lawa ngamazwi, futhi ningawabhekisa kini futhi nakubo bonke abantu.

And now I write some of the words of Isaiah, that whoso of my people shall see these words may lift up their hearts and rejoice for all men. Now these are the words, and ye may liken them unto you and unto all men.

2 Nefi 12

- 1 Izwi u-Isaya, indodana ka-Amose, alibona mayelana noJuda kanye neJerusalema:
- 2 Futhi kuyokwenzeka ngezinsuku zokugcina, ngesikhathi intaba yendlu yeNkosi iyokwakhiwa esicongweni sezintaba, futhi iyophakanyiswa ngaphezu kwamagquma, futhi zonke izizwe ziyogobhozela kuyo.
- 3 Futhi abaningi abantu bayohamba futhi bathi: Wozani, sikhuphukeleni entabeni yeNkosi, kuyo indlu kaNkulunkulu kaJakobe; futhi iyosifundisa ngezindlela zayo, futhi siyohamba emikhondweni yayo; ngokuba eSiyoni kuyovela umthetho, futhi izwi leNkosi liyovela eJerusalema.
- 4 Futhi iyokwahlulela phakathi kwezizwe, futhi iyokhuza abantu abaningi: futhi bayokhanda izinkemba zabo zibe ngamakhuba, nemikhonto yabo ibe ngocelemba—isizwe asiyikuphakamisela esinye isizwe inkemba, noma ngeke besaya ukuyofundela impi nanini.
- 5 O ndlu kaJakobe, woza futhi masihambe ekukhanyeni kweNkosi; yebo, wozani, ngokuba nonke nidukile, ngamunye ezindleleni zakhe zobubi.
- 6 Ngakho-ke, O Nkosi, ubashiyile abantu bakho, indlu kaJakobe, ngenxa yokuthi begcwaliswa ngabasempumalanga, futhi belalela ababhuli njengamaFilisti, futhi bezithokozisa ebantwaneni bezihambi.
- 7 Izwe labo phezu kwalokho ligcwele isiliva kanye negolide, futhi akukho nakuphela kuyo ingcebo yabo; izwe labo phezu kwalokho ligcwele amahhashi, futhi akukho nakuphela kuzo izinqola zempi.
- 8 Izwe labo futhi ligcwele izithixo; bakhonza umsebenzi wezandla zabo uqobo, lokho okwenziwe yiminwe yabo uqobo.
- 9 Futhi umuntu odelelekile akakhothami, futhi umuntu omkhulu akazehlisi, ngakho-ke, makangaxolelwa.
- 10 O nina enibabi, ngenani edwaleni, nizifihle othulini, ngokwesaba iNkosi kanye nenkazimulo yobukhosi bayo okuyonishaya.

2 Nephi 12

The word that Isaiah, the son of Amoz, saw concerning Judah and Jerusalem:

And it shall come to pass in the last days, when the mountain of the Lord's house shall be established in the top of the mountains, and shall be exalted above the hills, and all nations shall flow unto it.

And many people shall go and say, Come ye, and let us go up to the mountain of the Lord, to the house of the God of Jacob; and he will teach us of his ways, and we will walk in his paths; for out of Zion shall go forth the law, and the word of the Lord from Jerusalem.

And he shall judge among the nations, and shall rebuke many people: and they shall beat their swords into plow-shares, and their spears into pruning-hooks—nation shall not lift up sword against nation, neither shall they learn war any more.

O house of Jacob, come ye and let us walk in the light of the Lord; yea, come, for ye have all gone astray, every one to his wicked ways.

Therefore, O Lord, thou hast forsaken thy people, the house of Jacob, because they be replenished from the east, and hearken unto soothsayers like the Philistines, and they please themselves in the children of strangers.

Their land also is full of silver and gold, neither is there any end of their treasures; their land is also full of horses, neither is there any end of their chariots.

Their land is also full of idols; they worship the work of their own hands, that which their own fingers have made.

And the mean man boweth not down, and the great man humbleth himself not, therefore, forgive him not.

O ye wicked ones, enter into the rock, and hide thee in the dust, for the fear of the Lord and the glory of his majesty shall smite thee.

- 11 Futhi kuyokwenzeka ukuthi ukubuka komuntu ozigqajayo kuyothotshiswa, kanye nokuzikhukhumeza kwabantu kuyokhothanyiswa, futhi yiNkosi kuphela eyophakanyiswa ngalolo suku.
- 12 Ngokuba usuku lweNkosi yamaBandla luyeza masinyane phezu kwazo zonke izizwe, yebo, kuwonke wonke; yebo, kwabaziqhenyayo kanye nabazigqajayo, naphezu kwabo bonke labo abaziphakamisayo, futhi bayokwehliswa.
- 13 Yebo, usuku lweNkosi luyofika phezu kwayo yonke imisedari yaseLebanoni, ngokuba mide futhi iphakeme; kanye naphezu kwawo wonke ama-oki aseBashani.
- 14 Naphezu kwazo zonke izintaba, naphezu kwawo wonke amagquma, naphezu kwazo zonke izizwe eziphakeme, naphezu kwabo bonke abantu;
- 15 Futhi naphezu kwayo yonke imibhoshongo emide, kanye naphezu kwazo zonke izindonga ezibiyelweyo;
- 16 Naphezu kwayo yonke imikhumbi yasolwandle, naphezu kwayo yonke imikhumbi yaseTharishishi, naphezu kwazo zonke izithombe ezinhle.
- 17 Futhi ukuzigqaja komuntu kuyothotshiswa, kanye nokuzikhukhumeza kwabantu kuyokwehliswa; futhi yiNkosi kuphela eyophakanyiswa ngalolo suku.
- 18 Izithixo iyoziqeda nya.
- 19 Futhi bayongena emihhumeni yamadwala, kanye nasemigedeni yomhlaba, ngokuba ukwesaba iNkosi kuyofika phezu kwabo futhi inkazimulo yobukhosi bayo iyobashaya, ngesikhathi ivukela ukuzamazamisa kanzima umhlaba.
- 20 Ngalolo suku umuntu uyolahla izithixo zakhe zesiliva, kanye nezithixo zakhe zegolide, azenzele zona ukuzikhonza, kuzo izimvukuzane kanye namalulwane.
- 21 Ukuze bangene emifantwini yamadwala, kanye nasezicongweni zezixongo zamadwala, ngokuba ukwesaba iNkosi kuyofika phezu kwabo kanye nobukhosi benkazimulo yayo buyobashaya, ngesikhathi ivukela ukuzamazamisa kanzima umhlaba.
- 22 Yekani ukwethemba umuntu, umphefumulo wakhe osemakhaleni akhe; ngokuba angaziswa na?
- And it shall come to pass that the lofty looks of man shall be humbled, and the haughtiness of men shall be bowed down, and the Lord alone shall be exalted in that day.
- For the day of the Lord of Hosts soon cometh upon all nations, yea, upon every one; yea, upon the proud and lofty, and upon every one who is lifted up, and he shall be brought low.
- Yea, and the day of the Lord shall come upon all the cedars of Lebanon, for they are high and lifted up; and upon all the oaks of Bashan;
- And upon all the high mountains, and upon all the hills, and upon all the nations which are lifted up, and upon every people;
- And upon every high tower, and upon every fenced wall;
- And upon all the ships of the sea, and upon all the ships of Tarshish, and upon all pleasant pictures.
- And the loftiness of man shall be bowed down, and the haughtiness of men shall be made low; and the Lord alone shall be exalted in that day.
- And the idols he shall utterly abolish.
- And they shall go into the holes of the rocks, and into the caves of the earth, for the fear of the Lord shall come upon them and the glory of his majesty shall smite them, when he ariseth to shake terribly the earth.
- In that day a man shall cast his idols of silver, and his idols of gold, which he hath made for himself to worship, to the moles and to the bats;
- To go into the clefts of the rocks, and into the tops of the ragged rocks, for the fear of the Lord shall come upon them and the majesty of his glory shall smite them, when he ariseth to shake terribly the earth.
- Cease ye from man, whose breath is in his nostrils; for wherein is he to be accounted of?

2 Nefi 13

- 1 Ngokuba bheka, iNkosi, iNkosi yamaBandla, isusa eJerusalema, kanye nakuJuda, insika kanye nodondolo, udondolo lonke lwesinkwa, kanye nensika yonke yamanzi—
- 2 Indoda enamandla, kanye nendoda yempi, umahluleli, kanye nomphrofethi, kanye nohlananiphileyo, kanye nomdala;
- 3 Induna yamashumi amahlanu, kanye nomuntu ohloniphekileyo, kanye nomeluleki, kanye nengcweti ehlananiphileyo, kanye nesikhulumi esinekhono.
- 4 Futhi ngiyobanika abantwana ukuthi babe ngamakhosi abo, futhi nezingane ziyobusa phezu kwabo.
- 5 Futhi abantu bayocindezelwa, yilowo nalowo ngomunye, futhi yilowo nalowo ngumakhelwane wakhe; ingane iyohamba ngokubhensa phambi kwabadala, ngokunjalo namashinga kubo abahloniphekileyo.
- 6 Lapho umuntu eyobamba umfowabo wendlu kayise, futhi bese ethi: Wena unengubo, yiba ngumbusi wethu, futhi ungayivumeli lencithakalo ize ngaphansi kwesandla sakho—
- 7 Ngalo lolo suku uyofunga, ethi: Angizukuba ngumelaphi; ngokuba endlini yami akukho sinkwa nazingubo; ningangenzi umbusi wabantu.
- 8 Ngokuba iJerusalema ichithiwe, futhi noJuda uwile, ngenxa yokuthi izilimi zabo kanye nezenzo zabo beziphambene neNkosi, ukucunula amehlo enkazimulo yayo.
- 9 Isimo sobuso babo siyafakaza ngokumelene nabo, futhi simemezela isono sabo ukuthi sinjengaso ngisho esaseSodoma, futhi abanakusifihla. Maye emiphefumulweni yabo, ngokuba bazenzele ububi.
- 10 Yisho kwabalungileyo ukuthi kuhle kubo; ngokuba bayodla isithelo sezenzo zabo.
- 11 Maye kwababi, ngokuba bayobhujiswa; ngokuba umvuzo wezandla zabo uyoba phezu kwabo!
- 12 Abantu bami, abantwana bangabacindezeli babo, futhi abesifazane bayabusa phezu kwabo. O bantu bami, labo abaniholayo benza ukuthi niphambuke futhi bashabalalise indlela yemikhondo yenu.

2 Nephi 13

For behold, the Lord, the Lord of Hosts, doth take away from Jerusalem, and from Judah, the stay and the staff, the whole staff of bread, and the whole stay of water—

The mighty man, and the man of war, the judge, and the prophet, and the prudent, and the ancient;

The captain of fifty, and the honorable man, and the counselor, and the cunning artificer, and the eloquent orator.

And I will give children unto them to be their princes, and babes shall rule over them.

And the people shall be oppressed, every one by another, and every one by his neighbor; the child shall behave himself proudly against the ancient, and the base against the honorable.

When a man shall take hold of his brother of the house of his father, and shall say: Thou hast clothing, be thou our ruler, and let not this ruin come under thy hand—

In that day shall he swear, saying: I will not be a healer; for in my house there is neither bread nor clothing; make me not a ruler of the people.

For Jerusalem is ruined, and Judah is fallen, because their tongues and their doings have been against the Lord, to provoke the eyes of his glory.

The show of their countenance doth witness against them, and doth declare their sin to be even as Sodom, and they cannot hide it. Wo unto their souls, for they have rewarded evil unto themselves!

Say unto the righteous that it is well with them; for they shall eat the fruit of their doings.

Wo unto the wicked, for they shall perish; for the reward of their hands shall be upon them!

And my people, children are their oppressors, and women rule over them. O my people, they who lead thee cause thee to err and destroy the way of thy paths.

13 INkosi imele ukunicelela, futhi imele ukwahlulela abantu.

14 INkosi iyongena ekwahluleleni kanye nabadala babantu bayo kanye namakhosana abo; ngokuba nidle isivini nempango yabampofu ezindlini zenu.

15 Nichaza ukuthini na? Nishaya abantu bami baba yizicucu, futhi nigaya ubuso babampofu, kusho iNkosi uNkulunkulu wamaBandla.

16 Phezu kwalokho, iNkosi ithi: Ngenxa yokuthi amadodakazi aseSiyoni aphakeme, futhi ahamba nezintamo ezeluliwe kanye namehlo aqhikizayo, ehamba futhi ecokama ekuhambeni kwawo, futhi enza ubukhencekhence ngezinyawo zawo—

17 Ngalokho-ke iNkosi iyolushaya ngoqweqwe ukhakhayi lwamakhandla amadodakazi aseSiyoni, futhi iNkosi iyozithola izinxenye zezimfihlo zabo.

18 Ngalo lolo suku iNkosi iyobususa ubucwebecwebwe bobukhencekhence bemihlobiso yawo, kanye nezigqoko ezinamanethi, kanye nezimbedu eziyindilinga njengenyanga;

19 Izigqizo kanye namasongo, kanye nezimvakazi;

20 Izigqoko, nemihlobiso yemilenze, nemiqhele, namakha, kanye namacici ezindlebe;

21 Izindandatho, kanye nobucwebe bamakhala;

22 Izembatho ezingagqokwa nezinye, kanye nezembatho zemikhosi, kanye nezembatho zokumboza ubuso nentamo, kanye nezipeletu zezinwele;

23 Izibuko, kanye nelineni elicolekileyo, kanye nemishuqulo, kanye namaveyili.

24 Futhi kuyokwenzeka ukuthi, esikhundleni samakha kuyoba khona iququ; esikhundleni sebhande, ukudabuka; esikhundleni sezinwele ezilungiswe kahle, impandla; esikhundleni sesidiya, ukwembatha ingubo yesaka; ukusha esikhundleni sobuhle.

25 Amadoda akho ayokuwa ngenkemba ngokunjalo namaqhawe akho empini.

26 Futhi amasango akhe ayolila futhi akhale; futhi uyophundleka, futhi uyohlala phansi.

The Lord standeth up to plead, and standeth to judge the people.

The Lord will enter into judgment with the ancients of his people and the princes thereof; for ye have eaten up the vineyard and the spoil of the poor in your houses.

What mean ye? Ye beat my people to pieces, and grind the faces of the poor, saith the Lord God of Hosts.

Moreover, the Lord saith: Because the daughters of Zion are haughty, and walk with stretched-forth necks and wanton eyes, walking and mincing as they go, and making a tinkling with their feet—

Therefore the Lord will smite with a scab the crown of the head of the daughters of Zion, and the Lord will discover their secret parts.

In that day the Lord will take away the bravery of their tinkling ornaments, and caul, and round tires like the moon;

The chains and the bracelets, and the mufflers;

The bonnets, and the ornaments of the legs, and the headbands, and the tablets, and the ear-rings;

The rings, and nose jewels;

The changeable suits of apparel, and the mantles, and the wimples, and the crisping-pins;

The glasses, and the fine linen, and hoods, and the veils.

And it shall come to pass, instead of sweet smell there shall be stink; and instead of a girdle, a rent; and instead of well set hair, baldness; and instead of a stomacher, a girding of sackcloth; burning instead of beauty.

Thy men shall fall by the sword and thy mighty in the war.

And her gates shall lament and mourn; and she shall be desolate, and shall sit upon the ground.

2 Nefi 14

- 1 Futhi ngalolo suku, abesifazane abayisikhombisa bayobamba indoda eyodwa, bethi: Sizokudla isinkwa sethu, futhi sembathe izingubo zethu; kuphela sivumele sibizwe ngegama lakho ukuze ususe ihlazo kithi.
- 2 Ngalolo suku igatsha leNkosi liyoba lihle futhi likhazimule; isithelo somhlaba siyoba sihle kakhulu futhi sibukeke kulabo abaphunyuka bakwa-Israyeli.
- 3 Futhi kuyokwenzeka ukuthi, labo abashiye eSiyoni futhi basala eJerusalema bayobizwa ngokuthi bangcwele, bonke labo ababhaliwe phakathi kwabaphilayo eJerusalema—
- 4 Lapho iNkosi isikugezile ukungcola kwamadodakazi eSiyoni, futhi nalapho isilihlanzile igazi laseJerusalema phakathi kwayo ngomoya wokwahlulela kanye nangomoya wokushisa.
- 5 Futhi iNkosi iyodala phezu kwayo yonke indawo yokuhlala yentaba yaseSiyoni, futhi naphezu kwemihlangano yayo; ifu kanye nomusi emini kanye nokukhanya kwelangabi lomlilo ebusuku; ngokuba ngaphezu kwayo yonke inkazimulo yaseSiyoni kuyoba khona ukuvikelwa.
- 6 Futhi kuyoba khona idokodo lomthunzi emini ekushiseni, futhi libe yindawo yesiphephelo, kanye nenqaba kuzo izivunguvungu kanye nakuyo imvula.

2 Nephi 14

And in that day, seven women shall take hold of one man, saying: We will eat our own bread, and wear our own apparel; only let us be called by thy name to take away our reproach.

In that day shall the branch of the Lord be beautiful and glorious; the fruit of the earth excellent and comely to them that are escaped of Israel.

And it shall come to pass, they that are left in Zion and remain in Jerusalem shall be called holy, every one that is written among the living in Jerusalem—

When the Lord shall have washed away the filth of the daughters of Zion, and shall have purged the blood of Jerusalem from the midst thereof by the spirit of judgment and by the spirit of burning.

And the Lord will create upon every dwelling-place of mount Zion, and upon her assemblies, a cloud and smoke by day and the shining of a flaming fire by night; for upon all the glory of Zion shall be a defence.

And there shall be a tabernacle for a shadow in the daytime from the heat, and for a place of refuge, and a covert from storm and from rain.

2 Nefi 15

- 1 Futhi ngaleso sikhathi ngiyomhlabelelela othandiweyo kakhulu wami ingoma yothandiweyo wami, maqondana nesivini sakhe. Othandiweyo kakhulu wami unesivini egqumeni elivunde kakhulu.
- 2 Futhi wasibiyela, futhi wakhipha amatshe kuso, futhi wasitshala ngomvini okhethekileyo kakhulu, futhi wakha umbhoshongo phakathi naso, futhi phezu kwalokho wakha isikhamo sewayini kuso; futhi ebheke ukuthi kufanele sithele imivini, kepha saveza imivini yasendle.
- 3 Manje, O zakhamizi zaseJerusalema, kanye nani madoda akwaJuda, yahlulelani, ngiyandandaza, phakathi kwami kanye nesivini sami.
- 4 Ngabe yini obekufanele yenziwe futhi esivini sami lokho engingakwenzanga kuso na? Ngalokhoke, ngesikhathi ngisabhekile ukuthi kufanele sithele imivini sona sithele imivini yasendle.
- 5 Manje hambani; ngizonitshela ukuthi ngiyokwenzani ngesivini sami—ngiyosusa uthango lwaso, futhi siyodliwa siphela; futhi ngiyoludiliza udonga lwaso, futhi siyonyathelwa;
- 6 Futhi ngiyosiyeka sichithakale; asiyikuthenwa noma sivukuzwe; kepha kuyovela amakhakhasi kanye nameva; phezu kwalokho ngizoyala amafu ukuthi anganisi mvula phezu kwaso.
- 7 Ngokuba isivini seNkosi yamaBandla yindlu ka-Israyeli, futhi abantu baJuda yisithombo sakhe esithandekayo; futhi ulindele ukwahlulela, futhi bheka, ukucindezelwa; ulindele ukulunga, kepha bheka, ukukhala.
- 8 Maye kulabo abahlanganisa indlu nendlu, kuze kungabe kusaba bikho ndawo, ukuba bahlaliswe bodwa phakathi naphakathi komhlaba!
- 9 Ezindlebeni zami, kusho iNkosi yamaBandla, ngempela eziningi izindlu ziyoba yincithakalo, futhi amakhulu kanye namahle amadolobha awayikuba nabantu.
- 10 Yebo, ama-eka ayishumi esivini ayothela ibhavu elilodwa, kanye nembewu yehomere iyothela i-efa.
- 11 Maye kulabo abavuka ekuseni ngovivi, ukuze balandele uphuzo olunamandla, labo abaqhubeka kuze kuhlwe, futhi bashiswe yiwayini!

2 Nephi 15

And then will I sing to my well-beloved a song of my beloved, touching his vineyard. My well-beloved hath a vineyard in a very fruitful hill.

And he fenced it, and gathered out the stones thereof, and planted it with the choicest vine, and built a tower in the midst of it, and also made a wine-press therein; and he looked that it should bring forth grapes, and it brought forth wild grapes.

And now, O inhabitants of Jerusalem, and men of Judah, judge, I pray you, betwixt me and my vineyard.

What could have been done more to my vineyard that I have not done in it? Wherefore, when I looked that it should bring forth grapes it brought forth wild grapes.

And now go to; I will tell you what I will do to my vineyard—I will take away the hedge thereof, and it shall be eaten up; and I will break down the wall thereof, and it shall be trodden down;

And I will lay it waste; it shall not be pruned nor digged; but there shall come up briars and thorns; I will also command the clouds that they rain no rain upon it.

For the vineyard of the Lord of Hosts is the house of Israel, and the men of Judah his pleasant plant; and he looked for judgment, and behold, oppression; for righteousness, but behold, a cry.

Wo unto them that join house to house, till there can be no place, that they may be placed alone in the midst of the earth!

In mine ears, said the Lord of Hosts, of a truth many houses shall be desolate, and great and fair cities without inhabitant.

Yea, ten acres of vineyard shall yield one bath, and the seed of a homer shall yield an ephah.

Wo unto them that rise up early in the morning, that they may follow strong drink, that continue until night, and wine inflame them!

12 Ihabhu, nevayolini, nogubhu, nomtshingo, kanye newayini kusemadilini abo; kepha abawazisi umsebenzi weNkosi, noma bacabange ngezenzo zezandla zayo.

13 Ngakho-ke, abantu bami bangene ekuthunjweni, ngenxa yokuthi bengenalwazi; futhi nabantu abahloniphekile babo bafile yindlala, futhi izixuku zabo zigangathekile wukoma.

14 Ngakho-ke, isihogo sizandisile, futhi savula umlomo waso ngokungenakulinganiswa; inkazimulo yabo, nesixuku sabo, namakhosi abo, kanye nalowo ojabulayo, uyokwehlela kuso.

15 Futhi umuntu odelekile uyokwehliswa, futhi umuntu omkhulu uyothotshiswa, futhi amehlo abaziphakamisayo ayothotshiswa.

16 Kepha iNkosi yamaBandla iyophakanyiswa ekwahluleleni, futhi uNkulunkulu ongcwele uyongcweliswa ekulungeni.

17 Ngaleso sikhathi amawundlu ayoklaba ngendlela yawo, futhi ezindaweni ezichithiweyo zabacebileyo kuyodla izihambi.

18 Maye kulabo abadonsa ububi ngezintambo eziyize, kanye nesono njengo kungathi yizindophi zezinqola;

19 Labo abathi: Makaphuthume, asheshise umsebenzi wakhe, ukuze siwubone; futhi iseluleko soNgcwele ka-Israyeli masisondele futhi sifike, ukuze sisazi.

20 Maye kulabo ababiza ububi ngobuhle, kanye nobuhle ngobubi, labo ababeka ubumnyama bube ngukukhanya, kanye nokukhanya kube ngubumnyama, labo ababeka okubabayo kube ngokumtoti, kanye nokumtoti kube ngokubabayo!

21 Maye kubo abahlakaniphile emehlweni abo kanye nabanokuqonda ngokubona kwabo!

22 Maye kubo abanamandla ekuphuzeni iwayini, kanye nabantu bezikhwepha ekuxubeni uphuzo olunamandla;

23 Abangababeki cala ababi ukuze bathole umvuzo, abasusa ukulunga kolungile!

And the harp, and the viol, the tabret, and pipe, and wine are in their feasts; but they regard not the work of the Lord, neither consider the operation of his hands.

Therefore, my people are gone into captivity, because they have no knowledge; and their honorable men are famished, and their multitude dried up with thirst.

Therefore, hell hath enlarged herself, and opened her mouth without measure; and their glory, and their multitude, and their pomp, and he that rejoiceth, shall descend into it.

And the mean man shall be brought down, and the mighty man shall be humbled, and the eyes of the lofty shall be humbled.

But the Lord of Hosts shall be exalted in judgment, and God that is holy shall be sanctified in righteousness.

Then shall the lambs feed after their manner, and the waste places of the fat ones shall strangers eat.

Wo unto them that draw iniquity with cords of vanity, and sin as it were with a cart rope;

That say: Let him make speed, hasten his work, that we may see it; and let the counsel of the Holy One of Israel draw nigh and come, that we may know it.

Wo unto them that call evil good, and good evil, that put darkness for light, and light for darkness, that put bitter for sweet, and sweet for bitter!

Wo unto the wise in their own eyes and prudent in their own sight!

Wo unto the mighty to drink wine, and men of strength to mingle strong drink;

Who justify the wicked for reward, and take away the righteousness of the righteous from him!

- 24 Ngakho-ke, njengomlilo ushwabadela izinhlanga, kanye nelangabi lidla amabibi, impande yabo iyobola, futhi izimbali zabo ziyothunquka njengothuli; ngenxa yokuthi bawulahlile umthetho weNkosi yamaBandla, futhi balidelela izwi loNgcwele ka-Israyeli.
- 25 Ngakho-ke, ngabe intukuthelo yeNkosi yokhelekile kubantu bayo, futhi ngabe iselulile isandla sayo kubo, yabashaya; futhi amagquma nempela adikiza, izidumbu zabo zidwengukile phakathi ezitaladini. Ngokuba kukho konke lokhu intukuthelo yakhe ayiphelile, kepha isandla sayo siseluliwe futhi.
- 26 Futhi iyophakamisa isibonakaliso ezizweni ezikude, futhi iyozihlabela ikhwela kusukela emkhawulweni womhlaba; futhi bheka, ziyokuza masinyane ngejubane; akekho namunye oyokhathala noma akhubeke phakathi kwazo.
- 27 Akekho namunye oyokozela noma alale; noma ibhande lezinkalo zabo lithukululwe, noma imichilo yezicathulo zabo inqanyulwe;
- 28 Imicibisholo yabo eyokuba bukhali, kanye nayo yonke iminsalo yabo igotshwe, futhi izinselo zamahhashi abo ziyobalwa njengetshe eliqine kakhulu, kanye namasondo abo njengesishingishane, ukubhonga kwabo njengokwengonyama.
- 29 Bayobhonga njengamabhubesi amancane; yebo, bayobhonga, futhi bayibambe inyamazane yabo, futhi bayokwemuka nayo ngokuphepha, futhi kungekho namunye ongayikhulula.
- 30 Futhi ngalolo suku bayobhonga phezu kwabo njengokuhlokoma kolwandle; futhi uma bebuka ezweni, bheka, ubumnyama kanye nosizi, futhi ukukhanya kwenziwe kube mnyama emazulwini akho.

Therefore, as the fire devoureth the stubble, and the flame consumeth the chaff, their root shall be rottenness, and their blossoms shall go up as dust; because they have cast away the law of the Lord of Hosts, and despised the word of the Holy One of Israel.

Therefore, is the anger of the Lord kindled against his people, and he hath stretched forth his hand against them, and hath smitten them; and the hills did tremble, and their carcasses were torn in the midst of the streets. For all this his anger is not turned away, but his hand is stretched out still.

And he will lift up an ensign to the nations from far, and will hiss unto them from the end of the earth; and behold, they shall come with speed swiftly; none shall be weary nor stumble among them.

None shall slumber nor sleep; neither shall the girdle of their loins be loosed, nor the latchet of their shoes be broken;

Whose arrows shall be sharp, and all their bows bent, and their horses' hoofs shall be counted like flint, and their wheels like a whirlwind, their roaring like a lion.

They shall roar like young lions; yea, they shall roar, and lay hold of the prey, and shall carry away safe, and none shall deliver.

And in that day they shall roar against them like the roaring of the sea; and if they look unto the land, behold, darkness and sorrow, and the light is darkened in the heavens thereof.

2 Nefi 16

- 1 Ngonyaka iNkosi u-Uziya eyafa ngawo, ngayibona iNkosi futhi ihlezi esihlalweni sayo sobukhosi, iphezulu iphakeme, umsila wengubo wayo wawugcwalise ithempeli.
- 2 Ngaphezu kwaso kwakumi amaserafi; yilelo nalelo lalinamaphiko ayisithupha; ngamabili lamboza ubuso balo, ngamabili lamboza izinyawo zalo, kwathi ngamabili landiza.
- 3 Elinye lamemeza kwelinye, lathi: Ingcwele, ingcwele, ingcwele, iNkosi yamaBandla; umhlaba wonke ugcwele inkazimulo yayo.
- 4 Izinsika zomnyango zanyakaza ngenxa yezwi lakhe lowo owayememeza, futhi indlu yagcwala intuthu.
- 5 Emva kwalokho ngathi: Maye kimi! Ngokuba ngiphelile; Ngenxa yokuthi ngingumuntu ozindebe zakhe zingcolile; futhi ngihlezi phakathi kwabantu abazindebe zabo zingcolile; ngokuba amehlo ami ayibonile iNkosi, iNkosi yamaBandla.
- 6 Emva kwalokho elinye lamaserafi landizela kimi, liphethe elivuthayo ilahle esandleni salo, elalilithathe ngodlawu e-altare;
- 7 Futhi lalibeka emlonyeni wami, lathi: Bheka, lokhu kuthinte izindebe zakho; ububi bakho bususiwe, nezono zakho zihlanziwe.
- 8 Phezu kwalokho ngezwa izwi leNkosi, lithi: Ngubani engiyomthuma, futhi ngubani oyosiyela na? Emva kwalokho ngathi: Nangu mina; thuma mina.
- 9 Futhi yathi: Hamba utshele laba bantu—Yizwani ngempela, kepha abazange baqonde; futhi bonani ngempela, kepha abazange babone.
- 10 Yenza inhliziyi yalaba bantu ikhuluphale, futhi wenze izindlebe zabo zibe nzima, futhi uvale amehlo abo—funa babone ngamehlo abo, futhi bezwe ngezindlebe zabo, futhi baqonde ngenhliziyi yabo, futhi baphenduke bese bephiliswa.
- 11 Emva kwalokho ngathi: Nkosi, kuze kube nini na? Futhi yathi: Kuze kuchithwe amadolobha kungabe kusaba bikho ohlalayo, futhi nezindlu zingabe zisaba namuntu, nezwe lichitheke nya.

2 Nephi 16

In the year that king Uzziah died, I saw also the Lord sitting upon a throne, high and lifted up, and his train filled the temple.

Above it stood the seraphim; each one had six wings; with twain he covered his face, and with twain he covered his feet, and with twain he did fly.

And one cried unto another, and said: Holy, holy, holy, is the Lord of Hosts; the whole earth is full of his glory.

And the posts of the door moved at the voice of him that cried, and the house was filled with smoke.

Then said I: Wo is unto me! for I am undone; because I am a man of unclean lips; and I dwell in the midst of a people of unclean lips; for mine eyes have seen the King, the Lord of Hosts.

Then flew one of the seraphim unto me, having a live coal in his hand, which he had taken with the tongs from off the altar;

And he laid it upon my mouth, and said: Lo, this has touched thy lips; and thine iniquity is taken away, and thy sin purged.

Also I heard the voice of the Lord, saying: Whom shall I send, and who will go for us? Then I said: Here am I; send me.

And he said: Go and tell this people—Hear ye indeed, but they understood not; and see ye indeed, but they perceived not.

Make the heart of this people fat, and make their ears heavy, and shut their eyes—lest they see with their eyes, and hear with their ears, and understand with their heart, and be converted and be healed.

Then said I: Lord, how long? And he said: Until the cities be wasted without inhabitant, and the houses without man, and the land be utterly desolate;

12 Futhi iNkosi ibadedisele kude abantu, ngokuba kuyoba khona enkulu incithakalo phakathi ezweni.

13 Kepha ngisho namanje kuyoba khona ingxenye yeshumi, futhi bayobuya, futhi badliwe, njengesihlahla somtherebinte, nanjenge-oki esiqu sayo sikuwo lapho besusa amahlamvu ayo; ukuze inzalo engcwele ibe yisiqu saso.

And the Lord have removed men far away, for there shall be a great forsaking in the midst of the land.

But yet there shall be a tenth, and they shall return, and shall be eaten, as a teil tree, and as an oak whose substance is in them when they cast their leaves; so the holy seed shall be the substance thereof.

2 Nefi 17

- 1 Futhi kwenzeka ukuthi ezinsukwini zika-Ahazi indodana kaJothamu, indodana ka-Uziya, inkosi yakwaJuda, uResini, inkosi yaseSiriya, kanye noPheka indodana kaRemaliya, inkosi yakwa-Israyeli, bahamba bakhuphukela ngaseJerusalema ukuyolwa nayo, kepha abakwazanga ukuyinqoba.
- 2 Futhi kwatshelwa indlu kaDavide, ukuthi: ISiriya ihlanganyela no-Efrayimi. Futhi inhliziyo yakhe yathuthumela, kanye nenhliziyo yabantu bakhe, njengemithi yasehlathini inyakazizwa wumoya.
- 3 Emva kwalokho yathi iNkosi ku-Isaya: Hamba manje uhlangabeze u-Ahazi, wena kanye noSharayi-Jashubi indodana yakho, ekugcineni komsele wechibi elingenhla komgwaqo omkhulu ensimini yomhlanzi;
- 4 Futhi uthi kuye: Qaphela, futhi uthule; ungesabi, noma inhliziyo yakho idangale ngenxa yemisila emibili yalezi zikhuni ezishunqayo, ngokuvutha ngolaka kukaResini neSiriya, kanye nokwendodana kaRemaliya.
- 5 Ngenxa yokuthi iSiriya, u-Efrayimi, kanye nendodana kaRemaliya bacebisane ngobubi ngawe, bethi:
- 6 Masikhuphuke siyobhekana noJuda futhi simkathaze, masizinqobele yena, futhi sibeke inkosi phakathi kwakhe, yebo, indodana kaThabeyeli.
- 7 Isho kanje iNkosi uNkulunkulu: Akuyikuma, noma kwenzeke.
- 8 Ngokuba inhloko yeSiriya yiDamaseku, futhi inhloko yeDamaseku, nguResini; futhi phakathi kweminyaka engamashumi ayisithupha nanhlano u-Efrayimi uyohlakazwa ukuze angabe esaba nabantu.
- 9 Futhi inhloko ka-Efrayimi yiSamariya, futhi inhloko yeSamariya yindodana kaRemaliya. Uma ningenakukholwa ngempela aniyikumiswa.
- 10 Phezu kwalokho, iNkosi yakhuluma futhi ku-Ahazi, ithi:
- 11 Cela isibonakaliso eNkosini uNkulunkulu wakho; sicele noma ekujuleni, noma ekuphakameni kwaphezulu.

2 Nephi 17

And it came to pass in the days of Ahaz the son of Jotham, the son of Uzziah, king of Judah, that Rezin, king of Syria, and Pekah the son of Remaliah, king of Israel, went up toward Jerusalem to war against it, but could not prevail against it.

And it was told the house of David, saying: Syria is confederate with Ephraim. And his heart was moved, and the heart of his people, as the trees of the wood are moved with the wind.

Then said the Lord unto Isaiah: Go forth now to meet Ahaz, thou and Shearjashub thy son, at the end of the conduit of the upper pool in the highway of the fuller's field;

And say unto him: Take heed, and be quiet; fear not, neither be faint-hearted for the two tails of these smoking firebrands, for the fierce anger of Rezin with Syria, and of the son of Remaliah.

Because Syria, Ephraim, and the son of Remaliah, have taken evil counsel against thee, saying:

Let us go up against Judah and vex it, and let us make a breach therein for us, and set a king in the midst of it, yea, the son of Tabeal.

Thus saith the Lord God: It shall not stand, neither shall it come to pass.

For the head of Syria is Damascus, and the head of Damascus, Rezin; and within threescore and five years shall Ephraim be broken that it be not a people.

And the head of Ephraim is Samaria, and the head of Samaria is Remaliah's son. If ye will not believe surely ye shall not be established.

Moreover, the Lord spake again unto Ahaz, saying:

Ask thee a sign of the Lord thy God; ask it either in the depths, or in the heights above.

12 Kepha u-Ahazi wathi: Angiyikusicela, futhi angiyikuyilinga iNkosi.

13 Futhi wathi: Yizwa manje, O ndlu kaDavide; ngabe kuyinto encane yini kuwe ukukhathaza abantu, kepha ungamkhathaza yini naye uNkulunkulu futhi na?

14 Ngakho-ke, iNkosi uqobo lwayo iyokunika isibonakaliso—Bheka, intombi iyokhulelwa, futhi iyozala indodana, futhi iyobiza igama layo ngokuthi ngu-Imanuweli.

15 Iyokudla ibhotela kanye noju, ukuze ikwazi ukwala okubi futhi ikhethe okuhle.

16 Ngokuba ngaphambi kokuthi umntwana akwazi ukwala okubi futhi akhethe okuhle, lelizwe elinengekayo liyobe selishiywe yiwo womabili amakhosi alo.

17 INkosi iyoletha phezu kwakho, naphezu kwabantu bakho, naphezu kwendlu kayihlo, izinsuku ezingafikanga kusukela ngosuku u-Efrayimi emuka ngalo kwaJuda, inkosi yase-Asiriya.

18 Futhi kuyokwenzeka ukuthi ngalolo suku iNkosi iyohlabela izimpukane ikhwela enxenyeni yokugcina yeGibithe, kanye nenyosi esezweni lase-Asiriya.

19 Futhi ziyokuza, futhi ziyophumula zonke ezigodini ezichithiweyo, nasemifantwini yamadwala, naphezu kwawo wonke ameva, naphezu kwazo zonke izihlahla.

20 Ngalo lolo suku iNkosi iyophuca ngensingo eqashiwe, ngabo abaphesheya komfula, yinkosi yase-Asiriya, ikhanda, kanye nonwele lwezinyawo; futhi phezu kwalokho iyoyiqeda nentshebe.

21 Futhi kuyokwenzeka ukuthi ngalolo suku, umuntu uyokondla isithole kanye nezimvu ezimbili;

22 Futhi kuyokwenzeka, ngenxa yobuningi bobisi eziyolukhipha uyokudla ibhotela; ngokuba ibhotela kanye noju wonke umuntu uyokudla osele ezweni.

23 Futhi kuyokwenzeka ngalolo suku, zonke izindawo eziyokuba khona, lapho kwakukhona imivini eyinkulungwane elingana nezinhlamvu eziyizinkulungwane zesiliva, kuyokuba ngezamakhakhasi nameva.

But Ahaz said: I will not ask, neither will I tempt the Lord.

And he said: Hear ye now, O house of David; is it a small thing for you to weary men, but will ye weary my God also?

Therefore, the Lord himself shall give you a sign— Behold, a virgin shall conceive, and shall bear a son, and shall call his name Immanuel.

Butter and honey shall he eat, that he may know to refuse the evil and to choose the good.

For before the child shall know to refuse the evil and choose the good, the land that thou abhorrest shall be forsaken of both her kings.

The Lord shall bring upon thee, and upon thy people, and upon thy father's house, days that have not come from the day that Ephraim departed from Judah, the king of Assyria.

And it shall come to pass in that day that the Lord shall hiss for the fly that is in the uttermost part of Egypt, and for the bee that is in the land of Assyria.

And they shall come, and shall rest all of them in the desolate valleys, and in the holes of the rocks, and upon all thorns, and upon all bushes.

In the same day shall the Lord shave with a razor that is hired, by them beyond the river, by the king of Assyria, the head, and the hair of the feet; and it shall also consume the beard.

And it shall come to pass in that day, a man shall nourish a young cow and two sheep;

And it shall come to pass, for the abundance of milk they shall give he shall eat butter; for butter and honey shall every one eat that is left in the land.

And it shall come to pass in that day, every place shall be, where there were a thousand vines at a thousand silverlings, which shall be for briers and thorns.

24 Ngemicibisholo kanye neminsalo abantu
bayokuza lapho, ngokuba lonke izwe liyokuba
ngamakhakhasi nameva.

25 Futhi wonke amagquma ayolinywa ngegeja, lapho
akuseyikuba khona ukwesaba amakhakhasi kanye
nameva; kepha ayoba ngawokuqhuba izinkabi,
kanye nokubhudulwa yizimvu kanye nezimbuzi.

With arrows and with bows shall men come
thither, because all the land shall become briers and
thorns.

And all hills that shall be digged with the mattock,
there shall not come thither the fear of briers and
thorns; but it shall be for the sending forth of oxen,
and the treading of lesser cattle.

2 Nefi 18

- 1 Phezu kwalokho, izwi leNkosi lathi kimi: Thatha umqulu omkhulu, futhi ubhale kuwo ngosiba lomuntu, mayelana noMahere-shalali-hash-bazi.
- 2 Futhi ngathatha ofakazi abathembekile ukuthi babhale, u-Uriya umphristi, kanye noZakariya indodana kaJeberekiya.
- 3 Futhi ngaya kumphrofethikazi; futhi wakhulelwa wazala indodana. Emva kwalokho yathi iNkosi kimi: Qamba igama layo ngokuthi, uMahere-shalali-hash-bazi.
- 4 Ngokuba bheka, umntwana akayikukwazi ukukhala athi, Baba, mama, ngaphambi kokuba ingcebo yaseDamaseku nempango yaseSamariya isuswe ngaphambi kweNkosi yase-Asiriya.
- 5 INkosi yaphinde yakhuluma kimi futhi, ithi:
- 6 Kangangokuba laba bantu benqabe amanzi aseShilowa ahamba kancane, futhi bethokoza ngoResini kanye nendodana kaRemaliya;
- 7 Ngalokho-ke manje, bheka, iNkosi iletha kubo amanzi omfula, anamandla futhi amaningi, ngisho neNkosi yase-Asiriya kanye nenkazimulo yayo yonke; futhi iyokuza ikhuphukele kuyo yonke imigudu yayo, futhi yeqe kulo lonke usebe lwayo.
- 8 Futhi iyodlula kwaJuda; iyogcwala ichichime futhi ikhukhule, iyofinyelela ngisho nasentanyeni; futhi ukuvuleka kwamaphiko ayo kuyogcwalisa ububanzi bezwe lakho, O Imanuweli.
- 9 Zihlanganiseni, O nina bantu, futhi niyohleshulwa nibe yizicucu; futhi yiphani indlebe nonke nina mazwe akude; zibopheni, futhi niyohleshulwa nibe yizicucu; zibopheni, futhi niyohleshulwa nibe yizicucu.
- 10 Yenzani isigungu ngokuhlanganyela, futhi kuyoba yize; khulumani izwi, futhi aliyikuma; ngokuba uNkulunkulu unathi.
- 11 Ngokuba iNkosi yakhuluma kanje kimi ngesandla esinamandla, futhi yangiyala ukuthi ngingahambi ngendlela yalaba bantu, ithi:
- 12 Ningasho ukuthi, Kuyisivumelwano, kubo bonke labo bantu abayokuthi, Kuyisivumelwano; futhi ningakwesabi abakwesabayo, noma nibe novalo.

2 Nephi 18

Moreover, the word of the Lord said unto me: Take thee a great roll, and write in it with a man's pen, concerning Maher-shalal-hash-baz.

And I took unto me faithful witnesses to record, Uriah the priest, and Zechariah the son of Jeberechiah.

And I went unto the prophetess; and she conceived and bare a son. Then said the Lord to me: Call his name, Maher-shalal-hash-baz.

For behold, the child shall not have knowledge to cry, My father, and my mother, before the riches of Damascus and the spoil of Samaria shall be taken away before the king of Assyria.

The Lord spake also unto me again, saying:

Forasmuch as this people refuseth the waters of Shiloah that go softly, and rejoice in Rezin and Remaliah's son;

Now therefore, behold, the Lord bringeth up upon them the waters of the river, strong and many, even the king of Assyria and all his glory; and he shall come up over all his channels, and go over all his banks.

And he shall pass through Judah; he shall overflow and go over, he shall reach even to the neck; and the stretching out of his wings shall fill the breadth of thy land, O Immanuel.

Associate yourselves, O ye people, and ye shall be broken in pieces; and give ear all ye of far countries; gird yourselves, and ye shall be broken in pieces; gird yourselves, and ye shall be broken in pieces.

Take counsel together, and it shall come to naught; speak the word, and it shall not stand; for God is with us.

For the Lord spake thus to me with a strong hand, and instructed me that I should not walk in the way of this people, saying:

Say ye not, A confederacy, to all to whom this people shall say, A confederacy; neither fear ye their fear, nor be afraid.

- 13 Yingcweliseni iNkosi yamaBandla uqobo lwayo, futhi yenzeni ibe wukwesaba kwenu, futhi yenzeni ibe wukwesaba kwenu okukhulu.
- 14 Futhi iyokuba yisiphephelo; kepha iyokuba yitshe lesikhubekiso, futhi ibe yidwala lesinengiso kuzo zombili izindlu zakwa-Israyeli, ngokuba iyokuba wugibe kanye nesihibe kwabakhile eJerusalema.
- 15 Futhi abaningi phakathi kwabo bayokhubeka bawe, futhi bephuke, bacushwe, futhi bathathwe.
- 16 Qinisekisa ubufakazi, uwunamathisele umthetho phakathi kwabafundi bami.
- 17 Futhi ngizoyilinda iNkosi, efihle ubuso bayo kuyo indlu kaJakobe, futhi ngizoyilindela.
- 18 Bheka, mina kanye nabantwana iNkosi enginike bona singabezibonakaliso kanye nezimangaliso kwa-Israyeli ezivela eNkosini yamaBandla, ehlala eNtabeni yaseSiyoni.
- 19 Futhi lapho beyothi kini: Funani kwabanamadlozi, kanye nakubathakathi abashaya imilozi futhi babubule—akufanele yini abantu bafune kuNkulunkulu wabo kunokuba abaphilayo bezwe ngabafuleyo na?
- 20 Kuwo umthetho kanye nakubo ubufakazi; futhi uma bengakhulumi ngokwalelizwi, kungenxa yokuthi akukho ukukhanya kubo.
- 21 Futhi bayodlula ezinhluphekweni behaqwe kalukhuni futhi belambile; futhi kuyokwenzeka ukuthi uma sebelambile, bayozicanukela bona, futhi bayiqalekise inkosi yabo kanye noNkulunkulu wabo, futhi babheke phezulu.
- 22 Futhi bayobheka emhlabeni futhi babone ukukhathazeka, kanye nobumnyama, nokufiphala ngenxa yosizi, futhi bayophushelwa ebumnyameni.

Sanctify the Lord of Hosts himself, and let him be your fear, and let him be your dread.

And he shall be for a sanctuary; but for a stone of stumbling, and for a rock of offense to both the houses of Israel, for a gin and a snare to the inhabitants of Jerusalem.

And many among them shall stumble and fall, and be broken, and be snared, and be taken.

Bind up the testimony, seal the law among my disciples.

And I will wait upon the Lord, that hideth his face from the house of Jacob, and I will look for him.

Behold, I and the children whom the Lord hath given me are for signs and for wonders in Israel from the Lord of Hosts, which dwelleth in Mount Zion.

And when they shall say unto you: Seek unto them that have familiar spirits, and unto wizards that peep and mutter—should not a people seek unto their God for the living to hear from the dead?

To the law and to the testimony; and if they speak not according to this word, it is because there is no light in them.

And they shall pass through it hardly bestead and hungry; and it shall come to pass that when they shall be hungry, they shall fret themselves, and curse their king and their God, and look upward.

And they shall look unto the earth and behold trouble, and darkness, dimness of anguish, and shall be driven to darkness.

2 Nefi 19

- 1 Nokho, ukufiphala akuyikuba njengoba kwakunjalo ngesikhathi sezinkathazo zakhe, lapho ekuqaleni yathi ukulihlupha kancane izwe lakwaZebuloni, kanye nezwe lakwaNafetali, futhi emva kwalokho nempela yahlupha kakhulu endleleni eya oLwandle oluBomvu ngaphesheya kweJordani eGalile lezizwe.
- 2 Abantu ababehamba ebumnyameni bakubonile ukukhanya okukhulu; abahlezi ezweni lethunzi lokufa, phezu kwabo ukukhanya kubakhanyisele.
- 3 Usandisile isizwe, futhi wandisa intokozo—bathokoza phambi kwakho njengentokozo yokuvuna, futhi nanjengentokozo yabantu uma babelana impango.
- 4 Ngokuba uliphulile ijoka lomthwalo wakhe, kanye nodondolo lwamahlombe akhe, nenduku yabacindezeli bakhe.
- 5 Ngokuba konke ukulwa kwebutho kunesiyaluyalu somsindo, futhi izingubo ziginqwe egazini; kepha lokhu kuyokuba nokuvutha kanye nokushisa komlilo.
- 6 Ngokuba sizalelwe umntwana, siphilwe indodana; futhi umbuso uyokuba semahlombe ayo; igama layo liyothiwa, nguSimangaliso, nguMeluleki, nguNkulunkulu onaMandla, nguBaba ongunaphakade, iNkosi yokuThula.
- 7 Ekukhuleni kombuso kanye nokuthula akukho ukuphela, kubo ubukhosi bukaDavide, kanye nakuwo umbuso wakhe ukuba awuhlele, kanye nokuwuqinisa ngokwahlulela kanye nokulunga kusukela manje nasemva kwalokhu, ngisho ingunaphakade. Intshisekelo yeNkosi yamaBandla iyokwenza lokhu.
- 8 INkosi ithumele izwi layo kuJakobe futhi likhanyisile phezu kuka-Israyeli.
- 9 Futhi bonke abantu bayokwazi, ngisho nango-Efrayimi kanye nabantu baseSamariya, abathi ngokuziqhenya kanye nangokukhukhumala kwenhliziyo:
- 10 Izitini ziwe phansi, kepha siyokwakha ngamatshe aqoshiwe; imikhiwane igawuliwe, kepha siyoyishintsha ibe yimisedari.

2 Nephi 19

Nevertheless, the dimness shall not be such as was in her vexation, when at first he lightly afflicted the land of Zebulun, and the land of Naphtali, and afterwards did more grievously afflict by the way of the Red Sea beyond Jordan in Galilee of the nations.

The people that walked in darkness have seen a great light; they that dwell in the land of the shadow of death, upon them hath the light shined.

Thou hast multiplied the nation, and increased the joy—they joy before thee according to the joy in harvest, and as men rejoice when they divide the spoil.

For thou hast broken the yoke of his burden, and the staff of his shoulder, the rod of his oppressor.

For every battle of the warrior is with confused noise, and garments rolled in blood; but this shall be with burning and fuel of fire.

For unto us a child is born, unto us a son is given; and the government shall be upon his shoulder; and his name shall be called, Wonderful, Counselor, The Mighty God, The Everlasting Father, The Prince of Peace.

Of the increase of government and peace there is no end, upon the throne of David, and upon his kingdom to order it, and to establish it with judgment and with justice from henceforth, even forever. The zeal of the Lord of Hosts will perform this.

The Lord sent his word unto Jacob and it hath lighted upon Israel.

And all the people shall know, even Ephraim and the inhabitants of Samaria, that say in the pride and stoutness of heart:

The bricks are fallen down, but we will build with hewn stones; the sycamores are cut down, but we will change them into cedars.

11 Ngakho-ke iNkosi iyophakamisa izitha zikaResini ngokumelene naye, futhi ihlanganise izitha zakhe ndawonye;

12 AmaSiriya ngaphambili kanye namaFilisti ngasemuva; futhi bayomshwabadela u-Israyeli ngomlomo ovulekile. Ngokuba kukho konke lokhu intukuthelo yakhe ayiphelile, kepha isandla sakhe siseluliwe namanje.

13 Ngokuba abantu abaphendukeli kulowo obashayayo, noma bayifune iNkosi yamaBandla.

14 Ngakho-ke ngabe iNkosi iyonquma ku-Israyeli ikhanda kanye nomsila, igatsha kanye nekhwane ngosuku olulodwa.

15 Omdala, uyena oyinhloko; kuthi umphrofethi ofundisa amanga, ungumsila.

16 Ngokuba abaholi balaba bantu babenza ukuthi baduke; futhi labo abaholwa yibo bayabhujiswa.

17 Ngakho-ke iNkosi ayiyukuba nayo intokozo ngezinsizwa zabo, noma ibe nomusa kwabangenayise babo kanye nabafelokazi; ngokuba omunye nomunye wabo ungumzenzisi kanye nomenzi wobubi, futhi wonke umlomo ukhuluma ubuwula. Ngokuba kukho konke lokhu intukuthelo yakhe ayiphelile, kepha isandla sakhe siseluliwe namanje.

18 Ngokuba ububi bushisa njengomlilo; buyoshwabadela amakhakhasi kanye nameva, futhi bokheleke emahlozini amahlathi, futhi bayokuba yintaba njengokukhuphuka kwentuthu.

19 Ngentukuthelo yeNkosi yamaBandla izwe lihwaqabele, futhi abantu bayokuba njengalokho kokuvuthisa umlilo; akukho muntu oyosindisa umfowabo.

20 Futhi uyohlwitha ngesandla sokunene futhi alambe, futhi uyokudla ngesandla sokhohlo futhi abayikwaneliseka; bayokudla wonke umuntu inyama yengalo yakhe uqobo.

21 UManase, ku-Efrayimi, kanye no-Efrayimi kuManase; bayohlanganyela uJuda. Kukho konke lokhu intukuthelo yakhe ayiphelile, kodwa isandla sakhe siseluliwe namanje.

Therefore the Lord shall set up the adversaries of Rezin against him, and join his enemies together;

The Syrians before and the Philistines behind; and they shall devour Israel with open mouth. For all this his anger is not turned away, but his hand is stretched out still.

For the people turneth not unto him that smiteth them, neither do they seek the Lord of Hosts.

Therefore will the Lord cut off from Israel head and tail, branch and rush in one day.

The ancient, he is the head; and the prophet that teacheth lies, he is the tail.

For the leaders of this people cause them to err; and they that are led of them are destroyed.

Therefore the Lord shall have no joy in their young men, neither shall have mercy on their fatherless and widows; for every one of them is a hypocrite and an evildoer, and every mouth speaketh folly. For all this his anger is not turned away, but his hand is stretched out still.

For wickedness burneth as the fire; it shall devour the briars and thorns, and shall kindle in the thickets of the forests, and they shall mount up like the lifting up of smoke.

Through the wrath of the Lord of Hosts is the land darkened, and the people shall be as the fuel of the fire; no man shall spare his brother.

And he shall snatch on the right hand and be hungry; and he shall eat on the left hand and they shall not be satisfied; they shall eat every man the flesh of his own arm—

Manasseh, Ephraim; and Ephraim, Manasseh; they together shall be against Judah. For all this his anger is not turned away, but his hand is stretched out still.

2 Nefi 20

- 1 Maye kubo labo abamemezela izimemezelo ezingalungile, kanye nalabo ababhala ububi ababumisile;
- 2 Abasusa abantulayo ekwahlulelweni, kanye nabaphuca abampofu ilungelo abangabantu bami, ukuze abafelokazi babe yimpango yabo, nokuthi baqole abangenayise!
- 3 Futhi niyokwenzenjani ngosuku lokuhanjelwa, kanye nasencithakalweni eyovela kude na? niyobalekela kubani ukuthi nisizwe na? futhi niyoyishiya kuphi inkazimulo yenu na?
- 4 Ngaphandle kwami bayokhothama ngaphansi kweziboshwa, futhi bayokuwa ngaphansi kwababulewe. Ngokuba kukho konke lokhu intukuthelo yakhe ayiphelile, kepha isandla sakhe siseluliwe namanje.
- 5 O m-Asiriya, induku yentukuthelo yami, kanye nodondolo esandleni sakho kuyintukuthelo yabo.
- 6 Ngiyomthumela esizweni esingabazenzisi, futhi kubantu engibathukuthelele ngiyomnika igunya lokuthi athathe impango, futhi ahlomule, futhi abacindezele phansi njengodaka lwasemigwaqweni.
- 7 Nokho ayiqondile lokho, futhi inhliziyo yayo ayicabangi kanjalo; kepha enhliziyweni yakhe kungukubhubhisa kanye nokuhlukanisa izizwe hhayi ingcosana.
- 8 Ngokuba ithi: Amakhosana ami ehlangene awawona yini amakhosi na?
- 9 IKalino alinjengayo yini Kharikemishi na? IHamati alinjenge-Aripadi na? ISamariya alinjengeyo yini iDamaseku na?
- 10 Njengoba isandla sami simise imibuso yezithixo, futhi imifanekiso yayo eqoshiweyo yedlula leyo yaseJerusalema kanye neyaseSamariya;
- 11 Anginakwenza yini, njengoba ngenzile kuyo iSamariya kanye nezithixo zalo, ngenze kanjalo nakuyo iJerusalema kanye nakuzo izithixo zayo na?
- 12 Ngalokho-ke kuyokwenzeka ukuthi ngesikhathi iNkosi isiwenzile wonke umsebenzi wayo eNtabeni yaseSiyoni kanye naseJerusalema, ngiyosijezisa isithelo senhliziyo ekhukhumeleyo yeNkosi yase-Asiriya, kanye nenkazimulo yokuziphakamisa kwayo.

2 Nephi 20

Wo unto them that decree unrighteous decrees, and that write grievousness which they have prescribed;

To turn away the needy from judgment, and to take away the right from the poor of my people, that widows may be their prey, and that they may rob the fatherless!

And what will ye do in the day of visitation, and in the desolation which shall come from far? to whom will ye flee for help? and where will ye leave your glory?

Without me they shall bow down under the prisoners, and they shall fall under the slain. For all this his anger is not turned away, but his hand is stretched out still.

O Assyrian, the rod of mine anger, and the staff in their hand is their indignation.

I will send him against a hypocritical nation, and against the people of my wrath will I give him a charge to take the spoil, and to take the prey, and to tread them down like the mire of the streets.

Howbeit he meaneth not so, neither doth his heart think so; but in his heart it is to destroy and cut off nations not a few.

For he saith: Are not my princes altogether kings?

Is not Calno as Carchemish? Is not Hamath as Arpad? Is not Samaria as Damascus?

As my hand hath founded the kingdoms of the idols, and whose graven images did excel them of Jerusalem and of Samaria;

Shall I not, as I have done unto Samaria and her idols, so do to Jerusalem and to her idols?

Wherefore it shall come to pass that when the Lord hath performed his whole work upon Mount Zion and upon Jerusalem, I will punish the fruit of the stout heart of the king of Assyria, and the glory of his high looks.

- 13 Ngokuba ithi: Ngamandla esandla sami kanye nangokuhlakanipha kwami ngizenzile lezi zinto; ngokuba mina nginokuqonda; futhi ngiyisusile imingcele yabantu, futhi ngaphanga ingcebo yabo, futhi ngibanqobile abakhile njengomuntu oyiqhawe;
- 14 Futhi isandla sami sithole njengesidleke ubucebi babantu; futhi njengomuntu eqoqa amaqanda aseleyo ngiwuqoqile wonke umhlaba; futhi akubanga bikho namunye oshaya iphiko, noma ovula umlomo, noma otshiyozayo.
- 15 Ngabe izembe lingazikhukhumeza yini ngaphezu kwalowo ogawula ngalo na? Ngabe isaha lingazikhulisa yini ngaphezu kwalowo olinyakazisayo na? Njengokuthi induku ingazinyakazisa yini yona qobo ngaphezu kwalabo abayiphakamisayo, noma njengokuthi udondolo lungaziphakamisela yini sengathi belungelona ukhuni!
- 16 Ngalokho-ke ngabe iNkosi, iNkosi yamaBandla, iyothumela yini phakathi kwezikhulupheleyo zayo, ukonda; futhi ngaphansi kwenkazimulo yayo iyokokhela ukushisa njengokushisa komlilo.
- 17 Futhi ukukhanya kuka-Israyeli kuyokuba ngokomlilo, futhi noNgcwele wakhe abe ngowelangabi, futhi uyovutha futhi ashwabadele ameva akhe kanye namakhakhasi akhe ngosuku olulodwa;
- 18 Futhi uyoluqeda udumo lwehlathi lakhe, kanye nolwensimu yakhe ethelayo, umphefumulo kanye nomzimba; futhi bayokuba njengesikhathi umphathi wesibonakaliso equleka.
- 19 Futhi imithi yehlathi lakhe eyosala iyokuba yingcosana, kangangokuthi umntwana angayibhala.
- 20 Futhi kuyokwenzeka ukuthi ngalolo suku, insalela ka-Israyeli, kanye nalabo abasinda bendlu kaJakobe, abaseyikulhala nanini futhi kulowo owabashaya, kepha bayohlala kuyo iNkosi, koNgcwele ka-Israyeli, ngokweqiniso.
- 21 Insalela iyobuya, yebo, ngisho nensalela kaJakobe, kuye uNkulunkulu onamandla.
- 22 Ngokuba noma abantu bakho Israyeli benjengesihlabathi solwandle, kepha insalela yabo iyobuya; ukubhujiswa okumenyezelwe kuyochichima ukulunga.

For he saith: By the strength of my hand and by my wisdom I have done these things; for I am prudent; and I have moved the borders of the people, and have robbed their treasures, and I have put down the inhabitants like a valiant man;

And my hand hath found as a nest the riches of the people; and as one gathereth eggs that are left have I gathered all the earth; and there was none that moved the wing, or opened the mouth, or peeped.

Shall the ax boast itself against him that heweth therewith? Shall the saw magnify itself against him that shaketh it? As if the rod should shake itself against them that lift it up, or as if the staff should lift up itself as if it were no wood!

Therefore shall the Lord, the Lord of Hosts, send among his fat ones, leanness; and under his glory he shall kindle a burning like the burning of a fire.

And the light of Israel shall be for a fire, and his Holy One for a flame, and shall burn and shall devour his thorns and his briars in one day;

And shall consume the glory of his forest, and of his fruitful field, both soul and body; and they shall be as when a standard-bearer fainteth.

And the rest of the trees of his forest shall be few, that a child may write them.

And it shall come to pass in that day, that the remnant of Israel, and such as are escaped of the house of Jacob, shall no more again stay upon him that smote them, but shall stay upon the Lord, the Holy One of Israel, in truth.

The remnant shall return, yea, even the remnant of Jacob, unto the mighty God.

For though thy people Israel be as the sand of the sea, yet a remnant of them shall return; the consumption decreed shall overflow with righteousness.

23 Ngokuba iNkosi uNkulunkulu wamaBandla iyokwenza imbubhiso, ngisho iyimise kulo lonke izwe.

24 Ngalokho-ke, isho kanje iNkosi uNkulunkulu wamaBandla: O bantu bami enihlala eSiyoni, ningamesabi um-Asriya; uyonishaya ngenduku, futhi aphakamisele phezulu udondolo lwakhe kini, ngendlela yaseGibithe.

25 Ngokuba ngesikhashana esincane kakhulu, futhi imbubhiso iyophela, kanye nentukuthelo yami ekubhujisweni kwabo.

26 Futhi iNkosi yamaBandla iyophehla isijeziso sakhe njengokubulawa kwamaMidiyani edwaleni lase Orebi; futhi njengoba induku yakhe yayisolwandle kanjalo naye uyoyiphakamisa njengendlela yamaGibithe.

27 Futhi kuyokwenzeka kulolo suku ukuthi umthwalo wakhe uyosuswa emahlombe akho, kanye nejoka lakhe entanyeni yakho, futhi ijoka liyobhujiswa genxa yomgcobo.

28 Ufikile e-Ayati, usedlulele eMigrone; eMikimashi wethule impahla yakhe.

29 Badlulile esikhaleni; bangenisa eGeba; iRama iyesaba; iGibeya kaSawuli ibalekile.

30 Phakamisa izwi, O ndodakazi yaseGalimi; yenza ukuthi lizwakale kuyo iLayishi, O Anathoti empofu.

31 IMadimena isusiwe; abakhileyo baseGebimi babuthene ukuthi babaleke.

32 Okwamanje uyosala eNobi ngalolo suku; uyoxhawula isandla sakhe maqondana nentaba yendodakazi yaseSiyoni, igquma laseJerusalema.

33 Bheka, iNkosi, iNkosi yamaBandla iyonquma igatsha ngokwesabekayo, kanye nalabo abaphakeme ngokwezinga bayocekelwa phansi; kanye nabaziphakamisayo bayothotshiswa.

34 Futhi iyocaba amahlozi amahlathi ngensimbi, futhi iLebanoni iyowiswa ngonamandla.

For the Lord God of Hosts shall make a consumption, even determined in all the land.

Therefore, thus saith the Lord God of Hosts: O my people that dwellest in Zion, be not afraid of the Assyrian; he shall smite thee with a rod, and shall lift up his staff against thee, after the manner of Egypt.

For yet a very little while, and the indignation shall cease, and mine anger in their destruction.

And the Lord of Hosts shall stir up a scourge for him according to the slaughter of Midian at the rock of Oreb; and as his rod was upon the sea so shall he lift it up after the manner of Egypt.

And it shall come to pass in that day that his burden shall be taken away from off thy shoulder, and his yoke from off thy neck, and the yoke shall be destroyed because of the anointing.

He is come to Aiath, he is passed to Migron; at Michmash he hath laid up his carriages.

They are gone over the passage; they have taken up their lodging at Geba; Ramath is afraid; Gibeah of Saul is fled.

Lift up the voice, O daughter of Gallim; cause it to be heard unto Laish, O poor Anathoth.

Madmenah is removed; the inhabitants of Gebim gather themselves to flee.

As yet shall he remain at Nob that day; he shall shake his hand against the mount of the daughter of Zion, the hill of Jerusalem.

Behold, the Lord, the Lord of Hosts shall lop the bough with terror; and the high ones of stature shall be hewn down; and the haughty shall be humbled.

And he shall cut down the thickets of the forests with iron, and Lebanon shall fall by a mighty one.

2 Nefi 21

- 1 Futhi kuyovela induku kuso isiqu sikaJese, futhi igatsha liyokhula ezimpendeni zaso.
- 2 UMoya weNkosi uyohlala phezu kwakhe, umoya wokuhlakanipha kanye nokuqonda, umoya wokwaluleka kanye namandla, umoya wolwazi kanye nowokuyesaba iNkosi.
- 3 Uyomenza abe ngonokuqonda okusheshayo ekuyesabeni iNkosi; futhi akayikwahlulela ngokubona kwamehlo akhe, noma asole ngokuzwa kwezindlebe zakhe.
- 4 Kepha uyokwahlulela abampofu ngokulunga, futhi abasole ngokulinganayo abathobileyo bomhlaba; futhi uyoshaya umhlaba ngenduku yomlomo wakhe, nangomphefumulo wezindebe zakhe abulale ababi.
- 5 Futhi ukulunga kuyoba yibhande lezinkalo zakhe, nokuthembeka kuyoba yibhande lamanyonga akhe.
- 6 Phezu kwalokho impisi iyohlala newundlu, nengwe iyolala phansi nezinyane lembuzi, ithole kanye nezinyane lengonyama kanye nokukhuluphalisiweyo ndawonye; umntwana omncane uyozihola.
- 7 Inkomazi kanye nebhele kuyoklaba; amazinyane akho ayolala phansi ndawonye; ingonyama iyodla utshani njengenkabi.
- 8 Umntwana oncelayo uyodlala emgodini wemfezi, futhi umntwana osanda kususwa ebeleni uyofaka isandla sakhe esiseleni sikamantshingeyana.
- 9 Abayikulimaza noma babhubhise entabeni yami yonke engcwele, ngokuba umhlaba uyogcwala ulwazi lweNkosi, njengamanzi esibekela ulwandle.
- 10 Futhi ngalolo suku kuyoba khona impande kaJese, eyokuma njengesibonakaliso kubantu; kuso abeZizwe bayobuthana; futhi ukuphumula kwakhe kuyoba kuhle kakhulu.
- 11 Futhi kuyokwenzeka ngalolo suku ukuthi iNkosi iyokwelula isandla sayo futhi okwesibili ukubuyisa insalela yabantu bayo abayobe besele, e-Asiriya, naseGibithe, nasePhatirosi, naseKushe, nase-Elamu, naseShineyari, naseHamati, kanye naseziqhingini zolwandle.

2 Nephi 21

And there shall come forth a rod out of the stem of Jesse, and a branch shall grow out of his roots.

And the Spirit of the Lord shall rest upon him, the spirit of wisdom and understanding, the spirit of counsel and might, the spirit of knowledge and of the fear of the Lord;

And shall make him of quick understanding in the fear of the Lord; and he shall not judge after the sight of his eyes, neither reprove after the hearing of his ears.

But with righteousness shall he judge the poor, and reprove with equity for the meek of the earth; and he shall smite the earth with the rod of his mouth, and with the breath of his lips shall he slay the wicked.

And righteousness shall be the girdle of his loins, and faithfulness the girdle of his reins.

The wolf also shall dwell with the lamb, and the leopard shall lie down with the kid, and the calf and the young lion and fatling together; and a little child shall lead them.

And the cow and the bear shall feed; their young ones shall lie down together; and the lion shall eat straw like the ox.

And the sucking child shall play on the hole of the asp, and the weaned child shall put his hand on the cockatrice's den.

They shall not hurt nor destroy in all my holy mountain, for the earth shall be full of the knowledge of the Lord, as the waters cover the sea.

And in that day there shall be a root of Jesse, which shall stand for an ensign of the people; to it shall the Gentiles seek; and his rest shall be glorious.

And it shall come to pass in that day that the Lord shall set his hand again the second time to recover the remnant of his people which shall be left, from Assyria, and from Egypt, and from Pathros, and from Cush, and from Elam, and from Shinar, and from Hamath, and from the islands of the sea.

12 Futhi uyophakamisela izizwe isibonakaliso, futhi aqoqe abaxoshwa bakwa-Israyeli, aqoqe ndawonye abahlakazekileyo bakwaJuda emagumbini amane omhlaba.

13 Umhawu ka-Efrayimi phezu kwalokho uyoosuka, izitha zikaJuda ziyosuswa; u-Efrayimi akayikuba namhawu ngoJuda, futhi noJuda akayikumhlupha u-Efrayimi.

14 Kepha bayondizela emahlombe amaFilisti ukuya ngasentshonalanga; baphange nabasempumalanga kanye-kanye; bayokwelula isandla sabo kuyo i-Edomi kanye neMowabi; futhi abantwana bama-Amoni bayobalalela.

15 Futhi iNkosi iyolibhubhisa nya ulimi lwasolwandle lwaseGibithe; futhi ngomoya wayo onamandla iyonyakazisa isandla sayo phezu komfula, futhi iyowushaya ube yimifudlana eyisikhombisa, futhi yenze abantu bawele ngezicathulo ezomileyo.

16 Futhi kuyoba khona umgwaqo omkhulu wensalela yabantu bakhe abayosala, e-Asiriya, njengoba kwakunjalo ku-Israyeli ngosuku lolo aphuma ngalo ezweni laseGibithe.

And he shall set up an ensign for the nations, and shall assemble the outcasts of Israel, and gather together the dispersed of Judah from the four corners of the earth.

The envy of Ephraim also shall depart, and the adversaries of Judah shall be cut off; Ephraim shall not envy Judah, and Judah shall not vex Ephraim.

But they shall fly upon the shoulders of the Philistines towards the west; they shall spoil them of the east together; they shall lay their hand upon Edom and Moab; and the children of Ammon shall obey them.

And the Lord shall utterly destroy the tongue of the Egyptian sea; and with his mighty wind he shall shake his hand over the river, and shall smite it in the seven streams, and make men go over dry shod.

And there shall be a highway for the remnant of his people which shall be left, from Assyria, like as it was to Israel in the day that he came up out of the land of Egypt.

2 Nefi 22

- 1 Futhi ngalolo suku uyothi: O Nkosi, ngiyokudumisa; noma wawungithukuthelele intukuthelo yakho isisusiwe, futhi uyangiduduza.
- 2 Bheka, uNkulunkulu uyinsindiso yami; ngiyokwethemba, futhi ngingabi nakwesaba; ngokuba iNkosi uJEHOVA ingamandla ami kanye nehubo lami; phezu kwalokho usebe yinsindiso yami.
- 3 Ngakho-ke, ngenjabulo uyokukha amanzi emithonjeni yensindiso.
- 4 Futhi ngalolo suku niyokuthi: Dumisani iNkosi, bizani igama layo, memzelani izenzo zayo phakathi kwabantu, nisho ukuthi igama layo liphakeme.
- 5 Hlabelelani iNkosi; ngokuba yenze izinto ezinhle kakhulu; lokhu kuyaziwa emhlabeni wonke.
- 6 Khala futhi umemeze, wena ohlala eSiyoni; ngokuba mkhulu oNgcwele ka-Israyeli ophakathi kwakho.

2 Nephi 22

And in that day thou shalt say: O Lord, I will praise thee; though thou wast angry with me thine anger is turned away, and thou comfortedst me.

Behold, God is my salvation; I will trust, and not be afraid; for the Lord JEHOVAH is my strength and my song; he also has become my salvation.

Therefore, with joy shall ye draw water out of the wells of salvation.

And in that day shall ye say: Praise the Lord, call upon his name, declare his doings among the people, make mention that his name is exalted.

Sing unto the Lord; for he hath done excellent things; this is known in all the earth.

Cry out and shout, thou inhabitant of Zion; for great is the Holy One of Israel in the midst of thee.

2 Nefi 23

- 1 Isibikezelo ngeBabiloni, u-Isaya indodana ka-Amose eyasibona.
- 2 Phakamisani isibonakaliso entabeni ephakeme, phakamiselani izwi kubo, qhwebani ngesandla, ukuze bangene emasangweni abakhulu.
- 3 Ngibayalile abangcwele bami, phezu kwalokho ngibabizile abakhulu bami, ngokuba intukuthelo yami ayikho kulabo abathokozayo ebukhulwini bami.
- 4 Umsindo wesixuku ezintabeni njengowabantu abaningi, umsindo wokuxokozela kwemibuso yezizwe ihlangene ndawonye, iNkosi yamaBandla iqoqa amabutho empi.
- 5 Aphuma ezweni elikude, avela emkhawulweni wezulu, yebo, iNkosi, kanye nezikhali zentukuthelo yayo, ukubhubhisa izwe lonke.
- 6 Hewulani, ngokuba usuku lweNkosi selusondele; luyofika njengembubhiso evela kuSomandla.
- 7 Ngakho-ke izandla zonke ziyophelelwa ngamandla, izinhliziyi zabantu bonke ziyoncibilika;
- 8 Futhi bayokwesaba; iminjunju kanye nezinsizi kuyobabamba; bayoshaqeka omunye komunye; ubuso babo buyokuba njengamalangabi.
- 9 Bheka, usuku lweNkosi luyeza, lunonya lwentukuthelo kanye nolaka olukhulu, ukuba lwenze izwe libe incithakalo; futhi iyobhubhisa izoni zalo ezikulo.
- 10 Ngokuba izinkanyezi zezulu aziyikukunikeza ukukhanya kwazo; ilanga liyofiphala ekuphumeni kwalo, futhi nenyanga ayiyikukukhipha ukukhanya kwayo.
- 11 Futhi ngiyowujezisa umhlaba ngobubi bawo, kanye nababi ngobubi babo; ngiyokwenza ukuzidla kwabaziqhenyayo kuphele, ngikubeke phansi ukuziphakamisa kwabesabekayo.
- 12 Ngiyokwenza umuntu abe yigugu elikhulu kunegolide elihle; umuntu abe ngisho nangaphezulu kweqhuzwana legolide lase-Ofiri.
- 13 Ngakho-ke, ngiyowamazamisa amazulu, futhi umhlaba usuke uphele endaweni yawo, ngentukuthelo yeNkosi yamaBandla, nangosuku lolaka lwayo olukhulu.

2 Nephi 23

The burden of Babylon, which Isaiah the son of Amoz did see.

Lift ye up a banner upon the high mountain, exalt the voice unto them, shake the hand, that they may go into the gates of the nobles.

I have commanded my sanctified ones, I have also called my mighty ones, for mine anger is not upon them that rejoice in my highness.

The noise of the multitude in the mountains like as of a great people, a tumultuous noise of the kingdoms of nations gathered together, the Lord of Hosts mustereth the hosts of the battle.

They come from a far country, from the end of heaven, yea, the Lord, and the weapons of his indignation, to destroy the whole land.

Howl ye, for the day of the Lord is at hand; it shall come as a destruction from the Almighty.

Therefore shall all hands be faint, every man's heart shall melt;

And they shall be afraid; pangs and sorrows shall take hold of them; they shall be amazed one at another; their faces shall be as flames.

Behold, the day of the Lord cometh, cruel both with wrath and fierce anger, to lay the land desolate; and he shall destroy the sinners thereof out of it.

For the stars of heaven and the constellations thereof shall not give their light; the sun shall be darkened in his going forth, and the moon shall not cause her light to shine.

And I will punish the world for evil, and the wicked for their iniquity; I will cause the arrogance of the proud to cease, and will lay down the haughtiness of the terrible.

I will make a man more precious than fine gold; even a man than the golden wedge of Ophir.

Therefore, I will shake the heavens, and the earth shall remove out of her place, in the wrath of the Lord of Hosts, and in the day of his fierce anger.

14 Futhi kuyokuba njengensephe exoshwayo,
nanjengezimvu ezingena muntu ozalusayo;
kuyokuthi wonke umuntu aphendukele kubantu
bakubo, yilowo nalowo abalekele ezweni lakubo.

15 Bonke labo abaziqhayisayo bayogwazwa; yebo,
bonke labo abazihlanganisa nababi bayokuwa
ngenkemba.

16 Abantwana babo phezu kwalokho
bayophuhluzwa babe yizicucu phambi kwamehlo
abo; izindlu zabo ziyophangwa futhi abafazi babo
badlwengulwe.

17 Bheka, ngiyobaphehlela amaMede abhekane
nabo, wona awayikunaka siliva nagolide, noma
athokoze ngalo.

18 Iminsalo yawo iyophuhluzwa amabhungu abe
yizicucu; futhi bona abayikuba nakudabuka
esithelweni sesizalo; amehlo abo awayikuba nasihe
kubantwana.

19 Futhi iBabiloni, inkazimulo yemibuso, engubuhle
obukhulu bamaKaledi, iyoba njengesikhathi
uNkulunkulu eketula iSodoma kanye neGomora.

20 Kuyo akusayikuphinda kwakhiwe nanini, noma
kuhlalwe kuyo izizukulwane ngesizukulwane: noma
um-Arabiya amise itende lapho; noma abelusi balale
nemihlambi yabo lapho.

21 Kodwa izilwane zasendle zehlane ziyobuthisa
lapho; futhi izindlu zabo ziyogcwala izilwane
ezinosizi; futhi nezikhova ziyohlala lapho,
nezimpongo ziyongqabashiya khona.

22 Futhi izilwane zasendle zaseziqhingini ziyokhala
ezindlini zabo ezichithiweyo, odrako ezindlini zabo
ezinhle zobukhosi, futhi isikhathi sakhe siseduze
ukufika, usuku lwakhe aluseyikuhlehliswa.
Ngokuba ngiyombhubhisa ngokushesha; yebo,
ngokuba ngiyokuba nesihawu kubantu bami, kepha
ababi bayoshatshalaliswa.

And it shall be as the chased roe, and as a sheep
that no man taketh up; and they shall every man turn
to his own people, and flee every one into his own
land.

Every one that is proud shall be thrust through;
yea, and every one that is joined to the wicked shall
fall by the sword.

Their children also shall be dashed to pieces be-
fore their eyes; their houses shall be spoiled and
their wives ravished.

Behold, I will stir up the Medes against them,
which shall not regard silver and gold, nor shall they
delight in it.

Their bows shall also dash the young men to
pieces; and they shall have no pity on the fruit of the
womb; their eyes shall not spare children.

And Babylon, the glory of kingdoms, the beauty of
the Chaldees' excellency, shall be as when God over-
threw Sodom and Gomorrah.

It shall never be inhabited, neither shall it be
dwelt in from generation to generation: neither shall
the Arabian pitch tent there; neither shall the shep-
herds make their fold there.

But wild beasts of the desert shall lie there; and
their houses shall be full of doleful creatures; and
owls shall dwell there, and satyrs shall dance there.

And the wild beasts of the islands shall cry in their
desolate houses, and dragons in their pleasant
palaces; and her time is near to come, and her day
shall not be prolonged. For I will destroy her speed-
ily; yea, for I will be merciful unto my people, but the
wicked shall perish.

2 Nefi 24

- 1 Ngokuba iNkosi izoba nesihawu kuJakobe, futhi isazomkhetha u-Israyeli, futhi ibabeke ezweni labo uqobo; abafokazi bayohlanganiswa nabo, futhi bayonamathela endlini kaJakobe.
- 2 Futhi abantu bayobathatha bababuyisele endaweni yabo; yebo, kusuka kude le emikhawulweni yomhlaba; futhi bayobuyela emazweni abo esethembiso. Futhi bayoba ngabendlu ka-Israyeli, futhi izwe leNkosi liyoba ngelezinceku kanye nezincekukazi; futhi bayobathatha babathumbe labo ababe kade bebathumbile; futhi bayobusa phezu kwabacindezeli babo.
- 3 Futhi kuyokwenzeka ngalolo suku ukuthi iNkosi iyokunika ukuphumula, ezinsizini zakho, nasekwesabeni kwakho, nasebugqilini obunzima owenziwa ukuthi usebenze kubo.
- 4 Futhi kuyokwenzeka ngalolo suku, ukuthi uyosho lesisaga ngenkosi yaseBabiloni, uthi: Uphela kanjani umcindezeli, umuzi wegolide uphela kanjani!
- 5 INkosi iluphulile udondolo lwababi, ubhoko lwababusi.
- 6 Lowo oshaya abantu entukuthelweni ngokushaya okunganqamukiyo, lowo obusa izizwe ngolaka, uhlushiwe, futhi akekho namunye okunqandayo.
- 7 Wonke umhlaba usekuphumuleni, futhi uthule; baqhumuka ngokuhlabelela.
- 8 Yebo, imisayipuresi iyathokoza ngawe, futhi ngokunjalo nemisedari yaseLebanoni, ithi: Selokhu walaliswa phansi akukho mgawuli okhuphukela kithi.
- 9 Isihogo ngaphansi sinyakaziselwe wena ukukuhlangabeza ekubuyeni kwakho; sikuphehlela abafuleyo, ngisho nabo bonke abakhulu bomhlaba; siphakamisele phezulu ezihlalweni zabo zobukhosi wonke amakhosi ezizwe.
- 10 Bonke bayokhuluma futhi bathi kuwe: Ngabe nawe futhi usubuthakathaka njengathi na? Ngabe nawe usufana nathi na?
- 11 Ubukhosi bakho buhliselwe phansi ethuneni; umsindo wamavayolina akho awuzwakali; izimpethu zenekiwe phansi kwakho, futhi izimpethu ziyakumboza.

2 Nephi 24

For the Lord will have mercy on Jacob, and will yet choose Israel, and set them in their own land; and the strangers shall be joined with them, and they shall cleave to the house of Jacob.

And the people shall take them and bring them to their place; yea, from far unto the ends of the earth; and they shall return to their lands of promise. And the house of Israel shall possess them, and the land of the Lord shall be for servants and handmaids; and they shall take them captives unto whom they were captives; and they shall rule over their oppressors.

And it shall come to pass in that day that the Lord shall give thee rest, from thy sorrow, and from thy fear, and from the hard bondage wherein thou wast made to serve.

And it shall come to pass in that day, that thou shalt take up this proverb against the king of Babylon, and say: How hath the oppressor ceased, the golden city ceased!

The Lord hath broken the staff of the wicked, the scepters of the rulers.

He who smote the people in wrath with a continual stroke, he that ruled the nations in anger, is persecuted, and none hindereth.

The whole earth is at rest, and is quiet; they break forth into singing.

Yea, the fir trees rejoice at thee, and also the cedars of Lebanon, saying: Since thou art laid down no feller is come up against us.

Hell from beneath is moved for thee to meet thee at thy coming; it stirreth up the dead for thee, even all the chief ones of the earth; it hath raised up from their thrones all the kings of the nations.

All they shall speak and say unto thee: Art thou also become weak as we? Art thou become like unto us?

Thy pomp is brought down to the grave; the noise of thy viols is not heard; the worm is spread under thee, and the worms cover thee.

12 Ngabe uwe kanjani ezulwini, O Lusifa, ndodana yokusa! Ngabe unqunyelwe phansi yini, wena owenza buthakathaka izizwe!

13 Ngokuba uthe enhliziyweni yakho: Ngizonyukela ezulwini, ngizophakamisela isihlalo sami sobukhosi ngaphezulu kwezinkanyezi zikaNkulunkulu; phezu kwalokho ngizohlala entabeni yomhlangano, ngasekugcineni kwasenyakatho;

14 Ngizokwenyukela ngaphezulu kwamafu; ngizokuba njengoPhakeme kaKhulu.

15 Kodwa uyokwehliselwa phansi esihogweni, ekugcineni komgodi.

16 Labo abakubonayo bayokubhekisisa, futhi bayokuthi: Ngabe nguye yini lomuntu owenza ukuthi umhlaba udikize, lowo owazamazamisa imibuso na?

17 Futhi owenza umhlaba waba njengehlane, wabhubhisa amadolobha awo, futhi wangayivula indlu yeziboshwa zakhe na?

18 Wonke amakhosi ezizwe, yebo, wonke, alele ngodumo, yileyo naleyo yawo endlini yayo.

19 Kepha wena ulahlwe ngaphandle kwethuna lakho njengegatsha elinengekile, futhi insalela yalabo ababulewe, bagwazwa ngenkemba, labo abehlela ezansi ematsheni omgodi; njengesidumbu sinyathelwa ngaphansi kwezinyawo.

20 Awuyikuhlanganiswa nabo ekungcwatshweni, ngenxa yokuthi ulibhubhisile izwe lakho futhi wabulala abantu bakho; inzalo yabenzi bobubi ayiyikuba nasithunzi nanini.

21 Lungiselela ukubulala abantwana bakhe ngenxa yobubi boyise, ukuze bangavuki, noma bazuze izwe, noma bagcwalise ubuso bomhlaba ngamadolobha.

22 Ngokuba ngiyobavukela, kusho iNkosi yamaBandla, futhi ngibulale eBabloni igama, kanye nensalela, nendodana, kanye nomshana, kusho iNkosi.

23 Phezu kwalokho ngiyoyenza ibe yifa likanondwebu, kanye namachibi amanzi; futhi ngiyoyishanela ngomshanelo wembubhiso, kusho iNkosi yamaBandla.

24 INkosi yamaBandla ifungile, ithi: Ngempela njengoba ngikucabangile, kuyokwenzeka kanjalo; futhi njengokunquma kwami, kuyokuma kanjalo—

How art thou fallen from heaven, O Lucifer, son of the morning! Art thou cut down to the ground, which did weaken the nations!

For thou hast said in thy heart: I will ascend into heaven, I will exalt my throne above the stars of God; I will sit also upon the mount of the congregation, in the sides of the north;

I will ascend above the heights of the clouds; I will be like the Most High.

Yet thou shalt be brought down to hell, to the sides of the pit.

They that see thee shall narrowly look upon thee, and shall consider thee, and shall say: Is this the man that made the earth to tremble, that did shake kingdoms?

And made the world as a wilderness, and destroyed the cities thereof, and opened not the house of his prisoners?

All the kings of the nations, yea, all of them, lie in glory, every one of them in his own house.

But thou art cast out of thy grave like an abominable branch, and the remnant of those that are slain, thrust through with a sword, that go down to the stones of the pit; as a carcass trodden under feet.

Thou shalt not be joined with them in burial, because thou hast destroyed thy land and slain thy people; the seed of evil-doers shall never be renowned.

Prepare slaughter for his children for the iniquities of their fathers, that they do not rise, nor possess the land, nor fill the face of the world with cities.

For I will rise up against them, saith the Lord of Hosts, and cut off from Babylon the name, and remnant, and son, and nephew, saith the Lord.

I will also make it a possession for the bittern, and pools of water; and I will sweep it with the besom of destruction, saith the Lord of Hosts.

The Lord of Hosts hath sworn, saying: Surely as I have thought, so shall it come to pass; and as I have purposed, so shall it stand—

- 25 Ukuthi ngiyoletha um-Asiriya ezweni lami, futhi ezintabeni zami ngimnyathele ngaphansi kwezinyawo; ngaleso sikhathi ijoka lakhe liyosuka kubo, futhi nomthwalo wakhe usuke emahlombe abo.
- 26 Lena yinhloso ehloswe phezu komhlaba wonke; futhi lesi yisandla eselulelwe phezu kwezizwe zonke.
- 27 Ngokuba iNkosi yamaBandla ikuhlosile, futhi ngubani oyokuchitha na? Futhi isandla sayo seluliwe, futhi ngubani oyosibuyisela emuva na?
- 28 Ngonyaka wokufa kwenkosi u-Ahazi kwavela lesi sibikezelo.
- 29 Ungathokozi wena, Filistiya yonke, ngenxa yokuthi induku yalowo okushayile yephukile; ngokuba empandeni yenyoka kuyophuma umantshingeyana, futhi isithelo sakhe siyokuba yinyoka endizayo enomlilo.
- 30 Futhi izibulo lompofu liyokondliwa, futhi abasweleyo bayolala phansi bavikeleke; futhi ngiyoyibulala impande yakho ngendlala, futhi uyobulala insalela yakho.
- 31 Hewula, O sango; khala O dolobha; wena, Filistiya yonke, uncibilikile; ngokuba kuyovela enyakatho intuthu, futhi akekho namunye oyoba yedwa ngezikhathi zakhe ezibekiwe.
- 32 Uma kunjalo ziyonika yiphi impendulo izithunywa zesizwe na? Ukuthi iNkosi iyitholile iSiyoni, futhi abampofu babantu bayo bayophephela kuyo.
- That I will bring the Assyrian in my land, and upon my mountains tread him under foot; then shall his yoke depart from off them, and his burden depart from off their shoulders.
- This is the purpose that is purposed upon the whole earth; and this is the hand that is stretched out upon all nations.
- For the Lord of Hosts hath purposed, and who shall disannul? And his hand is stretched out, and who shall turn it back?
- In the year that king Ahaz died was this burden.
- Rejoice not thou, whole Palestina, because the rod of him that smote thee is broken; for out of the serpent's root shall come forth a cockatrice, and his fruit shall be a fiery flying serpent.
- And the firstborn of the poor shall feed, and the needy shall lie down in safety; and I will kill thy root with famine, and he shall slay thy remnant.
- Howl, O gate; cry, O city; thou, whole Palestina, art dissolved; for there shall come from the north a smoke, and none shall be alone in his appointed times.
- What shall then answer the messengers of the nations? That the Lord hath founded Zion, and the poor of his people shall trust in it.

2 Nefi 25

- 1 Manje mina, Nefi, sengikhuluma ngalokho okumayelana namazwi engiwabhalile, akhulunywa ngomlomo ka-Isaya. Ngokuba bheka, u-Isaya wakhuluma eziningi izinto ezazinzima kwabaningi babantu bami ukuthi baziqonde; ngokuba babengazi mayelana nendlela yokuphrofetha phakathi kwamaJuda.
- 2 Ngokuba mina, Nefi, angibafundisanga izinto eziningi mayelana nenkambiso yamaJuda; ngokuba imisebenzi yawo kwakuyimisebenzi yobumnyama, futhi izenzo zawo kwakuyizenzo zezinengiso.
- 3 Ngalokho-ke, ngibhalela abantu bami, nabo bonke labo abayozamukela emva kwalokhu lezi zinto engizibhalayo, ukuze bazazi izahlulelo zikaNkulunkulu, ukuthi ziza kuzo zonke izizwe, ngokwezwi alikhulumile.
- 4 Ngalokho-ke, lalalani, O bantu bami, eningabendlu ka-Israyeli, futhi nikezani indlebe emazwini ami; ngokuba ngenxa yokuthi amazwi ka-Isaya awekho sobala kini, nokho asobala kubo bonke labo abagcwaliswe ngomoya wokuphrofetha. Kepha ngininika isiphrofetho, ngokukamoya okimi; ngalokho-ke ngizophrofetha ngokusobala obekulokhu kunami kusukela ngesikhathi ngiphuma eJerusalema nobaba; ngokuba bheka, umphefumulo wami uthokoza ngalokho okusobala kubantu bami, ukuze bafunde.
- 5 Yebo, futhi umphefumulo wami uyathokoza ngamazwi ka-Isaya, ngokuba ngaphuma eJerusalema, futhi amehlo ami azibonile izinto zamaJuda, futhi ngiyazi ukuthi amaJuda ayaziqonda izinto zabaphrofethi, futhi abekho abanye abantu abaqonda izinto ezakhulunywa kuwo amaJuda njengawo, ngaphandle kokuthi bafundiswa ngendlela yezinto zawo amaJuda.
- 6 Kepha bheka, mina, Nefi, angibafundisanga abantwana bami ngenkambiso yamaJuda; kepha bheka, mina, ngokwami, ngihlalile eJerusalema, ngalokho-ke ngiyazi mayelana nezifunda ezizungezile; futhi ngikhulumile kubo abantwana bami mayelana nezahlulelo zikaNkulunkulu, esezenzekile phakathi kwamaJuda, kubo abantwana bami, njengakho konke lokho u-Isaya akukhulumile, futhi angikubhali lokho.

2 Nephi 25

Now I, Nephi, do speak somewhat concerning the words which I have written, which have been spoken by the mouth of Isaiah. For behold, Isaiah spake many things which were hard for many of my people to understand; for they know not concerning the manner of prophesying among the Jews.

For I, Nephi, have not taught them many things concerning the manner of the Jews; for their works were works of darkness, and their doings were doings of abominations.

Wherefore, I write unto my people, unto all those that shall receive hereafter these things which I write, that they may know the judgments of God, that they come upon all nations, according to the word which he hath spoken.

Wherefore, hearken, O my people, which are of the house of Israel, and give ear unto my words; for because the words of Isaiah are not plain unto you, nevertheless they are plain unto all those that are filled with the spirit of prophecy. But I give unto you a prophecy, according to the spirit which is in me; wherefore I shall prophesy according to the plainness which hath been with me from the time that I came out from Jerusalem with my father; for behold, my soul delighteth in plainness unto my people, that they may learn.

Yea, and my soul delighteth in the words of Isaiah, for I came out from Jerusalem, and mine eyes hath beheld the things of the Jews, and I know that the Jews do understand the things of the prophets, and there is none other people that understand the things which were spoken unto the Jews like unto them, save it be that they are taught after the manner of the things of the Jews.

But behold, I, Nephi, have not taught my children after the manner of the Jews; but behold, I, of myself, have dwelt at Jerusalem, wherefore I know concerning the regions round about; and I have made mention unto my children concerning the judgments of God, which hath come to pass among the Jews, unto my children, according to all that which Isaiah hath spoken, and I do not write them.

- 7 Kepha bheka, ngiqhubeka nesami isiphrofetho, njengalokho okusobala kimi; kuso engaziyo ukuthi akukho muntu ongaduka; nokho, ngezinsuku iziphrofetho zika-Isaya eziyogcwaliseka ngazo abantu bayokwazi ngokwesiqiniseko, ngezikhathi lezo eziyokwenzeka ngazo.
- 8 Ngalokho-ke, ziyigugu kubantwana babantu, futhi lowo ocabanga ukuthi azisilo, ngizokhuluma kubo kabanzi, futhi amazwi ngiwaqondise kubantu bami uqobo; ngokuba ngiyazi ukuthi ziyokuba ngeziyigugu elikhulu kubo ngezinsuku zokugcina; ngokuba ngalolo suku bayoziqonda; ngalokho-ke, ngenxa yobuhle bazo ngizibhalile.
- 9 Futhi njengoba esisodwa isizukulwane sibhujisiwe phakathi kwamaJuda ngenxa yobubi, ngisho ngokunjalo nabo babhujisiwe izizukulwane ngesizukulwane njengobubi babo; futhi akekho namunye wabo owabhujiswa ngaphandle kokuthi babetsheliwe phambilini ngaphrofethi beNkosi.
- 10 Ngalokho-ke, kwakushiwo kubo mayelana nalokho kubhujiswa okwakumele kwenzeke phakathi kwabo, masinyane nje emva kokuthi ubaba esehambile eJerusalema; nokho, bazenza lukhuni izinhliziyi zabo; futhi ngokwesiphrofetho sami babhujiswa, ngaphandle kwalabo abathathiwe bathunjelwa eBabiloni.
- 11 Manje lokhu ngikukhuluma ngenxa yomoya okimi. Futhi naphezu kokuthi bethathiwe bayophinda babuye futhi, futhi bazuze izwe laseJerusalema; ngalokho-ke, bayobuyiselwa futhi ezweni eliyifa labo.
- 12 Kepha, bheka, bayokuba nezimpi, kanye namahemuhemu ezimpi; futhi uma usuku lufika lokuthi oZelwe Yedwa kaBaba, yebo, ngisho uBaba wezulu kanye nomhlaba, eyoziveza kubo esenyameni, bheka, bayomenqaba, ngenxa yobubi babo, kanye nobulukhuni bezinhliziyi zabo, kanye nokuqina kwezintamo zabo.

But behold, I proceed with mine own prophecy, according to my plainness; in the which I know that no man can err; nevertheless, in the days that the prophecies of Isaiah shall be fulfilled men shall know of a surety, at the times when they shall come to pass.

Wherefore, they are of worth unto the children of men, and he that supposeth that they are not, unto them will I speak particularly, and confine the words unto mine own people; for I know that they shall be of great worth unto them in the last days; for in that day shall they understand them; wherefore, for their good have I written them.

And as one generation hath been destroyed among the Jews because of iniquity, even so have they been destroyed from generation to generation according to their iniquities; and never hath any of them been destroyed save it were foretold them by the prophets of the Lord.

Wherefore, it hath been told them concerning the destruction which should come upon them, immediately after my father left Jerusalem; nevertheless, they hardened their hearts; and according to my prophecy they have been destroyed, save it be those which are carried away captive into Babylon.

And now this I speak because of the spirit which is in me. And notwithstanding they have been carried away they shall return again, and possess the land of Jerusalem; wherefore, they shall be restored again to the land of their inheritance.

But, behold, they shall have wars, and rumors of wars; and when the day cometh that the Only Begotten of the Father, yea, even the Father of heaven and of earth, shall manifest himself unto them in the flesh, behold, they will reject him, because of their iniquities, and the hardness of their hearts, and the stiffness of their necks.

- 13 Bheka, bayombethela; futhi emva kokuthi esebekwe ethuneni isikhathi esiyizinsuku ezintathu uyovuka kwabafileyo, enokuphilisa emaphikweni akhe; futhi bonke labo abayokholwa egameni lakhe bayosindiswa embusweni kaNkulunkulu. Ngalokho-ke, umphefumulo wami uyathokoza ekuphrofetheni mayelana naye, ngokuba ngilubonile usuku lwakhe, futhi inhliziyo yami iyalibabaza igama lakhe elingcwele.
- 14 Futhi bheka kuyokwenzeka ukuthi emva kokuthi uMesiya esevukile kwabafileyo, futhi esezivezile ebantwini bakhe, ngobuningi balabo abayokholwa egameni lakhe, bheka, iJerusalema iyobhujiswa futhi; ngokuba maye kulabo abalwa noNkulunkulu kanye nabantu bebandla lakhe.
- 15 Ngalokho-ke, amaJuda ayohlakazwa phakathi kwazo zonke izizwe; yebo, futhi ngokunjalo neBabiloni iyobhujiswa; ngalokho-ke, amaJuda ayohlakazwa ngezinye izizwe.
- 16 Futhi emva kokuthi sebehlakaziwe, futhi iNkosi uNkulunkulu isibashayile ngezinye izizwe ngesikhathi esingangese zizukulwane eziningi, yebo, ngisho kwehle izizukulwane ngezizukulwane kuze kube ngukuthi bayavunyiswa ukuthi bakholwe kuKristu, iNdodana kaNkulunkulu, kanye nenhlawulo, leyo engapheliyo yabantu bonke—futhi uma lolo suku luyofika lokuthi bakholwe kuKristu, futhi bakhonze uBaba egameni lakhe, ngezinhliziyo ezimsulwa kanye nezandla ezihlanzekile, futhi bangabe besalindela futhi omunye uMesiya, ngaleso sikhathi, usuku luyofika ukuthi kufanelekile ukuthi bazikholwe lezi zinto.
- 17 Futhi iNkosi iyosibeka isandla sayo futhi okwesibili ukubuyisa abantu bayo ekulahlekeni kwabo kanye nasesimweni sokuwa. Ngalokho-ke, iyoqhubeka nokwenza umsebenzi omuhle nomangalisayo phakathi kwabantwana babantu.

Behold, they will crucify him; and after he is laid in a sepulchre for the space of three days he shall rise from the dead, with healing in his wings; and all those who shall believe on his name shall be saved in the kingdom of God. Wherefore, my soul delighteth to prophesy concerning him, for I have seen his day, and my heart doth magnify his holy name.

And behold it shall come to pass that after the Messiah hath risen from the dead, and hath manifested himself unto his people, unto as many as will believe on his name, behold, Jerusalem shall be destroyed again; for wo unto them that fight against God and the people of his church.

Wherefore, the Jews shall be scattered among all nations; yea, and also Babylon shall be destroyed; wherefore, the Jews shall be scattered by other nations.

And after they have been scattered, and the Lord God hath scourged them by other nations for the space of many generations, yea, even down from generation to generation until they shall be persuaded to believe in Christ, the Son of God, and the atonement, which is infinite for all mankind—and when that day shall come that they shall believe in Christ, and worship the Father in his name, with pure hearts and clean hands, and look not forward any more for another Messiah, then, at that time, the day will come that it must needs be expedient that they should believe these things.

And the Lord will set his hand again the second time to restore his people from their lost and fallen state. Wherefore, he will proceed to do a marvelous work and a wonder among the children of men.

- 18 Ngalokho-ke, iyokwambula amazwi ayo kubo, ayobahlulela ngosuku lokugcina, ngokuba bayonikwa wona ngenhloso yokubakholwisa ngoMesiya weqiniso, owayenqatshwe yibo; kanye nasekubakholwiseni ukuthi abasafanele ukuthi balindele omunye uMesiya osazofika, ngokuba akuseyikuba bikho omunye osayofika, ngaphandle kokuthi lowo kube nguMesiya wamanga oyokhohlisa abantu; ngokuba munye kuphela uMesiya abakhuluma ngaye abaphrofethi, futhi lowo Mesiya nguye oyokwenqatshwa ngamaJuda.
- 19 Ngokuba ngokwamazwi abaphrofethi, uMesiya uza eminyakeni engamakhulu ayisithupha kusukela ngesikhathi ubaba ahamba eJerusalema; futhi ngokwamazwi abaphrofethi, futhi ngokunjalo nangezwi lengelosi kaNkulunkulu, igama lakhe liyokuba nguJesu Kristu, iNdodana kaNkulunkulu.
- 20 Manje, bafowethu, ngikhulume ngokusobala ukuze ningaphambuki. Futhi njengoba iNkosi uNkulunkulu iphila eyakhipha u-Israyeli ezweni laseGibithe, futhi yanikeza uMose amandla okuthi aphilise izizwe emva kokuthi sezilunywe yizinyoka ezinobuthi, uma bengabhekisa amehlo abo kuleyo nyoka ayiphakamisayo phambi kwabo, futhi phezu kwalokho wamnika amandla okuthi ashaye idwala futhi amanzi ampompoze; yebo, bheka ngithi kini, njengoba lezi zinto ziyiqiniso, futhi njengoba iNkosi uNkulunkulu iphila, alikho elinye igama elinikiwe ngaphansi kwezulu ngaphandle kwalo leli likaJesu Kristu, engikhulume ngaye, umuntu angasindiswa ngalo.
- 21 Ngalokho-ke, ngalesi sizathu iNkosi uNkulunkulu yethembisile kimi ukuthi lezi zinto engizibhalayo ziyogcinwa futhi zilondolozwe, futhi zehliselwe ezansi kuyo inzalo yami, izizukulwane ngezizukulwane, ukuze isethembiso sigcwaliseke kuJosefa, sokuthi inzalo yakhe ayiyikushabalala nanini inqobo nje uma umhlaba usamile.
- 22 Ngalokho-ke, lezi zinto ziyohamba izizukulwane ngezizukulwane inqobo nje uma umhlaba usamile; futhi ziyohamba njengokwentando nangokwesifiso sikaNkulunkulu; futhi izizwe eziyokuba nazo ziyokwahlulelwa ngazo njengokwalawo mazwi abhaliwe.

Wherefore, he shall bring forth his words unto them, which words shall judge them at the last day, for they shall be given them for the purpose of convincing them of the true Messiah, who was rejected by them; and unto the convincing of them that they need not look forward any more for a Messiah to come, for there should not any come, save it should be a false Messiah which should deceive the people; for there is save one Messiah spoken of by the prophets, and that Messiah is he who should be rejected of the Jews.

For according to the words of the prophets, the Messiah cometh in six hundred years from the time that my father left Jerusalem; and according to the words of the prophets, and also the word of the angel of God, his name shall be Jesus Christ, the Son of God.

And now, my brethren, I have spoken plainly that ye cannot err. And as the Lord God liveth that brought Israel up out of the land of Egypt, and gave unto Moses power that he should heal the nations after they had been bitten by the poisonous serpents, if they would cast their eyes unto the serpent which he did raise up before them, and also gave him power that he should smite the rock and the water should come forth; yea, behold I say unto you, that as these things are true, and as the Lord God liveth, there is none other name given under heaven save it be this Jesus Christ, of which I have spoken, whereby man can be saved.

Wherefore, for this cause hath the Lord God promised unto me that these things which I write shall be kept and preserved, and handed down unto my seed, from generation to generation, that the promise may be fulfilled unto Joseph, that his seed should never perish as long as the earth should stand.

Wherefore, these things shall go from generation to generation as long as the earth shall stand; and they shall go according to the will and pleasure of God; and the nations who shall possess them shall be judged of them according to the words which are written.

- 23 Ngokuba sisebenza ngokukhuthala ukubhala, ukuthi sikholwise abantwana bethu, futhi ngokunjalo nabafowethu, ukuthi bakholwe kuKristu, futhi ukuthi babuyisane noNkulunkulu; ngokuba siyazi ukuthi kungomusa ukuthi sisindiswe, emva kwakho konke esingakwenza.
- 24 Futhi, naphezu kokuthi sikholwa kuKristu, siyawugcina umthetho kaMose, futhi sibheke phambili ngokwethembeka kuKristu, kuze kube umthetho uyagcwaliseka.
- 25 Ngokuba, ngalesi sizathu umthetho wanikwa; ngalokho-ke umthetho usufile kithi, futhi senziwe saphila kuKristu ngenxa yokholo lwethu; nokho sigcina umthetho ngenxa yemiyalo.
- 26 Futhi sikhuluma ngoKristu, sithokoza kuKristu, sishumayela ngoKristu, siphrofetha ngoKristu, futhi sibhala ngokweziphrofetho zethu, ukuze abantwana bethu bazi ukuthi yikuphi lapho bengabheka khona ukuze bathole ukuthethelelwa kwezono zabo.
- 27 Ngalokho-ke, sikhuluma mayelana nomthetho ukuze abantwana bethu bazi ngokufa komthetho; futhi, ngokwazi ngokufa komthetho, bangalindela lokho kuphila okukuKristu, futhi bazi ukuthi umthetho wawunikezwe ngasizathu sini. Futhi emva kokuthi umthetho usugcwalisekile kuKristu, ukuthi akusafanele bazenze lukhuni izinhliziyi zabo ngokumelene naye uma umthetho sekufanele uphele.
- 28 Manje bhekani, bantu bami, ningabantu abangontamo lukhuni; ngalokho-ke, ngikhulume ngokusobala kini, ukuze ningabi nokungaqondi. Futhi amazwi engiwakhulumile ayokuma njengobufakazi ngokumelene nani; ngokuba enele ukufundisa namuphi umuntu indlela eqondile; ngokuba indlela eqondile ngokukholwa kuKristu kanye nokungamphiki; ngokuba ngokumphika niphika futhi abaphrofethi kanye nomthetho.
- 29 Manje bhekani, ngithi kini indlela eqondile ngokukholwa kuKristu, futhi ningamphiki; futhi uKristu ungoNgcwele ka-Israyeli; ngalokho-ke kufanele nikhothame phambi kwakhe, futhi nimkhonze ngawo wonke amandla enu, ngengqondo, nangokuqina, kanye nangomphefumulo wenu wonke; futhi uma nikwenza lokhu aniyikulahlwa nakancane.

For we labor diligently to write, to persuade our children, and also our brethren, to believe in Christ, and to be reconciled to God; for we know that it is by grace that we are saved, after all we can do.

And, notwithstanding we believe in Christ, we keep the law of Moses, and look forward with steadfastness unto Christ, until the law shall be fulfilled.

For, for this end was the law given; wherefore the law hath become dead unto us, and we are made alive in Christ because of our faith; yet we keep the law because of the commandments.

And we talk of Christ, we rejoice in Christ, we preach of Christ, we prophesy of Christ, and we write according to our prophecies, that our children may know to what source they may look for a remission of their sins.

Wherefore, we speak concerning the law that our children may know the deadness of the law; and they, by knowing the deadness of the law, may look forward unto that life which is in Christ, and know for what end the law was given. And after the law is fulfilled in Christ, that they need not harden their hearts against him when the law ought to be done away.

And now behold, my people, ye are a stiffnecked people; wherefore, I have spoken plainly unto you, that ye cannot misunderstand. And the words which I have spoken shall stand as a testimony against you; for they are sufficient to teach any man the right way; for the right way is to believe in Christ and deny him not; for by denying him ye also deny the prophets and the law.

And now behold, I say unto you that the right way is to believe in Christ, and deny him not; and Christ is the Holy One of Israel; wherefore ye must bow down before him, and worship him with all your might, mind, and strength, and your whole soul; and if ye do this ye shall in nowise be cast out.

30 Futhi, kangangoba kuyodingeka, kufanele nicine izenzo kanye nezimiso zikaNkulunkulu kuze kube umthetho uyagcwaliseka owawunikwe uMose.

And, inasmuch as it shall be expedient, ye must keep the performances and ordinances of God until the law shall be fulfilled which was given unto Moses.

2 Nefi 26

- 1 Futhi emva kokuthi uKristu esevukile ekufeni uyozeveza kini, bantwana bami, kanye nabafowethu abathandekayo; futhi amazwi ayowakhuluma kini ayokuba ngumthetho eniyowenza.
- 2 Ngokuba bhekani, ngithi kini ngibonile ukuthi eziningi izizukulwane ziyodlula, futhi kuyoba khona ezinkulu izimpi kanye nemibango phakathi kwabantu bami.
- 3 Futhi emva kokuthi uMesiya esefikile kuyoba khona izibonakaliso eziyonikwa abantu bami ngokuzalwa kwakhe, futhi ngokunjalo nezokufa kwakhe kanye nokuvuka; futhi luyoba lukhulu futhi lube lubi lolo suku kwababi, ngokuba bayobhubha; futhi bayobhubha ngokuba babaxosha abaphrofethi, kanye nabangcwele, futhi babakhanda ngamatshe, futhi bababulala; ngalokho-ke ukukhala kwegazi labangcwele kuyokhuphukela phezulu kuNkulunkulu kuvela emhlabathini ngokumelene nabo.
- 4 Ngalokho-ke, bonke labo abaziqhenyayo, nalabo abenza okubi, usuku oluzayo luyobashisa, kusho iNkosi yamaBandla, ngokuba bayokuba njengamabibi.
- 5 Futhi labo ababulala abaphrofethi, nabangcwele, ukujula kwaphansi kuyobagwinya, kusho iNkosi yamaBandla; futhi izintaba ziyobasibekela, kanye nezishingishane ziyobathwala zibayise kude, futhi izakhiwo ziyowela phezu kwabo zibahlkize babe yizicucu futhi zibagaye babeyimpuphu.
- 6 Futhi bayovakashelwa ngokuduma, kanye nemibani, kanye nangokuzamazama komhlaba, kanye nangalo lonke uhlobo lokubhujiswa, ngokuba umlilo wentukuthelo yeNkosi uyokokheleka ngokumelene nabo, futhi bayokuba njengamabibi, futhi usuku oluzayo luyobashisa, kusho iNkosi yamaBandla.
- 7 O ubuhlungu, kanye nokudabuka komphfumulo wami ngokulahleka kwalabo ababulawa babantu bami! Ngokuba mina, Nefi, ngikubonile, futhi kucishe kwangishisa phambi kweNkosi; kepha kufanele ngikhale ngithi kuNkulunkulu wami: Izindlela zakho zilungile.

2 Nephi 26

And after Christ shall have risen from the dead he shall show himself unto you, my children, and my beloved brethren; and the words which he shall speak unto you shall be the law which ye shall do.

For behold, I say unto you that I have beheld that many generations shall pass away, and there shall be great wars and contentions among my people.

And after the Messiah shall come there shall be signs given unto my people of his birth, and also of his death and resurrection; and great and terrible shall that day be unto the wicked, for they shall perish; and they perish because they cast out the prophets, and the saints, and stone them, and slay them; wherefore the cry of the blood of the saints shall ascend up to God from the ground against them.

Wherefore, all those who are proud, and that do wickedly, the day that cometh shall burn them up, saith the Lord of Hosts, for they shall be as stubble.

And they that kill the prophets, and the saints, the depths of the earth shall swallow them up, saith the Lord of Hosts; and mountains shall cover them, and whirlwinds shall carry them away, and buildings shall fall upon them and crush them to pieces and grind them to powder.

And they shall be visited with thunderings, and lightnings, and earthquakes, and all manner of destructions, for the fire of the anger of the Lord shall be kindled against them, and they shall be as stubble, and the day that cometh shall consume them, saith the Lord of Hosts.

O the pain, and the anguish of my soul for the loss of the slain of my people! For I, Nephi, have seen it, and it well nigh consumeth me before the presence of the Lord; but I must cry unto my God: Thy ways are just.

- 8 Kepha bheka, abalungileyo abalalela amazwi abaphrofethi, futhi abangababhuhhisanga, kepha ababheka phambili kuKristu ngokwethembeka kulezo zibonakaliso ezinikiwe, naphezu kwakho konke ukuhlushwa—bheka, yibo labo abangayikubhubha.
- 9 Kepha iNdodana yokuLunga iyovela kubo; futhi iyobaphilisa, futhi bayoba nokuthula kanye nayo, kuze kudlule izizukulwane ezintathu, futhi nabaningi besizukulwane sesine bayobe sebedlulile ngokulunga.
- 10 Futhi uma lezi zinto sezidlulile, ukubhujiswa okusheshayo kuza kubantu bami; ngokuba, naphezu kobuhlungu bomphefumulo wami, ngikubonile lokhu; ngalokho-ke, ngiyazi ukuthi kuyokwenzeka; futhi bazithengisela ize; ngamanye amazwi, ngenxa yokuziqhenya kwabo kanye nobuwula babo bayovuna ukubhujiswa; ngokuba ngenxa yokuvumela udeveli futhi nokukhetha imisebenzi yobumnyama kunokukhanya, ngalokho-ke kufanele baye phansi esihogweni.
- 11 Ngokuba uMoya weNkosi awuyikusebenza njalo kumuntu. Futhi uma uMoya usuyeka ukusebenza kumuntu uma sekunjalo kuza ukubhujiswa ngokushesha, futhi lokhu kuyawukhathaza umphefumulo wami.
- 12 Futhi njengoba ngikhulumile mayelana nokukholiswa kwamaJuda, ukuthi uJesu unguye kanye uKristu, kufanele ukuthi abeZizwe bakhoholiswa nabo ukuthi uJesu unguKristu, uNkulunkulu waPhakade;
- 13 Futhi nokuthi uzibonakalisa kubo bonke labo abakhoholwa kuye, ngamandla kaMoya oNgcwele; yebo, kuzo zonke izizwe, imindeni, izilimi, kanye nabantu, wenza izibonakaliso ezinkulu, izimpawu, kanye nezimangaliso, phakathi kwabantwana babantu ngokokholo lwabo.
- 14 Kepha bheka, ngiyaphrofetha kini mayelana nezinsuku zokugcina; mayelana nezinsuku lapho iNkosi uNkulunkulu iyoziletha lezi zinto kubantwana babantu.

But behold, the righteous that hearken unto the words of the prophets, and destroy them not, but look forward unto Christ with steadfastness for the signs which are given, notwithstanding all persecution—behold, they are they which shall not perish.

But the Son of Righteousness shall appear unto them; and he shall heal them, and they shall have peace with him, until three generations shall have passed away, and many of the fourth generation shall have passed away in righteousness.

And when these things have passed away a speedy destruction cometh unto my people; for, notwithstanding the pains of my soul, I have seen it; wherefore, I know that it shall come to pass; and they sell themselves for naught; for, for the reward of their pride and their foolishness they shall reap destruction; for because they yield unto the devil and choose works of darkness rather than light, therefore they must go down to hell.

For the Spirit of the Lord will not always strive with man. And when the Spirit ceaseth to strive with man then cometh speedy destruction, and this grieveth my soul.

And as I spake concerning the convincing of the Jews, that Jesus is the very Christ, it must needs be that the Gentiles be convinced also that Jesus is the Christ, the Eternal God;

And that he manifesteth himself unto all those who believe in him, by the power of the Holy Ghost; yea, unto every nation, kindred, tongue, and people, working mighty miracles, signs, and wonders, among the children of men according to their faith.

But behold, I prophesy unto you concerning the last days; concerning the days when the Lord God shall bring these things forth unto the children of men.

- 15 Emva kokuthi inzalo yami kanye nenzalo yabafowethu seyilahlekelwe wukholo, futhi seyishaywe ngabeZizwe; yebo, emva kokuthi iNkosi uNkulunkulu isibahaqe nxazonke, futhi sebevinjezelwe ngentaba, futhi baphakanyiselwa izinqaba ngokumelene nabo; futhi emva kokuthi sebehliiselwe phansi othulini, ngisho kungukuthi bengasekho, nokho amazwi abalungileyo ayobhalwa, futhi imithandazo yabathembekileyo iyozwakala, futhi bonke labo abayobe sebelahlekelwe wukholo abayikukhohlakala.
- 16 Ngokuba labo abayobhujiswa bayokhuluma kubo besemhlabathini, futhi ukukhuluma kwabo kuyokuba ngokuthotshiselwe phansi othulini, futhi izwi labo liyokuba njengelalowo onomoya owejwayelekile; ngokuba iNkosi uNkulunkulu iyomnika amandla, ukuze anyenyeze mayelana nabo, kube sengathi liphuma emhlabathini; futhi ukukhuluma kwabo kuyonyenyeza kuphuma othulini.
- 17 Ngokuba isho kanje iNkosi uNkulunkulu: Bayozibhala izinto eziyokwenziwa phakathi kwabo, futhi ziyobhalwa futhi zivalelwe zibe yincwadi, futhi labo abayobe sebelahlekelwe wukholo abayikuba nazo, ngokuba bafuna ukuzibhubhisa izinto zikaNkulunkulu.
- 18 Ngalokho-ke, njengoba labo ababhujiswa bebhujiswe ngokushesha; futhi isixuku salabo abesabekayo babo siyoba njengamakhoba adlulayo—yebo, isho kanje iNkosi uNkulunkulu: Lokhu kuyokwenzeka ngokuzuma, ngokushesha—
- 19 Futhi kuyokwenzeka, ukuthi labo asebelahlekelwe wukholo bayoshaywa ngesandla sabeZizwe.
- 20 Futhi abeZizwe baphakeme ngenxa yokuzibona kwabo, futhi bakhubekile, ngenxa yobukhulu besikhubekiso sabo, kangangoba bakhe amabandla amaningi; nokho, badelela amandla kanye nezimangaliso zikaNkulunkulu, futhi bazituse ngokuhlakanipha kwabo kanye nemfundo yabo, ukuze bathole inzuzo futhi bagaye ubuso babampofu.
- 21 Futhi maningi amabandla akhiwe abanga umona, nempikiswano, kanye nenzondo.

After my seed and the seed of my brethren shall have dwindled in unbelief, and shall have been smitten by the Gentiles; yea, after the Lord God shall have camped against them round about, and shall have laid siege against them with a mount, and raised forts against them; and after they shall have been brought down low in the dust, even that they are not, yet the words of the righteous shall be written, and the prayers of the faithful shall be heard, and all those who have dwindled in unbelief shall not be forgotten.

For those who shall be destroyed shall speak unto them out of the ground, and their speech shall be low out of the dust, and their voice shall be as one that hath a familiar spirit; for the Lord God will give unto him power, that he may whisper concerning them, even as it were out of the ground; and their speech shall whisper out of the dust.

For thus saith the Lord God: They shall write the things which shall be done among them, and they shall be written and sealed up in a book, and those who have dwindled in unbelief shall not have them, for they seek to destroy the things of God.

Wherefore, as those who have been destroyed have been destroyed speedily; and the multitude of their terrible ones shall be as chaff that passeth away—yea, thus saith the Lord God: It shall be at an instant, suddenly—

And it shall come to pass, that those who have dwindled in unbelief shall be smitten by the hand of the Gentiles.

And the Gentiles are lifted up in the pride of their eyes, and have stumbled, because of the greatness of their stumbling block, that they have built up many churches; nevertheless, they put down the power and miracles of God, and preach up unto themselves their own wisdom and their own learning, that they may get gain and grind upon the face of the poor.

And there are many churches built up which cause envyings, and strifes, and malice.

- 22 Futhi phezu kwalokho kukhona amaqembu ayimfihlo, ngisho nanjengasezikhathini zakudala, njengokwamaqembu kadeveli, ngokuba yena ungumqambi wazo zonke lezi zinto; yebo, umqambi wokubulala, kanye nemisebenzi yobumnyama; yebo, futhi ubahola ngentamo ngentambo encane, kuze kube ubabopha ngezintambo zakhe eziqinile ingunaphakade.
- 23 Ngokuba bhekani, bafowethu abathandekayo, ngithi kini iNkosi uNkulunkulu ayisebenzi ebumnyameni.
- 24 Ayenzi lutho olunye ngaphandle kokuthi kuyinzuzo emhlabeni; ngokuba iyawuthanda umhlaba, ngisho kangangoba ibeka phansi impilo yayo uqobo ukuze idonsele wonke umuntu kuyo. Ngalokho-ke, ayiyali namunye ukuthi angahlanganyeli ensindisweni yayo.
- 25 Bheka, ngabe iyamemeza yini kunoma ngubani ithi: Sukani kimi? Bheka, ngithi kini, Cha; kepha ithi: Wozani kimi nonke nina mikhawulo yomhlaba, thengani ubisi noju, ngaphandle kwemali nangaphandle kwentengo.
- 26 Bheka, ngabe kukhona yini ebayalile ukuthi basuke baphume emasinagogeni, noma baphume ezindlini zokukhonzela na? Bheka, ngithi kini, Cha.
- 27 Ngabe kukhona yini ebayalile yathi mabangahlanganyeli ensindisweni yayo na? Bheka ngithi kini, Cha; kepha iyinikeze mahhala kuwo wonke umuntu; futhi ibayalile abantu bayo ukuthi bavumise bonke abantu ukuthi baphenduke.
- 28 Bheka, ngabe kukhona yini iNkosi ebayalile ukuthi mabangahlanganyeli ebuhleni bayo na? Bheka ngithi kini, Cha; kepha bonke abantu banelungelo omunye ngokufanayo nomunye, futhi akukho namunye onqatshelwe.
- 29 Iyala ukuthi bungabi bikho ubuphristi- mbumbulu; ngokuba, bheka, ubuphristi- mbumbulu bungukuthi abantu bafundisa futhi bazibeke bona uqobo lwabo njengokukhanya emhlabeni, ukuze bathole inzuzo kanye nokudunyiswa ngumhlaba; kepha abayifuni inhlalakahle yeSiyoni.

And there are also secret combinations, even as in times of old, according to the combinations of the devil, for he is the founder of all these things; yea, the founder of murder, and works of darkness; yea, and he leadeth them by the neck with a flaxen cord, until he bindeth them with his strong cords forever.

For behold, my beloved brethren, I say unto you that the Lord God worketh not in darkness.

He doeth not anything save it be for the benefit of the world; for he loveth the world, even that he layeth down his own life that he may draw all men unto him. Wherefore, he commandeth none that they shall not partake of his salvation.

Behold, doth he cry unto any, saying: Depart from me? Behold, I say unto you, Nay; but he saith: Come unto me all ye ends of the earth, buy milk and honey, without money and without price.

Behold, hath he commanded any that they should depart out of the synagogues, or out of the houses of worship? Behold, I say unto you, Nay.

Hath he commanded any that they should not partake of his salvation? Behold I say unto you, Nay; but he hath given it free for all men; and he hath commanded his people that they should persuade all men to repentance.

Behold, hath the Lord commanded any that they should not partake of his goodness? Behold I say unto you, Nay; but all men are privileged the one like unto the other, and none are forbidden.

He commandeth that there shall be no priestcrafts; for, behold, priestcrafts are that men preach and set themselves up for a light unto the world, that they may get gain and praise of the world; but they seek not the welfare of Zion.

30 Bheka, iNkosi iyenqabele lento; ngalokho-ke, iNkosi uNkulunkulu inike umyalelo wokuthi bonke abantu babe nesihe, isihe okuwuthando. Futhi ngaphandle kokuthi babe nesihe abalutho. Ngalokho-ke, uma bengaba nesihe abayikuvumela osebenza eSiyoni abhubhe.

31 Kepha osebenza eSiyoni uyosebenzela iSiyoni; ngokuba uma esebenzela imali uyolahleka ngokomoya.

32 Futhi phezu kwalokho, iNkosi uNkulunkulu iyale ukuthi abantu bangabulali; bangaqambi amanga; bangebi; bangaliphathi igama leNkosi uNkulunkulu wabo ngeze; bangabi namona; bangabi nanzondo; bangabangi omunye nomunye; bangabenzi ubufebe; nokuthi bangenzi nakunye kwalezi zinto; ngokuba lowo owenza lokhu uyobhujiswa.

33 Ngokuba akukho nakunye kwalobu bubi obuvela eNkosini; ngokuba yona yenza lokho okuhle phakathi kwabantwana babantu; futhi ayenzi lutho ngaphandle kokuthi kube sobala kubo abantwana babantu; futhi imema bonke ukuthi beze kuyo futhi bahlanganyele ebuhleni bayo; futhi ayenqabeli namunye oza kuyo, omnyama nomhlophe, oboshiwe nokhululekile, owesilisa nowesifazane; futhi iyabakhumbula abahedeni; futhi bonke bayefana kuNkulunkulu, iJuda kanye noweZizwe.

Behold, the Lord hath forbidden this thing; wherefore, the Lord God hath given a commandment that all men should have charity, which charity is love. And except they should have charity they were nothing. Wherefore, if they should have charity they would not suffer the laborer in Zion to perish.

But the laborer in Zion shall labor for Zion; for if they labor for money they shall perish.

And again, the Lord God hath commanded that men should not murder; that they should not lie; that they should not steal; that they should not take the name of the Lord their God in vain; that they should not envy; that they should not have malice; that they should not contend one with another; that they should not commit whoredoms; and that they should do none of these things; for whoso doeth them shall perish.

For none of these iniquities come of the Lord; for he doeth that which is good among the children of men; and he doeth nothing save it be plain unto the children of men; and he inviteth them all to come unto him and partake of his goodness; and he denieth none that come unto him, black and white, bond and free, male and female; and he remembereth the heathen; and all are alike unto God, both Jew and Gentile.

2 Nefi 27

- 1 Kepha, bheka, ngezinsuku zokugcina, noma ngezinsuku zabeZizwe—yebo, bheka zonke izizwe zabeZizwe futhi ngokunjalo namaJuda, labo abayofika kulelizwe kanye nalabo abayobe bekwamanye amazwe, yebo, ngisho nakuwo wonke amazwe omhlaba, bheka, bayobe bedakwe wububi kanye nazo zonke izinhlobo zezinengiso—
- 2 Futhi uma lolo suku lufika bayovakashelwa yiNkosi yamaBandla, ngokuduma kanye nangokuzamazama komhlaba, kanye nangomsindo omkhulu, kanye nangesiphepho, kanye nangesivunguvungu, kanye nangelangabi lomlilo oqedayo.
- 3 Futhi zonke izizwe ezilwa neSiyoni, nalezo eziyicindezelayo, ziyoba njengephupho lombono wasebusuku; yebo, kuyoba kubo, ngisho nanjengokomuntu olambile ophuphayo, futhi bheka uyadla kepha uma evuka futhi umphefumulo wakhe awunalutho; noma njengomuntu owomile ophuphayo, futhi bheka uyaphuza kepha uma evuka futhi bheka uqulekile, futhi umphefumulo wakhe ulambile; yebo, siyokuba njalo-ke nesixuku sazo zonke izizwe ezilwa neNtaba iSiyoni.
- 4 Ngokuba bheka, nonke nina enenza ububi, yekani futhi nimangale, ngokuba niyoklabalasa, futhi nikhale; yebo, niyodakwa kepha hhayi ngewayini, niyontengezela kepha hhayi ngophuzo olunamandla.
- 5 Ngokuba bheka, iNkosi ithele phezu kwenu umoya wokuzumeka. Ngokuba bheka, nivale amehlo enu, futhi nenqabe abaphrofethi; futhi ababusi benu, kanye nababoni ibasibekele ngenxa yobubi benu obukhulu.
- 6 Futhi kuyokwenzeka ukuthi iNkosi uNkulunkulu iyoletha kini amazwi encwadi, futhi kuyokuba ngamazwi abo labo asebalala.
- 7 Futhi bheka incwadi iyovalwa; futhi encwadini kuyobe kukhona isambulo esivela kuNkulunkulu, kusukela ekuqaleni komhlaba kuya ekupheleni kwawo.
- 8 Ngalokho-ke, ngenxa yezinto ezivaliwe, lezo zinto ezivaliwe aziyikulethwa ngosuku lobubi nezinengiso zabantu. Ngalokho-ke incwadi iyogodlwa kubo.

2 Nephi 27

But, behold, in the last days, or in the days of the Gentiles—yea, behold all the nations of the Gentiles and also the Jews, both those who shall come upon this land and those who shall be upon other lands, yea, even upon all the lands of the earth, behold, they will be drunken with iniquity and all manner of abominations—

And when that day shall come they shall be visited of the Lord of Hosts, with thunder and with earthquake, and with a great noise, and with storm, and with tempest, and with the flame of devouring fire.

And all the nations that fight against Zion, and that distress her, shall be as a dream of a night vision; yea, it shall be unto them, even as unto a hungry man which dreameth, and behold he eateth but he awaketh and his soul is empty; or like unto a thirsty man which dreameth, and behold he drinketh but he awaketh and behold he is faint, and his soul hath appetite; yea, even so shall the multitude of all the nations be that fight against Mount Zion.

For behold, all ye that doeth iniquity, stay yourselves and wonder, for ye shall cry out, and cry; yea, ye shall be drunken but not with wine, ye shall stagger but not with strong drink.

For behold, the Lord hath poured out upon you the spirit of deep sleep. For behold, ye have closed your eyes, and ye have rejected the prophets; and your rulers, and the seers hath he covered because of your iniquity.

And it shall come to pass that the Lord God shall bring forth unto you the words of a book, and they shall be the words of them which have slumbered.

And behold the book shall be sealed; and in the book shall be a revelation from God, from the beginning of the world to the ending thereof.

Wherefore, because of the things which are sealed up, the things which are sealed shall not be delivered in the day of the wickedness and abominations of the people. Wherefore the book shall be kept from them.

- 9 Kepha incwadi iyonikwa indoda, futhi yona iyowahambisa amazwi alencwadi, okungamazwi alabo asebalala othulini, futhi iyowayisa komunye;
- 10 Kepha lawo mazwi avalelwe akayikuwahambisa, futhi akayikuyihambisa naleyoncwadi. Ngokuba leyoncwadi iyobe ivalwe ngamandla kaNkulunkulu, futhi isambulo esavalelwa siyogcinwa encwadini kuze kufike isikhathi seNkosi uqobo esifanele, ukuze avezwe; ngokuba bheka, embula zonke izinto kusukela ekusekelweni komhlaba kuze kube sekupheleni kwawo.
- 11 Futhi usuku luyeza lapho amazwi encwadi avalelwe eyofundwa phezu kwezicongo zendlu; futhi ayofundwa ngamandla kaKristu; futhi zonke izinto ziyokwambulelwa abantwana babantu ezake zaba khona phakathi kwabantwana babantu, futhi nalezo eziyokuba khona ngisho kuze kube sekupheleni komhlaba.
- 12 Ngalokho-ke, ngalolo suku ngesikhathi lencwadi ihanjiswa kuye lomuntu engikhulume ngaye, lencwadi iyofihlwa emehlweni omhlaba, ukuze kungabi bikho mehlo anoma ngubani ayoyibona ngaphandle kwalabofakazi abathathu abayoyibona, ngamandla kaNkulunkulu, ngaphandle kwakhe lowo incwadi eyoyiswa kuye; futhi labo bayofakaza ngobuqiniso bencwadi kanye nezinto ezikuyo.
- 13 Futhi akuyikuba bikho namunye oyoyibona, ngaphandle kwalabo abambalwa ngokwentando kaNkulunkulu, ukuze banikeze ubufakazi ngezwi lakhe kubantwana babantu; ngokuba iNkosi uNkulunkulu ishilo ukuthi amazwi abathembekileyo ayokhuluma kube sengathi aphuma kwabafuleyo.
- 14 Ngalokho-ke, iNkosi uNkulunkulu iyoqhubeka nokwambula amazwi encwadi; futhi ngomlomo wofakazi abaningi njengokubona kukuhle kuyo iyoliqinisekisa izwi layo; futhi maye kulowo owenqaba izwi likaNkulunkulu!

But the book shall be delivered unto a man, and he shall deliver the words of the book, which are the words of those who have slumbered in the dust, and he shall deliver these words unto another;

But the words which are sealed he shall not deliver, neither shall he deliver the book. For the book shall be sealed by the power of God, and the revelation which was sealed shall be kept in the book until the own due time of the Lord, that they may come forth; for behold, they reveal all things from the foundation of the world unto the end thereof.

And the day cometh that the words of the book which were sealed shall be read upon the house tops; and they shall be read by the power of Christ; and all things shall be revealed unto the children of men which ever have been among the children of men, and which ever will be even unto the end of the earth.

Wherefore, at that day when the book shall be delivered unto the man of whom I have spoken, the book shall be hid from the eyes of the world, that the eyes of none shall behold it save it be that three witnesses shall behold it, by the power of God, besides him to whom the book shall be delivered; and they shall testify to the truth of the book and the things therein.

And there is none other which shall view it, save it be a few according to the will of God, to bear testimony of his word unto the children of men; for the Lord God hath said that the words of the faithful should speak as if it were from the dead.

Wherefore, the Lord God will proceed to bring forth the words of the book; and in the mouth of as many witnesses as seemeth him good will he establish his word; and wo be unto him that rejecteth the word of God!

15 Kepha bheka, kuyokwenzeka ukuthi iNkosi uNkulunkulu iyothi kulowo eyomlethela lencwadi: Thatha lamazwi angavaliwe uwayise komunye, ukuze awabonise ofundileyo, athi: Funda lapha, ngiyakuncenga. Futhi ofundileyo uyokuthi: Letha lapha incwadi, ngizowafunda.

16 Manje, ngenxa yodumo lomhlaba kanye nokuthola inzuzo bayokusho lokhu, hhayi ngokufuna udumo lukaNkulunkulu.

17 Futhi indoda iyothi: Angikwazi ukuyiletha incwadi, ngokuba ivaliwe.

18 Emva kwalokho ofundile uyokuthi: Ngeke ngikwazi ukuyifunda.

19 Ngalokho-ke kuyokwenzeka, ukuthi iNkosi uNkulunkulu iyoyiyisa futhi incwadi kanye namazwi ayo kulowo ongafundile; indoda engafundile iyokuthi: Angifundile.

20 Emva kwalokho iNkosi uNkulunkulu iyokuthi kuye: Abafundile abayikuwafunda, ngokuba bawenqabile, futhi ngiyakwazi ukwenza umsebenzi wami; ngalokho-ke uyowafunda lawo mazwi engiyokunika wona.

21 Ungazithinti lezo zinto ezivaliweyo, ngokuba ngiyoziveza ngesikhathi sami esifanele; ngokuba ngizobakhombisa abantwana babantu ukuthi ngiyakwazi ukwenza umsebenzi wami.

22 Ngalokho-ke, uma usuwafundile amazwi engikuyale ngawo, futhi wabathola ofakazi engikuthembise bona, emva kwalokho uyoyivala incwadi futhi, bese uyifihla kimi, ukuze ngiwagcine lawo mazwi ongawafundanga, kuze kuthi ngibone kufanele ngokuhlakanipha kwami ukuthi ngizambule zonke izinto kubantwana babantu.

23 Ngokuba bheka, nginguNkulunkulu; futhi nginguNkulunkulu wezimangaliso; futhi ngizowukhombisa umhlaba ukuthi ngiyefana izolo, namuhla, futhi naphakade; futhi angisebenzi phakathi kwabantwana babantu ngaphandle kokuthi kube ngokokholo lwabo.

24 Futhi phezu kwalokho kuyokwenzeka ukuthi iNkosi iyokuthi kulowo oyofunda lawo mazwi ayoyiswa kuye:

But behold, it shall come to pass that the Lord God shall say unto him to whom he shall deliver the book: Take these words which are not sealed and deliver them to another, that he may show them unto the learned, saying: Read this, I pray thee. And the learned shall say: Bring hither the book, and I will read them.

And now, because of the glory of the world and to get gain will they say this, and not for the glory of God.

And the man shall say: I cannot bring the book, for it is sealed.

Then shall the learned say: I cannot read it.

Wherefore it shall come to pass, that the Lord God will deliver again the book and the words thereof to him that is not learned; and the man that is not learned shall say: I am not learned.

Then shall the Lord God say unto him: The learned shall not read them, for they have rejected them, and I am able to do mine own work; wherefore thou shalt read the words which I shall give unto thee.

Touch not the things which are sealed, for I will bring them forth in mine own due time; for I will show unto the children of men that I am able to do mine own work.

Wherefore, when thou hast read the words which I have commanded thee, and obtained the witnesses which I have promised unto thee, then shalt thou seal up the book again, and hide it up unto me, that I may preserve the words which thou hast not read, until I shall see fit in mine own wisdom to reveal all things unto the children of men.

For behold, I am God; and I am a God of miracles; and I will show unto the world that I am the same yesterday, today, and forever; and I work not among the children of men save it be according to their faith.

And again it shall come to pass that the Lord shall say unto him that shall read the words that shall be delivered him:

- 25 Ngokubona ukuthi lababantu basondela eduze nami ngemilomo yabo, futhi nangezindebe zabo bayangidumisa, kepha baziqhelisele kude izinhliziyi zabo kimi, futhi nokungesaba kwabo kufundiswa ngokomyalelo wabantu—
- 26 Ngakho-ke, ngizozhubeka nokwenza umsebenzi omangalisayo phakathi kwalaba bantu, yebo, umsebenzi omangalisayo nesimangaliso, ngokuba ukuhlakanipha kwabahlakaniphileyo nabafundileyo babo kuyoshabalala, nokwazi kwabanokuqonda babo kuyosithezwa.
- 27 Futhi maye kulabo abafuna ngokujula ukufihla amasu abo eNkosini! Futhi imisebenzi yabo isebumnyameni; futhi bathi: Ngubani osibonayo, futhi ngubani osaziyo na? Futhi phezu kwalokho bathi: Ngempela, ukuphendula kwakho izinto zibheke phansi kuyofaniswa njengobumba lombumbi. Kepha bheka, ngiyobakhombisa, kusho iNkosi yamaBandla, ukuthi ngiyayazi yonke imisebenzi yabo. Ngokuba ngabe umsebenzi uyokusho yini kulowo owenzileyo ukuthi, akangenzanga na? Noma lokho okubunjweyo kuyokusho yini kulowo okubumbileyo ukuthi wayengenakuqonda na?
- 28 Kepha bheka, kusho iNkosi yamaBandla: ngizobakhombisa abantwana babantu ukuthi kuseyisikhashana nje esincane kakhulu futhi iLebanoni iphendulwe ibe yinsimu enothile; futhi insimu enothile iyothathwa njengehlathi.
- 29 Futhi ngalo lolo suku izithuli ziyowezwa amazwi aleyo ncwadi, futhi amehlo ezimpumpu the ayobona ekufiphaleni nasebumnyameni.
- 30 Futhi abathobekile nabo bayokwanda, intokozo yabo iyokuba seNkosini, abampofu phakathi kwabantu bayojabula ngoNgcwele ka-Israyeli.
- 31 Ngokuba ngempela njengoba iNkosi iphila bayobona ukuthi lowo omubi wenziwe waba yize, futhi isedeleli sishisiwe, futhi bonke labo ababheke ububi basusiwe;
- 32 Ngokunjalo nalabo abenza umuntu abe yisoni ngezwi, futhi bambekele ugibe lowo obakhuzayo esangweni, futhi babuyisele abalungile eceleni njengento engelutho.

Forasmuch as this people draw near unto me with their mouth, and with their lips do honor me, but have removed their hearts far from me, and their fear towards me is taught by the precepts of men—

Therefore, I will proceed to do a marvelous work among this people, yea, a marvelous work and a wonder, for the wisdom of their wise and learned shall perish, and the understanding of their prudent shall be hid.

And wo unto them that seek deep to hide their counsel from the Lord! And their works are in the dark; and they say: Who seeth us, and who knoweth us? And they also say: Surely, your turning of things upside down shall be esteemed as the potter's clay. But behold, I will show unto them, saith the Lord of Hosts, that I know all their works. For shall the work say of him that made it, he made me not? Or shall the thing framed say of him that framed it, he had no understanding?

But behold, saith the Lord of Hosts: I will show unto the children of men that it is yet a very little while and Lebanon shall be turned into a fruitful field; and the fruitful field shall be esteemed as a forest.

And in that day shall the deaf hear the words of the book, and the eyes of the blind shall see out of obscurity and out of darkness.

And the meek also shall increase, and their joy shall be in the Lord, and the poor among men shall rejoice in the Holy One of Israel.

For assuredly as the Lord liveth they shall see that the terrible one is brought to naught, and the scorner is consumed, and all that watch for iniquity are cut off;

And they that make a man an offender for a word, and lay a snare for him that reproveth in the gate, and turn aside the just for a thing of naught.

33 Ngakho-ke, isho kanje iNkosi, eyahlenga u-Abrahama, mayelana nendlu kaJakobe: UJakobe manje akaseyikuba namahloni, noma ubuso bakhe manje buphaphatheke.

34 Kepha uma ebona abantwana bakhe, umsebenzi wezandla zami, phakathi kwakhe, bayolingcwelisa igama lami, futhi bamngcwelise oNgcwele kaJakobe, futhi bayomesaba uNkulunkulu ka-Israyeli.

35 Ngokunjalo nalabo abaduka ngokomoya bayoba nokuqonda, futhi labo abavungama bayoyifunda imfundiso.

Therefore, thus saith the Lord, who redeemed Abraham, concerning the house of Jacob: Jacob shall not now be ashamed, neither shall his face now wax pale.

But when he seeth his children, the work of my hands, in the midst of him, they shall sanctify my name, and sanctify the Holy One of Jacob, and shall fear the God of Israel.

They also that erred in spirit shall come to understanding, and they that murmured shall learn doctrine.

2 Nefi 28

- 1 Manje, bhekani, bafowethu, sengikhulumile kini, njengokuba uMoya ungiphoqile; ngalokho-ke, ngiyazi ukuthi lokhu kufanele ngempela kwenzeke.
- 2 Futhi izinto eziyobhalwa kuleyo ncwadi ziyoba ngeziyigugu elikhulu kubantwana babantu, futhi ikakhulukazi kuyo inzalo yethu, eyinsalela yendlu ka-Israyeli.
- 3 Ngokuba kuyokwenzeka ngalolo suku ukuthi amabandla akhiwe, kodwa hhayi eNkosini, lapho omunye eyothi komunye: Bheka, mina, yimi engingoweNkosi; futhi abanye bayothi: Mina, yimi engingoweNkosi; futhi wonke umuntu uyokusho kanjalo owakhe amabandla, kepha hhayi eNkosini—
- 4 Futhi ayobanga elinye nelinye; futhi abaphristi bawo bayobanga omunye nomunye, futhi bayofundisa ngokwemfundo yabo, futhi bawuphike uMoya oyiNgcwele, okuyiwona onikeza ukukhuluma.
- 5 Futhi baphika amandla kaNkulunkulu, oNgcwele ka-Israyeli; futhi bathi kubantu: Lalelani thina, nizwe umyalelo wethu; ngokuba bhekani akekho uNkulunkulu namuhla, ngokuba iNkosi noMkhululi isiwenzile umsebenzi wayo, futhi isinikeze amandla ayo kubantu;
- 6 Bhekani, lalalani umyalelo wami; uma beyokuthi kukhona isimangaliso esenzekile ngesandla seNkosi, ningakukholwa lokho; ngokuba ngalolusuku akayena uNkulunkulu wezimangaliso; usewenzile umsebenzi wakhe.
- 7 Yebo, futhi kuyoba khona abaningi abayothi: Dlana, phuza, futhi ujabule, ngokuba kusasa sizofa; futhi kuyo kuba kuhle kithi.
- 8 Futhi phezu kwalokho kuyoba khona abaningi abayothi: Dlana, phuza, futhi ujabule; nokho, mesabe uNkulunkulu—akayikukubeka cala ekwenzeni isono esincane; yebo, qamba amanga kancane, sizakala ngomunye ngenxa yamazwi akhe, mbela umakhelwane wakho umgodi; akukho bungozi kulokhu; futhi yenza zonke lezi zinto, ngokuba kusasa sizofa; futhi uma kungukuthi sinecala, uNkulunkulu uyosishaya ngemivimbo embalwa, ekugcineni siyosindiswa embusweni kaNkulunkulu.

2 Nephi 28

And now, behold, my brethren, I have spoken unto you, according as the Spirit hath constrained me; wherefore, I know that they must surely come to pass.

And the things which shall be written out of the book shall be of great worth unto the children of men, and especially unto our seed, which is a remnant of the house of Israel.

For it shall come to pass in that day that the churches which are built up, and not unto the Lord, when the one shall say unto the other: Behold, I, I am the Lord's; and the others shall say: I, I am the Lord's; and thus shall every one say that hath built up churches, and not unto the Lord—

And they shall contend one with another; and their priests shall contend one with another, and they shall teach with their learning, and deny the Holy Ghost, which giveth utterance.

And they deny the power of God, the Holy One of Israel; and they say unto the people: Hearken unto us, and hear ye our precept; for behold there is no God today, for the Lord and the Redeemer hath done his work, and he hath given his power unto men;

Behold, hearken ye unto my precept; if they shall say there is a miracle wrought by the hand of the Lord, believe it not; for this day he is not a God of miracles; he hath done his work.

Yea, and there shall be many which shall say: Eat, drink, and be merry, for tomorrow we die; and it shall be well with us.

And there shall also be many which shall say: Eat, drink, and be merry; nevertheless, fear God—he will justify in committing a little sin; yea, lie a little, take the advantage of one because of his words, dig a pit for thy neighbor; there is no harm in this; and do all these things, for tomorrow we die; and if it so be that we are guilty, God will beat us with a few stripes, and at last we shall be saved in the kingdom of God.

- 9 Yebo, futhi kuyoba khona abaningi abayofundisa ngalendlela, amanga kanye nangeze kanye nezimfundiso eziwubuwula, bayokhukhumala ezinhliziyweni zabo, bafune ngokujula ukufihla amasu abo eNkosini; futhi imisebenzi yabo iyoba sebumnyameni.
- 10 Futhi igazi labangcwele liyokhala emhlabathini ngokumelene nabo.
- 11 Yebo, bonke baphambukile endleleni; bangenwe yinkohlakalo.
- 12 Ngenxa yokuziqhenya, nangenxa yabafundisi bamanga, nemfundiso yamanga, amabandla abo angenwe yinkohlakalo, futhi amabandla abo aphakeme; ngenxa yokuziqhenya bakhukhumele.
- 13 Baphanga abampofu ngenxa yezindlu zabo ezingcwele ezinhle; baphanga abampofu ngenxa yezingubo zabo ezinhle; futhi bahlupha abamnene nabampofu ngenhliziyo, ngoba ekuziqhenyeni kwabo bakhukhumele.
- 14 Bagqoka izintamo ezilukhuni kanye namakhanda aphakeme; yebo, futhi ngenxa yokuziqhenya, nobubi, nezinengiso, nobufebe, bonke badukile ngaphandle kwabayingsosana, abangabalandeli baKristu abathobekile; nokho, bayaholwa, kuze kuthi ngezikhathi eziningi baphambuke ngenxa yokuthi bafundiswa ngemiyalo yabantu.
- 15 O abahlakaniphileyo, nabafundile, kanye nabacebile, abakhukhumele ekuziqhenyeni kwezinhliziywo zabo, kanye nabo bonke labo abashumayela izimfundiso zamanga, nabo bonke labo abenza ubufebe, futhi baphendukezele indlela eqondile yeNkosi, maye, maye, maye kubo, kusho iNkosi uNkulunkulu uSomandla, ngokuba bayophonswa phansi esihogweni!
- 16 Maye kubo labo ababuyisela eceleni abalungile njengento engelutho futhi bahlambalaze lokho okuhle, futhi nabathi kuyinto engenamsebenzi! Ngokuba usuku luyeza lapho iNkosi uNkulunkulu masinyane iyobahambela abantu basemhlabeni; futhi ngalolo suku lapho sebevuthwe ngokugcwele ebubini obukhulu bayofa.
- 17 Kepha bheka, uma abantu basemhlabeni bengaphenduka ebubini babo nasezinengisweni abayikubhujiswa, kusho iNkosi yamaBandla.

Yea, and there shall be many which shall teach after this manner, false and vain and foolish doctrines, and shall be puffed up in their hearts, and shall seek deep to hide their counsels from the Lord; and their works shall be in the dark.

And the blood of the saints shall cry from the ground against them.

Yea, they have all gone out of the way; they have become corrupted.

Because of pride, and because of false teachers, and false doctrine, their churches have become corrupted, and their churches are lifted up; because of pride they are puffed up.

They rob the poor because of their fine sanctuaries; they rob the poor because of their fine clothing; and they persecute the meek and the poor in heart, because in their pride they are puffed up.

They wear stiff necks and high heads; yea, and because of pride, and wickedness, and abominations, and whoredoms, they have all gone astray save it be a few, who are the humble followers of Christ; nevertheless, they are led, that in many instances they do err because they are taught by the precepts of men.

O the wise, and the learned, and the rich, that are puffed up in the pride of their hearts, and all those who preach false doctrines, and all those who commit whoredoms, and pervert the right way of the Lord, wo, wo, wo be unto them, saith the Lord God Almighty, for they shall be thrust down to hell!

Wo unto them that turn aside the just for a thing of naught and revile against that which is good, and say that it is of no worth! For the day shall come that the Lord God will speedily visit the inhabitants of the earth; and in that day that they are fully ripe in iniquity they shall perish.

But behold, if the inhabitants of the earth shall repent of their wickedness and abominations they shall not be destroyed, saith the Lord of Hosts.

18 Kepha bheka, lelo bandla elikhulu nelinengekile, isifebe somhlaba wonke, kufanele liwele emhlabeni, futhi kuyoba kukhulu ukuwa kwalo.

19 Ngokuba umbuso kadeveli kufanele uzanyazanyiswe, futhi labo abangabawo kufanele ukuthi baphehlelewe ekuphendukeni, noma udeveli uzobabamba ngamaketanga akhe aphakade, futhi baphehlelewe entukuthelweni futhi balahleke ngokomoya;

20 Ngokuba bheka, ngalolo suku uyodlanga ezinhliziyweni zabantwana babantu, futhi abaphehlele ukuze bathukuthelele lokho okuhle.

21 Futhi abanye uyobathulisa, futhi elokhu ebakhohlisa ukuthi balondeke ngokwasenyameni, ukuze bathi: Konke kulungile eSiyoni; yebo, iSiyoni iyaphumelela, konke kuhle—futhi ngaleyo ndlela udeveli uyoyilutha imiphefumulo yabo, futhi abahole ngobuqili abayise phansi esihogweni.

22 Futhi bheka, abanye uyabakhohlisa, futhi abatshele ukuthi asikho isihogo; futhi uti kubo: Mina angisiye udeveli, ngokuba akekho—futhi ubanyenyezela kanje ezindlebeni zabo, aze ababambe ngamaketanga akhe asabekayo, abayise lapho kungasekho khona ukukhululwa.

23 Yebo, babanjwa ngokufa, kanye nangesihogo; futhi ukufa, kanye nesihogo, kanye nodeveli, futhi bonke labo ababanjwe ngazo lezi zinto kumele bame phambi kwesihlalo sobukhosi sikaNkulunkulu, futhi bahlulelwe ngokwemisebenzi yabo, ukusuka lapho sekufanele baye endaweni elungiselelwe bona, ngisho ichibi lomlilo kanye nesibabuli, okuwukuhlupheka okungenakuphela.

24 Ngakho-ke, maye kulowo okhululekile eSiyoni!

25 Maye kulowo omemeza ethi: Konke kulungile!

26 Yebo, maye kulowo olalela imiyalelo yabantu, futhi aphike amandla kaNkulunkulu, nesipho sikaMoya oyiNgcwele!

27 Yebo, maye kulowo othi: Sesithole okwanele, futhi asisakudingi okunye!

28 Futhi ukuphetha, maye kubo bonke labo abathuthumelayo, futhi abathukuthele ngenxa yeqiniso likaNkulunkulu! Ngokuba bheka, lowo owakhe phezu kwedwala ulemukela ngokuthokoza; futhi lowo owakhe phezu kwesisekelo esiyisihlabathi uyathuthumela funa awe.

But behold, that great and abominable church, the whore of all the earth, must tumble to the earth, and great must be the fall thereof.

For the kingdom of the devil must shake, and they which belong to it must needs be stirred up unto repentance, or the devil will grasp them with his everlasting chains, and they be stirred up to anger, and perish;

For behold, at that day shall he rage in the hearts of the children of men, and stir them up to anger against that which is good.

And others will he pacify, and lull them away into carnal security, that they will say: All is well in Zion; yea, Zion prospereth, all is well—and thus the devil cheateth their souls, and leadeth them away carefully down to hell.

And behold, others he flattereth away, and telleth them there is no hell; and he saith unto them: I am no devil, for there is none—and thus he whispereth in their ears, until he grasps them with his awful chains, from whence there is no deliverance.

Yea, they are grasped with death, and hell; and death, and hell, and the devil, and all that have been seized therewith must stand before the throne of God, and be judged according to their works, from whence they must go into the place prepared for them, even a lake of fire and brimstone, which is endless torment.

Therefore, wo be unto him that is at ease in Zion!

Wo be unto him that crieth: All is well!

Yea, wo be unto him that hearkeneth unto the precepts of men, and denieth the power of God, and the gift of the Holy Ghost!

Yea, wo be unto him that saith: We have received, and we need no more!

And in fine, wo unto all those who tremble, and are angry because of the truth of God! For behold, he that is built upon the rock receiveth it with gladness; and he that is built upon a sandy foundation trembleth lest he shall fall.

- 29 Maye kulowo oyokuthi: Sesilitholile izwi
likaNkulunkulu, futhi asisalidingi elinye izwi
likaNkulunkulu, ngokuba sanele!
- 30 Ngokuba bheka, isho kanje iNkosi uNkulunkulu:
Ngiyobanika abantwana babantu umugqa phezu
komunye umugqa, umyalelo phezu komunye
umyalelo, ingcosana lapha nengcosana laphaya;
futhi babusisiwe labo abalalela imiyalelo yami, futhi
baboleke indlebe ekuqondiseni kwami, ngokuba
bayofunda ukuhlakanipha; ngokuba kulowo
omukelayo ngiyomnika okunye; futhi kulabo
abayothi, Sesanele, kubo kuyothathwa ngisho
nalokho abanakho.
- 31 Uqalekisiwe lowo obeka ithemba lakhe kumuntu,
noma enze inyama ibe yingalo yakhe, noma olalela
imiyalelo yabantu, ngaphandle uma imiyalelo yabo
inikwa ngamandla kaMoya oyiNgcwele.
- 32 Maye kubo abeZizwe, kusho iNkosi uNkulunkulu
wamaBandla! Ngokuba naphezu kokuba ingalo
yami ngiyoyelulela kubo usuku nosuku,
bayongiphika; nokho, ngiyokuba nesihawu kubo,
kusho iNkosi uNkulunkulu, uma beyophenduka
futhi beze kimi; ngokuba ingalo yami yeluliwe lonke
usuku, kusho iNkosi uNkulunkulu wamaBandla.

Wo be unto him that shall say: We have received
the word of God, and we need no more of the word
of God, for we have enough!

For behold, thus saith the Lord God: I will give
unto the children of men line upon line, precept
upon precept, here a little and there a little; and
blessed are those who hearken unto my precepts,
and lend an ear unto my counsel, for they shall learn
wisdom; for unto him that receiveth I will give more;
and from them that shall say, We have enough, from
them shall be taken away even that which they have.

Cursed is he that putteth his trust in man, or
maketh flesh his arm, or shall hearken unto the pre-
cepts of men, save their precepts shall be given by
the power of the Holy Ghost.

Wo be unto the Gentiles, saith the Lord God of
Hosts! For notwithstanding I shall lengthen out
mine arm unto them from day to day, they will deny
me; nevertheless, I will be merciful unto them, saith
the Lord God, if they will repent and come unto me;
for mine arm is lengthened out all the day long, saith
the Lord God of Hosts.

2 Nefi 29

- 1 Kepha bheka, kuyoba khona abaningi—ngalolo suku lapho sengiqhubeka nokwenza umsebenzi omangalisayo phakathi kwabo, ukuze ngikhumbule izivumelwano zami engizenzile kubantwana babantu, ukuze ngelule isandla sami futhi okwesibili ukubuyisela abantu bami, okungabendlu ka-Israyeli;
- 2 Futhi phezu kwalokho, ukuze ngikhumbule izethembiso engazenza kuwe, Nefi, futhi ngokunjalo nakuyihlo, ukuthi ngiyoyikhumbula inzalo yenu; futhi nokuthi amazwi enzalo yenu ayovela ephuma emlonyeni wami eya kuyo inzalo yenu; futhi amazwi ami ayohamba ngamandla aye nasemikhawulweni yomhlaba, abe yisibonakaliso kubantu bami, okungabendlu ka-Israyeli;
- 3 Futhi ngenxa yokuthi amazwi ami ayohamba ngamandla—abaningi beZizwe bayothi: IBhayibheli! IBhayibheli! Sinalo iBhayibheli, futhi angeke kube khona elinye iBhayibheli.
- 4 Kepha isho kanje iNkosi uNkulunkulu: O ziwula, bayoba nalo iBhayibheli; futhi liyovela kuwo amaJuda, abantu bami bakudala besivumelwano. Futhi ngabe bawabonga ngani amaJuda ngalelo Bhayibheli abalithola kuwo na? Yebo, ngabe abeZizwe baqondeni na? Ngabe bayazikhumbula yini izinhlopheko, nemisebenzi, nemizamo emikhulu yamaJuda, kanye nenkuthalo yawo kimi, ekuletheni insindiso kwabeZizwe na?
- 5 O nina beZizwe, nike nawakhumbula amaJuda, abantu bami bakudala besivumelwano na? Cha; kepha niwaqalekisile, futhi nawazonda, futhi anizange nifune ukuwabuyisa. Kepha bhekani, ngiyozibuyisa zonke lezi zinto phezu kwamakhanda enu uqobo; ngokuba mina Nkosi angibakhohliwe abantu bami.
- 6 Wena siwula, oyokuthi: IBhayibheli, thina sinalo iBhayibheli, asilidingi elinye iBhayibheli. Ngabe nalithola yini iBhayibheli ngaphandle kokuthi kwaba ngenxa yamaJuda na?

2 Nephi 29

But behold, there shall be many—at that day when I shall proceed to do a marvelous work among them, that I may remember my covenants which I have made unto the children of men, that I may set my hand again the second time to recover my people, which are of the house of Israel;

And also, that I may remember the promises which I have made unto thee, Nephi, and also unto thy father, that I would remember your seed; and that the words of your seed should proceed forth out of my mouth unto your seed; and my words shall hiss forth unto the ends of the earth, for a standard unto my people, which are of the house of Israel;

And because my words shall hiss forth—many of the Gentiles shall say: A Bible! A Bible! We have got a Bible, and there cannot be any more Bible.

But thus saith the Lord God: O fools, they shall have a Bible; and it shall proceed forth from the Jews, mine ancient covenant people. And what thank they the Jews for the Bible which they receive from them? Yea, what do the Gentiles mean? Do they remember the travails, and the labors, and the pains of the Jews, and their diligence unto me, in bringing forth salvation unto the Gentiles?

O ye Gentiles, have ye remembered the Jews, mine ancient covenant people? Nay; but ye have cursed them, and have hated them, and have not sought to recover them. But behold, I will return all these things upon your own heads; for I the Lord have not forgotten my people.

Thou fool, that shall say: A Bible, we have got a Bible, and we need no more Bible. Have ye obtained a Bible save it were by the Jews?

- 7 Anazi yini ukuthi kunezizwe eziningi kunesisodwa na? Anazi yini ukuthi Mina, Nkosi Nkulunkulu wenu, ngibadalile bonke abantu, futhi nokuthi ngiyabakhumbula labo abaseziqhingini zolwandle; futhi nokuthi ngibusa emazulwini phezulu nasemhlabeni phansi; futhi ngiletha izwi lami kubantwana babantu, yebo, ngisho naphezu kwazo zonke izizwe zomhlaba na?
- 8 Ngalokho-ke nivungamelani, ngenxa yokuthi niyothola okuningi ngezwi lami na? Anazi yini ukuthi ubufakazi bezizwe ezimbili bungubufakazi kini bokuthi mina nginguNkulunkulu, nokuthi ngikhumbula isizwe esisodwa njengesinye na? Ngalokho-ke, ngikhuluma amazwi afanayo kwesinye isizwe njengakwesinye. Futhi uma izizwe ezimbili ziyoba khona ndawonye nobufakazi bezizwe ezimbili buyoba khona ndawonye futhi.
- 9 Futhi ngikwenza lokhu ukuze ngikhombise kwabaningi ukuthi ngiyafana izolo, namuhla, naphakade; futhi nokuthi ngikhuluma amazwi ami njengokuthanda kwami. Futhi ngenxa yokuthi ngikhulume izwi elilodwa akufanele nicabange ukuthi ngeke ngisalikhuluma elinye; ngokuba umsebenzi wami awukakapheli; noma ngeke uphele kuze kube sekupheleni komuntu, noma kusukela kuleso sikhathi kuyaphambili ingunaphakade.
- 10 Ngalokho-ke, ngenxa yokuthi ninalo iBhayibheli akufanele nicabange ukuthi liqukethe wonke amazwi ami; noma nicabange ukuthi angizange ngenze okunye okuningi ukuthi kubhalwe.
- 11 Ngokuba ngiyala bonke abantu, empumalanga nasentshonalanga, enyakatho, naseningizimu, kanye naseziqhingini zolwandle, ukuthi bawabhale amazwi engiwakhuluma kubo; ngokuba ezincwadini eziyobhalwa ngiyowehlulela umhlaba, wonke umuntu ngokwemisebenzi yakhe, ngokwalokho okubhaliwe.
- 12 Ngokuba bheka, ngiyokhuluma kumaJuda futhi ayokubhala lokho; futhi ngokunjalo ngiyokhuluma kumaNefi futhi nawo ayokubhala lokho; futhi ngokunjalo ngiyokhuluma kwezinye izizwana zendlu ka-Israyeli, engiziholele kude; futhi nazo ziyokubhala lokho; futhi ngokunjalo ngiyokhuluma kuzo zonke izizwe zomhlaba futhi nazo ziyokubhala lokho.

Know ye not that there are more nations than one? Know ye not that I, the Lord your God, have created all men, and that I remember those who are upon the isles of the sea; and that I rule in the heavens above and in the earth beneath; and I bring forth my word unto the children of men, yea, even upon all the nations of the earth?

Wherefore murmur ye, because that ye shall receive more of my word? Know ye not that the testimony of two nations is a witness unto you that I am God, that I remember one nation like unto another? Wherefore, I speak the same words unto one nation like unto another. And when the two nations shall run together the testimony of the two nations shall run together also.

And I do this that I may prove unto many that I am the same yesterday, today, and forever; and that I speak forth my words according to mine own pleasure. And because that I have spoken one word ye need not suppose that I cannot speak another; for my work is not yet finished; neither shall it be until the end of man, neither from that time henceforth and forever.

Wherefore, because that ye have a Bible ye need not suppose that it contains all my words; neither need ye suppose that I have not caused more to be written.

For I command all men, both in the east and in the west, and in the north, and in the south, and in the islands of the sea, that they shall write the words which I speak unto them; for out of the books which shall be written I will judge the world, every man according to their works, according to that which is written.

For behold, I shall speak unto the Jews and they shall write it; and I shall also speak unto the Nephites and they shall write it; and I shall also speak unto the other tribes of the house of Israel, which I have led away, and they shall write it; and I shall also speak unto all nations of the earth and they shall write it.

13 Futhi kuyokwenzeka ukuthi amaJuda ayokuba namazwi amaNefi, futhi namaNefi ayokuba namazwi amaJuda; futhi amaNefi kanye namaJuda ayokuba namazwi ezizwana ezilahlekile zika-Israyeli; futhi izizwana ezilahlekile zika-Israyeli ziyokuba namazwi amaNefi kanye nawamaJuda.

14 Futhi kuyokwenzeka ukuthi abantu bami, okungabendlu ka-Israyeli, bayoqoqelwa ekhaya emazweni okungawabo; futhi nezwi lami ngokunjalo liyohlanganiswa libe linye. Futhi ngiyobakhombisa labo abalwa nezwi lami kanye nabantu bami, okungabendlu ka-Israyeli, ukuthi nginguNkulunkulu, futhi nokuthi ngavumelana no-Abrahama ukuthi ngiyoyikhumbula inzalo yakhe ingunaphakade.

And it shall come to pass that the Jews shall have the words of the Nephites, and the Nephites shall have the words of the Jews; and the Nephites and the Jews shall have the words of the lost tribes of Israel; and the lost tribes of Israel shall have the words of the Nephites and the Jews.

And it shall come to pass that my people, which are of the house of Israel, shall be gathered home unto the lands of their possessions; and my word also shall be gathered in one. And I will show unto them that fight against my word and against my people, who are of the house of Israel, that I am God, and that I covenanted with Abraham that I would remember his seed forever.

2 Nefi 30

- 1 Manje bhekani, bafowethu abathandekayo, ngizokhuluma kini; ngokuba mina, Nefi, anginakuvuma ukuthi nicabange ukuthi nilunge kakhulu kunalokho abeZizwe abayoba yikho. Ngokuba bhekani, ngaphandle kokuthi nigcine imiyalelo kaNkulunkulu nonke ngokufanayo niyolahleka; futhi ngenxa yamazwi akhulunyiwe akudingi nicabange ukuthi abeZizwe babhujisiwe baphela nya.
- 2 Ngokuba bhekani, ngithi kini ngangobuningi babeZizwe abayophenduka bayokuba ngabantu besivumelwano beNkosi; futhi ngobuningi bamaJuda abangeyukuphenduka bayolahlwa; ngokuba iNkosi ayenzi sivumelwano namunye ngaphandle kwalabo abaphendukayo futhi bakholwe kuyo iNdodana yayo, engoNgcwele ka-Israyeli.
- 3 Manje, sengizophrofa ikakhulukazi mayelana namaJuda kanye nabeZizwe. Ngokuba emva kokuba incwadi engikhulume ngayo iyovela, futhi ibhalelwe abeZizwe, futhi iphinde ivalelwe eNkosini, kuyoba khona abaningi abayowakholwa lawo mazwi abhaliwe; futhi bayowathatha bawayise kuyo insalela yenzalo yethu.
- 4 Futhi emva kwalokho insalela yenzalo yethu iyokwazi mayelana nathi, ukuthi saphuma kanjani eJerusalema, futhi nokuthi yona iwuzalo lwamaJuda.
- 5 Futhi ivangeli likaJesu Kristu liyomenyezelwa phakathi kwabo; ngalokho-ke, bayobuyiselwa olwazini loyise, futhi ngokunjalo nasolwazini lukaJesu Kristu, owayekhona phakathi koyise.
- 6 Futhi emva kwalokho bayothokoza; ngokuba bayokwazi ukuthi kuyisibusiso kubo esivele esandleni sikaNkulunkulu; futhi izingqweqwe zabo zobumnyama ziyiqala ukuwa emehlweni abo; futhi eziningi izizukulwane aziyikudlula phakathi kwabo, ngaphandle kokuthi bayoba ngabantu abamsulwa futhi nabathandekayo.

2 Nephi 30

And now behold, my beloved brethren, I would speak unto you; for I, Nephi, would not suffer that ye should suppose that ye are more righteous than the Gentiles shall be. For behold, except ye shall keep the commandments of God ye shall all likewise perish; and because of the words which have been spoken ye need not suppose that the Gentiles are utterly destroyed.

For behold, I say unto you that as many of the Gentiles as will repent are the covenant people of the Lord; and as many of the Jews as will not repent shall be cast off; for the Lord covenanteth with none save it be with them that repent and believe in his Son, who is the Holy One of Israel.

And now, I would prophesy somewhat more concerning the Jews and the Gentiles. For after the book of which I have spoken shall come forth, and be written unto the Gentiles, and sealed up again unto the Lord, there shall be many which shall believe the words which are written; and they shall carry them forth unto the remnant of our seed.

And then shall the remnant of our seed know concerning us, how that we came out from Jerusalem, and that they are descendants of the Jews.

And the gospel of Jesus Christ shall be declared among them; wherefore, they shall be restored unto the knowledge of their fathers, and also to the knowledge of Jesus Christ, which was had among their fathers.

And then shall they rejoice; for they shall know that it is a blessing unto them from the hand of God; and their scales of darkness shall begin to fall from their eyes; and many generations shall not pass away among them, save they shall be a pure and a delightful people.

- 7 Futhi kuyokwenzeka ukuthi amaJuda ahlakazekile nawo ayoqala ukukholwa kuKristu; futhi ayoqala ukubuthana phezu kobuso balelizwe; futhi ngangobuningi balabo abayokholwa kuKristu nabo bayokuba ngabantu abathandekayo.
- 8 Futhi kuyokwenzeka ukuthi iNkosi uNkulunkulu iyowuqala umsebenzi wayo phakathi kwazo zonke izizwe, imindeni, izilimi, nakubantu, ukuletha ukubuyiselwa kwabantu bayo emhlabeni.
- 9 Futhi ngokulunga iNkosi uNkulunkulu iyobahlulela abampofu, futhi isole ngokulingana abathobileyo bomhlaba. Futhi iyowushaya umhlaba ngenduku yomlomo wayo; nangomphefumulo wezindebe zayo iyobabulala ababi.
- 10 Ngokuba isikhathi siyeza masinyane lapho iNkosi uNkulunkulu iyokwenza ukwahlukana okukhulu phakathi kwabantu, futhi ababi iyobabhuhisa; futhi iyobasindisa abantu bayo, yebo, ngisho noma ngabe kungukuthi kufanele ibhubhise ababi ngomlilo.
- 11 Futhi ukulunga kuyoba yibhande lezinkalo zayo, nokuthembeka yibhande lamanyonga ayo.
- 12 Futhi ngaleso sikhathi impisi iyohlala nemvu; futhi ingwe iyolala phansi nomntwana, kanye nenkonyane, kanye nomntwana webhubesi, kanye nokukhuluphalisiweyo, ndawonye; futhi ingane encane iyozihola.
- 13 Inkomazi kanye nebhele kuyoklaba; abancane bazo bayolala phansi ndawonye; futhi ibhubesi liyodla utshani njengenkabi.
- 14 Umntwana oncelayo uyodlala emgodini webululu, futhi umntwana olunyuliweyo uyofaka isandla sakhe emhumeni kamantshingeyana.
- 15 Abayikulimaza noma babhubhise kuyo yonke intaba yami engcwele; ngokuba umhlaba uyogcwala ulwazi lweNkosi njengamanzi emboze ulwandle.
- 16 Ngalokho-ke, izinto zezizwe zonke ziyokwembulwa; yebo, zonke izinto ziyokwembulwa kubantwana babantu.
- 17 Akukho lutho oluyimfihlo ngaphandle kokuthi luyovezwa; akukho msebenzi wobumnyama ngaphandle kokuthi uyokwenziwa ubonakale ekukhanyeni; futhi akukho lutho oluboshwe emhlabeni ngaphandle kokuthi luyokhululwa.

And it shall come to pass that the Jews which are scattered also shall begin to believe in Christ; and they shall begin to gather in upon the face of the land; and as many as shall believe in Christ shall also become a delightsome people.

And it shall come to pass that the Lord God shall commence his work among all nations, kindreds, tongues, and people, to bring about the restoration of his people upon the earth.

And with righteousness shall the Lord God judge the poor, and reprove with equity for the meek of the earth. And he shall smite the earth with the rod of his mouth; and with the breath of his lips shall he slay the wicked.

For the time speedily cometh that the Lord God shall cause a great division among the people, and the wicked will he destroy; and he will spare his people, yea, even if it so be that he must destroy the wicked by fire.

And righteousness shall be the girdle of his loins, and faithfulness the girdle of his reins.

And then shall the wolf dwell with the lamb; and the leopard shall lie down with the kid, and the calf, and the young lion, and the fatling, together; and a little child shall lead them.

And the cow and the bear shall feed; their young ones shall lie down together; and the lion shall eat straw like the ox.

And the sucking child shall play on the hole of the asp, and the weaned child shall put his hand on the cockatrice's den.

They shall not hurt nor destroy in all my holy mountain; for the earth shall be full of the knowledge of the Lord as the waters cover the sea.

Wherefore, the things of all nations shall be made known; yea, all things shall be made known unto the children of men.

There is nothing which is secret save it shall be revealed; there is no work of darkness save it shall be made manifest in the light; and there is nothing which is sealed upon the earth save it shall be loosed.

18 Ngalokho-ke, zonke izinto ezavezelwa abantwana babantu kuyokuthi ngalolo suku zambulwe; futhi uSathane akaseyikuba namandla phezu kwezinhliziyi zabantwana babantu, isikhathi eside. Manje, bafowethu abathandekayo, sengenza isiphetho senkulumo yami.

Wherefore, all things which have been revealed unto the children of men shall at that day be revealed; and Satan shall have power over the hearts of the children of men no more, for a long time. And now, my beloved brethren, I make an end of my sayings.

2 Nefi 31

- 1 Manje mina, Nefi, ngenza isiphetho sokuprofetha kwami kini, bafowethu abathandekayo. Futhi ngeke ngisabhala ngaphandle kwezinto ezimbalwa nje, engaziyo ukuthi kufanele nakanjani zenzeke; futhi ngeke ngisabhala ngaphandle kwamagama ambalwa omfowethu uJakobe.
- 2 Ngalokho-ke, izinto engizibhalile ziyanganelisa, ngaphandle nje kwamazwi ambalwa okufanele ngiwakhulume mayelana nemfundiso kaKristu; ngalokho-ke, ngizokhuluma kini ngokusobala, ngokusobala kokuphrofetha kwami.
- 3 Ngokuba umphefumulo wami uyathokoza ngokusobala; ngokuba iNkosi uNkulunkulu isebenza ngalendlela phakathi kwabantwana babantu. Ngokuba iNkosi uNkulunkulu inika ukukhanya kwabanokuqonda; ngokuba ikhuluma kubantu ngokolimi lwabo, ngokuqonda kwabo.
- 4 Ngalokho-ke, ngifuna ukuthi nikhumbule ukuthi ngikhulumile kini ngokuphathelene nalowo mphrofethi lowo iNkosi eyangikhombisa yena, oyobhabhadisa iMvana kaNkulunkulu, eyosusa izono zomhlaba.
- 5 Manje, uma iMvana kaNkulunkulu, yona ingcwele, inesidingo sokubhabhadiswa ngamanzi, ukugcwalisa konke ukulunga, O pho, sikhulu kangakanani isidingo sethu, sibe singekho ngcwele, sokuthi sibhabhadiswe, yebo, ngisho nangamanzi!
- 6 Manje, ngizonibuza, bafowethu abathandekayo, ukuthi kwenzeka kanjani ukuthi iMvana kaNkulunkulu igcwalise konke ukulunga ngokubhabhadiswa ngamanzi na?
- 7 Anazi yini ukuthi yayingcwele na? Kepha naphezu kokuthi ingcwele, yakhombisa kubantwana babantu ukuthi, ngokwasenyameni iyazithoba phambi kukaBaba, futhi iyafakaza kuBaba ukuthi iyomlalela ekugcineni imiyalelo yakhe.
- 8 Ngalokho-ke, emva kokuba seyibhabhadiswe ngamanzi uMoya oyiNgcwele wehlela phezu kwayo unjengesimo sejuba.

2 Nephi 31

And now I, Nephi, make an end of my prophesying unto you, my beloved brethren. And I cannot write but a few things, which I know must surely come to pass; neither can I write but a few of the words of my brother Jacob.

Wherefore, the things which I have written sufficient me, save it be a few words which I must speak concerning the doctrine of Christ; wherefore, I shall speak unto you plainly, according to the plainness of my prophesying.

For my soul delighteth in plainness; for after this manner doth the Lord God work among the children of men. For the Lord God giveth light unto the understanding; for he speaketh unto men according to their language, unto their understanding.

Wherefore, I would that ye should remember that I have spoken unto you concerning that prophet which the Lord showed unto me, that should baptize the Lamb of God, which should take away the sins of the world.

And now, if the Lamb of God, he being holy, should have need to be baptized by water, to fulfil all righteousness, O then, how much more need have we, being unholy, to be baptized, yea, even by water!

And now, I would ask of you, my beloved brethren, wherein the Lamb of God did fulfil all righteousness in being baptized by water?

Know ye not that he was holy? But notwithstanding he being holy, he showeth unto the children of men that, according to the flesh he humbleth himself before the Father, and witnesseth unto the Father that he would be obedient unto him in keeping his commandments.

Wherefore, after he was baptized with water the Holy Ghost descended upon him in the form of a dove.

- 9 Futhi phezu kwalokho, kukhombisa kubantwana babantu ukuba ngumncingo kwendlela, kanye nobuncane besango, okufanele bangene ngalo, yona isisenzile isibonelo phambi kwabo.
- 10 Futhi yathi kubantwana babantu: Ngilandeleni. Ngalokho-ke, bafowethu abathandekayo, singamlandela yini uJesu ngaphandle kokuthi sizimisele ukuthi sigcine imiyalelo kaBaba na?
- 11 Futhi uBaba wathi: Phendukani, phendukani, futhi nibhabhadiswe egameni leNdodana yami eThandekayo.
- 12 Futhi phezu kwalokho, izwi leNdodana lafika kimi, lithi: Lowo obhabhadiswe egameni lami, uBaba uyomnika uMoya oyiNgcwele, njengami; ngalokho-ke, ngilandeleni, futhi nenze izinto enibone ngizenza.
- 13 Ngalokho-ke, bafowethu abathandekayo, ngiyazi ukuthi uma niyolandela iNdodana, ngenhloso egcwele enhliziyweni, ningabi nakuzenzisa kanye nankohliso phambi kukaNkulunkulu, kepha ngenhloso yangempela, niphenduka ezonweni zenu, nifakaza kuBaba ukuthi nizimisele ukubizwa ngegama likaKristu, ngombhabhadiso—yebo, ngokulandela iNkosi yenu kanye nomSindisi wenu nehlele phansi emanzini, njengokwezwi lakhe, bhekani, emva kwalokho niyophiwa uMoya oyiNgcwele; yebo, emva kwalokho kuza umbhabhadiso womlilo kanye nokaMoya oyiNgcwele; futhi ngaleso sikhathi ningakhuluma ngolimi lwezingelosi, futhi nimemeze indumiso koNgcwele ka-Israyeli.
- 14 Kepha, bhekani, bafowethu abathandekayo, njengoba lamagama alandelayo ekhombisa kweza izwi leNdodana kimi, lithi: Emva kokuba seniphendukile ezonweni zenu, nafakaza kuBaba ukuthi nizimisele ukugcina imiyalelo yami, ngombhabhadiso wamanzi, futhi nezwa umbhabhadiso womlilo kanye nokaMoya oyiNgcwele, futhi senikwazi ukukhuluma ngolimi olusha, yebo, ngisho nangolimi lwezingelosi, futhi emva kwalokhu ningiphike, bekuyoba ngcono kini ukuthi beningangazanga.

And again, it showeth unto the children of men the straitness of the path, and the narrowness of the gate, by which they should enter, he having set the example before them.

And he said unto the children of men: Follow thou me. Wherefore, my beloved brethren, can we follow Jesus save we shall be willing to keep the commandments of the Father?

And the Father said: Repent ye, repent ye, and be baptized in the name of my Beloved Son.

And also, the voice of the Son came unto me, saying: He that is baptized in my name, to him will the Father give the Holy Ghost, like unto me; wherefore, follow me, and do the things which ye have seen me do.

Wherefore, my beloved brethren, I know that if ye shall follow the Son, with full purpose of heart, acting no hypocrisy and no deception before God, but with real intent, repenting of your sins, witnessing unto the Father that ye are willing to take upon you the name of Christ, by baptism—yea, by following your Lord and your Savior down into the water, according to his word, behold, then shall ye receive the Holy Ghost; yea, then cometh the baptism of fire and of the Holy Ghost; and then can ye speak with the tongue of angels, and shout praises unto the Holy One of Israel.

But, behold, my beloved brethren, thus came the voice of the Son unto me, saying: After ye have repented of your sins, and witnessed unto the Father that ye are willing to keep my commandments, by the baptism of water, and have received the baptism of fire and of the Holy Ghost, and can speak with a new tongue, yea, even with the tongue of angels, and after this should deny me, it would have been better for you that ye had not known me.

- 15 Futhi ngezwa izwi livela kuBaba, lithi: Yebo, amazwi oThandekayo wami ayiqiniso futhi athembekile. Lowo oyobekezela kuze kube sekugcineni, yilowo kanye oyosindiswa.
- 16 Manje, bafowethu abathandekayo, ngiyazi ngalokhu ukuthi ngaphandle kokuthi umuntu abekezele kuze kube sekugcineni, ngokulandela isibonelo seNdodana kaNkulunkulu ophilayo, akanakusindiswa.
- 17 Ngalokho-ke, yenzani lezo zinto enginitshela zona ukuthi ngizibonile ukuthi iNkosi yenu kanye noMkhululi wenu uyozenza; ngokuba, ngalesi sizathu zibonisiwe kimi, ukuze nilazi isango okufanele ningene ngalo. Ngokuba isango okufanele ningene ngalo ngukuphenduka kanye nokubhabhadiswa ngamanzi; bese kuza ukuthethelelwa kwezono zenu ngomlilo kanye nangoMoya oyiNgcwele.
- 18 Futhi ngaleso sikhathi senikulendlela engumngcingo nencane eholela ekuphileni okuphakade; yebo, seningene ngesango; senenze njengokwemiyalo kaBaba kanye neNdodana; futhi senamukele uMoya oyiNgcwele, ofakaza ngoBaba kanye neNdodana, ekugcwaliseni isethembiso asenzile, sokuthi uma ningena ngendlela niyosithola.
- 19 Manje, bafowethu abathandekayo, emva kokuthi seningene kulendlela engumngcingo futhi nencane, ngizonibuza ukuthi ngabe konke sekwenziwe na? Bhekani, ngithi kini, Cha; ngokuba beningenakufika kude kangaka ngaphandle kokuthi kungezwi likaKristu nokukholwa kuye okungenakunyakaziswa, nethembela ngokugcwele kuzo izenzo zakhe ezinhle lowo onamandla okusindisa.
- 20 Ngalokho-ke, kufanele niphikelele ngokwethembeka kuKristu, ninethemba elimsulwa elipheleleyo, kanye nothando lukaNkulunkulu kanye nolwabantu bonke. Ngalokho-ke, uma niyophikelela, nizitike ngezwi likaKristu, futhi nibekezele kuze kube sekugcineni, bhekani, usho kanje uBaba: Niyoba nokuphila okuphakade.

And I heard a voice from the Father, saying: Yea, the words of my Beloved are true and faithful. He that endureth to the end, the same shall be saved.

And now, my beloved brethren, I know by this that unless a man shall endure to the end, in following the example of the Son of the living God, he cannot be saved.

Wherefore, do the things which I have told you I have seen that your Lord and your Redeemer should do; for, for this cause have they been shown unto me, that ye might know the gate by which ye should enter. For the gate by which ye should enter is repentance and baptism by water; and then cometh a remission of your sins by fire and by the Holy Ghost.

And then are ye in this strait and narrow path which leads to eternal life; yea, ye have entered in by the gate; ye have done according to the commandments of the Father and the Son; and ye have received the Holy Ghost, which witnesses of the Father and the Son, unto the fulfilling of the promise which he hath made, that if ye entered in by the way ye should receive.

And now, my beloved brethren, after ye have gotten into this strait and narrow path, I would ask if all is done? Behold, I say unto you, Nay; for ye have not come thus far save it were by the word of Christ with unshaken faith in him, relying wholly upon the merits of him who is mighty to save.

Wherefore, ye must press forward with a steadfastness in Christ, having a perfect brightness of hope, and a love of God and of all men. Wherefore, if ye shall press forward, feasting upon the word of Christ, and endure to the end, behold, thus saith the Father: Ye shall have eternal life.

21 Manje, bhekani, bafowethu abathandekayo, yiyo lena yindlela; futhi akukho nayinye enye indlela noma igama elinikwe ngaphansi kwezulu umuntu angasindiswa ngalo embusweni kaNkulunkulu. Manje, bhekani, lokhu yimfundiso kaKristu, futhi yiyona mfundiso kuphela eyiqiniso kaBaba, kanye neyeNdodana, kanye nekaMoya oyiNgcwele, okunguNkulunkulu munye, ongenasiphelo. Amen.

And now, behold, my beloved brethren, this is the way; and there is none other way nor name given under heaven whereby man can be saved in the kingdom of God. And now, behold, this is the doctrine of Christ, and the only and true doctrine of the Father, and of the Son, and of the Holy Ghost, which is one God, without end. Amen.

2 Nefi 32

- 1 Manje, bhekani, bafowethu abathandekayo, ngicabanga ukuthi niyazindla ngandlela thize ezinhliziyweni zenu mayelana nalokho okufanele nikwenze emva kokuthi seningenile ngalendlela. Kepha, bhekani, nizindlelani ngalezi zinto ezinhliziyweni zenu na?
- 2 Anikhumbuli yini ukuthi ngishilo kini ukuthi emva kokuthi senamukele uMoya oyiNgcwele ningakhuluma ngolimi lwezingelosi na? Manje, ningakhuluma kanjani ngolimi lwezingelosi ngaphandle kokuthi kube ngoMoya oyiNgcwele na?
- 3 Izingelosi zikhuluma ngamandla kaMoya oyiNgcwele; ngalokho-ke, zikhuluma amazwi kaKristu. Ngalokho-ke, ngithe kini, zitikeni ngamazwi kaKristu; ngokuba bhekani, amazwi kaKristu azonitshela zonke izinto okufanele nizenze.
- 4 Ngalokho-ke, manje emva kokuthi sengikhulume lamazwi, uma ningawaqondi kuyoba ngenxa yokuthi anibuzi, noma aningqongqothi; ngalokho-ke, aninakulethwa ekukhanyeni, kepha kufanele nishabalale nisebumnyameni.
- 5 Ngokuba bhekani, ngiyaphinda ngiyasho kini ukuthi uma niyongena ngalendlela, futhi namukele uMoya oyiNgcwele, uyonikhombisa zonke izinto okufanele nizenze.
- 6 Bhekani, lokhu yimfundiso kaKristu, futhi akuyikubakhona enye imfundiso eyonikwa kuze kube semva kokuba esezibonakalisile kini esenyameni. Futhi uma esezibonakalisile kini esenyameni, lezozinto ayozisho kini anibozama ukuthi nizenze.
- 7 Manje mina, Nefi, angisenakusho okuningi; uMoya uyakuvimba ukukhuluma kwami, futhi ngishiywa ukuthi ngilile ngenxa yokungakholwa, kanye nobubi, kanye nokungazi, kanye nokuba ngontamo lukhuni kwabantu; ngokuba abazukulufuna ulwazi, noma baluqonde ulwazi olukhulu, uma benikwa lona ngokusobala, ngisho noma lusobala njengezwi lingaba njalo.

2 Nephi 32

And now, behold, my beloved brethren, I suppose that ye ponder somewhat in your hearts concerning that which ye should do after ye have entered in by the way. But, behold, why do ye ponder these things in your hearts?

Do ye not remember that I said unto you that after ye had received the Holy Ghost ye could speak with the tongue of angels? And now, how could ye speak with the tongue of angels save it were by the Holy Ghost?

Angels speak by the power of the Holy Ghost; wherefore, they speak the words of Christ. Wherefore, I said unto you, feast upon the words of Christ; for behold, the words of Christ will tell you all things what ye should do.

Wherefore, now after I have spoken these words, if ye cannot understand them it will be because ye ask not, neither do ye knock; wherefore, ye are not brought into the light, but must perish in the dark.

For behold, again I say unto you that if ye will enter in by the way, and receive the Holy Ghost, it will show unto you all things what ye should do.

Behold, this is the doctrine of Christ, and there will be no more doctrine given until after he shall manifest himself unto you in the flesh. And when he shall manifest himself unto you in the flesh, the things which he shall say unto you shall ye observe to do.

And now I, Nephi, cannot say more; the Spirit stoppeth mine utterance, and I am left to mourn because of the unbelief, and the wickedness, and the ignorance, and the stiffneckedness of men; for they will not search knowledge, nor understand great knowledge, when it is given unto them in plainness, even as plain as word can be.

8 Manje, bafowethu abathandekayo, ngiyabona ukuthi nisazindla ezinhliziyweni zenu; futhi kuyangidabukisa ukuthi kufanele ngikhulume mayelana nalento. Ngokuba uma ningalalela uMoya ofundisa umuntu ukuthandaza, niyokwazi ukuthi kufanele nithandaze; ngokuba umoya omubi awumfundisi umuntu ukuthi athandaze, kepha umfundisa ukuthi kufanele angathandazi.

9 Kepha bhekani, ngithi kini kufanele nithandaze njalo, ningakhathali; ningenzi nanoma yini enye into eNkosini ngaphandle kokuthi kuqala nithandaze kuBaba egameni likaKristu, ukuze angcwelise ukwenza kwenu kini, ukuze ukwenza kwenu kube yinzuzo emiphefumulweni yenu.

And now, my beloved brethren, I perceive that ye ponder still in your hearts; and it grieveth me that I must speak concerning this thing. For if ye would hearken unto the Spirit which teacheth a man to pray, ye would know that ye must pray; for the evil spirit teacheth not a man to pray, but teacheth him that he must not pray.

But behold, I say unto you that ye must pray always, and not faint; that ye must not perform any thing unto the Lord save in the first place ye shall pray unto the Father in the name of Christ, that he will consecrate thy performance unto thee, that thy performance may be for the welfare of thy soul.

2 Nefi 33

- 1 Manje mina, Nefi, ngeke ngikwazi ukuzibhala zonke izinto ezafundiswa phakathi kwabantu bami; futhi angiyona ingcweti ekubhaleni, njengasekukhulumeni; ngokuba uma umuntu ekhuluma ngamandla kaMoya oyiNgcwele amandla kaMoya oyiNgcwele akuthwala lokho akuyise ezinhliziyweni zabantwana babantu.
- 2 Kepha bhekani, kukhona abaningi abaqinisa izinhliziyi zabo ngokumelene noMoya oyiNgcwele, ukuze ungabi nandawo kubo; ngalokho-ke, balahla izinto eziningi ezibhaliwe futhi bazithathe njengezinto eziyize.
- 3 Kepha mina, Nefi, ngikubhalile lokho engikubhalile, futhi ngikuthatha njengento ebaluleke kakhulu, futhi ikakhulukazi kubantu bami. Ngokuba ngibathandazela njalo emini, futhi amehlo ami amanzisa umcamelo wami ebusuku, ngenxa yabo; futhi ngiyakhala kuNkulunkulu wami ngokukholwa, futhi ngiyazi ukuthi uyokuzwa ukukhala kwami.
- 4 Futhi ngiyazi ukuthi iNkosi uNkulunkulu iyoyingcwelisa imikhuleko yami ukuze kuzuze abantu bami. Futhi amazwi engiwabhalile ebuthakathakeni ayokwenziwa aqine kubo; ngokuba abavumisa ukuthi benze okuhle; abazisa ngoyise; futhi akhuluma ngoJesu, futhi abavumisa ukuthi bakholwe kuye, futhi babezele kuze kube sekugcineni, okungukuphila okuphakade.
- 5 Futhi akhuluma kakhulu ngokumelene nesono, njengokuba sobala kweqiniso; ngalokho-ke, akekho umuntu oyowathukuthelela amazwi engiwabhalile ngaphandle kokuthi enomoya kadeveli.
- 6 Ngiyathokoza ngokusobala; ngiyathokoza ngeqiniso; ngiyathokoza ngoJesu wami, ngokuba uwukhululile umphefumulo wami esihogweni.
- 7 Nginesihe ngabantu bami, kanye nokholo olukhulu kuKristu ukuthi ngiyohlanguka neminingi imiphefumulo engenasici esihlalweni sakhe sokwahlulela.
- 8 Nginesihe ngomJuda—ngithi umJuda, ngokuba ngiqonde wona lapho ngavela khona.

2 Nephi 33

And now I, Nephi, cannot write all the things which were taught among my people; neither am I mighty in writing, like unto speaking; for when a man speaketh by the power of the Holy Ghost the power of the Holy Ghost carrieth it unto the hearts of the children of men.

But behold, there are many that harden their hearts against the Holy Spirit, that it hath no place in them; wherefore, they cast many things away which are written and esteem them as things of naught.

But I, Nephi, have written what I have written, and I esteem it as of great worth, and especially unto my people. For I pray continually for them by day, and mine eyes water my pillow by night, because of them; and I cry unto my God in faith, and I know that he will hear my cry.

And I know that the Lord God will consecrate my prayers for the gain of my people. And the words which I have written in weakness will be made strong unto them; for it persuadeth them to do good; it maketh known unto them of their fathers; and it speaketh of Jesus, and persuadeth them to believe in him, and to endure to the end, which is life eternal.

And it speaketh harshly against sin, according to the plainness of the truth; wherefore, no man will be angry at the words which I have written save he shall be of the spirit of the devil.

I glory in plainness; I glory in truth; I glory in my Jesus, for he hath redeemed my soul from hell.

I have charity for my people, and great faith in Christ that I shall meet many souls spotless at his judgment-seat.

I have charity for the Jew—I say Jew, because I mean them from whence I came.

9 Phezu kwalokho nginesihe ngabeZizwe. Kepha bheka, akukho engikufisayo ngalaba ngaphandle kokuthi babuyisane noKristu, futhi bangene esangweni elincane, futhi bahambe endleleni engumngcingo eholela ekuphileni, futhi baqhubeke kuleyo ndlela kuze kuphele usuku lokuvivinywa.

10 Manje, bafowethu abathandekayo, futhi ngokunjalo nomJuda, kanye nani nonke mikhawulo yomhlaba, walaleleni lamazwi futhi nikholwe kuKristu; futhi uma ningakholwa kulamazwi kholwani kuKristu. Futhi uma niyokholwa kuKristu niyokholwa kulamazwi, ngokuba angamazwi kaKristu, futhi unginike wona; futhi afundisa bonke abantu ukuthi benze okuhle.

11 Futhi uma engewona amazwi kaKristu, yahlulelani—ngokuba uKristu uyonikhombisa, ngamandla kanye nangenkazimulo enkulu, ukuthi angamazwi akhe, ngosuku lokugcina; futhi wena nami siyoma ubuso nobuso phambi kwesihlalo sakhe; futhi niyokwazi ukuthi ngiyalwe nguye ukuthi ngizibhale lezi zinto, naphezu kobuthakathaka bami.

12 Futhi ngiyathandaza kuBaba egameni likaKristu ukuthi abaningi bethu, uma kungethina sonke, basindiswe embusweni wakhe ngalolo suku olukhulu nolokugcina.

13 Manje, bafowethu abathandekayo, bonke labo okungabendlu ka-Israyeli, kanye nani nonke mikhawulo yomhlaba, ngikhuluma kini njengezwi lalowo okhala othulini: Salani kahle kuze kube lolo suku olukhulu luyafika.

14 Futhi nina eningenakuhlanganyela ebuhleni bukaNkulunkulu, futhi nihloniphe amazwi amaJuda, futhi ngokunjalo namazwi ami, kanye namazwi ayophuma emlonyeni weMvana kaNkulunkulu, bhekani, ngivalelisa ukuvalelisa kwaphakade, ngokuba lamazwi ayonilahla ngecala ngosuku lokugcina.

15 Ngokuba lokho engikubopha emhlabeni, kuyobekwa obala ngokumelene nani esihlalweni sokwahlulela; ngokuba iNkosi ingiyale kanjalo futhi kufanele ngilalele. Amen.

I also have charity for the Gentiles. But behold, for none of these can I hope except they shall be reconciled unto Christ, and enter into the narrow gate, and walk in the strait path which leads to life, and continue in the path until the end of the day of probation.

And now, my beloved brethren, and also Jew, and all ye ends of the earth, hearken unto these words and believe in Christ; and if ye believe not in these words believe in Christ. And if ye shall believe in Christ ye will believe in these words, for they are the words of Christ, and he hath given them unto me; and they teach all men that they should do good.

And if they are not the words of Christ, judge ye—for Christ will show unto you, with power and great glory, that they are his words, at the last day; and you and I shall stand face to face before his bar; and ye shall know that I have been commanded of him to write these things, notwithstanding my weakness.

And I pray the Father in the name of Christ that many of us, if not all, may be saved in his kingdom at that great and last day.

And now, my beloved brethren, all those who are of the house of Israel, and all ye ends of the earth, I speak unto you as the voice of one crying from the dust: Farewell until that great day shall come.

And you that will not partake of the goodness of God, and respect the words of the Jews, and also my words, and the words which shall proceed forth out of the mouth of the Lamb of God, behold, I bid you an everlasting farewell, for these words shall condemn you at the last day.

For what I seal on earth, shall be brought against you at the judgment bar; for thus hath the Lord commanded me, and I must obey. Amen.

INcwadi kaJakobe

Umfowabo kaNefi

Amazwi entshumayelo yakhe kubaforwabo. Utbobisa indoda efuna ukuchitha imfundiso kaKristu. Amazwi ambakwa mayelana nomlando wabantu baNefi.

Jakobe 1

- 1 Ngokuba bheka, kwenzeka ukuthi kwase kudlule iminyaka engamashumi amahlanu nanhlanu kusukela ngesikhathi uLehi ahamba eJerusalema; ngalokho-ke, uNefi wanginika mina, Jakobe, umyalelo mayelana nezingcwephe ezincane, lapho lezi zinto eziqoshwe khona.
- 2 Futhi wanginika mina, Jakobe, umyalelo wokuthi kufanele ngibhale kuzo lezi zingcwephe izinto ezimbalwa engicabanga ukuthi ziyigugu elikhulu; nokuthi kufanele ngingathinti, ngaphandle kokuthi kube kancane nje, mayelana nomlando walaba bantu ababizwa ngokuthi ngabantu baNefi.
- 3 Ngokuba wathi umlando wabantu bakhe kufanele uqoshwe kwezinye izingcwephe zakhe, nokuthi kufanele ngizilondoloze lezi zingcwephe futhi ngizidlulise zehlele kuyo inzalo yami, izizukulwane ngezizukulwane.
- 4 Futhi uma kukhona intshumayelo engcwele, noma isambulo esikhulu, noma isiphrofetho, kufanele ngiqophe izihloko zalokho kuzo lezi zingcwephe, futhi ngibhale ngakho kakhulu, ngenxa kaKristu, futhi nangenxa yabantu bethu.
- 5 Ngokuba ngenxa yokholo kanye nangokukhulu ukukhathazeka, ngempela kwembulwa kithi mayelana nabantu bethu, ukuthi yiziphi izinto ezazizokwenzeka kubo.
- 6 Futhi phezu kwalokho saba neziningi izambulo, kanye nomoya wokuphrofetha okukhulu; ngalokho-ke, sazi ngoKristu kanye nangombuso wakhe, owawuzofika.

The Book of Jacob

the Brother of Nephi

The words of his preaching unto his brethren. He confoundeth a man who seeketh to overthrow the doctrine of Christ. A few words concerning the history of the people of Nephi.

Jacob 1

For behold, it came to pass that fifty and five years had passed away from the time that Lehi left Jerusalem; wherefore, Nephi gave me, Jacob, a commandment concerning the small plates, upon which these things are engraven.

And he gave me, Jacob, a commandment that I should write upon these plates a few of the things which I considered to be most precious; that I should not touch, save it were lightly, concerning the history of this people which are called the people of Nephi.

For he said that the history of his people should be engraven upon his other plates, and that I should preserve these plates and hand them down unto my seed, from generation to generation.

And if there were preaching which was sacred, or revelation which was great, or prophesying, that I should engraven the heads of them upon these plates, and touch upon them as much as it were possible, for Christ's sake, and for the sake of our people.

For because of faith and great anxiety, it truly had been made manifest unto us concerning our people, what things should happen unto them.

And we also had many revelations, and the spirit of much prophecy; wherefore, we knew of Christ and his kingdom, which should come.

- 7 Ngalokho-ke sasebenza ngokukhuthala phakathi kwabantu bethu, ukuze sibavumise ukuthi beze kuKristu, futhi nokuthi bahlanganyele ebuhleni bukaNkulunkulu, ukuze bangene ekuphumuleni kwakhe, hleze ndlela thize aze afunge esentukuthelweni yakhe ukuthi bangangeni kukho, njengokuba acunulwa ngezinsuku zokulingwa ngesikhathi abantwana bakwa-Israyeli besehlane.
- 8 Ngalokho-ke, siyacela kuNkulunkulu ukuthi sikwazi ukubavumisa bonke abantu ukuthi bangahlubuki kuNkulunkulu, bamcunule aze athukuthele, kodwa ukuthi bonke abantu mabakholwe kuKristu, futhi bakubone ukufa kwakhe, futhi basivume isiphambano sakhe futhi babekezelele ukuhlazwa ngumhlaba; ngalokho-ke, mina, Jakobe, ngikwenza kube wumthwalo wami ukuthi ngiwugcwalise umyalelo womfowethu uNefi.
- 9 Manje uNefi waqala ukuba mdala, futhi wabona ukuthi masinyane wayesezokufa; ngalokho-ke, wagcoba indoda ukuthi ibe yinkosi kanye nombusi phezu kwabantu bakhe, njengokubusa kwamakhosi.
- 10 Abantu bemthandile uNefi ngokwedlulele, yena kade engumvikeli wabo omkhulu, eyisebenzisile inkemba kaLabani ekubavikeleni, futhi eyisebenzele inhlalakahle yabo ngazo zonke izinsuku zakhe—
- 11 Ngalokho-ke, abantu baba nesifiso sokuligcina igama lakhe njengesikhumbuzo. Futhi labo ababezobusa esikhundleni sakhe babizwa ngabantu, ngoNefi wesibili, uNefi wesithathu, njalonjalo, ngokwemibuso yamakhosi; futhi babizwa kanjalo ngabantu, noma ngabe amagama abo ayengobani.
- 12 Futhi kwenzeka ukuthi uNefi wafa.
- 13 Manje abantu ababengewona amaLamani babengamaNefi; nokho, babebizwa ngamaNefi, amaJakobe, amaJosefa, amaZoram, amaLamani, amaLemuweli, kanye nama-Ishmayeli.
- 14 Kodwa mina, Jakobe, emva kwalokhu angizukubehlukanisa ngalamagama, kodwa ngizobabiza ngamaLamani labo abafuna ukubhubhisa abantu baNefi, futhi labo abanobungane noNefi ngizobabiza ngamaNefi, noma abantu baNefi, ngokubusa kwamakhosi.

Wherefore we labored diligently among our people, that we might persuade them to come unto Christ, and partake of the goodness of God, that they might enter into his rest, lest by any means he should swear in his wrath they should not enter in, as in the provocation in the days of temptation while the children of Israel were in the wilderness.

Wherefore, we would to God that we could persuade all men not to rebel against God, to provoke him to anger, but that all men would believe in Christ, and view his death, and suffer his cross and bear the shame of the world; wherefore, I, Jacob, take it upon me to fulfil the commandment of my brother Nephi.

Now Nephi began to be old, and he saw that he must soon die; wherefore, he anointed a man to be a king and a ruler over his people now, according to the reigns of the kings.

The people having loved Nephi exceedingly, he having been a great protector for them, having wielded the sword of Laban in their defence, and having labored in all his days for their welfare—

Wherefore, the people were desirous to retain in remembrance his name. And whoso should reign in his stead were called by the people, second Nephi, third Nephi, and so forth, according to the reigns of the kings; and thus they were called by the people, let them be of whatever name they would.

And it came to pass that Nephi died.

Now the people which were not Lamanites were Nephites; nevertheless, they were called Nephites, Jacobites, Josephites, Zoramites, Lamanites, Lemuelites, and Ishmaelites.

But I, Jacob, shall not hereafter distinguish them by these names, but I shall call them Lamanites that seek to destroy the people of Nephi, and those who are friendly to Nephi I shall call Nephites, or the people of Nephi, according to the reigns of the kings.

- 15 Manje kwenzeka ukuthi abantu baNefi, ngaphansi kokubusa kwenkosi yesibili, baqala ukukhula balukhuni ezinhliziyweni zabo, futhi bazimbandakanya ngandlela thize ekwenzeni izenzo zobubi, ezinjengalezo zikaDavide wasendulo zokufisa abafazi abaningi kanye nezancinza, futhi ngokunjalo noSolomoni, indodana yakhe.
- 16 Yebo, futhi phezu kwalokho baqala ukufuna igolide kanye nesiliva eliningi, futhi baqala ukuthi ngandlelathize baphakame ngenxa yokuziqhenya.
- 17 Ngalokho-ke mina, Jakobe, ngabanika lamazwi ngesikhathi ngibafundisa ethempelini, sengithole kuqala ukuthunywa kwami eNkosini.
- 18 Ngokuba mina, Jakobe, kanye nomfowethu uJosefa sasibekwe saba ngabaphristi futhi nabafundisi balaba bantu, ngesandla sikaNefi.
- 19 Futhi nempela sazihlonipha izikhundla zethu eNkosini, sakubeka kithi ukuthi silithwale icala, siphendule izono zalaba bantu phezu kwamakhanda ethu uqobo uma singabafundisanga izwi likaNkulunkulu ngokukhuthala konke; ngalokho-ke, ngokusebenza ngamandla ethu igazi labo lingeze leza phezu kwezingubo zethu; ngaphandle kwalokho igazi labo liyoza phezu kwezingubo zethu, futhi asiyikutholakala singenacashazi ngosuku lokugcina.

And now it came to pass that the people of Nephi, under the reign of the second king, began to grow hard in their hearts, and indulge themselves somewhat in wicked practices, such as like unto David of old desiring many wives and concubines, and also Solomon, his son.

Yea, and they also began to search much gold and silver, and began to be lifted up somewhat in pride.

Wherefore I, Jacob, gave unto them these words as I taught them in the temple, having first obtained mine errand from the Lord.

For I, Jacob, and my brother Joseph had been consecrated priests and teachers of this people, by the hand of Nephi.

And we did magnify our office unto the Lord, taking upon us the responsibility, answering the sins of the people upon our own heads if we did not teach them the word of God with all diligence; wherefore, by laboring with our might their blood might not come upon our garments; otherwise their blood would come upon our garments, and we would not be found spotless at the last day.

Jakobe 2

- 1 Amazwi uJakobe, umfowabo kaNefi, awakhuluma kubantu baNefi, emva kokufa kukaNefi:
- 2 Manje, bafowethu abathandekayo, mina, Jakobe, ngokwesibopho engiphansi kwaso kuNkulunkulu, ukuthi ngihloniphe isikhundla sami ngobuqotho, futhi nokuthi ngisuse izono zenu ezingutsheni zami, ngikhuphukela ethempelini ngalolusuku ukuze ngimemezele kini izwi likaNkulunkulu.
- 3 Futhi nina qobo lwenu niyazi ukuthi kuze kube manje bengikhuthele esikhundleni sobizo lwami; kodwa ngalolu suku ngidangaliswe wukuba nesifiso esikhulu kakhulu kanye nokukhathazwa wukuba kuzuze imiphefumulo yenu ngaphezu kwalokho ebenginakho kuze kube manje.
- 4 Ngokuba bhekani, kuze kube manje, nililalelile izwi leNkosi, engininike lona.
- 5 Kodwa bhekani, ngilaleleni, futhi nazi ukuthi ngosizo loMdali wezulu nomhlaba onamandla onke nginganitshela mayelana nemicabango yenu, ukuthi seniqala kanjani ukusebenza esonweni, esibonakala sinengekile kakhulu kimi, yebo, futhi sinengekile nakuNkulunkulu.
- 6 Yebo, kuyawudabukisa umphefumulo wami futhi kungenza ngishwabane ngamahloni phambi kukaMenzi wami, ukuthi kufanele ngifakaze kini mayelana nobubi bezinhliziyo zenu.
- 7 Futhi phezu kwalokho kuyangidabukisa ukuthi kufanele ngisebenzise isibindi esikhulu kangaka sokukhuluma mayelana nani, phambi kwabafazi benu kanye nabantwana benu, abaningi babo abanemizwa ethambile kakhulu kanye nabamsulwa futhi nabanozwelo phambi kukaNkulunkulu, okuyinto ethokozisayo kuNkulunkulu;
- 8 Futhi ngicabanga ukuthi bakhuphukele lapha ukuzokuzwa izwi elithokozisayo likaNkulunkulu, yebo, izwi elelapha umphefumulo olimeleyo.

Jacob 2

The words which Jacob, the brother of Nephi, spake unto the people of Nephi, after the death of Nephi:

Now, my beloved brethren, I, Jacob, according to the responsibility which I am under to God, to magnify mine office with soberness, and that I might rid my garments of your sins, I come up into the temple this day that I might declare unto you the word of God.

And ye yourselves know that I have hitherto been diligent in the office of my calling; but I this day am weighed down with much more desire and anxiety for the welfare of your souls than I have hitherto been.

For behold, as yet, ye have been obedient unto the word of the Lord, which I have given unto you.

But behold, hearken ye unto me, and know that by the help of the all-powerful Creator of heaven and earth I can tell you concerning your thoughts, how that ye are beginning to labor in sin, which sin appeareth very abominable unto me, yea, and abominable unto God.

Yea, it grieveth my soul and causeth me to shrink with shame before the presence of my Maker, that I must testify unto you concerning the wickedness of your hearts.

And also it grieveth me that I must use so much boldness of speech concerning you, before your wives and your children, many of whose feelings are exceedingly tender and chaste and delicate before God, which thing is pleasing unto God;

And it supposeth me that they have come up hither to hear the pleasing word of God, yea, the word which healeth the wounded soul.

9 Ngalokho-ke, kuyawugqilaza umphefumulo wami ukuthi ngiphoqeleke, ngenxa yomyalelo oqinile engiwuthole kuNkulunkulu, ukuthi nginiyale ngokwamacala enu, ukuthi ngandise izilonda zalabo abavele sebelimele, esikhundleni sokubaduduza nokubapholisa izilonda zabo; futhi labo abangalimalanga, esikhundleni sokuthi bazitike ngelithokozisayo izwi likaNkulunkulu nginezinkemba ezibekelwe ukuhlaba imiphefumulo yabo zilimaze imiqondo yabo entekenteke.

10 Kodwa, naphezu kobukhulu balomsebenzi, kufanele ngenze njengokuqina kwemiyalelo kaNkulunkulu, nginitshela mayelana nobubi kanye nezinengiso zenu, phambi kwalabo abanezinhliziyo ezimsulwa, kanye nabanezinhliziyo ezidabukileyo, kanye nangaphansi kokubuka kweso elihlabayo likaSomandla uNkulunkulu.

11 Ngalokho-ke, kufanele nginitshela iqiniso njengokuba sobala kwezwi likaNkulunkulu. Ngokuba bhekani, ngesikhathi ngibuza eNkosini, leza ngalamagama izwi kimi, lithi: Jakobe, vuka ukhuphukele ethempelini kusasa, umemezele izwi engizokunika lona kulaba bantu.

12 Manje bhekani, bafowethu, leli yizwi engilimemezela kini, ukuthi abanengi benu sebeqale ukufuna igolide, nesiliva, kanye nalo lonke uhlobo lwensimbi eyigugu, okukulelizwe, okuyizwe lesethembiso kini kanye nenzalo yenu, okuvamile nokuyinala enkulu.

13 Futhi isandla sokupha simamathekile phezu kwenu ngokuthokoza okukhulu, kangangoba nithole ingcebo eningi; futhi ngenxa yokuthi abanye benu bayithole ngobuningi obukhulu kunaleyo yabafowenu seniyaziqhenya, futhi senigqoka izintamo ezilukhuni kanye namakhanda aphakeme ngenxa yokubiza kwezembatho zenu, futhi nihlupha abafowenu ngoba nicabanga ukuthi ningcono kunabo.

14 Manje, bafowethu, ngabe nicabanga ukuthi uNkulunkulu unithola ningenacala yini kulento na? Bhekani, ngithi kini, Cha. Kodwa uyanilahla, futhi uma niphikelela kulezi zinto ukwahlulela kwakhe kufanele kufike masinyane kini.

Wherefore, it burdeneth my soul that I should be constrained, because of the strict commandment which I have received from God, to admonish you according to your crimes, to enlarge the wounds of those who are already wounded, instead of consoling and healing their wounds; and those who have not been wounded, instead of feasting upon the pleasing word of God have daggers placed to pierce their souls and wound their delicate minds.

But, notwithstanding the greatness of the task, I must do according to the strict commands of God, and tell you concerning your wickedness and abominations, in the presence of the pure in heart, and the broken heart, and under the glance of the piercing eye of the Almighty God.

Wherefore, I must tell you the truth according to the plainness of the word of God. For behold, as I inquired of the Lord, thus came the word unto me, saying: Jacob, get thou up into the temple on the morrow, and declare the word which I shall give thee unto this people.

And now behold, my brethren, this is the word which I declare unto you, that many of you have begun to search for gold, and for silver, and for all manner of precious ores, in the which this land, which is a land of promise unto you and to your seed, doth abound most plentifully.

And the hand of providence hath smiled upon you most pleasingly, that you have obtained many riches; and because some of you have obtained more abundantly than that of your brethren ye are lifted up in the pride of your hearts, and wear stiff necks and high heads because of the costliness of your apparel, and persecute your brethren because ye suppose that ye are better than they.

And now, my brethren, do ye suppose that God justifieth you in this thing? Behold, I say unto you, Nay. But he condemneth you, and if ye persist in these things his judgments must speedily come unto you.

15 O kwangathi anganikhombisa ukuthi anganihlaba, futhi ngokunithi klabe nje kanye ngeso lakhe anganishaya othulini!

16 O kwangathi anganisusa kulobu bubu kanye nalezi zinengiso. Futhi, O kwangathi beningalilalela izwi lemiyalelo yakhe, futhi ningakuvumeli lokhu kuziqhenya kwezinhliziyu zenu kubhubhise imiphefumulo yenu!

17 Cabangani ngabafowenu engazuthi bayini qobo lwenu, futhi nihlangane nabo bonke futhi nikhululeke ngempahla yenu, ukuze nabo banothe njengani.

18 Kodwa ngaphambi kokuthi nifune ingcebo, funani umbuso kaNkulunkulu.

19 Futhi emva kokuthi senithole ithemba kuKristu niyoyithola ingcebo, uma niyifuna; futhi niyoyifuna ngenhloso yokwenza okuhle—ukwembesa abanqunu, nokupha abalambile, nokukhulula abathunjwa, kanye nokunikeza usizo kwabagulayo nabakhathazekile.

20 Manje, bafowethu, sengikhulumile kini mayelana nokuziqhenya; futhi labo benu abakhathaze umakhelwane wabo, futhi bamhlupha ngenxa yokuthi beninokuziqhenya ezinhliziyweni zenu, ngezinto uNkulunkulu aninikeze zona, nithini ngalokho na?

21 Ngabe anicabangi yini ukuthi izinto ezinje zinengekile kulowo owadala yonke inyama na? Futhi omunye umuntu uyigugu emehlweni akhe njengomunye. Futhi yonke inyama ingeyothuli; futhi ngenhloso efanayo wabadala, ukuthi bagcine imiyalelo yakhe futhi bamdumise ingunaphakade.

22 Manje sengenza isiphetho sokukhuluma kini mayelana nalokhu kuziqhenya. Futhi ukuba bekungekhona ukuthi kufanele ngikhulume kini mayelana necala elibi kakhulu, inhliziyu yami ibizothokoza kakhulu ngenxa yenu.

23 Kodwa izwi likaNkulunkulu liyangigqilaza ngenxa yamacala enu amabi kakhulu. Ngokuba bhekani, isho kanje iNkosi: Laba bantu baqala ukukhula ebubini; abayiqondi imibhalo engcwele, ngokuba bafuna ukuzixolela ekwenzeni ubufebe, ngenxa yezinto ezazibhaliwe mayelana noDavide, kanye noSolomoni indodana yakhe.

O that he would show you that he can pierce you, and with one glance of his eye he can smite you to the dust!

O that he would rid you from this iniquity and abomination. And, O that ye would listen unto the word of his commands, and let not this pride of your hearts destroy your souls!

Think of your brethren like unto yourselves, and be familiar with all and free with your substance, that they may be rich like unto you.

But before ye seek for riches, seek ye for the kingdom of God.

And after ye have obtained a hope in Christ ye shall obtain riches, if ye seek them; and ye will seek them for the intent to do good—to clothe the naked, and to feed the hungry, and to liberate the captive, and administer relief to the sick and the afflicted.

And now, my brethren, I have spoken unto you concerning pride; and those of you which have afflicted your neighbor, and persecuted him because ye were proud in your hearts, of the things which God hath given you, what say ye of it?

Do ye not suppose that such things are abominable unto him who created all flesh? And the one being is as precious in his sight as the other. And all flesh is of the dust; and for the selfsame end hath he created them, that they should keep his commandments and glorify him forever.

And now I make an end of speaking unto you concerning this pride. And were it not that I must speak unto you concerning a grosser crime, my heart would rejoice exceedingly because of you.

But the word of God burdens me because of your grosser crimes. For behold, thus saith the Lord: This people begin to wax in iniquity; they understand not the scriptures, for they seek to excuse themselves in committing whoredoms, because of the things which were written concerning David, and Solomon his son.

- 24 Bhekani, uDavide kanye noSolomoni ngempela babenabafazi abaningi kanye nezancinza, okuyinto eyayinengekile phambi kwami, kusho iNkosi.
- 25 Ngalokho-ke, isho kanje iNkosi, ngibaholile laba bantu baphuma ezweni laseJerusalema, ngamandla engalo yami, ukuze ngizikhulisele igatsha elilungileyo kuso isithelo sokhalo lukaJosefa.
- 26 Ngalokho-ke, mina Nkosi Nkulunkulu angiyikuvumela ukuthi laba bantu benze njengalabo basendulo.
- 27 Ngalokho-ke, bafowethu, ngizweni, futhi nilalele izwi leNkosi: Ngokuba akuyikuba bikho ndoda phakathi kwenu eyoba khona ngaphandle kokuba nomfazi oyedwa; futhi izancinza ayiyikuba nazo nasinye;
- 28 Ngokuba mina, Nkosi Nkulunkulu, ngiyathokoza ngobumsulwa babesifazane. Futhi ubufebe buyisinengiso phambi kwami; isho kanje iNkosi yamaBandla.
- 29 Ngalokho-ke, laba bantu bayoyigcina imiyalelo yami, kusho iNkosi yamaBandla, noma-ke liqalekiswe izwe ngenxa yabo.
- 30 Ngokuba uma ngithanda, kusho iNkosi yamaBandla, ukuzikhulisela inzalo, ngiyobayala abantu bami; ngaphandle kwalokho bayolalela lezi zinto.
- 31 Ngokuba bheka, mina, Nkosi, ngikubonile ukuhlupheka, futhi ngakuzwa ukukhala kwamadodakazi abantu bami ezweni laseJerusalema, yebo, kanye nakuzo zonke izizwe zabantu bami, ngenxa yobubi nezinengiso zabayeni babo.
- 32 Futhi angiyikuvuma, kusho iNkosi yamaBandla, ukuthi ukukhala kwamadodakazi amahle alaba bantu, engibahole ngabakhipha ezweni laseJerusalema, kukhuphukele kimi ngokumelene nalamadoda abantu bami, kusho iNkosi yamaBandla.
- 33 Ngokuba abayikuholela ekuthunjweni amadodakazi abantu bami ngenxa yokuthamba kwawo, ngaphandle kokuthi ngibavakashele ngesiqalekiso esibuhlungu, ngisho nangokubhujiswa; ngokuba abayikubenza ubufebe, njengalabo basendulo, kusho iNkosi yamaBandla.

Behold, David and Solomon truly had many wives and concubines, which thing was abominable before me, saith the Lord.

Wherefore, thus saith the Lord, I have led this people forth out of the land of Jerusalem, by the power of mine arm, that I might raise up unto me a righteous branch from the fruit of the loins of Joseph.

Wherefore, I the Lord God will not suffer that this people shall do like unto them of old.

Wherefore, my brethren, hear me, and hearken to the word of the Lord: For there shall not any man among you have save it be one wife; and concubines he shall have none;

For I, the Lord God, delight in the chastity of women. And whoredoms are an abomination before me; thus saith the Lord of Hosts.

Wherefore, this people shall keep my commandments, saith the Lord of Hosts, or cursed be the land for their sakes.

For if I will, saith the Lord of Hosts, raise up seed unto me, I will command my people; otherwise they shall hearken unto these things.

For behold, I, the Lord, have seen the sorrow, and heard the mourning of the daughters of my people in the land of Jerusalem, yea, and in all the lands of my people, because of the wickedness and abominations of their husbands.

And I will not suffer, saith the Lord of Hosts, that the cries of the fair daughters of this people, which I have led out of the land of Jerusalem, shall come up unto me against the men of my people, saith the Lord of Hosts.

For they shall not lead away captive the daughters of my people because of their tenderness, save I shall visit them with a sore curse, even unto destruction; for they shall not commit whoredoms, like unto them of old, saith the Lord of Hosts.

34 Manje bhekani, bafowethu, niyazi ukuthi lemiyalelo yayinikwe ubaba, uLehi; ngalokho-ke, beniyazi phambilini; futhi nibekwe icala kakhulu; ngokuba nizenzile lezi zinto obekungafanele ukuthi nizenze.

35 Bhekani, nenze ububi obukhulu kunamaLamani, abafowethu. Nephule izinhliziyi zabafazi benu abathambileyo, futhi nalahlekelwa wukwethenjwa ngabantwana benu, ngenxa yezibonelo zenu ezimbi phambi kwabo; futhi isilokozane sezinhliziyi zabo sikhuphukela phezulu kuNkulunkulu ngokumelene nani. Futhi ngenxa yokuqina kwezwi likaNkulunkulu, elehlela phansi ngokumelene nani, eziningi izinhliziyi zafa, zihlatshwe amanxeba ajulile.

And now behold, my brethren, ye know that these commandments were given to our father, Lehi; wherefore, ye have known them before; and ye have come unto great condemnation; for ye have done these things which ye ought not to have done.

Behold, ye have done greater iniquities than the Lamanites, our brethren. Ye have broken the hearts of your tender wives, and lost the confidence of your children, because of your bad examples before them; and the sobbings of their hearts ascend up to God against you. And because of the strictness of the word of God, which cometh down against you, many hearts died, pierced with deep wounds.

Jakobe 3

- 1 Kodwa bhekani, mina, Jakobe, ngizokhuluma kini enimsulwa enhliziyweni. Bhekani kuNkulunkulu ngokugxila komqondo, futhi nikhuleke kuye ngokholo olukhulu, futhi uyoniduduza ezinkathazweni zenu, futhi uyonikhulumela, futhi athumele ukulunga phezu kwalabo abafuna ukunibhubhisa.
- 2 O nonke nina enimsulwa enhliziyweni, phakamisani amakhanda enu namukele izwi elithokozisayo likaNkulunkulu, futhi nizitike othandweni lwakhe; ngokuba ningakwazi, uma imiqondo yenu igxilile, njalo.
- 3 Kodwa, maye, maye, kini eningekho msulwa enhliziyweni, nina eningcolile ngalolu suku phambi kukaNkulunkulu; ngokuba ngaphandle kokuthi niphenduke izwe liqalekisiwe ngenxa yenu; futhi amaLamani, angangcolile njengani, nokho aqalekisiwe ngesiqalekiso esibuhlungu, ayonihlupha ngisho nize nibhubhe.
- 4 Futhi isikhathi siyeza masinyane, sokuthi ngaphandle kokuthi niphenduke ayolithatha izwe lenu eliyifa, futhi iNkosi uNkulunkulu iyohola abalungileyo baphume phakathi kwenu.
- 5 Bhekani, amaLamani abafowenu, enibazondayo ngenxa yokungcola kwabo kanye naleso siqalekiso eseza phezu kwezikhumba zabo, alunge kakhulu kunani; ngokuba awawukhohliwe umyalelo weNkosi, owanikwa ubaba—wokuthi kumele babe noyedwa kuphela umfazi, futhi izancinza bangabi nazo nasinye, futhi kungabi bikho bufebe obenzekayo phakathi kwabo.
- 6 Manje, lomyalelo bayazama ukuwugcina; ngalokho-ke, ngenxa yalokhu kuwugcina, lomyalelo, iNkosi uNkulunkulu ayiyikubabhubhisa, kodwa iyokuba nomusa kubo; futhi ngolunye usuku bayokuba ngabantu ababusiwe.
- 7 Bhekani, abayeni babo bayabathanda abafazi babo, futhi abafazi babo bayabathanda abayeni babo; futhi abayeni babo kanye nabafazi babo bayabathanda abantwana babo, futhi ukungakholwa kwabo kanye nenzondo yabo kini kungenxa yobubi obukhulu boyise; ngalokho-ke, ngabe ningcono kangakanani nina kunabo, emehlweni oMdali wenu omkhulu na?

Jacob 3

But behold, I, Jacob, would speak unto you that are pure in heart. Look unto God with firmness of mind, and pray unto him with exceeding faith, and he will console you in your afflictions, and he will plead your cause, and send down justice upon those who seek your destruction.

O all ye that are pure in heart, lift up your heads and receive the pleasing word of God, and feast upon his love; for ye may, if your minds are firm, forever.

But, wo, wo, unto you that are not pure in heart, that are filthy this day before God; for except ye repent the land is cursed for your sakes; and the Lamanites, which are not filthy like unto you, nevertheless they are cursed with a sore cursing, shall scourge you even unto destruction.

And the time speedily cometh, that except ye repent they shall possess the land of your inheritance, and the Lord God will lead away the righteous out from among you.

Behold, the Lamanites your brethren, whom ye hate because of their filthiness and the cursing which hath come upon their skins, are more righteous than you; for they have not forgotten the commandment of the Lord, which was given unto our father—that they should have save it were one wife, and concubines they should have none, and there should not be whoredoms committed among them.

And now, this commandment they observe to keep; wherefore, because of this observance, in keeping this commandment, the Lord God will not destroy them, but will be merciful unto them; and one day they shall become a blessed people.

Behold, their husbands love their wives, and their wives love their husbands; and their husbands and their wives love their children; and their unbelief and their hatred towards you is because of the iniquity of their fathers; wherefore, how much better are you than they, in the sight of your great Creator?

- 8 O bafowethu, ngiyesaba ukuthi ngaphandle kokuthi niphenduke ezonweni zenu ukuthi izikhumba zabo ziyokuba mhlophe kakhulu kunezenu, uma senilethwa kanye nabo phambi kwesihlalo sikaNkulunkulu.
- 9 Ngalokho-ke, ngininika umyalelo, oyizwi likaNkulunkulu, ukuthi ningabe nisabethuka nanini ngenxa yobumnyama bezikhumba zabo; noma nibethuke ngenxa yokungcola kwabo; kodwa nikhumbule ukungcola kwenu uqobo, futhi nikhumbule ukuthi ukungcola kwabo kweza ngenxa yoyise.
- 10 Ngalokho-ke, niyokhumbula abantwana benu, ukuthi nizidabukise kanjani izinhliziyi zabo ngenxa yesibonelo enisenze phambi kwabo; futhi phezu kwalokho, khumbulani ukuthi, ngenxa yokungcola kwenu, ningaletha abantwana benu ekubhujisweni, futhi izono zabo ziyonqwabelana phezu kwamakhanda enu ngosuku lokugcina.
- 11 O bafowethu, yizwani amazwi ami; vusani amandla emiphefumulo yenu; zithintitheni ukuze nivuke ebuthongweni bokufa; futhi nizikhulule ebuhlungwini besihogo ukuze ningabi yizingelosi kudeveli, ukuze niphoswe kulelochibi lomlilo kanye nesibabuli elingukufa kwesibili.
- 12 Manje mina, Jakobe, ngakhuluma eziningi kakhulu izinto kubantu baNefi, ngibaxwayisa ngokumelene nokuhlobonga kanye nenkanuko, kanye nayo yonke inhlobo yesono, ngibatshela ngomphumela omubi waso.
- 13 Futhi ingxenye yokwekhulu yezenzo zalaba bantu, manje abasebeqala ukuba baningi, ayizukubhalwa kulezi zingcwephe; kodwa eziningi zezenzo zabo zibhaliwe ezingcwepheni ezinkudlwana, nezimpi zabo, nemibango yabo, kanye nokubusa kwamakhosi abo.
- 14 Lezi zingcwephe zibizwa ngezingcwephe zikaJakobe, futhi zenziwa ngesandla sikaNefi. Futhi ngenza isiphetho sokukhuluma lamazwi.

O my brethren, I fear that unless ye shall repent of your sins that their skins will be whiter than yours, when ye shall be brought with them before the throne of God.

Wherefore, a commandment I give unto you, which is the word of God, that ye revile no more against them because of the darkness of their skins; neither shall ye revile against them because of their filthiness; but ye shall remember your own filthiness, and remember that their filthiness came because of their fathers.

Wherefore, ye shall remember your children, how that ye have grieved their hearts because of the example that ye have set before them; and also, remember that ye may, because of your filthiness, bring your children unto destruction, and their sins be heaped upon your heads at the last day.

O my brethren, hearken unto my words; arouse the faculties of your souls; shake yourselves that ye may awake from the slumber of death; and loose yourselves from the pains of hell that ye may not become angels to the devil, to be cast into that lake of fire and brimstone which is the second death.

And now I, Jacob, spake many more things unto the people of Nephi, warning them against fornication and lasciviousness, and every kind of sin, telling them the awful consequences of them.

And a hundredth part of the proceedings of this people, which now began to be numerous, cannot be written upon these plates; but many of their proceedings are written upon the larger plates, and their wars, and their contentions, and the reigns of their kings.

These plates are called the plates of Jacob, and they were made by the hand of Nephi. And I make an end of speaking these words.

Jakobe 4

- 1 Manje bheka, kwenzeka ukuthi mina, Jakobe, sengibafundisile okuningi abantu bami ngezwi, (futhi ngeke ngikwazi ukubhala ngaphandle kokuncane nje kwamazwi ami, ngenxa yobulukhuni bokuqopha amazwi ethu phezu kwezingcwephe) futhi siyazi ukuthi izinto esizibhalayo phezu kwalezi zingcwephe kufanele zihlale;
- 2 Kodwa noma ngabe yiziphi izinto esizibhalayo phezu kwanoma yini enye into ngaphandle kwasezingcwephe kufanele zishabalale futhi zinyamalale; kodwa singawabhala amazwi ambalwa phezu kwezingcwephe, ayonikeza abantwana bethu, futhi ngokunjalo nabafowethu abathandekayo, ulwazi oluncane mayelana nathi, noma mayelana noyise—
- 3 Manje kulento siyathokoza; futhi sisebenza ngokukhuthala ukuqopha lamazwi phezu kwezingcwephe, sethemba ukuthi abafowethu abathandekayo kanye nabantwana bethu bazowemukela ngezinhliziyo ezibongayo, futhi babheke kuwo ukuze bafunde ngokujabula futhi hhayi ngokudabuka, noma ngokwedelela, mayelana nabazali babo bokuqala.
- 4 Ngokuba, ngalenhloso sizibhalile lezi zinto, ukuze bazi ukuthi sasazi ngoKristu, futhi sasinethemba lenkazimulo yakhe amakhulu amaningi eminyaka ngaphambi kokufika kwakhe; futhi hhayi ukuthi yithina kuphela nje esasinethemba lenkazimulo yakhe, kodwa ngokunjalo nabo bonke abaphrofethi abangcwele ababengaphambi kwethu.
- 5 Bheka, babekholwa kuKristu futhi bemkhonza uBaba egameni lakhe, ngokunjalo nathi sikhonza uBaba egameni lakhe. Futhi ngalenhloso sigcina umthetho kaMose, okhombisa imiphfumulo yethu kuye; futhi ngalesi sizathu kuthathwa ngokuthi senza ukulunga, ngisho njengoba kwancomeka ku-Abrahama ehlane ukuthi alalele imiyalelo kaNkulunkulu ekunikeleni ngendodana yakhe u-Isaka, lokho okungumfanekiso kaNkulunkulu kanye neNdodana yakhe eZelwe Yodwa.

Jacob 4

Now behold, it came to pass that I, Jacob, having ministered much unto my people in word, (and I cannot write but a little of my words, because of the difficulty of engraving our words upon plates) and we know that the things which we write upon plates must remain;

But whatsoever things we write upon anything save it be upon plates must perish and vanish away; but we can write a few words upon plates, which will give our children, and also our beloved brethren, a small degree of knowledge concerning us, or concerning their fathers—

Now in this thing we do rejoice; and we labor diligently to engraven these words upon plates, hoping that our beloved brethren and our children will receive them with thankful hearts, and look upon them that they may learn with joy and not with sorrow, neither with contempt, concerning their first parents.

For, for this intent have we written these things, that they may know that we knew of Christ, and we had a hope of his glory many hundred years before his coming; and not only we ourselves had a hope of his glory, but also all the holy prophets which were before us.

Behold, they believed in Christ and worshiped the Father in his name, and also we worship the Father in his name. And for this intent we keep the law of Moses, it pointing our souls to him; and for this cause it is sanctified unto us for righteousness, even as it was accounted unto Abraham in the wilderness to be obedient unto the commands of God in offering up his son Isaac, which is a similitude of God and his Only Begotten Son.

6 Ngalokho-ke, siyabacwaninga abaphrofethi, futhi sinezambulo eziningi kanye nomoya wokuphrofetha; futhi ngokuba nabo bonke labofakazi sithola ithemba, futhi ukholo lwethu lungabe lusanyakaziseka, kangangokuthi ngempela singayala ngegama likaJesu futhi izihlahla zona kanye zisilalele, noma izintaba, noma amagagasi olwandle.

7 Nokho, iNkosi uNkulunkulu isikhombisa ubuthakathaka bethu ukuze sazi ukuthi kungenxa yomusa wayo, kanye nokuzehlisa kwayo okukhulu kubantwana babantu, ukuthi sibe namandla okwenza lezi zinto.

8 Bheka, mikhulu futhi iyamangalisa imisebenzi yeNkosi. Akucwaningeki kangakanani ukujula kwezimfihlakalo zayo; futhi akunakwenzeka ukuthi umuntu athole zonke izindlela zayo. Futhi akukho muntu owaziyo ngezindlela zayo ngaphandle kokuthi zembulwe kuye; ngalokho-ke, bafowethu, ningazideleli izambulo zikaNkulunkulu.

9 Ngokuba bheka, ngamandla ezwi lakhe umuntu weza phezu kobuso bomhlaba, lowo mhlaba owawudalwe ngamandla ezwi lakhe. Ngalokho-ke, uma uNkulunkulu ekwazi ukukhuluma futhi umhlaba wabakhona, wakhuluma futhi umuntu wadalwa, O pho-ke, kungani engenakukwazi ukuyala umhlaba, noma umsebenzi wezandla zakhe phezu kobuso bawo, njengokuthanda kanye nokufisa kwakhe na?

10 Ngalokho-ke, bafowethu, musani ukufuna ukweluleka iNkosi, kodwa ukuthatha ukwelulekwa esandleni sayo. Ngokuba bhekani, nina qobo lwenu niyazi ukuthi yeluleka ngokuhlakanipha, nangokulunga, kanye nangomusa omkhulu, phezu kwayo yonke imisebenzi yayo.

11 Ngalokho-ke, bafowethu abathandekayo, buyisanani naye ngenhlawulo kaKristu, iNdodana yakhe eZelwe Yodwa, futhi ningathola uvuko, njengokwamandla ovuko akuKristu, futhi nilethwe njengezithelo zokuqala zikaKristu kuNkulunkulu, ninokholo, futhi nithole ithemba elihle lenkazimulo kuye ngaphambi kokuzibonakalisa kwakhe esenyameni.

Wherefore, we search the prophets, and we have many revelations and the spirit of prophecy; and having all these witnesses we obtain a hope, and our faith becometh unshaken, insomuch that we truly can command in the name of Jesus and the very trees obey us, or the mountains, or the waves of the sea.

Nevertheless, the Lord God showeth us our weakness that we may know that it is by his grace, and his great condescensions unto the children of men, that we have power to do these things.

Behold, great and marvelous are the works of the Lord. How unsearchable are the depths of the mysteries of him; and it is impossible that man should find out all his ways. And no man knoweth of his ways save it be revealed unto him; wherefore, brethren, despise not the revelations of God.

For behold, by the power of his word man came upon the face of the earth, which earth was created by the power of his word. Wherefore, if God being able to speak and the world was, and to speak and man was created, O then, why not able to command the earth, or the workmanship of his hands upon the face of it, according to his will and pleasure?

Wherefore, brethren, seek not to counsel the Lord, but to take counsel from his hand. For behold, ye yourselves know that he counseleth in wisdom, and in justice, and in great mercy, over all his works.

Wherefore, beloved brethren, be reconciled unto him through the atonement of Christ, his Only Begotten Son, and ye may obtain a resurrection, according to the power of the resurrection which is in Christ, and be presented as the first-fruits of Christ unto God, having faith, and obtained a good hope of glory in him before he manifesteth himself in the flesh.

- 12 Manje, bathandekayo, ningamangali ukuthi nginitshele lezi zinto; ngokuba kungani kungakhulunywa ngenhlawulo kaKristu, futhi kuzuzwe ulwazi oluphelele lwakhe, njengokuzuzwa ulwazi lovuko kanye nomhlaba ozayo na?
- 13 Bhekani, bafowethu, lowo ophrofethayo, makaphrofethe ngokuqonda kwabantu; ngokuba uMoya ukhuluma iqiniso futhi awuqambi manga. Ngalokho-ke, ukhuluma ngezinto njengoba ngempela zinjalo, futhi nangezinto njengoba ngempela zizokuba njalo; ngalokho-ke, lezi zinto zibonakaliswa kithi ngokusobala, ukuze kusindiswe imiphefumulo yethu. Kodwa bhekani, thina asibona ofakazi sodwa kulezi zinto; ngokuba phezu kwalokho uNkulunkulu wazikhuluma nakubo abaphrofethi basendulo.
- 14 Kodwa bhekani, amaJuda ayengontamolukhuni babantu; futhi awadelela amazwi acacileyo, futhi abulala abaphrofethi, futhi afuna izinto ayengenakuziqonda. Ngalokho-ke, ngenxa yobumpumpu the bawo, lobo bumpumpu the obafika ngokubuka ngale komgomo, kufanele awe; ngokuba uNkulunkulu ukususile okusobala kwakhe kuwo, futhi wathumela kuwo eziningi izinto angenakuziqonda, ngenxa yokuthi ayezifisa. Futhi ngenxa yokuthi ayezifisa uNkulunkulu ukwenzile lokhu, ukuze akhubeke.
- 15 Manje mina, Jakobe, ngiholelwa nguMoya ekuphrofetheni; ngokuba ngiyabona ngokusebenza kukaMoya okimi, ukuthi ngokukhubeka kwamaJuda azolenqaba lelo tshe abengakhela phezu kwalo futhi abe nesiphophile isisekelo.
- 16 Kodwa bhekani, ngokwemibhalo engcwele, leli litshe liyokuba ngesikhulu, nesokugcina, futhi isisekelo esiyiso kuphela, amaJuda angakhela phezu kwaso.
- 17 Manje, bathandekayo bami, kungenzeka kanjani ukuthi laba, emva kokuthi sebesenqabile isisekelo esiyiso, bangakhela phezu kwaso futhi, ukuze sibe yinhloko yengosi yabo na?
- 18 Bhekani, bafowethu abathandekayo, ngizoyembula lemfihlakalo kini; uma kungenzeki, nangayiphi indlela, ngithole ukunyakaziswa ekuqineni kwami eMoyeni, futhi ngikhubeke ngenxa yokukhathazeka okukhulu kwami ngani.

And now, beloved, marvel not that I tell you these things; for why not speak of the atonement of Christ, and attain to a perfect knowledge of him, as to attain to the knowledge of a resurrection and the world to come?

Behold, my brethren, he that prophesieth, let him prophesy to the understanding of men; for the Spirit speaketh the truth and lieth not. Wherefore, it speaketh of things as they really are, and of things as they really will be; wherefore, these things are manifested unto us plainly, for the salvation of our souls. But behold, we are not witnesses alone in these things; for God also spake them unto prophets of old.

But behold, the Jews were a stiffnecked people; and they despised the words of plainness, and killed the prophets, and sought for things that they could not understand. Wherefore, because of their blindness, which blindness came by looking beyond the mark, they must needs fall; for God hath taken away his plainness from them, and delivered unto them many things which they cannot understand, because they desired it. And because they desired it God hath done it, that they may stumble.

And now I, Jacob, am led on by the Spirit unto prophesying; for I perceive by the workings of the Spirit which is in me, that by the stumbling of the Jews they will reject the stone upon which they might build and have safe foundation.

But behold, according to the scriptures, this stone shall become the great, and the last, and the only sure foundation, upon which the Jews can build.

And now, my beloved, how is it possible that these, after having rejected the sure foundation, can ever build upon it, that it may become the head of their corner?

Behold, my beloved brethren, I will unfold this mystery unto you; if I do not, by any means, get shaken from my firmness in the Spirit, and stumble because of my over anxiety for you.

Jakobe 5

- 1 Bhekani, bafowethu, anikhumbuli yini nifunda amazwi omphrofethi uZenoshe, awakhuluma kuyo indlu ka-Israyeli, ethi:
- 2 Lalelani, O nina ndlu ka-Israyeli, futhi zwanini amazwi ami, umphrofethi weNkosi.
- 3 Ngokuba bhekani, isho kanje iNkosi, Ngizonifanisa, O ndlu ka-Israyeli, nesihlahla somnqumo esithanjisiwe, umuntu asithatha wasondla esivinini sakhe; futhi sakhula, futhi sakhula saba sidala, futhi saqala ukubola.
- 4 Futhi kwenzeka ukuthi inkosi yesivini yahamba, futhi yabona ukuthi isihlahla somnqumo sayo sasesiqala ukubola; futhi yathi: Ngizosithena, futhi ngisivukuzele emaceleni aso, futhi ngisondle, ukuze mhlawumbe sihlume amancane kanye nathambileyo amagatsha, futhi singafi.
- 5 Futhi kwenzeka ukuthi yasithena, futhi yasivukuzela emaceleni aso, futhi yasondla njengokwezwi layo.
- 6 Futhi kwenzeka ukuthi emva kweziningi izinsuku saqala kancane ukukhipha ambalwa, amancane futhi athambile amagatsha; kodwa bheka, isiqu esiphezulu saso saqala ukufa.
- 7 Futhi kwenzeka ukuthi inkosi yesivini yakubona lokhu, futhi yathi encekwini yayo: Kuyangidabukisa ukuthi ngizolahlekelwa yilesi sihlahla; ngalokho-ke, hamba uyokha amagatsha esihlahleni somnqumo sasendle, uwalethe lapha kimi; futhi sizokukha lawo magatsha amakhulu aseqala ukubuna, futhi sizowaphonsa emlilweni ukuze ashiswe.
- 8 Futhi bheka, kusho iNkosi yesivini, ngiyawasusa amaningi alawa amancane nathambile amagatsha, futhi ngizowaxhumelela noma ngabe kuphi lapho ngithanda khona; futhi akunandaba noma ngabe kungukuthi impande yalesi sihlahla iyafa, ngingazigcinela isithelo saso kimi; ngalokho-ke, ngizothatha lawa amancane nathambile amagatsha, futhi ngizowaxhumelela noma ngabe kuphi lapho ngithanda khona.

Jacob 5

Behold, my brethren, do ye not remember to have read the words of the prophet Zenos, which he spake unto the house of Israel, saying:

Hearken, O ye house of Israel, and hear the words of me, a prophet of the Lord.

For behold, thus saith the Lord, I will liken thee, O house of Israel, like unto a tame olive tree, which a man took and nourished in his vineyard; and it grew, and waxed old, and began to decay.

And it came to pass that the master of the vineyard went forth, and he saw that his olive tree began to decay; and he said: I will prune it, and dig about it, and nourish it, that perhaps it may shoot forth young and tender branches, and it perish not.

And it came to pass that he pruned it, and digged about it, and nourished it according to his word.

And it came to pass that after many days it began to put forth somewhat a little, young and tender branches; but behold, the main top thereof began to perish.

And it came to pass that the master of the vineyard saw it, and he said unto his servant: It grieveth me that I should lose this tree; wherefore, go and pluck the branches from a wild olive tree, and bring them hither unto me; and we will pluck off those main branches which are beginning to wither away, and we will cast them into the fire that they may be burned.

And behold, saith the Lord of the vineyard, I take away many of these young and tender branches, and I will graft them whithersoever I will; and it mattereth not that if it so be that the root of this tree will perish, I may preserve the fruit thereof unto myself; wherefore, I will take these young and tender branches, and I will graft them whithersoever I will.

- 9 Thatha lamagatsha esihlahla somnqumo wasendle, uwaxhumelele kuso, esikhundleni sesiqu; lawa engiwakhile ngizowaphonsa emlilweni ngiwashise, ukuze angoni umhlabathi wesivini sami.
- 10 Futhi kwenzeka ukuthi inceku yeNkosi yesivini yenza njengokwezwi leNkosi yesivini, yawaxhumelela amagatsha esihlahla somnqumo wasendle.
- 11 Futhi iNkosi yesivini yenza ukuthi sivukuzelwe, sithenwe, futhi sondliwe, ithi encekwini yayo: Kuyangidabukisa ukuthi kufanele ngilahlekelwe yilesi sihlahla; ngalokho-ke, ukuze mhlawumbe ngigcine izimpande zaso ukuze zingafi, ukuze ngizigcinele zona, ngiyenzile lento.
- 12 Ngalokho-ke, hamba ngeyakho indlela; usiqaphele lesi sihlahla, usondle, njengokwamazwi ami.
- 13 Futhi lawa ngizowabeka enxenyeni ekude yesivini sami, noma ngabe kukuphi lapho ngithanda khona, akubalulekile kuwe; futhi ngiyokwenza lokhu ukuze ngizigcinele amagatsha emvelo esihlahla; futhi phezu kwalokho, ukuze ngizibekele isithelo sawo ukulungiselela isikhathi; ngokuba kuyangidabukisa ukuthi kufanele ngilahlekelwe yilesi sihlahla kanye nesithelo saso.
- 14 Futhi kwenzeka ukuthi iNkosi yesivini yahamba, futhi yawafihla amagatsha emvelo esihlahla somnqumo esithanjisiwe ezinxenyeni ezikude zesivini, amanye kwenye inxenyeni futhi namanye kwenye, njengokuthanda kanye nokufisa kwayo.
- 15 Futhi kwenzeka ukuthi isikhathi eside sedlula, futhi iNkosi yesivini yathi encekwini yayo: Woza, masihambe sehle siye kuso isivini, ukuze sisebenze esivini.
- 16 Futhi kwenzeka ukuthi iNkosi yesivini, ngokunjalo nenceku, bahamba behlela kuso isivini ukuyosebenza. Futhi kwenzeka ukuthi inceku yathi eNkosini yayo: Bheka, buka lapha; bheka isihlahla.
- 17 Futhi kwenzeka ukuthi iNkosi yesivini yabuka futhi yabona isihlahla leso amagatsha omnqumo wasendle ayexhunyelelwe kuso; futhi ayesemilile futhi eseqale ukukhipha isithelo. Futhi yabona ukuthi sasisihle; futhi nesithelo saso sasinjengaso isithelo semvelo.

Take thou the branches of the wild olive tree, and graft them in, in the stead thereof; and these which I have plucked off I will cast into the fire and burn them, that they may not cumber the ground of my vineyard.

And it came to pass that the servant of the Lord of the vineyard did according to the word of the Lord of the vineyard, and grafted in the branches of the wild olive tree.

And the Lord of the vineyard caused that it should be digged about, and pruned, and nourished, saying unto his servant: It grieveth me that I should lose this tree; wherefore, that perhaps I might preserve the roots thereof that they perish not, that I might preserve them unto myself, I have done this thing.

Wherefore, go thy way; watch the tree, and nourish it, according to my words.

And these will I place in the nethermost part of my vineyard, whithersoever I will, it mattereth not unto thee; and I do it that I may preserve unto myself the natural branches of the tree; and also, that I may lay up fruit thereof against the season, unto myself; for it grieveth me that I should lose this tree and the fruit thereof.

And it came to pass that the Lord of the vineyard went his way, and hid the natural branches of the tame olive tree in the nethermost parts of the vineyard, some in one and some in another, according to his will and pleasure.

And it came to pass that a long time passed away, and the Lord of the vineyard said unto his servant: Come, let us go down into the vineyard, that we may labor in the vineyard.

And it came to pass that the Lord of the vineyard, and also the servant, went down into the vineyard to labor. And it came to pass that the servant said unto his master: Behold, look here; behold the tree.

And it came to pass that the Lord of the vineyard looked and beheld the tree in the which the wild olive branches had been grafted; and it had sprung forth and begun to bear fruit. And he beheld that it was good; and the fruit thereof was like unto the natural fruit.

18 Futhi yathi encekwini: Bheka, amagatsha esihlahla sasendle asebambe umswakama wempande yaso, kangangoba impande yaso ilethe amandla amakhulu; futhi ngenxa yamandla amakhulu empande yaso amagatsha asendle akhipha isithelo esithanjisiwe. Manje, ukuba besingawaxhumelelanga lamagatsha, lesi isihlahla besiyokufa. Manje, bheka, ngiyozibekela izithelo eziningi, isihlahla esizikhiphile; futhi nezithelo zaso ngiyozibekela esinye isikhathi.

19 Futhi kwenzeka ukuthi iNkosi yesivini yathi encekwini: Woza, masihambe siye enxenyeni ekude yesivini, sibheke ukuthi amagatsha emvelo esihlahla awakakhiphi yini eziningi izithelo futhi, ukuze ngizibekele izithelo zaso ukulungiselela isikhathi.

20 Futhi kwenzeka ukuthi bahamba baya lapho iNkosi yayifihle khona amagatsha emvelo esihlahla, futhi yathi encekwini: Bheka lawa; futhi yabona elokuqala ukuthi lase likhiphe izithelo eziningi; futhi phezu kwalokho yabona ukuthi zazizinhle. Futhi yathi encekwini: Thatha izithelo zaso, uzibekele ukulungiselela isikhathi, ukuze ngizigcinele zona; ngokuba bheka, kusho yona, kuso sonke lesi sikhathi eside kangaka ngisondlile, futhi sikhiphe izithelo eziningi.

21 Futhi kwenzeka ukuthi inceku yathi enkosini yayo: Uzeleni lapha ukuzotshala lesi sihlahla, noma leligatsha lalesi sihlahla na? Ngokuba bheka, kwakuyibala elingavundile kakhulu kuyo yonke lendawo yesivini sakho.

22 Futhi iNkosi yesivini yathi kuyo: Ungangeluleki; ngangazi ukuthi kwakuyibala elalingavundile lomhlabathi; ngalokho-ke, ngathi kuwe, ngilondlile ngaso sonke lesi sikhathi eside, futhi ubonile ukuthi likhiphe izithelo eziningi.

23 Futhi kwenzeka ukuthi iNkosi yesivini yathi encekwini yayo: Buka lapha; bheka ngitshale elinye igatsha lesihlahla futhi; futhi uyazi ukuthi lelibala lomhlabathi lalingavundile kakhulu kunelokuqala. Kodwa, bheka isihlahla. Ngisondlile ngaso sonke lesi sikhathi eside, futhi sikhiphe izithelo eziningi; ngalokho-ke, ziqoqe, futhi uzibekele ukulungiselela isikhathi, ukuze ngizigcinele zona.

And he said unto the servant: Behold, the branches of the wild tree have taken hold of the moisture of the root thereof, that the root thereof hath brought forth much strength; and because of the much strength of the root thereof the wild branches have brought forth tame fruit. Now, if we had not grafted in these branches, the tree thereof would have perished. And now, behold, I shall lay up much fruit, which the tree thereof hath brought forth; and the fruit thereof I shall lay up against the season, unto mine own self.

And it came to pass that the Lord of the vineyard said unto the servant: Come, let us go to the nethermost part of the vineyard, and behold if the natural branches of the tree have not brought forth much fruit also, that I may lay up of the fruit thereof against the season, unto mine own self.

And it came to pass that they went forth whither the master had hid the natural branches of the tree, and he said unto the servant: Behold these; and he beheld the first that it had brought forth much fruit; and he beheld also that it was good. And he said unto the servant: Take of the fruit thereof, and lay it up against the season, that I may preserve it unto mine own self; for behold, said he, this long time have I nourished it, and it hath brought forth much fruit.

And it came to pass that the servant said unto his master: How comest thou hither to plant this tree, or this branch of the tree? For behold, it was the poorest spot in all the land of thy vineyard.

And the Lord of the vineyard said unto him: Counsel me not; I knew that it was a poor spot of ground; wherefore, I said unto thee, I have nourished it this long time, and thou beholdest that it hath brought forth much fruit.

And it came to pass that the Lord of the vineyard said unto his servant: Look hither; behold I have planted another branch of the tree also; and thou knowest that this spot of ground was poorer than the first. But, behold the tree. I have nourished it this long time, and it hath brought forth much fruit; therefore, gather it, and lay it up against the season, that I may preserve it unto mine own self.

24 Futhi kwenzeka ukuthi iNkosi yesivini yaphinda yathi encekwini yayo: Buka lapha, futhi ubone elinye igatsha futhi, engilitshalile; bheka ukuthi ngilondlile nalo futhi, futhi likhiphe izithelo.

25 Futhi yathi encekwini: Buka lapha futhi ubone elokugcina. Bheka, leli ngalitshala ebaleni lomhlabathi omuhle; futhi ngilondlile ngalesi sikhathi eside, futhi yinxenye kuphela yesihlahla ekhiphe izithelo ezithambileyo, futhi enye inxenye yesihlahla ikhiphe izithelo zasendle; bheka, ngisondlile lesi sihlahla njengezinye.

26 Futhi kwenzeka ukuthi iNkosi yesivini yathi encekwini: Yikha lawo magatsha angakhiphanga izithelo ezinhle, uwaphonse emlilweni.

27 Kodwa bheka, inceku yathi kuyo: Masisithene, futhi sisivukuzele emaceleni, futhi sisondle isikhashana esidanyana nje, ukuze mhlawumbe sikukhiphele izithelo ezinhle, ukuze uzibekele sona ukulungiselela isikhathi.

28 Futhi kwenzeka ukuthi iNkosi yesivini kanye nenceku yeNkosi yesivini nempela bazondla zonke izithelo zesivini.

29 Futhi kwenzeka ukuthi isikhathi eside sase sidlulile, futhi iNkosi yesivini yathi encekwini yayo: Woza, masihambe sehlele kuso isivini, ukuze sisebenze futhi esivini. Ngokuba bheka, isikhathi siyasondela, futhi isiphetho siyeza masinyane; ngalokho-ke, kufanele ngizibekele izithelo ukulungiselela isikhathi.

30 Futhi kwenzeka ukuthi iNkosi yesivini kanye nenceku bahamba behlela kuso isivini; futhi bafika esihlahleni leso amagatsha aso emvelo ayehleshuliwe, futhi amagatsha asendle ayexhunyeleliswe kuso; futhi bheka izinhlobo ngezinhlobo zezithelo zazisithwalise kakhulu isihlahla.

31 Futhi kwenzeka ukuthi iNkosi yesivini nempela yasinambitha isithelo, zonke izinhlobo njengokwesibalo sazo. Futhi iNkosi yesivini yathi: Bheka, ngalesi sikhathi eside sisondlile lesi sihlahla, futhi ngizibekele ukulungiselela isikhathi izithelo eziningi.

And it came to pass that the Lord of the vineyard said again unto his servant: Look hither, and behold another branch also, which I have planted; behold that I have nourished it also, and it hath brought forth fruit.

And he said unto the servant: Look hither and behold the last. Behold, this have I planted in a good spot of ground; and I have nourished it this long time, and only a part of the tree hath brought forth tame fruit, and the other part of the tree hath brought forth wild fruit; behold, I have nourished this tree like unto the others.

And it came to pass that the Lord of the vineyard said unto the servant: Pluck off the branches that have not brought forth good fruit, and cast them into the fire.

But behold, the servant said unto him: Let us prune it, and dig about it, and nourish it a little longer, that perhaps it may bring forth good fruit unto thee, that thou canst lay it up against the season.

And it came to pass that the Lord of the vineyard and the servant of the Lord of the vineyard did nourish all the fruit of the vineyard.

And it came to pass that a long time had passed away, and the Lord of the vineyard said unto his servant: Come, let us go down into the vineyard, that we may labor again in the vineyard. For behold, the time draweth near, and the end soon cometh; wherefore, I must lay up fruit against the season, unto mine own self.

And it came to pass that the Lord of the vineyard and the servant went down into the vineyard; and they came to the tree whose natural branches had been broken off, and the wild branches had been grafted in; and behold all sorts of fruit did cumber the tree.

And it came to pass that the Lord of the vineyard did taste of the fruit, every sort according to its number. And the Lord of the vineyard said: Behold, this long time have we nourished this tree, and I have laid up unto myself against the season much fruit.

32 Kodwa bheka, ngalesi sikhathi sesikhiphe izithelo eziningi, futhi akukho nasinye sazo esihle. Futhi bheka, kukhona zonke izinhlobo zezithelo ezimbi; futhi azingisizi ngalutho, naphezu kwakho konke ukusebenza kwethu; manje kuyangidabukisa ukuthi ngizolahlekelwa yilesi sihlahla.

33 Futhi iNkosi yesivini yathi encekwini: Sizokwenzani kulesi sihlahla, ukuze ngizigcinele futhi izithelo ezinhle zaso na?

34 Futhi inceku yathi eNkosini yayo: Bheka, ngokuba uxhumelelise amagatsha esihlahla somnqumo sasendle azondlile izimpande, kangangoba ziphilile futhi azifanga; ngalokho-ke uyabona ukuthi zisezinhle.

35 Futhi kwenzeka ukuthi iNkosi yesivini yathi encekwini yayo: Isihlahla asingisizi ngalutho, kanye nezimpande zaso azingisizi ngalutho uma nje sisakhipha izithelo ezimbi.

36 Noma kunjalo, ngiyazi ukuthi izimpande zinhle, futhi ngokwenhloso yami ngizigcinile; futhi ngenxa yamandla azo amakhulu kuze kube manje zikhiphile, emagatsheni asendle, izithelo ezinhle.

37 Kodwa bheka, amagatsha asendle akhulile futhi adlula izimpande zaso; futhi ngenxa yokuthi amagatsha asendle adlule izimpande zaso akhiphe izithelo eziningi ezimbi; futhi ngenxa yokuthi akhiphe izithelo eziningi kakhulu ezimbi ubonile ukuthi aqala ukufa; futhi masinyane azobe esevuthiwe, ukuthi aphonswwe emlilweni, ngaphandle kokuthi siwenzele okuthize ukuze siwagcine.

38 Futhi kwenzeka ukuthi iNkosi yesivini yathi encekwini yayo: Masihambe sehlele ezinxenyeni ezikude zesivini, futhi sibheke ukuthi ngabe amagatsha emvelo nawo akhiphe izithelo ezimbi yini.

39 Futhi kwenzeka ukuthi bahamba behlela ezinxenyeni ezingaphandle zesivini. Futhi kwenzeka ukuthi babona ukuthi izithelo zamagatsha emvelo nazo zabe sezonakele; yebo, ezokuqala kanye nezesibili futhi ngokunjalo nezokugcina; futhi zonke zabe sezonakele.

But behold, this time it hath brought forth much fruit, and there is none of it which is good. And behold, there are all kinds of bad fruit; and it profiteth me nothing, notwithstanding all our labor; and now it grieveth me that I should lose this tree.

And the Lord of the vineyard said unto the servant: What shall we do unto the tree, that I may preserve again good fruit thereof unto mine own self?

And the servant said unto his master: Behold, because thou didst graft in the branches of the wild olive tree they have nourished the roots, that they are alive and they have not perished; wherefore thou beholdest that they are yet good.

And it came to pass that the Lord of the vineyard said unto his servant: The tree profiteth me nothing, and the roots thereof profit me nothing so long as it shall bring forth evil fruit.

Nevertheless, I know that the roots are good, and for mine own purpose I have preserved them; and because of their much strength they have hitherto brought forth, from the wild branches, good fruit.

But behold, the wild branches have grown and have overrun the roots thereof; and because that the wild branches have overcome the roots thereof it hath brought forth much evil fruit; and because that it hath brought forth so much evil fruit thou beholdest that it beginneth to perish; and it will soon become ripened, that it may be cast into the fire, except we should do something for it to preserve it.

And it came to pass that the Lord of the vineyard said unto his servant: Let us go down into the nethermost parts of the vineyard, and behold if the natural branches have also brought forth evil fruit.

And it came to pass that they went down into the nethermost parts of the vineyard. And it came to pass that they beheld that the fruit of the natural branches had become corrupt also; yea, the first and the second and also the last; and they had all become corrupt.

40 Futhi izithelo zasendle zokugcina zase zidlule leyo nxenye yesihlahla eyayikhiphe izithelo ezinhle, ngisho kangangokuthi igatsha lase libunile futhi selifile.

41 Futhi kwenzeka ukuthi iNkosi yesivini yakhala, futhi yathi encekwini: Ngabe bekufanele ukuthi ngenzeni okunye esivinini sami na?

42 Bheka, ngangazi ukuthi zonke izithelo zesivini, ngaphandle kwalezi, zase zonakele. Manje nazo lezi ezake zakhapha izithelo ezinhle sezonakele; manje zonke izihlahla zesivini sami azisizi ngalutho ngaphandle nje kokuthi zicekelwe phansi futhi ziphonswe emlilweni.

43 Futhi bheka lesi sokugcina, esimagatsha aso asebungile, nempela ngasitshala ebaleni elihle lomhlabathi; yebo, ngisho lelo elalikhethekile kimi ngaphezu kwazo zonke ezinye izingxenye zezwe lesivini sami.

44 Futhi ubonile ukuthi phezu kwalokho ngisinqumile leso esone lelibala lomhlabathi, ukuze ngitshale lesi sihlahla esikhundleni saso.

45 Futhi ubonile ukuthi inxenye yaso yakhipha izithelo ezinhle, kanye nenxenye yaso yakhipha izithelo zasendle; futhi ngenxa yokuthi angiwakhanga amagatsha aso futhi ngawaphonsa emlilweni, bheka, asedlule igatsha elihle kangangokuthi selize labuna.

46 Manje, bheka, naphezu kwakho konke ukunakekela esikwenzile esivinini sami, izihlahla zaso zibe nokonakala, kangangokuthi azikhiphanga izithelo ezinhle; futhi lezi benginethemba lokuzigcina, nokuthi ngizibekele izithelo zaso ukulungiselela isikhathi. Kodwa, bheka, zibe njengesihlahla somnqumo sasendle, futhi azinanzuzo kodwa ukucekelwa phansi ziphonswe emlilweni; futhi kuyangidabukisa ukuthi ngizolahlekelwa yizo.

And the wild fruit of the last had overcome that part of the tree which brought forth good fruit, even that the branch had withered away and died.

And it came to pass that the Lord of the vineyard wept, and said unto the servant: What could I have done more for my vineyard?

Behold, I knew that all the fruit of the vineyard, save it were these, had become corrupted. And now these which have once brought forth good fruit have also become corrupted; and now all the trees of my vineyard are good for nothing save it be to be hewn down and cast into the fire.

And behold this last, whose branch hath withered away, I did plant in a good spot of ground; yea, even that which was choice unto me above all other parts of the land of my vineyard.

And thou beheldest that I also cut down that which cumbered this spot of ground, that I might plant this tree in the stead thereof.

And thou beheldest that a part thereof brought forth good fruit, and a part thereof brought forth wild fruit; and because I plucked not the branches thereof and cast them into the fire, behold, they have overcome the good branch that it hath withered away.

And now, behold, notwithstanding all the care which we have taken of my vineyard, the trees thereof have become corrupted, that they bring forth no good fruit; and these I had hoped to preserve, to have laid up fruit thereof against the season, unto mine own self. But, behold, they have become like unto the wild olive tree, and they are of no worth but to be hewn down and cast into the fire; and it grieveth me that I should lose them.

47 Kodwa ngabe bengingenzani okunye esivini sami na? Ngabe ngisidembeselisile yini isandla sami, ukuthi ngisondle na? Cha, ngisondlile, futhi ngasivukuzela emaceleni aso, futhi ngisithenile, futhi ngasifaka umquba; futhi ngiselulile isandla sami cishe bonke ubude belanga, futhi isiphetho siyasondela eduze. Futhi kuyangidabukisa ukuthi kufanele ngizicekele phansi zonke izihlahla zesivini sami, futhi ngiziphonse emlilweni ukuze zishiswe. Ngabe ngubani lona onakalise isivini sami na?

48 Futhi kwenzeka ukuthi inceku yathi eNkosini yayo: Ngabe akukhona yini ukukhula kakhulu kwesivini sakho na?—ngabe amagatsha aso awazidlulanga yini izimpande ezinhle na? Futhi ngenxa yokuthi amagatsha adlule izimpande zaso, bheka akhula ngokushesha kunamandla ezimpande, azitholela amandla. Bheka, ngithi, ngabe lokhu akusona yini isizathu esenze izihlahla zesivini sakho zibe nokonakala na?

49 Futhi kwenzeka ukuthi iNkosi yesivini yathi encekwini: Masihambe futhi siyozicekela phansi izihlahla zesivini siziphonse emlilweni, ukuze zingawoni umhlabathi wesivini sami, ngokuba sengikwenze konke. Ngabe yini enye ebengingayenzela isivini sami na?

50 Kodwa, bheka, inceku yathi eNkosini yesivini: Zihawukele isikhashana esidanyana.

51 Futhi iNkosi yathi: Yebo, ngizozihawukela isikhashana esidanyana, ngokuba kuyangidabukisa ukuthi ngilahlekelwe yizihlahla zesivini sami.

52 Ngalokho-ke, masithathe amanye alamagatsha engiwatshale ezinxenyeni ezikude zesivini sami, futhi masiwaxhumelelise esihlahleni lapho ephume khona; futhi masikhe kuso isihlahla lawo magatsha azithelo zawo zibaba kakhulu, futhi sixhumelelise amagatsha emvelo esihlahla esikhundleni sawo.

53 Futhi lokhu ngizokwenza ukuze isihlahla singafi, ukuze, mhlawumbe, ngizigcinele izimpande zaso ngenhloso yami.

But what could I have done more in my vineyard? Have I slackened mine hand, that I have not nourished it? Nay, I have nourished it, and I have dugged about it, and I have pruned it, and I have dunged it; and I have stretched forth mine hand almost all the day long, and the end draweth nigh. And it grieveth me that I should hew down all the trees of my vineyard, and cast them into the fire that they should be burned. Who is it that has corrupted my vineyard?

And it came to pass that the servant said unto his master: Is it not the loftiness of thy vineyard—have not the branches thereof overcome the roots which are good? And because the branches have overcome the roots thereof, behold they grew faster than the strength of the roots, taking strength unto themselves. Behold, I say, is not this the cause that the trees of thy vineyard have become corrupted?

And it came to pass that the Lord of the vineyard said unto the servant: Let us go to and hew down the trees of the vineyard and cast them into the fire, that they shall not cumber the ground of my vineyard, for I have done all. What could I have done more for my vineyard?

But, behold, the servant said unto the Lord of the vineyard: Spare it a little longer.

And the Lord said: Yea, I will spare it a little longer, for it grieveth me that I should lose the trees of my vineyard.

Wherefore, let us take of the branches of these which I have planted in the nethermost parts of my vineyard, and let us graft them into the tree from whence they came; and let us pluck from the tree those branches whose fruit is most bitter, and graft in the natural branches of the tree in the stead thereof.

And this will I do that the tree may not perish, that, perhaps, I may preserve unto myself the roots thereof for mine own purpose.

54 Futhi, bheka, izimpande zamagatsha emvelo esihlahla engisitshale lapho ngithanda khona zisaphila; ngalokho-ke, ukuze nazo ngizigcinele inhloso yami, ngizothatha amanye amagatsha alesi sihlahla, futhi ngizowaxhumelelisa kuzo. Yebo, ngizoxhumelelisa kuzo amagatsha kanina wesihlahla sawo, ukuze ngizigcinele izimpande futhi, ukuze kuthi uma seziqine ngokwanele mhlawumbe zingangikhiphela izithelo ezinhle, futhi kumbe ngisenganentokozo esivinini sami.

55 Futhi kwenzeka ukuthi bathatha kuso isihlahla semvelo esabe sesifana nesasendle, futhi baxhumelelisa kuzo izihlahla zemvelo, nazo futhi ezabe sezifana nezasendle.

56 Futhi phezu kwalokho bathatha amanye ezihlahla zemvelo ezabe sezifana nezasendle bawaxhumelelisa kunina wesihlahla sawo.

57 Futhi iNkosi yesivini yathi encekwini; Ungawakhi amagatsha asendle ezihlahleni, ngaphandle kwalawo ababa kakhulu; futhi kuwo uyowaxhumelelisa ngokwalokho engikushilo.

58 Futhi sizozondla futhi izihlahla zesivini, futhi sizowathena amagatsha azo; futhi sizokukha kuzo izihlahla amagatsha asevuthiwe, osekufanele afe, siwaphonse emlilweni.

59 Futhi lokhu ngikwenza ukuze, mhlawumbe, izimpande zithole amandla ngenxa yokuqina kwazo; futhi nangenxa yokushintshwa kwamagatsha ukuze okuhle kunqobe okubi.

60 Futhi ngenxa yokuthi ngiwagcinile amagatsha emvelo kanye nezimpande zawo, kanye nokuthi ngixhumelelise amagatsha emvelo futhi kunina wesihlahla, futhi nokuthi ngizigcinile izimpande zikanina wesihlahla, ukuze, mhlawumbe, izihlahla zesivini sami zikhiphe futhi izithelo ezinhle; futhi ukuze ngibe nokujabula futhi ezithelweni zesivini sami, futhi, mhlawumbe, ukuze ngithokoze kakhulu ukuthi ngizigcinile izimpande kanye namagatsha esithelo sokuqala—

And, behold, the roots of the natural branches of the tree which I planted whithersoever I would are yet alive; wherefore, that I may preserve them also for mine own purpose, I will take of the branches of this tree, and I will graft them in unto them. Yea, I will graft in unto them the branches of their mother tree, that I may preserve the roots also unto mine own self, that when they shall be sufficiently strong perhaps they may bring forth good fruit unto me, and I may yet have glory in the fruit of my vineyard.

And it came to pass that they took from the natural tree which had become wild, and grafted in unto the natural trees, which also had become wild.

And they also took of the natural trees which had become wild, and grafted into their mother tree.

And the Lord of the vineyard said unto the servant: Pluck not the wild branches from the trees, save it be those which are most bitter; and in them ye shall graft according to that which I have said.

And we will nourish again the trees of the vineyard, and we will trim up the branches thereof; and we will pluck from the trees those branches which are ripened, that must perish, and cast them into the fire.

And this I do that, perhaps, the roots thereof may take strength because of their goodness; and because of the change of the branches, that the good may overcome the evil.

And because that I have preserved the natural branches and the roots thereof, and that I have grafted in the natural branches again into their mother tree, and have preserved the roots of their mother tree, that, perhaps, the trees of my vineyard may bring forth again good fruit; and that I may have joy again in the fruit of my vineyard, and, perhaps, that I may rejoice exceedingly that I have preserved the roots and the branches of the first fruit—

- 61 Ngalokho-ke, hamba, futhi ubize izinceku, ukuze sisebenze ngokukhuthala ngamandla ethu esivini, ukuze silungise indlela, ukuze ngikhiphe futhi isithelo semvelo, leso sithelo semvelo esihle futhi esiyigugu elikhulu ngaphezu kwazo zonke ezinye izithelo.
- 62 Ngalokho-ke, masihambe futhi siyosebenza ngamandla ethu ngalesi sikhathi sokugcina, ngokuba bheka isiphetho siyasondela eduzane, futhi lokhu kungokokugcina ukuthi ngithene isivini sami.
- 63 Xhumelelisa amagatsha; qala ekugcineni ukuze abe ngawokuqala, futhi nokuthi awokuqala abe ngawokugcina, futhi uzivukuzele emaceleni izihlahla, ezindala kanye nezincane, ezokuqala kanye nezokugcina; ezokugcina kanye nezokuqala, ukuze zonke zondliwe futhi okokugcina.
- 64 Ngalokho-ke, zivukuzele emaceleni, uzithene, uzifake umquba futhi, okokugcina, ngokuba isiphetho siyasondela maduzane. Futhi uma kungukuthi le mihlumela yokugcina iyakhula, futhi ikhipha isithelo semvelo, uma kunjalo uyoyilungiselela indlela, ukuze ikhule.
- 65 Futhi ngesikhathi isiqala ukukhula uyosusa lawo magatsha akhipha isithelo esibabayo, njengokwamandla amagatsha amahle kanye nobukhulu bawo; futhi awuyikuzicenta izihlahla ezimbi zonke kanye kanye, hleze izimpande zazo zibe namandla amakhulu kunehlumela, bese kuthi ihlumela lazo life, bese ngilahlekelwa yizihlahla zesivini sami.
- 66 Ngokuba kuyangidabukisa ukuthi ngilahlekelwe yizihlahla zesivini sami; ngalokho-ke uyozisusa ezimbi kangangoba ezinhle zikhula, ukuze impande kanye nesihloko kulingane ngokwamandla, kuze kuthi okuhle kunqobe okubi, bese kuthi okubi kucekelwe phansi kuphonswe emlilweni, ukuze kungawoni umhlabathi wesivini sami; futhi ngiyokushanela kanje okubi kuphume esivini sami.
- 67 Futhi amagatsha esihlahla semvelo ngiyowaxhumelela futhi esihlahleni semvelo;

Wherefore, go to, and call servants, that we may labor diligently with our might in the vineyard, that we may prepare the way, that I may bring forth again the natural fruit, which natural fruit is good and the most precious above all other fruit.

Wherefore, let us go to and labor with our might this last time, for behold the end draweth nigh, and this is for the last time that I shall prune my vineyard.

Graft in the branches; begin at the last that they may be first, and that the first may be last, and dig about the trees, both old and young, the first and the last; and the last and the first, that all may be nourished once again for the last time.

Wherefore, dig about them, and prune them, and dung them once more, for the last time, for the end draweth nigh. And if it be so that these last grafts shall grow, and bring forth the natural fruit, then shall ye prepare the way for them, that they may grow.

And as they begin to grow ye shall clear away the branches which bring forth bitter fruit, according to the strength of the good and the size thereof; and ye shall not clear away the bad thereof all at once, lest the roots thereof should be too strong for the graft, and the graft thereof shall perish, and I lose the trees of my vineyard.

For it grieveth me that I should lose the trees of my vineyard; wherefore ye shall clear away the bad according as the good shall grow, that the root and the top may be equal in strength, until the good shall overcome the bad, and the bad be hewn down and cast into the fire, that they cumber not the ground of my vineyard; and thus will I sweep away the bad out of my vineyard.

And the branches of the natural tree will I graft in again into the natural tree;

68 Futhi amagatsha esihlahla semvelo ngizowaxhumelela kuwo amagatsha emvelo esihlahla; futhi ngaleyo ndlela ngizowahlanganisa ndawonye futhi, ukuze akhiphe isithelo semvelo, futhi ayokuba manye.

69 Futhi amagatsha amabi ayolahlwa, yebo, ngisho ngaphandle kude kwalo lonke izwe lesivini sami; ngokuba bheka, sekungokokugcina nje kuphela ngisithena isivini sami.

70 Futhi kwenzeka ukuthi iNkosi yesivini yathumela inceku yayo; futhi inceku yahamba yenza njengokuba iNkosi yayiyiyalile futhi yaletha ezinye izinceku; futhi zazimbalwa.

71 Futhi iNkosi yesivini yathi kubo: Hambani, futhi nisebenze esivini, ngamandla enu. Ngokuba bhokani, lokhu sekuyisikhathi sokugcina sokuthi ngondle isivini sami; ngokuba isiphetho sesiseduzane, futhi isikhathi siza ngokushesha; futhi uma nisebenza nami ngamandla enu niyojabula ngezithelo engiyozibekela zona ukulungiselela isikhathi esizofika maduze.

72 Futhi kwenzeka ukuthi izinceku nempela zahamba futhi zasebenza ngamandla azo; futhi iNkosi yesivini nayo yasebenza nazo; futhi zayilalela imiyalelo yeNkosi yesivini kuzo zonke izinto.

73 Futhi kwaqala ukuthi kube khona izithelo zemvelo futhi esivini; amagatsha emvelo aqala ukukhula futhi akhula ngesivini esikhulu; amagatsha asendle aqala ukukhishwa alahlwa; futhi nempela bagcina impande kanye nesihloko saso ngokulingana, njengokwamandla aso.

74 Futhi ngaleyo ndlela zasebenza, ngakho konke ukukhuthala, njengokwemiyalelo yeNkosi yesivini, kwaze kwaba amabi alahlwa ngaphandle kwesivini, futhi iNkosi yesivini yayisizigcinele ukuthi izihlahla zabe futhi sezibe nezithelo zemvelo; futhi zaba njengomzimba owodwa; futhi izithelo zazilingana; futhi iNkosi yesivini yayisizigcinele isithelo semvelo, esasiyigugu elikhulu kuyo kusukela ekuqaleni.

And the branches of the natural tree will I graft into the natural branches of the tree; and thus will I bring them together again, that they shall bring forth the natural fruit, and they shall be one.

And the bad shall be cast away, yea, even out of all the land of my vineyard; for behold, only this once will I prune my vineyard.

And it came to pass that the Lord of the vineyard sent his servant; and the servant went and did as the Lord had commanded him, and brought other servants; and they were few.

And the Lord of the vineyard said unto them: Go to, and labor in the vineyard, with your might. For behold, this is the last time that I shall nourish my vineyard; for the end is nigh at hand, and the season speedily cometh; and if ye labor with your might with me ye shall have joy in the fruit which I shall lay up unto myself against the time which will soon come.

And it came to pass that the servants did go and labor with their might; and the Lord of the vineyard labored also with them; and they did obey the commandments of the Lord of the vineyard in all things.

And there began to be the natural fruit again in the vineyard; and the natural branches began to grow and thrive exceedingly; and the wild branches began to be plucked off and to be cast away; and they did keep the root and the top thereof equal, according to the strength thereof.

And thus they labored, with all diligence, according to the commandments of the Lord of the vineyard, even until the bad had been cast away out of the vineyard, and the Lord had preserved unto himself that the trees had become again the natural fruit; and they became like unto one body; and the fruits were equal; and the Lord of the vineyard had preserved unto himself the natural fruit, which was most precious unto him from the beginning.

75 Futhi kwenzeka ukuthi ngesikhathi iNkosi yesivini ibona ukuthi isithelo sayo sasisihle, nokuthi isivini sayo sasingasenakho ukonakala, yabiza izinceku zayo, futhi yathi kuzo: Bhekani, ngokuba ngalesi sikhathi sokugcina sisondlile isivini sami; futhi niyabona ukuthi ngenze njengokuthanda kwami; futhi ngisigcinile isithelo semvelo, kangangoba sihle, ngisho njengoba sasinjalo ekuqaleni. Futhi nibusisiwe; ngenxa yokuthi nibe nokukhuthala ekusebenzeni nami esivinini sami, futhi nayigcina imiyalelo yami, nisilethile futhi kimi isithelo semvelo, ukuze isivini sami singabe sisonakala nanini, futhi okubi kulahliwe, bhekani niyokuba nokujabula nami ngenxa yesithelo sesivini sami.

76 Ngokuba bhekani, isikhathi eside ngiyozibekela isithelo sesivini sami ukulungiselela isikhathi, esizayo ngokushesha; futhi okokugcina ngisondlile isivini sami, ngasithena, ngasivukuzela, ngasifaka umquba; ngalokho-ke ngizozibekela ezinye zezithelo, isikhathi eside, njengoba ngikhulumile.

77 Futhi uma isikhathi sesiza sokuthi isithelo esibi siphinda size esivinini sami, ngaleso sikhathi ngiyokwenza ukuthi ezinhle kanye nezimbi ziqoqwe; bese kuthi ezinhle ngizigcinele zona, kuthi ezimbi ngizilahle endaweni yazo. Futhi emva kwalokho kuza isikhathi kanye nesiphetho; futhi isivini sami ngiyokwenza ukuthi sishiswe ngomlilo.

And it came to pass that when the Lord of the vineyard saw that his fruit was good, and that his vineyard was no more corrupt, he called up his servants, and said unto them: Behold, for this last time have we nourished my vineyard; and thou beholdest that I have done according to my will; and I have preserved the natural fruit, that it is good, even like as it was in the beginning. And blessed art thou; for because ye have been diligent in laboring with me in my vineyard, and have kept my commandments, and have brought unto me again the natural fruit, that my vineyard is no more corrupted, and the bad is cast away, behold ye shall have joy with me because of the fruit of my vineyard.

For behold, for a long time will I lay up of the fruit of my vineyard unto mine own self against the season, which speedily cometh; and for the last time have I nourished my vineyard, and pruned it, and dug about it, and dunged it; wherefore I will lay up unto mine own self of the fruit, for a long time, according to that which I have spoken.

And when the time cometh that evil fruit shall again come into my vineyard, then will I cause the good and the bad to be gathered; and the good will I preserve unto myself, and the bad will I cast away into its own place. And then cometh the season and the end; and my vineyard will I cause to be burned with fire.

Jakobe 6

- 1 Manje, bhekani, bafowethu, njengoba ngishilo kini ukuthi ngiyophrofetha, bhekani, lokhu kuyisiphrofetho sami—ukuthi izinto lomphrofethi uZenoshe azikhuluma, mayelana nendlu ka-Israyeli, kuzo ayeyifanisa nesihlahla somnqumo esithanjisiwe, kufanele ngempela zenzeke.
- 2 Futhi usuku lapho eyokwelula khona isandla sakhe futhi okwesibili ukubuyisa abantu bakhe, yilo usuku, yebo, ngisho isikhathi sokugcina, lapho izinceku zeNkosi ziyohamba ngamandla ayo, ukondla kanye nokuthena isivini sayo; futhi emva kwalokho isiphetho siyoza masinyane.
- 3 Futhi babusiseke kangakanani labo abasebenze ngenkuthalo esivini sayo; futhi baqalekiswe kangakanani labo abayolahlwa ngaphandle endaweni yabo! Futhi umhlaba uyoshiswa ngomlilo.
- 4 Futhi unomusa kangakanani uNkulunkulu wethu kithi, ngokuba yena uyayikhumbula indlu ka-Israyeli, kokubili izimpande kanye namagatsha; futhi welulela izandla zakhe kubo bonke ubude bosuku; futhi bangontamolukhuni futhi bangabantu abaphikisayo; kodwa ngobuningi balabo abangayikuqinisa izinhliziyi zabo bayosindiswa embusweni kaNkulunkulu.
- 5 Ngalokho-ke, bafowethu abathandekayo, ngiyancenga ngamazwi azothile ukuthi niphenduke, futhi nize ngenhloso ephelele yenzelisiyo, ninamathele kuNkulunkulu njengoba naye enamathele kini. Futhi nangesikhathi ingalo yakhe yomusa yelulelwe kini ekukhanyeni kosuku, ningazenzi lukhuni izinhliziyi zenu.
- 6 Yebo, namuhla, uma ningalalela izwi lakhe, ningazenzi lukhuni izinhliziyi zenu; ngokuba kungani nizokufa na?
- 7 Ngokuba bhekani, emva kokuba senondliwe ngezwi elihle likaNkulunkulu bonke ubude bosuku, ngabe nizoveza isithelo esibi, kangangoba nizocekelwa phansi futhi nilahlwe emlilweni na?

Jacob 6

And now, behold, my brethren, as I said unto you that I would prophesy, behold, this is my prophecy—that the things which this prophet Zenos spake, concerning the house of Israel, in the which he likened them unto a tame olive tree, must surely come to pass.

And the day that he shall set his hand again the second time to recover his people, is the day, yea, even the last time, that the servants of the Lord shall go forth in his power, to nourish and prune his vineyard; and after that the end soon cometh.

And how blessed are they who have labored diligently in his vineyard; and how cursed are they who shall be cast out into their own place! And the world shall be burned with fire.

And how merciful is our God unto us, for he remembereth the house of Israel, both roots and branches; and he stretches forth his hands unto them all the day long; and they are a stiffnecked and a gainsaying people; but as many as will not harden their hearts shall be saved in the kingdom of God.

Wherefore, my beloved brethren, I beseech of you in words of soberness that ye would repent, and come with full purpose of heart, and cleave unto God as he cleaveth unto you. And while his arm of mercy is extended towards you in the light of the day, harden not your hearts.

Yea, today, if ye will hear his voice, harden not your hearts; for why will ye die?

For behold, after ye have been nourished by the good word of God all the day long, will ye bring forth evil fruit, that ye must be hewn down and cast into the fire?

8 Bhekani, ngabe nizowenqaba yini lamazwi na? Nizowenqaba yini amazwi abaphrofethi; futhi nizowenqaba wonke yini amazwi akhulunywa mayelana noKristu, emva kokuthi abaningi kangaka sebekhulumile mayelana naye; futhi nilenqabe izwi elihle likaKristu, namandla kaNkulunkulu, kanye nesipho sikaMoya oNgcwele, futhi niwuvimbele uMoya oyiNgcwele, nenze inhlekisa ngesu elikhulu lokukhululwa, elibekelwe nina na?

9 Anazi yini ukuthi uma nenza lezi zinto, ukuthi amandla okukhululwa kanye nawovuko, akuKristu, azonenza nime ninamahloni nokuba necala elibi phambi kwesihlalo sikaNkulunkulu na?

10 Futhi ngokwamandla okulunga, ngokuba ukulunga akunakwenqatshelwa, kufanele nihambe niye kulelo chibi lomlilo nesibabuli, elinamalangabi angacimeki, futhi elinentuthu ekhuphukela phezulu phakade naphakade, lelo chibi lomlilo nesibabuli okungubuhlungu obungayikuphela.

11 O uma kunjalo-ke, bafowethu abathandekayo, phendukani, futhi ningene esangweni elingumngcingo, futhi niqhubeke endleleni encane, nize nithole ukuphila okuphakade.

12 O hlakaniphani; yikuphi okunye engingakusho na?

13 Okokugcina, ngiyavalelisa, ngize ngihlangane nani phambi kwesihlalo esithokoziwayo sikaNkulunkulu, esishaya ababi ngovalo olubi kanye nokwesaba. Amen.

Behold, will ye reject these words? Will ye reject the words of the prophets; and will ye reject all the words which have been spoken concerning Christ, after so many have spoken concerning him; and deny the good word of Christ, and the power of God, and the gift of the Holy Ghost, and quench the Holy Spirit, and make a mock of the great plan of redemption, which hath been laid for you?

Know ye not that if ye will do these things, that the power of the redemption and the resurrection, which is in Christ, will bring you to stand with shame and awful guilt before the bar of God?

And according to the power of justice, for justice cannot be denied, ye must go away into that lake of fire and brimstone, whose flames are unquenchable, and whose smoke ascendeth up forever and ever, which lake of fire and brimstone is endless torment.

O then, my beloved brethren, repent ye, and enter in at the strait gate, and continue in the way which is narrow, until ye shall obtain eternal life.

O be wise; what can I say more?

Finally, I bid you farewell, until I shall meet you before the pleasing bar of God, which bar striketh the wicked with awful dread and fear. Amen.

Jakobe 7

- 1 Manje kwenzeka emva kokuthi sekwedlule iminyaka embalwa, kwafika indoda phakathi kwabantu baNefi, egama layo kwakunguSheremi.
- 2 Futhi kwenzeka ukuthi yaqala ukushumayela phakathi kwabantu, nokumemezela kubo ukuthi angeke abe khona uKristu. Futhi yashumayela eziningi izinto ezazibathopha abantu; futhi yakwenza lokhu ukuze ichithe imfundiso kaKristu.
- 3 Futhi yasebenza ngokukhuthala ukuze iholele kude izinhliziyi zabantu, kangangokuthi nempela yaziholela kude eziningi izinhliziyi; futhi yazi ukuthi mina, Jakobe, nganginokholo kuKristu owayezofika, yalifuna kakhulu ithuba ukuze ize kimi.
- 4 Futhi yayifunde, kangangokuthi yayinolwazi oluphelele lolimi lwabantu; ngalokho-ke, yayikwazi ukusebenzisa ukuthopha okuningi, kanye namandla amakhulu okukhuluma, ngokwamandla kadeveli.
- 5 Futhi yayinethemba lokunginyakazisa okholweni, nakuba ngase ngibone izambulo kanye nezinto eziningi mayelana nalezi zinto; ngokuba ngempela ngase ngizibonile izingelosi, futhi zase zingisebenzele. Futhi phezu kwalokho, ngase ngilizwile izwi leNkosi uqobo likhuluma kimi, izikhathi ngezikhathi; ngalokho-ke, ngangingenakunyakaziseka.
- 6 Futhi kwenzeka ukuthi yeza kimi, futhi nempela yakhuluma kimi ngalendlela, ithi: Mfowethu uJakobe, sengilifune kakhulu ithuba lokuthi ngikhulume kuwe; ngokuba ngizwile futhi phezu kwalokho ngiyazi ukuthi wena uhamba kakhulu, ushumayela lokho okubiza ngevangeli, noma imfundiso kaKristu.

Jacob 7

And now it came to pass after some years had passed away, there came a man among the people of Nephi, whose name was Sherem.

And it came to pass that he began to preach among the people, and to declare unto them that there should be no Christ. And he preached many things which were flattering unto the people; and this he did that he might overthrow the doctrine of Christ.

And he labored diligently that he might lead away the hearts of the people, insomuch that he did lead away many hearts; and he knowing that I, Jacob, had faith in Christ who should come, he sought much opportunity that he might come unto me.

And he was learned, that he had a perfect knowledge of the language of the people; wherefore, he could use much flattery, and much power of speech, according to the power of the devil.

And he had hope to shake me from the faith, notwithstanding the many revelations and the many things which I had seen concerning these things; for I truly had seen angels, and they had ministered unto me. And also, I had heard the voice of the Lord speaking unto me in very word, from time to time; wherefore, I could not be shaken.

And it came to pass that he came unto me, and on this wise did he speak unto me, saying: Brother Jacob, I have sought much opportunity that I might speak unto you; for I have heard and also know that thou goest about much, preaching that which ye call the gospel, or the doctrine of Christ.

- 7 Futhi usuholele kude abaningi balaba bantu ukuze baphendukezele indlela eqondile kaNkulunkulu, futhi bangawugcini umthetho kaMose oyindlela eqondile; futhi nokuthi bawuguqule umthetho kaMose kukhonzwe umuntu wena othi uyofika eminyakeni engamakhulu amaningi ezayo. Manje bheka, mina, Sheremi, ngimemezela kuwe ukuthi lokhu ngukuhlambalaza; ngokuba akukho muntu owaziyo ngalezi zinto ezinje; ngokuba akanakukwazi ukwazisa ngezinto ezisazofika. Futhi nempela uSheremi waphikisana nami ngalendlela.
- 8 Kodwa bheka, iNkosi uNkulunkulu yathela uMoya wayo emphefumulweni wami, kangangokuthi nempela ngamthobisa kuwo wonke amazwi akhe.
- 9 Futhi ngathi kuye: Uyamphika yini uKristu ozofika na? Yena wathi: Uma kuzobakhona uKristu, anginakumphika; kodwa ngiyazi ukuthi akukho Kristu, nokuthi akakaze abe khona, futhi akasoze aba khona.
- 10 Futhi ngathi kuye: Ngabe uyayikholwa yini imibhalo engcwele na? Yena wathi, Yebo.
- 11 Futhi ngathi kuye: Uma kunjalo-ke awuyiqondi; ngokuba ngempela ifakaza ngoKristu. Bheka, ngithi kuwe akekho namunye umphrofethi obhalile, noma ophrofethile, ngaphandle kokuthi ekhulume mayelana naloKristu.
- 12 Futhi akusikho lokhu kuphela—kubonakalisiwe futhi kimi, ngokuba ngizwile futhi ngabona; futhi phezu kwalokho kubonakalisiwe kimi ngamandla kaMoya oyiNgcwele; ngalokho-ke, ngiyazi ukuthi uma kungekho nhlawulo engenziwa bonke abantu kufanele balahleke.
- 13 Futhi kwenzeka ukuthi wathi kimi: Ngikhombise isibonakaliso ngalamandla kaMoya oyiNgcwele, owazi kangaka ngawo.

And ye have led away much of this people that they pervert the right way of God, and keep not the law of Moses which is the right way; and convert the law of Moses into the worship of a being which ye say shall come many hundred years hence. And now behold, I, Sherem, declare unto you that this is blasphemy; for no man knoweth of such things; for he cannot tell of things to come. And after this manner did Sherem contend against me.

But behold, the Lord God poured in his Spirit into my soul, insomuch that I did confound him in all his words.

And I said unto him: Deniest thou the Christ who shall come? And he said: If there should be a Christ, I would not deny him; but I know that there is no Christ, neither has been, nor ever will be.

And I said unto him: Believest thou the scriptures? And he said, Yea.

And I said unto him: Then ye do not understand them; for they truly testify of Christ. Behold, I say unto you that none of the prophets have written, nor prophesied, save they have spoken concerning this Christ.

And this is not all—it has been made manifest unto me, for I have heard and seen; and it also has been made manifest unto me by the power of the Holy Ghost; wherefore, I know if there should be no atonement made all mankind must be lost.

And it came to pass that he said unto me: Show me a sign by this power of the Holy Ghost, in the which ye know so much.

14 Futhi ngathi kuye: Ngingubani mina ukuthi ngingalinga uNkulunkulu ukuthi akhombise wena isibonakaliso ngento oyaziyo ukuthi iyiqiniso na? Noma kunjalo uyayiphika, ngenxa yokuthi ungokadeveli. Nokho, makungenziwa intando yami; kodwa uma uNkulunkulu ezokushaya, lokho makube yisibonakaliso kuwe ukuthi yena unamandla, ezulwini kanye nasemhlabeni; futhi, nokuthi uKristu uyofika. Futhi intando yakho, O Nkosi, mayenziwe, hhayi eyami.

15 Futhi kwenzeka ukuthi emva kokuthi mina, Jakobe, sengiwakhulumile lamazwi, amandla eNkosi ehlela kuye, kangangokuthi wawela phansi. Futhi kwenzeka ukuthi wondliwa isikhathi esiyizinsuku eziningi.

16 Futhi kwenzeka ukuthi wathi kubantu: Qoqanani ndawonye kusasa, ngokuba ngizofa; ngalokho-ke, ngifisa ukukhuluma kubantu ngaphambi kokuthi ngife.

17 Futhi kwenzeka ukuthi ngakusasa isixuku saqoqana ndawonye; futhi wakhuluma ngokusobala kuso futhi waziphika izinto ayebafundise zona, futhi wamvuma uKristu, kanye namandla kaMoya oyiNgcwele, kanye nokusetshenzelwa yizingelosi.

18 Futhi wakhuluma ngokusobala kubo, ukuthi wayekhohliswe ngamandla kadeveli. Futhi wakhuluma ngesihogo, kanye nangephakade, kanye nangesijezi esingapheliyo.

19 Futhi wathi: Ngiyesaba hleze sengenze isono esingaxoleleki, ngokuba ngiqambe amanga kuNkulunkulu; ngokuba ngiphike uKristu, futhi ngathi ngiyayikholwa imibhalo engcwele; futhi ngempela ifakaza ngaye. Futhi ngenxa yokuthi ngiqambe amanga kuNkulunkulu ngiyesaba kakhulu hleze icala lami libe libi kakhulu; kodwa ngiyahlambuluka kuNkulunkulu.

20 Futhi kwenzeka ukuthi emva kokuthi esewashilo lamazwi akabange esakwazi ukusho amanye, futhi wabe esefa.

21 Futhi emva kokuthi isixuku sesibonile ukuthi wakhuluma lezi zinto ngesikhathi esezofa, bamangala kakhulu; kangangokuthi amandla kaNkulunkulu ehlela phezu kwabo, futhi abanqoba kangangokuthi bawela phansi.

And I said unto him: What am I that I should tempt God to show unto thee a sign in the thing which thou knowest to be true? Yet thou wilt deny it, because thou art of the devil. Nevertheless, not my will be done; but if God shall smite thee, let that be a sign unto thee that he has power, both in heaven and in earth; and also, that Christ shall come. And thy will, O Lord, be done, and not mine.

And it came to pass that when I, Jacob, had spoken these words, the power of the Lord came upon him, insomuch that he fell to the earth. And it came to pass that he was nourished for the space of many days.

And it came to pass that he said unto the people: Gather together on the morrow, for I shall die; wherefore, I desire to speak unto the people before I shall die.

And it came to pass that on the morrow the multitude were gathered together; and he spake plainly unto them and denied the things which he had taught them, and confessed the Christ, and the power of the Holy Ghost, and the ministering of angels.

And he spake plainly unto them, that he had been deceived by the power of the devil. And he spake of hell, and of eternity, and of eternal punishment.

And he said: I fear lest I have committed the unpardonable sin, for I have lied unto God; for I denied the Christ, and said that I believed the scriptures; and they truly testify of him. And because I have thus lied unto God I greatly fear lest my case shall be awful; but I confess unto God.

And it came to pass that when he had said these words he could say no more, and he gave up the ghost.

And when the multitude had witnessed that he spake these things as he was about to give up the ghost, they were astonished exceedingly; insomuch that the power of God came down upon them, and they were overcome that they fell to the earth.

- 22 Manje, lento yayithokozisa kimi, uJakobe, ngokuba ngangiyicelile kuBaba osezulwini; ngokuba wakuzwa ukukhala kwami futhi wawuphendula umthandazo wami.
- 23 Futhi kwenzeka ukuthi ukuthula kanye nothando lukaNkulunkulu lwabuyiselwa futhi phakathi kwabantu; futhi bayicwaninga imibhalo engcwele, futhi bangaphinde balalela amazwi alendoda embi.
- 24 Futhi kwenzeka ukuthi izindlela eziningi zazisungulelwe ukuguqula kanye nokubuyisela amaLamani ekwazini iqiniso; kodwa konke lokhu kwaba yize, ngokuba ayethokozela izimpi kanye nokuchitha igazi, futhi ayenezondo engapheliyo ngokumelene nathi, abafowabo. Futhi afuna ngamandla ezingalo zawo ukusibhubhisa njalonjalo.
- 25 Ngalokho-ke, abantu baNefi nempela baziqinisa ngokumelene nawo ngezikhali zabo, kanye nangawo wonke amandla abo, bethembele kuNkulunkulu oyidwala lensindiso yabo; ngalokho-ke, baqhubeka okwaleso sikhathi, baba ngabanqobi bezitha zabo.
- 26 Futhi kwenzeka ukuthi mina, Jakobe, ngaqala ukuba mdala; futhi imibhalo yalaba bantu njengoba igcinwe kwezinye izingcwephe zikaNefi, ngalokho-ke, ngiyawuphetha lombhalo, ngiqinisa ukuthi ngibhale njengokolwazi lwami, ngokusho ukuthi isikhathi sedlula nathi, futhi phezu kwalokho nezimpilo zethu zedlula kwasengathi kwakunjengephupho kithi, thina singabantu abanesizungu futhi abanesizotha, singabazulazulayo, sixoshwe eJerusalema, sizalelwe ekuhluphekeni, ehlane, futhi sizondwa ngabafowethu, okwadala izimpi kanye nemibango; ngalokho-ke, nempela sakhala ngezinsuku zethu zonke.

Now, this thing was pleasing unto me, Jacob, for I had requested it of my Father who was in heaven; for he had heard my cry and answered my prayer.

And it came to pass that peace and the love of God was restored again among the people; and they searched the scriptures, and hearkened no more to the words of this wicked man.

And it came to pass that many means were devised to reclaim and restore the Lamanites to the knowledge of the truth; but it all was vain, for they delighted in wars and bloodshed, and they had an eternal hatred against us, their brethren. And they sought by the power of their arms to destroy us continually.

Wherefore, the people of Nephi did fortify against them with their arms, and with all their might, trusting in the God and rock of their salvation; wherefore, they became as yet, conquerors of their enemies.

And it came to pass that I, Jacob, began to be old; and the record of this people being kept on the other plates of Nephi, wherefore, I conclude this record, declaring that I have written according to the best of my knowledge, by saying that the time passed away with us, and also our lives passed away like as it were unto us a dream, we being a lonesome and a solemn people, wanderers, cast out from Jerusalem, born in tribulation, in a wilderness, and hated of our brethren, which caused wars and contentions; wherefore, we did mourn out our days.

Futhi mina, Jakobe, ngabona ukuthi kwasekufanele masinyane ngehlele ezansi ethuneni lami; ngalokho-ke, ngathi endodaneni yami u-Enoshe: Thatha lezi zingcwephe. Futhi ngamtshela lezo zinto umfowethu uNefi ayengiyale ngazo, futhi wathembisa ukuyilalela lemiyalelo. Futhi ngenza isiphetho sokubhala kwami kulezi zingcwephe, obekuwumbhalo omncane; futhi kumfundi ngiyavalelisa, ngethemba ukuthi abaningi babafowethu bayowafunda amazwi ami. Bafowethu, salani kahle.

And I, Jacob, saw that I must soon go down to my grave; wherefore, I said unto my son Enos: Take these plates. And I told him the things which my brother Nephi had commanded me, and he promised obedience unto the commands. And I make an end of my writing upon these plates, which writing has been small; and to the reader I bid farewell, hoping that many of my brethren may read my words. Brethren, adieu.

INcwadi ka-Enoshe

- 1 Bheka, kwenzeka ukuthi mina, Enoshe, ngazi ukuthi ubaba wayeyindoda elungile—ngokuba wangifundisa ngolimi lwakhe, futhi ngokunjalo nangokondliwa kanye nangeziyalo zeNkosi—futhi malibongwe igama likaNkulunkulu ngalokho—
- 2 Futhi ngizonitshela ngomshikashika engaba nawo phambi kukaNkulunkulu, ngaphambi kokuthi ngithole ukuthethelelwa kwezono zami.
- 3 Bheka, ngahamba ngayozingela izinyamazane emahlathini; futhi amazwi engangijwayele ukuwezwa ubaba ewakhuluma mayelana nokuphila okuphakade, kanye nokujabula kwabangcwele, angena ajula enhliziyweni yami.
- 4 Futhi umphefumulo wami walamba; futhi ngaguqa phansi phambi koMenzi wami, ngakhala kuye ngokuthandaza okukhulu kanye nokunxusela umphefumulo wami; futhi bonke ubude bosuku nempela ngakhala kuye; yebo, nangesikhathi ubusuku bufika nempela ngaqhubeka nokuphakamisela izwi lami phezulu kangangokuthi lafinyelela emazulwini.
- 5 Futhi kwafika izwi kimi, lithi: Enoshe, izono zakho zithethelelwe, futhi uzobusiswa.
- 6 Futhi mina, Enoshe, ngangazi ukuthi uNkulunkulu akanakuwaqamba amanga; ngalokho-ke, ukuba necala kwami kwaphela nya.
- 7 Futhi ngathi: Nkosi, kwenzeka kanjani na?
- 8 Yathi kimi: Ngenxa yokholo lwakho kuKristu, ongakaze umuzwe nanini ngaphambili noma umbone. Futhi eminingi iminyaka iyodlula ngaphambi kokuthi aziveze enyameni; ngalokho-ke, hamba ukholo lwakho lukusindisile.
- 9 Manje, kwenzeka ukuthi emva kokuthi sengiwazwile lamazwi ngaqala ngaba nesifiso sokuthi kuzuze abafowethu, amaNefi; ngalokho-ke, nempela ngabathandazela ngokushisekela okukhulu kuNkulunkulu.

The Book of Enos

Behold, it came to pass that I, Enos, knowing my father that he was a just man—for he taught me in his language, and also in the nurture and admonition of the Lord—and blessed be the name of my God for it—

And I will tell you of the wrestle which I had before God, before I received a remission of my sins.

Behold, I went to hunt beasts in the forests; and the words which I had often heard my father speak concerning eternal life, and the joy of the saints, sunk deep into my heart.

And my soul hungered; and I kneeled down before my Maker, and I cried unto him in mighty prayer and supplication for mine own soul; and all the day long did I cry unto him; yea, and when the night came I did still raise my voice high that it reached the heavens.

And there came a voice unto me, saying: Enos, thy sins are forgiven thee, and thou shalt be blessed.

And I, Enos, knew that God could not lie; wherefore, my guilt was swept away.

And I said: Lord, how is it done?

And he said unto me: Because of thy faith in Christ, whom thou hast never before heard nor seen. And many years pass away before he shall manifest himself in the flesh; wherefore, go to, thy faith hath made thee whole.

Now, it came to pass that when I had heard these words I began to feel a desire for the welfare of my brethren, the Nephites; wherefore, I did pour out my whole soul unto God for them.

- 10 Futhi ngesikhathi ngisazabalaza emoyeni, bheka, izwi leNkosi lafika emqondweni wami futhi, lithi: Ngizobavakashela abafowenu njengokukhuthala kwabo ekugcineni imiyalelo yami. Ngibanikezile lelizwe, futhi liyizwe elingcwele; futhi angiliqalekisi ngaphandle kokuthi kube ngenxa yobubi; ngalokho-ke, ngizobavakashela abafowenu njengoba ngishilo; futhi iziphambeko zabo ngiyozehlisa kanye nosizi phezu kwamakhanda abo uqobo.
- 11 Futhi emva kokuthi mina, Enoshe, sengiwazwile lamazwi, ukholo lwami lwaqala ukuthi lungabe lusanyakaziseka eNkosini; futhi ngabathandazela eNkosini ngokukhulu ukuzabalaza okude abafowethu, amaLamani.
- 12 Futhi kwenzeka ukuthi emva kokuthi sengithandazile futhi ngasebenza ngakho konke ukukhuthala, iNkosi yathi kimi: Ngizokunika njengokwezifiso zakho, ngenxa yokholo lwakho.
- 13 Manje bheka, lesi kwakuyisifiso engangisifisa kuye—ukuthi uma kwakungenzeka, ukuthi abantu bami, amaNefi, awele esiphambekweni, futhi ngandlela thize abhujiswe, futhi amaLamani wona angabhujiswa, ukuthi iNkosi uNkulunkulu iyowugcina umbhalo wabantu bami, amaNefi; ngisho noma kungaba ngamandla engalo yayo engcwele, ukuze wambulelwe amaLamani ngolunye usuku oluzayo, ukuze, mhlawumbe, alethwe ekusindisweni—
- 14 Ngokuba njengamanje imizabalazo yethu yabe iyize ekuwabuyiseleni okholweni lweqiniso. Futhi afunga ngokuthukuthela ukuthi, uma kwakungenzeka, ayengayibhubhisa imibhalo yethu kanye nathi, futhi ngokunjalo nawo wonke amasiko obaba.
- 15 Ngalokho-ke, mina ngazi ukuthi iNkosi uNkulunkulu yayikwazi ukulondoloza imibhalo yethu, ngakhala kuyo njalonjalo, ngokuba yayithe kimi: Noma ngabe yini oyoyicela ngokholo, ukholwa ukuthi uyoyithola egameni likaKristu, uyoyithola.
- 16 Futhi nganginalo ukholo, futhi nempela ngakhala kuNkulunkulu ukuthi ayigcine lemibhalo; futhi wenza isivumelwano nami sokuthi uyoyambula kumaLamani ngesikhathi sakhe esifanele.

And while I was thus struggling in the spirit, behold, the voice of the Lord came into my mind again, saying: I will visit thy brethren according to their diligence in keeping my commandments. I have given unto them this land, and it is a holy land; and I curse it not save it be for the cause of iniquity; wherefore, I will visit thy brethren according as I have said; and their transgressions will I bring down with sorrow upon their own heads.

And after I, Enos, had heard these words, my faith began to be unshaken in the Lord; and I prayed unto him with many long strugglings for my brethren, the Lamanites.

And it came to pass that after I had prayed and labored with all diligence, the Lord said unto me: I will grant unto thee according to thy desires, because of thy faith.

And now behold, this was the desire which I desired of him—that if it should so be, that my people, the Nephites, should fall into transgression, and by any means be destroyed, and the Lamanites should not be destroyed, that the Lord God would preserve a record of my people, the Nephites; even if it so be by the power of his holy arm, that it might be brought forth at some future day unto the Lamanites, that, perhaps, they might be brought unto salvation—

For at the present our strugglings were vain in restoring them to the true faith. And they swore in their wrath that, if it were possible, they would destroy our records and us, and also all the traditions of our fathers.

Wherefore, I knowing that the Lord God was able to preserve our records, I cried unto him continually, for he had said unto me: Whatsoever thing ye shall ask in faith, believing that ye shall receive in the name of Christ, ye shall receive it.

And I had faith, and I did cry unto God that he would preserve the records; and he covenanted with me that he would bring them forth unto the Lamanites in his own due time.

- 17 Futhi mina, Enoshe, ngangazi ukuthi kwakuyoba njengesivumelwano lesa asenza; ngalokho-ke umphefumulo wami nempela waphumula.
- 18 Futhi iNkosi yathi kimi: Okhokho bakho nabo ngokunjalo bayifuna kimi lento; futhi kuyokwenziwa kubo njengokokholo lwabo; ngokuba ukholo lwabo lwalunjengolwakho.
- 19 Manje kwenzeka ukuthi mina, Enoshe, ngahamba phakathi kwabantu baNefi, ngiphrofetha ngezinto ezazizokwenzeka, futhi ngifakaza ngezinto engangizizwile futhi ngizibonile.
- 20 Futhi ngiyafakaza ukuthi abantu baNefi nempela bafuna ngokukhuthala ukuthi babuyisele amaLamani okholweni lweqiniso kuNkulunkulu. Kodwa ukusebenza kwethu kwaba yize; inzondo yawo yayigxilile, futhi ayeholwa yimvelo yawo embi kangangokuthi aye yizidlangudlangu, futhi enolaka, futhi engabantu abomele igazi, egcwele ukukhonza izithixo kanye nokungcola; edla izilwane ezidla ezinye; ehlala ematendeni, futhi ezulazula ehlane nesikhumba esifishane ezinkalweni zawo kanye namakhanda awo ephuciwe; futhi ubuciko bawo babusemcibisholweni, kanye nakocelumba, kanye nasembazweni. Futhi amaningi awo nempela ayengadli lutho ngaphandle kwenyama eluhlaza; futhi aye funa njalonjalo ukusibhubhisa.
- 21 Futhi kwenzeka ukuthi abantu baNefi nempela bawulima umhlabathi, futhi bakhulisa zonke izinhlobo zokusanhlamvu, kanye nezithelo, kanye nemihlambi yemfuyo, kanye nemihlambi yazo zonke izinhlobo zezinkomo ezinhlobonhlobo, nezimbuzi, kanye nezimbuzi zasendle, futhi ngokunjalo namahashi amaningi.
- 22 Futhi kwakukhona abaningi kakhulu abaphrofethi phakathi kwethu. Futhi abantu babengabantu abangontamolukhuni, belukhuni ukuqonda.

And I, Enos, knew it would be according to the covenant which he had made; wherefore my soul did rest.

And the Lord said unto me: Thy fathers have also required of me this thing; and it shall be done unto them according to their faith; for their faith was like unto thine.

And now it came to pass that I, Enos, went about among the people of Nephi, prophesying of things to come, and testifying of the things which I had heard and seen.

And I bear record that the people of Nephi did seek diligently to restore the Lamanites unto the true faith in God. But our labors were vain; their hatred was fixed, and they were led by their evil nature that they became wild, and ferocious, and a blood-thirsty people, full of idolatry and filthiness; feeding upon beasts of prey; dwelling in tents, and wandering about in the wilderness with a short skin girdle about their loins and their heads shaven; and their skill was in the bow, and in the cimeter, and the ax. And many of them did eat nothing save it was raw meat; and they were continually seeking to destroy us.

And it came to pass that the people of Nephi did till the land, and raise all manner of grain, and of fruit, and flocks of herds, and flocks of all manner of cattle of every kind, and goats, and wild goats, and also many horses.

And there were exceedingly many prophets among us. And the people were a stiffnecked people, hard to understand.

- 23 Futhi kwakungekho lutho ngaphandle kokukhuluma kakhulu, ukushumayela kanye nokuphrofetha ngezimpi, kanye nemibango, kanye nezimbubhiso, kanye nokubakhumbuza njalonjalo ngokufa, kanye nesikhathi sokuphila okuphakade, kanye nezahlulelo kanye namandla kaNkulunkulu, kanye nazo zonke lezi zinto—bebaphehla njalonjalo ukubagcina besekwesabeni iNkosi. Ngithi kwakungekho lutho ngaphandle kwalezi zinto, futhi nokukhuluma okuningi kakhulu okusobala, okwakungabavimba ekuyeni ngokushesha ekubhujisweni. Futhi ngibhala ngalendlela mayelana nabo.
- 24 Futhi ngazibona izimpi phakathi kwamaNefi kanye namaLamani ezinsukwini zokuphila kwami.
- 25 Futhi kwenzeka ukuthi ngaqala ukubamdala, futhi iminyaka eyikhulu kanye namashumi ayisikhombisa kanye neminyaka eyisishiyagalolunye yabe isidlulile kusukela ngesikhathi ubaba uLehi ahamba eJerusalema.
- 26 Futhi ngabona ukuthi kwasekufanele masinyane ngehlele ethuneni lami, ngisetshenziwe ngamandla kaNkulunkulu ukuze ngishumaye futhi ngiphrofethe kulaba bantu, futhi ngimemezele izwi njengokweqiniso elikuKristu. Futhi ngilimemezelile kuzo zonke izinsuku zami, futhi ngithokozile ngalo ngaphezu kwalokho komhlaba.
- 27 Futhi masinyane ngizohamba ngiye endaweni yokuphumula kwami, enoMkhululi wami; ngokuba ngiyazi ukuthi kuye ngiyophumula. Futhi ngiyoluthokozela usuku lapho okufayo kwami kuyokwembatha ukungafi, futhi ngime phambi kwakhe; ngaleso sikhathi ngiyokububona ubuso bakhe ngenjabulo, futhi uyokuthi kimi: Woza kimi, wena obusisiwe, kukhona indawo elungiselelwe wena ezindlini zikaBaba. Amen.

And there was nothing save it was exceeding harshness, preaching and prophesying of wars, and contentions, and destructions, and continually reminding them of death, and the duration of eternity, and the judgments and the power of God, and all these things—stirring them up continually to keep them in the fear of the Lord. I say there was nothing short of these things, and exceedingly great plainness of speech, would keep them from going down speedily to destruction. And after this manner do I write concerning them.

And I saw wars between the Nephites and Lamanites in the course of my days.

And it came to pass that I began to be old, and an hundred and seventy and nine years had passed away from the time that our father Lehi left Jerusalem.

And I saw that I must soon go down to my grave, having been wrought upon by the power of God that I must preach and prophesy unto this people, and declare the word according to the truth which is in Christ. And I have declared it in all my days, and have rejoiced in it above that of the world.

And I soon go to the place of my rest, which is with my Redeemer; for I know that in him I shall rest. And I rejoice in the day when my mortal shall put on immortality, and shall stand before him; then shall I see his face with pleasure, and he will say unto me: Come unto me, ye blessed, there is a place prepared for you in the mansions of my Father. Amen.

INcwadi kaJaromu

- 1 Manje bheka, mina, Jaromu, ngibhala amazwi ambalwa njengokwemiyalelo kababa, u-Enoshe, ukuze umlando wesizukulwane sethu ugcinwe.
- 2 Futhi njengoba lezi zingcwephe zincane, futhi nanjengoba lezi zinto zibhalwe ngenhloso yokuthi kuzuze abafowethu amaLamani, ngalokho-ke, kumele ukuthi ngibhale kafushane; kodwa angizukuzibhala izinto zokuphrofetha kwami, noma zokwambulelwa kwami. Ngokuba yini engingayibhala ngaphezu kwalokho obaba bami abakubhalile na? Ngokuba abavezanga yini isu lensindiso na? Ngithi kini, Yebo; futhi lokhu kuyangenelisa.
- 3 Bheka, kufanele ukuthi kuningi okudingeka kwenziwe phakathi kwalaba bantu, ngenxa yobulukhuni bezinhliziyo zabo, kanye nokungezwa kwezindlebe zabo, kanye nobumnyama bezingqondo zabo, kanye nobulukhuni bezintamo zabo; nokho, uNkulunkulu unesihawu esikhulu kubo, futhi akakabashaneli ebusweni balelizwe.
- 4 Futhi kukhona abaningi phakathi kwethu abanezambulo eziningi, ngokuba akubo bonke abangontamolukhuni. Futhi njengoba abaningi bengebona ontamolukhuni futhi benokholo, banobudlelwane noMoya oyiNgcwele, owembulela abantwana babantu, njengokokholo lwabo.
- 5 Manje, bheka, iminyaka engamakhulu amabili yabe isidlulile, futhi abantu baNefi base bekhule baqina kulelizwe. Bazama ukugcina umthetho kaMose kanye nosuku lwesabatha lungcwele eNkosini. Futhi abalungcolisanga; noma bahlambalaze. Futhi imithetho yalelizwe yayiqine kakhulu.
- 6 Futhi babehlakazeke kakhulu phezu kobuso balelizwe, futhi ngokunjalo namaLamani. Futhi wona ayemaningi kakhulu kunalabo bamaNefi; futhi wona ayekuthanda ukubulala futhi ayengaphuza igazi lezilwane.

The Book of Jarom

Now behold, I, Jarom, write a few words according to the commandment of my father, Enos, that our genealogy may be kept.

And as these plates are small, and as these things are written for the intent of the benefit of our brethren the Lamanites, wherefore, it must needs be that I write a little; but I shall not write the things of my prophesying, nor of my revelations. For what could I write more than my fathers have written? For have not they revealed the plan of salvation? I say unto you, Yea; and this sufficeth me.

Behold, it is expedient that much should be done among this people, because of the hardness of their hearts, and the deafness of their ears, and the blindness of their minds, and the stiffness of their necks; nevertheless, God is exceedingly merciful unto them, and has not as yet swept them off from the face of the land.

And there are many among us who have many revelations, for they are not all stiffnecked. And as many as are not stiffnecked and have faith, have communion with the Holy Spirit, which maketh manifest unto the children of men, according to their faith.

And now, behold, two hundred years had passed away, and the people of Nephi had waxed strong in the land. They observed to keep the law of Moses and the sabbath day holy unto the Lord. And they profaned not; neither did they blaspheme. And the laws of the land were exceedingly strict.

And they were scattered upon much of the face of the land, and the Lamanites also. And they were exceedingly more numerous than were they of the Nephites; and they loved murder and would drink the blood of beasts.

7 Futhi kwenzeka ukuthi eza izikhathi eziningi ukuzolwa nathi, amaNefi. Kodwa amakhosi ethu kanye nabaholi bethu babengamadoda aqinile okholweni lweNkosi; futhi babafundisa abantu izindlela zeNkosi; ngalokho-ke, samelana namaLamani futhi sawashanela aphuma emazweni ethu, futhi saqala ukuqinisa amadolobha ethu; noma ngabe iyiphi indawo eyayiyifa lethu.

8 Futhi sanda kakhulu, sagcwala phezu kobuso balelizwe, futhi sanatha kakhulu ngegolide, nangesiliva, nangezinto eziyigugu, kanye nasekwenzeni umsebenzi ocolekile wokhuni, ngezakhiwo, kanye nangemishini, futhi ngokunjalo nangensimbi nangekhophha, nangethusi kanye nangesitili, senza zonke izinhlobo zamathuluzi azinhlobonhlobo okulima umhlabathi, kanye nezikhali zempi—yebo, imicibisholo ebukhali ecijile, nemigodla, nezinsusha, nemikhonto ephonswayo, kanye nakho konke okokulungiselela impi.

9 Ngakho-ke njengoba sasizilungiselele ukuhlangana namaLamani, awaphumelelanga ukulwa nathi. Kodwa izwi leNkosi laqinisekiswa, eyalikhuluma kokhokho bethu, ithi: Kangangoba niyoyigcina imiyalelo yami niyophumelela kulelizwe.

10 Futhi kwenzeka ukuthi abaphrofethi beNkosi nempela babasabisa abantu baNefi, njengokwezwi likaNkulunkulu, ukuthi uma bengayigcini imiyalelo, kepha bewela esiphambekweni, bayobhujiswa baphele ebusweni balelizwe.

11 Ngalokho-ke, abaphrofethi, nabaphristi, kanye nabafundisi, nempela basebenza ngokukhuthala, benxusa abantu ngakho konke ukubekezela ukuba bakhuthale; befundisa umthetho kaMose, kanye nenhloso yokunikwa kwawo; bebakholwisa ukuthi babheke phambili kuMesiya, futhi bakholwe kuye ozayo kube sengathi wayesekhona. Futhi nempela babafundisa ngalendlela.

12 Futhi kwenzeka ukuthi ngokwenze njalo babahlenga ekubhujisweni phezu kobuso balelizwe; ngokuba nempela bazihlaba izinhliziyi zabo ngezwi, njalonjalo bebaphehlela ekuphendukeni.

And it came to pass that they came many times against us, the Nephites, to battle. But our kings and our leaders were mighty men in the faith of the Lord; and they taught the people the ways of the Lord; wherefore, we withstood the Lamanites and swept them away out of our lands, and began to fortify our cities, or whatsoever place of our inheritance.

And we multiplied exceedingly, and spread upon the face of the land, and became exceedingly rich in gold, and in silver, and in precious things, and in fine workmanship of wood, in buildings, and in machinery, and also in iron and copper, and brass and steel, making all manner of tools of every kind to till the ground, and weapons of war—yea, the sharp pointed arrow, and the quiver, and the dart, and the javelin, and all preparations for war.

And thus being prepared to meet the Lamanites, they did not prosper against us. But the word of the Lord was verified, which he spake unto our fathers, saying that: Inasmuch as ye will keep my commandments ye shall prosper in the land.

And it came to pass that the prophets of the Lord did threaten the people of Nephi, according to the word of God, that if they did not keep the commandments, but should fall into transgression, they should be destroyed from off the face of the land.

Wherefore, the prophets, and the priests, and the teachers, did labor diligently, exhorting with all long-suffering the people to diligence; teaching the law of Moses, and the intent for which it was given; persuading them to look forward unto the Messiah, and believe in him to come as though he already was. And after this manner did they teach them.

And it came to pass that by so doing they kept them from being destroyed upon the face of the land; for they did prick their hearts with the word, continually stirring them up unto repentance.

13 Futhi kwenzeka ukuthi amakhulu amabili kanye namashumi amathathu kanye nesishiyagalombili eminyaka ayesedlulile—kulokhu kukhona izimpi, nemibango, kanye nokuphambana, isikhathi eside kakhulu.

14 Futhi mina, Jaromu, angizukukubhala okuningi, ngokuba lezi zingcwephe zincane. Kodwa bhekani, bafowethu, ningaya kwezinye izingcwephe zikaNefi; ngokuba bhekani, imibhalo yezimpi zethu iqoshiwe kuzo, njengokwemibhalo yamakhosi, noma leyo enza ukuthi ibhalwe.

15 Futhi nginikeza lezi zingcwephe ezandleni zendodana yami u-Omini, ukuze zigcinwe njengokwemiyalelo yobaba bami.

And it came to pass that two hundred and thirty and eight years had passed away—after the manner of wars, and contentions, and dissensions, for the space of much of the time.

And I, Jarom, do not write more, for the plates are small. But behold, my brethren, ye can go to the other plates of Nephi; for behold, upon them the records of our wars are engraven, according to the writings of the kings, or those which they caused to be written.

And I deliver these plates into the hands of my son Omni, that they may be kept according to the commandments of my fathers.

INcwadi ka-Omini

- 1 Bheka, kwenzeka ukuthi mina, Omini, ngiyaliwe ngubaba, uJaromu, ukuthi kumele ngibhale okuthize kulezi zingcwephe, ukugcina umlando wesizukulwane sethu—
- 2 Ngalokho-ke, ezinsukwini zami, ngifisa ukuthi nazi ukuthi ngalwa kakhulu ngenkemba ukuvikela abantu bami, amaNefi, ekuweleni ezandleni zezitha zabo, amaLamani. Kodwa bheka, mina ngokwami ngiyindoda embi, futhi angiyigcinanga imithetho kanye nemiyalelo yeNkosi njengoba bekufanele ngabe ngenzile.
- 3 Futhi kwenzeka ukuthi amakhulu amabili kanye namashumi ayisikhombisa kanye neminyaka eyisithupha yabe isidlulile, futhi saba nezikhathi eziningi zokuthula; futhi saba nezikhathi eziningi zezimpi ezinzima kanye nokuchitheka kwegazi. Yebo, ukuphetha, amakhulu amabili namashumi ayisishiyagalombili neminyaka emibili yabe isidlulile, futhi ngabe ngizigcinile lezi zingcwephe njengokwemiyalelo yobaba bami; futhi ngazinikeza indodana yami u-Amaroni. Futhi ngenza isiphetho.
- 4 Manje mina, Amaroni, ngibhala izinto engizibhalayo, ezimbalwa, encwadini kababa.
- 5 Bheka, kwenzeka ukuthi amakhulu amathathu kanye namashumi amabili eminyaka abe esedlulile, futhi inxenye enkulu embi yamaNefi yabhujiswa.
- 6 Ngokuba iNkosi yayingenakuvuma, emva kokuthi isibaholile baphuma ezweni laseJerusalema futhi yabagcina yabavikela ekuweleni ezandleni zezitha zabo, yebo, yayingenakuvuma ukuthi amazwi angaqinisekiswa, eyawakhuluma kobaba bethu, ithi: Kangangokuba ningezukuyigcina imiyalelo yami aniyikuphumelela ezweni.
- 7 Ngalokho-ke, iNkosi nempela yabavakashela ngokwahlulela okukhulu; nokho, nempela yabasindisa abalungile ukuze bangashabalali, kodwa nempela yabakhulula ezandleni zezitha zabo.
- 8 Futhi kwenzeka ukuthi nempela izingcwephe ngazinikeza umfowethu uKemishi.

The Book of Omni

Behold, it came to pass that I, Omni, being commanded by my father, Jarom, that I should write somewhat upon these plates, to preserve our genealogy—

Wherefore, in my days, I would that ye should know that I fought much with the sword to preserve my people, the Nephites, from falling into the hands of their enemies, the Lamanites. But behold, I of myself am a wicked man, and I have not kept the statutes and the commandments of the Lord as I ought to have done.

And it came to pass that two hundred and seventy and six years had passed away, and we had many seasons of peace; and we had many seasons of serious war and bloodshed. Yea, and in fine, two hundred and eighty and two years had passed away, and I had kept these plates according to the commandments of my fathers; and I conferred them upon my son Amaron. And I make an end.

And now I, Amaron, write the things whatsoever I write, which are few, in the book of my father.

Behold, it came to pass that three hundred and twenty years had passed away, and the more wicked part of the Nephites were destroyed.

For the Lord would not suffer, after he had led them out of the land of Jerusalem and kept and preserved them from falling into the hands of their enemies, yea, he would not suffer that the words should not be verified, which he spake unto our fathers, saying that: Inasmuch as ye will not keep my commandments ye shall not prosper in the land.

Wherefore, the Lord did visit them in great judgment; nevertheless, he did spare the righteous that they should not perish, but did deliver them out of the hands of their enemies.

And it came to pass that I did deliver the plates unto my brother Chemish.

9 Manje mina, Kemishi, ngibhala izinto ezimbalwa engingazibhala, encwadini efanayo neyomfowethu; ngokuba bheka, ngakubona okokugcina akubhalayo, ukuthi wakubhala ngesakhe isandla uqobo; futhi wakubhala ngosuku aziletha ngalo kimi. Futhi ngalendlela sigcina imibhalo, ngokuba kungenxa yemiyalelo yobaba bethu. Futhi ngenza isiphetho.

10 Bheka, mina, Abinadomu, ngiyindodana kaKemishi. Bheka, kwenzeka ukuthi ngabona izimpi eziningi kanye nokubanga phakathi kwabantu bami, amaNefi, kanye namaLamani; futhi mina, ngenkemba yami uqobo, ngizithathile izimpilo eziningi zamaLamani ekuvikeleni abafowethu.

11 Futhi bheka, umbhalo walabantu uqoshwe ezingcwephezi eziphethwe ngamakhozi, ngokwezizukulwane; futhi mina angazi sambulo ngaphandle kwaleso esibhaliwe, noma isiphrofetho; ngalokho-ke, lokho okwanele kubhaliwe. Futhi ngenza isiphetho.

12 Bheka, mina ngingu-Amaleki, indodana kaAbinadomu. Bheka, ngizokhuluma kini ngokuthile mayelana noMosiya, owenziwa inkosi ezweni lakwaZarahemla; ngokuba bheka, yena exwayiswe yiNkosi ukuthi kumele abaleke aphume ezweni lakwaNefi, futhi nangobuningi balabo abayolilalela izwi leNkosi nabo kumele bemuke baphume ezweni kanye naye, baye ehlane—

13 Futhi kwenzeka ukuthi wenza njengoba iNkosi yayimyalile. Futhi bemuka baphuma ezweni baya ehlane, ngobuningi balabo abalilalela izwi leNkosi; futhi baholwa ngezintshumayelo eziningi kanye neziphrofetho. Futhi babefundiswa njalonzalo ngezwi likaNkulunkulu; futhi baholwa ngamandla engalo yakhe, bedabula ehlane baze bafika ezansi ezweni elalibizwa ngezwe lakwaZarahemla.

Now I, Chemish, write what few things I write, in the same book with my brother; for behold, I saw the last which he wrote, that he wrote it with his own hand; and he wrote it in the day that he delivered them unto me. And after this manner we keep the records, for it is according to the commandments of our fathers. And I make an end.

Behold, I, Abinadom, am the son of Chemish. Behold, it came to pass that I saw much war and contention between my people, the Nephites, and the Lamanites; and I, with my own sword, have taken the lives of many of the Lamanites in the defence of my brethren.

And behold, the record of this people is engraven upon plates which is had by the kings, according to the generations; and I know of no revelation save that which has been written, neither prophecy; wherefore, that which is sufficient is written. And I make an end.

Behold, I am Amaleki, the son of Abinadom. Behold, I will speak unto you somewhat concerning Mosiah, who was made king over the land of Zarahemla; for behold, he being warned of the Lord that he should flee out of the land of Nephi, and as many as would hearken unto the voice of the Lord should also depart out of the land with him, into the wilderness—

And it came to pass that he did according as the Lord had commanded him. And they departed out of the land into the wilderness, as many as would hearken unto the voice of the Lord; and they were led by many preachings and prophesyings. And they were admonished continually by the word of God; and they were led by the power of his arm, through the wilderness until they came down into the land which is called the land of Zarahemla.

- 14 Futhi bathola abantu, ababebizwa ngokuthi ngabantu bakwaZarahemla. Manje, kwaba khona ukuthokoza okukhulu phakathi kwabantu bakwaZarahemla; futhi ngokunjalo noZarahemla nempela wathokoza kakhulu, ngenxa yokuthi iNkosi yabe ithumele abantu baMosiya nezingcwephe zethusi ezaziqukethe umbhalo wamaJuda.
- 15 Bheka, kwenzeka ukuthi uMosiya wathola ukuthi abantu bakwaZarahemla baphuma eJerusalema ngesikhathi uSedekiya, inkosi yakwaJuda, yayithwaliwe yayothunjelwa eBabiloni.
- 16 Futhi bahamba ehlane, futhi balethwa ngesandla seNkosi ngaphesheya kwamanzi amaningi; baya ezweni lapho uMosiya abathola khona; futhi babehleli lapho kusukela ngaleso sikhathi kuya phambili.
- 17 Futhi ngesikhathi uMosiya ebathola, base bebaningi kakhulu. Nokho, base bebe nezimpi eziningi kanye nemibango enzima, futhi base bewile ngenkemba izikhathi ngezikhathi; futhi ulimi lwabo lwase lonakele; futhi babengezanga namibhalo; futhi babebuphika ubukhona boMenzi wabo; futhi uMosiya, noma abantu baMosiya, abakwazanga ukubaqonda.
- 18 Kodwa kwenzeka ukuthi uMosiya wenza ukuthi bafundiswe ngolimi lwakhe. Futhi kwenzeka ukuthi emva kokuthi sebefundisiwe ngolimi lukaMosiya, uZarahemla wanika umlando wesizukulwane soyise, njengokukhumbula kwakhe; futhi ubhaliwe, kodwa hhayi kulezi zingcwephe.
- 19 Futhi kwenzeka ukuthi abantu baZarahemla, kanye nabaMosiya, nempela bahlangana ndawonye, futhi uMosiya waqokwa ukuthi abe yinkosi yabo.
- 20 Futhi kwenzeka ukuthi ezinsukwini zikaMosiya, kwaba khona itshe elikhulu elalethwa kuye linokuqoshiwe kulo; futhi nempela wakuhumusha okwakuqoshiwe ngesipho kanye nangamandla kaNkulunkulu.
- 21 Futhi lokho kwakunika indaba ngoKoriyantuma othile, kanye nokubulawa kwabantu bakhe. Futhi uKoriyantuma watholwa ngabantu baZarahemla; yena wahlala nabo isikhathi esiyizinyanga eziyisishiyagalolunye.

And they discovered a people, who were called the people of Zarahemla. Now, there was great rejoicing among the people of Zarahemla; and also Zarahemla did rejoice exceedingly, because the Lord had sent the people of Mosiah with the plates of brass which contained the record of the Jews.

Behold, it came to pass that Mosiah discovered that the people of Zarahemla came out from Jerusalem at the time that Zedekiah, king of Judah, was carried away captive into Babylon.

And they journeyed in the wilderness, and were brought by the hand of the Lord across the great waters, into the land where Mosiah discovered them; and they had dwelt there from that time forth.

And at the time that Mosiah discovered them, they had become exceedingly numerous. Nevertheless, they had had many wars and serious contentions, and had fallen by the sword from time to time; and their language had become corrupted; and they had brought no records with them; and they denied the being of their Creator; and Mosiah, nor the people of Mosiah, could understand them.

But it came to pass that Mosiah caused that they should be taught in his language. And it came to pass that after they were taught in the language of Mosiah, Zarahemla gave a genealogy of his fathers, according to his memory; and they are written, but not in these plates.

And it came to pass that the people of Zarahemla, and of Mosiah, did unite together; and Mosiah was appointed to be their king.

And it came to pass in the days of Mosiah, there was a large stone brought unto him with engravings on it; and he did interpret the engravings by the gift and power of God.

And they gave an account of one Coriantumr, and the slain of his people. And Coriantumr was discovered by the people of Zarahemla; and he dwelt with them for the space of nine moons.

- 22 Futhi phezu kwalokho lokho kwakhuluma amazwi ambalwa mayelana nokhokho babo. Futhi abazali bakhe bokuqala baphuma embhoshongweni, ngesikhathi iNkosi iphambanisa ulimi lwabantu; futhi ulaka lweNkosi lwawela phezu kwabo njengokwezahlulelo zayo ezilungileyo; futhi amathambo abo alele esakazeke ezweni elingasenyakatho.
- 23 Bheka, mina, Amaleki, ngazalwa ezinsukwini zikaMosiya; futhi ngihlalile ngaze ngabone ukufa kwakhe; futhi uBenjamini, indodana yakhe, yabusa esikhundleni sakhe.
- 24 Futhi bheka, ngibonile, ezinsukwini zenkosi uBenjamini, impi enzima kanye nokuchitheka kwegazi okuningi phakathi kwamaNefi kanye namaLamani. Kodwa bheka, amaNefi nempela athola ukusizakala okukhulu ngaphezu kwawo; yebo, kangangokuthi inkosi uBenjamini nempela yabaxosha baphuma ezweni lakwaZarahemla.
- 25 Futhi kwenzeka ukuthi ngaqala ukuba mdala; futhi, ngingenanzalo, ngiyazi inkosi uBenjamini ukuthi yayiyindoda elungile phambi kweNkosi, ngalokho-ke, ngizohambisa lezi zingcwephe kuye, nginxusa bonke abantu ukuthi beze kuNkulunkulu, oNgcwele ka-Israyeli, futhi bakholelwe eziphrofethweni, nasezambulweni, nasekusetshenzelweni yizingelosi, nakuso isipho sokukhuluma ngezilimi, nakuso isipho sokuhumusha izilimi, kanye nakuzo zonke izinto ezinhle; ngokuba akukho lutho oluhle ngaphandle kokuthi luvela eNkosini; futhi lokho okubi kuvela kudeveli.
- 26 Manje, bafowethu abathandekayo, ngifuna ukuthi nize kuKristu, oNgcwele ka-Israyeli, futhi nihlanganyele ensindisweni yakhe, kanye nasemandleni okukhulula akhe. Yebo, wozani kuye, ninikele imiphefumulo yenu yonke njengomnikelo kuye, futhi niqhubeke ekuzileni nasekuthandazeni, nibekezele kuze kube sekugcineni; futhi njengoba iNkosi iphila niyosindiswa.
- 27 Manje ngizokhuluma okuthize mayelana nesibalo esithize esahamba sakhuphukela ehlane ukuze sibuyele ezweni lakwaNefi; ngokuba kwakukhona isibalo esikhulu salabo ababenesifiso sokuthola izwe eliyifa labo.

It also spake a few words concerning his fathers. And his first parents came out from the tower, at the time the Lord confounded the language of the people; and the severity of the Lord fell upon them according to his judgments, which are just; and their bones lay scattered in the land northward.

Behold, I, Amaleki, was born in the days of Mosiah; and I have lived to see his death; and Benjamin, his son, reigneth in his stead.

And behold, I have seen, in the days of king Benjamin, a serious war and much bloodshed between the Nephites and the Lamanites. But behold, the Nephites did obtain much advantage over them; yea, insomuch that king Benjamin did drive them out of the land of Zarahemla.

And it came to pass that I began to be old; and, having no seed, and knowing king Benjamin to be a just man before the Lord, wherefore, I shall deliver up these plates unto him, exhorting all men to come unto God, the Holy One of Israel, and believe in prophesying, and in revelations, and in the ministering of angels, and in the gift of speaking with tongues, and in the gift of interpreting languages, and in all things which are good; for there is nothing which is good save it comes from the Lord: and that which is evil cometh from the devil.

And now, my beloved brethren, I would that ye should come unto Christ, who is the Holy One of Israel, and partake of his salvation, and the power of his redemption. Yea, come unto him, and offer your whole souls as an offering unto him, and continue in fasting and praying, and endure to the end; and as the Lord liveth ye will be saved.

And now I would speak somewhat concerning a certain number who went up into the wilderness to return to the land of Nephi; for there was a large number who were desirous to possess the land of their inheritance.

- 28 Ngalokho-ke, bahamba bakhuphukela ehlane. Futhi umholi wabo eyindoda eqinile futhi enamandla, futhi eyindoda enguntamolukhuni, ngalokho-ke yadala umbango phakathi kwabo; futhi bonke babulawa, ngaphandle kwabangamashumi amahlanu, ehlane, futhi babuyela futhi emuva ezweni lakwaZarahemla.
- 29 Futhi kwenzeka ukuthi baphinde bathatha abanye baba yisibalo esikhudlwana, bathatha uhambo lwabo futhi baya ehlane.
- 30 Futhi mina, Amaleki, nganginomfowethu, naye ngokunjalo owahamba nabo; futhi kusukela ngaleso sikhathi angikaze ngazi mayelana nabo. Futhi cishe sengizolala phansi ethuneni lami; futhi lezi zingcwephe sezigcwele. Futhi ngenza isiphetho senkulumo yami.

Wherefore, they went up into the wilderness. And their leader being a strong and mighty man, and a stiffnecked man, wherefore he caused a contention among them; and they were all slain, save fifty, in the wilderness, and they returned again to the land of Zarahemla.

And it came to pass that they also took others to a considerable number, and took their journey again into the wilderness.

And I, Amaleki, had a brother, who also went with them; and I have not since known concerning them. And I am about to lie down in my grave; and these plates are full. And I make an end of my speaking.

AmaZwi kaMormoni

- 1 Manje mina, Mormoni, ngisazonikeza umbhalo ebekade ngiwenza ezandleni zendodana yami uMoroni, bheka ngikubonile cishe konke ukubhujiswa kwabantu bami, amaNefi.
- 2 Futhi sekuyiminyaka engamakhulu amaningi emva kokufika kukaKristu lapho nginikeza lemibhalo ezandleni zendodana yami; futhi ngicabanga ukuthi yona izokubona konke ukubhujiswa kwabantu bami. Kodwa sengathi uNkulunkulu ubengayipha ukuthi isinde kukho, ukuze ibhale okuthize mayelana nabo, kanye nokuthize mayelana noKristu, ukuze mhlawumbe ngelinye ilanga kubasize.
- 3 Manje, sengikhuluma okuthize mayelana nalokho engikubhalile; ngokuba emva kokuthi sengenze okufinyeziwe ezingcwephehi zikaNefi, kwehla kuye ekubuseni kwalenkosi uBenjamini, u-Amaleki akhulume ngayo, ngacwaninga phakathi kwalemibhalo eyayilethwe ezandleni zami, futhi ngathola lezi zingcwephe, ezaziqukethe lendaba encane yabaphrofethi, kusukela kuJakobe kwehla kuya ekubuseni kwalenkosi uBenjamini, futhi ngokunjalo namaningi amazwi kaNefi.
- 4 Futhi izinto ezikulezi zingcwephe ziyangithokozisa, ngenxa yeziphrofetho zokuza kukaKristu; futhi okhokho bami bazi ukuthi eziningi zazo zase zigcwalisekile; yebo, futhi nami ngiyazi ukuthi eziningi izinto ezaziphrofethiwe mayelana nathi kwehle kuze kube yilolusuku sezigcwalisekile, futhi eziningi zazo kudlulela ngale kwalolusuku kufanele ngempela zenzeke—
- 5 Ngalokho-ke, ngikhethe lezi zinto, ukuqedela umbhalo wami kuzo, umbhalo wami oseleyo engizowuthatha ezingcwephehi zikaNefi; futhi angeke ngakwazi ukubhala ingxenye yokwekhulu yezinto zabantu bami.
- 6 Kodwa bheka, ngizozithatha lezi zingcwephe, eziqukethe lezi ziphrofetho kanye nezambulo, futhi ngizifake kanye nokuseleyo kombhalo wami, ngokuba zingezikhethekileyo kimi; futhi ngiyazi ziyokuba ngezikhethekileyo kubafowethu.

The Words of Mormon

And now I, Mormon, being about to deliver up the record which I have been making into the hands of my son Moroni, behold I have witnessed almost all the destruction of my people, the Nephites.

And it is many hundred years after the coming of Christ that I deliver these records into the hands of my son; and it supposeth me that he will witness the entire destruction of my people. But may God grant that he may survive them, that he may write somewhat concerning them, and somewhat concerning Christ, that perhaps some day it may profit them.

And now, I speak somewhat concerning that which I have written; for after I had made an abridgment from the plates of Nephi, down to the reign of this king Benjamin, of whom Amaleki spake, I searched among the records which had been delivered into my hands, and I found these plates, which contained this small account of the prophets, from Jacob down to the reign of this king Benjamin, and also many of the words of Nephi.

And the things which are upon these plates pleasing me, because of the prophecies of the coming of Christ; and my fathers knowing that many of them have been fulfilled; yea, and I also know that as many things as have been prophesied concerning us down to this day have been fulfilled, and as many as go beyond this day must surely come to pass—

Wherefore, I chose these things, to finish my record upon them, which remainder of my record I shall take from the plates of Nephi; and I cannot write the hundredth part of the things of my people.

But behold, I shall take these plates, which contain these prophesyings and revelations, and put them with the remainder of my record, for they are choice unto me; and I know they will be choice unto my brethren.

- 7 Futhi ngenza lokhu ngenhloso yokuhlakanipha; ngokuba kunyenyeza kanje kimi, njengokusebenza kukaMoya weNkosi okimi. Manje, angizazi zonke izinto; kodwa iNkosi izazi zonke izinto ezizokwenzeka; ngalokho-ke, yona isebenza kimi ukuthi ngenze njengoba ithanda.
- 8 Futhi umthandazo wami kuNkulunkulu umayelana nabafowethu, ukuthi baphinde futhi babe nolwazi lukaNkulunkulu, yebo, inkululeko kaKristu; ukuze baphinde futhi babe ngabantu abathandekayo.
- 9 Manje mina, Mormoni, ngiyaqhubeka nokuqedela umbhalo wami, engiwuthatha ezingcwepheni zikaNefi; futhi ngiwenza njengokwazi kanye nokuqonda uNkulunkulu anginike khona.
- 10 Ngalokho-ke, kwenzeka ukuthi emva kokuthi u-Amaleki esezinike lezi zingcwephe ezandleni zenkosi uBenjamini, wazithatha wazibeka kanye nezinye izingcwephe, ezaziqukethe imibhalo eyayidluliswe ngamakhosi kwehla, izizukulwane ngezizukulwane kuze kube yizinsuku zenkosi uBenjamini.
- 11 Futhi yadluliswa yehla kusukela enkosini uBenjamini, izizukulwane ngezizukulwane kwaze kwaba iwela kwezami izandla. Futhi mina, Mormoni, ngiyathandaza kuNkulunkulu ukuthi ilondolozeke kusukela kulesi sikhathi kuya phambili. Futhi ngiyazi ukuthi izolondolozwa; ngokuba kukhona izinto ezinkulu ezibhalwe kuyo, okuyothi abantu bami kanye nabafowabo bahlulelwe ngazo ngosuku olukhulu nolokugcina, njengokwezwi likaNkulunkulu elibhaliwe.
- 12 Manje, mayelana nalenkosi uBenjamini—yaba nemibango ethize phakathi kwabantu bayo uqobo.
- 13 Futhi phezu kwalokho kwenzeka ukuthi amabutho amaLamani eza ehla ephuma ezweni lakwaNefi, ukuthi azolwa nabantu bakhe. Kodwa bheka, inkosi uBenjamini yabuthela ndawonye amabutho ayo, futhi nempela yamelana nawo; futhi yalwa ngamandla engalo yayo uqobo, ngenkemba kaLabani.

And I do this for a wise purpose; for thus it whispereth me, according to the workings of the Spirit of the Lord which is in me. And now, I do not know all things; but the Lord knoweth all things which are to come; wherefore, he worketh in me to do according to his will.

And my prayer to God is concerning my brethren, that they may once again come to the knowledge of God, yea, the redemption of Christ; that they may once again be a delightsome people.

And now I, Mormon, proceed to finish out my record, which I take from the plates of Nephi; and I make it according to the knowledge and the understanding which God has given me.

Wherefore, it came to pass that after Amaleki had delivered up these plates into the hands of king Benjamin, he took them and put them with the other plates, which contained records which had been handed down by the kings, from generation to generation until the days of king Benjamin.

And they were handed down from king Benjamin, from generation to generation until they have fallen into my hands. And I, Mormon, pray to God that they may be preserved from this time henceforth. And I know that they will be preserved; for there are great things written upon them, out of which my people and their brethren shall be judged at the great and last day, according to the word of God which is written.

And now, concerning this king Benjamin—he had somewhat of contentions among his own people.

And it came to pass also that the armies of the Lamanites came down out of the land of Nephi, to battle against his people. But behold, king Benjamin gathered together his armies, and he did stand against them; and he did fight with the strength of his own arm, with the sword of Laban.

- 14 Futhi ngamandla eNkosi nempela balwa nezitha zabo, kwaze kwaba babulala eziningi izinkulungwane zamaLamani. Futhi kwenzeka ukuthi balwa namaLamani kwaze kwaba bayawaxosha bayawakhipha emazweni onke angamafa abo.
- 15 Futhi kwenzeka ukuthi emva kokubakhona koKristu bamanga, futhi imilomo yabo isivaliwe, futhi sebejezisiwe ngokwamacala abo;
- 16 Futhi emva kokubakhona kwabaphrofethi bamanga, nabashumayeli kanye nabafundisi bamanga phakathi kwabantu, futhi bonke laba sebejezisiwe ngokwamacala abo, futhi emva kokubakhona kombango omkhulu kanye nokuningi ukuhlubukela kumaLamani, bheka, kwenzeka ukuthi inkosi uBenjamini, ngokusizwa ngabaphrofethi abangcwele ababephakathi kwabantu bakhe—
- 17 Ngokuba bheka, inkosi uBenjamini yayiyindoda engcwele; futhi nempela wabusa phezu kwabantu bakhe ngokulunga; futhi kwakukhona abaningi abantu abangcwele ezweni, futhi nempela balikhuluma izwi likaNkulunkulu ngamandla kanye nangegunya; futhi nempela basebenzisa ukuqina kwezwi okukhulu ngenxa yokuba ngontamolukhuni kwabantu—
- 18 Ngalokho-ke, ngosizo lwalaba, inkosi uBenjamini, ngokusebenza ngawo wonke amandla omzimba wakhe kanye namandla omphefumulo wakhe wonke, futhi ngokunjalo nabaphrofethi, nempela baphinda futhi benza kwabakhona ukuthula ezweni.

And in the strength of the Lord they did contend against their enemies, until they had slain many thousands of the Lamanites. And it came to pass that they did contend against the Lamanites until they had driven them out of all the lands of their inheritance.

And it came to pass that after there had been false Christs, and their mouths had been shut, and they punished according to their crimes;

And after there had been false prophets, and false preachers and teachers among the people, and all these having been punished according to their crimes; and after there having been much contention and many dissensions away unto the Lamanites, behold, it came to pass that king Benjamin, with the assistance of the holy prophets who were among his people—

For behold, king Benjamin was a holy man, and he did reign over his people in righteousness; and there were many holy men in the land, and they did speak the word of God with power and with authority; and they did use much sharpness because of the stiffneckedness of the people—

Wherefore, with the help of these, king Benjamin, by laboring with all the might of his body and the faculty of his whole soul, and also the prophets, did once more establish peace in the land.

INcwadi kaMosiya

Mosiya 1

- 1 Manje kwakungasekho mbango ezweni lonke lakwaZarahemla, phakathi kwabo bonke abantu okwakungabenkosi uBenjamini, kangangokuthi inkosi uBenjamini yaba nokuthula njalo zonke izinsuku zayo ezazisasele.
- 2 Futhi kwenzeka ukuthi yayinamadodana amathathu; futhi yawaqamba amagama abo ngokuthi uMosiya, kanye noHelorumu, kanye noHelamani. Futhi yenza ukuthi afundiswe lonke ulimi loyise, ukuze ngalokho abe ngamadoda anokuqonda; futhi ukuze azi mayelana neziphrofetho ezazikhulunywe ngemilomo yoyise, ezazilethwe kubo ngesandla seNkosi.
- 3 Futhi phezu kwalokho yawafundisa mayelana nemibhalo eyayiqoshwe ezingcwephehi zethusi, ithi: Madodana ami, ngifuna ukuthi nize nikhumbule ukuthi ukuba kwakungave kungenxa yalezi zingcwephe, eziqukethe lemibhalo kanye nalemiyalelo, ngabe sahlala ekungazini, ngisho nangalesi sikhathi samanje, singazazi izimfihlakalo zikaNkulunkulu.
- 4 Ngokuba kwakungenakwenzeka ukuthi ubaba, uLehi, akwazi ukuzikhumbula zonke lezi zinto, ukuthi azifundise kubantwana bakhe, ngaphandle kokuthi kube ngosizo lwalezi zingcwephe; ngokuba yena efundiswe ngolimi lwamaGibithe ngakho-ke wakwazi ukuyifunda le miqopho, futhi wayifundisa abantwana bakhe, ukuze ngalendlela bona bakwazi ukuyifundisa abantwana babo, futhi ngalokho kugcwaliseke imiyalelo kaNkulunkulu, ngisho kwehle kuze kube yilesi sikhathi samanje.
- 5 Ngithi kini, madodana ami, ukuba kwakungave kungenxa yalezi zinto, ezigciniwe futhi zalondolozwa ngesandla sikaNkulunkulu, ukuze sizifunde futhi siqonde ngezimfihlakalo zakhe, futhi sibe nemiyalelo yakhe njalonjalo phambi kwamehlathu, ngisho nobaba bethu babeyolahlekelwa wukholo, futhi besiyokuba njengabafowethu, amaLamani, wona angazi lutho mayelana nalezi zinto, futhi angazikholwa ngisho noma efundiswa ngazo, ngenxa yamasiko oyise, angalungile.

The Book of Mosiah

Mosiah 1

And now there was no more contention in all the land of Zarahemla, among all the people who belonged to king Benjamin, so that king Benjamin had continual peace all the remainder of his days.

And it came to pass that he had three sons; and he called their names Mosiah, and Helorum, and Helaman. And he caused that they should be taught in all the language of his fathers, that thereby they might become men of understanding; and that they might know concerning the prophecies which had been spoken by the mouths of their fathers, which were delivered them by the hand of the Lord.

And he also taught them concerning the records which were engraven on the plates of brass, saying: My sons, I would that ye should remember that were it not for these plates, which contain these records and these commandments, we must have suffered in ignorance, even at this present time, not knowing the mysteries of God.

For it were not possible that our father, Lehi, could have remembered all these things, to have taught them to his children, except it were for the help of these plates; for he having been taught in the language of the Egyptians therefore he could read these engravings, and teach them to his children, that thereby they could teach them to their children, and so fulfilling the commandments of God, even down to this present time.

I say unto you, my sons, were it not for these things, which have been kept and preserved by the hand of God, that we might read and understand of his mysteries, and have his commandments always before our eyes, that even our fathers would have dwindled in unbelief, and we should have been like unto our brethren, the Lamanites, who know nothing concerning these things, or even do not believe them when they are taught them, because of the traditions of their fathers, which are not correct.

- 6 O madodana ami, ngifuna ukuthi nize nikhumbule ukuthi lezi zinkulumo ziyiqiniso, futhi ngokunjalo nokuthi lemibhalo iyiqiniso. Futhi bhekani, ngokunjalo nezingcwephe zikaNefi, eziqukethe imibhalo kanye nezinkulumo zobaba bethu kusukela ngesikhathi beshiya eJerusalema kuze kube manje, futhi ziyiqiniso; futhi singazi ngobuqiniso bazo ngenxa yokuthi sinazo phambi kwamehlo ethu.
- 7 Manje, madodana ami, ngifuna ukuthi nize nikhumbule ukuthi nizicwaninge ngokukhuthala, ukuze nizuze ngalokho; futhi ngifuna ukuthi nize niyigcine imiyalelo kaNkulunkulu, ukuze niphumelele ezweni njengokwezithembiso iNkosi eyazenza kobaba bethu.
- 8 Futhi ziningi kakhulu izinto inkosi uBenjamini eyazifundisa amadodana ayo, ezingabhaliwe kulencwadi.
- 9 Futhi kwenzeka ukuthi emva kokuthi inkosi uBenjamini isiqedile ukufundisa amadodana ayo, yabe isiba mdala, futhi yabe isibona ukuthi kwasekufanele ukuthi masinyane nje ihambe indlela yawo wonke umhlaba; ngakho-ke, yakubona kufanelekile ukuthi inikeze umbuso kwenye yamadodana ayo.
- 10 Ngalokho-ke, yenza ukuthi uMosiya alethwe phambi kwayo; futhi lawa ngamazwi eyawakhuluma kuye, ithi: Ndodana yami, ngifuna ukuthi wenze isimemezelo kulo lonke lelizwe phakathi kwabo bonke laba bantu, noma abantu baZarahemla, kanye nakubantu baMosiya abahlala kulelizwe, ukuze ngalokho baqoqelwe ndawonye; ngokuba kusasa ngizomemezela kubo laba bantu bami ngomlomo wami ukuthi wena usuyinkosi kanye nombusi phezu kwabo laba bantu iNkosi uNkulunkulu wethu esinike bona.
- 11 Futhi ngaphezu kwalokho, ngizonika laba bantu igama, ukuze ngalo behlukaniswe kubo bonke abantu iNkosi uNkulunkulu eyabakhipha ezweni laseJerusalema; futhi lokhu ngikwenza ngoba bebengabantu abakhuthele ekugcineni imiyalelo yeNkosi.
- 12 Futhi ngibanikeza igama elingayikusulwa nanini, ngaphandle kokuthi kuyokuba ngenxa yesiphambeko.

O my sons, I would that ye should remember that these sayings are true, and also that these records are true. And behold, also the plates of Nephi, which contain the records and the sayings of our fathers from the time they left Jerusalem until now, and they are true; and we can know of their surety because we have them before our eyes.

And now, my sons, I would that ye should remember to search them diligently, that ye may profit thereby; and I would that ye should keep the commandments of God, that ye may prosper in the land according to the promises which the Lord made unto our fathers.

And many more things did king Benjamin teach his sons, which are not written in this book.

And it came to pass that after king Benjamin had made an end of teaching his sons, that he waxed old, and he saw that he must very soon go the way of all the earth; therefore, he thought it expedient that he should confer the kingdom upon one of his sons.

Therefore, he had Mosiah brought before him; and these are the words which he spake unto him, saying: My son, I would that ye should make a proclamation throughout all this land among all this people, or the people of Zarahemla, and the people of Mosiah who dwell in the land, that thereby they may be gathered together; for on the morrow I shall proclaim unto this my people out of mine own mouth that thou art a king and a ruler over this people, whom the Lord our God hath given us.

And moreover, I shall give this people a name, that thereby they may be distinguished above all the people which the Lord God hath brought out of the land of Jerusalem; and this I do because they have been a diligent people in keeping the commandments of the Lord.

And I give unto them a name that never shall be blotted out, except it be through transgression.

13 Yebo, futhi phezu kwalokho ngithi kuwe, uma kungukuthi laba bantu abathandwayo kakhulu yiNkosi bengawela esiphambekweni, futhi babe ngabantu ababi futhi abaphingayo, iNkosi iyobadela, kuthi ngalokho babe buthakathaka njengabafowabo; futhi ayiseyukubalondoloza ngamandla ayo angenakulinganiswa namangalisayo, njengoba kuze kube manje ibalondolozile obaba bethu.

14 Ngokuba ngithi kuwe, ukuba ayiyelulanga ingalo yayo ekulondolozeni obaba bethu babeyowela ezandleni zamaLamani, futhi babe ngabahlushwayo benzondo yawo.

15 Futhi kwenzeka ukuthi emva kokuthi inkosi uBenjamini isiqedile ukukhuluma ngalezi zinto endodaneni yayo, yayinika imiyalelo mayelana nazo zonke izindaba zombuso.

16 Futhi ngaphezu kwalokho, yaphinda yayinika imiyalelo mayelana nemibhalo eyayiqoshwe ezingcwepheni zethusi; futhi ngokunjalo nangezincwephe zikaNefi; futhi ngokunjalo, nangenkemba kaLabani, kanye nebhola noma inkombandlela, eyahola obaba bethu phakathi ehlane, eyayilungiswe ngesandla seNkosi ukuze ngalokho ibahole, wonke umuntu njengokulalela kanye nokukhuthala ababekunikeza kuyo.

17 Ngakho-ke, ngesikhathi bengenal' ukhohlo babengabi nokuphumelela noma baqhubeke ohambweni lwabo, kodwa babebuyiselwa emuva, futhi bazehlisele ukungajabuli kukaNkulunkulu phezu kwabo; futhi babe shaywa ngendlala kanye nangezinkathazo ezibuhlungu, ukubaphehla ukuthi bakhumbule umsebenzi wabo.

18 Manje, kwenzeka ukuthi uMosiya wahamba wenza njengoba uyise ayemyalile, futhi wamemezela kubo bonke abantu ababesezweni lakwaZarahemla ukuze ngalokho baqoqane ndawonye, ukuthi bahambe bakhuphukele ethempelini ukuyozwa amazwi uyise ayezowakhuluma kubo.

Yea, and moreover I say unto you, that if this highly favored people of the Lord should fall into transgression, and become a wicked and an adulterous people, that the Lord will deliver them up, that thereby they become weak like unto their brethren; and he will no more preserve them by his matchless and marvelous power, as he has hitherto preserved our fathers.

For I say unto you, that if he had not extended his arm in the preservation of our fathers they must have fallen into the hands of the Lamanites, and become victims to their hatred.

And it came to pass that after king Benjamin had made an end of these sayings to his son, that he gave him charge concerning all the affairs of the kingdom.

And moreover, he also gave him charge concerning the records which were engraven on the plates of brass; and also the plates of Nephi; and also, the sword of Laban, and the ball or director, which led our fathers through the wilderness, which was prepared by the hand of the Lord that thereby they might be led, every one according to the heed and diligence which they gave unto him.

Therefore, as they were unfaithful they did not prosper nor progress in their journey, but were driven back, and incurred the displeasure of God upon them; and therefore they were smitten with famine and sore afflictions, to stir them up in remembrance of their duty.

And now, it came to pass that Mosiah went and did as his father had commanded him, and proclaimed unto all the people who were in the land of Zarahemla that thereby they might gather themselves together, to go up to the temple to hear the words which his father should speak unto them.

Mosiya 2

- 1 Futhi kwenzeka ukuthi emva kokuthi uMosiya esenze njengoba uyise emyalile, futhi esenze isimemezelo kulo lonke izwe, abantu bahlangana ndawonye kulo lonke izwe, ukuze bahambe bakhuphukele ethempelini ukuyozwa amazwi inkosi uBenjamini eyayizowakhuluma kubo.
- 2 Futhi babeyisibalo esikhulu, ngisho babebaningi ngendlela yokuthi abazange bababale; ngokuba base bephindaphindwe kakhulu futhi sebande kakhulu ezweni.
- 3 Futhi phezu kwalokho bathatha amazibulo ezimvu zabo, ukuze banikele ngomnikelo kanye nangomnikelo wokushiswa njengokomthetho kaMose;
- 4 Futhi phezu kwalokho ukuze babonge eNkosini uNkulunkulu wabo, owabakhipha ezweni laseJerusalema, futhi owabakhipha ezandleni zezitha zabo, futhi wakhetha abantu abalungile ukuthi babe ngabafundisi babo, futhi ngokunjalo nendoda elungile ukuthi ibe yinkosi yabo, eyenza kubekhona ukuthula ezweni lakwaZarahemla, futhi eyabafundisa ukuthi bagcine imiyalelo kaNkulunkulu, ukuze bathokoze futhi bagcwale uthando lukaNkulunkulu kanye nolwabantu bonke.
- 5 Futhi kwenzeka ukuthi ngesikhathi befika ethempelini, bagxumeka amatende abo azungeza lapho, yonke indoda njengokomndeni wayo, unkosikazi wayo, namadodana ayo, namadodakazi ayo, kanye namadodana awo, kanye namadodakazi awo, kusukela komdala kwehla kuya komncane, yonke imindeni yehlukene omunye komunye.
- 6 Futhi bagxumeka amatende abo azungeza ithempeli, wonke umuntu enetende elinomnyango walo obheke ethempelini, ukuze ngaleyo ndlela bahlale ematendeni abo futhi bezwe amazwi inkosi uBenjamini eyayizowakhuluma kubo;
- 7 Ngokuba isixuku sasisikhulu kakhulu kangangokuthi inkosi uBenjamini ayikwazanga ukubafundisa bonke ngaphakathi kwezindonga zethempeli, ngalokho-ke yenza ukuthi kumiswe umbhoshongo, ukuze ngaleyo ndlela abantu bakhe bawezwe amazwi ayezowakhuluma kubo.

Mosiah 2

And it came to pass that after Mosiah had done as his father had commanded him, and had made a proclamation throughout all the land, that the people gathered themselves together throughout all the land, that they might go up to the temple to hear the words which king Benjamin should speak unto them.

And there were a great number, even so many that they did not number them; for they had multiplied exceedingly and waxed great in the land.

And they also took of the firstlings of their flocks, that they might offer sacrifice and burnt offerings according to the law of Moses;

And also that they might give thanks to the Lord their God, who had brought them out of the land of Jerusalem, and who had delivered them out of the hands of their enemies, and had appointed just men to be their teachers, and also a just man to be their king, who had established peace in the land of Zarahemla, and who had taught them to keep the commandments of God, that they might rejoice and be filled with love towards God and all men.

And it came to pass that when they came up to the temple, they pitched their tents round about, every man according to his family, consisting of his wife, and his sons, and his daughters, and their sons, and their daughters, from the eldest down to the youngest, every family being separate one from another.

And they pitched their tents round about the temple, every man having his tent with the door thereof towards the temple, that thereby they might remain in their tents and hear the words which king Benjamin should speak unto them;

For the multitude being so great that king Benjamin could not teach them all within the walls of the temple, therefore he caused a tower to be erected, that thereby his people might hear the words which he should speak unto them.

- 8 Futhi kwenzeka ukuthi waqala ukukhuluma nabantu bakhe esembhoshongweni; futhi abakwazanga bonke ukuzwa amazwi akhe ngenxa yobukhulu besixuku; ngakho-ke wenza ukuthi amazwi awakhulumayo abhalwe futhi athunyelwe phakathi kwalabo ababengekho ngaphansi komsindo wezwi lakhe, ukuze nabo ngokunjalo bawathole amazwi akhe.
- 9 Futhi yilawa amazwi awakhulumayo futhi wenza ukuthi abhalwe, ethi: Bafowethu, nonke nina enihlangene ndawonye, nina eninokuwezwa amazwi ami engizowakhuluma kini ngalolusuku; ngokuba angizange nginiyale ukuthi nikhuphukele lapha nizodlala ngamazwi engizowakhuluma, kodwa ukuthi ningilalele, futhi nivule izindlebe zenu ukuze nizwe, nezinhliziyo zenu ukuze niqonde, futhi nezingqondo zenu ukuze izimfihlakalo zikaNkulunkulu zambulwe kini.
- 10 Angizange nginiyale ukuthi nikhuphukele lapha ukuze ningesabe, noma ukuthi nicabange ukuthi mina ngingaphezu komuntu ofayo.
- 11 Kodwa nami nginjengani uqobo lwenu, ngingaphansi kwazo zonke izimo zobuthakathaka emzimbeni kanye nasengqondweni; nokho ngikhethwe yilaba bantu, futhi ngangcweliswa ngubaba, futhi ngavunyelwa yisandla seNkosi ukuthi ngibe wumbusi nenkosi phezu kwalaba bantu; futhi ngigciniwe futhi ngalondolozwa ngamandla akhe angenakulinganiswa, ukuthi nginisebenzele ngakho konke ukuqina, ingqondo kanye namandla iNkosi enginike wona.
- 12 Ngithi kini njengoba ngivunyelwe ukuthi ngichithe izinsuku zami ekunisebenzeleni, ngisho kuze kube yilesi sikhathi, futhi angizange ngifune golide nasiliva noma nanhloboni yengecebo yenu;
- 13 Futhi angizange ngivume ukuthi nibanjwe nifakwe ematilongweni, noma nenzane izigqila omunye nomunye, noma ukuthi nibulale, noma niphange, noma nebe, noma niphinge; noma ngisho nokuthi ngivume ukuthi nenze noma hlobo luni lobubi, futhi nginifundisile ukuthi nigcine imiyalelo yeNkosi, kuzo zonke izinto eniyale ngazo—

And it came to pass that he began to speak to his people from the tower; and they could not all hear his words because of the greatness of the multitude; therefore he caused that the words which he spake should be written and sent forth among those that were not under the sound of his voice, that they might also receive his words.

And these are the words which he spake and caused to be written, saying: My brethren, all ye that have assembled yourselves together, you that can hear my words which I shall speak unto you this day; for I have not commanded you to come up hither to trifle with the words which I shall speak, but that you should hearken unto me, and open your ears that ye may hear, and your hearts that ye may understand, and your minds that the mysteries of God may be unfolded to your view.

I have not commanded you to come up hither that ye should fear me, or that ye should think that I of myself am more than a mortal man.

But I am like as yourselves, subject to all manner of infirmities in body and mind; yet I have been chosen by this people, and consecrated by my father, and was suffered by the hand of the Lord that I should be a ruler and a king over this people; and have been kept and preserved by his matchless power, to serve you with all the might, mind and strength which the Lord hath granted unto me.

I say unto you that as I have been suffered to spend my days in your service, even up to this time, and have not sought gold nor silver nor any manner of riches of you;

Neither have I suffered that ye should be confined in dungeons, nor that ye should make slaves one of another, nor that ye should murder, or plunder, or steal, or commit adultery; nor even have I suffered that ye should commit any manner of wickedness, and have taught you that ye should keep the commandments of the Lord, in all things which he hath commanded you—

- 14 Futhi ngisho nami, uqobo lwami, ngisebenzile ngezandla zami ukuze nginisebenzele, futhi ukuthi ningathwaliswa ngezintela, nokuthi kungezi lutho phezu kwenu okunzima ukuthi nikuthwale—futhi kuzo zonke lezi zinto esezingizikhulumile, nani uqobo lwenu ningofakazi ngalolusuku.
- 15 Nokho, bafowethu, angizange ngizenze lezi zinto ukuze ngizigabise, noma ukuthi nginitshela lezi zinto ukuze ngalokho nginibeke icala; kodwa nginitshela lezi zinto ukuze nazi ukuthi ngingakwazi ukuphendula ngonembeza ohlanzekile phambi kukaNkulunkulu ngalolusuku.
- 16 Bhekani, ngithi kini ngenxa yokuthi ngithe ngangichithe izinsuku zami ekunisebenzeleni, angifuni ukuzigabisa, ngokuba empeleni bengisebenzela uNkulunkulu.
- 17 Futhi bhekani, nginitshela lezi zinto ukuze nifunde ukuhlakanipha; ukuze nifunde ukuthi uma usebenzela abantu bakini empeleni usebenzela uNkulunkulu wakho.
- 18 Bhekani, ningibiza ngenkosi yenu; futhi uma mina, enimbiza ngenkosi yenu, ngisebenza ukuthi nginisize, pho nina akufanele yini ukuthi nisebenze ukuze nisizane na?
- 19 Futhi bhekani futhi, uma mina, enimbiza ngenkosi yenu, osechithe izinsuku zakhe enisebenzela, futhi nokho ngibe kade ngisebenzela uNkulunkulu, ngifanelwe wukubongwa yini, O kufanele kangakanani ukuthi nibonge iNkosi yenu yasezulwini!
- 20 Ngithi kini, bafowethu, uma ninganika konke ukubonga kanye nodumo imiphefumulo yenu yonke enamandla okubanakho, kulowo Nkulunkulu owanidala, wanigcina wanilondoloza, futhi wenza ukuthi nithokoze, futhi waninika ukuthi nihlale ngokuthula omunye nomunye—
- 21 Ngithi kini uma beningamsebenzela lowo owanidalayo kusukela ekuqaleni, futhi onilondolozayo usuku nosuku, ngokunitshelaka umphefumulo, ukuze niphile futhi ninyakaze futhi nenze njengokuthanda kwenu, futhi ngisho enisekela kusukela komunye umzuzu kuya komunye—ngithi, uma beningamsebenzela ngemphefumulo yenu yonke nakuba kunjalo beniyokuba yizisebenzi ezingenamvuzo.

And even I, myself, have labored with mine own hands that I might serve you, and that ye should not be laden with taxes, and that there should nothing come upon you which was grievous to be borne—and of all these things which I have spoken, ye yourselves are witnesses this day.

Yet, my brethren, I have not done these things that I might boast, neither do I tell these things that thereby I might accuse you; but I tell you these things that ye may know that I can answer a clear conscience before God this day.

Behold, I say unto you that because I said unto you that I had spent my days in your service, I do not desire to boast, for I have only been in the service of God.

And behold, I tell you these things that ye may learn wisdom; that ye may learn that when ye are in the service of your fellow beings ye are only in the service of your God.

Behold, ye have called me your king; and if I, whom ye call your king, do labor to serve you, then ought not ye to labor to serve one another?

And behold also, if I, whom ye call your king, who has spent his days in your service, and yet has been in the service of God, do merit any thanks from you, O how you ought to thank your heavenly King!

I say unto you, my brethren, that if you should render all the thanks and praise which your whole soul has power to possess, to that God who has created you, and has kept and preserved you, and has caused that ye should rejoice, and has granted that ye should live in peace one with another—

I say unto you that if ye should serve him who has created you from the beginning, and is preserving you from day to day, by lending you breath, that ye may live and move and do according to your own will, and even supporting you from one moment to another—I say, if ye should serve him with all your whole souls yet ye would be unprofitable servants.

- 22 Futhi bhekani, kuphela akudingayo kini wukugcina imiyalelo yakhe; futhi unithembisile ukuthi uma niyoyigcina imiyalelo yakhe niyophumelela ezweni; futhi akajiki nanini kulokho akushilo; ngalokho-ke, uma nigcina imiyalelo yakhe uyanibusisa futhi aniphumelelise.
- 23 Manje, okokuqala, unidalile, futhi waninika izimpilo zenu, enimkweletayo ngazo.
- 24 Futhi okwesibili, udinga ukuthi nenze njengoba eniyalile; okuthi uma nenza, uyanibusisa khona manjalo; futhi ngalokho-ke usenikhokhele. Futhi nisamkweleta, futhi niyamkweleta, futhi nisayokumkweleta, ingunaphakade naphakade; ngalokho-ke, yini eningazigabisa ngayo na?
- 25 Manje ngiyabuza, kukhona yini eningakusho ngani na? Ngiyaniphendula ngithi, Cha. Aninakusho ngisho ukuthi ninjengothuli lomhlaba; nokho nadalwa ngothuli lomhlaba; kodwa bhekani, lungolwakhe lowo owanidalayo.
- 26 Futhi nami, ngisho nami, enimbiza ngenkosi yenu, angingcono kunani; ngokuba nami ngokunjalo ngingowasothulini. Futhi niyabona ukuthi sengimdala, futhi sekuseduze ngidele loluhlaka olufayo luye kunina walo umhlaba.
- 27 Ngakho-ke, njengoba ngishilo kini ukuthi nginisebenzele, ngihamba nonembeza ohlanzekile phambi kukaNkulunkulu, ngisho ngokunjalo nangalesi sikhathi ngenze ukuthi nibuthane ndawonye, ukuze ngitholwe ngingenacala, futhi nokuthi igazi lenu lingehleli phezu kwami, uma sengimi ukuthi ngahlulelwe nguNkulunkulu ngezinto angiyale ngazo mayelana nani.
- 28 Ngithi kini ngenze ukuthi nibuthane ndawonye ukuze ngisuse ezingutsheni zami igazi lenu, ngalesi sikhathi lapho sengizoya phansi ethuneni lami, ukuze ngehlele phansi ngokuthula, futhi umoya wami ongafiyo uhlangane namakwaya aphezulu ekuhlabeleleni izindumiso zikaNkulunkulu olungileyo.
- 29 Futhi ngaphezu kwalokho, ngithi kini ngenze ukuthi nibuthane ndawonye, ukuze ngimemezele kini ukuthi angeke ngisaba wumfundisi wenu, noma yinkosi yenu;

And behold, all that he requires of you is to keep his commandments; and he has promised you that if ye would keep his commandments ye should prosper in the land; and he never doth vary from that which he hath said; therefore, if ye do keep his commandments he doth bless you and prosper you.

And now, in the first place, he hath created you, and granted unto you your lives, for which ye are indebted unto him.

And secondly, he doth require that ye should do as he hath commanded you; for which if ye do, he doth immediately bless you; and therefore he hath paid you. And ye are still indebted unto him, and are, and will be, forever and ever; therefore, of what have ye to boast?

And now I ask, can ye say aught of yourselves? I answer you, Nay. Ye cannot say that ye are even as much as the dust of the earth; yet ye were created of the dust of the earth; but behold, it belongeth to him who created you.

And I, even I, whom ye call your king, am no better than ye yourselves are; for I am also of the dust. And ye behold that I am old, and am about to yield up this mortal frame to its mother earth.

Therefore, as I said unto you that I had served you, walking with a clear conscience before God, even so I at this time have caused that ye should assemble yourselves together, that I might be found blameless, and that your blood should not come upon me, when I shall stand to be judged of God of the things whereof he hath commanded me concerning you.

I say unto you that I have caused that ye should assemble yourselves together that I might rid my garments of your blood, at this period of time when I am about to go down to my grave, that I might go down in peace, and my immortal spirit may join the choirs above in singing the praises of a just God.

And moreover, I say unto you that I have caused that ye should assemble yourselves together, that I might declare unto you that I can no longer be your teacher, nor your king;

30 Ngokuba ngisho nangalesi sikhathi, uhlaka lwami lonke luyaqhaqhazela kakhulu njengoba ngizama ukukhuluma kini; kodwa iNkosi uNkulunkulu iyangisekela, futhi ingivumele ukuthi ngikhulume kini, futhi ingiyale ukuthi ngimemezele kini ngalolusuku, ukuthi indodana yami uMosiya uyinkosi nombusi phezu kwenu.

31 Manje, bafowethu, ngifuna ukuthi nize nenze njengoba kade nenzile kuze kube manje. Njengokuba niyigcinile imiyalelo yami, futhi ngokunjalo nemiyalelo kababa, futhi naphumelela, futhi nagcinwa ekuweleni ezandleni zezitha zenu, ngisho ngokunjalo uma niyoyigcina imiyalelo yendodana yami, noma imiyalelo kaNkulunkulu eyolethwa kini ngayo, niyophumelela kulelizwe, futhi izitha zenu aziyikuba namandla phezu kwenu.

32 Kodwa, O bantu bami, qaphelani hleze kuvuke imibango phakathi kwenu, funa nikhethe ukulalela umoya omubi, akhuluma ngawo ubaba uMosiya.

33 Ngokuba bhekani, kukhona inhlawulo emenyezelwe kulowo okhetha ukulalela lowomoya; ngokuba uma ekhetha ukulalela wona, futhi ahlale futhi aze afele ezonweni zakhe, yena futhi uziphuzela usizi; ngokuba uthola njengenkokhelo yakhe ukujeziswa okungapheliyo, eqe umthetho kaNkulunkulu ngokuphikisana nolwazi lwakhe uqobo.

34 Ngithi kini, akukho namunye phakathi kwenu, ngaphandle kwabantwana benu abancane abangafundiswanga mayelana nalezi zinto, ongazi ukuthi ninesikweletu saphakade kuBaba wenu wasezulwini, ukuletha kuye konke eninakho kanye neniyyikho; futhi phezu kwalokho nifundisiwe mayelana nemibhalo equkethe iziphrofetho abakhuluma ngazo abaphrofethi abangcwele, ngisho kwehla kuze kufike esikhathini ubaba, uLehi, eshiya eJerusema;

35 Futhi ngokunjalo, nakho konke okwakhulunywa ngobaba bethu kuze kube manje. Futhi bhekani, phezu kwalokho, bakhuluma lokho ababeyalwe ngakho yiNkosi; ngakho-ke, leyomibhalo ilungile futhi iyiqiniso.

For even at this time, my whole frame doth tremble exceedingly while attempting to speak unto you; but the Lord God doth support me, and hath suffered me that I should speak unto you, and hath commanded me that I should declare unto you this day, that my son Mosiah is a king and a ruler over you.

And now, my brethren, I would that ye should do as ye have hitherto done. As ye have kept my commandments, and also the commandments of my father, and have prospered, and have been kept from falling into the hands of your enemies, even so if ye shall keep the commandments of my son, or the commandments of God which shall be delivered unto you by him, ye shall prosper in the land, and your enemies shall have no power over you.

But, O my people, beware lest there shall arise contentions among you, and ye list to obey the evil spirit, which was spoken of by my father Mosiah.

For behold, there is a wo pronounced upon him who listeth to obey that spirit; for if he listeth to obey him, and remaineth and dieth in his sins, the same drinketh damnation to his own soul; for he receiveth for his wages an everlasting punishment, having transgressed the law of God contrary to his own knowledge.

I say unto you, that there are not any among you, except it be your little children that have not been taught concerning these things, but what knoweth that ye are eternally indebted to your heavenly Father, to render to him all that you have and are; and also have been taught concerning the records which contain the prophecies which have been spoken by the holy prophets, even down to the time our father, Lehi, left Jerusalem;

And also, all that has been spoken by our fathers until now. And behold, also, they spake that which was commanded them of the Lord; therefore, they are just and true.

- 36 Manje, ngithi kini, bafowethu, emva kokuthi senazile futhi senifundisiwe zonke lezi zinto, uma ningaphambuka futhi niphikisane nalokho okukhulunyiwe, kangangoba nize nizikhiphe kuMoya weNkosi, ukuze angabi nandawo kini ukuthi aniqondise ezindleleni zokuhlakanipha ukuze nibusiswe, niphumelele, futhi nilondolozwe—
- 37 Ngithi kini, umuntu owenza lokhu, nguye lowo futhi ophumela obala avukele uNkulunkulu; ngakho-ke ukhetha ukulalela umoya omubi, futhi uba yisitha kukho konke ukulunga; ngakho-ke, iNkosi ayinandawo kuye, ngokuba ayihlali emathempelini angcolile.
- 38 Ngakho-ke uma lowo muntu engaphenduki, futhi ahlale futhi afe eyisitha kuNkulunkulu, izimfuno zokulunga zikaNkulunkulu zivusela umphefumulo wakhe ongafi ekwazini icala lakhe, elimenza ukuthi ashwabane phambi kweNkosi, futhi ligcwalise isifuba sakhe ngokuzisola, nobuhlungu, kanye nosizi, olufana nomlilo ongacisheki, omalangabi awo akhuphukela phezulu phakade naphakade.
- 39 Manje ngithi kini, umusa awunakumthola lowo muntu; ngakho-ke isiphetho sakhe wukuba abekezelele ubuhlungu obungapheliyo.
- 40 O, nonke nina madoda amadala, futhi ngokunjalo nani bafana, kanye nani bantwana abancane eninokuwaqonda amazwi ami, ngokuba ngikhulume ngokusobala kini ukuze niqonde, ngiyathandaza ukuthi nivukele ekukhumbuleni isimo esesabekayo salabo abawele esiphambekweni.
- 41 Futhi ngaphezu kwalokho, ngifisa ukuthi nicabange ngesimo esibusisiwe futhi nesokujabula salabo abagcina imiyalelo kaNkulunkulu. Ngokuba bhekani, babusisiwe kuzo zonke izinto, ezesikhashana kanye nezikamoya; futhi uma bebambelele ekwethembekeni kuze kube sekugcineni bemukelwa ezulwini, ukuze ngalokho bahlale noNkulunkulu esimweni sokuthokoza okungenakuphela. O khumbulani, khumbulani ukuthi lezi zinto ziyiqiniso; ngokuba iNkosi uNkulunkulu izikhulumile.

And now, I say unto you, my brethren, that after ye have known and have been taught all these things, if ye should transgress and go contrary to that which has been spoken, that ye do withdraw yourselves from the Spirit of the Lord, that it may have no place in you to guide you in wisdom's paths that ye may be blessed, prospered, and preserved—

I say unto you, that the man that doeth this, the same cometh out in open rebellion against God; therefore he listeth to obey the evil spirit, and becometh an enemy to all righteousness; therefore, the Lord has no place in him, for he dwelleth not in unholy temples.

Therefore if that man repenteth not, and remaineth and dieth an enemy to God, the demands of divine justice do awaken his immortal soul to a lively sense of his own guilt, which doth cause him to shrink from the presence of the Lord, and doth fill his breast with guilt, and pain, and anguish, which is like an unquenchable fire, whose flame ascendeth up forever and ever.

And now I say unto you, that mercy hath no claim on that man; therefore his final doom is to endure a never-ending torment.

O, all ye old men, and also ye young men, and you little children who can understand my words, for I have spoken plainly unto you that ye might understand, I pray that ye should awake to a remembrance of the awful situation of those that have fallen into transgression.

And moreover, I would desire that ye should consider on the blessed and happy state of those that keep the commandments of God. For behold, they are blessed in all things, both temporal and spiritual; and if they hold out faithful to the end they are received into heaven, that thereby they may dwell with God in a state of never-ending happiness. O remember, remember that these things are true; for the Lord God hath spoken it.

Mosiya 3

- 1 Futhi phezu kwalokho bafowethu, ngicela nilalele, ngokuba nginokuthile okuningi engizokukhuluma kini; ngokuba bhekani, nginezinto engizonitshela zona mayelana nalokho okuzofika.
- 2 Futhi lezo zinto engizonitshela zona zambulwe kimi ngengelosi evela kuNkulunkulu. Futhi yathi kimi: Vuka; futhi ngavuka, futhi bheka yayimi phambi kwami.
- 3 Futhi yathi kimi: Vuka, futhi uzwe amazwi engizokutshela wona; ngokuba bheka; ngize ukuzomemezela kuwe izindaba ezimnandi zokuthokoza okukhulu.
- 4 Ngokuba iNkosi iyizwile imithandazo yakho, futhi yakwehlulela ngokulunga kwakho, futhi yangithuma ukuthi ngizomemezela kuwe ukuze uthokoze; nokuthi umemezele kubantu bakho, ukuze nabo ngokunjalo bagcwaliswe ngenjabulo.
- 5 Ngokuba bheka, isikhathi siyeza, futhi asikho kude kakhulu, ukuthi ngamandla, iNkosi uMninimandla Onke ebusayo, eyayinguye, futhi enguye evela kulo lonke iphakade kuya kulo lonke iphakade, iyokwehla ivela ezulwini yehlele phakathi kwabantwana babantu, futhi iyohlala edokodweni lobumba, futhi iyohamba phakathi kwabantu, yenza izimangaliso ezinamandla, njengokuphilisa abagulayo, ukuvusa abafuleyo, yenze izishosha zihambe, izimpumputhe zithole ukubona kwazo, kanye nezithuli ukuthi zizwe, futhi yelaphe zonke izinhlobo zezifo.
- 6 Futhi iyokhipha odeveli, noma imimoya emibi ehlala ezinhliziyweni zabantwana babantu.
- 7 Futhi bheka, iyohlushwa yizilingo, kanye nobuhlungu bomzimba, indlala, ukoma, kanye nokukhathala, ngisho nangaphezulu kwalokho umuntu angakuzwa, ngaphandle kokuthi kuze kube uyafa; ngokuba bheka, luyoba lukhulu kakhulu usizi kuyo ngenxa yobubi kanye nezinengiso zabantu bayo, kangangoba igazi liyophuma kuzo zonke iziqu zoboya.
- 8 Futhi iyobizwa ngokuthi nguJesu Kristu, iNdodana kaNkulunkulu, uBaba wezulu nomhlaba, uMdali wazo zonke izinto kusukela ekuqaleni; futhi unina uyobizwa ngokuthi nguMariya.

Mosiah 3

And again my brethren, I would call your attention, for I have somewhat more to speak unto you; for behold, I have things to tell you concerning that which is to come.

And the things which I shall tell you are made known unto me by an angel from God. And he said unto me: Awake; and I awoke, and behold he stood before me.

And he said unto me: Awake, and hear the words which I shall tell thee; for behold, I am come to declare unto you the glad tidings of great joy.

For the Lord hath heard thy prayers, and hath judged of thy righteousness, and hath sent me to declare unto thee that thou mayest rejoice; and that thou mayest declare unto thy people, that they may also be filled with joy.

For behold, the time cometh, and is not far distant, that with power, the Lord Omnipotent who reigneth, who was, and is from all eternity to all eternity, shall come down from heaven among the children of men, and shall dwell in a tabernacle of clay, and shall go forth amongst men, working mighty miracles, such as healing the sick, raising the dead, causing the lame to walk, the blind to receive their sight, and the deaf to hear, and curing all manner of diseases.

And he shall cast out devils, or the evil spirits which dwell in the hearts of the children of men.

And lo, he shall suffer temptations, and pain of body, hunger, thirst, and fatigue, even more than man can suffer, except it be unto death; for behold, blood cometh from every pore, so great shall be his anguish for the wickedness and the abominations of his people.

And he shall be called Jesus Christ, the Son of God, the Father of heaven and earth, the Creator of all things from the beginning; and his mother shall be called Mary.

- 9 Futhi bheka, uza kwabakhe, ukuze insindiso ize kubantwana babantu ngisho nangokukholwa egameni lakhe; futhi ngisho nasemva kwakho konke lokhu bayomthatha njengomuntu, futhi bayothi unodeveli, futhi bayombhaxabula, futhi bambethele.
- 10 Futhi uyovuka ngosuku lwesithathu kwabafileyo; futhi bheka, umi ukwahlulela umhlaba, futhi bheka, zonke lezi zinto zenziwa ukuze ukwahlulela okulungileyo kuze kubantwana babantu.
- 11 Ngokuba bheka, futhi phezu kwalokho igazi lakhe lihlawulela izono zalabo abawa ngesiphambeko sika-Adamu, labo abafa bengayazi intando kaNkulunkulu mayelana nabo, noma abona ngokungazi.
- 12 Kodwa maye, maye kulowo owaziyo ukuthi uyahlubuka kuNkulunkulu! Ngokuba insindiso ayizi konjalo ngaphandle kokuthi kube ngokuphenduka kanye nokholo eNkosini uJesu Kristu.
- 13 Futhi iNkosi uNkulunkulu ithumele abaphrofethi bayo abangcwele phakathi kwabo bonke abantwana babantu, ukumemezela lezi zinto kuyo yonke imindeni, izizwe, kanye nezilimi, ukuze ngalokho noma ngubani oyokholwa ukuthi uKristu uyokuza, yibo futhi labo abangathola ukuthethelwa kwezono zabo, futhi bathokoze ngokuthokoza okukhulu, kube sengathi usefikile vele phakathi kwabo.
- 14 Nokho iNkosi uNkulunkulu yabona ukuthi abantu bayo babengontamo lukhuni, futhi yabamisela umthetho, ngisho umthetho kaMose.
- 15 Futhi ziningi izimpawu, nezimangaliso, nezifanekiso, kanye nokufana akuveza kubo, mayelana nokuza kwakhe; futhi phezu kwalokho nabaphrofethi abangcwele bakhuluma kubo mayelana nokuza kwakhe; kodwa nokho bazenza lukhuni izinhliziyiyo zabo, futhi bangaqonda ukuthi umthetho kaMose wawungasizi ngalutho ngaphandle kokuthi kwakungenxa yenhlawulo yegazi lakhe.
- 16 Futhi ngisho noma ngabe kwakunokwenzeka ukuthi abantwana abancane babengona babengenakusindiswa; kodwa ngithi kini babusisiwe; ngokuba bheka, njengoba ngo-Adamu, noma ngokwemvelo, bewa, ngisho ngokunjalo igazi likaKristu lihlawulela izono zazo.

And lo, he cometh unto his own, that salvation might come unto the children of men even through faith on his name; and even after all this they shall consider him a man, and say that he hath a devil, and shall scourge him, and shall crucify him.

And he shall rise the third day from the dead; and behold, he standeth to judge the world; and behold, all these things are done that a righteous judgment might come upon the children of men.

For behold, and also his blood atoneth for the sins of those who have fallen by the transgression of Adam, who have died not knowing the will of God concerning them, or who have ignorantly sinned.

But wo, wo unto him who knoweth that he rebel- leth against God! For salvation cometh to none such except it be through repentance and faith on the Lord Jesus Christ.

And the Lord God hath sent his holy prophets among all the children of men, to declare these things to every kindred, nation, and tongue, that thereby whosoever should believe that Christ should come, the same might receive remission of their sins, and rejoice with exceedingly great joy, even as though he had already come among them.

Yet the Lord God saw that his people were a stiff-necked people, and he appointed unto them a law, even the law of Moses.

And many signs, and wonders, and types, and shadows showed he unto them, concerning his coming; and also holy prophets spake unto them concerning his coming; and yet they hardened their hearts, and understood not that the law of Moses availeth nothing except it were through the atone- ment of his blood.

And even if it were possible that little children could sin they could not be saved; but I say unto you they are blessed; for behold, as in Adam, or by na- ture, they fall, even so the blood of Christ atoneth for their sins.

- 17 Futhi phezu kwalokho, ngithi kini, aliyikuba bikho elinye igama eliyonikwa nanoma iyiphi enye indlela noma isu okungafika ngalo insindiso kubantwana babantu, kuphela kulo kanye nangalo igama likaKristu, iNkosi, uMnini mandla Onke.
- 18 Ngokuba bheka iyahlulela, futhi ukwahlulela kwayo kulungile; futhi umntwana omncane akabhubhi ofa ebuntwaneni bakhe; kodwa abantu baziphuzela bona uqobo usizi ngaphandle kokuthi bazithobe futhi babe njengabantwana abancane, futhi bakholwe ukuthi insindiso yeza, futhi iza, futhi isazoza, kulo futhi nangalo igazi elihlawulayo likaKristu, iNkosi uMnini mandla Onke.
- 19 Ngokuba umuntu wemvelo uyisitha kuNkulunkulu, futhi selokhu aba yiso kusukela ngokuwa kuka-Adamu, futhi uyokuba yiso, phakade naphakade, ngaphandle kokuthi avumele ukuholwa nguMoya oyiNgcwele, futhi amkhumule umuntu wemvelo futhi abe ngongcwele ngenhlawulo kaKristu iNkosi, futhi abe njengomntwana, avume, azehlise, azithobe, abekezele, agcwale uthando, athande ukuvumela zonke izinto iNkosi ebona kufanelekile ukuthi izibeke phezu kwakhe, ngisho njengomntwana evumela uyise.
- 20 Futhi ngaphezu kwalokho, ngithi kini, isikhathi siyofika lapho ulwazi lomSindisi luyokwanda lugcwale kuzo zonke izizwe, imindeni, izilimi, kanye nakubantu.
- 21 Futhi bhekani, uma leso sikhathi sifika, akekho namunye oyotholakala engenacala phambi kukaNkulunkulu, ngaphandle kwabantwana abancane, kuphela ngokuphenduka nangokukholwa egameni leNkosi uNkulunkulu uMnini mandla Onke.
- 22 Futhi ngisho nangaso lesi sikhathi, uma sewubafundisile abantu bakho izinto iNkosi uNkulunkulu wakho akuyale ngazo, ngisho nangaleso sikhathi abatholakali bengenacala phambi kukaNkulunkulu, kuphela kuyokuba ngokwamazwi engiwakhulume kuwe.
- 23 Manje sengiwakhulumile amazwi iNkosi uNkulunkulu engiyale ngawo.

And moreover, I say unto you, that there shall be no other name given nor any other way nor means whereby salvation can come unto the children of men, only in and through the name of Christ, the Lord Omnipotent.

For behold he judgeth, and his judgment is just; and the infant perisheth not that dieth in his infancy; but men drink damnation to their own souls except they humble themselves and become as little children, and believe that salvation was, and is, and is to come, in and through the atoning blood of Christ, the Lord Omnipotent.

For the natural man is an enemy to God, and has been from the fall of Adam, and will be, forever and ever, unless he yields to the enticings of the Holy Spirit, and putteth off the natural man and becometh a saint through the atonement of Christ the Lord, and becometh as a child, submissive, meek, humble, patient, full of love, willing to submit to all things which the Lord seeth fit to inflict upon him, even as a child doth submit to his father.

And moreover, I say unto you, that the time shall come when the knowledge of a Savior shall spread throughout every nation, kindred, tongue, and people.

And behold, when that time cometh, none shall be found blameless before God, except it be little children, only through repentance and faith on the name of the Lord God Omnipotent.

And even at this time, when thou shalt have taught thy people the things which the Lord thy God hath commanded thee, even then are they found no more blameless in the sight of God, only according to the words which I have spoken unto thee.

And now I have spoken the words which the Lord God hath commanded me.

24 Futhi isho kanje iNkosi: Ayokuma njengobufakazi obugqamile ngokumelene nalaba bantu, ngosuku lokwahlulela; ngalokho-ke bayokwahlulelwa, wonke umuntu njengokwemisebenzi yakhe, noma ngabe mihle, noma ngabe mibi.

25 Futhi uma imibi bayoboniswa ububi bamacala abo uqobo kanye nezinengiso, okubenza bashwabane phambi beNkosi babe sesimweni sosizi kanye nokuhlupheka okungenakuphela, lapho bengasenakubuya nanini; ngakho-ke baziphuzele bona uqobo usizi.

26 Ngakho-ke, baphuze enkomishini yolaka lukaNkulunkulu, ukulunga okungasenakuhoxiswa nanini kubo kunokuba kuhoxise ukuthi u-Adamu wawa ngenxa yokudla kwakhe isithelo esasingavunyelwe; ngalokho-ke, umusa awusenakukwazi ukubathola nanini ingunaphakade.

27 Futhi ukuhlupheka kwabo kunjengechibi lomlilo nesibabuli, amalangabi alo angacisheki, futhi intuthu yalo ekhuphukela phezulu phakade naphakade. Ingiyale kanjena-ke iNkosi. Amen.

And thus saith the Lord: They shall stand as a bright testimony against this people, at the judgment day; whereof they shall be judged, every man according to his works, whether they be good, or whether they be evil.

And if they be evil they are consigned to an awful view of their own guilt and abominations, which doth cause them to shrink from the presence of the Lord into a state of misery and endless torment, from whence they can no more return; therefore they have drunk damnation to their own souls.

Therefore, they have drunk out of the cup of the wrath of God, which justice could no more deny unto them than it could deny that Adam should fall because of his partaking of the forbidden fruit; therefore, mercy could have claim on them no more forever.

And their torment is as a lake of fire and brimstone, whose flames are unquenchable, and whose smoke ascendeth up forever and ever. Thus hath the Lord commanded me. Amen.

Mosiya 4

- 1 Manje, kwenzeka ukuthi emva kokuthi inkosi uBenjamini isiqedile ukukhuluma amazwi ayekade elethwe kuyo yingelosi yeNkosi, yaphonsa amehlo ayo kuso sonke isixuku, futhi bheka sase siwele phansi, ngokuba base befikelwe wukuyesaba iNkosi.
- 2 Futhi base bezibone besesimweni sabo sasemhlabeni, bengaphansi ngisho nothuli lomhlabathi. Futhi bonke bakhala kakhulu ngezwi elilodwa, bethi: O yiba nesihawu, futhi wenze igazi elihlawulayo likaKristu lisebenze ukuze sithole ukuthethelelwa kwezono zethu, futhi nezinhliziyo zethu zicwebiswe; ngokuba siyakholwa kuJesu Kristu, iNdodana kaNkulunkulu, owadala izulu nomhlaba, kanye nazo zonke izinto; oyokwehlela phansi phakathi kwabantwana babantu.
- 3 Futhi kwenzeka ukuthi emva kokuthi sebekhulume lamazwi uMoya weNkosi wehlela phezu kwabo, futhi bagcwala injabulo, sebethole ukuthethelelwa kwezono zabo, futhi sebenokuthula kukanembeza, ngenxa yokholo olukhulu ababenalo kuJesu Kristu owayezofika, njengokwamazwi inkosi uBenjamini eyayiwakhulume kubo.
- 4 Futhi inkosi uBenjamini yaphinda yavula umlomo wayo yaqala ukukhuluma kubo, ithi: Bangani bami kanye nabafowethu, zihlobo zami kanye nabantu bami, ngiyaphinda futhi ngiyanicela ukuthi nilalele, ukuze nizwe futhi niqonde insalela yamazwi ami engizowakhuluma kini.
- 5 Ngokuba bhekani, uma ulwazi lobuhle bukaNkulunkulu ngalesi sikhathi selunivusele ekuboneni ukungabi lutho kwenu, kanye nobuze benu kanye nesimo sokuwa—

Mosiah 4

And now, it came to pass that when king Benjamin had made an end of speaking the words which had been delivered unto him by the angel of the Lord, that he cast his eyes round about on the multitude, and behold they had fallen to the earth, for the fear of the Lord had come upon them.

And they had viewed themselves in their own carnal state, even less than the dust of the earth. And they all cried aloud with one voice, saying: O have mercy, and apply the atoning blood of Christ that we may receive forgiveness of our sins, and our hearts may be purified; for we believe in Jesus Christ, the Son of God, who created heaven and earth, and all things; who shall come down among the children of men.

And it came to pass that after they had spoken these words the Spirit of the Lord came upon them, and they were filled with joy, having received a remission of their sins, and having peace of conscience, because of the exceeding faith which they had in Jesus Christ who should come, according to the words which king Benjamin had spoken unto them.

And king Benjamin again opened his mouth and began to speak unto them, saying: My friends and my brethren, my kindred and my people, I would again call your attention, that ye may hear and understand the remainder of my words which I shall speak unto you.

For behold, if the knowledge of the goodness of God at this time has awakened you to a sense of your nothingness, and your worthless and fallen state—

6 Ngithi kini, uma senifike olwazini lobuhle bukaNkulunkulu, kanye namandla akhe angenakulinganiswa, kanye nokuhlakanipha kwakhe, kanye nesineke sakhe, kanye nokubabekezelela kwakhe abantwana babantu; futhi phezu kwalokho, nenhlawulo eyalungiswa kusukela ekusekelweni komhlaba, ukuze ngayo insindiso ize kulowo oyobeka ithemba lakhe eNkosini, futhi akhuthale ekugcineni imiyalelo yayo, futhi aqhubeke okholweni ngisho kuze kube sekugcineni kwempilo yakhe, ngisho impilo yomzimba ofayo—

7 Ngithi, yilomuntu othola insindiso, ngenhlawulo eyalungiselwa bonke abantu kusukela ekusekelweni komhlaba, ababelokhu bekhona kusukela ekuweni kuka-Adamu, noma abakhona, noma abayoba khona nanini, ngisho kuze kube sekupheleni komhlaba.

8 Futhi yiyona ndlela lena insindiso eyoza ngayo. Futhi ayikho enye insindiso ngaphandle kwalena osekukhulunywe ngayo; futhi ayikho eminye imibandela umuntu angase asindiswe ngayo ngaphandle kwalemibandela enginitshela ngayo.

9 Kholwani kuNkulunkulu; kholwani ukuthi unguye, futhi nokuthi wadala izinto zonke, okusezulwini nokusemhlabeni, kholwani ukuthi unakho konke ukuhlakanipha, kanye nawo wonke amandla, ezulwini nasemhlabeni; kholwani ukuthi umuntu angeke akwazi ukuqonda zonke izinto iNkosi ekwazi ukuziqonda.

10 Futhi phezu kwalokho, kholwani ukuthi kufanele niphenduke ezonweni zenu futhi nizishiye, futhi nizithobe phambi kukaNkulunkulu; futhi nicele ngobuqotho benhliziyo ukuze anithethelele; manje, uma nikhulwa yizo zonke lezi zinto bonani ukuthi niyazenza.

I say unto you, if ye have come to a knowledge of the goodness of God, and his matchless power, and his wisdom, and his patience, and his long-suffering towards the children of men; and also, the atonement which has been prepared from the foundation of the world, that thereby salvation might come to him that should put his trust in the Lord, and should be diligent in keeping his commandments, and continue in the faith even unto the end of his life, I mean the life of the mortal body—

I say, that this is the man who receiveth salvation, through the atonement which was prepared from the foundation of the world for all mankind, which ever were since the fall of Adam, or who are, or who ever shall be, even unto the end of the world.

And this is the means whereby salvation cometh. And there is none other salvation save this which hath been spoken of; neither are there any conditions whereby man can be saved except the conditions which I have told you.

Believe in God; believe that he is, and that he created all things, both in heaven and in earth; believe that he has all wisdom, and all power, both in heaven and in earth; believe that man doth not comprehend all the things which the Lord can comprehend.

And again, believe that ye must repent of your sins and forsake them, and humble yourselves before God; and ask in sincerity of heart that he would forgive you; and now, if you believe all these things see that ye do them.

- 11 Futhi phezu kwalokho ngithi kini njengoba ngishilo ngaphambili, ukuthi njengoba senifike olwazini lwenkazimulo kaNkulunkulu, noma uma seninolwazi ngobuhle bakhe futhi seniluzwile uthando lwakhe, futhi senithole ukuthethelelwa kwezono zenu, okwenza injabulo enkulu kakhulu emiphefumulweni yenu, futhi ngokunjalo ngifuna ukuthi nize nikhumbule, futhi njalo nihlale nikhumbula, ubukhulu bukaNkulunkulu, kanye nobuze benu uqobo, nobuhle bakhe nokunibezelela kwakhe, zidalwa ezingafanelekile, futhi nizithobe ngisho nasekujuleni kwentobeko, nibize igama leNkosi nsuku zonke, futhi nime ngokuqina ekukholweni kulokho okuzayo, okwakhulunywa ngomlomo wengelosi.
- 12 Futhi bhekani, ngithi kini uma nikwenza lokhu niyohlala nithokoza, futhi nigcwaliswe ngothando lukaNkulunkulu, futhi niyohlala nigcine ukuthethelelwa kwezono zenu; futhi niyokhula olwazini lwenkazimulo yalowo owanidalayo, noma olwazini lwalokho okulungile futhi okuyiqiniso.
- 13 Futhi aniyikuba nawo umqondo wokulimazana, kodwa ukuthi nihlale ngokuthula, futhi ninike wonke umuntu lokho okumfanele.
- 14 Futhi aniyikuvuma abantwana benu ukuthi bahambe belambile, noma bahambe benqunu; noma nivume ukuthi baphule imithetho kaNkulunkulu, futhi balwe futhi baxabane omunye nomunye, futhi basebenzele udeveli, oyinkosi yesono, noma ongumoya omubi abakhuluma ngawo obaba bethu, oyisitha sakho konke ukulunga.
- 15 Kodwa niyobafundisa ukuthi bahambe ezindleleni zeqiniso kanye nezobuqotho; niyobafundisa ukuthi bathandane, futhi nokuthi basizane.
- 16 Futhi phezu kwalokho, nani uqobolwenu niyobasiza labo abami bedinga usizo lwenu; niyokupha ngalokho eninakho kulowo omi edinga; futhi aniyikuvuma ukuthi isiceli siphakamise isicelo saso ngeze, futhi nisixoshe ukuthi sibhubhe.

And again I say unto you as I have said before, that as ye have come to the knowledge of the glory of God, or if ye have known of his goodness and have tasted of his love, and have received a remission of your sins, which causeth such exceedingly great joy in your souls, even so I would that ye should remember, and always retain in remembrance, the greatness of God, and your own nothingness, and his goodness and long-suffering towards you, unworthy creatures, and humble yourselves even in the depths of humility, calling on the name of the Lord daily, and standing steadfastly in the faith of that which is to come, which was spoken by the mouth of the angel.

And behold, I say unto you that if ye do this ye shall always rejoice, and be filled with the love of God, and always retain a remission of your sins; and ye shall grow in the knowledge of the glory of him that created you, or in the knowledge of that which is just and true.

And ye will not have a mind to injure one another, but to live peaceably, and to render to every man according to that which is his due.

And ye will not suffer your children that they go hungry, or naked; neither will ye suffer that they transgress the laws of God, and fight and quarrel one with another, and serve the devil, who is the master of sin, or who is the evil spirit which hath been spoken of by our fathers, he being an enemy to all righteousness.

But ye will teach them to walk in the ways of truth and soberness; ye will teach them to love one another, and to serve one another.

And also, ye yourselves will succor those that stand in need of your succor; ye will administer of your substance unto him that standeth in need; and ye will not suffer that the beggar putteth up his petition to you in vain, and turn him out to perish.

- 17 Mhlawumbe uyothi: Lomuntu uzilethele yena phezu kwakhe usizi lwakhe; ngalokho-ke ngizosigodla isandla sami, futhi angiyikumnika ukudla kwami, noma ngimnike enginakho ukuze angahlupheki, ngokuba izijezi zakhe zilungile—
- 18 Kodwa mina ngithi kini, O muntu, lowo owenza lokhu nguye kanye onesidingo esikhulu sokuphenduka; futhi ngaphandle kokuthi aphenduke ngalokho akwenzile uyobhubha ingunaphakade, futhi akanasabelo embusweni kaNkulunkulu.
- 19 Ngokuba bhekani, asizona yini sonke iziceli na? Ngabe asincikile yini sonke kuye kanye lowo Muntu, ngisho uNkulunkulu, ngazo zonke izinto esinazo, ngokudla kanye nezingubo, kanye nangegolide, kanye nangesiliva, kanye nangayo yonke ingcebo esinayo enhlobonhlobo na?
- 20 Futhi bhekani, ngisho nangalesi sikhathi, benimemeza igama lakhe, futhi nicela ukuthethelelwa kwezono zenu. Ngabe uvumile yini ukuthi nicele ngeze na? Cha; uwuthululile uMoya wakhe phezu kwenu, futhi wenza ukuthi izinhliziyi zenu zigcwaliswe ngenjabulo, futhi ibinkulu kakhulu injabulo yenu kangangoba wenza ukuthi imilomo yenu ivalwe ukuze ingakwazi ukukhuluma.
- 21 Manje, uma uNkulunkulu, onidalile, enincike kuye ngezimpilo zenu kanye nangakho konke eninakho futhi eniyikho, eninika noma yini eniyicelayo elungile, ngokholo, nikhulwa ukuthi niyoyithola, O pho-ke, kufaneleke kangakanani ukuthi niphane ngalokho eninakho.
- 22 Futhi uma wehlulela umuntu owenza isicelo sakhe kuwe ngento yakho ukuze angabhubhi, futhi umsole, ngabe kuyolunga kangakanani okwakho ukusolwa ngokugodla into yakho, okungesiyo eyakho kodwa engekankulunkulu, nempilo yakho okungeyakhe; futhi nokho ube ungenzi sicelo, noma uphenduke entweni oyenzile.
- 23 Ngithi kini, maye kulowo muntu, ngokuba impahla yakhe iyobhubha kanye naye; manje, ngisho lezi zinto kulabo abanothile ngokwezinto zalomhlaba.

Perhaps thou shalt say: The man has brought upon himself his misery; therefore I will stay my hand, and will not give unto him of my food, nor impart unto him of my substance that he may not suffer, for his punishments are just—

But I say unto you, O man, whosoever doeth this the same hath great cause to repent; and except he repenteth of that which he hath done he perisheth forever, and hath no interest in the kingdom of God.

For behold, are we not all beggars? Do we not all depend upon the same Being, even God, for all the substance which we have, for both food and raiment, and for gold, and for silver, and for all the riches which we have of every kind?

And behold, even at this time, ye have been calling on his name, and begging for a remission of your sins. And has he suffered that ye have begged in vain? Nay; he has poured out his Spirit upon you, and has caused that your hearts should be filled with joy, and has caused that your mouths should be stopped that ye could not find utterance, so exceedingly great was your joy.

And now, if God, who has created you, on whom you are dependent for your lives and for all that ye have and are, doth grant unto you whatsoever ye ask that is right, in faith, believing that ye shall receive, O then, how ye ought to impart of the substance that ye have one to another.

And if ye judge the man who putteth up his petition to you for your substance that he perish not, and condemn him, how much more just will be your condemnation for withholding your substance, which doth not belong to you but to God, to whom also your life belongeth; and yet ye put up no petition, nor repent of the thing which thou hast done.

I say unto you, wo be unto that man, for his substance shall perish with him; and now, I say these things unto those who are rich as pertaining to the things of this world.

24 Futhi phezu kwalokho, ngithi kwabampofu, nina eningenalutho kodwa nibe ninakho okwanele, ukuze niphile usuku nosuku; ngisho nina nonke enenqabela isiceli, ngenxa yokuthi ningenakho; ngifuna ukuthi nithi ezinhliziyweni zenu: angiphi ngenxa yokuthi anginakho, kodwa ukube benginakho bengiyokupha.

25 Manje, uma nikusho lokhu ezinhliziyweni zenu niyohlala ningenacala, ngaphandle kwalokho ninacala; futhi ukuba necala kwenu kulungile ngokuba nifisa lokho eningakunikwanga.

26 Manje, ngenxa yalezi zinto engizikhulume kini—okungukuthi, ukuze kugcinwe ukuthethelelwa kwezono zenu usuku nosuku, ukuze nihambe ningenacala phambi kukaNkulunkulu—ngifuna ukuthi niphane ngeninakho kwabampofu, wonke umuntu ngokwalokho anakho, njengokondla abalambile, ukwembathisa abahambaze, ukuvakashela abagulayo kanye nokubasiza ukuthi bakhululeke, ngokukamoya kanye nangokwenyama, njengokwezimfuno zabo.

27 Futhi bonani ukuthi zonke lezi zinto zenziwa ngokuhlakanipha kanye nangohlelo; ngokuba akufanele ukuthi umuntu agijime ngaphezu kwamandla anawo. Futhi phezu kwalokho, kudingekile ukuthi akhuthale, ukuze ngalokho athole umvuzo; ngalokho-ke, zonke izinto kufanele zenziwe ngohlelo.

28 Futhi ngifuna ukuthi nize nikhumbule, ukuthi noma ngubani phakathi kwenu otshlekile kumakhelwane wakhe makabuyisele into leyo ayitshlekile, njengoba kade evumile, ngaphandle kwalokho uyokwenza isono; futhi mhlawumbe uyokwenza umakhelwane wakhe ukuthi enze isono naye.

29 Futhi okokugcina, anginakunitshela zonke izinto eningenza ngazo isono; ngokuba kukhona izinhlobonhlobo zezindlela kanye namasu, ngisho eziningi kakhulu kangangokuthi anginakuzibala.

And again, I say unto the poor, ye who have not and yet have sufficient, that ye remain from day to day; I mean all you who deny the beggar, because ye have not; I would that ye say in your hearts that: I give not because I have not, but if I had I would give.

And now, if ye say this in your hearts ye remain guiltless, otherwise ye are condemned; and your condemnation is just for ye covet that which ye have not received.

And now, for the sake of these things which I have spoken unto you—that is, for the sake of retaining a remission of your sins from day to day, that ye may walk guiltless before God—I would that ye should impart of your substance to the poor, every man according to that which he hath, such as feeding the hungry, clothing the naked, visiting the sick and administering to their relief, both spiritually and temporally, according to their wants.

And see that all these things are done in wisdom and order; for it is not requisite that a man should run faster than he has strength. And again, it is expedient that he should be diligent, that thereby he might win the prize; therefore, all things must be done in order.

And I would that ye should remember, that whosoever among you borroweth of his neighbor should return the thing that he borroweth, according as he doth agree, or else thou shalt commit sin; and perhaps thou shalt cause thy neighbor to commit sin also.

And finally, I cannot tell you all the things whereby ye may commit sin; for there are divers ways and means, even so many that I cannot number them.

30 Kodwa nakhu enginganitshela kona, ukuthi uma ningazibheki, kanye nemicabango yenu, kanye namazwi enu, kanye nezenzo zenu, futhi niqaphele imiyalelo kaNkulunkulu, futhi niqhubeke okholweni lwalokho enikuzwile mayelana nokuza kweNkosi yethu, ngisho kuze kube sekupheleni kwezimpilo zenu, kufanele nibhubhe. Manje, O muntu, khumbula, futhi ungabhubhi.

But this much I can tell you, that if ye do not watch yourselves, and your thoughts, and your words, and your deeds, and observe the commandments of God, and continue in the faith of what ye have heard concerning the coming of our Lord, even unto the end of your lives, ye must perish. And now, O man, remember, and perish not.

Mosiya 5

- 1 Manje, kwenzeka ukuthi ngesikhathi inkosi uBenjamini isikhulume kanjalo kubantu bayo, yathumela phakathi kwabo, ifisa ukwazi kubantu bayo ukuthi ngabe babewakholwa yini amazwi eyayiwakhulume kubo.
- 2 Futhi bonke bakhala ngazwi linye, bethi: Yebo, siyawakholwa wonke amazwi owakhulumile kithi; futhi phezu kwalokho, sazi kahle ngawo kanye nangobuqiniso bawo, ngenxa yoMoya weNkosi uMninimandla Onke, owenze ushintsho olukhulu kithi, noma ezinhliziyweni zethu, kangangokuthi asisakuthandi ukwenza okubi, kodwa ukwenza okuhle njalo.
- 3 Futhi thina, uqobo ulwethu, phezu kwalokho, ngobuhle obungapheliyo bukaNkulunkulu, kanye nezibonakaliso zikaMoya wakhe, sinokuqonda okukhulu ngalokho okuzayo; futhi ukube bekudingekile, besingaphrofetha ngazo zonke izinto.
- 4 Futhi wukholo esibenalo ezintweni inkosi yethu ekhulume ngazo kithi olusilethele lolulwazi olukhulu, ngalokho-ke sijabula ngokuthokoza okukhulu kakhulu.
- 5 Futhi sizimisele ukungena esivumelwaneni noNkulunkulu wethu ukuthi senze intando yakhe, futhi silalele imiyalelo yakhe ezintweni zonke ayosiyala ngazo, zonke izinsuku zethu ezisisisalele, ukuze singaziletheli phezu kwethu ukuhlupheka okungapheliyo, njengoba kukhulume ingelosi, ukuze singaphuzi enkomishini yolaka lukaNkulunkulu.
- 6 Manje, lawa ngamazwi inkosi uBenjamini eyayiwafisa kubo; ngakho-ke yathi kubo: Nikhulume amazwi ebengiwapfisa; futhi isivumelwano enisenzile yisivumelwano esilungile.
- 7 Manje, ngenxa yesivumelwano enisenzile nizobizwa ngokuthi ningabantwana baKristu, amadodana akhe, kanye namadodakazi akhe; ngokuba bhekani, ngalolusuku unizele ngokomoya; ngokuba nithi izinhliziyo zenu zishintshile ngokukholwa egameni lakhe; ngakho-ke, nizelwe nguyeyi futhi seningamadodana kanye namadodakazi akhe.

Mosiah 5

And now, it came to pass that when king Benjamin had thus spoken to his people, he sent among them, desiring to know of his people if they believed the words which he had spoken unto them.

And they all cried with one voice, saying: Yea, we believe all the words which thou hast spoken unto us; and also, we know of their surety and truth, because of the Spirit of the Lord Omnipotent, which has wrought a mighty change in us, or in our hearts, that we have no more disposition to do evil, but to do good continually.

And we, ourselves, also, through the infinite goodness of God, and the manifestations of his Spirit, have great views of that which is to come; and were it expedient, we could prophesy of all things.

And it is the faith which we have had on the things which our king has spoken unto us that has brought us to this great knowledge, whereby we do rejoice with such exceedingly great joy.

And we are willing to enter into a covenant with our God to do his will, and to be obedient to his commandments in all things that he shall command us, all the remainder of our days, that we may not bring upon ourselves a never-ending torment, as has been spoken by the angel, that we may not drink out of the cup of the wrath of God.

And now, these are the words which king Benjamin desired of them; and therefore he said unto them: Ye have spoken the words that I desired; and the covenant which ye have made is a righteous covenant.

And now, because of the covenant which ye have made ye shall be called the children of Christ, his sons, and his daughters; for behold, this day he hath spiritually begotten you; for ye say that your hearts are changed through faith on his name; therefore, ye are born of him and have become his sons and his daughters.

- 8 Futhi ngaphansi kwaleligama nikhululiwe, futhi alikho elinye igama eningakhululwa ngalo. Alikho elinye igama elinikeziwe ukusindiswa okuyoza ngalo; ngakho-ke, ngifuna ukuthi namukele uKristu nibizwe ngegama lakhe, nonke nina eningene esivumelwaneni noNkulunkulu ukuthi nilalele kuze kube sekupheleni kwezimpilo zenu.
- 9 Futhi kuyokwenzeka ukuthi lowo owenza lokhu uyotholakala esandleni sokunene sikaNkulunkulu, ngokuba uyolazi igama ayobizwa ngalo; ngokuba uyobizwa ngegama likaKristu.
- 10 Manje kuyokwenzeka, ukuthi lowo ongamemukeli uKristu abizwe ngegama lakhe kufanele abizwe ngelinye igama; ngalokho-ke, uyozithola esesandleni sokhohlo sikaNkulunkulu.
- 11 Futhi ngifuna ukuthi nikhumbule, ukuthi leli yigama engathi ngizoninika lona elingenakusulwa nanini, ngaphandle kokuthi kube ngenxa yesiphambeko; ngalokho-ke, qaphelani ukuthi ningaphambuki, ukuze leligama lingasulwa ezinhliziyweni zenu.
- 12 Ngithi kini, ngifuna ukuthi nize nikhumbule ukuligcina libhaliwe njalo leligama ezinhliziyweni zenu, ukuze ningatholakali ngasesandleni sokhohlo sikaNkulunkulu, kodwa ukuthi nilizwe futhi nilazi izwi eniyobizwa ngalo, futhi ngokunjalo, negama ayonibiza ngalo.
- 13 Ngokuba umuntu angayazi kanjani inkosi angazange ayisebenzele, futhi engumuntu ongaziwa kuyo, futhi ekude nemicabango kanye nezinjongo zenzliziyo yayo na?
- 14 Futhi phezu kwalokho, ngabe umuntu angayithatha yini imbongolo engekamakhelwane wakhe, ayigcine na? Ngithi kini, Cha; akayikuvuma ngisho nokuthi idle phakathi komhlambi wakhe, kodwa uyayixosha ayikhiphele ngaphandle. Ngithi kini, kuyoba njalo ngisho naphakathi kwenu uma ningalazi igama enibizwa ngalo.

And under this head ye are made free, and there is no other head whereby ye can be made free. There is no other name given whereby salvation cometh; therefore, I would that ye should take upon you the name of Christ, all you that have entered into the covenant with God that ye should be obedient unto the end of your lives.

And it shall come to pass that whosoever doeth this shall be found at the right hand of God, for he shall know the name by which he is called; for he shall be called by the name of Christ.

And now it shall come to pass, that whosoever shall not take upon him the name of Christ must be called by some other name; therefore, he findeth himself on the left hand of God.

And I would that ye should remember also, that this is the name that I said I should give unto you that never should be blotted out, except it be through transgression; therefore, take heed that ye do not transgress, that the name be not blotted out of your hearts.

I say unto you, I would that ye should remember to retain the name written always in your hearts, that ye are not found on the left hand of God, but that ye hear and know the voice by which ye shall be called, and also, the name by which he shall call you.

For how knoweth a man the master whom he has not served, and who is a stranger unto him, and is far from the thoughts and intents of his heart?

And again, doth a man take an ass which belongeth to his neighbor, and keep him? I say unto you, Nay; he will not even suffer that he shall feed among his flocks, but will drive him away, and cast him out. I say unto you, that even so shall it be among you if ye know not the name by which ye are called.

15 Ngakho-ke, ngifuna ukuthi nixile futhi ninganyakaziswa, nikhule njalo ekwenzeni imisebenzi emihle, ukuze uKristu, iNkosi uNkulunkulu uMnini mandla Onke, anenze nibe ngabakhe, ukuze nilethwe ezulwini, ukuze nizuze insindiso yaphakade kanye nokuphila okuphakade, ngokuhlakanipha, nangamandla, nangokulunga, kanye nangesihawu salowo owadala izinto zonke, ezulwini nasemhlabeni, onguNkulunkulu ongaphezu kwakho konke. Amen.

Therefore, I would that ye should be steadfast and immovable, always abounding in good works, that Christ, the Lord God Omnipotent, may seal you his, that you may be brought to heaven, that ye may have everlasting salvation and eternal life, through the wisdom, and power, and justice, and mercy of him who created all things, in heaven and in earth, who is God above all. Amen.

Mosiya 6

- 1 Manje, inkosi uBenjamini yacabanga ukuthi kwakukuhle, emva kokuthi isiqedile ukukhuluma kubantu, ukuthi ithathe amagama abo bonke labo ababengene esivumelwaneni noNkulunkulu ukuthi bagcine imiyalelo yakhe.
- 2 Futhi kwenzeka ukuthi kwakungekho namunye umuntu, ngaphandle kwabantwana abancane, ongangenanga esivumelwaneni futhi wamukela uKristu wabizwa ngegama lakhe.
- 3 Futhi phezu kwalokho, kwenzeka ukuthi ngesikhathi inkosi uBenjamini isisenzile isiphetho sazo zonke lezi zinto, futhi isiyingcwelisile indodana yayo uMosiya ukuthi ibe ngumbusi kanye nenkosi phezu kwabantu bayo, futhi isiyinikile imiyalelo mayelana nombuso, futhi phezu kwalokho isibabekile abaphristi ukuthi bafundise abantu, ukuze ngalokho bayizwe futhi bayazi imiyalelo kaNkulunkulu, futhi nokuba babaphehlele ekukhumbuleni isifungo abasenza, yasemukisa isixuku, futhi babuyela emuva, wonke umuntu, njengokwemindeni yabo, ezindlini zabo.
- 4 Futhi uMosiya waqala ukubusa esikhundleni sikayise. Futhi waqala ukubusa ngonyaka wamashumi amathathu eminyaka yakhe yobudala, lokhu okwenza sekukonke, cishe iminyaka engamakhulu amane namashumi ayisikhombisa nesithupha kusukela ngesikhathi uLehi eshiya eJerusalema.
- 5 Futhi inkosi uBenjamini waphila iminyaka emithathu wafa.
- 6 Futhi kwenzeka ukuthi inkosi uMosiya nempela wahamba ezindleleni zeNkosi, futhi nempela waziqaphela izahlulelo zayo kanye nemithetho yayo, futhi wayigcina imiyalelo yayo kuzo zonke izinto noma ngabe yini eyayimiyale ngayo.
- 7 Futhi inkosi uMosiya nempela yenza abantu bayo ukuthi balime umhlabathi. Futhi naye ngokunjalo, uqobo lwakhe, wawulima umhlabathi, ukuze ngalokho angabi wumthwalo kubantu bakhe, ukuze enze njengoba uyise ayenzile kuzo zonke izinto. Futhi akuzange kube khona mbango phakathi kwabo bonke abantu bakhe isikhathi esingangeminyaka emithathu.

Mosiah 6

And now, king Benjamin thought it was expedient, after having finished speaking to the people, that he should take the names of all those who had entered into a covenant with God to keep his commandments.

And it came to pass that there was not one soul, except it were little children, but who had entered into the covenant and had taken upon them the name of Christ.

And again, it came to pass that when king Benjamin had made an end of all these things, and had consecrated his son Mosiah to be a ruler and a king over his people, and had given him all the charges concerning the kingdom, and also had appointed priests to teach the people, that thereby they might hear and know the commandments of God, and to stir them up in remembrance of the oath which they had made, he dismissed the multitude, and they returned, every one, according to their families, to their own houses.

And Mosiah began to reign in his father's stead. And he began to reign in the thirtieth year of his age, making in the whole, about four hundred and seventy-six years from the time that Lehi left Jerusalem.

And king Benjamin lived three years and he died.

And it came to pass that king Mosiah did walk in the ways of the Lord, and did observe his judgments and his statutes, and did keep his commandments in all things whatsoever he commanded him.

And king Mosiah did cause his people that they should till the earth. And he also, himself, did till the earth, that thereby he might not become burdensome to his people, that he might do according to that which his father had done in all things. And there was no contention among all his people for the space of three years.

Mosiya 7

- 1 Manje, kwenzeka ukuthi emva kokuthi inkosi uMosiya isibe nokuthula njalo isikhathi esingangeminyaka emithathu, yaba nesifiso sokwazi mayelana nabantu abahamba bayohlala ezweni lakwaLehi-Nefi, noma edolobheni lakwaLehi-Nefi; ngokuba abantu bakhe babengakezwa lutho ngabo kusukela ngesikhathi behamba ezweni lakwaZarahemla; ngakho-ke, bamkhathaza bembelesela ngabo.
- 2 Futhi kwenzeka ukuthi inkosi uMosiya yavuma ukuthi amadoda aqinile ayishumi nesithupha akhuphukele ezweni lakwaLehi-Nefi, ukuyobuza mayelana nabafowabo.
- 3 Futhi kwenzeka ukuthi ngakusasa aqala akhuphuka, kuwo kwakukhona omunye ongu-Amoni, owayeyindoda eqinile futhi enamandla, futhi wayengowozalo lukaZarahemla; futhi phezu kwalokho wayengumholi wabo.
- 4 Manje, babengayazi indlela okwakumele bahambe ngayo ehlane ukukhuphukela ezweni lakwaLehi-Nefi; ngakho-ke bazulazula izinsuku eziningi ehlane, ngisho izinsuku ezingamashumi amane bezulazula.
- 5 Futhi ngesikhathi sebezulazule izinsuku ezingamashumi amane bafika egqumeni, elisenyakatho yezwe lakwa-Shilomu, futhi lapho bagxumeka amatende abo.
- 6 Futhi u-Amoni wathatha abathathu babafowabo, amagama abo kwakungo-Amaleki, Helemi, kanye noHemi, behlela ezansi ezweni lakwaNefi.
- 7 Futhi bheka, bahlangana nenkosi yabantu ababesezweni likaNefi, kanye nasezweni likaShilomu; babezungezwe ngabalindi benkosi, futhi bathathwa, baboshwa, bafakwa etilongweni.
- 8 Futhi kwenzeka emva kokuthi kade besetlongweni izinsuku ezimbili baphinda balethwa phambi kwenkosi, izintambo zabo zaxegiswa; futhi bamiswa phambi kwenkosi, futhi bavunyelwa, noma-ke ngokuyikho bayalwa, ukuthi baphendule imibuzo eyayizoyibuza kubo.

Mosiah 7

And now, it came to pass that after king Mosiah had had continual peace for the space of three years, he was desirous to know concerning the people who went up to dwell in the land of Lehi-Nephi, or in the city of Lehi-Nephi; for his people had heard nothing from them from the time they left the land of Zarahemla; therefore, they wearied him with their teasings.

And it came to pass that king Mosiah granted that sixteen of their strong men might go up to the land of Lehi-Nephi, to inquire concerning their brethren.

And it came to pass that on the morrow they started to go up, having with them one Ammon, he being a strong and mighty man, and a descendant of Zarahemla; and he was also their leader.

And now, they knew not the course they should travel in the wilderness to go up to the land of Lehi-Nephi; therefore they wandered many days in the wilderness, even forty days did they wander.

And when they had wandered forty days they came to a hill, which is north of the land of Shilom, and there they pitched their tents.

And Ammon took three of his brethren, and their names were Amaleki, Helem, and Hem, and they went down into the land of Nephi.

And behold, they met the king of the people who were in the land of Nephi, and in the land of Shilom; and they were surrounded by the king's guard, and were taken, and were bound, and were committed to prison.

And it came to pass when they had been in prison two days they were again brought before the king, and their bands were loosed; and they stood before the king, and were permitted, or rather commanded, that they should answer the questions which he should ask them.

- 9 Futhi yathi kubo: Bhekani, mina nginguLimhi, indodana kaNowa, owayeyindodana kaZenifi, owakhuphuka waphuma ezweni lakwaZarahemla ukuze athole lelizwe njengefa, okwakuyizwe loyise, owenziwa inkosi ngezwi labantu.
- 10 Manje, ngifisa ukwazi isizathu sokuthi nibe nesibindi esingaka sokusondela eduze nezindonga zalelidolobha, ngesikhathi mina, uqobolwami, benginabalindi bami ngaphandle kwesango?
- 11 Manje, ngalesi sizathu ngenze ukuthi nilondolozwe, ukuze ngibuze ngani, kungenjalo ngabe ngenze ukuthi abalindi bami baniyise kwagoqanyawo. Nivumelekile ukuthi nikhulume.
- 12 Manje, ngesikhathi u-Amoni ebona ukuthi wayevumelekile ukukhuluma, waya phambili wakhothama phambi kwenkosi; futhi waphinda waphakama wabe esethi: O nkosi, ngiyabonga kakhulu phambi kukaNkulunkulu ngalolu suku ukuthi ngisaphila, futhi ngisavunyelwe ukuthi ngikhulume; futhi ngizozama ukukhuluma ngesibindi;
- 13 Ngokuba ngiqinisekile ukuthi ukuba bewungazi bewungenakuvuma ukuthi ngifakwe lezi zintambo. Ngokuba mina ngingu-Amoni, futhi ngingowozalo lukaZarahemla, futhi ngikhuphukile ngaphuma ezweni lakwaZarahemla ukuthi ngizobuza mayelana nabafowethu, uZenifi akhuphuka nabo waphuma kulelozwe.
- 14 Manje, kwenzeka ukuthi emva kokuthi uLimhi esewazwile amazwi ka-Amoni, wajabula kakhulu, futhi wathi: Manje, sengiyazi ngeqiniso ukuthi abafowethu ababesezweni lakwaZarahemla basaphila. Manje, ngizothokoza; futhi kusasa ngizokwenza ukuthi abantu bami bathokoze nabo futhi.
- 15 Ngokuba bheka, sithunjwe ngamaLamani, futhi sitheliswa ngentela okunzima ukuyimela. Manje, bheka, abafowethu bazosikhulula ekuthunjweni kwethu, noma basikhiphe ezandleni zamaLamani, futhi sizoba yizigqila zabo; ngokuba kungcono ukuthi sibe yizigqila kumaNefi kunokuthi sikhokhe intela enkosini yamaLamani.

And he said unto them: Behold, I am Limhi, the son of Noah, who was the son of Zeniff, who came up out of the land of Zarahemla to inherit this land, which was the land of their fathers, who was made a king by the voice of the people.

And now, I desire to know the cause whereby ye were so bold as to come near the walls of the city, when I, myself, was with my guards without the gate?

And now, for this cause have I suffered that ye should be preserved, that I might inquire of you, or else I should have caused that my guards should have put you to death. Ye are permitted to speak.

And now, when Ammon saw that he was permitted to speak, he went forth and bowed himself before the king; and rising again he said: O king, I am very thankful before God this day that I am yet alive, and am permitted to speak; and I will endeavor to speak with boldness;

For I am assured that if ye had known me ye would not have suffered that I should have worn these bands. For I am Ammon, and am a descendant of Zarahemla, and have come up out of the land of Zarahemla to inquire concerning our brethren, whom Zeniff brought up out of that land.

And now, it came to pass that after Limhi had heard the words of Ammon, he was exceedingly glad, and said: Now, I know of a surety that my brethren who were in the land of Zarahemla are yet alive. And now, I will rejoice; and on the morrow I will cause that my people shall rejoice also.

For behold, we are in bondage to the Lamanites, and are taxed with a tax which is grievous to be borne. And now, behold, our brethren will deliver us out of our bondage, or out of the hands of the Lamanites, and we will be their slaves; for it is better that we be slaves to the Nephites than to pay tribute to the king of the Lamanites.

16 Manje, inkosi uLimhi yayala abalindi bayo ukuthi bangabe basambopha u-Amoni noma abafowabo, kodwa yenza ukuthi bahambe baye egqumeni elalingase nyakatho yeShilomu, balethe abafowabo edolobheni, ukuze ngalokho badle, baphuze, futhi baziphumuze emisebenzini yohambo lwabo; ngokuba babehlushwe yizinto eziningi; babehlushwe yindlala, wukoma, kanye nokucobeka.

17 Manje, kwenzeka ngakusasa ukuthi inkosi uLimhi yathumela isimemezelo phakathi kwabo bonke abantu bayo, ukuthi babuthane ndawonye ethempelini, ukuzozwa amazwi ayezowakhuluma kubo.

18 Futhi kwenzeka ukuthi emva kokuthi sebebuthene ndawonye yakhuluma kubo ngalendlela, ithi: O nina, bantu bami, phakamisani amakhanda enu futhi niduduzeke; ngokuba bhekani, isikhathi sesifikile, noma asisekho kude kakhulu, lapho singasezukuba ngaphansi kwezitha zethu, naphezu kokuba imishikashika yethu eminingi, ibe yize; nokho ngiyethemba usasele umshikashika onempumelelo osazokwenziwa.

19 Ngakho-ke, phakamisani amakhanda enu, nithokoze, futhi nibeke ithemba lenu kuNkulunkulu, kulowo Nkulunkulu owayenguNkulunkulu ka-Abrahama, no-Isaka, kanye noJakobe; futhi phezu kwalokho, lowo Nkulunkulu owakhipha abantwana bakwa-Israyeli ezweni laseGibithe, futhi wenza ukuthi bahambe badabule uLwandle oluBomvu emhlabathini owomileyo, futhi wabondla ngemana ukuze bangabhubhi ehlane; futhi ziningi ezinye izinto abenzela zona.

20 Futhi phezu kwalokho, yena kanye lowo Nkulunkulu wakhipha obaba bethu ezweni laseJerusalema, futhi wabagcina wabalondoloza abantu bakhe ngisho kuze kube manje; futhi bhekani, kungenxa yokungalungi kanye nezinengiso zethu ukuthi usilethe ekuthunjweni.

And now, king Limhi commanded his guards that they should no more bind Ammon nor his brethren, but caused that they should go to the hill which was north of Shilom, and bring their brethren into the city, that thereby they might eat, and drink, and rest themselves from the labors of their journey; for they had suffered many things; they had suffered hunger, thirst, and fatigue.

And now, it came to pass on the morrow that king Limhi sent a proclamation among all his people, that thereby they might gather themselves together to the temple, to hear the words which he should speak unto them.

And it came to pass that when they had gathered themselves together that he spake unto them in this wise, saying: O ye, my people, lift up your heads and be comforted; for behold, the time is at hand, or is not far distant, when we shall no longer be in subjection to our enemies, notwithstanding our many strugglings, which have been in vain; yet I trust there remaineth an effectual struggle to be made.

Therefore, lift up your heads, and rejoice, and put your trust in God, in that God who was the God of Abraham, and Isaac, and Jacob; and also, that God who brought the children of Israel out of the land of Egypt, and caused that they should walk through the Red Sea on dry ground, and fed them with manna that they might not perish in the wilderness; and many more things did he do for them.

And again, that same God has brought our fathers out of the land of Jerusalem, and has kept and preserved his people even until now; and behold, it is because of our iniquities and abominations that he has brought us into bondage.

21 Futhi nina nonke ningofakazi ngalolu suku, ukuthi uZenifi, owenziwa inkosi phezu kwalaba bantu, wayenentshisekelo enkulu ukuthi athole izwe loyise, ngakho-ke wakhohliswa ngobuqili kanye nangamacebo enkosi uLamani, isingene esivumelwaneni nenkosi uZenifi, futhi isiyekelele ezandleni zakhe ukuphathwa kwenxenye yalelizwe, noma ngisho idolobha lakwa Lehi-Nefi, nedolobha likaShilomu; kanye nezwe elizungezile—

22 Futhi konke lokhu yakwenza, ngenhloso eyodwa yokuletha laba bantu ebugqilini noma ngaphansi kwayo. Futhi bhekani, thina ngalesi sikhathi sikhokha intela enkosini yamaLamani, eyinani eliyinxenye eyodwa yombila wethu, kanye nobhali wethu, futhi ngisho nakho konke kwethu okusanhlamvu kwalo lonke uhlobo, kanye nenxenye eyodwa yokwenzalo yezimvu kanye nemihlambi yethu; futhi ngisho nenxenye eyodwa yakho konke esinakho noma esikuphethe inkosi yamaLamani iyakufuna kithi, noma izimpilo zethu.

23 Manje, ngabe lokhu akunzima yini ukukuthwala na? Futhi ngabe lokhu, akuyiyo yini, inkathazo, enkulu kithi na? Manje bhekani, ngabe sikhulu kangakanani isizathu sokuthi sikhale na?

24 Yebo, ngithi kini, zinkulu izizathu ezenza sikhale; ngokuba bhekani bangaki abafowethu ababulawayo, futhi igazi labo lachitheka ngeze, futhi konke ngenxa yobubi.

25 Ngokuba ukuba laba bantu babengawelanga esiphambekweni iNkosi yayingenakuvuma ukuthi lobu bubi obukhulu kangaka behlele phezu kwabo. Kodwa bhekani, abawalalanga amazwi ayo; kodwa kwavuka imibango phakathi kwabo, ngisho kangangokuthi bachitha igazi phakathi kwabo uqobo.

26 Futhi umphrofethi weNkosi bambulele; yebo, indoda ekhethiweyo kaNkulunkulu, eyabathela ngobubi babo kanye nezinengiso, futhi yaphrofetha ngeziningi izinto ezazizokwenzeka, yebo, ngisho nangokuza kukaKristu.

And ye all are witnesses this day, that Zeniff, who was made king over this people, he being overzealous to inherit the land of his fathers, therefore being deceived by the cunning and craftiness of king Laman, who having entered into a treaty with king Zeniff, and having yielded up into his hands the possessions of a part of the land, or even the city of Lehi-Nephi, and the city of Shilom; and the land round about—

And all this he did, for the sole purpose of bringing this people into subjection or into bondage. And behold, we at this time do pay tribute to the king of the Lamanites, to the amount of one half of our corn, and our barley, and even all our grain of every kind, and one half of the increase of our flocks and our herds; and even one half of all we have or possess the king of the Lamanites doth exact of us, or our lives.

And now, is not this grievous to be borne? And is not this, our affliction, great? Now behold, how great reason we have to mourn.

Yea, I say unto you, great are the reasons which we have to mourn; for behold how many of our brethren have been slain, and their blood has been spilt in vain, and all because of iniquity.

For if this people had not fallen into transgression the Lord would not have suffered that this great evil should come upon them. But behold, they would not hearken unto his words; but there arose contentions among them, even so much that they did shed blood among themselves.

And a prophet of the Lord have they slain; yea, a chosen man of God, who told them of their wickedness and abominations, and prophesied of many things which are to come, yea, even the coming of Christ.

- 27 Futhi ngenxa yokuthi wathi kubo uKristu wayenguNkulunkulu, uBaba wazo zonke izinto, futhi yasho nokuthi uyothatha umfanekiso womuntu, futhi kuyokuba ngumfanekiso umuntu ayedalwe ngawo ekuqaleni; noma ngamanye amazwi, wathi umuntu wayedalwe ngomfanekiso kaNkulunkulu, futhi nokuthi uNkulunkulu uyokwehlela phakathi kwabantwana babantu, athathe inyama kanye negazi, futhi ahambe phezu kobuso bomhlaba—
- 28 Manje, ngenxa yokuthi washo lokhu, bambulala; futhi ziningi kakhulu izinto abazenzayo ezehlisela ulaka lukaNkulunkulu phezu kwabo. Ngakho-ke, ngubani omangalayo ukuthi basekuthunjweni, kanye nokuthi bashaywa ngezinkathazo ezibuhlungu na?
- 29 Ngokuba bhekani, iNkosi ithi: Angizukubasiza abantu bami ngosuku lwesiphambeko sabo; kodwa ngizozibiyela izindlela zabo ukuze bangaphumeleli; futhi izenzo zabo ziyokuba yisikhubekiso phambi kwabo.
- 30 Futhi phezu kwalokho, ithi: Uma abantu bami beyohlwanyela ukungcola bayovuna amakhoba akho kuso isivunguvungu; futhi umphumela walokho wubuthi.
- 31 Futhi phezu kwalokho ithi: Uma abantu bami beyohlwanyela ukungcola bayovuna umoya wasempumalanga, oletha imbubhiso ngokushesha.
- 32 Manje, bhekani, isethembiso seNkosi sigcwalisekile, futhi nishayiwe futhi nisenkathazweni.
- 33 Kodwa uma nizophendukela eNkosini ngenhloso egcwele yenhliziyo, nibeke ithemba lenu kuyo, niyisebenzele ngakho konke ukukhuthala kwengqondo, uma nizokwenza lokhu, ngokwentando nangokwesifiso sayo, izonikhipha ekuthunjweni.

And because he said unto them that Christ was the God, the Father of all things, and said that he should take upon him the image of man, and it should be the image after which man was created in the beginning; or in other words, he said that man was created after the image of God, and that God should come down among the children of men, and take upon him flesh and blood, and go forth upon the face of the earth—

And now, because he said this, they did put him to death; and many more things did they do which brought down the wrath of God upon them. Therefore, who wondereth that they are in bondage, and that they are smitten with sore afflictions?

For behold, the Lord hath said: I will not succor my people in the day of their transgression; but I will hedge up their ways that they prosper not; and their doings shall be as a stumbling block before them.

And again, he saith: If my people shall sow filthiness they shall reap the chaff thereof in the whirlwind; and the effect thereof is poison.

And again he saith: If my people shall sow filthiness they shall reap the east wind, which bringeth immediate destruction.

And now, behold, the promise of the Lord is fulfilled, and ye are smitten and afflicted.

But if ye will turn to the Lord with full purpose of heart, and put your trust in him, and serve him with all diligence of mind, if ye do this, he will, according to his own will and pleasure, deliver you out of bondage.

Mosiya 8

- 1 Futhi kwenzeka ukuthi emva kokuthi inkosi uLimihhi isiqedile ukukhuluma kubantu bayo, ngokuba yakhuluma eziningi izinto kubo kodwa zimbalwa kuphela ezazo engizibhalile kulencwadi, yatshela abantu bayo zonke izinto mayelana nabafowabo ababesezweni lakwaZarahemla.
- 2 Futhi yenza ukuthi u-Amoni ame phambi kwesixuku, futhi asilandise konke okwakwenzekile kubafowabo kusukela ngesikhathi lapho uZenifi ehamba ephuma kulelozwe ngisho kuze kube yisikhathi lapho yena uqobo ehamba ephuma kulelozwe.
- 3 Futhi phezu kwalokho waphinda wabalandisa amazwi okugcina inkosi uBenjamini eyayibafundisa wona, futhi wawachaza kubantu benkosi uLimihhi, ukuze bawaqonde wonke amazwi eyawakhulumayo.
- 4 Futhi kwenzeka ukuthi emva kokuthi esekwenzile konke lokhu, inkosi uLimihhi yasimukisa isixuku, futhi yenza ukuthi wonke umuntu abuyele endlini yakhe.
- 5 Futhi kwenzeka ukuthi yenza ukuthi izingcwephe ezaziqukethe umbhalo wabantu bayo kusukela ngesikhathi besuka ezweni lakwaZarahemla, zilethwe phambi kuka-Amoni, ukuze azifunde.
- 6 Manje, masinyane nje emva kokuthi u-Amoni esewufundile lombhalo, inkosi yafuna ukwazi kuye ukuthi wayengakwazi yini ukuhumusha izilimi, futhi u-Amoni wayitshela ukuthi wayengeke akwazi.
- 7 Futhi inkosi yathi kuye: Ngokudabuka ngenxa yezinkathazo zabantu bami, ngenza ukuthi abangamashuni amane nantathu babantu bami bathathe uhambo baye ehlane, ukuze ngalokho bathole izwe lakwaZarahemla, ukuze sicele kubafowethu ukuthi basikhiphe ekuthunjweni.
- 8 Futhi balahleka ehlane isikhathi esiyizinsuku eziningi, nokho babekhuthela, futhi abalitholanga izwe lakwaZarahemla kodwa babuyela kulelizwe, sebehambe ezweni eliphakathi kwamanzi amaningi, sebethole izwe elaligcwele amathambo abantu, kanye nawezilwane, futhi phezu kwalokho ligcwele izakhiwo ezazibhidlikile zalo lonke uhlobo, sebethole izwe elalikade ligcwaliswe ngabantu ababebaningi njengezixuku zakwa-Israyeli.

Mosiah 8

And it came to pass that after king Limhi had made an end of speaking to his people, for he spake many things unto them and only a few of them have I written in this book, he told his people all the things concerning their brethren who were in the land of Zarahemla.

And he caused that Ammon should stand up before the multitude, and rehearse unto them all that had happened unto their brethren from the time that Zeniff went up out of the land even until the time that he himself came up out of the land.

And he also rehearsed unto them the last words which king Benjamin had taught them, and explained them to the people of king Limhi, so that they might understand all the words which he spake.

And it came to pass that after he had done all this, that king Limhi dismissed the multitude, and caused that they should return every one unto his own house.

And it came to pass that he caused that the plates which contained the record of his people from the time that they left the land of Zarahemla, should be brought before Ammon, that he might read them.

Now, as soon as Ammon had read the record, the king inquired of him to know if he could interpret languages, and Ammon told him that he could not.

And the king said unto him: Being grieved for the afflictions of my people, I caused that forty and three of my people should take a journey into the wilderness, that thereby they might find the land of Zarahemla, that we might appeal unto our brethren to deliver us out of bondage.

And they were lost in the wilderness for the space of many days, yet they were diligent, and found not the land of Zarahemla but returned to this land, having traveled in a land among many waters, having discovered a land which was covered with bones of men, and of beasts, and was also covered with ruins of buildings of every kind, having discovered a land which had been peopled with a people who were as numerous as the hosts of Israel.

- 9 Futhi ukufakaza ukuthi izinto ababezishilo ziyiqiniso babuya nezingcwephe ezingamashumi amabili nane ezigcwele imiqopho, futhi zingezegolide elimsulwa.
- 10 Futhi bheka, phezu kwalokho, balethe izivikelo zesifuba, ezinkulu, futhi zingezethusi kanye nekhopha, futhi zinhle kakhulu.
- 11 Futhi phezu kwalokho, balethe izinkemba, izibambo zazo esezibolile, futhi ukudla kwazo kwasekudliwe wukuthomba; futhi akukho noyedwa kulelizwe okwaziyo ukuhumusha ulimi noma imiqopho esezingcwepheni. Kungakho-ke ngithe kuwe: Ungakwazi yini ukuhumusha na?
- 12 Futhi ngiyaphinda ngithi kuwe: Kukhona yini omaziyo okwazi ukuhumusha na? Ngokuba ngifisa ukuthi lemibhalo ihunyushelwe olimini lwethu; ngokuba, mhlawumbe, izosinika ulwazi ngensalela yalaba bantu ababhujiswa, lapho lemibhalo yavela khona; noma, mhlawumbe, izosinika ulwazi ngabo kanye labantu ababhujiswa; futhi nginesifiso sokwazi isizathu sokubhujiswa kwabo.
- 13 Manje u-Amoni wathi kuyo: Ngingakutshela ngesi qiniseko, O nkosi, ngomuntu ongakwazi ukuhumusha imibhalo; ngokuba yena unalokho akwazi ukubuka kukho, ahumushe yonke imibhalo engeyasendulo; kuyisipho esivela kuNkulunkulu. Futhi lezi zinto zibizwa ngokuthi yizihumushi, futhi akukho muntu okwazi ukubuka kuzo ngaphandle kokuthi eyaliwe, hleze abuke lokho okungafanele bese ebhubha. Futhi lowo oyalwa ukuthi abuke kuzo, lowo ubizwa ngomboni.
- 14 Futhi bheka, inkosi yabantu abasezweni lakwaZarahemla nguyena muntu oyaliwe ukuthi enze lezi zinto, futhi onalesi siphosikhulu esivela kuNkulunkulu.
- 15 Futhi inkosi yathi umboni mkhulu kunomphrofethi.
- 16 Futhi u-Amoni wathi umboni ungumembuli kanye nomphrofethi futhi; futhi leso siphosikhulu akekho umuntu ongabanaso, ngaphandle kokuthi abe namandla kaNkulunkulu, okungekho muntu ongabanaso; nokho umuntu angabanaso amakhulu anikezwe wona avela kuNkulunkulu.

And for a testimony that the things that they had said are true they have brought twenty-four plates which are filled with engravings, and they are of pure gold.

And behold, also, they have brought breastplates, which are large, and they are of brass and of copper, and are perfectly sound.

And again, they have brought swords, the hilts thereof have perished, and the blades thereof were cankered with rust; and there is no one in the land that is able to interpret the language or the engravings that are on the plates. Therefore I said unto thee: Canst thou translate?

And I say unto thee again: Knowest thou of any one that can translate? For I am desirous that these records should be translated into our language; for, perhaps, they will give us a knowledge of a remnant of the people who have been destroyed, from whence these records came; or, perhaps, they will give us a knowledge of this very people who have been destroyed; and I am desirous to know the cause of their destruction.

Now Ammon said unto him: I can assuredly tell thee, O king, of a man that can translate the records; for he has wherewith that he can look, and translate all records that are of ancient date; and it is a gift from God. And the things are called interpreters, and no man can look in them except he be commanded, lest he should look for that he ought not and he should perish. And whosoever is commanded to look in them, the same is called seer.

And behold, the king of the people who are in the land of Zarahemla is the man that is commanded to do these things, and who has this high gift from God.

And the king said that a seer is greater than a prophet.

And Ammon said that a seer is a revelator and a prophet also; and a gift which is greater can no man have, except he should possess the power of God, which no man can; yet a man may have great power given him from God.

17 Kodwa umboni angazi ngezinto ezedlule, futhi ngokunjalo nangezinto ezisazokwenzeka, futhi ngezihumushi zonke izinto ziyokwambulwa, noma, okungenani, izinto ezisithekile ziyokwenziwa zibonakale, futhi izinto ezifihlakele ziyokwambulwa, futhi izinto ezingaziwayo ziyokwambulwa ngazo, futhi phezu kwalokho kuyokwambulwa izinto ngazo ebezingenakwaziwa ngaphandle kwazo.

18 Ngaleyo ndlela uNkulunkulu wenze izindlela zokuthi umuntu, ngokholo, enze izimangaliso ezinkulu; ngakho-ke uba wusizo olukhulu kubantu bakubo.

19 Manje, ngesikhathi u-Amoni eseqedile ukukhuluma lamazwi inkosi yathokoza kakhulu, futhi yabonga kuNkulunkulu, ithi: Ngokungangabazeki imfihlakalo enkulu iqukethwe phakathi kwalezi zingcwephe, futhi nalezi zihumushi ngokungangabazeki zalungiswa ngenhloso yokusombulula zonke izimfihlakalo ezinje kubantwana babantu.

20 O imangalisa kangakanani imisebenzi yeNkosi, futhi kuyoze kube nini ibekezelela abantu bayo; yebo, futhi bungakanani ubumpumpithe nobunzima bokuqonda kwabantwana babantu; ngokuba abakufuni ukuhlakanipha, noma bafise ukuthi kona kubabuse!

21 Yebo, banjengomhlambi wasendle wona obalekela umalusi, usakazeke, futhi ubalekiswe, futhi udliwe yizilwane zasendle.

But a seer can know of things which are past, and also of things which are to come, and by them shall all things be revealed, or, rather, shall secret things be made manifest, and hidden things shall come to light, and things which are not known shall be made known by them, and also things shall be made known by them which otherwise could not be known.

Thus God has provided a means that man, through faith, might work mighty miracles; therefore he cometh a great benefit to his fellow beings.

And now, when Ammon had made an end of speaking these words the king rejoiced exceedingly, and gave thanks to God, saying: Doubtless a great mystery is contained within these plates, and these interpreters were doubtless prepared for the purpose of unfolding all such mysteries to the children of men.

O how marvelous are the works of the Lord, and how long doth he suffer with his people; yea, and how blind and impenetrable are the understandings of the children of men; for they will not seek wisdom, neither do they desire that she should rule over them!

Yea, they are as a wild flock which fleeth from the shepherd, and scattereth, and are driven, and are devoured by the beasts of the forest.

UMBHALO KAZENIFI—Indaba ngabantu bakbe, kusukela ngesikhathi beshiya ezweni lakwaZarabemla kuze kube yisikhathi lapho bekbulukwa ezandleni zamaLamani.

Mosiya 9

- 1 Mina, Zenifi, ngifundiswe ngalo lonke ulimi lwamaNefi, futhi nginolwazi lwezwe lakwaNefi, noma izwe lokhokho bethu eliyifa labo lokuqala, futhi ngithunye njengenhloli phakathi kwamaLamani ukuze ngihlole amabutho awo, ukuze impi yethu itheleke phezu kwawo futhi iwabhubhise—kodwa ngesikhathi ngibona lokho okwakukuhle phakathi kwawo ngaba nesifiso sokuthi angabhujiswa.
- 2 Ngakho-ke, ngaphikisana nabafowethu ehlane, ngokuba ngangifuna ukuthi umbusi wethu enze isivumelwano nawo; kodwa ngenxa yokuthi wayenonya futhi engumuntu owomele igazi wayala ukuthi ngibulawe; kodwa ngasindiswa ngokuchitheka kwegazi eliningi; ngokuba uyise walwa noyise, umfowabo nomfowabo, kwaze kwathi isibalo esikhulu sempi yethu yabhujiswa ehlane; futhi sabuyela, labo bethu ababesindile, ezweni lakwaZarahemla, ukuthi siyolanda leyondaba kubafazi babo kanye nakubantwana babo.
- 3 Futhi nokho, mina nginentshisekelo enkulu yokuthola njengefa izwe lokhokho bethu, ngaqoqa abaningi ababefisa ukukhuphuka ukuyothatha lelozwe, futhi saphinda saqala uhambo lwethu ehlane ukukhuphukela ezweni; kodwa sabulawa yindlala kanye nezinkathazo ezibuhlungu; ngokuba sasephuza ukukhumbula iNkosi uNkulunkulu wethu.
- 4 Nokho, emva kwezinsuku eziningi sizulazula ehlane sagxumeka amatende ethu endaweni lapho abafowethu babebulawelwe khona, eyayiseduzane nezwe lokhokho bethu.
- 5 Futhi kwenzeka ukuthi ngaphinda ngahamba nabane babantu bami ukuya edolobheni, saya enkosini, ukuze ngazi ngombono wenkosi, nokuthi ngazi ukuthi ngangingangena yini nabantu bami futhi ngilithathe izwe ngokuthula.

THE RECORD OF ZENIFF—An account of his people, from the time they left the land of Zarabemla until the time that they were delivered out of the hands of the Lamanites.

Mosiah 9

I, Zeniff, having been taught in all the language of the Nephites, and having had a knowledge of the land of Nephi, or of the land of our fathers' first inheritance, and having been sent as a spy among the Lamanites that I might spy out their forces, that our army might come upon them and destroy them—but when I saw that which was good among them I was desirous that they should not be destroyed.

Therefore, I contended with my brethren in the wilderness, for I would that our ruler should make a treaty with them; but he being an austere and a blood-thirsty man commanded that I should be slain; but I was rescued by the shedding of much blood; for father fought against father, and brother against brother, until the greater number of our army was destroyed in the wilderness; and we returned, those of us that were spared, to the land of Zarahemla, to relate that tale to their wives and their children.

And yet, I being over-zealous to inherit the land of our fathers, collected as many as were desirous to go up to possess the land, and started again on our journey into the wilderness to go up to the land; but we were smitten with famine and sore afflictions; for we were slow to remember the Lord our God.

Nevertheless, after many days' wandering in the wilderness we pitched our tents in the place where our brethren were slain, which was near to the land of our fathers.

And it came to pass that I went again with four of my men into the city, in unto the king, that I might know of the disposition of the king, and that I might know if I might go in with my people and possess the land in peace.

- 6 Futhi ngangena ngaya enkosini, futhi yavumelana nami ukuthi ngingalithatha izwe lakwaLehi-Nefi, kanye nezwe lakwaShilomu.
- 7 Futhi phezu kwalokho yayala ukuthi abantu bayo baphume kulelozwe, kwathi mina kanye nabantu bami sahamba saya ezweni ukuze silitathe.
- 8 Futhi saqala ukwakha izakhiwo, kanye nokuvuselela izindonga zedolobha, yebo, ngisho nezindonga zedolobha lakwaLehi-Nefi, kanye nedolobha lakwaShilomu.
- 9 Futhi saqala ukulima umhlabathi, yebo, ngisho nangazo zonke izinhlobo zezimbewu, ngezimbewu zombila, nezikakolweni, nezikabhali, nezenuzi, nezeshemu, kanye nezimbewu zayo yonke inhlobo yezithelo; futhi nempela saqala ukwanda futhi saphumelela ezweni.
- 10 Manje kwakungamacebo kanye nobuqili benkosi uLamani, ukuthi ilethe abantu bami ekuthunjweni, ukuthi iyekele lelizwe ukuze silitathe.
- 11 Ngakho-ke kwenzeka, ukuthi emva kokuthi sesihlale kulelizwe isikhathi esiyiminyaka eyishumi nambili inkosi uLamani yaqala ukuba novalo, hleze noma ngayiphi indlela abantu bami bakhule baqine kulelizwe, futhi nokuthi amaLamani angabe esakwazi ukubehlula futhi abalethe ekuthunjweni.
- 12 Manje amaLamani aye ngabantu abangamavila futhi abakhonza izithixo; ngakho-ke ayenesifiso sokuthi asilethe ekuthunjweni, ukuze azitike ngemisebenzi yezandla zethu; yebo, ukuze azitike emihlambini yamasimu ethu.
- 13 Ngakho-ke kwenzeka ukuthi inkosi uLamani yaqala ukuphehla abantu bayo ukuthi babange nabantu bami; ngakho-ke kwaqala ukuthi kube khona izimpi kanye nemibango kulelozwe.
- 14 Ngokuba, ngonyaka weshumi nantathu wokubusa kwami ezweni lakwaNefi, kude eningizimu yezwe lakwaShilomu, ngesikhathi abantu bami bephuzisa futhi bedlisa imihlambi yabo, belima imihlaba yabo, ibutho elikhulu lamaLamani lathelaka phezu kwabo futhi laqala ukubabulala, nokubathathela imihlambi yabo, kanye nommbila wamasimu abo.
- 15 Yebo, futhi kwenzeka ukuthi, bonke labo ababengatholwanga, babalekela edolobheni lakwaNefi, futhi nempela bangibiza ukuthi ngizobavikela.

And I went in unto the king, and he covenanted with me that I might possess the land of Lehi-Nephi, and the land of Shilom.

And he also commanded that his people should depart out of the land, and I and my people went into the land that we might possess it.

And we began to build buildings, and to repair the walls of the city, yea, even the walls of the city of Lehi-Nephi, and the city of Shilom.

And we began to till the ground, yea, even with all manner of seeds, with seeds of corn, and of wheat, and of barley, and with neas, and with sheum, and with seeds of all manner of fruits; and we did begin to multiply and prosper in the land.

Now it was the cunning and the craftiness of king Laman, to bring my people into bondage, that he yielded up the land that we might possess it.

Therefore it came to pass, that after we had dwelt in the land for the space of twelve years that king Laman began to grow uneasy, lest by any means my people should wax strong in the land, and that they could not overpower them and bring them into bondage.

Now they were a lazy and an idolatrous people; therefore they were desirous to bring us into bondage, that they might glut themselves with the labors of our hands; yea, that they might feast themselves upon the flocks of our fields.

Therefore it came to pass that king Laman began to stir up his people that they should contend with my people; therefore there began to be wars and contentions in the land.

For, in the thirteenth year of my reign in the land of Nephi, away on the south of the land of Shilom, when my people were watering and feeding their flocks, and tilling their lands, a numerous host of Lamanites came upon them and began to slay them, and to take off their flocks, and the corn of their fields.

Yea, and it came to pass that they fled, all that were not overtaken, even into the city of Nephi, and did call upon me for protection.

- 16 Futhi kwenzeka ukuthi nempela ngabahlomisa ngeminsalo, nangemicibisholo, nangezinkemba, nangocelumba, nangezagila, nangezihlilingi, kanye nangazo zonke izinhlobo zezikhali esasingazakha, futhi mina nabantu bami nempela sahamba sayolwa namaLamani.
- 17 Yebo, ngamandla eNkosi sahamba sayolwa namaLamani; ngokuba mina nabantu bami sakhala kakhulu eNkosini ukuthi isikhulule ezandleni zezitha zethu, ngokuba isimo sethu senza ukuthi sikhumbule ngokukhululwa kobaba bethu.
- 18 Futhi uNkulunkulu wakuzwa ukukhala kwethu futhi wayiphendula imithandazo yethu; futhi nempela sahamba ngamandla akhe; yebo, sahamba sayolwa namaLamani, futhi ngosuku olulodwa kanye nobusuku sabulala izinkulungwane ezintathu namashumi amane nantathu; nempela sawabulala saze sawabalekisa sawakhipha ezweni lethu.
- 19 Futhi mina, uqobo lwami, ngezami izandla, ngasiza ukungcwaba abafuleyo bawo. Futhi bheka, ngokudabuka kanye nokulila kwethu okukhulu, amakhulu amabili namashumi ayisikhombisa nesishiyagalolunye abafowethu babulawa.

And it came to pass that I did arm them with bows, and with arrows, with swords, and with cimeters, and with clubs, and with slings, and with all manner of weapons which we could invent, and I and my people did go forth against the Lamanites to battle.

Yea, in the strength of the Lord did we go forth to battle against the Lamanites; for I and my people did cry mightily to the Lord that he would deliver us out of the hands of our enemies, for we were awakened to a remembrance of the deliverance of our fathers.

And God did hear our cries and did answer our prayers; and we did go forth in his might; yea, we did go forth against the Lamanites, and in one day and a night we did slay three thousand and forty-three; we did slay them even until we had driven them out of our land.

And I, myself, with mine own hands, did help to bury their dead. And behold, to our great sorrow and lamentation, two hundred and seventy-nine of our brethren were slain.

Mosiya 10

- 1 Futhi kwenzeka ukuthi saphinda saqala ukwakha umbuso futhi saphinda sahlala ezweni ngokuthula. Futhi ngenza ukuthi kube khona izikhali zempi zalo lonke uhlobo ezenziwayo, ukuze ngalokho ngibe nezikhali zabantu bami ngesikhathi amaLamani eza futhi ukuzolwa nabantu bami.
- 2 Futhi ngabeka abaqaphi bazungeza izwe, ukuze amaLamani angaphindi atheleke phezu kwethu singazelele bese esibhubhisa; futhi ngaleyondlela nempela ngabavikela abantu bami kanye nemihlambi yami, futhi ngabagcina ekuweleni ezandleni zezitha zethu.
- 3 Futhi kwenzeka ukuthi nempela salithatha izwe lobaba bethu iminyaka eminingi, yebo, isikhathi esiyiminyaka engamashumi amabili neminyaka emibili.
- 4 Futhi ngenza ukuthi amadoda alime umhlabathi, futhi akhulise zonke izinhlobo zokusanhlamvu kanye nazo zonke izithelo ezinhlobonhlobo.
- 5 Futhi ngenza ukuthi abesifazane baphothe, futhi bazikhandle, basebenze, benze zonke izinhlobo zelineni elicolekile, yebo, kanye nendwangu enhlobonhlobo, ukuze sembathise ubunqunu bethu; futhi ngaleyomdlela nempela saphumelela kulelizwe —ngaleyondlela nempela saba nokuthula njalo kulelizwe isikhathi esiyiminyaka engamashumi amabili neminyaka emibili.
- 6 Futhi kwenzeka ukuthi inkosi uLamani yafa, futhi indodana yayo yaqala ukubusa esikhundleni sayo. Futhi yaqala ukuphehla abantu bayo ukuba bavukele abantu bami; ngakho-ke baqala ukulungiselela impi, kanye nokuzohlasela abantu bami.
- 7 Kodwa ngase ngizithumelile izinhlobo zami zazungeza izwe lakwaShemiloni, ukuze ngithole ngokuzilungiselela kwabo, ukuze ngibaqaphele, ukuze bangatheleki phezu kwabantu bami bababhubhise.

Mosiah 10

And it came to pass that we again began to establish the kingdom and we again began to possess the land in peace. And I caused that there should be weapons of war made of every kind, that thereby I might have weapons for my people against the time the Lamanites should come up again to war against my people.

And I set guards round about the land, that the Lamanites might not come upon us again unawares and destroy us; and thus I did guard my people and my flocks, and keep them from falling into the hands of our enemies.

And it came to pass that we did inherit the land of our fathers for many years, yea, for the space of twenty and two years.

And I did cause that the men should till the ground, and raise all manner of grain and all manner of fruit of every kind.

And I did cause that the women should spin, and toil, and work, and work all manner of fine linen, yea, and cloth of every kind, that we might clothe our nakedness; and thus we did prosper in the land— thus we did have continual peace in the land for the space of twenty and two years.

And it came to pass that king Laman died, and his son began to reign in his stead. And he began to stir his people up in rebellion against my people; therefore they began to prepare for war, and to come up to battle against my people.

But I had sent my spies out round about the land of Shemlon, that I might discover their preparations, that I might guard against them, that they might not come upon my people and destroy them.

8 Futhi kwenzeka ukuthi bakhuphukela enyakatho yezwe lakwaShilomu, kanye namabutho abo amaningi, amadoda ehlome ngeminsalo, nangemicibisholo, nangezinkemba, nangocelumba, nangamatshe, kanye nangezihlilingi; futhi babephucile emakhanda abo; futhi babebhince amabhande ezikhumba ezungeze ezinkalweni zabo.

9 Futhi kwenzeka ukuthi ngenza ukuthi abesifazane kanye nabantwana babantu bami bacashiswe ehlane; futhi phezu kwalokho ngenza ukuthi wonke amadoda amadala ami ayengakwazi ukuphatha izikhali, futhi ngokunjalo nazo zonke izinsizwa zami ezazikwazi ukuphatha izikhali, zibuthane ndawonye ukuze zihambe ziyolwa namaLamani; futhi nempela ngababeka ngokwezigaba zabo, wonke umuntu ngokweminyaka yakhe.

10 Futhi kwenzeka ukuthi nempela sahamba sakhuphuka ukuthi siyolwa namaLamani; futhi, ngisho nami, eminyakeni yami yobudala, ngahamba ngakhuphuka ngayolwa namaLamani. Futhi kwenzeka ukuthi nempela sahamba sakhuphuka ngamandla eNkosi sayolwa.

11 Manje, amaLamani ayengazi lutho mayelana neNkosi, noma amandla eNkosi, ngakho-ke ayencike emandleni awo uqobo. Nokho ayengabantu abanamandla, ngokwamandla abantu.

12 Ayeyizidlova, futhi enolaka, futhi engabantu abomele igazi, ekholelwa emasikweni okhokho bawo, ayengukuthi—Ekholelwa ukuthi wona ayebalekisiwe akhishwa ezweni laseJerusalema ngenxa yobubi boyise, futhi nokuthi wona aphantsi kabi ehlane ngabafowabo, futhi phezu kwalokho aphantsi kabi ngesikhathi edabula olwandle;

13 Futhi phezu kwalokho, nokuthi wona aphantsi kabi ngesikhathi esezweni lokuqala elaliyifa lawo, emva kokuthi sebedabule ulwandle, futhi konke lokhu ngenxa yokuthi uNefi wayenokuthembeka okukhulu ekugcineni imiyalelo yeNkosi—ngakho-ke wayethandwa yiNkosi, ngokuba iNkosi yayizwa imithandazo yakhe futhi yayiphendula, futhi wahamba phambili ohambweni lwabo ehlane.

And it came to pass that they came up upon the north of the land of Shilom, with their numerous hosts, men armed with bows, and with arrows, and with swords, and with cimeters, and with stones, and with slings; and they had their heads shaved that they were naked; and they were girded with a leathern girdle about their loins.

And it came to pass that I caused that the women and children of my people should be hid in the wilderness; and I also caused that all my old men that could bear arms, and also all my young men that were able to bear arms, should gather themselves together to go to battle against the Lamanites; and I did place them in their ranks, every man according to his age.

And it came to pass that we did go up to battle against the Lamanites; and I, even I, in my old age, did go up to battle against the Lamanites. And it came to pass that we did go up in the strength of the Lord to battle.

Now, the Lamanites knew nothing concerning the Lord, nor the strength of the Lord, therefore they depended upon their own strength. Yet they were a strong people, as to the strength of men.

They were a wild, and ferocious, and a blood-thirsty people, believing in the tradition of their fathers, which is this—Believing that they were driven out of the land of Jerusalem because of the iniquities of their fathers, and that they were wronged in the wilderness by their brethren, and they were also wronged while crossing the sea;

And again, that they were wronged while in the land of their first inheritance, after they had crossed the sea, and all this because that Nephi was more faithful in keeping the commandments of the Lord—therefore he was favored of the Lord, for the Lord heard his prayers and answered them, and he took the lead of their journey in the wilderness.

- 14 Futhi abafowabo bamthukuthelela ngenxa yokuthi babengaqondi ngezenzo zeNkosi; phezu kwalokho bamthukuthelela emanzini ngenxa yokuthi bazenza lukhuni izinhliziyo zabo ngokumelene neNkosi.
- 15 Futhi phezu kwalokho, bamthukuthelela ngesikhathi sebefike ezweni lesethembiso, ngenxa yokuthi bathi yena uthathe ukuphathwa kwabantu ezandleni zabo; futhi babefuna ukumbulala.
- 16 Futhi phezu kwalokho, bamthukuthelela ngenxa yokuthi wemuka waya ehlane njengoba iNkosi yayimyalile, futhi wathatha imibhalo eyayiqoshwe ezingcwepheni zethusi, ngokuba bathi wabaphanga.
- 17 Futhi ngalokho afundisa abantwana bawo ukuthi babazonde, futhi nokuthi bababulale, nokuthi babaqhwa futhi babaphange, futhi benze konke ababengakwenza ukuthi bababhubhise; ngakho-ke banenzondo yaphakade kubantwana baNefi.
- 18 Ngokuba ngaso lesi sizathu inkosi uLamani, ngamacebo akhe, kanye nobuqili bamanga akhe, kanye nezethembiso zakhe ezinhle, wangikhohlisa, ukuthi ngize ngilethe laba bantu bami kulelizwe, ukuze bababhubhise; yebo, futhi sihluphekile leminyaka eminingi sikulelizwe.
- 19 Manje mina, Zenifi, emva kokuthi sengizishilo zonke lezi zinto kubantu bami mayelana namaLamani, nempela ngabavuselela ukuthi bahambe bayokulwa ngamandla abo, babeke ithemba labo eNkosini; ngakho-ke, nempela salwa nawo, ubuso nobuso.
- 20 Futhi kwenzeka ukuthi nempela sawabalekisa futhi aphuma ezweni lethu; futhi sawabulala ngokubulala okukhulu, ngisho amaningi ngendlela yokuthi asiwabalanga.
- 21 Futhi kwenzeka ukuthi sabuyela futhi ezweni lethu, futhi abantu bami baqala futhi ukwelusa imihlambi yabo, kanye nokulima umhlabathi wabo.
- 22 Manje mina, sengimdala, nempela ngawunikeza umbuso komunye wamadodana ami; ngakho-ke, angisasho lutho. Futhi sengathi iNkosi ingababusisa abantu bami. Amen.

And his brethren were wroth with him because they understood not the dealings of the Lord; they were also wroth with him upon the waters because they hardened their hearts against the Lord.

And again, they were wroth with him when they had arrived in the promised land, because they said that he had taken the ruling of the people out of their hands; and they sought to kill him.

And again, they were wroth with him because he departed into the wilderness as the Lord had commanded him, and took the records which were engraved on the plates of brass, for they said that he robbed them.

And thus they have taught their children that they should hate them, and that they should murder them, and that they should rob and plunder them, and do all they could to destroy them; therefore they have an eternal hatred towards the children of Nephi.

For this very cause has king Laman, by his cunning, and lying craftiness, and his fair promises, deceived me, that I have brought this my people up into this land, that they may destroy them; yea, and we have suffered these many years in the land.

And now I, Zeniff, after having told all these things unto my people concerning the Lamanites, I did stimulate them to go to battle with their might, putting their trust in the Lord; therefore, we did contend with them, face to face.

And it came to pass that we did drive them again out of our land; and we slew them with a great slaughter, even so many that we did not number them.

And it came to pass that we returned again to our own land, and my people again began to tend their flocks, and to till their ground.

And now I, being old, did confer the kingdom upon one of my sons; therefore, I say no more. And may the Lord bless my people. Amen.

Mosiya 11

- 1 Manje kwenzeka ukuthi uZenifi umbuso wawunika uNowa, omunye wamadodana akhe; ngakho-ke uNowa waqala ukubusa esikhundleni sakhe; futhi akahambanga ezindleleni zikayise.
- 2 Ngokuba bheka, akazange ayigcine imiyalelo kaNkulunkulu, kodwa wahamba ngezifiso zenzliziyo yakhe. Futhi wayenabafazi abaningi kanye nezancinza. Futhi wenza abantu bakhe ukuthi bone, futhi benze lokho okwakunengekile emehlweni eNkosi. Yebo, futhi nempela benza ubufebe kanye nalo lonke uhlobo lobubi.
- 3 Futhi wabeka intela yenxenye eyodwa kokuhlanu kukho konke ababenakho, inxenye eyodwa kokuhlanu yegolide labo nesiliva labo, nenxenye eyodwa kokuhlanu yensimbi yabo eyigugu, neyekhopho yabo, neyethusi labo kanye neyensimbi yabo; nenxenye eyodwa kokuhlanu yokukhuluphalisiweyo kwabo; futhi ngokunjalo nenxenye eyodwa kokuhlanu yakho konke okusanhlamvu kwabo.
- 4 Futhi konke lokhu nempela wakuthatha ukuze azondle yena, kanye nabafazi bakhe kanye nezancinza zakhe; futhi ngokunjalo nabaphristi bakhe, kanye nabafazi babo kanye nezancinza zabo; ngakho-ke wayesezishintshile izindaba zombuso.
- 5 Ngokuba wabehlisa bonke abaphristi ababegcotshwe nguyise, wagcoba abasha esikhundleni sabo, njengalabo ababephakeme ezinhliziyweni zabo.
- 6 Yebo, futhi bondliwa ngalendlela ebuvileni babo, kanye nasekukhonzeni kwabo izithixo, kanye nasebufebeni babo, ngezintela inkosi uNowa eyayizibeke phezu kwabantu bayo; nempela abantu basebenza kakhulu ngalendlela ukondla ububi.
- 7 Yebo, futhi nabo baba ngabakhonza izithixo, ngenxa yokuthi babekhohliswe ngamazwi ayize kanye nathophayo enkosi kanye nabaphristi; ngokuba nempela bakhuluma izinto ezithophayo kubo.

Mosiah 11

And now it came to pass that Zeniff conferred the kingdom upon Noah, one of his sons; therefore Noah began to reign in his stead; and he did not walk in the ways of his father.

For behold, he did not keep the commandments of God, but he did walk after the desires of his own heart. And he had many wives and concubines. And he did cause his people to commit sin, and do that which was abominable in the sight of the Lord. Yea, and they did commit whoredoms and all manner of wickedness.

And he laid a tax of one fifth part of all they possessed, a fifth part of their gold and of their silver, and a fifth part of their ziff, and of their copper, and of their brass and their iron; and a fifth part of their fatlings; and also a fifth part of all their grain.

And all this did he take to support himself, and his wives and his concubines; and also his priests, and their wives and their concubines; thus he had changed the affairs of the kingdom.

For he put down all the priests that had been consecrated by his father, and consecrated new ones in their stead, such as were lifted up in the pride of their hearts.

Yea, and thus they were supported in their laziness, and in their idolatry, and in their whoredoms, by the taxes which king Noah had put upon his people; thus did the people labor exceedingly to support iniquity.

Yea, and they also became idolatrous, because they were deceived by the vain and flattering words of the king and priests; for they did speak flattering things unto them.

- 8 Futhi kwenzeka ukuthi inkosi uNowa wakha izakhiwo eziningi ezinkulu nezinhle kakhulu; futhi wazihlobisa ngomsebenzi omuhle wokhuni, kanye nangazo zonke izinto eziyigugu, zegolide, nezesiliva, nezensimbi, nezethusi, nezensimbi eyigugu, kanye nezekhophha;
- 9 Futhi phezu kwalokho wazakhela isigodlo esikhulu, kanye nesihlalo sobukhosi phakathi naso, konke okwakungokokhuni oluhle futhi sasihlotshiswe ngegolide nangesiliva kanye nangezinto eziyigugu.
- 10 Futhi phezu kwalokho wenza ukuthi abasebenzi bakhe benze zonke izinhlobo zomsebenzi omuhle ngaphakathi kwezindonga zethempeli, ngokhuni oluhle, nangekhophha, kanye nangethusi.
- 11 Futhi izihlalo ezazibekelwe zabaphristi abakhulu, ezazingaphezulu kwazo zonke ezinye izihlalo, wazihlobisa ngegolide elimsulwa; futhi wenza ukuthi kwakhiwe udonga olufushane ngaphambi kwazo, ukuze baphumuze imizimba yabo kanye nezingalo zabo kulo ngesikhathi bekhuluma amanga kanye namazwi ayize kubantu bakhe.
- 12 Futhi kwenzeka ukuthi wakha umbhoshongo eduze nethempeli; yebo, umbhoshongo omude kakhulu, ngisho ophezulu ngendlela yokuthi wayekwazi ukuma phezu kwesicongo sawo abuke izwe lakwaShilomu, futhi ngokunjalo nezwe lakwaShemiloni, okwakungelamaLamani; futhi wayekwazi ngisho ukubuka kulo lonke izwe elizungezile.
- 13 Futhi kwenzeka ukuthi wenza ukuthi kwakhiwe izakhiwo eziningi ezweni lakwaShilomu; futhi wenza ukuthi kwakhiwe omkhulu umbhoshongo egqumeni elisenyakatho yezwe lakwaShilomu, okwakungelokuphumula labantwana bakwaNefi ngesikhathi bebaleka bephuma ezweni; futhi yilokhu akwenza ngengcebo ayithola ngentela yabantu bakhe.
- 14 Futhi kwenzeka ukuthi wabeka inhliziyi yakhe engcebweni yakhe, futhi wachitha isikhathi sakhe ngokuhlala ngesiphithiphithi nabafazi bakhe kanye nezancinza zakhe; futhi ngokunjalo nabaphristi bakhe bachitha isikhathi sabo nezifebe.

And it came to pass that king Noah built many elegant and spacious buildings; and he ornamented them with fine work of wood, and of all manner of precious things, of gold, and of silver, and of iron, and of brass, and of ziff, and of copper;

And he also built him a spacious palace, and a throne in the midst thereof, all of which was of fine wood and was ornamented with gold and silver and with precious things.

And he also caused that his workmen should work all manner of fine work within the walls of the temple, of fine wood, and of copper, and of brass.

And the seats which were set apart for the high priests, which were above all the other seats, he did ornament with pure gold; and he caused a breast-work to be built before them, that they might rest their bodies and their arms upon while they should speak lying and vain words to his people.

And it came to pass that he built a tower near the temple; yea, a very high tower, even so high that he could stand upon the top thereof and overlook the land of Shilom, and also the land of Shemlon, which was possessed by the Lamanites; and he could even look over all the land round about.

And it came to pass that he caused many buildings to be built in the land Shilom; and he caused a great tower to be built on the hill north of the land Shilom, which had been a resort for the children of Nephi at the time they fled out of the land; and thus he did do with the riches which he obtained by the taxation of his people.

And it came to pass that he placed his heart upon his riches, and he spent his time in riotous living with his wives and his concubines; and so did also his priests spend their time with harlots.

- 15 Futhi kwenzeka ukuthi watshala izivini zazungeza izwe; futhi wakha izikhamo zewayini, wenza iwayini eliningi; ngakho-ke waba ngumphuzi wewayini, futhi ngokunjalo nabantu bakhe.
- 16 Futhi kwenzeka ukuthi amaLamani aqala ukuhlasela abantu bakhe, kancane kancane, kanye nokubabulala emasimini abo, nangesikhathi beluse imihlambi yabo.
- 17 Futhi inkosi uNowa yathumela abaqaphi bazungeza izwe ukuwagcina ekude; kodwa akathumelanga isibalo esanele, futhi amaLamani atheleka phezu kwabo ababulala, futhi aqhuba eminingi yemihlambi yabo ayikhipha ezweni; ngakho-ke amaLamani aqala ukubabhubhisa, kanye nokusebenzisa inzondo yawo kubo.
- 18 Futhi kwenzeka ukuthi inkosi uNowa yathumela amabutho ayo ukuyolwa nawo, futhi bawabalekisa bawaphindisela emuva, noma bawabalekisa bawaphindisela emuva okwesikhashana; ngakho-ke, babuyela emuva bethokozile empangweni yabo.
- 19 Manje, ngenxa yalokhu kunqoba okukhulu baphakama ezinhliziyweni zabo; bazigabisa ngamandla abo, besho ukuthi abangamashumi amahlanu abo angamelana nezinkulungwane zamaLamani; futhi nempela bazigabisa ngalendlela, futhi bajabula ngegazi, kanye nangokuchitheka kwegazi labafowabo, futhi bakwenza lokhu ngenxa yobubi benkosi yabo kanye nabaphristi.
- 20 Futhi kwenzeka ukuthi kwakukhona indoda phakathi kwabo egama layo kwakungu-Abinadi; futhi wahamba phakathi kwabo, futhi waqala ukuphrofetha, ethi: Bhekani, isho kanje iNkosi, ingiyale ngalendlela, ithi, Hamba, uthi kulaba bantu, isho kanje iNkosi—Maye kulaba bantu, ngokuba ngizibonile izinengiso zabo, nobubi babo, kanye nobufebe babo; futhi ngaphandle kokuthi baphenduke ngizobahambela ngentukuthelo yami.
- 21 Futhi ngaphandle kokuthi baphenduke futhi babuyele eNkosini uNkulunkulu wabo, bheka, ngizobanikela ezandleni zezitha zabo; yebo, futhi bayolethwa ekuthunjweni; futhi bahlushwe ngesandla sezitha zabo.

And it came to pass that he planted vineyards round about in the land; and he built wine-presses, and made wine in abundance; and therefore he became a wine-bibber, and also his people.

And it came to pass that the Lamanites began to come in upon his people, upon small numbers, and to slay them in their fields, and while they were tending their flocks.

And king Noah sent guards round about the land to keep them off; but he did not send a sufficient number, and the Lamanites came upon them and killed them, and drove many of their flocks out of the land; thus the Lamanites began to destroy them, and to exercise their hatred upon them.

And it came to pass that king Noah sent his armies against them, and they were driven back, or they drove them back for a time; therefore, they returned rejoicing in their spoil.

And now, because of this great victory they were lifted up in the pride of their hearts; they did boast in their own strength, saying that their fifty could stand against thousands of the Lamanites; and thus they did boast, and did delight in blood, and the shedding of the blood of their brethren, and this because of the wickedness of their king and priests.

And it came to pass that there was a man among them whose name was Abinadi; and he went forth among them, and began to prophesy, saying: Behold, thus saith the Lord, and thus hath he commanded me, saying, Go forth, and say unto this people, thus saith the Lord—Wo be unto this people, for I have seen their abominations, and their wickedness, and their whoredoms; and except they repent I will visit them in mine anger.

And except they repent and turn to the Lord their God, behold, I will deliver them into the hands of their enemies; yea, and they shall be brought into bondage; and they shall be afflicted by the hand of their enemies.

- 22 Futhi kuyokwenzeka ukuthi bayokwazi ukuthi mina ngiyiNkosi uNkulunkulu wabo, futhi nginguNkulunkulu onomhawu, ngiyabuhambela ububi babantu bami.
- 23 Futhi kuyokwenzeka ukuthi ngaphandle kokuthi laba bantu baphenduke futhi babuyele eNkosini uNkulunkulu wabo, bayolethwa ekuthunjweni; futhi akukho namunye oyobakhulula, ngaphandle kokuthi kuyoba yiNkosi uNkulunkulu uSomandla.
- 24 Yebo, futhi kuyokwenzeka ukuthi ngesikhathi bekhala kimi ngizophuza ukukuzwa ukukukhala kwabo; yebo, futhi ngizovumela ukuthi bashaywe yizitha zabo.
- 25 Futhi ngaphandle kokuthi baphenduke ngesambatho sesaka kanye nomlotha, futhi bakhale kakhulu eNkosini uNkulunkulu wabo, angizukuyizwa imikhuleko yabo, noma ngibakhulule ezinkathazweni zabo; futhi isho kanje iNkosi, futhi ingiyale kanje.
- 26 Manje kwenzeka ukuthi ngesikhathi u-Abinadi esewakhulumile lamazwi kubo bamthukuthelela, futhi bafuna ukuthatha impilo yakhe; kodwa iNkosi yamkhulula ezandleni zabo.
- 27 Manje ngesikhathi inkosi uNowa isizwile ngalawo mazwi ayekhulunye ngu-Abinadi kubantu, nayo ngokunjalo yathukuthela; futhi yathi: Ngubani u-Abinadi, ukuthi mina nabantu bami singahlulelwa nguye, noma ngubani iNkosi, eyoletha phezu kwabantu bami inkathazo enkulu kangaka na?
- 28 Nginiyala ukuthi nilethe u-Abinadi lapha, ukuze ngimbulale, ngokuba usho lezi zinto ukuze aphehle abantu bami ukuthi bathukuthelelane omunye nomunye, nokuthi avuse imibango phakathi kwabantu bami; ngakho-ke ngizombulala.
- 29 Manje amehlo abantu ayephuphuthekisiwe; ngakho-ke baziqinisa izinhliziyiyo zabo ngokumelene namazwi ka-Abinadi, futhi bafuna kusukela ngaso lesi sikhathi kuyaphambili ukuthi bambambe. Futhi inkosi uNowa yayiqinisa inhliziyiyo yayo ngokumelene namazwi eNkosi, futhi ayiphendukanga ezenzweni zayo zobubi.

And it shall come to pass that they shall know that I am the Lord their God, and am a jealous God, visiting the iniquities of my people.

And it shall come to pass that except this people repent and turn unto the Lord their God, they shall be brought into bondage; and none shall deliver them, except it be the Lord the Almighty God.

Yea, and it shall come to pass that when they shall cry unto me I will be slow to hear their cries; yea, and I will suffer them that they be smitten by their enemies.

And except they repent in sackcloth and ashes, and cry mightily to the Lord their God, I will not hear their prayers, neither will I deliver them out of their afflictions; and thus saith the Lord, and thus hath he commanded me.

Now it came to pass that when Abinadi had spoken these words unto them they were wroth with him, and sought to take away his life; but the Lord delivered him out of their hands.

Now when king Noah had heard of the words which Abinadi had spoken unto the people, he was also wroth; and he said: Who is Abinadi, that I and my people should be judged of him, or who is the Lord, that shall bring upon my people such great affliction?

I command you to bring Abinadi hither, that I may slay him, for he has said these things that he might stir up my people to anger one with another, and to raise contentions among my people; therefore I will slay him.

Now the eyes of the people were blinded; therefore they hardened their hearts against the words of Abinadi, and they sought from that time forward to take him. And king Noah hardened his heart against the word of the Lord, and he did not repent of his evil doings.

Mosiya 12

- 1 Futhi kwenzeka ukuthi emva kwesikhathi esiyiminyaka emibili u-Abinadi wafika phakathi kwabo ezifihlile, kangangoba abazange bamazi, futhi waqala ukuphrofetha phakathi kwabo, ethi: INkosi ingiyale kanje, ithi—Abinadi, hamba uphrofethe kulaba bantu bami, ngokuba bazenze lukhuni izinhliziyzo zabo ngokumelene namazwi ami; abaphendukanga ezenzweni zabo ezimbi; ngakho-ke, ngizobahambela ngentukuthelo yami, yebo, entukuthelweni yolaka lwami ngizobahambela ebusini kanye nasezinengisweni zabo.
- 2 Yebo, maye kulesi sizukulwane! Futhi iNkosi yathi kimi: Yelula isandla sakho uphrofethe, uthi: Isho kanje iNkosi, kuyokwenzeka ukuthi lesi sizukulwane, ngenxa yobubi baso obukhulu, siyoledwa ekuthunjweni, futhi siyoshaywa esihlathini; yebo, futhi siyobalekiswa ngabantu, futhi siyobulawa; futhi amaqe ezulu, nezinja, yebo, kanye nezilwane zasendle, ziyoyishwabedela inyama yabo.
- 3 Futhi kuyokwenzeka ukuthi impilo yenkosi uNowa iyoba yize ngisho njengengubo esithandweni somlilo esishisayo; ngokuba uyokwazi ukuthi mina ngiyiNkosi.
- 4 Futhi kuyokwenzeka ukuthi ngizobashaya laba bantu bami ngezinkathazo ezibuhlungu, yebo, ngendlala kanye nomashayabhuqe wesifo; futhi ngizokwenza ukuthi bahhewule imini yonke.
- 5 Yebo, futhi ngiyokwenza ukuthi babe nemithwalo eboshelwe emihlane yabo; futhi bayoqhutshelwa phambili njengembongolo eyisimungulu.
- 6 Futhi kuyokwenzeka ukuthi ngizothumela isichotho phakathi kwabo, futhi siyobashaya; futhi phezu kwalokho bayoshaywa ngomoya wasempumalanga; izinambuzane ziyokhathaza izwe labo futhi, futhi zishwabadele okusanhlamvu kwabo.
- 7 Futhi bayoshaywa ngomashayabhuqe wesifo esikhulu—futhi konke lokhu ngizokwenza ngenxa yobubi kanye nezinengiso zabo.

Mosiah 12

And it came to pass that after the space of two years that Abinadi came among them in disguise, that they knew him not, and began to prophesy among them, saying: Thus has the Lord commanded me, saying—Abinadi, go and prophesy unto this my people, for they have hardened their hearts against my words; they have repented not of their evil doings; therefore, I will visit them in my anger, yea, in my fierce anger will I visit them in their iniquities and abominations.

Yea, wo be unto this generation! And the Lord said unto me: Stretch forth thy hand and prophesy, saying: Thus saith the Lord, it shall come to pass that this generation, because of their iniquities, shall be brought into bondage, and shall be smitten on the cheek; yea, and shall be driven by men, and shall be slain; and the vultures of the air, and the dogs, yea, and the wild beasts, shall devour their flesh.

And it shall come to pass that the life of king Noah shall be valued even as a garment in a hot furnace; for he shall know that I am the Lord.

And it shall come to pass that I will smite this my people with sore afflictions, yea, with famine and with pestilence; and I will cause that they shall howl all the day long.

Yea, and I will cause that they shall have burdens lashed upon their backs; and they shall be driven before like a dumb ass.

And it shall come to pass that I will send forth hail among them, and it shall smite them; and they shall also be smitten with the east wind; and insects shall pester their land also, and devour their grain.

And they shall be smitten with a great pestilence—and all this will I do because of their iniquities and abominations.

- 8 Futhi kuyokwenzeka ukuthi ngaphandle kokuthi baphenduke ngizobabhubhisa nya ebusweni bomhlaba; nokho bayoshiya umbhalo ngemuva kwabo, futhi ngizowugcinela ezinye izizwe eziyothola lelizwe; yebo, ngisho nalokhu ngizokwenza ukuze ngiveze izinengiso zalaba bantu kwezinye izizwe. Futhi ziningi izinto u-Abinadi aziphrofetha ngokumelene nalaba bantu.
- 9 Futhi kwenzeka ukuthi bamthukuthelela; futhi bamthatha bamthwala bembophile bamyisa phambi kwenkosi, bathi enkosini: Bheka, silethe indoda phambi kwakho ephrofethe ububi mayelana nabantu bakho, yathi uNkulunkulu uzobabhubhisa.
- 10 Futhi phezu kwalokho iphrofethe ububi mayelana nempilo yakho, yathi impilo yakho iyoba njengengubo esithandweni somlilo.
- 11 Futhi phezu kwalokho, ithe wena uyoba njengohlanga, ngisho nanjengohlanga olomileyo lwensimu, okugijima izilwane phezu kwalo futhi lunyathelwe phansi kwezinyawo.
- 12 Futhi phezu kwalokho, ithi wena uyoba njengembali yekhakhasi, okuthi uma seyivuthwe ngokupheleleyo, uma umoya uvunguza, ipheshulelwe phezu kobuso bezwe. Futhi wenza sengathi yiNkosi ekukhulumile lokho. Futhi uthi konke lokhu kuyoza kuwe ngaphandle kokuthi uphenduke, futhi lokhu kungenxa yobubi bakho.
- 13 Manje, O nkosi, bubi buni obukhulu obenzile, noma zono zini ezinkulu ezenziwe ngabantu bakho, ukuthi thina sijeziwe nguNkulunkulu noma sehlulelwe yilendoda na?
- 14 Manje, O nkosi, bheka, thina asinacala, futhi nawe, O nkosi, awuzange wone; ngakho-ke, lendoda iqambe amanga mayelana nawe, futhi iphrofethe ngeze.
- 15 Futhi bheka, thina siqinile, ngeke sithunjwe, noma sithathwe sigqilazwe yizitha zethu; yebo, futhi wena uphumelele kulelizwe, futhi phezu kwalokho usazophumelela.
- 16 Bheka, nansi lendoda, siyiletha kwezakho izandla; ungenza noma yini kuyo lokho okubonakala kukuhle kuwe.

And it shall come to pass that except they repent I will utterly destroy them from off the face of the earth; yet they shall leave a record behind them, and I will preserve them for other nations which shall possess the land; yea, even this will I do that I may discover the abominations of this people to other nations. And many things did Abinadi prophesy against this people.

And it came to pass that they were angry with him; and they took him and carried him bound before the king, and said unto the king: Behold, we have brought a man before thee who has prophesied evil concerning thy people, and saith that God will destroy them.

And he also prophesieth evil concerning thy life, and saith that thy life shall be as a garment in a furnace of fire.

And again, he saith that thou shalt be as a stalk, even as a dry stalk of the field, which is run over by the beasts and trodden under foot.

And again, he saith thou shalt be as the blossoms of a thistle, which, when it is fully ripe, if the wind bloweth, it is driven forth upon the face of the land. And he pretendeth the Lord hath spoken it. And he saith all this shall come upon thee except thou repent, and this because of thine iniquities.

And now, O king, what great evil hast thou done, or what great sins have thy people committed, that we should be condemned of God or judged of this man?

And now, O king, behold, we are guiltless, and thou, O king, hast not sinned; therefore, this man has lied concerning you, and he has prophesied in vain.

And behold, we are strong, we shall not come into bondage, or be taken captive by our enemies; yea, and thou hast prospered in the land, and thou shalt also prosper.

Behold, here is the man, we deliver him into thy hands; thou mayest do with him as seemeth thee good.

- 17 Futhi kwenzeka ukuthi inkosi uNowa wenza ukuthi u-Abinadi aphantswe etilongweni; futhi wayala ukuthi abaphristi babuthane ndawonye ukuze abambe umhlangano nabo ukuthi enzeni ngaye.
- 18 Futhi kwenzeka ukuthi bathi enkosini: Mlethe lapha ukuze simbuze; futhi inkosi yayala ukuthi makalethwe phambi kwabo.
- 19 Futhi baqala ukumbuza, ukuze bamphice, ukuze ngalokho babe nalokho abangambeka icala ngakho; kodwa wabaphendula ngesibindi, futhi wayimela yonke imibuzo yabo, yebo, baze bamangala nabo; ngokuba nempela wamelana nabo kuyo yonke imibuzo yabo, futhi nempela wabanqoba ngenkulumo kuwo wonke amazwi abo.
- 20 Futhi kwenzeka ukuthi omunye wabo wathi kuye: Asho ukuthini amazwi abhaliwe, afundiswa ngobaba bethu, bethi:
- 21 Zinhle kangakanani phezu kwezintaba izinyawo zalowo oletha izindaba ezinhle; omemezela ukuthula; oletha izindaba ezinhle zobuhle; omemezela insindiso; othi kwiSiyoni, UNkulunkulu wakho uyabusa;
- 22 Abalindi bakho bayophakamisa izwi; ngezwi elilodwa bayohlabelela; ngokuba bayobona iso neso lapho iNkosi iphinda iletha iSiyoni;
- 23 Qhumuka ngokujabula; hlabelelani kanyekanye nina zindawo ezichithiweyo zaseJerusalema; ngokuba iNkosi ibaduduzile abantu bayo, iyihlengile iJerusalema;
- 24 INkosi yembule ingalo yayo engcwele emehlweni azo zonke izizwe, futhi yonke imikhawulo yomhlaba iyoyibona insindiso kaNkulunkulu wethu na?
- 25 Manje u-Abinadi wathi kubo: Ngabe ningabaphristi na, futhi nishaya sengathi nifundisa laba bantu, futhi nokuthi niyaqonda ngomoya wokuphrofetha, kodwa nifisa ukwazi kimi ukuthi lezi zinto zisho ukuthini na?
- 26 Ngithi kini, maye kini ngokuba niphendukezela izindlela zeNkosi! Ngokuba uma niziqonda lezi zinto anizange nizifundise; ngakho-ke, niphendukezela izindlela zeNkosi.

And it came to pass that king Noah caused that Abinadi should be cast into prison; and he commanded that the priests should gather themselves together that he might hold a council with them what he should do with him.

And it came to pass that they said unto the king: Bring him hither that we may question him; and the king commanded that he should be brought before them.

And they began to question him, that they might cross him, that thereby they might have wherewith to accuse him; but he answered them boldly, and withstood all their questions, yea, to their astonishment; for he did withstand them in all their questions, and did confound them in all their words.

And it came to pass that one of them said unto him: What meaneth the words which are written, and which have been taught by our fathers, saying:

How beautiful upon the mountains are the feet of him that bringeth good tidings; that publisheth peace; that bringeth good tidings of good; that publisheth salvation; that saith unto Zion, Thy God reigneth;

Thy watchmen shall lift up the voice; with the voice together shall they sing; for they shall see eye to eye when the Lord shall bring again Zion;

Break forth into joy; sing together ye waste places of Jerusalem; for the Lord hath comforted his people, he hath redeemed Jerusalem;

The Lord hath made bare his holy arm in the eyes of all the nations, and all the ends of the earth shall see the salvation of our God?

And now Abinadi said unto them: Are you priests, and pretend to teach this people, and to understand the spirit of prophesying, and yet desire to know of me what these things mean?

I say unto you, wo be unto you for perverting the ways of the Lord! For if ye understand these things ye have not taught them; therefore, ye have perverted the ways of the Lord.

27 Anizange nifise ezinhliziyweni zenu ukuqonda; ngakho-ke, anibanga nakho ukuhlakanipha. Ngakho-ke, nibafundisani laba bantu na?

28 Futhi bathi: Sifundisa umthetho kaMose.

29 Futhi wathi kubo: Uma nifundisa umthetho kaMose pho kungani ningawugcini na? Kungani nibeka izinhliziyu zenu engcebweni na? Kungani nenza ubufebe futhi nichitha amandla enu nezifebe, yebo, futhi nenze labantu ukuthi benze isono, kangangokuthi iNkosi ibe nesizathu sokungithumela ukuthi ngiphrofethe ngokumelene nalaba bantu, yebo, ngisho nangobubi obukhulu ngokumelene nalaba bantu na?

30 Anazi yini ukuthi ngikhuluma iqiniso na? Yebo, niyazi ukuthi ngikhuluma iqiniso; futhi nifanele ukuthuthumela phambi kukaNkulunkulu.

31 Futhi kuyokwenzeka ukuthi niyoshaywa ngobubi benu, ngokuba nithe nifundisa umthetho kaMose. Futhi nazini mayelana nomthetho kaMose na? Ngabe insindiso iza ngomthetho kaMose na? Nithini na?

32 Futhi baphendula futhi bathi insindiso nempela yayiza ngomthetho kaMose.

33 Kodwa manje u-Abinadi wathi kubo: Ngiyazi uma nigcina imiyalelo kaNkulunkulu niyosindiswa; yebo, uma nigcina imiyalelo iNkosi eyayiletha kuMose entabeni yaseSinayi, ethi:

34 NgiyiNkosi uNkulunkulu wakho, okukhiphe ezweni laseGibithe, wakukhipha emzini wobugqili.

35 Awuyikuba nomunye uNkulunkulu ngaphandle kwami.

36 Ungazenzeli nasithombe esibaziweyo, noma umfanekiso wanoma yini esezulwini phezulu, noma izinto ezisemhlabeni ngaphansi.

37 Manje u-Abinadi wathi kubo, Ngabe nikwenzile konke lokhu na? Ngithi kini, Cha, anikwenzanga. Futhi ngabe nibafundisile yini laba bantu ukuthi kumele benze zonke lezi zinto na? Ngithi kini, Cha, anizange.

Ye have not applied your hearts to understanding; therefore, ye have not been wise. Therefore, what teach ye this people?

And they said: We teach the law of Moses.

And again he said unto them: If ye teach the law of Moses why do ye not keep it? Why do ye set your hearts upon riches? Why do ye commit whoredoms and spend your strength with harlots, yea, and cause this people to commit sin, that the Lord has cause to send me to prophesy against this people, yea, even a great evil against this people?

Know ye not that I speak the truth? Yea, ye know that I speak the truth; and you ought to tremble before God.

And it shall come to pass that ye shall be smitten for your iniquities, for ye have said that ye teach the law of Moses. And what know ye concerning the law of Moses? Doth salvation come by the law of Moses? What say ye?

And they answered and said that salvation did come by the law of Moses.

But now Abinadi said unto them: I know if ye keep the commandments of God ye shall be saved; yea, if ye keep the commandments which the Lord delivered unto Moses in the mount of Sinai, saying:

I am the Lord thy God, who hath brought thee out of the land of Egypt, out of the house of bondage.

Thou shalt have no other God before me.

Thou shalt not make unto thee any graven image, or any likeness of any thing in heaven above, or things which are in the earth beneath.

Now Abinadi said unto them, Have ye done all this? I say unto you, Nay, ye have not. And have ye taught this people that they should do all these things? I say unto you, Nay, ye have not.

Mosiya 13

- 1 Manje ngesikhathi inkosi isiwazwile lamazwi, yathi kubaphristi bayo: Susani lomfokazi, nimbulale; ngokuba singenzani ngaye, ngokuba uyahlanya.
- 2 Futhi baphumela obala bazama ukumbamba; kodwa wamelana nabo, futhi wathi kubo:
- 3 Ningangithinti, ngokuba uNkulunkulu uzonishaya uma nibeka izandla zenu kimi, ngokuba angikaniniki umyalezo iNkosi engithume ukuthi ngiwulethe; futhi angikanitsheli ngalokho enicele ukuthi nginitshela khona; ngakho-ke, uNkulunkulu akanakuvuma ukuthi ngibhujiswe ngalesi sikhathi.
- 4 Kodwa kufanele ngigcwalise imiyalelo uNkulunkulu angiyale ngayo; futhi ngenxa yokuthi nginitshela iqiniso ningithukuthelele. Futhi phezu kwalokho, ngenxa yokuthi ngikhulume izwi likaNkulunkulu ningahlulele ngokuthi ngiyahlanya.
- 5 Manje kwenzeka emva kokuthi u-Abinadi esewakhulumile lamazwi abantu benkosi uNowa abalokothanga babeka izandla zabo kuye, ngokuba uMoya weNkosi wawuphezu kwakhe; futhi ubuso bakhe bakhanya ngenkazimulo enkulu, ngisho nanjengobukaMose ngesikhathi esentabeni yaseSinayi, ngesikhathi ekhuluma neNkosi.
- 6 Futhi wakhuluma ngamandla nangegunya elivela kuNkulunkulu; futhi waqhubeka namazwi akhe, ethi:
- 7 Niyabona ukuthi aninamandla okungibulala, ngakho-ke ngiyawuqedela umyalezo wami. Yebo, futhi ngiyabona ukuthi linidabula ezinhliziyweni zenu ngenxa yokuthi nginitshela iqiniso mayelana nobubi benu.
- 8 Yebo, futhi amazwi ami anigcwalisa ngokumangala nokwethuka, kanye nokuthukuthela.
- 9 Kodwa ngiyawuqedela umyalezo wami; futhi emva kwalokho akunandaba ukuthi ngiyakuphi, uma kungukuthi nje ngiyosindiswa.
- 10 Kodwa yilokhu enginitshela khona, lokho enikwenza kimi, emva kwalokhu, kuyokuba njengesibonakaliso kanye nomfanekiso wezinto ezizokwenzeka.

Mosiah 13

And now when the king had heard these words, he said unto his priests: Away with this fellow, and slay him; for what have we to do with him, for he is mad.

And they stood forth and attempted to lay their hands on him; but he withstood them, and said unto them:

Touch me not, for God shall smite you if ye lay your hands upon me, for I have not delivered the message which the Lord sent me to deliver; neither have I told you that which ye requested that I should tell; therefore, God will not suffer that I shall be destroyed at this time.

But I must fulfil the commandments wherewith God has commanded me; and because I have told you the truth ye are angry with me. And again, because I have spoken the word of God ye have judged me that I am mad.

Now it came to pass after Abinadi had spoken these words that the people of king Noah durst not lay their hands on him, for the Spirit of the Lord was upon him; and his face shone with exceeding luster, even as Moses' did while in the mount of Sinai, while speaking with the Lord.

And he spake with power and authority from God; and he continued his words, saying:

Ye see that ye have not power to slay me, therefore I finish my message. Yea, and I perceive that it cuts you to your hearts because I tell you the truth concerning your iniquities.

Yea, and my words fill you with wonder and amazement, and with anger.

But I finish my message; and then it matters not whither I go, if it so be that I am saved.

But this much I tell you, what you do with me, after this, shall be as a type and a shadow of things which are to come.

- 11 Manje nginifundela insalela yemiyalelo kaNkulunkulu, ngokuba ngiyabona ukuthi ayibhaliwe ezinhliziyweni zenu; ngiyabona ukuthi nifundile futhi nafundisa ububi isikhathi esiningi sezimpilo zenu.
- 12 Manje, niyakhumbula ukuthi ngithe kini: Ungazenzeli isithombe esibaziweyo, noma ngabe yimuphi umfanekiso wezinto ezisezulwini phezulu, noma ezisemhlabeni ngaphansi, noma ezisemanzini ngaphansi komhlaba.
- 13 Futhi phezu kwalokho: Ungazikhothameli, noma uzikhonze; ngokuba mina iNkosi uNkulunkulu wakho nginguNkulunkulu onomhawu, ngihambela ububi boyise kubantwana, kuso isizukulwane sesithathu kanye nesesine salabo abangizondayo;
- 14 Futhi ngikhombisa umusa kwabayizinkulungwane zalabo abangithandayo futhi nabagcina imiyalelo yami.
- 15 Ungaliphathi ngeze igama leNkosi uNkulunkulu wakho; ngokuba iNkosi ayizukumyeka ongenacala ophatha ngeze igama layo.
- 16 Khumbula usuku lwesabatha, ukulugcina lungcwele.
- 17 Izinsuku eziyisithupha uyosebenza, wenze ngazo wonke umsebenzi wakho;
- 18 Kodwa usuku lwesikhombisa, luyisabatha lweNkosi uNkulunkulu wakho, ungenzi namuphi umsebenzi, wena, noma yindodana yakho, noma yindodakazi yakho, nenceku yakho, noma yincekukazi yakho, noma yizinkomo zakho, noma yisihambi esingaphakathi kwamasango akho.
- 19 Ngokuba ngezinsuku eziyisithupha iNkosi yenza izulu nomhlaba, nolwandle, kanye nakho konke okukukho; ngalokho-ke iNkosi yalubusisa usuku lwesabatha, futhi yalungcwelisa.
- 20 Hlonipha uyihlo nonyoko, ukuze izinsuku zakho zande ezweni iNkosi uNkulunkulu wakho ekunike lona.
- 21 Ungabulali.
- 22 Ungaphingi. Ungebi.
- 23 Ungafakazi ngamanga ngomakhelwane wakho.
- And now I read unto you the remainder of the commandments of God, for I perceive that they are not written in your hearts; I perceive that ye have studied and taught iniquity the most part of your lives.
- And now, ye remember that I said unto you: Thou shalt not make unto thee any graven image, or any likeness of things which are in heaven above, or which are in the earth beneath, or which are in the water under the earth.
- And again: Thou shalt not bow down thyself unto them, nor serve them; for I the Lord thy God am a jealous God, visiting the iniquities of the fathers upon the children, unto the third and fourth generations of them that hate me;
- And showing mercy unto thousands of them that love me and keep my commandments.
- Thou shalt not take the name of the Lord thy God in vain; for the Lord will not hold him guiltless that taketh his name in vain.
- Remember the sabbath day, to keep it holy.
- Six days shalt thou labor, and do all thy work;
- But the seventh day, the sabbath of the Lord thy God, thou shalt not do any work, thou, nor thy son, nor thy daughter, thy man-servant, nor thy maid-servant, nor thy cattle, nor thy stranger that is within thy gates;
- For in six days the Lord made heaven and earth, and the sea, and all that in them is; wherefore the Lord blessed the sabbath day, and hallowed it.
- Honor thy father and thy mother, that thy days may be long upon the land which the Lord thy God giveth thee.
- Thou shalt not kill.
- Thou shalt not commit adultery. Thou shalt not steal.
- Thou shalt not bear false witness against thy neighbor.

24 Ungafisi indlu kamakhelwane wakho, ungamfisi umfazi kamakhelwane wakho, noma inceku yakhe, noma incekekazi yakhe, noma inkabi yakhe, noma imbongolo yakhe, noma yini engekamakhelwane wakho.

25 Futhi kwenzeka ukuthi emva kokuthi u-Abinadi eseyiqedile lenkulumo wathi kubo: Ngabe nibafundisile yini laba bantu ukuthi baqaphele ukwenza zonke lezi zinto ukuze bayigcine lemiyalelo na?

26 Ngithi kini, Cha; ngokuba ukuba nikwenzile lokho, iNkosi ibingenakungenza ukuthi ngize lapha futhi ngiphrofethe ngobubi mayelana nalaba bantu.

27 Manje nithe insindiso iza ngomthetho kaMose. Ngithi kini kudingekile ukuthi niwugcine umthetho kaMose okwamanje; kodwa ngithi kini, isikhathi siyofika lapho kuyobe kungasadingekile nanini ukugcina umthetho kaMose.

28 Futhi ngaphezu kwalokho, ngithi kini, insindiso ayizi ngomthetho kaMose kuphela; futhi ukuba kwakungave kungenxa yenhlawulo, uNkulunkulu uqobo lwakhe ayoyenza ngenxa yezono kanye nobubi babantu bakhe, kufanele babhubhe ngokungavimbeleki, nakuba kukhona umthetho kaMose.

29 Manje ngithi kini kwakudingekile ukuthi kube khona umthetho onikezwa abantwana bakwa-Israyeli, yebo, ngisho umthetho oqine kakhulu; ngokuba babengabantu abangontamolukhuni, beshesha ukwenza ububi, futhi bephuza ukukhumbula iNkosi uNkulunkulu wabo;

30 Ngakho-ke kwakukhona umthetho ababenikwe wona, yebo, umthetho wezenzo kanye nezimiso, umthetho ababezowuqaphela ngobuqotho usuku nosuku, ukuze bagcinwe ekumkhumbuleni uNkulunkulu kanye nomsebenzi wabo kuye.

31 Kodwa bhekani, ngithi kini, zonke lezi zinto zaziyizibonakaliso sezinto ezazizokwenzeka.

32 Manje, ngabe bawuqonda yini umthetho na? Ngithi kini, Cha, abawuqondanga bonke umthetho; futhi lokhu kungenxa yobulukhuni bezinhliziyo zabo; ngokuba abaqondanga ukuthi akunakuba khona namunye umuntu osindiswayo ngaphandle kokuthi kube ngokukhululwa nguNkulunkulu.

Thou shalt not covet thy neighbor's house, thou shalt not covet thy neighbor's wife, nor his manservant, nor his maid-servant, nor his ox, nor his ass, nor anything that is thy neighbor's.

And it came to pass that after Abinadi had made an end of these sayings that he said unto them: Have ye taught this people that they should observe to do all these things for to keep these commandments?

I say unto you, Nay; for if ye had, the Lord would not have caused me to come forth and to prophesy evil concerning this people.

And now ye have said that salvation cometh by the law of Moses. I say unto you that it is expedient that ye should keep the law of Moses as yet; but I say unto you, that the time shall come when it shall no more be expedient to keep the law of Moses.

And moreover, I say unto you, that salvation doth not come by the law alone; and were it not for the atonement, which God himself shall make for the sins and iniquities of his people, that they must unavoidably perish, notwithstanding the law of Moses.

And now I say unto you that it was expedient that there should be a law given to the children of Israel, yea, even a very strict law; for they were a stiffnecked people, quick to do iniquity, and slow to remember the Lord their God;

Therefore there was a law given them, yea, a law of performances and of ordinances, a law which they were to observe strictly from day to day, to keep them in remembrance of God and their duty towards him.

But behold, I say unto you, that all these things were types of things to come.

And now, did they understand the law? I say unto you, Nay, they did not all understand the law; and this because of the hardness of their hearts; for they understood not that there could not any man be saved except it were through the redemption of God.

33 Ngokuba bhekani, ngabe uMose akaphrofethanga yini kubo mayelana nokuza kukaMesiya, kanye nokuthi uNkulunkulu uyokhulula abantu bakhe na? Yebo, futhi ngisho bonke abaphrofethi abaphrofetha kusukela ekudabukeni komhlaba—abakhulumanga yini ngalokho okuthi akufane nalezi zinto na?

34 Abashongo yini ukuthi uNkulunkulu uqobo lwakhe uyokuza phansi phakathi kwabantwana babantu, athathe isimo somuntu, futhi ahambe ngamandla amakhulu phezu kobuso bomhlaba na?

35 Yebo, futhi abashongo yini ukuthi uyokwenza kube khona ukuvuka kwabafileyo, nokuthi yena, uqobo lwakhe, uyocindezelwa futhi ahlushwe na?

For behold, did not Moses prophesy unto them concerning the coming of the Messiah, and that God should redeem his people? Yea, and even all the prophets who have prophesied ever since the world began—have they not spoken more or less concerning these things?

Have they not said that God himself should come down among the children of men, and take upon him the form of man, and go forth in mighty power upon the face of the earth?

Yea, and have they not said also that he should bring to pass the resurrection of the dead, and that he, himself, should be oppressed and afflicted?

Mosiya 14

- 1 Yebo, ngisho u-Isaya akashongo yini ukuthi: Ngubani okholwe wumbiko wethu, futhi ingalo yeNkosi yambulelwe bani na?
- 2 Ngokuba uyokhula phambi kwakhe njengesitshalo esintekenteke, futhi nanjengempande ephuma emhlabathini owomileyo; akanasimo noma nakubukeka; futhi ngesikhathi sesimbona akukho buhle esiyobe sibufuna ukuze simthande.
- 3 Udelelwe futhi wenqatshwa ngabantu; umuntu wokudabuka, futhi owaziyo ngosizi; futhi sibucashisile ubuso bethu kuye; wadelelwa, futhi asimazisanga.
- 4 Ngempela uzithwalile izinsizi zethu, futhi wakutshatha nokudabuka kwethu; kodwa thina nempela sithe ujezisiwe, ushaywe nguNkulunkulu, futhi uhlushiwe.
- 5 Kodwa walinyazwa ngenxa yeziphambeko zethu, futhi wahuzulwa ngenxa yobubi bethu; isijeziso esiletha ukuthula kithi sasiphezu kwakhe; futhi ngemivimbo yakhe siphilisiwe.
- 6 Sonke, sinjengezimvu, sidukile; yilowo nalowo uphendukele endleleni yakhe; futhi iNkosi yehlisele kuye ububi bethu sonke.
- 7 Wacindezelwa, futhi wahlushwa, kodwa akawuvulanga umlomo wakhe; ulethwa njengemvana ekuhlatshweni, nanjengemvu phambi kwabagundi bayo iyisimungulu kanjalo akawuvulanga umlomo wakhe.
- 8 Wakhishwa etilongweni kanye nasekwahlulelweni; futhi ngubani oyomemezela isizukulwane sakhe na? Ngokuba wabulawa waphuma ezweni labaphilayo; ngenxa yeziphambeko zabantu bami washaywa.
- 9 Futhi walibeka ithuna lakhe kanye nababi, futhi kanye nesicebi ekufeni kwakhe; nakuba yena engenzanga bubi, noma kungekho nankohliso emlonyeni wakhe.
- 10 Nokho kwayijabulisa iNkosi ukumhuzula; yamfaka osizini; uma ungenza umphefumulo wakhe umnikelo wesono yena uyoyibona inzalo yakhe, uyozelula izinsuku zakhe, futhi intando yeNkosi iyophumelela esandleni sakhe.

Mosiah 14

Yea, even doth not Isaiah say: Who hath believed our report, and to whom is the arm of the Lord revealed?

For he shall grow up before him as a tender plant, and as a root out of dry ground; he hath no form nor comeliness; and when we shall see him there is no beauty that we should desire him.

He is despised and rejected of men; a man of sorrows, and acquainted with grief; and we hid as it were our faces from him; he was despised, and we esteemed him not.

Surely he has borne our griefs, and carried our sorrows; yet we did esteem him stricken, smitten of God, and afflicted.

But he was wounded for our transgressions, he was bruised for our iniquities; the chastisement of our peace was upon him; and with his stripes we are healed.

All we, like sheep, have gone astray; we have turned every one to his own way; and the Lord hath laid on him the iniquities of us all.

He was oppressed, and he was afflicted, yet he opened not his mouth; he is brought as a lamb to the slaughter, and as a sheep before her shearers is dumb so he opened not his mouth.

He was taken from prison and from judgment; and who shall declare his generation? For he was cut off out of the land of the living; for the transgressions of my people was he stricken.

And he made his grave with the wicked, and with the rich in his death; because he had done no evil, neither was any deceit in his mouth.

Yet it pleased the Lord to bruise him; he hath put him to grief; when thou shalt make his soul an offering for sin he shall see his seed, he shall prolong his days, and the pleasure of the Lord shall prosper in his hand.

11 Uyokubona ubuhlungu bomphefumulo wakhe,
futhi uyokwaneliseka; ngolwazi lwakhe inceku yami
elungileyo iyobathola bengenacala abaningi;
ngokuba uyobuthwala ububi babo.

12 Ngakho-ke ngizomabela inxenye kanye
nabakhulu, futhi uyohlukanisa impango
nabanamandla; ngokuba uwuthululile
umphefumulo wakhe ekufeni; futhi wabalwa kanye
nezoni; futhi wazithwala izono zabaningi, futhi
wazincengela izoni.

He shall see the travail of his soul, and shall be satisfied; by his knowledge shall my righteous servant justify many; for he shall bear their iniquities.

Therefore will I divide him a portion with the great, and he shall divide the spoil with the strong; because he hath poured out his soul unto death; and he was numbered with the transgressors; and he bore the sins of many, and made intercession for the transgressors.

Mosiya 15

- 1 Manje u-Abinadi wathi kubo: Ngifuna ukuthi niqonde ukuthi uNkulunkulu uqobo lwakhe uyokuza phansi phakathi kwabantwana babantu, futhi uyokhulula abantu bakhe.
- 2 Futhi ngenxa yokuthi esenyameni uyobizwa ngokuthi uyiNdodana kaNkulunkulu, futhi esenze inyama yaba ngaphansi kwentando kaBaba, enguBaba futhi eyiNdodana—
- 3 EnguBaba, ngenxa yokuthi wazalwa ngamandla kaNkulunkulu; futhi eyiNdodana ngenxa yenyama; ngaleyondlela eba nguBaba kanye neNdodana—
- 4 Futhi banguNkulunkulu munye, yebo, yena kanye uBaba waPhakade wasezulwini kanye nasemhlabeni.
- 5 Ngakho-ke inyama iba ngaphansi koMoya, noma iNdodana iba ngaphansi kukaBaba, benguNkulunkulu munye, owahlushwa wukulingwa, futhi wangayengeka ekulingweni, kodwa wavumela ukuthi ahlekwe usulu, abhaxabulwe, axoshwe, futhi enqatshwe ngabantu bakhe.
- 6 Futhi emva kwakho konke lokhu, emva kokwenza eziningi nezinkulu izimangaliso phakathi kwabantwana babantu, uyoholwa, yebo, ngisho njengoba u-Isaya athi, njengemvu phambi kwabagundi iyisimunguli, njengoba kushiwo akawuvulanga umlomo wakhe.
- 7 Yebo, ngisho njengoba kushiwo naye uyoholwa, abethelwe, futhi abulawe, inyama ibe ngaphansi ngisho kokufa, intando yeNdodana igwinywe yintando kaBaba.
- 8 Futhi ngaleyo ndlela uNkulunkulu uzingqabulile izibopho zokufa, esethole ukunqoba phezu kokufa; enikeza iNdodana amandla ukuthi incengele abantwana babantu—
- 9 Esenyukele ezulwini, enesihawu ezibilini; egcwele ububele kubantwana babantu; emi phakathi kwabo kanye nokulunga; esezigqabulile izibopho zokufa, esethwale ububi babo kanye neziphambeko zabo, esebakhululile, futhi wenelisa izimfuno zokulunga.

Mosiah 15

And now Abinadi said unto them: I would that ye should understand that God himself shall come down among the children of men, and shall redeem his people.

And because he dwelleth in flesh he shall be called the Son of God, and having subjected the flesh to the will of the Father, being the Father and the Son—

The Father, because he was conceived by the power of God; and the Son, because of the flesh; thus becoming the Father and Son—

And they are one God, yea, the very Eternal Father of heaven and of earth.

And thus the flesh becoming subject to the Spirit, or the Son to the Father, being one God, suffereth temptation, and yieldeth not to the temptation, but suffereth himself to be mocked, and scourged, and cast out, and disowned by his people.

And after all this, after working many mighty miracles among the children of men, he shall be led, yea, even as Isaiah said, as a sheep before the shearer is dumb, so he opened not his mouth.

Yea, even so he shall be led, crucified, and slain, the flesh becoming subject even unto death, the will of the Son being swallowed up in the will of the Father.

And thus God breaketh the bands of death, having gained the victory over death; giving the Son power to make intercession for the children of men—

Having ascended into heaven, having the bowels of mercy; being filled with compassion towards the children of men; standing betwixt them and justice; having broken the bands of death, taken upon himself their iniquity and their transgressions, having redeemed them, and satisfied the demands of justice.

10 Manje ngithi kini, ngubani oyomemezela isizukulwane sakhe na? Bheka, ngithi kini, uma umphefumulo wakhe sewenziwe umnikelo wesono uyoyibona inzalo yakhe. Manje nithini na? Futhi ngubani oyokuba yinzalo yakhe na?

11 Bheka ngithi kini, lowo owazwile amazwi abaphrofethi, yebo, bonke abaphrofethi abangcwele abaphrofethayo mayelana nokuza kweNkosi —Ngithi kini, bonke labo abawalalela amazwi abo, futhi bakholwa ukuthi iNkosi iyobakhulula abantu bayo, futhi balindela lolo suku lokuthethelelwa kwezono zabo, ngithi kini, yilaba abayinzalo yakhe, noma abayizindlalifa zombuso kaNkulunkulu.

12 Ngokuba yibo laba izono zabo azithwala; yibo laba abafelayo, ukubakhulula eziphambekweni zabo. Manje, ngabe abasiyo yini inzalo yakhe na?

13 Yebo, futhi ngabe akubona yini abaphrofethi, wonke umuntu ovule umlomo wakhe ukuphrofetha, ongawelanga esiphambekweni, ngisho bonke abaphrofethi abangcwele kusukela ekuqaleni komhlaba na? Ngithi kini bayinzalo yakhe.

14 Futhi yibo laba abamemezele ukuthula, abalethe izindaba ezinhle, abamemezele insindiso; futhi bathi kuyo iSiyoni: UNkulunkulu wakho uyabusa!

15 Futhi O zazizinhle kangakanani phezu kwezintaba izinyawo zabo!

16 Futhi phezu kwalokho, zinhle kangakanani phezu kwezintaba izinyawo zalabo namanje abasamemezela ukuthula!

17 Futhi phezu kwalokho, zinhle kangakanani phezu kwezintaba izinyawo zalabo okuyothi emva kwalokhu bamemezele ukuthula, yebo, kusukela ngalesi sikhathi kuqhubeka futhi ingunaphakade!

18 Futhi bhekani, ngithi kini, akukuphela kwakho lokhu. Ngokuba O zinhle kangakanani phezu kwezintaba izinyawo zalowo oletha izindaba ezinhle, lowo ongumsunguli wokuthula, yebo, ngisho iNkosi, ekhulule abantu bayo; yebo, elethe insindiso kubantu bayo;

And now I say unto you, who shall declare his generation? Behold, I say unto you, that when his soul has been made an offering for sin he shall see his seed. And now what say ye? And who shall be his seed?

Behold I say unto you, that whosoever has heard the words of the prophets, yea, all the holy prophets who have prophesied concerning the coming of the Lord—I say unto you, that all those who have hearkened unto their words, and believed that the Lord would redeem his people, and have looked forward to that day for a remission of their sins, I say unto you, that these are his seed, or they are the heirs of the kingdom of God.

For these are they whose sins he has borne; these are they for whom he has died, to redeem them from their transgressions. And now, are they not his seed?

Yea, and are not the prophets, every one that has opened his mouth to prophesy, that has not fallen into transgression, I mean all the holy prophets ever since the world began? I say unto you that they are his seed.

And these are they who have published peace, who have brought good tidings of good, who have published salvation; and said unto Zion: Thy God reigneth!

And O how beautiful upon the mountains were their feet!

And again, how beautiful upon the mountains are the feet of those that are still publishing peace!

And again, how beautiful upon the mountains are the feet of those who shall hereafter publish peace, yea, from this time henceforth and forever!

And behold, I say unto you, this is not all. For O how beautiful upon the mountains are the feet of him that bringeth good tidings, that is the founder of peace, yea, even the Lord, who has redeemed his people; yea, him who has granted salvation unto his people;

- 19 Ngokuba ukuba kwakungave kungenxa yokukhululwa eyakwenzela abantu bayo, okwalungiswa kusukela ekusekelweni komhlaba, ngithi kini, uma kwakungave kungenxa yalokhu, bonke abantu kwakufanele babhubhe.
- 20 Kodwa bhekani, izibopho zokufa ziyogqashulwa, iNdodana iyabusa, futhi inamandla phezu kwabafileyo; ngakho-ke, ifeza ukuvuka kwabafileyo.
- 21 Futhi kuza uvuko, ngisho uvuko lokuqala; yebo, ngisho uvuko lwalabo ababekhona, kanye nalabo abakhona, kanye nalabo abayoba khona, ngisho kuze kube wuvuko lukaKristu—ngokuba uyobizwa kanjalo.
- 22 Manje, uvuko lwabo bonke abaphrofethi, kanye nabo bonke labo abakholelwa emazwini abo, noma bonke labo abagcine imiyalelo kaNkulunkulu, bayophuma ngovuko lokuqala; ngakho-ke, banguvuko lokuqala.
- 23 Bavuselwa ukuthi bahlale noNkulunkulu obakhululile; ngalendlela banokuphila okuphakade ngoKristu, ogqabule izibopho zokufa.
- 24 Futhi yibo laba abanesabelo ovukweni lokuqala; futhi yibo laba abafa ngaphambi kokufika kukaKristu, besekungazini, bengatholanga ukuthi insindiso imenyazelwe kubo. Futhi ngalendlela iNkosi ifeza ukubuyiselwa kwalaba; futhi banesabelo ovukweni lokuqala, noma banokuphila okuphakade, besindiswe yiNkosi.
- 25 Futhi nabantwana abancane nabo banokuphila okuphakade.
- 26 Kodwa bheka, yesaba, futhi uthuthumele phambi kukaNkulunkulu, ngokuba umele ukuthuthumela; ngokuba iNkosi ayisindisi namunye onjenga labo abamhlubukayo futhi nabafa besezonweni zabo; yebo, ngisho bonke labo ababhubha besezonweni zabo kusukela selokhu kwadabuka umhlaba, abahlubuka ngamabomu kuNkulunkulu, ababeyazi imiyalelo kaNkulunkulu, kepha bangayigcina; yibo laba abangenasabelo ovukweni lokuqala.

For were it not for the redemption which he hath made for his people, which was prepared from the foundation of the world, I say unto you, were it not for this, all mankind must have perished.

But behold, the bands of death shall be broken, and the Son reigneth, and hath power over the dead; therefore, he bringeth to pass the resurrection of the dead.

And there cometh a resurrection, even a first resurrection; yea, even a resurrection of those that have been, and who are, and who shall be, even until the resurrection of Christ—for so shall he be called.

And now, the resurrection of all the prophets, and all those that have believed in their words, or all those that have kept the commandments of God, shall come forth in the first resurrection; therefore, they are the first resurrection.

They are raised to dwell with God who has redeemed them; thus they have eternal life through Christ, who has broken the bands of death.

And these are those who have part in the first resurrection; and these are they that have died before Christ came, in their ignorance, not having salvation declared unto them. And thus the Lord bringeth about the restoration of these; and they have a part in the first resurrection, or have eternal life, being redeemed by the Lord.

And little children also have eternal life.

But behold, and fear, and tremble before God, for ye ought to tremble; for the Lord redeemeth none such that rebel against him and die in their sins; yea, even all those that have perished in their sins ever since the world began, that have wilfully rebelled against God, that have known the commandments of God, and would not keep them; these are they that have no part in the first resurrection.

- 27 Ngakho-ke akumele yini nithuthumele na?
Ngokuba insindiso ayizi nakoyedwa onjalo;
ngokuba iNkosi ayisindisanga namunye onjalo;
yebo, futhi ngeke iNkosi imsindise onjalo; ngokuba
ayinakuziphikisa; ngokuba ayinakukwenqabela
ukulunga uma sekuthatha indawo yakho.
- 28 Manje ngithi kini isikhathi siyofika lapho
insindiso yeNkosi iyomenyenzelwa kuzo zonke
izizwe, imindeni, izilimi, kanye nakubantu.
- 29 Yebo, Nkosi, abalindi bakho bayophakamisa
amazwi abo; ngezwi kanye kanye bayohlabelela;
ngokuba bayobona iso neso, ngesikhathi iNkosi
isibuyisa iSiyoni futhi.
- 30 Qhumukani ngenjabulo, hlabelelani kanyekanye,
nina mazwe achithiweyo aseJerusalema; ngokuba
iNkosi ibaduduzile abantu bayo, iyisindisile
iJerusalema.
- 31 INkosi iyembulile ingalo yayo engcwele
emehlweni azo zonke izizwe; futhi yonke
imikhawulo yomhlaba iyoyibona insindiso
kaNkulunkulu wethu.

Therefore ought ye not to tremble? For salvation
cometh to none such; for the Lord hath redeemed
none such; yea, neither can the Lord redeem such;
for he cannot deny himself; for he cannot deny jus-
tice when it has its claim.

And now I say unto you that the time shall come
that the salvation of the Lord shall be declared to ev-
ery nation, kindred, tongue, and people.

Yea, Lord, thy watchmen shall lift up their voice;
with the voice together shall they sing; for they shall
see eye to eye, when the Lord shall bring again Zion.

Break forth into joy, sing together, ye waste places
of Jerusalem; for the Lord hath comforted his peo-
ple, he hath redeemed Jerusalem.

The Lord hath made bare his holy arm in the eyes
of all the nations; and all the ends of the earth shall
see the salvation of our God.

Mosiya 16

- 1 Manje, kwenzeka ukuthi emva kokuthi u-Abinadi esekhulume lamazwi welula isandla sakhe futhi wathi: Isikhathi siyeza lapho bonke beyoyibona insindiso yeNkosi; lapho zonke izizwe, imindeni, izilimi, kanye nabantu beyobona iso neso futhi beyovuma phambi kukaNkulunkulu ukuthi izahlulelo zakhe zilungile.
- 2 Futhi ngaleso sikhathi ababi bayolahlwa, futhi bayokuba nesizathu sokuhhewula, nesokukhala, nesokulila, kanye nesokugedla amazinyo abo; futhi lokhu kuyoba ngenxa yokuthi bengalilalelanga izwi leNkosi; ngakho-ke iNkosi ayibakhululi.
- 3 Ngokuba banaka inyama futhi banobudeveli, futhi udeveli unamandla phezu kwabo; yebo, ngisho leyo nyoka endala eyakhohlisa abazali bethu bokuqala, eyaba yisizathu sokuwa kwabo; okwaba yisizathu sesintu sonke ukuthi sinake inyama, nemizwa, sibe nobudeveli, sazi okubi kokuhle, sizibeka ngaphansi kokulawulwa ngudeveli.
- 4 Ngalendlela sonke isintu salahleka; futhi bheka, sasiyolahleka okokuphela ukuba kwakungekhona ukuthi uNkulunkulu wabakhulula abantu bakhe ekulahlekeni kwabo kanye nasesimweni sabo sokuwa.
- 5 Kodwa khumbulani ukuthi lowo ophikelelayo esimweni sakhe semvelo yasemhlabeni, aqhubeke ezindleleni zesono futhi ahlubuke kuNkulunkulu, uhlala esesimweni sakhe sokuwa futhi udeveli uba namandla onke phezu kwakhe. Ngakho-ke kuye kuba sengathi akuzange kuze kube khona kukhululwa okwenziwayo, eyisitha kuNkulunkulu; futhi ngokunjalo nodeveli uyisitha kuNkulunkulu.
- 6 Futhi ukuba uKristu ubengazange eze emhlabeni, ngikhuluma ngezinto ezisazokwenzeka sengathi sezenzekile, bekungeke kube khona ukukhululwa.
- 7 Futhi ukuba uKristu akazange avuke kwabafuleyo, noma agqabule izibopho zokufa ukuze ithuna lingabi nakunqoba, futhi nokuthi ukufa kungabi nadosi, belungenakuba khona uvuko.
- 8 Kodwa lukhona uvuko, ngakho-ke ithuna alinakunqoba, futhi udosi lokufa lugwinywe kuKristu.

Mosiah 16

And now, it came to pass that after Abinadi had spoken these words he stretched forth his hand and said: The time shall come when all shall see the salvation of the Lord; when every nation, kindred, tongue, and people shall see eye to eye and shall confess before God that his judgments are just.

And then shall the wicked be cast out, and they shall have cause to howl, and weep, and wail, and gnash their teeth; and this because they would not hearken unto the voice of the Lord; therefore the Lord redeemeth them not.

For they are carnal and devilish, and the devil has power over them; yea, even that old serpent that did beguile our first parents, which was the cause of their fall; which was the cause of all mankind becoming carnal, sensual, devilish, knowing evil from good, subjecting themselves to the devil.

Thus all mankind were lost; and behold, they would have been endlessly lost were it not that God redeemed his people from their lost and fallen state.

But remember that he that persists in his own carnal nature, and goes on in the ways of sin and rebellion against God, remaineth in his fallen state and the devil hath all power over him. Therefore he is as though there was no redemption made, being an enemy to God; and also is the devil an enemy to God.

And now if Christ had not come into the world, speaking of things to come as though they had already come, there could have been no redemption.

And if Christ had not risen from the dead, or have broken the bands of death that the grave should have no victory, and that death should have no sting, there could have been no resurrection.

But there is a resurrection, therefore the grave hath no victory, and the sting of death is swallowed up in Christ.

- 9 Ungukukhanya kanye nokuphila komhlaba; yebo, ukukhanya okungapheliyo, okungenakufiphaliswa nanini; yebo, futhi ngokunjalo nempilo engapheliyo, ukuze kungabe kusaba khona ukufa nanini.
- 10 Ngisho nalokhu okufayo kuyogqoka ukungafi; futhi nalokhu okubolayo kuyogqoka ukungaboli, futhi kuyolethwa ukuba kume phambi kwesihlalo sikaNkulunkulu, ukuze kwahlulelwe nguye njengokwemisebenzi yabo noma ngabe mihle noma ngabe mibi—
- 11 Uma imihle, ovukweni lokuphila okungapheliyo kanye nenjabulo; futhi uma imibi, ovukweni lobuhlungu obungapheliyo, benikezwe udeveli, obabeke ngaphansi kwakhe, okungubuhlungu—
- 12 Behambe ngokwentando yenyama kanye nezifiso zabo; bengazange bayibize nanini iNkosi ngesikhathi izingalo zomusa ziselulelwe kubo; ngokuba izingalo zomusa zazelulelwe kubo, futhi abazange bawemukele umusa; beyaliwe ngobubi babo kepha bengasukanga kubo; futhi bayalwa ukuthi baphenduke kepha abazange baphenduke.
- 13 Manje, ngabe akumele yini nithuthumele futhi niphenduke ezonweni zenu, futhi nikhumbule ukuthi kuphela kuye kanye nangaye uKristu ningasindiswa na?
- 14 Ngakho-ke, uma nifundisa umthetho kaMose, phezu kwalokho fundisani ukuthi kuwumfanekiso walezo zinto ezizayo—
- 15 Bafundiseni ukuthi ukukhululwa kuza ngoKristu iNkosi, onguBaba waPhakade uqobo. Amen.

He is the light and the life of the world; yea, a light that is endless, that can never be darkened; yea, and also a life which is endless, that there can be no more death.

Even this mortal shall put on immortality, and this corruption shall put on incorruption, and shall be brought to stand before the bar of God, to be judged of him according to their works whether they be good or whether they be evil—

If they be good, to the resurrection of endless life and happiness; and if they be evil, to the resurrection of endless damnation, being delivered up to the devil, who hath subjected them, which is damnation—

Having gone according to their own carnal wills and desires; having never called upon the Lord while the arms of mercy were extended towards them; for the arms of mercy were extended towards them, and they would not; they being warned of their iniquities and yet they would not depart from them; and they were commanded to repent and yet they would not repent.

And now, ought ye not to tremble and repent of your sins, and remember that only in and through Christ ye can be saved?

Therefore, if ye teach the law of Moses, also teach that it is a shadow of those things which are to come—

Teach them that redemption cometh through Christ the Lord, who is the very Eternal Father. Amen.

Mosiya 17

- 1 Manje kwenzeka ukuthi ngesikhathi u-Abinadi eseqede lezi zinkulumo, inkosi yayala ukuthi abaphristi bamthathe futhi benze ukuthi abulawe.
- 2 Kodwa kwakukhona oyedwa phakathi kwabo ogama lakhe kwakungu-Alima, naye futhi engowozalo lukaNefi. Futhi wayeyinsizwa, futhi wawakholwa amazwi u-Abinadi ayewakhulumile, ngokuba wayazi mayelana nobubi u-Abinadi ayefakaze ngabo ngokumelene nabo; ngakho-ke waqala ukuncenga enkosini ukuthi ingamthukuthelile u-Abinadi, kodwa imvumele ukuthi ahambe ngokuthula.
- 3 Kodwa inkosi yathukuthela kakhulu, futhi yenza ukuthi u-Alima axoshwe phakathi kwabo, futhi yathumela izinceku zayo emva kwakhe ukuze zimbulale.
- 4 Kodwa wabaleka phambi kwazo futhi wacasha kangangoba azimtholanga. Futhi ngesikhathi ezishwathekile izinsuku eziningi wawabhala wonke amazwi u-Abinadi ayewakhulumile.
- 5 Futhi kwenzeka ukuthi inkosi yenza abalindi bayo ukuthi bamzungeze u-Abinadi bambambe; futhi bambopha bamphonsa etilongweni.
- 6 Futhi emva kwezinsuku ezintathu, isibonisene nabaphristi bayo, yenza ukuthi aphinde alethwe phambi kwayo.
- 7 Futhi yathi kuye: Abinadi, sikuthola unecala, futhi ufanelwe wukufa.
- 8 Ngokuba uthe uNkulunkulu uqobo lwakhe kufanele ehlele phansi phakathi kwabantwana babantu; manje, ngenxa yalokhu uzobulawa ngaphandle kokuthi uwahoxise wonke amazwi owakhulumile obubi mayelana nami kanye nabantu bami.
- 9 Manje u-Abinadi wathi kuyo: Ngithi kuwe, ngeke ngiwahoxise amazwi engiwakhulumile kuwe mayelana nalaba bantu, ngokuba ayiqiniso; futhi ukuze nazi ngobuqiniso bawo ngizivumele ukuthi ngiwele ezandleni zenu.

Mosiah 17

And now it came to pass that when Abinadi had finished these sayings, that the king commanded that the priests should take him and cause that he should be put to death.

But there was one among them whose name was Alma, he also being a descendant of Nephi. And he was a young man, and he believed the words which Abinadi had spoken, for he knew concerning the iniquity which Abinadi had testified against them; therefore he began to plead with the king that he would not be angry with Abinadi, but suffer that he might depart in peace.

But the king was more wroth, and caused that Alma should be cast out from among them, and sent his servants after him that they might slay him.

But he fled from before them and hid himself that they found him not. And he being concealed for many days did write all the words which Abinadi had spoken.

And it came to pass that the king caused that his guards should surround Abinadi and take him; and they bound him and cast him into prison.

And after three days, having counseled with his priests, he caused that he should again be brought before him.

And he said unto him: Abinadi, we have found an accusation against thee, and thou art worthy of death.

For thou hast said that God himself should come down among the children of men; and now, for this cause thou shalt be put to death unless thou wilt recall all the words which thou hast spoken evil concerning me and my people.

Now Abinadi said unto him: I say unto you, I will not recall the words which I have spoken unto you concerning this people, for they are true; and that ye may know of their surety I have suffered myself that I have fallen into your hands.

10 Yebo, futhi ngizohlupheka ngisho kuze kube sekufeni, futhi angeke ngiwahoxise amazwi ami, futhi ayokuma njengobufakazi ngokumelene nani. Futhi uma ningibulala nizobe nichitha igazi elingenacala, futhi lokhu nakho ngokunjalo kuyokuma njengobufakazi ngokumelene nani ngosuku lokugcina.

11 Manje inkosi uNowa yayisizomkhulula, ngokuba yalesaba izwi lakhe; ngokuba yayesaba ukuthi izahlulelo zikaNkulunkulu zazizokuza phezu kwayo.

12 Kodwa abaphristi baphakamisa amazwi abo ngokumelene naye, futhi baqala ukumbeka icala, bethi: Uyithukile inkosi. Ngakho-ke inkosi bayiphela ukuze ithukuthele ngokumelene naye, futhi yamnikela ukuthi abulawe.

13 Futhi kwenzeka ukuthi bamthatha bambopha, futhi basishaya isikhumba sakhe ngenyanda yezinkuni, yebo, waze wafa.

14 Manje ngesikhathi amalangani eqala ukumhangula, wakhala kubo, ethi:

15 Bhekani, ngisho njengoba nenzile kimi, ngokunjalo kuyokwenzeka ukuthi inzalo yenu iyokwenza ukuthi abanengi bezwe izinhlungu engizizwayo, ngisho nezinhlungu zokufa ngomlilo; futhi lokhu ngenxa yokuthi ikholelwa ensindisweni yeNkosi uNkulunkulu wabo.

16 Futhi kuyokwenzeka ukuthi niyohlushwa ngazo zonke izinhlobo zezifo ngenxa yobubi benu.

17 Yebo, futhi niyoshaywa zonke izindawo, futhi niyoxoshwa futhi nihlakazwe niye emuva naphambili, ngisho njengomhlambi wasendle uxoshwa yizilwane zasendle ezesabekayo.

18 Futhi ngalolo suku niyozingelwa, futhi niyothathwa ngesandla sezitha zenu, futhi emva kwalokho niyokuzwa ubuhlungu, njengoba nami ngizwa, izinhlungu zokufa ngomlilo.

19 Ngalendlela uNkulunkulu wenza impindiselo phezu kwalabo ababulala abantu bakhe. O Nkulunkulu, yemukela umphefumulo wami.

Yea, and I will suffer even until death, and I will not recall my words, and they shall stand as a testimony against you. And if ye slay me ye will shed innocent blood, and this shall also stand as a testimony against you at the last day.

And now king Noah was about to release him, for he feared his word; for he feared that the judgments of God would come upon him.

But the priests lifted up their voices against him, and began to accuse him, saying: He has reviled the king. Therefore the king was stirred up in anger against him, and he delivered him up that he might be slain.

And it came to pass that they took him and bound him, and scourged his skin with faggots, yea, even unto death.

And now when the flames began to scorch him, he cried unto them, saying:

Behold, even as ye have done unto me, so shall it come to pass that thy seed shall cause that many shall suffer the pains that I do suffer, even the pains of death by fire; and this because they believe in the salvation of the Lord their God.

And it will come to pass that ye shall be afflicted with all manner of diseases because of your iniquities.

Yea, and ye shall be smitten on every hand, and shall be driven and scattered to and fro, even as a wild flock is driven by wild and ferocious beasts.

And in that day ye shall be hunted, and ye shall be taken by the hand of your enemies, and then ye shall suffer, as I suffer, the pains of death by fire.

Thus God executeth vengeance upon those that destroy his people. O God, receive my soul.

20 Manje, ngesikhathi u-Abinadi esewashilo lamazwi, wawa, ezwe ubuhlungu bokufa ngomlilo; yebo, ebulewe ngenxa yokuthi engenakuyiphika imiyalelo kaNkulunkulu, elifungele iqiniso lamazwi akhe ngokufa kwakhe.

And now, when Abinadi had said these words, he fell, having suffered death by fire; yea, having been put to death because he would not deny the commandments of God, having sealed the truth of his words by his death.

Mosiya 18

- 1 Manje, kwenzeka ukuthi u-Alima, lowo owayebalekele izinceku zenkosi uNowa, waphenduka ezonweni kanye nasebubini bakhe, wahamba ngasese phakathi kwabantu, waqala ukubafundisa amazwi ka-Abinadi—
- 2 Yebo, mayelana nalokho okwakuzokwenzeka, futhi ngokunjalo mayelana nokuvuka kwabafileyo, nokukhululwa kwabantu, okwakuzokwenzeka ngamandla, nezinhlupheko, nokufa kukaKristu, nokuvuka kanye nokwenyukela kwakhe ezulwini.
- 3 Futhi ngobuningi balabo ababelizwa izwi lakhe nempela wabafundisa. Futhi wabafundisa ngasese, ukuze kungafiki olwazini lwenkosi. Futhi abaningi nempela bawakholwa amazwi akhe.
- 4 Futhi kwenzeka ukuthi ngobuningi balabo abakholwa bahamba baya endaweni eyayibizwa ngokuthi yiMormoni, ithole igama layo enkosini, isemingceleni yezwe elaligcwala izilwane zasendle, ngezinye izikhathi noma ngezigaba zonyaka ezithile.
- 5 Manje, kwakukhona eMormoni umthombo wamanzi acwebileyo, futhi u-Alima waphumula lapho, lapho eduze kwamanzi kukhona ihlozi lezihlahla ezincane, lapho azifihla khona emini ekuthungathweni yinkosi.
- 6 Futhi kwenzeka ukuthi ngobuningi balabo ababemkholwa baya lapho ukuyozwa amazwi akhe.
- 7 Futhi kwenzeka ukuthi emva kwezinsuku eziningi kwase kukhona isibalo esikhulu esase sibuthana ndawonye endaweni kaMormoni, ukuzozwa amazwi ka-Alima. Yebo, bonke babuthana ndawonye ababekholelwa emazwini akhe, ukuze bamuzwe. Futhi nempela wabafundisa, futhi washumayela kubo ukuphenduka, nokukhululwa, kanye nokholo eNkosini.
- 8 Futhi kwenzeka ukuthi wathi kubo: Bhekani, nanka amanzi kaMormoni (ngokuba ayebizwa kanjalo) manje, njengokuba nifisa ukuza emhlambini kaNkulunkulu, futhi nibizwe ngabantu bakhe, futhi nifuna ukuthwalisana imithwalo omunye nomunye, ukuze ibe lula;

Mosiah 18

And now, it came to pass that Alma, who had fled from the servants of king Noah, repented of his sins and iniquities, and went about privately among the people, and began to teach the words of Abinadi—

Yea, concerning that which was to come, and also concerning the resurrection of the dead, and the redemption of the people, which was to be brought to pass through the power, and sufferings, and death of Christ, and his resurrection and ascension into heaven.

And as many as would hear his word he did teach. And he taught them privately, that it might not come to the knowledge of the king. And many did believe his words.

And it came to pass that as many as did believe him did go forth to a place which was called Mormon, having received its name from the king, being in the borders of the land having been infested, by times or at seasons, by wild beasts.

Now, there was in Mormon a fountain of pure water, and Alma resorted thither, there being near the water a thicket of small trees, where he did hide himself in the daytime from the searches of the king.

And it came to pass that as many as believed him went thither to hear his words.

And it came to pass after many days there were a goodly number gathered together at the place of Mormon, to hear the words of Alma. Yea, all were gathered together that believed on his word, to hear him. And he did teach them, and did preach unto them repentance, and redemption, and faith on the Lord.

And it came to pass that he said unto them: Behold, here are the waters of Mormon (for thus were they called) and now, as ye are desirous to come into the fold of God, and to be called his people, and are willing to bear one another's burdens, that they may be light;

9 Yebo, futhi nifuna ukukhala kanye nalabo abakhalayo; yebo, futhi niduduze labo abadinga ukududuzwa, futhi nime njengofakazi baNkulunkulu ngazo zonke izikhathi nakuzo zonke izinto, nakuzo zonke izindawo eningaba kuzo, ngisho kuze kube sekufeni, ukuze nikhululwe nguNkulunkulu, futhi nibalwe kanye nalabo bovuko lokuqala, ukuze nibe nokuphila okuphakade—

10 Manje ngithi kini, uma lokhu kuyisifiso sezinhliziyo zenu, yini pho eyenza ukuthi ningabhabhadiswa egameni leNkosi, kube njengobufakazi phambi kwayo ukuthi seningene esivumelwaneni nayo ukuthi nizoyisebenzela futhi nigcine imiyalelo yayo, ukuze ithele uMoya wayo ubemningi kakhulu kini na?

11 Manje ngesikhathi abantu sebewazwile lamazwi, bashaya izandla zabo ngenxa yentokozo, futhi bamemeza bathi: Lokhu kuyisifiso sezinhliziyo zethu.

12 Manje kwenzeka ukuthi u-Alima wathatha uHelamu, engomunye wabokuqala, wahamba wema phambili emanzini, futhi wakhala, ethi: O Nkosi, thela uMoya wakho phezu kwenceku yakho, ukuze yenze lomsebenzi ngobungcwele benhliziyo.

13 Futhi ngesikhathi esewashilo lamazwi, uMoya weNkosi waba phezu kwakhe, futhi wathi: Helamu, ngiyakubhabhadisa, ngingenya elivela kuNkulunkulu uSomandla, njengobufakazi bokuthi ungenile esivumelwaneni sokuthi umsebenzele uze ufe ngokomzimba ofayo; futhi sengathi uMoya weNkosi ungathelwa phezu kwakho; futhi sengathi angakunika ukuphila okuphakade, ngokukhululwa kukaKristu, amlungisa kusukela ekusekelweni komhlaba.

14 Futhi emva kokuthi u-Alima esewashilo lamazwi, bobabili u-Alima noHelamu bacwila emanzini; futhi bavuka futhi baphuma emanzini bethokozile, begcwaliswe ngoMoya.

15 Futhi, u-Alima wathatha omunye, waya phambili okwesibili emanzini, wambhabhadisa njengowokuqala, kuphela yena akacwilanga futhi emanzini.

Yea, and are willing to mourn with those that mourn; yea, and comfort those that stand in need of comfort, and to stand as witnesses of God at all times and in all things, and in all places that ye may be in, even until death, that ye may be redeemed of God, and be numbered with those of the first resurrection, that ye may have eternal life—

Now I say unto you, if this be the desire of your hearts, what have you against being baptized in the name of the Lord, as a witness before him that ye have entered into a covenant with him, that ye will serve him and keep his commandments, that he may pour out his Spirit more abundantly upon you?

And now when the people had heard these words, they clapped their hands for joy, and exclaimed: This is the desire of our hearts.

And now it came to pass that Alma took Helam, he being one of the first, and went and stood forth in the water, and cried, saying: O Lord, pour out thy Spirit upon thy servant, that he may do this work with holiness of heart.

And when he had said these words, the Spirit of the Lord was upon him, and he said: Helam, I baptize thee, having authority from the Almighty God, as a testimony that ye have entered into a covenant to serve him until you are dead as to the mortal body; and may the Spirit of the Lord be poured out upon you; and may he grant unto you eternal life, through the redemption of Christ, whom he has prepared from the foundation of the world.

And after Alma had said these words, both Alma and Helam were buried in the water; and they arose and came forth out of the water rejoicing, being filled with the Spirit.

And again, Alma took another, and went forth a second time into the water, and baptized him according to the first, only he did not bury himself again in the water.

- 16 Futhi ngalendlela wababhabhadisa bonke labo abaya endaweni kaMormoni; futhi babeyisibalo cishe esingamakhulu amabili nabantu abane; yebo, futhi babhabhadiswa emanzini kaMormoni, futhi bagcwaliswa ngomusa kaNkulunkulu.
- 17 Futhi babizwa ngebandla likaNkulunkulu, noma ibandla likaKristu, kusukela ngaleso sikhathi kuya phambili. Futhi kwenzeka ukuthi lowo owayebhabhadiswa ngamandla nangegunya likaNkulunkulu wayehlangukiswa nebandla lakhe.
- 18 Futhi kwenzeka ukuthi u-Alima, enegunya elivela kuNkulunkulu, wagcoba abaphristi; ngisho umphristi oyedwa kubo bonke abangamashumi amahlanu esibalweni sabo nempela wabagcoba ukuthi bashumayeke kubo, futhi babafundise mayelana nezinto eziphatheleni nombuso kaNkulunkulu.
- 19 Futhi wabayala ukuthi bangafundisi lutho ngaphandle kokuthi kube yizinto lezo ayezifundisile, futhi ezazikhulunywe ngomlomo wabaphrofethi abangcwele.
- 20 Yebo, wabayala ngisho ukuthi bangashumayeli lutho ngaphandle kokuphenduka kanye nokholo eNkosini, eyayibakhululile abantu bayo.
- 21 Futhi wabayala ukuthi kungabibikho mbango omunye nomunye, kodwa ukuthi babheke phambili ngaso linye, benokholo lunye kanye nombhabhadiso munye, benezinhliziyi zabo ezihlanganiswe ndawonye ebunyeni kanye nasothandweni omunye komunye.
- 22 Futhi wabayala ukuthi bashumayeke kanjalo. Futhi ngalendlela baba ngabantwana baNkulunkulu.
- 23 Futhi wabayala ukuthi bagcine usuku lwesabatha, balugcine lungcwele, futhi phezu kwalokho izinsuku zonke babonge eNkosini uNkulunkulu wabo.
- 24 Futhi phezu kwalokho wabayala ukuthi abaphristi ayebagcobile basebenze ngezandla zabo uqobo ukuze bazondle bona.
- 25 Futhi kwakukhona usuku olulodwa masonto onke olwalubekwe eceleni ukuthi bahlangane ndawonye ukuze bafundise abantu, futhi bakhonze iNkosi uNkulunkulu wabo, futhi phezu kwalokho, bahlangane kaningi kangangoba kwakusemandleni abo, ukuthi bahlangane ndawonye.

And after this manner he did baptize every one that went forth to the place of Mormon; and they were in number about two hundred and four souls; yea, and they were baptized in the waters of Mormon, and were filled with the grace of God.

And they were called the church of God, or the church of Christ, from that time forward. And it came to pass that whosoever was baptized by the power and authority of God was added to his church.

And it came to pass that Alma, having authority from God, ordained priests; even one priest to every fifty of their number did he ordain to preach unto them, and to teach them concerning the things pertaining to the kingdom of God.

And he commanded them that they should teach nothing save it were the things which he had taught, and which had been spoken by the mouth of the holy prophets.

Yea, even he commanded them that they should preach nothing save it were repentance and faith on the Lord, who had redeemed his people.

And he commanded them that there should be no contention one with another, but that they should look forward with one eye, having one faith and one baptism, having their hearts knit together in unity and in love one towards another.

And thus he commanded them to preach. And thus they became the children of God.

And he commanded them that they should observe the sabbath day, and keep it holy, and also every day they should give thanks to the Lord their God.

And he also commanded them that the priests whom he had ordained should labor with their own hands for their support.

And there was one day in every week that was set apart that they should gather themselves together to teach the people, and to worship the Lord their God, and also, as often as it was in their power, to assemble themselves together.

- 26 Futhi abaphristi kwakungafanele bathembele kubantu ukuthi babondle; kodwa ngokusebenza kwabo babezothola umusa kaNkulunkulu, ukuze bakhule babe namandla eMoyeni, babe nolwazi lukaNkulunkulu, ukuze bafundise ngamandla kanye nangegunya elivela kuNkulunkulu.
- 27 Futhi phezu kwalokho u-Alima wabayala ukuthi abantu bebandla kufanele baphane ngabanakho, wonke umuntu ngokwalokho anakho; uma ngabe enakho kukuningi kufanele aphe ngobuningi; futhi lowo onakho kepha kukuncane, kuncane okuyodingeka kuye; futhi lowo ongenakho kufanele anikwe.
- 28 Futhi ngaleyondlela kufanele baphane ngezinto abanazo ngokuthanda kwabo okukhululekileyo kanye nezifiso ezinhle ngoNkulunkulu, futhi nakulabo baphristi ababedinga, yebo, futhi nakubo bonke abantu abadingayo nabangenakho okokwembatha okwanele.
- 29 Futhi lokhu wakusho kubo, eyalwe nguNkulunkulu; futhi nempela bahamba ngobuqotho phambi kukaNkulunkulu, bephana omunye nomunye okwenyama nokukamoya njengokwezidingo zabo kanye nezimfuno zabo.
- 30 Manje kwenzeka ukuthi konke lokhu kwenziwa eMormoni, yebo, ngasemanzini kaMormoni, ehlathini elaliseduzane namanzi kaMormoni; yebo, indawo kaMormoni, amanzi kaMormoni, ihlathi likaMormoni, kwakukuhle kangakanani emehlweni alabo abeza lapho olwazini loMkhululi wabo; yebo, futhi babusiswe kangakanani, ngokuba bayohlabelela ukumdumisa naphakade.
- 31 Futhi lezi zinto zenziwa emingceleni yezwe, ukuze zingafinyeleli olwazini lwenkosi.
- 32 Kodwa bhekani, kwenzeka ukuthi inkosi, isitholile ngomnyakazo phakathi kwabantu, yathumela izinceku zayo ukuthi zibabheke. Ngakho-ke osukwini lolo ababehlangene ngalo ndawonye ukuzozwa izwi leNkosi batholwa yinkosi.
- 33 Manje inkosi yathi u-Alima wayephehla abantu ukuthi bayivukele; ngalokho-ke yathumela amabutho ayo ukuthi ayobabhubhisa.

And the priests were not to depend upon the people for their support; but for their labor they were to receive the grace of God, that they might wax strong in the Spirit, having the knowledge of God, that they might teach with power and authority from God.

And again Alma commanded that the people of the church should impart of their substance, every one according to that which he had; if he have more abundantly he should impart more abundantly; and of him that had but little, but little should be required; and to him that had not should be given.

And thus they should impart of their substance of their own free will and good desires towards God, and to those priests that stood in need, yea, and to every needy, naked soul.

And this he said unto them, having been commanded of God; and they did walk uprightly before God, imparting to one another both temporally and spiritually according to their needs and their wants.

And now it came to pass that all this was done in Mormon, yea, by the waters of Mormon, in the forest that was near the waters of Mormon; yea, the place of Mormon, the waters of Mormon, the forest of Mormon, how beautiful are they to the eyes of them who there came to the knowledge of their Redeemer; yea, and how blessed are they, for they shall sing to his praise forever.

And these things were done in the borders of the land, that they might not come to the knowledge of the king.

But behold, it came to pass that the king, having discovered a movement among the people, sent his servants to watch them. Therefore on the day that they were assembling themselves together to hear the word of the Lord they were discovered unto the king.

And now the king said that Alma was stirring up the people to rebellion against him; therefore he sent his army to destroy them.

34 Futhi kwenzeka ukuthi u-Alima kanye nabantu
beNkosi baviruswa ngokuza kwempi yenkosi;
ngakho-ke bathatha amatende abo kanye nemindeni
yabo futhi bemuka baya ehlane.

35 Futhi babebalelwa cishe kubantu abangamakhulu
amane namashumi amahlanu.

And it came to pass that Alma and the people of
the Lord were apprised of the coming of the king's
army; therefore they took their tents and their fami-
lies and departed into the wilderness.

And they were in number about four hundred and
fifty souls.

Mosiya 19

- 1 Futhi kwenzeka ukuthi impi yenkosi yabuya, ingabatholanga abantu beNkosi.
- 2 Manje bheka, amabutho enkosi ayese Mancane, ngokuba aye senciphile, futhi kwaqala ukuthi kube khona ukuhlukana phakathi kwabantu ababesasele.
- 3 Futhi idlanzana elincane laqala ukuthi likhulume izinsongo ngokumelene nenkosi, futhi kwaqala ukuthi kube khona umbango omkhulu phakathi kwabo.
- 4 Manje kwakukhona indoda phakathi kwabo egama layo kwakunguGidiyoni, futhi eyindoda enamandla futhi eyisitha senkosi, ngakho-ke wahosha inkemba yakhe, futhi wafunga esentukuthelweni yakhe ukuthi uzoyibulala inkosi.
- 5 Futhi kwenzeka ukuthi walwa nenkosi; futhi ngesikhathi inkosi ibona ukuthi wayesezoyehlula, yabaleka yagijima yayongena embhoshongweni owawuseduze nethempeli.
- 6 Futhi uGidiyoni walandela emva kwayo ngesikhathi esezongena embhoshongweni ukuze ayibulale inkosi, inkosi yaphonsa amehlo ayo iqalaza ngasezweni lakwaShemiloni, futhi bheka, impi yamaLamani yayisingaphakathi emingceleni wezwe.
- 7 Manje inkosi yakhala kakhulu isebuhlungwini bomphfumulo wayo ithi: Gidiyoni, ngisindise, ngokuba amaLamani asephezu kwethu, futhi azosibhubhisa; yebo, azobhubhisa abantu bami.
- 8 Manje inkosi kwakungekhona ukuthi yayinendaba kakhulu nabantu bayo kangangoba yayinendaba nempilo yayo; nokho, uGidiyoni wayisindisa impilo yayo.
- 9 Futhi inkosi yayala abantu ukuthi babalekele amaLamani, futhi nayo uqobo lwayo yahamba phambi kwabo, futhi babalekela ehlane, nabesifazane babo kanye nabantwana babo.
- 10 Futhi kwenzeka ukuthi amaLamani abalandela, abafica, futhi aqala ukubabulala.
- 11 Manje kwenzeka ukuthi inkosi yayala ukuthi wonke amadoda ashiye abafazi bawo kanye nabantwana bawo, abalekele amaLamani.

Mosiah 19

And it came to pass that the army of the king returned, having searched in vain for the people of the Lord.

And now behold, the forces of the king were small, having been reduced, and there began to be a division among the remainder of the people.

And the lesser part began to breathe out threatenings against the king, and there began to be a great contention among them.

And now there was a man among them whose name was Gideon, and he being a strong man and an enemy to the king, therefore he drew his sword, and swore in his wrath that he would slay the king.

And it came to pass that he fought with the king; and when the king saw that he was about to overpower him, he fled and ran and got upon the tower which was near the temple.

And Gideon pursued after him and was about to get upon the tower to slay the king, and the king cast his eyes round about towards the land of Shemlon, and behold, the army of the Lamanites were within the borders of the land.

And now the king cried out in the anguish of his soul, saying: Gideon, spare me, for the Lamanites are upon us, and they will destroy us; yea, they will destroy my people.

And now the king was not so much concerned about his people as he was about his own life; nevertheless, Gideon did spare his life.

And the king commanded the people that they should flee before the Lamanites, and he himself did go before them, and they did flee into the wilderness, with their women and their children.

And it came to pass that the Lamanites did pursue them, and did overtake them, and began to slay them.

Now it came to pass that the king commanded them that all the men should leave their wives and their children, and flee before the Lamanites.

- 12 Manje ayemaningi ayengenakubashiya, kodwa okungenani ukuthi ahlale abhubhe kanye nabo. Futhi amanye ashiya abafazi bawo kanye nabantwana bawo abaleka.
- 13 Futhi kwenzeka ukuthi labo abasala kanye nabafazi babo kanye nabantwana babo benza ukuthi amadodakazi abo amahle ame phambili ancenge amaLamani ukuthi angababulali.
- 14 Futhi kwenzeka ukuthi amaLamani aba nobubele kubo, ngokuba ahungwa ngubuhle babesifazane babo.
- 15 Ngakho-ke amaLamani azisindisa izimpilo zabo, futhi abathatha abathumba abathwala abaphindisela emuva ezweni lakwaNefi, futhi abavumela ukuthi balithathe izwe, ngaphansi kombandela wokuthi babezoletha inkosi uNowa ezandleni zamaLamani, futhi balethe impahla yabo, ngisho inxenye eyodwa yakho konke abanakho, inxenye eyodwa yegolide labo, nesiliva labo, kanye nazo zonke izinto eziyigugu kubo, futhi ngalendlela babezokhokha intela enkosini yamaLamani unyaka nonyaka.
- 16 Manje kwakukhona oyedwa wamadodana enkosi phakathi kwalabo ababethunjiwe, ogama lakhe kwakunguLimhi.
- 17 Manje uLimhi wayenesifiso sokuthi uyise angabhujiswa; nokho, kwakungesikho ukuthi uLimhi wayengazi ngobubi bukayise, yena ngokwakhe wayeyindoda elungile.
- 18 Futhi kwenzeka ukuthi uGidiyoni wathumela amadoda ehlane ngasese, ukuthi ayofuna inkosi kanye nalabo ababenayo. Futhi kwenzeka ukuthi bahlangana nabantu ehlane, bonke ngaphandle kwenkosi kanye nabaphristi bayo.
- 19 Manje babefungile ezinhliziyweni zabo ukuthi babezobuyela ezweni likaNefi, futhi uma abafazi babo kanye nabantwana babo bebulewe, futhi ngokunjalo nalabo ababesale nabo, ukuthi bayoyifuna impindiselo, futhi phezu kwalokho babhubhe kanye nabo.
- 20 Futhi inkosi yabayala ukuthi bangabuyeli; futhi bayithukethelela inkosi, futhi benza ukuthi izwe ubuhlungu, ngisho nangokufa ngomlilo.
- 21 Futhi base bezobabamba nabaphristi nabo futhi bababulale, kodwa baba balekela.

Now there were many that would not leave them, but had rather stay and perish with them. And the rest left their wives and their children and fled.

And it came to pass that those who tarried with their wives and their children caused that their fair daughters should stand forth and plead with the Lamanites that they would not slay them.

And it came to pass that the Lamanites had compassion on them, for they were charmed with the beauty of their women.

Therefore the Lamanites did spare their lives, and took them captives and carried them back to the land of Nephi, and granted unto them that they might possess the land, under the conditions that they would deliver up king Noah into the hands of the Lamanites, and deliver up their property, even one half of all they possessed, one half of their gold, and their silver, and all their precious things, and thus they should pay tribute to the king of the Lamanites from year to year.

And now there was one of the sons of the king among those that were taken captive, whose name was Limhi.

And now Limhi was desirous that his father should not be destroyed; nevertheless, Limhi was not ignorant of the iniquities of his father, he himself being a just man.

And it came to pass that Gideon sent men into the wilderness secretly, to search for the king and those that were with him. And it came to pass that they met the people in the wilderness, all save the king and his priests.

Now they had sworn in their hearts that they would return to the land of Nephi, and if their wives and their children were slain, and also those that had tarried with them, that they would seek revenge, and also perish with them.

And the king commanded them that they should not return; and they were angry with the king, and caused that he should suffer, even unto death by fire.

And they were about to take the priests also and put them to death, and they fled before them.

- 22 Futhi kwenzeka ukuthi base bezobuyela ezweni likaNefi, kodwa bahlangana namadoda kaGidiyoni. Futhi amadoda kaGidiyoni abatshele ngakho konke okwakwenzekile kubafazi babo kanye nakubantwana babo; kanye nokuthi amaLamani abavumele ukuthi bangalithatha izwe ngokuthi bakhokhe intela kumaLamani yenxenyeyodwa yakho konke abanakho.
- 23 Futhi abantu batshela amadoda kaGidiyoni ukuthi bayibulele inkosi, kodwa abaphristi bayo babaleke kakhulu baya ehlane.
- 24 Futhi kwenzeka ukuthi emva kokuthi sebewuqedile umcimbi, babuyela ezweni likaNefi, bethokozile, ngokuba abafazi babo kanye nabantwana babo babengabulawanga; futhi bamtshela uGidiyoni ngalokho ababekwenzile enkosini.
- 25 Futhi kwenzeka ukuthi inkosi yamaLamani yenza isifungo kubo, sokuthi abantu bayo bangababulali.
- 26 Futhi phezu kwalokho noLimhi, eyindodana yenkosi, umbuso sewunikwe yena ngabantu, wenza isifungo enkosini yamaLamani sokuthi abantu bakhe bakhokhe intela kuyo, ngisho inxenyeyodwa yakho konke abanakho.
- 27 Futhi kwenzeka ukuthi uLimhi waqala ukwakha umbuso kanye nokuqinisa ukuthula phakathi kwabantu bakhe.
- 28 Futhi inkosi yamaLamani yabeka abalindi bazungeza izwe, ukuze ibagcine abantu baLimhi besezweni, ukuze bangemuki baye ehlane; futhi yabondla abalindi bayo ngentela eyayiyithola kumaNefi.
- 29 Manje inkosi uLimhi nempela yaba nokuthula njalo embusweni wayo isikhathi esiyiminyaka emibili, kangangokuthi amaLamani awabahluphanga noma afune ukubabhubhisa.

And it came to pass that they were about to return to the land of Nephi, and they met the men of Gideon. And the men of Gideon told them of all that had happened to their wives and their children; and that the Lamanites had granted unto them that they might possess the land by paying a tribute to the Lamanites of one half of all they possessed.

And the people told the men of Gideon that they had slain the king, and his priests had fled from them farther into the wilderness.

And it came to pass that after they had ended the ceremony, that they returned to the land of Nephi, rejoicing, because their wives and their children were not slain; and they told Gideon what they had done to the king.

And it came to pass that the king of the Lamanites made an oath unto them, that his people should not slay them.

And also Limhi, being the son of the king, having the kingdom conferred upon him by the people, made oath unto the king of the Lamanites that his people should pay tribute unto him, even one half of all they possessed.

And it came to pass that Limhi began to establish the kingdom and to establish peace among his people.

And the king of the Lamanites set guards round about the land, that he might keep the people of Limhi in the land, that they might not depart into the wilderness; and he did support his guards out of the tribute which he did receive from the Nephites.

And now king Limhi did have continual peace in his kingdom for the space of two years, that the Lamanites did not molest them nor seek to destroy them.

Mosiya 20

- 1 Manje kwakukhona indawo eShemiloni lapho amadodakazi amaLamani ayehlanganela khona ndawonye ukuthi ahlabelele, adanse, futhi azijabulise.
- 2 Futhi kwenzeka ukuthi ngelinye ilanga ayeyidlanzana nje ehlangene ndawonye ukuthi ahlabelele futhi adanse.
- 3 Manje abaphristi benkosi uNowa, benamahloni okubuyela edolobheni lakwaNefi, yebo, futhi phezu kwalokho besaba ukuthi abantu babezobabulala, ngakho-ke abazange balokotho babuyele ebafazini babo kanye nasebantwaneni babo.
- 4 Futhi sebhahlalile ehlane, futhi sebewatholile amadodakazi amaLamani bacasha bawabuka.
- 5 Futhi ngesikhathi sekusele ingconsana nje yawo eyayibuthene ndawonye ukuthi idanse, baphuma ezindaweni zabo ezicashileyo bawathatha bawathwala baya nawo ehlane; yebo, amashumi amabili nane amadodakazi amaLamani bawathwala baya nawo ehlane.
- 6 Futhi kwenzeka ukuthi ngesikhathi amaLamani esetholile ukuthi amadodakazi awo ayelahlekile, athukuthelale abantu baLimihhi, ngokuba acabanga ukuthi kwakungabantu baLimihhi.
- 7 Ngakho-ke athumela amabutho awo phambili; yebo, ngisho nenkosi uqobo lwayo yahamba phambi kwabantu bayo baya ezweni lakwaNefi ukuyobhubhisa abantu baLimihhi.
- 8 Manje uLimihhi wawabona esembhoshongweni, ngisho nawo wonke amalungiselelo awo empi nempela wawabona; ngakho-ke waqoqela ndawonye abantu bakhe, futhi bahlala bawalinda ezinkundleni kanye nasemahlathini.
- 9 Futhi kwenzeka ukuthi ngesikhathi amaLamani eseqhamukile, abantu baLimihhi baqala ukuthi bawele phezu kwawo bevela ezindaweni zabo zokulinda, futhi baqala ukuwabulala.
- 10 Futhi kwenzeka ukuthi impi yaba nzima kakhulu, ngokuba balwa njengezingonyama zibanga ukudla kwazo.

Mosiah 20

Now there was a place in Shemlon where the daughters of the Lamanites did gather themselves together to sing, and to dance, and to make themselves merry.

And it came to pass that there was one day a small number of them gathered together to sing and to dance.

And now the priests of king Noah, being ashamed to return to the city of Nephi, yea, and also fearing that the people would slay them, therefore they durst not return to their wives and their children.

And having tarried in the wilderness, and having discovered the daughters of the Lamanites, they laid and watched them;

And when there were but few of them gathered together to dance, they came forth out of their secret places and took them and carried them into the wilderness; yea, twenty and four of the daughters of the Lamanites they carried into the wilderness.

And it came to pass that when the Lamanites found that their daughters had been missing, they were angry with the people of Limhi, for they thought it was the people of Limhi.

Therefore they sent their armies forth; yea, even the king himself went before his people; and they went up to the land of Nephi to destroy the people of Limhi.

And now Limhi had discovered them from the tower, even all their preparations for war did he discover; therefore he gathered his people together, and laid wait for them in the fields and in the forests.

And it came to pass that when the Lamanites had come up, that the people of Limhi began to fall upon them from their waiting places, and began to slay them.

And it came to pass that the battle became exceedingly sore, for they fought like lions for their prey.

- 11 Futhi kwenzeka ukuthi abantu baLimhi baqala ukuwabalekisa amaLamani; nakuba bona babengeyona nenxenye eningi njengamaLamani. Kodwa balwela izimpilo zabo, nezabafazi babo, kanye nezabantwana babo; ngakho-ke bazikhandla futhi nempela balwa njengezilo.
- 12 Futhi kwenzeka ukuthi bayithola inkosi yamaLamani phakathi kwesibalo sabafileyo bawo; nakuba yona yayingafile, yayilimele futhi yashiywa phansi, kwakushesha kakhulu ukubaleka kwabantu bayo.
- 13 Futhi bayithatha bayibopha amanxeba, bayiletha phambi kukaLimhi, futhi bathi: Bheka, nansi inkosi yamaLamani; ngokuba ithole inxeba iye yawa phakathi kwabafileyo bayo, futhi bayishiyile; futhi bheka, siyilethe phambi kwakho; manje masiyibulale.
- 14 Kodwa uLimhi wathi kubo: Anizukuyibulala, kodwa yiletheni lapha ukuze ngiyibone. Futhi bayiletha. Futhi uLimhi wathi kuyo: Yisiphi isizathu esenze nina nize nizokulwa nabantu bami na? Bheka, abantu bami abazange basephule isifungo engasenza kini; ngakho-ke, kungani nina nisephulile isifungo enasenza ebantwini bami na?
- 15 Manje inkosi yathi: Ngisephulile isifungo ngoba abantu bakho bathwale amadodakazi abantu bami; ngakho-ke, entukuthelweni yami ngenze ukuthi abantu bami beze bazolwa nabantu bakho.
- 16 Manje uLimhi wayengezwanga lutho mayelana naloludaba; ngakho-ke wathi: Ngizophenya phakathi kwabantu bami futhi lowo owenze lento uyobhujiswa. Ngakho-ke wenza ukuthi kwenziwe uphenyo phakathi kwabantu bakhe.
- 17 Manje ngesikhathi uGidiyoni esezizwile lezi zinto, yena eyinduna yamasosha enkosi, wahamba waya phambili futhi wathi enkosini: Ngiyakucela hoxa, futhi ungabaphenyi laba bantu, futhi ungalibeki icala kubo ngalento.
- 18 Ngokuba awubakhumbuli yini abaphristi bayihlo, laba bantu ababefuna ukubabhubhisa na? Futhi abekho yini ehlane na? Futhi ngabe akubona yini abantshontshe amadodakazi amaLamani na?

And it came to pass that the people of Limhi began to drive the Lamanites before them; yet they were not half so numerous as the Lamanites. But they fought for their lives, and for their wives, and for their children; therefore they exerted themselves and like dragons did they fight.

And it came to pass that they found the king of the Lamanites among the number of their dead; yet he was not dead, having been wounded and left upon the ground, so speedy was the flight of his people.

And they took him and bound up his wounds, and brought him before Limhi, and said: Behold, here is the king of the Lamanites; he having received a wound has fallen among their dead, and they have left him; and behold, we have brought him before you; and now let us slay him.

But Limhi said unto them: Ye shall not slay him, but bring him hither that I may see him. And they brought him. And Limhi said unto him: What cause have ye to come up to war against my people? Behold, my people have not broken the oath that I made unto you; therefore, why should ye break the oath which ye made unto my people?

And now the king said: I have broken the oath because thy people did carry away the daughters of my people; therefore, in my anger I did cause my people to come up to war against thy people.

And now Limhi had heard nothing concerning this matter; therefore he said: I will search among my people and whosoever has done this thing shall perish. Therefore he caused a search to be made among his people.

Now when Gideon had heard these things, he being the king's captain, he went forth and said unto the king: I pray thee forbear, and do not search this people, and lay not this thing to their charge.

For do ye not remember the priests of thy father, whom this people sought to destroy? And are they not in the wilderness? And are not they the ones who have stolen the daughters of the Lamanites?

- 19 Manje, bheka, futhi utshele inkosi ngalezi zinto, ukuze yona itshele abantu bayo ukuze baxoliswe ngathi; ngokuba bheka vele sebelungiselela ukuthi beze bazolwa nathi; futhi bheka phezu kwalokho kukhona kuphela ingcosana yethu.
- 20 Futhi bheka, beza namaningi amabutho abo; futhi ngaphandle kokuthi inkosi ibaxolise ngathi sizobhubha.
- 21 Ngokuba akugcwaliseki yini amazwi ka-Abinadi, awaphrofetha maqondana nathi—futhi konke lokhu ngenxa yokuthi asizange siwalalele amazwi eNkosi, futhi siphenduke ebubini bethu na?
- 22 Manje masiyixolise inkosi, futhi sigcwalise isifungo esasenza kuyo; ngokuba kungcono ukuthi sibe sekuthunjweni kunokuthi silahlekelwe yizimpilo zethu; ngakho-ke, masiyeke ukuchitha igazi elingaka.
- 23 Manje uLimhi wayitshela inkosi zonke izinto mayelana noyise, kanye nabaphristi ababebalekele ehlane, futhi wabeka isenzo sokuthwalwa kwamadodakazi abo kubo.
- 24 Futhi kwenzeka ukuthi inkosi yaxoliswa ngabantu bakhe; futhi yathi kubo: Masihambeni siyohlangana nabantu bami, ngaphandle kwezikhali; futhi ngiyafunga kini ngesifungo ukuthi abantu bami abayikubabulala abantu bakho.
- 25 Futhi kwenzeka ukuthi bayilandela inkosi, futhi bahamba ngaphandle kwezikhali ukuyohlangana namaLamani. Futhi kwenzeka ukuthi nempela bahlangana namaLamani; futhi inkosi yamaLamani yakhothama phambi kwawo, futhi yabancengela abantu baLimhi.
- 26 Futhi ngesikhathi amaLamani ebona abantu baLimhi, ukuthi babengenazikhali, aba nobubele kubo futhi axoliswa ngabo, futhi abuyela emuva nenkosi yawo ngokuthula aya ezweni lawo.

And now, behold, and tell the king of these things, that he may tell his people that they may be pacified towards us; for behold they are already preparing to come against us; and behold also there are but few of us.

And behold, they come with their numerous hosts; and except the king doth pacify them towards us we must perish.

For are not the words of Abinadi fulfilled, which he prophesied against us—and all this because we would not hearken unto the words of the Lord, and turn from our iniquities?

And now let us pacify the king, and we fulfil the oath which we have made unto him; for it is better that we should be in bondage than that we should lose our lives; therefore, let us put a stop to the shedding of so much blood.

And now Limhi told the king all the things concerning his father, and the priests that had fled into the wilderness, and attributed the carrying away of their daughters to them.

And it came to pass that the king was pacified towards his people; and he said unto them: Let us go forth to meet my people, without arms; and I swear unto you with an oath that my people shall not slay thy people.

And it came to pass that they followed the king, and went forth without arms to meet the Lamanites. And it came to pass that they did meet the Lamanites; and the king of the Lamanites did bow himself down before them, and did plead in behalf of the people of Limhi.

And when the Lamanites saw the people of Limhi, that they were without arms, they had compassion on them and were pacified towards them, and returned with their king in peace to their own land.

Mosiya 21

- 1 Futhi kwenzeka ukuthi uLimhi kanye nabantu bakhe babuyela edolobheni lakwaNefi, futhi baqala ukuhlala ezweni ngokuthula futhi.
- 2 Futhi kwenzeka ukuthi emva kwezinsuku eziningi amaLamani aqala futhi ukuthi aphehlelwe entukuthelweni ngokumelene namaNefi, futhi aqala ukuza emingceleni yezwe elizungezile.
- 3 Manje ayengeke alokothe ababulale, ngenxa yesifungo inkosi yawo eyayisenze kuLimhi; kodwa ayebashaya ezihlathini zabo, futhi asebenzise igunya phezu kwabo; futhi aqala ukubeka imithwalo esindayo emihlane yabo, futhi bebaqhuba njengembongolo engezwa—
- 4 Yebo, konke lokhu kwenziwa ukuze izwi leNkosi ligcwaliseke.
- 5 Manje izinkathazo zamaNefi zazizinkulu, futhi kwakungekho ndlela yokuthi bangazikhulula ezandleni zawo, ngokuba amaLamani ayebazungeze macala onke.
- 6 Futhi kwenzeka ukuthi abantu baqala ukuvungama enkosini ngenxa yezinkathazo zabo; futhi baqala ukuthi babe nesifiso sokuthi bahambe bayolwa nawo. Futhi nempela bayikhathaza kakhulu inkosi ngezikhalo zabo; ngakho-ke yabavumela ukuthi benze njengokwezifiso zabo.
- 7 Futhi baphinda babuthana ndawonye, futhi bahloma izikhali zabo, futhi bahamba bayolwa namaLamani ukuze bawabalekise bawakhiphe ezweni labo.
- 8 Futhi kwenzeka ukuthi amaLamani nempela abashaya, futhi ababalekisa abaphindisela emuva, futhi abulala abaningi babo.
- 9 Manje kwaba khona ukukhala okukhulu kanye nesililo phakathi kwabantu baLimhi, umfelokazi ekhalela umyeni wakhe, indodana nendodakazi bekhalela uyise, nabafowabo bekhalela abanewabo.
- 10 Manje kwasekukhona abafelokazi abaningi kakhulu ezweni, futhi nempela bakhala kakhulu usuku nosuku, ngokuba ukwesaba okukhulu amaLamani kwakuphezu kwabo.

Mosiah 21

And it came to pass that Limhi and his people returned to the city of Nephi, and began to dwell in the land again in peace.

And it came to pass that after many days the Lamanites began again to be stirred up in anger against the Nephites, and they began to come into the borders of the land round about.

Now they durst not slay them, because of the oath which their king had made unto Limhi; but they would smite them on their cheeks, and exercise authority over them; and began to put heavy burdens upon their backs, and drive them as they would a dumb ass—

Yea, all this was done that the word of the Lord might be fulfilled.

And now the afflictions of the Nephites were great, and there was no way that they could deliver themselves out of their hands, for the Lamanites had surrounded them on every side.

And it came to pass that the people began to murmur with the king because of their afflictions; and they began to be desirous to go against them to battle. And they did afflict the king sorely with their complaints; therefore he granted unto them that they should do according to their desires.

And they gathered themselves together again, and put on their armor, and went forth against the Lamanites to drive them out of their land.

And it came to pass that the Lamanites did beat them, and drove them back, and slew many of them.

And now there was a great mourning and lamentation among the people of Limhi, the widow mourning for her husband, the son and the daughter mourning for their father, and the brothers for their brethren.

Now there were a great many widows in the land, and they did cry mightily from day to day, for a great fear of the Lamanites had come upon them.

- 11 Futhi kwenzeka ukuthi ukukhala kwabo okungapheliyo nempela kwabaphehla ababesasele babantu baLimhi ukuthi bathukuthele ngokumelene namaLamani; futhi bahamba futhi bayolwa, kodwa babalekiswa baphindiselwa emuva futhi, belahlekelwe kakhulu.
- 12 Yebo, bahamba futhi ngisho nangokwesithathu, futhi balahlekelwa njengasekuqaleni; futhi labo ababengabulawanga baphinda babuyela edolobheni lakwaNefi.
- 13 Futhi nempela bazithoba ngisho nasothulini, baziletha kulo ijoka lobugqili, bazinikela ukuthi bashaywe, nokuthi babalekiswe baye emuva naphambili, futhi bahlushwe, njengokuthanda kwezitha zabo.
- 14 Futhi nempela bazehlisa ngisho nasekujuleni kokuzithoba; futhi bakhala kakhulu kuNkulunkulu; yebo, ngisho nangobude bosuku lonke bakhala kuNkulunkulu wabo ukuthi abakhulule baphume ezinkathazweni zabo.
- 15 Manje iNkosi yephuza ukuzwa ukukhala kwabo ngenxa yobubi babo; nokho iNkosi nempela yakuzwa ukukhala kwabo, futhi yaqala ukuthambisa izinhliziyi zamaLamani kangangokuthi aqala ukuyenza ibe lula imithwalo yabo; nokho iNkosi ayibonanga kufanele ukuthi ibakhulule ebugqilini.
- 16 Futhi kwenzeka ukuthi baqala ukuphumelela kancane kancane ezweni, futhi baqala ukukhulisa okusanhlamvu kwaba kuningi, kanye nemihlambi yezimvu, kanye nemihlambi yezinkomo, kangangokuthi abahlushwanga yindlala.
- 17 Manje kwakukhona isibalo esikhulu sabafazi, esingaphezulu kunaaleso samadoda; ngakho-ke inkosi uLimhi yayala ukuthi wonke amadoda mawaphe ukuze kondliwe abafelokazi kanye nabantwana babo, ukuze nabo bangabhujiswa yindlala; futhi lokhu akwenza ngenxa yesibalo esikhulu sabo esasibulewe.
- 18 Manje abantu baLimhi bazigcina bendawonye beyiqoqwana kanjengokuba kwakungahle kwenzeke, futhi bavikela okusanhlamvu kwabo kanye nemihlambi yabo;

And it came to pass that their continual cries did stir up the remainder of the people of Limhi to anger against the Lamanites; and they went again to battle, but they were driven back again, suffering much loss.

Yea, they went again even the third time, and suffered in the like manner; and those that were not slain returned again to the city of Nephi.

And they did humble themselves even to the dust, subjecting themselves to the yoke of bondage, submitting themselves to be smitten, and to be driven to and fro, and burdened, according to the desires of their enemies.

And they did humble themselves even in the depths of humility; and they did cry mightily to God; yea, even all the day long did they cry unto their God that he would deliver them out of their afflictions.

And now the Lord was slow to hear their cry because of their iniquities; nevertheless the Lord did hear their cries, and began to soften the hearts of the Lamanites that they began to ease their burdens; yet the Lord did not see fit to deliver them out of bondage.

And it came to pass that they began to prosper by degrees in the land, and began to raise grain more abundantly, and flocks, and herds, that they did not suffer with hunger.

Now there was a great number of women, more than there was of men; therefore king Limhi commanded that every man should impart to the support of the widows and their children, that they might not perish with hunger; and this they did because of the greatness of their number that had been slain.

Now the people of Limhi kept together in a body as much as it was possible, and secured their grain and their flocks;

- 19 Futhi nenkosi uqobo lwayo ayizethemba uma ingaphandle kwezindonga zedolobha, ngaphandle kokuthi ithathe abalindi bayo nayo, ngokwesaba ukuthi ngandlela thize ingawela ezandleni zamaLamani.
- 20 Futhi yenza ukuthi abantu bayo baqaphe izwe lonke elizungezile, ukuze ngandlela thize babambe labo baphristi ababalekela ehlane, ababentshontshe amadodakazi amaLamani, futhi ababedale ukuthi kube khona imbubhiso enkulu kangaka phezu kwabo.
- 21 Ngokuba babenesifiso sokuthi bababambe ukuze babajezise; ngokuba babeze ezweni likaNefi ngobusuku, futhi bathwala okusanhlamvu kwabo kanye nokuningi kwezinto zabo eziyigugu; ngakho-ke bahlala babalinda.
- 22 Futhi kwenzeka ukuthi akubange kusaba khona ukuphazamisana phakathi kwamaLamani kanye nabantu baLimhi, kwaze kwaba ngisho nangesikhathi u-Amoni kanye nabafowabo befika ezweni.
- 23 Futhi inkosi kade ingaphandle kwamasango edolobha kanye nabalindi bayo, yathola u-Amoni kanye nabafowabo; futhi icabanga ukuthi babengabaphristi baNowa ngakho-ke yenza ukuthi babanjwe, baboshwe, baphonswe etilongweni. Futhi ukuba babengabaphristi baNowa yayizokwenza ukuthi babulawe.
- 24 Kodwa ngesikhathi ithola ukuthi babengebona, nokuthi babengabafowabo, futhi babephuma ezweni lakwaZarahemla, yagcwala injabulo enkulu kakhulu.
- 25 Manje inkosi uLimhi yayithumele, ngaphambi kokufika kuka-Amoni, idlanzana lamadoda ukuyofuna izwe lakwaZarahemla; kodwa awakwazanga ukulithola, futhi alahleka ehlane.
- 26 Nokho, athola izwe elalikade linabantu; yebo, izwe elalimbozwe ngamathambo omileyo; yebo, izwe elalikade linabantu futhi elalibhujisiwe; futhi bona, becabanga ukuthi kwakuyilo izwe lakwaZarahemla babuyela ezweni lakwaNefi, befike emingceleni yezwe kungezinsuku eziningi phambi kokuthi kufike u-Amoni.

And the king himself did not trust his person without the walls of the city, unless he took his guards with him, fearing that he might by some means fall into the hands of the Lamanites.

And he caused that his people should watch the land round about, that by some means they might take those priests that fled into the wilderness, who had stolen the daughters of the Lamanites, and that had caused such a great destruction to come upon them.

For they were desirous to take them that they might punish them; for they had come into the land of Nephi by night, and carried off their grain and many of their precious things; therefore they laid wait for them.

And it came to pass that there was no more disturbance between the Lamanites and the people of Limhi, even until the time that Ammon and his brethren came into the land.

And the king having been without the gates of the city with his guard, discovered Ammon and his brethren; and supposing them to be priests of Noah therefore he caused that they should be taken, and bound, and cast into prison. And had they been the priests of Noah he would have caused that they should be put to death.

But when he found that they were not, but that they were his brethren, and had come from the land of Zarahemla, he was filled with exceedingly great joy.

Now king Limhi had sent, previous to the coming of Ammon, a small number of men to search for the land of Zarahemla; but they could not find it, and they were lost in the wilderness.

Nevertheless, they did find a land which had been peopled; yea, a land which was covered with dry bones; yea, a land which had been peopled and which had been destroyed; and they, having supposed it to be the land of Zarahemla, returned to the land of Nephi, having arrived in the borders of the land not many days before the coming of Ammon.

- 27 Futhi beza nombhalo, ngisho umbhalo walabo bantu amathambo abo ababewatholile; futhi wawuqoshwe ezingcwepheni zensimbi.
- 28 Manje uLimhi waphinda wagcwala injabulo ekwazini ngomlomo ka-Amoni ukuthi inkosi uMosiya wayenesiphiwo esivela kuNkulunkulu, ngaso ayengakwazi ukuhumusha imiqopho enjena; yebo, futhi u-Amoni ngokunjalo naye nempela wathokoza.
- 29 Nokho u-Amoni kanye nabafowabo bagcwala ukudabuka ngenxa yokuthi abaningi kakhulu babafowabo babebulewe.
- 30 Futhi ngokunjalo nokuthi inkosi uNowa kanye nabaphristi bakhe babenze abantu ukuthi benze izono kanye nobubi obuningi kangaka ngokumelene noNkulunkulu; futhi phezu kwalokho bakhala ngokufa kuka-Abinadi; futhi ngokunjalo nangokuhamba kuka-Alima kanye nalabo bantu abahamba naye, ababesungule ibandla likaNkulunkulu ngokuqina kanye nangamandla kaNkulunkulu, kanye nokholo emazwini ayekhulunywe ngu-Abinadi.
- 31 Yebo, nempela bakhala ngokuhamba kwabo, ngokuba babengazi lapho babebalekele khona. Manje ngabe bahlanganyela nabo ngokuthokoza, ngokuba nabo base bengene esivumelwaneni noNkulunkulu ukuthi bamsebenzele futhi bagcine imiyalelo yakhe.
- 32 Manje kusukela ngokufika kuka-Amoni, inkosi uLimhi nayo ngokunjalo yangena esivumelwaneni noNkulunkulu, futhi ngokunjalo nabaningi babantu bayo; ukuthi bamsebenzele futhi bagcine imiyalelo yakhe.
- 33 Futhi kwenzeka ukuthi inkosi uLimhi kanye nabaningi babantu bakhe babenesifiso sokubhabhadiswa; kodwa kwakungekho namunye kulelizwe owayenegunya elivela kuNkulunkulu. Futhi u-Amoni wenqaba ukukwenza lokhu, ngokuba wayezibona njengenceku engafanelekile.
- 34 Ngakho-ke abazange ngaleso sikhathi bazihlanganise babe yibandla, belinde uMoya weNkosi. Manje babenesifiso sokuthi babe ngisho nanjengo-Alima kanye nabafowabo, ababebalekele ehlane.

And they brought a record with them, even a record of the people whose bones they had found; and it was engraven on plates of ore.

And now Limhi was again filled with joy on learning from the mouth of Ammon that king Mosiah had a gift from God, whereby he could interpret such engravings; yea, and Ammon also did rejoice.

Yet Ammon and his brethren were filled with sorrow because so many of their brethren had been slain;

And also that king Noah and his priests had caused the people to commit so many sins and iniquities against God; and they also did mourn for the death of Abinadi; and also for the departure of Alma and the people that went with him, who had formed a church of God through the strength and power of God, and faith on the words which had been spoken by Abinadi.

Yea, they did mourn for their departure, for they knew not whither they had fled. Now they would have gladly joined with them, for they themselves had entered into a covenant with God to serve him and keep his commandments.

And now since the coming of Ammon, king Limhi had also entered into a covenant with God, and also many of his people, to serve him and keep his commandments.

And it came to pass that king Limhi and many of his people were desirous to be baptized; but there was none in the land that had authority from God. And Ammon declined doing this thing, considering himself an unworthy servant.

Therefore they did not at that time form themselves into a church, waiting upon the Spirit of the Lord. Now they were desirous to become even as Alma and his brethren, who had fled into the wilderness.

35 Babenesifiso sokuthi babhabhadiswe kube
yisibonakaliso kanye nobufakazi bokuthi
babezimisele ukusebenzela uNkulunkulu ngazo
zonke izinhliziyi zabo; nokho baselula isikhathi;
futhi indaba yokubhabhadiswa kwabo izonikwa
emva kwalokhu.

36 Manje yonke imizamo ka-Amoni nabantu bakhe,
nenkosi uLimhi kanye nabantu bayo,
kwakungukuthi bazikhulule baphume ezandleni
zamaLamani kanye nasebugqilini.

They were desirous to be baptized as a witness and
a testimony that they were willing to serve God with
all their hearts; nevertheless they did prolong the
time; and an account of their baptism shall be given
hereafter.

And now all the study of Ammon and his people,
and king Limhi and his people, was to deliver them-
selves out of the hands of the Lamanites and from
bondage.

Mosiya 22

- 1 Manje kwenzeka ukuthi u-Amoni kanye nenkosi uLimhi baqala ukubonisana nabantu ukuthi babezikhulula kanjani baphume ebugqilini; futhi benza ngisho nokuthi bonke abantu bahlangane ndawonye; futhi lokhu bakwenza ukuze bezwe izwi labantu mayelana naloludaba.
- 2 Futhi kwenzeka ukuthi abakwazanga ukuyithola indlela yokuzikhulula ebugqilini, ngaphandle kokuthi bathathe abafazi nabantwana babo, nemihlambi yezimvu zabo, nemihlambi yezinkomo zabo, kanye namatende abo, bemuke baye ehlane; ngokuba amaLamani ayemangingi kakhulu, kwakungelula ukuthi abantu baLimhi babange nawo, becabanga ukuthi babengazikhulula ebugqilini ngenkemba.
- 3 Manje kwenzeka ukuthi uGidiyoni wahamba futhi wema phambi kwenkosi, futhi wathi kuyo: Manje O nkosi, kuze kube manje uwalalelile amazwi ami izikhathi eziningi ngesikhathi sibanga nabafowethu, amaLamani.
- 4 Manje O nkosi, uma ungangitholi nginjengenceku engenalusizo lwalutho; noma uma nje kuze kube manje ubungawalalela amazwi ami noma kancane kangakanani, futhi uma ebe wusizo kuwe, ngisho namanje ngifisa ukuthi sengathi ubungawalalela amazwi ami nangalesi sikhathi, futhi ngizokuba yinceku yakho ngibakhulule laba bantu ebugqilini.
- 5 Futhi inkosi yamvumela ukuthi akhulume. UGidiyoni wathi kuyo:
- 6 Bheka intuba engemuva, odongeni olungemuva, ecaleni elingemuva ledolobha. AmaLamani, noma abalindi bamaLamani, ngobusuku bayadakwa; ngakho-ke masithumele isimemezelo phakathi kwabo bonke laba bantu ukuthi baqoqele ndawonye imihlambi yezimvu zabo kanye nemihlambi yezinkomo, ukuthi bayiqhube bayise ehlane ngobusuku.
- 7 Futhi ngizohamba njengokomyalo wakho futhi ngikhokhe intela yokucina yewayini kumaLamani, futhi azodakwa; thina sizodlula ngentuba eyimfihlo ngakwesokunxele senkambi yawo ngesikhathi wona esedakiwe futhi eselele.

Mosiah 22

And now it came to pass that Ammon and king Limhi began to consult with the people how they should deliver themselves out of bondage; and even they did cause that all the people should gather themselves together; and this they did that they might have the voice of the people concerning the matter.

And it came to pass that they could find no way to deliver themselves out of bondage, except it were to take their women and children, and their flocks, and their herds, and their tents, and depart into the wilderness; for the Lamanites being so numerous, it was impossible for the people of Limhi to contend with them, thinking to deliver themselves out of bondage by the sword.

Now it came to pass that Gideon went forth and stood before the king, and said unto him: Now O king, thou hast hitherto hearkened unto my words many times when we have been contending with our brethren, the Lamanites.

And now O king, if thou hast not found me to be an unprofitable servant, or if thou hast hitherto listened to my words in any degree, and they have been of service to thee, even so I desire that thou wouldst listen to my words at this time, and I will be thy servant and deliver this people out of bondage.

And the king granted unto him that he might speak. And Gideon said unto him:

Behold the back pass, through the back wall, on the back side of the city. The Lamanites, or the guards of the Lamanites, by night are drunken; therefore let us send a proclamation among all this people that they gather together their flocks and herds, that they may drive them into the wilderness by night.

And I will go according to thy command and pay the last tribute of wine to the Lamanites, and they will be drunken; and we will pass through the secret pass on the left of their camp when they are drunken and asleep.

- 8 Ngaleyo ndlela sizokwemuka nabafazi bethu kanye nabantwana bethu, imihlambi yezimvu zethu, kanye nemihlambi yezinkomo zethu siye ehlane; futhi sizohamba sizungeze izwe lakwaShilomu.
- 9 Kwenzeka ukuthi inkosi yawalalela amazwi kaGidiyoni.
- 10 Inkosi uLimhi yenza ukuthi abantu bayo baqoqele imihlambi yabo ndawonye; futhi yathumela intela yewayini kumaLamani; futhi phezu kwalokho yathumela elinye iwayini, njengesipho sawo; futhi nempela aphuza ngokukhululeka kulo iwayini inkosi uLimhi eyayilithumele kuwo.
- 11 Futhi kwenzeka ukuthi abantu benkosi uLimhi nempela bemuka ngobusuku baya ehlane nemihlambi yezimvu zabo kanye nemihlambi yezinkomo zabo, bahamba bazungeza izwe lakwaShilomu ehlane, futhi bayishintsha indlela yabo baya ngasezweni lakwaZarahemla, beholwa ngu-Amoni kanye nabafowabo.
- 12 Futhi babethathe lonke igolide labo, nesiliva, kanye nezinto eziyigugu zabo, ababengazithwala, futhi ngokunjalo nemiphako yabo, baya ehlane; futhi baqhubeka nohambo lwabo.
- 13 Emva kwezinsuku eziningi besehlane bafika ezweni lakwaZarahemla, bahlangana nabantu baMosiya, futhi baba ngaphansi kwakhe.
- 14 Futhi kwenzeka ukuthi uMosiya wabemukela ngenjabulo; futhi ngokunjalo wemukela nemibhalo yabo, futhi ngokunjalo nemibhalo eyayitholwe ngabantu baLimhi.
- 15 Manje kwenzeka ukuthi ngesikhathi amaLamani esethole ukuthi abantu baLimhi base bemukile baphuma ezweni ngobusuku, bathumela impi ehlane ukuthi ibalandele;
- 16 Futhi emva kokuthi esebalandele izinsuku ezimbili, awabange esakwazi ukulandela imikhondo yabo; ngakho-ke alahleka ehlane.

Thus we will depart with our women and our children, our flocks, and our herds into the wilderness; and we will travel around the land of Shilom.

And it came to pass that the king hearkened unto the words of Gideon.

And king Limhi caused that his people should gather their flocks together; and he sent the tribute of wine to the Lamanites; and he also sent more wine, as a present unto them; and they did drink freely of the wine which king Limhi did send unto them.

And it came to pass that the people of king Limhi did depart by night into the wilderness with their flocks and their herds, and they went round about the land of Shilom in the wilderness, and bent their course towards the land of Zarahemla, being led by Ammon and his brethren.

And they had taken all their gold, and silver, and their precious things, which they could carry, and also their provisions with them, into the wilderness; and they pursued their journey.

And after being many days in the wilderness they arrived in the land of Zarahemla, and joined Mosiah's people, and became his subjects.

And it came to pass that Mosiah received them with joy; and he also received their records, and also the records which had been found by the people of Limhi.

And now it came to pass when the Lamanites had found that the people of Limhi had departed out of the land by night, that they sent an army into the wilderness to pursue them;

And after they had pursued them two days, they could no longer follow their tracks; therefore they were lost in the wilderness.

*Indaba ka-Alima kanye nabantu beNkosi,
ababebalekisiwe baya ehlane ngabantu benkosi uNowa.*

Mosiya 23

- 1 Manje u-Alima, esexwayiswe yiNkosi ukuthi amabutho enkosi uNowa ayezotheleka phezu kwabo, futhi esazise abantu bakhe, ngakho-ke baqoqela ndawonye imihlambi yabo, futhi bathatha okunye okusanhlamvu kwabo, bemuka baya ehlane phambi kwamabutho enkosi uNowa.
- 2 Futhi iNkosi nempela yabaqinisa, ukuze abantu benkosi uNowa bangakwazi ukubafica ukuthi bababulale.
- 3 Futhi babaleka bathatha uhambo lwezinsuku eziyisishiyagalombili besehlane.
- 4 Futhi bafika ezweni, yebo, ngisho ezweni elihle kakhulu futhi elipholile, izwe lamanzi acwebile.
- 5 Futhi bagxumeka amatende abo, futhi baqala ukulima umhlabathi, futhi baqala ukwakha izakhiwo; yebo, babekhuthela, futhi nempela basebenza kakhulu.
- 6 Futhi abantu babenesifiso sokuthi u-Alima abe yinkosi yabo, ngokuba wayethandwa ngabantu bakhe.
- 7 Kodwa wathi kubo: Bhekani, akukuhle ukuthi sibe nenkosi; ngokuba isho kanje iNkosi: Ningacabangi ukuthi enye inyama ingaphezulu kwenye, noma umuntu oyedwa makangaziboni engaphezulu komunye; ngakho-ke ngithi kini akukuhle ukuthi nibe nenkosi.
- 8 Nokho, ukuba kwakungenzeka ukuthi nikwazi njalo ukuba namadoda alungileyo ukuthi abe ngamakhosi enu bekuyoba kuhle kini ukuthi nibe nenkosi.
- 9 Kodwa khumbulani ububi benkosi uNowa kanye nabaphristi bayo; futhi nami uqobo ngangena ogibeni, futhi ngenza eziningi izinto ezazinengekile emehlweni eNkosi, ezangenzela ukuphenduka okunzima;
- 10 Nokho, emva kokuhlupheka okukhulu, iNkosi nempela yakuzwa ukukhala kwami, yayiphendula imithandazo yami, futhi isingenze isu ezandleni zayo ekuletheni abaningi kangaka benu ekulazini iqiniso layo.

An account of Alma and the people of the Lord, who were driven into the wilderness by the people of King Noah.

Mosiah 23

Now Alma, having been warned of the Lord that the armies of king Noah would come upon them, and having made it known to his people, therefore they gathered together their flocks, and took of their grain, and departed into the wilderness before the armies of king Noah.

And the Lord did strengthen them, that the people of king Noah could not overtake them to destroy them.

And they fled eight days' journey into the wilderness.

And they came to a land, yea, even a very beautiful and pleasant land, a land of pure water.

And they pitched their tents, and began to till the ground, and began to build buildings; yea, they were industrious, and did labor exceedingly.

And the people were desirous that Alma should be their king, for he was beloved by his people.

But he said unto them: Behold, it is not expedient that we should have a king; for thus saith the Lord: Ye shall not esteem one flesh above another, or one man shall not think himself above another; therefore I say unto you it is not expedient that ye should have a king.

Nevertheless, if it were possible that ye could always have just men to be your kings it would be well for you to have a king.

But remember the iniquity of king Noah and his priests; and I myself was caught in a snare, and did many things which were abominable in the sight of the Lord, which caused me sore repentance;

Nevertheless, after much tribulation, the Lord did hear my cries, and did answer my prayers, and has made me an instrument in his hands in bringing so many of you to a knowledge of his truth.

- 11 Nokho, kulokhu angiziqhayisi, ngokuba angifanele ukuziqhayisa.
- 12 Manje ngithi kini, benicindezelwe yinkosi uNowa, futhi benisebugqilini bakhe kanye nabaphristi bakhe, futhi nangena ebubini ngenxa yabo; ngakho-ke naniboshwe ngezibopho zobubi.
- 13 Manje njengoba senikhululiwe ngamandla kaNkulunkulu naphuma kulezi zibopho; yebo, ngisho nasezandleni zenkosi uNowa kanye nabantu bakhe, futhi ngokunjalo nakuzo izibopho zobubi, ngisho kanjalo ngifisa ukuthi nime niqine kulenkululeko enikhululwe ngayo, futhi nokuthi ningathembi muntu ukuthi abe yinkosi phezu kwenu.
- 14 Futhi phezu kwalokho ningathembi namunye ukuthi abe ngumfundisi noma yisikhonzi senu, ngaphandle kokuthi engumuntu kaNkulunkulu, ehamba ezindleleni zakhe futhi eyigcina imiyalelo yakhe.
- 15 U-Alima wabafundisa ngalendlela abantu bakhe, ukuthi wonke umuntu kufanele athande umakhelwane wakhe njengaye, ukuze kungabi khona mpikiswano phakathi kwabo.
- 16 Manje, u-Alima wayengumphristi wabo omkhulu, yena engumsunguli webandla labo.
- 17 Futhi kwenzeka ukuthi akukho namunye owanikezwa igunya lokushumayela noma lokufundisa ngaphandle kokuthi kube ngaye kuvela kuNkulunkulu. Ngakho-ke wagcoba bonke abaphristi kanye nabo bonke abafundisi babo; futhi abekho abagcwotshwayo ngaphandle kokuthi bengabantu abalungile.
- 18 Ngakho-ke nempela bababheka abantu babo, futhi babondla ngezinto eziphathelene nokulunga.
- 19 Futhi kwenzeka ukuthi baqala ukuphumelela kakhulu ezweni; futhi balibiza lelozwe ngokuthi yiHelamu.
- 20 Futhi kwenzeka ukuthi nempela banda futhi baphumelela kakhulu ezweni lakwaHelamu; futhi bakha idolobha, abalibiza ngokuthi yidolobha lakwaHelamu.

Nevertheless, in this I do not glory, for I am unworthy to glory of myself.

And now I say unto you, ye have been oppressed by king Noah, and have been in bondage to him and his priests, and have been brought into iniquity by them; therefore ye were bound with the bands of iniquity.

And now as ye have been delivered by the power of God out of these bonds; yea, even out of the hands of king Noah and his people, and also from the bonds of iniquity, even so I desire that ye should stand fast in this liberty wherewith ye have been made free, and that ye trust no man to be a king over you.

And also trust no one to be your teacher nor your minister, except he be a man of God, walking in his ways and keeping his commandments.

Thus did Alma teach his people, that every man should love his neighbor as himself, that there should be no contention among them.

And now, Alma was their high priest, he being the founder of their church.

And it came to pass that none received authority to preach or to teach except it were by him from God. Therefore he consecrated all their priests and all their teachers; and none were consecrated except they were just men.

Therefore they did watch over their people, and did nourish them with things pertaining to righteousness.

And it came to pass that they began to prosper exceedingly in the land; and they called the land Helam.

And it came to pass that they did multiply and prosper exceedingly in the land of Helam; and they built a city, which they called the city of Helam.

21 Nokho iNkosi ibona kufanele ukuthi ibajezise abantu bayo; yebo, iyakuvivinya ukubekezela kwabo kanye nokholo lwabo.

22 Nokho—lowo obeka ithemba lakhe kuyo nguye kanye lowo oyophakanyiswa ngosuku lokugcina. Yebo, futhi kwaba njalo nakulaba bantu.

23 Ngokuba bheka, ngizonikhombisa ukuthi babesekuthunjweni, futhi kwakungekho namunye owayengabakhulula kodwa iNkosi uNkulunkulu wabo, yebo, ngisho uNkulunkulu ka-Abrahama kanye no-Isaka kanye noJakobe.

24 Futhi kwenzeka ukuthi nempela yabakhulula, futhi yawakhombisa amandla ayo amakhulu kubo, futhi yabankulu injabulo yabo.

25 Ngokuba bheka, kwenzeka ukuthi ngesikhathi besezweni lakwaHelamu, yebo, edolobheni lakwaHelamu, ngesikhathi belima ezweni lonke, bheka impi yamaLamani yayisemingceleni yezwe.

26 Manje kwenzeka ukuthi abafowabo ba-Alima babaleka emasimini abo, futhi baqoqana ndawonye edolobheni lakwaHelamu; futhi babenokwesaba okukhulu ngenxa yokuqhamuka kwamaLamani.

27 Kepha u-Alima wahamba futhi wema phakathi kwabo, futhi wabanxusa ukuthi bangesabi, kodwa bakhumbule iNkosi uNkulunkulu wabo futhi iyobakhulula.

28 Ngakho-ke bakwehlisa ukwesaba kwabo, futhi baqala ukukhala eNkosini ukuthi ithambise izinhliziyi zamaLamani, ukuze angababulali nabafazi babo, kanye nabantwana babo.

29 Futhi kwenzeka ukuthi iNkosi nempela yazithambisa izinhliziyi zamaLamani. Futhi u-Alima kanye nabafowabo bahamba futhi bazinikela ezandleni zawo; futhi amaLamani alithatha izwe lakwaHelamu.

30 Manje amabutho amaLamani, lawo ayelandele ngemuva abantu benkosi uLimhi, ayeselahlekile ehlane izinsuku eziningi.

31 Futhi bheka, ayesethole labo baphristi benkosi uNowa, endaweni ababeyibiza ngokuthi i-Amuloni; futhi base beqale ukuthatha izwe lakwa-Amuloni futhi sebeqale ukulima umhlabathi.

32 Manje igama lomholi walabo baphristi kwakungu-Amuloni.

Nevertheless the Lord seeth fit to chasten his people; yea, he trieth their patience and their faith.

Nevertheless—whosoever putteth his trust in him the same shall be lifted up at the last day. Yea, and thus it was with this people.

For behold, I will show unto you that they were brought into bondage, and none could deliver them but the Lord their God, yea, even the God of Abraham and Isaac and of Jacob.

And it came to pass that he did deliver them, and he did show forth his mighty power unto them, and great were their rejoicings.

For behold, it came to pass that while they were in the land of Helam, yea, in the city of Helam, while tilling the land round about, behold an army of the Lamanites was in the borders of the land.

Now it came to pass that the brethren of Alma fled from their fields, and gathered themselves together in the city of Helam; and they were much frightened because of the appearance of the Lamanites.

But Alma went forth and stood among them, and exhorted them that they should not be frightened, but that they should remember the Lord their God and he would deliver them.

Therefore they hushed their fears, and began to cry unto the Lord that he would soften the hearts of the Lamanites, that they would spare them, and their wives, and their children.

And it came to pass that the Lord did soften the hearts of the Lamanites. And Alma and his brethren went forth and delivered themselves up into their hands; and the Lamanites took possession of the land of Helam.

Now the armies of the Lamanites, which had followed after the people of king Limhi, had been lost in the wilderness for many days.

And behold, they had found those priests of king Noah, in a place which they called Amulon; and they had begun to possess the land of Amulon and had begun to till the ground.

Now the name of the leader of those priests was Amulon.

- 33 Futhi kwenzeka ukuthi u-Amuloni nempela wawancenga amaLamani; futhi phezu kwalokho wathumela abafazi babo, ababengamadodakazi amaLamani, ukuthi ancenge abafowabo, ukuthi angababulali abayeni babo.
- 34 Futhi amaLamani aba nobubele ku-Amuloni kanye nabafowabo, futhi awazange ababulale ngenxa yabafazi babo.
- 35 Futhi u-Amuloni kanye nabafowabo nempela bahlangana namaLamani, futhi babehamba ehlangane befuna izwe lakwaNefi ngesikhathi bethola izwe lakwaHelamu, okwakungelika-Alima kanye nabafowabo.
- 36 Futhi kwenzeka ukuthi amaLamani amthembisa u-Alima kanye nabafowabo, ukuthi uma bengabakhombisa indlela eyayizobaholela ezweni lakwaNefi babezobavumela baphile futhi bakhululeke.
- 37 Kodwa emva kokuthi u-Alima esebakhombisile indlela eyayiya ezweni lakwaNefi amaLamani awasigcinanga isethembiso sawo; kodwa abeka abalindi bazungeza izwe lakwaHelamu, phezu kuka-Alima kanye nabafowabo.
- 38 Futhi insalela yabo yahamba yaya ezweni lakwaNefi; kwathi inxenye yabo yabuyela ezweni lakwaHelamu, futhi phezu kwalokho baletha kanye nabo abafazi kanye nabantwana babalindi labo ababeshiywe ezweni.
- 39 Futhi inkosi yamaLamani yayinikeze u-Amuloni ukuthi abe yinkosi kanye nombusi phezu kwabantu bakhe, ababe sezweni lakwaHelamu; nokho wayengezokuba namandla okwenza noma yini eyayingahambisani nentando yenkosi yamaLamani.

And it came to pass that Amulon did plead with the Lamanites; and he also sent forth their wives, who were the daughters of the Lamanites, to plead with their brethren, that they should not destroy their husbands.

And the Lamanites had compassion on Amulon and his brethren, and did not destroy them, because of their wives.

And Amulon and his brethren did join the Lamanites, and they were traveling in the wilderness in search of the land of Nephi when they discovered the land of Helam, which was possessed by Alma and his brethren.

And it came to pass that the Lamanites promised unto Alma and his brethren, that if they would show them the way which led to the land of Nephi that they would grant unto them their lives and their liberty.

But after Alma had shown them the way that led to the land of Nephi the Lamanites would not keep their promise; but they set guards round about the land of Helam, over Alma and his brethren.

And the remainder of them went to the land of Nephi; and a part of them returned to the land of Helam, and also brought with them the wives and the children of the guards who had been left in the land.

And the king of the Lamanites had granted unto Amulon that he should be a king and a ruler over his people, who were in the land of Helam; nevertheless he should have no power to do anything contrary to the will of the king of the Lamanites.

Mosiya 24

- 1 Futhi kwenzeka ukuthi u-Amuloni nempela wathola ukuthandeka emehlweni enkosi yamaLamani; ngakho-ke, inkosi yamaLamani yamnika yena kanye nabafowabo ukuthi babe ngabafundisi abakhethiweyo phezu kwabantu bayo, yebo, ngisho naphezu kwabantu ababesezweni lakwaShemiloni, nababesezweni lakwaShilomu, kanye nababesezweni lakwa-Amuloni.
- 2 Ngokuba amaLamani ayesevathathile wonke lamazwe; ngakho-ke, inkosi yamaLamani yabeka amakhosi phezu kwawo wonke lamazwe.
- 3 Manje igama lenkosi yamaLamani kwakunguLamani, iqanjwe ngegama likayise; ngakho-ke yabizwa ngokuthi yinkosi uLamani. Futhi yayiyinkosi phezu kwabantu abaningi.
- 4 Futhi yakhetha abafundisi kubafowabo ba-Amuloni kulo lonke izwe okwakungelabantu bakhe; futhi ngaleyondlela ulimi lukaNefi lwaqala ukufundiswa phakathi kwabo bonke abantu bamaLamani.
- 5 Futhi babengabantu abanobungani omunye komunye; nokho babengamazi uNkulunkulu; futhi abafowabo ba-Amuloni ababafundisanga lutho mayelana neNkosi uNkulunkulu wabo, noma ngomthetho kaMose; noma babafundise ngamazwi ka-Abinadi;
- 6 Kodwa babafundisa ukuthi bagcine imibhalo yabo, futhi nokuthi babhalelane omunye nomunye.
- 7 Futhi ngaleyondlela amaLamani aqala ukukhula engcebweni, futhi aqala ukuhwebelana omunye nomunye futhi anda kakhulu, futhi aqala ukuba nobuqili futhi aba ngabantu abahlakaniphile, ngokuhlakanipha kwezwe, yebo, aba ngabantu abanobuqili obukhulu, ethokoza ngayo yonke indlela yobubi kanye neyokugcweleza, ngaphandle kokuthi kube ngaphakathi kwabafowabo.
- 8 Manje kwenzeka ukuthi u-Amuloni waqala ukuthi asebenzise igunya phezu kuka-Alima kanye nabafowabo, futhi waqala ukumhlupha, futhi wenza ukuthi abantwana bakhe bahluphe abantwana babo.

Mosiah 24

And it came to pass that Amulon did gain favor in the eyes of the king of the Lamanites; therefore, the king of the Lamanites granted unto him and his brethren that they should be appointed teachers over his people, yea, even over the people who were in the land of Shemlon, and in the land of Shilom, and in the land of Amulon.

For the Lamanites had taken possession of all these lands; therefore, the king of the Lamanites had appointed kings over all these lands.

And now the name of the king of the Lamanites was Laman, being called after the name of his father; and therefore he was called king Laman. And he was king over a numerous people.

And he appointed teachers of the brethren of Amulon in every land which was possessed by his people; and thus the language of Nephi began to be taught among all the people of the Lamanites.

And they were a people friendly one with another; nevertheless they knew not God; neither did the brethren of Amulon teach them anything concerning the Lord their God, neither the law of Moses; nor did they teach them the words of Abinadi;

But they taught them that they should keep their record, and that they might write one to another.

And thus the Lamanites began to increase in riches, and began to trade one with another and wax great, and began to be a cunning and a wise people, as to the wisdom of the world, yea, a very cunning people, delighting in all manner of wickedness and plunder, except it were among their own brethren.

And now it came to pass that Amulon began to exercise authority over Alma and his brethren, and began to persecute him, and cause that his children should persecute their children.

9 Ngokuba u-Amuloni wayemazi u-Alima, ukuthi waye kade engomunye wabaphristi benkosi, futhi nokuthi kwakunguye owawakholwa amazwi ka-Abinadi futhi wabalekiswa wakhishwa phambi kwenkosi, ngakho-ke wayemthukuthelele; ngokuba wayengaphansi kwenkosi uLamani, nokho walisebenzisa igunya phezu kwabo, futhi wababekela imisebenzi, futhi wabeka izinduna zomsebenzi phezu kwabo.

10 Futhi kwenzeka ukuthi zazinkulu kakhulu izinkathazo zabo kangangokuthi baqala bakhala kakhulu kuNkulunkulu.

11 Futhi u-Amuloni wabayala ukuthi bakuyeke ukukhala kwabo; futhi wabeka abalindi phezu kwabo ukuthi bababheke, ukuze kuthi lowo otholakala ebiza uNkulunkulu abulawe.

12 Futhi u-Alima kanye nabantu bakhe abawaphakamiselanga amazwi abo eNkosini uNkulunkulu wabo, kepha nempela bazithulula izinhliziyi zabo kuyo; futhi nempela yayiyazi imicabango yezinhliziyi zabo.

13 Futhi kwenzeka ukuthi izwi leNkosi lafika kubo besezinkathazweni zabo, lithi: Phakamisani amakhanda enu futhi niduduzeke, ngokuba ngiyasazi isivumelwano enasenza kimi; futhi ngizovumelana nabantu bami futhi ngibakhulule baphume ebugqilini.

14 Futhi phezu kwalokho ngizoyenza ibe lula imithwalo ebekwe phezu kwamahlombe enu, ngendlela yokuthi ngisho nani ngeke niyizwe emihlane yenu, ngisho nangesikhathi nisesekuthunjweni; futhi lokhu ngizokwenza ukuze nime njengofakazi bami emva kwalokhu, futhi nokuthi nazi ngeqiniso ukuthi mina, iNkosi uNkulunkulu, ngiyabahambela abantu bami ezinkathazweni zabo.

15 Manje kwenzeka ukuthi imithwalo eyayibekwe phezu kuka-Alima nabafowabo yenziwa yabalula; yebo, iNkosi nempela yabaqinisa ukuze bakwazi ukuyithwala imithwalo yabo kalula, futhi nempela bazinikela ngokuthokoza kanye nangokubekezela kuyo yonke intando yeNkosi.

For Amulon knew Alma, that he had been one of the king's priests, and that it was he that believed the words of Abinadi and was driven out before the king, and therefore he was wroth with him; for he was subject to king Laman, yet he exercised authority over them, and put tasks upon them, and put taskmasters over them.

And it came to pass that so great were their afflictions that they began to cry mightily to God.

And Amulon commanded them that they should stop their cries; and he put guards over them to watch them, that whosoever should be found calling upon God should be put to death.

And Alma and his people did not raise their voices to the Lord their God, but did pour out their hearts to him; and he did know the thoughts of their hearts.

And it came to pass that the voice of the Lord came to them in their afflictions, saying: Lift up your heads and be of good comfort, for I know of the covenant which ye have made unto me; and I will covenant with my people and deliver them out of bondage.

And I will also ease the burdens which are put upon your shoulders, that even you cannot feel them upon your backs, even while you are in bondage; and this will I do that ye may stand as witnesses for me hereafter, and that ye may know of a surety that I, the Lord God, do visit my people in their afflictions.

And now it came to pass that the burdens which were laid upon Alma and his brethren were made light; yea, the Lord did strengthen them that they could bear up their burdens with ease, and they did submit cheerfully and with patience to all the will of the Lord.

- 16 Futhi kwenzeka ukuthi lwalulukhulu ukholo lwabo kanye nokubekezela kwabo kangangkuthi izwi leNkosi leza kubo futhi, lithi: Duduzekani, ngokuba kusasa ngizonikhulula niphume ebugqilini.
- 17 Futhi yathi ku-Alima: Uzohamba phambi kwalaba bantu, futhi ngizohamba nawe futhi ngikhulule laba bantu baphume ebugqilini.
- 18 Manje kwenzeka ukuthi u-Alima kanye nabantu bakhe ngesikhathi sasebusuku baqoqela imihlambi yabo ndawonye, futhi ngokunjalo nokusanhlamvu kwabo; yebo, ngisho isikhathi sonke sasebusuku babeqoqela ndawonye imihlambi yabo.
- 19 Futhi ekuseni iNkosi yenza ukuthi kufike ubuthongo obunzulu kumaLamani, yebo, futhi nazo zonke izinduna zabo zomsebenzi zazisebuthongweni obukhulu.
- 20 U-Alima kanye nabantu bakhe bemuka baya ehlane; ngesikhathi sebehambe ilanga lonke bagxumeka amatende abo esigodini, basibiza ngokuthi yisigodi sika-Alima, ngokuba wabahola endleleni yabo eya ehlane.
- 21 Yebo, futhi kuso isigodi sika-Alima bathandaza ngokubonga kakhulu kuNkulunkulu ngokuba wayebe nesihawu kubo, futhi wenza lula imithwalo yabo, futhi wabakhulula baphuma ebugqilini; ngokuba babesebugqilini, futhi kwakungekho namunye owayengabakhulula ngaphandle kokuthi kube yiNkosi uNkulunkulu wabo.
- 22 Futhi bambonga uNkulunkulu, yebo, bonke abesilisa babo nabo bonke abesifazane babo kanye nabo bonke abantwana babo ababekwazi ukukhuluma baphakamisa amazwi abo bedumisa uNkulunkulu wabo.
- 23 Manje iNkosi yathi ku-Alima: Sheshisa uphume kanye nalaba bantu kulelizwe, ngokuba amaLamani asevukile futhi ayakulandela; ngakho-ke phuma kulelizwe futhi ngizowamisa amaLamani kuso lesi sigodi ukuze angasondeli ekuxosheni laba bantu.
- 24 Futhi kwenzeka ukuthi bemuka baphuma esigodini, futhi bathatha uhambo lwabo baya ehlane.

And it came to pass that so great was their faith and their patience that the voice of the Lord came unto them again, saying: Be of good comfort, for on the morrow I will deliver you out of bondage.

And he said unto Alma: Thou shalt go before this people, and I will go with thee and deliver this people out of bondage.

Now it came to pass that Alma and his people in the night-time gathered their flocks together, and also of their grain; yea, even all the night-time were they gathering their flocks together.

And in the morning the Lord caused a deep sleep to come upon the Lamanites, yea, and all their taskmasters were in a profound sleep.

And Alma and his people departed into the wilderness; and when they had traveled all day they pitched their tents in a valley, and they called the valley Alma, because he led their way in the wilderness.

Yea, and in the valley of Alma they poured out their thanks to God because he had been merciful unto them, and eased their burdens, and had delivered them out of bondage; for they were in bondage, and none could deliver them except it were the Lord their God.

And they gave thanks to God, yea, all their men and all their women and all their children that could speak lifted their voices in the praises of their God.

And now the Lord said unto Alma: Haste thee and get thou and this people out of this land, for the Lamanites have awakened and do pursue thee; therefore get thee out of this land, and I will stop the Lamanites in this valley that they come no further in pursuit of this people.

And it came to pass that they departed out of the valley, and took their journey into the wilderness.

25 Futhi emva kokuthi kade besehlane izinsuku eziyishumi nambili bafika ezweni lakwaZarahemla; futhi inkosi uMosiya nempela nayo yabemukela ngenjabulo.

And after they had been in the wilderness twelve days they arrived in the land of Zarahemla; and king Mosiah did also receive them with joy.

Mosiya 25

- 1 Manje inkosi uMosiya yenza ukuthi bonke abantu babuthane ndawonye.
- 2 Manje babengebaningi kakhulu ababengabantwana baNefi, noma bengebaningi kakhulu labo ababengabozalo lukaNefi, njengoba kwakunjalo ngabantu baZarahemla, owayengowozalo lukaMuleki, kanye nalabo abeza naye ehlane.
- 3 Futhi babengebaningi kakhulu ababengabantu baNefi kanye nababengabantu baZarahemla njengoba kwakunjalo ngabamaLamani; yebo, babengeyona ngisho inxenyane enkulu kakhulu.
- 4 Manje bonke abantu baNefi base bebuthene ndawonye, futhi ngokunjalo nabo bonke abantu baZarahemla, futhi babebuthene ndawonye bengamaqoqo amabili.
- 5 Futhi kwenzeka ukuthi uMosiya nempela wayifunda, futhi wenza ukuthi ifundwe, imibhalo kaZenifi ifundelwe abantu bakhe; yebo, wayifunda imibhalo yabantu baZenifi, kusukela ngesikhathi beshiya ezweni lakwaZarahemla kuze kube bayabuya futhi.
- 6 Futhi phezu kwalokho wafunda indaba ka-Alima kanye nabafowabo, kanye nazo zonke izinkathazo zabo, kusukela ngesikhathi beshiya ezweni lakwaZarahemla kuze kube yisikhathi bebuya futhi.
- 7 Manje, ngesikhathi uMosiya esenze isiphetho sokufunda imibhalo, abantu bakhe ababehlala ezweni baba nokumangala kanye nokushaqeka.
- 8 Ngokuba babengazi ukuthi bacabangeni; ngokuba ngesikhathi bebona labo ababekhululiwe baphuma ebugqilini bagcwala ukujabula okukhulu kakhulu.
- 9 Futhi phezu kwalokho, ngesikhathi becabanga ngabafowabo ababebulewe ngamaLamani bagcwala usizi, futhi baze bakhapha ngisho izinyembezi eziningi zosizi.
- 10 Futhi phezu kwalokho, ngesikhathi becabanga ngobuhle bukaNkulunkulu obuqonda ngqo kubantu, kanye namandla akhe ekukhululeni u-Alima kanye nabafowabo bephuma ezandleni zamaLamani kanye nasekuthunjweni, nempela baphakamisa amazwi abo futhi bambonga uNkulunkulu.

Mosiah 25

And now king Mosiah caused that all the people should be gathered together.

Now there were not so many of the children of Nephi, or so many of those who were descendants of Nephi, as there were of the people of Zarahemla, who was a descendant of Mulek, and those who came with him into the wilderness.

And there were not so many of the people of Nephi and of the people of Zarahemla as there were of the Lamanites; yea, they were not half so numerous.

And now all the people of Nephi were assembled together, and also all the people of Zarahemla, and they were gathered together in two bodies.

And it came to pass that Mosiah did read, and caused to be read, the records of Zeniff to his people; yea, he read the records of the people of Zeniff, from the time they left the land of Zarahemla until they returned again.

And he also read the account of Alma and his brethren, and all their afflictions, from the time they left the land of Zarahemla until the time they returned again.

And now, when Mosiah had made an end of reading the records, his people who tarried in the land were struck with wonder and amazement.

For they knew not what to think; for when they beheld those that had been delivered out of bondage they were filled with exceedingly great joy.

And again, when they thought of their brethren who had been slain by the Lamanites they were filled with sorrow, and even shed many tears of sorrow.

And again, when they thought of the immediate goodness of God, and his power in delivering Alma and his brethren out of the hands of the Lamanites and of bondage, they did raise their voices and give thanks to God.

- 11 Futhi phezu kwalokho, ngesikhathi becabanga ngamaLamani, ayengabafowabo, ngokona kwawo kanye nangesimo sawo esingcolile, bagcwala ubuhlungu nokudabuka ngokuphathelele nokuzuza kwemiphefumulo yawo.
- 12 Futhi kwenzeka ukuthi labo ababengabantwana ba-Amuloni kanye nabafowabo, ababethathe amadodakazi amaLamani ukuwashada, abaphathekanga kahle ngendlela oyise ababeziphethe ngayo, futhi bona abazange besabizwa ngamagama oyise, ngakho-ke bazithathela igama likaNefi, ukuze babizwe ngabantwana baNefi futhi babalwe kanye nalabo ababebizwa ngokuthi bangamaNefi.
- 13 Manje bonke abantu baZarahemla babalwa kanye namaNefi, futhi lokhu ngenxa yokuthi umbuso wawunganikezwanga muntu kodwa kulabo ababengabozalo lukaNefi.
- 14 Manje kwenzeka ukuthi ngesikhathi uMosiya esenze isiphetho senkulumo kanye nokufundela abantu bakhe, waba nesifiso sokuthi u-Alima naye ngokunjalo akhulume kubantu.
- 15 Futhi u-Alima nempela wakhuluma kubo, ngesikhathi bonke seabuthene ndawonye amaqoqo amakhulu, futhi wahamba esuka kwelinye iqoqo eya kwelinye, eshumayela kubantu ukuphenduka nokholo eNkosini.
- 16 Futhi nempela wabancenga abantu baLimhi kanye nabafowabo, bonke labo ababekhululiwe baphuma ebugqilini, ukuthi bakhumbule ukuthi kwakuyiNkosi eyabakhulula.
- 17 Futhi kwenzeka ukuthi emva kokuthi u-Alima esebafundisile abantu izinto eziningi, futhi esenze isiphetho sokukhuluma nabo, inkosi uLimhi yaba nesifiso sokuthi ibhabhadiswe; futhi nabo bonke abantu bayo babanesifiso sokuthi nabo babhabhadiswe.
- 18 Ngakho-ke, u-Alima nempela wahamba waya emanzini futhi nempela wababhabhadisa; yebo, wababhabhadisa ngendlela leyo enza ngayo kubafowabo emanzini kaMormoni; yebo, futhi ngobuningi balabo ababhabhadisayo nempela bangena ebandleni likaNkulunkulu; futhi lokhu kwakungenxa yokukholelwa kwabo emazwini ka-Alima.

And again, when they thought upon the Lamanites, who were their brethren, of their sinful and polluted state, they were filled with pain and anguish for the welfare of their souls.

And it came to pass that those who were the children of Amulon and his brethren, who had taken to wife the daughters of the Lamanites, were displeased with the conduct of their fathers, and they would no longer be called by the names of their fathers, therefore they took upon themselves the name of Nephi, that they might be called the children of Nephi and be numbered among those who were called Nephites.

And now all the people of Zarahemla were numbered with the Nephites, and this because the kingdom had been conferred upon none but those who were descendants of Nephi.

And now it came to pass that when Mosiah had made an end of speaking and reading to the people, he desired that Alma should also speak to the people.

And Alma did speak unto them, when they were assembled together in large bodies, and he went from one body to another, preaching unto the people repentance and faith on the Lord.

And he did exhort the people of Limhi and his brethren, all those that had been delivered out of bondage, that they should remember that it was the Lord that did deliver them.

And it came to pass that after Alma had taught the people many things, and had made an end of speaking to them, that king Limhi was desirous that he might be baptized; and all his people were desirous that they might be baptized also.

Therefore, Alma did go forth into the water and did baptize them; yea, he did baptize them after the manner he did his brethren in the waters of Mormon; yea, and as many as he did baptize did belong to the church of God; and this because of their belief on the words of Alma.

- 19 Futhi kwenzeka ukuthi inkosi uMosiya yanikeza u-Alima ukuthi akhe amabandla kulo lonke izwe lakwaZarahemla; futhi yamnika amandla okuthi abeke abaphristi kanye nabafundisi phezu kwawo wonke amabandla.
- 20 Manje lokhu kwenziwa ngenxa yokuthi babebaningi kakhulu abantu kangangokuthi babengenakuphathwa ngumfundisi oyedwa; noma bonke bakwazi ukulizwa izwi likaNkulunkulu embuthanweni owodwa;
- 21 Ngakho-ke nempela babuthana ndawonye amaqoqo ehlukene, bebizwa ngokuthi bangamabandla; ibandla nebandla linabaphristi balo kanye nabafundisi balo, futhi wonke umphristi eshumayela izwi njengoba lalinikeziwe kuye ngomlomo ka-Alima.
- 22 Futhi ngalendlela, naphezu kokuthi kwakungamabandla amaningi bonke babeyibandla elilodwa, yebo, ngisho ibandla likaNkulunkulu; ngokuba kwakungekho lutho olwalushunyayelwa kuwo wonke amabandla ngaphandle kokuphenduka kanye nokholo kuNkulunkulu.
- 23 Manje kwasekukhona amabandla ayisikhombisa ezweni lakwaZarahemla. Futhi kwenzeka ukuthi labo ababenesifiso sokubizwa ngegama likaKristu, noma likaNkulunkulu, bazihlanganisa namabandla kaNkulunkulu;
- 24 Futhi babebizwa ngokuthi bangabantu baNkulunkulu. Futhi iNkosi nempela yawuthela uMoya wayo phezu kwabo, futhi babusiseka, futhi baphumelela ezweni.
- And it came to pass that king Mosiah granted unto Alma that he might establish churches throughout all the land of Zarahemla; and gave him power to ordain priests and teachers over every church.
- Now this was done because there were so many people that they could not all be governed by one teacher; neither could they all hear the word of God in one assembly;
- Therefore they did assemble themselves together in different bodies, being called churches; every church having their priests and their teachers, and every priest preaching the word according as it was delivered to him by the mouth of Alma.
- And thus, notwithstanding there being many churches they were all one church, yea, even the church of God; for there was nothing preached in all the churches except it were repentance and faith in God.
- And now there were seven churches in the land of Zarahemla. And it came to pass that whosoever were desirous to take upon them the name of Christ, or of God, they did join the churches of God;
- And they were called the people of God. And the Lord did pour out his Spirit upon them, and they were blessed, and prospered in the land.

Mosiya 26

- 1 Manje kwenzeka ukuthi base bebaningi abesizukulwane esikhulayo ababengakwazi ukuwaqonda amazwi enkosi uBenjamini, besengabantwana abancane ngesikhathi ekhuluma kubantu bakhe; futhi babengakholwa ngamasiko oyise.
- 2 Babengakholwa yilokho okwakushiwo mayelana nokuvuka kwabafileyo, noma bakholwe mayelana nokuza kukaKristu.
- 3 Manje ngenxa yokungakholwa kwabo abakwazanga ukuliqonda izwi likaNkulunkulu; futhi izinhliziyi zabo zazilukhuni.
- 4 Futhi abazange babhabhadiswe; noma bazihlanganise nebandla. Futhi babengabantu abehlukile ngokokholo lwabo, futhi bahlala benjalo njalo-njalo, ngisho besesimweni sabo sokunaka inyama kanye nesigcwele ukona; ngokuba abazange bayibize iNkosi uNkulunkulu wabo.
- 5 Manje ekubuseni kukaMosiya babengeyona ngisho ingxenye enkulu njengabantu baNkulunkulu; kodwa ngenxa yemibango phakathi kwabazalwane bona banda kakhulu.
- 6 Ngokuba kwenzeka ukuthi nempela babakhohlisa abanengi ngamazwi abo aluthayo, labo ababesebandleni, futhi nempela babenza ukuthi benze izono eziningi; ngakho-ke kwenzeka ukuthi kwadingeka ukuthi labo ababenze isono, ababesebandleni, baxwayiswe yibandla.
- 7 Futhi kwenzeka ukuthi balethwa phambi kwabaphristi, futhi balethwa kubaphristi ngabafundisi; futhi abaphristi babaletha phambi kuka-Alima, owayengumphristi omkhulu.
- 8 Manje inkosi uMosiya wayenikeze u-Alima igunya phezu kwebandla.
- 9 Futhi kwenzeka ukuthi u-Alima akazanga mayelana nabo; kodwa kwakukhona ofakazi abanengi ngokumelene nabo; yebo, abantu bema bafakaza ngobubi babo obuningi.
- 10 Manje kwakungakaze kube khona into enje eyenzeka ebandleni ngaphambili; ngakho-ke u-Alima wakhathazeka emoyeni wakhe, futhi wenza ukuthi balethwe phambi kwenkosi.

Mosiah 26

Now it came to pass that there were many of the rising generation that could not understand the words of king Benjamin, being little children at the time he spake unto his people; and they did not believe the tradition of their fathers.

They did not believe what had been said concerning the resurrection of the dead, neither did they believe concerning the coming of Christ.

And now because of their unbelief they could not understand the word of God; and their hearts were hardened.

And they would not be baptized; neither would they join the church. And they were a separate people as to their faith, and remained so ever after, even in their carnal and sinful state; for they would not call upon the Lord their God.

And now in the reign of Mosiah they were not half so numerous as the people of God; but because of the dissensions among the brethren they became more numerous.

For it came to pass that they did deceive many with their flattering words, who were in the church, and did cause them to commit many sins; therefore it became expedient that those who committed sin, that were in the church, should be admonished by the church.

And it came to pass that they were brought before the priests, and delivered up unto the priests by the teachers; and the priests brought them before Alma, who was the high priest.

Now king Mosiah had given Alma the authority over the church.

And it came to pass that Alma did not know concerning them; but there were many witnesses against them; yea, the people stood and testified of their iniquity in abundance.

Now there had not any such thing happened before in the church; therefore Alma was troubled in his spirit, and he caused that they should be brought before the king.

- 11 Futhi wathi enkosini: Bheka, naba abaningi esibalethe phambi kwakho, ababekwe icala ngabazalwane babo; yebo, futhi babanjwe benza ububi obunhlobonhlobo. Futhi abaphenduki ebubini babo; ngakho-ke sibalethe phambi kwakho, ukuze ubehlulele njengokwamacala abo.
- 12 Kodwa inkosi uMosiya yathi ku-Alima: Bheka, angizukubehlulela; ngakho-ke ngibanikela ezandleni zakho ukuze behlulelwe.
- 13 Manje umoya ka-Alima waphinda wakhathazeka; wahamba futhi wayobuza eNkosini ukuthi kufanele enzeni mayelana naloludaba, ngokuba wayesaba ukuthi angase enze okungalungile emehlweni kaNkulunkulu.
- 14 Futhi kwenzeka ukuthi emva kokuthi esethandaze ngokushisekela okukhulu kuNkulunkulu, izwi leNkosi lafika kuye, lithi:
- 15 Ubusisiwe, Alima, futhi babusisiwe labo ababhabhadiswa emanzini kaMormoni. Ubusisiwe ngenxa yokholo lwakho olukhulu emazwini wodwa nje enceku yami u-Abinadi.
- 16 Futhi babusisiwe labo ngenxa yokholo lwabo olukhulu emazwini wodwa nje owawakhuluma kubo.
- 17 Futhi ubusisiwe ngokuba umise ibandla phakathi kwalaba bantu; futhi bayomiswa, futhi bayokuba ngabantu bami.
- 18 Yebo, babusisiwe labantu abanesifiso sokuthi baziwe ngegama lami; ngokuba bayobizwa ngegama lami; futhi bangabami.
- 19 Futhi ngenxa yokuthi ubuze kimi mayelana nomoni, ubusisiwe.
- 20 Uyinceku yami; futhi ngenza isivumelwano nawe sokuthi uyoba nokuphila okuphakade; futhi uyongisebenzela futhi uhambe egameni lami, futhi uyoqoqela ndawonye izimvu zami.
- 21 Futhi lowo oyokuzwa izwi lami uyoba yimvu yami; futhi uyomemukela ebandleni, futhi nami ngokunjalo ngiyomemukela.
- 22 Ngokuba bheka, leli yibandla lami; lowo obhabhadiswayo uyobhabhadiselwa ekuphendukeni. Futhi lowo omamukelayo uyokholwa egameni lami; futhi ngiyomthethelela ngomusa.

And he said unto the king: Behold, here are many whom we have brought before thee, who are accused of their brethren; yea, and they have been taken in divers iniquities. And they do not repent of their iniquities; therefore we have brought them before thee, that thou mayest judge them according to their crimes.

But king Mosiah said unto Alma: Behold, I judge them not; therefore I deliver them into thy hands to be judged.

And now the spirit of Alma was again troubled; and he went and inquired of the Lord what he should do concerning this matter, for he feared that he should do wrong in the sight of God.

And it came to pass that after he had poured out his whole soul to God, the voice of the Lord came to him, saying:

Blessed art thou, Alma, and blessed are they who were baptized in the waters of Mormon. Thou art blessed because of thy exceeding faith in the words alone of my servant Abinadi.

And blessed are they because of their exceeding faith in the words alone which thou hast spoken unto them.

And blessed art thou because thou hast established a church among this people; and they shall be established, and they shall be my people.

Yea, blessed is this people who are willing to bear my name; for in my name shall they be called; and they are mine.

And because thou hast inquired of me concerning the transgressor, thou art blessed.

Thou art my servant; and I covenant with thee that thou shalt have eternal life; and thou shalt serve me and go forth in my name, and shalt gather together my sheep.

And he that will hear my voice shall be my sheep; and him shall ye receive into the church, and him will I also receive.

For behold, this is my church; whosoever is baptized shall be baptized unto repentance. And whomsoever ye receive shall believe in my name; and him will I freely forgive.

23 Ngokuba yimi othwala izono zomhlaba; ngokuba yimi obadalile; futhi yimi omnikezayo lowo okholwayo kuze kube sekugcineni indawo esandleni sami sokunene.

24 Ngokuba bheka, babizwa ngegama lami; futhi uma bengazi bayovuswa, futhi bayokuba nendawo yaphakade esandleni sami sokunene.

25 Futhi kuyokwenzeka ukuthi ngesikhathi icilongo lesibili likhala ngaleso sikhathi labo abangazange bangazi bayovuswa futhi bayokuma phambi kwami.

26 Futhi ngaleso sikhathi bayokwazi ukuthi ngiyiNkosi uNkulunkulu wabo, nginguMkhululi wabo; kodwa bona bakhetha ukungakhululwa.

27 Futhi ngaleso sikhathi ngiyovuma kubo ukuthi angikaze ngibazi; futhi bayohamba baye emlilweni ongapheliyo olungiselelwe udeveli kanye nezingelosi zakhe.

28 Ngakho-ke ngithi kuwe, ongenakulizwa izwi lami, nguye kanye lowo ongayikumamukela ebandleni lami, ngokuba lowo angiyikumamukela ngosuku lokugcina.

29 Ngakho-ke ngithi kuwe, Hamba; futhi lowo owonayo ngokumelene nami, uyomehlulela njengokwezono zakhe azenzileyo; futhi uma ezivuma izono zakhe phambi kwakho nami, futhi aphenduke ngeqiniso enhliziyweni yakhe, uyomthethelela, futhi nami ngokunjalo ngiyomthethelela.

30 Yebo, futhi kangangoba abantu bami bephenduka ngiyobathethelela eziphambekweni zabo ngokumelene nami.

31 Futhi phezu kwalokho niyothethelelana omunye nomunye iziphambeko zakhe; ngokuba ngiqinisile ngithi kuwe, lowo ongamxoleli umakhelwane wakhe ngeziphambeko zakhe ngesikhathi ethi uyaphenduka, lowo uzilethele ukubekwa icala.

32 Manje ngithi kuwe, Hamba; lowo ongenakuphenduka ezonweni zakhe lowo akayikubalwa kanye nabantu bami; futhi lokhu kuyogcinwa kusukela kulesi sikhathi kuya phambili.

33 Futhi kwenzeka ngesikhathi u-Alima esewazwile lamazwi wawabhala phansi ukuze abe nawo, ukuze ehlulele abantu bebandla njengokwemiyalo kaNkulunkulu.

For it is I that taketh upon me the sins of the world; for it is I that hath created them; and it is I that granteth unto him that believeth unto the end a place at my right hand.

For behold, in my name are they called; and if they know me they shall come forth, and shall have a place eternally at my right hand.

And it shall come to pass that when the second trump shall sound then shall they that never knew me come forth and shall stand before me.

And then shall they know that I am the Lord their God, that I am their Redeemer; but they would not be redeemed.

And then I will confess unto them that I never knew them; and they shall depart into everlasting fire prepared for the devil and his angels.

Therefore I say unto you, that he that will not hear my voice, the same shall ye not receive into my church, for him I will not receive at the last day.

Therefore I say unto you, Go; and whosoever transgresseth against me, him shall ye judge according to the sins which he has committed; and if he confess his sins before thee and me, and repenteth in the sincerity of his heart, him shall ye forgive, and I will forgive him also.

Yea, and as often as my people repent will I forgive them their trespasses against me.

And ye shall also forgive one another your trespasses; for verily I say unto you, he that forgiveth not his neighbor's trespasses when he says that he repents, the same hath brought himself under condemnation.

Now I say unto you, Go; and whosoever will not repent of his sins the same shall not be numbered among my people; and this shall be observed from this time forward.

And it came to pass when Alma had heard these words he wrote them down that he might have them, and that he might judge the people of that church according to the commandments of God.

- 34 Futhi kwenzeka ukuthi u-Alima wahamba futhi wabehlulela labo ababebanjwe benza ububi, njengokwezwi leNkosi.
- 35 Futhi labo abaphendukayo ezonweni zabo futhi bezivuma, nempela wababala kanye nabantu bebandla;
- 36 Futhi labo abangazivumanga izono zabo futhi bangaphenduka ebubini babo, ababalwanga kanye nabantu bebandla, futhi amagama abo asulwa.
- 37 Futhi kwenzeka ukuthi u-Alima nempela waziqondisa zonke izindaba zebandla; futhi baqala futhi ukuthi babe nokuthula futhi baphumelela kakhulu ngezindaba zebandla, behamba ngokuqaphela phambi kukaNkulunkulu, bemukela abaningi, futhi bebhahhadisa abaningi.
- 38 Manje zonke lezi zinto nempela u-Alima kanye nalabo ayesebenza nabo ababengamele ibandla bazenza, behamba ngayo yonke inkuthalo, befundisa izwi likaNkulunkulu kuzo zonke izinto, behlupheka ngalo lonke uhlobo lwezinkathazo, behlushwa yibo bonke labo ababengesibona abebandla likaNkulunkulu.
- 39 Futhi nempela babaxwayisa abazalwane babo; futhi nabo ngokunjalo baxwayiswa, wonke umuntu ngezwi likaNkulunkulu, ngokwezono zakhe, noma ngokwezono lezo ayezenzile, beyalwe nguNkulunkulu ukuthi bathandaze bangaphezi, futhi babonge kuzo zonke izinto.

And it came to pass that Alma went and judged those that had been taken in iniquity, according to the word of the Lord.

And whosoever repented of their sins and did confess them, them he did number among the people of the church;

And those that would not confess their sins and repent of their iniquity, the same were not numbered among the people of the church, and their names were blotted out.

And it came to pass that Alma did regulate all the affairs of the church; and they began again to have peace and to prosper exceedingly in the affairs of the church, walking circumspectly before God, receiving many, and baptizing many.

And now all these things did Alma and his fellow laborers do who were over the church, walking in all diligence, teaching the word of God in all things, suffering all manner of afflictions, being persecuted by all those who did not belong to the church of God.

And they did admonish their brethren; and they were also admonished, every one by the word of God, according to his sins, or to the sins which he had committed, being commanded of God to pray without ceasing, and to give thanks in all things.

Mosiya 27

- 1 Manje kenzeka ukuthi ukuhlushwa okwathwaliswa ibandla ngabangakholwa kwaba kukhulu kakhulu kangangokuthi ibandla laqala lavungama, futhi lakhononda kubaholi balo mayelana naloludaba; futhi nempela bakhononda ku-Alima. Futhi u-Alima walubeka udaba phambi kwenkosi yabo, uMosiya. Futhi uMosiya wabonisana nabaphristi bakhe.
- 2 Futhi kwenzeka ukuthi inkosi uMosiya yathumela isimemezelo kulo lonke izwe jikelele ukuthi kungabi bikho muntu ongakholwayo ozohlupha noma ngubani walabo abangabebandla likaNkulunkulu.
- 3 Futhi kwaba khona umthetho oqinile kuwo wonke amabandla jikelele wokuthi kungabi bikho ukuhlushwa phakathi kwabo, nokuthi kufanele kube khona ukulingana phakathi kwabo bonke abantu;
- 4 Nokuthi bangavumeli ukuzikhukhumeza nokuqhosha kuphazamise ukuthula kwabo; nokuthi wonke umuntu makamazise umakhelwane wakhe njengaye, basebenze ngezandla zabo uqobo ukuzondla bona.
- 5 Yebo, futhi bonke abaphristi kanye nabafundisi babo kufanele basebenze ngezandla zabo uqobo ukuze bazondle bona, ngaso sonke isikhathi ngaphandle kokuthi uma begula, noma bedinga kakhulu; futhi ngokwenza lezi zinto, nempela bagcwaliswa ngomusa kaNkulunkulu.
- 6 Futhi kwaqala ukuthi kube khona futhi ukuthula okukhulu ezweni; futhi abantu baqala ukuthi babe baningi kakhulu, futhi baqala ukuhlakazeka ndawozonke phezu kobuso bezwe, yebo, enyakatho kanye naseningizimu, empumalanga kanye nasentshonalanga, bakha amadolobha amakhulu kanye namadolobhana kuwo wonke amagumbi amane ezwe.
- 7 Futhi iNkosi nempela yabavakashela futhi yabaphumelelisa, futhi baba baningi futhi baba ngabantu abanothile.

Mosiah 27

And now it came to pass that the persecutions which were inflicted on the church by the unbelievers became so great that the church began to murmur, and complain to their leaders concerning the matter; and they did complain to Alma. And Alma laid the case before their king, Mosiah. And Mosiah consulted with his priests.

And it came to pass that king Mosiah sent a proclamation throughout the land round about that there should not any unbeliever persecute any of those who belonged to the church of God.

And there was a strict command throughout all the churches that there should be no persecutions among them, that there should be an equality among all men;

That they should let no pride nor haughtiness disturb their peace; that every man should esteem his neighbor as himself, laboring with their own hands for their support.

Yea, and all their priests and teachers should labor with their own hands for their support, in all cases save it were in sickness, or in much want; and doing these things, they did abound in the grace of God.

And there began to be much peace again in the land; and the people began to be very numerous, and began to scatter abroad upon the face of the earth, yea, on the north and on the south, on the east and on the west, building large cities and villages in all quarters of the land.

And the Lord did visit them and prosper them, and they became a large and wealthy people.

- 8 Manje amadodana kaMosiya ayebalwa kanye nalabo abangakholwayo; futhi ngokunjalo nomunye wamadodana ka-Alima wayebalwa kanye nabo, ebizwa ngo-Alima, ngegama likayise; nokho, waba yindoda ekhohlakele kakhulu futhi ekhonza izithixo. Futhi wayeyindoda yamazwi amaningi, futhi nempela wakhuluma ukuthopha okuningi kubantu; ngakho-ke wahola abaningi abantu ukuthi benze ngendlela yobubi bakhe.
- 9 Futhi waba ngesikhulu isithiyo ekuthuthukeni kwebandla likaNkulunkulu; entshontsha izinhliziyo zabantu; ebanga ukungezwani okukhulu phakathi kwabantu; enikeza ithuba isitha sikaNkulunkulu ukuthi sisebenzise amandla aso phezu kwabo.
- 10 Manje kwenzeka ukuthi ngesikhathi esahamba ezulazula echitha ibandla likaNkulunkulu, ngokuba nempela wayehamba ngasese ezulazula kanye namadodana kaMosiya efuna ukuchitha ibandla, futhi edukisa abantu beNkosi, ngokuphikisana nemiyalelo kaNkulunkulu, ngisho nenkosi—
- 11 Futhi njengoba ngithe kini, njengoba babehamba bezulazula bevukela uNkulunkulu, bheka, ingelosi yeNkosi yavela kubo; futhi yehla sengathi yayisefwini; futhi yakhuluma sengathi kwakungezwi lokuduma kwezulu, elenza ukuba phansi kuzamazame lapho babemi khona;
- 12 Futhi kwaba kukhulu kakhulu ukwethuka kwabo, kangangokuthi bawela phansi, futhi abazange bawaqonde lawo mazwi eyawakhuluma kubo.
- 13 Nokho yaphinda yamemeza, ithi: Alima, vuka futhi uze phambili, ngokuba kungani uhlupha ibandla likaNkulunkulu na? Ngokuba iNkosi ithe: Leli yibandla lami, futhi ngiyolimisa; futhi akukho nto eyolichitha, ngaphandle kokuthi kube yiziphambeko zabantu bami.
- 14 Futhi phezu kwalokho, ingelosi yathi: Bheka, iNkosi iyizwile imithandazo yabantu bayo, futhi ngokunjalo nemithandazo yenceku yayo, u-Alima, onguyihlo; ngokuba uthandaze ngokholo olukhulu mayelana nawe ukuthi ulethwe olwazini lweqiniso; ngakho-ke, ngalesi sizathu ngize ukuzokukholwisa ngamandla kanye negunya likaNkulunkulu, ukuze imithandazo yezinceku zakhe iphenduleke ngokokholo lwabo.

Now the sons of Mosiah were numbered among the unbelievers; and also one of the sons of Alma was numbered among them, he being called Alma, after his father; nevertheless, he became a very wicked and an idolatrous man. And he was a man of many words, and did speak much flattery to the people; therefore he led many of the people to do after the manner of his iniquities.

And he became a great hinderment to the prosperity of the church of God; stealing away the hearts of the people; causing much dissension among the people; giving a chance for the enemy of God to exercise his power over them.

And now it came to pass that while he was going about to destroy the church of God, for he did go about secretly with the sons of Mosiah seeking to destroy the church, and to lead astray the people of the Lord, contrary to the commandments of God, or even the king—

And as I said unto you, as they were going about rebelling against God, behold, the angel of the Lord appeared unto them; and he descended as it were in a cloud; and he spake as it were with a voice of thunder, which caused the earth to shake upon which they stood;

And so great was their astonishment, that they fell to the earth, and understood not the words which he spake unto them.

Nevertheless he cried again, saying: Alma, arise and stand forth, for why persecutest thou the church of God? For the Lord hath said: This is my church, and I will establish it; and nothing shall overthrow it, save it is the transgression of my people.

And again, the angel said: Behold, the Lord hath heard the prayers of his people, and also the prayers of his servant, Alma, who is thy father; for he has prayed with much faith concerning thee that thou mightest be brought to the knowledge of the truth; therefore, for this purpose have I come to convince thee of the power and authority of God, that the prayers of his servants might be answered according to their faith.

- 15 Manje bheka, ungawangabaza yini amandla kaNkulunkulu na? Ngokuba bheka, ngabe izwi lami alizamazamisi phansi yini na? Futhi phezu kwalokho awungiboni yini phambi kwakho na? Futhi ngithunyiwe ngivela kuNkulunkulu.
- 16 Manje ngithi kuwe: Hamba, futhi ukhumbule ubugqili boyihlo ezweni lakwaHelamu, kanye nasezweni lakwaNefi; futhi ukhumbule ukuthi zinkulu kangakanani izinto abenzela zona; ngokuba babesekuthunjweni, futhi ubakhululile. Manje ngithi kuwe, Alima, hamba ngendlela yakho, futhi ungaphinde ufune ukubhubhisa ibandla futhi, ukuze imithandazo yabo iphendulwe, futhi lokhu ngisho noma ngabe wena ngokwakho uzofuna ukuthi ulahlwe.
- 17 Manje kwenzeka ukuthi lawa kwakungamazwi okugcina ingelosi eyawakhuluma ku-Alima, futhi yemuka.
- 18 Manje u-Alima kanye nalabo ayenabo baphinda bawela phansi; ngokuba kwaba kukhulu ukwethuka kwabo; ngokuba ngawabo amehlo uqobo babebone ingelosi yeNkosi; futhi izwi layo lalinjengokuduma kwezulu, elamazamisa phansi; futhi bazi ukuthi kwakungekho lutho ngaphandle kwamandla kaNkulunkulu ayengamazamisa phansi futhi enze kuzamazame sengathi kwakuzohlukana phakathi.
- 19 Manje ukwethuka kuka-Alima kwaba kukhulu kakhulu kangokuthi waphenduka isimungulu, kangokuthi akakwazanga ukuvula umlomo wakhe; yebo, futhi waba buthakathaka, ngendlela yokuthi akakwazanga ngisho nokunyakazisa izandla zakhe; ngakho-ke wathathwa yilabo ayenabo, futhi wathwalwa engumthothongo, waze wayobekwa phambi kukayise.
- 20 Futhi balanda kuyise konke okwakwenzekile kubo; futhi uyise wathokoza, ngokuba wayazi ukuthi kwakungamandla kaNkulunkulu.
- 21 Futhi wenza ukuthi isixuku sibuthane ndawonye ukuze sibone ukuthi iNkosi iyenzeleni indodana yakhe, futhi ngokunjalo nalabo ababenayo.

And now behold, can ye dispute the power of God? For behold, doth not my voice shake the earth? And can ye not also behold me before you? And I am sent from God.

Now I say unto thee: Go, and remember the captivity of thy fathers in the land of Helam, and in the land of Nephi; and remember how great things he has done for them; for they were in bondage, and he has delivered them. And now I say unto thee, Alma, go thy way, and seek to destroy the church no more, that their prayers may be answered, and this even if thou wilt of thyself be cast off.

And now it came to pass that these were the last words which the angel spake unto Alma, and he departed.

And now Alma and those that were with him fell again to the earth, for great was their astonishment; for with their own eyes they had beheld an angel of the Lord; and his voice was as thunder, which shook the earth; and they knew that there was nothing save the power of God that could shake the earth and cause it to tremble as though it would part asunder.

And now the astonishment of Alma was so great that he became dumb, that he could not open his mouth; yea, and he became weak, even that he could not move his hands; therefore he was taken by those that were with him, and carried helpless, even until he was laid before his father.

And they rehearsed unto his father all that had happened unto them; and his father rejoiced, for he knew that it was the power of God.

And he caused that a multitude should be gathered together that they might witness what the Lord had done for his son, and also for those that were with him.

- 22 Futhi wenza ukuthi abaphristi babuthane ndawonye; futhi baqala ukuzila ukudla, kanye nokuthandaza eNkosini uNkulunkulu wabo ukuthi ivule umlomo ka-Alima, ukuze akhulume, futhi ngokunjalo nokuthi amalunga akhe athole amandla awo—ukuze amehlo abantu avuleke ukuthi babone futhi bazi ngobuhle kanye nenkazimulo kaNkulunkulu.
- 23 Futhi kwenzeka emva kokuthi sebezile ukudla futhi bathandaza isikhathi esiyizinsuku ezimbili kanye nobusuku obubili, amalunga ka-Alima athola amandla awo, futhi wasukuma futhi waqala ukukhuluma kubo, ebancenga ukuthi baduduzeke:
- 24 Ngokuba, wathi, sengiphendukile ezonweni zami, futhi sengikhululwe yiNkosi; bhekani sengizelwe ngokukaMoya.
- 25 Futhi iNkosi ithe kimi: Ungamangali ukuthi bonke abantu, yebo, abesilisa nabesifazane, izizwe zonke, imindeni, izilimi kanye nabantu, kufanele bazalwe kabusha; yebo, bazalwe ngokukaNkulunkulu, bashintshe esimweni sabo sokunaka inyama nesokuwa, babe sesimweni sokulunga, bakhululwe nguNkulunkulu, babe ngamadodana namadodakazi akhe.
- 26 Futhi ngalendlela baba yizidalwa ezintsha; futhi ngaphandle kokuthi benze lokhu, abanakukwazi noma ngayiphi indlela ukuthi badle ifa lombuso kaNkulunkulu.
- 27 Ngithi kini, ngaphandle kokuthi kube njalo, kufanele balahlwe; futhi lokhu ngiyakwazi, ngenxa yokuthi ngicishe ngalahlwa.
- 28 Nokho, emva kokudlula ekuhlupheni okukhulu, sengicishe ngaphenduka sengizofa, iNkosi enesihawu ibone kufanele ukuthi ingihlwithe ngiphume ekusheni kwaphakade, futhi sengizelwe ngokukaNkulunkulu.
- 29 Umphefumulo wami ukhululiwe enyongweni ebabayo nasezibophweni zobubi. Ngangisemhumeni omnyama bhuqe; kodwa manje sengibona ukukhanya okumangalisayo kukaNkulunkulu. Umphefumulo wami wawonakele ngenhlupheko yaphakade; kodwa ngihlwithiwe, futhi umphefumulo wami awusenabuhlungu.

And he caused that the priests should assemble themselves together; and they began to fast, and to pray to the Lord their God that he would open the mouth of Alma, that he might speak, and also that his limbs might receive their strength—that the eyes of the people might be opened to see and know of the goodness and glory of God.

And it came to pass after they had fasted and prayed for the space of two days and two nights, the limbs of Alma received their strength, and he stood up and began to speak unto them, bidding them to be of good comfort:

For, said he, I have repented of my sins, and have been redeemed of the Lord; behold I am born of the Spirit.

And the Lord said unto me: Marvel not that all mankind, yea, men and women, all nations, kindreds, tongues and people, must be born again; yea, born of God, changed from their carnal and fallen state, to a state of righteousness, being redeemed of God, becoming his sons and daughters;

And thus they become new creatures; and unless they do this, they can in nowise inherit the kingdom of God.

I say unto you, unless this be the case, they must be cast off; and this I know, because I was like to be cast off.

Nevertheless, after wading through much tribulation, repenting nigh unto death, the Lord in mercy hath seen fit to snatch me out of an everlasting burning, and I am born of God.

My soul hath been redeemed from the gall of bitterness and bonds of iniquity. I was in the darkest abyss; but now I behold the marvelous light of God. My soul was racked with eternal torment; but I am snatched, and my soul is pained no more.

30 Ngamenqaba uMkhululi wami, futhi ngakuphika nalokho okwakukhulunye ngobaba bethu; kodwa manje ukuze babone ukuthi uzofika, futhi nokuthi uyazikhumbula zonke izidalwa azibumbile, uyoziveza kubo bonke.

31 Yebo, wonke amadolo ayokhothama, futhi zonke izilimi ziyovuma phambi kwakhe. Yebo, ngisho nangosuku lokugcina, ngesikhathi bonke abantu beyokuma ukuthi behlulelwe nguye, ngaleso sikhathi bayovuma ukuthi yena unguNkulunkulu; ngaleso sikhathi bayovuma, labo abangakholwa kuNkulunkulu emhlabeni, ukuthi ukwahlulela kwesijeziso saphakade kulungile kubo; futhi bayothuthumela, baqhaqhazele, futhi bashwabane phansi kokubona kweso lakhe elibona konke.

32 Manje kwenzeka ukuthi u-Alima waqala kusukela ngalesi sikhathi kuya phambili ukuthi afundise abantu, kanye nalabo ababe no-Alima ngesikhathi ingelosi iqhamuka kubo, behamba bezungeza ezweni lonke, bazisa bonke abantu izinto ababezizwile futhi bezibonile, futhi beshumayela izwi likaNkulunkulu ekuhluphekeni okukhulu, behlushwa kakhulu yilabo ababengakholwa, beshaywa ngabaningi babo.

33 Kodwa naphezu kwakho konke lokhu, nempela banika induduzo enkulu ebandleni, befakaza ngokholo lwabo, futhi bebanxusa ngokubekezela kanye nangokuhlupheka okukhulu ukuthi bagcine imiyalelo kaNkulunkulu.

34 Futhi abane babo kwakungamadodana kaMosiya; futhi amagama abo kwakungo-Amoni, no-Aroni, no-Omineri kanye noHimini; lawa kwakungamagama amadodana kaMosiya.

35 Futhi bahamba baliqeda lonke izwe lakwaZarahemla, futhi naphakathi kwabo bonke abantu ababengaphansi kokubuswa yinkosi uMosiya, ngokuzikhandla bezama ukulungisa konke ukonakala ababekwenzile ebandleni, bevuma zonke izono zabo, futhi bememezela zonke izinto ababezibonile, futhi bechaza iziphrofetho kanye nemibhalo engcwele kubo bonke ababenesifiso sokuzizwa.

36 Futhi ngalendlela baba ngabasetshenziswa nguNkulunkulu ekuletheni abaningi olwazini lweqiniso, yebo, olwazini loMkhululi wabo.

I rejected my Redeemer, and denied that which had been spoken of by our fathers; but now that they may foresee that he will come, and that he remembereth every creature of his creating, he will make himself manifest unto all.

Yea, every knee shall bow, and every tongue confess before him. Yea, even at the last day, when all men shall stand to be judged of him, then shall they confess that he is God; then shall they confess, who live without God in the world, that the judgment of an everlasting punishment is just upon them; and they shall quake, and tremble, and shrink beneath the glance of his all-searching eye.

And now it came to pass that Alma began from this time forward to teach the people, and those who were with Alma at the time the angel appeared unto them, traveling round about through all the land, publishing to all the people the things which they had heard and seen, and preaching the word of God in much tribulation, being greatly persecuted by those who were unbelievers, being smitten by many of them.

But notwithstanding all this, they did impart much consolation to the church, confirming their faith, and exhorting them with long-suffering and much travail to keep the commandments of God.

And four of them were the sons of Mosiah; and their names were Ammon, and Aaron, and Omner, and Himni; these were the names of the sons of Mosiah.

And they traveled throughout all the land of Zarahemla, and among all the people who were under the reign of king Mosiah, zealously striving to repair all the injuries which they had done to the church, confessing all their sins, and publishing all the things which they had seen, and explaining the prophecies and the scriptures to all who desired to hear them.

And thus they were instruments in the hands of God in bringing many to the knowledge of the truth, yea, to the knowledge of their Redeemer.

37 Futhi babusiswe kangakanani! Ngokuba nempela bakumemezela ukuthula; bazimemezela izindaba ezimnandi zobuhle; futhi bamemezela ebantwini ukuthi iNkosi iyabusa.

And how blessed are they! For they did publish peace; they did publish good tidings of good; and they did declare unto the people that the Lord reigneth.

Mosiya 28

- 1 Manje kwenzeka ukuthi emva kokuthi amadodana kaMosiya esezenzile zonke lezi zinto, athatha idlanzana elincane kanye nawo abuyela kuyise, inkosi, futhi enesifisosokuthi awavumele ukuthi, wona kanye nalabo ayebakhethile, bahambe bakhuphukele ezweni lakwaNefi ukuze bayoshumayela izinto ababezizwile, futhi nokuthi bayokwabelana ngezwi likaNkulunkulu nabafowabo, amaLamani—
- 2 Ukuze mhlawumbe babalethe olwazini lweNkosi uNkulunkulu wabo, futhi babakholwise ngobubi boyise; futhi nokuthi mhlawumbe babelaphe enzondweni yabo kumaNefi, ukuze nabo benziwe bajabule eNkosini uNkulunkulu wabo, ukuze babe nobungani komunye nomunye, kanye nokuthi kungabe kusaba khona mibango nanini kulo lonke izwe iNkosi uNkulunkulu wabo ebanike lona.
- 3 Manje babenesifiso sokuthi insindiso imenyezelwe kuzo zonke izidalwa, ngokuba abakwazanga ukukumela ukuthi namuphi umphefumulo womuntu ulahleke; yebo, ngisho nemicabango nje yokuthi namuphi umphefumulo ufanele uzwe ubuhlungu obungapheliyo kwabenza ukuthi bathuthumele futhi baqhaqhazele.
- 4 Futhi uMoya weNkosi nempela wasebenza ngalendlela kubo, ngokuba babeyizoni ezimbi kakhulu. Futhi iNkosi yabona kufanele ngomusa wayo ongapheliyo ukuthi ibasindise; nokho bezwa obukhulu ubuhlungu emphefumulweni ngenxa yobubi babo, behluphekile kakhulu futhi besaba ukuthi babezolahlwa inguphakade.
- 5 Futhi kwenzeka ukuthi nempela bamncenga uyise izinsuku eziningi ukuthi bahambe bakhuphukele ezweni lakwaNefi.
- 6 Futhi inkosi uMosiya yahamba futhi yayobuza eNkosini ukuthi iwavumele yini amadodana ayo ahambe akhuphukele phakathi kwamaLamani ukuthi ayoshumayela izwi.
- 7 Futhi iNkosi yathi kuMosiya: Bavumele bahambe bakhuphuke, ngokuba baningi abayokholelwa emazwini abo, futhi bayoba nokuphila okuphakade; futhi ngiyowakhulula amadodana akho aphume ezandleni zamaLamani.

Mosiah 28

Now it came to pass that after the sons of Mosiah had done all these things, they took a small number with them and returned to their father, the king, and desired of him that he would grant unto them that they might, with these whom they had selected, go up to the land of Nephi that they might preach the things which they had heard, and that they might impart the word of God to their brethren, the Lamanites—

That perhaps they might bring them to the knowledge of the Lord their God, and convince them of the iniquity of their fathers; and that perhaps they might cure them of their hatred towards the Nephites, that they might also be brought to rejoice in the Lord their God, that they might become friendly to one another, and that there should be no more contentions in all the land which the Lord their God had given them.

Now they were desirous that salvation should be declared to every creature, for they could not bear that any human soul should perish; yea, even the very thoughts that any soul should endure endless torment did cause them to quake and tremble.

And thus did the Spirit of the Lord work upon them, for they were the very vilest of sinners. And the Lord saw fit in his infinite mercy to spare them; nevertheless they suffered much anguish of soul because of their iniquities, suffering much and fearing that they should be cast off forever.

And it came to pass that they did plead with their father many days that they might go up to the land of Nephi.

And king Mosiah went and inquired of the Lord if he should let his sons go up among the Lamanites to preach the word.

And the Lord said unto Mosiah: Let them go up, for many shall believe on their words, and they shall have eternal life; and I will deliver thy sons out of the hands of the Lamanites.

8 Futhi kwenzeka ukuthi uMosiya wabavumela ukuthi bahambe futhi benze njengokwesicelo sabo.

9 Futhi bathatha uhambo lwabo baya ehlane ukuthi bahambe bakhuphuke bayoshumayela izwi phakathi kwamaLamani; futhi ngizonikeza indaba ngezenzo zabo emva kwalokhu.

10 Manje inkosi uMosiya yayingenamuntu wokuthi imnike umbuso, ngokuba kwakungekho namunye wamadodana ayo owayevuma ukuthatha umbuso.

11 Ngakho-ke wathatha imibhalo eyayiqoshwe ezingcwepheni zethusi, futhi ngokunjalo nasezingcwepheni zikaNefi, kanye nazo zonke izinto ayezigcinile futhi ezilondolozile njengokwemiyalelo kaNkulunkulu, emva kokuthi eseyihumushile wenza ukuthi imibhalo ibhalwe leyo eyayisezingcwepheni zegolide ezazitholwe ngabantu baLimihhi, ezazilethwe kuye ngesandla sikaLimihhi;

12 Futhi lokhu wakwenza ngenxa yentshisekelo enkulu yabantu bakhe; ngokuba babenesifiso esingenakulinganiswa sokuthi bazi mayelana nalabo bantu ababebhujisiwe.

13 Manje wazihumusha ngokusebenzisa lawo matshe amabili ayeboshelwe onqenqemeni lohlaka.

14 Manje lezi zinto zazilungiswe kusukela ekuqaleni, futhi zazidlulisiwe zehla izizukulwane ngezizukulwane, ngenhloso yokuhumusha izilimi;

15 Futhi zazigciniwe futhi zalondolozwa ngesandla seNkosi, ukuze ivezele zonke izidalwa eziyothatha izwe ububi kanye nezinengiso zabantu bayo;

16 Futhi lowo onalezi zinto ubizwa ngokuthi ngumboni, ngendlela yesikhathi sakudala.

17 Manje emva kokuthi uMosiya eseqedile ukuhumusha lemibhalo, bheka, yanika indaba ngabantu ababebhujisiwe, kusukela ngesikhathi ababhujiswa ngaso kuya emuva ekwakhiweni kombhoshongo omkhulu, ngesikhathi iNkosi iphambanisa ulimi lwabantu futhi behlakazwa ndawo zonke phezu kobuso bonke besifunda, yebo, futhi ngisho kusukela ngaleso sikhathi kuya emuva kuze kube sekudalweni kuka-Adamu.

And it came to pass that Mosiah granted that they might go and do according to their request.

And they took their journey into the wilderness to go up to preach the word among the Lamanites; and I shall give an account of their proceedings hereafter.

Now king Mosiah had no one to confer the kingdom upon, for there was not any of his sons who would accept of the kingdom.

Therefore he took the records which were engraven on the plates of brass, and also the plates of Nephi, and all the things which he had kept and preserved according to the commandments of God, after having translated and caused to be written the records which were on the plates of gold which had been found by the people of Limhi, which were delivered to him by the hand of Limhi;

And this he did because of the great anxiety of his people; for they were desirous beyond measure to know concerning those people who had been destroyed.

And now he translated them by the means of those two stones which were fastened into the two rims of a bow.

Now these things were prepared from the beginning, and were handed down from generation to generation, for the purpose of interpreting languages;

And they have been kept and preserved by the hand of the Lord, that he should discover to every creature who should possess the land the iniquities and abominations of his people;

And whosoever has these things is called seer, after the manner of old times.

Now after Mosiah had finished translating these records, behold, it gave an account of the people who were destroyed, from the time that they were destroyed back to the building of the great tower, at the time the Lord confounded the language of the people and they were scattered abroad upon the face of all the earth, yea, and even from that time back until the creation of Adam.

- 18 Manje lendaba nempela yenza abantu baMosiya ukuthi bakhale kakhulu, yebo, babegcwele usizi; nokho yabanika ulwazi oluningi, okwathi ngalo bajabula.
- 19 Futhi lendaba iyobhalwa emva kwalokhu; ngokuba bheka, kuhle ukuthi bonke abantu bazazi izinto ezibhalwe kulendaba.
- 20 Manje, njengoba ngishilo kini, ukuthi emva kokuthi inkosi uMosiya isizenzile lezi zinto, yathatha izingcwephe zethusi, kanye nazo zonke izinto eyayizigcinile, futhi yazinikeza u-Alima, owayeyindodana ka-Alima; yebo, yonke imibhalo, futhi ngokunjalo nezihumushi, futhi yazinikeza yena, futhi yamyala ukuthi azigcine futhi azilondoloze, futhi phezu kwalokho agcine nombhalo wabantu, azidlulise zehle kusukela esizukulwaneni kuya kwesinye, ngisho nanjengoba zazidlulisiwe kwehla kusukela ngesikhathi uLehi eshiya eJerusalema.

Now this account did cause the people of Mosiah to mourn exceedingly, yea, they were filled with sorrow; nevertheless it gave them much knowledge, in the which they did rejoice.

And this account shall be written hereafter; for behold, it is expedient that all people should know the things which are written in this account.

And now, as I said unto you, that after king Mosiah had done these things, he took the plates of brass, and all the things which he had kept, and conferred them upon Alma, who was the son of Alma; yea, all the records, and also the interpreters, and conferred them upon him, and commanded him that he should keep and preserve them, and also keep a record of the people, handing them down from one generation to another, even as they had been handed down from the time that Lehi left Jerusalem.

Mosiya 29

- 1 Manje emva kokuthi uMosiya esekwenzile lokhu wathumela kulo lonke izwe, kubo bonke abantu, enesifiso sokwazi intando yabo mayelana nokuthi ngubani owayezoba yinkosi yabo.
- 2 Futhi kwenzeka ukuthi izwi labantu lafika, lithi: Sinesifiso sokuthi u-Aroni indodana yakho ibe yinkosi yethu kanye nombusi wethu.
- 3 Manje u-Aroni wayehambile wakhuphukela ezweni lakwaNefi, ngakho-ke inkosi ayikwazanga ukunikeza umbuso kuye; futhi naye u-Aroni akawemukelanga umbuso; futhi akubanga bikho namunye emadodaneni kaMosiya owayezimisele ukuthatha umbuso.
- 4 Ngakho-ke inkosi uMosiya yaphinda yathumela kubantu; yebo, yathumela ngisho nangezwi elibhaliwe kubantu. Futhi lawa ngamazwi ayebhaliwe, ethi:
- 5 Bhekani, O nina bantu bami, noma bafowethu, ngokuba nginithatha kanjalo, ngifisa ukuthi niscabange isimo enibizelwe ukuthi niscabange—ngokuba ninesifiso sokuthi nibe nenkosi.
- 6 Manje ngimemezela kini ukuthi lowo okunguye onelungelo lombuso wenqabile, futhi angeke awuthathe umbuso.
- 7 Manje uma kungaba khona omunye ongabekwa esikhundleni sakhe, bhekani ngesaba ukuthi kuyovuka imibango phakathi kwenu. Futhi ngubani owaziyo kumbe indodana yami, umbuso okufanele kube ngowayo, iyoshintsha ithukuthele futhi idonsele kude inxenye yalaba bantu beze kuyo, okuyodala izimpi kanye nemibango phakathi kwenu, okuyokuba yisizathu sokuchitha igazi eliningi kanye nokuphendukezela indlela yeNkosi, yebo, futhi kubhubhise imiphefumulo yabangingi abantu.
- 8 Manje ngithi kini masihlakaniphe futhi sicabange ngalezi zinto, ngokuba asinalo ilungelo lokubulala indodana yami, futhi akufanele sibe nelungelo noma liphilokuthi sibulale omunye uma engabekwa esikhundleni sayo.

Mosiah 29

Now when Mosiah had done this he sent out throughout all the land, among all the people, desiring to know their will concerning who should be their king.

And it came to pass that the voice of the people came, saying: We are desirous that Aaron thy son should be our king and our ruler.

Now Aaron had gone up to the land of Nephi, therefore the king could not confer the kingdom upon him; neither would Aaron take upon him the kingdom; neither were any of the sons of Mosiah willing to take upon them the kingdom.

Therefore king Mosiah sent again among the people; yea, even a written word sent he among the people. And these were the words that were written, saying:

Behold, O ye my people, or my brethren, for I esteem you as such, I desire that ye should consider the cause which ye are called to consider—for ye are desirous to have a king.

Now I declare unto you that he to whom the kingdom doth rightly belong has declined, and will not take upon him the kingdom.

And now if there should be another appointed in his stead, behold I fear there would rise contentions among you. And who knoweth but what my son, to whom the kingdom doth belong, should turn to be angry and draw away a part of this people after him, which would cause wars and contentions among you, which would be the cause of shedding much blood and perverting the way of the Lord, yea, and destroy the souls of many people.

Now I say unto you let us be wise and consider these things, for we have no right to destroy my son, neither should we have any right to destroy another if he should be appointed in his stead.

- 9 Futhi uma indodana yami ingaphinda ibuyele ekuziqhenyeni kwayo kanye nasezintweni eziyize iyozihoxisa izinto eyazisho, futhi bese ifuna ilungelo layo lombuso, lokho okuyoyenza futhi ngokunjalo nalaba bantu ukuthi benze izono eziningi.
- 10 Manje masihlakani phe futhi sibheke phambili kulezi zinto, futhi senze lokho okuzokwenza ukuthula kwalaba bantu.
- 11 Ngakho-ke ngizokuba yinkosi yenu insalela yezinsuku zami; nokho, masibeke abahluleli, ukuthi behlulele laba bantu ngokomthetho wethu; futhi sizozihlela kabusha izindaba zalaba bantu, ngokuba sizobeka abantu abahlakaniphile ukuthi babe ngabahluleli, abazokwahlulela laba bantu ngokwemiyalelo kaNkulunkulu.
- 12 Manje kungcono ukuthi umuntu ehlulelwe ngokukaNkulunkulu kunokuthi kube ngokomuntu, ngokuba izahlulelo zikaNkulunkulu zihlale zilungile njalo, kodwa izahlulelo zomuntu azihlali zilungile njalo.
- 13 Ngakho-ke, uma bekungenzeka ukuthi nibe namadoda alungile ukuthi abe ngamakhosi enu, ayomisa imithetho kaNkulunkulu, futhi ehlulele laba bantu ngokwemiyalelo yakhe, yebo, uma beningakwazi ukuthi nibe namadoda abe ngamakhosi enu angenza ngisho njengoba ubaba uBenjamini abenzela laba bantu—ngithi kini, uma lokhu bekungase kuhlale kunjalo bekuyokuba kuhle ukuthi nibe namakhosi ukuthi abuse phezu kwenu njalo-njalo.
- 14 Futhi ngisho nami uqobo lwami ngisebenzile ngawo wonke amandla kanye nezikhwepha enginazo, ukuthi nginifundise imiyalelo kaNkulunkulu, futhi ngakhe ukuthula kulo lonke izwe, ukuze kungabi bikho zimpi namibango, nakweba, nakuphanga, nakubulala, noma nanoma hlobo luni lobubi;
- 15 Futhi lowo owenze ububi, ngimjezisile njengokwecala lelo alenzile, ngokomthetho lowo esinikezwe wona ngobaba bethu.
- 16 Manje ngithi kini, ngenxa yokuthi bonke abantu abalunganga akukuhle ukuthi nibe nenkosi noma amakhosi ukuthi abuse phezu kwenu.

And if my son should turn again to his pride and vain things he would recall the things which he had said, and claim his right to the kingdom, which would cause him and also this people to commit much sin.

And now let us be wise and look forward to these things, and do that which will make for the peace of this people.

Therefore I will be your king the remainder of my days; nevertheless, let us appoint judges, to judge this people according to our law; and we will newly arrange the affairs of this people, for we will appoint wise men to be judges, that will judge this people according to the commandments of God.

Now it is better that a man should be judged of God than of man, for the judgments of God are always just, but the judgments of man are not always just.

Therefore, if it were possible that you could have just men to be your kings, who would establish the laws of God, and judge this people according to his commandments, yea, if ye could have men for your kings who would do even as my father Benjamin did for this people—I say unto you, if this could always be the case then it would be expedient that ye should always have kings to rule over you.

And even I myself have labored with all the power and faculties which I have possessed, to teach you the commandments of God, and to establish peace throughout the land, that there should be no wars nor contentions, no stealing, nor plundering, nor murdering, nor any manner of iniquity;

And whosoever has committed iniquity, him have I punished according to the crime which he has committed, according to the law which has been given to us by our fathers.

Now I say unto you, that because all men are not just it is not expedient that ye should have a king or kings to rule over you.

- 17 Ngokuba bhekani, buningi kangakanani ububi inkosi embi eyodwa eyenza ukuthi benziwe, yebo, futhi kukhulu kangakanani ukubhujiswa!
- 18 Yebo, khumbulani inkosi uNowa, ububi bayo kanye nezinengiso zayo, futhi ngokunjalo nobubi kanye nezinengiso zabantu bayo. Bhekani kukhulu kangakanani ukubhujiswa okwafika phezu kwabo; futhi phezu kwalokho ngenxa yobubi babo balethwa ekuthunjweni.
- 19 Futhi ukuba kwakungekhona ukuthi kwakungenxa yokulanyulelwa nguMenzi wabo onokuhlakanipha konke, futhi lokhu ngenxa yokuphenduka kwabo kweqiniso, kwakufanele basale ngokungenakuvinjelwa ebugqilini kuze kube manje.
- 20 Kodwa bhekani, nempela wabakhulula ngenxa yokuthi bazithoba phambi kwakhe; futhi ngenxa yokuthi bakhala kakhulu kuye nempela wabakhulula wabakhipha ebugqilini; futhi iNkosi isebenza kanjalo ngamandla ayo kuzo zonke izimo phakathi kwabantwana babantu, yelula isandla somusa kulabo ababeka ithemba labo kuyo.
- 21 Futhi bhekani, manje ngithi kini, aninakuyisusa esihlalweni inkosi enobubi ngaphandle kokuthi kube khona umbango omkhulu, kanye nokuchitheka kwegazi eliningi.
- 22 Ngokuba bhekani, inabangani bayo ebubini, futhi igcina abalindi bayo eduze kwayo; futhi idabula imithetho yalabo ababuse ngokulunga phambi kwayo; futhi inyathela ngaphansi kwezinyawo zayo imiyalelo kaNkulunkulu;
- 23 Imisa imithetho, iyithumele kubantu bayo, yebo, imithetho ehambisana nenkohlakalo yayo uqobo; futhi lowo ongayilaleli imithetho yayo yenza ukuthi abulawe; futhi labo abayivukelayo izothumela amabutho ayo kubo ukuthi ayolwa, futhi uma kungenzeka izobabulala; futhi inkosi engalungile iziphendukezela kanjalo-ke izindlela zakho konke ukulunga.
- 24 Manje bhekani ngithi kini, akukuhle ukuthi izinengiso ezinjena zize phezu kwenu.

For behold, how much iniquity doth one wicked king cause to be committed, yea, and what great destruction!

Yea, remember king Noah, his wickedness and his abominations, and also the wickedness and abominations of his people. Behold what great destruction did come upon them; and also because of their iniquities they were brought into bondage.

And were it not for the interposition of their all-wise Creator, and this because of their sincere repentance, they must unavoidably remain in bondage until now.

But behold, he did deliver them because they did humble themselves before him; and because they cried mightily unto him he did deliver them out of bondage; and thus doth the Lord work with his power in all cases among the children of men, extending the arm of mercy towards them that put their trust in him.

And behold, now I say unto you, ye cannot dethrone an iniquitous king save it be through much contention, and the shedding of much blood.

For behold, he has his friends in iniquity, and he keepeth his guards about him; and he teareth up the laws of those who have reigned in righteousness before him; and he trampleth under his feet the commandments of God;

And he enacteth laws, and sendeth them forth among his people, yea, laws after the manner of his own wickedness; and whosoever doth not obey his laws he causeth to be destroyed; and whosoever doth rebel against him he will send his armies against them to war, and if he can he will destroy them; and thus an unrighteous king doth pervert the ways of all righteousness.

And now behold I say unto you, it is not expedient that such abominations should come upon you.

- 25 Ngakho-ke, khethani ngezwi lalabantu, abehluleli, ukuze nahlulelwe ngokwemithetho leyo eninikwe yona ngobaba bethu, elungile, futhi ababenikezwe yona ngesandla seNkosi.
- 26 Manje akujwayelekile ukuthi izwi labantu lifise nanoma yini engahambisani nalokho okulungile; kodwa kujwayelekile ukuthi inxenye encane yabantu ifise lokho okungalungile; ngakho-ke lokhu kuyofanele nikuqaphele futhi nikwenze umthetho wenu—ukuthi nenze umsebenzi wenu ngezwi labantu.
- 27 Futhi uma isikhathi sesifika lapho izwi labantu likhetha ububi, ngaleso sikhathi kuzoba yisikhathi lapho izahlulelo zikaNkulunkulu zizofika phezu kwenu; yebo, kuzokuba yisikhathi lapho ezonivakashela ngokubhujiswa okukhulu ngisho nanjengoba kuze kube manje elivakashele lelizwe.
- 28 Manje uma ninabehluleli, futhi benganehluleli ngokomthetho lowo obekiwe, ningenza ukuthi behlulelwe ngumahluleli omkhulu.
- 29 Uma abehluleli benu abakhulu bengahluleli ngezahlulelo ezilungile, niyokwenza ukuthi isibalo esincane sabehluleli benu abancane bahlangane ndawonye, futhi bayokwahlulela abehluleli benu abakhulu, ngokwezwi labantu.
- 30 Futhi ngiyaniyala ukuthi nenze lezi zinto ngokwesaba iNkosi; futhi ngiyaniyala ukuthi nizenze lezi zinto, futhi nokuthi ningabi nankosi; ukuze kuthi uma laba bantu benza izono kanye nobubi buyobuzwa phezu kwamakhanda abo.
- 31 Ngokuba bhekani ngithi kini, izono zabantu abaningi zenziwa ngububi bamakhosi abo; ngakho-ke ububi babo bubuzwa phezu kwamakhanda amakhosi abo.
- 32 Manje ngifisa ukuthi lokhu kungalingani kungabe kusaba khona kulelizwe, ikakhulukazi phakathi kwalaba bantu bami; kodwa ngifisa ukuthi lelizwe libe yizwe lenkululeko, futhi wonke umuntu athokozele amalungelo akhe kanye namathuba ngokufanayo, inqobo nje uma iNkosi isabona kulungile ukuthi siphile futhi silithole lelizwe njengefa, yebo, ngisho inqobo nje uma ngabe noma yibaphi bezizukulwane zethu ezizayo besasele phezu kobuso balelizwe.

Therefore, choose you by the voice of this people, judges, that ye may be judged according to the laws which have been given you by our fathers, which are correct, and which were given them by the hand of the Lord.

Now it is not common that the voice of the people desireth anything contrary to that which is right; but it is common for the lesser part of the people to desire that which is not right; therefore this shall ye observe and make it your law—to do your business by the voice of the people.

And if the time comes that the voice of the people doth choose iniquity, then is the time that the judgments of God will come upon you; yea, then is the time he will visit you with great destruction even as he has hitherto visited this land.

And now if ye have judges, and they do not judge you according to the law which has been given, ye can cause that they may be judged of a higher judge.

If your higher judges do not judge righteous judgments, ye shall cause that a small number of your lower judges should be gathered together, and they shall judge your higher judges, according to the voice of the people.

And I command you to do these things in the fear of the Lord; and I command you to do these things, and that ye have no king; that if these people commit sins and iniquities they shall be answered upon their own heads.

For behold I say unto you, the sins of many people have been caused by the iniquities of their kings; therefore their iniquities are answered upon the heads of their kings.

And now I desire that this inequality should be no more in this land, especially among this my people; but I desire that this land be a land of liberty, and every man may enjoy his rights and privileges alike, so long as the Lord sees fit that we may live and inherit the land, yea, even as long as any of our posterity remains upon the face of the land.

- 33 Futhi ziningi kakhulu izinto inkosi uMosiya ababhalela zona, ebambulela konke ukuhlupheka kanye nezinkinga zenkosi elungileyo, yebo, konke ukushikashikeka komphumulo ngabantu bayo, futhi ngokunjalo nakho konke ukuvungama kwabantu enkosini yabo; futhi wabachazela ngakho konke.
- 34 Futhi wabatshela ukuthi lezi zinto akufanele ukuthi zibe khona; kodwa ukuthi umthwalo kufanele ube ngowabantu bonke, ukuze wonke umuntu azithwalele inxenye yakhe.
- 35 Futhi phezu kwalokho wabembulela ngazo zonke izimo ezimbi abasebenza phansi kwazo, ngokuba nenkosi engalungile ebusayo phezu kwabo;
- 36 Yebo, bonke ububi kanye neziningiso zayo, nazo zonke izimpi, nemibango, nokuchitheka kwegazi, nokweba, nokuphanga, nokwenza ubufebe, kanye nayo yonke indlela yobubi engenakubalwa—ebatshela ukuthi lezi zinto akufanele zibe khona, nokuthi kwakucacile ukuthi zazinengekile emiyalelweni kaNkulunkulu.
- 37 Manje kwenzeka, emva kokuthi inkosi uMosiya isizithumele lezi zinto phakathi kwabantu beneliswa ngeqiniso lamazwi akhe.
- 38 Ngakho-ke baziyeka izifiso zabo zokuba nenkosi, futhi baqala baba nentshisekelo enkulu yokuthi wonke umuntu abe nethuba elilinganayo kulo lonke izwe; yebo, futhi wonke umuntu wazwakalisa ukuzimisela ukuziphendulela ngezono zakhe.
- 39 Ngakho-ke, kwenzeka ukuthi babuthana ndawonye amaqoqo kulo lonke izwe, ukuthi bazozwakalisa amazwi abo mayelana nokuthi ngobani abangaba ngabehluleli babo, ukuthi babahlulele ngokomthetho lowo ababenikezwe wona; futhi bajabula kakhulu ngenxa yenkululeko ababenikezwe yona.

And many more things did king Mosiah write unto them, unfolding unto them all the trials and troubles of a righteous king, yea, all the travails of soul for their people, and also all the murmurings of the people to their king; and he explained it all unto them.

And he told them that these things ought not to be; but that the burden should come upon all the people, that every man might bear his part.

And he also unfolded unto them all the disadvantages they labored under, by having an unrighteous king to rule over them;

Yea, all his iniquities and abominations, and all the wars, and contentions, and bloodshed, and the stealing, and the plundering, and the committing of whoredoms, and all manner of iniquities which cannot be enumerated—telling them that these things ought not to be, that they were expressly repugnant to the commandments of God.

And now it came to pass, after king Mosiah had sent these things forth among the people they were convinced of the truth of his words.

Therefore they relinquished their desires for a king, and became exceedingly anxious that every man should have an equal chance throughout all the land; yea, and every man expressed a willingness to answer for his own sins.

Therefore, it came to pass that they assembled themselves together in bodies throughout the land, to cast in their voices concerning who should be their judges, to judge them according to the law which had been given them; and they were exceedingly rejoiced because of the liberty which had been granted unto them.

40 Futhi nempela bakhula baqina ekumthandeni uMosiya; yebo, bamphakamisa kakhulu kunawo wonke omunye umuntu; ngokuba babengamboni njengomcindezeli owayefuna ukuzuza, yebo, inzuzo leyo eyonakalisa umphefumulo; ngokuba akabizanga ngcebo kubo, noma athokoze ngokuchitheka kwegazi; kodwa wenza ukuthi kube khona ukuthula ezweni, futhi wabanikeza abantu bakhe ukuthi bakhululwe kulo lonke uhlobo lobugqila; ngakho-ke nempela bamphakamisa, yebo, kakhulu, ngaphezu kokungalinganiswa.

41 Futhi kwenzeka ukuthi nempela bababeka abehluleli ukuthi babuse phezu kwabo, noma ukuthi babehlulele ngokomthetho; futhi lokhu bakwenza kulo lonke izwe.

42 Futhi kwenzeka ukuthi u-Alima wabekwa ukuthi abe ngumahluleli omkhulu wokuqala, futhi phezu kwalokho engumphristi omkhulu, uyise emnikile leso sikhundla, futhi emnikeze igunya mayelana nazo zonke izindaba zebandla.

43 Manje kwenzeka ukuthi u-Alima nempela wahamba ezindleleni zeNkosi, futhi wayigcina imiyalelo yayo, futhi nempela wehlulela izehlulele ezilungileyo; futhi kwaba khona ukuthula njalo ezweni lonke.

44 Futhi kwaqala kanjalo-ke ukubusa kwabehluleli kulo lonke izwe lakwa-Zarahemla, phakathi kwabo bonke abantu labo ababebizwa ngamaNefi; futhi u-Alima wayengumahluleli wokuqala futhi omkhulu.

45 Manje kwenzeka ukuthi uyise wafa, eneminyaka engamashumi ayisishiyagalombili nambili ubudala, ehlahile ukuyigcwalisa imiyalelo kaNkulunkulu.

46 Futhi kwenzeka ukuthi uMosiya wafa naye ngokunjalo, ngonyaka wamashumi amathathu nantathu wokubusa kwakhe, eneminyaka engamashumi ayisithupha nantathu yobudala; okwenza sekuhlangene, iminyaka engamakhulu amahlanu nesishiyagalolunye kusukela ngesikhathi uLehi ashiya eJerusalema.

47 Futhi kwaphela kanjalo-ke ukubusa kwamakhosi ebantwini bakwaNefi; futhi zaphela kanjalo-ke nezinsuku zika-Alima, owayengumsunguli webandla labo.

And they did wax strong in love towards Mosiah; yea, they did esteem him more than any other man; for they did not look upon him as a tyrant who was seeking for gain, yea, for that lucre which doth corrupt the soul; for he had not exacted riches of them, neither had he delighted in the shedding of blood; but he had established peace in the land, and he had granted unto his people that they should be delivered from all manner of bondage; therefore they did esteem him, yea, exceedingly, beyond measure.

And it came to pass that they did appoint judges to rule over them, or to judge them according to the law; and this they did throughout all the land.

And it came to pass that Alma was appointed to be the first chief judge, he being also the high priest, his father having conferred the office upon him, and having given him the charge concerning all the affairs of the church.

And now it came to pass that Alma did walk in the ways of the Lord, and he did keep his commandments, and he did judge righteous judgments; and there was continual peace through the land.

And thus commenced the reign of the judges throughout all the land of Zarahemla, among all the people who were called the Nephites; and Alma was the first and chief judge.

And now it came to pass that his father died, being eighty and two years old, having lived to fulfil the commandments of God.

And it came to pass that Mosiah died also, in the thirty and third year of his reign, being sixty and three years old; making in the whole, five hundred and nine years from the time Lehi left Jerusalem.

And thus ended the reign of the kings over the people of Nephi; and thus ended the days of Alma, who was the founder of their church.

INcwadi ka-Alima

Indodana ka-Alima

Indaba ka-Alima, owayeyindodana ka-Alima, umabluleli wokuqala nomkhulu kubantu bakwaNefi, futbi ngokunjalo nomphristi omkhulu eBandleni. Indaba ngokubusa kwabehluleli, kanye nezimpi nemibango phakathi kwabantu. Futbi phezu kwalokho nendaba ngempi phakathi kwamaNefi namaLamani, ngokombhala ka-Alima, umabluleli wokuqala nomkhulu.

Alima 1

- 1 Manje kwenzeka ukuthi ngonyaka wokuqala wokubusa kwabehluleli phezu kwabantu baNefi, kusukela ngalesi sikhathi kuya phambili, inkosi uMosiya isiyihambile indlela yomhlaba wonke, esekulwile ukulwa okuhle, eshambe ngobuqotho phambi kukaNkulunkulu, engashiyanga namunye ukuthi abuse esikhundleni sakhe; nokho wayeyimisile imithetho, futhi yayemukelekile kubantu; ngakho-ke babe phoqelekile ukuthi bayigcine imithetho ayeyibekile.
- 2 Futhi kwenzeka ukuthi ngonyaka wokuqala wokubusa kuka-Alima esihlalweni sokwahlulela, kwaba khona indoda eyalethwa phambi kwakhe ukuthi yahlulelwe, indoda eyayinkulu, futhi eyayaziwa ngamandla ayo amakhulu.
- 3 Futhi yayisihambile yazungeza phakathi kwabantu, ishmayela kubo ngalokho eyayikubiza ngokuthi yizwi likaNkulunkulu, ihudulela phansi ibandla; imemezela kubantu ukuthi bonke abaphristi kanye nabafundisi kumele bathandwe; futhi akumele ukuthi basebenze ngezandla zabo, kodwa kumele bondliwe ngabantu.
- 4 Futhi phezu kwalokho yafakaza kubantu ukuthi sonke isintu siyosindiswa ngosuku lokugcina, nokuthi akufanele besabe noma baqhaqhazele, kodwa ukuthi mabaphakamise amakhanda abo bathokoze, ngokuba iNkosi yabadala bonke abantu, futhi phezu kwalokho yakhulula wonke umuntu; futhi, ekugcineni, bonke abantu bayoba nokuphila okuphakade.

The Book of Alma

the Son of Alma

The account of Alma, who was the son of Alma, the first and chief judge over the people of Nephi, and also the high priest over the Church. An account of the reign of the judges, and the wars and contentions among the people. And also an account of a war between the Nephites and the Lamanites, according to the record of Alma, the first and chief judge.

Alma 1

Now it came to pass that in the first year of the reign of the judges over the people of Nephi, from this time forward, king Mosiah having gone the way of all the earth, having warred a good warfare, walking uprightly before God, leaving none to reign in his stead; nevertheless he had established laws, and they were acknowledged by the people; therefore they were obliged to abide by the laws which he had made.

And it came to pass that in the first year of the reign of Alma in the judgment-seat, there was a man brought before him to be judged, a man who was large, and was noted for his much strength.

And he had gone about among the people, preaching to them that which he termed to be the word of God, bearing down against the church; declaring unto the people that every priest and teacher ought to become popular; and they ought not to labor with their hands, but that they ought to be supported by the people.

And he also testified unto the people that all mankind should be saved at the last day, and that they need not fear nor tremble, but that they might lift up their heads and rejoice; for the Lord had created all men, and had also redeemed all men; and, in the end, all men should have eternal life.

- 5 Futhi kwenzeka ukuthi nempela yazifundisa lezi zinto kangangokuthi abaningi bakholelwa emazwini ayo, ngisho abaningi ngendlela yokuthi baqala ukuyondla futhi bayinikeza imali.
- 6 Futhi yaqala ukuphakama, yagqoka izingubo ezibizayo, yebo, yaqala ngisho nokumisa ibandla elalingokwalokho eyayikushumayela.
- 7 Futhi kwenzeka ngesikhathi ihamba, iyoshumayela kulabo ababekholelwa emazwini ayo, yahlangana nendoda eyayingeyebandla likaNkulunkulu, yebo, ngisho omunye wabafundisi balo; futhi yaqala ukubangisana nayo kanzima, ukuze iholele kude abantu bebandla; kodwa lendoda yamelana nayo, iyiyala ngamazwi kaNkulunkulu.
- 8 Manje igama lalendoda kwakunguGidiyoni; futhi kwakunguyena owayesetshenziswe nguNkulunkulu ekukhululeni abantu baLimhi ukubakhipha ebugqilini.
- 9 Manje, ngoba uGidiyoni wamelana nayo ngamazwi kaNkulunkulu yamthukuthelela uGidiyoni, futhi yahosha inkemba yayo yaqala ukumshaya. Manje uGidiyoni esemdala, ngakho-ke akakwazanga ukumelana namagalelo ayo, ngakho-ke wabulawa ngenkemba.
- 10 Futhi lendoda eyambulala yathathwa ngabantu bebandla, ya lethwa phambi kuka-Alima, ukuthi yahlulelwe ngokwamacala eyayiwenzile.
- 11 Futhi kwenzeka ukuthi yema phambi kuka-Alima yazincengela ngesibindi esikhulu.
- 12 Kodwa u-Alima wathi kuyo: Bheka, lokhu kungokokuqala ukuthi ubuphristi-mbumbulu buqalwe phakathi kwalaba bantu. Futhi bheka, awunacala lobuphristi-mbumbulu kuphela, kodwa uzame ukubuphoqa ngenkemba; futhi ukuba ubuphristi-mbumbulu bebuyophoqwa phakathi kwalaba bantu lokho bekuyokusho ukubhujiswa kwabo nya.
- 13 Futhi uchithe igazi lomuntu olungile, yebo, indoda eyenze okuningi okuhle phakathi kwalaba bantu; futhi uma singakuphephisa igazi lakhe liyokuza phezu kwethu ukuziphindiselela.

And it came to pass that he did teach these things so much that many did believe on his words, even so many that they began to support him and give him money.

And he began to be lifted up in the pride of his heart, and to wear very costly apparel, yea, and even began to establish a church after the manner of his preaching.

And it came to pass as he was going, to preach to those who believed on his word, he met a man who belonged to the church of God, yea, even one of their teachers; and he began to contend with him sharply, that he might lead away the people of the church; but the man withstood him, admonishing him with the words of God.

Now the name of the man was Gideon; and it was he who was an instrument in the hands of God in delivering the people of Limhi out of bondage.

Now, because Gideon withstood him with the words of God he was wroth with Gideon, and drew his sword and began to smite him. Now Gideon being stricken with many years, therefore he was not able to withstand his blows, therefore he was slain by the sword.

And the man who slew him was taken by the people of the church, and was brought before Alma, to be judged according to the crimes which he had committed.

And it came to pass that he stood before Alma and pled for himself with much boldness.

But Alma said unto him: Behold, this is the first time that priestcraft has been introduced among this people. And behold, thou art not only guilty of priestcraft, but hast endeavored to enforce it by the sword; and were priestcraft to be enforced among this people it would prove their entire destruction.

And thou hast shed the blood of a righteous man, yea, a man who has done much good among this people; and were we to spare thee his blood would come upon us for vengeance.

- 14 Ngakho-ke ugwetshwa ngokuthi ufe, ngokomthetho esawunikezwa nguMosiya, inkosi yethu yokugcina; futhi uvunywe yilaba bantu; ngakho-ke laba bantu kufanele bawugcine umthetho.
- 15 Futhi kwenzeka ukuthi bayithatha; futhi igama layo kwakunguNehori; bamthwala bamyisa esicongweni segquma iManti, lapho enziwa, noma ke ngokuyikho wavuma, phakathi kwamazulu nomhlaba, ukuthi lokho ayekufundisile kubantu kwakuphikisana nezwi likaNkulunkulu; futhi lapho wezwa ukufa okuyihlazo.
- 16 Nokho, lokhu akuzange kuqede ukwanda kobuphristi-mbumbulu ezweni lonke; ngokuba babebaningi ababethanda izinto eziyize zezwe, futhi bahamba beshumayela izimfundiso ezingamanga; futhi lokhu bakwenza ngesizathu sokufuna ingcebo kanye nokuhlonishwa.
- 17 Nokho, babengenakulinge baqambe amanga, uma kwakungaziwa, ngenxa yokwesaba umthetho, ngokuba abaqambimanga babejeziswa; ngakho-ke bashaya sengathi babeshumayela ngokwenkolo yabo; manje umthetho wawungenamandla kunanoma yimuphi umuntu ngokwenkolo yakhe.
- 18 Futhi babengenakulinge bebe, ngenxa yokwesaba umthetho, ngokuba abanjalo babejeziswa; futhi babengenakulokotha baphange, noma babulale, ngokuba owayebulala wayejeziswa ngokufa.
- 19 Kodwa kwenzeka ukuthi lowo owayengesiyena owebandla likaNkulunkulu waqala ukuhlupha labo okwakungabebandla likaNkulunkulu, futhi ababemukele uKristu babizwa ngaye.
- 20 Yebo, babahlupha, futhi babakhathaza ngayo yonke inhlobo yamazwi, futhi lokhu kwenzeka ngenxa yokuzithoba kwabo; ngenxa yokuthi babengazikhukhumezi emehlweni abo, nangenxa yokuthi babelana ngezwi likaNkulunkulu, omunye nomunye, ngaphandle kwemali nangaphandle kwentengo.
- 21 Manje kwakukhona umthetho oqinile phakathi kwabantu bebandla, wokuthi kungabi bikho namunye umuntu, ongowebandla, oyoqala ukuhlupha labo okwakungebona bebandla, futhi nokuthi kungabibikho kuhluphana phakathi kwabo.

Therefore thou art condemned to die, according to the law which has been given us by Mosiah, our last king; and it has been acknowledged by this people; therefore this people must abide by the law.

And it came to pass that they took him; and his name was Nehor; and they carried him upon the top of the hill Manti, and there he was caused, or rather did acknowledge, between the heavens and the earth, that what he had taught to the people was contrary to the word of God; and there he suffered an ignominious death.

Nevertheless, this did not put an end to the spreading of priestcraft through the land; for there were many who loved the vain things of the world, and they went forth preaching false doctrines; and this they did for the sake of riches and honor.

Nevertheless, they durst not lie, if it were known, for fear of the law, for liars were punished; therefore they pretended to preach according to their belief; and now the law could have no power on any man for his belief.

And they durst not steal, for fear of the law, for such were punished; neither durst they rob, nor murder, for he that murdered was punished unto death.

But it came to pass that whosoever did not belong to the church of God began to persecute those that did belong to the church of God, and had taken upon them the name of Christ.

Yea, they did persecute them, and afflict them with all manner of words, and this because of their humility; because they were not proud in their own eyes, and because they did impart the word of God, one with another, without money and without price.

Now there was a strict law among the people of the church, that there should not any man, belonging to the church, arise and persecute those that did not belong to the church, and that there should be no persecution among themselves.

- 22 Nokho, kwakukhona abaningi phakathi kwabo abaqala ukuzikhukhumeza, futhi baqala ukubanga kanzima nezitha zabo, ngisho nangokugadla; yebo, babeshayana ngezibhakela.
- 23 Manje lona kwakungunyaka wesibili wokubusa kuka-Alima, futhi kwaba yisizathu sokuhlupheka okukhulu kwebandla; yebo, kwaba yisizathu sokulingwa okukhulu kwebandla.
- 24 Ngokuba izinhliziyi zabaningi zaba lukhuni, futhi amagama abo asulwa, kangangokuthi ababange besakhunjulwa nanini phakathi kwabantu baNkulunkulu. Futhi phezu kwalokho abaningi bashiya phakathi kwabo.
- 25 Manje lokhu kwakungukulingwa okukhulu kulabo ababemi beqinile okholweni; nokho, babebambelele futhi benganyakaziseki ekugcineni imiyalelo kaNkulunkulu, futhi bazithwala ngokubekezela izinhlopheko ezazinqwabelene phezu kwabo.
- 26 Futhi ngesikhathi abaphristi beshiya imisebenzi yabo ukuthi bayokwabelana ngezwi likaNkulunkulu kubantu, abantu nabo ngokunjalo bashiya imisebenzi yabo ukuthi bayolizwa izwi likaNkulunkulu. Futhi ngesikhathi umphristi esabelene nabo ngezwi likaNkulunkulu bonke babebuyela futhi ngokukhuthala emisebenzini yabo; futhi umphristi, engaziphakamisi ngaphezu kwalabo ababelalele, ngokuba umshumayeli wayengengcono kunomlaleli, noma umfundisi wayengengcono nakancane kunomfundi; futhi ngaleyondlela bonke babelingana, futhi bonke basebenza, wonke umuntu ngokwamandla akhe.
- 27 Futhi babelana ngababenakho, wonke umuntu ngokwalokho ayenakho, kwabampofu, nabasweleyo, nabagulayo, kanye nabahluphekile; futhi abazange bagqoke izingubo ezibizayo, kodwa babengamanono futhi bebukeka.
- 28 Futhi baziqhuba ngalendlela izindaba zebandla; futhi baqala ukuba nokuthula njalo ngalendlela futhi, nakuba behlushwa.

Nevertheless, there were many among them who began to be proud, and began to contend warmly with their adversaries, even unto blows; yea, they would smite one another with their fists.

Now this was in the second year of the reign of Alma, and it was a cause of much affliction to the church; yea, it was the cause of much trial with the church.

For the hearts of many were hardened, and their names were blotted out, that they were remembered no more among the people of God. And also many withdrew themselves from among them.

Now this was a great trial to those that did stand fast in the faith; nevertheless, they were steadfast and immovable in keeping the commandments of God, and they bore with patience the persecution which was heaped upon them.

And when the priests left their labor to impart the word of God unto the people, the people also left their labors to hear the word of God. And when the priest had imparted unto them the word of God they all returned again diligently unto their labors; and the priest, not esteeming himself above his hearers, for the preacher was no better than the hearer, neither was the teacher any better than the learner; and thus they were all equal, and they did all labor, every man according to his strength.

And they did impart of their substance, every man according to that which he had, to the poor, and the needy, and the sick, and the afflicted; and they did not wear costly apparel, yet they were neat and comely.

And thus they did establish the affairs of the church; and thus they began to have continual peace again, notwithstanding all their persecutions.

29 Manje, ngenxa yokuqina kwebandla baqala ukuthi banothe kakhulu, benenala yazo zonke izinto ababezidinga—inala yemihlambi yezinkomo nemihlambi yezimvu, kanye nokukhuluphalisiweyo kwalo lonke uhlobo, futhi ngokunjalo nenala yokusanhlamvu, negolide, nesiliva, nezinto eziyigugu, nenala kasilika nelineeni elilukiwe elicolekile, kanye nayo yonke inhlobo yendwangu enhle eyayejwayelekile.

30 Futhi ngaleyondlela, esimweni sabo sokuphumelela, abaxoshanga namunye owayenqunu, noma owayelambile, noma owayomile, noma owayegula, noma owayengondlekanga; futhi abazibekanga izinhliziyi zabo engcebweni; ngakho-ke babephana kubo bonke, abadala nabancane, ababoshiwe kanye nabakhululekile, abesilisa kanye nabesifazane, noma babengaphandle kwebandla noma bengaphakathi ebandleni, bengakhethi bala lamuntu kulabo ababedinga.

31 Futhi ngalendlela nempela baphumelela futhi banotha kakhulu ngaphezu kwalabo okwakungebona abebandla labo.

32 Ngokuba labo okwakungebona abebandla labo babezitika ngobuthakathi, kanye nangoku khonza izithixo noma ubuvila, nokukhuluma okuyize, kanye nomhawu nokuphikisana; begqoka izingubo ezibizayo; bephakeme ngenxa yokuzibona kwabo; behlupha, bekhuluma amanga, beba, bephanga; benza ubufebe, bebulala, kanye nayo yonke inhlobo yenkohlakalo, nokho, umthetho waqina kubo bonke labo ababeweqa, kangangoba kwakungenzeka.

33 Futhi kwenzeka ukuthi ngalokho kusetshenziswa komthetho kubo, wonke umuntu ejeziswa ngalokho ayekwenzile, baba nokuthula okukhulu, futhi bangayenza inkohlakalo nakancane uma ngabe kwakwaziwa; ngalokho-ke, kwaba khona ukuthula okukhulu phakathi kwabantu baNefi kwaze kwaba ngunyaka wesihlanu wokubusa kwabehluleli.

And now, because of the steadiness of the church they began to be exceedingly rich, having abundance of all things whatsoever they stood in need—an abundance of flocks and herds, and fatlings of every kind, and also abundance of grain, and of gold, and of silver, and of precious things, and abundance of silk and fine-twined linen, and all manner of good homely cloth.

And thus, in their prosperous circumstances, they did not send away any who were naked, or that were hungry, or that were athirst, or that were sick, or that had not been nourished; and they did not set their hearts upon riches; therefore they were liberal to all, both old and young, both bond and free, both male and female, whether out of the church or in the church, having no respect to persons as to those who stood in need.

And thus they did prosper and become far more wealthy than those who did not belong to their church.

For those who did not belong to their church did indulge themselves in sorceries, and in idolatry or idleness, and in babblings, and in envyings and strife; wearing costly apparel; being lifted up in the pride of their own eyes; persecuting, lying, thieving, robbing, committing whoredoms, and murdering, and all manner of wickedness; nevertheless, the law was put in force upon all those who did transgress it, inasmuch as it was possible.

And it came to pass that by thus exercising the law upon them, every man suffering according to that which he had done, they became more still, and durst not commit any wickedness if it were known; therefore, there was much peace among the people of Nephi until the fifth year of the reign of the judges.

Alima 2

- 1 Futhi kwenzeka ekuqaleni konyaka wesihlanu wokubusa kwabo kwaqala ukuba kube khona umbango phakathi kwabantu; ngokuba indoda ethile, eyayibizwa ngokuthi wu-Amiliki, iyindoda enobuqili obukhulu, yebo, indoda ehlakaniphile ngokuhlakanipha kwasezweni, ingomunye wenhlangano yaleyondoda eyabulala uGidiyoni ngenkemba, eyabulawa ngokomthetho—
- 2 Manje lo-Amiliki, ngobuqili bakhe, wayesedonsele kude abantu abaningi ukuthi bamlandele; ngisho abaningi kangangokuthi baqala ukuba namandla amakhulu; futhi baqala ukuzama ukuthi benze u-Amiliki ukuthi abe yinkosi phezu kwabantu.
- 3 Manje lokhu kwakwethusa ebantwini bebandla, futhi ngokunjalo nakubo bonke labo ababengahuhekanga ngokuboniswa ngu-Amiliki; ngokuba babazi ukuthi ngokomthetho wabo leyonto enjalo kwakufanele imiswe ngezwi labantu.
- 4 Ngakho-ke, uma ngabe kwakungenzeka ukuthi u-Amiliki akwazi ukuzuza izwi labantu, njengomuntu owayegcwele inkohlakalo, wayengabephuca amalungelo abo kanye nezibusiso zebandla; ngokuba kwakuyinhloso yakhe ukuliqeda ibandla likaNkulunkulu.
- 5 Futhi kwenzeka ukuthi abantu babuthana ndawonye kulo lonke izwe, wonke umuntu ngokomqondo wakhe, noma ngabe babevumelana no-Amiliki noma babephikisana naye, ngokwamaqoqwana ehlukenene, benempikiswano enkulu kanye nemangalisayo imibango omunye nomunye.
- 6 Futhi ngaleyondlela nempela babuthana ndawonye bezozwakalisa amazwi abo mayelana nalolo daba; futhi abekwa phambi kwabehluleli.
- 7 Futhi kwenzeka ukuthi izwi labantu laphikisana no-Amiliki, ngalokho-ke akabekwanga ukuthi abe yinkosi phezu kwabantu.
- 8 Manje lokhu nempela kwenza injabulo enkulu ezinhliziyweni zalabo ababephikisana naye; kodwa u-Amiliki nempela wabaphehla labo ababemthanda ukuthi babathukuthelele labo ababengamthandi.

Alma 2

And it came to pass in the commencement of the fifth year of their reign there began to be a contention among the people; for a certain man, being called Amlici, he being a very cunning man, yea, a wise man as to the wisdom of the world, he being after the order of the man that slew Gideon by the sword, who was executed according to the law—

Now this Amlici had, by his cunning, drawn away much people after him; even so much that they began to be very powerful; and they began to endeavor to establish Amlici to be a king over the people.

Now this was alarming to the people of the church, and also to all those who had not been drawn away after the persuasions of Amlici; for they knew that according to their law that such things must be established by the voice of the people.

Therefore, if it were possible that Amlici should gain the voice of the people, he, being a wicked man, would deprive them of their rights and privileges of the church; for it was his intent to destroy the church of God.

And it came to pass that the people assembled themselves together throughout all the land, every man according to his mind, whether it were for or against Amlici, in separate bodies, having much dispute and wonderful contentions one with another.

And thus they did assemble themselves together to cast in their voices concerning the matter; and they were laid before the judges.

And it came to pass that the voice of the people came against Amlici, that he was not made king over the people.

Now this did cause much joy in the hearts of those who were against him; but Amlici did stir up those who were in his favor to anger against those who were not in his favor.

- 9 Futhi kwenzeka ukuthi baqoqana ndawonye, futhi nempela bamgoba u-Amiliki ukuthi abe yinkosi yabo.
- 10 Manje ngesikhathi u-Amiliki esebekwe ukuthi abe yinkosi phezu kwabo wabayala ukuthi bathathele abafowabo izikhali; futhi lokhu wakwenza ukuze abenze babephansi kwakhe.
- 11 Manje abantu ba-Amiliki babehlukaniswa ngegama lika-Amiliki, bebizwa ngama-Amiliki; kuthi insalela bese ibizwa ngamaNefi, noma abantu baNkulunkulu.
- 12 Ngakho-ke abantu bamaNefi babazi ngenhloso yama-Amiliki, ngakho-ke bazilungiselela ukuhlangabezana nabo; yebo, bazihlomisa ngezinkemba, nangocelumba, nangeminsalo, nangemicibisholo, nangamatshe, nangezihlilingi, kanye nangazo zonke izinhlobo zezikhali zempi, zalo lonke uhlobo.
- 13 Futhi ngaleyondlela babezilungiselele ukuhlangabezana nama-Amiliki ngesikhathi eza. Futhi kwakukhona izinduna ezikhethiwe, kanye nezinduna ezinkulu, kanye nezinduna ezinkulu kakhulu, njengokwesibalo sabo.
- 14 Futhi kwenzeka ukuthi u-Amiliki nempela wabahlomisa abantu bakhe ngazo zonke izinhlobo zezikhali zempi zalo lonke uhlobo; futhi naye wabeka ababusi kanye nabaholi phezu kwabantu bakhe, ukuthi babahole ukuthi bayolwa nabafowabo.
- 15 Futhi kwenzeka ukuthi ama-Amiliki aya phezu kwegquma i-Aminihu, elalingasempumalanga yomfula iSidoni, owawugijima eduze kwezwe iZarahemla, futhi lapho baqala ukulwa namaNefi.
- 16 Manje u-Alima, engumahluleli omkhulu kanye nombusi wabantu baNefi, ngakho-ke wahamba wakhuphuka nabantu bakhe, yebo, kanye nezinduna zakhe, kanye nezinduna ezinkhulu, yebo, engumholi wamabutho akhe, ukuyobhekana nama-Amiliki empini.
- 17 Futhi baqala ukuwabalala ama-Amiliki egqumeni empumalanga eSidoni. Futhi nama-Amiliki alwa namaNefi ngamandla amakhulu, kangangokuthi abaningi bamaNefi bawa phambi kwama-Amiliki.

And it came to pass that they gathered themselves together, and did consecrate Amlici to be their king.

Now when Amlici was made king over them he commanded them that they should take up arms against their brethren; and this he did that he might subject them to him.

Now the people of Amlici were distinguished by the name of Amlici, being called Amlicites; and the remainder were called Nephites, or the people of God.

Therefore the people of the Nephites were aware of the intent of the Amlicites, and therefore they did prepare to meet them; yea, they did arm themselves with swords, and with cimeters, and with bows, and with arrows, and with stones, and with slings, and with all manner of weapons of war, of every kind.

And thus they were prepared to meet the Amlicites at the time of their coming. And there were appointed captains, and higher captains, and chief captains, according to their numbers.

And it came to pass that Amlici did arm his men with all manner of weapons of war of every kind; and he also appointed rulers and leaders over his people, to lead them to war against their brethren.

And it came to pass that the Amlicites came upon the hill Amnihu, which was east of the river Sidon, which ran by the land of Zarahemla, and there they began to make war with the Nephites.

Now Alma, being the chief judge and the governor of the people of Nephi, therefore he went up with his people, yea, with his captains, and chief captains, yea, at the head of his armies, against the Amlicites to battle.

And they began to slay the Amlicites upon the hill east of Sidon. And the Amlicites did contend with the Nephites with great strength, insomuch that many of the Nephites did fall before the Amlicites.

18 Nokho iNkosi yasiqinisa isandla samaNefi, kangangokuthi awabulala ama-Amiliki ngokubulala okukhulu, kangangokuthi aqala ababalekela.

19 Futhi kwenzeka ukuthi amaNefi nempela awaxosha ama-Amiliki lonke lolo-suku, futhi awabulala ngokubulala okukhulu, kangangokuthi ababulawa bama-Amiliki babeyimiphefumulo eyizinkulungwane eziyishumi nambili namakhulu amahlanu namashumi amathathu nambili; futhi kumaNefi kwakubulewe imiphefumulo eyizinkulungwane eziyisithupha namakhulu amahlanu namashumi ayisithupha nambili.

20 Futhi kwenzeka ukuthi ngesikhathi u-Alima engasakwazi ukuwajaha ama-Amiliki wenza ukuthi abantu bakhe bagxumeke amatende abo esigodini sikaGidiyoni, isigodi esaqanjwa ngo Gidiyoni owabulawa ngesandla sika Nehori ngenkemba; futhi kulesi sigodi nempela amaNefi agxumeka amatende awo ngalobo busuku.

21 Futhi u-Alima wathumela izinhlozi ukuthi ziyilandele insalela yama-Amiliki, ukuze azi ngamasu kanye nangamaqhinga awo, ukuze ngalokho akwazi ukuthi azivikele ngokumelene nawo, ukuze aphephise abantu bakhe ekubhujisweni.

22 Manje labo ayebathumele ukuthi bayoqapha ikamu lama-Amiliki babebizwa ngokuthi ngoZeramu, no-Aminori, noManti, kanye noLimiheri; laba kwakuyibo abahamba nabantu babo ukuyoqapha ikamu lama-Amiliki.

23 Futhi kwenzeka ukuthi ngakusasa babuyela ekamu lamaNefi ngokushesha okukhulu, bemangele kakhulu, futhi benokwesaba okukhulu, bethi:

24 Bhekani, sililandele ikamu lama-Amiliki, futhi ngokumangala kwethu okukhulu, ezweni lakwaMinoni, ngaphezu kwezwe lakwaZarahemla, endleleni eya ezweni lakwa Nefi, sibone impi enkulu kakhulu yamaLamani; futhi bhekani, ama-Amiliki asehlangene nawo;

Nevertheless the Lord did strengthen the hand of the Nephites, that they slew the Amlicites with great slaughter, that they began to flee before them.

And it came to pass that the Nephites did pursue the Amlicites all that day, and did slay them with much slaughter, insomuch that there were slain of the Amlicites twelve thousand five hundred thirty and two souls; and there were slain of the Nephites six thousand five hundred sixty and two souls.

And it came to pass that when Alma could pursue the Amlicites no longer he caused that his people should pitch their tents in the valley of Gideon, the valley being called after that Gideon who was slain by the hand of Nehor with the sword; and in this valley the Nephites did pitch their tents for the night.

And Alma sent spies to follow the remnant of the Amlicites, that he might know of their plans and their plots, whereby he might guard himself against them, that he might preserve his people from being destroyed.

Now those whom he had sent out to watch the camp of the Amlicites were called Zeram, and Amnor, and Manti, and Limher; these were they who went out with their men to watch the camp of the Amlicites.

And it came to pass that on the morrow they returned into the camp of the Nephites in great haste, being greatly astonished, and struck with much fear, saying:

Behold, we followed the camp of the Amlicites, and to our great astonishment, in the land of Minon, above the land of Zarahemla, in the course of the land of Nephi, we saw a numerous host of the Lamanites; and behold, the Amlicites have joined them;

- 25 Futhi sebephezu kwabafowethu kulelozwe; futhi bayaba balekela nemihlambi yezinkomo zabo, nabafazi babo, kanye nabantwana babo, beza ngasedolobheni lethu; futhi ngaphandle kokuthi senze masinyane bayalithatha idolobha lethu, futhi obaba bethu, nabafazi bethu, kanye nabantwana bethu bazobulawa.
- 26 Futhi kwenzeka ukuthi abantu baNefi bathatha amatende abo, bemuka baphuma esigodini sikaGidiyoni baya ngasedolobheni labo, okwakuyidolobha lakwa Zarahemla.
- 27 Futhi bheka, ngesikhathi bewela umfula iSidoni, amaLamani kanye nama-Amiliki, ayemaningi kangangokuthi ayecishe, abe, ngangezihlabathi zolwandle, atheleka phezu kwabo ukuthi ababulale.
- 28 Nokho, amaNefi eqiniswe ngesandla seNkosi, ethandazile kakhulu kuyo ukuthi ibakhulule ezandleni zezitha zawo, ngakho-ke iNkosi nempela yakuzwa ukukhala kwawo, futhi yawaqinisa, futhi amaLamani kanye nama-Amiliki nempela awa phambi kwawo.
- 29 Futhi kwenzeka ukuthi u-Alima walwa no-Amiliki ngenkemba, ubuso nobuso; futhi balwa kakhulu, omunye nomunye.
- 30 Futhi kwenzeka ukuthi u-Alima, engumuntu kaNkulunkulu, enokholo olukhulu, wakhala, ethi: O Nkosi, yiba nomusa futhi usindise impilo yami, ukuze ngisetshenziswe nguwe ukuze ngisindise futhi ngilondoloze laba bantu.
- 31 Manje ngesikhathi u-Alima esewashilo lamazwi waphinda walwa no-Amiliki; futhi waqiniswa, kangangokuthi wambulala u-Amiliki ngenkemba.
- 32 Futhi phezu kwalokho walwa nenkosi yamaLamani; kodwa inkosi yamaLamani yabaleka yaphindela emuva phambi kuka-Alima futhi yathumela abalindi bayo ukuthi balwe no-Alima.
- 33 Kodwa u-Alima, nabalindi bakhe, walwa nabalindi benkosi yamaLamani kwaze kwaba uyababulala futhi wabahlhlisa wabaphindisela emuva.

And they are upon our brethren in that land; and they are fleeing before them with their flocks, and their wives, and their children, towards our city; and except we make haste they obtain possession of our city, and our fathers, and our wives, and our children be slain.

And it came to pass that the people of Nephi took their tents, and departed out of the valley of Gideon towards their city, which was the city of Zarahemla.

And behold, as they were crossing the river Sidon, the Lamanites and the Amlicites, being as numerous almost, as it were, as the sands of the sea, came upon them to destroy them.

Nevertheless, the Nephites being strengthened by the hand of the Lord, having prayed mightily to him that he would deliver them out of the hands of their enemies, therefore the Lord did hear their cries, and did strengthen them, and the Lamanites and the Amlicites did fall before them.

And it came to pass that Alma fought with Amlici with the sword, face to face; and they did contend mightily, one with another.

And it came to pass that Alma, being a man of God, being exercised with much faith, cried, saying: O Lord, have mercy and spare my life, that I may be an instrument in thy hands to save and preserve this people.

Now when Alma had said these words he contended again with Amlici; and he was strengthened, insomuch that he slew Amlici with the sword.

And he also contended with the king of the Lamanites; but the king of the Lamanites fled back from before Alma and sent his guards to contend with Alma.

But Alma, with his guards, contended with the guards of the king of the Lamanites until he slew and drove them back.

- 34 Futhi ngaleyondlela walishanela ibala, noma ngokuyikho usebe, olwalusentshonalanga yomfula iSidoni, elahla izidumbu zamaLamani ayebulewe emanzini aseSidoni, ukuze ngalokho abantu bakhe babe nendawo yokuwela futhi bayolwa namaLamani kanye nama-Amiliki entshonalanga yomfula iSidoni.
- 35 Futhi kwenzeka ukuthi ngesikhathi bonke sebewuwelile umfula iSidoni amaLamani kanye nama-Amiliki aqala ukubaleka phambi kwabo, naphezu kokuthi wona ayemaningi kangangokuthi ayengenakubalwa.
- 36 Futhi abaleka phambi kwamaNefi aya ngasehlane elalingasentshonalanga kanye nasenyakatho, aya kude ngale komngcele wezwe; futhi amaNefi nempela awajaha ngamandla awo onke, awabulala.
- 37 Yebo, ahlangatshezwa nhlangothi zonke, abulawa futhi ahlehliwa, kwaze kwaba ayahlakazeka entshonalanga, kanye nase nyakatho, kwaze kwaba afika ehlane, elalibizwa ngokuthi yiHermowunti; futhi kwakuyileyo nxenye yehlane eyayigcwele izilwane zasendle kanye nezilwane ezesabekayo.
- 38 Futhi kwenzeka ukuthi amaningi afela ehlane ngenxa yamanxeba awo, futhi ashwabadelwa yizo lezo zilwane kanye namanqe asemoyeni; futhi amathambo awo atholakele, futhi anqwats shelwe ndawonye phansi.

And thus he cleared the ground, or rather the bank, which was on the west of the river Sidon, throwing the bodies of the Lamanites who had been slain into the waters of Sidon, that thereby his people might have room to cross and contend with the Lamanites and the Amlicites on the west side of the river Sidon.

And it came to pass that when they had all crossed the river Sidon that the Lamanites and the Amlicites began to flee before them, notwithstanding they were so numerous that they could not be numbered.

And they fled before the Nephites towards the wilderness which was west and north, away beyond the borders of the land; and the Nephites did pursue them with their might, and did slay them.

Yea, they were met on every hand, and slain and driven, until they were scattered on the west, and on the north, until they had reached the wilderness, which was called Hermounts; and it was that part of the wilderness which was infested by wild and ravenous beasts.

And it came to pass that many died in the wilderness of their wounds, and were devoured by those beasts and also the vultures of the air; and their bones have been found, and have been heaped up on the earth.

Alima 3

- 1 Futhi kwenzeka ukuthi amaNefi ayengabulawanga ngezikhali zempi, emva kokuthi esengcwabe labo ababebulewe—manje isibalo sababulawayo sasingabalwanga, ngenxa yobukhulu besibalo sabo—emva kokuthi sebeqede ukungcwaba abafuleyo babo bonke babuyela emazweni abo, nasemizini yabo, nakubafazi babo, kanye nakubantwana babo.
- 2 Manje abaningi besifazane kanye nabantwana babebulewe ngenkemba, futhi ngokunjalo neminingi imihlambi yezinkomo neyezimvu zabo; futhi ngokunjalo namaningi amasimu abo okusanhlamvu abhujiswa, ngokuba anyathelwa yizixuku zabantu.
- 3 Manje ngobuningi bamaLamani kanye nama-Amiliki ayebulewe ngasogwini lomfula iSidoni aphonswa emanzini aseSidoni; futhi bheka amathambo abo asekujuleni kolwandle, futhi maningi.
- 4 Futhi ama-Amiliki ayehlukanisiwe kumaNefi, ngokuba wona ayezibeke uphawu olubomvu eziphongweni zawo ngendlela yamaLamani; nokho wona ayengawaphucanga amakhanda awo njengamaLamani.
- 5 Manje amakhanda amaLamani ayephuciwe; futhi ayengenazinwele, ngaphandle nje kwesikhumba ayesibhince ezinkalweni zawo, futhi ngokunjalo nesihlangu sawo, ayesibhincile, kanye neminsalo yawo, nemicibisholo yawo, namatshe awo, kanye nezihlilingi zawo, njalonjalo.
- 6 Futhi izikhumba zamaLamani zazinsundu, njengokophawu lolo olwalubekwe koyise, olwaluyisiqalekiso phezu kwabo ngenxa yeziphambeko zabo kanye nokuhlubuka kwabo kubafowabo, ababengoNefi, uJakobe, noJosefa, kanye noSamu, ababengamadoda alungile futhi angcwele.
- 7 Futhi abafowabo babefuna ukubabulala, ngakho-ke baqalekiswa; futhi iNkosi uNkulunkulu yabeka uphawu kubo, yebo, kuLamani kanye noLemuweli, futhi ngokunjalo nakuwo amadodana ka-Ishmayeli, kanye nakwabesifazane bakwa-Ishmayeli.

Alma 3

And it came to pass that the Nephites who were not slain by the weapons of war, after having buried those who had been slain—now the number of the slain were not numbered, because of the greatness of their number—after they had finished burying their dead they all returned to their lands, and to their houses, and their wives, and their children.

Now many women and children had been slain with the sword, and also many of their flocks and their herds; and also many of their fields of grain were destroyed, for they were trodden down by the hosts of men.

And now as many of the Lamanites and the Amlicites who had been slain upon the bank of the river Sidon were cast into the waters of Sidon; and behold their bones are in the depths of the sea, and they are many.

And the Amlicites were distinguished from the Nephites, for they had marked themselves with red in their foreheads after the manner of the Lamanites; nevertheless they had not shorn their heads like unto the Lamanites.

Now the heads of the Lamanites were shorn; and they were naked, save it were skin which was girded about their loins, and also their armor, which was girded about them, and their bows, and their arrows, and their stones, and their slings, and so forth.

And the skins of the Lamanites were dark, according to the mark which was set upon their fathers, which was a curse upon them because of their transgression and their rebellion against their brethren, who consisted of Nephi, Jacob, and Joseph, and Sam, who were just and holy men.

And their brethren sought to destroy them, therefore they were cursed; and the Lord God set a mark upon them, yea, upon Laman and Lemuel, and also the sons of Ishmael, and Ishmaelitish women.

- 8 Futhi lokhu kwenziwa ukuze inzalo yabo yehlukaniswe nenzalo yabafowabo, ukuze ngalokho iNkosi uNkulunkulu ilondolozwe abantu bayo, ukuze bangahlangani futhi bakholwe emasikweni angalunganga ayezoba yimbangela yokonakala kwabo.
- 9 Futhi kwenzeka ukuthi lowo owayehlenganisa inzalo yakhe naleyo yamaLamani nempela wazilethela isiqalekiso esifanayo phezu kwenzalo yakhe.
- 10 Ngalokho-ke, lowo owazivumela ukuthi eduswe ngamaLamani wayebizwa ngaphansi kwalelo gama, futhi kwakuba khona uphawu olwalubekwa kuye.
- 11 Futhi kwenzeka ukuthi lowo owayengakholelwa esikweni lamaLamani, kodwa ekhohlelwa kuleyo mibhalo eyayikhishwe ezweni lase Jerusalema, futhi ngokunjalo nasemasikweni oyise, ayelungile, labo ababekhohlelwa emiyalweni kaNkulunkulu futhi beyigcina, babebizwa ngokuthi ngamaNefi, noma abantu baNefi, kusukela ngaleso sikhathi kuya phambili—
- 12 Futhi yibo labo abagcine imibhalo eyiqiniso yabantu babo, futhi ngokunjalo neyabantu bamaLamani.
- 13 Manje sizophinda futhi sibuyele kuma-Amiliki, ngokuba nawo ngokunjalo aye nophawu olwalubekwe kuwo; yebo, azibeka wona uphawu, yebo, ngisho uphawu olubomvu eziphongweni zawo.
- 14 Ngalokho-ke izwi likaNkulunkulu liyagcwaliseka, ngokuba lawa ngamazwi awasho kuNefi: Bheka, amaLamani ngiwaqalekisile, futhi ngizobeka uphawu kuwo ukuze wona kanye nenzalo yawo yehlukaniswe kuwe kanye nenzalo yakho, kusukela ngalesi sikhathi kuya phambili futhi ingunaphakade, ngaphandle kokuthi aphenduke enkohlakalweni yawo futhi aphendukele kimi ukuze ngibe nomusa kuwo.
- 15 Futhi phezu kwalokho: Ngizobeka uphawu kulowo ohlanganisa inzalo yakhe neyabafowenu, ukuze nayo iqalekiswe.
- 16 Futhi phezu kwalokho: Ngizobeka uphawu kulowo olwa nawe kanye nenzalo yakho.

And this was done that their seed might be distinguished from the seed of their brethren, that thereby the Lord God might preserve his people, that they might not mix and believe in incorrect traditions which would prove their destruction.

And it came to pass that whosoever did mingle his seed with that of the Lamanites did bring the same curse upon his seed.

Therefore, whosoever suffered himself to be led away by the Lamanites was called under that head, and there was a mark set upon him.

And it came to pass that whosoever would not believe in the tradition of the Lamanites, but believed those records which were brought out of the land of Jerusalem, and also in the tradition of their fathers, which were correct, who believed in the commandments of God and kept them, were called the Nephites, or the people of Nephi, from that time forth—

And it is they who have kept the records which are true of their people, and also of the people of the Lamanites.

Now we will return again to the Amlicites, for they also had a mark set upon them; yea, they set the mark upon themselves, yea, even a mark of red upon their foreheads.

Thus the word of God is fulfilled, for these are the words which he said to Nephi: Behold, the Lamanites have I cursed, and I will set a mark on them that they and their seed may be separated from thee and thy seed, from this time henceforth and forever, except they repent of their wickedness and turn to me that I may have mercy upon them.

And again: I will set a mark upon him that mingleth his seed with thy brethren, that they may be cursed also.

And again: I will set a mark upon him that fighteth against thee and thy seed.

17 Futhi phezu kwalokho, ngithi lowo owemukayo asuke kuwe akaseyikubizwa nanini ngenzalo yakho; futhi ngizokubusisa, kanye nalowo oyobizwa ngenzalo yakho, kuya phambili ingunaphakade; futhi lezi kwakuyizethembiso zeNkosi kuNefi kanye nakuyo inzalo yakhe.

18 Manje ama-Amiliki ayengazi ukuthi ayegcwalisa amazwi kaNkulunkulu ngesikhathi eqala ukuzibeka uphawu eziphongweni zawo; nokho ayephumele obala avukela uNkulunkulu; ngakho-ke kwakufanelekile ukuthi isiqalekiso siwele kuwo.

19 Manje ngifuna ukuthi nibone ukuthi azilethela wona isiqalekiso; futhi ngisho ngalendlela wonke umuntu oqalekisiwe, uzilethela yena ukubekwa icala.

20 Manje kwenzeka ukuthi ezinsukwini nje ezingeziningi emva kwempi eyayilwiwe ezweni lakwaZarahemla, ngamaLamani kanye nama-Amiliki, kwaba khona elinye ibutho lamaLamani eleza kubantu bakwaNefi, endaweni efanayo naleyo lapho ibutho lokuqala lalihlangene khona nama-Amiliki.

21 Futhi kwenzeka ukuthi kwaba khona ibutho elathunyelwa ukuthi libaqhube libakhiphe ezweni labo.

22 Manje u-Alima ephethwe yinxeba akahambanga wakhuphuka ukuyolwa ngalesi sikhathi namaLamani;

23 Kodwa wathumela ibutho elikhulu ukuyolwa nawo; futhi bahamba bakhuphuka futhi babulala abaningi bamaLamani, futhi bayiqhuba insalela yawo bayikhiphela ngaphandle kwemingcele yezwe labo.

24 Futhi emva kwalokho baphinda babuya futhi futhi baqala baqinisa ukuthula ezweni, bengasenakho ukukhathazwa yizitha zabo okwesikhashana.

25 Manje zonke lezi zinto zenzeka, yebo, zonke lezi zimpi kanye nemibango yaqala futhi yaphela ngonyaka wesihlanu wokubusa kwabehluleli.

And again, I say he that departeth from thee shall no more be called thy seed; and I will bless thee, and whomsoever shall be called thy seed, henceforth and forever; and these were the promises of the Lord unto Nephi and to his seed.

Now the Amlicites knew not that they were fulfilling the words of God when they began to mark themselves in their foreheads; nevertheless they had come out in open rebellion against God; therefore it was expedient that the curse should fall upon them.

Now I would that ye should see that they brought upon themselves the curse; and even so doth every man that is cursed bring upon himself his own condemnation.

Now it came to pass that not many days after the battle which was fought in the land of Zarahemla, by the Lamanites and the Amlicites, that there was another army of the Lamanites came in upon the people of Nephi, in the same place where the first army met the Amlicites.

And it came to pass that there was an army sent to drive them out of their land.

Now Alma himself being afflicted with a wound did not go up to battle at this time against the Lamanites;

But he sent up a numerous army against them; and they went up and slew many of the Lamanites, and drove the remainder of them out of the borders of their land.

And then they returned again and began to establish peace in the land, being troubled no more for a time with their enemies.

Now all these things were done, yea, all these wars and contentions were commenced and ended in the fifth year of the reign of the judges.

26 Futhi ngonyaka owodwa kwaba khona izinkulungwane kanye namashumi ezinkulungwane zemiphefumulo eyathunyelwa ezweni laphakade, ukuze ivune imivuzo yayo njengokwemisebenzi yayo, noma yayimihle noma yayimibi, ukuze ivune ukujabula kwaphakade noma usizi lwaphakade, njengokomoya lowo abakhetha ukuthi bawulalele, noma ngabe umoya omuhle noma yilowo omubi.

27 Ngokuba wonke umuntu uthola inkokhelo yalowo akhetha ukuthi amlalele, futhi lokhu njengokwamazwi omoya wesiphrofetho; ngakho-ke makube njengokweqiniso. Futhi waphela kanjalo-ke unyaka wesihlanu wokubusa kwabehluleli.

And in one year were thousands and tens of thousands of souls sent to the eternal world, that they might reap their rewards according to their works, whether they were good or whether they were bad, to reap eternal happiness or eternal misery, according to the spirit which they listed to obey, whether it be a good spirit or a bad one.

For every man receiveth wages of him whom he listeth to obey, and this according to the words of the spirit of prophecy; therefore let it be according to the truth. And thus endeth the fifth year of the reign of the judges.

Alima 4

- 1 Manje kwenzeka ngonyaka wesithupha wokubusa kwabehluleli phezu kwabantu baNefi, akuzange kube khona mibango nazimpi ezweni lakwaZarahemla;
- 2 Kodwa abantu babekhathazekile, yebo, bekhathazeke kakhulu ngenxa yokulahlekelwa ngabafowabo, futhi ngokunjalo nangenxa yokulahlekelwa yimihlambi yezimvu kanye nemihlambi yezinkomo zabo, futhi ngokunjalo nangenxa yokulahlekelwa ngamasimu okusanhlamvu abo, ayenyathelwe ngezinyawo onakaliswa ngamaLamani.
- 3 Futhi zazizinkulu kakhulu izinkathazo zabo kangangokuthi yonke imiphefumulo yayinesizathu sokukhala; futhi babekholelwa ukuthi kwakuyizahlulelo zikaNkulunkulu ezazithunyelwe kubo ngenxa yenkohlakalo yabo kanye nezinengiso zabo; ngalokho-ke bavuselwa ekukhumbuleni umsebenzi wabo.
- 4 Futhi baqala ukumisa ibandla ngokugcwele; yebo, futhi abanengi babhabhadiswa emanzini aseSidoni futhi bahlanganiswa nebandla likaNkulunkulu; yebo, babhabhadiswa ngesandla sika-Alima, owayegcotshwe ukuthi abe ngumphristi omkhulu kubantu bebandla, ngesandla sikayise u-Alima.
- 5 Futhi kwenzeka ngonyaka wesikhombisa wokubusa kwabehluleli kwabakhona cishe abantu abayizinkulungwane ezintathu namakhulu amahlanu abazihlanganisa nebandla likaNkulunkulu futhi babhabhadiswa. Futhi waphela ngalendlela unyaka wesikhombisa wokubusa kwabehluleli phezu kwabantu baNefi; futhi kwaba khona ukuthula njalo ngaso sonke leso sikhathi.

Alma 4

Now it came to pass in the sixth year of the reign of the judges over the people of Nephi, there were no contentions nor wars in the land of Zarahemla;

But the people were afflicted, yea, greatly afflicted for the loss of their brethren, and also for the loss of their flocks and herds, and also for the loss of their fields of grain, which were trodden under foot and destroyed by the Lamanites.

And so great were their afflictions that every soul had cause to mourn; and they believed that it was the judgments of God sent upon them because of their wickedness and their abominations; therefore they were awakened to a remembrance of their duty.

And they began to establish the church more fully; yea, and many were baptized in the waters of Sidon and were joined to the church of God; yea, they were baptized by the hand of Alma, who had been consecrated the high priest over the people of the church, by the hand of his father Alma.

And it came to pass in the seventh year of the reign of the judges there were about three thousand five hundred souls that united themselves to the church of God and were baptized. And thus ended the seventh year of the reign of the judges over the people of Nephi; and there was continual peace in all that time.

6 Futhi kwenzeka ngonyaka wesishiyagalombili wokubusa kwabehluleli, ukuthi abantu bebandla baqala baba nokuziqhenya, ngenxa yengcebo yabo eningi, kanye nosilika wabo ocolekile, nelineni yabo elukiwe ecolekileyo, futhi nangenxa yemihlambi yabo yezimvu kanye nemihlambi yabo yezinkomo eminingi, negolide labo, nesiliva labo, kanye nazo zonke izinto eziyigugu, ababezithole ngokusebenza kwabo; futhi kuzo zonke lezi zinto baphakama ngenxa yokuzibona kwabo, ngokuba baqala ukugqoka izingubo ezibizayo.

7 Manje lokhu kwakuyisizathu sokukhathazeka okukhulu kuka-Alima, yebo, futhi nakwabaningi abantu u-Alima ayebagcobe ukuthi babe ngabafundisi, nabaphristi, kanye namagosa ebandleni; yebo, abanengi babo babedabuke kakhulu ngenxa yobubi ababebubona ukuthi basebuqale ukuba khona phakathi kwabantu.

8 Ngokuba babona futhi babuka ngosizi olukhulu ukuthi abantu bebandla baqala ukuthi baphakame ngenxa yokuzibona kwabo, kanye nokuthi babeke izinhliziyi zabo engcebweni kanye nasezintweni eziyize zezwe, futhi nokuthi baqala ukuthi babe nokwedelela, omunye komunye, futhi baqala ukuthi bahluphe labo ababengakholwa njengokwentando nangokwesifiso sabo.

9 Futhi ngenxa yalokho, ngalonyaka wesishiyagalombili wokubusa kwabehluleli, kwaqala ukuthi kube khona imibango emikhulu phakathi kwabantu bebandla; yebo, kwabakhona umhawu, nokuphikisana, nenzondo, nokuhluphana, kanye nokuziqhenya, ngisho okudlula ukuzikhukhumeza kwalabo okwakungebona abebandla likaNkulunkulu.

10 Futhi yaphela kanjalo-ke iminyaka eyisishiyagalombili yokubusa kwabehluleli; futhi ububi bebandla babuyisikhubekiso esikhulu kulabo okwakungebona bebandla; futhi ngalendlela ibandla laqala ukwehluleka enqubekeleni yalo phambili.

And it came to pass in the eighth year of the reign of the judges, that the people of the church began to wax proud, because of their exceeding riches, and their fine silks, and their fine-twined linen, and because of their many flocks and herds, and their gold and their silver, and all manner of precious things, which they had obtained by their industry; and in all these things were they lifted up in the pride of their eyes, for they began to wear very costly apparel.

Now this was the cause of much affliction to Alma, yea, and to many of the people whom Alma had consecrated to be teachers, and priests, and elders over the church; yea, many of them were sorely grieved for the wickedness which they saw had begun to be among their people.

For they saw and beheld with great sorrow that the people of the church began to be lifted up in the pride of their eyes, and to set their hearts upon riches and upon the vain things of the world, that they began to be scornful, one towards another, and they began to persecute those that did not believe according to their own will and pleasure.

And thus, in this eighth year of the reign of the judges, there began to be great contentions among the people of the church; yea, there were envyings, and strife, and malice, and persecutions, and pride, even to exceed the pride of those who did not belong to the church of God.

And thus ended the eighth year of the reign of the judges; and the wickedness of the church was a great stumbling-block to those who did not belong to the church; and thus the church began to fail in its progress.

- 11 Futhi kwenzeka ukuthi ekuqaleni konyaka wesishiyagalolunye, u-Alima wabubona ububi bebandla, futhi waphinde wabona ukuthi isibonelo sebandla saqala ukuthi siholele labo ababengakholwa kusuka eubini obuthize kuya kobunye ububi, ngalendlela beletha ukonakala kwabantu.
- 12 Yebo, wabona ukungalingani okukhulu phakathi kwabantu, abanye beziphakamisa ngokuziqhenya kwabo, bebukela phansi abanye, befulathela abadingayo nabanqunu nalabo ababelambile, nalabo ababomile, kanye nalabo ababegula futhi behluphekile.
- 13 Manje lokhu kwakuyisizathu esikhulu sezililo phakathi kwabantu, abanye bezehlisa, besiza labo ababemi bedinga ukusizwa yibo, njengokunika lokho abanakho kwabampofu kanye nabadingayo, bepha abalambile, futhi bebekezelela zonke izinhlobo zezinkathazo, ngenxa kaKristu, okufanele eze njengokomoya wesiphrofetho;
- 14 Bebheke phambili kulolo suku, ngaleyo ndlela begcina ukuthethelelwa kwezono zabo; begcwaliswe ngenjabulo enkulu ngenxa yokuvuka kwabafileyo, ngokwentando kanye namandla kanye nokukhululwa kukaJesu Kristu ezibophweni zokufa.
- 15 Manje kwenzeka ukuthi u-Alima, esezibonile izinkathazo zabalandeli baNkulunkulu abathobekile, kanye nokuhlushwa okwakubekwe phezu kwabo yinsalela yabantu bakhe, futhi ebona konke ukungalingani kwabo, waqala ukuba nosizi olukhulu; nokho uMoya weNkosi awumshiyanga.
- 16 Futhi wakhetha indoda ehlakaniphile eyayiphakathi kwamagosa ebandla, wayinika amandla njengokwezwi labantu, ukuthi ibe namandla okuthi ishaye imithetho ngokwemithetho eyayinikeziwe, futhi nokuthi iyisebenzise ngokobubi kanye namacala abantu.
- 17 Manje igama lalendoda kwakunguNefiha, futhi yakhethwa ukuthi ibe ngumahluleli omkhulu; futhi yahlala esihlalweni sokwahlulela ukuthi ihlulele futhi iphathe abantu.

And it came to pass in the commencement of the ninth year, Alma saw the wickedness of the church, and he saw also that the example of the church began to lead those who were unbelievers on from one piece of iniquity to another, thus bringing on the destruction of the people.

Yea, he saw great inequality among the people, some lifting themselves up with their pride, despising others, turning their backs upon the needy and the naked and those who were hungry, and those who were athirst, and those who were sick and afflicted.

Now this was a great cause for lamentations among the people, while others were abasing themselves, succoring those who stood in need of their succor, such as imparting their substance to the poor and the needy, feeding the hungry, and suffering all manner of afflictions, for Christ's sake, who should come according to the spirit of prophecy;

Looking forward to that day, thus retaining a remission of their sins; being filled with great joy because of the resurrection of the dead, according to the will and power and deliverance of Jesus Christ from the bands of death.

And now it came to pass that Alma, having seen the afflictions of the humble followers of God, and the persecutions which were heaped upon them by the remainder of his people, and seeing all their inequality, began to be very sorrowful; nevertheless the Spirit of the Lord did not fail him.

And he selected a wise man who was among the elders of the church, and gave him power according to the voice of the people, that he might have power to enact laws according to the laws which had been given, and to put them in force according to the wickedness and the crimes of the people.

Now this man's name was Nephihah, and he was appointed chief judge; and he sat in the judgment-seat to judge and to govern the people.

18 Manje u-Alima akayinikezanga isikhundla sokuthi ibe ngumphristi omkhulu phezu kwebandla, kodwa wasigcina kuye lesi sikhundla sokuba ngumphristi omkhulu; kodwa isihlalo sokwahlulela wasinikezela kuNefiha.

19 Futhi lokhu wakwenza ukuze yena uqobo ahambe phakathi kwabantu bakhe, noma phakathi kwabantu baNefi, ukuze ashumayele izwi likaNkulunkulu kubo, ukuze abaphehle ukuthi bakhumbule umsebenzi wabo, futhi nokuthi akudonsele phansi, ngezwi likaNkulunkulu, konke ukuzikhukhumeza nobuqili kanye nayo yonke imibango eyayiphakathi kwabantu bakhe, engayiboni enye indlela yokuthi ababuyise ngaphandle kokuthi abacindezele ngokunikeza ubufakazi obumsulwa ngokumelene nabo.

20 Futhi ngenxa yalokho ekuqaleni konyaka wesishiyagalolunye wokubusa kwabehluleli phezu kwabantu baNefi, u-Alima wanika isihlalo sokwahlulela ku Nefiha, futhi yena wazinikela ngokuphelele ebuphristini obukhulu bohlelo olungcwele lukaNkulunkulu, ngokufakaza ngezwi, ngokomoya wokwambulelwa kanye nowokuphrofetha.

Now Alma did not grant unto him the office of being high priest over the church, but he retained the office of high priest unto himself; but he delivered the judgment-seat unto Nephihah.

And this he did that he himself might go forth among his people, or among the people of Nephi, that he might preach the word of God unto them, to stir them up in remembrance of their duty, and that he might pull down, by the word of God, all the pride and craftiness and all the contentions which were among his people, seeing no way that he might reclaim them save it were in bearing down in pure testimony against them.

And thus in the commencement of the ninth year of the reign of the judges over the people of Nephi, Alma delivered up the judgment-seat to Nephihah, and confined himself wholly to the high priesthood of the holy order of God, to the testimony of the word, according to the spirit of revelation and prophecy.

Amazwi u-Alima, uMpristi oMkbulu ngokoblelo olungwele lukaNkulunkulu, awakbuluma kubantu emadolobheni kanye nasezigodini zabo kulo lonke izwe.

Alima 5

- 1 Manje kwenzeka ukuthi u-Alima waqala ukukhuluma izwi lika Nkulunkulu kubantu, waqala ezweni laseZarahemla, futhi wasuka lapho waya ezweni lonke.
- 2 Lawa ngamazwi awakhuluma kubantu ebandleni elalimiswe edolobheni laseZarahemla, ngokombhalo wakhe uqobo, ethi:
- 3 Mina, Alima, ngigcotshwe ngubaba, u-Alima, ukuthi ngibe ngumphristi omkhulu ebandleni likaNkulunkulu, yena enamandla negunya elivela kuNkulunkulu ukwenza lezi zinto, bhekani, ngithi kini waqala wamisa ibandla ezweni elalisemngceleni wakwaNefi; yebo, izwe elalibizwa ngokuthi yizwe likaMormoni; yebo, futhi nempela wababhabhadisa abafowabo emanzini kaMormoni.
- 4 Futhi bhekani, ngithi kini, bakhululwa ezandleni zabantu benkosi uNowa, ngomusa kanye namandla kaNkulunkulu.
- 5 Futhi bhekani, emva kwalokho, ba lethwa ebugqilini ngezandla zamaLamani ehlane; yebo, ngithi kini, babesekuthunjweni, futhi yaphinda iNkosi nempela yabakhipha ebugqilini ngamandla ezwi layo; futhi sa lethwa lapha kulelizwe, futhi lapha saqala ukwakha ibandla likaNkulunkulu kulo lonke lelizwe futhi.
- 6 Manje bhekani, ngithi kini, bafowethu, nina eningabalelibandla, ngabe nikukhumbule ngokwanele yini ukuthunjwa koyihlo na? Yebo, futhi ngabe niwukhumbule ngokwanele yini umusa wakhe kanye nokubabekezelela kwakhe na? Futhi phezu kwalokho, ngabe nikukhumbule ngokwanele yini ukuthi uyikhululile imiphefumulo yabo esihogweni na?

The words which Alma, the High Priest according to the holy order of God, delivered to the people in their cities and villages throughout the land.

Alma 5

Now it came to pass that Alma began to deliver the word of God unto the people, first in the land of Zarahemla, and from thence throughout all the land.

And these are the words which he spake to the people in the church which was established in the city of Zarahemla, according to his own record, saying:

I, Alma, having been consecrated by my father, Alma, to be a high priest over the church of God, he having power and authority from God to do these things, behold, I say unto you that he began to establish a church in the land which was in the borders of Nephi; yea, the land which was called the land of Mormon; yea, and he did baptize his brethren in the waters of Mormon.

And behold, I say unto you, they were delivered out of the hands of the people of king Noah, by the mercy and power of God.

And behold, after that, they were brought into bondage by the hands of the Lamanites in the wilderness; yea, I say unto you, they were in captivity, and again the Lord did deliver them out of bondage by the power of his word; and we were brought into this land, and here we began to establish the church of God throughout this land also.

And now behold, I say unto you, my brethren, you that belong to this church, have you sufficiently retained in remembrance the captivity of your fathers? Yea, and have you sufficiently retained in remembrance his mercy and long-suffering towards them? And moreover, have ye sufficiently retained in remembrance that he has delivered their souls from hell?

- 7 Bhekani, waziguqula izinhliziyi zabo; yebo, wabavusa ebuthongweni obujulile, futhi bavukela kuNkulunkulu. Bhekani, babephakathi naphakathi kobumnyama; nokho, imiphefumulo yabo yakhanyiswa ngokukhanya kwezwi laphakade; yebo, babezungezwe yizibopho zokufa, kanye namaketango esihogo, futhi ukonakala kwaphakade kwakubalindle.
- 8 Manje ngibuza kini, bafowethu, ngabe bonakaliswa na? Bhekani, ngithi kini, Cha, abazange.
- 9 Futhi phezu kwalokho ngiyabuza, ngabe izibopho zokufa zagqashulwa, kanye namaketanga esihogo ayebazungezile, ngabe axegiswa na? Ngithi kini, Yebo, axegiswa, futhi imiphefumulo yabo yakhula, futhi nempela bacula ngothando lokukhululwa. Futhi ngithi kini basindisiwe.
- 10 Manje ngibuza kini ukuthi yimiphi imibandela abasindiswa ngayo na? Yebo, yiziphi izizathu ababethembele kuzo ukuze basindiswe na? Kungasiphi izizathu sokuthi bakhululwe ezibophweni zokufa, yebo, futhi ngokunjalo nasemaketangeni esihogo na?
- 11 Bhekani, nginganazisa—ngabe ubaba u-Alima akakholelwa yini emazwini ayekhulunye ngomlomo ka-Abinadi na? Futhi wayengeyena yini umphrofethi ongcwele na? Ngabe akakhulumanga yini amazwi kaNkulunkulu, futhi ubaba u-Alima wawakholwa na?
- 12 Futhi ngokholo lwakhe kwaba khona uguquko olukhulu olwenzeka enhliziyweni yakhe. Bhekani ngithi kini konke lokhu kuyiqiniso.
- 13 Futhi bhekani, washumayela izwi koyihlo, futhi nakubo uguquko olukhulu lwenzeka ezinhliziyweni zabo, futhi bazithoba futhi babeka ithemba labo kuNkulunkulu weqiniso nophilayo. Futhi bhekani, bathembeka kwaze kwaba sekugcineni; ngalokho ke basindiswa.
- 14 Manje bhekani, ngibuza kini, bafowethu bebandla, ngabe senizelwe yini ngokukamoya kaNkulunkulu na? Ngabe seniwemukele yini umfanekiso wakhe ebusweni benu na? Ngabe seniluzwile yini loluguquko olukhulu ezinhliziyweni zenu na?

Behold, he changed their hearts; yea, he awakened them out of a deep sleep, and they awoke unto God. Behold, they were in the midst of darkness; nevertheless, their souls were illuminated by the light of the everlasting word; yea, they were encircled about by the bands of death, and the chains of hell, and an everlasting destruction did await them.

And now I ask of you, my brethren, were they destroyed? Behold, I say unto you, Nay, they were not.

And again I ask, were the bands of death broken, and the chains of hell which encircled them about, were they loosed? I say unto you, Yea, they were loosed, and their souls did expand, and they did sing redeeming love. And I say unto you that they are saved.

And now I ask of you on what conditions are they saved? Yea, what grounds had they to hope for salvation? What is the cause of their being loosed from the bands of death, yea, and also the chains of hell?

Behold, I can tell you—did not my father Alma believe in the words which were delivered by the mouth of Abinadi? And was he not a holy prophet? Did he not speak the words of God, and my father Alma believe them?

And according to his faith there was a mighty change wrought in his heart. Behold I say unto you that this is all true.

And behold, he preached the word unto your fathers, and a mighty change was also wrought in their hearts, and they humbled themselves and put their trust in the true and living God. And behold, they were faithful until the end; therefore they were saved.

And now behold, I ask of you, my brethren of the church, have ye spiritually been born of God? Have ye received his image in your countenances? Have ye experienced this mighty change in your hearts?

15 Ngabe niyakholwa yini ekukhululweni kwakhe lowo owanidalayo na? Ngabe nibheka phambili yini ngeso lokholo, futhi niwubone lomzimba ofayo sewuvuselwa ekungafini, futhi nalokhu okubolayo sekuvuselwa ekungabolini, ukuthi kume phambi kukaNkulunkulu ukuze kwahlulelwe ngokwezenzo ezenziwa emzimbeni ofayo na?

16 Ngithi kini, ningake nicabange ukuthi nizwa izwi leNkosi, lithi kini, ngalolo suku: Wozani kimi nina enibusisiweyo, ngokuba bhekani, imisebenzi yenu ibiyimisebenzi yokulunga phezu kobuso bomhlaba?

17 Noma nicabanga ukuthi ningaqamba amanga eNkosini ngalolo suku, nithi—Nkosi, imisebenzi yethu ibiyimisebenzi elungile phezu kobuso bomhlaba—nokuthi yena uyonisindisa na?

18 Noma-ke ngenye indlela, ningazicabanga yini nilethwa phambi kwesihlalo sokuthetha amacala sikaNkulunkulu nemiphefumulo yenu igcwele ukuzinyeza kanye nokuzisola, ninayo yonke inkumbulo yamacala enu, yebo, inkumbulo ephелеleyo yakho konke ukukhohlakala kwenu, yebo, inkumbulo yokuthi niyenze ize imiyalelo kaNkulunkulu na?

19 Ngithi kini, ningabheka yini phezulu kuNkulunkulu ngalolo suku ngenhliziyo emsulwa nezandla ezihlanzekile na? Ngithi kini, ningabheka yini phezulu, ninomfanekiso kaNkulunkulu uqoshwe ebusweni benu na?

20 Ngithi kini, ningacabanga yini ngokusindiswa nibe nizivumele ukuthi nibe ngaphansi kukadeveli na?

21 Ngithi kini, niyokwazi ngalolo suku ukuthi aninaku sindiswa; ngokuba akukho muntu ongasindiswa ngaphandle kokuthi izingubo zakhe zihlanzwe zaba mhlophe; yebo, izingubo zakhe kufanele zihlanjululwe zize zihlanzeke kuwo wonke amabala, egazini lalowo okwakhulunywa ngaye ngobaba bethu, okufanele eze ukuzokhulula abantu bakhe ezonweni zabo.

22 Manje ngiyabuza kini, bafowethu, ningazizwa kanjani, uma senimi phambi kwesihlalo sikaNkulunkulu, ninezingubo zenu ezinamabala egazi kanye nayo yonke inhlobo yokungcola na? Bhekani, ngabe lezi zinto ziyofakazani ngani na?

Do ye exercise faith in the redemption of him who created you? Do you look forward with an eye of faith, and view this mortal body raised in immortality, and this corruption raised in incorruption, to stand before God to be judged according to the deeds which have been done in the mortal body?

I say unto you, can you imagine to yourselves that ye hear the voice of the Lord, saying unto you, in that day: Come unto me ye blessed, for behold, your works have been the works of righteousness upon the face of the earth?

Or do ye imagine to yourselves that ye can lie unto the Lord in that day, and say—Lord, our works have been righteous works upon the face of the earth—and that he will save you?

Or otherwise, can ye imagine yourselves brought before the tribunal of God with your souls filled with guilt and remorse, having a remembrance of all your guilt, yea, a perfect remembrance of all your wickedness, yea, a remembrance that ye have set at defiance the commandments of God?

I say unto you, can ye look up to God at that day with a pure heart and clean hands? I say unto you, can you look up, having the image of God engraven upon your countenances?

I say unto you, can ye think of being saved when you have yielded yourselves to become subjects to the devil?

I say unto you, ye will know at that day that ye cannot be saved; for there can no man be saved except his garments are washed white; yea, his garments must be purified until they are cleansed from all stain, through the blood of him of whom it has been spoken by our fathers, who should come to redeem his people from their sins.

And now I ask of you, my brethren, how will any of you feel, if ye shall stand before the bar of God, having your garments stained with blood and all manner of filthiness? Behold, what will these things testify against you?

- 23 Bhekani ngabe aziyikufakaza yini ukuthi ningababulali, yebo, futhi nokuthi ninecala layo yonke inhlobo yenkohlakalo na?
- 24 Bhekani, bafowethu, ngabe nicabanga ukuthi onjena angaba yini nendawo yokuhlala embusweni kaNkulunkulu, kanye no-Abrahama, no-Isaka, noJakobe, futhi ngokunjalo nabo bonke abaphrofethi abangcwele, abanezingubo ezihlanziwe futhi ezingenabala, ezimsulwa futhi ezimhlophe na?
- 25 Ngithi kini, Cha; ngaphandle uma nenza uMdali wethu umkhohlisi kusukela ekuqaleni, noma nicabanga ukuthi ungumkhohlisi kusukela ekuqaleni, aninakukholwa wukuthi abanjena bangaba nendawo embusweni wasezulwini; kodwa bayokhishelwa ngaphandle ngokuba bengabantwana bombuso kadeveli.
- 26 Manje bhekani, ngithi kini, bafowethu, uma niluzwile uguquko lwenhliziyo, futhi uma nizwe kuthi manicule iculo lothando lokukhululwa, ngizobuza, ngabe nisezwa kanjalo yini namanje na?
- 27 Ngabe nihambe nizigcina ningasoleki phambi kukaNkulunkulu na? Ngabe ningasho yini ukuthi, uma beningabizelwa ekufeni ngalesi sikhathi, ngaphakathi kini, ukuthi benizithobe ngokwanele na? Ukuthi izingubo zenu zihlanziwe futhi zenziwa zabamhlophe ngegazi likaKristu, oyoza azokhulula abantu bakhe ezonweni zabo na?
- 28 Bhekani, ngabe nihilutshuliwe yini ukuzikhukhumeza na? Ngithi kini, uma kungenjalo anikulungele ukuhlangana noNkulunkulu. Bhekani kufanele nizilungiselele ngokushesha; ngokuba umbuso wezulu masinyane ususeduze, futhi onjalo akanakho ukuphila okuphakade.
- 29 Bhekani, ngithi, ngabe ukhona yini phakathi kwenu ongahlutshuliwe umona na? Ngithi kini onjalo akalungile; futhi ngifisa ukuthi azilungiselele masinyane, ngokuba ihora seliseduze, futhi akazi ukuthi isikhathi sizofika nini; ngokuba onjalo angeke atholwe engenacala.
- 30 Futhi phezu kwalokho ngithi kini, ngabe ukhona yini phakathi kwenu ohlekisa ngomfowabo, noma obeka inqwaba yezinhlopheko phezu kwakhe na?

Behold will they not testify that ye are murderers, yea, and also that ye are guilty of all manner of wickedness?

Behold, my brethren, do ye suppose that such an one can have a place to sit down in the kingdom of God, with Abraham, with Isaac, and with Jacob, and also all the holy prophets, whose garments are cleansed and are spotless, pure and white?

I say unto you, Nay; except ye make our Creator a liar from the beginning, or suppose that he is a liar from the beginning, ye cannot suppose that such can have place in the kingdom of heaven; but they shall be cast out for they are the children of the kingdom of the devil.

And now behold, I say unto you, my brethren, if ye have experienced a change of heart, and if ye have felt to sing the song of redeeming love, I would ask, can ye feel so now?

Have ye walked, keeping yourselves blameless before God? Could ye say, if ye were called to die at this time, within yourselves, that ye have been sufficiently humble? That your garments have been cleansed and made white through the blood of Christ, who will come to redeem his people from their sins?

Behold, are ye stripped of pride? I say unto you, if ye are not ye are not prepared to meet God. Behold ye must prepare quickly; for the kingdom of heaven is soon at hand, and such an one hath not eternal life.

Behold, I say, is there one among you who is not stripped of envy? I say unto you that such an one is not prepared; and I would that he should prepare quickly, for the hour is close at hand, and he knoweth not when the time shall come; for such an one is not found guiltless.

And again I say unto you, is there one among you that doth make a mock of his brother, or that heapeth upon him persecutions?

31 Maye kulowo onjalo, ngokuba akalungile, futhi isikhathi sesiseduze sokuthi kufanele aphenduke kungenjalo angeke asindiswe!

32 Yebo, maye ngisho nakini nonke basebenzi bobubi; phendukani, phendukani, ngokuba iNkosi uNkulunkulu ikukhulumile lokhu!

33 Bhekani, uthumela isimemo kubo bonke abantu, ngokuba izingalo zomusa zelulelwe ngakubo, uthi: Phendukani, futhi ngiyonemukela.

34 Yebo, uthi: Wozani kimi niyokudla isithelo somuthi wokuphila; yebo, niyokudla futhi niphuze kuso isinkwa kanye nakuwo amanzi okuphila ngokukhululeka;

35 Yebo, wozani kimi futhi niveze imisebenzi yokulunga, aniyikucekelwa phansi futhi niphonswe emlilweni—

36 Ngokuba bhekani, isikhathi sesiseduze sokuthi lowo ongabezi izithelo ezinhle, lowo ongayenzi imisebenzi yokulunga, labo banesizathu sokumpongoloza nokulila.

37 O nina basebenzi bobubi; enikhukhumele ezintweni eziyize zezwe, enimemezele ngokuzazi izindlela zokulunga kodwa nedukile, njengezimvu ezingenameli, naphezu kokuba umalusi enibizile futhi usanibiza namanje, kepha anililaleli izwi lakhe!

38 Bhekani, ngithi kini, umalusi omuhle uyanibiza; yebo, futhi ngegama lakhe uqobo uyanibiza, okuyigama likaKristu; futhi uma ningenakulilalela izwi lomalusi omuhle, igama enibizwa ngalo, bhekani, anizona izimvu zomalusi omuhle.

39 Manje uma ningezona izimvu zomalusi omuhle, ngabe ningowamuphi umhlambi na? Bhekani, ngithi kini, udeveli ungumelusi wenu, futhi ningabomhlambi wakhe; manje, ngubani ongakuphika lokhu na? Bhekani, ngithi kini, lowo okuphikayo lokhu ungumkhohlisi futhi ungumntwana kadeveli.

40 Ngokuba ngithi kini noma ngabe yini enhle iphuma kuNkulunkulu, futhi noma ngabe yini embi iphuma kudeveli.

Wo unto such an one, for he is not prepared, and the time is at hand that he must repent or he cannot be saved!

Yea, even wo unto all ye workers of iniquity; repent, repent, for the Lord God hath spoken it!

Behold, he sendeth an invitation unto all men, for the arms of mercy are extended towards them, and he saith: Repent, and I will receive you.

Yea, he saith: Come unto me and ye shall partake of the fruit of the tree of life; yea, ye shall eat and drink of the bread and the waters of life freely;

Yea, come unto me and bring forth works of righteousness, and ye shall not be hewn down and cast into the fire—

For behold, the time is at hand that whosoever bringeth forth not good fruit, or whosoever doeth not the works of righteousness, the same have cause to wail and mourn.

O ye workers of iniquity; ye that are puffed up in the vain things of the world, ye that have professed to have known the ways of righteousness nevertheless have gone astray, as sheep having no shepherd, notwithstanding a shepherd hath called after you and is still calling after you, but ye will not hearken unto his voice!

Behold, I say unto you, that the good shepherd doth call you; yea, and in his own name he doth call you, which is the name of Christ; and if ye will not hearken unto the voice of the good shepherd, to the name by which ye are called, behold, ye are not the sheep of the good shepherd.

And now if ye are not the sheep of the good shepherd, of what fold are ye? Behold, I say unto you, that the devil is your shepherd, and ye are of his fold; and now, who can deny this? Behold, I say unto you, whosoever denieth this is a liar and a child of the devil.

For I say unto you that whatsoever is good cometh from God, and whatsoever is evil cometh from the devil.

41 Ngakho-ke, uma umuntu eveza imisebenzi emihle ulalela izwi lomalusi omuhle, futhi uyamlandela; kodwa lowo oveza imisebenzi emibi, ngokufanayo lowo uba ngumntwana kadeveli, ngokuba ulalela izwi lakhe, futhi uyamlandela.

42 Futhi lowo owenza lokhu kufanele athole inkokhelo yakhe kuye; ngakho-ke, ngokwe nkokhelo yakhe uthola ukufa, ngokwezinto eziphatelene nokulunga, abe ngofileyo kuyo yonke imisebenzi emihle.

43 Manje, bafowethu, ngifuna ukuthi ningizwe, ngokuba ngikhuluma ngamandla omphefumulo wami; ngokuba bhekani, ngikhulume nani ngokusobala kangangokuthi angeke niphambuke, noma ngikhulume ngokwemiyalelo kaNkulunkulu.

44 Ngokuba ngibizelwe ukuthi ngikhulume ngalendlela, ngokohlelo olungcwele lukaNkulunkulu, olukuKristu uJesu; yebo, ngiyalwe ukuthi ngime futhi ngifakaze kulaba bantu izinto ezikhulunywe ngobaba bethu mayelana nezinto ezisazokwenzeka.

45 Futhi lokhu akusikho konke. Ngabe nicabanga ukuthi ngizazela mina lezi zinto na? Bhekani, ngiyafakaza kini ukuthi ngiyazi ukuthi lezi zinto engikhulume ngazo ziyiqiniso. Futhi nicabanga ukuthi ngabe ngazi kanjani ngobuqiniso bazo na?

46 Bhekani, ngithi kini zaziswe kimi ngoMoya oNgcwele kaNkulunkulu. Bhekani, ngizile ukudla futhi ngathandaza eziningi izinsuku ukuze ngizazi lezi zinto ngokwami. Manje sengiyazi ngokwami ukuthi ziyiqiniso; ngokuba iNkosi uNkulunkulu izibonakalisile kimi ngoMoya wayo oNgcwele; futhi lona ngumoya wokwambulelwa okimi.

47 Futhi phezu kwalokho, ngithi kini ngalendlela kwambuliwe kimi, ukuthi amazwi akhulunywe ngobaba bethu ayiqiniso, ngisho kanjalo ngokomoya wokuphrofetha okimi, nakho futhi okubonakaliswa ngoMoya kaNkulunkulu.

Therefore, if a man bringeth forth good works he hearkeneth unto the voice of the good shepherd, and he doth follow him; but whosoever bringeth forth evil works, the same becometh a child of the devil, for he hearkeneth unto his voice, and doth follow him.

And whosoever doeth this must receive his wages of him; therefore, for his wages he receiveth death, as to things pertaining unto righteousness, being dead unto all good works.

And now, my brethren, I would that ye should hear me, for I speak in the energy of my soul; for behold, I have spoken unto you plainly that ye cannot err, or have spoken according to the commandments of God.

For I am called to speak after this manner, according to the holy order of God, which is in Christ Jesus; yea, I am commanded to stand and testify unto this people the things which have been spoken by our fathers concerning the things which are to come.

And this is not all. Do ye not suppose that I know of these things myself? Behold, I testify unto you that I do know that these things whereof I have spoken are true. And how do ye suppose that I know of their surety?

Behold, I say unto you they are made known unto me by the Holy Spirit of God. Behold, I have fasted and prayed many days that I might know these things of myself. And now I do know of myself that they are true; for the Lord God hath made them manifest unto me by his Holy Spirit; and this is the spirit of revelation which is in me.

And moreover, I say unto you that it has thus been revealed unto me, that the words which have been spoken by our fathers are true, even so according to the spirit of prophecy which is in me, which is also by the manifestation of the Spirit of God.

48 Ngithi kini, ngiyazi ngokwami ukuthi noma ngabe yini engizoyisho kini, mayelana nalokho okusazokwenzeka, kuyiqiniso; futhi ngithi kini, ngiyazi ukuthi uJesu Kristu uyoza, yebo, iNdodana, eZelwe Yodwa kaBaba, egcwele umusa, nobubele, kanye neqiniso. Futhi bhekani, nguye lowo ozayo ozothatha izono zomhlaba, yebo, izono zawo wonke umuntu okholwa ngokungangabazi egameni lakhe.

49 Manje ngithi kini yilo loluhlelo engibizwe ngalo, yebo, ukuthi ngishumayele kubafowethu abathandekayo, yebo, kanye nakubo bonke abahlala kulelizwe; yebo, ukuthi ngishumayele kubo bonke, abadala nabancane, ababoshiwe nabakhululekile; yebo, ngithi kini abadala, futhi ngokunjalo nabaphakathi nobudala, kanye nakuso isizukulwane esikhulayo; yebo, ukuthi ngikhale kubo ukuthi kufanele baphenduke futhi bazalwe ngokusha.

50 Yebo, usho kanje uMoya: Phendukani, nonke nina mikhawulo yomhlaba, ngokuba umbuso wezulu masinyane ususeduze; yebo, iNdodana kaNkulunkulu iyeza ngenkazimulo yayo, nangobukhulu bamandla ayo, nobukhosi, namandla, kanye nobukhulu bayo. Yebo, bafowethu abathandekayo, ngithi kini, uMoya uthi: Bhekani udumo lwe Nkosi yomhlaba wonke; futhi phezu kwalokho iNkosi yasezulwini masinyane nje izokhanya phakathi kwabo bonke abantwana babantu.

51 Futhi phezu kwalokho uMoya uthi kimi, yebo, ukhala kimi ngezwi elikhulu, uthi: Hamba uthi kulaba bantu—Phendukani, ngokuba ngaphandle kokuthi niphenduke aninakukwazi nanini ukuthi nidle ifa lombuso wezulu.

52 Futhi phezu kwalokho ngithi kini, uMoya uthi: Bhekani, izembe libekiwe empanjeni yesihlahla; ngakho-ke zonke izihlahla ezingatheli zithelo ezinhle ziyocelwa phansi ziphonswe emlilweni, yebo, umlilo ongenakucishwa, ngisho umlilo ongacimekiyo. Bhekani, futhi nikhumbule, oNgcwele nguyena okukhulumile lokhu.

I say unto you, that I know of myself that whatsoever I shall say unto you, concerning that which is to come, is true; and I say unto you, that I know that Jesus Christ shall come, yea, the Son, the Only Begotten of the Father, full of grace, and mercy, and truth. And behold, it is he that cometh to take away the sins of the world, yea, the sins of every man who steadfastly believeth on his name.

And now I say unto you that this is the order after which I am called, yea, to preach unto my beloved brethren, yea, and every one that dwelleth in the land; yea, to preach unto all, both old and young, both bond and free; yea, I say unto you the aged, and also the middle aged, and the rising generation; yea, to cry unto them that they must repent and be born again.

Yea, thus saith the Spirit: Repent, all ye ends of the earth, for the kingdom of heaven is soon at hand; yea, the Son of God cometh in his glory, in his might, majesty, power, and dominion. Yea, my beloved brethren, I say unto you, that the Spirit saith: Behold the glory of the King of all the earth; and also the King of heaven shall very soon shine forth among all the children of men.

And also the Spirit saith unto me, yea, crieth unto me with a mighty voice, saying: Go forth and say unto this people—Repent, for except ye repent ye can in nowise inherit the kingdom of heaven.

And again I say unto you, the Spirit saith: Behold, the ax is laid at the root of the tree; therefore every tree that bringeth not forth good fruit shall be hewn down and cast into the fire, yea, a fire which cannot be consumed, even an unquenchable fire. Behold, and remember, the Holy One hath spoken it.

- 53 Manje bafowethu abathandekayo, ngithi kini, ningaphikisana yini nalokhu okushiwo; yebo, ningazibeka yini eceleni lezi zinto, futhi ninyathele oNgcwele ngaphansi kwezinyawo zenu; yebo, nisengaphakama yini ngenxa yokuzibona kwenu; yebo, nisengaphikelela yini ekugqokeni izingubo ezibizayo futhi nibeke izinhliziyi zenu ezintweni eziyize zezwe, nasemcebweni wenu na?
- 54 Yebo, nisengaphikelela yini nokucabanga ukuthi ningcono kunabanye; yebo, nisengaphikelela yini nokuhlupha abafowenu, abazithobayo futhi behamba ngokohlelo olungcwele lukaNkulunkulu, abalethwa ngalo kulelibandla, bengcweliswe nguMoya oyiNgcwele, futhi nempela baveza imisebenzi efaneleyo yokuphenduka—
- 55 Yebo, futhi nisengaphikelela yini nokufulathela abampofu, nabadingayo, kanye nokugodla eninakho kubo na?
- 56 Futhi okokugcina, nonke nina enizophikelela ebumini benu, ngithi kini yibo labo abayocekelwa phansi futhi baphonswe emlilweni ngaphandle kokuthi baphenduke ngokushesha okukhulu.
- 57 Manje ngithi kini, nonke nina enifisa ukulandela izwi lomalusi omuhle, phumani phakathi kwababi, nizihlukanise, ningazithinti izinto zabo ezingcolile; bhokani, amagama abo ayosulwa, ukuze amagama ababi angabalwa phakathi kwamagama abalungileyo, ukuze izwi likaNkulunkulu ligcwaliseke, elithi: Amagama ababi awayikuhlanganiswa namagama abantu bami;
- 58 Ngokuba amagama abalungileyo ayobhalwa encwadini yokuphila, futhi ngiyobanika ifa esandleni sami sokunene. Manje, bafowethu, yini eningayisho ukuphikisana nalokhu na? Ngithi kini, uma nikhuluma ngokumelene nalokhu, akusho lutho, ngokuba izwi likaNkulunkulu kufanele ligcwaliseke.
- 59 Ngokuba ngumuphi umalusi lapho phakathi kwenu ongathi enezimvu eziningi angazibheki, ukuze izimpisi zingangeni zishwabadele umhlambi wakhe na? Futhi bhokani, uma impisi ingenela umhlambi wakhe angeze yini ayikhiphela ngaphandle na? Yebo, futhi ekugcineni, uma engakwazi uyoyibulala.

And now my beloved brethren, I say unto you, can ye withstand these sayings; yea, can ye lay aside these things, and trample the Holy One under your feet; yea, can ye be puffed up in the pride of your hearts; yea, will ye still persist in the wearing of costly apparel and setting your hearts upon the vain things of the world, upon your riches?

Yea, will ye persist in supposing that ye are better one than another; yea, will ye persist in the persecution of your brethren, who humble themselves and do walk after the holy order of God, wherewith they have been brought into this church, having been sanctified by the Holy Spirit, and they do bring forth works which are meet for repentance—

Yea, and will you persist in turning your backs upon the poor, and the needy, and in withholding your substance from them?

And finally, all ye that will persist in your wickedness, I say unto you that these are they who shall be hewn down and cast into the fire except they speedily repent.

And now I say unto you, all you that are desirous to follow the voice of the good shepherd, come ye out from the wicked, and be ye separate, and touch not their unclean things; and behold, their names shall be blotted out, that the names of the wicked shall not be numbered among the names of the righteous, that the word of God may be fulfilled, which saith: The names of the wicked shall not be mingled with the names of my people;

For the names of the righteous shall be written in the book of life, and unto them will I grant an inheritance at my right hand. And now, my brethren, what have ye to say against this? I say unto you, if ye speak against it, it matters not, for the word of God must be fulfilled.

For what shepherd is there among you having many sheep doth not watch over them, that the wolves enter not and devour his flock? And behold, if a wolf enter his flock doth he not drive him out? Yea, and at the last, if he can, he will destroy him.

- 60 Manje ngithi kini umalusi omuhle uyanibiza; futhi uma ningalilalela izwi lakhe uyoniletha esibayeni sakhe, futhi niyizimvu zakhe; futhi uyaniyala ukuthi ningayivumeli impisi ehahayo ukuthi ingene phakathi kwenu, ukuze ningashabalali.
- 61 Manje mina, Alima, ngiyaniyala ngolimi lwakhe lowo ongiyalile, ukuthi niqaphele ukuthi niwenze lamazwi engiwakhulume kini.
- 62 Ngikhuluma ngendlela yokuniyala nina eningabebandla; futhi kubo labo okungebona abebandla ngikhuluma ngendlela yokubamema, ngithi: Wozani nibhabhadiselwe ekuphendukeni, ukuze nani nibe ngabadla esithelweni somuthi wokuphila.

And now I say unto you that the good shepherd doth call after you; and if you will hearken unto his voice he will bring you into his fold, and ye are his sheep; and he commandeth you that ye suffer no ravenous wolf to enter among you, that ye may not be destroyed.

And now I, Alma, do command you in the language of him who hath commanded me, that ye observe to do the words which I have spoken unto you.

I speak by way of command unto you that belong to the church; and unto those who do not belong to the church I speak by way of invitation, saying: Come and be baptized unto repentance, that ye also may be partakers of the fruit of the tree of life.

Alima 6

- 1 Manje kwenzeka ukuthi emva kokuthi u-Alima esenze isiphetho senkulumo ebantwini bebandla, elalimiswe edolobheni laseZarahemla, wagcoba abaphristi kanye namagosa, ngokubabeka izandla zakhe ngokohlelo lukaNkulunkulu, ukuthi bengamele futhi babheke ibandla.
- 2 Futhi kwenzeka ukuthi lowo owayengeyena owebandla kulabo ababephenduka ezonweni zabo babhabhadiselwa ekuphendukeni, futhi bemukelwa ebandleni.
- 3 Futhi phezu kwalokho kwenzeka ukuthi lowo owayengowasebandleni kulabo abangaphendukanga ebubini babo futhi bazithobe phambi kukaNkulunkulu—ngisho labo ababephakeme ngenxa yokuzibona kwabo—bona kanye babenqatshwa, futhi amagama abo ayesulwa, ukuze amagama abo angabalwa phakathi kwalabo ababelungile.
- 4 Futhi ngalendlela baqala ukumisa uhlelo lwebandla edolobheni lakwaZarahemla.
- 5 Manje ngifuna ukuthi niqonde ukuthi izwi likaNkulunkulu lalitholakala kubo bonke, kangangokuthi babengekho ababenqatshelwe ilungelo lokuhlangana ndawonye ukuthi bezwe izwi likaNkulunkulu.
- 6 Nokho abantwana baNkulunkulu bayalwa ukuthi baqoqane ndawonye njalo, futhi bahlanganyele ekuzileni kanye nasekuthandazeni okukhulu ukuze kuzuze imiphefumulo yalabo ababengamazi uNkulunkulu.
- 7 Manje kwenzeka ukuthi ngesikhathi u-Alima esenze lemithetho wemuka kubo, yebo, wasuka ebandleni elalisedolobheni lakwaZarahemla, wahamba wawelela ngasempumalanga yomfula iSidoni, esigodini sakwaGidiyoni, lapho kwakwaxhiwe idolobha khona, elalibizwa ngedolobha lakwaGidiyoni, elalisesigodini esasibizwa ngokuthi yiGidiyoni, esabizwa ngendoda eyabulawa ngesandla sikaNehori ngenkemba.

Alma 6

And now it came to pass that after Alma had made an end of speaking unto the people of the church, which was established in the city of Zarahemla, he ordained priests and elders, by laying on his hands according to the order of God, to preside and watch over the church.

And it came to pass that whosoever did not belong to the church who repented of their sins were baptized unto repentance, and were received into the church.

And it also came to pass that whosoever did belong to the church that did not repent of their wickedness and humble themselves before God—I mean those who were lifted up in the pride of their hearts—the same were rejected, and their names were blotted out, that their names were not numbered among those of the righteous.

And thus they began to establish the order of the church in the city of Zarahemla.

Now I would that ye should understand that the word of God was liberal unto all, that none were deprived of the privilege of assembling themselves together to hear the word of God.

Nevertheless the children of God were commanded that they should gather themselves together oft, and join in fasting and mighty prayer in behalf of the welfare of the souls of those who knew not God.

And now it came to pass that when Alma had made these regulations he departed from them, yea, from the church which was in the city of Zarahemla, and went over upon the east of the river Sidon, into the valley of Gideon, there having been a city built, which was called the city of Gideon, which was in the valley that was called Gideon, being called after the man who was slain by the hand of Nehor with the sword.

8 Futhi u-Alima wahamba waqala ukumemezela izwi likaNkulunkulu ebandleni elalimiswe esigodini sakwaGidiyoni, njengokwambulwa kobuqiniso bezwi elalikhulunywe ngoyise, futhi nanjengokukamoya wesiphrofetho owawukuye, ngokobu fakazi bukaJesusu Kristu, iNdodana kaNkulunkulu, oyoza ukuzokhulula abantu bakhe ezonweni zabo, kanye nangohlelo olungcwele ayebizwe ngalo. Futhi kubhalwe kanjalo. Amen.

And Alma went and began to declare the word of God unto the church which was established in the valley of Gideon, according to the revelation of the truth of the word which had been spoken by his fathers, and according to the spirit of prophecy which was in him, according to the testimony of Jesus Christ, the Son of God, who should come to redeem his people from their sins, and the holy order by which he was called. And thus it is written. Amen.

Amazwi ka-Alima awakbuluma kubantu eGidiyoni, ngokombhalo wakhe uqobo.

Alima 7

- 1 Bhekani bafowethu abathandekayo, ngokubona ukuthi ngivunyelwe ukuthi ngize kini, ngakho-ke ngizozama ukuthi ngikhulume nani ngolimi lwami; yebo, ngomlomo wami uqobo, ngokubona ukuthi kungokokuqala ukuthi ngikhulume nani ngamazwi omlomo wami, bengibekwe esihlalweni sokwahlulela ngokuphelele, benginomsebenzi omningi kangangokuthi angikwazanga ukuza kini.
- 2 Futhi ngisho nami bengingenakuza namanje ngalesi sikhathi ukuba bekungekhona ukuthi isihlalo sokwahlulelwa sinikezwe omunye, ukuthi abuse esikhundleni sami; futhi iNkosi ngomusa omkhulu ingivumele ukuthi ngize kini.
- 3 Futhi bhekani, ngize nginethemba elikhulu kanye nesifiso esikhulu sokuthi ngithole ukuthi nizithobile phambi kukaNkulunkulu, futhi nokuthi niqhubekile ekuwunxuseni umusa wakhe, ukuthi ngithole ukuthi beningenacala phambi kwakhe, ukuthi ngithole ukuthi beningekho esimweni esibucayi esesabekayo abafowethu abaseZarahemla ababekuso.
- 4 Kepha libusisiwe igama likaNkulunkulu, ngokuba unginikile ukuthi ngazi, yebo, unginikile injabulo enkulu kakhulu yokwazi ukuthi baphinde bamiswa ngendlela yokulunga kwakhe.
- 5 Futhi ngiyethemba, ngokukaMoya kaNkulunkulu okimi, ukuthi ngizothokoza ngani futhi; nokho angifisi ukuthi injabulo yami ngani ize ngendlela yezinkathazo eziningi kangaka kanye nosizi engiluzwile ngabafowethu baseZarahemla, ngokuba bhekani, injabulo yami iza ngabo emva kokudlula ezinkathazweni eziningi kanye nosizi.

The words of Alma which he delivered to the people in Gideon, according to his own record.

Alma 7

Behold my beloved brethren, seeing that I have been permitted to come unto you, therefore I attempt to address you in my language; yea, by my own mouth, seeing that it is the first time that I have spoken unto you by the words of my mouth, I having been wholly confined to the judgment-seat, having had much business that I could not come unto you.

And even I could not have come now at this time were it not that the judgment-seat hath been given to another, to reign in my stead; and the Lord in much mercy hath granted that I should come unto you.

And behold, I have come having great hopes and much desire that I should find that ye had humbled yourselves before God, and that ye had continued in the supplicating of his grace, that I should find that ye were blameless before him, that I should find that ye were not in the awful dilemma that our brethren were in at Zarahemla.

But blessed be the name of God, that he hath given me to know, yea, hath given unto me the exceedingly great joy of knowing that they are established again in the way of his righteousness.

And I trust, according to the Spirit of God which is in me, that I shall also have joy over you; nevertheless I do not desire that my joy over you should come by the cause of so much afflictions and sorrow which I have had for the brethren at Zarahemla, for behold, my joy cometh over them after wading through much affliction and sorrow.

6 Kepha bhekani, ngiyethemba ukuthi nina anikho esimweni sokungakhulwa okukhulu njengoba abafowenu babekuso; ngiyethemba ukuthi nina aniphakeme ngenxa yokuzibona kwenu; yebo, ngiyethemba ukuthi anizibekanga izinhliziyu zenu engcebweni kanye nasezintweni eziyize zezwe; yebo, ngiyethemba ukuthi anikhonzi izithixo, kodwa nikhonza uNkulunkulu weqiniso nophilayo, futhi nibheke phambili ekuthethelelweni kwezono zenu okuzoza, ngokholo olungapheli.

7 Ngokuba bhekani, ngithi kini kukhona izinto eziningi ezizoza; futhi bhekani, kukhona into eyodwa ebaluleke kakhulu kunazo zonke ezinye—ngokuba bhekani, isikhathi asisekude kakhulu sokuthi uMkhululi aphile futhi afike phakathi kwabantu bakhe.

8 Bhekani, angisho ukuthi uyofika phakathi kwethu ngesikhathi sokuphila kwakhe emzimbeni wakhe ofayo; ngokuba bhekani, uMoya akazange asho kimi ukuthi lokhu kuyoba njalo. Manje mayelana nalokhu angazi; kodwa yilokhu engikwaziyo, ukuthi iNkosi uNkulunkulu inamandla okwenza zonke izinto ezingokwezwi layo.

9 Kodwa bhekani, uMoya usho lokhu kimi, uthi: Khala kulaba bantu, uthi—Phendukani, futhi nilungise indlela yeNkosi, futhi nihambe ezindleleni zayo, eziqondile; ngokuba bhekani, umbuso wezulu ususondele, futhi iNdodana kaNkulunkulu iyeza phezu kobuso bomhlaba.

10 Futhi bhekani, iyozalwa ngu Mariya, eJerusalema okuyizwe lokhokho bethu, yena eyintombi, isitsha esiyigugu nesikhethiweyo, eyogubuzelwa futhi ikhulelwe ngamandla kaMoya oyiNgcwele, futhi iveze indodana, yebo, ngisho iNdodana kaNkulunkulu.

11 Futhi iyohamba, izwe ubuhlungu nezinkathazo kanye nezilingo zalo lonke uhlobo; futhi lokhu ukuze kugcwaliseke izwi elithi iyothwala ubuhlungu nezifo zabantu bayo.

12 Futhi iyothwala ukufa, ukuze ixegise izibopho zokufa ezibophe abantu bayo, futhi iyothwala ubuthakathaka babo, ukuze izibilini zayo zigcwaliswe ngesihawu, ngokwasenyameni, ukuze yazi ngokwasenyameni ukuthi ingabasiza kanjani abantu bayo ngokobuthakathaka babo.

But behold, I trust that ye are not in a state of so much unbelief as were your brethren; I trust that ye are not lifted up in the pride of your hearts; yea, I trust that ye have not set your hearts upon riches and the vain things of the world; yea, I trust that you do not worship idols, but that ye do worship the true and the living God, and that ye look forward for the remission of your sins, with an everlasting faith, which is to come.

For behold, I say unto you there be many things to come; and behold, there is one thing which is of more importance than they all—for behold, the time is not far distant that the Redeemer liveth and cometh among his people.

Behold, I do not say that he will come among us at the time of his dwelling in his mortal tabernacle; for behold, the Spirit hath not said unto me that this should be the case. Now as to this thing I do not know; but this much I do know, that the Lord God hath power to do all things which are according to his word.

But behold, the Spirit hath said this much unto me, saying: Cry unto this people, saying—Repent ye, and prepare the way of the Lord, and walk in his paths, which are straight; for behold, the kingdom of heaven is at hand, and the Son of God cometh upon the face of the earth.

And behold, he shall be born of Mary, at Jerusalem which is the land of our forefathers, she being a virgin, a precious and chosen vessel, who shall be overshadowed and conceive by the power of the Holy Ghost, and bring forth a son, yea, even the Son of God.

And he shall go forth, suffering pains and afflictions and temptations of every kind; and this that the word might be fulfilled which saith he will take upon him the pains and the sicknesses of his people.

And he will take upon him death, that he may loose the bands of death which bind his people; and he will take upon him their infirmities, that his bowels may be filled with mercy, according to the flesh, that he may know according to the flesh how to succor his people according to their infirmities.

- 13 Manje uMoya wazi zonke izinto; nokho iNdodana kaNkulunkulu ihlupheka ngokwasenyameni ukuze ithwale izono zabantu bayo, ukuze isule iziphambeko zabo ngokwamandla okubakhulula kwayo; manje bhekani, lokhu ngubufakazi obukimi.
- 14 Manje ngithi kini kufanele niphenduke, futhi nizalwe kabusha; ngokuba uMoya uthi uma ningazalwanga kabusha aninakulidla ifa lombuso wasezulwini; ngakho-ke wozani futhi nibhabhadiselwe ekuphendukeni, ukuze nihlanzwe ezonweni zenu, ukuze nibe nokholo kuyo iMvana kaNkulunkulu, esusa izono zomhlaba, enamandla okusindisa nokuhlanza kukho konke ukungalungi.
- 15 Yebo, ngithi kini wozani futhi ningesabi, nibeke eceleni zonke izono, okulula ukuthi zinihaqe, ezinibophela phansi ekonakalisweni, yebo, wozani nize phambili, nimkhombise uNkulunkulu wenu ukuze nizimisele ukuphenduka ezonweni zenu futhi ningene esivumelwaneni naye sokuthi nigcine imiyalelo yakhe, nifakaze ngalokho kuye ngalolusuku ngokuthi nihambe niye emanzini ombhabhadiso.
- 16 Futhi lowo owenza lokhu, futhi agcine imiyalelo kaNkulunkulu kusukela manje kuya phambili, yena kanye lowo uyokhumbula ukuthi mina ngithi kuye, yebo, uyokhumbula ukuthi ngithe kuye, uyoba nokuphila okuphakade, ngokobufakazi bukaMoya oyiNgcwele, ofakaza kimi.
- 17 Manje bafowethu abathandekayo, ngabe niyakholwa yini yilezi zinto na? Bhekani, ngithi kini, yebo, ngiyazi ukuthi niyazikhulwa; futhi indlela engazi ngayo ukuthi niyazikhulwa kungesibonakaliso sikaMoya esikimi. Manje ngenxa yokuthi ukholo lwenu luqinile mayelana nalokho, yebo, mayelana nezinto engizikhulumile, kukhulu ukujabula kwami.
- 18 Ngokuba njengoba ngishilo kini kusukela ekuqaleni, ukuthi nginesifiso esikhulu ukuthi nina ningabi sesimweni esibucayi njengabafowenu, ngisho kanjalo ngithole ukuthi izifiso zami zigcwalisekile.

Now the Spirit knoweth all things; nevertheless the Son of God suffereth according to the flesh that he might take upon him the sins of his people, that he might blot out their transgressions according to the power of his deliverance; and now behold, this is the testimony which is in me.

Now I say unto you that ye must repent, and be born again; for the Spirit saith if ye are not born again ye cannot inherit the kingdom of heaven; therefore come and be baptized unto repentance, that ye may be washed from your sins, that ye may have faith on the Lamb of God, who taketh away the sins of the world, who is mighty to save and to cleanse from all unrighteousness.

Yea, I say unto you come and fear not, and lay aside every sin, which easily doth beset you, which doth bind you down to destruction, yea, come and go forth, and show unto your God that ye are willing to repent of your sins and enter into a covenant with him to keep his commandments, and witness it unto him this day by going into the waters of baptism.

And whosoever doeth this, and keepeth the commandments of God from thenceforth, the same will remember that I say unto him, yea, he will remember that I have said unto him, he shall have eternal life, according to the testimony of the Holy Spirit, which testifieth in me.

And now my beloved brethren, do you believe these things? Behold, I say unto you, yea, I know that ye believe them; and the way that I know that ye believe them is by the manifestation of the Spirit which is in me. And now because your faith is strong concerning that, yea, concerning the things which I have spoken, great is my joy.

For as I said unto you from the beginning, that I had much desire that ye were not in the state of dilemma like your brethren, even so I have found that my desires have been gratified.

- 19 Ngokuba ngiyabona ukuthi nisezindleleni zokulunga; ngiyabona ukuthi nisendleleni eniholela embusweni kaNkulunkulu; yebo, ngiyabona ukuthi nenza izindlela zakhe ziqonde.
- 20 Ngiyabona ukuthi nazisiwe, ngobufakazi bezwi lakhe, ukuthi akanaku hamba ezindleleni ezimazombe; noma ashintshe kulokho akushilo; noma abe nesithunzi nje sokujika esuka kwesokunene eya kwesokhohlo, noma asuke kulokho okulungile aye kulokho okungalungile; ngakho-ke, indlela yakhe yinye nanini nanini.
- 21 Futhi akahlali emathempelini angengcwele; futhi ukungcola noma yini enye engahlanzekile ayinakwamukeleka embusweni kaNkulunkulu; ngakho-ke ngithi kini isikhathi siyofika, yebo, futhi siyokuba ngosuku lokugcina, lapho lowo ongcolile eyosala ekungcoleni kwakhe.
- 22 Manje bafowethu abathandekayo, ngikhulume lezi zinto kini ukuze nginivusele emsebenzini wenu kuNkulunkulu, ukuze nihambe ngokungabi nacala phambi kwakhe, ukuze nihambe ngokohlelo olungcwele lukaNkulunkulu, enamukelwe ngalo.
- 23 Manje ngifisa ukuthi nizithobe, futhi nizibeke phansi nibe mnene; nifundiseke kalula; nigcwele ukubekezela kanye nokuqina; nizithibe kuzo zonke izinto; nikhuthale ekugcineni imiyalelo kaNkulunkulu ngazo zonke izikhathi; nicela noma ngabe yini eniyidingayo, okukamoya kanye nokwenyama; ngaso sonke isikhathi nibuyisele ukubonga kuNkulunkulu ngazo zonke izinto enizitholayo.
- 24 Futhi qinisekani ukuthi ninokholo, nethemba, kanye nesihe, futhi uma kunjalo niyokhula njalo ekwenzeni imisebenzi emihle.
- 25 Futhi sengathi iNkosi inganibusisa, futhi igcine izingubo zenu zingenabala, ukuze ekugcineni nilethwe ukuthi nihlale phansi no-Abrahama, no-Isaka, noJakobe, kanye nabaphrofethi abangcwele ababekade bekhona kusukela ekudabukeni komhlaba, izingubo zenu zingenabala ngisho njengezingubo zabo zingenabala, embusweni wasezulwini ningabe nisaphumela ngaphandle nanini.

For I perceive that ye are in the paths of righteousness; I perceive that ye are in the path which leads to the kingdom of God; yea, I perceive that ye are making his paths straight.

I perceive that it has been made known unto you, by the testimony of his word, that he cannot walk in crooked paths; neither doth he vary from that which he hath said; neither hath he a shadow of turning from the right to the left, or from that which is right to that which is wrong; therefore, his course is one eternal round.

And he doth not dwell in unholy temples; neither can filthiness or anything which is unclean be received into the kingdom of God; therefore I say unto you the time shall come, yea, and it shall be at the last day, that he who is filthy shall remain in his filthiness.

And now my beloved brethren, I have said these things unto you that I might awaken you to a sense of your duty to God, that ye may walk blameless before him, that ye may walk after the holy order of God, after which ye have been received.

And now I would that ye should be humble, and be submissive and gentle; easy to be entreated; full of patience and long-suffering; being temperate in all things; being diligent in keeping the commandments of God at all times; asking for whatsoever things ye stand in need, both spiritual and temporal; always returning thanks unto God for whatsoever things ye do receive.

And see that ye have faith, hope, and charity, and then ye will always abound in good works.

And may the Lord bless you, and keep your garments spotless, that ye may at last be brought to sit down with Abraham, Isaac, and Jacob, and the holy prophets who have been ever since the world began, having your garments spotless even as their garments are spotless, in the kingdom of heaven to go no more out.

26 Manje bafowethu abathandekayo, ngikhulume lamazwi kini njengokukaMoya ofakaza kimi; futhi umphefumulo wami uyathokoza kakhulu, ngenxa yokukhuthala okukhulu kanye nokulalela enikunike amazwi ami.

27 Manje, sengathi ukuthula kukaNkulunkulu kungaba phezu kwenu, naphezu kwemizi kanye nemihlaba yenu, naphezu kwemihlambi yezimvu nemihlambi yezinkomo zenu, kanye nakho konke eninakho, abafazi benu kanye nabantwana benu, ngokokholo lwenu kanye nangokwemisebenzi emihle, kusukela ngalesi sikhathi kuya phambili naphakade. Ngikhulume kanjena. Amen.

And now my beloved brethren, I have spoken these words unto you according to the Spirit which testifieth in me; and my soul doth exceedingly rejoice, because of the exceeding diligence and heed which ye have given unto my word.

And now, may the peace of God rest upon you, and upon your houses and lands, and upon your flocks and herds, and all that you possess, your women and your children, according to your faith and good works, from this time forth and forever. And thus I have spoken. Amen.

Alima 8

- 1 Manje kwenzeka ukuthi u-Alima wabuya ezweni lakwaGidiyoni, emva kokuthi esefundise abantu bakwaGidiyoni izinto eziningi ezingenakubhalwa, eselumisile uhlelo lwebandla, njengoba ayenzile ngaphambili ezweni lakwaZarahemla, yebo, wabuyela emzini wakhe eZarahemla ukuze ayoziphumuza ekusebenzeni ayekwenzile.
- 2 Futhi waphela kanjalo-ke unyaka wesishiyagalolunye wokubusa kwabehluleli phezu kwabantu baNefi.
- 3 Futhi kwenzeka ekuqaleni konyaka weshumi wokubusa kwabehluleli phezu kwabantu baNefi, ukuthi u-Alima wemuka kuleyondawo futhi wathatha uhambo lwakhe wawelela ezweni lakwaMeleki, entshonalanga yomfula iSidoni, entshonalanga ngasemingceleni yehlane.
- 4 Futhi waqala ukufundisa abantu ezweni lakwaMeleki ngokohlelo olungcwele lukaNkulunkulu, ayebizwe ngalo; futhi waqala ukufundisa abantu kulo lonke izwe lakwaMeleki.
- 5 Futhi kwenzeka ukuthi abantu beza kuye bephuma emingceleni yonke yezwe elalingasehlane. Futhi babhabhadiswa kulo lonke lelozwe;
- 6 Kwathi uma eseqedile umsebenzi wakhe kwaMeleki wahamba kuleyondawo, futhi wahamba uhambo lwezinsuku ezintathu waya ngasenyakatho yezwe lakwaMeleki; futhi wafika edolobheni elalibizwa ngokuthi i-Amoniha.
- 7 Manje kwakuyisiko labantu baNefi ukuthi babize amazwe abo, namadolobha abo, kanye nezigodi zabo, yebo, ngisho zonke izigodi zabo ezincane, ngegama lalowo wokuqala owayewathathile; futhi kwaba kanjalo nangezwe lakwa-Amoniha.
- 8 Futhi kwenzeka ukuthi ngesikhathi u-Alima esefike edolobheni lakwa-Amoniha waqala ukushumayela izwi likaNkulunkulu kubo.
- 9 Manje uSathane wayesezilawule kakhulu izinhliziyi zabantu basedolobheni lakwa-Amoniha; ngakho-ke abafunanga ukuwalalela amazwi ka-Alima.

Alma 8

And now it came to pass that Alma returned from the land of Gideon, after having taught the people of Gideon many things which cannot be written, having established the order of the church, according as he had before done in the land of Zarahemla, yea, he returned to his own house at Zarahemla to rest himself from the labors which he had performed.

And thus ended the ninth year of the reign of the judges over the people of Nephi.

And it came to pass in the commencement of the tenth year of the reign of the judges over the people of Nephi, that Alma departed from thence and took his journey over into the land of Melek, on the west of the river Sidon, on the west by the borders of the wilderness.

And he began to teach the people in the land of Melek according to the holy order of God, by which he had been called; and he began to teach the people throughout all the land of Melek.

And it came to pass that the people came to him throughout all the borders of the land which was by the wilderness side. And they were baptized throughout all the land;

So that when he had finished his work at Melek he departed thence, and traveled three days' journey on the north of the land of Melek; and he came to a city which was called Ammonihah.

Now it was the custom of the people of Nephi to call their lands, and their cities, and their villages, yea, even all their small villages, after the name of him who first possessed them; and thus it was with the land of Ammonihah.

And it came to pass that when Alma had come to the city of Ammonihah he began to preach the word of God unto them.

Now Satan had gotten great hold upon the hearts of the people of the city of Ammonihah; therefore they would not hearken unto the words of Alma.

- 10 Nokho u-Alima wasebenza kakhulu emoyeni, ezabalaza noNkulunkulu ngokuthandaza okukhulu, ukuze athele uMoya wakhe phezu kwabantu ababe kulelidolobha; ukuze futhi amvumele ukuthi ababhabhadisele ekuphendukeni.
- 11 Nokho, baziqinisa izinhliziyi zabo, bethi kuye: Bheka, siyazi ukuthi ungu-Alima; futhi siyazi ukuthi ungumphristi omkhulu phezu kwebandla owalisungula ezingxenyeni eziningi zezwe, ngokwesiko lakho; futhi asibona abebandla lakho, futhi asikholelwa emasikweni awubuwula njengalawa.
- 12 Futhi siyazi ukuthi ngenxa yokuthi asibona abebandla lakho siyazi ukuthi awunamandla phezu kwethu; futhi unike isihlalo sokwahlulela ku Nefiha; ngakho-ke awuyena umahluleli omkhulu phezu kwethu.
- 13 Manje ngesikhathi abantu sebekushilo lokhu, futhi bamelana namazwi akhe onke, futhi bamthuka, bamphimisela ngamate, futhi benza ukuthi axoshwe edolobheni labo, wemuka kuleyondawo wathatha uhambo lwakhe waya ngasedolobheni elalibizwa ngokuthi yi-Aroni.
- 14 Futhi kwenzeka ukuthi ngesikhathi esahamba eya kuleyondawo, umzimba wakhe ushone phansi ngenxa yosizi, ehlupheke kakhulu futhi edabukile emphefumulweni, ngenxa yobubi babantu ababesedolobheni lwakwa-Amoniha, kwenzeka ngesikhathi u-Alima umzimba wakhe usashone phansi ngenxa yosizi, bheka ingelosi yenkosi yavela kuye, ithi:
- 15 Ubusisiwe, Alima; ngakho-ke, phakamisa ikhanda lakho futhi uthokoze, ngokuba unesizathu esikhulu sokuthi uthokoze; ngokuba uthembekile ekugcineni imiyalelo kaNkulunkulu kusukela ngesikhathi uthola umyalezo wakho wokuqala kuye. Bheka, nginguye lowo owawuletha kuwe.
- 16 Futhi bheka, ngithunywe ukuthi ngizokuyala ukuthi uphindele edolobheni lakwa-Amoniha, futhi uphinde ushumayele kubantu balelo dolobha; yebo, shumayela kubo. Yebo, yithi kubo, ngaphandle kokuthi baphenduke iNkosi uNkulunkulu izobabhubhisa.

Nevertheless Alma labored much in the spirit, wrestling with God in mighty prayer, that he would pour out his Spirit upon the people who were in the city; that he would also grant that he might baptize them unto repentance.

Nevertheless, they hardened their hearts, saying unto him: Behold, we know that thou art Alma; and we know that thou art high priest over the church which thou hast established in many parts of the land, according to your tradition; and we are not of thy church, and we do not believe in such foolish traditions.

And now we know that because we are not of thy church we know that thou hast no power over us; and thou hast delivered up the judgment-seat unto Nephiah; therefore thou art not the chief judge over us.

Now when the people had said this, and withstood all his words, and reviled him, and spit upon him, and caused that he should be cast out of their city, he departed thence and took his journey towards the city which was called Aaron.

And it came to pass that while he was journeying thither, being weighed down with sorrow, wading through much tribulation and anguish of soul, because of the wickedness of the people who were in the city of Ammonihah, it came to pass while Alma was thus weighed down with sorrow, behold an angel of the Lord appeared unto him, saying:

Blessed art thou, Alma; therefore, lift up thy head and rejoice, for thou hast great cause to rejoice; for thou hast been faithful in keeping the commandments of God from the time which thou receivedst thy first message from him. Behold, I am he that delivered it unto you.

And behold, I am sent to command thee that thou return to the city of Ammonihah, and preach again unto the people of the city; yea, preach unto them. Yea, say unto them, except they repent the Lord God will destroy them.

- 17 Ngokuba bheka, benza imizamo ngalesi sikhathi ukuze baqede inkululeko yabantu bakho, (ngokuba isho kanje iNkosi) lokho okuphambene nemithetho, kanye nezahlulelo, kanye nemiyalo eyinike abantu bayo.
- 18 Manje kwenzeka ukuthi emva kokuthi u-Alima esewutholile umyalezo wakhe ovela engelosini yeNkosi wabuyela ngokushesha ezweni lakwa-Amoniha. Futhi wangena edolobheni ngenye indlela, yebo, ngendlela eyayingase ningizimu yedolobha lakwa-Amoniha.
- 19 Futhi ngesikhathi engena edolobheni wayeselambile, futhi wathi endodeni: Ungayipha yini inceku ethobekileyo kaNkulunkulu okuthile ukuba idle na?
- 20 Futhi lendoda yathi kuye: NgingumNefi, futhi ngiyazi ukuthi ungumphrofethi ongcwele kaNkulunkulu, ngokuba uyindoda ingelosi engitshale ngayo embonweni yathi: Uyomamukela. Ngakho-ke, hamba nami siye endlini yami futhi ngizokunika inxenye yokudla kwami; futhi ngiyazi ukuthi uzoba yisibusiso kimi kanye nasemzini wami.
- 21 Futhi kwenzeka ukuthi lendoda yamemukela emzini wayo; futhi lendoda yayibizwa ngokuthi ngu-Amuleki; yaletha isinkwa kanye nenyama yakubeka phambi kuka-Alima.
- 22 Futhi kwenzeka ukuthi u-Alima wadla isinkwa wasutha; futhi wambusisa u-Amuleki kanye nomuzi wakhe, futhi wabonga kuNkulunkulu.
- 23 Futhi emva kokuthi esedlile futhi esesuthi wathi ku-Amuleki: Ngingu-Alima, ngingumphristi omkhulu ebandleni likaNkulunkulu kulo lonke izwe.
- 24 Futhi bheka, ngibizwe ukuthi ngishumaye izwi likaNkulunkulu phakathi kwabo bonke laba bantu, ngokomoya wokwambulelwa kanye nokuphrofetha; futhi bengikulelizwe futhi abangamukelanga, kepha bangikhiphele ngaphandle futhi besengizolifulathela lelizwe ingunaphakade.
- 25 Kepha bheka, ngiyalwe ukuthi kufanele ngiphinde ngibuyele futhi ngiphrofethe kulaba bantu, yebo, futhi ngifakaze ngokumelene nabo mayelana nobubi babo.

For behold, they do study at this time that they may destroy the liberty of thy people, (for thus saith the Lord) which is contrary to the statutes, and judgments, and commandments which he has given unto his people.

Now it came to pass that after Alma had received his message from the angel of the Lord he returned speedily to the land of Ammonihah. And he entered the city by another way, yea, by the way which is on the south of the city of Ammonihah.

And as he entered the city he was an hungered, and he said to a man: Will ye give to an humble servant of God something to eat?

And the man said unto him: I am a Nephite, and I know that thou art a holy prophet of God, for thou art the man whom an angel said in a vision: Thou shalt receive. Therefore, go with me into my house and I will impart unto thee of my food; and I know that thou wilt be a blessing unto me and my house.

And it came to pass that the man received him into his house; and the man was called Amulek; and he brought forth bread and meat and set before Alma.

And it came to pass that Alma ate bread and was filled; and he blessed Amulek and his house, and he gave thanks unto God.

And after he had eaten and was filled he said unto Amulek: I am Alma, and am the high priest over the church of God throughout the land.

And behold, I have been called to preach the word of God among all this people, according to the spirit of revelation and prophecy; and I was in this land and they would not receive me, but they cast me out and I was about to set my back towards this land forever.

But behold, I have been commanded that I should turn again and prophesy unto this people, yea, and to testify against them concerning their iniquities.

26 Manje, Amuleki, ngenxa yokuthi unghiphile ukudla futhi wangingenisa, ubusisiwe; ngokuba bengingolambileyo, ngokuba ngizilile izinsuku eziningi.

27 Futhi u-Alima wahlala izinsuku eziningi no-Amuleki ngaphambi kokuthi aqale ukushumayela kubantu.

28 Futhi kwenzeka ukuthi abantu nempela bakhula kakhulu ebubini babo.

29 Futhi izwi lafika ku-Alima, lithi: Hamba; futhi uphinde usho encekwini yami u-Amuleki, ukuthi makahambe aphrofethe kulaba bantu, athi—Phendukani, ngokuba isho kanjalo iNkosi, ngaphandle kokuthi niphenduke ngizobavakashela laba bantu entukuthelweni yami; yebo, futhi angiyikulususa ulaka lwami kubo.

30 Futhi u-Alima wahamba, futhi ngokunjalo no-Amuleki, phakathi kwabantu, ukuyomemezela amazwi kaNkulunkulu kubo; futhi bagcwaliswa ngoMoya oyiNgcwele.

31 Futhi baba namandla abanikwa wona, kangangokuthi babengeke bavalelwe emgodini oyitilongo; noma kube lula ukuthi umuntu ababulale; nokho abazange bawasebenzise amandla abo kwaze kwaba ngesikhathi beboshwa ngezibopho bephonswa etilongweni. Manje, lokhu kwenziwa ukuze iNkosi ikhombise amandla ayo kubo.

32 Futhi kwenzeka ukuthi bahamba baqala ukushumayela kanye nokuphrofetha kubantu, ngokukamoya kanye namandla iNkosi eyayibanike wona.

And now, Amulek, because thou hast fed me and taken me in, thou art blessed; for I was an hungered, for I had fasted many days.

And Alma tarried many days with Amulek before he began to preach unto the people.

And it came to pass that the people did wax more gross in their iniquities.

And the word came to Alma, saying: Go; and also say unto my servant Amulek, go forth and prophesy unto this people, saying—Repent ye, for thus saith the Lord, except ye repent I will visit this people in mine anger; yea, and I will not turn my fierce anger away.

And Alma went forth, and also Amulek, among the people, to declare the words of God unto them; and they were filled with the Holy Ghost.

And they had power given unto them, insomuch that they could not be confined in dungeons; neither was it possible that any man could slay them; nevertheless they did not exercise their power until they were bound in bands and cast into prison. Now, this was done that the Lord might show forth his power in them.

And it came to pass that they went forth and began to preach and to prophesy unto the people, according to the spirit and power which the Lord had given them.

Amazwi ka-Alima, futhi ngokunjalo namazwi ka-Amuleki, amenyenzelwa ebantwini ababesezweni lakwa-Amoniba. Futhi phezu kwalokho baphonswa etilongweni, futhi bakhishwa ngamandla amangalisayo kaNkulunkulu ayekubo, ngokombhala ka-Alima.

Alima 9

- 1 Futhi phezu kwalokho, mina, Alima, ngiyalwe nguNkulunkulu ukuthi ngithathe u-Amuleki sihambe siphinde sishumayele kulaba bantu, noma kubantu ababesedolobheni lakwa-Amoniha, kwenzeka ngesikhathi ngiqala ukushumayela kubo, baqala ukuphikisana nami, bethi:
- 2 Ungubani wena? Ucabanga ukuthi thina sizokholwa wubufakazi bomuntu oyedwa, noma ngabe angashumayela kithi ukuthi umhlaba uzodlula na?
- 3 Manje babengawaqondi lamazwi ababewakhuluma; ngokuba babengazi ukuthi umhlaba uyodlula.
- 4 Futhi baphinda bathi: Asinakuwakholwa amazwi akho uma ungaphrofetha ukuthi lelidolobha elikhulu lingabhujiswa ngelanga elilodwa.
- 5 Manje babengazi ukuthi uNkulunkulu wayengayenza imisebenzi emangalisayo enjalo, ngokuba babengabantu abanezinhliziyo ezilukhuni kanye nabangontamolukhuni.
- 6 Futhi bathi: Ngubani uNkulunkulu, ongasathumeli gunya ngaphandle komuntu oyedwa nje phakathi kwalaba bantu, ukuthi amemezele kubo iqiniso lezinto ezinkulu kangaka futhi ezimangalisayo na?
- 7 Futhi beza phambili ukuze bangibambe; kodwa bheka, abazange. Futhi ngema ngesibindi ukuthi ngimemezele kubo, yebo, nempela ngafakaza ngesibindi kubo, ngithi:
- 8 Bhekani, O nina sizukulwane esibi nesonakeleyo, senikhohlwe kanjani ngamasiko oyihlo; yebo, senikhohlwe masinyane kanjani yimiyalelo kaNkulunkulu na?
- 9 Anikhumbuli yini ukuthi ubaba, uLehi, wakhishwa eJerusalema ngesandla sikaNkulunkulu na? Anikhumbuli yini ukuthi bonke babeholwa nguye ehlane na?

The words of Alma, and also the words of Amulek, which were declared unto the people who were in the land of Ammonihah. And also they are cast into prison, and delivered by the miraculous power of God which was in them, according to the record of Alma.

Alma 9

And again, I, Alma, having been commanded of God that I should take Amulek and go forth and preach again unto this people, or the people who were in the city of Ammonihah, it came to pass as I began to preach unto them, they began to contend with me, saying:

Who art thou? Suppose ye that we shall believe the testimony of one man, although he should preach unto us that the earth should pass away?

Now they understood not the words which they spake; for they knew not that the earth should pass away.

And they said also: We will not believe thy words if thou shouldst prophesy that this great city should be destroyed in one day.

Now they knew not that God could do such marvelous works, for they were a hard-hearted and a stiffnecked people.

And they said: Who is God, that sendeth no more authority than one man among this people, to declare unto them the truth of such great and marvelous things?

And they stood forth to lay their hands on me; but behold, they did not. And I stood with boldness to declare unto them, yea, I did boldly testify unto them, saying:

Behold, O ye wicked and perverse generation, how have ye forgotten the tradition of your fathers; yea, how soon ye have forgotten the commandments of God.

Do ye not remember that our father, Lehi, was brought out of Jerusalem by the hand of God? Do ye not remember that they were all led by him through the wilderness?

- 10 Futhi ngabe senikhohlwe masinyane kangaka ukuthi ziningi kangakanani izikhathi abakhulula ngazo obaba bethu ezandleni zezitha zabo, futhi wabalondoloza ekubulaweni, ngisho nangezandla zabafowabo uqobo na?
- 11 Yebo, futhi ukuba kwakungekhona ukuthi kwakungenxa yamandla akhe angenakulinganiswa, kanye nomusa wakhe, kanye nokusibekezelela kwakhe okukhulu, ngabe sesasuswa ngokungenakuvimbeleka ebusweni bomhlaba kudala ngaphambi kwalesi sikhathi, futhi mhlawumbe ngabe sesayiswa esimweni sokuhlupheka kanye nosizi olungapheliyo.
- 12 Bhekani, manje ngithi kini uyaniyala ukuthi niphenduke; futhi ngaphandle kokuthi niphenduke, aninandlela yokuthi nidle ifa lombuso kaNkulunkulu. Kodwa bhekani, lokhu akusikho konke—uniyala ukuthi niphenduke, noma uzonibhubhisa nya ebusweni bomhlaba; yebo, uzonivakashela entukuthelweni yakhe, futhi nasentukuthelweni yakhe eyesabekayo akayikuphindela emuva.
- 13 Bhekani, aniwakhumbuli yini amazwi awakhuluma kuLehi, ethi: Kangangoba niyoyigcina imiyalelo yami, niyophumelela ezweni? Kanti futhi kuyashiwo ukuthi: Kangangoba ningezukuyigcina imiyalelo yami niyohlukaniswa neNkosi.
- 14 Manje ngifuna ukuthi nikhumbule, ukuthi kangangoba amaLamani engayigcinanga imiyalelo kaNkulunkulu, ahlukani siwe neNkosi. Manje siyabona ukuthi izwi leNkosi liqinisekisiwe kulento, futhi amaLamani ahlukani siwe nayo, kusukela ekuqaleni kokuphambuka kwawo kulelizwe.
- 15 Nokho ngithi kini, kuyobekezeleka kakhulu okwawo ngosuku lokwahlulelwa kunalokho kwenu, uma nihlala ezonweni zenu, yebo, futhi ngisho kuyobekezeleleka kakhulu okwawo kulempilo kunalokho kwenu, ngaphandle kokuthi niphenduke.

And have ye forgotten so soon how many times he delivered our fathers out of the hands of their enemies, and preserved them from being destroyed, even by the hands of their own brethren?

Yea, and if it had not been for his matchless power, and his mercy, and his long-suffering towards us, we should unavoidably have been cut off from the face of the earth long before this period of time, and perhaps been consigned to a state of endless misery and woe.

Behold, now I say unto you that he commandeth you to repent; and except ye repent, ye can in nowise inherit the kingdom of God. But behold, this is not all—he has commanded you to repent, or he will utterly destroy you from off the face of the earth; yea, he will visit you in his anger, and in his fierce anger he will not turn away.

Behold, do ye not remember the words which he spake unto Lehi, saying that: Inasmuch as ye shall keep my commandments, ye shall prosper in the land? And again it is said that: Inasmuch as ye will not keep my commandments ye shall be cut off from the presence of the Lord.

Now I would that ye should remember, that inasmuch as the Lamanites have not kept the commandments of God, they have been cut off from the presence of the Lord. Now we see that the word of the Lord has been verified in this thing, and the Lamanites have been cut off from his presence, from the beginning of their transgressions in the land.

Nevertheless I say unto you, that it shall be more tolerable for them in the day of judgment than for you, if ye remain in your sins, yea, and even more tolerable for them in this life than for you, except ye repent.

- 16 Ngokuba kukhona izethembiso eziningi ezenzelwe amaLamani; ngokuba kungenxa yamasiko oyise enza ukuthi ahlale kuleso simo sawo sokungazi; ngakho-ke iNkosi izokuba nomusa kuwo futhi yelule ukuphila kwawo ezweni.
- 17 Futhi ngesinye isikhathi esithize ayoholelwa ekutheni akholwe ezwini layo, futhi azi ngokungalungi kwamasiko oyise; futhi abaningi bawo bazosindiswa, ngokuba iNkosi izokuba nomusa kubo bonke labo ababiza igama layo.
- 18 Kepha bhekani, ngithi kini uma niqhubeka ebubini benu izinsuku zenu ngeke ziselulwa ezweni, ngokuba amaLamani ayothunyelwa kini; futhi uma ningaphenduki ayofika ngesikhathi eningasazi, futhi niyovakashelwa ngokubhujiswa okupheleleyo; futhi kuyoba ngokwe ntukuthelo eyesabekayo yeNkosi.
- 19 Ngokuba ayiyikunivumela ukuthi nihlale ebubini benu, ukuthi nibhubhise abantu bayo. Ngithi kini, Cha; okungenani iyovumela amaLamani ukuthi abhubhise bonke abantu bayo ababizwa ngabantu baNefi, uma kungenzeka ukuthi bawele ezonweni kanye naseziphambekweni, emva kokuthi sebebe nokukhanya okukhulu kangaka kanye nolwazi olukhulu kangaka olunikwe kubo yiNkosi uNkulunkulu wabo;
- 20 Yebo, emva kokuthi kade bengabantu abebethandwa kakhulu kangaka yiNkosi; yebo, emva kokuthi kade bethandwe ngaphezu kwazo zonke ezinye izizwe, imindeni, izilimi, noma abantu; emva kokuthi kade sebaziswe zonke izinto, ngokwezifiso zabo, nokholo lwabo, kanye nemithandazo, lokho okwakukhona, nalokho okukhona, kanye nalokho okusazoza;
- 21 Bevakashelwe nguMoya kaNkulunkulu; bekhulumile nezingelosi, futhi kukhulunyiwe nabo ngezwi leNkosi; futhi benomoya wokuphrofetha, kanye nomoya wokwambulelwa, futhi ngokunjalo nezipho eziningi, isipho sokukhuluma ngezilimi, kanye nesipho sokushumayela, nesipho sikaMoya oyiNgcwele, nesipho sokuhumusha;

For there are many promises which are extended to the Lamanites; for it is because of the traditions of their fathers that caused them to remain in their state of ignorance; therefore the Lord will be merciful unto them and prolong their existence in the land.

And at some period of time they will be brought to believe in his word, and to know of the incorrectness of the traditions of their fathers; and many of them will be saved, for the Lord will be merciful unto all who call on his name.

But behold, I say unto you that if ye persist in your wickedness that your days shall not be prolonged in the land, for the Lamanites shall be sent upon you; and if ye repent not they shall come in a time when you know not, and ye shall be visited with utter destruction; and it shall be according to the fierce anger of the Lord.

For he will not suffer you that ye shall live in your iniquities, to destroy his people. I say unto you, Nay; he would rather suffer that the Lamanites might destroy all his people who are called the people of Nephi, if it were possible that they could fall into sins and transgressions, after having had so much light and so much knowledge given unto them of the Lord their God;

Yea, after having been such a highly favored people of the Lord; yea, after having been favored above every other nation, kindred, tongue, or people; after having had all things made known unto them, according to their desires, and their faith, and prayers, of that which has been, and which is, and which is to come;

Having been visited by the Spirit of God; having conversed with angels, and having been spoken unto by the voice of the Lord; and having the spirit of prophecy, and the spirit of revelation, and also many gifts, the gift of speaking with tongues, and the gift of preaching, and the gift of the Holy Ghost, and the gift of translation;

22 Yebo, futhi emva kokuthi bekhululwe nguNkulunkulu baphuma ezweni laseJerusalema, ngesandla seNkosi; besindiswe endlaleni, nasekuguleni, kanye nakuzo zonke izinhlobo zezifo ezinhlobonhlobo; futhi bekhulile baqina ekulweni, ukuze bangabhujiswa; bekhishwe ebugqilini izikhathi ngezikhathi, futhi begciniwe futhi balondolozwa kuze kube manje; futhi baphumelelisiwe baze banotha ngazo zonke izinhlobo zezinto—

23 Manje bhekani ngithi kini, uma laba bantu, asebethole izibusiso eziningi kangaka esandleni seNkosi, bengaphambuka baphambane nokukhanya kanye nolwazi abanalo, ngithi kini uma lokhu kungaba njalo, uma bengawela esiphambekweni, kuyobekezeleleka kakhulu okwamaLamani kunokwabo.

24 Ngokuba bhekani, izethembiso zeNkosi zenzelwe amaLamani, kepha hhayi nina uma niphambuka; ngokuba iNkosi ayithembisanga yini ngokusobala futhi yamemezela ngokuqina, ukuthi uma nizohlubuka kuyo niyobhujiswa nya ebusweni bomhlaba na?

25 Manje ngalesi sizathu, ukuze ningabhujiswa, iNkosi ithumele ingelosi yayo ukuthi ivakashele abaningi babantu bayo, imemezele kubo ukuthi kufanele bahambe futhi bakhale kakhulu kulaba bantu, bathi: Phendukani, ngokuba umbuso wezulu ususondele.

26 Futhi akusezinsuku eziningi kusukela manje ukuthi iNdodana kaNkulunkulu ifike ngenkazimulo yayo; futhi inkazimulo yayo iyoba yinkazimulo yo Zelwe Yedwa kaBaba, ogcwele isihe, ukulunga, kanye neqiniso, ogcwele ukubekezela, umusa kanye nokuba nehliziyi ende, osheshayo ukuzwa ukukhala kwabantu bakhe futhi aphendule imithandazo yabo.

27 Futhi bhekani, uza ukuzokhulula labo abazo bhabhadiselwa ekuphendukeni, ngokukholwa egameni lakhe.

Yea, and after having been delivered of God out of the land of Jerusalem, by the hand of the Lord; having been saved from famine, and from sickness, and all manner of diseases of every kind; and they having waxed strong in battle, that they might not be destroyed; having been brought out of bondage time after time, and having been kept and preserved until now; and they have been prospered until they are rich in all manner of things—

And now behold I say unto you, that if this people, who have received so many blessings from the hand of the Lord, should transgress contrary to the light and knowledge which they do have, I say unto you that if this be the case, that if they should fall into transgression, it would be far more tolerable for the Lamanites than for them.

For behold, the promises of the Lord are extended to the Lamanites, but they are not unto you if ye transgress; for has not the Lord expressly promised and firmly decreed, that if ye will rebel against him that ye shall utterly be destroyed from off the face of the earth?

And now for this cause, that ye may not be destroyed, the Lord has sent his angel to visit many of his people, declaring unto them that they must go forth and cry mightily unto this people, saying: Repent ye, for the kingdom of heaven is nigh at hand;

And not many days hence the Son of God shall come in his glory; and his glory shall be the glory of the Only Begotten of the Father, full of grace, equity, and truth, full of patience, mercy, and long-suffering, quick to hear the cries of his people and to answer their prayers.

And behold, he cometh to redeem those who will be baptized unto repentance, through faith on his name.

- 28 Ngakho-ke, lungisani indlela yeNkosi, ngokuba isikhathi sesisondele ukuthi bonke abantu bavune umvuzo wemi sebenzi yabo, ngalokho abebekade beyikho—uma kade belungile bayovuna ukusindiswa kwemiphefumulo yabo, ngokwamandla kanye nangokukhululwa nguJesusu Kristu; futhi uma kade bebabi bayovuna usizi nokuhlupheka okungapheliyo emiphefumulweni yabo, ngokwamandla kanye nangokuthunjwa ngudeveli.
- 29 Manje bhekani, leli yizwi lengelosi, elikhala kubantu.
- 30 Manje, bafowethu abathandekayo, ngokuba ningabafowethu, futhi nimele ukuthi nithandwe, futhi nimele ukuthi nilethe imisebenzi edingekayo yokuphenduka, ngokubona ukuthi izinhliziyu zenu zenziwe zaba lukhuni kakhulu ngokumelene nezwi likaNkulunkulu, futhi ngokubona ukuthi ningabantu abalahlekile nabawile.
- 31 Manje kwenzeka ukuthi ngesikhathi mina, Alima, sengiwakhulumile lamazwi, bheka, abantu bangithukuthelela ngenxa yokuthi ngathi kubo babengabantu abanezinhliziyu ezilukhuni kanye nabango ntamolukhuni.
- 32 Futhi phezu kwalokho ngenxa yokuthi ngathi kubo babengabantu abalahlekile futhi abawile bangithukuthelela, futhi bafuna ukungibamba, ukuze bangiphonse etilongweni.
- 33 Kepha kwenzeka ukuthi iNkosi nempela ayibavumelanga ukuthi bangithathe ngaleso sikhathi bangiphonse etilongweni.
- 34 Futhi kwenzeka ukuthi u-Amuleki wahamba wema phambili, waqala ukushumayela kubo futhi. Manje amazwi ka-Amuleki awabhaliwe wonke, nokho inxenye yamazwi akhe abhaliwe kulencwadi.

Therefore, prepare ye the way of the Lord, for the time is at hand that all men shall reap a reward of their works, according to that which they have been—if they have been righteous they shall reap the salvation of their souls, according to the power and deliverance of Jesus Christ; and if they have been evil they shall reap the damnation of their souls, according to the power and captivity of the devil.

Now behold, this is the voice of the angel, crying unto the people.

And now, my beloved brethren, for ye are my brethren, and ye ought to be beloved, and ye ought to bring forth works which are meet for repentance, seeing that your hearts have been grossly hardened against the word of God, and seeing that ye are a lost and a fallen people.

Now it came to pass that when I, Alma, had spoken these words, behold, the people were wroth with me because I said unto them that they were a hard-hearted and a stiffnecked people.

And also because I said unto them that they were a lost and a fallen people they were angry with me, and sought to lay their hands upon me, that they might cast me into prison.

But it came to pass that the Lord did not suffer them that they should take me at that time and cast me into prison.

And it came to pass that Amulek went and stood forth, and began to preach unto them also. And now the words of Amulek are not all written, nevertheless a part of his words are written in this book.

Alima 10

- 1 Manje lawa ngamazwi u-Amuleki awashumayela kubantu ababesezweni lakwa Amoniha, ethi:
- 2 Ngingu-Amuleki; ngiyindodana kaGidona, owayeyindodana ka-Ishmayeli, owayengowozalo luka-Aminadi; futhi kwakunguye kanye lowo Aminadi owahumusha umbhalo owawusodongweni lwethempeli, owawubhalwe ngomunwe kaNkulunkulu.
- 3 Futhi u-Aminadi wayengowozalo lukaNefi, owayeyindodana kaLehi, owaphuma ezweni laseJerusalema, owayengowozalo luka Manase, owayeyindodana ka Josefa owathengiswa eGibithe ngesandla sabafowabo.
- 4 Futhi bhekani, phezu kwalokho ngingumuntu ongenalo idumela elincane phakathi kwabo bonke labo abangaziyo; yebo, futhi bhekani, nginezihlobo eziningi kanye nabangani, futhi phezu kwalokho ngizuze ingcebo eningi ngenxa yokusebenza kwami.
- 5 Nokho, emva kwakho konke lokhu, bengingazange ngazi kakhulu ngezindlela zeNkosi, nangezimfihlakalo zayo kanye nangamandla ayo amangalisayo. Ngithe bengingakaze ngazi kakhulu ngalezi zinto; kodwa bhekani, ngiyaphazama, ngokuba ngizibonile eziningi izimfihlakalo zayo kanye namandla ayo amangalisayo; yebo, ngisho nasekulondolozweni kwezimpilo zalaba bantu.
- 6 Nokho, nempela ngayenza lukhuni inhliziyo yami, ngokuba ngabizwa izikhathi eziningi futhi angilalelanga; ngakho-ke ngangazi mayelana nalezi zinto, kepha ngangingathandi ukwazi; ngakho-ke ngaqhubeka ngivukela uNkulunkulu, ebubini benhliziyo yami, ngisho kwaze kwaba wusuku lwesine lwalenyanga yesikhombisa, esonyakeni weshumi wokubusa kwabehluleli.

Alma 10

Now these are the words which Amulek preached unto the people who were in the land of Ammonihah, saying:

I am Amulek; I am the son of Giddonah, who was the son of Ishmael, who was a descendant of Aminadi; and it was that same Aminadi who interpreted the writing which was upon the wall of the temple, which was written by the finger of God.

And Aminadi was a descendant of Nephi, who was the son of Lehi, who came out of the land of Jerusalem, who was a descendant of Manasseh, who was the son of Joseph who was sold into Egypt by the hands of his brethren.

And behold, I am also a man of no small reputation among all those who know me; yea, and behold, I have many kindreds and friends, and I have also acquired much riches by the hand of my industry.

Nevertheless, after all this, I never have known much of the ways of the Lord, and his mysteries and marvelous power. I said I never had known much of these things; but behold, I mistake, for I have seen much of his mysteries and his marvelous power; yea, even in the preservation of the lives of this people.

Nevertheless, I did harden my heart, for I was called many times and I would not hear; therefore I knew concerning these things, yet I would not know; therefore I went on rebelling against God, in the wickedness of my heart, even until the fourth day of this seventh month, which is in the tenth year of the reign of the judges.

- 7 Ngesikhathi ngihamba ngiyobona isihlobo esiseduze kakhulu, bheka ingelosi yeNkosi yavela kimi yathi: Amuleki, buyela emzini wakho, ngokuba uzokupha umphrofethi weNkosi ukudla; yebo, indoda engcwele, engumuntu okhethiweyo kaNkulunkulu; ngokuba izilile izinsuku eziningi ngenxa yezono zalaba bantu, futhi ilambile, uzoyamukela emzini wakho futhi uyiphe ukudla, futhi iyokubusisa wena kanye nomuzi wakho; futhi isibusiso seNkosi siyohlala phezu kwakho kanye nomuzi wakho.
- 8 Futhi kwenzeka ukuthi ngalilalela izwi lengelosi, ngabuyela emzini wami. Ngesikhathi ngihamba ngisondele lapho ngayithola leyondoda ingelosi eyayithe kimi: Uzoyamukela endlini yakho—futhi bhekani kwakuyiyo kanye lendoda ebikade ikhuluma kini mayelana nezinto zikaNkulunkulu.
- 9 Futhi ingelosi yathi kimi ingumuntu ongcwele; ngalokho-ke ngiyazi ukuthi ingumuntu ongcwele ngenxa yokuthi kwashiwo yingelosi kaNkulunkulu.
- 10 Futhi phezu kwalokho, ngiyazi ukuthi izinto efakaze ngazo ziyiqiniso; ngokuba bhekani ngithi kini, njengoba iNkosi iphila, ngisho kanjalo ithumele ingelosi yayo ukuthi izambule lezi zinto kimi; futhi lokhu ikwenze ngesikhathi lo-Alima ehlezi emzini wami.
- 11 Ngokuba bhekani, uwubusisile umuzi wami, ungibusisile nami, kanye nabesifazane abasemzini wami, kanye nabantwana bami, kanye nobaba kanye nomndeni wami; yebo, ngisho nazo zonke izihlobo zami uzibusisile, futhi isibusiso seNkosi sihlale phezu kwethu, njengokwamazwi awakhulumile.
- 12 Manje, ngesikhathi u-Amuleki esewakhulumile lamazwi abantu baqala ukumangala, bebona ukuthi kwakukhona ofakazi abangaphezulu koyedwa abebefakaza ngezinto ababebekwa icala ngazo, futhi ngokunjalo nangezinto ezazizokwenzeka, njengokukamoya wesiphrofetho owawukubo.

As I was journeying to see a very near kindred, behold an angel of the Lord appeared unto me and said: Amulek, return to thine own house, for thou shalt feed a prophet of the Lord; yea, a holy man, who is a chosen man of God; for he has fasted many days because of the sins of this people, and he is an hungered, and thou shalt receive him into thy house and feed him, and he shall bless thee and thy house; and the blessing of the Lord shall rest upon thee and thy house.

And it came to pass that I obeyed the voice of the angel, and returned towards my house. And as I was going thither I found the man whom the angel said unto me: Thou shalt receive into thy house—and behold it was this same man who has been speaking unto you concerning the things of God.

And the angel said unto me he is a holy man; wherefore I know he is a holy man because it was said by an angel of God.

And again, I know that the things whereof he hath testified are true; for behold I say unto you, that as the Lord liveth, even so has he sent his angel to make these things manifest unto me; and this he has done while this Alma hath dwelt at my house.

For behold, he hath blessed mine house, he hath blessed me, and my women, and my children, and my father and my kinsfolk; yea, even all my kindred hath he blessed, and the blessing of the Lord hath rested upon us according to the words which he spake.

And now, when Amulek had spoken these words the people began to be astonished, seeing there was more than one witness who testified of the things whereof they were accused, and also of the things which were to come, according to the spirit of prophecy which was in them.

- 13 Nokho, kwakukhona abanye phakathi kwabo ababecabanga ukubabuza, ukuze ngamasu obuqili babo bababambe emazwini abo, ukuze bathole ubufakazi obuphikisana nabo, ukuze babayise kubahluleli babo ukuze behlulelwe ngokomthetho, futhi nokuthi babulawe noma baphonswe etilongweni, ngokwamacala ababezokwenza kubukeke sengathi banawo noma bafakaze ukuphikisana nabo.
- 14 Manje kwakuyilawo madoda ayefuna ukubabulala, ayeyizazimthetho, ayeqashiwe noma ebekwe ngabantu ukuthi asebenzise umthetho esikhathini sabo sokuthetha amacala, noma ekuthethweni kwamacala abantu phambi kwabehluleli.
- 15 Manje lezi zazimthetho zazifunde ngabo bonke ubuciko kanye nobuqili babantu; futhi lokhu kwakuzozenza ukuthi zibe nekhono emsebenzini wazo.
- 16 Futhi kwenzeka ukuthi baqala ukumbuza u-Amuleki, ukuze ngalokho bamenze aphambanise amazwi akhe, noma aphikisane namazwi okufanele awakhulume.
- 17 Manje babengazi ukuthi u-Amuleki wayenokwazi ngesu labo. Kodwa kwenzeka ngesikhathi beqala ukuthi bambuze, wayibona imicabango yabo, futhi wathi kubo: O nina enibabi kanye nesizukulwane esonakeleyo, nina zazimthetho kanye nabazenzisi, ngokuba nibeka isisekelo sikadeveli; ngokuba nibeka izicupho kanye nezithiyo ukuze nibambe abangcwele baNkulunkulu.
- 18 Nibeka izinhlelo ukuthi niphambanise izindlela zabalungile, futhi nehlixele intukuthelo kaNkulunkulu phezu kwamakhanda enu, ngisho nasekubhujisweni okupheleleyo kwalaba bantu.
- 19 Yebo, washo kahle uMosiya, owayeyinkosi yethu yokugcina, ngesikhathi esezodlulisa umbuso, engenamuntu wokumnikeza wona, enza ukuthi laba bantu baziphathe ngokwamazwi abo—yebo, washo kahle ukuthi uma isikhathi sifika sokuthi izwi lalaba bantu likhethe ububi, okungukuthi, uma isikhathi sifika sokuthi laba bantu bawele esiphambekweni, bayobe sebekulungele ukubhujiswa.

Nevertheless, there were some among them who thought to question them, that by their cunning devices they might catch them in their words, that they might find witness against them, that they might deliver them to their judges that they might be judged according to the law, and that they might be slain or cast into prison, according to the crime which they could make appear or witness against them.

Now it was those men who sought to destroy them, who were lawyers, who were hired or appointed by the people to administer the law at their times of trials, or at the trials of the crimes of the people before the judges.

Now these lawyers were learned in all the arts and cunning of the people; and this was to enable them that they might be skilful in their profession.

And it came to pass that they began to question Amulek, that thereby they might make him cross his words, or contradict the words which he should speak.

Now they knew not that Amulek could know of their designs. But it came to pass as they began to question him, he perceived their thoughts, and he said unto them: O ye wicked and perverse generation, ye lawyers and hypocrites, for ye are laying the foundations of the devil; for ye are laying traps and snares to catch the holy ones of God.

Ye are laying plans to pervert the ways of the righteous, and to bring down the wrath of God upon your heads, even to the utter destruction of this people.

Yea, well did Mosiah say, who was our last king, when he was about to deliver up the kingdom, having no one to confer it upon, causing that this people should be governed by their own voices—yea, well did he say that if the time should come that the voice of this people should choose iniquity, that is, if the time should come that this people should fall into transgression, they would be ripe for destruction.

20 Manje ngithi kini iNkosi yehlulela kahle ngobubi benu; ngezizathu ezinhle iyakhala kulaba bantu, ngezwi lezingelosi zayo ithi: Phendukani, phendukani, ngokuba umbuso wezulu ususondele.

21 Yebo, ngezizathu ezinhle iyakhala, ngezwi lezingelosi zayo ithi; Ngizoza ngehlele phakathi kwabantu bami, ngokulunga kanye nangokwahlulela okuhle ezandleni zami.

22 Yebo, futhi ngithi kini ukuba kwakungekhona ukuthi kwakungenxa yemithandazo yabalungile, okumanje bakulelizwe, ngabe manje senavakashelwa ngokubhujiswa okupheleleyo; nokho bekungeyikuba ngokwe zikhukhula, njengoba kwenzeka kubantu ngezinsuku zikaNowa, kodwa bekuyokuba ngendlala, nangomashayabhuqe, kanye nangenkemba.

23 Kodwa kungenxa yemithandazo yabalungile ukuthi niyasindiswa; manje, uma nizobaxosha abalungile phakathi kwenu uma kunjalo iNkosi ayizukusigodla isandla sayo; kodwa entukuthelweni yayo eyesabekayo izokuza ngokumelene nani; ngaleso sikhathi niyoshaywa ngendlala, nangomashayabhuqe, kanye nangenkemba; futhi lesi sikhathi sesiseduze ngaphandle kokuthi niphenduke.

24 Manje kwenzeka ukuthi abantu bamthukuthelela kakhulu u-Amuleki, futhi bamemeza kakhulu, bethi: Lendoda ithuka imithetho yethu elungile, kanye nezazimthetho zethu ezihlakaniphileyo esizikhethile.

25 Kodwa u-Amuleki welula izandla zakhe, futhi wamemeza kakhulu kubo, ethi: O nina sizukulwane esibi nesonakeleyo, kungani uSathane elawula izinhliziyi zenu na? Kungani nizinikela kuye ukuze abe namandla phezu kwenu, ukuthi aphuphuthekise amehlo enu, ukuze ningawaqondi amazwi akhulunywayo, ngokweqiniso lawo na?

26 Ngokuba bhekani, ngabe ngike ngafakaza yini ngaphikisana nomthetho wenu na? Aniqondi; nithi ngikhulume ngaphikisana nomthetho wenu; kodwa angizange, kodwa ngikhulume ngawuvuna umthetho wenu, ukuze nilahlwe ngecala.

And now I say unto you that well doth the Lord judge of your iniquities; well doth he cry unto this people, by the voice of his angels: Repent ye, repent, for the kingdom of heaven is at hand.

Yea, well doth he cry, by the voice of his angels that: I will come down among my people, with equity and justice in my hands.

Yea, and I say unto you that if it were not for the prayers of the righteous, who are now in the land, that ye would even now be visited with utter destruction; yet it would not be by flood, as were the people in the days of Noah, but it would be by famine, and by pestilence, and the sword.

But it is by the prayers of the righteous that ye are spared; now therefore, if ye will cast out the righteous from among you then will not the Lord stay his hand; but in his fierce anger he will come out against you; then ye shall be smitten by famine, and by pestilence, and by the sword; and the time is soon at hand except ye repent.

And now it came to pass that the people were more angry with Amulek, and they cried out, saying: This man doth revile against our laws which are just, and our wise lawyers whom we have selected.

But Amulek stretched forth his hand, and cried the mightier unto them, saying: O ye wicked and perverse generation, why hath Satan got such great hold upon your hearts? Why will ye yield yourselves unto him that he may have power over you, to blind your eyes, that ye will not understand the words which are spoken, according to their truth?

For behold, have I testified against your law? Ye do not understand; ye say that I have spoken against your law; but I have not, but I have spoken in favor of your law, to your condemnation.

- 27 Manje bhekani, ngithi kini, isisekelo sokubhujiswa kwalaba bantu sesiqala ukubekwa ngokungalungi kwe zazimthetho zenu kanye nabehluleli benu.
- 28 Manje kwenzeka ukuthi ngesikhathi u-Amuleki esewakhulumile lamazwi abantu bamemeza kakhulu bephikisana naye, bethi: Manje sesiyazi ukuthi lendoda ingumntwana kadeveli, ngokuba isikhohlisile; ngokuba ikhulume yaphikisana nomthetho wethu. Manje ithi ayizange ikhulume iphikisane nawo.
- 29 Futhi phezu kwalokho, yedelele izazimthetho zethu, kanye nabehluleli bethu.
- 30 Futhi kwenzeka ukuthi izazimthetho zakubeka ezinhliziyweni zazo ukuze zizikhumbule lezi zinto ngokumelene naye.
- 31 Futhi kwakukhona oyedwa phakathi kwabo ogama lakhe kwakunguZeziromu. Manje waba ngowokuqala ukubeka icala u-Amuleki kanye no-Alima, yena engomunye wezihlakaniphi phakathi kwabo, enamabhezini amaningi awenzayo phakathi kwalaba bantu.
- 32 Manje injongo yalezi zazimthetho kwakungukuthola inzuzo; futhi zayithola inzuzo njengokusebenza kwazo.

And now behold, I say unto you, that the foundation of the destruction of this people is beginning to be laid by the unrighteousness of your lawyers and your judges.

And now it came to pass that when Amulek had spoken these words the people cried out against him, saying: Now we know that this man is a child of the devil, for he hath lied unto us; for he hath spoken against our law. And now he says that he has not spoken against it.

And again, he has reviled against our lawyers, and our judges.

And it came to pass that the lawyers put it into their hearts that they should remember these things against him.

And there was one among them whose name was Zeezrom. Now he was the foremost to accuse Amulek and Alma, he being one of the most expert among them, having much business to do among the people.

Now the object of these lawyers was to get gain; and they got gain according to their employ.

Alima 11

- 1 Manje kwakusemthethweni kaMosiya ukuthi wonke umuntu owayengumahluleli womthetho, noma labo ababebekwe ukuthi babe ngabehluleli, bathole inkokhelo ngokwesikhathi leso abasisebenzile ukwahlulela labo ababelethwe phambi kwabo ukuthi behlulelwe.
- 2 Manje uma umuntu ayekweleta omunye, futhi enqaba ukukukhokha lokho akukweletayo, wayemangalelwa kumahluleli; bese umahluleli esebenzisa igunya, athumele izinduna ukuthi umuntu lowo alethwe phambi kwakhe; bese yena emehlulela umuntu ngokomthetho kanye nangobufakazi lobo obabulethwa ngokumelene naye, futhi ngaleyondlela umuntu wayephoqelega ukuthi akhokhe lokho akukweletayo, noma ephucwe lokho anakho, noma alahlwe ngaphandle aphume phakathi kwabantu njengesela nomphangi.
- 3 Bese umahluleli ethola inkokhelo yakhe ngokwesikhathi sakhe—isenine yegolide ngosuku, noma isenumu yesiliva, elingana nesenine yegolide; futhi lokhu kwakwenziwa ngokomthetho owawubekiwe.
- 4 Manje lawa ngamagama ezinhlobo ezahlukeno zezingcezu zegolide labo, kanye nesiliva labo, njengokwenani lazo. Futhi amagama anikwa ngamaNefi, ngokuba wona awazange abale ngendlela yamaJuda ayeseJerusalema; noma alinganise ngendlela yamaJuda; kodwa wona akuguqula ukubala kanye nokulinganisa kwawo, ngokwezingqondo kanye nezimo zabantu, kuzo zonke izizukulwane, kwaze kwaba ngukubusa kwabehluleli, bona bemiswe yinkosi uMosiya.
- 5 Manje ukubala kukanje—isenine yegolide, iseyoni yegolide, ishumu yegolide, kanye nelimna yegolide.
- 6 Isenumi yesiliva, i-aminori yesiliva, i-eziromu yesiliva, kanye ne-onti yesiliva.
- 7 Isenumi yesiliva yayilingana nesenine yegolide, futhi kona ngakunye kwakungangesilinganiso sikabhali, futhi phezu kwalokho kungangesilinganiso sezinhlobo zonke zokusanhlamvu.
- 8 Manje inani leseeyoni yegolide laliphindwa kabili kulo inani lesenine.

Alma 11

Now it was in the law of Mosiah that every man who was a judge of the law, or those who were appointed to be judges, should receive wages according to the time which they labored to judge those who were brought before them to be judged.

Now if a man owed another, and he would not pay that which he did owe, he was complained of to the judge; and the judge executed authority, and sent forth officers that the man should be brought before him; and he judged the man according to the law and the evidences which were brought against him, and thus the man was compelled to pay that which he owed, or be stripped, or be cast out from among the people as a thief and a robber.

And the judge received for his wages according to his time—a senine of gold for a day, or a senum of silver, which is equal to a senine of gold; and this is according to the law which was given.

Now these are the names of the different pieces of their gold, and of their silver, according to their value. And the names are given by the Nephites, for they did not reckon after the manner of the Jews who were at Jerusalem; neither did they measure after the manner of the Jews; but they altered their reckoning and their measure, according to the minds and the circumstances of the people, in every generation, until the reign of the judges, they having been established by king Mosiah.

Now the reckoning is thus—a senine of gold, a seon of gold, a shum of gold, and a limnah of gold.

A senum of silver, an amnor of silver, an ezrom of silver, and an onti of silver.

A senum of silver was equal to a senine of gold, and either for a measure of barley, and also for a measure of every kind of grain.

Now the amount of a seon of gold was twice the value of a senine.

9 Ishumi yegolide yayiphindwa kabili kulo inani leseyoni.

10 Ilimna yegolide yayiyinani lakho konke.

11 I-aminori yesiliva yayinkulu ngangamasenumi amabili.

12 I-ezromi yesiliva yayinkulu ngangamasenumi amane.

13 I-onti yayinkulu ngaphezu kwazo zonke.

14 Manje lokhu yinani lesibalo esincane sokubala kwabo—

15 Ishibiloni iyinxenye yesenumi; ngakho-ke, ishibiloni ingangenxenye yesilinganiso sikabhali.

16 Ishibilumi iyinxenye yeshibiloni.

17 I-leya iyinxenye yeshibilumi.

18 Manje yisibalo sabo lesi njengokubala kwabo.

19 Manje i-antiyoni yegolide ilingana namashibiloni amathathu.

20 Manje, lokhu kwakungenhloso yokuthi bazuze nje kuphela, ngenxa yokuthi babethola inkokhelo yabo ngokusebenza kwabo, ngakho-ke, nempela babaphehla abantu ukuthi kube khona iziphithiphithi, kanye nayo yonke inhlobo yokuphazamiseka kanye nobubi, ukuze babe nomsebenzi omningi, bathole imali ngokwezimangalo ezazilethwa kubo; ngakho-ke nempela babaphehla abantu ngokumelene no-Alima kanye no-Amuleki.

21 Futhi lo Zeziromu waqala ukubuza u-Amuleki, ethi: Ungangiphendula yini imibuzo embalwa engizoyibuza kuwe na? Manje uZeziromu wayeyindoda eyayihlakaniphile ngamacebo kadeveli, ukuze abhubhise lokho okwakukuhle; ngakho-ke, wathi ku-Amuleki: Ungayiphendula yini imibuzo engizoyibhekisa kuwe na?

22 Futhi u-Amuleki wathi kuye: Yebo, uma kungokuka Moya weNkosi, okimi; ngokuba anginakusho lutho oluphambene noMoya weNkosi. Futhi uZeziromu wathi kuye: Bheka, nanka ama-onti ayisithupha esiliva, futhi wonke lawa ngizokunika wona uma nje ungabuphika ubukhona boPhezukonke.

And a shum of gold was twice the value of a seon.

And a limnah of gold was the value of them all.

And an amnor of silver was as great as two senums.

And an ezrom of silver was as great as four senums.

And an onti was as great as them all.

Now this is the value of the lesser numbers of their reckoning—

A shiblon is half of a senum; therefore, a shiblon for half a measure of barley.

And a shiblum is a half of a shiblon.

And a leah is the half of a shiblum.

Now this is their number, according to their reckoning.

Now an antion of gold is equal to three shiblons.

Now, it was for the sole purpose to get gain, because they received their wages according to their employ, therefore, they did stir up the people to riotings, and all manner of disturbances and wickedness, that they might have more employ, that they might get money according to the suits which were brought before them; therefore they did stir up the people against Alma and Amulek.

And this Zeezrom began to question Amulek, saying: Will ye answer me a few questions which I shall ask you? Now Zeezrom was a man who was expert in the devices of the devil, that he might destroy that which was good; therefore, he said unto Amulek: Will ye answer the questions which I shall put unto you?

And Amulek said unto him: Yea, if it be according to the Spirit of the Lord, which is in me; for I shall say nothing which is contrary to the Spirit of the Lord. And Zeezrom said unto him: Behold, here are six onties of silver, and all these will I give thee if thou wilt deny the existence of a Supreme Being.

23 Manje u-Amuleki wathi: O mntwana wesihogo, ungingelani na? Awazi yini ukuthi abalungile abayengeki ezilingweni ezinjengalezi na?

24 Uyakholwa yini ukuthi uNkulunkulu akekho na? Ngithi kuwe, Cha, uyazi ukuthi uNkulunkulu ukhona, kodwa uthanda leyo mali kakhulu kunaye.

25 Manje uqambe amanga kimi phambi kukaNkulunkulu. Uthe kimi—Bheka, lama-onti ayisithupha, okungawenani elikhulu, ngizokunika wona—ube wazi kahle enhliziyweni yakho ukuthi uzowagodla kimi; futhi bekuyisifiso sakho nje kuphela ukuthi mina ngiphike uNkulunkulu weqiniso nophilayo, ukuze ube nesizathu sokungibulala. Manje bheka, ngenxa yalobubi obukhulu uzowuthola umvuzo wakho.

26 Futhi uZezromu wathi kuye: Uthi kukhona uNkulunkulu weqiniso nophilayo na?

27 Futhi u-Amuleki wathi: Yebo, ukhona uNkulunkulu weqiniso futhi ophilayo.

28 Manje uZezromu wathi: Ngabe ukhona yini omunye uNkulunkulu ngaphezu koyedwa na?

29 Futhi waphendula wathi, Cha.

30 Manje uZezromu waphinda wathi kuye: Uzazi kanjani lezi zinto na?

31 Futhi wathi: Ingelosi ingazisile zona.

32 Futhi uZezromu waphinda wathi: Ngubani yena lona oyoza na? Ngabe yiNdodana kaNkulunkulu na?

33 Wathi kuye, Yebo.

34 Futhi uZezromu waphinda wathi: Ngabe uyobasindisa yini abantu bakhe besezonweni zabo na? U-Amuleki waphendula futhi wathi kuye: Ngithi kuwe ngeke, ngokuba akakwazi ukuthi aphikise izwi lakhe.

35 Manje uZezromu wathi kubantu: Bonani ukuthi niyazikhumbula lezi zinto; ngokuba uthe kukhona oyedwa uNkulunkulu; kepha futhi uthe iNdodana kaNkulunkulu iyoza, kodwa ngeke ibasindise abantu bayo—usho sengathi unegunya lokuyala uNkulunkulu.

36 Manje u-Amuleki waphinda wathi kuye: Bheka uqamba amanga, ngokuba uthe ngikhulume sengathi ngingegunya lokuyala uNkulunkulu ngoba ngithe akayikubasindisa abantu bakhe besezonweni zabo.

Now Amulek said: O thou child of hell, why tempt ye me? Knowest thou that the righteous yieldeth to no such temptations?

Believest thou that there is no God? I say unto you, Nay, thou knowest that there is a God, but thou lovest that lucre more than him.

And now thou hast lied before God unto me. Thou saidst unto me—Behold these six onties, which are of great worth, I will give unto thee—when thou hadst it in thy heart to retain them from me; and it was only thy desire that I should deny the true and living God, that thou mightest have cause to destroy me. And now behold, for this great evil thou shalt have thy reward.

And Zeezrom said unto him: Thou sayest there is a true and living God?

And Amulek said: Yea, there is a true and living God.

Now Zeezrom said: Is there more than one God?

And he answered, No.

Now Zeezrom said unto him again: How knowest thou these things?

And he said: An angel hath made them known unto me.

And Zeezrom said again: Who is he that shall come? Is it the Son of God?

And he said unto him, Yea.

And Zeezrom said again: Shall he save his people in their sins? And Amulek answered and said unto him: I say unto you he shall not, for it is impossible for him to deny his word.

Now Zeezrom said unto the people: See that ye remember these things; for he said there is but one God; yet he saith that the Son of God shall come, but he shall not save his people—as though he had authority to command God.

Now Amulek saith again unto him: Behold thou hast lied, for thou sayest that I spake as though I had authority to command God because I said he shall not save his people in their sins.

37 Futhi ngiyaphinda ngithi kuwe ngeke abasindise bese zonweni zabo; ngokuba anginakuliphikisa izwi lakhe, futhi wathi ayikho into engcolile engadla ifa lombuso wezulu; ngakho-ke, ningasindiswa kanjani, ngaphandle kokuthi nidle ifa lombuso wezulu na? Ngakho-ke, aninakusindiswa nisezonweni zenu.

38 Manje uZezromu waphinda wathi kuye: Ngabe iNdodana kaNkulunkulu nguyena qobo yini uBaba ongunaphakade na?

39 Futhi u-Amuleki wathi kuye: Yebo, inguyena kanye uBaba waPhakade wezulu nomhlaba, kanye nazo zonke izinto ezikuwo; isiqalo kanye nesiphetho, ingeyokuqala neyokugcina.

40 Futhi iyoza emhlabeni ukuzo khulula abantu bayo; futhi iyothwala iziphambeko zalabo abakholwa egameli layo; futhi yibo labo abayoba nokuphila okuphakade, futhi ukusindiswa akuzi komunye.

41 Ngakho-ke omubi usala sengathi akuzanga kube khona ukukhululwa okwenziwe, ngaphandle kokuthi kube ngukuxegiswa kwezibopho zokufa; ngokuba bhekani, usuku luyeza lapho bonke beyovuka ekufeni futhi bame phambi kukaNkulunkulu, futhi behlulelwe ngokwemisebenzi yabo.

42 Manje, kukhona ukufa okubizwa ngokuthi wukufa kwesikhashana; futhi ukufa kukaKristu kuyozixegisa izibopho zalokhu kufa kwesikhashana, ukuze bonke bavuswe ekufeni kwesikhashana.

43 Umoya kanye nomzimba kuyohlangukiswa futhi kube sesimweni sakho esipheleleyo; izitho kanye namalunga kuyobuyiselwa ohlakeni lwakho oluyilo, ngisho njengoba sinje manje kulesi sikhathi; futhi siyo lethwa ukuthi sime phambi kukaNkulunkulu, sazi njengoba sazi manje, futhi siyowakhumbula ngokucacileyo wonke amacala ethu.

And I say unto you again that he cannot save them in their sins; for I cannot deny his word, and he hath said that no unclean thing can inherit the kingdom of heaven; therefore, how can ye be saved, except ye inherit the kingdom of heaven? Therefore, ye cannot be saved in your sins.

Now Zezrom saith again unto him: Is the Son of God the very Eternal Father?

And Amulek said unto him: Yea, he is the very Eternal Father of heaven and of earth, and all things which in them are; he is the beginning and the end, the first and the last;

And he shall come into the world to redeem his people; and he shall take upon him the transgressions of those who believe on his name; and these are they that shall have eternal life, and salvation cometh to none else.

Therefore the wicked remain as though there had been no redemption made, except it be the loosing of the bands of death; for behold, the day cometh that all shall rise from the dead and stand before God, and be judged according to their works.

Now, there is a death which is called a temporal death; and the death of Christ shall loose the bands of this temporal death, that all shall be raised from this temporal death.

The spirit and the body shall be reunited again in its perfect form; both limb and joint shall be restored to its proper frame, even as we now are at this time; and we shall be brought to stand before God, knowing even as we know now, and have a bright recollection of all our guilt.

44 Manje, lokhu kubuyiselwa kuyoza kubo bonke, omdala kanye nomncane, oboshiwe kanye nokhululekile, owesilisa kanye nowesifazane, ababi kanye nabalungile; futhi ngisho noma ezingakanani izinwele zamakhanda abo aziyukulahleka; kodwa zonke izinto ziyobuyiselwa ohlakeni lwazo oluyilo, njengoba kunjalo manje, noma emzimbeni, futhi ziyolethwa futhi zibekwe icala ngaphambi kwesihlalo sikaKristu iNdodana, kanye noNkulunkulu uBaba, kanye noMoya oyiNgcwele, ongu Nkulunkulu munye waPhakade, ukuze zahlulelwe ngokwemisebenzi yazo, noma ngabe mihle noma ngabe mibi.

45 Manje, bhekani, sengikhulumile kini mayelana nokufa komzimba ofayo, futhi ngokunjalo nangoku vuka komzimba ofayo. Ngithi kini lomzimba ofayo uvuselwa emzimbeni ongafiyo, okungukuthi usuka ekufeni, ngisho kusukela ekufeni kokuqala kuya ekuphileni, ukuze ingabe isafa nanini; imimoya yabo ihlangane nemizimba yabo, ingaphinde yehlukaniswe nanini; ngaleyondlela konke kube ngumzimba womoya kanye nongafiyo, ukuze ingabe isakubona nanini ukubola.

46 Manje, ngesikhathi u-Amuleki eseqedile ukusho lamazwi abantu baqala futhi ukumangala, futhi ngokunjalo noZezromu waqala ukuqhaqhazela. Futhi aphela ngalendlela amazwi ka-Amuleki, noma yilokhu kuphela engikubhalile.

Now, this restoration shall come to all, both old and young, both bond and free, both male and female, both the wicked and the righteous; and even there shall not so much as a hair of their heads be lost; but every thing shall be restored to its perfect frame, as it is now, or in the body, and shall be brought and be arraigned before the bar of Christ the Son, and God the Father, and the Holy Spirit, which is one Eternal God, to be judged according to their works, whether they be good or whether they be evil.

Now, behold, I have spoken unto you concerning the death of the mortal body, and also concerning the resurrection of the mortal body. I say unto you that this mortal body is raised to an immortal body, that is from death, even from the first death unto life, that they can die no more; their spirits uniting with their bodies, never to be divided; thus the whole becoming spiritual and immortal, that they can no more see corruption.

Now, when Amulek had finished these words the people began again to be astonished, and also Zezrom began to tremble. And thus ended the words of Amulek, or this is all that I have written.

Alima 12

- 1 Manje u-Alima, ebona ukuthi amazwi ka-Amuleki ayeseventhulisile uZezromu, ngokuba wabona ukuthi u-Amuleki wayesebambile emangeni kanye nasekukhohliseni kwakhe ukuze ambulale, futhi ebona ukuthi wayeseqala ukuqhaq hazela ngesazela sakhe sokuba necala, wavula umlomo wakhe futhi waqala ukukhuluma kuye, kanye nokugcizelela amazwi ka-Amuleki, kanye nokuchaza izinto ngaphezulu, noma ukwambula imibhalo engcwele ngaphezulu kwalokho u-Amuleki ayekwenzile.
- 2 Manje amazwi u-Alima awakhuluma kuZezromu azwiwa ngabantu ndawo zonke; ngokuba isixuku sasisikhulu, futhi wakhuluma ngalendlela:
- 3 Manje Zezromu, ngokuba usubonile ukuthi usubanjwe emangeni kanye nasebuqilini bakho, ngokuba awuqambanga amanga kubantu kuphela kodwa uwaqambe nakuNkulunkulu; ngokuba bheka, uyayazi yonke imicabango yakho, futhi nawe uyabona ukuthi imicabango yakho yazisiwe kithi ngoMoya wakhe;
- 4 Futhi uyabona ukuthi siyazi ukuthi isu lakho bekuyisu lobuqili obukhulu, njengobuqili bukadeveli, ukuqamba amanga kanye nokukhohlisa laba bantu ukuze ubenze balwe nathi, ukuthi basithuke futhi basikhiphele ngaphandle—
- 5 Manje leli bekuyisu lesitha sakho, futhi sisebenzise amandla aso kuwe. Manje ngifuna ukuthi ukhumbule ukuthi engikusho kuwe ngikusho kubo bonke.
- 6 Futhi bhokani ngithi kuni nonke lesi bekuyisithiyo sesitha, esisibeke ukuthi sibambe laba bantu, ukuze sinilethe ngaphansi kwaso, ukuze sinizungeze ngamaketanga aso, ukuze sinibophele phansi ekubhujisweni kwaphakade, ngokwamandla okuthumba kwaso.
- 7 Manje ngesikhathi u-Alima esewakhulumile lamazwi, uZezromu waqala ukuqhaq hazela kakhulu, ngokuba wakholwa kakhulu ngamandla kaNkulunkulu; futhi phezu kwalokho wakholwa ukuthi u-Alima no-Amuleki babenolwazi ngaye, ngokuba wakholwa wukuthi babeyazi imicabango kanye nezinjongo zenhliziyo yakhe; ngokuba babenikiwe amandla ukuthi bazazi lezi zinto ngokomoya wesiphrofetho.

Alma 12

Now Alma, seeing that the words of Amulek had silenced Zezrom, for he beheld that Amulek had caught him in his lying and deceiving to destroy him, and seeing that he began to tremble under a consciousness of his guilt, he opened his mouth and began to speak unto him, and to establish the words of Amulek, and to explain things beyond, or to unfold the scriptures beyond that which Amulek had done.

Now the words that Alma spake unto Zezrom were heard by the people round about; for the multitude was great, and he spake on this wise:

Now Zezrom, seeing that thou hast been taken in thy lying and craftiness, for thou hast not lied unto men only but thou hast lied unto God; for behold, he knows all thy thoughts, and thou seest that thy thoughts are made known unto us by his Spirit;

And thou seest that we know that thy plan was a very subtle plan, as to the subtlety of the devil, for to lie and to deceive this people that thou mightest set them against us, to revile us and to cast us out—

Now this was a plan of thine adversary, and he hath exercised his power in thee. Now I would that ye should remember that what I say unto thee I say unto all.

And behold I say unto you all that this was a snare of the adversary, which he has laid to catch this people, that he might bring you into subjection unto him, that he might encircle you about with his chains, that he might chain you down to everlasting destruction, according to the power of his captivity.

Now when Alma had spoken these words, Zezrom began to tremble more exceedingly, for he was convinced more and more of the power of God; and he was also convinced that Alma and Amulek had a knowledge of him, for he was convinced that they knew the thoughts and intents of his heart; for power was given unto them that they might know of these things according to the spirit of prophecy.

- 8 Futhi uZezromu waqala ukubuza kubo ephindelela, ukuze azi kabanzi mayelana nombuso kaNkulunkulu. Futhi wathi ku-Alima: Kuchaza ukuthini lokhu u-Amuleki akukhulumile mayelana nokuvuka kwabafileyo, ukuthi bonke bayovuka ekufeni, abalungile kanye nabangalungile, futhi balethwe ukuthi bame phambi kukaNkulunkulu ukuthi behlulelwe ngokwemisebenzi yabo na?
- 9 Manje u-Alima waqala ukumcacisela lezi zinto, ethi: Kunikeziwe kwabaningi ukuthi bazazi izimfihlakalo zikaNkulunkulu; nokho babekwe ngaphansi komthetho oqinile wokuthi bangalidlulisi kuphela ngokwenxenye yezwi lakhe alinikeza abantwana babantu, ngokulalela kanye nenkuthalo abamnika yona.
- 10 Ngakho-ke, lowo ozo qinisa inhliziyo yakhe, yena kanye lowo uthola inxenye encane yezwi; futhi lowo ongezukuyiqinisa inhliziyo yakhe, kuye kunikwa inxenye enkulu yezwi, aze anikwe ukuthi azi izimfihlakalo zikaNkulunkulu kuze kube uzazi ngokugcwele.
- 11 Futhi labo abazoqinisa izinhliziyo zabo, banikezwa inxenye encane yezwi baze bangabe besazi lutho mayelana nezimfihlakalo zakhe; futhi emva kwalokho bathunjwa ngudeveli, futhi abahole ngokwentando yakhe abayise phansi ekubhujisweni. Manje yilokhu okuchazwa ngamaketanga esihogo.
- 12 Futhi u-Amuleki ukhulume ngokusobala mayelana nokufa, kanye nokuvuswa kulokhu kufa kuya esimweni sokungafi, kanye nokulethwa phambi kwesihlalo sikaNkulunkulu, ukuze sahlulelwe ngokwemisebenzi yethu.
- 13 Kuleso simo uma izinhliziyo zethu bezilukhuni, yebo, uma sizenze zaba lukhuni izinhliziyo zethu ngokumelene nezwi, kangangokuthi alitholakalanga kithi, uma kunjalo isimo sethu siyokuba sibi kakhulu, ngokuba uma kunjalo siyobekwa icala.

And Zezrom began to inquire of them diligently, that he might know more concerning the kingdom of God. And he said unto Alma: What does this mean which Amulek hath spoken concerning the resurrection of the dead, that all shall rise from the dead, both the just and the unjust, and are brought to stand before God to be judged according to their works?

And now Alma began to expound these things unto him, saying: It is given unto many to know the mysteries of God; nevertheless they are laid under a strict command that they shall not impart only according to the portion of his word which he doth grant unto the children of men, according to the heed and diligence which they give unto him.

And therefore, he that will harden his heart, the same receiveth the lesser portion of the word; and he that will not harden his heart, to him is given the greater portion of the word, until it is given unto him to know the mysteries of God until he know them in full.

And they that will harden their hearts, to them is given the lesser portion of the word until they know nothing concerning his mysteries; and then they are taken captive by the devil, and led by his will down to destruction. Now this is what is meant by the chains of hell.

And Amulek hath spoken plainly concerning death, and being raised from this mortality to a state of immortality, and being brought before the bar of God, to be judged according to our works.

Then if our hearts have been hardened, yea, if we have hardened our hearts against the word, inso-much that it has not been found in us, then will our state be awful, for then we shall be condemned.

- 14 Ngokuba amazwi ethu ayosibeka icala, yebo, yonke imisebenzi yethu iyosibeka icala; asiyikutholakala singenabala; futhi imicabango yethu nayo iyosibeka icala; futhi kulesi simo esibi kangaka ngeke silinge nakancane simbheke uNkulunkulu wethu; futhi singakujabulela sikuthokozele uma besingayala amadwala kanye nezintaba ukuthi ziwele phezu kwethu ukuze zisifihle phambi kwakhe.
- 15 Kodwa lokhu akunakwenzeka; kufanele siphumele obala futhi sime phambi kwakhe enkazimulweni yakhe, nasemandleni akhe, nakubo ubukhulu bamandla akhe, nobukhosi, kanye nobukhulu bakhe, futhi sivume ngokuzenyeza kwethu kwaphakade ukuthi zonke izahlulelo zakhe zilungile; nokuthi ulungile kuyo yonke imisebenzi yakhe, futhi nokuthi unobubele kubo abantwana babantu, futhi nokuthi unawo wonke amandla okusindisa wonke umuntu okholwa egameni lakhe futhi alethe izithelo zokuphenduka.
- 16 Manje bhekani, ngithi kini ngaleso sikhathi kuza ukufa, ngisho nokufa kwesibili, okungukufa kukamoya; ngaleso sikhathi yisikhathi lapho noma ngubani ofela ezonweni zakhe, ngokufa kwesikhashana, uyokufa futhi ukufa kukamoya; yebo, uyokufa ezintweni eziphathelene nokulunga.
- 17 Ngaleso sikhathi yisikhathi lapho izinhlopheko zabo ziyokuba njenge chibi lomlilo kanye nesibabuli, amalangabi alo akhuphukela phezulu phakade naphakade; futhi ngaleso sikhathi yisikhathi lapho beyoboshelwa phansi ekonakalisweni kwaphakade, ngokwamandla kanye nobuqili bukaSathane, ebabeke phansi kwakhe ngokwentando yakhe.
- 18 Ngakho-ke, ngithi kini, kubona kuyokuba sengathi akuzange kube khona kukhululwa okwenziweyo; ngokuba abanakukhululwa ngokuhambisana nokulunga kukaNkulunkulu; futhi abanakufa, ngenxa yokuthi kuyobe kungasekho ukubola.
- 19 Manje kwenzeka ukuthi ngesikhathi u-Alima eseqedile ukukhuluma lamazwi, abantu baqala ukumangala kakhulu.

For our words will condemn us, yea, all our works will condemn us; we shall not be found spotless; and our thoughts will also condemn us; and in this awful state we shall not dare to look up to our God; and we would fain be glad if we could command the rocks and the mountains to fall upon us to hide us from his presence.

But this cannot be; we must come forth and stand before him in his glory, and in his power, and in his might, majesty, and dominion, and acknowledge to our everlasting shame that all his judgments are just; that he is just in all his works, and that he is merciful unto the children of men, and that he has all power to save every man that believeth on his name and bringeth forth fruit meet for repentance.

And now behold, I say unto you then cometh a death, even a second death, which is a spiritual death; then is a time that whosoever dieth in his sins, as to a temporal death, shall also die a spiritual death; yea, he shall die as to things pertaining unto righteousness.

Then is the time when their torments shall be as a lake of fire and brimstone, whose flame ascendeth up forever and ever; and then is the time that they shall be chained down to an everlasting destruction, according to the power and captivity of Satan, he having subjected them according to his will.

Then, I say unto you, they shall be as though there had been no redemption made; for they cannot be redeemed according to God's justice; and they cannot die, seeing there is no more corruption.

Now it came to pass that when Alma had made an end of speaking these words, the people began to be more astonished;

- 20 Kodwa kwakukhona oyedwa owayebizwa ngokuthi u-Antiyona, owayengumbusi omkhulu phakathi kwabo, weza ngaphambili wathi kuye: Yini lena oyishilo, ukuthi umuntu uyovuka ekufeni futhi aguqulwe kulesimo sokufa abe sesimweni sokungafi, nokuthi umphefumulo ungeke usaphinda ufe na?
- 21 Uqonde ukuthini umbhalo ongcwele, lona othi uNkulunkulu wabeka ikherubi kanye nenkemba evuthayo empumalanga yensimu yase-Edene, hleze abazali bethu bokuqala bangene futhi badle isithelo somuthi wokuphila, bese bephila ingunaphakade na? Futhi ngaleyo ndlela siyabona ukuthi lalingekho ithuba lokuthi baphile ingunaphakade.
- 22 Manje u-Alima wathi kuye: Lena yinto ebesengizoyichaza. Manje siyabona ukuthi u-Adamu nempela wawa ngokudla isithelo esasingavunyelwe, ngokwezwi likaNkulunkulu; futhi ngaleyo ndlela siyabona, ukuthi ngokuwa kwakhe, sonke isintu saba ngabantu abalahlekileyo kanye nabawile.
- 23 Manje bhekani, ngithi kini uma kwakungenzeka ukuthi u-Adamu adle isithelo somuthi wokuphila ngaleso sikhathi, kwakungeke kube khona ukufa, futhi izwi laliyoba yize, lenze uNkulunkulu umkhohlisi, ngokuba wathi: Uma usidla uyokufa nokufa.
- 24 Futhi siyabona ukuthi ukufa kuza phezu kwesintu, yebo, ukufa lokho akhulume ngakho u-Amuleki, okungukufa kwesikhashana; nokho kwaba khona isikhathi esanikwa umuntu ukuthi ngaso aphenduke; ngakho-ke lempilo yase iba ngeyesimo sokulingwa; isikhathi sokulungiselela ukuhlangana noNkulunkulu; isikhathi sokulungiselela lesimo esingapheliyo esikhulume ngaso, esingemuva kokuvuka kwabafileyo.
- 25 Manje, ukuba kwakungekhona ukuthi kwakungesu lokukhululwa, elenziwe kusukela esisekelweni somhlaba, kwakungeke kube khona ukuvuka kwabafileyo; kodwa kwaba khona isu lokukhululwa elenziwa, eliyoletha ukuvuka kwabafileyo, lokho osekukhulunye ngakho.

But there was one Antionah, who was a chief ruler among them, came forth and said unto him: What is this that thou hast said, that man should rise from the dead and be changed from this mortal to an immortal state, that the soul can never die?

What does the scripture mean, which saith that God placed cherubim and a flaming sword on the east of the garden of Eden, lest our first parents should enter and partake of the fruit of the tree of life, and live forever? And thus we see that there was no possible chance that they should live forever.

Now Alma said unto him: This is the thing which I was about to explain. Now we see that Adam did fall by the partaking of the forbidden fruit, according to the word of God; and thus we see, that by his fall, all mankind became a lost and fallen people.

And now behold, I say unto you that if it had been possible for Adam to have partaken of the fruit of the tree of life at that time, there would have been no death, and the word would have been void, making God a liar, for he said: If thou eat thou shalt surely die.

And we see that death comes upon mankind, yea, the death which has been spoken of by Amulek, which is the temporal death; nevertheless there was a space granted unto man in which he might repent; therefore this life became a probationary state; a time to prepare to meet God; a time to prepare for that endless state which has been spoken of by us, which is after the resurrection of the dead.

Now, if it had not been for the plan of redemption, which was laid from the foundation of the world, there could have been no resurrection of the dead; but there was a plan of redemption laid, which shall bring to pass the resurrection of the dead, of which has been spoken.

- 26 Manje bhekani, uma kwakungenzeka ukuthi abazali bethu bokuqala babengahamba futhi bayodla emthini wokuphila babeyoba lusizi ingunaphakade, bengenasimo sokuzilungiselela; futhi ngaleyondlela isu lokukhululwa laliyobe selivimbelekile, futhi izwi likaNkulunkulu laliyoba yize, lingasafezekanga.
- 27 Kodwa bhekani, akubanga njalo; kodwa abantu bamiselwa ukuthi kufanele bafe; futhi emva kokufa, kufanele beze ekwahlulelweni, ngisho lokho kwahlulelwa esikhulume ngakho, okungokokugcina.
- 28 Futhi emva kokuthi uNkulunkulu esezimisile ukuthi lezi zinto kufanele zenzeke kumuntu, bhekani, emva kwalokho wabona ukuthi kwakudingekile ukuthi umuntu azi mayelana nezinto ayebabekele zona;
- 29 Ngakho-ke wathumela izingelosi ukuthi zikhulume nabo, zibenze abantu ukuthi babone inkazimulo yakhe.
- 30 Futhi baqala kusukela ngaleso sikhathi kuya phambili ukubiza igama lakhe; ngakho-ke uNkulunkulu wakhuluma nabantu, futhi wenza ukuthi bazi ngesu lokukhululwa, elalilungiswe kusukela esisekelweni somhlaba, futhi lokhu wabazisa ngokokholo lwabo kanye nokuphenduka kanye nangokwemisebenzi yabo engcwele.
- 31 Ngalokho-ke, wanikeza imiyalelo kubantu, bona sebeyiphulile imiyalelo yokuqala ngokwezinto zesikhashana, futhi sebenjengonkulunkulu, bazi okuhle kokubi, bezibeke esimweni sokwenza, noma bebewe esimweni sokwenza ngokwezifiso kanye nangokuthanda kwabo, noma ukwenza okubi noma ukwenza okuhle—
- 32 Ngakho-ke uNkulunkulu wabanika imiyalelo, emva kokuthi eselazisile kubo isu lokukhululwa, ukuthi bangakwenzi okubi, isijezizo salokho kungu kufa kwesibili, okwakungukufa kwaphakade ngokwezinto eziphathelene nokulunga; ngokuba kulabo isu lokukhululwa lalingeke libe namandla, ngokuba imisebenzi yokulunga yayingenakupheliswa, ngenxa yobuhle obukhulu kakhulu bukaNkulunkulu.

And now behold, if it were possible that our first parents could have gone forth and partaken of the tree of life they would have been forever miserable, having no preparatory state; and thus the plan of redemption would have been frustrated, and the word of God would have been void, taking none effect.

But behold, it was not so; but it was appointed unto men that they must die; and after death, they must come to judgment, even that same judgment of which we have spoken, which is the end.

And after God had appointed that these things should come unto man, behold, then he saw that it was expedient that man should know concerning the things whereof he had appointed unto them;

Therefore he sent angels to converse with them, who caused men to behold of his glory.

And they began from that time forth to call on his name; therefore God conversed with men, and made known unto them the plan of redemption, which had been prepared from the foundation of the world; and this he made known unto them according to their faith and repentance and their holy works.

Wherefore, he gave commandments unto men, they having first transgressed the first commandments as to things which were temporal, and becoming as gods, knowing good from evil, placing themselves in a state to act, or being placed in a state to act according to their wills and pleasures, whether to do evil or to do good—

Therefore God gave unto them commandments, after having made known unto them the plan of redemption, that they should not do evil, the penalty thereof being a second death, which was an everlasting death as to things pertaining unto righteousness; for on such the plan of redemption could have no power, for the works of justice could not be destroyed, according to the supreme goodness of God.

33 Kodwa uNkulunkulu nempela wababiza abantu, egameni leNdodana yakhe, (lokhu kuyisu lokukhululwa elaliquanjiwe) ethi: Uma nizophenduka, futhi ningazenzi lukhuni izinhliziyozenu, uma kunjalo ngiyoba nomusa kini, ngayo iNdodana yami eZelwe Yodwa.

34 Ngakho-ke, lowo ophendukayo, futhi angayenzi lukhuni inhliziyozakhe, uyokuba nesabelo kuwo umusa ngeNdodana yami eZelwe Yodwa, ukuze athethelelwe izono zakhe; futhi laba bayongena ekuphumuleni kwami.

35 Futhi lowo ozoyenza lukhuni inhliziyozakhe futhi enze ububi, bhekani, ngiyafunga ngisentukuthelweni yami ukuthi akayukungena ekuphumuleni kwami.

36 Manje, bafowethu, bhekani ngithi kini, uma nizozenza lukhuni izinhliziyozenu aniyikungena ekuphumuleni kweNkosi; ngakho-ke ububi benu bumbangela ulaka kangangokuthi wehlisela ulaka lwakhe phezu kwenu njengoku hlubuka kokugqala, yebo, ngokwezwi lakhe ngesikhathi sokuhlubuka kokugcina njengalokho kokugqala, ukuze konakaliswe imiphefumulo yenu ingunaphakade; ngakho-ke, ngokwezwi lakhe, ngokwanele ukuba ife okokugcina, ngokunjalo nangokugqala.

37 Manje, bafowethu, ngokubona ukuthi siyazazi lezi zinto, futhi ziyiqiniso, masiphendukeni, futhi singazenzi lukhuni izinhliziyozethu, ukuze singayibangeli iNkosi uNkulunkulu wethu ukuthi yehlisele ulaka lwayo phezu kwethu kulemiyalelo yayo yesibili esinike yona; kodwa masingeneni eku phumuleni kukaNkulunkulu, okulungisiwe ngokwezwi lakhe.

But God did call on men, in the name of his Son, (this being the plan of redemption which was laid) saying: If ye will repent, and harden not your hearts, then will I have mercy upon you, through mine Only Begotten Son;

Therefore, whosoever repenteth, and hardeneth not his heart, he shall have claim on mercy through mine Only Begotten Son, unto a remission of his sins; and these shall enter into my rest.

And whosoever will harden his heart and will do iniquity, behold, I swear in my wrath that he shall not enter into my rest.

And now, my brethren, behold I say unto you, that if ye will harden your hearts ye shall not enter into the rest of the Lord; therefore your iniquity provoketh him that he sendeth down his wrath upon you as in the first provocation, yea, according to his word in the last provocation as well as the first, to the everlasting destruction of your souls; therefore, according to his word, unto the last death, as well as the first.

And now, my brethren, seeing we know these things, and they are true, let us repent, and harden not our hearts, that we provoke not the Lord our God to pull down his wrath upon us in these his second commandments which he has given unto us; but let us enter into the rest of God, which is prepared according to his word.

Alima 13

- 1 Futhi phezu kwalokho, bafowethu, ngizokhuluma ngesikhathi saphambilini lapho iNkosi uNkulunkulu yanika lemiyalelo kubantwana bayo; futhi ngifuna nikhumbule ukuthi iNkosi uNkulunkulu yagcoba abaphristi, ngokohlelo lwayo olungcwele, olwalungokohlelo lweNdodana yayo, ukuthi bazifundise lezi zinto kubantu.
- 2 Futhi labo baphristi bagcotshwa ngokohlelo lweNdodana yayo, ngendlela yokuthi abantu bazi ukuthi kungayiphi indlela abangabheka phambili ngayo eNdodaneni yayo ukuze bakhululwe.
- 3 Futhi lena yindlela abagcotshwa ngayo—bebiziwe futhi balungiselelwa kusukela ekusekelweni komhlaba ngokwazi ngaphambili kukaNkulunkulu, ngenxa yokholo lwabo olukhulu kanye nemisebenzi yabo emihle; okokuqala beshiywe ukuthi bazikhethele okuhle noma okubi; ngakho-ke bona sebekhethe okuhle, futhi bebe nokholo olukhulu kakhulu, babizwa ngobizo olungcwele, yebo, ngalolo bizo olungcwele olwalulungisiwe, kanye nangokukhululwa okulungiselelwe abanjalo.
- 4 Futhi ngalendlela babizelwe kulolubizo olungcwele ngenxa yokholo lwabo, bebe abanye bewenqaba uMoya kaNkulunkulu ngenxa yobulukhuni bezinhliziyi zabo kanye nobumpumputhe bezingqondo zabo, kanti, ukuba kwakungekhona ukuthi kwakungenxa yalokhu babengaba nelungelo elikhulu njengabafowabo.
- 5 Noma-ke ukuphetha, okokuqala babese simweni esifanayo nabafowabo; ngaleyondlela lolubizo olungcwele lulungisiwe kusukela ekusekelweni komhlaba lulungiselwe labo abangenakuzenza lukhuni izinhliziyi zabo, lukuyo futhi lungenhlawulo yeNdodana eZelwe Yodwa, eyayilungisiwe—
- 6 Futhi ngalendlela bebizwe ngalolubizo olungcwele, futhi bagcotshelwa kubo ubuphristi obukhulu bohlelo olungcwele lukaNkulunkulu, ukuthi bafundise imiyalelo yakhe kubantwana babantu, ukuze nabo ngokunjalo bangene ekuphumuleni kwakhe—

Alma 13

And again, my brethren, I would cite your minds forward to the time when the Lord God gave these commandments unto his children; and I would that ye should remember that the Lord God ordained priests, after his holy order, which was after the order of his Son, to teach these things unto the people.

And those priests were ordained after the order of his Son, in a manner that thereby the people might know in what manner to look forward to his Son for redemption.

And this is the manner after which they were ordained—being called and prepared from the foundation of the world according to the foreknowledge of God, on account of their exceeding faith and good works; in the first place being left to choose good or evil; therefore they having chosen good, and exercising exceedingly great faith, are called with a holy calling, yea, with that holy calling which was prepared with, and according to, a preparatory redemption for such.

And thus they have been called to this holy calling on account of their faith, while others would reject the Spirit of God on account of the hardness of their hearts and blindness of their minds, while, if it had not been for this they might have had as great privilege as their brethren.

Or in fine, in the first place they were on the same standing with their brethren; thus this holy calling being prepared from the foundation of the world for such as would not harden their hearts, being in and through the atonement of the Only Begotten Son, who was prepared—

And thus being called by this holy calling, and ordained unto the high priesthood of the holy order of God, to teach his commandments unto the children of men, that they also might enter into his rest—

- 7 Lobuphristi obukhulu obungokohlelo lweNdodana yakhe, oselokhu lwabakhona kusukela ekusekelweni komhlaba; noma ngamanye amazwi, olungenasiqalo sazinsuku nasiphetho seminyaka, lulungiswe kusukela phakade kuya kulo lonke iphakade, ngokwazi kwakhe ngaphambili kwezinto zonke—
- 8 Manje bagcotshwa ngalendlela—bebizwe ngobizo olungcwele, futhi bagcotshwa ngesimiso esingcwele, futhi bethatha ubuphristi obukhulu bohlelo olungcwele, lolo bizo, nesimiso, kanye nobuphristi obukhulu, okungenasiqalo nasiphetho—
- 9 Ngaleyo ndlela baba ngaba phristi abakhulu ingunaphakade, ngokohlelo lweNdodana, eZelwe Yodwa kaBaba, engenasiqalo sazinsuku nasiphetho seminyaka, egcwele umusa, ukulunga, kanye neqiniso. Futhi kunjalo. Amen.
- 10 Manje, njengoba ngishilo mayelana nohlelo olungcwele, noma ngalobu buphristi obukhulu, babebanangi abagcotshwa baba ngabaphristi abakhulu baNkulunkulu; futhi kwakungenxa yokholo lwabo olukhulu kanye nokuphenduka kwabo, kanye nokulunga kwabo phambi kukaNkulunkulu, ngenxa yokuthi bekhetha ukuphenduka nokusebenza ukulunga kunokuba balahleke;
- 11 Ngakho-ke babizwa ngokwaloluhlelo olungcwele, futhi bangcweliswa, futhi izingubo zabo zahlanzwa zaba mhlophe egazini leMvana.
- 12 Manje bona, emva kokuthi sebengcwelisiwe ngo Moya oyiNgcwele, izingubo zabo sezenziwe zaba mhlophe, bemsulwa futhi bengenabala phambi kukaNkulunkulu, abakwazanga ukusibuka isono ngaphandle kokusenyanza; futhi babebanangi, bebanangi kakhulu ngokwedlulele, ababenziwe bamsulwa futhi bangeniswa ekuphumuleni kweNkosi uNkulunkulu wabo.
- 13 Manje, bafowethu, ngifuna ukuthi nizithobe phambi kukaNkulunkulu, nilethe izithelo ezinhle zokuphenduka, ukuze nani ningene kulokho kuphumula.

This high priesthood being after the order of his Son, which order was from the foundation of the world; or in other words, being without beginning of days or end of years, being prepared from eternity to all eternity, according to his foreknowledge of all things—

Now they were ordained after this manner—being called with a holy calling, and ordained with a holy ordinance, and taking upon them the high priesthood of the holy order, which calling, and ordinance, and high priesthood, is without beginning or end—

Thus they become high priests forever, after the order of the Son, the Only Begotten of the Father, who is without beginning of days or end of years, who is full of grace, equity, and truth. And thus it is. Amen.

Now, as I said concerning the holy order, or this high priesthood, there were many who were ordained and became high priests of God; and it was on account of their exceeding faith and repentance, and their righteousness before God, they choosing to repent and work righteousness rather than to perish;

Therefore they were called after this holy order, and were sanctified, and their garments were washed white through the blood of the Lamb.

Now they, after being sanctified by the Holy Ghost, having their garments made white, being pure and spotless before God, could not look upon sin save it were with abhorrence; and there were many, exceedingly great many, who were made pure and entered into the rest of the Lord their God.

And now, my brethren, I would that ye should humble yourselves before God, and bring forth fruit meet for repentance, that ye may also enter into that rest.

- 14 Yebo, zithobeni ngisho nanjengabantu ngezinsuku zika Melkisedeki, naye owayengumphristi omkhulu ngokwaloluhlelo engikhulume ngalo, naye owabuthatha ubuphristi obukhulu ingunaphakade.
- 15 Futhi kwakunguye kanye lo Melkisedeki u-Abrahama ayekhokha kuye okweshumi; yebo, ngisho nobaba wethu u-Abrahama wakukhokha okweshumi okuyinxenye eyodwa eshumini kwakho konke ayenakho.
- 16 Manje lezi zimiso zazinikezwe ngayo lendlela, ukuze ngazo abantu babheke phambili eNdodaneni kaNkulunkulu, lokho okwakuwu hlobo lohlelo lwayo, noma okwakuwuhlelo lwayo, futhi ngalokhu ukuze babheke phambili kuyo ukuze bathole ukuthethelelwa kwezono zabo, ukuze bangene ekuphumuleni kweNkosi.
- 17 Manje lo Melkisedeki wayeyinkosi ezweni laseSalema; futhi abantu bakhe base bekhule baqina ebumini kanye nasezinengisweni; yebo, bonke babedukile; babegcwele lonke uhlobo lwenkohlakalo;
- 18 Kodwa uMelkisedeki esebenzise ukholo olukhulu, futhi emukele isikhundla sobuphristi obukhulu ngoko hlelo olungcwele lukaNkulunkulu, nempela wakushumayela ukuphenduka kubantu bakhe. Futhi bheka, nempela baphenduka; futhi uMelkisedeki nempela wakwenza ukuthula kulelozwe ezinsukwini zakhe; ngakho-ke wabizwa ngenkosi yokuthula, ngokuba wayeyinkosi yaseSalema; futhi nempela wabusa ngaphansi kukayise.
- 19 Manje, babebanangi ngaphambi kwakhe, futhi phezu kwalokho babebanangi nasemva kwalokho, kodwa kwakungekho namunye owayemedlula ngobukhulu; ngakho-ke, kungakho kwabalulwa kakhulu ngaye.
- 20 Manje akudingekile ngiyiphindaphinde lendaba; lokho esengikushilo sekwanele. Bhekani, imibhalo engcwele iphambi kwenu; uma niyihlanekezela kuyobangela ukonakaliswa kwenu.

Yea, humble yourselves even as the people in the days of Melchizedek, who was also a high priest after this same order which I have spoken, who also took upon him the high priesthood forever.

And it was this same Melchizedek to whom Abraham paid tithes; yea, even our father Abraham paid tithes of one-tenth part of all he possessed.

Now these ordinances were given after this manner, that thereby the people might look forward on the Son of God, it being a type of his order, or it being his order, and this that they might look forward to him for a remission of their sins, that they might enter into the rest of the Lord.

Now this Melchizedek was a king over the land of Salem; and his people had waxed strong in iniquity and abomination; yea, they had all gone astray; they were full of all manner of wickedness;

But Melchizedek having exercised mighty faith, and received the office of the high priesthood according to the holy order of God, did preach repentance unto his people. And behold, they did repent; and Melchizedek did establish peace in the land in his days; therefore he was called the prince of peace, for he was the king of Salem; and he did reign under his father.

Now, there were many before him, and also there were many afterwards, but none were greater; therefore, of him they have more particularly made mention.

Now I need not rehearse the matter; what I have said may suffice. Behold, the scriptures are before you; if ye will wrest them it shall be to your own destruction.

- 21 Manje kwenzeka ukuthi ngesikhathi u-Alima esewashilo lamazwi kubo, welulela isandla sakhe kubo wamemeza ngezwi elikhulu, ethi: Manje sekuyisikhathi sokuphenduka, ngokuba usuku lokusindiswa selusondele.
- 22 Yebo, futhi izwi leNkosi, ngomlomo wezingelosi, liyakumemezela lokhu kuzo zonke izizwe; yebo, liyakumemezela, ukuze zizwe izindaba ezimnandi zokuthokoza okukhulu; yebo, futhi iyazimemezela lezi zindaba zokuthokoza phakathi kwabantu bonke, yebo, ngisho nakubo labo abachitheke ndawozonke phezu kobuso bomhlaba; ngalokho-ke sezifikile kithi.
- 23 Futhi saziswe zona ngokucacile, ukuze siziqonde, ukuze singabe sisaphambuka; futhi lokhu kwenziwa ngenxa yokuthi singaba zulazulayo ezweni elingaziwa; ngakho-ke, ngalendlela sithandwe kakhulu, ngokuba sizizwile lezi zindaba zokuthokoza zimenyezelwa kithi kuzo zonke izinxenye zesivini sethu.
- 24 Ngokuba bhekani, izingelosi ziyazimemezela kwabaningi ngalesi sikhathi ezweni lethu; futhi lokhu kungesizathu sokulungiselela izinhliziyozabantwana babantu ukuthi bemukele izwi layo ngesikhathi sokuza kwayo enkazimulweni yayo.
- 25 Manje sesilindele kuphela ukuzwa izindaba ezijabulisayo zimenyezelwa kithi ngomlomo wezingelosi, ngokuza kwayo; ngokuba isikhathi siyeza, asazi ukuthi siseduzane kangakanani. Ngiyacela kuNkulunkulu ukuthi kube ngosuku lwami; kodwa makube manje noma emva kwesikhashana, kukho ngiyothokoza.
- 26 Futhi kuyokwaziswa kubantu abalungileyo nabangcwele, ngomlomo wezingelosi, ngesikhathi sokuza kwayo, ukuze amazwi obaba bethu agcwaliseke, njengalokho bakukhuluma mayelana nayo, okwakungesiphrofetho sikamoya owawu kubo.
- 27 Manje, bafowethu, nginesifiso ekujuleni kwenhliziyoyami, yebo, ngentshisekelo enkulu ngisho nangobuhlungu, ukuthi niwezwe amazwi ami, futhi niziyeke izono zenu, futhi ningaluhlehli usuku lokuphenduka kwenu.

And now it came to pass that when Alma had said these words unto them, he stretched forth his hand unto them and cried with a mighty voice, saying: Now is the time to repent, for the day of salvation draweth nigh;

Yea, and the voice of the Lord, by the mouth of angels, doth declare it unto all nations; yea, doth declare it, that they may have glad tidings of great joy; yea, and he doth sound these glad tidings among all his people, yea, even to them that are scattered abroad upon the face of the earth; wherefore they have come unto us.

And they are made known unto us in plain terms, that we may understand, that we cannot err; and this because of our being wanderers in a strange land; therefore, we are thus highly favored, for we have these glad tidings declared unto us in all parts of our vineyard.

For behold, angels are declaring it unto many at this time in our land; and this is for the purpose of preparing the hearts of the children of men to receive his word at the time of his coming in his glory.

And now we only wait to hear the joyful news declared unto us by the mouth of angels, of his coming; for the time cometh, we know not how soon. Would to God that it might be in my day; but let it be sooner or later, in it I will rejoice.

And it shall be made known unto just and holy men, by the mouth of angels, at the time of his coming, that the words of our fathers may be fulfilled, according to that which they have spoken concerning him, which was according to the spirit of prophecy which was in them.

And now, my brethren, I wish from the inmost part of my heart, yea, with great anxiety even unto pain, that ye would hearken unto my words, and cast off your sins, and not procrastinate the day of your repentance;

28 Kodwa nizithobe phambi kweNkosi, futhi nibize igama layo elingcwele, niqaphele futhi nithandaze njalonjalo, ukuze ningalingwa ngaphezulu kwalokho eningakubekezelela, futhi ngaleyondlela niholwe nguMoya oyiNgcwele, nizithobe, nizehlise, nivume, nibekezele, nigcwele uthando kanye nakho konke ukuba nenhliziyo ende.

29 Ninokholo eNkosini; ninethemba lokuthi niyozuza ukuphila okuphakade; ninothando lukaNkulunkulu njalo ezinhliziyweni zenu, ukuze niphakanyiswe ngosuku lokugcina futhi ningene ekuphumuleni kwakhe.

30 Futhi sengathi iNkosi inganinika ukuphenduka, ukuze ningayehliseli intukuthelo yayo phezu kwenu, ukuze ningaboshelwa phansi ngamaketanga esihogo, ukuze ningakuzwa ukufa kwesibili.

31 Futhi u-Alima wakhuluma amazwi amaningi kakhulu kulaba bantu, angabhaliwe kulencwadi.

But that ye would humble yourselves before the Lord, and call on his holy name, and watch and pray continually, that ye may not be tempted above that which ye can bear, and thus be led by the Holy Spirit, becoming humble, meek, submissive, patient, full of love and all long-suffering;

Having faith on the Lord; having a hope that ye shall receive eternal life; having the love of God always in your hearts, that ye may be lifted up at the last day and enter into his rest.

And may the Lord grant unto you repentance, that ye may not bring down his wrath upon you, that ye may not be bound down by the chains of hell, that ye may not suffer the second death.

And Alma spake many more words unto the people, which are not written in this book.

Alima 14

- 1 Futhi kwenzeka emva kokuthi eseqedile ukukhuluma kubantu abaningi babo bakholelwa emazwini akhe, futhi baqala ukuphenduka, kanye nokucwaninga imibhalo engcwele.
- 2 Kodwa inxenye eningi yabo yayinesifiso sokubabulala o-Alima no-Amuleki; ngokuba babemthukuthelele u-Alima, ngenxa yokungagunci kwamazwi akhe awakhuluma kuZezromu; futhi bathi u-Amuleki uqambe amanga kubo, futhi wadelela nomthetho wabo futhi ngokunjalo nezazimthetho zabo kanye nabehluleli babo.
- 3 Futhi phezu kwalokho babemthukuthelele u-Alima kanye no-Amuleki; ngenxa yokuthi babefakaze ngokusobala kakhulu maqondana nobubi babo, bafuna ukubabulala ngasese.
- 4 Kodwa kwenzeka ukuthi abakwenzanga lokho; kodwa babathatha bababopha ngezintambo eziqinile, babathatha babayisa phambi kukamehluleli omkhulu wezwe.
- 5 Futhi abantu beza phambili bafakaza ngabo—befakaza ukuthi babedelele umthetho, nezazimthetho zabo kanye nabehluleli bezwe, futhi ngokunjalo nabo bonke abantu ababesezweni; futhi phezu kwalokho befakaza ngokuthi kukhona uNkulunkulu oyedwa kuphela, futhi nokuthi uyothumela iNdodana yakhe phakathi kwabantu, kodwa yena akayikubasindisa; futhi nempela ziningi izinto ezifana nalezi abantu abafakaza ngazo ngo-Alima kanye nango-Amuleki. Manje lokhu kwenziwa phambi kukamehluleli omkhulu wezwe.
- 6 Futhi kwenzeka ukuthi uZezromu wamangala ngalamazwi ayekhulunyiwe; futhi phezu kwalokho wayazi mayelana nobumpumputhe bezingqondo, ayebenzile phakathi kwabantu ngamazwi akhe enkohliso; futhi umphefumulo wakhe waqala ukukhathazeka ngaphansi kukanembeza wecala lakhe; yebo, waqala ukuzungezwa wubuhlungu besihogo.

Alma 14

And it came to pass after he had made an end of speaking unto the people many of them did believe on his words, and began to repent, and to search the scriptures.

But the more part of them were desirous that they might destroy Alma and Amulek; for they were angry with Alma, because of the plainness of his words unto Zeezrom; and they also said that Amulek had lied unto them, and had reviled against their law and also against their lawyers and judges.

And they were also angry with Alma and Amulek; and because they had testified so plainly against their wickedness, they sought to put them away privily.

But it came to pass that they did not; but they took them and bound them with strong cords, and took them before the chief judge of the land.

And the people went forth and witnessed against them—testifying that they had reviled against the law, and their lawyers and judges of the land, and also of all the people that were in the land; and also testified that there was but one God, and that he should send his Son among the people, but he should not save them; and many such things did the people testify against Alma and Amulek. Now this was done before the chief judge of the land.

And it came to pass that Zeezrom was astonished at the words which had been spoken; and he also knew concerning the blindness of the minds, which he had caused among the people by his lying words; and his soul began to be harrowed up under a consciousness of his own guilt; yea, he began to be encircled about by the pains of hell.

7 Futhi kwenzeka ukuthi waqala wamemeza kubantu, ethi: Bhekani, ngingecala, futhi lamadoda awanasici phambi kukaNkulunkulu. Futhi waqala ukubancengela kusukela ngaleso sikhathi kuya phambili; kodwa bamthuka, bethi: Ngabe nawe usubanjwe ngudeveli na? Futhi bamphimisela ngamathe, bamxosha waphuma phakathi kwabo, futhi ngokunjalo nabo bonke labo ababekholelwa emazwini ayekhulunywe ngu-Alima kanye no-Amuleki; nabo baxosha bakhishelwa ngaphandle, futhi bathumela abantu ukuthi babakhande ngamatshe.

8 Futhi baletha abafazi babo kanye nabantwana babo ndawonye, kanye nabo bonke labo ababekholelwa noma ababefundiswe ukuthi bakholelwe ezwini likaNkulunkulu benza ukuthi bafakwe emlilweni; futhi phezu kwalokho baletha imibhalo yabo eyayiqukethe imibhalo engcwele, nayo bayiphonsa emlilweni futhi, ukuze nayo ishiswe futhi ishatshalaliswe ngomlilo.

9 Futhi kwenzeka ukuthi bathatha u-Alima kanye no-Amuleki, babathwala babayisa endaweni yokubulala abafela ukholo, ukuze bazibonele ukubhujiswa kwalabo ababeshiswa ngumlilo.

10 Futhi ngesikhathi u-Amuleki ebona ubuhlungu babesifazane kanye nobabantwana ababesha emlilweni, naye ngokunjalo waba nobuhlungu; wathi ku-Alima: Singasibukela kanjani lesisenzo esibuhlungu kangaka na? Ngakho-ke maselule izandla zethu, sisebenzise amandla kaNkulunkulu akithi, sibasindise emalangabini.

11 Kodwa u-Alima wathi kuye: Umoya uyangiphoqelela ukuthi ngingaseluli isandla sami; ngokuba bheka iNkosi iyabemukela phezulu kuyo, enkazimulweni, futhi ibavumele ukuthi bayenze lento, noma ukuthi abantu bayenze lento kubo, njengobulukhuni bezinhliziyo zabo, ukuze kuthi ukwahlulela eyokwenza phezu kwabo entukuthelweni yayo kube ngokulungileyo; futhi igazi labangenacala liyokuma njengobufakazi ngokumelene nabo, yebo, futhi likhale kakhulu ngokumelene nabo ngosuku lokugcina.

12 Manje u-Amuleki wathi ku-Alima: Bheka, mhlawumbe bazosishisa nathi futhi.

And it came to pass that he began to cry unto the people, saying: Behold, I am guilty, and these men are spotless before God. And he began to plead for them from that time forth; but they reviled him, saying: Art thou also possessed with the devil? And they spit upon him, and cast him out from among them, and also all those who believed in the words which had been spoken by Alma and Amulek; and they cast them out, and sent men to cast stones at them.

And they brought their wives and children together, and whosoever believed or had been taught to believe in the word of God they caused that they should be cast into the fire; and they also brought forth their records which contained the holy scriptures, and cast them into the fire also, that they might be burned and destroyed by fire.

And it came to pass that they took Alma and Amulek, and carried them forth to the place of martyrdom, that they might witness the destruction of those who were consumed by fire.

And when Amulek saw the pains of the women and children who were consuming in the fire, he also was pained; and he said unto Alma: How can we witness this awful scene? Therefore let us stretch forth our hands, and exercise the power of God which is in us, and save them from the flames.

But Alma said unto him: The Spirit constraineth me that I must not stretch forth mine hand; for behold the Lord receiveth them up unto himself, in glory; and he doth suffer that they may do this thing, or that the people may do this thing unto them, according to the hardness of their hearts, that the judgments which he shall exercise upon them in his wrath may be just; and the blood of the innocent shall stand as a witness against them, yea, and cry mightily against them at the last day.

Now Amulek said unto Alma: Behold, perhaps they will burn us also.

- 13 U-Alima wathi: Makube njengentando yeNkosi. Kodwa, bheka, umsebenzi wethu awukakapheli; ngakho-ke ngeke basishise.
- 14 Manje kwenzeka ukuthi ngesikhathi imizimba yalabo ababephonswe emlilweni isishile, ngokunjalo nemibhalo eyayiphonswe kanye nabo, umahluleli omkhulu wezwe weza wema phambi kuka-Alima kanye no-Amuleki, ngesikhathi besaboshiwe; wabashaya ngempama ezihlathini zabo, wathi kubo: Emva kwalokhu esenikubonile, nisazophinda futhi nishumayele kulaba bantu, ukuthi bayophonswa echibini lomlilo kanye nesibabuli na?
- 15 Bhekani, niyabona ukuthi anibanga namandla okubasindisa labo abebe phonswe emlilweni; ngisho noNkulunkulu akabasindisanga ngenxa yokuthi bebengabokholo lwenu. Futhi umahluleli waphinda wabashaya ezihlathini zabo, wabuza futhi wathi: Nithini-ke na?
- 16 Manje lomahluleli wayengokohlelo kanye nenkolo ka Nehori, owabulala uGidiyoni.
- 17 Futhi kwenzeka ukuthi u-Alima no-Amuleki abaphendulanga; waphinda wabashaya, futhi wabanika izinduna ukuthi baphonswe etilongweni.
- 18 Futhi ngesikhathi besaphonswe etilongweni izinsuku ezintathu, kwafika eziningi izazimthetho, nabehluleli, nabaphristi, kanye nabafundisi, okwakungabe mfundiso kaNehori; futhi beza bangena etilongweni ukuzobabona, bababuza ngamazwi amaningi; kodwa abazange babaphendule.
- 19 Futhi kwenzeka ukuthi umahluleli wema phambi kwabo, futhi wathi: Kungani ningawaphenduli amazwi alaba bantu na? Anazi yini ukuthi nginamandla okuthi ngininikele emalangabini na? Futhi wabayala ukuba bakhulume; kodwa abaphendulanga lutho.
- 20 Futhi kwenzeka ukuthi bemuka futhi bahamba ngezindlela zabo, kodwa baphinda babuya ngakusasa; umahluleli waphinda wabashaya futhi ezihlathini. Futhi baningi abaphinda beza phambili, bebashaya, bethi: Nisengaphinda futhi nime nahlulele laba bantu, futhi nisole umthetho wethu na? Uma ninamandla amakhulu kangaka pho kungani ningazikhululi na?

And Alma said: Be it according to the will of the Lord. But, behold, our work is not finished; therefore they burn us not.

Now it came to pass that when the bodies of those who had been cast into the fire were consumed, and also the records which were cast in with them, the chief judge of the land came and stood before Alma and Amulek, as they were bound; and he smote them with his hand upon their cheeks, and said unto them: After what ye have seen, will ye preach again unto this people, that they shall be cast into a lake of fire and brimstone?

Behold, ye see that ye had not power to save those who had been cast into the fire; neither has God saved them because they were of thy faith. And the judge smote them again upon their cheeks, and asked: What say ye for yourselves?

Now this judge was after the order and faith of Nehor, who slew Gideon.

And it came to pass that Alma and Amulek answered him nothing; and he smote them again, and delivered them to the officers to be cast into prison.

And when they had been cast into prison three days, there came many lawyers, and judges, and priests, and teachers, who were of the profession of Nehor; and they came in unto the prison to see them, and they questioned them about many words; but they answered them nothing.

And it came to pass that the judge stood before them, and said: Why do ye not answer the words of this people? Know ye not that I have power to deliver you up unto the flames? And he commanded them to speak; but they answered nothing.

And it came to pass that they departed and went their ways, but came again on the morrow; and the judge also smote them again on their cheeks. And many came forth also, and smote them, saying: Will ye stand again and judge this people, and condemn our law? If ye have such great power why do ye not deliver yourselves?

- 21 Futhi ziningi izinto ezinjengalezi abazisho kubo, begedla amazinyo abo kubo, futhi bebaphimisela nangamathe, futhi bethi: Siyobukeka kanjani uma sesilahliwe na?
- 22 Futhi ziningi izinto ezinjena abazisho, yebo, zonke izinhlobo zezinto ezinjalo bazikhuluma kubo; futhi ngalendlela nempela babahleka usulu izinsuku eziningi. Futhi babancisha ukudla ukuze balambe, namanzi ukuze bome; futhi babakhumula izingubo zabo ukuze babe nqunu; futhi ngaleyondlela baboshwa ngezintambo eziqinile, bavalelwa etilongweni.
- 23 Futhi kwenzeka emva kokuthi sebehlushwe ngaledlela izinsuku eziningi, (futhi kwakungosuku lweshumi nambili, enyangeni yeshumi, onyakeni weshumi wokubusa kwabehluleli phezu kwabantu baNefi) ukuthi umahluleli omkhulu ezweni lika-Amonihah kanye nabaningi babafundisi babo kanye nezazimthetho zabo bahamba bayongena etilongweni lapho u-Alima no-Amuleki babeboshelwe khona ngezintambo.
- 24 Umahluleli omkhulu wema phambi kwabo, waphinda wabashaya, wathi kubo: Uma ninamandla kaNkulunkulu zikhululeni kulezi zibopho, futhi siyokholwa ukuthi iNkosi izobabulala laba bantu njengokwamazwi enu.
- 25 Futhi kwenzeka ukuthi bonke bahamba bayobashaya, besho amazwi afanayo, ngisho kwaze kwafika kowokugcina; ngesikhathi owokugcina esekhulumile kubo amandla kaNkulunkulu aba phezu kuka-Alima no-Amuleki, baphakama bema ngezinyawo zabo.
- 26 Futhi u-Alima wamemeza ethi: Kuyoze kube nini sihlushwa yilezi zinkathazo ezinkulu kangaka, O Nkosi na? O Nkosi, siphe amandla ngokokholo lwethu olukuKristu, ngisho ngokwanele ukuba sikhululwe. Futhi bazigqashula izintambo ababeboshwe ngazo; ngesikhathi abantu bekubona lokhu, baqala babaleka, ngokuba ukwesaba ukubhujiswa kwase kufike phezu kwabo.

And many such things did they say unto them, gnashing their teeth upon them, and spitting upon them, and saying: How shall we look when we are damned?

And many such things, yea, all manner of such things did they say unto them; and thus they did mock them for many days. And they did withhold food from them that they might hunger, and water that they might thirst; and they also did take from them their clothes that they were naked; and thus they were bound with strong cords, and confined in prison.

And it came to pass after they had thus suffered for many days, (and it was on the twelfth day, in the tenth month, in the tenth year of the reign of the judges over the people of Nephi) that the chief judge over the land of Ammonihah and many of their teachers and their lawyers went in unto the prison where Alma and Amulek were bound with cords.

And the chief judge stood before them, and smote them again, and said unto them: If ye have the power of God deliver yourselves from these bands, and then we will believe that the Lord will destroy this people according to your words.

And it came to pass that they all went forth and smote them, saying the same words, even until the last; and when the last had spoken unto them the power of God was upon Alma and Amulek, and they rose and stood upon their feet.

And Alma cried, saying: How long shall we suffer these great afflictions, O Lord? O Lord, give us strength according to our faith which is in Christ, even unto deliverance. And they broke the cords with which they were bound; and when the people saw this, they began to flee, for the fear of destruction had come upon them.

27 Futhi kwenzeka ukuthi kwaba kukhulu kakhulu ukwesaba kwabo kangangokuthi bawela phansi, futhi abawutholanga umnyango oya ngaphandle kwetilongo; kwamazama kakhulu phansi, izindonga zetilongo zaqhekeka kabili, kangangokuthi zawela phansi; umahluleli omkhulu, nezazimthetho, nabaphristi, kanye nabafundisi, ababeshaya o-Alima no-Amuleki, babulawa wukuwa kwazo.

28 Futhi u-Alima kanye no-Amuleki baphuma etilongweni, futhi babengalimele; ngokuba iNkosi yayibanike amandla, ngokokholo lwabo olwalukuKristu. Futhi khona manjalo baphuma etilongweni; futhi bakhululwa ezibophweni zabo, futhi itilongo lase liwele phansi, kanye nabo bonke abantu ababengaphakathi kwezindonga zalo babulawa, ngaphandle kuka-Alima no-Amuleki; futhi khona manjalo baphuma baya edolobheni.

29 Manje abantu sebezwe umsindo omkhulu beza begijima babuthana ndawonye ngezixuku befuna ukwazi isizathu sawo; futhi ngesikhathi bebona u-Alima no-Amuleki beza bephuma etilongweni, futhi izindonga zalo seziwele phansi, bashaywa wukwesaba okukhulu, futhi babaleka phambi kuka-Alima beno-Amuleki ngisho njengembuzi ibaleka nezinyane layo emabhubesini amabili; futhi babaleka kanjalo-ke phambi kuka-Alima no-Amuleki.

And it came to pass that so great was their fear that they fell to the earth, and did not obtain the outer door of the prison; and the earth shook mightily, and the walls of the prison were rent in twain, so that they fell to the earth; and the chief judge, and the lawyers, and priests, and teachers, who smote upon Alma and Amulek, were slain by the fall thereof.

And Alma and Amulek came forth out of the prison, and they were not hurt; for the Lord had granted unto them power, according to their faith which was in Christ. And they straightway came forth out of the prison; and they were loosed from their bands; and the prison had fallen to the earth, and every soul within the walls thereof, save it were Alma and Amulek, was slain; and they straightway came forth into the city.

Now the people having heard a great noise came running together by multitudes to know the cause of it; and when they saw Alma and Amulek coming forth out of the prison, and the walls thereof had fallen to the earth, they were struck with great fear, and fled from the presence of Alma and Amulek even as a goat fleeth with her young from two lions; and thus they did flee from the presence of Alma and Amulek.

Alima 15

- 1 Futhi kwenzeka ukuthi u-Alima kanye no-Amuleki bayalwa ukuthi bemuke baphume kulelo dolobha; futhi bemuka, bahamba baze bafika ezweni laseSidomi; futhi bheka, lapho bathola bonke abantu ababemukile baphuma ezweni lakwa-Amonihah, ababe xoshiwe futhi bakhandwa nangamatshe, ngoba bekholelwa emazwini ka-Alima.
- 2 Futhi babaxoxela konke okwakwenzekile kubafazi babo kanye nakubantwana babo, futhi ngokunjalo ngokuphathelene nabo uqobo, kanye nanga mandla okukhululwa kwabo.
- 3 Futhi phezu kwalokho uZeezrom wayelele egula eSidomi, enomkhuhlane wokushisa, owawudalwe wukukhathazeka okukhulu komqondo wakhe ngenxa yo bubakhe, ngokuba wayecabanga ukuthi u-Alima no-Amuleki babengasekho; futhi wayecabanga ukuthi babebulewe ngenxa yobubi bakhe. Futhi lesi sono esikhulu, kanye nezinye eziningi izono zakhe, zawukhathaza umqondo wakhe waze waba nobuhlungu kakhulu, engenakukhululwa, ngakho-ke waqala wahlushwa wukushisa okuvuthayo.
- 4 Manje, ngesikhathi ezwa ukuthi u-Alima no-Amuleki babesezweni laseSidomi, inhliziyo yakhe yaqala ukuthi ibe nesibindi; wathumela umyalezo ngokushesha kubo, efisa ukuthi beze kuye.
- 5 Futhi kwenzeka ukuthi bahamba ngokushesha, belalela umyalezo ayewuthumele kubo; futhi bahamba bangena endlini kuye uZeezrom; bamthola elele embhedeni wakhe, egula, ephansi kakhulu ngenxa yomkhuhlane wokushisa; futhi umqondo wakhe nawo wawukhathazekile kakhulu ngenxa yobubi bakhe; ngesikhathi ebona welula isandla sakhe, wabancenga ukuthi bamelaphe.
- 6 Futhi kwenzeka ukuthi u-Alima wathi kuye, embamba ngesandla: Uyakholelwa yini emandleni kaKristu anele ukuba usindiswe na?
- 7 Yena waphendula wathi: Yebo, ngiyawakholwa wonke amazwi owafundisile.
- 8 Futhi u-Alima wathi: Uma ukhulelwa ekukhululweni kukaKristu ungaphiliswa.
- 9 Yena wathi: Yebo, ngiyakholwa ngokwamazwi akho.

Alma 15

And it came to pass that Alma and Amulek were commanded to depart out of that city; and they departed, and came out even into the land of Sidom; and behold, there they found all the people who had departed out of the land of Ammonihah, who had been cast out and stoned, because they believed in the words of Alma.

And they related unto them all that had happened unto their wives and children, and also concerning themselves, and of their power of deliverance.

And also Zeezrom lay sick at Sidom, with a burning fever, which was caused by the great tribulations of his mind on account of his wickedness, for he supposed that Alma and Amulek were no more; and he supposed that they had been slain because of his iniquity. And this great sin, and his many other sins, did harrow up his mind until it did become exceedingly sore, having no deliverance; therefore he began to be scorched with a burning heat.

Now, when he heard that Alma and Amulek were in the land of Sidom, his heart began to take courage; and he sent a message immediately unto them, desiring them to come unto him.

And it came to pass that they went immediately, obeying the message which he had sent unto them; and they went in unto the house unto Zeezrom; and they found him upon his bed, sick, being very low with a burning fever; and his mind also was exceedingly sore because of his iniquities; and when he saw them he stretched forth his hand, and besought them that they would heal him.

And it came to pass that Alma said unto him, taking him by the hand: Believest thou in the power of Christ unto salvation?

And he answered and said: Yea, I believe all the words that thou hast taught.

And Alma said: If thou believest in the redemption of Christ thou canst be healed.

And he said: Yea, I believe according to thy words.

- 10 Futhi emva kwalokho u-Alima wakhala eNkosini, ethi: O Nkosi Nkulunkulu wethu, yiba nomusa kulendoda, uyiphiliise ngokholo lwayo olukuKristu.
- 11 Futhi ngesikhathi u-Alima esewashilo lamazwi, uZezromu wathi lacu ngezinyawo zakhe, waqala ukuhamba; futhi lokhu kwenzeka kwamangalisa bonke abantu; futhi ulwazi lwalokhu lwahamba lwafinyelela ezweni lonke laseSidomi.
- 12 Futhi u-Alima wambhabhadisa uZezromu eNkosini; futhi waqala kusukela ngaleso sikhathi kuya phambili ukuthi ashumayele kubantu.
- 13 Futhi u-Alima wamisa ibandla ezweni laseSidomi, futhi wagcoba abaphristi kanye nabafundisi ezweni, ukuthi babhabhadise eNkosini noma ngubani owayenesifiso sokubhabhadiswa.
- 14 Futhi kwenzeka ukuthi babebaningi; ngokuba batheleka bevela kuzo zonke izifunda ezizungeze iSidomi, futhi babhabhadiswa.
- 15 Kodwa mayelana nabantu ababesezweni lakwa-Amoniha, babesasele njengabantu abanhliziyo lukhuni kanye nabangontamo lukhuni; futhi abaphendukanga ezonweni zabo, bethi wonke amandla ka-Alima no-Amuleki ngakadeveli; ngokuba babengabemfundiso ka Nehori, futhi abakholelwanga ekuphendukeni ezonweni zabo.
- 16 Futhi kwenzeka ukuthi u-Alima kanye no-Amuleki, u-Amuleki eseshiye igolide lakhe lonke, nesiliva, kanye nezinto zakhe eziyigugu, ezazisezweni lakwa-Amoniha, ngenxa yezwi likaNkulunkulu, enqatshwe yilabo abake baba ngabangani bakhe futhi ngokunjalo nanguyise kanye nezihlobo zakhe;
- 17 Ngakho-ke, emva kokuthi u-Alima esemise ibandla eSidomi, ebona ukuzilawula okukhulu, yebo ebona ukuthi abantu balawulwa ekuziqhenyeni kwabo, futhi baqala ukuzehlisa phambi kukaNkulunkulu, futhi baqala ukuqoqana ndawonye ezindaweni zabo ezingcwele ukuze badumise uNkulunkulu phambi kwe-altare, beqaphele futhi bethandaza bengaphezi, ukuthi bakhululwe kuSathane, nasekufeni, kanye nasekubhujisweni—

And then Alma cried unto the Lord, saying: O Lord our God, have mercy on this man, and heal him according to his faith which is in Christ.

And when Alma had said these words, Zeezrom leaped upon his feet, and began to walk; and this was done to the great astonishment of all the people; and the knowledge of this went forth throughout all the land of Sidom.

And Alma baptized Zeezrom unto the Lord; and he began from that time forth to preach unto the people.

And Alma established a church in the land of Sidom, and consecrated priests and teachers in the land, to baptize unto the Lord whosoever were desirous to be baptized.

And it came to pass that they were many; for they did flock in from all the region round about Sidom, and were baptized.

But as to the people that were in the land of Ammonihah, they yet remained a hard-hearted and a stiffnecked people; and they repented not of their sins, ascribing all the power of Alma and Amulek to the devil; for they were of the profession of Nehor, and did not believe in the repentance of their sins.

And it came to pass that Alma and Amulek, Amulek having forsaken all his gold, and silver, and his precious things, which were in the land of Ammonihah, for the word of God, he being rejected by those who were once his friends and also by his father and his kindred;

Therefore, after Alma having established the church at Sidom, seeing a great check, yea, seeing that the people were checked as to the pride of their hearts, and began to humble themselves before God, and began to assemble themselves together at their sanctuaries to worship God before the altar, watching and praying continually, that they might be delivered from Satan, and from death, and from destruction—

- 18 Manje njengoba ngishilo, u-Alima esezibonile
zonke lezi zinto, ngakho-ke wathatha u-Amuleki
weza naye ezweni lakwaZarahemla, futhi
wamthatha wamyisa emzini wakhe, futhi wamsiza
ekuhluphekeni kwakhe, wamqinisa eNkosini.
- 19 Futhi waphela kanjalo-ke unyaka weshumi
wokubusa kwabehluleli phezu kwabantu
bakwaNefi.

Now as I said, Alma having seen all these things,
therefore he took Amulek and came over to the land
of Zarahemla, and took him to his own house, and
did administer unto him in his tribulations, and
strengthened him in the Lord.

And thus ended the tenth year of the reign of the
judges over the people of Nephi.

Alima 16

- 1 Futhi kwenzeka ngonyaka weshumi nanye wokubusa kwabehluleli phezu kwabantu bakwaNefi, ngosuku lwesihlanu lwenyanga yesibili, kwakukade kukhona ukuthula okukhulu ezweni lakwaZarahemla, kwakukade kungekho zimpi namibango isikhathi seminyaka ethize, ngisho kuze kube ngosuku lwesihlanu lwenyanga yesibili onyakeni weshumi nanye, kwaba khona inhlokomo yempi eyezwakala kulo lonke izwe.
- 2 Ngokuba bheka, amabutho amaLamani ayesethubeleze eceleni kwehlane, angena emingceleni yezwe, ngisho nasedolobheni lakwa-Amoniha, futhi aqala ukubulala abantu abhubhisa nedolobha.
- 3 Manje kwenzeka, ngaphambi kokuthi amaNefi ahlanganise ibutho elanele ukuthi libaxoshe libakhiphe ezweni, base bebabulele abantu ababese dolobheni lakwa-Amoniha, futhi ngokunjalo nabanye ababezungeze imingcele yakwaNowa, bathatha abanye babathumbela ehlane.
- 4 Manje kwenzeka ukuthi amaNefi ayenesifiso sokulanda labo ababekade bethwaliwe bayothunjelwa ehlane.
- 5 Ngakho-ke, lowo owayebekwe ukuthi abe yinduna enkulu emabuthweni amaNefi, (igama lakhe kwakunguZoram, wayenamadodana amabili, uLehi kanye no-Aha)—manje uZoram kanye namadodana akhe amabili, bazi ukuthi u-Alima wayengumphristi omkhulu ebandleni, futhi sebezwile ukuthi wayenomoya wokuphrofetha, ngakho-ke baya kuye benesifiso sokwazi kuye ukuthi iNkosi yayifuna ukuthi baye ngakuphi ehlane ukuyofuna abafowabo, ababethathwe bathunjwa ngamaLamani.
- 6 Futhi kwenzeka ukuthi u-Alima wabuza eNkosini mayelana naloludaba. Emva kwalokho u-Alima wabuya wathi kubo: Bhekani, amaLamani azonqamula umfula iSidoni eningizimu nehlane, kude phezulu ngaphandle kwemingcele yezwe iManti. Futhi bhekani lapho niyohlangana nabo, empumalanga yomfula iSidoni, futhi lapho iNkosi iyobaletha kini abafowenu abathathiwe bathunjwa ngamaLamani.

Alma 16

And it came to pass in the eleventh year of the reign of the judges over the people of Nephi, on the fifth day of the second month, there having been much peace in the land of Zarahemla, there having been no wars nor contentions for a certain number of years, even until the fifth day of the second month in the eleventh year, there was a cry of war heard throughout the land.

For behold, the armies of the Lamanites had come in upon the wilderness side, into the borders of the land, even into the city of Ammonihah, and began to slay the people and destroy the city.

And now it came to pass, before the Nephites could raise a sufficient army to drive them out of the land, they had destroyed the people who were in the city of Ammonihah, and also some around the borders of Noah, and taken others captive into the wilderness.

Now it came to pass that the Nephites were desirous to obtain those who had been carried away captive into the wilderness.

Therefore, he that had been appointed chief captain over the armies of the Nephites, (and his name was Zoram, and he had two sons, Lehi and Aha)—now Zoram and his two sons, knowing that Alma was high priest over the church, and having heard that he had the spirit of prophecy, therefore they went unto him and desired of him to know whither the Lord would that they should go into the wilderness in search of their brethren, who had been taken captive by the Lamanites.

And it came to pass that Alma inquired of the Lord concerning the matter. And Alma returned and said unto them: Behold, the Lamanites will cross the river Sidon in the south wilderness, away up beyond the borders of the land of Manti. And behold there shall ye meet them, on the east of the river Sidon, and there the Lord will deliver unto thee thy brethren who have been taken captive by the Lamanites.

- 7 Futhi kwenzeka ukuthi uZoram kanye namadodana akhe bawelela ngaphesheya komfula iSidoni, namabutho abo, futhi bahamba njalo ngaphandle kwemingcele yase-Manti baya eningizimu yehlane, elalisempumalanga yomfula iSidoni.
- 8 Futhi batheleka phezu kwamabutho amaLamani, futhi amaLamani ahlakazwa axoshwa ayiswa ehlane; futhi bathatha abafowabo ababethathwe bathunjwa ngamaLamani, futhi kwakungekho namunye wabo owayelahlekile kulabo ababethunjiwe. Futhi babuyiswa ngabafowabo ukuze bathathe amazwe abo.
- 9 Waphela kanjalo-ke unyaka weshumi nanye wabehluleli, amaLamani exoshiwe akhishwa ezweni, futhi abantu bakwa-Amonihah babulawa; yebo, bonke abantu ababephila bama-Amonihah babulawa, futhi ngokunjalo nedolobha lawo elikhulu, ayethe uNkulunkulu ngeke akwazi ukulibhubhisa, ngenxa yobukhulu balo.
- 10 Kodwa bheka, ngelanga elilodwa lashiywa lingenamuntu; futhi izidumbu zoniwa yizinja nezilwane zasehlane.
- 11 Nokho, emva kwezinsuku eziningi izidumbu zabafuleyo babo zanzqwabelana phansi, futhi zazimbozwe ngomhlabathi omncane. Manje lalikhulu iphunga lazo kangokuthi abantu abayanga ukuyothatha lelizwe lakwa-Amonihah iminyaka eminingi. Futhi labizwa ngeNcithakalo yamaNehor; ngokuba labo babengabemfundiso ka Nehor; ababulawa; futhi amazwe abo asala engenamuntu.
- 12 Futhi amaLamani awabange esabuya futhi ukuzolwa namaNefi kwaze kwaba wunyaka weshumi nane wokubusa kwabehluleli phezu kwabantu baNefi. Futhi ngalendlela iminyaka emithathu abantu baNefi baba nokuthula njalo ezweni lonke.
- 13 U-Alima no-Amuleki bahamba beshumayela ukuphenduka ebantwini emathempelini abo, kanye nasezindlini zabo ezingcwele, futhi ngokunjalo nasema sinagogeni abo, ayakhiwe ngendlela yamaJuda.

And it came to pass that Zoram and his sons crossed over the river Sidon, with their armies, and marched away beyond the borders of Manti into the south wilderness, which was on the east side of the river Sidon.

And they came upon the armies of the Lamanites, and the Lamanites were scattered and driven into the wilderness; and they took their brethren who had been taken captive by the Lamanites, and there was not one soul of them had been lost that were taken captive. And they were brought by their brethren to possess their own lands.

And thus ended the eleventh year of the judges, the Lamanites having been driven out of the land, and the people of Ammonihah were destroyed; yea, every living soul of the Ammonihahites was destroyed, and also their great city, which they said God could not destroy, because of its greatness.

But behold, in one day it was left desolate; and the carcasses were mangled by dogs and wild beasts of the wilderness.

Nevertheless, after many days their dead bodies were heaped up upon the face of the earth, and they were covered with a shallow covering. And now so great was the scent thereof that the people did not go in to possess the land of Ammonihah for many years. And it was called Desolation of Nehors; for they were of the profession of Nehor, who were slain; and their lands remained desolate.

And the Lamanites did not come again to war against the Nephites until the fourteenth year of the reign of the judges over the people of Nephi. And thus for three years did the people of Nephi have continual peace in all the land.

And Alma and Amulek went forth preaching repentance to the people in their temples, and in their sanctuaries, and also in their synagogues, which were built after the manner of the Jews.

- 14 Futhi ngobuningi balabo ababethanda ukuzwa amazwi abo, bababela ngezwi likaNkulunkulu, bengakhethi bala lamuntu, njalonjalo.
- 15 Ngaleyondlela u-Alima no-Amuleki baqhubekela phambili, ngokunjalo nabanye abaningi ababekhethelwe lomsebenzi, ukuthi bashumayele izwi kulo lonke izwe. Ukwakhiwa kwebandla kwaba yinto evamile kulo lonke izwe, kuzo zonke izifunda ezizungezile, phakathi kwabo bonke abantu baNefi.
- 16 Futhi kwakungekho ukungalingani phakathi kwabo; iNkosi nempela yawuthela uMoya wayo kubo bonke ubuso bezwe ukulungiselela imiqondo yabantwana babantu, noma ukulungiselela izinhliziyi zabo ukuthi zemukele izwi okwakuzofanele lifundiswe phakathi kwabo ngesikhathi sokufika kwayo—
- 17 Ukuze bangabi lukhuni ngokumelene nezwi, ukuze bangabi ngabangakholwayo, bese beya ekonakalisweni kodwa ukuze balemukele izwi ngenjabulo, futhi njengegatsha baxhunyelelwe emvinini okuyiwonawona, ukuze bangene ekuphumuleni kweNkosi uNkulunkulu wabo.
- 18 Manje labo baphristi abahamba phakathi kwabantu bashumayela ngokumelene nakho konke ukuqamba amanga, nokukhohlisana, nomona, nempikiswano, nenzondo, nokuthukana, kanye nokweba, ukugcweleza, ukuphanga, ukubulala, ukuphinga, kanye nazo zonke izinhlobo zenkanuko, bememezela ukuthi lezi zinto akufanele zibe khona—
- 19 Beshumayela izinto okufanele ukuthi zenzeke masinyane; yebo, bephakamisa ukuza kweNdodana kaNkulunkulu, ukuhlupheka kanye nokufa kwayo, futhi ngokunjalo nokuvuka kwabafuleyo.
- 20 Futhi iningi labantu labuza mayelana nendawo lapho iNdodana kaNkulunkulu yayizofikela khona; futhi bafundiswa ukuthi iyovela kubo emva kokuvuka kwayo; futhi lokhu abantu bakwemukela ngenjabulo enkulu kanye nentokozo.

And as many as would hear their words, unto them they did impart the word of God, without any respect of persons, continually.

And thus did Alma and Amulek go forth, and also many more who had been chosen for the work, to preach the word throughout all the land. And the establishment of the church became general throughout the land, in all the region round about, among all the people of the Nephites.

And there was no inequality among them; the Lord did pour out his Spirit on all the face of the land to prepare the minds of the children of men, or to prepare their hearts to receive the word which should be taught among them at the time of his coming—

That they might not be hardened against the word, that they might not be unbelieving, and go on to destruction, but that they might receive the word with joy, and as a branch be grafted into the true vine, that they might enter into the rest of the Lord their God.

Now those priests who did go forth among the people did preach against all lyings, and deceivings, and envyings, and strifes, and malice, and revilings, and stealing, robbing, plundering, murdering, committing adultery, and all manner of lasciviousness, crying that these things ought not so to be—

Holding forth things which must shortly come; yea, holding forth the coming of the Son of God, his sufferings and death, and also the resurrection of the dead.

And many of the people did inquire concerning the place where the Son of God should come; and they were taught that he would appear unto them after his resurrection; and this the people did hear with great joy and gladness.

21 Manje emva kokuthi ibandla selimisiwe kulo lonke izwe—selithole ukunqoba phezu kukadeveli, izwi likaNkulunkulu selishunyayelwe ngobumsulwa balo ezweni lonke, iNkosi seyithele izibusiso zayo phezu kwabantu—kwaba sekuba ngukuphela konyaka weshumi nane wokubusa kwabehluleli phezu kwabantu baNefi.

And now after the church had been established throughout all the land—having got the victory over the devil, and the word of God being preached in its purity in all the land, and the Lord pouring out his blessings upon the people—thus ended the fourteenth year of the reign of the judges over the people of Nephi.

Indaba yamadodana kaMosiya, alabla amalungelo awo ombuso ngezwi likaNkulunkulu, abamba akbupbukela ezweni likaNefi ukuyoshumayela kumaLamani; izinblupbeko zawo kanye nokukbululwa kwaawo—ngokombhalo ka-Alima.

Alima 17

- 1 Manje kwenzeka ukuthi ngesikhathi u-Alima ehamba esuka ezweni lakwaGidiyoni eya ngaseningizimu, eya ezweni laseManti, bheka, wamangala, esehlangana namadodana kaMosiya ehamba eya ngasezweni lakwaZarahemla.
- 2 Manje lamadodana kaMosiya ayeno-Alima ngesikhathi ingelosi ifika okokuqala kuye; ngakho-ke u-Alima nempela wathokoza kakhulu ukubona abafowabo; futhi okwengeza kakhulu ekujabuleni kwakhe, ayeseyibo abafowabo eNkosini; yebo, futhi ayesekhule aqina olwazini lweqiniso; ngokuba ayengamadoda anokuqonda okuphelele futhi ayeseyi cwaningile imibhalo engcwele ngenkuthalo, ukuze alazi izwi likaNkulunkulu.
- 3 Kodwa akukhona konke lokhu; ayesezinikele kakhulu ekukhulekeni, kanye nasekuzileni ukudla; ngakho-ke ayesenomoya wokuphrofetha, kanye nomoya wokwambulelwa, futhi kwakuthi uma efundisa, ayefundisa ngamandla kanye nangegunya likaNkulunkulu.
- 4 Futhi ayekade efundisa izwi likaNkulunkulu isikhathi esingangeshumi nane leminyaka phakathi kwamaLamani, esebe nempumelelo enkulu ekuletheni abaningi ekulazini iqiniso; yebo, ngamandla amazwi awo abaningi balethwa phambi kwe-altare likaNkulunkulu, ukuthi babize igama lakhe futhi bavume izono zabo phambi kwakhe.
- 5 Manje lezi yizimo abahlangabezana nazo ohambweni lwabo, ngokuba baba neziningi izinkathazo; bezwa kakhulu, emzimbeni kanye nesengqondweni, njengendlala, wukoma kanye nokucobeka, futhi phezu kwalokho basebenza kakhulu ngokomoya.

An account of the sons of Mosiah, who rejected their rights to the kingdom for the word of God, and went up to the land of Nephi to preach to the Lamanites; their sufferings and deliverance—according to the record of Alma.

Alma 17

And now it came to pass that as Alma was journeying from the land of Gideon southward, away to the land of Manti, behold, to his astonishment, he met with the sons of Mosiah journeying towards the land of Zarahemla.

Now these sons of Mosiah were with Alma at the time the angel first appeared unto him; therefore Alma did rejoice exceedingly to see his brethren; and what added more to his joy, they were still his brethren in the Lord; yea, and they had waxed strong in the knowledge of the truth; for they were men of a sound understanding and they had searched the scriptures diligently, that they might know the word of God.

But this is not all; they had given themselves to much prayer, and fasting; therefore they had the spirit of prophecy, and the spirit of revelation, and when they taught, they taught with power and authority of God.

And they had been teaching the word of God for the space of fourteen years among the Lamanites, having had much success in bringing many to the knowledge of the truth; yea, by the power of their words many were brought before the altar of God, to call on his name and confess their sins before him.

Now these are the circumstances which attended them in their journeyings, for they had many afflictions; they did suffer much, both in body and in mind, such as hunger, thirst and fatigue, and also much labor in the spirit.

- 6 Manje nantu uhambo lwabo: Emva kokuthi sebemshiyile uyise, uMosiya, onyakeni wokuqala wokubusa kwabehluleli; bewunqabile umbuso uyise ayenesifiso sokubanikeza wona, futhi phezu kwalokho lokhu kwakuyizifiso zabantu;
- 7 Nokho bahamba baphuma ezweni lakwaZarahemla, bathatha izinkemba zabo, nemikhonto yabo, neminsalo yabo, nemicibisholo yabo, kanye nezihlilingi zabo; futhi lokhu bakwenza ukuze bazitholele ukudla ngesikhathi besehlane.
- 8 Bahamba kanjalo-ke baya ehlane kanye nesibalo ababesikhethile, ukuthi bahambe bakhuphukele ezweni lakwaNefi, ukuze bayoshumayela izwi likaNkulunkulu kumaLamani.
- 9 Futhi kwenzeka ukuthi bahamba izinsuku eziningi ehlane, futhi bazila ukudla kakhulu bakhuleka kakhulu ukuthi iNkosi ibaphe inxenyekamaMoya wayo ukuthi ahambe nabo, futhi ahlale nabo, ukuze babe ngabasetshenziswa nguNkulunkulu ukuthi balethe, uma kwakungenzeka, abafowabo, amaLamani, olwazini lweqiniso, olwazini lobubi bamasiko oyise, ayengalungile.
- 10 Futhi kwenzeka ukuthi iNkosi nempela yabavakashela ngo Moya wayo, futhi yathi kubo: Duduzekani. Futhi baduduzeka.
- 11 Futhi iNkosi yaphinda yathi kubo: Hambani niye phakathi kwamaLamani, abafowenu, nimise izwi lami; kepha nibe nokubekezela ekubeni nenhliziyo ende kanye nasezinkathazweni, ukuze nibe yizibonelo ezinhle kubo ngami, futhi ngizonenza abasetshenziswa yimi ukuze kusindiswe abantu abaningi.
- 12 Futhi kwenzeka ukuthi izinhliziyozamadodana kaMosiya, ngokunjalo nalabo ababe nabo, bama isibindi ukuthi baqhubekele phambili kuwo amaLamani ukuthi bamemezele kuwo izwi likaNkulunkulu.
- 13 Futhi kwenzeka ngesikhathi sebefike emingceleni yezwe lamaLamani, bazehlukanisa bahamba ngamunye ngamunye, bethembele eNkosini ukuthi babezobuye bahlangane futhi ekupheleni kwesivuno sabo; ngokuba babecabanga ukuthi wawumkhulu lomsebenzi ababezithwese wona.

Now these were their journeyings: Having taken leave of their father, Mosiah, in the first year of the judges; having refused the kingdom which their father was desirous to confer upon them, and also this was the minds of the people;

Nevertheless they departed out of the land of Zarahemla, and took their swords, and their spears, and their bows, and their arrows, and their slings; and this they did that they might provide food for themselves while in the wilderness.

And thus they departed into the wilderness with their numbers which they had selected, to go up to the land of Nephi, to preach the word of God unto the Lamanites.

And it came to pass that they journeyed many days in the wilderness, and they fasted much and prayed much that the Lord would grant unto them a portion of his Spirit to go with them, and abide with them, that they might be an instrument in the hands of God to bring, if it were possible, their brethren, the Lamanites, to the knowledge of the truth, to the knowledge of the baseness of the traditions of their fathers, which were not correct.

And it came to pass that the Lord did visit them with his Spirit, and said unto them: Be comforted. And they were comforted.

And the Lord said unto them also: Go forth among the Lamanites, thy brethren, and establish my word; yet ye shall be patient in long-suffering and afflictions, that ye may show forth good examples unto them in me, and I will make an instrument of thee in my hands unto the salvation of many souls.

And it came to pass that the hearts of the sons of Mosiah, and also those who were with them, took courage to go forth unto the Lamanites to declare unto them the word of God.

And it came to pass when they had arrived in the borders of the land of the Lamanites, that they separated themselves and departed one from another, trusting in the Lord that they should meet again at the close of their harvest; for they supposed that great was the work which they had undertaken.

14 Eqinisweni wawumkhulu, ngokuba babezithwese ukushumayela izwi likaNkulunkulu kubantu ababeyimidlwembe belukhuni futhi benobudlova; abantu ababethokoziswa wukubulala amaNefi, nokuwagcweleza kanye nokuwaphanga; futhi izinhliziyi zabo babezibeke engcebweni, noma kulo igolide nesiliva, kanye namatshe ayigugu; kepha babefuna ukuzithola lezi zinto ngokubulala kanye nokuphanga, ukuze bangazisebenzeli ngezandla zabo uqobo.

15 Ngaleyondlela babengabantu abavilaphayo kakhulu, abaningi babo babekhonzisa izithixo, futhi isiqalekiso sikaNkulunkulu sasiwele phezu kwabo ngenxa yamasiko oyise, nakuba izethembiso zeNkosi zazalulelwe kubo uma babephenduka.

16 Ngakho-ke, lokhu kwakuyisizathu esenza ukuthi amadodana kaMosiya azithwese lomsebenzi, ukuze mhlawumbe abalethe ekuphendukeni; ukuze mhlawumbe abalethe ekwazini ngesu lokukhululwa.

17 Ngakho-ke bazehlukanisa omunye komunye, futhi bahamba baya phakathi kwabo, wonke umuntu ngayedwa, ngokwezwi kanye nangamandla kaNkulunkulu ayenikezwe bona.

18 Manje u-Amoni emkhulu phakathi kwabo, noma-ke ngokuyikho wabasiza, futhi wase emuka kubo, emva kokuthi esebabusi ngokwezikhundla zabo ezahlukeni, esabelene nabo ngezwi likaNkulunkulu, noma esebasizile ngaphambi kokuhamba kwakhe; futhi ngaleyondlela bathatha izindlela zabo ezahlukeni kulo lonke izwe.

19 Futhi u-Amoni wahamba waya ezweni lakwa-Ishmayeli, izwe elaqanjwa ngamadodana ka-Ishmayeli, nawo aba ngamaLamani.

20 Futhi ngesikhathi u-Amoni engena ezweni lakwa-Ishmayeli, amaLamani amthatha futhi ambopha, njengoba kwakuyisiko lawo ukuthi abophe wonke amaNefi ayeweze ezandleni zawo, bese bewathwala bewayisa phambi kwenkosi; futhi ngaleyondlela kwakuba sentandweni yenkosi ukuthi ibabulale noma ibagcine besekuthunjweni, noma ibaphose etilongweni, noma ibaxoshe baphume ezweni layo, ngokwesifiso nangokuthanda kwayo.

And assuredly it was great, for they had undertaken to preach the word of God to a wild and a hardened and a ferocious people; a people who delighted in murdering the Nephites, and robbing and plundering them; and their hearts were set upon riches, or upon gold and silver, and precious stones; yet they sought to obtain these things by murdering and plundering, that they might not labor for them with their own hands.

Thus they were a very indolent people, many of whom did worship idols, and the curse of God had fallen upon them because of the traditions of their fathers; notwithstanding the promises of the Lord were extended unto them on the conditions of repentance.

Therefore, this was the cause for which the sons of Mosiah had undertaken the work, that perhaps they might bring them unto repentance; that perhaps they might bring them to know of the plan of redemption.

Therefore they separated themselves one from another, and went forth among them, every man alone, according to the word and power of God which was given unto him.

Now Ammon being the chief among them, or rather he did administer unto them, and he departed from them, after having blessed them according to their several stations, having imparted the word of God unto them, or administered unto them before his departure; and thus they took their several journeys throughout the land.

And Ammon went to the land of Ishmael, the land being called after the sons of Ishmael, who also became Lamanites.

And as Ammon entered the land of Ishmael, the Lamanites took him and bound him, as was their custom to bind all the Nephites who fell into their hands, and carry them before the king; and thus it was left to the pleasure of the king to slay them, or to retain them in captivity, or to cast them into prison, or to cast them out of his land, according to his will and pleasure.

21 Ngakho-ke u-Amoni wathwalwa wayiswa phambi kwenkosi eyayibusa ezweni lakwa-Ishmayeli; igama layo kwakunguLamoni; futhi yabe ingowozalo luka-Ishmayeli.

22 Futhi iNkosi yabuza ku-Amoni ukuthi ngabe kwakuyisifiso sakhe yini ukuthi ahlale ezweni phakathi kwamaLamani, noma phakathi kwabantu bakhe.

23 U-Amoni wathi kuyo: Yebo, ngifisa ukuthi ngihlale phakathi kwalaba bantu okwesikhashana; yebo, futhi mhlawumbe kuze kube wusuku lokufa kwami.

24 Futhi kwenzeka ukuthi inkosi uLamoni yathokoza kakhulu ngo-Amoni, futhi yenza ukuthi izibopho zakhe zixegiswe; futhi yayifuna nokuthi u-Amoni athathe enye yamadodakazi ayo ibe ngumkakhe.

25 Kodwa u-Amoni wathi kuyo: Cha, kodwa ngizoba yinceku yakho. Ngakho-ke u-Amoni waba yinceku enkosini uLamoni. Futhi kwenzeka ukuthi wabekwa phakathi kwezinye izinceku ukuthi aqaphele imfuyo kaLamoni, njengokwesiko lamaLamani.

26 Futhi emva kokuthi esesebenzele inkosi izinsuku ezintathu, ngesikhathi enezinceku ezingamaLamani besahamba nemihlambi yabo beya endaweni yamanzi, eyayibizwa ngokuthi ngamanzi aseSebu, kanye nawo wonke amaLamani besaqhuba imihlambi yabo beya lapho, ukuze ithole amanzi—

27 Ngakho-ke, ngesikhathi u-Amoni kanye nezinceku zenkosi besaqhuba imihlambi yabo beya kulendawo yamanzi, bheka, isibalo esithile samaLamani, ayekade enemihlambi yawo emanzini, ama ayihlakaza imihlambi ka-Amoni kanye neyezinceku zenkosi, futhi ayihlakaza kangangokuthi yabaleka ngezindlela eziningi.

28 Manje izinceku zenkosi zaqala ukuvungama, zithi: Manje inkosi izosibulala, njengoba yenza kubafowethu ngenxa yokuthi imihlambi yabo yayihlakaziwe ngobubi balamadoda. Futhi zaqala zakhihla isililo kakhulu, zithi: Bhekani, imihlambi yethu vele isihlakaziwe.

And thus Ammon was carried before the king who was over the land of Ishmael; and his name was Lamoni; and he was a descendant of Ishmael.

And the king inquired of Ammon if it were his desire to dwell in the land among the Lamanites, or among his people.

And Ammon said unto him: Yea, I desire to dwell among this people for a time; yea, and perhaps until the day I die.

And it came to pass that king Lamoni was much pleased with Ammon, and caused that his bands should be loosed; and he would that Ammon should take one of his daughters to wife.

But Ammon said unto him: Nay, but I will be thy servant. Therefore Ammon became a servant to king Lamoni. And it came to pass that he was set among other servants to watch the flocks of Lamoni, according to the custom of the Lamanites.

And after he had been in the service of the king three days, as he was with the Lamanitish servants going forth with their flocks to the place of water, which was called the water of Sebus, and all the Lamanites drive their flocks hither, that they may have water—

Therefore, as Ammon and the servants of the king were driving forth their flocks to this place of water, behold, a certain number of the Lamanites, who had been with their flocks to water, stood and scattered the flocks of Ammon and the servants of the king, and they scattered them insomuch that they fled many ways.

Now the servants of the king began to murmur, saying: Now the king will slay us, as he has our brethren because their flocks were scattered by the wickedness of these men. And they began to weep exceedingly, saying: Behold, our flocks are scattered already.

- 29 Manje bakhihla isililo ngenxa yokwesaba ukubulawa. Manje ngesikhathi u-Amoni ekubona lokhu inhliziyo yakhe yagcwala injabulo; ngokuba, wathi, ngizobakhombisa amandla ami laba engisebenza nabo, noma amandla akimi, ngokubuyisela lemihlambi enkosini, ukuze ngizuze izinhliziyo zalaba engisebenza nabo, ukuze ngibaholele ekutheni bakholelwe emazwini ami.
- 30 Manje, lokhu kwakuyimicabango ka-Amoni, ngesikhathi ebona izinkathazo zalabo ayebabiza ngokuthi bangabafowabo.
- 31 Futhi kwenzeka ukuthi wabancenga ngamazwi akhe, ethi: Bafowethu, yimani isibindi futhi masihambe siyoyifuna imihlambi, futhi sizoyiqoqela ndawonye siyibuyisele endaweni yamanzi; futhi ngaleyondlela sizoyigcinela inkosi imihlambi yayo futhi ngeke isibulale.
- 32 Futhi kwenzeka ukuthi bahamba bayoyifuna imihlambi, futhi nempela bamlandela u-Amoni, baphuthuma baya phambili ngokushesha okukhulu futhi nempela bayinqanda imihlambi yenkosi, bayiqoqela ndawonye futhi endaweni yamanzi.
- 33 Futhi lawo madoda aphinde ama futhi ukuze ayihlakaze imihlambi yabo; kodwa u-Amoni wathi kubafowabo: Zungezani imihlambi nxazonke ukuze ingabaleki; mina ngizohamba ngiyolwa nalamadoda ahlakaza imihlambi yethu.
- 34 Ngakho-ke, benza njengoba u-Amoni ayebayalile, yena wahamba waya phambili wayolwa nalabo abebemi ngasemanzini aseSebu; futhi ngesibalo babengebancane.
- 35 Ngakho-ke abamesabanga u-Amoni, ngokuba babecabanga ukuthi oyedwa wabo wayengambulala ngokwentando yabo, ngokuba babengazi ukuthi iNkosi yayimthembisile uMosiya ukuthi iyowakhulula amadodana akhe ezandleni zawo; futhi babengazi lutho mayelana neNkosi; ngakho-ke babethokoza ekonakalisweni kwabafowabo; futhi ngalesi sizathu babemela ukuhlakaza imihlambi yenkosi.

Now they wept because of the fear of being slain. Now when Ammon saw this his heart was swollen within him with joy; for, said he, I will show forth my power unto these my fellow-servants, or the power which is in me, in restoring these flocks unto the king, that I may win the hearts of these my fellow-servants, that I may lead them to believe in my words.

And now, these were the thoughts of Ammon, when he saw the afflictions of those whom he termed to be his brethren.

And it came to pass that he flattered them by his words, saying: My brethren, be of good cheer and let us go in search of the flocks, and we will gather them together and bring them back unto the place of water; and thus we will preserve the flocks unto the king and he will not slay us.

And it came to pass that they went in search of the flocks, and they did follow Ammon, and they rushed forth with much swiftness and did head the flocks of the king, and did gather them together again to the place of water.

And those men again stood to scatter their flocks; but Ammon said unto his brethren: Encircle the flocks round about that they flee not; and I go and contend with these men who do scatter our flocks.

Therefore, they did as Ammon commanded them, and he went forth and stood to contend with those who stood by the waters of Sebus; and they were in number not a few.

Therefore they did not fear Ammon, for they supposed that one of their men could slay him according to their pleasure, for they knew not that the Lord had promised Mosiah that he would deliver his sons out of their hands; neither did they know anything concerning the Lord; therefore they delighted in the destruction of their brethren; and for this cause they stood to scatter the flocks of the king.

36 Kodwa u-Amoni wama ngaphambili waqala ukubakhanda ngamatshe ngesihlilingi sakhe; yebo, ngamandla akhe amakhulu nempela wabajikijela ngamatshe; futhi ngaleyondlela wabulala idlanzana elithize lawo kangangokuthi aqala ukwethuswa ngamandla akhe; nokho athukuthela ngenxa yokubulawa kwabafowabo, futhi aphikelela efuna ukuthi awe; ngakho-ke, ebona ukuthi ayengakwazi ukumshaya ngamatshe awo, eza kuye nezagila ezombulala.

37 Kodwa bheka, wonke umuntu owayephakamisa isagila sakhe ukuthi ashaye u-Amoni, wamshaya wamsusa ingalo yakhe ngenkemba yakhe; ngokuba nempela wawamela amagalelo awo ngokuwashaya izingalo zawo ngokudla kwenkemba yakhe, kangangokuthi aqala ukwethuka, futhi aqala ukumbalekela; yebo, futhi ayengemancane ngokwesibalo; futhi wenza ukuthi abaleke ngamandla engalo yakhe.

38 Manje abayisithupha babo base bewile ngesihlilingi, kodwa akabulalanga namunye ngaphandle komholi wabo ngenkemba yakhe; futhi wabashaya wabanquma izingalo zabo abaningi abaziphakamisela kuye, futhi babengembalwa.

39 Futhi ngesikhathi esewaqhubile wawayisa kude, wabuya futhi baphuzisa imihlambi yabo bayibuyisela emadlelweni enkosi, futhi emva kwalokho bahamba baya enkosini, bethwele izingalo ezazinqunywe ngenkemba ka-Amoni, zalabo ababefuna ukumbulala; futhi zathwalwa zayiswa enkosini ukuthi zibe ngubufakazi bezinto ababezenzile.

But Ammon stood forth and began to cast stones at them with his sling; yea, with mighty power he did sling stones amongst them; and thus he slew a certain number of them insomuch that they began to be astonished at his power; nevertheless they were angry because of the slain of their brethren, and they were determined that he should fall; therefore, seeing that they could not hit him with their stones, they came forth with clubs to slay him.

But behold, every man that lifted his club to smite Ammon, he smote off their arms with his sword; for he did withstand their blows by smiting their arms with the edge of his sword, insomuch that they began to be astonished, and began to flee before him; yea, and they were not few in number; and he caused them to flee by the strength of his arm.

Now six of them had fallen by the sling, but he slew none save it were their leader with his sword; and he smote off as many of their arms as were lifted against him, and they were not a few.

And when he had driven them afar off, he returned and they watered their flocks and returned them to the pasture of the king, and then went in unto the king, bearing the arms which had been smitten off by the sword of Ammon, of those who sought to slay him; and they were carried in unto the king for a testimony of the things which they had done.

Alima 18

- 1 Futhi kwenzeka ukuthi inkosi uLamoni wenza ukuthi izinceku zakhe zime phambili futhi zifakaze ngazo zonke izinto ezazizibonile mayelana naloludaba.
- 2 Futhi emva kokuthi sezifakazile zonke ngezinto ezazizibonile, futhi isithole ulwazi ngokwethembeka kuka-Amoni ekugcineni imihlambi yakhe, futhi ngokunjalo nangamandla akhe amakhulu ekulweni nalabo ababefuna ukumbulala, yamangala kakhulu, futhi yathi: Ngempela, lona ungaphezulu komuntu. Bhekani, ngabe lona akayena yini uMoya oMkhulu othumela izijeziso ezinkulu kangaka phezu kwalaba bantu, ngenxa yokubulala kwabo na?
- 3 Futhi zayiphendula inkosi, zathi: Noma ngabe unguMoya oMkhulu noma ungumuntu, asazi; kodwa yilokhu esikwaziyo, ukuthi akanakubulawa yizitha zenkosi; futhi ngeke zihlakaze imihlambi yenkosi uma enathi, ngenxa yobungcweti bakhe kanye namandla amakhulu; ngakho-ke, siyazi ukuthi ungumngani enkosini. Manje, O nkosi, asikholwa ukuthi indoda ingaba namandla amakhulu kangaka, ngokuba siyazi ukuthi akanakubulawa.
- 4 Manje, ngesikhathi inkosi izwa lamazwi, yathi kuzo: Manje sengiyazi ukuthi unguMoya oMkhulu; futhi uze phansi ngalesi sikhathi ukuze avikele izimpilo zenu, ukuze nginganibulali njengoba ngenza kubafowenu. Manje lona nguMoya oMkhulu obaba bethu abakhuluma ngaye.
- 5 Manje lokhu kwakuyisiko likaLamoni, ayelithole kuyise, ukuthi kwakukhona uMoya oMkhulu. Nakuba babekhohlelwa kuye uMoya oMkhulu, babecabanga ukuthi noma ngabe yini ababeyenza yayilungile; nokho uLamoni waqala ukwesaba kakhulu, esaba ukuthi hleze wayenze okungalungile ngokubulala izinceku zakhe;
- 6 Ngokuba wayesebulele eziningi zazo ngenxa yokuthi abafowabo babehlakaze imihlambi yabo endaweni yamanzi; futhi, ngenxa yokuthi imihlambi yabo yahlakazwa babulawa.

Alma 18

And it came to pass that king Lamoni caused that his servants should stand forth and testify to all the things which they had seen concerning the matter.

And when they had all testified to the things which they had seen, and he had learned of the faithfulness of Ammon in preserving his flocks, and also of his great power in contending against those who sought to slay him, he was astonished exceedingly, and said: Surely, this is more than a man. Behold, is not this the Great Spirit who doth send such great punishments upon this people, because of their murders?

And they answered the king, and said: Whether he be the Great Spirit or a man, we know not; but this much we do know, that he cannot be slain by the enemies of the king; neither can they scatter the king's flocks when he is with us, because of his expertness and great strength; therefore, we know that he is a friend to the king. And now, O king, we do not believe that a man has such great power, for we know he cannot be slain.

And now, when the king heard these words, he said unto them: Now I know that it is the Great Spirit; and he has come down at this time to preserve your lives, that I might not slay you as I did your brethren. Now this is the Great Spirit of whom our fathers have spoken.

Now this was the tradition of Lamoni, which he had received from his father, that there was a Great Spirit. Notwithstanding they believed in a Great Spirit, they supposed that whatsoever they did was right; nevertheless, Lamoni began to fear exceedingly, with fear lest he had done wrong in slaying his servants;

For he had slain many of them because their brethren had scattered their flocks at the place of water; and thus, because they had had their flocks scattered they were slain.

- 7 Manje kwakuyinjwayelo yala maLamani ukuthi ame ngasemanzini aseSebu ukuze ahlakaze imihlambi yabantu, ukuze ngalokho aqhube eminingi eyayihlakazekele ezweni labo, lokhu kwakuwumkhuba wokuphanga phakathi kwabo.
- 8 Futhi kwenzeka ukuthi inkosi uLamoni wabuza ezincekwini zakhe, ethi: Iphi yona le ndoda enamandla amakhulu kangaka na?
- 9 Zathi kuyo: Bheka, ipha amahhashi akho. Manje inkosi yayikade iyale izinceku zayo, ngaphambi kwesikhathi sokuyophuzisa imihlambi yazo, ukuthi kufanele zilungise amahhashi kanye nezinqola zayo, ukuze ziyiyise ezweni lakwaNefi; ngokuba kwakukade kukhona idili elikhulu elalenziwe ezweni lakwaNefi, nguyise kaLamoni, owayeyinkosi phezu kwalo lonke lelozwe.
- 10 Manje ngesikhathi inkosi uLamoni izwa ukuthi u-Amoni wayelungisa amahhashi kanye nezinqola zayo yamangala kakhulu, ngenxa yokwethembeka kuka-Amoni, ithi: Ngempela akukaze kube khona nayinye inceku phakathi kwezinceku zami zonke eyake yethembeka kangaka njenga le ndoda; ngokuba ikhumbula ngisho yonke imiyalelo yami ukuthi iyenze.
- 11 Manje ngempela sengiyazi ukuthi lona nguMoya oMkhulu, futhi ngiyafisa ukuthi eze kimi, kodwa ngeke ngilinge.
- 12 Futhi kwenzeka ukuthi ngesikhathi u-Amoni esewalungisile amahhashi kanye nezinqola zenkosi kanye nezincku zayo, wahamba waya enkosini, futhi wabona ukuthi ubuso benkosi babushintshile; ngakho-ke wayesezophindela emuva aphume aphele phambi kwayo.
- 13 Futhi enye yezinceku zenkosi yathi kuye, Rabana, okungukuthi, ngokuhunyushwa, onamandla noma nkosi enkulu, ngokubona ukuthi amakhosi abo ayenamandla; futhi ngalamagama yathi kuye: Rabana, inkosi inesifiso sokuthi uhlale.
- 14 Ngakho-ke u-Amoni waphendukela enkosini, wathi kuyo: Ngabe ufuna ukuthi ngikwenzeleni, O nkosi na? Inkosi ayimphendulanga isikhathi esingangehora, ngokwesikhathi sabo, ngokuba yayingazi ukuthi yayizothini kuye.

Now it was the practice of these Lamanites to stand by the waters of Sebus to scatter the flocks of the people, that thereby they might drive away many that were scattered unto their own land, it being a practice of plunder among them.

And it came to pass that king Lamoni inquired of his servants, saying: Where is this man that has such great power?

And they said unto him: Behold, he is feeding thy horses. Now the king had commanded his servants, previous to the time of the watering of their flocks, that they should prepare his horses and chariots, and conduct him forth to the land of Nephi; for there had been a great feast appointed at the land of Nephi, by the father of Lamoni, who was king over all the land.

Now when king Lamoni heard that Ammon was preparing his horses and his chariots he was more astonished, because of the faithfulness of Ammon, saying: Surely there has not been any servant among all my servants that has been so faithful as this man; for even he doth remember all my commandments to execute them.

Now I surely know that this is the Great Spirit, and I would desire him that he come in unto me, but I durst not.

And it came to pass that when Ammon had made ready the horses and the chariots for the king and his servants, he went in unto the king, and he saw that the countenance of the king was changed; therefore he was about to return out of his presence.

And one of the king's servants said unto him, Rabbanah, which is, being interpreted, powerful or great king, considering their kings to be powerful; and thus he said unto him: Rabbanah, the king desireth thee to stay.

Therefore Ammon turned himself unto the king, and said unto him: What wilt thou that I should do for thee, O king? And the king answered him not for the space of an hour, according to their time, for he knew not what he should say unto him.

- 15 Futhi kwenzeka ukuthi u-Amoni waphinda wathi kuyo: Ngabe ufisani kimi na? Kodwa inkosi ayimphendulanga.
- 16 Futhi kwenzeka ukuthi u-Amoni, egwaliswe ngoMoya kaNkulunkulu, ngakho-ke wayibona imicabango yenkosi. Futhi wathi kuyo: Ngabe kungenxa yokuthi uzwe ukuthi ngivikele izinceku zakho kanye nemihlambi yakho, futhi ngabulala abayisikhombisa babafowabo ngesihlilingi kanye nangenkemba, futhi nganquma izingalo zabanye, ukuze ngivikele imihlambi yakho kanye nezinceku zakho; bheka, ngabe yikho yini lokhu okwenza umangale na?
- 17 Ngithi kuwe, kwenziwa yini, ukuthi ukumangala kwakho kube kukhulu kangaka na? Bheka, ngingumuntu, futhi ngiyinceku yakho; ngakho-ke, noma ngabe yini oyifisayo elungile, ngizoyenza.
- 18 Manje ngesikhathi inkosi isizwe lamazwi, yamangala futhi, ngokuba yabona ukuthi u-Amoni wayekwazi ukubona imicabango yayo; kodwa naphezu kwalokho, inkosi uLamoni yawuvula umlomo wayo, yathi kuye: Ungubani na? Ngabe uyilowo Moya oMkhulu, owazi izinto zonke na?
- 19 U-Amoni waphendula wathi kuyo: Angisiyena.
- 20 Futhi inkosi yathi: Uyazi kanjani pho imicabango yenhliziyoyami na? Ungakhuluma ngesibindi futhi ungitshela mayelana nalezi zinto; futhi uphinde ungitshela ukuthi kungamaphi amandla obulele ngawo futhi wanquma izingalo zabafowethu abahlakaza imihlambi yami—
- 21 Manje, uma ungangitshela mayelana nalezi zinto, noma ngabe yini oyifisayo ngizokunika; futhi uma kunesidingo, ngizokuqapha ngamabutho ami; kodwa ngiyazi ukuthi wena unamandla ngaphezu kwabo bonke; noma kunjalo, noma ngabe yini oyifuna kimi ngizokunikeza yona.
- 22 Manje u-Amoni ehlakaniphile, nokho engenabungozi, wathi kuLamoni: Uzowalalela yini amazwi ami, uma ngikutshela ukuthi lezi zinto ngizenza ngamaphi amandla na? Yilokhu engikufuna kuwe.
- 23 Futhi inkosi yamphendula, yathi: Yebo, ngizowakholwa wonke amazwi akho. Futhi ngalendlela wayibamba ngokuhlakanipha.

And it came to pass that Ammon said unto him again: What desirest thou of me? But the king answered him not.

And it came to pass that Ammon, being filled with the Spirit of God, therefore he perceived the thoughts of the king. And he said unto him: Is it because thou hast heard that I defended thy servants and thy flocks, and slew seven of their brethren with the sling and with the sword, and smote off the arms of others, in order to defend thy flocks and thy servants; behold, is it this that causeth thy marvelings?

I say unto you, what is it, that thy marvelings are so great? Behold, I am a man, and am thy servant; therefore, whatsoever thou desirest which is right, that will I do.

Now when the king had heard these words, he marveled again, for he beheld that Ammon could discern his thoughts; but notwithstanding this, king Lamoni did open his mouth, and said unto him: Who art thou? Art thou that Great Spirit, who knows all things?

Ammon answered and said unto him: I am not.

And the king said: How knowest thou the thoughts of my heart? Thou mayest speak boldly, and tell me concerning these things; and also tell me by what power ye slew and smote off the arms of my brethren that scattered my flocks—

And now, if thou wilt tell me concerning these things, whatsoever thou desirest I will give unto thee; and if it were needed, I would guard thee with my armies; but I know that thou art more powerful than all they; nevertheless, whatsoever thou desirest of me I will grant it unto thee.

Now Ammon being wise, yet harmless, he said unto Lamoni: Wilt thou hearken unto my words, if I tell thee by what power I do these things? And this is the thing that I desire of thee.

And the king answered him, and said: Yea, I will believe all thy words. And thus he was caught with guile.

24 Futhi u-Amoni waqala ukukhuluma kuyo ngesibindi, wathi kuyo: Uyakholelwa yini ukuthi ukhona uNkulunkulu na?

25 Yaphendula, yathi kuye: Angazi ukuthi lokho kusho ukuthini.

26 Emva kwalokho u-Amoni wathi: Uyakholelwa yini ukuthi kukhona uMoya oMkhulu na?

27 Yathi, Yebo.

28 Futhi u-Amoni wathi: Lona nguNkulunkulu. U-Amoni waphinda wathi kuyo: Uyakholelwa yini ukuthi lo Moya oMkhulu, onguNkulunkulu, wadala zonke izinto ezisezulwini kanye nezisemhlabeni na?

29 Yathi: Yebo, ngiyakholelwa ukuthi wadala zonke izinto ezisemhlabeni; kodwa angiwazi amazulu.

30 U-Amoni wathi kuyo: Amazulu yindawo lapho uNkulunkulu ehlala khona kanye nazo zonke izingelosi zakhe ezingcwele.

31 Inkosi uLamoni yathi: Ngabe angaphezulu komhlaba na?

32 U-Amoni wathi: Yebo, futhi ubuka phansi kubo bonke abantwana babantu; futhi uyazi yonke imicabango kanye nezinjongo zenhliziyi; ngokuba ngesandla sakhe bonke badalwa kusukela ekuqaleni.

33 Futhi inkosi uLamoni yathi: Ngiyazikholelwa zonke lezi zinto osuzikhulumile. Ngabe wena uthunywe nguNkulunkulu na?

34 U-Amoni wathi kuyo: Mina ngingumuntu; futhi umuntu ekuqaleni wadalwa ngomfanekiso kaNkulunkulu, futhi ngithole ubizo ngoMoya wakhe oNgcwele ukuthi ngifundise ngalezi zinto kulaba bantu, ukuze balethwe olwazini lwalokho okulungile futhi nokuyiqiniso;

35 Futhi inxenye yalowo Moya ihleli kimi, enginika ulwazi, futhi ngokunjalo namandla ngokokholo kanye nezifiso zami ezikuNkulunkulu.

And Ammon began to speak unto him with boldness, and said unto him: Believest thou that there is a God?

And he answered, and said unto him: I do not know what that meaneth.

And then Ammon said: Believest thou that there is a Great Spirit?

And he said, Yea.

And Ammon said: This is God. And Ammon said unto him again: Believest thou that this Great Spirit, who is God, created all things which are in heaven and in the earth?

And he said: Yea, I believe that he created all things which are in the earth; but I do not know the heavens.

And Ammon said unto him: The heavens is a place where God dwells and all his holy angels.

And king Lamoni said: Is it above the earth?

And Ammon said: Yea, and he looketh down upon all the children of men; and he knows all the thoughts and intents of the heart; for by his hand were they all created from the beginning.

And king Lamoni said: I believe all these things which thou hast spoken. Art thou sent from God?

Ammon said unto him: I am a man; and man in the beginning was created after the image of God, and I am called by his Holy Spirit to teach these things unto this people, that they may be brought to a knowledge of that which is just and true;

And a portion of that Spirit dwelleth in me, which giveth me knowledge, and also power according to my faith and desires which are in God.

36 Manje ngesikhathi u-Amoni esewashilo lamazwi, waqala ekudalweni komhlaba, futhi ngokunjalo nokudalwa kuka-Adamu, futhi wayitshela ngazo zonke izinto mayelana nokuwa komuntu, futhi wayilandisa futhi wabeka phambi kwayo imibhalo kanye nemibhalo engcwele yabantu, okwakukhulunywe ngayo ngabaphrofethi, ngisho kwehla kuya phansi esikhathini leso uyise, uLehi, eshiya eJerusalema.

37 Futhi phezu kwalokho wabalandisa (ngokuba kwakuyinkosi kanye nezinceku zayo) lonke uhambo loyise ehlane, kanye nakho konke ukuhlupheka kwabo ngendlala kanye nangokoma, kanye noku khandleka kwabo, njalo njalo.

38 Futhi waphinde wabalandisa mayelana nokuhlubuka kukaLamani benoLemuweli, kanye namamadodana ka-Ishmayeli, yebo, konke ukuhlubuka kwabo wabaxoxela ngakho; futhi wabachazela ngayo yonke imibhalo kanye nemibhalo engcwele kusukela ngesikhathi uLehi esuka eJerusalema kwehla kuze kube sesikhathini samanje.

39 Kodwa lokhu akusikho konke; ngokuba wabachazela nangesu lokukhululwa, elalungiswa kusukela ekusekelweni somhlaba; futhi waphinde wabazisa mayelana nokuza kukaKristu, kanye nayo yonke imisebenzi yeNkosi wabazisa yona.

40 Futhi kwenzeka ukuthi emva kokuthi esezishilo zonke lezi zinto, futhi esezichazile enkosini, inkosi yawakholelwa wonke amazwi akhe.

41 Futhi yaqala ukukhala eNkosini ithi: O Nkosi, yiba nomusa; ngobuningi bomusa wakho obe nawo ebantwini baNefi, yiba nawo kimi, kanye nakubantu bami.

42 Manje, ngesikhathi isikushilo lokhu, yawela phansi, kwaba sengathi ifile.

43 Futhi kwenzeka ukuthi izinceku zayo zayithatha zayithwala zayisa kumkayo, futhi zayilalisa embhedeni wayo; yalala sengathi ifile isikhathi esingangezinsuku ezimbili kanye nobusuku obubili; futhi umkayo, kanye namadodana ayo, kanye namadodakazi ayo bayikhalela, ngendlela yamaLamani, balila kakhulu ngenxa yokulahleka kwayo.

Now when Ammon had said these words, he began at the creation of the world, and also the creation of Adam, and told him all the things concerning the fall of man, and rehearsed and laid before him the records and the holy scriptures of the people, which had been spoken by the prophets, even down to the time that their father, Lehi, left Jerusalem.

And he also rehearsed unto them (for it was unto the king and to his servants) all the journeyings of their fathers in the wilderness, and all their sufferings with hunger and thirst, and their travail, and so forth.

And he also rehearsed unto them concerning the rebellions of Laman and Lemuel, and the sons of Ishmael, yea, all their rebellions did he relate unto them; and he expounded unto them all the records and scriptures from the time that Lehi left Jerusalem down to the present time.

But this is not all; for he expounded unto them the plan of redemption, which was prepared from the foundation of the world; and he also made known unto them concerning the coming of Christ, and all the works of the Lord did he make known unto them.

And it came to pass that after he had said all these things, and expounded them to the king, that the king believed all his words.

And he began to cry unto the Lord, saying: O Lord, have mercy; according to thy abundant mercy which thou hast had upon the people of Nephi, have upon me, and my people.

And now, when he had said this, he fell unto the earth, as if he were dead.

And it came to pass that his servants took him and carried him in unto his wife, and laid him upon a bed; and he lay as if he were dead for the space of two days and two nights; and his wife, and his sons, and his daughters mourned over him, after the manner of the Lamanites, greatly lamenting his loss.

Alima 19

- 1 Futhi kwenzeka ukuthi emva kwezinsuku ezimbili kanye nobusuku obubili base bezowuthatha umzimba wayo bawubeke ethuneni, ababelenzile ngenhloso yokungcwaba abafileyo babo.
- 2 Manje indlovukazi isizwile ngodumo luka-Amoni, ngakho-ke yathumela inesifiso sokuthi eze kuyo.
- 3 Futhi kwenzeka ukuthi u-Amoni wenza njengoba ayeyaliwe, futhi wahamba waya kuyo indlovukazi, enesifiso sokwazi ukuthi yayifuna ukuthi ayenzeleni.
- 4 Futhi yathi kuye: Izinceku zomyeni wami zingazise ukuthi wena ungumphrofethi kaNkulunkulu ongcwele, nokuthi wena unamandla okwenza eminingi imisebenzi emikhulu ngegama lakhe;
- 5 Ngakho-ke, uma lokhu kunjalo, ngifuna ukuthi uhambe ungene endlini ubone umyeni wami, ngokuba selokhu elele embhedeni wakhe isikhathi esingangezinsuku ezimbili kanye nobusuku obubili; futhi abanye bathi akafile, kodwa abanye bathi usefile nokuthi useyanuka, futhi nokuthi sekufanele abekwe ethuneni; kodwa ngokwami, kimi akanuki.
- 6 Manje, lokhu yikho u-Amoni ayekufisa, ngokuba wayazi ukuthi inkosi uLamoni yayingaphansi kwamandla kaNkulunkulu; wayazi ukuthi isisitho esimnyama sokungakholwa sasisuswa engqondweni yakhe, futhi ukukhanya okwakhanyisa ingqondo yakhe, okwakuwukhanya kwenkazimulo kaNkulunkulu, okwakuwukhanya okumangalisayo kobuhle bakhe—yebo, lokhu kukhanya kwakulethe injabulo enkulu emphefumulweni wakhe, ifu lobumnyama selisusiwe, nokuthi ukukhanya kokuphila okuphakade kwakukhanyisiwe emphefumulweni wakhe, yebo, wayazi ukuthi lokhu kwakulunqobile uhlaka lwakhe lwemvelo, futhi wayehlwithiwe ekuNkulunkulu.
- 7 Ngakho-ke, lokho indlovukazi eyayikufisa kuye kwakuyisifiso sakhe naye. Ngakho-ke, wangena wayoyibona inkosi njengoba indlovukazi yayikade ifisile; futhi wayibona inkosi, futhi wayazi ukuthi yayingafile.

Alma 19

And it came to pass that after two days and two nights they were about to take his body and lay it in a sepulchre, which they had made for the purpose of burying their dead.

Now the queen having heard of the fame of Ammon, therefore she sent and desired that he should come in unto her.

And it came to pass that Ammon did as he was commanded, and went in unto the queen, and desired to know what she would that he should do.

And she said unto him: The servants of my husband have made it known unto me that thou art a prophet of a holy God, and that thou hast power to do many mighty works in his name;

Therefore, if this is the case, I would that ye should go in and see my husband, for he has been laid upon his bed for the space of two days and two nights; and some say that he is not dead, but others say that he is dead and that he stinketh, and that he ought to be placed in the sepulchre; but as for myself, to me he doth not stink.

Now, this was what Ammon desired, for he knew that king Lamoni was under the power of God; he knew that the dark veil of unbelief was being cast away from his mind, and the light which did light up his mind, which was the light of the glory of God, which was a marvelous light of his goodness—yea, this light had infused such joy into his soul, the cloud of darkness having been dispelled, and that the light of everlasting life was lit up in his soul, yea, he knew that this had overcome his natural frame, and he was carried away in God—

Therefore, what the queen desired of him was his only desire. Therefore, he went in to see the king according as the queen had desired him; and he saw the king, and he knew that he was not dead.

- 8 Futhi wathi kuyo indlovukazi: Ayifile, kodwa ilele kuNkulunkulu, futhi izophinda ivuke kusasa futhi; ngakho-ke ningayingcwabi.
- 9 Futhi u-Amoni wathi kuyo: Uyakukholwa yini lokhu na? Yathi kuye: Anginafakazi ngaphandle kwezwi lakho, kanye nezwi lezinceku zethu; nokho ngiyakholwa ukuthi kuzokuba njengoba ushilo.
- 10 U-Amoni wathi kuyo: Ubusisiwe ngenxa yokholo lwakho olukhulu; ngithi kuwe; Mame, akukaze kube khona ukholo olukhulu kangaka phakathi kwabo bonke abantu bamaNefi.
- 11 Futhi kwenzeka ukuthi yawubheka umbhede womenyi wayo, kusukela ngaleso sikhathi ngisho kwaze kwaba yileso sikhathi sangakusasa u-Amoni ayesishilo ukuthi izovuka ngaso.
- 12 Futhi kwenzeka ukuthi yavuka, njengokwamazwi ka-Amoni; ngesikhathi ivuka, yelulela isandla sayo kowesifazane, yathi: Libusisiwe igama likaNkulunkulu, futhi nawe ubusisiwe.
- 13 Ngokuba njengoba uqinisekile ngokuphila kwakho, bheka, ngimbonile uMkhululi wami; futhi uyoza, futhi uyozalwa ngowesifazane, uyokhulula bonke abantu abakholwa egameni lakhe. Manje ngesikhathi isiwashilo lamazwi, inhliziyo yayo yakhukhumala ngaphakathi kwayo, yaphinda yawa yinjabulo; indlovukazi nayo ngokunjalo yawa phansi, yenganywe nguMoya.
- 14 Manje u-Amoni ewubona uMoya weNkosi uthelwa ngokwemikhuleko yakhe phezu kwamaLamani, abafowabo, ababeyimbangela yokukhala okukhulu kangaka phakathi kwamaNefi, noma phakathi kwabo bonke abantu baNkulunkulu ngenxa yobubi babo kanye namasiko abo, wawa ngamadolo akhe, waqala ukukhuleka ngokushisekela okukhulu kanye nokubonga kuNkulunkulu ngalokho ayekwenzele abafowabo; futhi naye ngokunjalo wenganywa yinjabulo; ngenxa yalokho bonke bobathathu bawela phansi.
- 15 Manje, ngesikhathi izinceku zenkosi sezibonile ukuthi babewile, nazo ngokunjalo zaqala ukukhala kuNkulunkulu, ngokuba ukwesaba iNkosi kwase kufikile nakuzo ngokunjalo, ngokuba kwakuyizo ezazimi phambi kwenkosi futhi zifakaza kuyo mayelana namandla amakhulu ka-Amoni.

And he said unto the queen: He is not dead, but he sleepeth in God, and on the morrow he shall rise again; therefore bury him not.

And Ammon said unto her: Believest thou this? And she said unto him: I have had no witness save thy word, and the word of our servants; nevertheless I believe that it shall be according as thou hast said.

And Ammon said unto her: Blessed art thou because of thy exceeding faith; I say unto thee, woman, there has not been such great faith among all the people of the Nephites.

And it came to pass that she watched over the bed of her husband, from that time even until that time on the morrow which Ammon had appointed that he should rise.

And it came to pass that he arose, according to the words of Ammon; and as he arose, he stretched forth his hand unto the woman, and said: Blessed be the name of God, and blessed art thou.

For as sure as thou livest, behold, I have seen my Redeemer; and he shall come forth, and be born of a woman, and he shall redeem all mankind who believe on his name. Now, when he had said these words, his heart was swollen within him, and he sunk again with joy; and the queen also sunk down, being overpowered by the Spirit.

Now Ammon seeing the Spirit of the Lord poured out according to his prayers upon the Lamanites, his brethren, who had been the cause of so much mourning among the Nephites, or among all the people of God because of their iniquities and their traditions, he fell upon his knees, and began to pour out his soul in prayer and thanksgiving to God for what he had done for his brethren; and he was also overpowered with joy; and thus they all three had sunk to the earth.

Now, when the servants of the king had seen that they had fallen, they also began to cry unto God, for the fear of the Lord had come upon them also, for it was they who had stood before the king and testified unto him concerning the great power of Ammon.

16 Futhi kwenzeka ukuthi nempela zalibiza igama leNkosi, ngamandla azo, ngisho kwaze kwaba zonke ziwela phansi, ngaphandle koyedwa wesifazane owayengumLamani, ogama lakhe kwakungu-Abishi, owayekade ephendukele eNkosini eminyakeni eminingi, ngenxa yombono owawumangalisa kakhulu kayise—

17 Ngakho-ke, esephendukele eNkosini, futhi engazange akwembule lokhu, ngakho-ke, ngesikhathi ebona ukuthi zonke izinceku zikaLamoni zase ziwela phansi, futhi ngokunjalo nenkosazana yakhe, indlovukazi, kanye nenkosi, kanye no-Amoni belele uyaca phansi, wayazi ukuthi kwakungamandla kaNkulunkulu; futhi ecabanga ukuthi leli kwakuyithuba, lokuthi azise abantu ngalokho okwakwenzekile phakathi kwabo, ukuthi ngokusibona lesi sehlakalo kwakuzobenza ukuthi bakholwe emandleni kaNkulunkulu, ngakho-ke wagijima wayongena umuzi nomuzi, azisa abantu.

18 Futhi baqala ukubuthana ndawonye emzini wenkosi. Futhi kweza isixuku, futhi ngokumangala, bayibona inkosi, nendlovukazi, kanye nezinceku zabo belele uyaca phansi, bonke babe lele lapho sengathi bafike; futhi phezu kwalokho bambona u-Amoni, futhi bheka, wayengumNefi.

19 Manje abantu baqala ukuvungama phakathi kwabo; abanye bethi kwakungububi obukhulu lobu obabufike kubo, noma enkosini kanye nendlu yayo, ngenxa yokuthi yayivumele umNefi ukuthi ahlale kulelizwe.

20 Kodwa abanye babathethisa, bethi: Inkosi izilethele yona lobubi phezu kwendlu yayo, ngenxa yokuthi yabulala izinceku zayo ezazihlakazelwe umhlambi wazo emanzini aseSebu.

21 Futhi phezu kwalokho bathethiswa yilawo madoda ayemi emanzini aseSebu futhi ehlakaza imihlambi okwakungeyenkosi, ngokuba ayemthukuthethele u-Amoni ngenxa yesibalo sabafowabo ababulala emanzini aseSebu, ngesikhathi evikela imihlambi yenkosi.

And it came to pass that they did call on the name of the Lord, in their might, even until they had all fallen to the earth, save it were one of the Lamanitish women, whose name was Abish, she having been converted unto the Lord for many years, on account of a remarkable vision of her father—

Thus, having been converted to the Lord, and never having made it known, therefore, when she saw that all the servants of Lamoni had fallen to the earth, and also her mistress, the queen, and the king, and Ammon lay prostrate upon the earth, she knew that it was the power of God; and supposing that this opportunity, by making known unto the people what had happened among them, that by beholding this scene it would cause them to believe in the power of God, therefore she ran forth from house to house, making it known unto the people.

And they began to assemble themselves together unto the house of the king. And there came a multitude, and to their astonishment, they beheld the king, and the queen, and their servants prostrate upon the earth, and they all lay there as though they were dead; and they also saw Ammon, and behold, he was a Nephite.

And now the people began to murmur among themselves; some saying that it was a great evil that had come upon them, or upon the king and his house, because he had suffered that the Nephite should remain in the land.

But others rebuked them, saying: The king hath brought this evil upon his house, because he slew his servants who had had their flocks scattered at the waters of Sebus.

And they were also rebuked by those men who had stood at the waters of Sebus and scattered the flocks which belonged to the king, for they were angry with Ammon because of the number which he had slain of their brethren at the waters of Sebus, while defending the flocks of the king.

- 22 Manje, omunye wabo, owayenomfowabo owayebulewe ngenkemba ka-Amoni, emthukethelele kakhulu u-Amoni, wahosha inkemba yakhe waya phambili ukuze ayiwisele phezu kuka-Amoni, ukuze ambulale; ngesikhathi ephakamisa inkemba yakhe ukuthi amshaye, bheka, wawa wafa.
- 23 Manje siyabona ukuthi u-Amoni wayengabulaleki, ngokuba iNkosi yayithe kuMosiya, uyise: ngiyomsindisa, futhi kuyoba kuye njengokokholo lwakho—ngakho-ke, uMosiya wamnikela eNkosini.
- 24 Futhi kwenzeka ukuthi ngesikhathi isixuku sibona ukuthi lendoda yabe isiwile yafa, eyayiphakamise inkemba ukuthi ibulale u-Amoni, bafikelwa ngukwesaba bonke, futhi abazange besalokotha nakancane belula izandla zabo ukuthi bamthinte noma omunye walabo ababewile; futhi baqala ukumangala futhi phakathi kwabo ukuthi ngabe ayebangwa yini lamandla amakhulu kangaka, noma ngabe zonke lezi zinto zazisho ukuthini.
- 25 Futhi kwenzeka ukuthi kwakukhona abanengi phakathi kwabo ababethi u-Amoni wayengu Moya oMkhulu, futhi abanye bethi wayethunyelwe nguMoya oMkhulu;
- 26 Kodwa abanye babebathethisa bonke, bethi wayeyisilwane esesabekayo, esasithunyiwe sisuka kumaNefi ukuthi sizobahlupha.
- 27 Futhi kwakukhona abanye ababethi u-Amoni wayethunywe nguMoya oMkhulu ukuthi azobakhathaza ngenxa yobubi babo; futhi nokuthi kwakunguMoya oMkhulu owabe selokhu ubheke amaNefi, owabe uhleze uwakhulula ezandleni zabo; futhi babethi kwakuyiwo lo Moya oMkhulu owubulale abanengi kangaka babafowabo, amaLamani.
- 28 Futhi ngenxa yalokhu umbango waqala ukuthi ube mkhulu kakhulu phakathi kwabo. Futhi ngesikhathi besalokhu bebanga kanjalo, incekekazi eyayenze ukuthi isixuku siqoqane ndawonye yeza, futhi ngesikhathi ibona lombango owawuphakathi kwesixuku yaba nokudabuka okukhulu, kangangokuthi yaze yakhala izinyembezi.

Now, one of them, whose brother had been slain with the sword of Ammon, being exceedingly angry with Ammon, drew his sword and went forth that he might let it fall upon Ammon, to slay him; and as he lifted the sword to smite him, behold, he fell dead.

Now we see that Ammon could not be slain, for the Lord had said unto Mosiah, his father: I will spare him, and it shall be unto him according to thy faith—therefore, Mosiah trusted him unto the Lord.

And it came to pass that when the multitude beheld that the man had fallen dead, who lifted the sword to slay Ammon, fear came upon them all, and they durst not put forth their hands to touch him or any of those who had fallen; and they began to marvel again among themselves what could be the cause of this great power, or what all these things could mean.

And it came to pass that there were many among them who said that Ammon was the Great Spirit, and others said he was sent by the Great Spirit;

But others rebuked them all, saying that he was a monster, who had been sent from the Nephites to torment them.

And there were some who said that Ammon was sent by the Great Spirit to afflict them because of their iniquities; and that it was the Great Spirit that had always attended the Nephites, who had ever delivered them out of their hands; and they said that it was this Great Spirit who had destroyed so many of their brethren, the Lamanites.

And thus the contention began to be exceedingly sharp among them. And while they were thus contending, the woman servant who had caused the multitude to be gathered together came, and when she saw the contention which was among the multitude she was exceedingly sorrowful, even unto tears.

- 29 Futhi kwenzeka ukuthi yahamba futhi yayithatha indlovukazi ngesandla, ukuze mhlawumbe iyiphakamise; futhi masinyane emva kokuthinta isandla sayo yavuka futhi yazimela ngezinyawo zayo, futhi yakhala ngezwi elikhulu, ithi: O ubusisiwe Jesu, ongisindise esihogweni esesabekayo! O ubusisiwe Nkulunkulu, yiba nomusa kulaba bantu!
- 30 Futhi ngesikhathi isikushilo lokhu, yashaya izandla zayo, igcwaliswe ngenjabulo, ikhuluma amazwi amaningi ayengaqondakali; futhi ngesikhathi isikwenzile lokhu, yathatha inkosi, uLamoni, ngesandla, futhi bheka nayo yavuka yema ngezinyawo zayo.
- 31 Futhi nayo, ngokushesha, ibona umbango phakathi kwabantu bayo, yaya kubo yaqala ukubathethisa, kanye nokubafundisa amazwi eyayiwazwile ephuma emlonyeni ka-Amoni; futhi ngobuningi balabo abawezwa amazwi ayo bakholwa, futhi baphendukela eNkosini.
- 32 Kodwa kwakukhona abaningi phakathi kwabo abangafunanga ukuwezwa amazwi ayo; ngakho-ke bahamba indlela yabo.
- 33 Futhi kwenzeka ukuthi ngesikhathi u-Amoni evuka futhi naye ngokunjalo wabasiza, futhi ngokunjalo nazo zonke izinceku zikaLamoni; futhi bonke nempela bamemezela ebantwini into efanayo—ukuthi izinhliziyi zabo zase zishintshile; nokuthi base bengasenasifiso sokwenza okubi.
- 34 Futhi bheka, abaningi nempela bamemezela kubantu ukuthi babebone izingelosi futhi baxoxa nazo; futhi ngenxa yalokho zabatshela izinto zikaNkulunkulu, kanye nezokulunga kwakhe.
- 35 Futhi kwenzeka ukuthi kwabakhona abaningi abakholwa emazwini abo; futhi ngobuningi balabo abakholwa babhabhadiswa; futhi baba ngabantu abalungile, futhi nempela balimisa ibandla phakathi kwabo.
- 36 Futhi ngaleyondlela umsebenzi weNkosi nempela waqala phakathi kwamaLamani; ngakho-ke iNkosi yaqala ukuthela uMoya wayo phezu kwabo; futhi siyabona ukuthi ingalo yayo yelulelwe kubo bonke abantu abayophenduka futhi bakholwe egameni layo.

And it came to pass that she went and took the queen by the hand, that perhaps she might raise her from the ground; and as soon as she touched her hand she arose and stood upon her feet, and cried with a loud voice, saying: O blessed Jesus, who has saved me from an awful hell! O blessed God, have mercy on this people!

And when she had said this, she clasped her hands, being filled with joy, speaking many words which were not understood; and when she had done this, she took the king, Lamoni, by the hand, and behold he arose and stood upon his feet.

And he, immediately, seeing the contention among his people, went forth and began to rebuke them, and to teach them the words which he had heard from the mouth of Ammon; and as many as heard his words believed, and were converted unto the Lord.

But there were many among them who would not hear his words; therefore they went their way.

And it came to pass that when Ammon arose he also administered unto them, and also did all the servants of Lamoni; and they did all declare unto the people the selfsame thing—that their hearts had been changed; that they had no more desire to do evil.

And behold, many did declare unto the people that they had seen angels and had conversed with them; and thus they had told them things of God, and of his righteousness.

And it came to pass that there were many that did believe in their words; and as many as did believe were baptized; and they became a righteous people, and they did establish a church among them.

And thus the work of the Lord did commence among the Lamanites; thus the Lord did begin to pour out his Spirit upon them; and we see that his arm is extended to all people who will repent and believe on his name.

Alima 20

- 1 Futhi kwenzeka ukuthi ngesikhathi sebelimisile ibandla kulelozwe, inkosi uLamoni yaba nesifiso sokuthi u-Amoni ahambe nayo aye ezweni likaNefi, ukuze imkhombise uyise.
- 2 Izwi leNkosi lafika ku-Amoni, lithi: Ungahambi ukhuphukele ezweni likaNefi, ngokuba bheka, inkosi izofuna impilo yakho; kodwa uyoya ezweni laseMidoni; ngokuba bheka, umfowenu u-Aroni, futhi ngokunjalo noMuloki kanye no-Ama basetlongweni.
- 3 Manje kwenzeka ukuthi ngesikhathi u-Amoni esekuzwile lokhu, wathi kuLamoni: Bheka, umnewethu kanye nabafowethu basetlongweni eMidoni, futhi ngizohamba ukuze ngiyobakhulula.
- 4 Manje uLamoni wathi ku-Amoni: Ngiyazi, ngamandla eNkosi ungakwazi ukwenza zonke izinto. Kodwa bheka, ngizohamba nawe siye ezweni laseMidoni; ngokuba inkosi yezwe laseMidoni, egama layo lingu-Antiyomino, ingumngani wami; ngakho-ke ngizoya ezweni laseMidoni, ukuze ngiyincenge inkosi yezwe, futhi izobakhipha abafowenu etilongweni. Manje uLamoni wathi kuye: Ngubani okutshela ukuthi abafowenu basetlongweni na?
- 5 U-Amoni wathi kuye: Akekho ongitshelile, ngaphandle kukaNkulunkulu; futhi uthe kimi—Hamba uyokhulula abafowenu, ngokuba basetlongweni ezweni laseMidoni.
- 6 Manje ngesikhathi uLamoni esekuzwile lokhu wenza ukuthi izinceku zakhe zilungise amahhashi kanye nezinqola zakhe.
- 7 Futhi wathi ku-Amoni: Woza, ngizohamba nawe sehlele ezweni lase Midoni, futhi lapho ngiyoyincenga inkosi ukuthi ibakhiphe abafowenu etilongweni.
- 8 Futhi kwenzeka ukuthi ngesikhathi u-Amoni kanye noLamoni besahamba beya lapho, bahlangana noyise kaLamoni, owayeyinkosi ezweni lonke.
- 9 Bheka, uyise kaLamoni wathi kuye: Awuzanga ngani edilini ngaloluyasuku olukhulu ngesikhathi ngenzele amadodana ami, kanye nabantu bami idili na?

Alma 20

And it came to pass that when they had established a church in that land, that king Lamoni desired that Ammon should go with him to the land of Nephi, that he might show him unto his father.

And the voice of the Lord came to Ammon, saying: Thou shalt not go up to the land of Nephi, for behold, the king will seek thy life; but thou shalt go to the land of Middoni; for behold, thy brother Aaron, and also Muloki and Ammah are in prison.

Now it came to pass that when Ammon had heard this, he said unto Lamoni: Behold, my brother and brethren are in prison at Middoni, and I go that I may deliver them.

Now Lamoni said unto Ammon: I know, in the strength of the Lord thou canst do all things. But behold, I will go with thee to the land of Middoni; for the king of the land of Middoni, whose name is Antiomno, is a friend unto me; therefore I go to the land of Middoni, that I may flatter the king of the land, and he will cast thy brethren out of prison. Now Lamoni said unto him: Who told thee that thy brethren were in prison?

And Ammon said unto him: No one hath told me, save it be God; and he said unto me—Go and deliver thy brethren, for they are in prison in the land of Middoni.

Now when Lamoni had heard this he caused that his servants should make ready his horses and his chariots.

And he said unto Ammon: Come, I will go with thee down to the land of Middoni, and there I will plead with the king that he will cast thy brethren out of prison.

And it came to pass that as Ammon and Lamoni were journeying thither, they met the father of Lamoni, who was king over all the land.

And behold, the father of Lamoni said unto him: Why did ye not come to the feast on that great day when I made a feast unto my sons, and unto my people?

- 10 Futhi phezu kwalokho wathi: Uyaphi nalomNefi, ongomunye wabantwana bomqambi manga na?
- 11 Futhi kwenzeka ukuthi uLamoni wamlandisa ukuthi wayeyaphi, ngokuba wayesaba ukumcasula.
- 12 Futhi waphinde wamtshela isizathu sokuthi ahlale embusweni wakhe, nokuthi yini engayanga edilini uyise ayelilungisile.
- 13 Manje ngesikhathi uLamoni esemlandisile zonke lezi zinto, bheka, wamangala, uyise emthukuthelela, futhi ethi: Lamoni, uyokhulula lamaNefi, angamadodana omqambi manga. Bheka, waphanga obaba bethu; manje izingane zakhe nazo ngokunjalo ziza phakathi kwethu ukuze, ngobuqili bazo kanye nangamanga azo, zisikhohlise, ukuze ziphinde zisiphange impahla yethu.
- 14 Manje uyise kaLamoni wamyala ukuthi abulale u-Amoni ngenkemba. Futhi waphinde wamyala ukuthi angayi ezweni laseMidoni, kodwa ukuthi abuyele naye ezweni lakwa-Ishmayeli.
- 15 Kodwa uLamoni wathi kuye: Ngeke ngimbulale u-Amoni, noma ngibuyele ezweni lakwa-Ishmayeli, kodwa ngiya ezweni laseMidoni ukuze ngikhulule abafowabo baka-Amoni, ngokuba ngiyazi ukuthi bangamadoda abalungile futhi bangabaphrofethi abangcwele baNkulunkulu weqiniso.
- 16 Manje ngesikhathi uyise esewazwile lamazwi, wamthukuthelela, futhi wahosha inkemba yakhe ukuze amshaye amthele othulini.
- 17 Kodwa u-Amoni wema ngaphambili wathi kuye: Bheka, ungayibulali indodana yakho; nokho, bekuyobangcono ukuthi kufe yona kunawe, ngokuba bheka, isiphendukile ezweni zayo; kodwa uma wena ungafa ngalesi sikhathi, usentukuthelweni yakho, umphefumulo wakho awunakusindiswa.
- 18 Futhi phezu kwalokho, kudingekile ukuthi ukuyeke lokhu; ngokuba uma ungayibulala indodana yakho, ibe yona iyindoda engenacala, igazi layo liyokhala phansi liye eNkosini uNkulunkulu wayo, ukuze impindiselo ize phezu kwakho; futhi mhlawumbe ungalahlekelwa nawumphefumulo wakho.

And he also said: Whither art thou going with this Nephite, who is one of the children of a liar?

And it came to pass that Lamoni rehearsed unto him whither he was going, for he feared to offend him.

And he also told him all the cause of his tarrying in his own kingdom, that he did not go unto his father to the feast which he had prepared.

And now when Lamoni had rehearsed unto him all these things, behold, to his astonishment, his father was angry with him, and said: Lamoni, thou art going to deliver these Nephites, who are sons of a liar. Behold, he robbed our fathers; and now his children are also come amongst us that they may, by their cunning and their lyings, deceive us, that they again may rob us of our property.

Now the father of Lamoni commanded him that he should slay Ammon with the sword. And he also commanded him that he should not go to the land of Middoni, but that he should return with him to the land of Ishmael.

But Lamoni said unto him: I will not slay Ammon, neither will I return to the land of Ishmael, but I go to the land of Middoni that I may release the brethren of Ammon, for I know that they are just men and holy prophets of the true God.

Now when his father had heard these words, he was angry with him, and he drew his sword that he might smite him to the earth.

But Ammon stood forth and said unto him: Behold, thou shalt not slay thy son; nevertheless, it were better that he should fall than thee, for behold, he has repented of his sins; but if thou shouldst fall at this time, in thine anger, thy soul could not be saved.

And again, it is expedient that thou shouldst forbear; for if thou shouldst slay thy son, he being an innocent man, his blood would cry from the ground to the Lord his God, for vengeance to come upon thee; and perhaps thou wouldst lose thy soul.

- 19 Manje ngesikhathi u-Amoni esewashilo lamazwi kuye, wamphendula, ethi: Ngiyazi ukuthi uma ngingabulala indodana yami, ngizobe ngichitha igazi elingenacala; ngokuba nguwe lona ofune ukuyibulala.
- 20 Futhi yelula isandla sayo ukuthi ibulale u-Amoni. Kodwa u-Amoni wawamela amagalelo ayo, futhi waphinde washaya ingalo yayo ukuze ingabe isakwazi ukuyisebenzisa.
- 21 Manje ngesikhathi inkosi ibona ukuthi u-Amoni angayibulala, yaqala ukuncenga ku-Amoni ukuthi aphephise impilo yayo.
- 22 Kodwa u-Amoni waphakamisa inkemba yakhe, wathi kuyo: Bheka, ngizokubulala ngaphandle kokuthi uvume ukuthi abafowethu bakhishwe etilongweni.
- 23 Manje inkosi, inokwesaba ukuthi ingase ilahlekelwe yimpilo yayo, yathi: Uma nje ungangisindisa ngizokunika noma ngabe yini ozoyicela, ngisho ngabe yinxenye yombuso.
- 24 Manje ngesikhathi u-Amoni ebona ukuthi wayeseyithonyile inkosi endala njengokwesifiso sakhe, wathi kuyo: Uma nje ungavumela abafowethu ukuthi baphume etilongweni, futhi nokuthi uLamoni agcine umbuso wakhe, futhi nokuthi ungabi nokungamthandi, kodwa umvumele ukuthi enze njengokwezifiso zakhe kunanoma iyiphi into ayicabangayo, uma kunjalo ngizokuphephisa; kungenjalo ngizokushaya ngikuthule othulini.
- 25 Manje ngesikhathi u-Amoni esewashilo lamazwi, inkosi yaqala ukuthokoza ngenxa yempilo yayo.
- 26 Futhi ngesikhathi ibona ukuthi u-Amoni wayengenanhloso yokuyibulala, futhi ngesikhathi ibona uthando olukhulu ayenalo ngendodana yayo uLamoni, yamangala kakhulu, futhi yathi: Ngenxa yokuthi yilokhu kuphela okufisayo, ukuthi ngikhulule abafowenu, futhi ngivume ukuthi indodana yami uLamoni igcine umbuso wayo, bheka, ngizovuma ukuthi indodana yami iwugcine umbuso wayo kusukela kulesi sikhathi naphakade; futhi angiseyikuphinde ngiyibuse nanini.

Now when Ammon had said these words unto him, he answered him, saying: I know that if I should slay my son, that I should shed innocent blood; for it is thou that hast sought to destroy him.

And he stretched forth his hand to slay Ammon. But Ammon withstood his blows, and also smote his arm that he could not use it.

Now when the king saw that Ammon could slay him, he began to plead with Ammon that he would spare his life.

But Ammon raised his sword, and said unto him: Behold, I will smite thee except thou wilt grant unto me that my brethren may be cast out of prison.

Now the king, fearing he should lose his life, said: If thou wilt spare me I will grant unto thee whatsoever thou wilt ask, even to half of the kingdom.

Now when Ammon saw that he had wrought upon the old king according to his desire, he said unto him: If thou wilt grant that my brethren may be cast out of prison, and also that Lamoni may retain his kingdom, and that ye be not displeased with him, but grant that he may do according to his own desires in whatsoever thing he thinketh, then will I spare thee; otherwise I will smite thee to the earth.

Now when Ammon had said these words, the king began to rejoice because of his life.

And when he saw that Ammon had no desire to destroy him, and when he also saw the great love he had for his son Lamoni, he was astonished exceedingly, and said: Because this is all that thou hast desired, that I would release thy brethren, and suffer that my son Lamoni should retain his kingdom, behold, I will grant unto you that my son may retain his kingdom from this time and forever; and I will govern him no more—

- 27 Futhi phezu kwalokho ngizovuma ukuthi abafowenu bakhishwe etilongweni, futhi wena kanye nabafowenu ningeza kimi, embusweni wami; ngokuba ngiyafisa kakhulu ukuthi ngikubone. Ngokuba inkosi yayimangele kakhulu ngamazwi ayewakhulumile, futhi ngokunjalo nangamazwi ayekhulunywe yindodana yayo uLamoni, ngakho-ke yaba nesifiso sokuwafunda.
- 28 Futhi kwenzeka ukuthi u-Amoni kanye noLamoni baqhubeka nohambo lwabo lokuya ngasezweni laseMidoni. Futhi uLamoni wathola ukuthandwa emehlweni enkosi yezwe; ngakho-ke abafowabo ba-Amoni bakhishwa etilongweni.
- 29 Ngesikhathi u-Amoni ehlangana nabo wadabuka kakhulu, ngokuba bheka babenqunu, futhi izikhumba zabo zazigazukile kakhulu ngenxa yokuboshwa ngezintambo eziqinile. Futhi phezu kwalokho base befile yindlala, wukoma, kanye nazo zonke izinhlobo zezinkathazo; nokho babeku bekezelele konke ukuhlupheka kwabo.
- 30 Futhi, njengoba kwenzeka, lokhu kwakuyisabelo sabo ukuthi bawele ezandleni zabantu ababelukhuni kanye nababengontamo lukhuni; ngakho-ke babengafuni ngisho nokuwalalela amazwi abo, futhi babaxosha, babakhiphela ngaphandle, futhi babashaya, futhi babaqhuba besuka umuzi nomuzi, indawo nendawo, ngisho kwaze kwaba babafikisa ezweni laseMidoni; futhi lapho bathathwa baphonswa etilongweni, baboshwa ngezintambo eziqinile, bagcinwa etilongweni izinsuku eziningi, baze bakhishwa nguLamoni kanye no-Amoni.

And I will also grant unto thee that thy brethren may be cast out of prison, and thou and thy brethren may come unto me, in my kingdom; for I shall greatly desire to see thee. For the king was greatly astonished at the words which he had spoken, and also at the words which had been spoken by his son Lamoni, therefore he was desirous to learn them.

And it came to pass that Ammon and Lamoni proceeded on their journey towards the land of Middoni. And Lamoni found favor in the eyes of the king of the land; therefore the brethren of Ammon were brought forth out of prison.

And when Ammon did meet them he was exceedingly sorrowful, for behold they were naked, and their skins were worn exceedingly because of being bound with strong cords. And they also had suffered hunger, thirst, and all kinds of afflictions; nevertheless they were patient in all their sufferings.

And, as it happened, it was their lot to have fallen into the hands of a more hardened and a more stiff-necked people; therefore they would not hearken unto their words, and they had cast them out, and had smitten them, and had driven them from house to house, and from place to place, even until they had arrived in the land of Middoni; and there they were taken and cast into prison, and bound with strong cords, and kept in prison for many days, and were delivered by Lamoni and Ammon.

Indaba yokushumayela kuka-Aroni, kanye noMuloki, kanye nabafowabo, kumaLamani.

Alima 21

- 1 Manje ngesikhathi u-Aroni kanye nabafowabo sebezehlukanisile emingceleni yezwe lamaLamani, bheka u-Aroni wathatha uhambo lwakhe oluya ngasezweni elalibizwa ngamaLamani, ngokuthi yiJerusalema, elibiza ngezwe lokuzalwa loyise; futhi lalikude lihlanganisa imingcele yakwaMormoni.
- 2 Manje amaLamani nama-Amaleki kanye nabantu bakwa-Amuloni base bakhe idolobha elikhulu, elalibizwa ngokuthi yiJerusalema.
- 3 Manje amaLamani ngokwawo ayelukhuni ngokwanele, kodwa ama-Amaleki kanye nama-Amuloni ayelukhuni ngokwedlulele; ngakho-ke nempela benza amaLamani ukuthi enze lukhuni izinhliziyi zawo, ukuthi akhule aqine ebubini kanye nasezinengisweni zawo.
- 4 Futhi kwenzeka ukuthi u-Aroni weza edolobheni laseJerusalema, futhi waqala ukushumayela kuma-Amaleki. Futhi waqala ukushumayela kuwo emasinagogeni awo, ngokuba ayesakhe amasinagoge ngendlela yohlelo lwamaNehori; ngokuba abaningi bama-Amaleki kanye nama-Amuloni babengabohlelo lwamaNehori.
- 5 Ngakho-ke, ngesikhathi u-Aroni engena kwenye yamasinagoge abo ukuthi ayoshumayela kubantu, futhi ngesikhathi ekhuluma kubo, bheka kwavuka um-Amaleki futhi waqala ukuphikisana naye, ethi: Yini lena ofakaza ngayo? Usuke wayibona ingelosi? Kungani izingelosi zingaveli kithi? Bheka ngabe labantu abalungile yini njengabantu bakho na?
- 6 Futhi uthi, ngaphandle kokuthi siphenduke siyobhubha. Uwazi kanjani umcabango kanye nenhloso yezinhliziyi zethu na? Wazi kanjani ukuthi sinesidingo sokuthi siphenduke na? Wazi kanjani ukuthi asibona abantu abalungile na? Bheka, sizakhile izindawo ezingcwele, futhi sihlangana ndawonye ukuze sidumise uNkulunkulu. Siyakholwa ukuthi uNkulunkulu uzobasindisa bonke abantu.

An account of the preaching of Aaron, and Muloki, and their brethren, to the Lamanites.

Alma 21

Now when Ammon and his brethren separated themselves in the borders of the land of the Lamanites, behold Aaron took his journey towards the land which was called by the Lamanites, Jerusalem, calling it after the land of their fathers' nativity; and it was away joining the borders of Mormon.

Now the Lamanites and the Amalekites and the people of Amulon had built a great city, which was called Jerusalem.

Now the Lamanites of themselves were sufficiently hardened, but the Amalekites and the Amulonites were still harder; therefore they did cause the Lamanites that they should harden their hearts, that they should wax strong in wickedness and their abominations.

And it came to pass that Aaron came to the city of Jerusalem, and first began to preach to the Amalekites. And he began to preach to them in their synagogues, for they had built synagogues after the order of the Nehors; for many of the Amalekites and the Amulonites were after the order of the Nehors.

Therefore, as Aaron entered into one of their synagogues to preach unto the people, and as he was speaking unto them, behold there arose an Amalekite and began to contend with him, saying: What is that thou hast testified? Hast thou seen an angel? Why do not angels appear unto us? Behold are not this people as good as thy people?

Thou also sayest, except we repent we shall perish. How knowest thou the thought and intent of our hearts? How knowest thou that we have cause to repent? How knowest thou that we are not a righteous people? Behold, we have built sanctuaries, and we do assemble ourselves together to worship God. We do believe that God will save all men.

- 7 Manje u-Aroni wathi kuye: Uyakholwa yini ukuthi iNdodana kaNkulunkulu iyoza izokhulula abantu ezonweni zabo na?
- 8 Lendoda yathi kuye: Thina asikholwa ukuthi wazi into enjalo. Asikholelwa kulamasiko awubuphukuphuku. Asikholwa ukuthi uyazi ngezinto ezisazokwenzeka, noma sikholwe ukuthi oyihlo futhi ngokunjalo nobaba bethu babazi mayelana nezinto abazikhulumayo, ezisazokwenzeka.
- 9 Manje u-Aroni waqala ukubavulela imibhalo engcwele mayelana nokuza kukaKristu, futhi ngokunjalo mayelana nokuvuka kwabafuleyo, nokuthi ngeke kube khona ukukhululwa kwesintu ngaphandle kokuthi kube ngokufa kanye nokuhlupheka kukaKristu, kanye nenhlawulo yegazi lakhe.
- 10 Futhi kwenzeka ngesikhathi eqala ukubachazela ngalezi zinto bamthukuthelela, futhi baqala ukuhlelisa ngaye; futhi abafunanga ukuwalalela amazwi ayewakhuluma.
- 11 Ngakho-ke, ngesikhathi ebona ukuthi babengafuni ukuwezwa amazwi akhe, waphuma wahamba esinagogeni labo, futhi weza esigodini esincane esasibizwa ngokuthi yi-Ani-Anti, futhi lapho wathola uMuloki eshumayela izwi kubo; ngokunjalo no-Ama kanye nabafowabo. Futhi babebanga nabaningi ngezwi.
- 12 Futhi kwenzeka ukuthi babona ukuthi abantu babezozenza lukhuni izinhliziyi zabo, ngakho-ke bemuka beza ezweni laseMidoni. Futhi nempela balishumayela izwi kwabaningi, futhi bambalwa abakholelwa emazwini ababewafundisa.
- 13 Nokho, u-Aroni kanye nenani elithize labafowabo bathathwa futhi baphonswa etilongweni, kwathi abasalayo babo babaleka baphuma ezweni laseMidoni baya ezifundeni ezizungezile.
- 14 Futhi labo abaphonswa etilongweni bezwa ubuhlungu ngezinto eziningi, baze bakhululwa ngesandla sikaLamoni kanye no-Amoni, futhi baphiwa ukudla futhi bembeswa.
- 15 Futhi bahamba futhi bayomemezela izwi, futhi njengoba sekushiwo bakhululwa okokuqala baphuma etilongweni; futhi njengoba sekushiwo babezwe ubuhlungu ngaleyondlela.

Now Aaron said unto him: Believest thou that the Son of God shall come to redeem mankind from their sins?

And the man said unto him: We do not believe that thou knowest any such thing. We do not believe in these foolish traditions. We do not believe that thou knowest of things to come, neither do we believe that thy fathers and also that our fathers did know concerning the things which they spake, of that which is to come.

Now Aaron began to open the scriptures unto them concerning the coming of Christ, and also concerning the resurrection of the dead, and that there could be no redemption for mankind save it were through the death and sufferings of Christ, and the atonement of his blood.

And it came to pass as he began to expound these things unto them they were angry with him, and began to mock him; and they would not hear the words which he spake.

Therefore, when he saw that they would not hear his words, he departed out of their synagogue, and came over to a village which was called Ani-Anti, and there he found Muloki preaching the word unto them; and also Ammah and his brethren. And they contended with many about the word.

And it came to pass that they saw that the people would harden their hearts, therefore they departed and came over into the land of Middoni. And they did preach the word unto many, and few believed on the words which they taught.

Nevertheless, Aaron and a certain number of his brethren were taken and cast into prison, and the remainder of them fled out of the land of Middoni unto the regions round about.

And those who were cast into prison suffered many things, and they were delivered by the hand of Lamoni and Ammon, and they were fed and clothed.

And they went forth again to declare the word, and thus they were delivered for the first time out of prison; and thus they had suffered.

- 16 Futhi bahamba baya noma yikuphi lapho babeholelwa khona ngu Moya weNkosi, beshumayela izwi likaNkulunkulu kuwo wonke amasinagoge ama-Amaleki, noma kuyo yonke imihlangano yamaLamani lapho babe ngamukelwa khona.
- 17 Futhi kwenzeka ukuthi iNkosi yaqala ukubabusisa, kangangokuthi baletha abaningi olwazini lweqiniso; yebo, bakholwisa abaningi ngezono zabo, kanye nangamasiko oyise, ayengalungile.
- 18 Futhi kwenzeka ukuthi u-Amoni kanye noLamoni babuya ezweni laseMidoni baya ezweni lakwa-Ishmayeli, okwakuyizwe elaliyifa labo.
- 19 Futhi iNkosi uLamoni ayivumanga ukuthi u-Amoni ayisebenzele, noma abe yinceku yayo.
- 20 Kodwa yenza ukuthi kwakhiwe amasinagoge ezweni lakwa-Ishmayeli; futhi yenza ukuthi abantu bayo, noma abantu ababengaphansi kombuso wayo, ukuthi babuthane ndawonye.
- 21 Futhi nempela yathokoza ngabo, futhi yabafundisa eziningi izinto. Futhi nempela yaphinde yamemezela kubo ukuthi babengabantu ababengaphansi kwayo, futhi nokuthi babengabantu ababekhululekile, ukuthi babekhululekile ekucindezelweni kwenkosi, uyise; ngokuba uyise wayeseyivumele ukuthi ingabusa phezu kwabantu ababesezweni lakwa-Ishmayeli, kanye nakulo lonke izwe elalizungezile.
- 22 Futhi yaphinde yamemezela kubo ukuthi bangaba nenkululeko yokudumisa iNkosi uNkulunkulu wabo njengokwezifiso zabo, kunanoma iyiphi indawo ababekuyo, uma nje kusezweni elingaphansi kombuso wenkosi uLamoni.
- 23 Futhi u-Amoni nempela washumayela kubantu benkosi uLamoni; futhi kwenzeka ukuthi nempela wabafundisa zonke izinto mayelana nezinto eziphathelene nokulunga. Futhi wabanxusa nsuku zonke, ngakho konke ukukhuthala; futhi baligcina izwi lakhe, futhi babenentshisekelo yokugcina imiyalelo kaNkulunkulu.

And they went forth whithersoever they were led by the Spirit of the Lord, preaching the word of God in every synagogue of the Amalekites, or in every assembly of the Lamanites where they could be admitted.

And it came to pass that the Lord began to bless them, insomuch that they brought many to the knowledge of the truth; yea, they did convince many of their sins, and of the traditions of their fathers, which were not correct.

And it came to pass that Ammon and Lamoni returned from the land of Middoni to the land of Ishmael, which was the land of their inheritance.

And king Lamoni would not suffer that Ammon should serve him, or be his servant.

But he caused that there should be synagogues built in the land of Ishmael; and he caused that his people, or the people who were under his reign, should assemble themselves together.

And he did rejoice over them, and he did teach them many things. And he did also declare unto them that they were a people who were under him, and that they were a free people, that they were free from the oppressions of the king, his father; for that his father had granted unto him that he might reign over the people who were in the land of Ishmael, and in all the land round about.

And he also declared unto them that they might have the liberty of worshiping the Lord their God according to their desires, in whatsoever place they were in, if it were in the land which was under the reign of king Lamoni.

And Ammon did preach unto the people of king Lamoni; and it came to pass that he did teach them all things concerning things pertaining to righteousness. And he did exhort them daily, with all diligence; and they gave heed unto his word, and they were zealous for keeping the commandments of God.

Alima 22

- 1 Manje njengoba u-Amoni ayesaqhubeka nokufundisa abantu baLamoni, sizobuyela endabeni ka-Aroni kanye nabafowabo; ngokuba emva kokuthi esehambile ezweni lakwaMidoni waholwa nguMoya waya ezweni lakwaNefi, ngisho nasendlini yenkosi eyayiphezu kwalo lonke izwe ngaphandle kwezwe lakwa-Ishmayeli; futhi yayinguyise kaLamoni.
- 2 Futhi kwenzeka ukuthi wahamba waya kuyo esigodlweni senkosi, kanye nabafowabo, futhi wakhothama phambi kwenkosi, wathi kuyo: Bheka, O nkosi, thina singabafowabo baka-Amoni, omkhululile etilongweni.
- 3 Manje, O nkosi, uma ungasindisa izimpilo zethu, sizoba yizinceku zakho. Futhi inkosi yathi kubo: Phakamani, ngokuba ngizoninika izimpilo zenu, futhi angizukunivumela ukuthi nibe yizinceku zami; kodwa ngizofuna ukuthi ningisize; ngokuba ngandlela thize bengikhathazekile emqondweni wami ngenxa yobubele kanye nobukhulu bamazwi ka-Amoni umfowenu; futhi ngifisa ukwazi isizathu sokuthi kungani engezanga lapha kanye nani aphume ezweni laseMidoni.
- 4 Futhi u-Aroni wathi enkosini: Bheka, uMoya weNkosi umbizele kwenye indawo; uhambe waya ezweni lakwa-Ishmayeli, ukuyofundisa abantu baLamoni.
- 5 Manje inkosi yathi kubo: Yini lena eniyishilo mayelana noMoya weNkosi na? Bhekani, yilento engikhathazayo.
- 6 Futhi phezu kwalokho, yini lena eshiwo ngu-Amoni—Ukuthi uma uzophenduka uzosindiswa, futhi uma ungezukuphenduka, uyolahlwa ngosuku lokugcina na?
- 7 U-Aroni waphendula wathi kuyo: Uyakholwa yini ukuthi ukhona uNkulunkulu na? Inkosi yathi: Ngiyazi ukuthi ama-Amaleki athi kukhona uNkulunkulu, futhi ngibavumele ukuthi bakhe izindlu ezingcwele, ukuze bahlangane ndawonye ukuze bamkhonze. Futhi uma wena manje uthi ukhona uNkulunkulu, bheka ngizokholwa.
- 8 Manje ngesikhathi u-Aroni ekuzwa lokhu, inhliziyo yakhe yaqala ukuthokoza, futhi wathi: Bheka, ngokuqinisekileyo njengoba uphila, O nkosi, ukhona uNkulunkulu.

Alma 22

Now, as Ammon was thus teaching the people of Lamoni continually, we will return to the account of Aaron and his brethren; for after he departed from the land of Middoni he was led by the Spirit to the land of Nephi, even to the house of the king which was over all the land save it were the land of Ishmael; and he was the father of Lamoni.

And it came to pass that he went in unto him into the king's palace, with his brethren, and bowed himself before the king, and said unto him: Behold, O king, we are the brethren of Ammon, whom thou hast delivered out of prison.

And now, O king, if thou wilt spare our lives, we will be thy servants. And the king said unto them: Arise, for I will grant unto you your lives, and I will not suffer that ye shall be my servants; but I will insist that ye shall administer unto me; for I have been somewhat troubled in mind because of the generosity and the greatness of the words of thy brother Ammon; and I desire to know the cause why he has not come up out of Middoni with thee.

And Aaron said unto the king: Behold, the Spirit of the Lord has called him another way; he has gone to the land of Ishmael, to teach the people of Lamoni.

Now the king said unto them: What is this that ye have said concerning the Spirit of the Lord? Behold, this is the thing which doth trouble me.

And also, what is this that Ammon said—If ye will repent ye shall be saved, and if ye will not repent, ye shall be cast off at the last day?

And Aaron answered him and said unto him: Believest thou that there is a God? And the king said: I know that the Amalekites say that there is a God, and I have granted unto them that they should build sanctuaries, that they may assemble themselves together to worship him. And if now thou sayest there is a God, behold I will believe.

And now when Aaron heard this, his heart began to rejoice, and he said: Behold, assuredly as thou livest, O king, there is a God.

- 9 Inkosi yathi: Ngabe uNkulunkulu yilowo Moya oMkhulu owakhipha obaba bethu baphuma ezweni laseJerusalema na?
- 10 U-Aroni wathi kuyo: Yebo, unguye lowo Moya oMkhulu, futhi wadala zonke izinto okusezulwini nokusemhlabeni. Uyakholwa yini yilokhu na?
- 11 Yona yathi: Yebo, ngiyakholwa ukuthi uMoya oMkhulu wadala zonke izinto, futhi ngifisa ukuthi ungitshela mayelana nazo zonke lezi zinto, futhi ngizowakholwa amazwi akho.
- 12 Futhi kwenzeka ukuthi ngesikhathi u-Aroni ebona ukuthi inkosi yayizowakholwa amazwi akhe, waqala kusukela ekudalweni kuka-Adamu, efundela inkosi imibhalo engcwele—ukuthi uNkulunkulu wamdala kanjani umuntu ngomfanekiso wakhe uqobo, futhi nokuthi uNkulunkulu wamnika imiyalelo, futhi nokuthi ngenxa yokuphambuka, umuntu wawa.
- 13 Futhi u-Aroni wayichazela ngemibhalo engcwele kusukela ekudalweni kuka-Adamu, ebeka ukuwa komuntu phambi kwayo, kanye nesimo sabo sokunaka inyama futhi ngokunjalo nangesu lokukhululwa, elalungiswa kusukela ekusekelweni somhlaba, ngoKristu, lilungiselelwa bonke labo abayokholwa egameni lakhe.
- 14 Futhi njengoba umuntu awa ngeke akwazi ukuzuza lutho ngokwakhe; kodwa ukuzwa ubuhlungu kanye nokufa kukaKristu kwahlawulela izono zabo, ngokholo kanye nangokuphenduka, njalo njalo; futhi nokuthi unqamula izibopho zokufa, ukuze ithuna lingabi nakunqoba, futhi nokuthi udosi lokufa lugwinywe emathembeni enkazimulo; futhi u-Aroni wazichaza zonke lezi zinto enkosini.
- 15 Futhi kwenzeka ukuthi emva kokuthi u-Aroni esezichazile lezi zinto, inkosi yathi: Ngingenze njani ukuze ngibe nalokhu kuphila okuphakade osukhulume ngakho na? Yebo, ngingenze njani ukuze ngizalwe ngokukaNkulunkulu, lomoya omubi usiphulwe uphume esifubeni sami, futhi ngamukele uMoya wakhe, ukuze ngigcwaliswe ngenjabulo, ukuze ngingalahlwa ngosuku lokugcina na? Bheka, kusho yona, ngizodela konke enginakho, yebo, ngizowushiya nombuso wami, ukuze ngamukele lenjabulo enkulu.

And the king said: Is God that Great Spirit that brought our fathers out of the land of Jerusalem?

And Aaron said unto him: Yea, he is that Great Spirit, and he created all things both in heaven and in earth. Believest thou this?

And he said: Yea, I believe that the Great Spirit created all things, and I desire that ye should tell me concerning all these things, and I will believe thy words.

And it came to pass that when Aaron saw that the king would believe his words, he began from the creation of Adam, reading the scriptures unto the king—how God created man after his own image, and that God gave him commandments, and that because of transgression, man had fallen.

And Aaron did expound unto him the scriptures from the creation of Adam, laying the fall of man before him, and their carnal state and also the plan of redemption, which was prepared from the foundation of the world, through Christ, for all whosoever would believe on his name.

And since man had fallen he could not merit anything of himself; but the sufferings and death of Christ atone for their sins, through faith and repentance, and so forth; and that he breaketh the bands of death, that the grave shall have no victory, and that the sting of death should be swallowed up in the hopes of glory; and Aaron did expound all these things unto the king.

And it came to pass that after Aaron had expounded these things unto him, the king said: What shall I do that I may have this eternal life of which thou hast spoken? Yea, what shall I do that I may be born of God, having this wicked spirit rooted out of my breast, and receive his Spirit, that I may be filled with joy, that I may not be cast off at the last day? Behold, said he, I will give up all that I possess, yea, I will forsake my kingdom, that I may receive this great joy.

- 16 Kodwa u-Aroni wathi kuyo: Uma uyifisa lento, uma ungakhothama phansi phambi kukaNkulunkulu, yebo, uma ungaphenduka ezonweni zakho zonke, futhi ukhothame phansi phambi kukaNkulunkulu, futhi ubize igama lakhe ngokholo, ukholwa ukuthi uyokuthola okucelayo, uma kunjalo uyolithola lelothemba olifisayo.
- 17 Futhi kwenzeka ukuthi ngesikhathi u-Aroni esewashilo lamazwi, inkosi yakhothama phansi phambi kweNkosi, ngamadolo ayo; yebo, yaze nempela yathi ja phansi emhlabathini, futhi yakhala kakhulu, ithi:
- 18 O Nkulunkulu, u-Aroni ungitshela ukuthi kukhona uNkulunkulu; futhi uma kukhona uNkulunkulu, futhi uma wena unguNkulunkulu, ungazembula yini kimi, futhi ngiyodela zonke izono zami ukuthi ngikwazi, futhi nokuthi ngivuswe ekufeni, futhi ngisindiswe ngosuku lokugcina. Manje ngesikhathi inkosi isiwashilo lamazwi, yashayeka phansi kwaba sengathi ifile.
- 19 Futhi kwenzeka ukuthi izinceku zayo zagijima zayotshela indlovukazi konke okwakwenzeke enkosini. Futhi yeza enkosini; ngesikhathi iyibona ilele sengathi yayifile, futhi phezu kwalokho u-Aroni nabafowabo bemile sengathi yibo ababeyisizathu sokuwa kwayo, yabathukuthelela, futhi yayala ukuthi izinceku zayo, noma izinceku zenkosi, zibabambe zibabulale.
- 20 Manje izinceku zazi yibonile imbangela yokuwa kwenkosi, ngakho-ke azizange zilokotho zibeke izandla zazo ku-Aroni nabafowabo; futhi zazikhalela kuyo indlovukazi zithi: Usiyalelani ukuthi sibulale lamadoda na?, ngokuba bheka omunye wabo unamandla kunathi sonke. Ngakho-ke sizowa phambi kwabo.
- 21 Manje ngesikhathi indlovukazi ibona ukwesaba kwezinceku nayo ngokunjalo yaqala ukwesaba kakhulu, hleze kubekhona ububi obuthize obuzoza kuyo. Futhi yayala izinceku zayo ukuthi zihambe ziyobiza abantu, ukuze babulale u-Aroni kanye nabafowabo.

But Aaron said unto him: If thou desirest this thing, if thou wilt bow down before God, yea, if thou wilt repent of all thy sins, and will bow down before God, and call on his name in faith, believing that ye shall receive, then shalt thou receive the hope which thou desirest.

And it came to pass that when Aaron had said these words, the king did bow down before the Lord, upon his knees; yea, even he did prostrate himself upon the earth, and cried mightily, saying:

O God, Aaron hath told me that there is a God; and if there is a God, and if thou art God, wilt thou make thyself known unto me, and I will give away all my sins to know thee, and that I may be raised from the dead, and be saved at the last day. And now when the king had said these words, he was struck as if he were dead.

And it came to pass that his servants ran and told the queen all that had happened unto the king. And she came in unto the king; and when she saw him lay as if he were dead, and also Aaron and his brethren standing as though they had been the cause of his fall, she was angry with them, and commanded that her servants, or the servants of the king, should take them and slay them.

Now the servants had seen the cause of the king's fall, therefore they durst not lay their hands on Aaron and his brethren; and they pled with the queen saying: Why commandest thou that we should slay these men, when behold one of them is mightier than us all? Therefore we shall fall before them.

Now when the queen saw the fear of the servants she also began to fear exceedingly, lest there should some evil come upon her. And she commanded her servants that they should go and call the people, that they might slay Aaron and his brethren.

- 22 Manje ngesikhathi u-Aroni ekubona ukuphikelela kwendlovukazi, futhi azi ubulukhuni bezinhliziyo zabantu, wesaba hleze isixuku sibuthane ndawonye, futhi bese kuba khona umbango omkhulu kanye nokuphazamiseka phakathi kwabo; ngakho-ke welula isandla sakhe futhi wayiphakamisa inkosi phansi, futhi wathi kuyo: Sukuma. Futhi yasukuma yema ngezinyawo zayo, yathola amandla ayo.
- 23 Manje lokhu kwenzeka phambi kwendlovukazi kanye neziningi izinceku. Futhi ngesikhathi bekubona lokhu bamangala kakhulu, futhi baqala ukwesaba. Futhi inkosi yema ngaphambili, futhi yaqala ukubafundisa. Futhi nempela yabafundisa, kangankuthi abendlu yayo bonke baphendukela eNkosini.
- 24 Manje kwakukhona isixuku esasibuthene ndawonye ngenxa yokuyalelwa yindlovukazi, futhi kwaqala ukuthi kube khona ukuvungama okukhulu phakathi kwaso ngenxa ka-Aroni kanye nabafowabo.
- 25 Kodwa inkosi yeza ngaphambili yema phakathi kwabo futhi yabafundisa. Futhi baxoliswa maqondana no-Aroni kanye nalabo ayenabo.
- 26 Futhi kwenzeka ukuthi ngesikhathi inkosi ibona ukuthi abantu base bexolile, yenza ukuthi u-Aroni kanye nabafowabo beze ngaphambili bame phakathi kwesixuku, futhi bashumayeze izwi kuso.
- 27 Futhi kwenzeka ukuthi inkosi yathumela isimemezelo kulo lonke izwe, phakathi kwabo bonke abantu bayo ababekulo lonke izwe layo, labo ababekuzo zonke izifunda ezazizungezile, ezazigudla ngisho nasolwandle, empumalanga kanye nasentshonalanga, kanye nalelo elalehlukaniswe ezweni lakwa Zarahemla ngomsweswana omncane wehlane, owawugijima usuka empumalanga yolwandle ngisho uze uye nasentshonalanga yolwandle, futhi uzungeze emingceleni yogu lolwandle, kanye nasemingceleni yehlane elalisenyakatho ngasezweni lakwaZarahemla, kuya emingceleni yeManti, ngasenhloko yomfula iSidoni, owawugijima usuka empumalanga uya ngase ntshonalanga —ayehlukaniswe kanjalo-ke amaLamani kanye namaNefi.

Now when Aaron saw the determination of the queen, he, also knowing the hardness of the hearts of the people, feared lest that a multitude should assemble themselves together, and there should be a great contention and a disturbance among them; therefore he put forth his hand and raised the king from the earth, and said unto him: Stand. And he stood upon his feet, receiving his strength.

Now this was done in the presence of the queen and many of the servants. And when they saw it they greatly marveled, and began to fear. And the king stood forth, and began to minister unto them. And he did minister unto them, insomuch that his whole household were converted unto the Lord.

Now there was a multitude gathered together because of the commandment of the queen, and there began to be great murmurings among them because of Aaron and his brethren.

But the king stood forth among them and administered unto them. And they were pacified towards Aaron and those who were with him.

And it came to pass that when the king saw that the people were pacified, he caused that Aaron and his brethren should stand forth in the midst of the multitude, and that they should preach the word unto them.

And it came to pass that the king sent a proclamation throughout all the land, amongst all his people who were in all his land, who were in all the regions round about, which was bordering even to the sea, on the east and on the west, and which was divided from the land of Zarahemla by a narrow strip of wilderness, which ran from the sea east even to the sea west, and round about on the borders of the seashore, and the borders of the wilderness which was on the north by the land of Zarahemla, through the borders of Manti, by the head of the river Sidon, running from the east towards the west—and thus were the Lamanites and the Nephites divided.

28 Manje, ingxenye enkulu engamavila yamaLamani yayihlala ehlane, futhi ihlala ematendeni; futhi yayigcwele kulo lonke ihlane entshonalanga, ezweni lakwaNefi; yebo, futhi ngokunjalo nasentshonalanga yezwe lakwaZarahemla, emingceleni ngasogwini lolwandle, kanye nasentshonalanga ezweni likaNefi, endaweni yoyise eyifa labo lokuqala, futhi ngaleyondlela begudla umngcele ngasogwini lolwandle.

29 Futhi phezu kwalokho kwakukhona amaLamani amaningi empumalanga ngasogwini lolwandle, lapho amaNefi ayewaqhubele khona. Futhi ngaleyondlela amaNefi ayecishe azungezwe ngamaLamani; nokho amaNefi ayezithathile zonke izinxenye ezisenyakatho zezwe ezazigudla ihlane, enhloko yomfula iSidoni, kusukela empumalanga kuya entshonalanga, kuzungeze kuye ohlangothini lwehlane; enyakatho, ngisho kuze kube bafika ezweni ababelibiza ngokuthi yi Nala.

30 Futhi laligudla ezweni ababelibiza ngokuthi yi Ncithakalo, likude kakhulu ukuya ngasenyakatho kangangokuthi lalifinyelela ezweni elalikade linabantu futhi ababulawa, elimathambo abo esesikhulume ngawo, elatholwa ngabantu bakwaZarahemla, okwakuyindawo yabo yokuqala abafikela kuyo.

31 Futhi bavela lapho bakhuphukela eningizimu yehlane. Ngaleyondlela izwe elingasenyakatho labizwa ngokuthi yi Ncithakalo, bese kuthi izwe elingaseningizimu libizwe ngokuthi yiNala, liyihlane eligcwele zonke izilwane zasendle ezinhlobonhlobo, inxenye yazo eyayivele ezweni elingasenyakatho ukuzofuna ukudla.

32 Manje, kwakuyibanga nje losuku nenxenye yohambo lomNefi, kusukela ezweni iNala kuya ezweni iNcithakalo, kusukela empumalanga kuya entshonalanga yolwandle; futhi ngaleyondlela izwe lakwaNefi kanye nezwe lakwaZarahemla ayecishe azungezwe ngamanzi, khona lapho kukhona isiqintana esincane sezwe phakathi kwezwe elingasenyakatho kanye nezwe elingaseningizimu.

Now, the more idle part of the Lamanites lived in the wilderness, and dwelt in tents; and they were spread through the wilderness on the west, in the land of Nephi; yea, and also on the west of the land of Zarahemla, in the borders by the seashore, and on the west in the land of Nephi, in the place of their fathers' first inheritance, and thus bordering along by the seashore.

And also there were many Lamanites on the east by the seashore, whither the Nephites had driven them. And thus the Nephites were nearly surrounded by the Lamanites; nevertheless the Nephites had taken possession of all the northern parts of the land bordering on the wilderness, at the head of the river Sidon, from the east to the west, round about on the wilderness side; on the north, even until they came to the land which they called Bountiful.

And it bordered upon the land which they called Desolation, it being so far northward that it came into the land which had been peopled and been destroyed, of whose bones we have spoken, which was discovered by the people of Zarahemla, it being the place of their first landing.

And they came from there up into the south wilderness. Thus the land on the northward was called Desolation, and the land on the southward was called Bountiful, it being the wilderness which is filled with all manner of wild animals of every kind, a part of which had come from the land northward for food.

And now, it was only the distance of a day and a half's journey for a Nephite, on the line Bountiful and the land Desolation, from the east to the west sea; and thus the land of Nephi and the land of Zarahemla were nearly surrounded by water, there being a small neck of land between the land northward and the land southward.

33 Futhi kwenzeka ukuthi amaNefi ayesakhile ezweni iNala, ngisho kusukela empumalanga kuya olwandle olusentshonalanga, futhi ngalendlela amaNefi ngokuhlakanipha kwawo, kanye nabalindi bawo kanye namabutho awo, awabiyela ngaphakathi amaLamani eningizimu, ukuze ngalokho angabe esaba nasabelo enyakatho, nokuthi angabe eseqela ezweni elingasenyakatho.

34 Ngakho-ke amaLamani awabange esakwazi ukuba nesinye isabelo ngaphandle kwezwe lakwaNefi kuphela, kanye nehlane elalizungezile. Manje lokhu kwakuwukuhlakanipha kwamaNefi —njengoba amaLamani ayeyizitha kubo, babengenakuvumela izinhlupheko zabo kuzo zonke izinhlangothi, futhi phezu kwalokho ukuze babe nezwe lapho babengabalekela khona, ngokuthanda kwabo.

35 Manje, emva kokuthi sengikushilo lokhu, ngiyaphinda ngibuyela endabeni ka-Amoni kanye no-Aroni, u-Omineri kanye noHimini, kanye nabafowabo.

And it came to pass that the Nephites had inhabited the land Bountiful, even from the east unto the west sea, and thus the Nephites in their wisdom, with their guards and their armies, had hemmed in the Lamanites on the south, that thereby they should have no more possession on the north, that they might not overrun the land northward.

Therefore the Lamanites could have no more possessions only in the land of Nephi, and the wilderness round about. Now this was wisdom in the Nephites—as the Lamanites were an enemy to them, they would not suffer their afflictions on every hand, and also that they might have a country whither they might flee, according to their desires.

And now I, after having said this, return again to the account of Ammon and Aaron, Omner and Himni, and their brethren.

Alima 23

- 1 Bheka, manje kwenzeka ukuthi inkosi yamaLamani yathumela isimemezelo phakathi kwabo bonke abantu bayo, ukuthi bangabambi u-Amoni noma u-Aroni, noma u-Omineri, noma uHimini, noma omunye wabafowabo abayohamba beshumayela izwi likaNkulunkulu, kunanoma iyiphi indawo abayokuba kuyo, nananoma iyiphi inxenywe yezwe labo.
- 2 Yebo, yathumela isimemezelo phakathi kwabo, sokuthi bangababambi ukuthi bababophe, noma babaphonse etilongweni; noma babaphimisele ngamathe, noma babashaye, noma babaxoshe babakhiphe emasinagogeni abo, noma bababhaxabule; noma babakhande ngamatshe, kodwa ukuthi babe nenkululeko yokungena ezindlini zabo, futhi ngokunjalo nasemathempelini abo, kanye nasezindaweni zabo ezingcwele.
- 3 Futhi ngalendlela ukuze bahambe futhi bashumayele izwi njengokuthanda kwabo, ngokuba inkosi yayisiphendukele eNkosini, kanye nabo bonke abendlu yayo; ngakho-ke yathumela isimemezelo sayo kulo lonke izwe ebantwini bayo, ukuze izwi likaNkulunkulu lingabi nakuvimbeleka, kodwa lihambe liye kulo lonke izwe, ukuze abantu bayo bakholiswe mayelana namasiko amabi oyise, futhi bakholiswe ukuthi bonke babengabafowabo, futhi akumele babulale, noma baphange, noma bebe, noma baphinge, noma benze nanoma hlobo luni lobubi.
- 4 Manje kwenzeka ukuthi ngesikhathi inkosi isisithumele lesi simemezelo, u-Aroni kanye nabafowabo bahamba idolobha nedolobha, futhi bahamba indlu nendlu yokukhonza, bemisa amabandla, begcoba abaphristi kanye nabafundisi kulo lonke izwe phakathi kwamaLamani, ukuthi bashumayele futhi bafundise izwi likaNkulunkulu phakathi kwawo; futhi ngalendlela baqala ukuthi babe nempumelelo enkulu.
- 5 Futhi izinkulungwane zalethwa olwazini lweNkosi, yebo, izinkulungwane zalethwa ukuthi zikholelwe emasikweni amaNefi; futhi zafundiswa imibhalo kanye neziphrofetho ezazidluliselwe ukuthi zehle kuze kube yilesi sikhathi samanje.

Alma 23

Behold, now it came to pass that the king of the Lamanites sent a proclamation among all his people, that they should not lay their hands on Ammon, or Aaron, or Omner, or Himni, nor either of their brethren who should go forth preaching the word of God, in whatsoever place they should be, in any part of their land.

Yea, he sent a decree among them, that they should not lay their hands on them to bind them, or to cast them into prison; neither should they spit upon them, nor smite them, nor cast them out of their synagogues, nor scourge them; neither should they cast stones at them, but that they should have free access to their houses, and also their temples, and their sanctuaries.

And thus they might go forth and preach the word according to their desires, for the king had been converted unto the Lord, and all his household; therefore he sent his proclamation throughout the land unto his people, that the word of God might have no obstruction, but that it might go forth throughout all the land, that his people might be convinced concerning the wicked traditions of their fathers, and that they might be convinced that they were all brethren, and that they ought not to murder, nor to plunder, nor to steal, nor to commit adultery, nor to commit any manner of wickedness.

And now it came to pass that when the king had sent forth this proclamation, that Aaron and his brethren went forth from city to city, and from one house of worship to another, establishing churches, and consecrating priests and teachers throughout the land among the Lamanites, to preach and to teach the word of God among them; and thus they began to have great success.

And thousands were brought to the knowledge of the Lord, yea, thousands were brought to believe in the traditions of the Nephites; and they were taught the records and prophecies which were handed down even to the present time.

- 6 Futhi njengoba kunesiqiniseko ukuthi iNkosi iyaphila, kuyisiqiniseko-ke futhi ukuthi njengoba abaningi bakholwa, noma njengoba abaningi balethwa olwazini lweqiniso, ngokushumayela kuka-Amoni kanye nabafowabo, ngokomoya wokwambulelwa kanye nowokuphrofetha, futhi amandla kaNkulunkulu esebenza izimangaliso kubo—yebo, ngithi kini, njengoba iNkosi iphila, njengoba abaningi bamaLamani bakholwa entshumayelweni yabo, futhi baphendukela eNkosini, abazange nempela besahlubuka.
- 7 Ngokuba baba ngabantu abalungileyo; nempela bazibeka phansi izikhali zothuthuva, kangangokuthi ababange besalwa noNkulunkulu nanini, nanoma yibaphi babafowabo.
- 8 Manje, yilaba abaphendukela eNkosini:
- 9 Abantu bamaLamani ababesezweni lakwa-Ishmayeli;
- 10 Futhi ngokunjalo nabantu bamaLamani ababesezweni laseMidoni;
- 11 Futhi ngokunjalo nabantu bamaLamani ababesedolobheni likaNefi;
- 12 Futhi ngokunjalo nabantu bamaLamani ababesezweni lase Shilomu, futhi nalabo ababesezweni lakwaShemiloni, kanye nasedolobheni lakwaLemuweli, kanye nasedolobheni lakwaShimnilomu.
- 13 Lawa ngamagama amadolobha amaLamani ayephendukele eNkosini; futhi laba yibo labo ababeka phansi izikhali zothuthuva, yebo, zonke izikhali zabo zempi; futhi bonke babengamaLamani.
- 14 Futhi ama-Amaleki awaphendukanga, ngaphandle koyedwa kuphela; futhi namunye wama-Amulonites; kodwa nempela bazenza lukhuni izinhliziyi zabo, futhi ngokunjalo nezinhliziyi zamaLamani kuleyonxenyi yezwe lapho babehlala khona, yebo, futhi nazo zonke izigodi zabo kanye namadolobha abo.
- 15 Ngakho-ke, sesiwashilo wonke amadolobha amaLamani lapho aye phenduke khona futhi eza olwazini lweqiniso, futhi aphenduka.

And as sure as the Lord liveth, so sure as many as believed, or as many as were brought to the knowledge of the truth, through the preaching of Ammon and his brethren, according to the spirit of revelation and of prophecy, and the power of God working miracles in them—yea, I say unto you, as the Lord liveth, as many of the Lamanites as believed in their preaching, and were converted unto the Lord, never did fall away.

For they became a righteous people; they did lay down the weapons of their rebellion, that they did not fight against God any more, neither against any of their brethren.

Now, these are they who were converted unto the Lord:

The people of the Lamanites who were in the land of Ishmael;

And also of the people of the Lamanites who were in the land of Middoni;

And also of the people of the Lamanites who were in the city of Nephi;

And also of the people of the Lamanites who were in the land of Shilom, and who were in the land of Shemlon, and in the city of Lemuel, and in the city of Shimnilom.

And these are the names of the cities of the Lamanites which were converted unto the Lord; and these are they that laid down the weapons of their rebellion, yea, all their weapons of war; and they were all Lamanites.

And the Amalekites were not converted, save only one; neither were any of the Amulonites; but they did harden their hearts, and also the hearts of the Lamanites in that part of the land wheresoever they dwelt, yea, and all their villages and all their cities.

Therefore, we have named all the cities of the Lamanites in which they did repent and come to the knowledge of the truth, and were converted.

16 Manje kwenzeka ukuthi inkosi kanye nalabo ababephendukile baba nesifiso sokuthi babe negama, ukuze ngalo behlukaniswe kubafowabo; ngakho-ke inkosi yabonisana no-Aroni kanye nabaningi babaphristi babo, mayelana negama ababezobizwa ngalo, ukuze behlukaniswe.

17 Futhi kwenzeka ukuthi bazibiza ngegama elithi ngama-Anti-Nefi-Lehi; futhi babizwa ngaleligama futhi ababange besabizwa nanini ngamaLamani.

18 Futhi baqala ukuthi babe ngabantu abakhuthele; yebo, futhi baba nobungani namaNefi; ngakho-ke, nempela baqala ukuxhumana nabo, futhi isiqalekiso sikaNkulunkulu nempela asibange sisabalandela nanini.

And now it came to pass that the king and those who were converted were desirous that they might have a name, that thereby they might be distinguished from their brethren; therefore the king consulted with Aaron and many of their priests, concerning the name that they should take upon them, that they might be distinguished.

And it came to pass that they called their names Anti-Nephi-Lehies; and they were called by this name and were no more called Lamanites.

And they began to be a very industrious people; yea, and they were friendly with the Nephites; therefore, they did open a correspondence with them, and the curse of God did no more follow them.

Alima 24

- 1 Futhi kwenzeka ukuthi ama-Amaleki nama-Amuloni namaLamani ayesezweni lakwa-Amuloni, ngokunjalo nasezweni laseHelamu, kanye nalawo ayesezweni lase Jerusalema, kafushane nje, ezweni lonke elizungezile, lawo ayengaphendukanga futhi engazibizanga ngegama lama-Anti-Nefi-Lehi, aphehlwa ngama-Amaleki kanye nangama-Amuloni ngentukuthelo ngokumelene nabafowabo.
- 2 Futhi inzondo yabo yaba nkulu kakhulu ngokumelene nabo, ngisho kangangokuthi baqala ukuhlubuka enkosini yabo, kangangokuthi babengasayifuni ukuthi ibe yinkosi yabo; ngakho-ke, bathatha izikhali ukuyobhekana nabantu bama-Anti-Nefi-Lehi.
- 3 Manje inkosi umbuso yawunika indodana yayo, futhi yayibiza igama layo ngokuthi-Anti-Nefi-Lehi.
- 4 Futhi inkosi yafa ngawo lowo nyaka lapho amaLamani eqala ukwenza amalungiselelo empi ukuyobhekana nabantu baNkulunkulu.
- 5 Manje ngesikhathi u-Amoni kanye nabafowabo kanye nabo bonke labo ababefike naye bebona amalungiselelo amaLamani okuthi abulale abafowabo, baphuma baya ezweni lamaMidiyani, futhi lapho u-Amoni wahlangana nabo bonke abafowabo; futhi ukusuka lapho beza ezweni lakwa-Ishmayeli ukuze babambe umhlangano noLamoni futhi ngokunjalo kanye nomfowabo u-Anti-Nefi-Lehi, ukuthi kumele benzeni ukuze bazivikele kumaLamani.
- 6 Manje kwakungekho namunye phakathi kwabo bonke abantu ababephendukele eNkosini ababefuna ukuthathela abafowabo izikhali; cha, abafunanga ngisho ukwenza nanoma yimaphi amalungiselelo empi; yebo, futhi ngokunjalo nenkosi yabo yabayala ukuthi bangalokothi.
- 7 Manje, lawa ngamazwi eyawakhuluma kubantu mayelana naloludaba: Ngiyambonga uNkulunkulu wami, bantu bami abathandekayo, ukuthi uNkulunkulu wethu omkhulu ngobuhle bakhe uthumele laba bafowethu, amaNefi, kithi ukuthi azoshumayela kithi, futhi nokuthi azosikholwisa ngamasiko obaba bethu amabi.

Alma 24

And it came to pass that the Amalekites and the Amulonites and the Lamanites who were in the land of Amulon, and also in the land of Helam, and who were in the land of Jerusalem, and in fine, in all the land round about, who had not been converted and had not taken upon them the name of Anti-Nephi-Lehi, were stirred up by the Amalekites and by the Amulonites to anger against their brethren.

And their hatred became exceedingly sore against them, even insomuch that they began to rebel against their king, insomuch that they would not that he should be their king; therefore, they took up arms against the people of Anti-Nephi-Lehi.

Now the king conferred the kingdom upon his son, and he called his name Anti-Nephi-Lehi.

And the king died in that selfsame year that the Lamanites began to make preparations for war against the people of God.

Now when Ammon and his brethren and all those who had come up with him saw the preparations of the Lamanites to destroy their brethren, they came forth to the land of Midian, and there Ammon met all his brethren; and from thence they came to the land of Ishmael that they might hold a council with Lamoni and also with his brother Anti-Nephi-Lehi, what they should do to defend themselves against the Lamanites.

Now there was not one soul among all the people who had been converted unto the Lord that would take up arms against their brethren; nay, they would not even make any preparations for war; yea, and also their king commanded them that they should not.

Now, these are the words which he said unto the people concerning the matter: I thank my God, my beloved people, that our great God has in goodness sent these our brethren, the Nephites, unto us to preach unto us, and to convince us of the traditions of our wicked fathers.

- 8 Futhi bhekani, ngiyambonga uNkulunkulu wami omkhulu ukuthi usinike inxenye yoMoya wakhe ukuthi ithambise izinhliziyiyo zethu, ukuze siqale ukuxhumana nalaba bafowethu, amaNefi.
- 9 Futhi bhekani, phezu kwalokho ngiyambonga uNkulunkulu wami, ukuthi ngokuvula lokhu kuxhumana sikhohlwisiwe nge zono zethu, kanye nangokubulala okuningi esikwenzile.
- 10 Futhi ngiyaphinda ngiyambonga uNkulunkulu wami, yebo, uNkulunkulu wami omkhulu, ukuthi usinikile ukuthi siphenduke kulezi zinto, futhi nokuthi usixolele kulezo zono zethu eziningi kanye nokubulala esikwenzile, futhi walisusa icala ezinhliziyweni zethu, ngezenzo ezinhle zeNdodana yakhe.
- 11 Manje bhekani, bafowethu, njengoba bekuyilokho kuphela ebesingakwenza (njengoba sasingababelahleke kakhulu kunaso sonke isintu) ukuthi siphenduke ezonweni zethu zonke kanye nasekubulaleni okuningi esikwenzile, futhi nokuthi sithole ukuthi uNkulunkulu azisuse ezinhliziyweni zethu, ngokuba kwakuyilokho kuphela esasingakwenza ukuthi siphenduke ngokupheleleyo phambi kukaNkulunkulu ukuze asuse ibala lethu—
- 12 Manje, bafowethu abathandekayo kakhulu, njengoba uNkulunkulu esewasusile amabala ethu, futhi nezinkemba zethu sezikhazimula, ngakho-ke masingazingcolisi izinkemba zethu nanini ngegazi labafowethu.
- 13 Bhekani, ngithi kini, Cha, masizigcine izinkemba zethu ukuze zingabe zisangcoliswa ngegazi labafowethu; ngokuba mhlawumbe, uma singazingcolisa izinkemba zethu futhi ngeke zisahlanzwa nanini zikhazimule egazini leNdodana kaNkulunkulu wethu omkhulu, eliyochithekela inhlawulo yezono zethu.
- 14 Futhi uNkulunkulu omkhulu ube nesihawu kithi, futhi wazembula lezi zinto kithi ukuze singalahleki; yebo, futhi uzembule lezi zinto kithi ngaphambili, ngenxa yokuthi uyayithanda imiphefumulo yethu njengoba ebathanda abantwana bethu; ngalokho-ke, ngesihawu sakhe uyasihambela ngezizingelosi zakhe, ukuze isu lokusindisa lembulwe kithi ngokunjalo nasezizukulwaneni ezizayo.

And behold, I thank my great God that he has given us a portion of his Spirit to soften our hearts, that we have opened a correspondence with these brethren, the Nephites.

And behold, I also thank my God, that by opening this correspondence we have been convinced of our sins, and of the many murders which we have committed.

And I also thank my God, yea, my great God, that he hath granted unto us that we might repent of these things, and also that he hath forgiven us of those our many sins and murders which we have committed, and taken away the guilt from our hearts, through the merits of his Son.

And now behold, my brethren, since it has been all that we could do (as we were the most lost of all mankind) to repent of all our sins and the many murders which we have committed, and to get God to take them away from our hearts, for it was all we could do to repent sufficiently before God that he would take away our stain—

Now, my best beloved brethren, since God hath taken away our stains, and our swords have become bright, then let us stain our swords no more with the blood of our brethren.

Behold, I say unto you, Nay, let us retain our swords that they be not stained with the blood of our brethren; for perhaps, if we should stain our swords again they can no more be washed bright through the blood of the Son of our great God, which shall be shed for the atonement of our sins.

And the great God has had mercy on us, and made these things known unto us that we might not perish; yea, and he has made these things known unto us beforehand, because he loveth our souls as well as he loveth our children; therefore, in his mercy he doth visit us by his angels, that the plan of salvation might be made known unto us as well as unto future generations.

- 15 O, unomusa kangakanani uNkulunkulu wethu! Manje bhekani, njengoba kube yilokho nje kuphela ebesingakwazi ukuthi sikwenze ukuthi kususwe amabala kithi, futhi izinkemba zethu zenziwe zakhazimula, masizifihle kude ukuze zigcinwe zikhazimula, njengobufakazi kuNkulunkulu wethu ngosuku lokugcina, noma ngosuku esiyoethwa ngalo ukuthi sime phambi kwakhe ukuthi sahlulelwe, ukuthi asizingcolisanga izinkemba zethu egazini labafowethu selokhu asabela izwi lakhe futhi wasenza sahlanzeka ngalokho.
- 16 Manje, bafowethu, uma abafowethu befuna ukusibulala, bhekani, siyozifihla kude izinkemba zethu, yebo, siyozingcwaba ngisho ekujuleni komhlaba, ukuze zigcinwe zicwebezela, njengobufakazi bokuthi asizange nanini sizisebenzise, ngosuku lokugcina; futhi uma abafowethu besibulala, bhekani, siyoya kuNkulunkulu wethu futhi siyosindiswa.
- 17 Manje kwenzeka ukuthi ngesikhathi inkosi seyenze isiphetho salenkulumo, futhi bonke abantu bebuthane ndawonye, bathatha izinkemba zabo, kanye nazo zonke izikhali ezazisetshenziselwa ukuchitha igazi lomuntu, bazingcwaba ekujuleni komhlaba.
- 18 Futhi lokhu bakwenza, ukuthi kube yisibonakaliso sabo sobufakazi kuNkulunkulu, futhi ngokunjalo nakubantu, sokuthi abaseyikuphinda bazisebenzise izikhali nanini ukuchitha igazi lomuntu; futhi lokhu bakwenza, beqinisekisa futhi benza isivumelwano noNkulunkulu, ukuthi kunokuthi bachithe igazi labafowabo bayonikela ngezimpilo zabo uqobo; futhi kunokuthi bathathe kumfowabo bayomupha; futhi kunokuthi bachithe izinsuku zabo ngobuvila bayosebenza kakhulu ngezandla zabo.
- 19 Futhi ngalendlela siyabona ukuthi, ngesikhathi lamaLamani elethwa ekukholweni kanye nasekwazini iqiniso, aqina, futhi ayengabekezelela ubuhlungu ngisho kuze kube sekufeni kunokuthi enze isono; futhi ngalendlela siyabona ukuthi bazingcwaba izikhali zabo zokuthula, noma bazingcwaba izikhali zempi, ukuze kube khona ukuthula.

Oh, how merciful is our God! And now behold, since it has been as much as we could do to get our stains taken away from us, and our swords are made bright, let us hide them away that they may be kept bright, as a testimony to our God at the last day, or at the day that we shall be brought to stand before him to be judged, that we have not stained our swords in the blood of our brethren since he imparted his word unto us and has made us clean thereby.

And now, my brethren, if our brethren seek to destroy us, behold, we will hide away our swords, yea, even we will bury them deep in the earth, that they may be kept bright, as a testimony that we have never used them, at the last day; and if our brethren destroy us, behold, we shall go to our God and shall be saved.

And now it came to pass that when the king had made an end of these sayings, and all the people were assembled together, they took their swords, and all the weapons which were used for the shedding of man's blood, and they did bury them up deep in the earth.

And this they did, it being in their view a testimony to God, and also to men, that they never would use weapons again for the shedding of man's blood; and this they did, vouching and covenanting with God, that rather than shed the blood of their brethren they would give up their own lives; and rather than take away from a brother they would give unto him; and rather than spend their days in idleness they would labor abundantly with their hands.

And thus we see that, when these Lamanites were brought to believe and to know the truth, they were firm, and would suffer even unto death rather than commit sin; and thus we see that they buried their weapons of peace, or they buried the weapons of war, for peace.

- 20 Futhi kwenzeka ukuthi abafowabo, amaLamani, benza amalungiselelo empi, futhi beza bakhuphukela ezweni lakwaNefi ngenhloso yokuzobulala inkosi, kanye nokuthi abeke enye esikhundleni sayo, futhi nokuthi abulale abantu bakwa-Anti-Nefi-Lehi baphele ezweni.
- 21 Manje ngesikhathi abantu bebona ukuthi ayezolwa nabo bahamba bayowahlangabeza, futhi bazilahla phambi kwawo phansi, futhi baqala ukubiza igama leNkosi; futhi ngalendlela babekulesi simo ngesikhathi amaLamani eqala ukutheleka phezu kwabo, futhi eqala ukubabulala ngenkamba.
- 22 Futhi ngenxa yalokhu ngaphandle kokuhlangabezana nomzabalazo, abulala inkulungwane nesihlanu yabo; futhi siyazi ukuthi babusisiwe, ngokuba bahamba bayohlala noNkulunkulu wabo.
- 23 Manje ngesikhathi amaLamani ebona ukuthi abafowabo abazange bayibalekele inkemba, noma babheke eceleni kwesokudla noma kwesokhohlo, kodwa ukuthi balala phansi futhi bafa, futhi bamdumisa uNkulunkulu ngisho nakuleso sehlakalo sokubulawa ngenkamba.
- 24 Manje ngesikhathi amaLamani ekubona lokhu azibamba ekubabulaleni; futhi kwaba khona amaningi aba nezinhliziyo ezagcwala ukudabuka ngenxa yalabo bafowabo ababewe phansi kwenkamba, ngokuba basebephendukile ezintweni ababezenzile.
- 25 Futhi kwenzeka ukuthi balahla phansi izikhali zabo zempi, futhi abazange besaphinde bazithatha futhi, ngokuba bahlabeka ngokubulala ababekwenzile; futhi bazilahla phansi ngisho njengabo abafowabo, bethembele emseni walabo ababephakamise izingalo zabo ukubabulala.
- 26 Futhi kwenzeka ukuthi abantu baNkulunkulu ngalolo suku bahlangana nabangaphezulu kwesibalo salabo ababebulewe; futhi labo ababebulewe babengabantu abalungile, ngakho-ke asinasizathu sokungabaza ukuthi basindiswa.

And it came to pass that their brethren, the Lamanites, made preparations for war, and came up to the land of Nephi for the purpose of destroying the king, and to place another in his stead, and also of destroying the people of Anti-Nephi-Lehi out of the land.

Now when the people saw that they were coming against them they went out to meet them, and prostrated themselves before them to the earth, and began to call on the name of the Lord; and thus they were in this attitude when the Lamanites began to fall upon them, and began to slay them with the sword.

And thus without meeting any resistance, they did slay a thousand and five of them; and we know that they are blessed, for they have gone to dwell with their God.

Now when the Lamanites saw that their brethren would not flee from the sword, neither would they turn aside to the right hand or to the left, but that they would lie down and perish, and praised God even in the very act of perishing under the sword—

Now when the Lamanites saw this they did forbear from slaying them; and there were many whose hearts had swollen in them for those of their brethren who had fallen under the sword, for they repented of the things which they had done.

And it came to pass that they threw down their weapons of war, and they would not take them again, for they were stung for the murders which they had committed; and they came down even as their brethren, relying upon the mercies of those whose arms were lifted to slay them.

And it came to pass that the people of God were joined that day by more than the number who had been slain; and those who had been slain were righteous people, therefore we have no reason to doubt but what they were saved.

- 27 Futhi kwakungekho namunye umuntu omubi owabulawa phakathi kwabo; kodwa kwaba khona abangaphezulu kwenkulungwane abalethwa ekwazini iqiniso; ngaleyondlela siyabona ukuthi iNkosi isebenza ngezindlela eziningi ukuze isindise abantu bayo.
- 28 Manje isibalo esikhulu kakhulu salabo bamaLamani abulala abaningi kangaka babafowabo babe ngama-Amaleki kanye nama-Amuloni, isibalo esikhulu kakhulu sabo kwakungabo hlelo lwama Nehori.
- 29 Manje, phakathi kwalabo abahlangana nabantu beNkosi, kwakungekho namunye owayengum-Amaleki noma ngum-Amuloni, noma owayengowohlelo lukaNehori, kodwa babengabozalo lwangempela lukaLamani kanye noLemuweli.
- 30 Futhi ngaleyondlela singakwazi ukuhlukanisa ngokucacile, ukuthi emva kokuthi abantu abeke bakhanyiselwa ngoMoya kaNkulunkulu, futhi baba nolwazi olukhulu lwezinto eziphathelene nokulunga, futhi emva kwalokho base bewela esonweni kanye nasekuphambukeni, baba lukhuni kakhulu, futhi ngaleyondlela isimo sabo siba sibi kakhulu kunokuba bengazange bazi ngalezi zinto.

And there was not a wicked man slain among them; but there were more than a thousand brought to the knowledge of the truth; thus we see that the Lord worketh in many ways to the salvation of his people.

Now the greatest number of those of the Lamanites who slew so many of their brethren were Amalekites and Amulonites, the greatest number of whom were after the order of the Nehors.

Now, among those who joined the people of the Lord, there were none who were Amalekites or Amulonites, or who were of the order of Nehor, but they were actual descendants of Laman and Lemuel.

And thus we can plainly discern, that after a people have been once enlightened by the Spirit of God, and have had great knowledge of things pertaining to righteousness, and then have fallen away into sin and transgression, they become more hardened, and thus their state becomes worse than though they had never known these things.

Alima 25

- 1 Bheka, manje kwenzeka ukuthi lawo maLamani athukuthela kakhulu ngoba ayebulele abafowabo; ngakho-ke afungela impindiselo kumaNefi; futhi awazange esenza mizamo nanini yokuthi abulale abantu baka-Anti-Nefi-Lehi ngaleso sikhathi.
- 2 Kodwa athatha amabutho awo futhi ahamba awelela emingceleni yezwe lakwa Zarahemla, futhi ahlasela abantu ababesezweni lakwa-Amonihah futhi bababulala.
- 3 Futhi emva kwalokho, aba nezimpi eziningi namaNefi, kuzo aqhutshwa futhi abulawa.
- 4 Futhi phakathi kwamaLamani ayebulewe kwakukhona cishe yonke inzalo ka-Amuloni kanye nabafowabo, ababengabaphristi bakaNowa, futhi babulawa ngezandla zamaNefi;
- 5 Futhi abasalayo, sebebalekele ehlane elisempumalanga, futhi sebezithathele amandla kanye negunya phezu kwamaLamani, benza ukuthi abaningi bamaLamani bafe ngomlilo ngenxa yenkolo yabo—
- 6 Ngokuba abaningi bawo, emva kokuthi esebe nokulahlekelwa okukhulu kanye neziningi kakhulu izinhlupheko, aqala ukuphehlelwa ekukhumbuleni amazwi u-Aroni kanye nabafowabo ababewashumayeke kubo ezweni lawo; ngakho-ke aqala ukungawakholwa amasiko oyise, futhi akholwa eNkosini, futhi nokuthi yanikeza amandla amakhulu kumaNefi; futhi ngaleyondlela kwabakhona abaningi bawo abaphenduka ehlane.
- 7 Futhi kwenzeka ukuthi labo babusi ababeyinsalela yabantwana bakwa-Amuloni benza ukuthi babulawe, yebo, bonke labo ababekholelwa kulezi zinto.
- 8 Manje lokhu kufela ukholo kwenza ukuthi abaningi babafowabo baphehlelwe entukuthelweni; futhi kwaqala ukuthi kube khona umbango ehlane; futhi amaLamani aqala ukuzingela inzalo ka-Amuloni kanye nabafowabo futhi aqala ukuyibulala; futhi babalekela ehlane elisempumalanga.

Alma 25

And behold, now it came to pass that those Lamanites were more angry because they had slain their brethren; therefore they swore vengeance upon the Nephites; and they did no more attempt to slay the people of Anti-Nephi-Lehi at that time.

But they took their armies and went over into the borders of the land of Zarahemla, and fell upon the people who were in the land of Ammonihah and destroyed them.

And after that, they had many battles with the Nephites, in the which they were driven and slain.

And among the Lamanites who were slain were almost all the seed of Amulon and his brethren, who were the priests of Noah, and they were slain by the hands of the Nephites;

And the remainder, having fled into the east wilderness, and having usurped the power and authority over the Lamanites, caused that many of the Lamanites should perish by fire because of their belief—

For many of them, after having suffered much loss and so many afflictions, began to be stirred up in remembrance of the words which Aaron and his brethren had preached to them in their land; therefore they began to disbelieve the traditions of their fathers, and to believe in the Lord, and that he gave great power unto the Nephites; and thus there were many of them converted in the wilderness.

And it came to pass that those rulers who were the remnant of the children of Amulon caused that they should be put to death, yea, all those that believed in these things.

Now this martyrdom caused that many of their brethren should be stirred up to anger; and there began to be contention in the wilderness; and the Lamanites began to hunt the seed of Amulon and his brethren and began to slay them; and they fled into the east wilderness.

- 9 Futhi bheka basazingelwa nangalolusuku ngamaLamani. Ngaleyondlela amazwi ka-Abinadi agcwaliseka, awasho mayelana nenzalo yabaphristi abenza ukuthi ezwe ukufa ngomlilo.
- 10 Ngokuba wathi kubo. Lokho eniyokwenza kimi kuyokuba wuhlobo lwezinto eziyokwenzeka.
- 11 Manje u-Abinadi wayengowokuqala owezwa ukufa ngomlilo ngenxa yokukholwa kwakhe kuNkulunkulu; manje yilokhu ayekuqondile, ukuthi abaningi bayokuzwa ukufa ngomlilo, njengoba naye akuzwa.
- 12 Futhi washo kubaphristi bakaNowa ukuthi inzalo yabo iyokwenza abaningi ukuthi babulawe, ngendlela efanayo njengoba kwenziwa nakuye, futhi nokuthi bayohlakazeka ngaphandle futhi babulawe, ngisho njengezimvu ezingamelusi zixoshwa futhi zibulawa yizilwane zasandle; manje bhekani, lamazwi agcwaliseka, ngokuba baxoshwa ngamaLamani, futhi bazingelwa, futhi bashaywa.
- 13 Futhi kwenzeka ukuthi ngesikhathi amaLamani ebona ukuthi ayengeke akwazi ukunqoba amaNefi abuyela futhi ezweni lawo; futhi amaningi awo eza azohlala ezweni lakwa-Ishmayeli kanye nasezweni lakwaNefi, futhi nempela azihlanganisa nabantu baNkulunkulu, ababengabantu bakwa-Anti-Nefi-Lehi.
- 14 Futhi nawo ngokunjalo nempela azingcwaba izikhali zawo zempi, njengoba nabafowabo babenzile, futhi aqala ukuthi abe ngabantu abalungile; futhi ahamba ezindleleni zeNkosi, futhi aqaphela ukuthi agcine imiyalelo kanye nemithetho yayo.
- 15 Yebo, futhi nempela bawugcina umthetho kaMose; ngokuba kwakufanele ukuthi bawugcine umthetho kaMose okwangaleso sikhathi, ngokuba kwakungakagcwaliseki konke. Kodwa nakuba wawukhona umthetho kaMose, babheka phambili ekuzeni kukaKristu, bebona ukuthi umthetho kaMose wakuyisibonakaliso sokuza kwakhe, futhi bekhola ukuthi kufanele bagcine lezo zimiso zangaphandle kuze kube yisikhathi ayokwembulwa ngaso kubo.

And behold they are hunted at this day by the Lamanites. Thus the words of Abinadi were brought to pass, which he said concerning the seed of the priests who caused that he should suffer death by fire.

For he said unto them: What ye shall do unto me shall be a type of things to come.

And now Abinadi was the first that suffered death by fire because of his belief in God; now this is what he meant, that many should suffer death by fire, according as he had suffered.

And he said unto the priests of Noah that their seed should cause many to be put to death, in the like manner as he was, and that they should be scattered abroad and slain, even as a sheep having no shepherd is driven and slain by wild beasts; and now behold, these words were verified, for they were driven by the Lamanites, and they were hunted, and they were smitten.

And it came to pass that when the Lamanites saw that they could not overpower the Nephites they returned again to their own land; and many of them came over to dwell in the land of Ishmael and the land of Nephi, and did join themselves to the people of God, who were the people of Anti-Nephi-Lehi.

And they did also bury their weapons of war, according as their brethren had, and they began to be a righteous people; and they did walk in the ways of the Lord, and did observe to keep his commandments and his statutes.

Yea, and they did keep the law of Moses; for it was expedient that they should keep the law of Moses as yet, for it was not all fulfilled. But notwithstanding the law of Moses, they did look forward to the coming of Christ, considering that the law of Moses was a type of his coming, and believing that they must keep those outward performances until the time that he should be revealed unto them.

16 Manje babengacabangi ukuthi ukusindiswa kwakuza ngomthetho kaMose; kodwa umthetho kaMose nempela wenza ukuthi ukholo lwabo kuKristu luqine; futhi ngaleyondlela nempela baligcina ithemba ngokholo, elaliholela ekusindisweni kwaphakade, bethembele kuwo umoya wokuphrofetha, owakhuluma ngalezo zinto ezazizokwenzeka.

17 Manje bhekani, u-Amoni, no-Aroni, no-Omineri, noHimni, kanye nabafowabo bajabula kakhulu, ngempumelelo ababanayo phakathi kwamaLamani, bebona ukuthi iNkosi yayibanikezile njengokwemi khuleko yabo, futhi nokuthi phezu kwalokho yaliqinisekisa izwi layo kubo ngayo yonke indlela.

Now they did not suppose that salvation came by the law of Moses; but the law of Moses did serve to strengthen their faith in Christ; and thus they did retain a hope through faith, unto eternal salvation, relying upon the spirit of prophecy, which spake of those things to come.

And now behold, Ammon, and Aaron, and Omner, and Himni, and their brethren did rejoice exceedingly, for the success which they had had among the Lamanites, seeing that the Lord had granted unto them according to their prayers, and that he had also verified his word unto them in every particular.

Alima 26

- 1 Manje, lawa ngamazwi ka-Amoni kubafowabo, asho kanje: Banewethu kanye nabafowethu, bhekani ngithi kini, sikhulu kangakanani isizathu esinaso ukuthi sithokoze; ngokuba sake sacabanga nje ngesikhathi sisuka ezweni lakwaZarahemla ukuthi uNkulunkulu wayezobe esesinike izibusiso ezinkulu kanjena na?
- 2 Manje, ngiyabuza, yiziphi izibusiso ezinkulu asinike zona na? Ningasho na?
- 3 Bhekani, ngizoniphendulela; ngokuba abafowethu, amaLamani, babesebumnyameni, yebo, ngisho nasemhumeni wobumnyana, kodwa bhekani, baningi kangakanani abalethwa ukuthi babone ukukhanya okumangalisayo kukaNkulunkulu! Futhi lokhu kuyisibusiso esinikwe sona, ukuthi sibe ngabasetshenziswa nguNkulunkulu ukuthi senze lomsebenzi omkhulu.
- 4 Bhekani, izinkulungwane zawo ziyathokoza, futhi sebelethwe esibayeni sikaNkulunkulu.
- 5 Bhekani, insimu yayisivuthiwe, futhi nibusisiwe, ngokuba nempela nilifakile isikela, futhi navuna ngamandla enu, yebo, bonke ubude bosuku nisebenzile; futhi bhekani isibalo sezithungu zenu! Futhi ziyobuthelwa ezinqolobaneni, ukuze zingonakali.
- 6 Yebo, aziyikushaywa yisichotho ngosuku lokugcina, yebo, noma zibhengulwe yizishingishane; kodwa ngesikhathi isichotho sifika ziyobuthelwa ndawonye endaweni yazo, ukuze isichotho singakwazi ukungena kuzo; yebo, futhi ngeke ziqhutshwe yimimoya eyesabekayo ziye nomaphi lapho isitha siyozithwala siziyise khona.
- 7 Kodwa bhekani, zisezandleni zeNkosi yesivuno, futhi zingezayo; futhi iyozivusa ngosuku lokugcina.
- 8 Libusisiwe igama likaNkulunkulu wethu; masihlabelele kulo udumo lwakhe, yebo, masilibonge igama lakhe elingcwele, ngokuba usebenza ukulunga ingunaphakade.

Alma 26

And now, these are the words of Ammon to his brethren, which say thus: My brothers and my brethren, behold I say unto you, how great reason have we to rejoice; for could we have supposed when we started from the land of Zarahemla that God would have granted unto us such great blessings?

And now, I ask, what great blessings has he bestowed upon us? Can ye tell?

Behold, I answer for you; for our brethren, the Lamanites, were in darkness, yea, even in the darkest abyss, but behold, how many of them are brought to behold the marvelous light of God! And this is the blessing which hath been bestowed upon us, that we have been made instruments in the hands of God to bring about this great work.

Behold, thousands of them do rejoice, and have been brought into the fold of God.

Behold, the field was ripe, and blessed are ye, for ye did thrust in the sickle, and did reap with your might, yea, all the day long did ye labor; and behold the number of your sheaves! And they shall be gathered into the garners, that they are not wasted.

Yea, they shall not be beaten down by the storm at the last day; yea, neither shall they be harrowed up by the whirlwinds; but when the storm cometh they shall be gathered together in their place, that the storm cannot penetrate to them; yea, neither shall they be driven with fierce winds whithersoever the enemy listeth to carry them.

But behold, they are in the hands of the Lord of the harvest, and they are his; and he will raise them up at the last day.

Blessed be the name of our God; let us sing to his praise, yea, let us give thanks to his holy name, for he doth work righteousness forever.

- 9 Ngokuba ukuba besingaphumanga ezweni lakwaZarahemla, laba babafowethu abathandeka kakhulu, abasithande kakhulu kangaka, bebeyobe namanje besahlushwa yinzondo ngokumelene nathi, yebo, futhi phezu kwalokho bebeyoba ngabantu abangaziwa kuNkulunkulu.
- 10 Futhi kwenzeka ukuthi ngesikhathi u-Amoni esewashilo lamazwi, umfowabo u-Aroni wamsola, ethi: Amoni, ngiyesaba ukuthi ukujabula kwakho kuzokuholela ekuziqhayiseni.
- 11 Kodwa u-Amoni wathi kuye: Angiziqhayisi ngawami amandla, noma ngokwani ukuhlakanipha; kodwa bheka, injabulo yami igcwele, yebo, inhliziyi yami iyachichima yinjabulo, futhi ngizothokoza kuNkulunkulu wami.
- 12 Yebo, ngiyazi ukuthi angilutho; ngokwamandla ami ngibuthakathaka; ngakho-ke anginakuziqhayisa ngokwami, kodwa ngizoziqhayisa ngoNkulunkulu wami, ngokuba ngamandla akhe ngingenza zonke izinto; yebo, bheka, eziningi izimangaliso sizenzile kulelizwe, esiyolidumisa igama lakhe ngazo ingunaphakade.
- 13 Bhekani, zingakanani izinkulungwane zabafowethu azikhululile ebuhlungwini besihogo; futhi zilethwe ukuthi zihlabelele uthando lwenkululeko, futhi lokhu ngenxa yamandla ezwi lakhe elikithi, ngakho-ke asinaso yini isizathu esikhulu sokujabula na?
- 14 Yebo, sinesizathu sokumdumisa ingunaphakade, ngokuba unguNkulunkulu oPhakeme Kakhulu, futhi ukhulule abafowethu emaketangeni esihogo.
- 15 Yebo, babezungezwe ngubumnyana obungapheliyo kanye nokonakaliswa; kodwa bhekani, ubalethe ekukhanyeni okungapheliyo kwakhe, yebo, ensindisweni engapheliyo; futhi bazungezwe ngothando lwakhe oluningi olungenakulinganiswa; yebo, futhi thina sibe ngabasetshenziswa nguye ekwenzeni lomsebenzi omkhulu futhi nomangalisayo.

For if we had not come up out of the land of Zarahemla, these our dearly beloved brethren, who have so dearly beloved us, would still have been racked with hatred against us, yea, and they would also have been strangers to God.

And it came to pass that when Ammon had said these words, his brother Aaron rebuked him, saying: Ammon, I fear that thy joy doth carry thee away unto boasting.

But Ammon said unto him: I do not boast in my own strength, nor in my own wisdom; but behold, my joy is full, yea, my heart is brim with joy, and I will rejoice in my God.

Yea, I know that I am nothing; as to my strength I am weak; therefore I will not boast of myself, but I will boast of my God, for in his strength I can do all things; yea, behold, many mighty miracles we have wrought in this land, for which we will praise his name forever.

Behold, how many thousands of our brethren has he loosed from the pains of hell; and they are brought to sing redeeming love, and this because of the power of his word which is in us, therefore have we not great reason to rejoice?

Yea, we have reason to praise him forever, for he is the Most High God, and has loosed our brethren from the chains of hell.

Yea, they were encircled about with everlasting darkness and destruction; but behold, he has brought them into his everlasting light, yea, into everlasting salvation; and they are encircled about with the matchless bounty of his love; yea, and we have been instruments in his hands of doing this great and marvelous work.

- 16 Ngakho-ke, masithokoze, yebo, sizothokoza eNkosini; yebo, sizothokoza, ngokuba injabulo yethu igcwele; yebo, sizomdumisa uNkulunkulu wethu ingunaphakade: Bhekani, ngubani ongathokoza kakhulu eNkosini na? Yebo, ngubani ongakhuluma kakhulu ngamandla akhe amakhulu, kanye nangesihawu sakhe, kanye nangokuba nenhliziyo ende kwakhe kubantwana babantu na? Bhekani, ngithi kini, anginakusho ngisho okuncane engikuzwayo.
- 17 Ngubani owayecabanga ukuthi uNkulunkulu wethu wayengaba nesihawu esikhulu kangaka sokuthi asihlwithe esimweni sethu esesabekayo, sokona, kanye nesingcolile na?
- 18 Bhekani, sasihamba ngisho nangentukuthelo, ngokwesabisa okukhulu ukuze sibhubhise ibandla lakhe.
- 19 O pho, kungani engasisanga ekonakalisweni okwesabekayo, yebo, kungani engayiyekelanga inkemba yokulunga kwakhe iwele phezu kwethu, futhi asilahlele ekuphelelweni yithemba kwaphakade na?
- 20 O, umphefumulo wami, cishe kuba sengathi, uyanyamalala ngalowo mcabango. Bhekani, akakusebenzisanga ukulunga kwakhe phezu kwethu, kodwa ngesihawu sakhe esikhulu wasiwelisa kulelo gebe lokufa kanye nosizi lwaphakade, ngisho kwaze kwaba sekusindisweni kwemiphefumulo yethu.
- 21 Manje bhekani, bafowethu, ngumuphi umuntu wemvelo okhona owaziyo ngalezi zinto na? Ngithi kini, akekho namunye ozaziyo lezi zinto, ngaphandle kwabadabukile ngokona.
- 22 Yebo, lowo ophendukayo futhi asebenzise ukholo, futhi aveze imisebenzi emihle, futhi akhuleke njalo-njalo engaphezi—konjalo kunikwa ukwazi izimfihlakalo zikaNkulunkulu; yebo, konjalo kuyonikwa ukuthi ambulelwe izinto ezingakaze zambulwe nanini; yebo, futhi kuyonikwa konjalo ukuthi alethe izinkulungwane zemiphefumulo ekuphendukeni, ngisho nanjengoba nathi sinikeziwe ukuthi sibuyise labafowethu ekuphendukeni.

Therefore, let us glory, yea, we will glory in the Lord; yea, we will rejoice, for our joy is full; yea, we will praise our God forever. Behold, who can glory too much in the Lord? Yea, who can say too much of his great power, and of his mercy, and of his long-suffering towards the children of men? Behold, I say unto you, I cannot say the smallest part which I feel.

Who could have supposed that our God would have been so merciful as to have snatched us from our awful, sinful, and polluted state?

Behold, we went forth even in wrath, with mighty threatenings to destroy his church.

Oh then, why did he not consign us to an awful destruction, yea, why did he not let the sword of his justice fall upon us, and doom us to eternal despair?

Oh, my soul, almost as it were, fleeth at the thought. Behold, he did not exercise his justice upon us, but in his great mercy hath brought us over that everlasting gulf of death and misery, even to the salvation of our souls.

And now behold, my brethren, what natural man is there that knoweth these things? I say unto you, there is none that knoweth these things, save it be the penitent.

Yea, he that repenteth and exerciseth faith, and bringeth forth good works, and prayeth continually without ceasing—unto such it is given to know the mysteries of God; yea, unto such it shall be given to reveal things which never have been revealed; yea, and it shall be given unto such to bring thousands of souls to repentance, even as it has been given unto us to bring these our brethren to repentance.

- 23 Manje anikhumbuli yini, bafowethu, ukuthi sathi uma sithi kubafowethu ezweni lakwaZarahemla, siyahamba sikhuphukela ezweni lakwaNefi, ukuthi siyoshumayela kubafowethu amaLamani, basihleka usulu na?
- 24 Ngokuba bathi kithi: Nicabanga ukuthi ningaletha amaLamani ekwazini iqiniso na? Nicabanga ukuthi ningakwazi ukukholwisa amaLamani ngokungalungi kwamasiko oyise, njengoba bengabantu abangontamo lukhuni abanjena; abanhliziyiyo zabo zithokoza ekuchithekeni kwegazi; izinsuku zabo abazichitha ebubini obukhulu kakhulu; izindlela zabo okuyizindlela zomoni kusukela ekuqaleni na? Manje bafowethu, niyakhumbula ukuthi lolu kwakuwulimi lwabo.
- 25 Futhi phezu kwalokho bathi: Masibathathele izikhali silwe nabo, ukuze sibabulale kanye nobubi babo baphele nya ezweni, ngaphandle kwalokho bazosehlula futhi basibulale.
- 26 Kodwa bhekani, bafowethu abathandekayo, thina seza ehlane hhayi ngenhloso yokuzobulala abafowethu, kodwa ngenhloso yokuthi mhlawumbe singasindisa eminye emibalwa imiphefumulo yabo.
- 27 Manje ngesikhathi izinhliziyiyo zethu sezishone phansi, futhi cishe sasesizophindela emuva, bhekani, iNkosi yasiduduza, futhi yathi: Hambani niye phakathi kwabafowenu, amaLamani, futhi nizithwale ngokubekezela izinhlupheko zenu, futhi ngiyoninika impumelelo.
- 28 Manje bhekani, sifikile, futhi besindawo zonke phakathi kwabo; futhi sibekezilele ekuhluphekeni kwethu, futhi sihlupheke ngokuntula konke; yebo, sihambe umuzi nomuzi, sithembele emseni wezwe—hhayi emseni wezwe kuphela kodwa nasemseni kaNkulunkulu.

Now do ye remember, my brethren, that we said unto our brethren in the land of Zarahemla, we go up to the land of Nephi, to preach unto our brethren, the Lamanites, and they laughed us to scorn?

For they said unto us: Do ye suppose that ye can bring the Lamanites to the knowledge of the truth? Do ye suppose that ye can convince the Lamanites of the incorrectness of the traditions of their fathers, as stiffnecked a people as they are; whose hearts delight in the shedding of blood; whose days have been spent in the grossest iniquity; whose ways have been the ways of a transgressor from the beginning? Now my brethren, ye remember that this was their language.

And moreover they did say: Let us take up arms against them, that we destroy them and their iniquity out of the land, lest they overrun us and destroy us.

But behold, my beloved brethren, we came into the wilderness not with the intent to destroy our brethren, but with the intent that perhaps we might save some few of their souls.

Now when our hearts were depressed, and we were about to turn back, behold, the Lord comforted us, and said: Go amongst thy brethren, the Lamanites, and bear with patience thine afflictions, and I will give unto you success.

And now behold, we have come, and been forth amongst them; and we have been patient in our sufferings, and we have suffered every privation; yea, we have traveled from house to house, relying upon the mercies of the world—not upon the mercies of the world alone but upon the mercies of God.

29 Futhi singenile ezindlini zabo futhi sabafundisa, futhi sibafundisile emigwaqweni yabo; yebo, futhi sibafundisile phezu kwamagquma abo; futhi ngokunjalo singenile nasemathempelini abo kanye nakumasinagoge abo futhi sabafundisa; kodwa sixoshiwe, sahleleka usulu, saphimiselwa ngamathe, sashaywa ezihlathini zethu; futhi sikhandwe nangamatshe, futhi sathathwa saboshwa ngezintambo eziqinile, saphonswa etilongweni; kodwa ngamandla kanye nokuhlakanipha kukaNkulunkulu sikhululiwe futhi.

30 Futhi sizwe zonke izinhlobo zokuhlupheka, futhi konke lokhu, ukuze mhlawumbe sibe yisu lokusindisa umphefumulo othile; futhiasicabanga ukuthi injabulo yethu ingagcwala uma mhlawumbe singaba yisu lokusindisa abanye.

31 Manje bhekani, singabuka futhi sizibone izithelo zemisebenzi yethu; futhi ngabe zincane na? Ngithi kini, Cha, ziningi; yebo, futhi singafakaza ngobuqotho babo, ngenxa yothando lwabo kubafowabo futhi ngokunjalo nakithi.

32 Ngokuba bhekani, bancama ukunikela ngezimpilo zabo kunokuthi bathathe impilo yesitha sabo; futhi bazingcwabile izikhali zabo zempi ekujuleni komhlaba, ngenxa yothando lwabo kubafowabo.

33 Manje bhekani ngithi kini, ngabe lwake lwaba khona uthando olungaka ezweni lonke na? Bhekani, ngithi kini, Cha, alukaze lube khona, ngisho naphakathi kwamaNefi.

34 Ngokuba bhekani, wona ayengabathathela abafowabo izikhali; babengeke bavume ukuthi babulawe. Kodwa bhekani bangaki abalaba ababeke phansi izimpilo zabo; futhi siyazi ukuthi bahambile baya kuNkulunkulu wabo, ngenxa yothando lwabo kanye nokuzonda kwabo isono.

And we have entered into their houses and taught them, and we have taught them in their streets; yea, and we have taught them upon their hills; and we have also entered into their temples and their synagogues and taught them; and we have been cast out, and mocked, and spit upon, and smote upon our cheeks; and we have been stoned, and taken and bound with strong cords, and cast into prison; and through the power and wisdom of God we have been delivered again.

And we have suffered all manner of afflictions, and all this, that perhaps we might be the means of saving some soul; and we supposed that our joy would be full if perhaps we could be the means of saving some.

Now behold, we can look forth and see the fruits of our labors; and are they few? I say unto you, Nay, they are many; yea, and we can witness of their sincerity, because of their love towards their brethren and also towards us.

For behold, they had rather sacrifice their lives than even to take the life of their enemy; and they have buried their weapons of war deep in the earth, because of their love towards their brethren.

And now behold I say unto you, has there been so great love in all the land? Behold, I say unto you, Nay, there has not, even among the Nephites.

For behold, they would take up arms against their brethren; they would not suffer themselves to be slain. But behold how many of these have laid down their lives; and we know that they have gone to their God, because of their love and of their hatred to sin.

35 Manje ngabe asinaso yini isizathu sokuthokoza na? Yebo, ngithi kini, akukaze kube khona bantu abake baba nesizathu esikhulu kangaka sokuthokoza njengathi, selokhu kwadabuka umhlaba; yebo, futhi injabulo yami ithathekile, ngisho nasekuziqhayiseni kuNkulunkulu wami; ngokuba unamandla onke, ukuhlakanipha konke, kanye nokwazi konke; uqonda zonke izinto, futhi unguMuntu onesihawu, ngisho kuze kube sekusindisweni, kulabo abayophenduka futhi bakholwe egameni lakhe.

36 Manje uma lokhu kungukuziqhayisa, nami ngokunjalo ngizoziqhayisa; ngokuba lokhu kuyimpilo yami kanye nokukhanya kwami, injabulo yami kanye nensindiso yami, kanye nokukhululwa kwami osizini lwaphakade. Yebo, libusisiwe igama likaNkulunkulu wami, obelokhu ebanakekele laba bantu, abayigatsha lesihlahla sika-Israyeli, futhi ebelikade lilahlekile emzimbeni walo ezweni elingaziwa; yebo, ngithi, libusisiwe igama likaNkulunkulu wami, obekade elokhu esinakekele thina, mihambima ezweni elingaziwa.

37 Manje bafowethu, siyabona ukuthi uNkulunkulu unakekela bonke abantu, noma ngabe bangaba kuliphi izwe; yebo, uyababala abantu bakhe, futhi izibilini zakhe zesihawu zisemhlabeni wonke. Manje lokhu kuyinjabulo yami, kanye nokubonga kwami okukhulu; yebo, futhi ngiyombonga uNkulunkulu wami ingunaphakade. Amen.

Now have we not reason to rejoice? Yea, I say unto you, there never were men that had so great reason to rejoice as we, since the world began; yea, and my joy is carried away, even unto boasting in my God; for he has all power, all wisdom, and all understanding; he comprehendeth all things, and he is a merciful Being, even unto salvation, to those who will repent and believe on his name.

Now if this is boasting, even so will I boast; for this is my life and my light, my joy and my salvation, and my redemption from everlasting wo. Yea, blessed is the name of my God, who has been mindful of this people, who are a branch of the tree of Israel, and has been lost from its body in a strange land; yea, I say, blessed be the name of my God, who has been mindful of us, wanderers in a strange land.

Now my brethren, we see that God is mindful of every people, whatsoever land they may be in; yea, he numbereth his people, and his bowels of mercy are over all the earth. Now this is my joy, and my great thanksgiving; yea, and I will give thanks unto my God forever. Amen.

Alima 27

- 1 Manje kwenzeka ukuthi ngesikhathi lawo maLamani ayehambe ayolwa namaNefi esethole, emva kwemizabalazo yawo eminingi ukuba bababulale, ukuthi kwakuyize ukufuna ukuwabulala, aphinda abuyela ezweni lakwaNefi.
- 2 Futhi kwenzeka ukuthi ama-Amaleki, ngenxa yokulahlekelwa kwawo, athukuthela kakhulu. Futhi ngesikhathi ebona ukuthi ayengenakukwazi ukufuna impindiselo kumaNefi, aqala ukuthi aphehle abantu ngentukuthelo ngokumelene nabafowabo, abantu bakwa-Anti-Nefi-Lehi; ngakho-ke aqala futhi ukubabulala.
- 3 Manje labantu baphinda benqaba ukuthatha izikhali zabo, futhi bazinikela ukuthi babulawe njengokufisa kwezitha zabo.
- 4 Manje ngesikhathi u-Amoni kanye nabafowabo bewubona lo msebenzi wokubulawa phakathi kwalabo ababe ngabathandweyo kakhulu babo, kanye naphakathi kwalabo ababebathanda kangaka—ngokuba babebaphathe njengezingelosi ezazithunyiwe zivela kuNkulunkulu ukuzobasindisa ekonakalisweni kwaphakade—ngakho-ke, ngesikhathi u-Amoni kanye nabafowabo bewubona lomsebenzi omkhulu wokubulawa, bagcwala isihe, futhi bathi enkosini:
- 5 Masibaqoqeleni ndawonye laba bantu beNkosi, futhi masihambe sehlele ezweni lakwaZarahemla kubafowethu amaNefi, futhi sibaleke siphume ezandleni zezitha zethu, ukuze singabulawa.
- 6 Kodwa inkosi yathi kubo: Bhekani, amaNefi azosibulala, ngenxa yokubulala okuningi kanye nezono esazenza kuwo.
- 7 Futhi u-Amoni wathi: Ngizohamba ngiyobuza eNkosini, futhi uma ithi kithi, masihambe sehlele ezansi kubafowethu, ngabe nizohamba na?
- 8 Inkosi yathi kuye: Yebo, uma iNkosi ithi kithi masihambe, sizohamba sehlele ezansi kubo abafowethu, futhi siyokuba yizigqila zabo size silungise kubo ukubulala okuningi kanye nezono esazenza kubo.

Alma 27

Now it came to pass that when those Lamanites who had gone to war against the Nephites had found, after their many struggles to destroy them, that it was in vain to seek their destruction, they returned again to the land of Nephi.

And it came to pass that the Amalekites, because of their loss, were exceedingly angry. And when they saw that they could not seek revenge from the Nephites, they began to stir up the people in anger against their brethren, the people of Anti-Nephi-Lehi; therefore they began again to destroy them.

Now this people again refused to take their arms, and they suffered themselves to be slain according to the desires of their enemies.

Now when Ammon and his brethren saw this work of destruction among those whom they so dearly beloved, and among those who had so dearly beloved them—for they were treated as though they were angels sent from God to save them from everlasting destruction—therefore, when Ammon and his brethren saw this great work of destruction, they were moved with compassion, and they said unto the king:

Let us gather together this people of the Lord, and let us go down to the land of Zarahemla to our brethren the Nephites, and flee out of the hands of our enemies, that we be not destroyed.

But the king said unto them: Behold, the Nephites will destroy us, because of the many murders and sins we have committed against them.

And Ammon said: I will go and inquire of the Lord, and if he say unto us, go down unto our brethren, will ye go?

And the king said unto him: Yea, if the Lord saith unto us go, we will go down unto our brethren, and we will be their slaves until we repair unto them the many murders and sins which we have committed against them.

- 9 Kodwa u-Amoni wathi kuyo: Kuphambene nomthetho wabafowethu, owamiswa ngubaba, ukuthi kube khona izigqila phakathi kwabo; ngakho-ke masihambe sehlele ezansi futhi sithembele kuso isihawu sabafowethu.
- 10 Kodwa inkosi yathi kuye: Buza eNkosini, futhi uma ithi kithi masihambe, sizohamba; ngaphandle kwalokho sizofela kulelizwe.
- 11 Futhi kwenzeka ukuthi u-Amoni wahamba wayobuza eNkosini, futhi iNkosi yathi kuye:
- 12 Bakhiphe laba bantu kulelizwe, ukuze bangafi; ngokuba uSathane ubambelele kakhulu ezinhliziyweni zama-Amaleki, aphehla amaLamani ukuthi athukuthelele abafowabo ukuthi bababulale; ngakho-ke phumani niphale kulelizwe; futhi babusisiwe laba bantu kulesi sizukulwane, ngokuba ngizobalondoloza.
- 13 Manje kwenzeka ukuthi u-Amoni wahamba futhi wayotshela inkosi wonke amazwi iNkosi eyawakhuluma kuye.
- 14 Futhi baqoqela ndawonye bonke abantu babo, yebo, bonke abantu beNkosi, futhi baqoqela ndawonye yonke imihlambi yezimvu kanye nemihlambi yezinkomo yabo, bemuka baphuma ezweni, futhi bafika ehlane elalehluhanisa izwe lakwaNefi ezweni lakwaZarahemla, futhi beza eduze nemingcele yezwe.
- 15 Futhi kwenzeka ukuthi u-Amoni wathi kubo: Bhekani, mina kanye nabafowethu sizohamba phambili siye ezweni lakwaZarahemla, nizosala lapha size sibuye; futhi sizozizama izinhliziyozabafowethu, noma bayafuna yini ukuthi nize ezweni labo.
- 16 Futhi kwenzeka ukuthi ngesikhathi u-Amoni ehamba eya ezweni, yena kanye nabafowabo bahlangana no-Alima, kuleyo ndawo esesike sakhuluma ngayo; futhi bhekani, lokhu kwaba wumhlangano wenjabulo.
- 17 Manje injabulo ka-Amoni yayinkulu kakhulu kangangokuthi wagcwala; yebo, wenganywa yinjabulo kaNkulunkulu wakhe, ngisho kwaze kwaba uphelelwa ngamandla akhe; futhi waphinda wawela phansi.

But Ammon said unto him: It is against the law of our brethren, which was established by my father, that there should be any slaves among them; therefore let us go down and rely upon the mercies of our brethren.

But the king said unto him: Inquire of the Lord, and if he saith unto us go, we will go; otherwise we will perish in the land.

And it came to pass that Ammon went and inquired of the Lord, and the Lord said unto him:

Get this people out of this land, that they perish not; for Satan has great hold on the hearts of the Amalekites, who do stir up the Lamanites to anger against their brethren to slay them; therefore get thee out of this land; and blessed are this people in this generation, for I will preserve them.

And now it came to pass that Ammon went and told the king all the words which the Lord had said unto him.

And they gathered together all their people, yea, all the people of the Lord, and did gather together all their flocks and herds, and departed out of the land, and came into the wilderness which divided the land of Nephi from the land of Zarahemla, and came over near the borders of the land.

And it came to pass that Ammon said unto them: Behold, I and my brethren will go forth into the land of Zarahemla, and ye shall remain here until we return; and we will try the hearts of our brethren, whether they will that ye shall come into their land.

And it came to pass that as Ammon was going forth into the land, that he and his brethren met Alma, over in the place of which has been spoken; and behold, this was a joyful meeting.

Now the joy of Ammon was so great even that he was full; yea, he was swallowed up in the joy of his God, even to the exhausting of his strength; and he fell again to the earth.

- 18 Manje ngabe lokhu kwakungeyona injabulo eyedlulele na? Bhekani, lena yinjabulo engatholwa muntu ngaphandle kokuthi kube yilowo odabuke ngeqiniso ngokona kanye noyifuna ngokuzithoba injabulo.
- 19 Manje injabulo ka-Alima ekuhlanganeni kwakhe nabafowabo yayinkulu ngempela, futhi ngokunjalo nenjabulo ka-Aroni, no-Omineri, kanye noHimini; kodwa bheka injabulo yabo ayedlulanga amandla abo.
- 20 Manje kwenzeka ukuthi u-Alima wabahola abafowabo babuyela emuva ezweni lakwaZarahemla; baze bayongena ngisho nasendlini yakhe uqobo. Futhi bahamba bayotshela umahluleli omkhulu zonke izinto ezazenzekile kubo ezweni lakwaNefi, phakathi kwabafowabo, amaLamani.
- 21 Futhi kwenzeka ukuthi umahluleli omkhulu wathumela isimemezelo kulo lonke izwe, enesifiso sokuzwa izwi labantu mayelana nokwamukela abafowabo, ababe ngabantu bakwa-Anti-Nefi-Lehi.
- 22 Futhi kwenzeka ukuthi izwi labantu labuya, lithi: Bhekani, sizonikela ngezwe lakwaJereshoni, elisempumalanga ngasolwandle, elixhuma izwe iNala, eliseningizimu yezwe iNala; futhi lelizwe iJereshoni liyizwe esizolinikeza abafowethu ukuthi libe yifa.
- 23 Futhi bheka, sizobeka amabutho ethu phakathi kwezwe iJereshoni kanye nezwe iNefi, ukuze sivikele abafowethu ezweni iJereshoni; futhi lokhu sizokwenzela abafowethu, ngenxa yokwesaba kwabo ukuthi bathathele abafowabo izikhali funa benze isono; futhi lokhu kwesaba kwabo okukhulu kuze ngenxa yokuphenduka kwabo okunzima ababanakho, ngenxa yokubulala kwabo okuningi kanye nobubi babo obukhulu.
- 24 Manje bheka, lokhu sizokwenzela abafowethu, ukuze bathole izwe iJereshoni; futhi siyobavikela ezitheni zabo ngamabutho ethu, ngombandela wokuthi bazosinika inxenye yalokho abanakho ukusisiza ukuthi sondle amabutho ethu.

Now was not this exceeding joy? Behold, this is joy which none receiveth save it be the truly penitent and humble seeker of happiness.

Now the joy of Alma in meeting his brethren was truly great, and also the joy of Aaron, of Omner, and Himni; but behold their joy was not that to exceed their strength.

And now it came to pass that Alma conducted his brethren back to the land of Zarahemla; even to his own house. And they went and told the chief judge all the things that had happened unto them in the land of Nephi, among their brethren, the Lamanites.

And it came to pass that the chief judge sent a proclamation throughout all the land, desiring the voice of the people concerning the admitting their brethren, who were the people of Anti-Nephi-Lehi.

And it came to pass that the voice of the people came, saying: Behold, we will give up the land of Jershon, which is on the east by the sea, which joins the land Bountiful, which is on the south of the land Bountiful; and this land Jershon is the land which we will give unto our brethren for an inheritance.

And behold, we will set our armies between the land Jershon and the land Nephi, that we may protect our brethren in the land Jershon; and this we do for our brethren, on account of their fear to take up arms against their brethren lest they should commit sin; and this their great fear came because of their sore repentance which they had, on account of their many murders and their awful wickedness.

And now behold, this will we do unto our brethren, that they may inherit the land Jershon; and we will guard them from their enemies with our armies, on condition that they will give us a portion of their substance to assist us that we may maintain our armies.

- 25 Manje, kwenzeka ukuthi ngesikhathi u-Amoni esekuzwile lokhu, waphindela kubantu bakwa-Anti-Nefi-Lehi, futhi ngokunjalo no-Alima kanye naye, baya ehlane, lapho babegxumeke khona amatende abo, futhi babatshela zonke lezi zinto. Futhi u-Alima naye wabaxoxela ngokuphenduka kwakhe, kanye no-Amoni kanye no-Aroni, kanye nabafowabo.
- 26 Futhi kwenzeka ukuthi lokhu nempela kwenza injabulo enkulu phakathi kwabo. Futhi bahamba behlela ezweni lakwaJershoni, futhi balithatha izwe lakwaJershoni; futhi babizwa ngamaNefi ngokuthi bangabantu bakwa-Amoni; ngakho-ke behlukaniswa ngalelogama njalo emva kwalokho.
- 27 Futhi babephakathi kwabantu bakwaNefi, futhi phezu kwalokho babalwa phakathi kwabantu ababengabebandla likaNkulunkulu. Futhi phezu kwalokho behlukaniswa ngenxa yentshisekelo yabo kuNkulunkulu, futhi ngokunjalo nakubantu; ngokuba babethembeke ngokuphelele futhi beqotho kuzo zonke izinto; futhi babeqinile okholweni lukaKristu, ngisho kwaze kwaba sekupheleni.
- 28 Futhi bakubuka ukuchitheka kwegazi labafowabo njengesinengiso esikhulu; futhi babengeke bavunywisa nanini ukuthi bathathele abafowabo izikhali; futhi abazange nanini bakubuke ukufa ngokwesaba, ngenxa yethemba kanye nemibono yabo ngoKristu kanye novuko; ngakho-ke, ukufa kubo kwagwinywa ngokunqotshwa kwakho nguKristu.
- 29 Ngakho-ke, babencamela ukuzwa ukufa ngendlela eyayinonya olukhulu kakhulu futhi enosizi olukhulu eyayingenziwa ngabafowabo kubo, ngaphambi kokuthi bathathe inkemba noma ucelemba ukuthi babashaye.
- 30 Futhi ngalendlela babengabantu abanentshisekelo futhi abathandekayo, abantu beNkosi ababethandwa kakhulu.

Now, it came to pass that when Ammon had heard this, he returned to the people of Anti-Nephi-Lehi, and also Alma with him, into the wilderness, where they had pitched their tents, and made known unto them all these things. And Alma also related unto them his conversion, with Ammon and Aaron, and his brethren.

And it came to pass that it did cause great joy among them. And they went down into the land of Jershon, and took possession of the land of Jershon; and they were called by the Nephites the people of Ammon; therefore they were distinguished by that name ever after.

And they were among the people of Nephi, and also numbered among the people who were of the church of God. And they were also distinguished for their zeal towards God, and also towards men; for they were perfectly honest and upright in all things; and they were firm in the faith of Christ, even unto the end.

And they did look upon shedding the blood of their brethren with the greatest abhorrence; and they never could be prevailed upon to take up arms against their brethren; and they never did look upon death with any degree of terror, for their hope and views of Christ and the resurrection; therefore, death was swallowed up to them by the victory of Christ over it.

Therefore, they would suffer death in the most aggravating and distressing manner which could be inflicted by their brethren, before they would take the sword or cimeter to smite them.

And thus they were a zealous and beloved people, a highly favored people of the Lord.

Alima 28

- 1 Manje kwenzeka ukuthi emva kokuthi abantu baka-Amoni sebezinzile ezweni lakwa Jereshoni, futhi ngokunjalo nebandla selimisiwe ezweni lakwaJereshoni, futhi namabutho amaNefi esebekiwe azungeza lonke izwe lakwaJereshoni, yebo, kuyo yonke imingcele ezungeze izwe lakwaZarahemla; bheka amabutho amaLamani ayebalandelile abafowabo beya ehlane.
- 2 Futhi ngaleyondlela kwaba khona impi enkulu kakhulu; yebo, ngisho eyayingakaze ibekhona nanini phakathi kwabantu bonke ezweni kusukela esikhathini uLehi ahamba eJerusalema; yebo, futhi amashumi ezinkulungwane zamaLamani abulawa futhi ahlakazwa ezindaweni zonke.
- 3 Yebo, futhi phezu kwalokho kwaba khona ukubulawa okukhulu phakathi kwabantu bakwaNefi; nokho, amaLamani aqhutshwa futhi ahlakazwa, futhi abantu bakwaNefi baphinda babuyela ezweni labo.
- 4 Manje lesi kwakuyisikhathi lapho kwabakhona ukukhala okukhulu kanye nesililo esezwakala kulo lonke izwe, phakathi kwabantu bonke bakwaNefi—
- 5 Yebo, ukukhala kwabafelokazi bekhalela abayeni babo, futhi ngokunjalo nokobaba bekhalela amadodana abo, kanye nendodakazi ikhalela umfowabo, yebo, nomfowabo ekhalela ubaba; futhi ukumemeza kokukhala kwezwakala ngalendlela phakathi kwabo bonke, bekhalela imindeni yabo eyayibulewe.
- 6 Manje ngempela lolu kwakuwusuku losizi; yebo, isikhathi sokuzotha, kanye nesikhathi sokuzila okukhulu kanye nokukhuleka.
- 7 Waphela ngalendlela unyaka weshumi nahlanu wokubusa kwabehluleli phezu kwabantu bakwaNefi;
- 8 Lena yindaba ka-Amoni kanye nabafowabo, uhambo lwabo ezweni lakwaNefi, ubuhlungu ababuthola ezweni, izinsizi zabo, kanye nezinhlupheko zabo, kanye nokujabula kwabo okungenakulinganiswa, kanye nokwamukelwa kanye nokuphephiswa kwabafowabo ezweni lakwaJereshoni. Manje sengathi iNkosi, uMkhululi wabantu bonke, angayibusisa imiphefumulo yabo ingunaphakade.

Alma 28

And now it came to pass that after the people of Ammon were established in the land of Jershon, and a church also established in the land of Jershon, and the armies of the Nephites were set round about the land of Jershon, yea, in all the borders round about the land of Zarahemla; behold the armies of the Lamanites had followed their brethren into the wilderness.

And thus there was a tremendous battle; yea, even such an one as never had been known among all the people in the land from the time Lehi left Jerusalem; yea, and tens of thousands of the Lamanites were slain and scattered abroad.

Yea, and also there was a tremendous slaughter among the people of Nephi; nevertheless, the Lamanites were driven and scattered, and the people of Nephi returned again to their land.

And now this was a time that there was a great mourning and lamentation heard throughout all the land, among all the people of Nephi—

Yea, the cry of widows mourning for their husbands, and also of fathers mourning for their sons, and the daughter for the brother, yea, the brother for the father; and thus the cry of mourning was heard among all of them, mourning for their kindred who had been slain.

And now surely this was a sorrowful day; yea, a time of solemnity, and a time of much fasting and prayer.

And thus endeth the fifteenth year of the reign of the judges over the people of Nephi;

And this is the account of Ammon and his brethren, their journeyings in the land of Nephi, their sufferings in the land, their sorrows, and their afflictions, and their incomprehensible joy, and the reception and safety of the brethren in the land of Jershon. And now may the Lord, the Redeemer of all men, bless their souls forever.

- 9 Futhi lena yindaba yezimpi kanye nemibango phakathi kwamaNefi, futhi ngokunjalo nezimpi phakathi kwamaNefi kanye namaLamani; kanye nokuphela konyaka wamashumi amahlanu wokubusa kwabehluleli.
- 10 Futhi kusukela ngonyaka wokuqala kuya koweshumi nahlanu kwaba khona ukonakaliswa kwezimpilo eziningi eziyizinkulungwane; yebo, kwaletha isimo esesabekayo sokuchitheka kwegazi.
- 11 Futhi imizimba yezinkulungwane eziningi ile phansi, ibe imizimba yezinkulungwane eziningi ibola iyindunduma phezu kobuso bomhlaba; yebo, futhi izinkulungwane eziningi zikhalela ukulahlekelwa yimindeni yazo, ngokuba zinesizathu sokwesaba, ngokwezethembiso zeNkosi, zokuthi iyiswe esimweni sosizi olungapheliyo.
- 12 Ngesikhathi izinkulungwane eziningi zabanye zikhala ngempela ngokulahlekelwa yimindeni yazo, kodwa ziyathokoza futhi ziyethaba zinethemba, futhi zibe zazi, ngokwezi thembiso zeNkosi, ukuthi bayaphakanyiswa ukuthi bahlale esandleni sokunene sikaNkulunkulu, besesimweni senjabulo engenakuphela nanini.
- 13 Futhi ngaleyondlela siyabona ukuthi kukhulu kangakanani ukungalingani kwabantu ngenxa yesono kanye nesiphambeko, kanye namandla kadaveli, afika ngezinhlelo zobuqili azenza ukuthi abambe izinhliziyi zabantu.
- 14 Futhi ngaleyondlela siyalubona ubizo olukhulu lokukhuthala okukhulu kwabantu ukuthi basebenze ezivinini zeNkosi; futhi ngaleyondlela siyasibona isizathu esikhulu sosizi, futhi ngokunjalo nesokuthokoza—usizi ngenxa yokufa kanye nokubulawa phakathi kwabantu, kanye nenjabulo ngenxa yoku khanya kukaKristu okuholela ekuphileni.

And this is the account of the wars and contentions among the Nephites, and also the wars between the Nephites and the Lamanites; and the fifteenth year of the reign of the judges is ended.

And from the first year to the fifteenth has brought to pass the destruction of many thousand lives; yea, it has brought to pass an awful scene of bloodshed.

And the bodies of many thousands are laid low in the earth, while the bodies of many thousands are moldering in heaps upon the face of the earth; yea, and many thousands are mourning for the loss of their kindred, because they have reason to fear, according to the promises of the Lord, that they are consigned to a state of endless wo.

While many thousands of others truly mourn for the loss of their kindred, yet they rejoice and exult in the hope, and even know, according to the promises of the Lord, that they are raised to dwell at the right hand of God, in a state of never-ending happiness.

And thus we see how great the inequality of man is because of sin and transgression, and the power of the devil, which comes by the cunning plans which he hath devised to ensnare the hearts of men.

And thus we see the great call of diligence of men to labor in the vineyards of the Lord; and thus we see the great reason of sorrow, and also of rejoicing—sorrow because of death and destruction among men, and joy because of the light of Christ unto life.

Alima 29

- 1 O Ukuba bengiyingelosi, futhi ngithole isifiso senhliziyo yami, sokuthi ngihambe ngikhulume ngecilongo likaNkulunkulu, ngezwi lokunyakazisa umhlaba, futhi ngimemezele ukuphenduka kubo bonke abantu.
- 2 Yebo, bengizomemezela kuyo yonke imiphefumulo, ngezwi okungathi elokuduma, ukuphenduka kanye nesu lokukhululwa, ukuthi mabaphenduke futhi beze kuNkulunkulu wethu, ukuze kungabe kusababikho usizi phezu kobuso bonke bomhlaba.
- 3 Kodwa bheka, ngingumuntu, futhi ngiyona ngokufisa kwami; ngokuba kumele ngeneliseke ngezinto iNkosi engabele zona.
- 4 Angifanele ezifisweni zami ngishintshe isimemezelo esingenakuguqulwa sikaNkulunkulu wokulunga, ngokuba ngiyazi ukuthi wabela abantu ngokufisa kwabo, noma ngabe kuholela ekufeni noma ngabe kuholela ekuphileni; yebo, ngiyazi ukuthi uyababela abantu, yebo, umemezela kubo izimemezelo ezingenakuguqulwa, ngokwe zifiso zabo, noma ngabe ngezokusindiswa noma ngezokonakaliswa.
- 5 Yebo, futhi ngiyazi ukuthi okuhle nokubi kuze phambi kwabo bonke abantu; lowo ongakwazi ukwehlukana okuhle kokubi akanacala; kodwa lowo okwaziyo okuhle nokubi, kuye kunikwa ngokwezifiso zakhe, noma ufisa okuhle noma okubi, ukuphila noma ukufa, injabulo noma ukudliwa ngunembeza.
- 6 Manje, ngokubona ukuthi ngiyazazi lezi zinto, kungani ngifisa okungaphezulu kunokuba ngenze umsebenzi engibizelwe kuwo na?
- 7 Kungani ngifisa ukuthi ngibe yingelosi, ukuze ngikhulume kuyo yonke imikhawulo yomhlaba na?
- 8 Ngokuba bheka, iNkosi inika zonke izizwe, ngokobuzwe bazo kanye nangolimi lwazo, ukuthi zilifundise izwi lakhe, yebo, ngokuhlakanipha, konke lokho akubona kufanelekile ukuthi zibe nakho; ngakho-ke siyabona ukuthi iNkosi iyala ngokuhlakanipha, ngalokho okulungile futhi okuyiqiniso.

Alma 29

O that I were an angel, and could have the wish of mine heart, that I might go forth and speak with the trump of God, with a voice to shake the earth, and cry repentance unto every people!

Yea, I would declare unto every soul, as with the voice of thunder, repentance and the plan of redemption, that they should repent and come unto our God, that there might not be more sorrow upon all the face of the earth.

But behold, I am a man, and do sin in my wish; for I ought to be content with the things which the Lord hath allotted unto me.

I ought not to harrow up in my desires the firm decree of a just God, for I know that he granteth unto men according to their desire, whether it be unto death or unto life; yea, I know that he allotteth unto men, yea, decreeth unto them decrees which are unalterable, according to their wills, whether they be unto salvation or unto destruction.

Yea, and I know that good and evil have come before all men; he that knoweth not good from evil is blameless; but he that knoweth good and evil, to him it is given according to his desires, whether he desireth good or evil, life or death, joy or remorse of conscience.

Now, seeing that I know these things, why should I desire more than to perform the work to which I have been called?

Why should I desire that I were an angel, that I could speak unto all the ends of the earth?

For behold, the Lord doth grant unto all nations, of their own nation and tongue, to teach his word, yea, in wisdom, all that he seeth fit that they should have; therefore we see that the Lord doth counsel in wisdom, according to that which is just and true.

- 9 Ngiyakwazi lokho iNkosi engiyale ngakho, futhi ngiyathokoza ngakho. Angithokozi ngokwami, kodwa ngithokoza kulokho iNkosi engiyale ngakho; yebo, futhi lokhu kungukuthokoza kwami, ukuthi mhlawumbe ngibe ngosetshenziswa nguNkulunkulu ukuthi ngilethe umphefumulo othize ekuphendukeni; futhi lokhu kuyinjabulo yami.
- 10 Futhi bhekani, uma ngibona abaningi babafowethu bedabukile ngeqiniso ngokona, futhi beza eNkosini uNkulunkulu wabo, uma kunjalo umoya wami ugqwala injabulo; bese ngikhumbula lokho iNkosi engenzele khona, yebo, ngisho nokuthi iwuzwile umkhuleko wami; yebo, bese ngikhumbula ingalo yayo enesihawu engelulele yona.
- 11 Yebo, futhi phezu kwalokho ngikhumbula ukuthunjwa kobaba bami, ngokuba ngempela ngiyazi ukuthi iNkosi nempela yabakhulula yabakhipha ebugqilini, futhi ngalokhu yalimisa ibandla layo; yebo, iNkosi uNkulunkulu, uNkulunkulu ka-Abrahama, uNkulunkulu ka-Isaka, kanye noNkulunkulu kaJakobe, nempela yabakhulula baphuma ebugqilini.
- 12 Yebo, yilokhu ngakukhumbula njalo ukuthunjwa kobaba bami; futhi nalowo Nkulunkulu kanye owabakhulula baphuma ezandleni zamaGibithe nempela wabakhulula baphuma ebugqilini.
- 13 Yebo, futhi yena kanye lowo Nkulunkulu nempela walimisa ibandla lakhe phakathi kwabo; yebo, futhi yena kanye lowo Nkulunkulu wangibiza ngobizo olungcwele, ukuthi ngishumayeze izwi kulaba bantu bakhe, futhi unginikeze impumelelo enkulu, kuyo injabulo yami igcwele.
- 14 Kodwa angijabuli ngempumelelo yami kuphela, kodwa injabulo yami igcwele kakhulu ngenxa yempumelelo yabafowethu, ababekade besezweni likaNefi.
- 15 Bhekani, basebenze kakhulu, futhi baletha izithelo eziningi; futhi iyoba nkulu kangakanani inzuzo yabo!
- 16 Manje, uma ngicabanga ngempumelelo yalaba bafowethu umphefumulo wami uyathatheka, ngisho kuze kube sengathi uhlukaniswa nomzimba wawo, injabulo yami inkulu kakhulu.

I know that which the Lord hath commanded me, and I glory in it. I do not glory of myself, but I glory in that which the Lord hath commanded me; yea, and this is my glory, that perhaps I may be an instrument in the hands of God to bring some soul to repentance; and this is my joy.

And behold, when I see many of my brethren truly penitent, and coming to the Lord their God, then is my soul filled with joy; then do I remember what the Lord has done for me, yea, even that he hath heard my prayer; yea, then do I remember his merciful arm which he extended towards me.

Yea, and I also remember the captivity of my fathers; for I surely do know that the Lord did deliver them out of bondage, and by this did establish his church; yea, the Lord God, the God of Abraham, the God of Isaac, and the God of Jacob, did deliver them out of bondage.

Yea, I have always remembered the captivity of my fathers; and that same God who delivered them out of the hands of the Egyptians did deliver them out of bondage.

Yea, and that same God did establish his church among them; yea, and that same God hath called me by a holy calling, to preach the word unto this people, and hath given me much success, in the which my joy is full.

But I do not joy in my own success alone, but my joy is more full because of the success of my brethren, who have been up to the land of Nephi.

Behold, they have labored exceedingly, and have brought forth much fruit; and how great shall be their reward!

Now, when I think of the success of these my brethren my soul is carried away, even to the separation of it from the body, as it were, so great is my joy.

17 Manje uNkulunkulu sengathi angabanika, laba bafowethu, ukuthi bahlale phansi embusweni kaNkulunkulu; yebo, futhi ngokunjalo nabo bonke labo abayizithelo zokusebenza kwabo ukuze bangabe besaphumela ngaphandle nanini, kodwa ukuthi bamdumise ingunaphakade. Futhi sengathi uNkulunkulu angenza ukuthi kwenzeke njengokwamazwi ami, ngisho nanjengoba ngikhulumile. Amen.

And now may God grant unto these, my brethren, that they may sit down in the kingdom of God; yea, and also all those who are the fruit of their labors that they may go no more out, but that they may praise him forever. And may God grant that it may be done according to my words, even as I have spoken. Amen.

Alima 30

- 1 Bheka, manje kwenzeka ukuthi emva kokuthi abantu bakwa-Amoni sebhahlisiwe ezweni lakwaJereshoni, yebo, futhi phezu kwalokho emva kokuthi amaLamani esebalekisiwe aphuma ezweni, futhi nabafuleyo bawo sebengcwatshiwe ngabantu basezweni—
- 2 Manje abafuleyo bawo babengabalwanga ngenxa yobukhulu besibalo sabo; ngokunjalo nalabo bamaNefi abafayo ababalwanga—kodwa kwenzeka emva kokuthi esebangcwabile abafuleyo bawo, futhi ngokunjalo nasemva kwezinsuku zokuzila, kanye nezokulila, kanye nezokukhuleka, (futhi kwakungunyaka weshumi nesithupha wokubusa kwabehluleli phezu kwabantu bakwaNefi) kwaqala ukuthi kube khona ukuthula njalo kulo lonke izwe.
- 3 Yebo, futhi abantu nempela baqaphela ukuthi bagcine imiyalelo yeNkosi; futhi babe qinile ekuqapheleni izimiso zikaNkulunkulu, ngokomthetho kaMose; ngokuba bafundiswa ukuthi bawugcine umthetho kaMose kuze kube uyagcwaliseka.
- 4 Futhi ngaleyondlela abantu nempela abazange babe nakuphazamiseka unyaka wonke weshumi nesithupha wokubusa kwabehluleli phezu kwabantu bakwaNefi.
- 5 Futhi kwenzeka ukuthi ekuqaleni konyaka weshumi nesikhombisa wokubusa kwabehluleli, kwaba khona ukuthula njalo.
- 6 Kodwa kwenzeka ekupheleni konyaka weshumi nesikhombisa, kwafika indoda ezweni lakwaZarahemla, futhi yayingu mPhiki-Kristu, ngokuba yaqala ukushumayela kubantu iphikisana neziphrofetho ezazikhulunywe ngabaphrofethi, mayelana nokuza kukaKristu.
- 7 Manje kwakungekho mthetho ophikisana nenkolelo yomuntu; ngokuba kwakuphambene kakhulu ngokwemiyalelo kaNkulunkulu ukuthi kube khona umthetho oyokwenza abantu bangalingani.
- 8 Ngokuba umbhalo ongcwele usho kanje: Khethani namuhla, ukuthi ngubani eniyomkhonza.

Alma 30

Behold, now it came to pass that after the people of Ammon were established in the land of Jershon, yea, and also after the Lamanites were driven out of the land, and their dead were buried by the people of the land—

Now their dead were not numbered because of the greatness of their numbers; neither were the dead of the Nephites numbered—but it came to pass after they had buried their dead, and also after the days of fasting, and mourning, and prayer, (and it was in the sixteenth year of the reign of the judges over the people of Nephi) there began to be continual peace throughout all the land.

Yea, and the people did observe to keep the commandments of the Lord; and they were strict in observing the ordinances of God, according to the law of Moses; for they were taught to keep the law of Moses until it should be fulfilled.

And thus the people did have no disturbance in all the sixteenth year of the reign of the judges over the people of Nephi.

And it came to pass that in the commencement of the seventeenth year of the reign of the judges, there was continual peace.

But it came to pass in the latter end of the seventeenth year, there came a man into the land of Zarahemla, and he was Anti-Christ, for he began to preach unto the people against the prophecies which had been spoken by the prophets, concerning the coming of Christ.

Now there was no law against a man's belief; for it was strictly contrary to the commands of God that there should be a law which should bring men on to unequal grounds.

For thus saith the scripture: Choose ye this day, whom ye will serve.

- 9 Manje uma umuntu ayefisa ukuthi asebenzele uNkulunkulu, kwakuyilungelo lakhe; noma ngokuyikho, uma ekholwa kuNkulunkulu kwakuyilungelo lakhe ukuthi amsebenzele; kodwa uma ayengakholwa kuye kwakungekho mthetho wokumjezisa lowo.
- 10 Kodwa uma ayebulala wayejeziswa ngokufa; futhi uma ayephangile ngokunjalo wayejeziswa; futhi uma ayebile ngokunjalo wayejeziswa; futhi uma ayephingile ngokunjalo wayejeziswa; yebo, ngabo bonke lobu bubu babejiziswa.
- 11 Ngokuba kwakukhona umthetho wokuthi abantu kumele bahlulelwe ngokwamacala abo. Nokho, kwakungekho mthetho ophikisana nenkolelo yomuntu; ngakho-ke, umuntu wayejeziswa kuphela ngamacala lawo ayewenzile; ngakho-ke bonke abantu babelingana.
- 12 Futhi lo Mphiki-Kristu, ogama lakhe kwanguKorihori, (futhi umthetho wawungenakukwazi ukuthi umbambe) waqala ukushumayela ebantwini ukuthi ngeke kube khona Kristu. Futhi nempela washumayela ngalendlela, ethi:
- 13 O nina eniboshelwe phansi ngaphansi kwethemba eliwubuphukuphuku futhi eliyize, kungani nizibophela ngalezi zinto eziwubuphukuphuku kangaka na? Kungani nibheke uKristu na? Ngokuba akukho muntu ongazi into esazokwenzeka.
- 14 Bhekani, lezi zinto enizibiza ngeziphrofetho, enithi zidluliselwa kwabanye ngabaphrofethi abangcwele, bhekani, zingamasiko awubuphukuphuku oyihlo.
- 15 Nilazi kanjani iqiniso lazo na? Bhekani, ngeke nizazi izinto eningaziboni; ngakho-ke ngeke nazi ukuthi kuyoba khona uKristu.
- 16 Nilindile futhi nithi nibona ukuthethelelwa kwezono zenu. Kodwa bhekani, kungumphumela wokulutheka kwengqondo; futhi lokhu kuhlanya kwezinqondo zenu kuza ngenxa yamasiko oyihlo, aniholela ekukholweni yizinto ezingelona iqiniso.

Now if a man desired to serve God, it was his privilege; or rather, if he believed in God it was his privilege to serve him; but if he did not believe in him there was no law to punish him.

But if he murdered he was punished unto death; and if he robbed he was also punished; and if he stole he was also punished; and if he committed adultery he was also punished; yea, for all this wickedness they were punished.

For there was a law that men should be judged according to their crimes. Nevertheless, there was no law against a man's belief; therefore, a man was punished only for the crimes which he had done; therefore all men were on equal grounds.

And this Anti-Christ, whose name was Korihor, (and the law could have no hold upon him) began to preach unto the people that there should be no Christ. And after this manner did he preach, saying:

O ye that are bound down under a foolish and a vain hope, why do ye yoke yourselves with such foolish things? Why do ye look for a Christ? For no man can know of anything which is to come.

Behold, these things which ye call prophecies, which ye say are handed down by holy prophets, behold, they are foolish traditions of your fathers.

How do ye know of their surety? Behold, ye cannot know of things which ye do not see; therefore ye cannot know that there shall be a Christ.

Ye look forward and say that ye see a remission of your sins. But behold, it is the effect of a frenzied mind; and this derangement of your minds comes because of the traditions of your fathers, which lead you away into a belief of things which are not so.

17 Futhi ziningi izinto ezinje azikhuluma kubo, ebatshela ukuthi akukho nhlawulo engenzelwa izono zabantu, kodwa wonke umuntu uzwa okuhle nokubi kulempilo ngokuziphatha kwakhe; ngakho-ke wonke umuntu uphumelela ngokuhlakanipha kwakhe, futhi nokuthi wonke umuntu unqoba ngokwamandla akhe; futhi noma ngabe yini umuntu ayenzayo ayilona icala.

18 Futhi nempela washumayela ngalendlela kubo, eholela kude izinhliziyi zabaningi, ebona ukuthi baziqhenye ngobubi babo, yebo, eholela kude abaningi besifazane, futhi ngokunjalo namadoda, ukuthi benze ubufebe—ebatshela ukuthi uma umuntu esefile, lokho kungukuphela kwakhe.

19 Manje lendoda yahamba yawelela ezweni lakwaJereshoni futhi, ukuze iyoshumayela lezi zinto phakathi kwabantu bakwa-Amoni, abake baba ngabantu bamaLamani.

20 Kodwa bheka bona babehlakaniphe kakhulu kunabaningi bamaNefi; ngokuba bona bamthatha; futhi bambopha, bamthwala bamyisa phambi kuka-Amoni, owayengumphristi omkhulu phezu kwalabo bantu.

21 Futhi kwenzeka ukuthi wenza ukuthi athwalwe akhishelwe ngaphandle kwezwe. Futhi wawelela ezweni lakwaGidiyoni, futhi waqala ukushumayela kubo futhi; futhi lapha akazange abe nempumelelo enkulu, ngokuba wathathwa futhi waboshwa wathwalwa wayiswa phambi komphristi omkhulu, nakumahluleli omkhulu ezweni.

22 Futhi kwenzeka ukuthi umphristi omkhulu wathi kuye: Kungani uhamba uzula uphendukezela izindlela zeNkosi na? Kungani ufundisa laba bantu ukuthi ngeke abe khona uKristu, ukuthi uphazamise intokozo yabo na? Kungani ukhuluma ngokuphikisana neziphrofetho zonke zabaphrofethi abangcwele na?

And many more such things did he say unto them, telling them that there could be no atonement made for the sins of men, but every man fared in this life according to the management of the creature; therefore every man prospered according to his genius, and that every man conquered according to his strength; and whatsoever a man did was no crime.

And thus he did preach unto them, leading away the hearts of many, causing them to lift up their heads in their wickedness, yea, leading away many women, and also men, to commit whoredoms—telling them that when a man was dead, that was the end thereof.

Now this man went over to the land of Jereshon also, to preach these things among the people of Ammon, who were once the people of the Lamanites.

But behold they were more wise than many of the Nephites; for they took him, and bound him, and carried him before Ammon, who was a high priest over that people.

And it came to pass that he caused that he should be carried out of the land. And he came over into the land of Gideon, and began to preach unto them also; and here he did not have much success, for he was taken and bound and carried before the high priest, and also the chief judge over the land.

And it came to pass that the high priest said unto him: Why do ye go about perverting the ways of the Lord? Why do ye teach this people that there shall be no Christ, to interrupt their rejoicings? Why do ye speak against all the prophecies of the holy prophets?

- 23 Manje igama lalomphristi omkhulu kwakunguGidona. UKorihori wathi kuye: Ngoba angifundisi ubuphukuphuku bamasiko oyihlo, futhi ngoba angifundisi laba bantu ukuthi bazibophele phansi ngaphansi kwezimiso kanye nezenzo ezingubuphukuphuku ezamiswa ngabaphristi basendulo, ukuze bathole amandla ngokungalungile kanye negunya phezu kwabo, ukuze babagcine bengenalwazi, ukuze bangaziqhenyi, kodwa behliselwe phansi ngokwamazwi enu.
- 24 Nithi laba bantu bangabantu abakhululekile. Bhekani, ngithi basebugqilini. Nithi lezo ziphrofetho zasendulo ziyiqiniso. Bhekani, ngithi anazi ukuthi ziyiqiniso.
- 25 Nithi laba bantu bangabantu abanecala futhi abawile, ngenxa yokuphambuka komzali. Bhekani, ngithi ingane ayinacala ngenxa yabazali bayo.
- 26 Futhi niphinda nithi uKristu uzoza. Kodwa bhekani, ngithi anazi ukuthi kuyoba khona uKristu. Futhi niphinda nithi uyobulawa ngenxa yezono zomhlaba—
- 27 Futhi ngalendlela nidukisa laba bantu ngokulandela ubuphukuphuku bamasiko oyihlo, futhi njengokwezifiso zenu uqobo; futhi nibacindezela phansi, ngisho nanjengoba kwakunjalo besebugqilini, ukuze nizitike ngemisebenzi yezandla zabo, ukuze bangalokothi nakancane babe nokuzethemba, futhi ukuze bangalokothi nakancane bajabulele okulungile futhi nokungamalungelo abo.
- 28 Yebo, abakwazi nakancane ukusebenzisa lokho okungokwabo hleze bone abaphristi babo, ababagqilaza ngokwezifiso zabo, futhi ababenza ukuthi bakholelwe, emasikweni abo kanye nasemaphusheni abo kanye nasemicabangweni yabo eyize kanye nasemibonweni yabo kanye nasezimfihlakalweni zabo ezingekho, ukuze, uma bengenzanga ngokwamazwi abo, bone umuntu othile ongaziwa, abathi nguNkulunkulu—umuntu ongakaze nanini abonwe noma aziwe, ongakaze abe khona futhi ongasoze abe khona nanini.

Now the high priest's name was Giddonah. And Korihor said unto him: Because I do not teach the foolish traditions of your fathers, and because I do not teach this people to bind themselves down under the foolish ordinances and performances which are laid down by ancient priests, to usurp power and authority over them, to keep them in ignorance, that they may not lift up their heads, but be brought down according to thy words.

Ye say that this people is a free people. Behold, I say they are in bondage. Ye say that those ancient prophecies are true. Behold, I say that ye do not know that they are true.

Ye say that this people is a guilty and a fallen people, because of the transgression of a parent. Behold, I say that a child is not guilty because of its parents.

And ye also say that Christ shall come. But behold, I say that ye do not know that there shall be a Christ. And ye say also that he shall be slain for the sins of the world—

And thus ye lead away this people after the foolish traditions of your fathers, and according to your own desires; and ye keep them down, even as it were in bondage, that ye may glut yourselves with the labors of their hands, that they durst not look up with boldness, and that they durst not enjoy their rights and privileges.

Yea, they durst not make use of that which is their own lest they should offend their priests, who do yoke them according to their desires, and have brought them to believe, by their traditions and their dreams and their whims and their visions and their pretended mysteries, that they should, if they did not do according to their words, offend some unknown being, who they say is God—a being who never has been seen or known, who never was nor ever will be.

- 29 Manje ngesikhathi umphristi omkhulu kanye nomahluleli omkhulu bebubona ubulukhuni behliziyo yakhe, yebo, ngesikhathi bebona ukuthi wayezothuka ngisho noNkulunkulu, babengezukumphendula emazwini akhe; kodwa benza ukuthi aboshwe; futhi bamnika abaphethe, futhi bamthumela ezweni lakwaZarahemla, ukuze ayovela phambi kuka-Alima, kanye nomahluleli omkhulu nowayengumbusi phezu kwezwe lonke.
- 30 Futhi kwenzeka ukuthi ngesikhathi eselethwe phambi kuka-Alima kanye nomahluleli omkhulu, waqhubeka ngayo leyo ndlela efanayo njengoba enza ezweni lakwaGidiyoni; yebo, waqhubeka nokuhlambalaza.
- 31 Wasukuma wakhuluma kakhulu phambi kuka-Alima, futhi nempela wabethuka abaphristi kanye nabafundisi, ebabeka icala lokudukisa abantu ngokubenza balandele amasiko obuthutha oyise, ngenxa nje yokufuna ukuzitika ngemisebenzi yabantu.
- 32 Manje u-Alima wathi kuye: Uyazi ukuthi asizitiki ngemisebenzi yalaba bantu; ngokuba bheka selokhu ngasebenza ngisho kusukela ekuqaleni kokubusa kwabehluleli kuze kube manje, ngezandla zami uqobo ukuze ngizondle, naphezu kokuhamba kwami okuningi ngizungeza ezweni ngimemezela izwi likaNkulunkulu kubantu bami.
- 33 Futhi naphezu kwemisebenzi eminingi engiyenze ebandleni, angikaze ngamukele nanini ngisho nje isenini elilodwa ngokusebenza kwami; futhi namunye kubafowethu, ngaphandle kokuthi kube sesihlalweni sokwahlulela; futhi nakhona semukela kuphela ngokomthetho ngesikhathi sethu.
- 34 Manje, uma singemukeli lutho ngokwemisebenzi yethu ebandleni, kususiza ngani ukuthi sisebenze ebandleni ngaphandle kokuthi simemezela iqiniso, ukuze sibe nokuthokoza ngokujabula kwabafowethu na?
- 35 Uma kunjalo usholani ukuthi sishumayela kulaba bantu ukuze sithole inzuzo, ube nawe, ngokwakho, wazi ukuthi asamukeli nzuzo na? Manje, uyakholwa yini ukuthi siyabakhohlisa laba bantu, okwenza injabulo engaka ezinhliziyweni zabo na?
- 36 UKorihori wamphendula wathi, Yebo.

Now when the high priest and the chief judge saw the hardness of his heart, yea, when they saw that he would revile even against God, they would not make any reply to his words; but they caused that he should be bound; and they delivered him up into the hands of the officers, and sent him to the land of Zarahemla, that he might be brought before Alma, and the chief judge who was governor over all the land.

And it came to pass that when he was brought before Alma and the chief judge, he did go on in the same manner as he did in the land of Gideon; yea, he went on to blaspheme.

And he did rise up in great swelling words before Alma, and did revile against the priests and teachers, accusing them of leading away the people after the silly traditions of their fathers, for the sake of glutting on the labors of the people.

Now Alma said unto him: Thou knowest that we do not glut ourselves upon the labors of this people; for behold I have labored even from the commencement of the reign of the judges until now, with mine own hands for my support, notwithstanding my many travels round about the land to declare the word of God unto my people.

And notwithstanding the many labors which I have performed in the church, I have never received so much as even one senine for my labor; neither has any of my brethren, save it were in the judgment-seat; and then we have received only according to law for our time.

And now, if we do not receive anything for our labors in the church, what doth it profit us to labor in the church save it were to declare the truth, that we may have rejoicings in the joy of our brethren?

Then why sayest thou that we preach unto this people to get gain, when thou, of thyself, knowest that we receive no gain? And now, believest thou that we deceive this people, that causes such joy in their hearts?

And Korihor answered him, Yea.

37 Emva kwalokho u-Alima wathi kuye: Uyakholwa yini ukuthi ukhona uNkulunkulu na?

38 Waphendula wathi, Cha.

39 Manje u-Alima wathi kuye: Uzophinda uphike futhi ukuthi ukhona uNkulunkulu, futhi uzophinde umphike uKristu na? Ngokuba bheka, ngithi kuwe, ngiyazi ukhona uNkulunkulu, futhi ngokunjalo nokuthi uKristu uyoza.

40 Manje yibuphi ubufakazi onabo bokuthi akekho uNkulunkulu, noma ukuthi uKristu akayikuza na? Ngithi kuwe awunabo nobubodwa, ngaphandle kwezwi lakho kuphela.

41 Kodwa, bheka, nginazo zonke izinto njengobu fakazi bokuthi lezi zinto ziyiqiniso; futhi nawe ngokunjalo unazo zonke izinto njengobufakazi kuwe ukuthi ziyiqiniso; futhi ngabe uzoziphika na? Uyakholwa yini ukuthi lezi zinto ziyiqiniso na?

42 Bheka, ngiyazi ukuthi uyakholwa, kodwa ungenwe ngumoya wenkohliso, futhi uwukhiphile uMoya kaNkulunkulu ukuze ungabi nandawo kuwe; kodwa udeveli unamandla phezu kwakho, futhi uyakuzulazulisa, esebenza amacebo ukuze one abantwana baNkulunkulu.

43 Manje uKorihori wathi ku-Alima: Uma ungangikhombisa isibonakaliso, ukuze ngikholwe ukuthi uNkulunkulu ukhona, yebo, ngikhombise ukuthi unamandla, futhi uma kunjalo ngizokholwa yiqiniso lamazwi akho.

44 Kodwa u-Alima wathi kuye: Sewaba nezibonakaliso ezanele; uzomlinga yini uNkulunkulu wakho na? Ngabe uzothi, Ngikhombise isibonakaliso, ube unobufakazi babo bonke labafowenu, futhi ngokunjalo nabo bonke abaphrofethi abangcwele na? Imibhalo engcwele ibekiwe phambi kwakho, yebo, futhi zonke izinto zikhomba ukuthi uNkulunkulu ukhona; yebo, ngisho umhlaba, kanye nazo zonke izinto ezisebusweni bawo, yebo, kanye nokuhamba kwawo, yebo, futhi ngokunjalo nawo wonke amaplanethi azungezayo esesimweni sawo esijwayelekile nempela ayafakaza ukuthi kukhona uMdali oPhezukonke.

And then Alma said unto him: Believest thou that there is a God?

And he answered, Nay.

Now Alma said unto him: Will ye deny again that there is a God, and also deny the Christ? For behold, I say unto you, I know there is a God, and also that Christ shall come.

And now what evidence have ye that there is no God, or that Christ cometh not? I say unto you that ye have none, save it be your word only.

But, behold, I have all things as a testimony that these things are true; and ye also have all things as a testimony unto you that they are true; and will ye deny them? Believest thou that these things are true?

Behold, I know that thou believest, but thou art possessed with a lying spirit, and ye have put off the Spirit of God that it may have no place in you; but the devil has power over you, and he doth carry you about, working devices that he may destroy the children of God.

And now Korihor said unto Alma: If thou wilt show me a sign, that I may be convinced that there is a God, yea, show unto me that he hath power, and then will I be convinced of the truth of thy words.

But Alma said unto him: Thou hast had signs enough; will ye tempt your God? Will ye say, Show unto me a sign, when ye have the testimony of all these thy brethren, and also all the holy prophets? The scriptures are laid before thee, yea, and all things denote there is a God; yea, even the earth, and all things that are upon the face of it, yea, and its motion, yea, and also all the planets which move in their regular form do witness that there is a Supreme Creator.

45 Futhi usaphinda uhamba wehla wenyuka, udukisa izinhliziyi zalaba bantu, ufakaza kubo ukuthi akekho uNkulunkulu na? Futhi namanje ngabe usazobaphika yini bonke labofakazi na? Wathi: Yebo, ngizokuphika, ngaphandle kokuthi ungikhombise isibonakaliso.

46 Manje kwenzeka ukuthi u-Alima wathi kuye: Bheka, nginokudabuka ngenxa yobulukhuni benhliziyi yakho, yebo, ukuthi uzowuvimbela namanje umoya weqiniso, ukuze umphefumulo wakho wonakaliswe.

47 Kodwa bheka, kungcono ukuthi umphefumulo wakho ulahleke kunokuthi ube yisu lokuholela imiphefumulo eminingi phansi ekonakalisweni, ngamanga akho kanye nangamazwi akho aluthayo; ngakho-ke uma uzophika futhi, bheka uNkulunkulu uzokushaya, ukuze ube yisimungulu, ukuze ungaphinde uwuvule umlomo wakho nanini, ukuze ungabe usabakhohlisa laba bantu nanini.

48 Manje uKorihori wathi kuye: Angikuphiki ubukhona bukaNkulunkulu; kodwa angikholwa ukuthi ukhona uNkulunkulu; futhi ngiyaphinda ngithi, awazi ukuthi ukhona uNkulunkulu; futhi ngaphandle kokuthi ungikhombise isibonakaliso, ngeke ngikholwe.

49 Manje u-Alima wathi kuye: Lokhu ngizokunikeza kuwe kube yisibonakaliso, ukuthi uzoshaywa ube yisimungulu, ngokwamazwi ami; futhi ngithi, egameni likaNkulunkulu, uzoshaywa ube yisimungulu, ukuze ungaphinde nanini ukhulume.

50 Manje ngesikhathi u-Alima esewashilo lamazwi, uKorihori washaywa waba yisimungulu, kangangokuthi akabange esakwazi ukukhuluma, njengokwamazwi ka-Alima.

51 Manje ngesikhathi umahluleli omkhulu ekubona lokhu, welula isandla sakhe wabhalela uKorihori, ethi: Ngabe usuyawakholwa yini amandla kaNkulunkulu na? Kuye obufisa ukuthi u-Alima akukhombise isibonakaliso sakhe na? Ubufisa ukuthi ahluphe abanye yini, ukuze akukhombisa isibonakaliso na? Bheka, usekukhombisile isibonakaliso; manje ngabe usazophika futhi na?

And yet do ye go about, leading away the hearts of this people, testifying unto them there is no God? And yet will ye deny against all these witnesses? And he said: Yea, I will deny, except ye shall show me a sign.

And now it came to pass that Alma said unto him: Behold, I am grieved because of the hardness of your heart, yea, that ye will still resist the spirit of the truth, that thy soul may be destroyed.

But behold, it is better that thy soul should be lost than that thou shouldst be the means of bringing many souls down to destruction, by thy lying and by thy flattering words; therefore if thou shalt deny again, behold God shall smite thee, that thou shalt become dumb, that thou shalt never open thy mouth any more, that thou shalt not deceive this people any more.

Now Korihor said unto him: I do not deny the existence of a God, but I do not believe that there is a God; and I say also, that ye do not know that there is a God; and except ye show me a sign, I will not believe.

Now Alma said unto him: This will I give unto thee for a sign, that thou shalt be struck dumb, according to my words; and I say, that in the name of God, ye shall be struck dumb, that ye shall no more have utterance.

Now when Alma had said these words, Korihor was struck dumb, that he could not have utterance, according to the words of Alma.

And now when the chief judge saw this, he put forth his hand and wrote unto Korihor, saying: Art thou convinced of the power of God? In whom did ye desire that Alma should show forth his sign? Would ye that he should afflict others, to show unto thee a sign? Behold, he has showed unto you a sign; and now will ye dispute more?

52 UKorihori welula isandla sakhe wabhala, ethi: Ngiyazi ukuthi sengiyisimunguli, ngokuba angikwazi ukukhuluma; futhi ngiyazi ukuthi akukho lutho ngaphandle kokuthi kungamandla kaNkulunkulu angaletha lokhu phezu kwami; yebo, futhi bengilokhu ngazi njalo ukuthi ukhona uNkulunkulu.

53 Kodwa bheka, udeveli ungikhohlisile; ngokuba wavela kimi esesimweni sengelosi, futhi wathi kimi: Hamba uyobuyisa laba bantu, ngokuba bonke badukile balandela uNkulunkulu ongaziwa. Futhi wathi kimi: Akekho uNkulunkulu; yebo, futhi wangifundisa lokho okwakumele ngikusho. Futhi ngifundise amazwi akhe; futhi ngiwafundise ngoba ethokozisa emqondweni womuntu wasemhlabeni; futhi ngiwafundise, kwaze kwaba ngiba nempumelelo enkulu, kangangokuthi ngempela ngakholwa ukuthi ayeyiqiniso; futhi ngalesi sizathu ngimelene neqiniso, ngisho kwaze kwaba ngizilethela lesi siqalekiso esikhulu phezu kwami.

54 Manje ngesikhathi esekushilo lokhu, wancenga ukuthi u-Alima akhuleke kuNkulunkulu ukuthi isiqalekiso sisuswe kuye.

55 Kodwa u-Alima wathi kuye: Uma lesi siqalekiso singase sisuswe kuwe uzophinda futhi uholele kude izinhliziyi zalaba bantu; ngakho-ke, kuzokuba kuwe ngisho nanjengoba iNkosi ithanda.

56 Futhi kwenzeka ukuthi isiqalekiso asisuswanga kuKorihori; kodwa waxoshwa wakhishelwa ngaphandle, futhi wahamba ezulazula umuzi nomuzi ecela ukudla.

57 Manje ulwazi ngalokho okwakwenzekile kuKorihori lwasakazwa khona manjalo kulo lonke izwe; yebo, isimemezelo sathunyelwa wumahluleli omkhulu kubo bonke abantu abasezweni, ememezela kulabo ababekhohlelwa emazwini kaKorihori ukuthi kufanele baphenduke ngokushesha, hleze izahlulelo ezifanayo zehlele kubo.

58 Futhi kwenzeka ukuthi bonke bakhohlelwa ngobubi bukaKorihori; ngakho-ke bonke baphendukela eNkosini futhi; futhi lokhu kwabuqeda ububi bukaKorihori. Futhi uKorihori nempela wahamba ezulazula umuzi nomuzi, ecela ukudla ukuze azondle.

And Korihor put forth his hand and wrote, saying: I know that I am dumb, for I cannot speak; and I know that nothing save it were the power of God could bring this upon me; yea, and I always knew that there was a God.

But behold, the devil hath deceived me; for he appeared unto me in the form of an angel, and said unto me: Go and reclaim this people, for they have all gone astray after an unknown God. And he said unto me: There is no God; yea, and he taught me that which I should say. And I have taught his words; and I taught them because they were pleasing unto the carnal mind; and I taught them, even until I had much success, insomuch that I verily believed that they were true; and for this cause I withstood the truth, even until I have brought this great curse upon me.

Now when he had said this, he besought that Alma should pray unto God, that the curse might be taken from him.

But Alma said unto him: If this curse should be taken from thee thou wouldst again lead away the hearts of this people; therefore, it shall be unto thee even as the Lord will.

And it came to pass that the curse was not taken off of Korihor; but he was cast out, and went about from house to house begging for his food.

Now the knowledge of what had happened unto Korihor was immediately published throughout all the land; yea, the proclamation was sent forth by the chief judge to all the people in the land, declaring unto those who had believed in the words of Korihor that they must speedily repent, lest the same judgments would come unto them.

And it came to pass that they were all convinced of the wickedness of Korihor; therefore they were all converted again unto the Lord; and this put an end to the iniquity after the manner of Korihor. And Korihor did go about from house to house, begging food for his support.

59 Futhi kwenzeka ukuthi ngesikhathi ehamba eya phakathi kwabantu, yebo, phakathi kwalabo bantu ababehlukenisile namaNefi futhi bazibiza ngokuthi bangamaZoramu, beholwa yindoda egama layo kwakunguZoramu—futhi ngesikhathi ehamba eya phakathi kwabo, bheka, wanyathelwa futhi wagxotshwa, kwaze kwaba uyafa.

60 Futhi ngalendlela siyasibona isiphetho salowo ophendukezela izindlela zeNkosi; futhi ngalendlela siyabona ukuthi udeveli akazukubasekela abantwana bakhe ngosuku lokugcina, kodwa ubadonsela ngokushesha phansi esihogweni.

And it came to pass that as he went forth among the people, yea, among a people who had separated themselves from the Nephites and called themselves Zoramites, being led by a man whose name was Zoram—and as he went forth amongst them, behold, he was run upon and trodden down, even until he was dead.

And thus we see the end of him who perverteth the ways of the Lord; and thus we see that the devil will not support his children at the last day, but doth speedily drag them down to hell.

Alima 31

- 1 Manje kwenzeka ukuthi emva kokufa kukaKorihori, u-Alima esethole izindaba zokuthi amaZoramu ayephendukezela izindlela zeNkosi, futhi nokuthi uZoram, owayengumholi wawo, wayehola izinhliziyi zabantu ukuthi zikhothamele izithixo eziyizimungulu, inhliziyi yakhe yaqala ukugula ngenxa yobubi babantu.
- 2 Ngokuba kwakuyimbangela yosizi olukhulu ku-Alima ukwazi ngobubi phakathi kwabantu bakhe; ngakho-ke inhliziyi yakhe yayilusizi kakhulu ngenxa yokuhlukana kwamaZoramu namaNefi.
- 3 Manje amaZoramu ayeseqoqane ndawonye ezweni ayelibiza ngokuthi yi-Antiyonumu, elalisempumalanga yezwe lakwaZarahemla, elaliseduzane komngcele wogu lolwandle, elalisingizimu yezwe iJereshoni, futhi elaligudla ihlane eningizimu, lelo hlane elaligcwele amaLamani.
- 4 Manje amaNefi ayenokwesaba okukhulu ukuthi amaZoramu ayezongena esivumelwaneni namaLamani, futhi lokho kwakuzoba yimbangela yokulahlekelwa okukhulu kumaNefi.
- 5 Manje, njengoba ukushunyayelwa kwezwi kwakujwayele kakhulu ukuholela abantu ekwenzeni lokho okwakulungile—yebo, kwakube nomphumela onamandla amakhulu emiqondweni yabantu kunenkemba, noma yini enye, eyayenzeke kubo—ngakho-ke u-Alima wacabanga ukuthi kwakufanelekile ukuthi bawazame amandla ezwi likaNkulunkulu.
- 6 Ngakho-ke wathatha u-Amoni, no-Aroni, kanye no-Omineri; kwathi uHimni yena wamshiya ebandleni eZarahemla; kodwa laba bokuqala abathathu wabathatha bahamba naye, futhi ngokunjalo no-Amuleki kanye noZeziromu, ababeseMeleki; futhi waphinde wathatha ababili bamadodana akhe.
- 7 Manje omdala emadodaneni akhe akamthathanga ukuthi ahambe naye, igama lakhe kwakungu Helamani; kodwa amagama alabo ayebathathile bahamba naye kwakungo Shibiloni noKoriantoni; lawa ngamagama alabo abahamba naye baya phakathi kwama Zoramu, ukuyoshumayela kuwo izwi.

Alma 31

Now it came to pass that after the end of Korihor, Alma having received tidings that the Zoramites were perverting the ways of the Lord, and that Zoram, who was their leader, was leading the hearts of the people to bow down to dumb idols, his heart again began to sicken because of the iniquity of the people.

For it was the cause of great sorrow to Alma to know of iniquity among his people; therefore his heart was exceedingly sorrowful because of the separation of the Zoramites from the Nephites.

Now the Zoramites had gathered themselves together in a land which they called Antionum, which was east of the land of Zarahemla, which lay nearly bordering upon the seashore, which was south of the land of Jereshon, which also bordered upon the wilderness south, which wilderness was full of the Lamanites.

Now the Nephites greatly feared that the Zoramites would enter into a correspondence with the Lamanites, and that it would be the means of great loss on the part of the Nephites.

And now, as the preaching of the word had a great tendency to lead the people to do that which was just—yea, it had had more powerful effect upon the minds of the people than the sword, or anything else, which had happened unto them—therefore Alma thought it was expedient that they should try the virtue of the word of God.

Therefore he took Ammon, and Aaron, and Omner; and Himni he did leave in the church in Zarahemla; but the former three he took with him, and also Amulek and Zeezrom, who were at Melek; and he also took two of his sons.

Now the eldest of his sons he took not with him, and his name was Helaman; but the names of those whom he took with him were Shiblön and Corianton; and these are the names of those who went with him among the Zoramites, to preach unto them the word.

- 8 Manje amaZoramu ayengavumelani nebandla esuka kumaNefi; ngakho-ke lake lashunyayelwa izwi likaNkulunkulu kubo.
- 9 Kodwa base bewele eziphosisweni ezinkulu, ngokuba babengasafuni ukuzama ukuthi bayigcine imiyalelo kaNkulunkulu, kanye nemithetho yakhe, njengokomthetho kaMose.
- 10 Futhi babengezukuphila ngezenzo zebandla, ukuthi baqhubeke ekukhulekeni kanye nasekunxuseni uNkulunkulu nsuku zonke, ukuthi bangangeni ekulingweni.
- 11 Yebo, ukuphetha, baziphendukezela izindlela zeNkosi ezikhathini eziningi kakhulu; ngakho-ke, ngalesi sizathu, u-Alima kanye nabafowabo bahamba haya ezweni ukuyoshumayela izwi kubo.
- 12 Manje, ngesikhathi sebefike ezweni, bheka, ngokumangala okukhulu bathola ukuthi amaZoramu ayesakhe amasinagoge, futhi nokuthi ayeqoqana ndawonye ngosuku olulodwa esontweni, okuwusuku ababelubiza ngokuthi wusuku lweNkosi; futhi ayekhonzisa ngendlela u-Alima nabafowabo ababengakaze nanini bayibone;
- 13 Ngokuba ayenendawo eyayakhiwe maphakathi nesinagoge labo, indawo yokuma, eyayiphakeme ngaphezulu kwekhanda; futhi iphezulu layo lalingenela umuntu oyedwa kuphela.
- 14 Ngakho-ke, lowo owayenesifiso sokukhonza kwakufanele ahambe aye phambili bese ema phezu kwaleyondawo, bese elula izandla zakhe azibhekise ngasezulwini, bese ekhala ngezwi elikhulu, ethi:
- 15 UNgcwele, ungcwele Nkulunkulu; siyakholwa ukuthi wena unguNkulunkulu, futhi siyakholwa ukuthi wena ungcwele, nokuthi wena wawungumoya, futhi nokuthi ungumoya, futhi nokuthi uyohlala ungumoya njalo.
- 16 Nkulunkulu oNgcwele, siyakholwa ukuthi wena usehlukanisile kubafowethu; futhi thina asikholelwa emasikweni abafowethu, adluliselwa kubo ngenxa yobungane boyise; kodwa siyakholwa ukuthi usikhethile thina ukuthi sibe ngabantwana bakho abangcwele; futhi phezu kwalokho usambulele ukuthi ngeke kube khona Kristu.

Now the Zoramites were dissenters from the Nephites; therefore they had had the word of God preached unto them.

But they had fallen into great errors, for they would not observe to keep the commandments of God, and his statutes, according to the law of Moses.

Neither would they observe the performances of the church, to continue in prayer and supplication to God daily, that they might not enter into temptation.

Yea, in fine, they did pervert the ways of the Lord in very many instances; therefore, for this cause, Alma and his brethren went into the land to preach the word unto them.

Now, when they had come into the land, behold, to their astonishment they found that the Zoramites had built synagogues, and that they did gather themselves together on one day of the week, which day they did call the day of the Lord; and they did worship after a manner which Alma and his brethren had never beheld;

For they had a place built up in the center of their synagogue, a place for standing, which was high above the head; and the top thereof would only admit one person.

Therefore, whosoever desired to worship must go forth and stand upon the top thereof, and stretch forth his hands towards heaven, and cry with a loud voice, saying:

Holy, holy God; we believe that thou art God, and we believe that thou art holy, and that thou wast a spirit, and that thou art a spirit, and that thou wilt be a spirit forever.

Holy God, we believe that thou hast separated us from our brethren; and we do not believe in the tradition of our brethren, which was handed down to them by the childishness of their fathers; but we believe that thou hast elected us to be thy holy children; and also thou hast made it known unto us that there shall be no Christ.

- 17 Kodwa usefana nayizolo, namuhla, futhi naphakade; futhi usikhethile ukuthi siyosindiswa, kuthi bonke abasizungezile bakhethelwe ukuthi balahlwe phansi esihogweni ngentukuthelo yakho; ngokuphathelene nalobu bungcwele, O Nkulunkulu, siyakubonga; futhi siyaphinda siyakubonga ukuthi usikhethile, ukuthi singaholelwa kude ngokulandela ubuphukuphuku bamasiko abafowethu, ababophela phansi ekukholweni kuKristu, okuholela izinhliziyi zabo ukuthi zibe kude nawe, Nkulunkulu wethu.
- 18 Futhi phezu kwalokho siyakubonga, O Nkulunkulu, ukuthi sikhethiwe futhi singabantu abangcwele. Amen.
- 19 Manje kwenzeka ukuthi emva kokuthi u-Alima nabafowabo kanye namadodana akhe sebeyizwile lemikhuleko, bamangala kakhulu.
- 20 Ngokuba bheka, wonke umuntu nempela waya phambili futhi washo yona leyo mikhuleko efanayo.
- 21 Manje leyondawo babeyibiza ngokuthi yiRamiyamtom, ngokuhunyushwa okwakuthiwa, yindawo yokuma engcwele.
- 22 Manje, kulendawo yokuma nempela bonke babenza umkhuleko ofanayo kuNkulunkulu, bambonga uNkulunkulu wabo ukuthi bona bakhethwa nguye, futhi nokuthi akabaholelanga kude balandela isiko labafowabo, futhi nokuthi izinhliziyi zabo azintshontshwanga ukuthi zikholelwe ezintweni ezizofika, ababengazi lutho ngazo.
- 23 Manje, emva kokuthi bonke abantu sebekwenzile ukubonga ngalendlela, babebuyela emakhaya abo, bengaphindi nanini bakhulume ngoNkulunkulu wabo futhi kuze kube baphinde baqoqana ndawonye futhi kuyo lendawo yokuma engcwele, ukuzokwenza ukubonga ngendlela yabo.
- 24 Manje ngesikhathi u-Alima ekubona lokhu inhliziyi yakhe yadabuka; ngokuba wabona ukuthi babengabantu ababi futhi abanenkani; yebo, wabona ukuthi izinhliziyi zabo babezibeke kulo igolide, nakulo isiliva, kanye nakuzo zonke izinhlobo zezimpahla ezicolekileyo.
- 25 Yebo, futhi waphinde wabona ukuthi izinhliziyi zabo zase ziphakeme kangangoba base benokuqhosha okukhulu, nokuziqhenya.

But thou art the same yesterday, today, and forever; and thou hast elected us that we shall be saved, whilst all around us are elected to be cast by thy wrath down to hell; for the which holiness, O God, we thank thee; and we also thank thee that thou hast elected us, that we may not be led away after the foolish traditions of our brethren, which doth bind them down to a belief of Christ, which doth lead their hearts to wander far from thee, our God.

And again we thank thee, O God, that we are a chosen and a holy people. Amen.

Now it came to pass that after Alma and his brethren and his sons had heard these prayers, they were astonished beyond all measure.

For behold, every man did go forth and offer up these same prayers.

Now the place was called by them Rameumptom, which, being interpreted, is the holy stand.

Now, from this stand they did offer up, every man, the selfsame prayer unto God, thanking their God that they were chosen of him, and that he did not lead them away after the tradition of their brethren, and that their hearts were not stolen away to believe in things to come, which they knew nothing about.

Now, after the people had all offered up thanks after this manner, they returned to their homes, never speaking of their God again until they had assembled themselves together again to the holy stand, to offer up thanks after their manner.

Now when Alma saw this his heart was grieved; for he saw that they were a wicked and a perverse people; yea, he saw that their hearts were set upon gold, and upon silver, and upon all manner of fine goods.

Yea, and he also saw that their hearts were lifted up unto great boasting, in their pride.

- 26 Futhi waphakamisela izwi lakhe ezulwini, wakhala, ethi: O, kuyoze kube nini, O Nkosi, uvumela izinceku zakho ukuthi zihlale lapha ngaphansi enyameni, ukuthi zibone ububi obungaka phakathi kwabantwana babantu na?
- 27 Bheka, O Nkulunkulu, bakhala kuwe, kodwa futhi zibe izinhliziyi zabo zigcwele ukuzikhukhumeza. Bheka, O Nkulunkulu, bakhala kuwe ngemilomo yabo, bebe bekhukhumele, ngisho bezizwa bebakhulu, ngezinto eziyize zezwe.
- 28 Bheka, O Nkulunkulu wami, izingubo zabo ezibizayo, kanye nezindandatho zabo ezincane, kanye nama bhengela abo, kanye nezinto zabo zokuhlobisa zegolide, kanye nazo zonke izinto zabo eziyigugu abahlotshiswe ngazo; futhi bheka, izinhliziyi zabo bazibeke kuzo, kodwa futhi bebe bakhala kuwe bethi—Siyakubonga, O Nkulunkulu, ngokuba singabantu abakhethiwe kuwe, bebe abanye bezolahleka.
- 29 Yebo, futhi bathi ubambulele ukuthi akuyikuba khona Kristu.
- 30 O Nkosi Nkulunkulu, kuyoze kube nini uvumela ukuthi ububi obunjena kanye nokungakhohwa kube phakathi kwalabantu na? O Nkosi, unganginika yini amandla, ukuze ngikwazi ukuthi ngibubekezelele ubuthakathaka bami. Ngokuba ngibuthakathaka, futhi ububi obunjena phakathi kwalabantu benza ubuhlungu emphefumulweni wami.
- 31 O Nkosi, inhliziyi yami ilusizi kakhulu; ungawududuza yini umphefumulo wami kuKristu. O Nkosi, unganginika yini ukuthi ngibe namandla, ukuze ngizithwale ngesineke lezizinhlopheko ezizoza kimi, ngenxa yobubi balaba bantu.
- 32 O Nkosi, ungewududuze yini umphefumulo wami, futhi ungiphe impumelelo, futhi ngokunjalo nalaba engisebenza nabo abanami—yebo, u-Amoni, kanye no-Aroni, kanye no-Omineri, futhi ngokunjalo no-Amuleki kanye noZezromu, futhi ngokunjalo namadodana ami amabili—yebo, ngisho bonke laba ubungebaduduze, O Nkosi. Yebo, ubungeyiduduze yini imiphefumulo yabo kuKristu.

And he lifted up his voice to heaven, and cried, saying: O, how long, O Lord, wilt thou suffer that thy servants shall dwell here below in the flesh, to behold such gross wickedness among the children of men?

Behold, O God, they cry unto thee, and yet their hearts are swallowed up in their pride. Behold, O God, they cry unto thee with their mouths, while they are puffed up, even to greatness, with the vain things of the world.

Behold, O my God, their costly apparel, and their ringlets, and their bracelets, and their ornaments of gold, and all their precious things which they are ornamented with; and behold, their hearts are set upon them, and yet they cry unto thee and say—We thank thee, O God, for we are a chosen people unto thee, while others shall perish.

Yea, and they say that thou hast made it known unto them that there shall be no Christ.

O Lord God, how long wilt thou suffer that such wickedness and infidelity shall be among this people? O Lord, wilt thou give me strength, that I may bear with mine infirmities. For I am infirm, and such wickedness among this people doth pain my soul.

O Lord, my heart is exceedingly sorrowful; wilt thou comfort my soul in Christ. O Lord, wilt thou grant unto me that I may have strength, that I may suffer with patience these afflictions which shall come upon me, because of the iniquity of this people.

O Lord, wilt thou comfort my soul, and give unto me success, and also my fellow laborers who are with me—yea, Ammon, and Aaron, and Omner, and also Amulek and Zeezrom, and also my two sons—yea, even all these wilt thou comfort, O Lord. Yea, wilt thou comfort their souls in Christ.

- 33 Ubungebanikeze yini ukuthi babe namandla, ukuze bazithwale izinhlupheko zabo eziyofika kubo ngenxa yobubi balaba bantu.
- 34 O Nkosi, ungesiphe yini ukuthi sibe nempumelelo ekubaletheni futhi kuwe kuKristu.
- 35 Bheka, O Nkosi, imiphefumulo yabo iyigugu, futhi abaningi babo bangabafowethu; ngakho-ke, sinike, O Nkosi, amandla kanye nokuhlakanipha ukuze silethe laba, abafowethu, kuwe futhi.
- 36 Manje kwenzeka ukuthi ngesikhathi u-Alima esewashilo lamazwi, wabeka izandla zakhe phezu kwabo bonke labo ababenaye. Futhi bheka, ngesikhathi ebeka izandla zakhe phezu kwabo, bagcwaliswa ngoMoya oyiNgcwele.
- 37 Futhi emva kwalokho nempela bazehlukanisa omunye komunye, bengacabangi ngabo ukuthi bazodlani, noma bazophuzani, noma bazogqokani.
- 38 Futhi iNkosi yabanikeza ukuthi bangalambi, nokuthi bangomi; yebo, futhi yaphinde yabanika amandla, ukuthi bangabi nazinhlupheko noma ngabe zaluhlobo luni, ngaphandle kokuthi zigwinywe enjabulweni kaKristu. Manje lokhu kwaba njengomkhuleko ka-Alima; futhi lokhu ngenxa yokuthi wakhuleka ngokholo.

Wilt thou grant unto them that they may have strength, that they may bear their afflictions which shall come upon them because of the iniquities of this people.

O Lord, wilt thou grant unto us that we may have success in bringing them again unto thee in Christ.

Behold, O Lord, their souls are precious, and many of them are our brethren; therefore, give unto us, O Lord, power and wisdom that we may bring these, our brethren, again unto thee.

Now it came to pass that when Alma had said these words, that he clapped his hands upon all them who were with him. And behold, as he clapped his hands upon them, they were filled with the Holy Spirit.

And after that they did separate themselves one from another, taking no thought for themselves what they should eat, or what they should drink, or what they should put on.

And the Lord provided for them that they should hunger not, neither should they thirst; yea, and he also gave them strength, that they should suffer no manner of afflictions, save it were swallowed up in the joy of Christ. Now this was according to the prayer of Alma; and this because he prayed in faith.

Alima 32

- 1 Futhi kwenzeka ukuthi nempela bahamba, futhi baqala ukushumayela izwi likaNkulunkulu kubantu, bengena emasinagogeni abo, kanye nasezindlini zabo; yebo, futhi nempela balishumayela izwi ngisho nasemigwaqweni yabo.
- 2 Futhi kwenzeka ukuthi emva kokusebenza kanzima phakathi kwabo, baqala ukuthi babe nempumelelo phakathi kwesigaba sabantu abampofu; ngokuba bheka, babekhiselwa ngaphandle kwamasinagoge ngenxa yokuguga kwezingubo zabo—
- 3 Ngakho-ke babengavumelekile ukuthi bangene emasinagogeni abo ukuze bakhonze uNkulunkulu, bethathwa ngokuthi bangcolile; ngakho-ke babempofu; yebo, babethathwa ngabafowabo ngokuthi bayizinto ezingelutho; ngakho-ke babempofu ngokwezinto zezwe; futhi phezu kwalokho babempofu ezinhliziyweni.
- 4 Manje, ngesikhathi u-Alima efundisa futhi ekhuluma kubantu phezu kwegquma i-Onida, kwafika isixuku esikhulu kuye, okwakuyibo labo ebesikhuluma ngabo, ababempofu ezinhliziyweni, ngenxa yobumpofu babo ngokwezinto zezwe.
- 5 Futhi beza ku-Alima; futhi lowo owayephambili kubo wathi kuye: Bheka, yini abangayenza labafowethu, ngokuba badelelwa ngabantu bonke ngenxa yobumpofu babo, yebo, futhi ikakhulukazi ngabaphristi bethu; ngokuba basikhiphele ngaphandle kumasinagoge ethu esasebenza kanzima ukuwakha ngezandla zethu uqobo; futhi basikhiphele ngaphandle ngenxa yobumpofu bethu obukhulu; futhi asinandawo yokukhonzela uNkulunkulu wethu; futhi bheka, kufanele senzenjani na?
- 6 Manje ngesikhathi u-Alima ekuzwa lokhu, wamphendula, ubuso bakhe ngokushesha babheka kuye ngqo, futhi wambheka ngenjabulo enkulu; ngokuba wabona ukuthi izinhlupheko zabo zase zibenze ukuthi bazithobe ngempela, futhi nokuthi base belungele ukulizwa izwi.
- 7 Ngakho-ke akabange esasho lutho kwesinye isixuku; kodwa welulela phambili isandla sakhe, futhi wakhala kulabo ayebabona, ababedabuke ngeqiniso ngokona, wathi kubo:

Alma 32

And it came to pass that they did go forth, and began to preach the word of God unto the people, entering into their synagogues, and into their houses; yea, and even they did preach the word in their streets.

And it came to pass that after much labor among them, they began to have success among the poor class of people; for behold, they were cast out of the synagogues because of the coarseness of their apparel—

Therefore they were not permitted to enter into their synagogues to worship God, being esteemed as filthiness; therefore they were poor; yea, they were esteemed by their brethren as dross; therefore they were poor as to things of the world; and also they were poor in heart.

Now, as Alma was teaching and speaking unto the people upon the hill Onidah, there came a great multitude unto him, who were those of whom we have been speaking, of whom were poor in heart, because of their poverty as to the things of the world.

And they came unto Alma; and the one who was the foremost among them said unto him: Behold, what shall these my brethren do, for they are despised of all men because of their poverty, yea, and more especially by our priests; for they have cast us out of our synagogues which we have labored abundantly to build with our own hands; and they have cast us out because of our exceeding poverty; and we have no place to worship our God; and behold, what shall we do?

And now when Alma heard this, he turned him about, his face immediately towards him, and he beheld with great joy; for he beheld that their afflictions had truly humbled them, and that they were in a preparation to hear the word.

Therefore he did say no more to the other multitude; but he stretched forth his hand, and cried unto those whom he beheld, who were truly penitent, and said unto them:

- 8 Ngiyabona ukuthi nithobile ngezinhliziyi; futhi uma kunjalo, nibusisiwe.
- 9 Bhekani umfowenu uthe, Kufanele senzenjani na?—ngokuba sikhishelwe ngaphandle kwamasinagoge ethu, ukuze singakwazi ukukhonza uNkulunkulu wethu.
- 10 Bhekani ngithi kini, nicabanga ukuthi aninakumkhonza uNkulunkulu ngaphandle kokuthi kube semasinagogeni enu kuphela na?
- 11 Futhi ngaphezu kwalokho, ngizonibuza ukuthi, nicabanga ukuthi akufanele nikhonze uNkulunkulu kuphela kanye ngesonto na?
- 12 Ngithi kini, kuhle ukuthi nikhishelwe ngaphandle kwamasinagoge enu, ukuze nizithobe, futhi ukuze nifunde ukuhlakanipha; ngokuba kudingekile ukuthi nifunde ukuhlakanipha; ngokuba kungenxa yokuthi nikhishelwe ngaphandle, nokuthi nidelelwe ngabafowenu ngenxa yobumpofu benu obukhulu, ukuthi niholelwe ekutheni nithobeke ngezinhliziyi; ngokuba ngenxa yesimo niholelwe ekutheni nizithobe.
- 13 Manje, ngenxa yokuthi niphokelekile ukuthi nizithobe nibusisiwe; ngokuba umuntu ngesinye isikhathi, uma ephokelekile ukuthi azithobe, uyaye afune ukuphenduka; manje ngokuqinisekileyo, lowo ophendukayo uyothola umusa; futhi lowo othola umusa futhi abekezele kuze kube sekupheleni nguye lowo oyosindiswa.
- 14 Manje, njengoba ngishilo kini, ukuthi ngenxa yokuthi niphokelekile ukuthi nizithobe nibusisiwe, ngabe ancabangi yini ukuthi babusiswe kakhulu labo abazithoba ngeqiniso ngenxa yezwi na?
- 15 Yebo, lowo ozithoba ngeqiniso, futhi aphenduke ezonweni zakhe, futhi abekezele kuze kube sekupheleni, nguye lowo oyobusiswa—yebo, ubusiswe kakhulu kunalabo abaphokelekile ukuthi bazithobe ngenxa yobumpofu babo obukhulu.

I behold that ye are lowly in heart; and if so, blessed are ye.

Behold thy brother hath said, What shall we do?—for we are cast out of our synagogues, that we cannot worship our God.

Behold I say unto you, do ye suppose that ye cannot worship God save it be in your synagogues only?

And moreover, I would ask, do ye suppose that ye must not worship God only once in a week?

I say unto you, it is well that ye are cast out of your synagogues, that ye may be humble, and that ye may learn wisdom; for it is necessary that ye should learn wisdom; for it is because that ye are cast out, that ye are despised of your brethren because of your exceeding poverty, that ye are brought to a lowliness of heart; for ye are necessarily brought to be humble.

And now, because ye are compelled to be humble blessed are ye; for a man sometimes, if he is compelled to be humble, seeketh repentance; and now surely, whosoever repenteth shall find mercy; and he that findeth mercy and endureth to the end the same shall be saved.

And now, as I said unto you, that because ye were compelled to be humble ye were blessed, do ye not suppose that they are more blessed who truly humble themselves because of the word?

Yea, he that truly humbleth himself, and repenteth of his sins, and endureth to the end, the same shall be blessed—yea, much more blessed than they who are compelled to be humble because of their exceeding poverty.

- 16 Ngakho-ke, babusisiwe labo abazithobayo ngaphandle kokuphoqeleka ukuthi bathobe; noma-ke, ngokuyikho, ngamanye amazwi, ubusisiwe lowo okholelwa ezwini likaNkulunkulu, futhi abhabhadiswe ngaphandle kokuba nenhliziyo elukhuni, yebo, ngaphandle kokuholeleka ekutheni alazi izwi, noma ngisho nokuthi baphoqeleke ukuthi bazi, ngaphambi kokuthi bakholwe.
- 17 Yebo, baningi abathi: Uma ungasikhombisa isibonakaliso esivela ezulwini, ngalokho siyokwazi ngeqiniso; ngalokho siyokholwa.
- 18 Manje ngiyabuza, ngabe lokhu ngukholo na? Bhekani, ngithi kini, Cha; ngokuba uma umuntu eyazi into akanasidingo sokukholwa, ngokuba uyayazi.
- 19 Manje, uqalekiswe kangakanani lowo oyaziyo intando kaNkulunkulu kodwa angayenzi, kunalowo okholwayo kuphela, noma kuphela abe nesizathu sokukholwa, bese ewela esiphambekweni na?
- 20 Manje kufanele nahlulele mayelana nalento. Bhekani, ngithi kini, kunjalo esandleni esisodwa ngisho njengoba kunjalo nakwesinye; futhi kuyoba kuwo wonke umuntu ngokomsebenzi wakhe.
- 21 Manje njengoba ngishilo mayelana nokholo—ukholo akukona ukuthi ube nolwazi oluphelele lwezinto; ngakho-ke uma unokholo unethemba lezinto ezingabonakaliyo, eziyiqiniso.
- 22 Manje, bhekani, ngithi kini, futhi ngifuna ukuthi nikhumbule, ukuthi uNkulunkulu unomusa kubo bonke labo abakholwa egameni lakhe; ngakho-ke unesifiso, okokuqala nje, sokuthi nikholwe, yebo, ngisho nakulo izwi lakhe.
- 23 Manje, wembula izwi lakhe ngezingelosi kubantu, yebo, hhayi kuphela abesilisa kodwa nabesifazane ngokunjalo. Manje lokhu akusikho konke; abantwana abancane banawo amazwi anikwe kubo izikhathi eziningi, athobisa abahlakaniphileyo kanye nabafundile.
- 24 Manje, bafowethu abathandekayo, njengoba ninesifiso sokwazi kimi ukuthi kufanele nenzenjani ngoba niyahlushwa futhi nikhishelwa ngaphandle—manje angifuni ukuthi nicabange ukuthi ngiqonde ukunahlulela kuphela ngalokho okuliqiniso—

Therefore, blessed are they who humble themselves without being compelled to be humble; or rather, in other words, blessed is he that believeth in the word of God, and is baptized without stubbornness of heart, yea, without being brought to know the word, or even compelled to know, before they will believe.

Yea, there are many who do say: If thou wilt show unto us a sign from heaven, then we shall know of a surety; then we shall believe.

Now I ask, is this faith? Behold, I say unto you, Nay; for if a man knoweth a thing he hath no cause to believe, for he knoweth it.

And now, how much more cursed is he that knoweth the will of God and doeth it not, than he that only believeth, or only hath cause to believe, and falleth into transgression?

Now of this thing ye must judge. Behold, I say unto you, that it is on the one hand even as it is on the other; and it shall be unto every man according to his work.

And now as I said concerning faith—faith is not to have a perfect knowledge of things; therefore if ye have faith ye hope for things which are not seen, which are true.

And now, behold, I say unto you, and I would that ye should remember, that God is merciful unto all who believe on his name; therefore he desireth, in the first place, that ye should believe, yea, even on his word.

And now, he imparteth his word by angels unto men, yea, not only men but women also. Now this is not all; little children do have words given unto them many times, which confound the wise and the learned.

And now, my beloved brethren, as ye have desired to know of me what ye shall do because ye are afflicted and cast out—now I do not desire that ye should suppose that I mean to judge you only according to that which is true—

- 25 Ngokuba angiqondile ukuthi nonke niphophelelele ukuthi nizithobe; ngokuba ngempela ngiyakholwa ukuthi kukhona abanye phakathi kwenu abangazithoba, noma ngabe bangaba kusiphi isimo.
- 26 Manje, njengoba ngishilo mayelana nokholo—ukuthi bekungelona ulwazi oluphelele—kunjalo ngisho nangamazwi ami. Aninakuwazi ubuqiniso bawo okokuqala, ngokupheleleyo, njengoba nokholo kungelona ulwazi olupheleleyo.
- 27 Kodwa bhekani, uma ningavuka futhi nivuselele ulwazi lwenu, ngisho nokuwalinga amazwi ami, futhi nisebenzise intwanyana encane yokholo, yebo, ngisho noma ungeke wenza ngaphezu kokuthi ube nesifiso nje kuphela sokukholwa, yenza lesifiso sisebenze kuwe, kuze kube ukholwa ngendlela onganikeza ngayo indawo yengxenyana nje yamazwi ami.
- 28 Manje, sizoqhathanisa izwi nembewu. Manje, uma ninikeza indawo, ukuthi imbewu itshalwe ezinhliziyweni zenu, bheka, uma kuyimbewu yeqiniso, noma kuyimbewu enhle, uma ningayilahli ngaphandle ngokungakholwa kwenu, ukuze nenqabele uMoya weNkosi, bheka, iyoqala ikhukhumale ngaphakathi kwezifuba zenu; futhi uma seniyizwa lemizwa yokukhukhumala, niyoqala ukuthi ngaphakathi kwenu—kufanelele ukuthi lena yimbewu enhle, noma ukuthi lelizwi lihle, ngokuba seliqala ukuwukhulisa umphefumulo wami; yebo, seliqala ukukhanyisa ukuqonda kwami, yebo, seliqala ukuthi libe mnandi kimi.
- 29 Manje bheka, ngabe lokhu akuzukulikhulisa yini ukholo lwenu na? Ngithi kini, Yebo; noma kunjalo alukakakhuli ukuthi lube wulwazi olupheleleyo.
- 30 Kodwa bhekani, ngesikhathi imbewu isikhukhumala, futhi isiqhuma, futhi isiqala ukukhula, uma kunjalo kufanelele nithi lembewu yinhle; ngokuba bheka isiyakhukhumala, futhi isiyaqhuma, futhi isiqala ukukhula. Manje, bhekani, ngabe lokhu akuzukuluqinisa yini ukholo lwenu na? Yebo, kuzuluqinisa ukholo lwenu: ngokuba nizothi ngiyazi ukuthi lena yimbewu enhle; ngokuba bheka iyaqhuma futhi isiqala ukukhula.

For I do not mean that ye all of you have been compelled to humble yourselves; for I verily believe that there are some among you who would humble themselves, let them be in whatsoever circumstances they might.

Now, as I said concerning faith—that it was not a perfect knowledge—even so it is with my words. Ye cannot know of their surety at first, unto perfection, any more than faith is a perfect knowledge.

But behold, if ye will awake and arouse your faculties, even to an experiment upon my words, and exercise a particle of faith, yea, even if ye can no more than desire to believe, let this desire work in you, even until ye believe in a manner that ye can give place for a portion of my words.

Now, we will compare the word unto a seed. Now, if ye give place, that a seed may be planted in your heart, behold, if it be a true seed, or a good seed, if ye do not cast it out by your unbelief, that ye will resist the Spirit of the Lord, behold, it will begin to swell within your breasts; and when you feel these swelling motions, ye will begin to say within yourselves—It must needs be that this is a good seed, or that the word is good, for it beginneth to enlarge my soul; yea, it beginneth to enlighten my understanding, yea, it beginneth to be delicious to me.

Now behold, would not this increase your faith? I say unto you, Yea; nevertheless it hath not grown up to a perfect knowledge.

But behold, as the seed swelleth, and sprouteth, and beginneth to grow, then you must needs say that the seed is good; for behold it swelleth, and sprouteth, and beginneth to grow. And now, behold, will not this strengthen your faith? Yea, it will strengthen your faith: for ye will say I know that this is a good seed; for behold it sprouteth and beginneth to grow.

31 Manje, bhekani, ngabe ninaso yini isiqiniseko sokuthi lena yimbewu enhle na? Ngithi kini, Yebo; ngokuba yonke imbewu ikhipha lokho okufana nayo.

32 Ngakho-ke, uma imbewu ikhula yinhle, kodwa uma ingakhuli, bheka ayiyinhle, ngakho-ke ilahlwa ngaphandle.

33 Manje, bhekani, ngokuba senizamile ukulinga, futhi nayitshala imbewu, futhi isiyakhukhumala futhi isiyaqhuma, futhi isiqala ukukhula, kufanele nazi ukuthi lembewu yinhle.

34 Manje, bhekani, ngabe ulwazi lwenu seluphelele na? Yebo, ulwazi lwenu seluphelele kuleyonto, futhi ukholo lwenu lusalele; futhi lokhu ngenxa yokuthi niyazi; ngokuba niyazi ukuthi izwi liyikhukhumalisile imiphefumulo yenu, futhi phezu kwalokho niyazi ukuthi liqhumile, nokuthi ukuqonda kwenu kuqala ukukhanya, futhi umqondo wenu usuqala ukuvuleka.

35 O uma kunjalo-ke, ngabe lokhu akusilo yini iqiniso na? Ngithi kini, Yebo, ngoba kuwukukhanya; futhi noma ngabe yini engukukhanya, yinhle, ngenxa yokuthi iyabonakala, ngakho-ke kufanele nazi ukuthi yinhle; manje bhekani, emva kokuthi senikuzwile lokhu kukhanya ngabe ulwazi lwenu seluphelele na?

36 Bhekani ngithi kini, Cha; futhi akufanele nilubeke eceleni ukholo lwenu, ngokuba nisebenzise ukholo lwenu kuphela ukutshala lembewu ukuze nizame ukulinga ukuze nazi ukuthi lembewu yinhle yini.

37 Futhi bhekani, ngesikhathi isihlahla sesiqala sikhula, nizokuthi: Masisondle ngokusinakekela okukhulu, ukuze sithole impande, ukuze sikhule siye phezulu, futhi sisikhiphele izithelo. Manje bhekani, uma nisondla ngokusinakekela okukhulu siyothola impande, futhi sikhule siye phezulu, futhi sikhiphe izithelo.

38 Kodwa uma ningasinaki isihlahla, futhi ningacabangi nangokondliwa kwaso, bhekani asiyikuthola mpande; futhi uma ukushisa kwelanga sekufika futhi kusihwamula, ngenxa yokuthi asinampande siyabuna, futhi niyasisiphula nisilahle ngaphandle.

And now, behold, are ye sure that this is a good seed? I say unto you, Yea; for every seed bringeth forth unto its own likeness.

Therefore, if a seed groweth it is good, but if it groweth not, behold it is not good, therefore it is cast away.

And now, behold, because ye have tried the experiment, and planted the seed, and it swelleth and sprouteth, and beginneth to grow, ye must needs know that the seed is good.

And now, behold, is your knowledge perfect? Yea, your knowledge is perfect in that thing, and your faith is dormant; and this because you know, for ye know that the word hath swelled your souls, and ye also know that it hath sprouted up, that your understanding doth begin to be enlightened, and your mind doth begin to expand.

O then, is not this real? I say unto you, Yea, because it is light; and whatsoever is light, is good, because it is discernible, therefore ye must know that it is good; and now behold, after ye have tasted this light is your knowledge perfect?

Behold I say unto you, Nay; neither must ye lay aside your faith, for ye have only exercised your faith to plant the seed that ye might try the experiment to know if the seed was good.

And behold, as the tree beginneth to grow, ye will say: Let us nourish it with great care, that it may get root, that it may grow up, and bring forth fruit unto us. And now behold, if ye nourish it with much care it will get root, and grow up, and bring forth fruit.

But if ye neglect the tree, and take no thought for its nourishment, behold it will not get any root; and when the heat of the sun cometh and scorseth it, because it hath no root it withers away, and ye pluck it up and cast it out.

39 Manje, lokhu akukona ukuthi kungenxa yokuthi imbewu ibingeyinhle, noma ngoba isithelo saso singenakuthandeka; kodwa kungenxa yokuthi umhlabathi wenu uwugwadule, futhi anisondli lesi sihlahla, ngakho-ke aninakuthola sithelo saso.

40 Ngakho-ke, uma ningalondli izwi, nibheke phambili ngeso lokukholwa esithelweni salo, aniyukwazi nanini ukukha isithelo somuthi wokuphila.

41 Kodwa uma nizolondla izwi, yebo, nisondle isihlahla ngesikhathi sesiqala ukukhula, ngokholo lwenu ngokukhuthala okukhulu, kanye nangokubekezela, nibheke phambili esithelweni salo, liyokuba nempande; futhi bheka liyokuba yisihlahla esiyokhula siye phezulu sibe ngukuphila okuphakade.

42 Futhi ngenxa yokukhuthala kwenu kanye nokholo lwenu kanye nokubekezela kwenu ukuthi nilondle izwi, ukuze lithole impande kini, bheka, emva kwesikhashana nje niyosikha isithelo salo, esiyigugu elikhulu, esimtoti ngaphezu kwakho konke okumtoti, futhi esimhlophe ngaphezu kwakho konke okumhlophe, yebo, futhi esimsulwa ngaphezu kwakho konke okumsulwa; futhi niyozitika ngalesi sithelo ngisho nize nineliseke, ukuze ningabe nisalamba, noma nome.

43 Ngaleso sikhathi, bafowethu, niyoyivuna inzuzo yokholo lwenu, kanye nenkuthalo yenu, kanye nokubekezela, kanye nokuba nenhliziyo ende, nilinde isihlahla ukuthi sinivezele isithelo.

Now, this is not because the seed was not good, neither is it because the fruit thereof would not be desirable; but it is because your ground is barren, and ye will not nourish the tree, therefore ye cannot have the fruit thereof.

And thus, if ye will not nourish the word, looking forward with an eye of faith to the fruit thereof, ye can never pluck of the fruit of the tree of life.

But if ye will nourish the word, yea, nourish the tree as it beginneth to grow, by your faith with great diligence, and with patience, looking forward to the fruit thereof, it shall take root; and behold it shall be a tree springing up unto everlasting life.

And because of your diligence and your faith and your patience with the word in nourishing it, that it may take root in you, behold, by and by ye shall pluck the fruit thereof, which is most precious, which is sweet above all that is sweet, and which is white above all that is white, yea, and pure above all that is pure; and ye shall feast upon this fruit even until ye are filled, that ye hunger not, neither shall ye thirst.

Then, my brethren, ye shall reap the rewards of your faith, and your diligence, and patience, and long-suffering, waiting for the tree to bring forth fruit unto you.

Alima 33

- 1 Manje emva kokuthi u-Alima esewakhulumile lamazwi, bathumela kuye benesifiso sokwazi ukuthi ngabe kumele bakholwe kuNkulunkulu oyedwa yini, ukuze bathole lesi sithelo ayekhulume ngaso, noma ukuthi bangayitshala kanjani imbewu, noma izwi lelo ayekhulume ngalo, ayethe kufanele litshalwe ezinhliziyweni zabo; noma bangaqala kanjani ukusebenzisa ukholo lwabo.
- 2 Futhi u-Alima wathi kubo: Bhekani, nithe anikwazi ukukhonza uNkulunkulu wenu ngoba niyaxoshwa emasinagogeni enu. Kodwa bhekani, ngithi kini, uma nicabanga ukuthi aninakumkhonza uNkulunkulu, niduke kakhulu, futhi kufanele nicwaninge imibhalo engcwele; uma nicabanga ukuthi yiyo eyanifundisa lokhu, aniyiqondi.
- 3 Niyakhumbula nifunda lokho uZenoshe, umphrofethi wasendulo, akusho mayelana nokukhuleka noma ukukhonza na?
- 4 Ngokuba wathi: Unesihawu, O Nkulunkulu, ngokuba uwuzwile umkhuleko wami, ngisho noma bengisehlane; yebo, waba nesihawu ngesikhathi ngikhuleka mayelana nalabo ababe yizitha zami, futhi nempela wababhekisa kimi.
- 5 Yebo, O Nkulunkulu, futhi waba nesihawu kimi ngesikhathi ngikhala kuwe ngisensimini yami; ngesikhathi ngikhala kuwe emkhulekweni wami, futhi nempela wangizwa.
- 6 Futhi phezu kwalokho, O Nkulunkulu, ngesikhathi ngiya endlini yami wangizwa emkhulekweni wami.
- 7 Futhi ngesikhathi ngiya ekhosombeni lami, O Nkosi, futhi ngikhuleka kuwe, nempela wangizwa.
- 8 Yebo, unesihawu kubantwana bakho uma bekhala kuwe, ukuthi bazwiwe nguwe hhayi ngabantu, futhi uzobezwa.
- 9 Yebo, O Nkulunkulu, ube nesihawu kimi, futhi wakuzwa ukukhala kwami phakathi kwamabandla akho.

Alma 33

Now after Alma had spoken these words, they sent forth unto him desiring to know whether they should believe in one God, that they might obtain this fruit of which he had spoken, or how they should plant the seed, or the word of which he had spoken, which he said must be planted in their hearts; or in what manner they should begin to exercise their faith.

And Alma said unto them: Behold, ye have said that ye could not worship your God because ye are cast out of your synagogues. But behold, I say unto you, if ye suppose that ye cannot worship God, ye do greatly err, and ye ought to search the scriptures; if ye suppose that they have taught you this, ye do not understand them.

Do ye remember to have read what Zenos, the prophet of old, has said concerning prayer or worship?

For he said: Thou art merciful, O God, for thou hast heard my prayer, even when I was in the wilderness; yea, thou wast merciful when I prayed concerning those who were mine enemies, and thou didst turn them to me.

Yea, O God, and thou wast merciful unto me when I did cry unto thee in my field; when I did cry unto thee in my prayer, and thou didst hear me.

And again, O God, when I did turn to my house thou didst hear me in my prayer.

And when I did turn unto my closet, O Lord, and prayed unto thee, thou didst hear me.

Yea, thou art merciful unto thy children when they cry unto thee, to be heard of thee and not of men, and thou wilt hear them.

Yea, O God, thou hast been merciful unto me, and heard my cries in the midst of thy congregations.

- 10 Yebo, futhi phezu kwalokho ungizwile ngesikhathi ngikhishelwe ngaphandle futhi ngidelelwa yizitha zami; yebo, nempela wakuzwa ukukhala kwami, futhi wazithukuthelela izitha zami, futhi nempela wazivakashela ngentukuthelo yakho ngembhubhiso esheshayo.
- 11 Futhi nempela wangizwa ngenxa yezinhlopheko zami kanye nobuqotho bami; futhi kungenxa yeNdodana yakho ukuthi ube nesihawu ngalendlela kimi, ngakho-ke ngizokhala kuwe kuzo zonke izinhlopheko zami, ngokuba ukujabula kwami kukuwe; ngokuba wena uzisusile izahlulelo zakho kimi, ngenxa yeNdodana yakho.
- 12 Manje u-Alima wathi kubo: Niyayikholwa yini leyo mibhalo engcwele eyabhalwa yibo abasendulo na?
- 13 Bhekani, uma niyikholwa, kufanele nikukholwe okwashiwo ngu Zenoshe; ngokuba, bhekani wathi: Uzisusile izahlulelo zakho ngenxa yeNdodana yakho.
- 14 Manje bhekani, bafowethu, ngizonibuza ukuthi niyifundile yini imibhalo engcwele na? Uma niyifundile, ningangakhohla kanjani eNdodaneni kaNkulunkulu na?
- 15 Ngokuba akubhaliwe ukuthi uZenoshe yedwa owakhuluma ngalezi zinto, kodwa no Zenoki ngokunjalo naye wakhuluma ngalezi zinto—
- 16 Ngokuba bhekani, wathi: Ubathukuthelele, O Nkosi, laba bantu, ngenxa yokuthi abawuqondi umusa wakho obanike wona ngenxa yeNdodana yakho.
- 17 Manje, bafowethu, niyabona ukuthi umphrofethi wesibili wasendulo ufakazile ngeNdodana kaNkulunkulu, futhi ngenxa yokuthi abantu abakwazanga ukuwaqonda amazwi akhe bamkhanda ngamatshe waze wafa.
- 18 Kodwa bhekani, lokhu akusikho konke; laba akubona kuphela abakhulumile mayelana neNdodana kaNkulunkulu.
- 19 Bhekani, wakhuluma ngayo no Mose; yebo, futhi bhekani isibonakaliso saphakanyiswa ehlane, ukuthi lowo oyosibheka angaphila. Futhi abaningi nempela babheka futhi baphila.

Yea, and thou hast also heard me when I have been cast out and have been despised by mine enemies; yea, thou didst hear my cries, and wast angry with mine enemies, and thou didst visit them in thine anger with speedy destruction.

And thou didst hear me because of mine afflictions and my sincerity; and it is because of thy Son that thou hast been thus merciful unto me, therefore I will cry unto thee in all mine afflictions, for in thee is my joy; for thou hast turned thy judgments away from me, because of thy Son.

And now Alma said unto them: Do ye believe those scriptures which have been written by them of old?

Behold, if ye do, ye must believe what Zenos said; for, behold he said: Thou hast turned away thy judgments because of thy Son.

Now behold, my brethren, I would ask if ye have read the scriptures? If ye have, how can ye disbelieve on the Son of God?

For it is not written that Zenos alone spake of these things, but Zenock also spake of these things—

For behold, he said: Thou art angry, O Lord, with this people, because they will not understand thy mercies which thou hast bestowed upon them because of thy Son.

And now, my brethren, ye see that a second prophet of old has testified of the Son of God, and because the people would not understand his words they stoned him to death.

But behold, this is not all; these are not the only ones who have spoken concerning the Son of God.

Behold, he was spoken of by Moses; yea, and behold a type was raised up in the wilderness, that whosoever would look upon it might live. And many did look and live.

20 Kodwa bancane abaqonda ngencazelo yalezo zinto, futhi lokhu kwakungenxa yobulukhuni bezinhliziyo zabo. Kodwa babebanangi ababelukhuni kakhulu kangangokuthi ababhekanga, ngakho-ke bafa. Manje isizathu sokuthi bangabheki yingoba babengakholwa ukuthi sasingabaphilisa.

21 O bafowethu, uma beningaphiliswa ngokubheka nje ngamehlo enu ukuze niphile, beningena kubheka ngokushesha na, noma beningancamela ukuqinisa izinhliziyu zenu ngokungakholwa na, futhi nivilaphe, ukuthi ningabheki ngamehlo enu, ukuze nife na?

22 Uma kunjalo, usizi luyozisa kuni; kodwa uma kungenjalo, phonsani amehlo enu futhi niqale ukukholwa eNdodaneni kaNkulunkulu, ukuthi izofika izokhulula abantu bayo, futhi nokuthi iyohlupheka futhi ife ukuze ihlawulele izono zabo; futhi nokuthi iyophinda ivuke kwabafuleyo, okuyofeza uvuko, ukuze bonke abantu bame phambi kwayo, ukuze behlulelwe ngosuku lokugcina kanye nolokwahlulelwa, ngokwemisebenzi yabo.

23 Manje, bafowethu, ngifisa ukuthi nilitshale lelizwi ezinhliziyweni zenu, futhi ngesikhathi seliqala ukukhukhumala londleni kanjalo ngokholo lwenu. Futhi bhekani, liyokuba yisihlahla, esiyokhula kuni sibe wukuphila okuphakade. Futhi ngaleso sikhathi sengathi uNkulunkulu anganinika ukuthi imithwalo yenu ibe lula, ngenjabulo yeNdodana yakhe. Futhi ngisho konke lokhu ningakwenza uma nje nithanda. Amen.

But few understood the meaning of those things, and this because of the hardness of their hearts. But there were many who were so hardened that they would not look, therefore they perished. Now the reason they would not look is because they did not believe that it would heal them.

O my brethren, if ye could be healed by merely casting about your eyes that ye might be healed, would ye not behold quickly, or would ye rather harden your hearts in unbelief, and be slothful, that ye would not cast about your eyes, that ye might perish?

If so, we shall come upon you; but if not so, then cast about your eyes and begin to believe in the Son of God, that he will come to redeem his people, and that he shall suffer and die to atone for their sins; and that he shall rise again from the dead, which shall bring to pass the resurrection, that all men shall stand before him, to be judged at the last and judgment day, according to their works.

And now, my brethren, I desire that ye shall plant this word in your hearts, and as it beginneth to swell even so nourish it by your faith. And behold, it will become a tree, springing up in you unto everlasting life. And then may God grant unto you that your burdens may be light, through the joy of his Son. And even all this can ye do if ye will. Amen.

Alima 34

- 1 Manje kwenzeka ukuthi emva kokuthi u-Alima esewakhulumile lamazwi kubo wahlala phansi, futhi u-Amuleki wasukuma waqala ukubafundisa, ethi:
- 2 Bafowethu, ngicabanga ukuthi ngeke kwenzeke ukuthi ningabi nalwazi lwalezi zinto okukhulunywe ngazo mayelana nokuza kukaKristu, esifundisa ngaye ukuthi uyiNdodana kaNkulunkulu; yebo, ngiyazi ukuthi lezi zinto zafundiswa kini kaningi ngaphambi kokuhlubuka kwenu phakathi kwethu.
- 3 Futhi njengoba nibe nesifiso sokuthi umfowethu othandekayo anikhombise ukuthi kumele nenzeni, ngenxa yezinhlopheko zenu; futhi ukhulumile ngandlela thize kini ukuthi alungise imiqondo yenu; yebo, futhi uninxusele okholweni kanye nasekubekazeleni—
- 4 Yebo, ngisho nokuthi nibe nokholo olukhulu kakhulu kangokuthi nize nilitshale izwi ezinhliziyweni zenu, ukuze nizame ukulinga ubuhle balo.
- 5 Futhi sibonile ukuthi umbuzo omkhulu osemi qondweni yenu owokuthi ngabe izwi liseNdodaneni kaNkulunkulu, noma ngabe akuyikuba khona Kristu na.
- 6 Futhi niphinde nabona ukuthi umfowethu unibonisile, ngezindlela eziningi, ukuthi izwi lensindiso likuKristu.
- 7 Umfowethu ucahune emazwini kaZenoshe, ukuthi ukukhululwa kuza ngeNdodana kaNkulunkulu, futhi ngokunjalo nasemazwini kaZenoki; futhi uphinde wacaphuna kuMose, ukubonisa ukuthi lezi zinto ziyiqiniso.
- 8 Manje, bhekani, ngizofakaza kini ngokwami ukuthi lezi zinto ziyiqiniso. Bhekani, ngithi kini, ngiyazi ukuthi uKristu uyofika phakathi kwabantwana babantu, ukuzothwala iziphambeko zabantu bakhe, futhi nokuthi uyohlawulela izono zomhlaba; ngokuba iNkosi uNkulunkulu ikukhulumile lokhu.

Alma 34

And now it came to pass that after Alma had spoken these words unto them he sat down upon the ground, and Amulek arose and began to teach them, saying:

My brethren, I think that it is impossible that ye should be ignorant of the things which have been spoken concerning the coming of Christ, who is taught by us to be the Son of God; yea, I know that these things were taught unto you bountifully before your dissension from among us.

And as ye have desired of my beloved brother that he should make known unto you what ye should do, because of your afflictions; and he hath spoken somewhat unto you to prepare your minds; yea, and he hath exhorted you unto faith and to patience—

Yea, even that ye would have so much faith as even to plant the word in your hearts, that ye may try the experiment of its goodness.

And we have beheld that the great question which is in your minds is whether the word be in the Son of God, or whether there shall be no Christ.

And ye also beheld that my brother has proved unto you, in many instances, that the word is in Christ unto salvation.

My brother has called upon the words of Zenos, that redemption cometh through the Son of God, and also upon the words of Zenock; and also he has appealed unto Moses, to prove that these things are true.

And now, behold, I will testify unto you of myself that these things are true. Behold, I say unto you, that I do know that Christ shall come among the children of men, to take upon him the transgressions of his people, and that he shall atone for the sins of the world; for the Lord God hath spoken it.

9 Ngokuba kufanele ukuthi inhlawulo yenziwe; ngokuba ngokwesu elikhulu likaNkulunkulu waPhakade kufanele kube khona inhlawulo eyenziwayo, uma kungenjalo sonke isintu kufanele silahleke ngokungenakuvimbeleka; yebo, bonke balukhuni; yebo, bonke bawile futhi bagcwele isono, futhi kufanele balahleke ngaphandle kokuthi kube ngokwenhlawulo okufanele ukuthi yenziwe.

10 Ngokuba kufanele ukuthi kube khona umnikelo omkhulu nowokugcina; yebo, hhayi umnikelo womuntu, noma wesilwane, noma wanoma hlobo luni lwenyoni; ngokuba akuyikuba ngumnikelo womuntu; kodwa kufanele kube ngumnikelo ongenakuphela futhi waphakade.

11 Manje akukho namunye umuntu onganikela ngegazi lakhe uqobo elingahlawulela izono zomunye. Manje, uma umuntu ebulala, bheka ngabe umthetho wethu, olungile, ungayithatha yini impilo yomfowabo na? Ngithi kini, Cha.

12 Kodwa umthetho ufuna impilo yakhe lowo obulele; ngakho-ke ngeke kwaba khona lutho olungaba ngaphansi kwenhlawulo engapheliyo oluyokwenela izono zomhlaba.

13 Ngakho-ke, kufanele ukuthi kube khona umnikelo omkhulu nowokugcina, futhi uma kunjalo kuyoba khona, noma kufanele ukuthi kube khona, ukuyekwa kokuchithwa kwegazi; uma kunjalo umthetho kaMose uyobe usuyagcwaliseka; yebo; wonke uyogcwaliseka, wonke amaganyana kanye namacashaza, futhi akukho nakunye okuyobe kungagcwalisekile.

14 Futhi bheka, lokhu kuyincazelo yawo wonke umthetho, konke nokuncane kangakanani kukhomba kulowo mnikelo omkhulu kanye nowokugcina; futhi lowo mnikelo omkhulu kanye nowokugcina uzokuba yiNdodana kaNkulunkulu, yebo, ongapheliyo futhi nowaphakade.

15 Futhi ngalendlela iyoletha insindiso kubo bonke abayokholwa egameni layo; lokhu kuyinjongo yalomnikelo wokugcina, ukuletha ububele, obuhlula ukulunga, futhi obuveza indlela kubantu ukuze babe nokholo ngokwanele ukuba baphenduke.

For it is expedient that an atonement should be made; for according to the great plan of the Eternal God there must be an atonement made, or else all mankind must unavoidably perish; yea, all are hardened; yea, all are fallen and are lost, and must perish except it be through the atonement which it is expedient should be made.

For it is expedient that there should be a great and last sacrifice; yea, not a sacrifice of man, neither of beast, neither of any manner of fowl; for it shall not be a human sacrifice; but it must be an infinite and eternal sacrifice.

Now there is not any man that can sacrifice his own blood which will atone for the sins of another. Now, if a man murdereth, behold will our law, which is just, take the life of his brother? I say unto you, Nay.

But the law requireth the life of him who hath murdered; therefore there can be nothing which is short of an infinite atonement which will suffice for the sins of the world.

Therefore, it is expedient that there should be a great and last sacrifice, and then shall there be, or it is expedient there should be, a stop to the shedding of blood; then shall the law of Moses be fulfilled; yea, it shall be all fulfilled, every jot and tittle, and none shall have passed away.

And behold, this is the whole meaning of the law, every whit pointing to that great and last sacrifice; and that great and last sacrifice will be the Son of God, yea, infinite and eternal.

And thus he shall bring salvation to all those who shall believe on his name; this being the intent of this last sacrifice, to bring about the bowels of mercy, which overpowereth justice, and bringeth about means unto men that they may have faith unto repentance.

16 Futhi ngalendlela umusa ungazanelisa izimfuno zokulunga, futhi ubazungeze ngezingalo zokuphepha, kuthi lowo ongalusebenzisi ukholo ngokwanele ukuba aphenduke uba ngaphansi kwawo wonke umthetho wezimfuno zokulunga; ngakho-ke kulowo kuphela onokholo ngokwanele ukuba aphenduke kwenzeka kuye isu elikhulu futhi lokukhululwa laphakade.

17 Ngakho-ke sengathi uNkulunkulu anganipha, bafowethu, ukuthi niqale ukusebenzisa ukholo lwenu ngokwanele ukuba niphenduke, ukuthi niqale ukubiza igama lakhe elingcwele, ukuze abe nomusa kini;

18 Yebo, khalelani umusa kuye; ngokuba unamandla okusindisa.

19 Yebo, zithobeni, futhi niqhubeke nokukhuleka kuye.

20 Khalani kuye uma nisemasimini enu, yebo, phezu kwayo yonke imihlambi yenu.

21 Khalani kuye ezindlini zenu, yebo, phezu kwakho konke okwemizi yenu, ekuseni, emini, kanye nantambama.

22 Yebo, khalani kuye ngokumelene namandla ezitha zenu.

23 Yebo, khalani kuye ngokumelene no develi, oyisitha sakho konke ukulunga.

24 Khalani kuye phezu kwezitshalo zamasimu enu, ukuze niphumelele kuwo.

25 Khalani phezu kwemihlambi yamasimu enu, ukuze yande.

26 Kodwa lokhu akusikho konke; kufanele nikhuleke ngokushisekela okukhulu emakhosombeni enu, kanye nasezindaweni zenu ezifihlakele, kanye nasehlane lenu.

27 Yebo, futhi uma ningakhali eNkosini, izinhliziyi zenu mazigcwale, niqhubeke nokukhulekela inhlalakahle yenu kuye, futhi ngokunjalo nenhlalakahle yalabo abanizungezile.

And thus mercy can satisfy the demands of justice, and encircles them in the arms of safety, while he that exercises no faith unto repentance is exposed to the whole law of the demands of justice; therefore only unto him that has faith unto repentance is brought about the great and eternal plan of redemption.

Therefore may God grant unto you, my brethren, that ye may begin to exercise your faith unto repentance, that ye begin to call upon his holy name, that he would have mercy upon you;

Yea, cry unto him for mercy; for he is mighty to save.

Yea, humble yourselves, and continue in prayer unto him.

Cry unto him when ye are in your fields, yea, over all your flocks.

Cry unto him in your houses, yea, over all your household, both morning, mid-day, and evening.

Yea, cry unto him against the power of your enemies.

Yea, cry unto him against the devil, who is an enemy to all righteousness.

Cry unto him over the crops of your fields, that ye may prosper in them.

Cry over the flocks of your fields, that they may increase.

But this is not all; ye must pour out your souls in your closets, and your secret places, and in your wilderness.

Yea, and when you do not cry unto the Lord, let your hearts be full, drawn out in prayer unto him continually for your welfare, and also for the welfare of those who are around you.

28 Manje bhekani, bafowethu abathandekayo, ngithi kini, ningacabangi ukuthi yilokhu kuphela; ngokuba emva kokuthi senizenzile zonke lezi zinto, uma nixosha abantulayo, kanye nabahlubule, futhi ningabavakasheli abagulayo kanye nabahluphekile, futhi niphane ngezimpahla zenu, uma ninazo, kulabo abadingayo—ngithi kini, uma ningenzi noma yikuphi okwalezi zinto, bhekani, umkhuleko wenu uyize, futhi awunisizi ngalutho, futhi ninjengabazenzisi abaluphikayo ukhoho.

29 Ngakho-ke, uma ningakhumbuli ukuthi nibe ngabanesihe, nifana nento engelutho elahlwa ngabacwengi (ngokuba ingenalusizo) futhi inyathelwa ngaphansi kwezinyawo zabantu.

30 Manje, bafowethu, ngifuna ukuthi, emva kokuthi senithole ofakazi abaningi kangaka, ngenxa yokuthi imibhalo engcwele iyafakaza ngalezi zinto, yizani phambili futhi nilethe izithelo ngokwanele ukuba niphenduke.

31 Yebo, ngifisa sengathi beningeza phambili futhi ningabe nisazenza lukhuni izinhliziyu zenu; ngokuba bhekani, manje yisikhathi kanye nosuku lokusindiswa kwenu, ngalokho-ke, uma nizophenduka futhi ningazenzi lukhuni izinhliziyu zenu, khona manjalo isu elikhulu lokukhulula lizokwenzeka kini.

32 Ngokuba bhekani, lempilo iyisikhathi sabantu ukuthi bazilungiselele ukuthi bahlangane noNkulunkulu; yebo, bhekani usuku lwalempilo luwusuku lwabantu ukuthi benze imisebenzi yabo.

33 Manje, njengoba ngishilo kini phambilini, njengoba nibe nofakazi abaningi kangaka, ngakho-ke, ngiyancenga ukuthi ningaluhlehlisi usuku loku phenduka kwenu kuze kube sekugcineni; ngokuba emva kwalo lusuku lwalempilo, esinikwe lona ukuthi silungiselele iphakade, bhekani, uma singasenzi ngcono isikhathi sethu ngesikhathi sikulempilo, emva kwalokho kufika ubusuku bobumnyama lapho kungeke kusaba khona msebenzi owenziwayo.

And now behold, my beloved brethren, I say unto you, do not suppose that this is all; for after ye have done all these things, if ye turn away the needy, and the naked, and visit not the sick and afflicted, and impart of your substance, if ye have, to those who stand in need—I say unto you, if ye do not any of these things, behold, your prayer is vain, and availeth you nothing, and ye are as hypocrites who do deny the faith.

Therefore, if ye do not remember to be charitable, ye are as dross, which the refiners do cast out, (it being of no worth) and is trodden under foot of men.

And now, my brethren, I would that, after ye have received so many witnesses, seeing that the holy scriptures testify of these things, ye come forth and bring fruit unto repentance.

Yea, I would that ye would come forth and harden not your hearts any longer; for behold, now is the time and the day of your salvation; and therefore, if ye will repent and harden not your hearts, immediately shall the great plan of redemption be brought about unto you.

For behold, this life is the time for men to prepare to meet God; yea, behold the day of this life is the day for men to perform their labors.

And now, as I said unto you before, as ye have had so many witnesses, therefore, I beseech of you that ye do not procrastinate the day of your repentance until the end; for after this day of life, which is given us to prepare for eternity, behold, if we do not improve our time while in this life, then cometh the night of darkness wherein there can be no labor performed.

34 Ngeke nithi, uma senilethwa kuleso simo esibi, ukuthi ngizophenduka, ngizobuyela kuNkulunkulu wami. Cha, ngeke nikusho lokhu; ngokuba lowo moya ophethe imizimba yenu ngesikhathi seniphuma kulomhlaba, lowo moya uzoba namandla okuphatha umzimba wakho kulowo mhlaba waphakade.

35 Ngokuba bhekani, uma niluhlehlisile usuku lwenu lokuphenduka kuze kube sekufeni, bhekani, seningaphansi komoya kadaveli, futhi uyanibopha nibe ngabakhe; ngakho-ke, uMoya weNkosi uyobe ususukile kini, futhi awusenandawo kini, futhi udeveli usenamandla onke phezu kwenu; futhi lesi yisimo sokugcina sababi.

36 Futhi lokhu ngiyakwazi, ngokuba iNkosi ishilo ukuthi ayihlali emathempelini angengcwele, kodwa ihlala ezinhliziyweni zabalungileyo; yebo, futhi iphinde yasho ukuthi abalungile bayohlala phansi embusweni wayo, bangabe besaphuma; kodwa izingubo zabo zihlanzwe zibe mhlophe ngegazi leMvana.

37 Manje, bafowethu abathandekayo, ngifisa ukuthi nizikhumbule lezi zinto, futhi kumele nisebenzele insindiso yenu ngokwesaba phambi kukaNkulunkulu, futhi ningabe nisakuphika ukuza kukaKristu.

38 Nokuthi ningabe nisaphikisana noMoya oyiNgcwele nanini, kodwa niwemukele, futhi namukele igama likaKristu nibizwe ngaye; nizithobe ngisho nasothulini, nimkhonze uNkulunkulu, noma yikuphi lapho eningaba khona, ngomoya kanye nangeqiniso; futhi nihlale ngokubonga nsuku zonke, ngomusa omningi kanye nezibusiso aninika zona.

39 Yebo, futhi ngiyaphinda ngiyaninxusa, bafowethu, ukuthi niqaphele ukuthi nikhuleke njalonjalo, ukuze ningaholelwa kude yizilingo zikadaveli, ukuze anganihluli, ukuze ningabi ngabangaphansi kwakhe ngosuku lokugcina; ngokuba bhekani, akanivuzisi ngalutho oluhle.

Ye cannot say, when ye are brought to that awful crisis, that I will repent, that I will return to my God. Nay, ye cannot say this; for that same spirit which doth possess your bodies at the time that ye go out of this life, that same spirit will have power to possess your body in that eternal world.

For behold, if ye have procrastinated the day of your repentance even until death, behold, ye have become subjected to the spirit of the devil, and he doth seal you his; therefore, the Spirit of the Lord hath withdrawn from you, and hath no place in you, and the devil hath all power over you; and this is the final state of the wicked.

And this I know, because the Lord hath said he dwelleth not in unholy temples, but in the hearts of the righteous doth he dwell; yea, and he has also said that the righteous shall sit down in his kingdom, to go no more out; but their garments should be made white through the blood of the Lamb.

And now, my beloved brethren, I desire that ye should remember these things, and that ye should work out your salvation with fear before God, and that ye should no more deny the coming of Christ;

That ye contend no more against the Holy Ghost, but that ye receive it, and take upon you the name of Christ; that ye humble yourselves even to the dust, and worship God, in whatsoever place ye may be in, in spirit and in truth; and that ye live in thanksgiving daily, for the many mercies and blessings which he doth bestow upon you.

Yea, and I also exhort you, my brethren, that ye be watchful unto prayer continually, that ye may not be led away by the temptations of the devil, that he may not overpower you, that ye may not become his subjects at the last day; for behold, he rewardeth you no good thing.

40 Manje bafowethu abathandekayo, ngizoninxusa ukuthi nibe nokubekezela, futhi nokuthi nibekezelele lonke uhlobo lwezinhlupheko; nokuthi ningabethuki labo abaniphonsa ngaphandle ngenxa yobumpofu benu obukhulu, hleze nani nibe ngaboni njengabo;

41 Kodwa ukuthi nibe nokubekezela, futhi nizibekezelele lezo zinhlupheko, ngethemba eliqinile lokuthi ngolunye usuku niyophumula kuzo zonke izinhlupheko zenu.

And now my beloved brethren, I would exhort you to have patience, and that ye bear with all manner of afflictions; that ye do not revile against those who do cast you out because of your exceeding poverty, lest ye become sinners like unto them;

But that ye have patience, and bear with those afflictions, with a firm hope that ye shall one day rest from all your afflictions.

Alima 35

- 1 Manje kwenzeka ukuthi emva kokuthi u-Amuleki eseqedile ukukhuluma lamazwi, basishiya isixuku futhi babuyela ezweni lakwaJereshoni.
- 2 Yebo, futhi nabo bonke abanye ayehamba nabo, emva kokuthi sebelishumayele izwi kumaZoramu, nabo babuyela ezweni lakwaJereshoni.
- 3 Futhi kwenzeka ukuthi emva kokuthi iningi lamaZoramu elalaziwa selike lahlangu ndawonye mayelana namazwi ayeshunyayelwe kubo, lathukuthela ngenxa yezwi, ngokuba nempela labuqeda ubuqili babo; ngakho-ke abafunanga ukuwalalela amazwi.
- 4 Futhi bathumela futhi baqoqela bonke abantu ndawonye kulo lonke izwe, futhi babonisana nabo mayelana nalawo mazwi ayekhulunyawe.
- 5 Manje ababusi babo kanye nabaphristi babo kanye nabafundisi babo ababazisanga abantu mayelana nezifiso zabo; ngakho-ke bazitholela ngasese imibono yabantu.
- 6 Futhi kwenzeka ukuthi emva kokuthi sebeyitholile imibono yabo bonke abantu, labo ababewathanda lawomazwi ayekhulunywe ngu-Alima kanye nabafowabo baxoshwa bakhishelwa ngaphandle kwezwe; futhi babebaningi; futhi phezu kwalokho bawelela ezweni lakwaJereshoni.
- 7 Futhi kwenzeka ukuthi u-Alima kanye nabafowabo nempela babafundisa.
- 8 Manje abantu bamaZoramu babathukuthelela abantu bakwa-Amoni ababeseJereshoni, futhi umbusi omkhulu wamaZoramu, engumuntu omubi kakhulu, wathumela kubantu bakwa-Amoni efuna ukuthi babaxoshe babakhiphele ngaphandle kwezwe bonke labo ababebalekele ezweni labo.
- 9 Futhi wabasabisa ngeziningi izinsongo ngokumelene nabo. Manje abantu baka-Amoni abawesabanga amazwi abo; ngakho-ke abazange babaxoshe, kodwa nempela babemukela bonke abampofu bamaZoramu abeza kubo; futhi nempela babondla, futhi nempela babembesa, futhi babanikeza imihlaba ukuthi ibe ngamafa abo; futhi babasiza ngokwezidingo zabo.

Alma 35

Now it came to pass that after Amulek had made an end of these words, they withdrew themselves from the multitude and came over into the land of Jershon.

Yea, and the rest of the brethren, after they had preached the word unto the Zoramites, also came over into the land of Jershon.

And it came to pass that after the more popular part of the Zoramites had consulted together concerning the words which had been preached unto them, they were angry because of the word, for it did destroy their craft; therefore they would not hearken unto the words.

And they sent and gathered together throughout all the land all the people, and consulted with them concerning the words which had been spoken.

Now their rulers and their priests and their teachers did not let the people know concerning their desires; therefore they found out privily the minds of all the people.

And it came to pass that after they had found out the minds of all the people, those who were in favor of the words which had been spoken by Alma and his brethren were cast out of the land; and they were many; and they came over also into the land of Jershon.

And it came to pass that Alma and his brethren did minister unto them.

Now the people of the Zoramites were angry with the people of Ammon who were in Jershon, and the chief ruler of the Zoramites, being a very wicked man, sent over unto the people of Ammon desiring them that they should cast out of their land all those who came over from them into their land.

And he breathed out many threatenings against them. And now the people of Ammon did not fear their words; therefore they did not cast them out, but they did receive all the poor of the Zoramites that came over unto them; and they did nourish them, and did clothe them, and did give unto them lands for their inheritance; and they did administer unto them according to their wants.

- 10 Manje lokhu nempela kwawaphehla amaZoramu ukuthi abathukuthelele abantu baka-Amoni, futhi aqala ukuhlangana namaLamani futhi bawaphehla nawo ukuthi abathukuthelele.
- 11 Futhi ngalendlela amaZoramu kanye namaLamani aqala ukwenza amalungiselelo empi ukuthi alwe nabantu baka-Amoni, futhi ngokunjalo namaNefi.
- 12 Waphela ngalendlela-ke unyaka weshumi nesikhombisa wokubusa kwabehluleli phezu kwabantu baNefi.
- 13 Futhi abantu baka-Amoni bemuka baphuma ezweni lakwaJereshoni, futhi bawelela ezweni lakwaMeleki, futhi banika amabutho amaNefi indawo esezweni lakwaJereshoni, ukuze alwe namabutho amaLamani kanye namabutho amaZoramu; futhi ngalendlela yaqala impi phakathi kwamaLamani kanye namaNefi, ngonyaka weshumi nesishiyagalombili wokubusa kwabehluleli; futhi lendaba yezimpi zabo izonikwa emva kwalokhu.
- 14 U-Alima, kanye no-Amoni, kanye nabafowabo, futhi ngokunjalo namadodana amabili ka-Alima babuyela ezweni lakwaZarahemla, emva kokuthi besetshenziswe nguNkulunkulu ukuletha abaningi bamaZoramu ekuphendukeni; futhi ngobuningi balabo abalethwa ekuphendukeni baxoshwa baphuma ezweni labo; kodwa banamazwe angamafa abo ezweni lakwaJereshoni, futhi bathathe izikhali ukuthi bazivikele, kanye nabafazi babo, kanye nabantwana, kanye namazwe abo.
- 15 Manje u-Alima, ekhathazekile ngenxa yobubi babantu bakhe, yebo nangezimpi, kanye nangokuchitheka kwegazi, kanye nangengxabano eyayiphakathi kwabo; futhi eselimemezele izwi, noma esethumele ukuthi kumenyezwe izwi, phakathi kwabo bonke abantu emadolobheni onke; futhi ebona ukuthi izinhliziyi zabantu zase ziqala ukuthi zibe lukhuni, futhi nokuthi base beqala ukuthi bacasuke ngenxa yokuqina kwezwi, inhliziyi yakhe yaba buhlungu kakhulu.

Now this did stir up the Zoramites to anger against the people of Ammon, and they began to mix with the Lamanites and to stir them up also to anger against them.

And thus the Zoramites and the Lamanites began to make preparations for war against the people of Ammon, and also against the Nephites.

And thus ended the seventeenth year of the reign of the judges over the people of Nephi.

And the people of Ammon departed out of the land of Jershon, and came over into the land of Melek, and gave place in the land of Jershon for the armies of the Nephites, that they might contend with the armies of the Lamanites and the armies of the Zoramites; and thus commenced a war betwixt the Lamanites and the Nephites, in the eighteenth year of the reign of the judges; and an account shall be given of their wars hereafter.

And Alma, and Ammon, and their brethren, and also the two sons of Alma returned to the land of Zarahemla, after having been instruments in the hands of God of bringing many of the Zoramites to repentance; and as many as were brought to repentance were driven out of their land; but they have lands for their inheritance in the land of Jershon, and they have taken up arms to defend themselves, and their wives, and children, and their lands.

Now Alma, being grieved for the iniquity of his people, yea for the wars, and the bloodsheds, and the contentions which were among them; and having been to declare the word, or sent to declare the word, among all the people in every city; and seeing that the hearts of the people began to wax hard, and that they began to be offended because of the strictness of the word, his heart was exceedingly sorrowful.

16 Ngakho-ke, wenza ukuthi amadodana akhe aqoqelwe ndawonye, ukuze awanike wonke ngamunye umyalelo wakhe, ngokwehlukana, mayelana nezinto eziphathelene nokulunga. Futhi sinayo indaba ngemiyalo yakhe, abanikeza yona ngokombhalo wakhe.

Therefore, he caused that his sons should be gathered together, that he might give unto them every one his charge, separately, concerning the things pertaining unto righteousness. And we have an account of his commandments, which he gave unto them according to his own record.

Alima 36

- 1 Ndodana yami, yipha indlebe emazwini ami; ngokuba ngiyafunga kuwe, ukuthi uma nje ungagcina imiyalelo kaNkulunkulu uyophumelela ezweni.
- 2 Ngifuna ukuthi wenze njengoba ngenzile, ekukhumbuleni ukuthunjwa kobaba bethu; ngokuba babesebu gqilini, futhi kwakungekho namunye owayengabakhulula ngaphandle kokuthi kube ngu Nkulunkulu ka-Abrahama, kanye noNkulunkulu ka-Isaka, kanye noNkulunkulu kaJakobe; futhi ngempela wabakhulula ezinhluphekweni zabo.
- 3 Manje, O ndodana yami Helamani, bheka, usesebusheni bakho, ngakho-ke, ngiyakunxusa ukuthi sengathi ungawezwa amazwi ami futhi ufunde kimi; ngokuba ngiyazi ukuthi labo abayobeka ithemba labo kuNkulunkulu bayosekelwa ezilingweni zabo, kanye nasezinhluphekweni zabo, kanye nasezinkathazweni zabo, futhi bayo phakanyiswa ngosuku lokugcina.
- 4 Futhi angifuni ukuthi ucabange ukuthi ngazi ngokwami—hhayi ngokwenyama kodwa ngokukamoya, hhayi ngokomqondo wasemhlabeni kodwa kaNkulunkulu.
- 5 Manje, bheka, ngithi kuwe, ukuba benginga zalwanga nguNkulunkulu bengingenakuzazi lezi zinto; kodwa uNkulunkulu, ngomlomo wengelosi yakhe engcwele, ungambulele, hhayi ngenxa yokulunga kwami.
- 6 Ngokuba ngahamba ngizula-zula namadodana kaMosiya, sifuna ukuqeda ibandla likaNkulunkulu; kodwa bheka, uNkulunkulu wathumela ingelosi yakhe engcwele ukuthi isimise endleleni.
- 7 Futhi bheka, yakhuluma kithi, kwangathi yizwi lokuduma, futhi iphansi lonke nempela lazamazama phansi kwezinyawo zethu; futhi sonke sawela phansi, ngokuba ukwesaba iNkosi kwafika kithi.
- 8 Kodwa bheka, izwi lathi kimi: Phakama. Futhi ngaphakama ngasukuma ngema, futhi ngayibona ingelosi.

Alma 36

My son, give ear to my words; for I swear unto you, that inasmuch as ye shall keep the commandments of God ye shall prosper in the land.

I would that ye should do as I have done, in remembering the captivity of our fathers; for they were in bondage, and none could deliver them except it was the God of Abraham, and the God of Isaac, and the God of Jacob; and he surely did deliver them in their afflictions.

And now, O my son Helaman, behold, thou art in thy youth, and therefore, I beseech of thee that thou wilt hear my words and learn of me; for I do know that whosoever shall put their trust in God shall be supported in their trials, and their troubles, and their afflictions, and shall be lifted up at the last day.

And I would not that ye think that I know of myself—not of the temporal but of the spiritual, not of the carnal mind but of God.

Now, behold, I say unto you, if I had not been born of God I should not have known these things; but God has, by the mouth of his holy angel, made these things known unto me, not of any worthiness of myself;

For I went about with the sons of Mosiah, seeking to destroy the church of God; but behold, God sent his holy angel to stop us by the way.

And behold, he spake unto us, as it were the voice of thunder, and the whole earth did tremble beneath our feet; and we all fell to the earth, for the fear of the Lord came upon us.

But behold, the voice said unto me: Arise. And I arose and stood up, and beheld the angel.

- 9 Futhi yathi kimi: Uma wena ufuna ngokwakho ukubulawa, ungabe usafuna ukuqeda ibandla likaNkulunkulu.
- 10 Futhi kwenzeka ukuthi ngawela phansi; futhi kwaba yisikhathi esingangezinsuku ezintathu kanye nobusuku obuthathu lapho ngangingakwazi ukuvula umlomo wami, noma ngisebenzise amalunga ami.
- 11 Futhi ingelosi yakhuluma izinto eziningi kimi, ezazwiwa ngabafowethu, kodwa mina angizizwanga; ngokuba ngesikhathi ngizwa amazwi athi—Uma wena ufuna ngokwakho ukubulawa, ungabe usafuna ukuqeda ibandla likaNkulunkulu —ngashaywa wukwesaba okukhulu kakhulu kanye nokumangala hleze mhlawumbe ngibulawe, kangangokuthi ngawela phansi futhi angabe ngisezwa lutho.
- 12 Kodwa ngahlushwa yiminjunju yaphakade, ngokuba umphefumulo wami wakhathazeka kakhulu futhi wahlupheka ngezono zami zonke.
- 13 Yebo, ngazikhumbula zonke izono zami kanye nobubi bami, engahlushwa ngabo ngobuhlungu besihogo; yebo, ngabona ukuthi ngangihlubukile kuNkulunkulu, futhi nokuthi ngangingayigcinanga imiyalelo yakhe engcwele.
- 14 Yebo, futhi ngangibulele abaningi babantwana bakhe, noma-ke ngangibaholele ekonakaleni; yebo, kafushane nje babubukhulu kakhulu ububi bami, kangangokuthi ukucabanga nje ukuza phambi bukaNkulunkulu wami kwawuhlupha umphefumulo wami ngokwesaba okungenakuchazwa.
- 15 O, ngacabanga, ukuthi kwangathi ngingadingiswa futhi ngibe ngongasekho ngokomphefumulo kanye nangokomzimba, ukuze ngingalethwa ukuthi ngime phambi kukaNkulunkulu wami, ukuthi ngahlulelwe ngokwe zenzo zami.
- 16 Manje, izinsuku ezintathu kanye nobusuku obuthathu ngahlushwa, ngisho nangobuhlungu bomphefumulo oyiswe ekujezisweni.

And he said unto me: If thou wilt of thyself be destroyed, seek no more to destroy the church of God.

And it came to pass that I fell to the earth; and it was for the space of three days and three nights that I could not open my mouth, neither had I the use of my limbs.

And the angel spake more things unto me, which were heard by my brethren, but I did not hear them; for when I heard the words—If thou wilt be destroyed of thyself, seek no more to destroy the church of God—I was struck with such great fear and amazement lest perhaps I should be destroyed, that I fell to the earth and I did hear no more.

But I was racked with eternal torment, for my soul was harrowed up to the greatest degree and racked with all my sins.

Yea, I did remember all my sins and iniquities, for which I was tormented with the pains of hell; yea, I saw that I had rebelled against my God, and that I had not kept his holy commandments.

Yea, and I had murdered many of his children, or rather led them away unto destruction; yea, and in fine so great had been my iniquities, that the very thought of coming into the presence of my God did rack my soul with inexpressible horror.

Oh, thought I, that I could be banished and become extinct both soul and body, that I might not be brought to stand in the presence of my God, to be judged of my deeds.

And now, for three days and for three nights was I racked, even with the pains of a damned soul.

- 17 Futhi kwenzeka ukuthi njengoba ngangihlushwa yiminjunju, ngesikhathi ngisakhathazwa wukukhumbula izono zami eziningi, bheka, ngakhumbula futhi ukuthi ngamuzwa ubaba ephrofetha kubantu mayelana nokuza kothile onguJesu Kristu, iNdodana kaNkulunkulu, ukuzohlawulela izono zomhlaba.
- 18 Manje, ngesikhathi umqondo wami ubambelela kulomcabango, ngakhala ngaphakathi enhliziyweni yami ngathi: O Jesu, Ndodana kaNkulunkulu, yiba nomusa kimi, mina engisekubabeni kwenyongo, futhi ngizungezwe nxazonke ngamaketanga aphakade okufa.
- 19 Manje, bheka, ngesikhathi ngikucabanga lokhu, angibange ngisabuzwa ubuhlungu enganginabo; yebo, angibange ngisakhathazwa yinkumbulo yezono zami.
- 20 O, yayinkulu kangakanani injabulo, futhi kwakumangalisa kangakanani ukukhanya engakubona; yebo, umphefumulo wami wagcwaliswa ngenjabulo eyabankulu njengobuhlungu bami!
- 21 Yebo, ngithi kuwe, ndodana yami, akukho okwakungaba kukhulu futhi kube buhlungu njengobuhlungu engabanabo. Yebo, futhi ngiyaphinda ngithi kuwe, ndodana yami, ngakolunye uhlangothi, akukho okungaba kukhulu futhi kube mnandi njengenjabulo engaba nayo.
- 22 Yebo, ngacabanga ukuthi ngabona, ngisho njengoba ubaba uLehi abona, uNkulunkulu ehleli esihlalweni sakhe sobukhosi, ezungezwe yizixuku ngezixuku zezingelosi ezingabaleki, zisesimweni sokucula kanye nokudumisa uNkulunkulu wazo; yebo, futhi umphefumulo wami walangazelela ukuba lapho.
- 23 Kodwa bheka, amalunga ami nempela aphinda athola amandla awo futhi, futhi ngama ngezinyawo zami, futhi nempela ngamemezela kubantu ukuthi ngase ngizelwe nguNkulunkulu.
- 24 Yebo, futhi kusukela ngaleso sikhathi kuze kube manje, ngisebenze ngokungaphezi, ukuze ngilethe abantu ekuphendukeni; ukuze ngibalethe ukuthi bezwe leyo njabulo enkulu nami engayizwa; ukuze nabo ngokunjalo bazalwe nguNkulunkulu, futhi bagcwaliswe ngoMoya oNgcwele.

And it came to pass that as I was thus racked with torment, while I was harrowed up by the memory of my many sins, behold, I remembered also to have heard my father prophesy unto the people concerning the coming of one Jesus Christ, a Son of God, to atone for the sins of the world.

Now, as my mind caught hold upon this thought, I cried within my heart: O Jesus, thou Son of God, have mercy on me, who am in the gall of bitterness, and am encircled about by the everlasting chains of death.

And now, behold, when I thought this, I could remember my pains no more; yea, I was harrowed up by the memory of my sins no more.

And oh, what joy, and what marvelous light I did behold; yea, my soul was filled with joy as exceeding as was my pain!

Yea, I say unto you, my son, that there could be nothing so exquisite and so bitter as were my pains. Yea, and again I say unto you, my son, that on the other hand, there can be nothing so exquisite and sweet as was my joy.

Yea, methought I saw, even as our father Lehi saw, God sitting upon his throne, surrounded with numberless concourses of angels, in the attitude of singing and praising their God; yea, and my soul did long to be there.

But behold, my limbs did receive their strength again, and I stood upon my feet, and did manifest unto the people that I had been born of God.

Yea, and from that time even until now, I have labored without ceasing, that I might bring souls unto repentance; that I might bring them to taste of the exceeding joy of which I did taste; that they might also be born of God, and be filled with the Holy Ghost.

- 25 Yebo, manje bheka, O ndodana yami, iNkosi inginika injabulo enkulu ngokwedlulele ngenxa yezithelo zokusebenza kwami;
- 26 Ngokuba ngenxa yezwi enginikeze lona, bheka, abaningi bazelwe nguNkulunkulu, futhi bezwa njengoba nami ngezwa, futhi bazibonela iso ngeso njengoba nami ngibonile; ngakho-ke bayazi ngalezi zinto engikhulume ngazo, njengoba nami ngazi; futhi ulwazi enginalo ngolukaNkulunkulu.
- 27 Futhi bengisekelwe ngisezilingweni kanye nasezinkingeni ezinhlobonhlobo, yebo, futhi nakuzo zonke izinhlobo zezinkathazo; yebo, uNkulunkulu ungikhululile etilongweni, kanye nasezibophweni, kanye nasekufeni; yebo, futhi ngibeka ithemba lami kuye, futhi usazongi khulula njalo.
- 28 Futhi ngiyazi ukuthi uyongivusa ngosuku lokugcina, ukuthi ngihlale naye enkazimulweni; yebo, futhi ngiyomdumisa ingunaphakade, ngokuba ubakhiphile obaba bethu eGibithe, futhi uwagwinyile amaGibithe oLwandle oluBomvu; futhi wabahola ngamandla akhe wabayisa ezweni lesethembiso; yebo, futhi ubakhululile ebugqilini kanye nasekuthunjweni izikhathi ngezikhathi.
- 29 Yebo, futhi phezu kwalokho ubakhiphile obaba bethu ezweni laseJerusalem; futhi, ngamandla akhe angapheliyo, wabakhulula baphuma ebugqilini kanye nasekuthunjweni, izikhathi ngezikhathi ngisho kwehle kuze kufike kulolu suku lwanamuhla; futhi njalo ngihlala ngikhumbula ukuthunjwa kwabo; yebo, futhi nawe ngokunjalo kumele uhlale ukukhumbula, njengoba nami ngenzile, ukuthunjwa kwabo.
- 30 Kodwa bheka, ndodana yami, lokhu akusikho kuphela; ngokuba nawe kumele wazi njengoba nami ngazi, ukuthi kangangokuba uyoyigcina imiyalelo kaNkulunkulu uyophumelela ezweni; futhi kumele wazi futhi, ukuthi kangangokuba ungenakuyigcina imiyalelo kaNkulunkulu uyosuswa phambi kwakhe. Manje lokhu kunjengokwezwi lakhe.

Yea, and now behold, O my son, the Lord doth give me exceedingly great joy in the fruit of my labors;

For because of the word which he has imparted unto me, behold, many have been born of God, and have tasted as I have tasted, and have seen eye to eye as I have seen; therefore they do know of these things of which I have spoken, as I do know; and the knowledge which I have is of God.

And I have been supported under trials and troubles of every kind, yea, and in all manner of afflictions; yea, God has delivered me from prison, and from bonds, and from death; yea, and I do put my trust in him, and he will still deliver me.

And I know that he will raise me up at the last day, to dwell with him in glory; yea, and I will praise him forever, for he has brought our fathers out of Egypt, and he has swallowed up the Egyptians in the Red Sea; and he led them by his power into the promised land; yea, and he has delivered them out of bondage and captivity from time to time.

Yea, and he has also brought our fathers out of the land of Jerusalem; and he has also, by his everlasting power, delivered them out of bondage and captivity, from time to time even down to the present day; and I have always retained in remembrance their captivity; yea, and ye also ought to retain in remembrance, as I have done, their captivity.

But behold, my son, this is not all; for ye ought to know as I do know, that inasmuch as ye shall keep the commandments of God ye shall prosper in the land; and ye ought to know also, that inasmuch as ye will not keep the commandments of God ye shall be cut off from his presence. Now this is according to his word.

Alima 37

- 1 Manje, ndodana yami Helamani, ngiyakuyala ukuthi uthathe lemibhalo ebengiphathiswe yona;
- 2 Futhi phezu kwalokho ngiyakuyala ukuthi ugcine umbhalo walabantu, njengoba nami ngenzile, kulezi zingcwephe zikaNefi, futhi uzigcine zonke lezi zinto engizigcinile zingcwele, ngisho njengoba nami ngizigcinile; ngokuba kungenhloso yokuhlakanipha ukuthi zigcinwe.
- 3 Futhi lezi zingcwephe zethusi, eziqukethe lemiqopho, ezinemibhalo engcwele kuzo, ezinomlando wesizukulwane sokhokho bethu, kusukela ekuqaleni—
- 4 Bheka, kwaphrofethwa ngobaba bethu, ukuthi kumele zigcinwe futhi zidluliswe zehle kusukela esizukulwaneni kuya kwesinye, futhi zigcinwe zilondolozwe ngesandla seNkosi zize zihambe ziye kuzo zonke izizwe, imindeni, izilimi, kanye nakubantu, ukuze bazi ngezimfihlakalo eziqukethwe kuzo.
- 5 Manje bheka, uma zigciniwe kufanele zihlale zikhazimula; yebo, futhi ziyohlala zikhazimula; yebo, futhi kanjalo nazo zonke izingcwephe eziqukethe leyo mibhalo engcwele.
- 6 Manje ungacabanga ukuthi lokhu engikwenzayo kuwubulima; kodwa bheka ngithi kuwe, ngezinto ezincane neziwubala kufezeka izinto ezinkulu; futhi amasu amancane ezikhathini eziningi ayazithobisa izihlakaniphi.
- 7 Futhi iNkosi uNkulunkulu isebenza ngamasu ukuze ifeze izinhloso zayo ezinkulu futhi zaphakade; futhi ngamasu amancane kakhulu iNkosi ithobisa izihlakaniphi futhi isindise imiphefumulo eminingi.
- 8 Manje, kuze kube manje bekulokhu kuwukuhlakanipha kukaNkulunkulu ukuthi lezi zinto zilondolozwe; ngokuba bheka, ziyivulile imiqondo yalabantu, yebo, futhi zakholwisa abaningi ngamaphutha ezindlela zabo, futhi baletswa olwazini lukaNkulunkulu wabo ukuze kusindiswe imiphefumulo yabo.

Alma 37

And now, my son Helaman, I command you that ye take the records which have been entrusted with me;

And I also command you that ye keep a record of this people, according as I have done, upon the plates of Nephi, and keep all these things sacred which I have kept, even as I have kept them; for it is for a wise purpose that they are kept.

And these plates of brass, which contain these engravings, which have the records of the holy scriptures upon them, which have the genealogy of our forefathers, even from the beginning—

Behold, it has been prophesied by our fathers, that they should be kept and handed down from one generation to another, and be kept and preserved by the hand of the Lord until they should go forth unto every nation, kindred, tongue, and people, that they shall know of the mysteries contained thereon.

And now behold, if they are kept they must retain their brightness; yea, and they will retain their brightness; yea, and also shall all the plates which do contain that which is holy writ.

Now ye may suppose that this is foolishness in me; but behold I say unto you, that by small and simple things are great things brought to pass; and small means in many instances doth confound the wise.

And the Lord God doth work by means to bring about his great and eternal purposes; and by very small means the Lord doth confound the wise and bringeth about the salvation of many souls.

And now, it has hitherto been wisdom in God that these things should be preserved; for behold, they have enlarged the memory of this people, yea, and convinced many of the error of their ways, and brought them to the knowledge of their God unto the salvation of their souls.

9 Yebo, ngithi kuwe, ukuba kwakungave kungenxa yalezi zinto eziqukethwe yilemibhalo, ekulezi zingcwephe, u-Amoni kanye nabafowabo babengenakukwazi ukuthi bakholwise izinkulungwane eziningi kangaka zamaLamani ngamasiko angalungile oyise; yebo, lemibhalo kanye namazwi abo abaletha ekuphendukeni; okungukuthi, yabaletha olwazini lweNkosi uNkulunkulu wabo, kanye nasekutheni bajabule ngoJesu Kristu uMkhululi wabo.

10 Futhi ngubani owaziyo mhlawumbe zingaba yindlela yokuletha eziningi izinkulungwane zabo, yebo, futhi kanjalo neziningi izinkulungwane zabafowethu abangontamolukhuni, amaNefi, okumanje aqinisa izinhliziyi zawo esonweni kanye nasebubini, ekutheni amazi uMkhululi wawo na?

11 Manje lezi zimfihlakalo azikembulwa ngokugcwele kimi; ngakho-ke ngizoma lapha.

12 Futhi kungaba kwenele uma ngingathi kuphela nje zilondolozelwe isizathu sokuhlakanipha, leso sizathu esaziwa nguNkulunkulu; ngokuba yena uyala ngokuhlakanipha kuyo yonke imisebenzi yakhe, futhi izindlela zakhe ziqondile, futhi indlela yakhe yinye naphakade.

13 O khumbula, khumbula, ndodana yami Helamani, ukuthi iqine kanjani imiyalelo kaNkulunkulu. Futhi wathi: Uma uzoyigcina imiyalelo yami uyophumelela ezweni—kodwa uma ungayigcini imiyalelo yakhe uyosuswa phambi kwakhe.

14 Manje khumbula, ndodana yami, ukuthi uNkulunkulu uziphathise wena lezi zinto, ezingcwele, azigcine zingcwele, futhi azozigcina futhi azilindolozele isizathu sakhe sokuhlakanipha, ukuze akhombise amandla akhe ezizukulwaneni ezizayo.

15 Manje bheka, ngikutshela ngomoya wokuphrofetha, ukuthi uma uphambuka emithethweni kaNkulunkulu, bheka, lezi zinto ezingcwele ziyothathwa kuwe ngamandla kaNkulunkulu, futhi uyonikelwa kuSathane, ukuthi akuhlunge njengamakhoba emoyeni.

Yea, I say unto you, were it not for these things that these records do contain, which are on these plates, Ammon and his brethren could not have convinced so many thousands of the Lamanites of the incorrect tradition of their fathers; yea, these records and their words brought them unto repentance; that is, they brought them to the knowledge of the Lord their God, and to rejoice in Jesus Christ their Redeemer.

And who knoweth but what they will be the means of bringing many thousands of them, yea, and also many thousands of our stiffnecked brethren, the Nephites, who are now hardening their hearts in sin and iniquities, to the knowledge of their Redeemer?

Now these mysteries are not yet fully made known unto me; therefore I shall forbear.

And it may suffice if I only say they are preserved for a wise purpose, which purpose is known unto God; for he doth counsel in wisdom over all his works, and his paths are straight, and his course is one eternal round.

O remember, remember, my son Helaman, how strict are the commandments of God. And he said: If ye will keep my commandments ye shall prosper in the land—but if ye keep not his commandments ye shall be cut off from his presence.

And now remember, my son, that God has entrusted you with these things, which are sacred, which he has kept sacred, and also which he will keep and preserve for a wise purpose in him, that he may show forth his power unto future generations.

And now behold, I tell you by the spirit of prophecy, that if ye transgress the commandments of God, behold, these things which are sacred shall be taken away from you by the power of God, and ye shall be delivered up unto Satan, that he may sift you as chaff before the wind.

- 16 Kodwa uma ugcina imiyalelo kaNkulunkulu, futhi wenze ngalezi zinto ezingcwele njengoba iNkosi ikuyalile, (ngokuba kufanele unxuse eNkosini ngazo zonke izinto okufanele uzenze ngazo) bheka, akukho mandla asemhlabeni noma esihogo angazithatha kuwe, ngokuba uNkulunkulu unamandla okugcwalisa onke amazwi akhe.
- 17 Ngokuba uyozigcwalisa zonke izethembiso zakhe ayozenza kuwe, ngokuba uzigcwalisile izethembiso zakhe azenza kobaba bethu.
- 18 Ngokuba wethembisa kubo ukuthi uyozilondoloza lezi zinto azilondolozele inhloso yakhe yokuhlakanipha, ukuze akhombise amandla akhe ezizukulwaneni ezizayo.
- 19 Manje bheka, inhloso eyodwa useyigcwalisile, ngisho ekubuyiselweni kwezinkulungwane eziningi zamaLamani olwazini lweqiniso; futhi uwakhombisile amandla akhe kubo, futhi kanjalo usayowakhombisa amandla akhe kubo abezizukulwane ezizayo; ngakho-ke ziyolondolozwa.
- 20 Ngakho-ke ngiyakuyala, ndodana yami Helamani, ukuthi ukhuthale ekuwagcwaliseni wonke amazwi ami, futhi nokuthi ukhuthale ekugcineni imiyalelo kaNkulunkulu njengoba ibhaliwe.
- 21 Manje, sengizokhuluma kuwe mayelana nalezo zingcwephe ezingamashumi amabili nane, ukuthi uzigcine, ukuze izimfihlakalo kanye nemisebenzi yobumnyama, kanye nemisebenzi yabo yangasese, noma imisebenzi yangasese yalabo bantu ababhujisiwe, ivezwe kulaba bantu; yebo, konke ukubulala kwabo, kanye nobugebengu, kanye nokuphanga, kanye nabo bonke ububi kanye nezinengiso zabo, kungavezwa kulaba bantu; yebo, futhi nokuthi uzilondoloze lezi zihumushi.
- 22 Ngokuba bheka, iNkosi yabona ukuthi abantu bayo baqala ukusebenza ebumnyameni, yebo, besebenza ukubulala ngasese kanye nezinengiso; ngakho-ke iNkosi yathi, uma bengaphendukanga bayobhujiswa baphele ebusweni bomhlaba.

But if ye keep the commandments of God, and do with these things which are sacred according to that which the Lord doth command you, (for you must appeal unto the Lord for all things whatsoever ye must do with them) behold, no power of earth or hell can take them from you, for God is powerful to the fulfilling of all his words.

For he will fulfil all his promises which he shall make unto you, for he has fulfilled his promises which he has made unto our fathers.

For he promised unto them that he would preserve these things for a wise purpose in him, that he might show forth his power unto future generations.

And now behold, one purpose hath he fulfilled, even to the restoration of many thousands of the Lamanites to the knowledge of the truth; and he hath shown forth his power in them, and he will also still show forth his power in them unto future generations; therefore they shall be preserved.

Therefore I command you, my son Helaman, that ye be diligent in fulfilling all my words, and that ye be diligent in keeping the commandments of God as they are written.

And now, I will speak unto you concerning those twenty-four plates, that ye keep them, that the mysteries and the works of darkness, and their secret works, or the secret works of those people who have been destroyed, may be made manifest unto this people; yea, all their murders, and robbings, and their plunderings, and all their wickedness and abominations, may be made manifest unto this people; yea, and that ye preserve these interpreters.

For behold, the Lord saw that his people began to work in darkness, yea, work secret murders and abominations; therefore the Lord said, if they did not repent they should be destroyed from off the face of the earth.

- 23 Futhi iNkosi yathi: Ngizolungiselela inceku yami uGazelema, itshe, eliyokhanya ebumnyameni libe wukukhanya, ukuze ngibonise abantu bami ukuthi wubani ongisebenzelayo, nokuthi ngibabonise imisebenzi yabafowabo, yebo, imisebenzi yabo efihlakele, imisebenzi yabo yobumnyama, kanye nobubi babo kanye nezinengiso.
- 24 Manje, ndodana yami, lezi zihumushi zalungiselelwa ukuthi izwi likaNkulunkulu ligcwaliseke, alikhuluma, ethi:
- 25 Ngiyokwambula ebumnyameni ngiveze ekukhanyeni yonke imisebenzi yabo efihlakele kanye nezinengiso zabo; futhi ngaphandle kokuthi baphenduke ngiyobabhubhisa baphele nya ebusweni bomhlaba; futhi ngiyoziveza ekukhanyeni zonke izimfihlakalo kanye nezinengiso zabo, kuzo zonke izizwe eziyoba ngabanini balelizwe emva kwalokhu.
- 26 Manje, ndodana yami, siyabona ukuthi abazange baphenduke; ngakho-ke babhujisiwe, futhi kuze kube manje izwi likaNkulunkulu ligcwalisekile; yebo, izinengiso zabo ezifihlakele zikhishiwe ebumnyameni futhi zembulelwa thina.
- 27 Manje, ndodana yami, ngiyakuyala ukuthi uzigodle zonke izifungo zabo, kanye nezivumelwano zabo, kanye nezivumelwano zabo ngokuphathelene nezinengiso zabo ezifihlakele; yebo, kanye nazo zonke izimpawu zabo kanye nezimangaliso zabo uyobafihlela labantu, ukuze bangazazi, funa mhlawumbe bawele ebumnyameni nabo futhi bese beyabhujiswa.
- 28 Ngokuba bheka, kukhona isiqalekiso phezu kwalo lonke lelizwe, sokuthi ukubhujiswa kuyoza phezu kwabo bonke labo basebenzi bobumnyama, ngokwamandla kaNkulunkulu, uma sebevuthwe ngokupheleleyo; ngakho-ke ngifisa ukuthi labantu bangabhujiswa.

And the Lord said: I will prepare unto my servant Gazelem, a stone, which shall shine forth in darkness unto light, that I may discover unto my people who serve me, that I may discover unto them the works of their brethren, yea, their secret works, their works of darkness, and their wickedness and abominations.

And now, my son, these interpreters were prepared that the word of God might be fulfilled, which he spake, saying:

I will bring forth out of darkness unto light all their secret works and their abominations; and except they repent I will destroy them from off the face of the earth; and I will bring to light all their secrets and abominations, unto every nation that shall hereafter possess the land.

And now, my son, we see that they did not repent; therefore they have been destroyed, and thus far the word of God has been fulfilled; yea, their secret abominations have been brought out of darkness and made known unto us.

And now, my son, I command you that ye retain all their oaths, and their covenants, and their agreements in their secret abominations; yea, and all their signs and their wonders ye shall keep from this people, that they know them not, lest peradventure they should fall into darkness also and be destroyed.

For behold, there is a curse upon all this land, that destruction shall come upon all those workers of darkness, according to the power of God, when they are fully ripe; therefore I desire that this people might not be destroyed.

29 Ngakho-ke uyowafihla lamasu ayimfihlo ezifungo zabo kanye nezivumelwano zabo kulaba bantu, kuphela wububi babo kanye nokubulala kwabo kanye nezinengiso zabo oyobambulela zona; futhi uyobafundisa ukuthi babenyanye ububi obunjalo kanye nezinengiso kanye nokubulala; futhi phezu kwalokho uyobafundisa ukuthi labantu babhujiswa ngenxa yobubi babo kanye nezinengiso kanye nokubulala kwabo.

30 Ngokuba bheka, bababulala bonke abaphrofethi beNkosi abeza phakathi kwabo ukuzoshumayela kubo mayelana nobubi babo; futhi igazi lalabo ababa bulalayo nempela lakhala eNkosini uNkulunkulu wabo ukuphindiselelwa kulabo ababengababulali babo; futhi ngalendlela izehlulelo zikaNkulunkulu nempela zeza phezu kwalabasebenzi bobumnyama kanye namaqembu ayimfihlo.

31 Yebo, futhi liqalekisiwe izwe ingunaphakade naphakade kulabo basebenzi bobumnyama kanye namaqembu ayimfihlo, ngisho kuze kube bayabhujiswa, ngaphandle kokuthi baphenduke ngaphambi kokuthi bavuthwe ngokuphelele.

32 Manje, ndodana yami, khumbula amazwi engiwakhulume kuwe; ungabaniki lawo masu ayimfihlo labantu, kodwa ubafundise ukuthi basizonde njalo isono kanye nobubi.

33 Shumayela kubo ukuphenduka, kanye nokholo eNkosini uJesu Kristu; bafundise ukuthi bazithobe futhi babe mnene futhi bathobe ngenhliziyo; bafundise ukuthi bamelane nazo zonke izilingo zikadeveli, ngokukholwa kwabo eNkosini uJesu Kristu.

34 Bafundise ukuthi bangalokothi bakhathale ukwenza imisebenzi emihle, kodwa ukuthi babe mnene futhi bathobe ngenhliziyo; ngokuba ngabanjalo abayothola ukuphumula emiphefumulweni yabo.

35 O, khumbula, ndodana yami, futhi ufunde ukuhlakanipha ebusheni bakho; yebo, funda ebusheni bakho ukugcina imiyalelo kaNkulunkulu.

Therefore ye shall keep these secret plans of their oaths and their covenants from this people, and only their wickedness and their murders and their abominations shall ye make known unto them; and ye shall teach them to abhor such wickedness and abominations and murders; and ye shall also teach them that these people were destroyed on account of their wickedness and abominations and their murders.

For behold, they murdered all the prophets of the Lord who came among them to declare unto them concerning their iniquities; and the blood of those whom they murdered did cry unto the Lord their God for vengeance upon those who were their murderers; and thus the judgments of God did come upon these workers of darkness and secret combinations.

Yea, and cursed be the land forever and ever unto those workers of darkness and secret combinations, even unto destruction, except they repent before they are fully ripe.

And now, my son, remember the words which I have spoken unto you; trust not those secret plans unto this people, but teach them an everlasting hatred against sin and iniquity.

Preach unto them repentance, and faith on the Lord Jesus Christ; teach them to humble themselves and to be meek and lowly in heart; teach them to withstand every temptation of the devil, with their faith on the Lord Jesus Christ.

Teach them to never be weary of good works, but to be meek and lowly in heart; for such shall find rest to their souls.

O, remember, my son, and learn wisdom in thy youth; yea, learn in thy youth to keep the commandments of God.

- 36 Yebo, futhi khala kuNkulunkulu ukuze uthole konke ukuphila kwakho; yebo, konke ukwenza kwakho makube seNkosini, futhi noma ngabe uyakuphi makube seNkosini; yebo, yonke imicabango yakho yiqondise eNkosini; yebo, uthando lwenhliziyo yakho malube seNkosini ingunaphakade.
- 37 Bonisana neNkosi kukho konke ukwenza kwakho, futhi iyokuqondisa ukuze uzuze; yebo, uma ulala phansi ebusuku lala phansi eNkosini, ukuze ikubheke ekulaleni kwakho; futhi uma uvuka ekuseni inhliziyi yakho mayigcwale ukubonga kuNkulunkulu; futhi uma uzenza lezi zinto, uyophakanyiswa ngosuku lokugcina.
- 38 Manje, ndodana yami, nginokuthize engifuna ukuthi ngikusho mayelana naleyonto obaba bethu abayibiza ngebhola, noma umqondisi—noma obaba bethu ababekubiza ngokuthi yiLiyahona, ngokuhunyushwa okuthiwa, yinkombandlela; futhi iNkosi yayilungisa.
- 39 Futhi bheka, akekho namunye umuntu ongenza lokhu ngendlela yobuciko obungaka. Futhi bheka, yayilungiselelwe ukuthi ikhombise obaba bethu indlela okwakufanele bahambe ngayo ehlane.
- 40 Futhi nempela yabasebenzela njengoku kholwa kwabo kuNkulunkulu; ngakho-ke, uma babenokholo lokukholwa ukuthi uNkulunkulu wayengakwazi ukwenza lezo zinti zikhombe indlela okwakumele bahambe ngayo, bheka, kwakwenzeka; ngakho-ke babenalesi simangaliso, futhi kanjalo neziningi ezinye izimangaliso ezenzeka ngamandla kaNkulunkulu, usuku nosuku.
- 41 Nokho, ngenxa yokuthi lezo zimangaliso zazenzeka ngezinto ezincane nempela zabakhombisa imisebenzi emihle kakhulu. Babevilapha, futhi bekhohlwa ukusebenzisa ukholo lwabo kanye nenkuthalo kwase kuthi leyo misebenzi emihle kakhulu yanqamuka, futhi ababange besaqhubeka ohambweni lwabo.
- 42 Ngakho-ke, bahlala ehlane, noma abazange besahamba indlela eqondile, futhi bahlushwa yindlala kanye nokoma, ngenxa yeziphambeko zabo.

Yea, and cry unto God for all thy support; yea, let all thy doings be unto the Lord, and whithersoever thou goest let it be in the Lord; yea, let all thy thoughts be directed unto the Lord; yea, let the affections of thy heart be placed upon the Lord forever.

Counsel with the Lord in all thy doings, and he will direct thee for good; yea, when thou liest down at night lie down unto the Lord, that he may watch over you in your sleep; and when thou risest in the morning let thy heart be full of thanks unto God; and if ye do these things, ye shall be lifted up at the last day.

And now, my son, I have somewhat to say concerning the thing which our fathers call a ball, or director—or our fathers called it Liahona, which is, being interpreted, a compass; and the Lord prepared it.

And behold, there cannot any man work after the manner of so curious a workmanship. And behold, it was prepared to show unto our fathers the course which they should travel in the wilderness.

And it did work for them according to their faith in God; therefore, if they had faith to believe that God could cause that those spindles should point the way they should go, behold, it was done; therefore they had this miracle, and also many other miracles wrought by the power of God, day by day.

Nevertheless, because those miracles were worked by small means it did show unto them marvelous works. They were slothful, and forgot to exercise their faith and diligence and then those marvelous works ceased, and they did not progress in their journey;

Therefore, they tarried in the wilderness, or did not travel a direct course, and were afflicted with hunger and thirst, because of their transgressions.

43 Manje, ndodana yami, ngifuna ukuthi uqonde ukuthi lezi zinto akukhona ukuthi azinakho ukufana; ngokuba njengoba obaba bethu bavalapha ukuthi bayinake lenkombandlela (manje lezi zinto kwakungezesikhashana) abaphumelelanga; kunjalo-ke ngisho nangezinto ezingezikamoya.

44 Ngokuba bheka, kulula ukuthi ulinake izwi likaKristu, eliyokukhombisa indlela eqondile eya entokozweni yaphakade, njengoba kwakunjalo kobaba bethu ukuthi bayinake lenkombandlela, eyayibakhombisa indlela eqondile eya ezweni lesethembiso.

45 Manje ngithi, ngabe akukho yini ukufana kulento na? Ngokuba njengoba nakanjani lomqondisi nempela aletha obaba bethu, ngokulandela indlela yakhe, ezweni lesethembiso, kunjalo namazwi kaKristu, uma silandela indlela yawo, asithwala asiyise ngale kwalesigodi sosizi siye ezweni elingcono kakhulu lesethembiso.

46 O ndodana yami, ungasivumeli ukuthi sivilaphe ngenxa yobulula bendlela; ngokuba kwakunjalo nakobaba bethu; ngokuba yayilungiselwe bona kunjalo, ukuthi uma babengabheka babengaphila; kusenjalo ngisho nakithi. Indlela ilungisiwe, futhi uma singabheka singaphila ingunaphakade.

47 Manje, ndodana yami, bona ukuthi uyazinakekela lezi zinto ezingcwele, yebo, bona ukuthi ubheka kuNkulunkulu futhi uphile. Hamba uye kulaba bantu futhi umemezele izwi, futhi ube qotho. Ndodana yami, hamba kahle.

And now, my son, I would that ye should understand that these things are not without a shadow; for as our fathers were slothful to give heed to this compass (now these things were temporal) they did not prosper; even so it is with things which are spiritual.

For behold, it is as easy to give heed to the word of Christ, which will point to you a straight course to eternal bliss, as it was for our fathers to give heed to this compass, which would point unto them a straight course to the promised land.

And now I say, is there not a type in this thing? For just as surely as this director did bring our fathers, by following its course, to the promised land, shall the words of Christ, if we follow their course, carry us beyond this vale of sorrow into a far better land of promise.

O my son, do not let us be slothful because of the easiness of the way; for so was it with our fathers; for so was it prepared for them, that if they would look they might live; even so it is with us. The way is prepared, and if we will look we may live forever.

And now, my son, see that ye take care of these sacred things, yea, see that ye look to God and live. Go unto this people and declare the word, and be sober. My son, farewell.

Alima 38

- 1 Ndodana yami, phana indlebe emazwini ami, ngokuba ngithi kuwe, ngisho njengoba ngasho nakuHelamani, ukuthi kangangokuba uyoyigcina imiyalelo kaNkulunkulu uyophumelela ezweni; futhi kangangokuba ungeyikuyigcina imiyalelo kaNkulunkulu uyohlukaniswa naye.
- 2 Manje, ndodana yami, ngiyethemba ukuthi ngizoba nentokozo enkulu ngawe, ngenxa yokuqina kwakho kanye nokwethembeka kwakho kuNkulunkulu; njengoba uqale usesebusheni bakho ukuthi ubheke eNkosini uNkulunkulu wakho, ngisho nakanjalo ngiyethemba ukuthi uzoqhubeka nokugcina imithetho yayo; ngokuba ubusisiwe lowo obekezela kuze kube sekugcineni.
- 3 Ngithi kuwe, ndodana yami, sengibe nokuthokoza okukhulu ngawe vele, ngenxa yokwethembeka kwakho kanye nokukhuthala kwakho, kanye nokubekezela kwakho kanye nokuba nenhliziyo ende kwakho phakathi kwabantu bamaZoramu.
- 4 Ngokuba ngiyazi ukuthi wawuboshiwe; yebo, futhi phezu kwalokho ngiyazi ukuthi wakhandwa ngamatshe ngenxa yezwi; futhi wazithwala zonke lezi zinto ngokubekezela ngenxa yokuthi iNkosi yayinawe; manje usuyazi ukuthi iNkosi yakukhulula.
- 5 Manje ndodana yami, Shibiloni, ngifuna ukuthi ukhumbule, ukuthi uma nje uyobeka ithemba lakho kuNkulunkulu ngisho nakanjalo uyokhululwa uphume ezilingweni zakho, kanye nasezinkathazweni zakho, kanye nasezinhlophekweni zakho, futhi uyophakanyiswa ngosuku lokugcina.
- 6 Manje, ndodana yami, angifuni ukuthi ucabange ukuthi lezi zinto ngizazi ngokwami nje, kodwa nguMoya kaNkulunkulu okimi owembula lezi zinto kimi; ngokuba ukuba bengingazalwanga nguNkulunkulu bengingenakuzazi lezi zinto.

Alma 38

My son, give ear to my words, for I say unto you, even as I said unto Helaman, that inasmuch as ye shall keep the commandments of God ye shall prosper in the land; and inasmuch as ye will not keep the commandments of God ye shall be cut off from his presence.

And now, my son, I trust that I shall have great joy in you, because of your steadiness and your faithfulness unto God; for as you have commenced in your youth to look to the Lord your God, even so I hope that you will continue in keeping his commandments; for blessed is he that endureth to the end.

I say unto you, my son, that I have had great joy in thee already, because of thy faithfulness and thy diligence, and thy patience and thy long-suffering among the people of the Zoramites.

For I know that thou wast in bonds; yea, and I also know that thou wast stoned for the word's sake; and thou didst bear all these things with patience because the Lord was with thee; and now thou knowest that the Lord did deliver thee.

And now my son, Shiblon, I would that ye should remember, that as much as ye shall put your trust in God even so much ye shall be delivered out of your trials, and your troubles, and your afflictions, and ye shall be lifted up at the last day.

Now, my son, I would not that ye should think that I know these things of myself, but it is the Spirit of God which is in me which maketh these things known unto me; for if I had not been born of God I should not have known these things.

- 7 Kodwa bheka, iNkosi ngomusa wayo omkhulu yathumela ingelosi yayo ukuthi imemezele kimi ukuthi kufanele ngiwuyeke umsebenzi wokona phakathi kwabantu bayo; yebo, futhi ngibonene nengelosi ubuso nobuso, futhi yakhuluma nami, futhi izwi layo lalinjengokuduma, futhi lazamamazisa iphansi lonke.
- 8 Futhi kwenzeka ukuthi izinsuku ezintathu kanye nobusuku obuthathu ngaba nobuhlungu obukhulu kakhulu kanye nosizi olukhulu lomphfumulo; futhi angizange nanini, kwaze kwaba ngikhalela umusa eNkosini uJesu Kristu, ukuthi ngathola ukuthethelelwa kwezono zami. Kodwa bheka, ngakhala kuye futhi nempela ngakuthola ukuthula emphefumulweni wami.
- 9 Manje, ndodana yami, ngikutshela lokhu ukuze ufunde ukuhlakanipha, ukuze ufunde kimi ukuthi ayikho enye indlela noma isu umuntu angasindiswa ngalo, kuphela kuye kanye nangaye uKristu. Bheka, ungukuphila kanye nokukhanya komhlaba. Bheka, uyizwi leqiniso kanye nokulunga.
- 10 Manje, njengoba usuqalile ukulifundisa izwi kanjalo nami ngifuna ukuthi uqhubeke nokulifundisa; futhi ngifuna ukuthi ukhuthale futhi uzithibe kuzo zonke izinto.
- 11 Qaphela ukuthi ungaziqhenyi; yebo, qaphela ukuthi ungaziqhayisi ngokuhlakanipha kwakho, noma ngamandla akho amakhulu.
- 12 Sebenzisa ubuqhawe, kodwa ungaphoqi; futhi ngokunjalo qaphela ukuthi ufaka amatomu kuyo yonke imizwa yakho, ukuze ugcwaliswe ngothando; qaphela ukuthi uyehlukana nobuvila.
- 13 Ungathandazi njengoba amaZoramites enza, ngokuba ubonile ukuthi athandazela ukuthi kuzwe abantu, futhi nokuthi adunyiswe ngokuhlakanipha kwawo.
- 14 Ungasho ukuthi: O Nkulunkulu, ngiyakubonga ukuthi thina singcono kunabafowethu; kodwa esikhundleni salokho yithi: O Nkosi, thethelela ukungafaneleki kwami, futhi ukhumbule abafowethu ngesihawu—yebo, vuma ukungafaneleki kwakho phambi kukaNkulunkulu ngezikhathi zonke.

But behold, the Lord in his great mercy sent his angel to declare unto me that I must stop the work of destruction among his people; yea, and I have seen an angel face to face, and he spake with me, and his voice was as thunder, and it shook the whole earth.

And it came to pass that I was three days and three nights in the most bitter pain and anguish of soul; and never, until I did cry out unto the Lord Jesus Christ for mercy, did I receive a remission of my sins. But behold, I did cry unto him and I did find peace to my soul.

And now, my son, I have told you this that ye may learn wisdom, that ye may learn of me that there is no other way or means whereby man can be saved, only in and through Christ. Behold, he is the life and the light of the world. Behold, he is the word of truth and righteousness.

And now, as ye have begun to teach the word even so I would that ye should continue to teach; and I would that ye would be diligent and temperate in all things.

See that ye are not lifted up unto pride; yea, see that ye do not boast in your own wisdom, nor of your much strength.

Use boldness, but not overbearance; and also see that ye bridle all your passions, that ye may be filled with love; see that ye refrain from idleness.

Do not pray as the Zoramites do, for ye have seen that they pray to be heard of men, and to be praised for their wisdom.

Do not say: O God, I thank thee that we are better than our brethren; but rather say: O Lord, forgive my unworthiness, and remember my brethren in mercy—yea, acknowledge your unworthiness before God at all times.

15 Futhi sengathi iNkosi ingawubusisa
umphefumulo wakho, futhi ikwamukele ngosuku
lokugcina embusweni wayo, ukuthi uhlale phansi
ngokuthula. Manje hamba, ndodana yami, futhi
ufundise izwi kulaba bantu. Ube qotho. Ndodana
yami, hamba kahle.

And may the Lord bless your soul, and receive you
at the last day into his kingdom, to sit down in peace.
Now go, my son, and teach the word unto this peo-
ple. Be sober. My son, farewell.

Alima 39

- 1 Manje, ndodana yami, ngisenokuthile okunye engizokusho kuwe kunalokho engikusho kumfowenu; ngokuba bheka, awukubonanga yini ukuqina komfowenu, ukwethembeka kwakhe, kanye nokukhuthala kwakhe ekugcineni imiyalelo kaNkulunkulu na? Bheka, akazange yini abe yisibonelo esihle kuwe na?
- 2 Ngokuba wena awuzange uwanake kangako amazwi ami njengoba umfowenu enza, phakathi kwabantu bamaZoramu. Manje yilokhu enginakho ngokumelene nawe; wena ubuhamba uziqhayisa ngamandla akho kanye nangokuhlakanipha kwakho.
- 3 Futhi lokhu akusikho kuphela, ndodana yami. Wena wenze lokho okubuhlungu kakhulu kimi; ngokuba ubulahlile ubufundisi, futhi wahamba waya ezweni lakwaSironi phakathi kwemingcele yamaLamani, ulandela isifebe u-Isabeli.
- 4 Yebo, nempela wazintshontsha izinhliziyi zabaningi; kodwa lokhu kwakungasho ukuthi wawungenacala, ndodana yami. Wena kwakufanele uzinikele ebufundisini owawuphathiswe bona.
- 5 Awazi yini, ndodana yami, ukuthi lezi zinto ziyisinengiso emehlweni eNkosi; yebo, zingengeke kakhulu ngaphezu kwazo zonke izono ngaphandle kokuchitha igazi elingenacala noma ukuphika uMoya oyiNgcwele na?
- 6 Ngokuba bheka, uma umphika uMoya oyiNgcwele uma wake kanye waba nendawo kuwe, futhi wazi ukuthi uyamphika, bheka, lokhu kuyisono esingaxoleleki; yebo, futhi lowo obulalayo ngokuphambene nokukhanya kanye nolwazi lukaNkulunkulu, akulula kuye ukuthi athole ukuthethelelwa; yebo, ngithi kuwe, ndodana yami, akulula kuye ukuthi athole ukuthethelelwa.
- 7 Manje, ndodana yami, ngifisa kuNkulunkulu ukuthi sengathi ngabe awubanga nacala lesono esikhulu kangaka. Bengingenakuhlala phezu kwamacala akho, ukuthi ngikhathaze umphefumulo wakho, ukuba bengingahlosile ukuthi uzuze.

Alma 39

And now, my son, I have somewhat more to say unto thee than what I said unto thy brother; for behold, have ye not observed the steadiness of thy brother, his faithfulness, and his diligence in keeping the commandments of God? Behold, has he not set a good example for thee?

For thou didst not give so much heed unto my words as did thy brother, among the people of the Zoramites. Now this is what I have against thee; thou didst go on unto boasting in thy strength and thy wisdom.

And this is not all, my son. Thou didst do that which was grievous unto me; for thou didst forsake the ministry, and did go over into the land of Siron among the borders of the Lamanites, after the harlot Isabel.

Yea, she did steal away the hearts of many; but this was no excuse for thee, my son. Thou shouldst have tended to the ministry wherewith thou wast entrusted.

Know ye not, my son, that these things are an abomination in the sight of the Lord; yea, most abominable above all sins save it be the shedding of innocent blood or denying the Holy Ghost?

For behold, if ye deny the Holy Ghost when it once has had place in you, and ye know that ye deny it, behold, this is a sin which is unpardonable; yea, and whosoever murdereth against the light and knowledge of God, it is not easy for him to obtain forgiveness; yea, I say unto you, my son, that it is not easy for him to obtain a forgiveness.

And now, my son, I would to God that ye had not been guilty of so great a crime. I would not dwell upon your crimes, to harrow up your soul, if it were not for your good.

8 Kodwa bheka, awunakukwazi ukufihla amacala akho kuNkulunkulu; futhi ngaphandle kokuthi uphenduke ayoma njengobufakazi ngokumelene nawe ngosuku lokugcina.

9 Manje ndodana yami, ngifisa ukuthi uphenduke futhi uzishiye izono zakho, futhi ungabe usazilandela nanini izinkanuko zamehlo akho, kodwa zincishe zonke lezi zinto; ngokuba ngaphandle kokuthi wenze lokhu awunakukwazi nanini ukuthi udle ifa lombuso kaNkulunkulu. O, khumbula, futhi ukubeke phezu kwamahlombe akho, futhi uzincishe lezi zinto.

10 Futhi ngiyakuyala ukuthi ukubeke phezu kwamahlombe akho ukuthi ubonisane nabafowenu abadala ezintweni ozenzayo; ngokuba bheka, wena usesebusheni bakho, futhi usadinga ukondliwa ngabafowenu. Zinake izeluleko zabo.

11 Ungazivumeli ukuthi ukhohliswe yinoma yini engenamsebenzi noma yinto ewubuphukuphuku; ungamvumeli udeveli ukuthi aphinde akhohlise inhliziyo yakho ukuba ulandele lezo zifebe ezingcolile. Bheka, O ndodana yami, bukhulu kangakanani ububi obulethe phezu kwamaZoramu; ngokuba ngesikhathi ebona ukuziphatha kwakho awazange esawakholwa amazwi ami.

12 Manje uMoya weNkosi uthi kimi: Yala abantwana bakho ukuthi benze okuhle, funa bakhohlise izinhliziyo zabaningi abantu ukuba bonakale; ngakho-ke ngiyakuyala, ndodana yami, ngokwesaba uNkulunkulu, ukuthi buyeke lobubi bakho.

13 Nokuthi guqukela eNkosini ngayo yonke ingqondo yakho, amandla, kanye nokuqina; ukuze ungabe usazikhohlisa izinhliziyo zabo nanini ukuthi benze ububi; kodwa esikhundleni salokho buyela kuwo, uwavume amaphutha akho kanye nalokho okubi okwenzile.

14 Ungayifuni ingcebo noma izinto eziyize zalomhlaba; ngokuba bheka, awunakukwazi ukuzithwala uhambe nazo.

15 Manje, ndodana yami, ngizosho okuthile kuwe mayelana nokuza kukaKristu. Bheka, ngithi kuwe, nguyengempela oyoza ukuzosusa izono zomhlaba; yebo, uzomemezela izindaba zokuthokoza okukhulu zokusindiswa kwabantu bakhe.

But behold, ye cannot hide your crimes from God; and except ye repent they will stand as a testimony against you at the last day.

Now my son, I would that ye should repent and forsake your sins, and go no more after the lusts of your eyes, but cross yourself in all these things; for except ye do this ye can in nowise inherit the kingdom of God. Oh, remember, and take it upon you, and cross yourself in these things.

And I command you to take it upon you to counsel with your elder brothers in your undertakings; for behold, thou art in thy youth, and ye stand in need to be nourished by your brothers. And give heed to their counsel.

Suffer not yourself to be led away by any vain or foolish thing; suffer not the devil to lead away your heart again after those wicked harlots. Behold, O my son, how great iniquity ye brought upon the Zoramites; for when they saw your conduct they would not believe in my words.

And now the Spirit of the Lord doth say unto me: Command thy children to do good, lest they lead away the hearts of many people to destruction; therefore I command you, my son, in the fear of God, that ye refrain from your iniquities;

That ye turn to the Lord with all your mind, might, and strength; that ye lead away the hearts of no more to do wickedly; but rather return unto them, and acknowledge your faults and that wrong which ye have done.

Seek not after riches nor the vain things of this world; for behold, you cannot carry them with you.

And now, my son, I would say somewhat unto you concerning the coming of Christ. Behold, I say unto you, that it is he that surely shall come to take away the sins of the world; yea, he cometh to declare glad tidings of salvation unto his people.

16 Manje, ndodana yami, yibo lobu bufundisi owawubizelwe kubo, ukuthi umemezele lezindaba zokuthokoza okukhulu kulaba bantu, ukuthi ulungise izingqondo zabo; noma ngokuyikho ukuze ukusindiswa kuze kubo, ukuze balungise imiqondo yabantwana babo ukuthi balizwe izwi ngesikhathi sokuza kwakhe.

17 Manje sengizoyiphumuza ingqondo yakho kancane ngalesi sihloko. Bheka, uyamangala ukuthi kungani lezi zinto kumele zaziwe ngaphambili kusekude kangaka. Bheka, ngithi kuwe, ngabe umphefumulo ngalesi sikhathi awulona yini igugu kuNkulunkulu njengoba kuyoba njalo ngesikhathi sokuza kwakhe na?

18 Akudingekile yini ukuthi isu lokukhululwa laziswe labantu kanjalo nakubantwana babo na?

19 Akulula yini ngalesi sikhathi ukuthi iNkosi ithumele izingelosi zayo ukuthi zimemezele lezizi ndaba zokuthokoza okukhulu kithi kanjalo nakubantwana bethu, noma kanjalo nasemuva kwesikhathi sokuza kwakhe na?

And now, my son, this was the ministry unto which ye were called, to declare these glad tidings unto this people, to prepare their minds; or rather that salvation might come unto them, that they may prepare the minds of their children to hear the word at the time of his coming.

And now I will ease your mind somewhat on this subject. Behold, you marvel why these things should be known so long beforehand. Behold, I say unto you, is not a soul at this time as precious unto God as a soul will be at the time of his coming?

Is it not as necessary that the plan of redemption should be made known unto this people as well as unto their children?

Is it not as easy at this time for the Lord to send his angel to declare these glad tidings unto us as unto our children, or as after the time of his coming?

Alima 40

- 1 Manje ndodana yami, nakhu okunye okumbalwa engizokusho kuwe; ngokuba ngiyabona ukuthi umqondo wakho ukhathazekile mayelana nokuvuka kwabafileyo.
- 2 Bheka, ngithi kuwe, akukho ukuvuka—noma, ngingathi, ngamanye amazwi, lomzimba ofayo awukugqoki ukungafi, lokhu kubola akukugqoki ukungaboli—kuze kube semuva kokuza kukaKristu.
- 3 Bheka, ufeza ukuvuka kwabafileyo. Kodwa bheka, ndodana yami, uvuko alukakafiki. Manje, ngikwembulela imfihlakalo; nokho, ziningi izimfihlakalo ezigciniwe, okungekho namunye ozaziyo ngaphandle kukaNkulunkulu uqobo. Kodwa ngizokukhombisa into eyodwa nje engiyibuze ngenkuthalo kuNkulunkulu ukuthi ngiyazi—emayelana novuko.
- 4 Bheka, kukhona isikhathi esibekiwe lapho bonke beyovuka kwabafileyo. Manje ukuthi lesi sikhathi sifika nini akekho owaziyo; kodwa uNkulunkulu uyasazi isikhathi esibekiwe.
- 5 Manje, noma kuyoba khona isikhathi esisodwa, noma isikhathi sesibili, noma isikhathi sesithathu, lapho abantu beyovuka kwabafileyo, akusho lutho; ngokuba uNkulunkulu uyazazi zonke lezi zinto; futhi kuyangenelisa ukuthi ngazi ukuthi yilokhu okuzokwenzeka—ukuthi kukhona isikhathi esibekiwe sokuthi bonke bayovuka kwabafileyo.
- 6 Manje kufanele ukuthi kube khona isikhathi phakathi kwesikhathi sokufa kanye nesikhathi sokuvuka.
- 7 Manje ngizobuza ukuthi kwenzekani ngemiphefumulo yabantu kusukela kulesi sikhathi sokufa kuze kube yisikhathi esibekiwe sokuvuka na?
- 8 Manje noma ngabe kunesikhathi esingaphezulu kwesisodwa esibekelwe abantu ukuthi bavuke lokho akusho lutho; ngokuba bonke abafi ngesikhathi esisodwa, futhi lokhu akusho lutho; konke kunjengosuku olulodwa kuNkulunkulu, futhi isikhathi sibalwa ngabantu kuphela.

Alma 40

Now my son, here is somewhat more I would say unto thee; for I perceive that thy mind is worried concerning the resurrection of the dead.

Behold, I say unto you, that there is no resurrection—or, I would say, in other words, that this mortal does not put on immortality, this corruption does not put on incorruption—until after the coming of Christ.

Behold, he bringeth to pass the resurrection of the dead. But behold, my son, the resurrection is not yet. Now, I unfold unto you a mystery; nevertheless, there are many mysteries which are kept, that no one knoweth them save God himself. But I show unto you one thing which I have inquired diligently of God that I might know—that is concerning the resurrection.

Behold, there is a time appointed that all shall come forth from the dead. Now when this time cometh no one knows; but God knoweth the time which is appointed.

Now, whether there shall be one time, or a second time, or a third time, that men shall come forth from the dead, it mattereth not; for God knoweth all these things; and it sufficeth me to know that this is the case—that there is a time appointed that all shall rise from the dead.

Now there must needs be a space betwixt the time of death and the time of the resurrection.

And now I would inquire what becometh of the souls of men from this time of death to the time appointed for the resurrection?

Now whether there is more than one time appointed for men to rise it mattereth not; for all do not die at once, and this mattereth not; all is as one day with God, and time only is measured unto men.

- 9 Ngalokho-ke, kukhona isikhathi esibekelwe abantu ukuthi bayovuka kwabafileyo; futhi kunesikhathi phakathi kwesikhathi sokufa kanye nesokuvuka. Manje, mayelana nalesi sikhathi, ukuthi kwenzekani ngemphefumulo yabantu yinto engiyibuzile ngenkuthalo eNkosini ukuthi ngiyazi; futhi lena yinto engiyaziyo.
- 10 Futhi uma isikhathi sesifika lapho bonke beyovuka, ngaleso sikhathi bonke bayokwazi ukuthi uNkulunkulu uyazazi zonke izikhathi azibekele umuntu.
- 11 Manje, mayelana nesimo somphefumulo phakathi kokufa kanye nokuvuka—Bheka, kwambuliwe kimi ngengelosi, ukuthi imiphefumulo yabo bonke abantu, masinyane ngesikhathi nje uma isuka kulomzimba ofayo, yebo, imiphefumulo yabo bonke abantu, noma ngabe ibimihle noma ibimibi, iyathathwa iyiswe ekhaya kulowo Nkulunkulu owayinika impilo.
- 12 Futhi ngaleso sikhathi kuyokwenzeka, ukuthi imiphefumulo yalabo abalungile yemukelwa esimweni senjabulo, esibizwa ngokuthi yiparadesi, isimo sokuphumula, isimo sokuthula, lapho iyophumula kuzo zonke izinkathazo zayo kanye nakho konke ukuhlupheka, kanye nosizi.
- 13 Futhi ngaleso sikhathi kuyokwenzeka, ukuthi imiphefumulo yababi, yebo, labo abanobubi—ngokuba bheka, ayinangxenyane nasabelo soMoya weNkosi; ngokuba bheka, bona bakhetha imisebenzi yobubi kunemisebenzi emihle; ngakho-ke umoya kadeveli nempela wangena kubo, futhi wathatha ubunini bendlu yabo—futhi lena iyolahlw ebumnyameni obungaphandle; lapho kuyoba khona ukukhala, kanye nokuhhewula, kanye nokugedla kwamazinyo, futhi lokhu ngenxa yobubi babo obukhulu, beholelwe ekuthunjweni ngentando kadeveli.
- 14 Manje lesi yisimo semiphefumulo yababi, yebo, esebumnyameni, kanye nesesimweni esibi kakhulu, sokulindela ngokwesaba ukushiswa yintukuthelo yolaka lukaNkulunkulu; ngakho-ke bahlala bekulesi simo, kanjalo nabalungile eparadesi, kuze kube yisikhathi sokuvuka kwabo.

Therefore, there is a time appointed unto men that they shall rise from the dead; and there is a space between the time of death and the resurrection. And now, concerning this space of time, what becometh of the souls of men is the thing which I have inquired diligently of the Lord to know; and this is the thing of which I do know.

And when the time cometh when all shall rise, then shall they know that God knoweth all the times which are appointed unto man.

Now, concerning the state of the soul between death and the resurrection—Behold, it has been made known unto me by an angel, that the spirits of all men, as soon as they are departed from this mortal body, yea, the spirits of all men, whether they be good or evil, are taken home to that God who gave them life.

And then shall it come to pass, that the spirits of those who are righteous are received into a state of happiness, which is called paradise, a state of rest, a state of peace, where they shall rest from all their troubles and from all care, and sorrow.

And then shall it come to pass, that the spirits of the wicked, yea, who are evil—for behold, they have no part nor portion of the Spirit of the Lord; for behold, they chose evil works rather than good; therefore the spirit of the devil did enter into them, and take possession of their house—and these shall be cast out into outer darkness; there shall be weeping, and wailing, and gnashing of teeth, and this because of their own iniquity, being led captive by the will of the devil.

Now this is the state of the souls of the wicked, yea, in darkness, and a state of awful, fearful looking for the fiery indignation of the wrath of God upon them; thus they remain in this state, as well as the righteous in paradise, until the time of their resurrection.

- 15 Manje, kukhona abanye abasazi ngokuthi lesi simo senjabulo kanye nalesi simo sokuhlupheka komphefumulo, esingaphambi kokuvuka, singukuvuka kokuqala. Yebo, ngiyavuma ukuthi singabizwa ngovuko, ukuvuswa komoya noma komphefumulo kanye nokuyiswa kwawo ekujabuleni noma osizini, njengokwamazwi akhulunyiwe.
- 16 Futhi bheka, kukhulunyiwe futhi, kwathiwa kukhona uvuko lokuqala, uvuko lwabo bonke labo ababe khona, noma abakhona, noma abayoba khona, kwehle kuze kufike ekuvukeni kukaKristu kwabafileyo.
- 17 Manje, asikholelwa wukuthi loluvuko lokuqala, okukhulunywa ngalo ngalendlela, kungaba wukuvuka kwemiphefumulo kanye nokuyiswa kwayo ekujabuleni noma osizini. Ungakholelwa ukuthi lokhu kusho lokho.
- 18 Bheka, ngithi kuwe, Cha; kodwa kuchaza ukuhlangana komphefumulo kanye nemizimba, yalabo kusukela ezinsukwini zika-Adamu kwehla kuya ekuvukeni kukaKristu.
- 19 Manje, noma ngabe imiphefumulo kanye nemizimba yalabo osekhulunywe ngabo yonke iyohlanganiswa kanyekanye, ababi ngokunjalo nabalungile, angisho; makukwanelise, ukuthi ngithi yonke iyovuka, noma-ke ngamanye amazwi, ukuvuka kwabo kuyofezeka ngaphambi kokuvuka kwalabo abafa emva kokuvuka kukaKristu.
- 20 Manje, ndodana yami, angisho ukuthi ukuvuka kwabo kuyofika ngokuvuka kukaKristu; kodwa bheka, ngikusho nje njengombono wami, ukuthi imiphefumulo kanye nemizimba iyohlangana futhi, yabalungile, ekuvukeni kukaKristu, kanye nasekwenyukeleni kwakhe ezulwini.
- 21 Kodwa noma ngabe kuyoba sekuvukeni kwakhe noma ngemuva, anginakusho; kodwa yilokhu engingakusho, ukuthi kukhona isikhathi phakathi kokufa kanye nokuvuka komzimba, kanye nesimo somphefumulo esisentokozweni noma esisosizini kuze kube yisikhathi leso esibekwe nguNkulunkulu ukuthi abafileyo bavuke, futhi baphinde bahlangane, umphefumulo kanye nomzimba, futhi balethwe ukuthi bazoma phambi kukaNkulunkulu, futhi bahlulelwe njengokwemisebenzi yabo.

Now, there are some that have understood that this state of happiness and this state of misery of the soul, before the resurrection, was a first resurrection. Yea, I admit it may be termed a resurrection, the raising of the spirit or the soul and their consignation to happiness or misery, according to the words which have been spoken.

And behold, again it hath been spoken, that there is a first resurrection, a resurrection of all those who have been, or who are, or who shall be, down to the resurrection of Christ from the dead.

Now, we do not suppose that this first resurrection, which is spoken of in this manner, can be the resurrection of the souls and their consignation to happiness or misery. Ye cannot suppose that this is what it meaneth.

Behold, I say unto you, Nay; but it meaneth the reuniting of the soul with the body, of those from the days of Adam down to the resurrection of Christ.

Now, whether the souls and the bodies of those of whom has been spoken shall all be reunited at once, the wicked as well as the righteous, I do not say; let it suffice, that I say that they all come forth; or in other words, their resurrection cometh to pass before the resurrection of those who die after the resurrection of Christ.

Now, my son, I do not say that their resurrection cometh at the resurrection of Christ; but behold, I give it as my opinion, that the souls and the bodies are reunited, of the righteous, at the resurrection of Christ, and his ascension into heaven.

But whether it be at his resurrection or after, I do not say; but this much I say, that there is a space between death and the resurrection of the body, and a state of the soul in happiness or in misery until the time which is appointed of God that the dead shall come forth, and be reunited, both soul and body, and be brought to stand before God, and be judged according to their works.

22 Yebo, lokhu kuletha ukubuyiselwa kwalezo zinto okwakhulunywa ngazo ngemilomo yabaphrofethi.

23 Umphefumulo uyobuyiselwa emzimbeni, kanye nomzimba emphefumulweni; yebo, futhi wonke amalungu kanye namalunga kuyobuyiselwa emzimbeni wako; yebo, ngisho nonwele lwekhanda aliyukulahleka; kodwa zonke izinto ziyobuyiselwa ohlakeni lwazo oluyilo kanye noluphelele.

24 Manje, ndodana yami, lokhu ngukubuyiselwa okukhulunywe ngakho ngemilomo yabaphrofethi—

25 Futhi ngaleso sikhathi abalungile bayokhazimula embusweni kaNkulunkulu.

26 Kodwa bheka, ukufa okubi kakhulu kuyeza kwababi; ngokuba bona bayafa ngokwezinto eziphathelene nezinto zokulunga; ngokuba bona bangcolile, futhi ayikho into engcolile engakwazi ukudla ifa lombuso kaNkulunkulu; kodwa bayokhishelwa ngaphandle, futhi bahanjiswe bayodla izithelo zokusebenza kwabo noma zemisebenzi yabo, eyinkohlakalo; futhi baphuze amavovo enkomishi ebabayo.

Yea, this bringeth about the restoration of those things of which has been spoken by the mouths of the prophets.

The soul shall be restored to the body, and the body to the soul; yea, and every limb and joint shall be restored to its body; yea, even a hair of the head shall not be lost; but all things shall be restored to their proper and perfect frame.

And now, my son, this is the restoration of which has been spoken by the mouths of the prophets—

And then shall the righteous shine forth in the kingdom of God.

But behold, an awful death cometh upon the wicked; for they die as to things pertaining to things of righteousness; for they are unclean, and no unclean thing can inherit the kingdom of God; but they are cast out, and consigned to partake of the fruits of their labors or their works, which have been evil; and they drink the dregs of a bitter cup.

Alima 41

- 1 Manje, ndodana yami, nginokuthile engizokusho mayelana nokubuyiselwa okukhulunywe ngakho; ngokuba bheka, abanye bayihlanekezele imibhalo engcwele, futhi baphambukile ngenxa yalento. Futhi ngiyabona ukuthi nomqondo wakho ubukade ulokhu ukhathazekile futhi mayelana nalento. Kodwa bheka, ngizokuchaza lokhu kuwe.
- 2 Ngithi kuwe, ndodana yami, isu lokubuyiselwa lihambisana nokulunga kukaNkulunkulu; ngokuba kuyisidingo ukuthi zonke izinto zibuyiselwe esimweni sazo sangempela. Bheka, kuyisidingo futhi kulungile, ngokwamandla kanye nokuvuka kukaKristu, ukuthi umphefumulo womuntu ubuyiselwe emzimbeni wawo, kanye nokuthi yonke ingxenye yomzimba ibuyiselwe kuwo.
- 3 Futhi kuhambisana nokulunga kukaNkulunkulu ukuthi abantu behlulelwe ngokwe misebenzi yabo; futhi uma imisebenzi yabo yayikade imihle kulempilo, kanye nezifiso zezinhliziyzo zabo zazizihle, kumele ngokunjalo, ngosuku lokugcina, babuyiselwe kulokho okuhle.
- 4 Futhi uma imisebenzi yabo ingeyobubi iyobuyiselwa kubo iwububi. Ngakho-ke, zonke izinto ziyobuyiselwa esimweni sazo sangempela, yonke into ohlakeni lwayo lwemvelo—okufayo kuvuselwe kulokho okungafi, ukonakala ekungonakalini—bavuselwe entokozweni engapheliyo ukuze badle ifa lombuso kaNkulunkulu, noma osizini olungapheliyo ukuze badle ifa lombuso kadeveli, omunye ngakwesinye isandla, nomunye ngakwesinye—
- 5 Omunye avuselwe entokozweni njengokwezifiso zakhe zokuthokoza, noma kokuhle njengokwezifiso zakhe zobuhle; kanti omunye eubini njengokwezifiso zakhe zobubi; ngokuba njengokuba enesifiso sokwenza okubi ubude bonke bosuku ngisho kanjalo uyowuthola umvuzo wakhe wobubi ngesikhathi kufika ubusuku.
- 6 Futhi kuyoba kanjalo nangakwesinye isandla. Uma ephendukile ezonweni zakhe, futhi wafisa ukulunga kwaze kwaba sekupheleni kwezinsuku zakhe, ngisho kanjalo uyozuza ukulunga.

Alma 41

And now, my son, I have somewhat to say concerning the restoration of which has been spoken; for behold, some have wrested the scriptures, and have gone far astray because of this thing. And I perceive that thy mind has been worried also concerning this thing. But behold, I will explain it unto thee.

I say unto thee, my son, that the plan of restoration is requisite with the justice of God; for it is requisite that all things should be restored to their proper order. Behold, it is requisite and just, according to the power and resurrection of Christ, that the soul of man should be restored to its body, and that every part of the body should be restored to itself.

And it is requisite with the justice of God that men should be judged according to their works; and if their works were good in this life, and the desires of their hearts were good, that they should also, at the last day, be restored unto that which is good.

And if their works are evil they shall be restored unto them for evil. Therefore, all things shall be restored to their proper order, every thing to its natural frame—mortality raised to immortality, corruption to incorruption—raised to endless happiness to inherit the kingdom of God, or to endless misery to inherit the kingdom of the devil, the one on one hand, the other on the other—

The one raised to happiness according to his desires of happiness, or good according to his desires of good; and the other to evil according to his desires of evil; for as he has desired to do evil all the day long even so shall he have his reward of evil when the night cometh.

And so it is on the other hand. If he hath repented of his sins, and desired righteousness until the end of his days, even so he shall be rewarded unto righteousness.

- 7 Yibo labo abakhululwa yiNkosi; yebo, yibo labo abakhishelwa ngaphandle, abakhululwa kulobo busuku obumnyama obungapheliyo; futhi ngaleyondlela bayama noma bawe; ngokuba bheka, bangabehluleli babo uqobo, noma ukwenza okuhle noma ukwenza okubi.
- 8 Manje, izimemezelo zikaNkulunkulu aziguquki; ngakho-ke, indlela ilungisiwe ukuze lowo othandayo angahamba ngayo futhi asindiswe.
- 9 Manje bheka, ndodana yami, ungabe usangena nakanye engozini yokucanula uNkulunkulu wakho mayelana nalawo maphuzu emfundiso, owephulile ngesikhathi wenza isono.
- 10 Ungacabangi, ukuthi ngenxa yokuthi sekukhulunyiwe mayelana nokubuyiselwa, ukuthi uyobuyiselwa ususwe esonweni uyiswe ekujabuleni. Bheka, ngithi kuwe, ububi abukaze nanini bube yinjabulo.
- 11 Manje, ndodana yami, bonke abantu abasesimweni semvelo, noma ngizothi, abasesimweni sokunaka inyama, basekubabeni kwenyongo kanye nasezibophweni zobubi; abanaye uNkulunkulu emhlabeni, futhi bahamba ngokuphikisana nemvelo kaNkulunkulu; ngakho-ke, basesimweni esiphikisanayo nemvelo yokujabula.
- 12 Manje bheka, ngabe incazelo yegama elithi ukubuyisela wukuthatha into esesimweni semvelo bese uyibeka esimweni okungesona esemvelo, noma wukuyibeka esimweni esiphikisana nesemvelo yayo na?
- 13 O, ndodana yami, akukona lokho; kodwa incazelo yegama elithi ukubuyisela wukubuyisela futhi okubi ngokubi, noma okwenyama ngokwenyama, noma ubudeveli ngobudeveli—okuhle ngalokho okuhle; okulungile ngalokho okulungile; okunesihawu ngalokho okunesihawu.
- 14 Ngakho-ke, ndodana yami, bona ukuthi unesihawu kubafowenu; yenza ngokulunga, hlulela ngokulunga, futhi wenze okuhle njalo-njalo; futhi uma uzenza zonke lezi zinto uyowuthola umvuzo wakho; yebo, isihawu siyobuyiselwa kuwe futhi; ukulunga kuyobuyiselwa kuwe futhi; ukwahlulelwa okulungile kuyobuyiselwa kuwe futhi; futhi uyothola umvuzo wobuhle futhi.

These are they that are redeemed of the Lord; yea, these are they that are taken out, that are delivered from that endless night of darkness; and thus they stand or fall; for behold, they are their own judges, whether to do good or do evil.

Now, the decrees of God are unalterable; therefore, the way is prepared that whosoever will may walk therein and be saved.

And now behold, my son, do not risk one more offense against your God upon those points of doctrine, which ye have hitherto risked to commit sin.

Do not suppose, because it has been spoken concerning restoration, that ye shall be restored from sin to happiness. Behold, I say unto you, wickedness never was happiness.

And now, my son, all men that are in a state of nature, or I would say, in a carnal state, are in the gall of bitterness and in the bonds of iniquity; they are without God in the world, and they have gone contrary to the nature of God; therefore, they are in a state contrary to the nature of happiness.

And now behold, is the meaning of the word restoration to take a thing of a natural state and place it in an unnatural state, or to place it in a state opposite to its nature?

O, my son, this is not the case; but the meaning of the word restoration is to bring back again evil for evil, or carnal for carnal, or devilish for devilish—good for that which is good; righteous for that which is righteous; just for that which is just; merciful for that which is merciful.

Therefore, my son, see that you are merciful unto your brethren; deal justly, judge righteously, and do good continually; and if ye do all these things then shall ye receive your reward; yea, ye shall have mercy restored unto you again; ye shall have justice restored unto you again; ye shall have a righteous judgment restored unto you again; and ye shall have good rewarded unto you again.

15 Ngokuba lokho okuthumelayo kuyobuyela kuwe futhi, futhi kubuyiselwe; ngakho-ke, igama lokubuyisela ngokugcwele liyasilahla ngecala isoni, futhi alisithetheleli nakancane.

For that which ye do send out shall return unto you again, and be restored; therefore, the word restoration more fully condemneth the sinner, and justifieth him not at all.

Alima 42

- 1 Manje, ndodana yami, ngiyabona ukuthi kukhona okuthize okunye okusakhathaza umqondo wakho, ongakuqondi—okumayelana nokulunga kukaNkulunkulu ekujeziseni isoni; ngokuba uzama ukucabanga ukuthi akulungile ukuthi isoni siyiswe esimweni sosizi.
- 2 Manje bheka, ndodana yami, ngizoyichaza lento kuwe. Ngokuba bheka, emva kokuthi iNkosi uNkulunkulu ikhiphe abazali bethu bokuqala baphuma ensimini yase-Edene, bayolima umhlabathi, lapho ababethathwe khona—yebo, yamkhipha umuntu, futhi yabeka empumalanga yensimu yase-Edene, ikherubi, kanye nenkemba evuthayo eyayiphendukela ezindleleni zonke, ukugada umuthi wokuphila—
- 3 Manje, siyabona ukuthi umuntu wabe esefana noNkulunkulu, esazi okuhle nokubi; futhi ngokwesaba ukuthi wayezolula isandla sakhe, futhi aphinde athathe emthini wokuphila, adle bese ephila ingunaphakade, iNkosi uNkulunkulu yabeka ikherubi kanye nenkemba evuthayo, ukuze angasidli lesi sithelo—
- 4 Futhi ngaleyondlela siyabona, ukuthi kwabakhona isikhathi esabekelwa umuntu ukuthi aphenduke, yebo, isikhathi sokuvivinywa, isikhathi sokuphenduka kanye nesokusebenzela uNkulunkulu.
- 5 Ngokuba bheka, ukuba u-Adamu welula isandla sakhe masinyane, wadla emthini wokuphila, wayeyophila ingunaphakade, njengokwezwi likaNkulunkulu, engasenasikhathi sokuphenduka; yebo, futhi phezu kwalokho nezwi likaNkulunkulu laliyoba yize, futhi isu elikhulu lokusindiswa laliyovimbeleka.
- 6 Kodwa bheka, umuntu wabekelwa ukuthi afe—ngakho-ke, njengoba bavinjelwa emthini wokuphila kwakumele basuswe ebusweni bomhlaba—futhi umuntu wabe eseba ngolahlekile ingunaphakade, yebo, base beba ngabantu abawile.
- 7 Manje, ngalokhu uyabona ukuthi abazali bethu bokuqala bavinjelwa ngokomzimba kanye nangokomoya ukuthi beze eNkosini; futhi ngaleyondlela siyabona ukuthi baba ngabalandela intando yabo.

Alma 42

And now, my son, I perceive there is somewhat more which doth worry your mind, which ye cannot understand—which is concerning the justice of God in the punishment of the sinner; for ye do try to suppose that it is injustice that the sinner should be con-signed to a state of misery.

Now behold, my son, I will explain this thing unto thee. For behold, after the Lord God sent our first parents forth from the garden of Eden, to till the ground, from whence they were taken—yea, he drew out the man, and he placed at the east end of the garden of Eden, cherubim, and a flaming sword which turned every way, to keep the tree of life—

Now, we see that the man had become as God, knowing good and evil; and lest he should put forth his hand, and take also of the tree of life, and eat and live forever, the Lord God placed cherubim and the flaming sword, that he should not partake of the fruit—

And thus we see, that there was a time granted unto man to repent, yea, a probationary time, a time to repent and serve God.

For behold, if Adam had put forth his hand immediately, and partaken of the tree of life, he would have lived forever, according to the word of God, having no space for repentance; yea, and also the word of God would have been void, and the great plan of salvation would have been frustrated.

But behold, it was appointed unto man to die—therefore, as they were cut off from the tree of life they should be cut off from the face of the earth—and man became lost forever, yea, they became fallen man.

And now, ye see by this that our first parents were cut off both temporally and spiritually from the presence of the Lord; and thus we see they became subjects to follow after their own will.

- 8 Manje bheka, kwakungadingekile ukuthi umuntu abuyiswe kulokufa kwesikhashana, ngokuba lokho kwakuzoqeda isu elikhulu lentokozo.
- 9 Ngakho-ke, njengoba umphefumulo wawungenakufa nanini, futhi nokuwa kwakulethe kuwo wonke umuntu ukufa ngokomoya kunjalo nokomzimba, okungukuthi, base behlukanisiwe neNkosi, kwakudingekile ukuthi wonke umuntu abuyiswe kulokufa ngokomoya.
- 10 Ngakho-ke, njengoba base bengabanaka inyama, sebengabathokozisa inyama, futhi sebenobudeveli, ngokwemvelo, lesisimo sokuvivinywa saba yisimo sabo sokulunga; saba yisimo sokuzilungiselela.
- 11 Manje khumbula, ndodana yami, ukuba kwakungekona ukuthi kwakungenxa yecebo lokukhululwa, (uma silibeka eceleni) masinyane nje ngesikhathi befa imiphefumulo yabo yayiyoba sosizini, isihlukanisiwe neNkosi.
- 12 Manje, yayingekho indlela yokubabuyisa abantu kulesimo sokuwa, umuntu ayebilethe phezu kwakhe ngenxa yokungalaleli kwakhe uqobo.
- 13 Ngakho-ke, ngokokulunga, isu lokukhululwa lalingenakwenzeka, ngaphandle kwemibandela yoku phenduka kwabantu kulesimo sokuvivinywa, yebo, lesimo sokuzilungiselela; ngokuba ngaphandle kokuthi kube ngenxa yalemibandela, umusa wawungeke ukwazi ukusebenza ngaphandle kokuthi uqede imisebenzi yokulunga. Manje imisebenzi yokulunga yayingenakuqedwa; uma kunjalo, uNkulunkulu wayezo pheza ukuba nguNkulunkulu.
- 14 Futhi ngaleyondlela siyabona ukuthi wonke umuntu wawa, futhi base bebanjwe wukulunga; yebo, ukulunga kukaNkulunkulu, okwakubayisa ekutheni bahlukaniswe ingunaphakade naye.
- 15 Manje, isu lomusa lalingeke lenzeke ngaphandle kokuthi kwenziwe inhlawulo; ngakho-ke uNkulunkulu uqobo lwakhe wahlawulela izono zomhlaba; ukuze alethe isu lomusa, ukwanelisa izidingo zokulunga, ukuze uNkulunkulu abe ngophelele, uNkulunkulu olungile, futhi ngokunjalo noNkulunkulu onesihawu.

Now behold, it was not expedient that man should be reclaimed from this temporal death, for that would destroy the great plan of happiness.

Therefore, as the soul could never die, and the fall had brought upon all mankind a spiritual death as well as a temporal, that is, they were cut off from the presence of the Lord, it was expedient that mankind should be reclaimed from this spiritual death.

Therefore, as they had become carnal, sensual, and devilish, by nature, this probationary state became a state for them to prepare; it became a preparatory state.

And now remember, my son, if it were not for the plan of redemption, (laying it aside) as soon as they were dead their souls were miserable, being cut off from the presence of the Lord.

And now, there was no means to reclaim men from this fallen state, which man had brought upon himself because of his own disobedience;

Therefore, according to justice, the plan of redemption could not be brought about, only on conditions of repentance of men in this probationary state, yea, this preparatory state; for except it were for these conditions, mercy could not take effect except it should destroy the work of justice. Now the work of justice could not be destroyed; if so, God would cease to be God.

And thus we see that all mankind were fallen, and they were in the grasp of justice; yea, the justice of God, which consigned them forever to be cut off from his presence.

And now, the plan of mercy could not be brought about except an atonement should be made; therefore God himself atoneth for the sins of the world, to bring about the plan of mercy, to appease the demands of justice, that God might be a perfect, just God, and a merciful God also.

- 16 Manje, ukuphenduka kwakungeke kuze kumuntu ngaphandle kokuthi kube khona isijeziso, naso futhi okwakungesaphakade njengempilo yomphefumulo kufanele ibe njalo, esasibekiwe saphikisana necebo lenjabulo, nalo futhi okwakungelaphakade njengempilo yomphefumulo.
- 17 Manje, umuntu wayengaphenduka kanjani ngaphandle kokuthi one na? Wayengona kanjani uma umthetho wawungekho na? Wawungaba khona kanjani umthetho ngaphandle kokuthi kube khona isijeziso na?
- 18 Manje, kwakukhona isijeziso esasibekiwe, kanye nomthetho olungile owawubekiwe, owawuletha ukuzisola ngesazela kumuntu.
- 19 Manje, uma ngabe kwakungekho mthetho obekiwe—ukuthi uma umuntu ebulele naye kwakumele afe—wayengesaba yini ukuthi uzofa uma wayengabulala na?
- 20 Futhi ngokunjalo, uma ngabe wawungekho umthetho obekiwe ngokumelene nesono umuntu wayengenakwesaba ukona.
- 21 Futhi uma ngabe wawungekho umthetho obekiwe, uma abantu bona ukulunga kwakungenzani, nomusa ngokunjalo, ngokuba kwakungeke kufune lutho esidalweni?
- 22 Kodwa kukhona umthetho obekiwe, kanye nesijeziso esibekiwe, kanye nokuphenduka okunikeziwe; ukuphenduka lokho, okufunwa ngumusa; ngaphandle kwalokho, ukulunga kuyasifuna isidalwa bese kusebenzisa umthetho, bese umthetho uzwisa isijeziso; uma kungenjalo, imisebenzi yokulunga ingaphela, futhi uNkulunkulu angapheza ukuba nguNkulunkulu.
- 23 Kodwa uNkulunkulu akaphezi ukuba nguNkulunkulu, futhi umusa uyamamukela okudabukile ngokona, futhi umusa uza ngenxa yenhlawulo; futhi inhlawulo ifeza ukuvuka kwabafileyo; futhi ukuvuka kwabafileyo kubuyisela abantu emuva kuNkulunkulu; futhi ngaleyondlela bayabuyiselwa kuye; ukuze bahlulelwe ngokwemisebenzi yabo, ngokomthetho kanye nangokulunga.

Now, repentance could not come unto men except there were a punishment, which also was eternal as the life of the soul should be, affixed opposite to the plan of happiness, which was as eternal also as the life of the soul.

Now, how could a man repent except he should sin? How could he sin if there was no law? How could there be a law save there was a punishment?

Now, there was a punishment affixed, and a just law given, which brought remorse of conscience unto man.

Now, if there was no law given—if a man murdered he should die—would he be afraid he would die if he should murder?

And also, if there was no law given against sin men would not be afraid to sin.

And if there was no law given, if men sinned what could justice do, or mercy either, for they would have no claim upon the creature?

But there is a law given, and a punishment affixed, and a repentance granted; which repentance, mercy claimeth; otherwise, justice claimeth the creature and executeth the law, and the law inflicteth the punishment; if not so, the works of justice would be destroyed, and God would cease to be God.

But God ceaseth not to be God, and mercy claimeth the penitent, and mercy cometh because of the atonement; and the atonement bringeth to pass the resurrection of the dead; and the resurrection of the dead bringeth back men into the presence of God; and thus they are restored into his presence, to be judged according to their works, according to the law and justice.

24 Ngokuba bheka, ukulunga kwenza zonke izidingo zakho, futhi ngokunjalo nomusa ufuna konke okungokwakhe; futhi ngaleyondlela, akekho namunye kodwa kuphela odabuke ngeqiniso ngokona oyosindiswa.

25 Yini, ucabanga ukuthi umusa ungakwephuca ukulunga na? Ngithi kuwe, Cha; nakancane nje. Uma kunjalo, uNkulunkulu wayeyopheza ukuba nguNkulunkulu.

26 Futhi ngaleyondlela uNkulunkulu wenza kwenzeke izinjongo zakhe ezinkulu zaphakade, ezazilungiswe kusukela ekudabukeni komhlaba. Futhi ngaleyondlela kweza ukusindiswa kanye nokukhululwa kwabantu, futhi ngokunjalo nokonala kwabo kanye nosizi.

27 Ngakho-ke, O ndodana yami, lowo oyokuza angeza futhi aphuze amanzi okuphila ngokukhululeka; futhi lowo ongenakuza akanakuphoqwa ukuthi eze; kodwa ngosuku lokugcina kuyobuyiselwa kuye njengokwezenzo zakhe.

28 Uma ebe nesifiso sokwenza okubi, futhi engaphendukanga ezinsukwini zakhe, bheka, ububi buyokwenziwa kuye, njengokubuyiselwa kukaNkulunkulu.

29 Manje, ndodana yami, ngifisa ukuthi ungazivumeli lezi zinto ukuthi zikuhluphe nanini, futhi vumela ukuhlushwa yizono zakho kuphela, ukuhlushwa lokho okuyokwehlisela phansi ekuphendukeni.

30 O ndodana yami, ngifisa ukuthi ungaphindi ukuphike ukulunga kukaNkulunkulu nanini. Ungazami ukuzikhipha ecaleni nakancane nje ngenxa yezono zakho, ngokuphika ukulunga kukaNkulunkulu; kodwa vumela ukulunga kukaNkulunkulu, kanye nomusa wakhe, kanye nokuba nenhliziyo ende kwakhe kube nomthelela ogcwele enhliziyweni yakho; futhi kuvumele kukulethe phansi othulini ngokuzehlisa.

For behold, justice exerciseth all his demands, and also mercy claimeth all which is her own; and thus, none but the truly penitent are saved.

What, do ye suppose that mercy can rob justice? I say unto you, Nay; not one whit. If so, God would cease to be God.

And thus God bringeth about his great and eternal purposes, which were prepared from the foundation of the world. And thus cometh about the salvation and the redemption of men, and also their destruction and misery.

Therefore, O my son, whosoever will come may come and partake of the waters of life freely; and whosoever will not come the same is not compelled to come; but in the last day it shall be restored unto him according to his deeds.

If he has desired to do evil, and has not repented in his days, behold, evil shall be done unto him, according to the restoration of God.

And now, my son, I desire that ye should let these things trouble you no more, and only let your sins trouble you, with that trouble which shall bring you down unto repentance.

O my son, I desire that ye should deny the justice of God no more. Do not endeavor to excuse yourself in the least point because of your sins, by denying the justice of God; but do you let the justice of God, and his mercy, and his long-suffering have full sway in your heart; and let it bring you down to the dust in humility.

31 Manje, O ndodana yami, ubizwe nguNkulunkulu ukuthi ushumayele izwi kulaba bantu. Manje, ndodana yami, hamba ngendlela yakho, umemezele izwi ngeqiniso kanye nangobuqotho, ukuze ulethe imiphefumulo ekuphendukeni, ukuze isu elikhulu lesihawu libazuze. Futhi sengathi uNkulunkulu angakupha ngisho njengokwamazwi ami. Amen.

And now, O my son, ye are called of God to preach the word unto this people. And now, my son, go thy way, declare the word with truth and soberness, that thou mayest bring souls unto repentance, that the great plan of mercy may have claim upon them. And may God grant unto you even according to my words. Amen.

Alima 43

- 1 Manje kwenzeka ukuthi amadodana ka-Alima nempela ahamba aya phakathi kwabantu, ukuze amemezele izwi kubo. Futhi u-Alima, naye wahamba futhi wayengakwazi ukuphumula, wahamba.
- 2 Manje asisezukusho lutho olunye mayelana nokushumayela kwabo, ngaphandle nje kokuthi balishumayela izwi, kanye neqiniso, ngokomoya wokuphrofetha kanye nowokwambulelwa; futhi bashumayela ngokohlelo olungcwele lukaNkulunkulu ababebizwe ngalo.
- 3 Manje sengibuyela odabeni lwezimpi phakathi kwamaNefi kanye namaLamani, ngonyaka weshumi nesishiyagalombili wokubusa kwabehluleli.
- 4 Ngokuba bheka, kwenzeka ukuthi amaZoramu aba ngamaLamani; ngakho-ke, ekuqaleni konyaka weshumi nesishiyagalombili abantu bamaNefi babona ukuthi amaLamani ayeseza phezu kwabo; ngakho-ke benza amalungiselelo empi; yebo, babuthela ndawonye amabutho abo ezweni lakwaJereshoni.
- 5 Futhi kwenzeka ukuthi amaLamani eza nezinkulungwane zawo; futhi eza angena ezweni lakwa-Antionumu, okuyizwe lamaZoramu; futhi indoda egama layo kwakunguZerahemina yayingumholi wawo.
- 6 Manje, njengoba ama-Amaleki ngokwawo aye ngabantu ababe nobubi kakhulu futhi engababulali kakhulu kunalokho amaLamani ayeyikho, ngakho-ke, uZerahemina wabeka izinduna ezinkulu phezu kwamaLamani, futhi zonke zazingama-Amaleki kanye namaZoramu.
- 7 Manje lokhu wakwenza ukuze agcine inzondo yabo kumaNefi, ukuze abalethe ngaphansi kwakhe ukuze afeze amacebo akhe.
- 8 Ngokuba bheka, amacebo akhe kwakungukuphehla amaLamani ukuthi athukuthethelele amaNefi; lokhu wakwenza ukuze athole amandla amakhulu phezu kwawo, futhi ngokunjalo ukuze azuze amandla phezu kwamaNefi ngokuwaletha ekuthunjweni.

Alma 43

And now it came to pass that the sons of Alma did go forth among the people, to declare the word unto them. And Alma, also, himself, could not rest, and he also went forth.

Now we shall say no more concerning their preaching, except that they preached the word, and the truth, according to the spirit of prophecy and revelation; and they preached after the holy order of God by which they were called.

And now I return to an account of the wars between the Nephites and the Lamanites, in the eighteenth year of the reign of the judges.

For behold, it came to pass that the Zoramites became Lamanites; therefore, in the commencement of the eighteenth year the people of the Nephites saw that the Lamanites were coming upon them; therefore they made preparations for war; yea, they gathered together their armies in the land of Jereshon.

And it came to pass that the Lamanites came with their thousands; and they came into the land of Antionum, which is the land of the Zoramites; and a man by the name of Zerahemnah was their leader.

And now, as the Amalekites were of a more wicked and murderous disposition than the Lamanites were, in and of themselves, therefore, Zerahemnah appointed chief captains over the Lamanites, and they were all Amalekites and Zoramites.

Now this he did that he might preserve their hatred towards the Nephites, that he might bring them into subjection to the accomplishment of his designs.

For behold, his designs were to stir up the Lamanites to anger against the Nephites; this he did that he might usurp great power over them, and also that he might gain power over the Nephites by bringing them into bondage.

- 9 Manje isu lamaNefi kwakuwukusekela amazwe abo, kanye nezindlu zabo, kanye nabafazi babo, kanye nabantwana babo, ukuze babavikele ezandleni zezitha zabo; futhi phezu kwalokho ukuze bavikele amalungelo abo kanye nenzuzo yabo, yebo, futhi kanjalo nenkululeko yabo, ukuze badumise uNkulunkulu njengokwezifiso zabo.
- 10 Ngokuba babazi ukuthi uma bengawela ezandleni zamaLamani, nokuthi lowo oyokhonza uNkulunkulu ngokomoya kanye nangeqiniso, uNkulunkulu weqiniso futhi ophilayo, amaLamani ayeyombulala.
- 11 Yebo, futhi phezu kwalokho babazi ngenzondo enkulu yamaLamani kubafowabo, ababe ngabantu bakwa-Anti-Nefi-Lehi, ababebizwa ngabantu ba-Amoni—futhi babengeke baze bazithathe izikhali zabo, yebo, babengene esivumelwaneni futhi babengeke baze basephule—ngakho-ke, uma babengawela ezandleni zamaLamani babeyobulawa.
- 12 Futhi amaNefi ayengenakuvuma ukuthi babulawe; ngakho-ke babanika amazwe ukuthi abe ngamafa abo.
- 13 Futhi abantu ba-Amoni nempela bawanikeza amaNefi ingxenye enkulu yempahla yabo ukuze basekele amabutho abo; futhi ngaleyo ndlela amaNefi aphoqeleka, wona wodwa, ukuthi amelane namaLamani, ayeyingxube kaLamani noLemuweli, kanye namadodana ka-Ishmayeli, kanye nabo bonke labo ababehlubuke kumaNefi, ababengama-Amaleki kanye namaZoramu, kanye nabozalo lwabaphristi baNowa.
- 14 Manje lolo zalo lwaluluningi kakhulu, cishe, njengamaNefi; futhi ngalendlela amaNefi aphoqeleleka ukuthi alwe nabafowabo, ngisho nangokuchitha igazi.
- 15 Futhi kwenzeka ngesikhathi amabutho amaLamani ayesebuthene ndawonye ezweni lakwa-Antiyonumu, bheka, amabutho amaNefi ayesezilungiselele ukuthi ahlangane nabo ezweni lakwaJereshoni.
- 16 Manje, umholi wamaNefi, noma indoda eyayibekwe ukuthi ibe yinduna enkulu phezu kwamaNefi—manje induna enkulu yayikhuza wonke amabutho amaNefi—futhi igama lakhe kwakunguMoroni.

And now the design of the Nephites was to support their lands, and their houses, and their wives, and their children, that they might preserve them from the hands of their enemies; and also that they might preserve their rights and their privileges, yea, and also their liberty, that they might worship God according to their desires.

For they knew that if they should fall into the hands of the Lamanites, that whosoever should worship God in spirit and in truth, the true and the living God, the Lamanites would destroy.

Yea, and they also knew the extreme hatred of the Lamanites towards their brethren, who were the people of Anti-Nephi-Lehi, who were called the people of Ammon—and they would not take up arms, yea, they had entered into a covenant and they would not break it—therefore, if they should fall into the hands of the Lamanites they would be destroyed.

And the Nephites would not suffer that they should be destroyed; therefore they gave them lands for their inheritance.

And the people of Ammon did give unto the Nephites a large portion of their substance to support their armies; and thus the Nephites were compelled, alone, to withstand against the Lamanites, who were a compound of Laman and Lemuel, and the sons of Ishmael, and all those who had dissented from the Nephites, who were Amalekites and Zoramites, and the descendants of the priests of Noah.

Now those descendants were as numerous, nearly, as were the Nephites; and thus the Nephites were obliged to contend with their brethren, even unto bloodshed.

And it came to pass as the armies of the Lamanites had gathered together in the land of Antionum, behold, the armies of the Nephites were prepared to meet them in the land of Jereshon.

Now, the leader of the Nephites, or the man who had been appointed to be the chief captain over the Nephites—now the chief captain took the command of all the armies of the Nephites—and his name was Moroni;

- 17 Futhi uMoroni nguye owayekhuza futhi ephethe izimpi zabo. Futhi wayeneminyaka engamashumi amabili nanhlanu nje kuphela ubudala ngesikhathi ebekwa ukuthi abe yinduna enkulu phezu kwamabutho amaNefi.
- 18 Futhi kwenzeka ukuthi wahlangana namaLamani emngceleni wakwaJereshoni, futhi abantu bakhe babehlome ngezinkemba, kanye nangocelumba, kanye nangazo zonke izinhlobo zezikhali zempi.
- 19 Ngesikhathi amabutho amaLamani ebona ukuthi abantu baNefi, noma ukuthi uMoroni, wayesebalungiselele abantu bakhe ngezivikelo zesifuba kanye nangezivikelo zengalo, yebo, futhi kanjalo nangezihlangu zokuvikela amakhanda abo, futhi phezu kwalokho babegqoke izingubo eziqinile—
- 20 Manje impi kaZerahemina yayingazilungiselelanga ngalutho olufana nalezi zinto; bona babephethe kuphela izinkemba zabo kanye nocelemba babo, iminsalo yabo kanye nemicibisholo yabo, amatshe abo kanye nezihlilingi zabo; futhi bona babenqunu, ngaphandle nje kwesikhumba esasizungeze izinkalo zabo; yebo, bonke babenqunu, ngaphandle kwamaZoramu kanye nama-Amaleki.
- 21 Kodwa bona babengahlomanga ngezivikelo zesifuba, noma izihlangu—ngakho-ke, bawesaba kakhulu amabutho amaNefi ngenxa yezikhali zawo, naphezu kokuba inani labo lalikhulu kakhulu kunalelo lamaNefi.
- 22 Bheka, manje kwenzeka ukuthi abazange balokothe nakancane basondele ukuzolwa namaNefi emingceleni yakwaJereshoni; ngakho-ke bahamba baphuma ezweni lakwa-Antionumu baya ehlane, futhi bathatha uhambo lwabo bazungeza ihlane, baya ngasenhloko yomfula iSidoni, ukuze babuyele ezweni lakwaManti futhi balithathe izwe kube ngelabo; ngokuba babengacabangi ukuthi amabutho kaMoroni ayazi ukuthi baye ngalaphi.

And Moroni took all the command, and the government of their wars. And he was only twenty and five years old when he was appointed chief captain over the armies of the Nephites.

And it came to pass that he met the Lamanites in the borders of Jershon, and his people were armed with swords, and with cimeters, and all manner of weapons of war.

And when the armies of the Lamanites saw that the people of Nephi, or that Moroni, had prepared his people with breastplates and with arm-shields, yea, and also shields to defend their heads, and also they were dressed with thick clothing—

Now the army of Zerahemnah was not prepared with any such thing; they had only their swords and their cimeters, their bows and their arrows, their stones and their slings; and they were naked, save it were a skin which was girded about their loins; yea, all were naked, save it were the Zoramites and the Amalekites;

But they were not armed with breastplates, nor shields—therefore, they were exceedingly afraid of the armies of the Nephites because of their armor, notwithstanding their number being so much greater than the Nephites.

Behold, now it came to pass that they durst not come against the Nephites in the borders of Jershon; therefore they departed out of the land of Antionum into the wilderness, and took their journey round about in the wilderness, away by the head of the river Sidon, that they might come into the land of Manti and take possession of the land; for they did not suppose that the armies of Moroni would know whither they had gone.

- 23 Kodwa kwenzeka ukuthi, masinyane nje ngesikhathi sebehambile baya ehlane uMoroni wathumela izinhlozi zaya ehlane ukuthi ziyoyibheka inkambi yabo; futhi uMoroni, phezu kwalokho, azi ngeziphrofetho zika-Alima, wathumela amadoda athize kuye, enesifiso sokuthi abuze eNkosini ukuthi amabutho amaNefi kwakufanele aye ngalaphi ukuyozivikela kumaLamani.
- 24 Futhi kwenzeka ukuthi izwi leNkosi leza ku-Alima, futhi u-Alima wazitshela izithunywa zikaMoroni, ukuthi amabutho amaLamani ayehamba ezungeza ihlane, ukuze aze afike ezweni lakwaManti, ukuze aqale ukuhlasela ngasengxenyeni ebuthakathaka yabantu. Futhi izithunywa lezo zahamba futhi zayowethula umyalezo kuMoroni.
- 25 Manje uMoroni, washiya ingxenye yempi yakhe ezweni lakwaJereshoni, hleze ngandlela thize ingxenye yamaLamani ifike kulelozwe izithathele idolobha kube ngelawo, wathatha ingxenye eyayisele yempi yakhe wahamba nayo waya ezweni lakwaManti.
- 26 Futhi wenza ukuthi bonke abantu kuleyongxenywe yezwe bahlangane ndawonye ukuze balwe namaLamani, ukuze bavikele imihlaba yabo kanye nezwe labo, amalungelo abo kanye nenkululeko yabo; ngakho-ke base besilungele isikhathi sokufika kwamaLamani.
- 27 Futhi kwenzeka ukuthi uMoroni wenza ukuthi impi yakhe icashe esigodini esasiseduze nogu lomfula iSidoni, esasisentshonalanga yomfula iSidoni ehlane.
- 28 UMoroni waphinde wabeka izinhlozi zazungeza, ukuze azi ngesikhathi ibutho lamaLamani seliza.
- 29 Manje, njengoba uMoroni wayezazi izinhloso zamaLamani, ukuthi kwakuyinhloso yawo ukuthi abulalale abafowabo, noma ukuthi babacindezele futhi babalethe ebugqilini ukuze bazakhele umbuso phezu kwalo lonke izwe.

But it came to pass, as soon as they had departed into the wilderness Moroni sent spies into the wilderness to watch their camp; and Moroni, also, knowing of the prophecies of Alma, sent certain men unto him, desiring him that he should inquire of the Lord whither the armies of the Nephites should go to defend themselves against the Lamanites.

And it came to pass that the word of the Lord came unto Alma, and Alma informed the messengers of Moroni, that the armies of the Lamanites were marching round about in the wilderness, that they might come over into the land of Manti, that they might commence an attack upon the weaker part of the people. And those messengers went and delivered the message unto Moroni.

Now Moroni, leaving a part of his army in the land of Jereshon, lest by any means a part of the Lamanites should come into that land and take possession of the city, took the remaining part of his army and marched over into the land of Manti.

And he caused that all the people in that quarter of the land should gather themselves together to battle against the Lamanites, to defend their lands and their country, their rights and their liberties; therefore they were prepared against the time of the coming of the Lamanites.

And it came to pass that Moroni caused that his army should be secreted in the valley which was near the bank of the river Sidon, which was on the west of the river Sidon in the wilderness.

And Moroni placed spies round about, that he might know when the camp of the Lamanites should come.

And now, as Moroni knew the intention of the Lamanites, that it was their intention to destroy their brethren, or to subject them and bring them into bondage that they might establish a kingdom unto themselves over all the land;

30 Futhi phezu kwalokho azi ukuthi kwakuyisona sifiso kuphela samaNefi ukuthi agcine amazwe awo, nenkululeko yawo, kanye nebandla lawo, ngakho-ke wabona ukuthi kwakungesona isono ukuthi abavikele ngesu; ngakho-ke, wathola ngezinhloli zakhe ukuthi iyiphi indlela amaLamani ayezoyithatha.

31 Ngakho-ke, wayehlukanisa impi yakhe waletha ingxenye esigodini, futhi wayicashisa empumalanga, kanye naseningizimu yegquma iRipila.

32 Kwathi abasalayo wabacashisa esigodini esisentshonalanga, entshonalanga yomfula iSidoni, kwehla njalo kuya emigceleni yezwe iManti.

33 Futhi ngaleyondlela eseyibekile impi yakhe njengokwesifiso sakhe, wayesezilungiselele ukuthi ahlangane nawo.

34 Futhi kwenzeka ukuthi amaLamani eza akhuphukela ngasenyakatho yegquma, lapho ingxenye yempi kaMoroni yayicashe khona.

35 Futhi ngesikhathi amaLamani esedlulile egqumeni iRipila, esefika esigodini, eseqala ukuthi awele umfula iSidoni, impi eyayicashe eningizimu yegquma, eyayiholwa yindoda egama layo kwakungu Lehi, yalihola ibutho layo phambili futhi yawazungeza amaLamani empumalanga ngemuva kwawo.

36 Futhi kwenzeka ukuthi amaLamani, ngesikhathi ebona amaNefi etheleka phezu kwawo ngemuva kwawo, aphendukela kuwo aqala alwa nempi kaLehi.

37 Futhi ukubulala kwaqala nhlangothi zombili, kodwa kwaba kubi kakhulu engxenyeni yamaLamani, ngokuba ubunqunu bawo babungavikelekile emagalelweni anzima amaNefi ngezinkemba zawo kanye nangocelumba babo, okwakuletha ukufa cishe ngawo wonke amagalelo.

And he also knowing that it was the only desire of the Nephites to preserve their lands, and their liberty, and their church, therefore he thought it no sin that he should defend them by stratagem; therefore, he found by his spies which course the Lamanites were to take.

Therefore, he divided his army and brought a part over into the valley, and concealed them on the east, and on the south of the hill Riplah;

And the remainder he concealed in the west valley, on the west of the river Sidon, and so down into the borders of the land Manti.

And thus having placed his army according to his desire, he was prepared to meet them.

And it came to pass that the Lamanites came up on the north of the hill, where a part of the army of Moroni was concealed.

And as the Lamanites had passed the hill Riplah, and came into the valley, and began to cross the river Sidon, the army which was concealed on the south of the hill, which was led by a man whose name was Lehi, and he led his army forth and encircled the Lamanites about on the east in their rear.

And it came to pass that the Lamanites, when they saw the Nephites coming upon them in their rear, turned them about and began to contend with the army of Lehi.

And the work of death commenced on both sides, but it was more dreadful on the part of the Lamanites, for their nakedness was exposed to the heavy blows of the Nephites with their swords and their cimeters, which brought death almost at every stroke.

38 Kanti ngakolunye uhlangothi, kwakukhona nje lapha nalaphaya indoda eyayiwa phakathi kwamaNefi, ngezinkemba zawo kanye nangokulahleka kwegazi, ngenxa yokuthi bona babevikelekile ezindaweni ezibucayi emizimbeni yabo, noma izindawo ezibucayi kakhulu zomzimba zazivikelekile emagalelweni amaLamani, ngezivikelo zesifuba zabo, kanye nangezivikelo zengalo zabo, kanye nezivikelo zekhanda zabo; futhi amaNefi nempela aqhubeka kanjalo-ke nokubulala phakathi kwamaLamani.

39 Futhi kwenzeka ukuthi amaLamani aqala ukwesaba, ngenxa yokubulawa okukhulu phakathi kwawo, kwaze kwaba aqala ukubalekela ngasemfuleni iSidoni.

40 Futhi axoshwa nguLehi kanye nabantu bakhe; futhi aqhutshwa nguLehi aze afika emanzini aseSidoni, anqamula emanzini aseSidoni. Futhi uLehi wahlala nempi yakhe ogwini lomfula iSidoni ukuze angaweli.

41 Futhi kwenzeka ukuthi uMoroni kanye nempi yakhe bahlangana namaLamani esigodini, kwelinye icala lomfula iSidoni, futhi baqala ukutheleka phezu kwawo bewabulala.

42 Futhi amaLamani nempela aphinda ababalekela, aya ngasezweni iManti; futhi aphinda ahlangebazana namabutho kaMoroni.

43 Manje kulokhu amaLamani nempela alwa kakhulu; yebo, kwakungakaze nanini amaLamani aziwe elwa ngamandla amakhulu kangaka kanye nangesibindi esingaka, cha, ngisho kusukela ekuqaleni.

44 Futhi ayekhuthazwa ngamaZoramuni kanye nama-Amaleki, ayeyizinduna zawo ezinkulu kanye nabaholi bawo, kanye nanguZerahemina, owayeyinduna yawo enkulu, noma umholi kanye nomkhuzi wawo omkhulu; yebo, nempela alwa njengodrako, futhi abaningi bamaNefi babulawa ngezandla zawo, yebo, ngokuba nempela abashaya zaze zahlukana kabili eziningi izivikelo zekhanda zabo, futhi phezu kwalokho nempela azibhoboza eziningi izivikelo zesifuba zabo, futhi nempela ashaya anqamula eziningi zezingalo zabo; futhi amaLamani alwa kanjalo-ke ngentukuthelo yawo embi kakhulu.

While on the other hand, there was now and then a man fell among the Nephites, by their swords and the loss of blood, they being shielded from the more vital parts of the body, or the more vital parts of the body being shielded from the strokes of the Lamanites, by their breastplates, and their armshields, and their head-plates; and thus the Nephites did carry on the work of death among the Lamanites.

And it came to pass that the Lamanites became frightened, because of the great destruction among them, even until they began to flee towards the river Sidon.

And they were pursued by Lehi and his men; and they were driven by Lehi into the waters of Sidon, and they crossed the waters of Sidon. And Lehi retained his armies upon the bank of the river Sidon that they should not cross.

And it came to pass that Moroni and his army met the Lamanites in the valley, on the other side of the river Sidon, and began to fall upon them and to slay them.

And the Lamanites did flee again before them, towards the land of Manti; and they were met again by the armies of Moroni.

Now in this case the Lamanites did fight exceedingly; yea, never had the Lamanites been known to fight with such exceedingly great strength and courage, no, not even from the beginning.

And they were inspired by the Zoramites and the Amalekites, who were their chief captains and leaders, and by Zerahemnah, who was their chief captain, or their chief leader and commander; yea, they did fight like dragons, and many of the Nephites were slain by their hands, yea, for they did smite in two many of their head-plates, and they did pierce many of their breastplates, and they did smite off many of their arms; and thus the Lamanites did smite in their fierce anger.

45 Nokho, amaNefi ayekhuthazwa yisizathu esingcono, ngokuba ayengalweli nje ukubusa noma amandla kodwa ayelwela amakhaya awo kanye nenkululeko yawo, abafazi bawo kanye nabantwana bawo, kanye nakho konke okwawo, yebo, nezimiso zawo zokukhonza kanye nebandla lawo.

46 Futhi babenza lokho ababecabanga ukuthi kwakungu msebenzi ababedinga ukuwenzela uNkulunkulu wabo; ngokuba iNkosi yayithe kubo, futhi kanjalo nakoyise: Kangangoba ningenacala lesono sokuqala, kanjalo nesesibili, aniyikuvuma ukuthi nibulawe ngezandla zezitha zenu.

47 Futhi phezu kwalokho, iNkosi ithe: Niyoyivikela imindeni yenu ngisho nangokuchitha igazi. Ngakho-ke amaNefi alwa namaLamani ngenxa yalesi sizathu, ukuthi azivikele wona, kanye nemindeni yawo, kanye nezindawo zawo, kanye nezwe lawo, kanye namalungelo awo, kanye nenkolo yawo.

48 Futhi kwenzeka ukuthi ngesikhathi amadoda kaMoroni ebona ubudlova kanye nentukuthelo yamaLamani, base bezohoxa futhi bababalekele. Futhi uMoroni, ewubona umqondo wabo, wathumela phambili wabafaka intshisekelo ezinhliziyweni zabo ngalemicabango—yebo, imicabango yezindawo zabo, inkululeko yabo, yebo, ukukhululeka kwabo ekuthunjweni.

49 Futhi kwenzeka ukuthi baphendukela kumaLamani, futhi bakhala ngezwi elilodwa eNkosini uNkulunkulu wabo, ngenkululeko yabo kanye nokukhululwa kwabo ekuthunjweni.

50 Futhi baqala babhekana namaLamani ngamandla; futhi ngalo lelo hora bekhala eNkosini ngenkululeko yabo, amaLamani aqala ababalekela; futhi abaleka aze ayofika emanzini aseSidoni.

51 Manje, amaLamani ayemangingi kakhulu, yebo, ngaphezulu kokuphindwe kabili kwesibalo samaNefi; nokho, aqhutshwa kangangokuthi aze aqoqelwa ndawonye aba yiqoqo elilodwa esigodini, ogwini ngasemfuleni iSidoni.

52 Ngakho-ke amabutho kaMoroni abazungeza, yebo, ngisho nasezinhlangothini zombili zomfula, ngokuba bheka, empumalanga kwakukhona amadoda aLehi.

Nevertheless, the Nephites were inspired by a better cause, for they were not fighting for monarchy nor power but they were fighting for their homes and their liberties, their wives and their children, and their all, yea, for their rites of worship and their church.

And they were doing that which they felt was the duty which they owed to their God; for the Lord had said unto them, and also unto their fathers, that: Inasmuch as ye are not guilty of the first offense, neither the second, ye shall not suffer yourselves to be slain by the hands of your enemies.

And again, the Lord has said that: Ye shall defend your families even unto bloodshed. Therefore for this cause were the Nephites contending with the Lamanites, to defend themselves, and their families, and their lands, their country, and their rights, and their religion.

And it came to pass that when the men of Moroni saw the fierceness and the anger of the Lamanites, they were about to shrink and flee from them. And Moroni, perceiving their intent, sent forth and inspired their hearts with these thoughts—yea, the thoughts of their lands, their liberty, yea, their freedom from bondage.

And it came to pass that they turned upon the Lamanites, and they cried with one voice unto the Lord their God, for their liberty and their freedom from bondage.

And they began to stand against the Lamanites with power; and in that selfsame hour that they cried unto the Lord for their freedom, the Lamanites began to flee before them; and they fled even to the waters of Sidon.

Now, the Lamanites were more numerous, yea, by more than double the number of the Nephites; nevertheless, they were driven insomuch that they were gathered together in one body in the valley, upon the bank by the river Sidon.

Therefore the armies of Moroni encircled them about, yea, even on both sides of the river, for behold, on the east were the men of Lehi.

53 Ngakho-ke ngesikhathi uZerahemina ebona
amadoda kaLehi empumalanga yomfula iSidoni,
kanye namabutho kaMoroni entshonalanga yomfula
iSidoni, ukuthi base bezungezwe ngamaNefi,
bashaywa wukwesaba.

54 Manje uMoroni, ngesikhathi ebona ukwesaba
kwawo, wayala amadoda akhe ukuthi akuyeke
ukuchitha igazi lawo.

Therefore when Zerahemnah saw the men of Lehi
on the east of the river Sidon, and the armies of
Moroni on the west of the river Sidon, that they were
encircled about by the Nephites, they were struck
with terror.

Now Moroni, when he saw their terror, com-
manded his men that they should stop shedding their
blood.

Alima 44

- 1 Futhi kwenzeka ukuthi nempela bema futhi bahlehla benza isikhala phakathi kwabo nawo. UMoroni wathi kuZerahemina: Bheka, Zerahemina, asifuni ukuthi sibe ngabantu begazi. Niyazi ukuthi senisezandleni zethu, kepha asifuni ukuthi sinibulale.
- 2 Bhekani, asiphumelanga ukuthi sizolwa nani ukuze sichithe igazi lenu ukuze sizuze amandla; futhi asifuni ukuletha noma ngubani ejokeni lokuthunjwa. Kodwa lokhu kuyiso kanye isizathu nina enize ngaso ukuzolwa nathi; yebo, futhi nisithukuthelele ngenxa yenkolo yethu.
- 3 Kodwa manje, niyabona ukuthi iNkosi inathi; futhi niyabona ukuthi inilethile ezandleni zethu. Manje ngifuna ukuthi niqonde ukuthi lokhu sikwenzelwe ngenxa yenkolo yethu kanye nokholo lwethu kuKristu. Manje niyabona ukuthi aninakukwazi ukulugada lolu kholo lwethu.
- 4 Manje seniyabona ukuthi lolu wukholo lweqiniso oluvela kuNkulunkulu; yebo, niyabona ukuthi uNkulunkulu uzosisekela, asigcine, futhi asilondoloze, uma nje sethembeka kuye, nasokholweni lwethu, kanye nasenkolweni yethu; futhi nanini iNkosi ayinakusiyekelela ukuthi sibulawe ngaphandle kokuthi siwele esiphambekweni futhi siluphike ukholo lwethu.
- 5 Manje, Zerahemina, ngiyakuyala, egameni lalowo Nkulunkulu onamandla onke, oqinise izingalo zethu ukuze sithole amandla phezu kwenu, ngokholo lwethu, ngenkolo yethu, kanye nangamasiko ethu okukhonza, kanye nangebandla lethu, kanye nangokusekelwa okungcwele okufanele sibonge abafazi bethu kanye nabantwana bethu ngakho, ngaleyo nkululeko esenza sibambelele ezindaweni zethu kanye nasezweni lethu; yebo, futhi kanjalo nangokugcina izwi elingcwele likaNkulunkulu, okufanele silibonge ngayo yonke injabulo yethu; futhi nangakho konke okuthandeka kakhulu kithi—
- 6 Yebo, futhi lokhu akusikho kuphela; ngiyaniyala ngazo zonke izifiso eninazo ukuba niphile, ukuthi nilethe lapha izikhali zenu zempi futhi angeke sifune igazi lenu, kodwa sizozisindisa izimpilo zenu, uma nje ningahamba futhi ningaphinde nibuye ukuzolwa nathi.

Alma 44

And it came to pass that they did stop and withdrew a pace from them. And Moroni said unto Zerahemnah: Behold, Zerahemnah, that we do not desire to be men of blood. Ye know that ye are in our hands, yet we do not desire to slay you.

Behold, we have not come out to battle against you that we might shed your blood for power; neither do we desire to bring any one to the yoke of bondage. But this is the very cause for which ye have come against us; yea, and ye are angry with us because of our religion.

But now, ye behold that the Lord is with us; and ye behold that he has delivered you into our hands. And now I would that ye should understand that this is done unto us because of our religion and our faith in Christ. And now ye see that ye cannot destroy this our faith.

Now ye see that this is the true faith of God; yea, ye see that God will support, and keep, and preserve us, so long as we are faithful unto him, and unto our faith, and our religion; and never will the Lord suffer that we shall be destroyed except we should fall into transgression and deny our faith.

And now, Zerahemnah, I command you, in the name of that all-powerful God, who has strengthened our arms that we have gained power over you, by our faith, by our religion, and by our rites of worship, and by our church, and by the sacred support which we owe to our wives and our children, by that liberty which binds us to our lands and our country; yea, and also by the maintenance of the sacred word of God, to which we owe all our happiness; and by all that is most dear unto us—

Yea, and this is not all; I command you by all the desires which ye have for life, that ye deliver up your weapons of war unto us, and we will seek not your blood, but we will spare your lives, if ye will go your way and come not again to war against us.

7 Manje, uma ningakwenzi lokhu, bhekani, nisezandleni zethu, futhi ngizoyala abantu bami ukuthi banihlasele, banizwise amanxeba okufa emizimbeni yenu, ukuze ningabe nisababikho; futhi ngaleso sikhathi sizoke sibone ukuthi ngubani ozoba namandla phezu kwalabantu; yebo, sizobona ukuthi ngubani ozo lethwa ekuthunjweni.

8 Manje kwenzeka ukuthi ngesikhathi uZerahemina eseyizwile lenkulumo weza ngaphambili wabeka inkemba yakhe kanye nocelemba wakhe, kanye nomnsalo wakhe ezandleni zikaMoroni, futhi wathi kuye: Bheka, nazi izikhali zethu zempi; sizoziletha kuwe, kodwa ngeke sivume ukuthi senze isifungo kuwe sibe sazi, ukuthi sizosiphula, futhi ngokunjalo nabantwana bethu; kodwa-ke zithathe izikhali zethu zempi, bese usivumela ukuthi sihambe siye ehlane; ngaphandle kwalokho sizozigcina izinkemba zethu, futhi sizofa noma sinqobe.

9 Bheka, thina asibona abokholo lwenu; asikholwa ukuthi wuNkulunkulu lona osilethe ezandleni zenu; kodwa sikholwa wukuthi wubuqili benu obunivikelile ezinkembeni zethu. Bheka, yizivikelo zesifuba zenu kanye nezihlangu zenu ezinivikelile.

10 Manje ngesikhathi uZerahemina eseqedile ukukhuluma lamazwi, uMoroni wayibuyisela inkemba kanye nezikhali zempi, ayezemukele, kuZerahemina, ethi: Bheka, sizoyiqeda lengxabano.

11 Manje angisakwazi ukuwabuyisa amazwi engiwakhulumile, ngakho-ke njengoba iNkosi iphila, aninakwemuka ngaphandle kokuthi nemuke nesifungo sokuthi ngeke nisaphinde nibuye ukuzolwa nathi. Manje njengoba nisezandleni zethu sizolichitha igazi lenu ligcwale phansi, noma nivumele lemibandela engiyiphakamisile.

And now, if ye do not this, behold, ye are in our hands, and I will command my men that they shall fall upon you, and inflict the wounds of death in your bodies, that ye may become extinct; and then we will see who shall have power over this people; yea, we will see who shall be brought into bondage.

And now it came to pass that when Zerahemnah had heard these sayings he came forth and delivered up his sword and his cimeter, and his bow into the hands of Moroni, and said unto him: Behold, here are our weapons of war; we will deliver them up unto you, but we will not suffer ourselves to take an oath unto you, which we know that we shall break, and also our children; but take our weapons of war, and suffer that we may depart into the wilderness; otherwise we will retain our swords, and we will perish or conquer.

Behold, we are not of your faith; we do not believe that it is God that has delivered us into your hands; but we believe that it is your cunning that has preserved you from our swords. Behold, it is your breastplates and your shields that have preserved you.

And now when Zerahemnah had made an end of speaking these words, Moroni returned the sword and the weapons of war, which he had received, unto Zerahemnah, saying: Behold, we will end the conflict.

Now I cannot recall the words which I have spoken, therefore as the Lord liveth, ye shall not depart except ye depart with an oath that ye will not return again against us to war. Now as ye are in our hands we will spill your blood upon the ground, or ye shall submit to the conditions which I have proposed.

- 12 Manje ngesikhathi uMoroni esewashilo lamazwi, uZerahemina wathatha inkemba yakhe, futhi wamthukuthelela uMoroni, futhi wagijima waya phambili ukuze ambulale uMoroni; kodwa ngesikhathi ephakamisa inkemba yakhe, bheka, omunye wamabutho kaMoroni wayishaya yawa, futhi yephuka ngasesibambweni, futhi phezu kwalokho wamshaya uZerahemina ngendlela yokuthi wasusa isikhumba sakhe sezinwele sawela phansi. Futhi uZerahemina wasuka kubo wangena phakathi kwamabutho akhe.
- 13 Futhi kwenzeka ukuthi isosha elalimi eduzane, lelo elashaya lasusa isikhumba sezinwele zikaZerahemina, lasicosha isikhumba lesa esasiphansi ngezinwele, futhi lasibeka echosheni lenkamba yalo futhi lasiphakamisela phezu phambi kwabo lithi kubo ngezwi elikhulu:
- 14 Ngisho njengoba lesi sikhumba sezinwele siwele phansi, okuyisikhumba somholi wenu, ngokunjalo nani nizowela phansi ngaphandle kokuthi nilethe izikhali zenu zempi bese nihamba nesivumelwano sokuthula.
- 15 Manje ayemaningi, ngesikhathi ezwa lamazwi futhi esibona isikhumba esasiphezu kwenkemba, angenwa wukwesaba; futhi amaningi eza ngaphambili azilahla phansi izikhali zawo zempi ezinyaweni zikaMoroni, futhi angena esivumelwaneni sokuthula. Futhi ngangobuningi balawo angena esivumelwaneni avunyelwa ukuthi ahambe aye ehlane.
- 16 Manje kwenzeka ukuthi uZerahemina wathukuthela kakhulu, futhi wabaphehla ababesele bamasosha akhe ukuthi bathukuthele, ukuthi balwe ngamandla amakhulu namaNefi.
- 17 Manje noMoroni wathukuthela, ngenxa yenkani yamaLamani; ngakho-ke wayala abantu bakhe ukuthi bawahlasele futhi bawabulale. Futhi kwenzeka ukuthi baqala bawabulala; yebo, futhi amaLamani nempela alwa ngezinkemba zawo kanye nangamandla awo.

And now when Moroni had said these words, Zerahemnah retained his sword, and he was angry with Moroni, and he rushed forward that he might slay Moroni; but as he raised his sword, behold, one of Moroni's soldiers smote it even to the earth, and it broke by the hilt; and he also smote Zerahemnah that he took off his scalp and it fell to the earth. And Zerahemnah withdrew from before them into the midst of his soldiers.

And it came to pass that the soldier who stood by, who smote off the scalp of Zerahemnah, took up the scalp from off the ground by the hair, and laid it upon the point of his sword, and stretched it forth unto them, saying unto them with a loud voice:

Even as this scalp has fallen to the earth, which is the scalp of your chief, so shall ye fall to the earth except ye will deliver up your weapons of war and depart with a covenant of peace.

Now there were many, when they heard these words and saw the scalp which was upon the sword, that were struck with fear; and many came forth and threw down their weapons of war at the feet of Moroni, and entered into a covenant of peace. And as many as entered into a covenant they suffered to depart into the wilderness.

Now it came to pass that Zerahemnah was exceedingly wroth, and he did stir up the remainder of his soldiers to anger, to contend more powerfully against the Nephites.

And now Moroni was angry, because of the stubbornness of the Lamanites; therefore he commanded his people that they should fall upon them and slay them. And it came to pass that they began to slay them; yea, and the Lamanites did contend with their swords and their might.

18 Kodwa bheka, izikhumba zawo ezazisobala kanye nezimbungculu zawo kwakusengozini yezinkemba ezibukhali zamaNefi; yebo, bheka ahlathswa futhi ashaywa, yebo, futhi nempela awa masinyane kakhulu phambi kwezinkemba zamaNefi; futhi aqala ukuthi ashanelwe, ngisho njengoba isosha likaMoroni laliphrofethile.

19 Manje uZerahemina, ngesikhathi esebona ukuthi cishe bonke base bezobulawa, wakhala kakhulu kuMoroni, ethembisa ukuthi wayezosenza isivumelwano nabo futhi ngokunjalo nabantu bakhe, uma nje bengasindisa izimpilo zabo ezase zisele, nokuthi babengeke besaphinda nanini beze bazolwa nabo.

20 Futhi kwenzeka ukuthi uMoroni wenza ukuthi ukubulala kuyekwe futhi phakathi kwalabantu. Futhi wazithatha izikhali zempi kumaLamani; futhi emva kokuthi esengene esivumelwaneni sokuthula nawo avunyelwa ukuthi ahambe aye ehlane.

21 Manje isibalo sabafileyo babo asibalwanga ngenxa yobukhulu baleso sibalo; yebo, isibalo sabafileyo sabo sasisikhulu kakhulu, kumaNefi kanye nakumaLamani.

22 Futhi kwenzeka ukuthi babaphonsa abafileyo babo emanzini aseSidoni, futhi izidumbu zabo sezikhukhulekile zaze zayongcwatshwa ekujuleni kolwandle.

23 Futhi amabutho amaNefi, noma kaMoroni, abuyela emakhaya kanye nasemihlabeni yawo.

24 Futhi waphela kanjalo-ke unyaka weshumi nesishiyagalombili wokubusa kwabehluleli phezu kwabantu baNefi. Futhi waphela kanjalo-ke umbhalo ka-Alima, owawubhalwe ezingcwepheni zikaNefi.

But behold, their naked skins and their bare heads were exposed to the sharp swords of the Nephites; yea, behold they were pierced and smitten, yea, and did fall exceedingly fast before the swords of the Nephites; and they began to be swept down, even as the soldier of Moroni had prophesied.

Now Zerahemnah, when he saw that they were all about to be destroyed, cried mightily unto Moroni, promising that he would covenant and also his people with them, if they would spare the remainder of their lives, that they never would come to war again against them.

And it came to pass that Moroni caused that the work of death should cease again among the people. And he took the weapons of war from the Lamanites; and after they had entered into a covenant with him of peace they were suffered to depart into the wilderness.

Now the number of their dead was not numbered because of the greatness of the number; yea, the number of their dead was exceedingly great, both on the Nephites and on the Lamanites.

And it came to pass that they did cast their dead into the waters of Sidon, and they have gone forth and are buried in the depths of the sea.

And the armies of the Nephites, or of Moroni, returned and came to their houses and their lands.

And thus ended the eighteenth year of the reign of the judges over the people of Nephi. And thus ended the record of Alma, which was written upon the plates of Nephi.

Indaba yabantu baNefi, kanye nezimpi kanye nokungezwani kwabo, ngezinsuku zikaHelamani, ngokombhalo kaHelamani, arwugcina ezinsukwini zakhe.

Alima 45

- 1 Bheka, manje kwenzeka ukuthi abantu baNefi babejabule kakhulu, ngoba iNkosi yayiphinde yabakhipha futhi ezandleni zezitha zabo; ngakho-ke bayibonga iNkosi uNkulunkulu wabo; yebo, futhi bazila kakhulu, bakhuleka kakhulu, futhi bamkhonza uNkulunkulu ngenjabulo enkulu kakhulu.
- 2 Futhi kwenzeka ngonyaka weshumi nesishiyagalolunye wokubusa kwabehluleli phezu kwabantu baNefi, ukuthi u-Alima weza endodaneni yakhe uHelamani wathi kuyo: Uyawakholwa yini amazwi engiwakhulume kuwe mayelana naleyomibhalo egciniwe na?
- 3 UHelamani wathi kuye: Yebo, ngiyawakholwa.
- 4 U-Alima waphinda wathi: Uyakholwa yini kuJesusu Kristu, ozoza na?
- 5 Yena wathi: Yebo, ngiyawakholwa wonke amazwi owakhulumile.
- 6 U-Alima waphinda wathi kuye: Uzoyigcina yini imiyalelo yami na?
- 7 Yena wathi: Yebo, ngizoyigcina imiyalelo yakho ngayo yonke inhliziyo yami.
- 8 Emva kwalokho u-Alima wathi kuye: Ubusisiwe; futhi iNkosi izokuphumelelisa kulelizwe.
- 9 Kodwa bheka, nginokuthile engizoku phrofetha kuwe; kodwa lokho engikuphrofetha kuwe ungakwembuli; yebo, lokhu engikuphrofetha kuwe akuyikwambulwa, ngisho kuze kube isiphrofetho siyagcwaliseka; ngakho-ke bhala lamazwi engizowakhuluma.
- 10 Futhi nanka amazwi: Bheka, ngiyabona ukuthi bona kanye labantu, amaNefi, ngokomoya wokwambulelwa okimi, eminyakeni engamakhulu amane kusukela ngaleso sikhathi uJesusu Kristu ayoziveza ngaso kubo, bayoncishelwa wukukholwa.

The account of the people of Nephi, and their wars and dissensions, in the days of Helaman, according to the record of Helaman, which he kept in his days.

Alma 45

Behold, now it came to pass that the people of Nephi were exceedingly rejoiced, because the Lord had again delivered them out of the hands of their enemies; therefore they gave thanks unto the Lord their God; yea, and they did fast much and pray much, and they did worship God with exceedingly great joy.

And it came to pass in the nineteenth year of the reign of the judges over the people of Nephi, that Alma came unto his son Helaman and said unto him: Believest thou the words which I spake unto thee concerning those records which have been kept?

And Helaman said unto him: Yea, I believe.

And Alma said again: Believest thou in Jesus Christ, who shall come?

And he said: Yea, I believe all the words which thou hast spoken.

And Alma said unto him again: Will ye keep my commandments?

And he said: Yea, I will keep thy commandments with all my heart.

Then Alma said unto him: Blessed art thou; and the Lord shall prosper thee in this land.

But behold, I have somewhat to prophesy unto thee; but what I prophesy unto thee ye shall not make known; yea, what I prophesy unto thee shall not be made known, even until the prophecy is fulfilled; therefore write the words which I shall say.

And these are the words: Behold, I perceive that this very people, the Nephites, according to the spirit of revelation which is in me, in four hundred years from the time that Jesus Christ shall manifest himself unto them, shall dwindle in unbelief.

- 11 Yebo, futhi ngaleso sikhathi bayobona izimpi kanye nomashayabhuqe bezifo, yebo, indlala kanye nokuchitheka kwegazi, ngisho kuze kube abantu baNefi bayaphela nya—
- 12 Yebo, futhi lokhu ngenxa yokuthi bayoncishelwa wukukholwa futhi bawele emisebenzini yobumnyama, kanye nasezinengisweni kanye nakuzo zonke izinhlobo zobubi; yebo, ngithi kuwe, ngenxa yokuthi bayokona sebe nokukhanya okukhulu kangaka kanye nolwazi olungaka, yebo, ngithi kuwe, kusukela ngalolo suku, ngisho nesizukulwane sesine asiyikudlula sonke ngaphambi kokuthi lobu bubu obukhulu bufike.
- 13 Futhi ngesikhathi lolo suku olukhulu lufika, bheka, isikhathi siyobe sesiseduze ukuthi labo manje, noma inzalo yalabo manje ababalwa phakathi kwenzalo yabantu baNefi, abaseyikubalwa phakathi kwabantu baNefi.
- 14 Kodwa lowo oyosala, futhi angabulawa ngalolo suku olukhulu nolwesabekayo, uyobalwa phakathi kwamaLamani, futhi uyokuba njengawo, bonke, ngaphandle nje kwabambalwa abayobizwa ngabafundi beNkosi; futhi amaLamani ayobazingela ngisho baze baphele nya. Manje, ngenxa yobubi, lesisiphrofetho siyogcwaliseka.
- 15 Manje kwenzeka ukuthi emva kokuthi u-Alima esezishilo lezi zinto kuHelamani, wambusisa, futhi ngokunjalo namanye amadodana akhe; futhi phezu kwalokho wawubusisa umhlaba ngenxa yabalungileyo.
- 16 Futhi wathi: Isho kanje iNkosi uNkulunkulu—Liyiqalekiswa izwe, yebo, lelizwe, liqalekiselwe zonke izizwe, imindeni, izilimi, kanye nabantu, okuyobangela imbubhiso, yabenza ububi, uma sebevuthwe ngokuphelele; futhi njengoba sengishilo kuyoba njalo; ngokuba lesi yisiqalekiso kanye nesibusiso sikaNkulunkulu phezu kwalelizwe, ngokuba iNkosi ayinakusibuka isono isivumele ngisho nakancane.
- 17 Manje, ngesikhathi u-Alima esewashilo lamazwi walibusisa ibandla, yebo, bonke labo ababezokuma baqine okholweni kusukela ngaleso sikhathi kuya phambili.

Yea, and then shall they see wars and pestilences, yea, famines and bloodshed, even until the people of Nephi shall become extinct—

Yea, and this because they shall dwindle in unbelief and fall into the works of darkness, and lasciviousness, and all manner of iniquities; yea, I say unto you, that because they shall sin against so great light and knowledge, yea, I say unto you, that from that day, even the fourth generation shall not all pass away before this great iniquity shall come.

And when that great day cometh, behold, the time very soon cometh that those who are now, or the seed of those who are now numbered among the people of Nephi, shall no more be numbered among the people of Nephi.

But whosoever remaineth, and is not destroyed in that great and dreadful day, shall be numbered among the Lamanites, and shall become like unto them, all, save it be a few who shall be called the disciples of the Lord; and them shall the Lamanites pursue even until they shall become extinct. And now, because of iniquity, this prophecy shall be fulfilled.

And now it came to pass that after Alma had said these things to Helaman, he blessed him, and also his other sons; and he also blessed the earth for the righteous' sake.

And he said: Thus saith the Lord God—Cursed shall be the land, yea, this land, unto every nation, kindred, tongue, and people, unto destruction, which do wickedly, when they are fully ripe; and as I have said so shall it be; for this is the cursing and the blessing of God upon the land, for the Lord cannot look upon sin with the least degree of allowance.

And now, when Alma had said these words he blessed the church, yea, all those who should stand fast in the faith from that time henceforth.

- 18 Futhi ngesikhathi u-Alima esekwenzile lokhu wemuka waphuma ezweni lakwaZarahemla, kwaba sengathi uya ezweni lakwaMeleki. Futhi kwenzeka ukuthi akuphindanga kuzwakale lutho ngaye; mayelana nokufa kwakhe noma ukungcwatshwa kwakhe asikwazi.
- 19 Bheka, yilokhu esikwaziyo, ukuthi wayeyindoda elungile; futhi amahemuhemu agcwala izwe lonke ebandleni ukuthi wathathwa nguMoya wenyuka, noma wangcwatshwa ngesandla seNkosi, ngisho njengoMose. Kodwa bheka, imibhalo engcwele ithi iNkosi yamthatha uMose yamletha kuyo; futhi siyacabanga ukuthi ngokunjalo isimemukele no-Alima emoyeni, yamletha kuyo; ngakho-ke, ngenxa yalesi sizathu asazi lutho mayelana nokufa kanye nokungcwatsha kwakhe.
- 20 Manje kwenzeka ekuqaleni konyaka weshumi nesishiyagalolunye wokubusa kwabehluleli phezu kwabantu baNefi, ukuthi uHelamani wahamba ngaphakathi kwabantu ukuze amemezele izwi kubo.
- 21 Ngokuba bheka, ngenxa yezimpi zabo namaLamani kanye nokungezwani okuningi okungasho lutho kanye nokuphazamiseka okwakuphakathi kwabantu, kwabonakala kufanelekile ukuthi izwi likaNkulunkulu limenyezwe phakathi kwabo, yebo, futhi nokuthi kulungiswe ibandla lonke.
- 22 Ngakho-ke, uHelamani kanye nabafowabo baqhubeka nokumisa ibandla ezweni lonke, yebo, kuwo wonke amadolobha ezweni lonke okwakungelabantu baNefi. Futhi kwenzeka ukuthi babeka abaphristi kanye nabafundisi kulo lonke izwe, phezu kwawo wonke amabandla.
- 23 Manje kwenzeka ukuthi emva kokuthi uHelamani kanye nabafowabo sebebeke abaphristi kanye nabafundisi emabandleni kwavuka ukungezwani phakathi kwabo, futhi abafunanga ukulalela amazwi kaHelamani kanye nabafowabo;
- 24 Kodwa bakhula ekuziqhenyeni, bephakeme ezinhliziyweni zabo, ngenxa yengcebo yabo eningi kakhulu; ngakho-ke bakhula banotha emehlweni abo, futhi abafunanga ukulalela amazwi abo, ukuthi bahambe ngobuqotho phambi kukaNkulunkulu.

And when Alma had done this he departed out of the land of Zarahemla, as if to go into the land of Melek. And it came to pass that he was never heard of more; as to his death or burial we know not of.

Behold, this we know, that he was a righteous man; and the saying went abroad in the church that he was taken up by the Spirit, or buried by the hand of the Lord, even as Moses. But behold, the scriptures saith the Lord took Moses unto himself; and we suppose that he has also received Alma in the spirit, unto himself; therefore, for this cause we know nothing concerning his death and burial.

And now it came to pass in the commencement of the nineteenth year of the reign of the judges over the people of Nephi, that Helaman went forth among the people to declare the word unto them.

For behold, because of their wars with the Lamanites and the many little dissensions and disturbances which had been among the people, it became expedient that the word of God should be declared among them, yea, and that a regulation should be made throughout the church.

Therefore, Helaman and his brethren went forth to establish the church again in all the land, yea, in every city throughout all the land which was possessed by the people of Nephi. And it came to pass that they did appoint priests and teachers throughout all the land, over all the churches.

And now it came to pass that after Helaman and his brethren had appointed priests and teachers over the churches that there arose a dissension among them, and they would not give heed to the words of Helaman and his brethren;

But they grew proud, being lifted up in their hearts, because of their exceedingly great riches; therefore they grew rich in their own eyes, and would not give heed to their words, to walk uprightly before God.

Alima 46

- 1 Futhi kwenzeka ukuthi ngobuningi balabo ababengafuni ukuwalalela amazwi kaHelamani kanye nabafowabo babuthana ndawonye ngokumelene nabafowabo.
- 2 Manje bheka, babethukuthele kakhulu, kangangokuthi babephokophelele ukuthi bababulale.
- 3 Manje umholi walabo ababe thukuthelele abafowabo wayemkhulu futhi eyindoda eqinile; futhi igama lakhe kwakungu-Amalikiya.
- 4 Futhi u-Amalikiya wayenesifiso sokuthi abe yinkosi; nalabo bantu ababe thukuthele nabo ngokunjalo babenesifiso sokuthi abe yinkosi yabo; futhi babeyinxenye enkulu yalabo ababengabehluleli abancane bezwe, futhi ababefuna amandla.
- 5 Futhi babeholwe ngu-Amalikiya ngokubathopha, ngokuthi uma bengamsekela futhi bambeke ukuthi abe yinkosi yabo uyobenza babe ngababusi phezu kwabantu.
- 6 Ngalendlela u-Amalikiya wabaholela kude ekuhlubukeni, bangayinaka intshumayelo kaHelamani nabafowabo, yebo, naphezu kokunakekelwa kwabo okukhulu ebandleni, ngokuba babengabaphristi abakhulu ebandleni.
- 7 Futhi babebaningi ebandleni ababekholelwa emazwini athophayo ka-Amalikiya, ngakho-ke bahlubuka ngisho nasebandleni; futhi zaba kanjalo-ke izindaba zabantu baNefi ezazinobucayi obukhulu kanye nobungozi, naphezu kokunqoba kwabo okukhulu ababanakho kumaLamani, kanye nenjabulo enkulu ababe nayo ngenxa yokukhululwa kwabo ngesandla seNkosi.
- 8 Ngakho-ke siyabona ukuthi bashesha kanjani abantwana babantu ukukhohlwa yiNkosi uNkulunkulu wabo, yebo, bashesha kanjani ukuthi benze ububi, futhi bakhohliswe ngomubi.
- 9 Yebo, futhi phezu kwalokho siyabubona ububi obukhulu umuntu omubi kakhulu angabenza ukuthi bube khona phakathi kwabantwana babantu.

Alma 46

And it came to pass that as many as would not hear-ken to the words of Helaman and his brethren were gathered together against their brethren.

And now behold, they were exceedingly wroth, in-somuch that they were determined to slay them.

Now the leader of those who were wroth against their brethren was a large and a strong man; and his name was Amalickiah.

And Amalickiah was desirous to be a king; and those people who were wroth were also desirous that he should be their king; and they were the greater part of them the lower judges of the land, and they were seeking for power.

And they had been led by the flatteries of Amalickiah, that if they would support him and es-tablish him to be their king that he would make them rulers over the people.

Thus they were led away by Amalickiah to dissen-sions, notwithstanding the preaching of Helaman and his brethren, yea, notwithstanding their exceed-ingly great care over the church, for they were high priests over the church.

And there were many in the church who believed in the flattering words of Amalickiah, therefore they dissented even from the church; and thus were the affairs of the people of Nephi exceedingly precarious and dangerous, notwithstanding their great victory which they had had over the Lamanites, and their great rejoicings which they had had because of their deliverance by the hand of the Lord.

Thus we see how quick the children of men do for-get the Lord their God, yea, how quick to do iniquity, and to be led away by the evil one.

Yea, and we also see the great wickedness one very wicked man can cause to take place among the chil-dren of men.

- 10 Yebo, siyabona ukuthi u-Amalikiya, ngenxa yokuthi wayeyindoda eyayinamacebo anobuqili futhi eyindoda enamazwi anokuthopha okuningi, ukuthi wakhohlisa izinhliziyi zabantu abaningi ukuthi benze ububi; yebo, futhi nokuthi bafune ukuliqeda ibandla likaNkulunkulu futhi baqede isisekelo senkululeko uNkulunkulu ayebanikeze sona, noma isibusiso uNkulunkulu ayesithumele phezu kobuso bezwe ngenxa yabalungileyo.
- 11 Manje kwenzeka ukuthi ngesikhathi uMoroni, owayengumkhuzi omkhulu wamabutho amaNefi, esezwile ngalokhu kuhlubuka, wamthukuthelela u-Amalikiya.
- 12 Futhi kwenzeka ukuthi wadabula ibhantshi lakhe; wathatha isiqephu salo; wabhala kuso ukuthi —Isikhumbuzo sikaNkulunkulu wethu, inkolo yethu, kanye nenkululeko, kanye nokuthula kwethu, abafazi bethu, kanye nabantwana bethu— futhi wasibophela echosheni lesibonda.
- 13 Futhi wabophela isivikelo sekhanda sakhe, kanye nesivikelo sesifuba sakhe, kanye nezihlangu zakhe, futhi wabhinca isivikelo sakhe okhalweni lwakhe; futhi wathatha isibonda, esasinebhantshi lakhe elalidatshuliwe lachonywa kuso, (futhi wasibiza ngokuthi yisibonakaliso senkululeko) futhi waguqa phansi, wakhuleka kakhulu kuNkulunkulu wakhe ekhulekela izibusiso zenkululeko ukuthi zehlele phezu kwabafowabo, uma nje kusekhona iqembu lamaKristu elisasele ukuthi lithathe izwe—
- 14 Ngokuba babebizwa kanje bonke labo ababekholwa ngeqiniso kuKristu, labo okwakungabase bandleni likaNkulunkulu, yilabo ababengesibo abasebandleni.
- 15 Futhi labo okwakungabasebandleni babethembekile; yebo, bonke labo ababekholwa ngeqiniso kuKristu bamukela, ngokuthokoza, igama likaKristu, noma amaKristu njengoba babebizwa kanjalo, ngenxa yokukholwa kwabo kuKristu okwakufanele eze.
- 16 Ngakho-ke, ngalesi sikhathi, uMoroni wakhulekela ukuthi okufunwa ngamaKristu, kanye nenkululeko yezwe sengathi kungasekelwa nguNkulunkulu.

Yea, we see that Amalickiah, because he was a man of cunning device and a man of many flattering words, that he led away the hearts of many people to do wickedly; yea, and to seek to destroy the church of God, and to destroy the foundation of liberty which God had granted unto them, or which blessing God had sent upon the face of the land for the righteous' sake.

And now it came to pass that when Moroni, who was the chief commander of the armies of the Nephites, had heard of these dissensions, he was angry with Amalickiah.

And it came to pass that he rent his coat; and he took a piece thereof, and wrote upon it—In memory of our God, our religion, and freedom, and our peace, our wives, and our children—and he fastened it upon the end of a pole.

And he fastened on his head-plate, and his breast-plate, and his shields, and girded on his armor about his loins; and he took the pole, which had on the end thereof his rent coat, (and he called it the title of liberty) and he bowed himself to the earth, and he prayed mightily unto his God for the blessings of liberty to rest upon his brethren, so long as there should a band of Christians remain to possess the land—

For thus were all the true believers of Christ, who belonged to the church of God, called by those who did not belong to the church.

And those who did belong to the church were faithful; yea, all those who were true believers in Christ took upon them, gladly, the name of Christ, or Christians as they were called, because of their belief in Christ who should come.

And therefore, at this time, Moroni prayed that the cause of the Christians, and the freedom of the land might be favored.

17 Futhi kwenzeka ukuthi ngesikhathi esekhuleke ngentshisekelo kuNkulunkulu, lonke izwe elalisingizimu yezwe walibiza nge Ncithakalo, yebo, ukuphetha, lonke izwe, elisenyakatho kanye nelisingizimu—walibiza ngelikhethekileyo, kanye nezwe lenkululeko.

18 Futhi wathi: Ngempela uNkulunkulu akanakuvuma ukuthi thina, esihlushwayo ngenxa yokuthi semukele igama likaKristu, sinyathelwe phansi futhi sibulawe, kuze kube sikuletha kithi ngeziphambeko zethu uqobo.

19 Futhi ngesikhathi uMoroni esewashilo lamazwi, wahamba waya phakathi kwabantu, ephephezelisa inxenye yengubo yakhe eyayidatshuliwe emoyeni, ukuze bonke bawubone umbhalo ayewubhalile kuleyo nxenye eyayidatshuliwe, futhi wayememeza ngezwi elikhulu ethi:

20 Bhekani, labo abazosigcina lesi sibonakaliso kulelizwe, mabeze phambili ngamandla eNkosi, futhi bangene esivumelwaneni sokuthi bazowagcina amalungelo abo, kanye nenkolo yabo, ukuze iNkosi uNkulunkulu ibabusise.

21 Futhi kwenzeka ukuthi ngesikhathi uMoroni esewamemezele lamazwi, bheka, abantu beza begijima ndawonye nezivikelo zabo ziboshelwe ezinkalweni zabo, bedabula izingubo zabo njengophawu lokuzinikela, noma njengesivumelwano, sokuthi ngeke bayilahle iNkosi uNkulunkulu wabo; noma, ngamanye amazwi, uma bengeqa imiyalelo kaNkulunkulu, noma bawele esiphambekweni, futhi bangafisi ukubizwa nge gama likaKristu, kuyofanele ukuthi iNkosi ibadabule ngisho njengoba nabo bedabule izingubo zabo.

22 Manje lesi kwakuyisivumelwano abasenza, futhi balahla izingubo zabo ezinyaweni zikaMoroni, bethi: Sivumelana noNkulunkulu wethu, ukuthi siyobulawa, ngisho njengabafowethu abasezweni elingasenyakatho, uma siyowela esiphambekweni; yebo, angasilahla ezinyaweni zezitha zethu, ngisho njengoba nathi siphonse izingubo zethu ezinyaweni zakho ukuthi zinyathelwe phansi kwezinyawo, uma siyowela esiphambekweni.

And it came to pass that when he had poured out his soul to God, he named all the land which was south of the land Desolation, yea, and in fine, all the land, both on the north and on the south—A chosen land, and the land of liberty.

And he said: Surely God shall not suffer that we, who are despised because we take upon us the name of Christ, shall be trodden down and destroyed, until we bring it upon us by our own transgressions.

And when Moroni had said these words, he went forth among the people, waving the rent part of his garment in the air, that all might see the writing which he had written upon the rent part, and crying with a loud voice, saying:

Behold, whosoever will maintain this title upon the land, let them come forth in the strength of the Lord, and enter into a covenant that they will maintain their rights, and their religion, that the Lord God may bless them.

And it came to pass that when Moroni had proclaimed these words, behold, the people came running together with their armor girded about their loins, rending their garments in token, or as a covenant, that they would not forsake the Lord their God; or, in other words, if they should transgress the commandments of God, or fall into transgression, and be ashamed to take upon them the name of Christ, the Lord should rend them even as they had rent their garments.

Now this was the covenant which they made, and they cast their garments at the feet of Moroni, saying: We covenant with our God, that we shall be destroyed, even as our brethren in the land northward, if we shall fall into transgression; yea, he may cast us at the feet of our enemies, even as we have cast our garments at thy feet to be trodden under foot, if we shall fall into transgression.

23 UMoroni wathi kubo: Bhekani, siyinsali yenzalo kaJakobe; yebo, siyinsali yenzalo ka Josefa, ibhantshi lakhe eladatshulwa ngabafowabo laba yizicucu eziningi; yebo, manje bhekani, masikhumbule ukuthi siyigcine imiyalelo kaNkulunkulu, ngaphandle kwalokho izingubo zethu ziyodatshulwa ngabafowethu, futhi siphonswe etilongweni, noma sithengiswe, noma sibulawe.

24 Yebo, masiyigcine inkululeko yethu njengensali kaJosefa; yebo, masiwakhumbule amazwi kaJakobe, ngaphambi kokufa kwakhe, ngokuba bheka, wabona ukuthi inxenye yensalela yebhantshi likaJosefa yalondolozwa futhi ayizange ibole. Futhi wathi—Ngisho njengoba le nsalela yengubo yendodana yami yalondolozwa, kanjalo nensali yenzalo yendodana yami iyolondolozwa ngesandla sikaNkulunkulu, futhi ithathwe iyiswe kuye, ngesikhathi insali yenzalo kaJosefa ishabalala, ngisho njengensalela yengubo yakhe.

25 Manje bheka, lokhu kwenza umphefumulo wami ube nosizi; nokho, umphefumulo wami unentokozo ngendodana yami, ngenxa yaleyo nxenye yenzalo yayo eyothathwa iyiswe kuNkulunkulu.

26 Manje bheka, lawa kwakungamazwi kaJakobe.

27 Manje ngubani owaziyo ukuthi mhlawumbe insali yenzalo kaJosefa, leyo eyoshabalala njengengubo yakhe, yiyo leyo eyahlubuka kithi na? Yebo, futhi ngisho kuyoba yithi uqobo uma singami siqine okholweni lukaKristu.

28 Manje kwenzeka ukuthi ngesikhathi uMoroni esewashilo lamazwi waqhubekela phambili, futhi wabuye wathumela ezinxenyeni zonke zezwe lapho kwakukhona ukuhlubuka, futhi waqoqela ndawonye bonke abantu ababenesifiso sokugcina inkululeko yabo, ukuthi bamelane no-Amalikiya kanye nalabo ababehlubukile, ababebizwa ngokuthi ngama-Amalikiya.

29 Futhi kwenzeka ukuthi ngesikhathi u-Amalikiya ebona ukuthi abantu baMoroni babebaningi kakhulu kunama-Amalikiya—futhi phezu kwalokho wabona ukuthi abantu bakhe babenqikaza mayelana nokulunga kwaleyo ndlela ababeyithathile—ngakho-ke, enokwesaba ukuthi hleze angazuzi lutho, wathatha labo bantu bakhe ababefuna bemuka baya ezweni likaNefi.

Moroni said unto them: Behold, we are a remnant of the seed of Jacob; yea, we are a remnant of the seed of Joseph, whose coat was rent by his brethren into many pieces; yea, and now behold, let us remember to keep the commandments of God, or our garments shall be rent by our brethren, and we be cast into prison, or be sold, or be slain.

Yea, let us preserve our liberty as a remnant of Joseph; yea, let us remember the words of Jacob, before his death, for behold, he saw that a part of the remnant of the coat of Joseph was preserved and had not decayed. And he said—Even as this remnant of garment of my son hath been preserved, so shall a remnant of the seed of my son be preserved by the hand of God, and be taken unto himself, while the remainder of the seed of Joseph shall perish, even as the remnant of his garment.

Now behold, this giveth my soul sorrow; nevertheless, my soul hath joy in my son, because of that part of his seed which shall be taken unto God.

Now behold, this was the language of Jacob.

And now who knoweth but what the remnant of the seed of Joseph, which shall perish as his garment, are those who have dissented from us? Yea, and even it shall be ourselves if we do not stand fast in the faith of Christ.

And now it came to pass that when Moroni had said these words he went forth, and also sent forth in all the parts of the land where there were dissensions, and gathered together all the people who were desirous to maintain their liberty, to stand against Amalickiah and those who had dissented, who were called Amalickiahites.

And it came to pass that when Amalickiah saw that the people of Moroni were more numerous than the Amalickiahites—and he also saw that his people were doubtful concerning the justice of the cause in which they had undertaken—therefore, fearing that he should not gain the point, he took those of his people who would and departed into the land of Nephi.

30 Manje uMoroni wacabanga ukuthi kwakungafanele ukuthi amaLamani abe namanye amandla angaphezulu; ngakho-ke wacabanga ukuthi abavimbele abantu ba-Amalikiya, noma abathathe ababuyisele emuva, bese ebulala u-Amalikiya; yebo, ngokuba wayazi ukuthi wayezowaphehla amaLamani ukuthi abathukuthelele, futhi awenze ukuthi eze azolwa nabo; futhi lokhu wayekwazi ukuthi u-Amalikiya wayengakwenza ukuze afeze izinhloso zakhe.

31 Ngakho-ke uMoroni wacabanga ukuthi kwakufanele ukuthi athathe amabutho akhe, ayekade ebuthene ndawonye, futhi azihlomisa, futhi angena esivumelwaneni sokugcina ukuthula—futhi kwenzeka ukuthi wathatha impi yakhe wahamba waphuma namatende akhe waya ehlane, ukuze ayovimba indlela ka-Amalikiya ehlane.

32 Futhi kwenzeka ukuthi nempela wenza njengokwezifiso zakhe, futhi waqhubekela phambili ehlane, wawanqanda amabutho ka-Amalikiya.

33 Futhi kwenzeka ukuthi u-Amalikiya wabaleka nedlanzana elincane labantu bakhe, kwathi insalela yanikwa uMoroni futhi bathathwa babuyiselwa ezweni lakwaZarahemla.

34 Manje, uMoroni eyindoda eyayibekwe ngabehluleli abakhulu kanye nangezwi labantu, ngakho-ke wayenamandla ngokwentando yakhe ngokuphathelene namabutho amaNefi, ukuthi amise futhi asebenzise igunya phezu kwawo.

35 Futhi kwenzeka ukuthi lowo wama-Amalikiya owayengenakungena esivumelwaneni sokuthi asekele indlela yenkululeko, ukuthi bagcine umkhandlu ophethe okhululekile, wenza ukuthi abulawe; futhi babekhona kodwa bembalwa abasenqaba isivumelwano senkululeko.

36 Futhi kwaphinde kwenzeka, ukuthi wenza isibonakaliso senkululeko sibekwe kuyo yonke imibhoshongo eyayikhona kulo lonke izwe, okwakungelamaNefi; futhi ngalendlela uMoroni wasitshala isibonakaliso senkululeko phakathi kwamaNefi.

Now Moroni thought it was not expedient that the Lamanites should have any more strength; therefore he thought to cut off the people of Amalickiah, or to take them and bring them back, and put Amalickiah to death; yea, for he knew that he would stir up the Lamanites to anger against them, and cause them to come to battle against them; and this he knew that Amalickiah would do that he might obtain his purposes.

Therefore Moroni thought it was expedient that he should take his armies, who had gathered themselves together, and armed themselves, and entered into a covenant to keep the peace—and it came to pass that he took his army and marched out with his tents into the wilderness, to cut off the course of Amalickiah in the wilderness.

And it came to pass that he did according to his desires, and marched forth into the wilderness, and headed the armies of Amalickiah.

And it came to pass that Amalickiah fled with a small number of his men, and the remainder were delivered up into the hands of Moroni and were taken back into the land of Zarahemla.

Now, Moroni being a man who was appointed by the chief judges and the voice of the people, therefore he had power according to his will with the armies of the Nephites, to establish and to exercise authority over them.

And it came to pass that whomsoever of the Amalickiahites that would not enter into a covenant to support the cause of freedom, that they might maintain a free government, he caused to be put to death; and there were but few who denied the covenant of freedom.

And it came to pass also, that he caused the title of liberty to be hoisted upon every tower which was in all the land, which was possessed by the Nephites; and thus Moroni planted the standard of liberty among the Nephites.

37 Futhi baqala ukuthi babe nokuthula futhi ezweni; futhi ngalendlela nempela bakugcina ukuthula ezweni kwaze kwaba cishe ngasekupheleni konyaka weshumi nesishiyagalolunye wokubusa kwabehluleli.

38 Futhi uHelamani kanye nabaphristi abakhulu nempela bakugcina ukuhleleka ebandleni; yebo, kwaze kwaba yisikhathi esiyiminyaka emine benokuthula okukhulu futhi kanye nokuthokoza ebandleni.

39 Futhi kwenzeka ukuthi babebanangi abafayo, begxilile ekukholweni ukuthi imiphefumulo yabo yayikhululiwe yiNkosi uJesu Kristu; ngakho-ke bahamba emhlabeni bethokozile.

40 Futhi kwakukhona abanye abafa bebulawa yimikhuhlane, okwakuthi ngezinye izikhathi ezithile zonyaka ivame kakhulu ezweni—kodwa hhayi kakhulu kangako ngemikhuhlane, ngenxa yamakhambi amahle kakhulu ezitshalo eziningi kanye nezimpende uNkulunkulu ayezilungiselele ukuthi zisuse imbangela yezifo, abantu ababenazo ngenxa yesimo sezulu—

41 Kodwa babebanangi abafa ngenxa yobudala; futhi labo abafela okholweni lukaKristu bathokozile kuye, njengoba nathi kufanele sicabange kanjalo.

And they began to have peace again in the land; and thus they did maintain peace in the land until nearly the end of the nineteenth year of the reign of the judges.

And Helaman and the high priests did also maintain order in the church; yea, even for the space of four years did they have much peace and rejoicing in the church.

And it came to pass that there were many who died, firmly believing that their souls were redeemed by the Lord Jesus Christ; thus they went out of the world rejoicing.

And there were some who died with fevers, which at some seasons of the year were very frequent in the land—but not so much so with fevers, because of the excellent qualities of the many plants and roots which God had prepared to remove the cause of diseases, to which men were subject by the nature of the climate—

But there were many who died with old age; and those who died in the faith of Christ are happy in him, as we must needs suppose.

Alima 47

- 1 Manje sizobuyela endabeni yethu ku-Amalikiya kanye nalabo ababaleka naye baya ehlane; ngokuba, bheka, wayethathe labo ababehambe naye, wakhuphukela ezweni lakwaNefi phakathi kwamaLamani, futhi nempela wawaphehla amaLamani ukuthi athukuthelele abantu baNefi, kangangoba inkosi yamaLamani yathumela isimemezelo kulo lonke izwe layo, phakathi kwabo bonke abantu bayo, ukuthi bahlangane ndawonye bahambe bayolwa namaNefi.
- 2 Futhi kwenzeka ukuthi ngesikhathi isimemezelo sesidluliselwe phambili phakathi kwabo besaba kakhulu; yebo, besaba ukungayithokozisi inkosi, futhi baphinde besaba ukuthi bayolwa namaNefi hleze balahlekelwe yizimpilo zabo. Futhi kwenzeka ukuthi babengafuni, noma inxenye enkulu yabo yayingafuni, ukulalela imiyalelo yenkosi.
- 3 Manje kwenzeka ukuthi inkosi yathukuthela ngenxa yokungalaleli kwabo; ngakho-ke yanika u-Amalikiya ubuholi kuleyo nxenye yebutho lakhe elaliyilalela imiyalelo yayo, futhi wamyala ukuthi ahambe ayobaphoqa ukuthi bahlome.
- 4 Manje bheka, lokhu kwakuyisifiso sika-Amalikiya; ngokuba wayeyindoda enobuqili obukhulu ekwenzeni ububi ngakho-ke walenza lelisu enhliziyweni yakhe lokuyikhipha esihlalweni sobukhosi inkosi yamaLamani.
- 5 Manje wayesethole ubuholi kulezo zinxenye zamaLamani ayeyisekela inkosi; futhi wazama ukuthi athole ukwemukelwa yilabo ababengalaleli; ngakho-ke wahamba waya endaweni eyayibizwa ngokuthi yi-Onida, ngokuba yilapho kwakubalekele khona wonke amaLamani; ngokuba abona impi iza, futhi, ecabanga ukuthi yayizowabulala, ngakho-ke abalekela e-Onida, endaweni yezikhali.
- 6 Futhi abeka umuntu ukuthi abe yinkosi kanye nomholi wawo, egxilile emiqondweni yawo ngesinqumo esingaguquki sokuthi ayengenakuphoqe lelwa ukuthi alwe namaNefi.
- 7 Futhi kwenzeka ukuthi abuthana ndawonye phezulu esicongweni sentaba eyayibizwa ngokuthi yi-Antipase, ukulungiselela impi.

Alma 47

Now we will return in our record to Amalickiah and those who had fled with him into the wilderness; for, behold, he had taken those who went with him, and went up in the land of Nephi among the Lamanites, and did stir up the Lamanites to anger against the people of Nephi, insomuch that the king of the Lamanites sent a proclamation throughout all his land, among all his people, that they should gather themselves together again to go to battle against the Nephites.

And it came to pass that when the proclamation had gone forth among them they were exceedingly afraid; yea, they feared to displease the king, and they also feared to go to battle against the Nephites lest they should lose their lives. And it came to pass that they would not, or the more part of them would not, obey the commandments of the king.

And now it came to pass that the king was wroth because of their disobedience; therefore he gave Amalickiah the command of that part of his army which was obedient unto his commands, and commanded him that he should go forth and compel them to arms.

Now behold, this was the desire of Amalickiah; for he being a very subtle man to do evil therefore he laid the plan in his heart to dethrone the king of the Lamanites.

And now he had got the command of those parts of the Lamanites who were in favor of the king; and he sought to gain favor of those who were not obedient; therefore he went forward to the place which was called Onidah, for thither had all the Lamanites fled; for they discovered the army coming, and, supposing that they were coming to destroy them, therefore they fled to Onidah, to the place of arms.

And they had appointed a man to be a king and a leader over them, being fixed in their minds with a determined resolution that they would not be subjected to go against the Nephites.

And it came to pass that they had gathered themselves together upon the top of the mount which was called Antipas, in preparation to battle.

- 8 Manje kwakungeyona inhloso ka-Amalikiya ukuthi alwe nawo njengokwemiyalelo yenkosi; kodwa bheka, kwakuyinhloso yakhe ukuthi athole ukwemukelwa ngamabutho amaLamani, ukuze azibeke ekhanda lawo futhi akhiphe inkosi esihlalweni sobukhosi bese ethatha umbuso.
- 9 Futhi bheka, kwenzeka ukuthi wenza amabutho akhe ukuthi agxumeke amatende awo esigodini esasiseduze nentaba i-Antipase.
- 10 Futhi kwenzeka ukuthi ngesikhathi sekuhlwile wathumela izithunywa ngase ukuthi ziye entabeni i-Antipase, enesifiso sokuthi umholi walabo ababesentabeni, igama lakhe okwakunguLehonti, ehlele ezansi phansi kwentaba, ngokuba wayenesifiso sokukhuluma naye.
- 11 Futhi kwenzeka ukuthi ngesikhathi uLehonti ethola umyalezo akazange alokothe ahambe ehlele ezansi phansi kwentaba. Futhi kwenzeka ukuthi u-Amalikiya waphinda wathumela futhi okwesibili, enesifiso sokuthi ehle. Futhi kwenzeka ukuthi uLehonti akazange; futhi waphinda wathumela okwesithathu.
- 12 Futhi kwenzeka ukuthi ngesikhathi u-Amalikiya ethola ukuthi wayengakwazi ukuthola uLehonti ukuthi ehle entabeni, wakhuphukela entabeni, waya eduzane nenkambi kaLehonti; futhi waphinda wathumela okwesine umlayezo wakhe kuLehonti, enesifiso sokuthi ehlele ezansi, futhi eze nabaqaphi bakhe.
- 13 Futhi kwenzeka ukuthi ngesikhathi uLehonti eshlele ezansi kanye nabaqaphi bakhe baya ku-Amalikiya, u-Amalikiya wayefisa ukuthi ehle namabutho akhe ngesikhathi sasebusuku, bese ezungeza lawo madoda ezinkanjini zawo inkosi eyayimnike ubuholi bawo, nokuthi yena uyobanika uLehonti, uma engamenza yena (u-Amalikiya) abe ngumholi wesibili phezu kwamabutho onke.
- 14 Futhi kwenzeka ukuthi uLehonti wehlela ezansi nabantu bakhe futhi babazungeza abantu ba-Amalikiya, ukuze kuthi ngaphambi kokuthi bavuke entathakusa yosuku babe sebezungezwe ngamabutho kaLehonti.

Now it was not Amalickiah's intention to give them battle according to the commandments of the king; but behold, it was his intention to gain favor with the armies of the Lamanites, that he might place himself at their head and dethrone the king and take possession of the kingdom.

And behold, it came to pass that he caused his army to pitch their tents in the valley which was near the mount Antipas.

And it came to pass that when it was night he sent a secret embassy into the mount Antipas, desiring that the leader of those who were upon the mount, whose name was Lehonti, that he should come down to the foot of the mount, for he desired to speak with him.

And it came to pass that when Lehonti received the message he durst not go down to the foot of the mount. And it came to pass that Amalickiah sent again the second time, desiring him to come down. And it came to pass that Lehonti would not; and he sent again the third time.

And it came to pass that when Amalickiah found that he could not get Lehonti to come down off from the mount, he went up into the mount, nearly to Lehonti's camp; and he sent again the fourth time his message unto Lehonti, desiring that he would come down, and that he would bring his guards with him.

And it came to pass that when Lehonti had come down with his guards to Amalickiah, that Amalickiah desired him to come down with his army in the night-time, and surround those men in their camps over whom the king had given him command, and that he would deliver them up into Lehonti's hands, if he would make him (Amalickiah) a second leader over the whole army.

And it came to pass that Lehonti came down with his men and surrounded the men of Amalickiah, so that before they awoke at the dawn of day they were surrounded by the armies of Lehonti.

15 Futhi kwenzeka ukuthi ngesikhathi bebona ukuthi base bezungeziwe, bancenga u-Amalikiya ukuthi abavumele ukuthi bahlangane nabafowabo, ukuze bangabulawa. Manje lokhu kwakuyiyona kanye into u-Amalikiya ayeyifuna.

16 Futhi kwenzeka ukuthi wawanikela amadoda akhe, ngokuphambene nomyalelo wenkosi. Manje lokhu kwakuyiyona into u-Amalikiya ayeyifisa, ukuze afeze amacebo akhe okukhipha inkosi esihlalweni sobukhosi.

17 Manje kwakuwusiko phakathi kwamaLamani, uma umholi wabo omkhulu ebulewe, kubekwe umholi wesibili abe ngumholi omkhulu.

18 Futhi kwenzeka ukuthi u-Amalikiya wenza ukuthi omunye wezincedu zakhe anikeze ubuthi kancane kancane kuLehonti, aze afe.

19 Manje, ngesikhathi uLehonti esefile, amaLamani abeka u-Amalikiya ukuthi abe ngumholi wawo kanye nomkhuzi wawo omkhulu.

20 Futhi kwenzeka ukuthi u-Amalikiya wahamba namabutho akhe (ngokuba wabe esezifezile izifiso zakhe) waya ezweni lakwaNefi, edolobheni lakwaNefi, okwakuyidolobha elikhulu.

21 Futhi inkosi yaphuma ukuyomhlangabeza kanye nabalindi bayo, ngokuba yona yayicabanga ukuthi u-Amalikiya wabe eseyifezile imiyalelo yayo, kanye nokuthi u-Amalikiya wabe eseyibuthele ndawonye impi enkulu kangaka ukuthi iyolwa namaNefi.

22 Kodwa bheka, ngesikhathi inkosi iphuma iyomhlangabeza u-Amalikiya wenza ukuthi izincedu zakhe zihambe phambili ziyoyihlangabeza inkosi. Futhi zahamba zakhothama phambi kwenkosi, sengathi ziyayihlonipha ngenxa yobukhulu bayo.

23 Futhi kwenzeka ukuthi inkosi yelula isandla sayo ukuthi ibaphakamise, njengoba kwakuwusiko lwamaLamani, njengophawu lokuthula, lolu siko ababeluthathe kumaNefi.

24 Futhi kwenzeka ukuthi ngesikhathi isimphakamisile owokuqala, bheka wayigwaza inkosi enhliziyweni; yawela phansi.

25 Manje izincedu zenkosi zabaleka; kwathi izincedu zika-Amalikiya zamemeza zikhala, zithi:

26 Bhekani, izincedu zenkosi ziyigwaze enhliziyweni, isiwile futhi sezibalekile; bhekani, wozani nizobona.

And it came to pass that when they saw that they were surrounded, they pled with Amalickiah that he would suffer them to fall in with their brethren, that they might not be destroyed. Now this was the very thing which Amalickiah desired.

And it came to pass that he delivered his men, contrary to the commands of the king. Now this was the thing that Amalickiah desired, that he might accomplish his designs in dethroning the king.

Now it was the custom among the Lamanites, if their chief leader was killed, to appoint the second leader to be their chief leader.

And it came to pass that Amalickiah caused that one of his servants should administer poison by degrees to Lehonti, that he died.

Now, when Lehonti was dead, the Lamanites appointed Amalickiah to be their leader and their chief commander.

And it came to pass that Amalickiah marched with his armies (for he had gained his desires) to the land of Nephi, to the city of Nephi, which was the chief city.

And the king came out to meet him with his guards, for he supposed that Amalickiah had fulfilled his commands, and that Amalickiah had gathered together so great an army to go against the Nephites to battle.

But behold, as the king came out to meet him Amalickiah caused that his servants should go forth to meet the king. And they went and bowed themselves before the king, as if to reverence him because of his greatness.

And it came to pass that the king put forth his hand to raise them, as was the custom with the Lamanites, as a token of peace, which custom they had taken from the Nephites.

And it came to pass that when he had raised the first from the ground, behold he stabbed the king to the heart; and he fell to the earth.

Now the servants of the king fled; and the servants of Amalickiah raised a cry, saying:

Behold, the servants of the king have stabbed him to the heart, and he has fallen and they have fled; behold, come and see.

- 27 Futhi kwenzeka ukuthi u-Amalikiya wayala ukuthi amabutho akhe ahambe ayobona ukuthi kwenzekeni enkosini; futhi ngesikhathi sebefikile kuleyo ndawo, bayithola inkosi ilele emahluleni egazi layo, u-Amalikiya wenza sengathi uthukuthele, futhi wathi: Lowo oyithandayo inkosi, makaphumele obala, azixoshe izinceku zayo ukuze zibulawe.
- 28 Futhi kwenzeka ukuthi bonke labo ababeyithanda inkosi, ngesikhathi bezwa lamazwi, beza phambili futhi bazixosha izinceku zenkosi.
- 29 Manje ngesikhathi izinceku zenkosi zibona impi ilandela emva kwazo, zaba nokwesaba futhi, futhi zabalekela ehlane, zawelela ezweni lakwaZarahemla zayohlangana nabantu ba-Amoni.
- 30 Futhi kwathi impi leyo eyayikade izixosha yabuyela emuva, isizixoshe yehluleka; futhi ngaleyondlela u-Amalikiya, ngenkohliso yakhe, wazizuzisa izinhliziyi zabantu.
- 31 Futhi kwenzeka ukuthi ngakusasa wangena edolobheni lakwaNefi namabutho akhe, walithatha idolobha.
- 32 Manje kwenzeka ukuthi indlovukazi, ngesikhathi isizwile ukuthi inkosi ibulewe—ngokuba u-Amalikiya wayethumele isithunywa kuyo indlovukazi eyazisa ukuthi inkosi ibulewe yizinceku zayo, nokuthi uzixoshile ngempi yakhe, kodwa wehluleka, zibalekile—
- 33 Ngakho-ke, ngesikhathi indlovukazi isiwuzwile lombiko yathumela ku-Amalikiya, ifisa ukuthi abasindise abantu bedolobha; futhi phezu kwalokho yayifisa ukuthi eze kuyo; futhi phezu kwalokho yayifisa ukuthi afike nofakazi ukuthi bazofakaza mayelana nokufa kwenkosi.
- 34 Futhi kwenzeka ukuthi u-Amalikiya wathatha yona kanye leyo nceku eyayibulele inkosi, kanye nabo bonke labo ababenayo, bahamba baya kuyo indlovukazi, endaweni eyayihlezi kuyo; futhi bonke bafakaza kuyo ukuthi inkosi yayibulewe yizinceku zayo uqobo; futhi basho nokuthi: Zibalekile; ngabe lokhu akufakazi yini ngokumelene nazo na? Futhi ngalokho bayanelisa indlovukazi mayelana nokufa kwenkosi.

And it came to pass that Amalickiah commanded that his armies should march forth and see what had happened to the king; and when they had come to the spot, and found the king lying in his gore, Amalickiah pretended to be wroth, and said: Whosoever loved the king, let him go forth, and pursue his servants that they may be slain.

And it came to pass that all they who loved the king, when they heard these words, came forth and pursued after the servants of the king.

Now when the servants of the king saw an army pursuing after them, they were frightened again, and fled into the wilderness, and came over into the land of Zarahemla and joined the people of Ammon.

And the army which pursued after them returned, having pursued after them in vain; and thus Amalickiah, by his fraud, gained the hearts of the people.

And it came to pass on the morrow he entered the city Nephi with his armies, and took possession of the city.

And now it came to pass that the queen, when she had heard that the king was slain—for Amalickiah had sent an embassy to the queen informing her that the king had been slain by his servants, that he had pursued them with his army, but it was in vain, and they had made their escape—

Therefore, when the queen had received this message she sent unto Amalickiah, desiring him that he would spare the people of the city; and she also desired him that he should come in unto her; and she also desired him that he should bring witnesses with him to testify concerning the death of the king.

And it came to pass that Amalickiah took the same servant that slew the king, and all them who were with him, and went in unto the queen, unto the place where she sat; and they all testified unto her that the king was slain by his own servants; and they said also: They have fled; does not this testify against them? And thus they satisfied the queen concerning the death of the king.

35 Futhi kwenzeka ukuthi u-Amalikiya wafuna ukuthandwa yindlovukazi, wayithatha wayenza umkakhe; futhi ngaleyondlela ngenkohliso yakhe, nangokusizwa yizinceku zakhe ezinobuqili, wawuthola umbuso; yebo, wemukelwa njengenkosi kulo lonke izwe, phakathi kwabo bonke abantu bamaLamani, ababexube amaLamani namaLemuweli ama-Ishmayeli, kanye nabo bonke abahlubuki bamaNefi, kusukela ekubuseni kukaNefi kwehla kuze kube yilesi sikhathi samanje.

36 Manje labahlubuki, benemfundiso efanayo futhi benolwazi olufanayo lwamaNefi, yebo, futhi befundiswe ngolwazi olufanayo lweNkosi, nokho, kuyamangalisa ukusho, ukuthi kungekudala nje emva kokuhlubuka kwabo baba lukhuni kakhulu futhi bangaba nakuphenduka, futhi baba yizinhlangunhlangu kakhulu, baba babi futhi baba nobudlova lakhulu kunamaLamani—bepuza ndawonye emasikweni amaLamani; bevumela ubuvila, kanye nazo zonke izinhlobo zezinengiso; yebo, bakhohlwa nya yiNkosi uNkulunkulu wabo.

And it came to pass that Amalickiah sought the favor of the queen, and took her unto him to wife; and thus by his fraud, and by the assistance of his cunning servants, he obtained the kingdom; yea, he was acknowledged king throughout all the land, among all the people of the Lamanites, who were composed of the Lamanites and the Lemuelites and the Ishmaelites, and all the dissenters of the Nephites, from the reign of Nephi down to the present time.

Now these dissenters, having the same instruction and the same information of the Nephites, yea, having been instructed in the same knowledge of the Lord, nevertheless, it is strange to relate, not long after their dissensions they became more hardened and impenitent, and more wild, wicked and ferocious than the Lamanites—drinking in with the traditions of the Lamanites; giving way to indolence, and all manner of lasciviousness; yea, entirely forgetting the Lord their God.

Alima 48

- 1 Manje kwenzeka ukuthi, masinyane nje emva kokuthi u-Amalikiya esethole umbuso waqala ukufaka umoya ezinhliziyweni zamaLamani ngokumelene nabantu baNefi; yebo, wabeka amadoda ukuthi akhulume kumaLamani esemibhoshongweni yawo, ngokumelene namaNefi.
- 2 Futhi ngalendlela nempela wawufaka umoya ezinhliziyweni zabo ngokumelene namaNefi, kangangokuthi ngasekupheleni konyaka weshumi nesishiyagalolunye wokubusa kwabehluleli, esewafezile amacebo akhe kuze kube manje, yebo, esenziwe inkosi phezu kwamaLamani, wafuna futhi ukuthi abuse kulo lonke izwe, yebo, kanye nakubo bonke abantu ababesezweni, amaNefi ngokunjalo namaLamani.
- 3 Ngakho-ke wayesewafezile amacebo akhe, ngokuba wayesezenze zaba lukhuni izinhliziyu zamaLamani futhi wayiphuphuthekisa imiqondo yawo, wawaphehla ukuthi athukuthele, kangangokuthi wayeseqoqele ndawonye ibutho elikhulu ukuthi lihambe liyolwa namaNefi.
- 4 Ngokuba wayephokophelele, ngenxa yobukhulu besibalo sabantu bakhe, ukuthi awanqobe amaNefi futhi awaethe ekuthunjweni.
- 5 Futhi ngenxa yalesi sizathu nempela wabeka izinduna ezinkulu zamaZoramuni, ngokuba zaziwaywayele kakhulu amandla amaNefi, kanye nezindawo zawo zokucasha, kanye nezinxenye zamadolobha awo ezazibuthakathaka; ngakho-ke wazibeka ukuthi zibe yizinduna ezinkulu phezu kwamabutho akhe.
- 6 Futhi kwenzeka ukuthi bathatha inkambi yabo, futhi baqhubekela phambili baya ngasezweni lakwaZarahemla ehlane.
- 7 Manje kwenzeka ukuthi ngesikhathi u-Amalikiya esathola amandla ngobuqili kanye nangenkohliso, uMoroni, ngakolunye uhlangothi, wayelokhu elungiselela imiqondo yabantu ukuthi bathembeke eNkosini uNkulunkulu wabo.

Alma 48

And now it came to pass that, as soon as Amalickiah had obtained the kingdom he began to inspire the hearts of the Lamanites against the people of Nephi; yea, he did appoint men to speak unto the Lamanites from their towers, against the Nephites.

And thus he did inspire their hearts against the Nephites, insomuch that in the latter end of the nineteenth year of the reign of the judges, he having accomplished his designs thus far, yea, having been made king over the Lamanites, he sought also to reign over all the land, yea, and all the people who were in the land, the Nephites as well as the Lamanites.

Therefore he had accomplished his design, for he had hardened the hearts of the Lamanites and blinded their minds, and stirred them up to anger, insomuch that he had gathered together a numerous host to go to battle against the Nephites.

For he was determined, because of the greatness of the number of his people, to overpower the Nephites and to bring them into bondage.

And thus he did appoint chief captains of the Zoramites, they being the most acquainted with the strength of the Nephites, and their places of resort, and the weakest parts of their cities; therefore he appointed them to be chief captains over his armies.

And it came to pass that they took their camp, and moved forth toward the land of Zarahemla in the wilderness.

Now it came to pass that while Amalickiah had thus been obtaining power by fraud and deceit, Moroni, on the other hand, had been preparing the minds of the people to be faithful unto the Lord their God.

- 8 Yebo, wabe elokhu eqinisa amabutho amaNefi, futhi emisa izinqaba ezincane, noma izindawo zokucasha; akha ugange ngomhlabathi ezungeza ukuze avalele amabutho akhe, futhi phezu kwalokho akha izindonga zamatshe ukuze awazungeze, azungeze amadolobha abo kanye nemingcele yamazwe abo; yebo, ukuzungeza lonke izwe.
- 9 Futhi ezinqabeni zabo ezibuthakathaka wabeka amadoda amaningi; futhi ngaleyondlela waziqinisa izinqaba waliqinisa nezwe lamaNefi.
- 10 Futhi ngalendlela wayelungiselela ukuthi asekele inkululeko yabo, amazwe abo, abafazi babo, kanye nabantwana babo, kanye nokuthula kwabo, kanye nokuthi bahlale eNkosini uNkulunkulu wabo, kanye nokuthi bagcine lokho okwakubizwa yizitha zabo ngokuthi ngokuthandwa ngamaKristu.
- 11 Futhi uMoroni wayeyindoda eqinile futhi enamandla; wayeyindoda enokuqonda okuphelele; yebo, indoda eyayingathokozi ekuchitheni igazi; indoda umphefumulo wayo owawuthokoza ngenkululeko yezwe layo, kanye neyabafowabo ekuthunjweni nasebugqilini;
- 12 Yebo, indoda inhliziyi yayo yayigcwele ukubonga kuNkulunkulu wayo, ngamalungelo amaningi kanye nezibusiso azinika abantu bakhe; indoda eyayisebenzela kakhulu inhlalakahle kanye nokuphepha kwabantu bayo.
- 13 Yebo, futhi wayeyindoda eyayiqinile okholweni lukaKristu, futhi wayefunge ngesifungo ukuvikela abantu bakhe, amalungelo akhe, kanye nezwe lakhe, kanye nenkolo yakhe, ngisho nangokulahlekelwa yigazi lakhe.
- 14 Manje amaNefi ayefundiswe ukuzivikela ezitheni zawo, ngisho nasekuchitheni igazi uma kwakudingekile; yebo, futhi phezu kwalokho ayefundiswe ukuthi angoni muntu nanini, yebo, futhi angayiphakamisi nanini inkemba ngaphandle kokuthi kungokumelene nesitha, ngaphandle kokuthi kuwukulondoloza izimpilo zawo.

Yea, he had been strengthening the armies of the Nephites, and erecting small forts, or places of resort; throwing up banks of earth round about to enclose his armies, and also building walls of stone to encircle them about, round about their cities and the borders of their lands; yea, all round about the land.

And in their weakest fortifications he did place the greater number of men; and thus he did fortify and strengthen the land which was possessed by the Nephites.

And thus he was preparing to support their liberty, their lands, their wives, and their children, and their peace, and that they might live unto the Lord their God, and that they might maintain that which was called by their enemies the cause of Christians.

And Moroni was a strong and a mighty man; he was a man of a perfect understanding; yea, a man that did not delight in bloodshed; a man whose soul did joy in the liberty and the freedom of his country, and his brethren from bondage and slavery;

Yea, a man whose heart did swell with thanksgiving to his God, for the many privileges and blessings which he bestowed upon his people; a man who did labor exceedingly for the welfare and safety of his people.

Yea, and he was a man who was firm in the faith of Christ, and he had sworn with an oath to defend his people, his rights, and his country, and his religion, even to the loss of his blood.

Now the Nephites were taught to defend themselves against their enemies, even to the shedding of blood if it were necessary; yea, and they were also taught never to give an offense, yea, and never to raise the sword except it were against an enemy, except it were to preserve their lives.

- 15 Futhi lokhu kwakuwukholo lwabo, ukuthi ngokwenze njalo uNkulunkulu wayezobaphumelelisa ezweni, noma ngamanye amazwi, uma babethembekile ekugcineni imiyalelo kaNkulunkulu ukuthi wayezobaphumelelisa ezweni; yebo, abaxwayise ukuthi babaleke, noma balungiselele impi, njengokuba sengozini kwabo;
- 16 Futhi phezu kwalokho, nokuthi uNkulunkulu uyobazisa ukuthi baye ngakuphi ukuze bazivikele ezitheni zabo, futhi ngokwenze njalo, iNkosi iyobakhulula; futhi lokhu kwakuyinkolelo kaMoroni, futhi inhliziyoyakhe nempela yayithokoza ngalokhu; hhayi ekuchitheni igazi kodwa ekwenzeni okuhle, ekulondolozeni abantu bakhe, yebo, ekugcineni imiyalelo kaNkulunkulu, yebo, kanye nokwenqaba ububi.
- 17 Yebo, ngiqinisile, ngiqinisile ngithi kini, ukuba bonke abantu babekade benjengaye, futhi benjengaye, futhi beyokuba njengaye njalo, uMoroni, bheka, amandla esihogo uqobo abeyobhujiswa ingunaphakade; yebo, udeveli ubengenakuba namandla phezu kwezinhliziyoyabantwana babantu.
- 18 Bheka, wayeyindoda enjengo-Amoni, indodana kaMosiya, yebo, futhi ngisho njenganamanye amadodana kaMosiya, yebo, futhi ngokunjalo no-Alima kanye namadodana akhe, ngokuba bonke babe ngabantu baNkulunkulu.
- 19 Manje bheka, uHelamani kanye nabafowabo kwakungekhona ukuthi babenosizo oluncane kubantu kunalolo lukaMoroni; ngokuba balishumayela izwi likaNkulunkulu, futhi babhabhadisela ekuphendukeni wonke umuntu noma ngubani owayezowalalela amazwi abo.
- 20 Futhi bahamba ngalendlela, futhi abantu bazithoba ngenxa yamazwi abo, kangangokuthi babethandwa kakhulu yiNkosi, futhi ngalendlela babekhululekile ezimpini kanye nasemibangweni phakathi kwabo, yebo, ngisho kwaze kwaba yisikhathi esingangeminyaka emine.
- 21 Kodwa, njengoba ngishilo, ngasekupheleni konyaka weshumi nesishiyagalolunye, yebo, naphezu kokuthula phakathi kwabo, babephoqelekile bengathandi ukuthi balwe nabafowabo amaLamani.

And this was their faith, that by so doing God would prosper them in the land, or in other words, if they were faithful in keeping the commandments of God that he would prosper them in the land; yea, warn them to flee, or to prepare for war, according to their danger;

And also, that God would make it known unto them whither they should go to defend themselves against their enemies, and by so doing, the Lord would deliver them; and this was the faith of Moroni, and his heart did glory in it; not in the shedding of blood but in doing good, in preserving his people, yea, in keeping the commandments of God, yea, and resisting iniquity.

Yea, verily, verily I say unto you, if all men had been, and were, and ever would be, like unto Moroni, behold, the very powers of hell would have been shaken forever; yea, the devil would never have power over the hearts of the children of men.

Behold, he was a man like unto Ammon, the son of Mosiah, yea, and even the other sons of Mosiah, yea, and also Alma and his sons, for they were all men of God.

Now behold, Helaman and his brethren were no less serviceable unto the people than was Moroni; for they did preach the word of God, and they did baptize unto repentance all men whosoever would hearken unto their words.

And thus they went forth, and the people did humble themselves because of their words, inasmuch that they were highly favored of the Lord, and thus they were free from wars and contentions among themselves, yea, even for the space of four years.

But, as I have said, in the latter end of the nineteenth year, yea, notwithstanding their peace amongst themselves, they were compelled reluctantly to contend with their brethren, the Lamanites.

- 22 Yebo, ukuphetha, izimpi zabo namaLamani
azizange ziphele isikhathi esingangeminyaka
eminingi, naphezu kokungathandi kwabo
okukhulu.
- 23 Manje, babedabukile ukuthi bathathele
amaLamani izikhali, ngoba babengathokozi
ekuchitheni igazi; yebo, futhi lokhu
kwakungekhona kuphela—babadabukile ukuthi
babe yimbangela yokuthumela abaningi kangaka
babafowabo babakhiphe kulomhlaba baye
emhlabeni waphakade, bengazilungisele
ukuhlangana noNkulunkulu wabo.
- 24 Nokho, babengenakuvuma ukuthi babeke phansi
izimpilo zabo, ukuthi abafazi babo kanye
nabantwana babo babulawe ngonya lobuqaba
lwalabo abake baba ngabafowabo, yebo, futhi
ababehlubuke ebandleni labo, babashiya bahamba
bayohlangana namaLamani ukuze bababulale.
- 25 Yebo, babengenakukubekezelela ukuthi
abafowabo bathokoze ngegazi lamaNefi, uma nje
kwakusekhona labo ababesayigcina imiyalelo
kaNkulunkulu, ngokuba isethembiso seNkosi
sasiwukuthi, uma nje bengayigcina imiyalelo yayo
bayophumelela ezweni.

Yea, and in fine, their wars never did cease for the
space of many years with the Lamanites, notwith-
standing their much reluctance.

Now, they were sorry to take up arms against the
Lamanites, because they did not delight in the shed-
ding of blood; yea, and this was not all—they were
sorry to be the means of sending so many of their
brethren out of this world into an eternal world, un-
prepared to meet their God.

Nevertheless, they could not suffer to lay down
their lives, that their wives and their children should
be massacred by the barbarous cruelty of those who
were once their brethren, yea, and had dissented
from their church, and had left them and had gone to
destroy them by joining the Lamanites.

Yea, they could not bear that their brethren should
rejoice over the blood of the Nephites, so long as
there were any who should keep the commandments
of God, for the promise of the Lord was, if they
should keep his commandments they should prosper
in the land.

Alima 49

- 1 Manje kwenzeka ngenyanga yeshumi nanye ngonyaka weshumi nesishiyagalolunye, ngosuku lweshumi enyangueni yeshumi, amabutho amaLamani abonakala ehamba eya ngasezweni lakwa-Amoniha.
- 2 Futhi bheka, idolobha lase liphinde lakhiwa, futhi uMoroni wayesebeke ibutho ngasemnceleni wedolobha, futhi base bebeke ukungcola kwazungeza ukuze kubavikele emicibisholweni kanye nasematsheni amaLamani; ngokuba bheka, ayelwa ngamatshe kanye nangemicibisholo.
- 3 Bheka, ngithe idolobha lakwa-Amoniha lase liphinde lakhiwa. Ngithi kini, yebo, lase liphinde lakhiwa inxenye; futhi ngenxa yokuthi amaLamani ayeke alibhubhisa kanye ngenxa yobubi babantu, ayecabanga ukuthi lalizophinda lithunjwe kalula.
- 4 Kodwa bheka, kwaba kukhulu kangakanani ukudumala kwabo; ngokuba bheka, amaNefi ayesembe idundu lomhlabathi alizungezisa kuwo, elalilide ngendlela yokuthi amaLamani ayengakwazi ukujikijela amatshe awo kanye nemicibisholo yawo kubo ukuze ibalimaze, futhi ayengakwazi ukuza kubo ngaphandle kokuthi asebenzise indawo yokungena.
- 5 Manje ngalesi sikhathi izinduna ezinkulu zamaLamani zamangala kakhulu, ngenxa yobuhlakani bamaNefi ekulungiseni izindawo zawo zokuzivikela.
- 6 Manje abaholi bamaLamani babecabanga ukuthi, ngenxa yobukhulu benani labo, yebo, babecabanga ukuthi babezoba nenhlanhla yokuthi beze kubo njengoba babekade benzile ekuqaleni; yebo, futhi phezu kwalokho babe zilungiselele ngezihlangu, kanye nezivikelo zesifuba; futhi phezu kwalokho babezilungiselele ngezingubo zezikhumba, yebo, izingubo eziwugqinsi kakhulu ukuze bamboze ubunqunu babo.
- 7 Futhi ngokuzilungiselela kanje babecabanga ukuthi babezobehlula kalula futhi babafake abafowabo ngaphansi kwejoka lobugqili, noma bababulale noma bagwaze ibhece ngokuthanda kwabo.

Alma 49

And now it came to pass in the eleventh month of the nineteenth year, on the tenth day of the month, the armies of the Lamanites were seen approaching towards the land of Ammonihah.

And behold, the city had been rebuilt, and Moroni had stationed an army by the borders of the city, and they had cast up dirt round about to shield them from the arrows and the stones of the Lamanites; for behold, they fought with stones and with arrows.

Behold, I said that the city of Ammonihah had been rebuilt. I say unto you, yea, that it was in part rebuilt; and because the Lamanites had destroyed it once because of the iniquity of the people, they supposed that it would again become an easy prey for them.

But behold, how great was their disappointment; for behold, the Nephites had dug up a ridge of earth round about them, which was so high that the Lamanites could not cast their stones and their arrows at them that they might take effect, neither could they come upon them save it was by their place of entrance.

Now at this time the chief captains of the Lamanites were astonished exceedingly, because of the wisdom of the Nephites in preparing their places of security.

Now the leaders of the Lamanites had supposed, because of the greatness of their numbers, yea, they supposed that they should be privileged to come upon them as they had hitherto done; yea, and they had also prepared themselves with shields, and with breastplates; and they had also prepared themselves with garments of skins, yea, very thick garments to cover their nakedness.

And being thus prepared they supposed that they should easily overpower and subject their brethren to the yoke of bondage, or slay and massacre them according to their pleasure.

- 8 Kodwa bheka, ngokushaqeka kwabo okukhulu, babezilungiselele bona, ngendlela eyayingakaze yaziwe phakathi kwabantwana bakaLehi. Manje babewalungele amaLamani, ukuthi balwe ngendlela yemiyalelo kaMoroni.
- 9 Futhi kwenzeka ukuthi amaLamani, noma ama-Amalikiya, amangala kakhulu ngendlela ababezilungiselele ngayo impi.
- 10 Manje, ukuba inkosi u-Amalikiya yayize phansi iphuma ezweni lakwaNefi, isekhanda lempi yayo, mhlawumbe yayiyokwenza amaLamani ukuthi ahlasele amaNefi edolobheni lakwa-Amoniha; ngokuba bheka, yayingalikhathalelanga nakancane igazi labantu bayo.
- 11 Kodwa bheka, u-Amalikiya akazange ehle ukuzolwa. Futhi bheka, izinduna zakhe ezinkulu azizange zilokothe ziwahlasele amaNefi edolobheni lakwa-Amoniha, ngokuba uMoroni wayesezishintshile izindlela amaNefi ayenza ngazo izinto, kangangokuthi amaLamani adumala ngenxa yezindawo zawo zokuphepha futhi awakwazanga ukuza phezu kwawo.
- 12 Ngakho-ke aphindela ehlane, athatha inkambi yawo ahamba aya ngasezweni lakwaNowa, ecabanga ukuthi kwakuyiyona ndawo yawo elandelayo engcono ukuthi ahlasele amaNefi.
- 13 Ngokuba ayengazi ukuthi uMoroni wayeseziqinisele izitha, noma wayesakhe izinqaba zokuzivikela, kuwo wonke amadolobha ezweni lonke elalizungezile; ngakho-ke, ahamba aya ezweni lakwaNowa ngempokophelelo enkulu; yebo, izinduna zawo ezinkulu zeza phambili futhi zafunga ukuthi zazizobabulala abantu bakulelo dolobha.
- 14 Kodwa bheka, ngokumangala kwabo, idolobha lakwaNowa, ngaphambilini elaliyindawo eyayibuthakatha, manje, ngenxa kaMoroni, lase linamandla, yebo, ngisho ukwedlula amandla edolobha lakwa-Amoniha.

But behold, to their uttermost astonishment, they were prepared for them, in a manner which never had been known among the children of Lehi. Now they were prepared for the Lamanites, to battle after the manner of the instructions of Moroni.

And it came to pass that the Lamanites, or the Amalickiahites, were exceedingly astonished at their manner of preparation for war.

Now, if king Amalickiah had come down out of the land of Nephi, at the head of his army, perhaps he would have caused the Lamanites to have attacked the Nephites at the city of Ammonihah; for behold, he did care not for the blood of his people.

But behold, Amalickiah did not come down himself to battle. And behold, his chief captains durst not attack the Nephites at the city of Ammonihah, for Moroni had altered the management of affairs among the Nephites, insomuch that the Lamanites were disappointed in their places of retreat and they could not come upon them.

Therefore they retreated into the wilderness, and took their camp and marched towards the land of Noah, supposing that to be the next best place for them to come against the Nephites.

For they knew not that Moroni had fortified, or had built forts of security, for every city in all the land round about; therefore, they marched forward to the land of Noah with a firm determination; yea, their chief captains came forward and took an oath that they would destroy the people of that city.

But behold, to their astonishment, the city of Noah, which had hitherto been a weak place, had now, by the means of Moroni, become strong, yea, even to exceed the strength of the city Ammonihah.

- 15 Manje, bheka, lokhu kwabe kungukuhlakanipha kukaMoroni; ngokuba wayecabanga ukuthi babezoba nokulesaba idolobha lakwa-Amoniha; futhi njengoba idolobha lakwaNowa kwakuyileyo nxenye yezwe ngaleso sikhathi eyayibuthakathaka kakhulu, ngakho-ke babezohamba baye lapho ukuyohlasela; futhi lokhu kwenzeka njengezifiso zakhe.
- 16 Futhi bheka, uMoroni wayebeke uLehi ukuthi abe yinduna enkulu phezulu kwamadoda alelo dolobha; futhi kwakunguye kanye lowo Lehi owalwa namaLamani esigodini empumalanga yomfula iSidoni.
- 17 Manje bheka kwenzeka, ukuthi ngesikhathi amaLamani esethole ukuthi uLehi wayelawula idolobha aphinda adumala, ngokuba ayemsaba kakhulu uLehi; nokho izinduna zawo ezinkulu zazifungile ngesifungo ukulihlasela lelidolobha; ngakho-ke, zawaletsha amabutho azo.
- 18 Manje bheka, amaLamani awakwazanga ukungena ezinqabeni zamaNefi zokuzivikela nganoma ngayiphi enye indlela ngaphandle kokuthi kube ngendawo yokungena, ngenxa yokuphakama kogange olwalwakhiwe lwaya phezulu, kanye nokujula komsele owawumbiwe wazungeza, ngaphandle kokuthi kube ngendlela yokungena.
- 19 Futhi amaNefi ayezilungiselele ngalendlela-ke ukuthi abulale bonke abebefuna ukuzama ukuthi bagibele phezulu ukuze bangene enqabeni nanganoma iyiphi enye indlela, ngokuthi babajikijele ngamatshe kanye nangemicibisholo.
- 20 Ayezilungiselele ngalendlela, yebo, iqembu lamadoda awo anamandla amakhulu, ngezinkemba zawo kanye nezihlilingi zawo, ukuthi alahle phansi bonke ababeyozama ukuthi beze endaweni yabo yokuzivikela ngendawo yokungena; futhi ngalendlela azilungiselela ukuthi azivikele kumaLamani.
- 21 Futhi kwenzeka ukuthi izinduna zamaLamani zawaletsha amabutho azo phambi kwendawo yokungena, futhi zaqala ukulwa namaNefi, ukuze bangene endaweni yawo yokuzivikela; kodwa bheka, baqhutshwa baphindiswa emuva isikhathi nesikhathi, kangangokuthi babulawa kakhulu.

And now, behold, this was wisdom in Moroni; for he had supposed that they would be frightened at the city Ammonihah; and as the city of Noah had hitherto been the weakest part of the land, therefore they would march thither to battle; and thus it was according to his desires.

And behold, Moroni had appointed Lehi to be chief captain over the men of that city; and it was that same Lehi who fought with the Lamanites in the valley on the east of the river Sidon.

And now behold it came to pass, that when the Lamanites had found that Lehi commanded the city they were again disappointed, for they feared Lehi exceedingly; nevertheless their chief captains had sworn with an oath to attack the city; therefore, they brought up their armies.

Now behold, the Lamanites could not get into their forts of security by any other way save by the entrance, because of the highness of the bank which had been thrown up, and the depth of the ditch which had been dug round about, save it were by the entrance.

And thus were the Nephites prepared to destroy all such as should attempt to climb up to enter the fort by any other way, by casting over stones and arrows at them.

Thus they were prepared, yea, a body of their strongest men, with their swords and their slings, to smite down all who should attempt to come into their place of security by the place of entrance; and thus were they prepared to defend themselves against the Lamanites.

And it came to pass that the captains of the Lamanites brought up their armies before the place of entrance, and began to contend with the Nephites, to get into their place of security; but behold, they were driven back from time to time, insomuch that they were slain with an immense slaughter.

- 22 Manje ngesikhathi bebona ukuthi babengenakukwazi ukuthi bawathole amandla phezu kwamaNefi ngokungena ngaleyo ntuba, baqala ukuthi bambe bashonise phansi izindonga zomhlabathi ukuze bathole intuba eya emabuthweni abo, ukuze babe namathuba alinganayo okulwa; kodwa bheka, kulemizamo bashanelwa baphela nya ngamatshe kanye nemicibisholo eyayijikijelwa kubo; futhi esikhundleni sokugcwalisa imisele yabo ngokuthi badonse izindonga zomhlabathi, yagcwala yaba sezingeni elithize ngabafile babo kanye nangemzimba elimele.
- 23 Ngalandlela-ke amaNefi aba namandla onke phezu kwezitha zawo; futhi ngalandlela amaLamani azama ukuthi abulale amaNefi kwaze kwathi zonke izinduna zawo ezinkulu zabalawa; yebo, futhi kwabalawa amaLamani angaphezulu kwenkulungwane; okwathi, ngakolunye uhlangothi, kwangaba khona namunye umphefumulo wamaNefi owabalawa.
- 24 Kwakukhona cishe abangamashumi amahlanu abalimala, ababe hlatshwe yimicibisholo yamaLamani entubeni, kodwa babevikelekile ngezihlangu zabo, kanye nangezivikelo zesifuba, kanye nangezivikelo zekhanda, kangangokuthi izilonda zabo zazisemilenzeni yabo, eziningi zazo zazizimbi kakhulu.
- 25 Futhi kwenzeka, ukuthi ngesikhathi amaLamani ebona ukuthi izinduna zawo ezinkulu zonke zase zibulewe abalekela ehlane. Futhi kwenzeka ukuthi abuyela ezweni lakwaNefi, ukuthi ayobikela inkosi yawo, u-Amalikiya, owayengumNefi ngokuzalwa, mayelana nokulahlekelwa kwabo okukhulu.
- 26 Futhi kwenzeka ukuthi wabathukuthelela kakhulu abantu bakhe, ngenxa yokuthi wayengasifezanga isifiso sakhe kumaNefi; akakwazanga ukuwenza ukuthi abe ngaphansi kwejoka lobugqili.
- 27 Yebo, wathukuthela kakhulu, futhi wamqalekisa uNkulunkulu, futhi ngokunjalo noMoroni, efunga ngesifungo ukuthi uyoliphuza igazi lakhe; futhi lokhu ngenxa yokuthi uMoroni wayegcine imiyalelo kaNkulunkulu ekulungiseleleni ukuphepha kwabantu bakhe.

Now when they found that they could not obtain power over the Nephites by the pass, they began to dig down their banks of earth that they might obtain a pass to their armies, that they might have an equal chance to fight; but behold, in these attempts they were swept off by the stones and arrows which were thrown at them; and instead of filling up their ditches by pulling down the banks of earth, they were filled up in a measure with their dead and wounded bodies.

Thus the Nephites had all power over their enemies; and thus the Lamanites did attempt to destroy the Nephites until their chief captains were all slain; yea, and more than a thousand of the Lamanites were slain; while, on the other hand, there was not a single soul of the Nephites which was slain.

There were about fifty who were wounded, who had been exposed to the arrows of the Lamanites through the pass, but they were shielded by their shields, and their breastplates, and their head-plates, insomuch that their wounds were upon their legs, many of which were very severe.

And it came to pass, that when the Lamanites saw that their chief captains were all slain they fled into the wilderness. And it came to pass that they returned to the land of Nephi, to inform their king, Amalickiah, who was a Nephite by birth, concerning their great loss.

And it came to pass that he was exceedingly angry with his people, because he had not obtained his desire over the Nephites; he had not subjected them to the yoke of bondage.

Yea, he was exceedingly wroth, and he did curse God, and also Moroni, swearing with an oath that he would drink his blood; and this because Moroni had kept the commandments of God in preparing for the safety of his people.

- 28 Futhi kwenzeka, ukuthi ngakolunye uhlangothi, abantu baNefi nempela bayibonga iNkosi uNkulunkulu wabo, ngenxa yamandla ayo angenakulinganiswa ekubakhululeni ezandleni zezitha zabo.
- 29 Futhi ngalendlela yaphela kanjalo-ke iminyaka eyishumi nesishiyagalolunye yokubusa kwabehluleli phezu kwabantu baNefi.
- 30 Yebo, futhi kwaba khona ukuthula njalo phakathi kwabo, kanye nokuphumelela okukhulu kakhulu ebandleni ngenxa yokulalela kwabo kanye nenkuthalo ababa nayo ezwini likaNkulunkulu, elalishunyayelwe kubo nguHelamani, kanye noShibiloni, kanye noKoriantoni, kanye no-Amoni kanye naba fowabo, yebo, kanye nabo bonke labo ababegcotshwe ngokohlelo olungcwele lukaNkulunkulu, bebhahhadiselwe ekuphendukeni, futhi bathunyelwa ukuthi bayoshumayela phakathi kwabantu.

And it came to pass, that on the other hand, the people of Nephi did thank the Lord their God, because of his matchless power in delivering them from the hands of their enemies.

And thus ended the nineteenth year of the reign of the judges over the people of Nephi.

Yea, and there was continual peace among them, and exceedingly great prosperity in the church because of their heed and diligence which they gave unto the word of God, which was declared unto them by Helaman, and Shiblon, and Corianton, and Ammon and his brethren, yea, and by all those who had been ordained by the holy order of God, being baptized unto repentance, and sent forth to preach among the people.

Alima 50

- 1 Manje kwenzeka ukuthi uMoroni akazange ayeke ukwenza amalungiselelo empi, noma ukuvikela abantu bakhe kumaLamani; ngokuba wenza ukuthi amabutho akhe aqale ekuqaleni konyaka wamashumi amabili wokubusa kwabehluleli, ukuthi kumele baqale ukumba izindunduma zomhlabathi bazungeze wonke amadolobha, kulo lonke izwe okwakungelamaNefi.
- 2 Futhi ngaphezulu kwalezindunduma zomhlabathi wenza ukuthi kube khona izingodo, yebo, imisebenzi yezingodo ezakhiwe zaba wubude obungangobomuntu, zizungeze amadolobha.
- 3 Futhi wenza ukuthi kuyo leyo misebenzi yezingodo kube khona uhlaka lwezikhonkwane olwalwakhiwe phezu kwezingodo lwazungeza; futhi zaziqinile futhi zizinde.
- 4 Futhi wenza ukuthi kwakhiwe imibhoshongo eyayibheke kuyo leyo misebenzi yezikhonkwane, futhi wenza ukuthi kwakhiwe izindawo zokuzivikela kuyo leyo mibhoshongo, ukuze amatshe kanye nemicibisholo yamaLamani ingabalimazi.
- 5 Futhi babezilungiselele ukuthi bakwazi ukujikijela amatshe bephezulu lapho, ngokuthanda kwabo kanye nangokwamandla abo, bambulale owayezozama ukusondela eduze kwezindonga zedolobha.
- 6 Ngalandlela-ke uMoroni nempela wazilungisa izinqaba ukulungiselela ukuza kwezitha zabo, kuwo wonke amadolobha azungeze ezweni lonke.
- 7 Futhi kwenzeka ukuthi uMoroni wenza ukuthi amabutho akhe ahambe aye ehlane elisempumalanga; yebo, futhi bahamba bayowaqhuba wonke amaLamani ayesehlane elisempumalanga bawayisa emazweni awo, ayeseningizimu yezwe lakwaZarahemla.
- 8 Futhi izwe lakwaNefi lalihamba ngendlela eqondile kusukela empumalanga yolwandle kuya entshonalanga.

Alma 50

And now it came to pass that Moroni did not stop making preparations for war, or to defend his people against the Lamanites; for he caused that his armies should commence in the commencement of the twentieth year of the reign of the judges, that they should commence in digging up heaps of earth round about all the cities, throughout all the land which was possessed by the Nephites.

And upon the top of these ridges of earth he caused that there should be timbers, yea, works of timbers built up to the height of a man, round about the cities.

And he caused that upon those works of timbers there should be a frame of pickets built upon the timbers round about; and they were strong and high.

And he caused towers to be erected that overlooked those works of pickets, and he caused places of security to be built upon those towers, that the stones and the arrows of the Lamanites could not hurt them.

And they were prepared that they could cast stones from the top thereof, according to their pleasure and their strength, and slay him who should attempt to approach near the walls of the city.

Thus Moroni did prepare strongholds against the coming of their enemies, round about every city in all the land.

And it came to pass that Moroni caused that his armies should go forth into the east wilderness; yea, and they went forth and drove all the Lamanites who were in the east wilderness into their own lands, which were south of the land of Zarahemla.

And the land of Nephi did run in a straight course from the east sea to the west.

9 Futhi kwenzeka ukuthi ngesikhathi uMoroni esewaqhube wonke amaLamani wawakhipha ehlane lasempumalanga, elalisenyakatho yamazwe okwakungawabo, wenza ukuthi abahlali ababesezweni lakwaZarahemla kanye nababesezweni elalizungezile ukuthi bahambe baye ehlane elisempumalanga, ngisho naseminceleni engasogwini lolwandle, balithathe lelozwe.

10 Futhi waphinda wabeka amabutho eningizimu, emingceleni yokwakungokwabo, futhi wabenza ukuthi bamise izinqaba ukuze bavikele amabutho abo kanye nabantu babo ezandleni zezitha zabo.

11 Futhi ngaleyondlea wazinqamula zonke izinqaba zamaLamani ezazisehlane elisempumalanga, yebo, futhi kanjalo nasentshonalanga, eqinisa umngcele phakathi kwamaNefi namaLamani, phakathi kwezwe lakwaZarahemla nezwe lamaNefi, kusukela olwandle lwasentshonalanga, kuphikelele ngasesizalweni somfula iSidoni—amaNefi ezithathela lonke izwe elingasenyakatho, yebo, ngisho nalo lonke izwe elalingasenyakatho yezwe iNala, njengokuthanda kwabo.

12 Ngalendlela-ke uMoroni, kanye namabutho akhe, ayekhula nsukuzonke ngenxa yesiqiniseko sokuvikeleka imisebenzi yakhe eyasiletha kubo, nempela bafuna ukukuvimbela ukuqina kanye namandla amaLamani bawasuse aphele emazweni okungawabo, ukuze angabi namandla phezu kwamazwe abo.

13 Futhi kwenzeka ukuthi amaNefi aqala isisekelo sedolobha, futhi alibiza lelodolobha ngegama elithi iMoroni; futhi lalingasolwandle olungasempumalanga; futhi laliseningizimu ngasemnceleni walokho okungokwamaLamani.

14 Futhi phezu kwalokho baqala isisekelo sedolobha phakathi kwedolobha lakwaMoroni kanye nedolobha lakwa-Aroni, behlanganisa imincele yakwa-Aroni kanye neyakwaMoroni; futhi balibiza lelodolobha, noma lelozwe, ngegama elithi, iNefiha.

15 Futhi phezu kwalokho baqala ngawo kanye lowo nyaka ukwakha amadolobha amaningi enyakatho, elinye balakha ngandlela thize balibiza ngokuthi iLehi, elalisenyakatho ngaseminceleni yogu lolwandle.

And it came to pass that when Moroni had driven all the Lamanites out of the east wilderness, which was north of the lands of their own possessions, he caused that the inhabitants who were in the land of Zarahemla and in the land round about should go forth into the east wilderness, even to the borders by the seashore, and possess the land.

And he also placed armies on the south, in the borders of their possessions, and caused them to erect fortifications that they might secure their armies and their people from the hands of their enemies.

And thus he cut off all the strongholds of the Lamanites in the east wilderness, yea, and also on the west, fortifying the line between the Nephites and the Lamanites, between the land of Zarahemla and the land of Nephi, from the west sea, running by the head of the river Sidon—the Nephites possessing all the land northward, yea, even all the land which was northward of the land Bountiful, according to their pleasure.

Thus Moroni, with his armies, which did increase daily because of the assurance of protection which his works did bring forth unto them, did seek to cut off the strength and the power of the Lamanites from off the lands of their possessions, that they should have no power upon the lands of their possession.

And it came to pass that the Nephites began the foundation of a city, and they called the name of the city Moroni; and it was by the east sea; and it was on the south by the line of the possessions of the Lamanites.

And they also began a foundation for a city between the city of Moroni and the city of Aaron, joining the borders of Aaron and Moroni; and they called the name of the city, or the land, Nephiah.

And they also began in that same year to build many cities on the north, one in a particular manner which they called Lehi, which was in the north by the borders of the seashore.

16 Futhi waphela ngaleyondlela-ke unyaka wamashumi amabili.

17 Futhi babekulesi simo sokuphumelela abantu bakwaNefi ekuqaleni konyaka wamashumi amabili nanye wokubusa kwabehluleli kubantu bakwaNefi.

18 Futhi nempela baphumelela kakhulu, futhi banotha kakhulu; yebo, futhi nempela banda futhi bakhula baqina ezweni.

19 Futhi ngalendlela siyabona ukuthi zinomusa futhi zilunge kangakanani izezo zeNkosi, ekugcwaliseni wonke amazwi ayo kubantwana babantu; yebo, singabona ukuthi amazwi ayo ayaqinisekiswa, ngisho nangalesi sikhathi, akhuluma ngaso kuLehi, ethi:

20 Ubusisiwe kanye nabantwana bakho; futhi bayobusiswa, kangangoba beyoyigcina imiyalelo yami bayophumelela kulelizwe. Kodwa khumbula, kangangoba bengezukuyigcina imiyalelo yami bayohlukaniswa neNkosi.

21 Futhi siyabona ukuthi lezi zethembiso ziqinisekisiwe ebantwini baNefi; ngokuba kwakungukuxabana kanye nemibango yabo, yebo, ukubulalana kwabo, ukuphanga kwabo, ukukhonza kwabo izithombe, ubufebe babo, kanye nezinengiso zabo, okwabakhona phakathi kwabo, okwaletha kubo izimpi kanye nokubulawa kwabo.

22 Futhi labo ababethembekile ekugcineni imiyalelo yeNkosi bakhululiwe ngezikhathi zonke, ngesikhathi izinkulungwane zabafowabo ababi bethunyelwe ekuthunjweni, noma bebulewe ngenkamba, noma belahlekelwe wukholo, futhi bahlangana namaLamani.

23 Kodwa bheka akukaze nanini kube khona isikhathi esimnandi kanje phakathi kwabantu baNefi, kusukela ezinsukwini zikaNefi, njengasezinsukwini zikaMoroni, yebo, ngisho nangalesi sikhathi, onyakeni wamashumi amabili nanye wokubusa kwabehluleli.

24 Futhi kwenzeka ukuthi ngonyaka wamashumi amabili nambili wokubusa kwabehluleli nawo ngokunjalo waphela ngokuthula; yebo, futhi ngokunjalo nonyaka wamashumi amabili nantathu.

And thus ended the twentieth year.

And in these prosperous circumstances were the people of Nephi in the commencement of the twenty and first year of the reign of the judges over the people of Nephi.

And they did prosper exceedingly, and they became exceedingly rich; yea, and they did multiply and wax strong in the land.

And thus we see how merciful and just are all the dealings of the Lord, to the fulfilling of all his words unto the children of men; yea, we can behold that his words are verified, even at this time, which he spake unto Lehi, saying:

Blessed art thou and thy children; and they shall be blessed, inasmuch as they shall keep my commandments they shall prosper in the land. But remember, inasmuch as they will not keep my commandments they shall be cut off from the presence of the Lord.

And we see that these promises have been verified to the people of Nephi; for it has been their quarrellings and their contentions, yea, their murderings, and their plunderings, their idolatry, their whoredoms, and their abominations, which were among themselves, which brought upon them their wars and their destructions.

And those who were faithful in keeping the commandments of the Lord were delivered at all times, whilst thousands of their wicked brethren have been consigned to bondage, or to perish by the sword, or to dwindle in unbelief, and mingle with the Lamanites.

But behold there never was a happier time among the people of Nephi, since the days of Nephi, than in the days of Moroni, yea, even at this time, in the twenty and first year of the reign of the judges.

And it came to pass that the twenty and second year of the reign of the judges also ended in peace; yea, and also the twenty and third year.

- 25 Futhi kwenzeka ukuthi ekuqaleni konyaka wamashumi amabili nane wokubusa kwabehluleli, kwakuyoba khona ukuthula phakathi kwabantu baNefi ukuba kwakungazange kube ngenxa yombango owabakhona phakathi kwabo mayelana nezwe lakwaLehi, kanye nezwe lakwaMoriyantoni, ayehlangana emingceleni kaLehi; womabili ayesemingceleni ngasogwini lolwandle.
- 26 Ngokuba bheka, abantu okwakungabanini bezwe lakwaMoriyantoni nempela bafuna inxenye yezwe lakwaLehi; ngakho-ke kwaqala kwaba khona umbango oshisayo phakathi kwabo, kangangokuthi abantu bakwaMoriyantoni bathathela abafowabo izikhali, futhi babephokophele ukuthi bababulale ngenkemba.
- 27 Kodwa bheka, abantu ababengabanikazi bezwe lakwaLehi babalekela enkanjini kaMoroni, bayocela kuye usizo; ngokuba bheka babengekho ephutheni.
- 28 Futhi kwenzeka ukuthi ngesikhathi abantu bakwaMoriyantoni, ababeholwa yindoda igama layo okwakunguMoriyantoni, bethola ukuthi abantu bakwaLehi base bebalekele enkanjini kaMoroni, baba nokwesaba okukhulu hleze impi kaMoroni ize kubo futhi ibabulale.
- 29 Ngakho-ke, uMoriyantoni wakufaka ezinhliziyweni zabo ukuthi babaleke baye ezweni elalingasenyakatho, elalembozwe ngamachibi amakhulu amanzi, futhi balithathe kube ngelabo lelozwe elalingasenyakatho.
- 30 Futhi bheka, babengalifeza lelisu labo, (elaliyokuba yisizathu sokulila) kodwa bheka, uMoriyantoni eyindoda enolaka olukhulu, ngakho-ke ethukuthelele omunye wezincekukazi zakhe kakhulu, wawela phezu kwakhe wamshaya kakhulu.
- 31 Futhi kwenzeka ukuthi wabaleka, futhi weza enkanjini kaMoroni, futhi watshela uMoroni zonke izinto eziphathelele naloludaba, futhi kanjalo mayelana nezinhloso zabo zokubalekela ezweni elingasenyakatho.

And it came to pass that in the commencement of the twenty and fourth year of the reign of the judges, there would also have been peace among the people of Nephi had it not been for a contention which took place among them concerning the land of Lehi, and the land of Morianton, which joined upon the borders of Lehi; both of which were on the borders by the seashore.

For behold, the people who possessed the land of Morianton did claim a part of the land of Lehi; therefore there began to be a warm contention between them, insomuch that the people of Morianton took up arms against their brethren, and they were determined by the sword to slay them.

But behold, the people who possessed the land of Lehi fled to the camp of Moroni, and appealed unto him for assistance; for behold they were not in the wrong.

And it came to pass that when the people of Morianton, who were led by a man whose name was Morianton, found that the people of Lehi had fled to the camp of Moroni, they were exceedingly fearful lest the army of Moroni should come upon them and destroy them.

Therefore, Morianton put it into their hearts that they should flee to the land which was northward, which was covered with large bodies of water, and take possession of the land which was northward.

And behold, they would have carried this plan into effect, (which would have been a cause to have been lamented) but behold, Morianton being a man of much passion, therefore he was angry with one of his maid servants, and he fell upon her and beat her much.

And it came to pass that she fled, and came over to the camp of Moroni, and told Moroni all things concerning the matter, and also concerning their intentions to flee into the land northward.

- 32 Manje bheka, abantu ababesezweni iNala, noma ngokuyikho uMoroni, wesaba ukuthi babezolalela amazwi kaMoriyantoni futhi bahlangane nabantu bakhe, futhi ngaleyondlela wayezothola ukuthi abe ngumnini walezo zingxenye zezwe, lokho okwakuzoba nemiphumela enzima eyayizoba khona phakathi kwabantu baNefi, yebo, leyomiphumela eyayizoholela ekupheleni kwenkululeko yabo.
- 33 Ngakho-ke uMoroni wathumela ibutho, kanye nenkambi yalo, ukuthi bayonqanda abantu bakwaMoriyantoni, ukuthi bangabalekeli ezweni elingasenyakatho.
- 34 Futhi kwenzeka ukuthi abazange babanqande kwaze kwaba bafika eminceleni yezwe iNcithakalo; futhi lapho babanqanda, ngasemzileni omncane owawuholeleka ngasolwandle uya ezweni elingasenyakatho, yebo, ngasolwandle, entshonalanga kanye nasempumalanga.
- 35 Futhi kwenzeka ukuthi ibutho elalithunywe nguMoroni, elaliholwa yindoda igama layo okwakunguTeyankumi, nempela lahlangana nabantu bakaMoriyantoni; futhi babenenkani kakhulu abantu bakwaMoriyantoni, (befunzelelwa ngububi bakhe kanye namazwi akhe athophayo) kangangokuthi impi yaqala phakathi kwabo, lapho uTeyankumi nempela wambulala uMoriyantoni futhi wayihlula impi yakhe, futhi wabathatha wababopha, futhi wabuyela enkanjini kaMoroni. Futhi yaphela ngalendlela iminyaka engamashumi amabili nane yokubusa kwabehluleli kubantu bakwaNefi.
- 36 Futhi babuyiselwa ngalendlela emuva abantu bakwaMoriyantoni. Futhi emva kwesivumelwano sabo sokugcina ukuthula babuyiselwa ezweni lakwaMoriyantoni, ubumbano lwenzeka phakathi kwabo kanye nabantu bakwaLehi; futhi baphinde babuyiselwa emazweni abo.
- 37 Futhi kwenzeka ukuthi ngawo lowo nyaka abantu bakwaNefi okwabuyiselwa ngawo ukuthula kubo, ukuthi uNefiha, umahluleli omkhulu wesibili, wafa, ekade ephethe isihlalo sokwahlulela ngobuqotho obukhulu phambi kukaNkulunkulu.

Now behold, the people who were in the land Bountiful, or rather Moroni, feared that they would hearken to the words of Morianton and unite with his people, and thus he would obtain possession of those parts of the land, which would lay a foundation for serious consequences among the people of Nephi, yea, which consequences would lead to the overthrow of their liberty.

Therefore Moroni sent an army, with their camp, to head the people of Morianton, to stop their flight into the land northward.

And it came to pass that they did not head them until they had come to the borders of the land Desolation; and there they did head them, by the narrow pass which led by the sea into the land northward, yea, by the sea, on the west and on the east.

And it came to pass that the army which was sent by Moroni, which was led by a man whose name was Teancum, did meet the people of Morianton; and so stubborn were the people of Morianton, (being inspired by his wickedness and his flattering words) that a battle commenced between them, in the which Teancum did slay Morianton and defeat his army, and took them prisoners, and returned to the camp of Moroni. And thus ended the twenty and fourth year of the reign of the judges over the people of Nephi.

And thus were the people of Morianton brought back. And upon their covenanting to keep the peace they were restored to the land of Morianton, and a union took place between them and the people of Lehi; and they were also restored to their lands.

And it came to pass that in the same year that the people of Nephi had peace restored unto them, that Nephiah, the second chief judge, died, having filled the judgment-seat with perfect uprightness before God.

38 Nokho, wayenqabile ku-Alima ukuthi athathe imibhalo kanye nalezo zinto ezazaziswa ngu-Alima kanye noyise ukuthi zingezingcwele kakhulu; ngakho-ke u-Alima wazinikeza indodana yakhe, uHelamani.

39 Bheka, kwenzeka ukuthi indodana kaNefiha yabekwa ukuthi ithathe isihlalo sokwahlulela, esikhundleni sikayise; yebo, yabekwa ukuthi ibe wumahluleli omkhulu kanye nombusi wabantu, ngesifungo kanye nangesimiso esingcwele sokwahlulela ngokulunga, kanye nokugcina ukuthula kanye nenkululeko yabantu, kanye nokubanikeza amalungelo abo angcwele okukhonza iNkosi uNkulunkulu wabo, yebo, nokuthi isekele futhi igcine indlela kaNkulunkulu izinsuku zonke zayo, futhi ilethe ababi ukuthi bahlulelwe ngokwamacala abo.

40 Manje bheka, igama layo kwakunguPahorani. Futhi uPahorani nempela wasithatha isihlalo sikayise, futhi nempela waqala ukubusa kwakhe ekupheleni konyaka wamashumi amabili nane, kubantu baNefi.

Nevertheless, he had refused Alma to take possession of those records and those things which were esteemed by Alma and his fathers to be most sacred; therefore Alma had conferred them upon his son, Helaman.

Behold, it came to pass that the son of Nephihah was appointed to fill the judgment-seat, in the stead of his father; yea, he was appointed chief judge and governor over the people, with an oath and sacred ordinance to judge righteously, and to keep the peace and the freedom of the people, and to grant unto them their sacred privileges to worship the Lord their God, yea, to support and maintain the cause of God all his days, and to bring the wicked to justice according to their crime.

Now behold, his name was Pahoran. And Pahoran did fill the seat of his father, and did commence his reign in the end of the twenty and fourth year, over the people of Nephi.

Alima 51

- 1 Manje kwenzeka ekuqaleni konyaka wamashumi amabili nanhlanu wokubusa kwabehluleli kubantu bakwaNefi, sebemise ukuthula phakathi kwabantu baLehi kanye nabantu baMoriyantoni mayelana namazwe abo, futhi sebeqale unyaka wamashumi amabili nanhlanu ngokuthula;
- 2 Nokho, abakugcinanga isikhathi eside ukuthula okuphelele ezweni, ngokuba kwaqala ukuthi kube khona umbango phakathi kwabantu mayelana nomahluleli omkhulu uPahorani; ngokuba bheka, kwakukhona inxenye yabantu ababenesifiso sokuthi izigaba ezithile ezimbalwa zomthetho kumele ziguqulwe.
- 3 Kodwa bheka, uPahorani akazange afune noma avume ukuthi umthetho uguqulwe; ngakho-ke, akazange abalalele labo ababethumele amazwi abo nezicelo mayelana nokuguqulwa komthetho.
- 4 Ngakho-ke, labo ababenesifiso sokuthi umthetho uguqulwe bamthukuthelela, futhi bafisa ukuthi angabe esaba umahluleli omkhulu ezweni; ngakho-ke kwaqubuka impikiswano eshisayo mayelana naloludaba, kodwa akubanga khona ukuchitheka kwegazi.
- 5 Futhi kwenzeka ukuthi labo ababenesifiso sokuthi uPahorani asuswe esihlalweni sokwahlulela babebizwa ngokuthi ngabantu benkosi, ngokuba babefisa ukuthi umthetho uguqulwe ngendlela yokuthi baketule umkhandlu ophetheyo okhululekile futhi bese bebeka inkosi ezweni.
- 6 Futhi labo ababenesifiso sokuthi uPahorani ahlale ewumahluleli omkhulu ezweni bazithathela igama elithi ngabantu abathanda inkululeko; futhi ngalendlela kwaba khona uqhekeko phakathi kwabo, ngokuba abantu abathanda inkululeko babefungile noma babenze isivumelwano sokuthi bagcine amalungelo abo kanye nenzuzo yenkolo yabo ngomkhandlu ophetheyo okhululekile.

Alma 51

And now it came to pass in the commencement of the twenty and fifth year of the reign of the judges over the people of Nephi, they having established peace between the people of Lehi and the people of Morianton concerning their lands, and having commenced the twenty and fifth year in peace;

Nevertheless, they did not long maintain an entire peace in the land, for there began to be a contention among the people concerning the chief judge Pahoran; for behold, there were a part of the people who desired that a few particular points of the law should be altered.

But behold, Pahoran would not alter nor suffer the law to be altered; therefore, he did not hearken to those who had sent in their voices with their petitions concerning the altering of the law.

Therefore, those who were desirous that the law should be altered were angry with him, and desired that he should no longer be chief judge over the land; therefore there arose a warm dispute concerning the matter, but not unto bloodshed.

And it came to pass that those who were desirous that Pahoran should be dethroned from the judgment-seat were called king-men, for they were desirous that the law should be altered in a manner to overthrow the free government and to establish a king over the land.

And those who were desirous that Pahoran should remain chief judge over the land took upon them the name of freemen; and thus was the division among them, for the freemen had sworn or covenanted to maintain their rights and the privileges of their religion by a free government.

- 7 Futhi kwenzeka ukuthi loludaba lombango wabo lwaxazululwa ngezwi labantu. Futhi kwenzeka ukuthi izwi labantu lavumelana nabantu abathanda inkululeko, futhi uPahorani wasigcina isihlalo sokwahlulela, lokho okwaletha injabulo enkulu phakathi kwabafowabo baPahorani futhi ngokunjalo nabaningi babantu abathanda inkululeko, futhi ababathulisa abantu benkosi, kangangoba ababange besalokotha nakancane bayiphikise kodwa baphoqeleka ukuthi bayigcine indlela yenkululeko.
- 8 Manje labo ababevumelana namakhosi kwakuyilabo ababengabasemakhosini ohlanga, futhi babefuna ukuthi babe ngamakhosi; futhi babesekelwa yilabo ababefuna amandla kanye negunya phezu kwabantu.
- 9 Kodwa bheka, lesi kwakuyisikhathi esibucayi sokuthi kube khona imibango enjena phakathi kwabantu baNefi; ngokuba bheka, u-Amalikiya wayesephindile futhi waphela izinhliziyi zabantu bamaLamani ngokumelene nabantu bamaNefi, futhi wayeseqoqela ndawonye amabutho kuzo zonke izinxenye zezwe lakhe, futhi ewahlomisa, futhi elungiselela impi ngakho konke ukukhuthala; ngokuba wayefungele ukuliphuza igazi likaMoroni.
- 10 Kodwa bheka, sizobona ukuthi isethembiso sakhe asenza wayegagamele; noma kunjalo wazilungiselela kanye namabutho akhe ukuthi beze bazolwa namaNefi.
- 11 Manje amabutho akhe ayengasemaningi kakhulu njengakuqala, ngenxa yezinkulungwane eziningi ezazibulewe ngesandla samaNefi; kodwa naphezu kokulahlekelwa kwabo okukhulu, u-Amalikiya waqoqela ndawonye ibutho elikhulu ngokumangalisayo, kangangokuthi akesabanga ukwehlela ezansi ezweni lakwaZarahemla.
- 12 Yebo, ngisho no-Amalikiya uqobo lwakhe nempela wehlela ezansi, ehola amaLamani. Futhi kwakusonyakeni wamashumi amabili nanhlanu wokubusa kwabehluleli; futhi kwakungaso kanye leso sikhathi lapho base beqale ukuzixazulula izindaba zabo zemibango mayelana nomehluleli omkhulu, uPahorani.

And it came to pass that this matter of their contention was settled by the voice of the people. And it came to pass that the voice of the people came in favor of the freemen, and Pahoran retained the judgment-seat, which caused much rejoicing among the brethren of Pahoran and also many of the people of liberty, who also put the king-men to silence, that they durst not oppose but were obliged to maintain the cause of freedom.

Now those who were in favor of kings were those of high birth, and they sought to be kings; and they were supported by those who sought power and authority over the people.

But behold, this was a critical time for such contentions to be among the people of Nephi; for behold, Amalickiah had again stirred up the hearts of the people of the Lamanites against the people of the Nephites, and he was gathering together soldiers from all parts of his land, and arming them, and preparing for war with all diligence; for he had sworn to drink the blood of Moroni.

But behold, we shall see that his promise which he made was rash; nevertheless, he did prepare himself and his armies to come to battle against the Nephites.

Now his armies were not so great as they had hitherto been, because of the many thousands who had been slain by the hand of the Nephites; but notwithstanding their great loss, Amalickiah had gathered together a wonderfully great army, insomuch that he feared not to come down to the land of Zarahemla.

Yea, even Amalickiah did himself come down, at the head of the Lamanites. And it was in the twenty and fifth year of the reign of the judges; and it was at the same time that they had begun to settle the affairs of their contentions concerning the chief judge, Pahoran.

13 Futhi kwenzeka ukuthi ngesikhathi labantu ababebizwa ngokuthi ngabantu benkosi sebezwile ukuthi amaLamani ayeza ehlela ezansi ukuzolwa nabo, bajabula ezinhliziyweni zabo; futhi benqaba ukuthatha izikhali, ngokuba babemthukuthelele kakhulu umahluleli omkhulu, futhi ngokunjalo nabantu abathanda inkululeko, kangangokuthi abafunanga ukuthatha izikhali ukuthi bavikele izwe labo.

14 Futhi kwenzeka ukuthi ngesikhathi uMoroni ekubona lokhu, futhi phezu kwalokho ebona ukuthi amaLamani ayeseza eminceleni yezwe, wathukuthela kakhulu ngenxa yenkani yalabo bantu ayekade esebasebenzele ngokukhuthala okukhulu ukubavikela; yebo, wathukuthela kakhulu; umphefumulo wakhe wawugcwele intukuthelo ngenxa yabo.

15 Futhi kwenzeka ukuthi wathumela isicelo, ngezwi labantu, kumphathi wezwe, efisa ukuthi asifunde, futhi amnike amandla okuphoqelela labo bahlubuki ukuthi bavikele izwe labo noma-ke ababulale.

16 Ngokuba kwakungumsebenzi wakhe wokuqala ukuthi aqede lemibango enjena kanye nokungezwani phakathi kwabantu; ngokuba bheka, kuze kube manje lokhu kwakuyikho okwabangela konke ukonakala kwabo. Futhi kwenzeka ukuthi lokhu kwavunyelwa njengokwezwi labantu.

17 Futhi kwenzeka ukuthi uMoroni wayala ukuthi ibutho lakhe lihambe liyokulwa nalabo bantu-benkosi, ukuthi badonsele phansi ukuzikhukhumeza kwabo kanye nesithunzi sabo futhi babalinganise nomhlabathi, noma kungenjalo bathathe izikhali futhi basekele indlela yenkululeko.

18 Futhi kwenzeka ukuthi amabutho nempela ahamba ayolwa nabo; futhi nempela akudonsela phansi ukuzikhukhumeza kwabo kanye nesithunzi sabo, kangangokuthi ngesikhathi bephakamisa izikhali zabo zempi ukuthi balwe nabantu baMoroni babulawa, futhi balinganiswa nomhlabathi.

And it came to pass that when the men who were called king-men had heard that the Lamanites were coming down to battle against them, they were glad in their hearts; and they refused to take up arms, for they were so wroth with the chief judge, and also with the people of liberty, that they would not take up arms to defend their country.

And it came to pass that when Moroni saw this, and also saw that the Lamanites were coming into the borders of the land, he was exceedingly wroth because of the stubbornness of those people whom he had labored with so much diligence to preserve; yea, he was exceedingly wroth; his soul was filled with anger against them.

And it came to pass that he sent a petition, with the voice of the people, unto the governor of the land, desiring that he should read it, and give him (Moroni) power to compel those dissenters to defend their country or to put them to death.

For it was his first care to put an end to such contentions and dissensions among the people; for behold, this had been hitherto a cause of all their destruction. And it came to pass that it was granted according to the voice of the people.

And it came to pass that Moroni commanded that his army should go against those king-men, to pull down their pride and their nobility and level them with the earth, or they should take up arms and support the cause of liberty.

And it came to pass that the armies did march forth against them; and they did pull down their pride and their nobility, insomuch that as they did lift their weapons of war to fight against the men of Moroni they were hewn down and leveled to the earth.

- 19 Futhi kwenzeka ukuthi babeyizinkulungwane ezine labo bahlubuki ababulawa ngenkemba; futhi labo baholi babo ababengabulawanga empini bathathwa baphonswa etilongweni, ngokuba sasingekho isikhathi sokuqulwa kwamacala abo ngalesi sikhathi.
- 20 Futhi insalela yalabo bahlubuki, kunokuthi ithelwe phansi othulini ngenkemba, yavumela isibonakalo senkululeko, futhi yaphoqwa ukuthi isiphakamise isibonakaliso senkululeko emibhoshongweni yabo, kanye nasemadolobheni abo, futhi ithathe izikhali ivikele izwe labo.
- 21 Futhi ngalendlela uMoroni wabaqeda abantu benkosi kangangokuthi kwakungasekho namunye owayaziwa ngaleli gama labantu benkosi; futhi ngalendlela wayiqeda inkani kanye nokuziqhenya kwalabo bantu ababezibiza ngabasemakhosini ohlanga; kodwa babekwa phansi ukuthi bazithobe njengabafowabo, futhi balwele inkululeko yabo ngesibindi ekuthunjweni.
- 22 Bheka, kwenzeka ukuthi ngesikhathi uMoroni esaqeda izimpi kanye nemibango phakathi kwabantu bakhe uqobo, futhi ebafrica phansi kokuthula kanye nempucuko, futhi esenza imithetho yokulungiselela impi namaLamani, bheka amaLamani ayesengenile ezweni lakwaMoroni, elalisemingceleni ngasogwini lolwandle.
- 23 Futhi kwenzeka ukuthi amaNefi ayesedolobheni lakwaMoroni ayengenawo amandla ngokwanele; ngakho-ke u-Amalikiya nempela wawakhipha, ebulala amaningi. Futhi kwenzeka ukuthi u-Amalikiya walithatha idolobha, yebo, wathatha nazo zonke izinqaba zawo.
- 24 Futhi labo ababaleka baphuma edolobheni lakwaMoroni baya edolobheni lakwaNefi; futhi phezu kwalokho abantu basedolobheni lakwaLehi babuthana ndawonye, futhi benza amalungiselelo, futhi babekulungele ukuthi bamelane namaLamani empini.
- 25 Kodwa kwenzeka ukuthi u-Amalikiya akafunanga ukuwavumela amaLamani ukuthi ahambe aye edolobheni lakwaNefi ukuyolwa, kodwa wawagcina ezansi ngasogwini lolwandle, eshiya amadoda kuwo wonke amadolobha ukuthi alivikele.

And it came to pass that there were four thousand of those dissenters who were hewn down by the sword; and those of their leaders who were not slain in battle were taken and cast into prison, for there was no time for their trials at this period.

And the remainder of those dissenters, rather than be smitten down to the earth by the sword, yielded to the standard of liberty, and were compelled to hoist the title of liberty upon their towers, and in their cities, and to take up arms in defence of their country.

And thus Moroni put an end to those king-men, that there were not any known by the appellation of king-men; and thus he put an end to the stubbornness and the pride of those people who professed the blood of nobility; but they were brought down to humble themselves like unto their brethren, and to fight valiantly for their freedom from bondage.

Behold, it came to pass that while Moroni was thus breaking down the wars and contentions among his own people, and subjecting them to peace and civilization, and making regulations to prepare for war against the Lamanites, behold, the Lamanites had come into the land of Moroni, which was in the borders by the seashore.

And it came to pass that the Nephites were not sufficiently strong in the city of Moroni; therefore Amalickiah did drive them, slaying many. And it came to pass that Amalickiah took possession of the city, yea, possession of all their fortifications.

And those who fled out of the city of Moroni came to the city of Nephiah; and also the people of the city of Lehi gathered themselves together, and made preparations and were ready to receive the Lamanites to battle.

But it came to pass that Amalickiah would not suffer the Lamanites to go against the city of Nephiah to battle, but kept them down by the seashore, leaving men in every city to maintain and defend it.

- 26 Futhi waqhubeka ngalendlela, ethatha amaningi amadolobha, idolobha lakwaNefiha, nedolobha lakwaLehi, nedolobha lakwaMoriyantoni, nedolobha lakwa-Omineri, nedolobha lakwaGide, kanye nedolobha lakwaMuleki, wonke ayeseminceleni empumalanga ngasogwini lolwandle.
- 27 Futhi amaLamani awathola ngalendlela, ngobuqili buka-Amalikiya, amadolobha amaningi kangaka, ngamabutho abo angabaleki, wonke ayeqiniswe kakhulu ngendlela yokuqiniswa kukaMoroni; wonke enza ukuthi amaLamani abe nezinqaba eziqinile.
- 28 Futhi kwenzeka ukuthi ahamba aya eminceleni yezwe iNala, ebalekisa amaNefi ayephambi kwawo futhi ebulala amaningi.
- 29 Kodwa kwenzeka ukuthi ahlangebuzana noTeyankumi, owayebulele uMoriyantoni futhi owayekade enqande abantu bakhe ekubalekeni kwakhe.
- 30 Futhi kwenzeka ukuthi wamnganda no-Amalikiya, njengoba ayesehamba nebutho lakhe elikhulu ukuze athathe izwe iNala, futhi ngokunjalo nezwe elingasenyakatho.
- 31 Kodwa bheka wahlangabezana nembibizane ngokunqwamana noTeyankumi kanye nabantu bakhe, ngokuba babengamaqhawe amakhulu; ngokuba ngayinye indoda kaTeyankumi nempela yayiwedlula amaLamani ngamandla abo kanye nangobuciko bokulwa, kangangokuthi nempela bawahlula amaLamani.
- 32 Futhi kwenzeka ukuthi nempela bawahlupha, kangangokuthi bawahulala kwaze kwaba mnyama. Futhi kwenzeka ukuthi uTeyankumi kanye nabantu bakhe bagxumeka amatende abo eminceleni yezwe iNala; kwathi u-Amalikiya wagxumeka amatende akhe emingceleni yosebe lolwandle ngasogwini lolwandle, futhi abalekiswa ngalendlela.
- 33 Futhi kwenzeka ukuthi ngesikhathi sebufikile ubusuku, uTeyankumi kanye nenceku yakhe ngesinyenyela bahamba ngobusuku, baya enkanjini ka-Amalikiya; futhi bheka, ubuthongo babubagabhile ngenxa yokukhathala kwabo okukhulu, okwakwenziwe yimisebenzi kanye nokushisa kosuku.

And thus he went on, taking possession of many cities, the city of Nephiah, and the city of Lehi, and the city of Morianton, and the city of Omner, and the city of Gid, and the city of Mulek, all of which were on the east borders by the seashore.

And thus had the Lamanites obtained, by the cunning of Amalickiah, so many cities, by their numberless hosts, all of which were strongly fortified after the manner of the fortifications of Moroni; all of which afforded strongholds for the Lamanites.

And it came to pass that they marched to the borders of the land Bountiful, driving the Nephites before them and slaying many.

But it came to pass that they were met by Teancum, who had slain Morianton and had headed his people in his flight.

And it came to pass that he headed Amalickiah also, as he was marching forth with his numerous army that he might take possession of the land Bountiful, and also the land northward.

But behold he met with a disappointment by being repulsed by Teancum and his men, for they were great warriors; for every man of Teancum did exceed the Lamanites in their strength and in their skill of war, insomuch that they did gain advantage over the Lamanites.

And it came to pass that they did harass them, insomuch that they did slay them even until it was dark. And it came to pass that Teancum and his men did pitch their tents in the borders of the land Bountiful; and Amalickiah did pitch his tents in the borders on the beach by the seashore, and after this manner were they driven.

And it came to pass that when the night had come, Teancum and his servant stole forth and went out by night, and went into the camp of Amalickiah; and behold, sleep had overpowered them because of their much fatigue, which was caused by the labors and heat of the day.

- 34 Futhi kwenzeka ukuthi uTeyankumi wahamba ngesinyenyela ngasese wangena etendeni lenkosi, futhi wayihlaba ngentshumentshu enhliziyweni yayo; futhi nempela wayibulala inkosi khona manjalo kangokuthi akazivusanga izinceku zayo.
- 35 Futhi waphinda wabuyela futhi ngasese enkanjini yakhe, futhi bheka, abantu bakhe babelele, futhi wabavusa wabatshela zonke izinto ayesezenzile.
- 36 Futhi wenza ukuthi amabutho akhe azilungiselele, hleze amaLamani ayesevukile futhi esezoza kubo.
- 37 Futhi waphela ngalendlela-ke unyaka wamashumi amabili nanhlanu wokubusa kwabehluleli kubantu baNefi; futhi zaphela ngalendlela-ke izinsuku zika-Amalikiya.

And it came to pass that Teancum stole privily into the tent of the king, and put a javelin to his heart; and he did cause the death of the king immediately that he did not awake his servants.

And he returned again privily to his own camp, and behold, his men were asleep, and he awoke them and told them all the things that he had done.

And he caused that his armies should stand in readiness, lest the Lamanites had awakened and should come upon them.

And thus endeth the twenty and fifth year of the reign of the judges over the people of Nephi; and thus endeth the days of Amalickiah.

Alima 52

- 1 Manje, kwenzeka ukuthi ngonyaka wamashumi amabili nesithupha wokubusa kwabehluleli kubantu bakwaNefi, bheka, ngesikhathi amaLamani evuka ngosuku lokuqala lwenyanga yokuqala, bheka, bathola u-Amalikiya efile etendeni lakhe; futhi phezu kwalokho abona ukuthi uTeyankumi wayesekulungele ukuthi alwe nabo ngalolo suku.
- 2 Manje, ngesikhathi amaLamani ekubona lokhu esaba; futhi aliyeka iqhinga lawo lokuhamba aye ezweni elingasenyakatho, futhi ahlehlela emuva kanye nayo yonke impi yawo aya edolobheni lakwaMuleki, futhi afuna ukuphepha ezinqabeni zawo.
- 3 Futhi kwenzeka ukuthi umfowabo ka-Amalikiya wabekwa ukuthi abe yinkosi phezu kwabantu; futhi igama lakhe kwakungu-Amoroni; ngakho-ke inkosi u-Amoroni, umfowabo wenkosi u-Amalikiya, wabekwa ukuthi abuse esikhundleni sakhe.
- 4 Futhi kwenzeka ukuthi wayala ukuthi abantu bakhe bawagcine lawo madolobha, ababewathathe ngokuchitha igazi; ngokuba akukho madolobha abawathatha ngaphandle kokuchitha igazi eliningi.
- 5 Manje, uTeyankumi wabona ukuthi amaLamani ayezimisele ukugcina lawo madolobha ayewathathile, kanye nalezo zinxenye zezwe ayezithathile kwaba ngezawo; futhi phezu kwalokho ngokubona ubuningi besibalo sawo, uTeyankumi wacabanga ukuthi kwakungadingekile ukuthi azame ukuthi awahlasele ezinqabeni zawo.
- 6 Kodwa wabagcina abantu bakhe ndawo zonke, sengathi benza amalungiselelo empi; yebo, futhi ngempela wayelungiselela ukuthi azivikele kuwo, ngokukhuphula izindonga zizungeze futhi elungiselela izindawo zokucasha.
- 7 Futhi kwenzeka ukuthi waqhubeka kanjalo elungiselela impi kwaze kwaba uMoroni uthumela isibalo esikhulu samadoda ukuthi ayoqinisa ibutho lakhe.
- 8 Futhi uMoroni phezu kwalokho wathumela imiyalelo kuye ukuthi azigcine zonke iziboshwa ezaziwele ezandleni zakhe; njengoba amaLamani ayebophe iziboshwa eziningi, ukuthi azigcine zonke iziboshwa zamaLamani njengesihlengo salabo amaLamani ayebathathile.

Alma 52

And now, it came to pass in the twenty and sixth year of the reign of the judges over the people of Nephi, behold, when the Lamanites awoke on the first morning of the first month, behold, they found Amalickiah was dead in his own tent; and they also saw that Teancum was ready to give them battle on that day.

And now, when the Lamanites saw this they were affrighted; and they abandoned their design in marching into the land northward, and retreated with all their army into the city of Mulek, and sought protection in their fortifications.

And it came to pass that the brother of Amalickiah was appointed king over the people; and his name was Ammoron; thus king Ammoron, the brother of king Amalickiah, was appointed to reign in his stead.

And it came to pass that he did command that his people should maintain those cities, which they had taken by the shedding of blood; for they had not taken any cities save they had lost much blood.

And now, Teancum saw that the Lamanites were determined to maintain those cities which they had taken, and those parts of the land which they had obtained possession of; and also seeing the enormity of their number, Teancum thought it was not expedient that he should attempt to attack them in their forts.

But he kept his men round about, as if making preparations for war; yea, and truly he was preparing to defend himself against them, by casting up walls round about and preparing places of resort.

And it came to pass that he kept thus preparing for war until Moroni had sent a large number of men to strengthen his army.

And Moroni also sent orders unto him that he should retain all the prisoners who fell into his hands; for as the Lamanites had taken many prisoners, that he should retain all the prisoners of the Lamanites as a ransom for those whom the Lamanites had taken.

9 Futhi phezu kwalokho wathumela imiyalelo kuye ukuthi aqinise izwe iNala, futhi aqinise leyondlela encane eyayiholela ezweni elingasenyakatho, hleze amaLamani ayithole leyo ndawo futhi bese eba namandla okubahlupha macala onke.

10 Futhi uMoroni phezu kwalokho wathumela kuye, efisa ukuthi athembeke ekugcineni leyo nxenye yezwe, futhi nokuthi afune wonke amathuba okuwahlupha amaLamani kuleyo nxenye, ngokwamandla akhe ayenawo, ukuze mhlawumbe aphinde awathathe ngecebo noma ngenye indlela lawo madolobha ayekade ethathwe ezandleni zabo; futhi nokuthi phezu kwalokho ahlumelelise futhi aqinise amadolobha ndawo zonke, lawo ayengazange awele ezandleni zamaLamani.

11 Futhi waphinde wathi kuye, bengizoza kuwe, kodwa bheka, amaLamani aphezu kwethu eminceleni yezwe ngasolwandle olusentshonalanga; futhi bheka, ngizowahlasela, ngakho-ke anginakukwazi ukuza kuwe.

12 Manje, inkosi (u-Amoroni) wayesehambile waphuma ezweni lakwaZarahemla, futhi wabe esazise indlovukazi mayelana nokufa komfowabo, futhi wabe eseqoqele ndawonye isibalo esikhulu samadoda futhi sesihambe sayokulwa namaNefi eminceleni ngasolwandle olusentshonalanga.

13 Futhi ngalendlela wayezama ukuwahlupha amaNefi, kanye nokudonsela kude inxenye yamabutho awo ukuthi aye kuleyo nxenye yezwe, ngesikhathi eseyale labo ayekade ebashiye ukuthi bathathe amadolobha ayekade ewathathile, futhi nokuthi bawahluphe amaNefi eminceleni ngasolwandle olusempumalanga, futhi bawathathe amazwe abo kangangoba kwakusemandleni abo, ngokwamandla amabutho abo.

14 Ngenxa yalokhu amaNefi aba kulezo zimo eziyingozi ekupheleni konyaka wamashumi amabili nesithupha wokubusa kwabehluleli kubantu baNefi.

And he also sent orders unto him that he should fortify the land Bountiful, and secure the narrow pass which led into the land northward, lest the Lamanites should obtain that point and should have power to harass them on every side.

And Moroni also sent unto him, desiring him that he would be faithful in maintaining that quarter of the land, and that he would seek every opportunity to scourge the Lamanites in that quarter, as much as was in his power, that perhaps he might take again by stratagem or some other way those cities which had been taken out of their hands; and that he also would fortify and strengthen the cities round about, which had not fallen into the hands of the Lamanites.

And he also said unto him, I would come unto you, but behold, the Lamanites are upon us in the borders of the land by the west sea; and behold, I go against them, therefore I cannot come unto you.

Now, the king (Ammoron) had departed out of the land of Zarahemla, and had made known unto the queen concerning the death of his brother, and had gathered together a large number of men, and had marched forth against the Nephites on the borders by the west sea.

And thus he was endeavoring to harass the Nephites, and to draw away a part of their forces to that part of the land, while he had commanded those whom he had left to possess the cities which he had taken, that they should also harass the Nephites on the borders by the east sea, and should take possession of their lands as much as it was in their power, according to the power of their armies.

And thus were the Nephites in those dangerous circumstances in the ending of the twenty and sixth year of the reign of the judges over the people of Nephi.

- 15 Kodwa bheka, kwenzeka ngonyaka wamashumi amabili nesikhombisa wokubusa kwabehluleli, ukuthi uTeyankumi, ngokuyalelwa nguMoroni—owayebeke amabutho ukuthi avikele imincele eseningizimu kanye nesentshonalanga yezwe, futhi owayeseqale uhambo oluya ngasezweni iNala, ukuze asize uTeyankumi ngabantu bakhe ekuthatheni futhi amadolobha lawo ayekade ebalahlekele—
- 16 Futhi kwenzeka ukuthi uTeyankumi wayethole imiyalelo yokuthi ahlasele idolobha lakwaMuleki, aphinde futhi alithathe uma kwakungase kwenzeke.
- 17 Futhi kwenzeka ukuthi uTeyankumi wenza amalungiselelo ukuthi ahlasele idolobha lakwaMuleki, futhi wahamba nebutho lakhe wayowahlasela amaLamani; kodwa wabona ukuthi kwakulukhuni ukuthi wayengawahlula ngesikhathi esezinqabeni zawo; ngakho-ke wawayeka amacebo akhe futhi waphindela edolobheni iNala, ukuthi alindele ukufika kukaMoroni, ukuze ibutho lakhe lithole amandla.
- 18 Futhi kwenzeka ukuthi uMoroni nempela wafika nebutho lakhe ezweni iNala, ekupheleni konyaka wamashumi amabili nesikhombisa wokubusa kwabehluleli kubantu baNefi.
- 19 Futhi ekuqaleni konyaka wamashumi amabili nesishiyagalombili, uMoroni kanye noTeyankumi kanye nabaningi bezinduna ezinkulu babamba umhlangano wempi—ukuthi babezokwenza kanjani ukuthi benze amaLamani ukuthi aphume eze azokulwa nabo; noma ukuthi ngandlela thize babaluthe ukuthi baphume ezinqabeni zabo, ukuze babathole baphinde futhi balithathe idolobha lakwaMuleki.
- 20 Futhi kwenzeka ukuthi bathumela izithunywa ebuthweni lamaLamani, elalivikele idolobha lakwaMuleki, kumholi wawo, igama lakhe okwakunguJakobe, benesifiso sokuthi aphume namabutho akhe ukuthi bahlangane nabo emathafeni phakathi kwamadolobha amabili. Kodwa bheka, uJakobe, owayengumZoramu, akafunanga ukuza nebutho lakhe ukuthi azohlangana nabo emathafeni.

But behold, it came to pass in the twenty and seventh year of the reign of the judges, that Teancum, by the command of Moroni—who had established armies to protect the south and the west borders of the land, and had begun his march towards the land Bountiful, that he might assist Teancum with his men in retaking the cities which they had lost—

And it came to pass that Teancum had received orders to make an attack upon the city of Mulek, and retake it if it were possible.

And it came to pass that Teancum made preparations to make an attack upon the city of Mulek, and march forth with his army against the Lamanites; but he saw that it was impossible that he could overpower them while they were in their fortifications; therefore he abandoned his designs and returned again to the city Bountiful, to wait for the coming of Moroni, that he might receive strength to his army.

And it came to pass that Moroni did arrive with his army at the land of Bountiful, in the latter end of the twenty and seventh year of the reign of the judges over the people of Nephi.

And in the commencement of the twenty and eighth year, Moroni and Teancum and many of the chief captains held a council of war—what they should do to cause the Lamanites to come out against them to battle; or that they might by some means flatter them out of their strongholds, that they might gain advantage over them and take again the city of Mulek.

And it came to pass they sent embassies to the army of the Lamanites, which protected the city of Mulek, to their leader, whose name was Jacob, desiring him that he would come out with his armies to meet them upon the plains between the two cities. But behold, Jacob, who was a Zoramite, would not come out with his army to meet them upon the plains.

- 21 Futhi kwenzeka ukuthi uMoroni, engasenamathemba okuhlangana nabo esimweni esilungileyo, ngakho-ke, lenkinga wayixazulula ngokuthi enze isu ukuze awaluthe amaLamani aphume ezinqabeni zawo.
- 22 Ngakho-ke wenza ukuthi uTeyankumi athathe isibalo esincane samadoda futhi ahambe ehlele ezansi eduze nogu lolwandle; kwathi uMoroni kanye nebutho lakhe, ngobusuku bahamba ehlane, entshonalanga yedolobha iMuleki; futhi ngalendlela, ngakusasa, ngesikhathi abalindi bamaLamani sebone uTeyankumi, bagijima bayotshela uJakobe, umholi wawo.
- 23 Futhi kwenzeka ukuthi amabutho amaLamani nempela ahamba ayolwa noTeyankumi, ecabanga ukuthi ngesibalo sawo ayomnqoba uTeyankumi ngenxa yobuncane besibalo sakhe. Futhi ngesikhathi uTeyankumi ewabona amabutho amaLamani eza ezolwa naye waqala ukuhlehlela emuva wehla ngogu lolwandle, ngasenyakatho.
- 24 Futhi kwenzeka ukuthi ngesikhathi amaLamani ebona ukuthi wayeseqala ukubaleka, aba nesibindi futhi amxosha ngomfutho. Futhi ngesikhathi uTeyankumi ewahola ngalendlela amaLamani ayebaxosha engabafici, bheka, uMoroni wayala ukuthi inxenye yebutho lakhe elalinaye lihambe liye edolobheni, futhi lilithathe.
- 25 Futhi benza kanjalo, futhi babulala bonke labo ababekade beshiywe ukuthi balivikele idolobha, yebo, bonke labo ababengafuni ukubeka phansi izikhali zabo zempi.
- 26 Futhi uMoroni walithatha ngalendlela-ke idolobha iMuleki ngenxenye yebutho lakhe, ngesikhathi ehamba nenye inxenye ukuyohlangana namaLamani ngesikhathi bebuya ekuxosheni uTeyankumi.
- 27 Futhi kwenzeka ukuthi amaLamani nempela amlandela uTeyankumi aze afika eduzane nedolobha iNala, futhi emva kwalokho ahlangatsheswa nguLehi kanye nebutho elincane, elalishiywe ukuthi livikele idolobha iNala.

And it came to pass that Moroni, having no hopes of meeting them upon fair grounds, therefore, he resolved upon a plan that he might decoy the Lamanites out of their strongholds.

Therefore he caused that Teancum should take a small number of men and march down near the seashore; and Moroni and his army, by night, marched in the wilderness, on the west of the city Mulek; and thus, on the morrow, when the guards of the Lamanites had discovered Teancum, they ran and told it unto Jacob, their leader.

And it came to pass that the armies of the Lamanites did march forth against Teancum, supposing by their numbers to overpower Teancum because of the smallness of his numbers. And as Teancum saw the armies of the Lamanites coming out against him he began to retreat down by the seashore, northward.

And it came to pass that when the Lamanites saw that he began to flee, they took courage and pursued them with vigor. And while Teancum was thus leading away the Lamanites who were pursuing them in vain, behold, Moroni commanded that a part of his army who were with him should march forth into the city, and take possession of it.

And thus they did, and slew all those who had been left to protect the city, yea, all those who would not yield up their weapons of war.

And thus Moroni had obtained possession of the city Mulek with a part of his army, while he marched with the remainder to meet the Lamanites when they should return from the pursuit of Teancum.

And it came to pass that the Lamanites did pursue Teancum until they came near the city Bountiful, and then they were met by Lehi and a small army, which had been left to protect the city Bountiful.

28 Manje bheka, ngesikhathi izinduna ezinkulu zamaLamani sezibone uLehi nempi yakhe eza ezolwa nabo, babaleka bedidekile kakhulu, hleze mhlawumbe bangabe besakwazi ukulithola idolobha iMuleki ngaphambi kokuthi uLehi abafice; ngokuba base bekhathele ngenxa yokuhamba kwabo, futhi abantu baLehi babengakhathele.

29 Manje amaLamani ayengazi ukuthi uMoroni wayese semva kwawo nebutho lakhe; kuphela ababe kwesaba kwakunguLehi kanye nabantu bakhe.

30 Manje uLehi wayengenasifiso sokuba abafice baze bahlangane noMoroni kanye nebutho lakhe.

31 Futhi kwenzeka ukuthi ngaphambi kokuthi amaLamani ahlehlele emuva kakhulu aye sezungezwe ngamaNefi, ngabantu baMoroni kwesinye isandla, kanye nabantu baLehi ngakwesinye, bonke babe ngakhathele futhi besagcwele amandla; kodwa amaLamani ayesekhathele ngenxa yohambo lwawo olude.

32 Futhi uMoroni wayala abantu bakhe ukuthi bawele phezu kwawo kuze kube anikezela izikhali zawo zempi.

33 Futhi kwenzeka ukuthi uJakobe, engumholi wabo, futhi phezu kwalokho engumZoramu, futhi enomoya onganqobeki, wawahola amaLamani ukuthi ayolwa ngokufutheka okubi noMoroni.

34 UMoroni esendleleni yawo yokuhamba, ngakho-ke uJakobe wayezimisele ukubabulala futhi anqume indlela yakhe phakathi aye edolobheni lakwaMuleki. Kodwa bheka, uMoroni kanye nabantu bakhe babenamandla amakhulu; ngakho-ke abawanikezanga amaLamani indlela.

35 Futhi kwenzeka ukuthi balwa nhlangothi zombili ngomfutho omkhulu; futhi kwaba khona abaningi ababulawa macala womabili; yebo, futhi noMoroni walimala kwathi uJakobe wabulawa.

36 Futhi uLehi wacindezela emva kwabo ngomfutho omkhulu namadoda akhe anamandla, kangangokuthi amaLamani ayengasemuva azinikela izikhali zawo zempi; kwathi insalela yawo, ididekile kakhulu, ayazanga noma ihambe noma ilwe.

37 Manje uMoroni ebona ukudideka kwawo, wathi kuwo: Uma ningaletha phambili izikhali zenu zempi futhi nizibeke lapha, bhekani sizoyeka ukulichitha igazi lenu.

And now behold, when the chief captains of the Lamanites had beheld Lehi with his army coming against them, they fled in much confusion, lest perhaps they should not obtain the city Mulek before Lehi should overtake them; for they were wearied because of their march, and the men of Lehi were fresh.

Now the Lamanites did not know that Moroni had been in their rear with his army; and all they feared was Lehi and his men.

Now Lehi was not desirous to overtake them till they should meet Moroni and his army.

And it came to pass that before the Lamanites had retreated far they were surrounded by the Nephites, by the men of Moroni on one hand, and the men of Lehi on the other, all of whom were fresh and full of strength; but the Lamanites were wearied because of their long march.

And Moroni commanded his men that they should fall upon them until they had given up their weapons of war.

And it came to pass that Jacob, being their leader, being also a Zoramite, and having an unconquerable spirit, he led the Lamanites forth to battle with exceeding fury against Moroni.

Moroni being in their course of march, therefore Jacob was determined to slay them and cut his way through to the city of Mulek. But behold, Moroni and his men were more powerful; therefore they did not give way before the Lamanites.

And it came to pass that they fought on both hands with exceeding fury; and there were many slain on both sides; yea, and Moroni was wounded and Jacob was killed.

And Lehi pressed upon their rear with such fury with his strong men, that the Lamanites in the rear delivered up their weapons of war; and the remainder of them, being much confused, knew not whither to go or to strike.

Now Moroni seeing their confusion, he said unto them: If ye will bring forth your weapons of war and deliver them up, behold we will forbear shedding your blood.

38 Futhi kwenzeka ukuthi ngesikhathi amaLamani esewazwile lamazwi, izinduna zawo ezinkulu, bonke labo ababe ngazange babulawe, beza phambili futhi bazijikijela phansi izikhali zabo zempi ezinyaweni zikaMoroni, futhi baphinde bayala amadoda abo ukuthi nawo enze njalo.

39 Kodwa bheka, babebaningi ababengafuni; futhi labo ababengafuni ukuziletha izinkemba zabo bathathwa baboshwa, kwathi izikhali zabo zempi zathathwa kubo, futhi baphoqeelwa ukuthi bahambe nabafowabo baye ezweni iNala.

40 Manje isibalo seziboshwa ezazithathiwe sasisedlula kakhulu isibalo salabo ababebulewe, yebo, sasingaphezulu kwalabo ababebulewe nhlangothi zombili.

And it came to pass that when the Lamanites had heard these words, their chief captains, all those who were not slain, came forth and threw down their weapons of war at the feet of Moroni, and also commanded their men that they should do the same.

But behold, there were many that would not; and those who would not deliver up their swords were taken and bound, and their weapons of war were taken from them, and they were compelled to march with their brethren forth into the land Bountiful.

And now the number of prisoners who were taken exceeded more than the number of those who had been slain, yea, more than those who had been slain on both sides.

Alima 53

- 1 Futhi kwenzeka ukuthi nempela babeka abalindi phezu kweziboshwa zamaLamani, futhi nempela baziphoba ukuthi zihambe ziyongcwaba abafileyo bazo, yebo, futhi ngokunjalo nabafileyo bamaNefi ababebulewe; futhi uMoroni wabeka amadoda phezu kwazo ukuthi aziqaphe ngesikhathi zenza umsebenzi wazo.
- 2 Futhi uMoroni wahamba waya edolobheni lakwaMuleki noLehi, futhi wathatha isikhundla sokuphathwa kwedolobha wasinika uLehi. Manje bheka, lo Lehi wayeyindoda eyayikade inoMoroni esikhathini esiningi sezimpi zakhe zonke; futhi wayeyindoda eyayifana noMoroni, futhi babethokoza ngokuphepha komunye nomunye; yebo, babethandana omunye nomunye, futhi bethandwa ngabantu bonke baNefi.
- 3 Futhi kwenzeka ukuthi emva kokuthi amaLamani eseqedile ukungcwaba abafileyo babo futhi ngokunjalo nabafileyo bamaNefi, ahanjiswa aphindiselwa emuva ezweni iNala; futhi uTeyankumi, ngemiyalelo kaMoroni, wenza ukuthi aqale ukusebenza ambe umsele azungeze izwe, noma idolobha, iNala.
- 4 Futhi wenza ukuthi akhe udonga lwamapulangwe osebeni olungaphakathi lomsele; futhi akhiphe ukungcola emseleni akuphose ngale kodonga lwamapulangwe; futhi benza ukuthi amaLamani asebenze ngalendlela kuze kube ayalihaqa idolobha iNala alizungeze ngodonga oluqinile lwamapulangwe kanye nomhlabathi, okwakufinyelela phezulu kakhulu.
- 5 Futhi lelidolobha laba yinqaba eqine kakhulu emva kwalokho; futhi kulelidolobha baziqapha iziboshwa zamaLamani; yebo, ngisho nangaphakathi kodonga ababenze ukuthi zilwakhe ngezandla zazo uqobo. Manje uMoroni wayephoqelekile ukuthi enze amaLamani ukuthi asebenze, ngoba kwakulula ukuthi aqashwe ngesikhathi esemsebenzini wawo; futhi wayefisa ukuba namabutho akhe onke uma ehlasela amaLamani.

Alma 53

And it came to pass that they did set guards over the prisoners of the Lamanites, and did compel them to go forth and bury their dead, yea, and also the dead of the Nephites who were slain; and Moroni placed men over them to guard them while they should perform their labors.

And Moroni went to the city of Mulek with Lehi, and took command of the city and gave it unto Lehi. Now behold, this Lehi was a man who had been with Moroni in the more part of all his battles; and he was a man like unto Moroni, and they rejoiced in each other's safety; yea, they were beloved by each other, and also beloved by all the people of Nephi.

And it came to pass that after the Lamanites had finished burying their dead and also the dead of the Nephites, they were marched back into the land Bountiful; and Teancum, by the orders of Moroni, caused that they should commence laboring in digging a ditch round about the land, or the city, Bountiful.

And he caused that they should build a breastwork of timbers upon the inner bank of the ditch; and they cast up dirt out of the ditch against the breastwork of timbers; and thus they did cause the Lamanites to labor until they had encircled the city of Bountiful round about with a strong wall of timbers and earth, to an exceeding height.

And this city became an exceeding stronghold ever after; and in this city they did guard the prisoners of the Lamanites; yea, even within a wall which they had caused them to build with their own hands. Now Moroni was compelled to cause the Lamanites to labor, because it was easy to guard them while at their labor; and he desired all his forces when he should make an attack upon the Lamanites.

6 Futhi kwenzeka ukuthi uMoroni ngalendlela wayesethole ukunqoba kwelinye lamabutho amakhulu amaLamani, futhi esethole ubunini bedolobha lakwaMuleki, elalingelinye leziqaba zamaLamani ezaziqinile ezweni lakwaNefi; futhi ngalendlela wayesakhe inqaba eqinile ukuthi agcine iziboshwa zakhe.

7 Futhi kwenzeka ukuthi akazange esenza mizamo nanini yokulwa namaLamani kulowo nyaka, kodwa nempela wasebenzisa abantu bakhe ukulungiselela impi, yebo, kanye nokwenza izinqaba eziqinile zokuvimbela amaLamani, yebo, futhi kanjalo nokukhulula abafazi babo kanye nabantwana babo endlaleni kanye nasekuhluphekeni, kanye nokunikeza ukudla amabutho akhe.

8 Manje kwenzeka ukuthi amabutho amaLamani, olwandle olusentshonalanga, eningizimu, ngesikhathi uMoroni engekho ngenxa yesenzo sangasese sokuhlubuka phakathi kwamaNefi, okwadala ukungezwani phakathi kwabo, kwenza ukuthi awazuze ngandlela thize amaNefi, yebo, kangangokuthi ayesethole ubunini bamadolobha awo amaningi kuleyo nxenye yezwe.

9 Ngakho-ke ngenxa yobubi phakathi kwabo, yebo, ngenxa yokungezwani kanye nesenzo sangasese sokuhlubuka phakathi kwabo bazithola sebesezimweni eziyingozi kakhulu.

10 Manje bheka, nginento ethize okumele ngiyisho mayelana nabantu ba-Amoni, labo, ekuqaleni, ababengamaLamani; kodwa ngo-Amoni kanye nabafowabo, noma-ke ngamandla kanye nangezwi likaNkulunkulu, base bephendukele eNkosini; futhi balethwa ezansi ezweni lakwaZarahemla, futhi kusukela ngaleso sikhathi selokhu bavikelwa ngamaNefi.

11 Futhi ngenxa yesifungo sabo bavinjelwa yiso ukuthi bathathele abafowabo izikhali; ngokuba babenze isifungo sokuthi nanini abaseyikulichitha igazi futhi; futhi ngokwesifungo sabo babeyofa; yebo, babeyozivumela ukuthi bawele ezandleni zabafowabo, ukuba kwakungekona ukuthi kwakungenxa yesihawu kanye nothando olukhulu u-Amoni kanye nabafowabo ababenalo ngabo.

And it came to pass that Moroni had thus gained a victory over one of the greatest of the armies of the Lamanites, and had obtained possession of the city of Mulek, which was one of the strongest holds of the Lamanites in the land of Nephi; and thus he had also built a stronghold to retain his prisoners.

And it came to pass that he did no more attempt a battle with the Lamanites in that year, but he did employ his men in preparing for war, yea, and in making fortifications to guard against the Lamanites, yea, and also delivering their women and their children from famine and affliction, and providing food for their armies.

And now it came to pass that the armies of the Lamanites, on the west sea, south, while in the absence of Moroni on account of some intrigue amongst the Nephites, which caused dissensions amongst them, had gained some ground over the Nephites, yea, insomuch that they had obtained possession of a number of their cities in that part of the land.

And thus because of iniquity amongst themselves, yea, because of dissensions and intrigue among themselves they were placed in the most dangerous circumstances.

And now behold, I have somewhat to say concerning the people of Ammon, who, in the beginning, were Lamanites; but by Ammon and his brethren, or rather by the power and word of God, they had been converted unto the Lord; and they had been brought down into the land of Zarahemla, and had ever since been protected by the Nephites.

And because of their oath they had been kept from taking up arms against their brethren; for they had taken an oath that they never would shed blood more; and according to their oath they would have perished; yea, they would have suffered themselves to have fallen into the hands of their brethren, had it not been for the pity and the exceeding love which Ammon and his brethren had had for them.

- 12 Futhi ngalesi sizathu balethwa ezweni lakwaZarahemla; futhi selokhu bavikelwa ngamaNefi njalo.
- 13 Kodwa kwenzeka ukuthi ngesikhathi bebona ingozi, kanye nezinhlupheko eziningi kanye nezinsizi amaNefi ayezithwalela bona, bathinteka ngesihawu futhi babanesifiso sokuthatha izikhali ukuthi bavikele izwe labo.
- 14 Kodwa bheka, ngesikhathi sebezothatha izikhali zempi zabo, behlulwa wukuvunyiswa nguHelamani kanye nabafowabo, ngokuba base bezosephula isifungo ababesenzile.
- 15 Futhi uHelamani wayesaba hleze ngokwenze njalo balahlekelwe yimiphfumulo yabo; ngakho-ke bonke labo ababengene kulesi sivumelwano baphoqeleka ukuthi babuke abafowabo bedlula kanzima ezinhluphekweni zabo, ezimweni zabo eziyingozi ngalesi sikhathi.
- 16 Kodwa bheka, kwenzeka ukuthi babenamadodana amaningi, ayengangenanga esivumelwaneni sokuthi awanakuzithatha izikhali zawo zempi ukuze azivikele ezitheni zawo; ngakho-ke abuthana ndawonye ngalesi sikhathi, ngobuningi balabo ababengakwazi ukuzithatha izikhali, futhi bazibiza ngokuthi bangamaNefi.
- 17 Futhi bangena esivumelwaneni sokuthi balwele inkululeko yamaNefi, yebo, ukuthi bavikele izwe ngokunikela ngezimpilo zabo; yebo, ngisho nabo benza isivumelwano sokuthi abasoze balahle inkululeko yabo, kodwa bayokulwa zikhathi zonke ukuvikela amaNefi kanye nabo ekuboshweni.
- 18 Manje bhekani, kwakukhona izinkulungwane ezimbili zalezo zinsizwa, ezangena kulesi sivumelwano futhi zathatha izikhali zazo zempi ukuvikela izwe lazo.
- 19 Manje bheka, njengoba zazingakaze nanini ziwamise kabi amaNefi, manje ngalesi sikhathi zaba wusizo olukhulu; ngokuba zathatha izikhali zazo zempi, futhi zafuna ukuthi uHelamani abe ngumholi wazo.

And for this cause they were brought down into the land of Zarahemla; and they ever had been protected by the Nephites.

But it came to pass that when they saw the danger, and the many afflictions and tribulations which the Nephites bore for them, they were moved with compassion and were desirous to take up arms in the defence of their country.

But behold, as they were about to take their weapons of war, they were overpowered by the persuasions of Helaman and his brethren, for they were about to break the oath which they had made.

And Helaman feared lest by so doing they should lose their souls; therefore all those who had entered into this covenant were compelled to behold their brethren wade through their afflictions, in their dangerous circumstances at this time.

But behold, it came to pass they had many sons, who had not entered into a covenant that they would not take their weapons of war to defend themselves against their enemies; therefore they did assemble themselves together at this time, as many as were able to take up arms, and they called themselves Nephites.

And they entered into a covenant to fight for the liberty of the Nephites, yea, to protect the land unto the laying down of their lives; yea, even they covenanted that they never would give up their liberty, but they would fight in all cases to protect the Nephites and themselves from bondage.

Now behold, there were two thousand of those young men, who entered into this covenant and took their weapons of war to defend their country.

And now behold, as they never had hitherto been a disadvantage to the Nephites, they became now at this period of time also a great support; for they took their weapons of war, and they would that Helaman should be their leader.

- 20 Futhi bonke babeseyizi nsizwa, futhi babengamaqhawe amakhulu ngokwesibindi, futhi ngokunjalo nangokwamandla kanye nangokusebenza; kodwa bheka, lokhu kwakungekona kuphela—babengamadoda ayeneqiniso ngaso sonke isikhathi kukho konke ababephathiswe kona.
- 21 Yebo, babengamadoda aneqiniso futhi anobuqotho, ngokuba babefundiswe ukuthi bayigcine imiyalelo kaNkulunkulu kanye nokuhamba ngokulunga phambi kwakhe.
- 22 Manje kwenzeka ukuthi uHelamani nempela wazihola izinsizwa zakhe eziyizinkulungwane ezimbili zamasosha, wayosekela abantu eminceleni yezwe eningizimu ngasolwandle olusentshonalanga.
- 23 Futhi waphela ngalendlela-ke unyaka wamashumi amabili nesishiyagalombili wokubusa kwabehluleli kubantu baNefi.

And they were all young men, and they were exceedingly valiant for courage, and also for strength and activity; but behold, this was not all—they were men who were true at all times in whatsoever thing they were entrusted.

Yea, they were men of truth and soberness, for they had been taught to keep the commandments of God and to walk uprightly before him.

And now it came to pass that Helaman did march at the head of his two thousand stripling soldiers, to the support of the people in the borders of the land on the south by the west sea.

And thus ended the twenty and eighth year of the reign of the judges over the people of Nephi.

Alima 54

- 1 Manje kwenzeka ekuqaleni konyaka wamashumi amabili nesishiyagalolunye wabehluleli, ukuthi u-Amoroni wathumela kuMoroni efisa ukuthi bashintshane ngeziboshwa.
- 2 Futhi kwenzeka ukuthi uMoroni wazizwa enokujabula okukhulu ngalesi sicelo, ngokuba wayekufuna ukudla okwakunikezwe ukuba kondliwe iziboshwa zamaLamani ukuthi kondle abantu bakhe; futhi phezu kwalokho wayebafuna abantu bakhe ukuze baqinise ibutho lakhe.
- 3 Manje amaLamani ayethathe abesifazane abaningi kanye nabantwana, futhi kwakungekho namunye owesifazane noma ingane phakathi kwazo zonke iziboshwa zikaMoroni, noma iziboshwa uMoroni ayezithathile; ngakho-ke uMoroni wasungula isu lokuthi athole iziboshwa zamaNefi eziningi kumaLamani kangangoba kwakungenzeka.
- 4 Ngakho-ke wabhala incwadi, futhi wayithumela ngencku ka-Amoroni, yona kanye leyo eyayilethe incwadi kuMoroni. Manje lawa ngamazwi awabhalela u-Amoroni, ethi:
- 5 Bheka, Amoroni, ngikubhalele ngokuthize mayelana nalempi eniyiqhubayo ngokumelene nabantu bami, noma-ke umfowenu ebelokhu eyiqhubile ngokumelene nabo, futhi enisazimisele namanje ukuthi niyiqhube emva kokufa kwakhe.
- 6 Bheka, ngizokutshela okuthile mayelana nokulunga kukaNkulunkulu, kanye nenkemba yentukuthelo yakhe enamandla onke, elengela kini ngaphandle kokuthi niphenduke futhi nibuyisele amabutho enu emazweni enu, noma ezweni okungelenu, okuyizwe lakwaNefi.
- 7 Yebo, bengizokutshela lezi zinto ukuba ubukwazi ukuzilalela; yebo, bengizokutshela mayelana naleso sihogo esibi esilindele ukwamukela ababulali abanjengawe kanye nomfowenu, ngaphandle kokuthi niphenduke futhi nihoxise izinhloso zenu zokubulala, futhi nibuyele namabutho enu emazweni enu.
- 8 Kodwa njengoba nake nazenqaba lezi zinto, futhi nalwa nabantu beNkosi, ngisho kanjalo-ke ngingalindela ukuthi nizokwenza lokho futhi.

Alma 54

And now it came to pass in the commencement of the twenty and ninth year of the judges, that Ammoron sent unto Moroni desiring that he would exchange prisoners.

And it came to pass that Moroni felt to rejoice exceedingly at this request, for he desired the provisions which were imparted for the support of the Lamanite prisoners for the support of his own people; and he also desired his own people for the strengthening of his army.

Now the Lamanites had taken many women and children, and there was not a woman nor a child among all the prisoners of Moroni, or the prisoners whom Moroni had taken; therefore Moroni resolved upon a stratagem to obtain as many prisoners of the Nephites from the Lamanites as it were possible.

Therefore he wrote an epistle, and sent it by the servant of Ammoron, the same who had brought an epistle to Moroni. Now these are the words which he wrote unto Ammoron, saying:

Behold, Ammoron, I have written unto you somewhat concerning this war which ye have waged against my people, or rather which thy brother hath waged against them, and which ye are still determined to carry on after his death.

Behold, I would tell you somewhat concerning the justice of God, and the sword of his almighty wrath, which doth hang over you except ye repent and withdraw your armies into your own lands, or the land of your possessions, which is the land of Nephi.

Yea, I would tell you these things if ye were capable of hearkening unto them; yea, I would tell you concerning that awful hell that awaits to receive such murderers as thou and thy brother have been, except ye repent and withdraw your murderous purposes, and return with your armies to your own lands.

But as ye have once rejected these things, and have fought against the people of the Lord, even so I may expect you will do it again.

- 9 Manje bheka, sikulungele ukuhlangana nani; yebo, futhi ngaphandle kokuthi nihoxise izinhloso zenu, bhekani, nizodonsela phansi intukuthelo yalowo Nkulunkulu enimenqabile, phezu kwenu, ngisho kuze kube sekubhujisweni kwenu nonke.
- 10 Kodwa, njengoba iNkosi iphila, amabutho ethu azokuza kini ngaphandle kokuthi nihoxe, futhi ngokushesha nizovakashelwa ngokufa, ngokuba sizowagcina amadolobha ethu kanye namazwe ethu; yebo, futhi sizoyigcina inkolo yethu kanye nendlela kaNkulunkulu wethu.
- 11 Kodwa bheka, kuyangicacela ukuthi ngikhuluma kuwe mayelana nalezi zinto ngeze; noma kuyangicacela ukuthi ungumntwana wesihogo; ngakho-ke ngizoyivala incwadi yami ngokukutshela ukuthi angizukushintshana ngeziboshwa, ngaphandle kombandela wokuthi uzokhulula indoda kanye nomkayo kanye nabantwana bayo, ngesiboshwa esisodwa; uma uzokwenza lokhu, ngizoshintshana nawe.
- 12 Futhi bheka, uma ningenakukwenza lokhu, ngizokuza kini namabutho ami, yebo, ngizohlomisa ngisho nabesifazane bami kanye nezingane zami, futhi ngizokuza ngilwe nani, futhi ngizonilandela ngisho nasezweni lenu, okuyizwe eliyifa lethu lokuqala; yebo, futhi kuyoba yigazi ngegazi, yebo, impilo ngempilo; futhi ngizolwa nawe ngisho kuze kube uyabulawa ususwe ebusweni bomhlaba.
- 13 Bheka, ngithukuthela, futhi kanjalo nabantu bami; nifune ukusibulala, kepha thina sifune ukuzivikela kuphela. Kodwa bhekani, uma nifuna ukusibulala ngaphezu kwalokhu nathi sizofuna ukunibulala; yebo, futhi sizolifuna izwe lethu, izwe eliyifa lethu lokuqala.
- 14 Manje ngiyayivala incwadi yami. NginguMoroni; ngingumholi wabantu bamaNefi.
- 15 Manje kwenzeka ukuthi u-Amoroni, ngesikhathi eseyitholile lencwadi, wathukuthela; futhi wabhala enye incwadi eya kuMoroni, futhi lawa ngamazwi awabhala, ethi:
- 16 Ngingu-Amoroni, inkosi yamaLamani; ngingumfowabo ka-Amalikiya enambulala. Bheka, ngizoliphindiselela igazi lakhe kini, yebo, futhi ngizokuza kini namabutho ami ngokuba angizesabi izinsongo zakho.

And now behold, we are prepared to receive you; yea, and except you withdraw your purposes, behold, ye will pull down the wrath of that God whom you have rejected upon you, even to your utter destruction.

But, as the Lord liveth, our armies shall come upon you except ye withdraw, and ye shall soon be visited with death, for we will retain our cities and our lands; yea, and we will maintain our religion and the cause of our God.

But behold, it supposeth me that I talk to you concerning these things in vain; or it supposeth me that thou art a child of hell; therefore I will close my epistle by telling you that I will not exchange prisoners, save it be on conditions that ye will deliver up a man and his wife and his children, for one prisoner; if this be the case that ye will do it, I will exchange.

And behold, if ye do not this, I will come against you with my armies; yea, even I will arm my women and my children, and I will come against you, and I will follow you even into your own land, which is the land of our first inheritance; yea, and it shall be blood for blood, yea, life for life; and I will give you battle even until you are destroyed from off the face of the earth.

Behold, I am in my anger, and also my people; ye have sought to murder us, and we have only sought to defend ourselves. But behold, if ye seek to destroy us more we will seek to destroy you; yea, and we will seek our land, the land of our first inheritance.

Now I close my epistle. I am Moroni; I am a leader of the people of the Nephites.

Now it came to pass that Ammoron, when he had received this epistle, was angry; and he wrote another epistle unto Moroni, and these are the words which he wrote, saying:

I am Ammoron, the king of the Lamanites; I am the brother of Amalickiah whom ye have murdered. Behold, I will avenge his blood upon you, yea, and I will come upon you with my armies for I fear not your threatenings.

- 17 Ngokuba bheka, oyihlo bona abafowabo, kangangokuthi babaqhanga ilungelo labo lokubusa ekubeni ngokomthetho okwakungelabo.
- 18 Manje bheka, uma ningabeka phansi izikhali zenu, bese niziletha ngaphansi kwalabo umbuso okungowabo ngokomthetho, uma kunjalo ngizokwenza ukuthi abantu bami babeke phansi izikhali zabo futhi bangabe besalwa nanini.
- 19 Bheka, ukhulume izinsongo eziningi kimi kanye nakubantu bami; kodwa bheka, asizesabi izinsongo zakho.
- 20 Noma kunjalo, ngizovuma ukuthi sitshintshane ngeziboshwa njengokwesicelo sakho, ngokuthokoza, ukuze ngigcinele abantu bami bempi ukudla; futhi sizohuba impi engeyikuphela, ukuze silethe amaNefi ngaphansi kwethu noma ashabalale nya.
- 21 Futhi mayelana nalowo Nkulunkulu othi simenqabile, bheka, asazi lutho ngalowo muntu; ngisho nani imbala; kodwa uma kungenzeka ukuthi kukhona umuntu onjalo, asazi lutho kodwa kungenzeka ukuthi usenzile thina nani.
- 22 Futhi uma kungenzeka ukuthi ukhona udeveli kanye nesihogo, bheka akanakunithumela yini lapho ukuthi niyohlala kanye nomfowethu enambulala, ophawule ngaye ukuthi uye endaweni enjalo na? Kodwa bheka lezi zinto azinamsebenzi.
- 23 Ngingu-Amoroni, futhi ngingowozalo luka Zoramu, oyihlo abamphoqa futhi bamkhipha ezweni laseJeruselema.
- 24 Futhi bheka manje, ngingumLamani onesibindi; bheka, lempi iqhutshelwa ukuthi iphindiselele ukoniwa kwabo, nokugcina futhi ibuyisele amalungelo abo ukuthi babuse, futhi ngiyayivala lencwadi yami eya kuMoroni.

For behold, your fathers did wrong their brethren, insomuch that they did rob them of their right to the government when it rightly belonged unto them.

And now behold, if ye will lay down your arms, and subject yourselves to be governed by those to whom the government doth rightly belong, then will I cause that my people shall lay down their weapons and shall be at war no more.

Behold, ye have breathed out many threatenings against me and my people; but behold, we fear not your threatenings.

Nevertheless, I will grant to exchange prisoners according to your request, gladly, that I may preserve my food for my men of war; and we will wage a war which shall be eternal, either to the subjecting the Nephites to our authority or to their eternal extinction.

And as concerning that God whom ye say we have rejected, behold, we know not such a being; neither do ye; but if it so be that there is such a being, we know not but that he hath made us as well as you.

And if it so be that there is a devil and a hell, behold will he not send you there to dwell with my brother whom ye have murdered, whom ye have hinted that he hath gone to such a place? But behold these things matter not.

I am Ammoron, and a descendant of Zoram, whom your fathers pressed and brought out of Jerusalem.

And behold now, I am a bold Lamanite; behold, this war hath been waged to avenge their wrongs, and to maintain and to obtain their rights to the government; and I close my epistle to Moroni.

Alima 55

- 1 Manje kwenzeka ukuthi ngesikhathi uMoroni esethole lencwadi wathukuthela kakhulu, ngoba wayazi ukuthi u-Amoroni wayenolwazi oluphelele ngenkohliso yakhe; yebo, wayazi ukuthi u-Amoroni wayazi ukuthi kwakungesona isizathu esilungile esasimenze aqhube impi ngokumelene nabantu baNefi.
- 2 Futhi wathi: Bheka, ngeke ngishintshane ngeziboshwa no-Amoroni ngaphandle kokuthi ahoxise lenhloso yakhe, njengoba ngichazile encwadini yami; ngokuba ngeke ngivume ukuthi abe namanye amandla ngaphezulu kwalawa anawo.
- 3 Bheka, ngiyayazi indawo lapho amaLamani eqaphe khona abantu bami ababathathile babenza iziboshwa; futhi njengoba u-Amoroni engezukungivumela ngokwencwadi yami, bheka, ngizokwenza kuye njengokwamazwi ami; yebo, ngizofuna ukufa phakathi kwabo baze bacele uxolo.
- 4 Manje kwenzeka ukuthi ngesikhathi uMoroni esewashilo lamazwi, wenza ukuthi kwenziwe uphenyo phakathi kwamadoda akhe, ukuze mhlawumbe athole indoda eyayiwuzalo lukaLamani phakathi kwabo.
- 5 Futhi kwenzeka ukuthi bamthola oyedwa, igama lakhe okwakunguLamani; futhi wayengomunye wezinceku zenkosi eyayibulewe ngu-Amalikiya.
- 6 Manje uMoroni wenza ukuthi uLamani kanye nedlanzana elincane lamadoda akhe bahambe baye kubaqaphi ababeqaphe amaNefi.
- 7 Manje amaNefi ayeqashelwe edolobheni lakwaGide; ngakho-ke uMoroni wabeka uLamani futhi wenza ukuthi idlanzana elincane lamadoda lihambe naye.
- 8 Futhi ngesikhathi sekuhlwile uLamani waya kubaqaphi ababeqaphe amaNefi, futhi bheka, bambona eza bambingelela, kodwa wathi kubo: Ningesabi; bhekani, ngingumLamani. Bhekani, seqile kumaNefi, futhi alele; bhekani sithathe iwayini labo seza nalo.

Alma 55

Now it came to pass that when Moroni had received this epistle he was more angry, because he knew that Ammoron had a perfect knowledge of his fraud; yea, he knew that Ammoron knew that it was not a just cause that had caused him to wage a war against the people of Nephi.

And he said: Behold, I will not exchange prisoners with Ammoron save he will withdraw his purpose, as I have stated in my epistle; for I will not grant unto him that he shall have any more power than what he hath got.

Behold, I know the place where the Lamanites do guard my people whom they have taken prisoners; and as Ammoron would not grant unto me mine epistle, behold, I will give unto him according to my words; yea, I will seek death among them until they shall sue for peace.

And now it came to pass that when Moroni had said these words, he caused that a search should be made among his men, that perhaps he might find a man who was a descendant of Laman among them.

And it came to pass that they found one, whose name was Laman; and he was one of the servants of the king who was murdered by Amalickiah.

Now Moroni caused that Laman and a small number of his men should go forth unto the guards who were over the Nephites.

Now the Nephites were guarded in the city of Gid; therefore Moroni appointed Laman and caused that a small number of men should go with him.

And when it was evening Laman went to the guards who were over the Nephites, and behold, they saw him coming and they hailed him; but he saith unto them: Fear not; behold, I am a Lamanite. Behold, we have escaped from the Nephites, and they sleep; and behold we have taken of their wine and brought with us.

- 9 Manje ngesikhathi amaLamani ezwa la mazwi amemukela ngenjabulo; athi kuye: Sinikeni iwayini lenu, ukuze siphuze; siyathokoza ukuthi niphathe iwayini ngokuba sikhathele.
- 10 Kodwa uLamani wathi kubo: Masiligcine elinye iwayini lethu size siyolwa namaNefi. Kodwa le nkulumo yabenza ukuthi bafise kakhulu ukuliphuza iwayini;
- 11 Ngokuba, bathi: Sikhathele, ngakho-ke masiliphuze leliwayini, futhi sekuyothi emva kwesikhashana nje bese sisithola isabelo sewayini lethu, eseliyosiqinisa ukuze siyolwa namaNefi.
- 12 Futhi uLamani wathi kubo: Ningenza njengokwezifiso zenu.
- 13 Futhi kwenzeka ukuthi nempela baliphuza iwayini ngokukhululeka; futhi lalinambitheka kamnandi, ngakho-ke baliphuza ngokukhululeka okukhulu; futhi lalinamandla, kade lilungiselwe ukuthi libe namandla.
- 14 Futhi kwenzeka ukuthi baliphuza bathokoza, kwathi emva kwesi khashana nje base bedakwe bonke.
- 15 Manje ngesikhathi uLamani kanye nabantu bakhe bebona ukuthi bonke base bedakiwe, futhi sebesebuthongweni obujulile, babuyela kuMoroni bayomtshela zonke izinto ezazenzekile.
- 16 Manje lokhu kwenzeka njengecebo likaMoroni. Futhi uMoroni wayesewalungiselele amadoda akhe ngezikhali zempi; futhi wahamba waya edolobheni iGide, ngesikhathi amaLamani esebuthongweni obujulile futhi edakiwe, wafike waphonsa izikhali zempi eziboshweni, kangangokuthi zonke zahloma;
- 17 Yebo, ngisho nabesifazane babo, kanye nabo bonke abantwana babo, ngobuningi balabo ababengakwazi ukusebenzisa izikhali zempi, ngesikhathi uMoroni ehlovisa zonke lezo ziboshwa; zonke lezo zinto zenziwa ngokuthula okukhulu.
- 18 Kodwa ukuba babewavusile amaLamani, bheka ayedakiwe futhi amaNefi ayengawabulala.

Now when the Lamanites heard these words they received him with joy; and they said unto him: Give us of your wine, that we may drink; we are glad that ye have thus taken wine with you for we are weary.

But Laman said unto them: Let us keep of our wine till we go against the Nephites to battle. But this saying only made them more desirous to drink of the wine;

For, said they: We are weary, therefore let us take of the wine, and by and by we shall receive wine for our rations, which will strengthen us to go against the Nephites.

And Laman said unto them: You may do according to your desires.

And it came to pass that they did take of the wine freely; and it was pleasant to their taste, therefore they took of it more freely; and it was strong, having been prepared in its strength.

And it came to pass they did drink and were merry, and by and by they were all drunken.

And now when Laman and his men saw that they were all drunken, and were in a deep sleep, they returned to Moroni and told him all the things that had happened.

And now this was according to the design of Moroni. And Moroni had prepared his men with weapons of war; and he went to the city Gid, while the Lamanites were in a deep sleep and drunken, and cast in weapons of war unto the prisoners, inso-much that they were all armed;

Yea, even to their women, and all those of their children, as many as were able to use a weapon of war, when Moroni had armed all those prisoners; and all those things were done in a profound silence.

But had they awakened the Lamanites, behold they were drunken and the Nephites could have slain them.

- 19 Kodwa bheka, lokhu kwakungesona isifiso sikaMoroni; wayengakuthokozeli ukubulala noma ukuchitha igazi, kodwa wayethokozela ukusindisa abantu bakhe ekonakalisweni; futhi ngalesi sizathu wayengenakuletha kuye ukwahlulelwa ngokungalungi, wayengenakuwela phezu kwamaLamani awabulale edakiwe.
- 20 Kodwa wayesezifezile izifiso zakhe; ngokuba wayesezihlomisile lezo ziboshwa zamaNefi ezazingaphakathi kwezindonga zedolobha, futhi wayesezinike amandla okuthatha lezo zinxenye ezazingaphakathi kwezindonga.
- 21 Futhi emva kwalokho wenza ukuthi lawo madoda ayenawo ahlehle ibangana phakathi kwabo, bese ezungeza amabutho amaLamani.
- 22 Manje bheka lokhu kwenzeka ngesikhathi sasebusuku, kangangokuthi ngesikhathi amaLamani evuka ekuseni abona ukuthi ayesezungezwe ngamaNefi ngaphandle, futhi iziboshwa zawo zase zihlomile ngaphakathi.
- 23 Futhi ngalendlela abona ukuthi amaNefi ayesenamandla phezu kwawo; futhi kulezizimo athola ukuthi kwakungasadingekile ukuthi alwe namaNefi; ngakho-ke izinduna zawo ezinkulu zafuna izikhali zabo zempi, futhi zaziletha phambili zaziphonsa phansi ezinyaweni zamaNefi, zizicelela umusa.
- 24 Manje bheka, lokhu kwakuyisifiso sikaMoroni. Wawathatha wawenza iziboshwa zempi, futhi walithatha idolobha, wenza ukuthi zonke iziboshwa zikhululwe, ezazingamaNefi; futhi nempela zahlangana nebutho likaMoroni, futhi zafaka amandla amakhulu ebuthweni lakhe.
- 25 Futhi kwenzeka ukuthi wenza ukuthi amaLamani, ayewabophile, ukuthi aqale umsebenzi wokuqinisa izinqaba ndawo zonke nedolobha iGide.
- 26 Futhi kwenzeka ukuthi ngesikhathi eseliqinisile idolobha iGide, njengokwezifiso zakhe, wenza ukuthi iziboshwa zakhe zithathwe ziyiswe edolobheni iNala; futhi phezu kwalokho waliqapha lelo dolobha ngebutho elinamandla amakhulu.

But behold, this was not the desire of Moroni; he did not delight in murder or bloodshed, but he delighted in the saving of his people from destruction; and for this cause he might not bring upon him injustice, he would not fall upon the Lamanites and destroy them in their drunkenness.

But he had obtained his desires; for he had armed those prisoners of the Nephites who were within the wall of the city, and had given them power to gain possession of those parts which were within the walls.

And then he caused the men who were with him to withdraw a pace from them, and surround the armies of the Lamanites.

Now behold this was done in the night-time, so that when the Lamanites awoke in the morning they beheld that they were surrounded by the Nephites without, and that their prisoners were armed within.

And thus they saw that the Nephites had power over them; and in these circumstances they found that it was not expedient that they should fight with the Nephites; therefore their chief captains demanded their weapons of war, and they brought them forth and cast them at the feet of the Nephites, pleading for mercy.

Now behold, this was the desire of Moroni. He took them prisoners of war, and took possession of the city, and caused that all the prisoners should be liberated, who were Nephites; and they did join the army of Moroni, and were a great strength to his army.

And it came to pass that he did cause the Lamanites, whom he had taken prisoners, that they should commence a labor in strengthening the fortifications round about the city Gid.

And it came to pass that when he had fortified the city Gid, according to his desires, he caused that his prisoners should be taken to the city Bountiful; and he also guarded that city with an exceedingly strong force.

27 Futhi kwenzeka ukuthi, naphezu kwawo wonke amacebo angasese amaLamani, azigcina futhi azivikela zonke iziboshwa ayezithathile, futhi phezu kwalokho awugcina wonke umhlaba kanye nalezo zindawo ayesebuye azithatha.

28 Futhi kwenzeka ukuthi amaNefi aqala ukunqoba futhi, aphinda afuna amalungelo kanye namathuba awo.

29 Izikhathi eziningi amaLamani azama ukubazungeza ebusuku, kodwa kulemizamo alahlekelwa yiziboshwa eziningi.

30 Futhi izikhathi eziningi azama ukunikeza elinye lamawayini abo kumaNefi, ukuze bawabulale ngobuthi noma ngokuwadakisa.

31 Kodwa bheka, amaNefi ayengaphuzi ukuyikhumbula iNkosi uNkulunkulu wawo kulesi sikhathi sawo sokuhlupheka. Ayengenakuzifaka ogibeni; yebo, awaliphuzanga iwayini lawo, ngaphandle kokuthi kuqala balinikeze ezinye zeziboshwa zamaLamani.

32 Futhi ngalendlela babeqaphele ukuthi kungabibikho buthi abangafakelwa bona; ngokuba uma iwayini labo lalingaba nobuthi kumLamani lalingaba nobuthi futhi nakumNefi; futhi babuhlola ngalendlela bonke utshwala bawo.

33 Manje kwenzeka ukuthi kwaba nesidingo sokuthi uMoroni enze amalungiselelo okuhlasela idolobha iMoriyantoni; ngokuba bheka, amaLamani, ngokwemisebenzi yawo, ayeseliqinisile idolobha iMoriyantoni laze laba yinqaba eqine kakhulu.

34 Futhi ayeqhubeka nokuletha amabutho amasha kulelo dolobha, futhi kanjalo nezabelo ezintsha sokudla.

35 Futhi waphela kanjalo-ke unyaka wamashumi amabili nesishiyagalolunye wokubusa kwabehluleli kubantu baNefi.

And it came to pass that they did, notwithstanding all the intrigues of the Lamanites, keep and protect all the prisoners whom they had taken, and also maintain all the ground and the advantage which they had retaken.

And it came to pass that the Nephites began again to be victorious, and to reclaim their rights and their privileges.

Many times did the Lamanites attempt to encircle them about by night, but in these attempts they did lose many prisoners.

And many times did they attempt to administer of their wine to the Nephites, that they might destroy them with poison or with drunkenness.

But behold, the Nephites were not slow to remember the Lord their God in this their time of affliction. They could not be taken in their snares; yea, they would not partake of their wine, save they had first given to some of the Lamanite prisoners.

And they were thus cautious that no poison should be administered among them; for if their wine would poison a Lamanite it would also poison a Nephite; and thus they did try all their liquors.

And now it came to pass that it was expedient for Moroni to make preparations to attack the city Morianton; for behold, the Lamanites had, by their labors, fortified the city Morianton until it had become an exceeding stronghold.

And they were continually bringing new forces into that city, and also new supplies of provisions.

And thus ended the twenty and ninth year of the reign of the judges over the people of Nephi.

Alima 56

- 1 Manje kwenzeka ekuqaleni konyaka wamashumi amathathu wokubusa kwabehluleli, ngosuku lwesibili enyangeni yokuqala, uMoroni wathola incwadi evela kuHelamani, eyayilandisa ngesimo sabantu kuleyo nxenye yezwe.
- 2 Futhi lawa ngamazwi awabhalayo, ethi: Mfowethu othandekayo kakhulu, uMoroni, eNkosini nasezinhluphekweni zempi yethu; bheka, mfowethu othandekayo, nginokuthize okufanele ngikutshele kona mayelana nempi yethu kulenxenye yezwe.
- 3 Bheka, amadodana ayizinkulungwane ezimbili zalabo bantu u-Amoni abaletha ebakhipha ezweni lakwaNefi—manje wazile ukuthi laba babengabozalo lukaLamani, owayeyindodana endala kababa uLehi;
- 4 Manje akudingekile ukuthi ngiphindaphinde kuwe mayelana namasiko abo noma ukungakholwa kwabo, ngokuba uyazi mayelana nazo zonke lezi zinto—
- 5 Ngakho-ke kuyangenelisa ukuthi ngikutshele ukuthi izinkulungwane ezimbili zalezi zinsizwa zithathe izikhali zazo zempi, zafuna ukuthi ngibe ngumholi wazo; futhi siphumele obala ukuze siyovikela izwe lethu.
- 6 Futhi nawe uyazi mayelana nesivumelwano oyise abasenza, sokuthi ngeke besazithatha izikhali zabo zempi ukuthi balwe nabafowabo ukuze bachithe igazi.
- 7 Kodwa onyakeni wamashumi amabili nesithupha, ngesikhathi bebona izinhlupheko zethu kanye nezinsizi zethu ngabo, base bezosephula leso sivumelwano ababesenzile bese bethatha izikhali zabo zempi ukuyosivikela.
- 8 Kodwa angibavumelanga ukuthi basephule lesi sivumelwano ababesenzile, ngokucabanga ukuthi uNkulunkulu wayezosiqinisa, kangangokuthi besingeke sisahlupheka kakhulu ngenxa yokugcwaliseka kwesifungo ababesenzile.

Alma 56

And now it came to pass in the commencement of the thirtieth year of the reign of the judges, on the second day in the first month, Moroni received an epistle from Helaman, stating the affairs of the people in that quarter of the land.

And these are the words which he wrote, saying: My dearly beloved brother, Moroni, as well in the Lord as in the tribulations of our warfare; behold, my beloved brother, I have somewhat to tell you concerning our warfare in this part of the land.

Behold, two thousand of the sons of those men whom Ammon brought down out of the land of Nephi—now ye have known that these were descendants of Laman, who was the eldest son of our father Lehi;

Now I need not rehearse unto you concerning their traditions or their unbelief, for thou knowest concerning all these things—

Therefore it sufficeth me that I tell you that two thousand of these young men have taken their weapons of war, and would that I should be their leader; and we have come forth to defend our country.

And now ye also know concerning the covenant which their fathers made, that they would not take up their weapons of war against their brethren to shed blood.

But in the twenty and sixth year, when they saw our afflictions and our tribulations for them, they were about to break the covenant which they had made and take up their weapons of war in our defence.

But I would not suffer them that they should break this covenant which they had made, supposing that God would strengthen us, insomuch that we should not suffer more because of the fulfilling the oath which they had taken.

- 9 Kodwa bheka, nansi into eyodwa esingajabula ngayo kakhulu. Ngokuba bheka, ngonyaka wamashumi amabili nesithupha, mina, Helamani, nempela ngazihola lezi zinsizwa eziyizinkulungwane ezimbili ukuya edolobheni lakwaJudiya, ukuyosiza u-Antipasi, owawumbeke ukuthi abe ngumholi wabantu bakuleyo nxenye yezwe.
- 10 Futhi nempela ngawahlanganisa namadodana ami ayizinkulungwane ezimbili, (ngokuba afanelekile ukuthi abizwe ngamadodana) nempi ka-Antipasi, lawo mandla u-Antipasi awajabulela kakhulu; ngokuba bheka, ibutho lakhe lase lehlisiwe ngamaLamani ngoba amabutho awo ayesebulele isibalo esikhulu samadoda ethu, okuyisizathu sokuthi sikhale.
- 11 Nokho, singaziduduza ngalokhu, ukuthi bafele emzabalazweni wezwe labo kanye noNkulunkulu wabo, yebo, futhi bajabule.
- 12 Futhi amaLamani phezu kwalokho asegcine iziboshwa eziningi, zonke eziyizinduna ezinkulu, ngokuba akekho namunye amshiya ephila. Futhi sicabanga ukuthi kumanje ngalesi sikhathi zisezweni lakwaNefi; kunjalo uma zingabulawanga.
- 13 Manje lawa ngamadolobha amaLamani athole ubunini bawo ngokuchitha igazi labaningi bamadoda ethu anesibindi:
- 14 Izwe lakwaManti, noma idolobha lakwaManti, kanye nedolobha lakwaZezromu, kanye nedolobha lakwaKumeni, kanye nedolobha lakwa-Antipara.
- 15 Futhi lawa ngamadolobha awathola ukuthi abe ngawabo ngesikhathi ngifika edolobheni lakwaJudiya; futhi ngathola u-Antipasi kanye namadoda akhe besebenza kanzima ngamandla abo onke ukuthi baliqinise lelidolobha.
- 16 Yebo, futhi babedangele ngokomzimba kanjalo nangokomoya, ngokuba babelwe ngesibindi emini futhi basebenza kanzima ngobusuku ukuze bawagcine amadolobha abo; futhi ngaleyondlela base behlupheke ngezinhlopheko ezinkulu ezinhlobonhlobo.

But behold, here is one thing in which we may have great joy. For behold, in the twenty and sixth year, I, Helaman, did march at the head of these two thousand young men to the city of Judea, to assist Antipus, whom ye had appointed a leader over the people of that part of the land.

And I did join my two thousand sons, (for they are worthy to be called sons) to the army of Antipus, in which strength Antipus did rejoice exceedingly; for behold, his army had been reduced by the Lamanites because their forces had slain a vast number of our men, for which cause we have to mourn.

Nevertheless, we may console ourselves in this point, that they have died in the cause of their country and of their God, yea, and they are happy.

And the Lamanites had also retained many prisoners, all of whom are chief captains, for none other have they spared alive. And we suppose that they are now at this time in the land of Nephi; it is so if they are not slain.

And now these are the cities of which the Lamanites have obtained possession by the shedding of the blood of so many of our valiant men:

The land of Manti, or the city of Manti, and the city of Zezrom, and the city of Cumeni, and the city of Antiparah.

And these are the cities which they possessed when I arrived at the city of Judea; and I found Antipus and his men toiling with their might to fortify the city.

Yea, and they were depressed in body as well as in spirit, for they had fought valiantly by day and toiled by night to maintain their cities; and thus they had suffered great afflictions of every kind.

- 17 Manje babezimisele ukunqoba kulendawo noma bafe; ngakho-ke ngesizathu esihle ungakholwa wukuthi leli butho elincane engafika nalo, yebo, lalawo madodana ami, abanika amathemba amakhulu kanye nenjabulo enkulu.
- 18 Manje kwenzeka ukuthi ngesikhathi amaLamani esebona ukuthi u-Antipasi wayesethole amandla amakhudlwana ebuthweni lakhe, aphoqeka ngemiyalelo ka-Amoroni ukuthi angalihlaseli idolobha lakwaJuda, noma azolwa nathi.
- 19 Futhi ngalendlela sabusiswa yiNkosi; ngokuba ukube ake eza kithi kulobu buthakathaka bethu mhlawumbe ayengalibulala ibutho lethu elincane; kodwa ngalendlela salondolozwa.
- 20 Ayalwa ngu-Amoroni ukuthi awagcine lawo madolobha ayesewathathile. Futhi waphela kanjalo-ke unyaka wamashumi amabili nesithupha. Ekuqaleni konyaka wamashumi amabili nesikhombisa sabe sesililungiselele idolobha lethu kanye nathi uqobo lwethu ukuthi sizivikele.
- 21 Manje sasifuna ukuthi amaLamani eze kithi; ngokuba sasingafuni ukuthi siwahlasele ezinqabeni zawo eziqinile.
- 22 Futhi kwenzeka ukuthi sabeka izinhlozi ndawo zonke, ukuthi ziqaphe iminyakazo yamaLamani, ukuze angasidluli ebusuku noma emini ukuze ahlasele amanye amadolobha ethu ayengasenyakatho.
- 23 Ngokuba sasazi ukuthi kulawo madolobha babengaqinile ngokwanele ukuthi bahlangane nawo; ngakho-ke sasifuna, ukuthi uma nje engadlula ngakithi, ukuthi sitheleke phezu kwawo ngasemuva, futhi ngaleyondlela sinqwamane nawo ngemuva ngaso lesi sikhathi ehlangatshezwa ngaphambili. Sasicabanga ukuthi singawanqoba; kodwa bheka, saphoxeka kulokhu kufisa kwethu.
- 24 Awazange alokothe adlule ngakithi nempi yawo yonke, noma nje badlule nenxenye, hleze bangabi namandla ngokwanele futhi bese behlulwa.
- 25 Futhi awazange alokothe ahambe ehle ayolwa nedolobha lakwaZarahemla; noma alokothe anqamule enhloko yeSidoni, ukuya edolobheni lakwaNefiha.
- 26 Futhi ngalendlela, ngamabutho awo, ayezimisele ukuthi awagcine lawo madolobha ayewathathile.

And now they were determined to conquer in this place or die; therefore you may well suppose that this little force which I brought with me, yea, those sons of mine, gave them great hopes and much joy.

And now it came to pass that when the Lamanites saw that Antipus had received a greater strength to his army, they were compelled by the orders of Ammoron to not come against the city of Judea, or against us, to battle.

And thus were we favored of the Lord; for had they come upon us in this our weakness they might have perhaps destroyed our little army; but thus were we preserved.

They were commanded by Ammoron to maintain those cities which they had taken. And thus ended the twenty and sixth year. And in the commencement of the twenty and seventh year we had prepared our city and ourselves for defence.

Now we were desirous that the Lamanites should come upon us; for we were not desirous to make an attack upon them in their strongholds.

And it came to pass that we kept spies out round about, to watch the movements of the Lamanites, that they might not pass us by night nor by day to make an attack upon our other cities which were on the northward.

For we knew in those cities they were not sufficiently strong to meet them; therefore we were desirous, if they should pass by us, to fall upon them in their rear, and thus bring them up in the rear at the same time they were met in the front. We supposed that we could overpower them; but behold, we were disappointed in this our desire.

They durst not pass by us with their whole army, neither durst they with a part, lest they should not be sufficiently strong and they should fall.

Neither durst they march down against the city of Zarahemla; neither durst they cross the head of Sidon, over to the city of Nephihah.

And thus, with their forces, they were determined to maintain those cities which they had taken.

27 Manje kwenzeka ngenyanga yesibili yalonyaka, kwalethwa kithi ukudla okuningi kuvela koyise balawo madodana ami ayizinkulungwane ezimbili.

28 Futhi phezu kwalokho kwathunyelwa amadoda ayizinkulungwane ezimbili kithi evela ezweni lakwaZarahemla. Futhi ngaleyondlela sazilungiselela ngamadoda ayizinkulungwane eziyishumi, kanye nokudla kwawo, futhi kanjalo nokwabafazi bawo kanye nokwabantwana bawo.

29 Futhi amaLamani, ngalesi sizathu ngokubona amabutho ethu anda nsukuzonke, futhi nokudla kufika ukuzosisekela, aqala ukwesaba, futhi aqala ukuphuma, ukuyobona ukuthi kwakungena kwenzeka yini ukuthi ayovimbela ukuthola kwethu ukudla kanye namandla.

30 Manje ngesikhathi sibona ukuthi amaLamani ayeseqala ukungakhululeki ngalokhu, sasifuna ukwenza isu elalizofezeka kuwo; ngakho-ke u-Antipasi wayala ukuthi ngihambe phambili namadodana ami amancane siye edolobheni elingumakhelwane, kube sengathi sihambisa ukudla edolobheni elingumakhelwane.

31 Futhi kwakufanele sedlule eduze kwedolobha i-Antipara, kube sengathi siya edolobheni elingaphambili, eminceleni ngasogwini lolwandle.

32 Futhi kwenzeka ukuthi sahamba, sengathi sithwele ukudla kwethu, siya kulelo dolobha.

33 Futhi kwenzeka ukuthi u-Antipasi nempela wahamba nenxenywe yempi yakhe, washiya abasalayo ukuthi bagcine idolobha. Kodwa akahambanga kwaze kwaba mina sengihambe phambili nempi yami encane, futhi saze safika eduzane nedolobha i-Antipara.

34 Manje, edolobheni i-Antipara kwakubekwe ibutho eliqine kakhulu lamaLamani; yebo, eliningi kakhulu.

35 Futhi kwenzeka ukuthi ngesikhathi esetshelwe yizinhlozi zawo, eza nempi yawo ahamba aqonda kithi.

36 Futhi kwenzeka ukuthi nempela sawabalekela, saya ngase nyakatho. Futhi ngaleyondlela sasiliholela kude ibutho elinamandla amakhulu lamaLamani;

And now it came to pass in the second month of this year, there was brought unto us many provisions from the fathers of those my two thousand sons.

And also there were sent two thousand men unto us from the land of Zarahemla. And thus we were prepared with ten thousand men, and provisions for them, and also for their wives and their children.

And the Lamanites, thus seeing our forces increase daily, and provisions arrive for our support, they began to be fearful, and began to sally forth, if it were possible to put an end to our receiving provisions and strength.

Now when we saw that the Lamanites began to grow uneasy on this wise, we were desirous to bring a stratagem into effect upon them; therefore Antipus ordered that I should march forth with my little sons to a neighboring city, as if we were carrying provisions to a neighboring city.

And we were to march near the city of Antiparah, as if we were going to the city beyond, in the borders by the seashore.

And it came to pass that we did march forth, as if with our provisions, to go to that city.

And it came to pass that Antipus did march forth with a part of his army, leaving the remainder to maintain the city. But he did not march forth until I had gone forth with my little army, and came near the city Antiparah.

And now, in the city Antiparah were stationed the strongest army of the Lamanites; yea, the most numerous.

And it came to pass that when they had been informed by their spies, they came forth with their army and marched against us.

And it came to pass that we did flee before them, northward. And thus we did lead away the most powerful army of the Lamanites;

37 Yebo, ngisho kwaze kwaba yibanga elide kakhulu, kangangokuthi ngesikhathi ebona impi ka-Antipasi iwalandela, ngamandla ayo wonke, awajikelanga kwesokudla noma kwesokhohlo, kodwa aqhubeka nohambo lwawo ngendlela eqondile emva kwethu; futhi, njengoba sasicabanga, kwakuyinhloso yawo ukuthi asibulale ngaphambi kokuthi u-Antipasi awafice, ukuze angazungezwa ngabantu bethu.

38 Manje u-Antipasi, eyibona ingozi yethu, nempela walusheshisa uhambo lwempi yakhe. Kodwa bheka, kwakusebusuku; ngakho-ke awasificanga, ngokunjalo no-Antipasi akawaficanga; ngakho-ke sakanisa ngalobo busuku.

39 Futhi kwenzeka ukuthi ngaphambi kwentatha kusa, bheka, amaLamani ayesilandela. Manje sasingaqinile ngokwanele ukuthi silwe nawo; yebo, ngangingenakuvuma ukuthi amadodana ami amancane awele ezandleni zawo; ngakho-ke nempela saqhubeka nohambo lwethu, saya ehlane.

40 Manje awalokothanga ajikele kwesokudla noma kwesokhohlo hleze azungezwe; futhi nami angijikelanga kwesokudla noma kwesokhohlo hleze asifice, bese singakwazi ukumelana nawo, kodwa sibulawe, bese eshaya echitha; futhi ngenxa yalokho sabaleka lonke lolo suku sabalekela ehlane, ngisho kwaze kwaba mnyama.

41 Futhi kwaphinda kwenzeka ukuthi, ngesikhathi ukukhanya kokusa kufika sawabona amaLamani esephezu kwethu, futhi sawabalekela.

42 Kodwa kwenzeka ukuthi awasilandelanga kakhulu ngaphambi kokuthi ame; futhi kwakusekuseni ngosuku lwesithathu enyangeni yesikhombisa.

43 Manje, noma aficwa ngu-Antipusi asazanga, kodwa ngathi emadodeni ami: Bhekani, asazi noma amele ukuthi siwahlasele, ukuze asibambe ngogibe lwawo;

44 Ngakho-ke nithini, madodana ami, nizohamba yini niyowahlasela na?

45 Manje ngithi kuwe, mfowethu othandekayo uMoroni, angikaze nanini ngisibone isibindi esikhulu kangaka, cha, hhayi phakathi kwawo wonke amaNefi.

Yea, even to a considerable distance, insomuch that when they saw the army of Antipus pursuing them, with their might, they did not turn to the right nor to the left, but pursued their march in a straight course after us; and, as we suppose, it was their intent to slay us before Antipus should overtake them, and this that they might not be surrounded by our people.

And now Antipus, beholding our danger, did speed the march of his army. But behold, it was night; therefore they did not overtake us, neither did Antipus overtake them; therefore we did camp for the night.

And it came to pass that before the dawn of the morning, behold, the Lamanites were pursuing us. Now we were not sufficiently strong to contend with them; yea, I would not suffer that my little sons should fall into their hands; therefore we did continue our march, and we took our march into the wilderness.

Now they durst not turn to the right nor to the left lest they should be surrounded; neither would I turn to the right nor to the left lest they should overtake me, and we could not stand against them, but be slain, and they would make their escape; and thus we did flee all that day into the wilderness, even until it was dark.

And it came to pass that again, when the light of the morning came we saw the Lamanites upon us, and we did flee before them.

But it came to pass that they did not pursue us far before they halted; and it was in the morning of the third day of the seventh month.

And now, whether they were overtaken by Antipus we knew not, but I said unto my men: Behold, we know not but they have halted for the purpose that we should come against them, that they might catch us in their snare;

Therefore what say ye, my sons, will ye go against them to battle?

And now I say unto you, my beloved brother Moroni, that never had I seen so great courage, nay, not amongst all the Nephites.

46 Ngokuba njengoba ngangihlala ngibabiza ngamadodana ami (ngokuba bonke babe bancane kakhulu) ngisho nabo ngokunjalo bathi kimi: Baba, bheka uNkulunkulu wethu unathi, futhi ngeke avume ukuthi siwe; ngakho-ke masihambe; ngeke sibabulale abafowethu uma nabo bengasiyeka; ngakho-ke masihambeni, hleze bayihlule impi ka-Antipasi.

47 Manje babengakaze balwe, kodwa babengakwesabi ukufa; futhi babecabanga ikakhulukazi ngenkululeko yoyise kunokucabanga ngezimpilo zabo; yebo, babefundiswe ngonina, ukuthi uma bengangabazi, uNkulunkulu wayeyobakhulula.

48 Futhi bangiphindaphindela amazwi onina, bethi: Asingabazi omama bethu babazi.

49 Futhi kwenzeka ukuthi nempela ngabuyela emuva nezinkulungwane zami ezimbili ngayokulwa nalamaLamani ayekade esilandela. Manje bheka, amabutho ka-Antipasi ayese-waficile, futhi impi embi kakhulu yabe isiqalile.

50 Impi ka-Antipasi isikhathele, ngenxa yohambo lwabo olude ngesikhathi esifushane kangaka, yayisizowela ezandleni zamaLamani; ukuba angibuyanga nezinkulungwane zami ezimbili ayezoyifeza inhloso yawo.

51 Ngokuba u-Antipasi wayesewile ngenkemba, kanye nabaningi babaholi bakhe, ngenxa yokukhathala kwabo, okwakwenziwe wuhambo lwabo olwalushesha—ngakho-ke abantu bakwa-Antipasi, bedidekile ngenxa yokuwa kwabaholi babo, baqala ukuhlelela emuva ngaphambi kwamaLamani.

52 Futhi kwenzeka ukuthi amaLamani ama isibindi, aqala futhi ukubahubha; futhi ngesikhathi amaLamani ebahubha ngomfutho omkhulu uHelamani watheleka emva kwawo nezinkulungwane zakhe ezimbili, futhi waqala ukuwabulala kakhulu, kangangokuthi impi yonke yamaLamani yema futhi yaphendukela kuHelamani.

53 Manje ngesikhathi abantu ba-Antipasi bebona ukuthi amaLamani ayese-phendukile, babuthela ndawonye abantu babo baphinda beza ngemuva kwamaLamani.

For as I had ever called them my sons (for they were all of them very young) even so they said unto me: Father, behold our God is with us, and he will not suffer that we should fall; then let us go forth; we would not slay our brethren if they would let us alone; therefore let us go, lest they should overpower the army of Antipus.

Now they never had fought, yet they did not fear death; and they did think more upon the liberty of their fathers than they did upon their lives; yea, they had been taught by their mothers, that if they did not doubt, God would deliver them.

And they rehearsed unto me the words of their mothers, saying: We do not doubt our mothers knew it.

And it came to pass that I did return with my two thousand against these Lamanites who had pursued us. And now behold, the armies of Antipus had overtaken them, and a terrible battle had commenced.

The army of Antipus being weary, because of their long march in so short a space of time, were about to fall into the hands of the Lamanites; and had I not returned with my two thousand they would have obtained their purpose.

For Antipus had fallen by the sword, and many of his leaders, because of their weariness, which was occasioned by the speed of their march—therefore the men of Antipus, being confused because of the fall of their leaders, began to give way before the Lamanites.

And it came to pass that the Lamanites took courage, and began to pursue them; and thus were the Lamanites pursuing them with great vigor when Helaman came upon their rear with his two thousand, and began to slay them exceedingly, insomuch that the whole army of the Lamanites halted and turned upon Helaman.

Now when the people of Antipus saw that the Lamanites had turned them about, they gathered together their men and came again upon the rear of the Lamanites.

- 54 Manje kwenzeka ukuthi thina, bantu baNefi, abantu ba-Antipasi, nami kanye nezinkulungwane zami ezimbili, sawazungeza amaLamani, sawabulala; yebo, kangangokuthi aphoqeleka ukuthi anikele izikhali zawo zempi futhi kanjalo nawo uqobo lwawo njengeziboshwa zempi.
- 55 Manje kwenzeka ukuthi ngesikhathi ezezikezele kithi, bheka, ngazibala lezo zinsizwa ezazikade zilwa nami, nginokwesaba hleze eziningi zazo zazibulewe.
- 56 Kodwa bheka, ngokujabula kwami okukhulu, kwakungekho ngisho namunye umphefumulo owawuwele phansi; yebo, futhi zazilwe sengathi zazinamandla kaNkulunkulu; yebo, awekho amadoda aziwayo ake alwa ngamandla amangalisa kangaka; futhi nangamandla amakhulu kangaka awela phezu kwamaLamani, kangangokuthi awesabisa; futhi ngalesi sizathu amaLamani azinikela njengeziboshwa zempi.
- 57 Futhi njengoba sasingenayo indawo yeziboshwa zethu, ukuthi sizigade ukuze zingahlangani namabutho amaLamani, ngakho-ke sazithumela ezweni lakwaZarahemla, kanye nenxenye yalawo madoda ayengabulawanga ka-Antipasi, kanye nazo; kwathi abasalayo ngabathatha futhi ngabahlanganisa nezinsizwa zami zama-Amoni, futhi sathatha uhambo lwethu saphindela emuva edolobheni lakwaJudiya.

And now it came to pass that we, the people of Nephi, the people of Antipus, and I with my two thousand, did surround the Lamanites, and did slay them; yea, insomuch that they were compelled to deliver up their weapons of war and also themselves as prisoners of war.

And now it came to pass that when they had surrendered themselves up unto us, behold, I numbered those young men who had fought with me, fearing lest there were many of them slain.

But behold, to my great joy, there had not one soul of them fallen to the earth; yea, and they had fought as if with the strength of God; yea, never were men known to have fought with such miraculous strength; and with such mighty power did they fall upon the Lamanites, that they did frighten them; and for this cause did the Lamanites deliver themselves up as prisoners of war.

And as we had no place for our prisoners, that we could guard them to keep them from the armies of the Lamanites, therefore we sent them to the land of Zarahemla, and a part of those men who were not slain of Antipus, with them; and the remainder I took and joined them to my stripling Ammonites, and took our march back to the city of Judea.

Alima 57

- 1 Manje kwenzeka ukuthi ngathola incwadi ivela ku-Amoroni, inkosi, ithi uma ngangingaletha lezo ziboshwa zempi esasizithathile naye wayeyosinikeza idolobha lakwa-Antipara.
- 2 Kodwa ngathumela incwadi enkosini, ngithi sasinesiqiniseko ukuthi amabutho ethu ayenele ukuthi alithathe izwe lase-Antipara ngamandla ethu, futhi ukukhulula iziboshwa ngalelo dolobha kwakungasho ukuthi sasingahlakaniphile, futhi nokuthi sasiyozikhulula kuphela iziboshwa zethu ngokushintshisana.
- 3 Futhi u-Amoroni wayenqaba imibandela yencwadi yami, ngokuba wayengafuni ukushintshisana ngeziboshwa; ngakho-ke saqala ukwenza amalungiselelo okuthi siyohlasela idolobha lakwa-Antipara.
- 4 Kodwa abantu bakwa-Antipara nempela balishiya idolobha, futhi babalekela kwamanye amadolobha abo, okwakungawabo, ukuze bawaqinise; futhi ngaleyondlela idolobha lakwa-Antipara lawela ezandleni zethu.
- 5 Futhi waphela kanjalo-ke unyaka wamashumi amabili nesishiyagalombili wokubusa kwabehluleli.
- 6 Futhi kwenzeka ukuthi ekuqaleni konyaka wamashumi amabili nesishiyagalolunye, sathola ukudla, futhi kanjalo nokwengezelelwa ebuthweni lethu, kuphuma ezweni lakwaZarahemla, kanye nasezweni elizungeze lapho, okwaba yisibalo samadoda ayizinkulungwane eziyisithupha, ngaphandle kwamashumi ayisithupha amadodana ama-Amoni ayefike ukuzohlanganyela nabafowabo, iqembu lami elincane lezinkulungwane ezimbili. Manje bheka, sase siqinile, yebo, futhi phezu kwalokho sabanokudla okuningi okwalethwa kithi.
- 7 Futhi kwenzeka ukuthi kwakuyisifiso sethu ukuthi siyiqhube impi nebutho elalibekwe ukuthi livikele idolobha iKumeni.
- 8 Manje bheka, ngizokukhombisa ukuthi sashesha sasifeza lesi sifiso sethu; yebo, nebutho lethu eliqinile, noma nenxenywe yempi yethu eqinile, nempela salizungeza, ngobusuku, idolobha iKumeni, ngaphambi nje kancane kokuthi bathole ukudla.

Alma 57

And now it came to pass that I received an epistle from Ammoron, the king, stating that if I would deliver up those prisoners of war whom we had taken that he would deliver up the city of Antiparah unto us.

But I sent an epistle unto the king, that we were sure our forces were sufficient to take the city of Antiparah by our force; and by delivering up the prisoners for that city we should suppose ourselves unwise, and that we would only deliver up our prisoners on exchange.

And Ammoron refused mine epistle, for he would not exchange prisoners; therefore we began to make preparations to go against the city of Antiparah.

But the people of Antiparah did leave the city, and fled to their other cities, which they had possession of, to fortify them; and thus the city of Antiparah fell into our hands.

And thus ended the twenty and eighth year of the reign of the judges.

And it came to pass that in the commencement of the twenty and ninth year, we received a supply of provisions, and also an addition to our army, from the land of Zarahemla, and from the land round about, to the number of six thousand men, besides sixty of the sons of the Ammonites who had come to join their brethren, my little band of two thousand. And now behold, we were strong, yea, and we had also plenty of provisions brought unto us.

And it came to pass that it was our desire to wage a battle with the army which was placed to protect the city Cumeni.

And now behold, I will show unto you that we soon accomplished our desire; yea, with our strong force, or with a part of our strong force, we did surround, by night, the city Cumeni, a little before they were to receive a supply of provisions.

- 9 Futhi kwenzeka ukuthi sakanisa sazungeza idolobha ubusuku obuningi; nempela salala phezu kwezinkemba zethu, futhi sabeka abaqaphi, ukuze amaLamani angezi kithi ebusuku asibulale, lokho akuzama izikhathi eziningi; kodwa ezikhathini eziningi; ekuzama lokhu igazi lawo lachithwa.
- 10 Ekugcineni ukudla kwawo kwafika, futhi ayesezongena edolobheni ngobusuku. Futhi thina, esikhundleni sokuba sibe ngamaLamani, sasingamaNefi; ngakho-ke, sawathatha kanye nokudla kwawo.
- 11 Futhi nakuba amaLamani esevinjelwe ukuthi athole ukusekelwa ngalendlela, ayesaphikelele ukuthi aligcine idolobha; ngakho-ke kwadingeka ukuthi sikuthathe lokho kudla sikuthumele kwaJudiya, kuthi iziboshwa zethu sizithumele ezweni lakwaZarahemla.
- 12 Futhi kwenzeka ukuthi kwakungakadluli izinsuku eziningi ngaphambi kokuthi amaLamani aqale ukulahla lonke ithemba lokusizwa; ngakho-ke alidedela idolobha ezandleni zethu; futhi ngalendlela sabe sesiwafezile amacebo ethu okuthola idolobha iKumeni.
- 13 Kodwa kwenzeka ukuthi iziboshwa zethu zaziziningi kakhulu kangangokuthi, naphezu kwesibalo sethu esikhulu, saphoqeka ukuthi sisebenzise wonke amabutho ethu ukuthi sizigcine, noma sizibulale.
- 14 Ngokuba bheka, ayeyodlubulundela abaleke eseyisibalo esikhulu kakhulu, futhi alwe ngamatshe, kanye nangezagila, noma nanganoma yini enye into ayengayithola, kangangokuthi nempela sabulala angaphezulu kwezinkulungwane ezimbili kuyaphezulu emuva kokuthi esezinikele ukuba yiziboshwa zempi.
- 15 Ngakho-ke kwadingeka, ukuthi siziqede izimpilo zawo, noma siwaqaphe, ngenkemba esandleni, siwehlise aye ezweni lakwaZarahemla; futhi phezu kwalokho nokudla kwethu kwakungabenele abantu bethu, singakubali lokho esasikuthathe kumaLamani.

And it came to pass that we did camp round about the city for many nights; but we did sleep upon our swords, and keep guards, that the Lamanites could not come upon us by night and slay us, which they attempted many times; but as many times as they attempted this their blood was spilt.

At length their provisions did arrive, and they were about to enter the city by night. And we, instead of being Lamanites, were Nephites; therefore, we did take them and their provisions.

And notwithstanding the Lamanites being cut off from their support after this manner, they were still determined to maintain the city; therefore it became expedient that we should take those provisions and send them to Judea, and our prisoners to the land of Zarahemla.

And it came to pass that not many days had passed away before the Lamanites began to lose all hopes of succor; therefore they yielded up the city unto our hands; and thus we had accomplished our designs in obtaining the city Cumeni.

But it came to pass that our prisoners were so numerous that, notwithstanding the enormity of our numbers, we were obliged to employ all our force to keep them, or to put them to death.

For behold, they would break out in great numbers, and would fight with stones, and with clubs, or whatsoever thing they could get into their hands, inasmuch that we did slay upwards of two thousand of them after they had surrendered themselves prisoners of war.

Therefore it became expedient for us, that we should put an end to their lives, or guard them, sword in hand, down to the land of Zarahemla; and also our provisions were not any more than sufficient for our own people, notwithstanding that which we had taken from the Lamanites.

- 16 Manje, kulezo zimo ezibucayi, kwaba wudaba olunzima kakhulu ukuthi kuthathwe isinqumo ukuthi kwenziweni ngalezi ziboshwa zempi; nokho, sanquma ukuthi sizithumele ezansi ezweni lakwaZarahemla; ngakho-ke sakhetha inxenye yamadoda ethu, sawanikeza igunya phezu kweziboshwa zethu ukuthi aye ezansi ezweni lakwaZarahemla.
- 17 Kodwa kwenzeka ukuthi ngakusasa abuya. Manje bheka, asiwabuzanga mayelana neziboshwa; ngokuba bheka, amaLamani ayesephezu kwethu, futhi abuya ngesikhathi ukuthi azosisindisa ukuthi singaweli ezandleni zawo. Ngokuba bheka, u-Amoroni wayesewathumele isabelo esisha sokudla futhi kanjalo namabutho amaningi amadoda.
- 18 Futhi kwenzeka ukuthi lawo madoda esasiwathumele neziboshwa afika ngesikhathi ukuzowamisa, njengoba ayesezosiqoba.
- 19 Kodwa bheka, iqembu lami elincane lezinkulungwane ezimbili kanye namashumi ayisithupha lalwa ngokuzinikela okukhulu; yebo, laliqinile phambi kwamaLamani, futhi bababulala bonke ababe bhakene nabo.
- 20 Futhi njengoba insalela yempi yethu yase ifuna ukuhlehla phambi kwamaLamani, bheka, lezo zinkulungwane ezimbili namashumi ayisithupha zaziqinile futhi zingadikibali.
- 21 Yebo, futhi zalalela futhi zaqaphela ukuthi ziwenze wonke amazwi okuyalwa ngokuyikho; yebo, futhi kwenzeka kuzo ngisho njengokokholo lwazo; futhi ngawakhumbula amazwi ezawakhuluma kimi okuthi onina babezifundisile.
- 22 Manje bheka, kwakuyila madodana ami, kanye nalawo madoda ayekade ekhethiwe ukuthi ahambise iziboshwa, esibabonga ngalokhu kunqoba okukhulu; ngokuba kwakuyibo abawashaya amaLamani; ngakho-ke aqhutshwa aphindiselwa emuva edolobheni lakwaManti.
- 23 Futhi saligcina idolobha lethu iKumeni, futhi asibulawanga sonke ngenkamba; nokho, salahlekelwa kakhulu.

And now, in those critical circumstances, it became a very serious matter to determine concerning these prisoners of war; nevertheless, we did resolve to send them down to the land of Zarahemla; therefore we selected a part of our men, and gave them charge over our prisoners to go down to the land of Zarahemla.

But it came to pass that on the morrow they did return. And now behold, we did not inquire of them concerning the prisoners; for behold, the Lamanites were upon us, and they returned in season to save us from falling into their hands. For behold, Ammoron had sent to their support a new supply of provisions and also a numerous army of men.

And it came to pass that those men whom we sent with the prisoners did arrive in season to check them, as they were about to overpower us.

But behold, my little band of two thousand and sixty fought most desperately; yea, they were firm before the Lamanites, and did administer death unto all those who opposed them.

And as the remainder of our army were about to give way before the Lamanites, behold, those two thousand and sixty were firm and undaunted.

Yea, and they did obey and observe to perform every word of command with exactness; yea, and even according to their faith it was done unto them; and I did remember the words which they said unto me that their mothers had taught them.

And now behold, it was these my sons, and those men who had been selected to convey the prisoners, to whom we owe this great victory; for it was they who did beat the Lamanites; therefore they were driven back to the city of Manti.

And we retained our city Cumeni, and were not all destroyed by the sword; nevertheless, we had suffered great loss.

24 Futhi kwenzeka ukuthi emva kokuthi amaLamani esebalekile, ngokushesha nganikeza imiyalelo yokuthi amadoda ami ayelimele mawathathwe phakathi kwabafileyo, futhi ngenza ukuthi izilonda zabo ziboshwe.

25 Futhi kwenzeka ukuthi kwakukhona abangamakhulu amabili, kulabo abayizinkulungwane ezimbili namashumi ayisithupha bami, ababequleke ngenxa yokulahlekelwa yigazi; nokho, ngenxa yobuhle bukaNkulunkulu, futhi nangokumangala kwethu okukhulu, futhi nokwabangela injabulo yamabutho ethu onke, kwakungekho namunye wabo owafayo; yebo, futhi kwakungekho namunye phakathi kwabo owayengawatholanga amanxeba amaningi.

26 Manje, ukulondolozeka kwabo kwakumangalisa ebuthweni lethu lonke, yebo, ukuthi balondolozeke kube kukhona inkulungwane yabafowethu ababe bulewe. Futhi ngokufanele sikubona kungenxa yamandla amangalisayo kaNkulunkulu, ngenxa yokholo lwabo olukhulu kulokho ababefundiswe khona ukuthi bakukholwe—ukuthi kwakukhona uNkulunkulu olungile, futhi nokuthi lowo owayengangabazi, wayeyolondolozwa ngamandla akhe amangalisayo.

27 Manje lolu kwakuwukholo lwalabo engikhulume ngabo; bancane, futhi imiqondo yabo igxilile, futhi babeka ithemba labo kuNkulunkulu njalo-njalo.

28 Manje kwenzeka ukuthi emva kokuthi sesiba nakekele abantu bethu abalimele, futhi sesiba ngcwabile abethu ababefile futhi kanjalo nabafileyo bamaLamani, ababe baningi, bheka, nempela sabuza kuGide mayelana nalezo ziboshwa ezaziqale ukuhamba zehla zaya ezweni lakwaZarahemla naye.

29 Manje uGide kwakuyinduna enkulu yeqembu eyayibekwe ukuthi iziqaphe ngesikhathi zehla ziya kulelozwe.

30 Manje, lawa ngamazwi uGide awakhuluma kimi: Bheka, siqalile ukuhamba sehlela ezansi ezweni lakwaZarahemla neziboshwa zethu. Futhi kwenzeka ukuthi sahlanguzana nezinhloli zamabutho ethu, ezazithunyelwe ukuthi ziyobheka inkambi yamaLamani.

And it came to pass that after the Lamanites had fled, I immediately gave orders that my men who had been wounded should be taken from among the dead, and caused that their wounds should be dressed.

And it came to pass that there were two hundred, out of my two thousand and sixty, who had fainted because of the loss of blood; nevertheless, according to the goodness of God, and to our great astonishment, and also the joy of our whole army, there was not one soul of them who did perish; yea, and neither was there one soul among them who had not received many wounds.

And now, their preservation was astonishing to our whole army, yea, that they should be spared while there was a thousand of our brethren who were slain. And we do justly ascribe it to the miraculous power of God, because of their exceeding faith in that which they had been taught to believe—that there was a just God, and whosoever did not doubt, that they should be preserved by his marvelous power.

Now this was the faith of these of whom I have spoken; they are young, and their minds are firm, and they do put their trust in God continually.

And now it came to pass that after we had thus taken care of our wounded men, and had buried our dead and also the dead of the Lamanites, who were many, behold, we did inquire of Gid concerning the prisoners whom they had started to go down to the land of Zarahemla with.

Now Gid was the chief captain over the band who was appointed to guard them down to the land.

And now, these are the words which Gid said unto me: Behold, we did start to go down to the land of Zarahemla with our prisoners. And it came to pass that we did meet the spies of our armies, who had been sent out to watch the camp of the Lamanites.

- 31 Futhi zasimemeza, zithi—Bhekani, amabutho amaLamani ahamba aqonde ngasedolobheni iKumeni; futhi bhekani, azobahlasela, yebo, futhi azobabulala abantu bethu.
- 32 Futhi kwenzeka ukuthi iziboshwa zethu nempela zakuzwa ukukhala kwazo, okwenza ukuthi zibe nesibindi; futhi zaqala ukusivukela.
- 33 Futhi kwenzeka ngenxa yokusivukela kwazo nempela senza ukuthi izinkemba zethu ziwele phezu kwazo. Futhi kwenzeka ukuthi zaya ziyiqembu zagijimela ezinkembeni zethu, okwenza ukuthi, isibalo esikhulu sazo sibulawe; kwase kuthi insalela yazo yeqa futhi yasibalekela.
- 34 Futhi bheka, ngesikhathi sezibalekile asikwazanga ukuzifika, sathatha uhambo lwethu ngejubane saqonda ngasedolobheni iKumeni; futhi bheka, nempela safika ngesikhathi ukuthi sisize abafowethu ekugcineni idolobha.
- 35 Futhi bheka, sesiphinde sakhululwa saphuma ezandleni zezitha zethu. Futhi libusisiwe igama likaNkulunkulu wethu; ngokuba bheka, nguye osikhululile; yebo, osenzele lento enkulu kangaka.
- 36 Manje kwenzeka ukuthi ngesikhathi mina, Helamani, sengiwazwile lamazwi kaGide, ngagcwala injabulo enkulu ngenxa yobuhle bukaNkulunkulu ekusilondolozeni, ukuze sonke singafi; yebo, futhi ngiyethemba ukuthi imiphefumulo yalaba ababulawayo isingene ekuphumuleni kukaNkulunkulu wabo.

And they cried unto us, saying—Behold, the armies of the Lamanites are marching towards the city of Cumeni; and behold, they will fall upon them, yea, and will destroy our people.

And it came to pass that our prisoners did hear their cries, which caused them to take courage; and they did rise up in rebellion against us.

And it came to pass because of their rebellion we did cause that our swords should come upon them. And it came to pass that they did in a body run upon our swords, in the which, the greater number of them were slain; and the remainder of them broke through and fled from us.

And behold, when they had fled and we could not overtake them, we took our march with speed towards the city Cumeni; and behold, we did arrive in time that we might assist our brethren in preserving the city.

And behold, we are again delivered out of the hands of our enemies. And blessed is the name of our God; for behold, it is he that has delivered us; yea, that has done this great thing for us.

Now it came to pass that when I, Helaman, had heard these words of Gid, I was filled with exceeding joy because of the goodness of God in preserving us, that we might not all perish; yea, and I trust that the souls of them who have been slain have entered into the rest of their God.

Alima 58

- 1 Bheka, manje kwenzeka ukuthi injongo yethu elandelayo kwase kuwukuthola idolobha lakwaManti; kodwa bheka, kwakungekho ndlela esasingawahola ngayo aphume edolobheni ngamaqenjana ethu amancane. Ngokuba bheka, ayesakukhumbula lokho esasikwenzile kuze kube manje; ngakho-ke asikwazanga ukuwayenga aphume ezinqabeni zawo eziqinile.
- 2 Futhi ayemaningi kakhulu ngaphezu kwebutho lethu kangangkuthi asilokothanga siyowahlasela ezinqabeni zawo eziqinile.
- 3 Yebo, futhi kwadingeka ukuthi sisebenzise amadoda ethu ekugcineni lezo zingxenywe zezwe esasizitholile ukuthi kube ngezethu; ngakho-ke kwadingeka ukuthi silinde, ukuze sithole amanye amandla avela ezweni lakwaZarahemla futhi kanjalo nesabelo esisha sokudla.
- 4 Futhi kwenzeka ukuthi ngenxa yalesi sizathu nempela ngathumela isithunywa kumbusi wezwe lethu, ukuthi ngimazise mayelana nesimo sabantu bethu. Futhi kwenzeka ukuthi salinda ukuthi sinikwe ukudla kanye namandla avela ezweni lakwaZarahemla.
- 5 Kodwa bheka, sazuza kancane kulokhu; ngokuba amaLamani nawo futhi ayethola amandla amakhulu usuku nosuku, futhi ngokunjalo nokudla okuningi; zaba njena-ke izimo zethu ngalesi sikhathi.
- 6 Futhi amaLamani ayephuma esihlasela izikhathi ngezikhathi, efuna ukusibulala ngecebo lokuhlakanipha; nokho sasingeke sikwazi ukuzolwa nawo, ngenxa yezindawo zawo zokuphepha kanye nezinqaba zawo eziqinile.
- 7 Futhi kwenzeka ukuthi nempela salinda kulezi zimo ezinzima izikhathi ezingangezinyanga eziningi, ngisho kwaze kwaba cishe siyafa ngenxa yokweswela ukudla.
- 8 Kodwa kwenzeka ukuthi nempela sakuthola ukudla, okwakulethwe kithi yibutho lamadoda ayizinkulungwane ezimbili ayezosisiza; futhi lolu yilo lodwa usizo esaluthola, ukuthi sizivikele kanye nezwe lethu ukuthi lingaweli ezandleni zezitha zethu, yebo, ukuthi silwe nesitha esasingabaleki.

Alma 58

And behold, now it came to pass that our next object was to obtain the city of Manti; but behold, there was no way that we could lead them out of the city by our small bands. For behold, they remembered that which we had hitherto done; therefore we could not decoy them away from their strongholds.

And they were so much more numerous than was our army that we durst not go forth and attack them in their strongholds.

Yea, and it became expedient that we should employ our men to the maintaining those parts of the land which we had regained of our possessions; therefore it became expedient that we should wait, that we might receive more strength from the land of Zarahemla and also a new supply of provisions.

And it came to pass that I thus did send an embassy to the governor of our land, to acquaint him concerning the affairs of our people. And it came to pass that we did wait to receive provisions and strength from the land of Zarahemla.

But behold, this did profit us but little; for the Lamanites were also receiving great strength from day to day, and also many provisions; and thus were our circumstances at this period of time.

And the Lamanites were sallying forth against us from time to time, resolving by stratagem to destroy us; nevertheless we could not come to battle with them, because of their retreats and their strongholds.

And it came to pass that we did wait in these difficult circumstances for the space of many months, even until we were about to perish for the want of food.

But it came to pass that we did receive food, which was guarded to us by an army of two thousand men to our assistance; and this is all the assistance which we did receive, to defend ourselves and our country from falling into the hands of our enemies, yea, to contend with an enemy which was innumerable.

- 9 Manje isizathu salezi zinkinga zethu, noma isizathu sokuthi kwakungani bengathumelanga amandla amaningi kithi, sasingasazi; ngakho-ke sasikhathazekile futhi phezu kwalokho sigcwele ukwesaba, hleze ngandlela thile izahlulelo zikaNkulunkulu zize ezweni lethu, ukuzosiketula kanye nokuzosibhubhisa nya.
- 10 Ngakho-ke nempela sakhuleka ngokushisekela okukhulu kuNkulunkulu, ukuthi asiqinise futhi asikhulule asikhiphe ezandleni zezitha zethu, yebo, futhi nokuthi asinike amandla okuthi siwagcine amadolobha ethu, kanye namazwe ethu, kanye nalokho esinakho, ukuze sisekele abantu bethu.
- 11 Yebo, futhi kwenzeka ukuthi iNkosi uNkulunkulu wethu nempela yasivakashela ngokusiqinisekisa ukuthi iyosikhulula; yebo, kangangokuthi yasinika ukuthula emiphefumulweni yethu, futhi nempela yasipha ukholo olukhulu, futhi nempela yasenza ukuthi sethembele ekukhululweni yiyo.
- 12 Futhi saba nesibindi nebutho lethu elincane esasilitholile, futhi sagxila ngokuphokophelela ukuzinqoba izitha zethu, kanye nokugcina amazwe ethu, kanye nalokho esasinakho, kanye nabafazi bethu, kanye nabantwana bethu, kanye nomgomo wenkululeko yethu.
- 13 Futhi ngenxa yalokhu sahamba ngamandla ethu onke sayolwa namaLamani, ayesedolobheni lakwaManti; futhi sawagxumeka amatende ethu eceleni kwehlane, elaliseduzane nedolobha.
- 14 Futhi kwenzeka ukuthi ngakusasa, ngesikhathi amaLamani ebona ukuthi sasisemingceleni ngasehlane elaliseduzane nedolobha, athumela izinhlozi zawo zasizungeza ukuze athole isibalo kanye nokuqina kwempi yethu.
- 15 Futhi kwenzeka ukuthi ngesikhathi ebona ukuthi sasingaqinile, ngokwezibalo zethu, futhi esaba nokuthi sasizowavimbela ekulekelelweni kwawo ngaphandle kokuthi aphume alwe nathi asibulale, futhi phezu kwalokho ecabanga ukuthi ayengasibulala kalula ngamabutho awo amaningi, ngakho-ke aqala ukwenza amalungiselelo okuthi aphume azolwa nathi.

And now the cause of these our embarrassments, or the cause why they did not send more strength unto us, we knew not; therefore we were grieved and also filled with fear, lest by any means the judgments of God should come upon our land, to our overthrow and utter destruction.

Therefore we did pour out our souls in prayer to God, that he would strengthen us and deliver us out of the hands of our enemies, yea, and also give us strength that we might retain our cities, and our lands, and our possessions, for the support of our people.

Yea, and it came to pass that the Lord our God did visit us with assurances that he would deliver us; yea, insomuch that he did speak peace to our souls, and did grant unto us great faith, and did cause us that we should hope for our deliverance in him.

And we did take courage with our small force which we had received, and were fixed with a determination to conquer our enemies, and to maintain our lands, and our possessions, and our wives, and our children, and the cause of our liberty.

And thus we did go forth with all our might against the Lamanites, who were in the city of Manti; and we did pitch our tents by the wilderness side, which was near to the city.

And it came to pass that on the morrow, that when the Lamanites saw that we were in the borders by the wilderness which was near the city, that they sent out their spies round about us that they might discover the number and the strength of our army.

And it came to pass that when they saw that we were not strong, according to our numbers, and fearing that we should cut them off from their support except they should come out to battle against us and kill us, and also supposing that they could easily destroy us with their numerous hosts, therefore they began to make preparations to come out against us to battle.

- 16 Futhi ngesikhathi sibona ukuthi aseyenza amalungiselelo okuthi aphume azolwa nathi, bheka, ngenza ukuthi uGide, kanye nesibalo esincane samadoda, azifihle ehlathini, futhi kanjalo nokuthi uTeyomineri kanye nesibalo esincane samadoda nabo ngokunjalo bazifihle ehlathini.
- 17 Manje uGide kanye namadoda akhe babekwesokudla bese kuthi abanye bekwesokhohlo; futhi ngesikhathi sebezifihlile, bheka, mina ngasala, nensalela yebutho lami, kuyo kanye leyo ndawo esasigxumeke kuyo amatende ethu ekuqaleni sizilungiselela isikhathi sokuthi amaLamani aphume azokulwa nathi.
- 18 Futhi kwenzeka ukuthi amaLamani nempela aphuma nebutho lawo elikhulu ukuzolwa nathi. Futhi ngesikhathi esefikile futhi esezowela phezu kwethu ngenkamba, ngenza ukuthi abantu bami, enganginabo, bahlehlele ehlathini.
- 19 Futhi kwenzeka ukuthi amaLamani nempela alandela emva kwethu ngesivinini esikhulu, ngokuba ayenesifiso esikhulu sokuthi asifice ukuze asibulale; ngakho-ke asilandela angena ehlathini; futhi sadlula phakathi kukaGide noTeyomineri, kangangokuthi bona ababonwanga ngamaLamani.
- 20 Futhi kwenzeka ukuthi ngesikhathi amaLamani esedlulile, noma ngesikhathi ibutho selidlulile, uGide benoTeyomineri bavuka ezindaweni zabo zokucasha, bazivimba izinhlozi zamaLamani ukuthi zingabe zisakwazi ukubuyela edolobheni.
- 21 Futhi kwenzeka ukuthi ngesikhathi sebezivimbile, bagijima baya edolobheni bawela phezu kwabaqaphi ababeshiywe ukuthi baqaphe idolobha, kangangokuthi nempela bababulala futhi balithatha idolobha.
- 22 Manje lokhu kwenzeka ngoba amaLamani avumela impi yawo yonke, ngaphandle kwabaqaphi abambalwa nje kuphela, ukuthi iholelwe kude ehlane.
- 23 Futhi kwenzeka ukuthi uGide kanye noTeyomineri ngalendlela base bebutholile ubunini bezingqaba zawo eziqinile. Futhi kwenzeka ukuthi sathatha indlela yethu, emveni kokuhamba kakhulu ehlane siya ngasezweni lakwaZarahemla.

And when we saw that they were making preparations to come out against us, behold, I caused that Gid, with a small number of men, should secrete himself in the wilderness, and also that Teomner and a small number of men should secrete themselves also in the wilderness.

Now Gid and his men were on the right and the others on the left; and when they had thus secreted themselves, behold, I remained, with the remainder of my army, in that same place where we had first pitched our tents against the time that the Lamanites should come out to battle.

And it came to pass that the Lamanites did come out with their numerous army against us. And when they had come and were about to fall upon us with the sword, I caused that my men, those who were with me, should retreat into the wilderness.

And it came to pass that the Lamanites did follow after us with great speed, for they were exceedingly desirous to overtake us that they might slay us; therefore they did follow us into the wilderness; and we did pass by in the midst of Gid and Teomner, inasmuch that they were not discovered by the Lamanites.

And it came to pass that when the Lamanites had passed by, or when the army had passed by, Gid and Teomner did rise up from their secret places, and did cut off the spies of the Lamanites that they should not return to the city.

And it came to pass that when they had cut them off, they ran to the city and fell upon the guards who were left to guard the city, insomuch that they did destroy them and did take possession of the city.

Now this was done because the Lamanites did suffer their whole army, save a few guards only, to be led away into the wilderness.

And it came to pass that Gid and Teomner by this means had obtained possession of their strongholds. And it came to pass that we took our course, after having traveled much in the wilderness towards the land of Zarahemla.

24 Futhi ngesikhathi amaLamani ebona ukuthi ayeya ngasezweni lakwaZarahemla, esaba kakhulu, hleze kwakukhona isu elalibekiwe ukubaholela ekubhujisweni; ngakho-ke aqala ukuhlehlela emuva ehlathini futhi, yebo, aphindela emuva ngisho ngayo kanye leyo ndlela ayekade eqhamuke ngayo.

25 Futhi bheka, kwakusebusuku futhi nempela awagxumeka amatende awo, ngokuba izinduna ezinkulu zamaLamani zazicabanga ukuthi amaNefi ayesekhathele ngenxa yohambo lwawo; futhi zicabanga ukuthi ayeseyiqhubile yonke impi yawo ngakho-ke azicabanganga lutho mayelana nedolobha lakwaManti.

26 Manje kwenzeka ukuthi ngesikhathi sekuhlwile, ngenza ukuthi amadoda ami angalali, kodwa ahambe ngenye indlela aye ngasezweni lakwaManti.

27 Futhi ngenxa yalokhu kuhamba kwethu kwasebusuku, bheka, ngakusasa sabe sesingaphambili kwamaLamani, kangangokuthi nempela safika kuqala kunawo edolobheni lakwaManti.

28 Ngakhoke kwenzeka, ukuthi ngalelisu lokuhlakanipha nempela sabuthatha ubunini bedolobha lakwaManti ngaphandle kokuchitha igazi.

29 Futhi kwenzeka ukuthi ngesikhathi amabutho amaLamani efika eduze nedolobha, futhi ebona ukuthi sasizimisele ukuhlangabezana nawo, ashaqeka kakhulu futhi ashaywa wukwesaba okukhulu, kangangokuthi abalekela ehlane.

30 Yebo, futhi kwenzeka ukuthi amabutho amaLamani abaleka aphuma kuyo yonke leyo nxenye yezwe. Kodwa bheka, ayethwale abesifazane abaningi kanye nabantwana baphuma ezweni.

31 Futhi lawo madolobha ayethathwe ngamaLamani, wonke ngalesi sikhathi asephethwe yithi; futhi obaba bethu kanye nabesifazane bethu kanye nabantwana bethu sebuyela emakhaya abo, bonke ngaphandle kwalabo abathathwe baboshwa futhi bathwalwa ngamaLamani.

32 Kodwa bheka, amabutho ethu mancane ukuthi agcine amadolobha amaningi kangaka kanye nempahla eningi kangaka.

And when the Lamanites saw that they were marching towards the land of Zarahemla, they were exceedingly afraid, lest there was a plan laid to lead them on to destruction; therefore they began to retreat into the wilderness again, yea, even back by the same way which they had come.

And behold, it was night and they did pitch their tents, for the chief captains of the Lamanites had supposed that the Nephites were weary because of their march; and supposing that they had driven their whole army therefore they took no thought concerning the city of Manti.

Now it came to pass that when it was night, I caused that my men should not sleep, but that they should march forward by another way towards the land of Manti.

And because of this our march in the night-time, behold, on the morrow we were beyond the Lamanites, insomuch that we did arrive before them at the city of Manti.

And thus it came to pass, that by this stratagem we did take possession of the city of Manti without the shedding of blood.

And it came to pass that when the armies of the Lamanites did arrive near the city, and saw that we were prepared to meet them, they were astonished exceedingly and struck with great fear, insomuch that they did flee into the wilderness.

Yea, and it came to pass that the armies of the Lamanites did flee out of all this quarter of the land. But behold, they have carried with them many women and children out of the land.

And those cities which had been taken by the Lamanites, all of them are at this period of time in our possession; and our fathers and our women and our children are returning to their homes, all save it be those who have been taken prisoners and carried off by the Lamanites.

But behold, our armies are small to maintain so great a number of cities and so great possessions.

33 Kodwa bheka, sethembela kuNkulunkulu wethu osinikeze ukunqoba phezu kwalawo mazwe, kangangoba siwatholile lawo madolobha kanye nalawo mazwe, okwakuvele kungawethu.

34 Manje asisazi isizathu sokuthi umkhandlu ophetheyo yini ungasiniki amandla amaningi, ngisho nalawo madoda eza kithi awazi ukuthi kungani singanikwanga amandla amakhulu.

35 Bheka, asazi kodwa kungenzeka ukuthi aniphumeleli, futhi nidonsele amabutho kuleyo nxenye yezwe; uma kunjalo, asifuni ukuvungama.

36 Kodwa uma kungenjalo, bheka, siyesaba ukuthi kukhona ukungezwani kumkhandlu ophetheyo, ukuthi bangathumeli amadoda amaningi ukuthi azosisiza; ngokuba siyazi ukuthi maningi kakhulu kunalawo abawathumeleyo.

37 Kodwa, bheka, akunandaba—siyethemba uNkulunkulu ukuthi uyosikhulula, naphezu kobuthakathaka bamabutho ethu, yebo, futhi asikhulule nasezandleni zezitha zethu.

38 Bheka, lona ngunyaka wamashumi amabili nesishiyagalolunye, ekupheleni kwawo, futhi singabanini bamazwe ethu; futhi amaLamani asebalekele ezweni lakwaNefi.

39 Futhi lawo madodana abantu ba-Amoni, engikhulume kahle ngawo, anami edolobheni lakwaManti; futhi iNkosi iwasekele, yebo, futhi yawagcina ekuweni ngenkemba, kangangokuthi akubangabikho ngisho namunye obulewe.

40 Kodwa bheka, athole amaningi amanxeba; nokho ame aqina kuleyo nkululeko uNkulunkulu awakhulule ngayo; futhi akukhuthalele ukukhumbula iNkosi uNkulunkulu wawo usuku nosuku, yebo, ayakuqaphela ukugcina imithetho yayo, kanye nezahlulelo zayo, kanye nemiyalo yayo njalo-njalo; futhi ukholo lwabo luqinile kuzo iziphrofetho mayelana nalokho okuzayo.

But behold, we trust in our God who has given us victory over those lands, insomuch that we have obtained those cities and those lands, which were our own.

Now we do not know the cause that the government does not grant us more strength; neither do those men who came up unto us know why we have not received greater strength.

Behold, we do not know but what ye are unsuccessful, and ye have drawn away the forces into that quarter of the land; if so, we do not desire to murmur.

And if it is not so, behold, we fear that there is some faction in the government, that they do not send more men to our assistance; for we know that they are more numerous than that which they have sent.

But, behold, it mattereth not—we trust God will deliver us, notwithstanding the weakness of our armies, yea, and deliver us out of the hands of our enemies.

Behold, this is the twenty and ninth year, in the latter end, and we are in the possession of our lands; and the Lamanites have fled to the land of Nephi.

And those sons of the people of Ammon, of whom I have so highly spoken, are with me in the city of Manti; and the Lord has supported them, yea, and kept them from falling by the sword, insomuch that even one soul has not been slain.

But behold, they have received many wounds; nevertheless they stand fast in that liberty wherewith God has made them free; and they are strict to remember the Lord their God from day to day; yea, they do observe to keep his statutes, and his judgments, and his commandments continually; and their faith is strong in the prophecies concerning that which is to come.

41 Manje, mfowethu othandekayo, uMoroni,
sengathi iNkosi uNkulunkulu wethu, osihlengile
futhi wasenza sakhululeka, angakugcina njalonjalo
phambi kwakhe; yebo, futhi sengathi angabathanda
labantu, ngisho kuze kuthi uphumelele ekutholeni
ubunini bakho konke lokho amaLamani akuthatha
kithi, okwakungokokusisekela. Manje, bheka,
ngiyayivala incwadi yami. NginguHelamani,
indodana ka-Alima.

And now, my beloved brother, Moroni, may the
Lord our God, who has redeemed us and made us
free, keep you continually in his presence; yea, and
may he favor this people, even that ye may have suc-
cess in obtaining the possession of all that which the
Lamanites have taken from us, which was for our
support. And now, behold, I close mine epistle. I am
Helaman, the son of Alma.

Alima 59

- 1 Manje kwenzeka ngonyaka wamashumi amathathu wokubusa kwabehluleli kubantu bakwaNefi, emva kokuthi uMoroni eseyitholile futhi eseyifundile incwadi kaHelamani, wajabula kakhulu ngenxa yenhlalakahle, yebo, nangempumelelo enkulu uHelamani aba nayo, ekutholeni lawo mazwe ayelahlekile.
- 2 Yebo, futhi nempela wabazisa bonke abantu bakhe, kulo lonke izwe ndawo zonke kuleyo nxenye ayekuyo, ukuze nabo ngokunjalo bajabule.
- 3 Futhi kwenzeka ukuthi khona manjalo wathumela incwadi ku Pahorani, efuna ukuthi abize amadoda ukuthi ahlangani ndawonye ukuyoqinisa uHelamani, noma amabutho kaHelamani, ukuze akwazi ukuyigcina leyo ngxenye yezwe kalula ayephumeleliswe ngokumangalisa okukhulu ukuthi ayithole futhi.
- 4 Futhi kwenzeka ukuthi ngesikhathi uMoroni esethumele lencwadi ezweni lakwaZarahemla, waqala futhi ukwenza isu ukuze akwazi ukuthola lezo zimpahla kanye namadolobha ayesasele amaLamani ayekade ewathathe kubo.
- 5 Futhi kwenzeka ukuthi ngesikhathi uMoroni esenza amalungiselelo okuhamba ayolwa namaLamani, bheka, abantu bakwaNefi, ababebuthene ndawonye bevela edolobheni lakwaMoroni nasedolobheni lakwaLehi kanye nasedolobheni lakwaMoriyantoni, bahlaselwa ngamaLamani.
- 6 Yebo, ngisho nalawo ayephoqekele ukuthi abaleke ezweni lakwaManti, kanye nasezweni elizungezile, eza futhi ahlanganyela namaLamani kulenxenye yezwe.
- 7 Futhi ngenxa yalesi sizathu emaningi kakhulu, yebo, futhi ethola amandla usuku nosuku, ngokuyala kuka-Amoroni eza phambili alwa nabantu bakwaNefi, futhi aqala ukubabulala kakhulu.
- 8 Futhi amabutho awo ayemaningi kakhulu kangangokuthi abantu ababesele baNefi baphoqeke ukuthi bawabalekele; futhi beza baze bahlangana nempi kaMoroni.

Alma 59

Now it came to pass in the thirtieth year of the reign of the judges over the people of Nephi, after Moroni had received and had read Helaman's epistle, he was exceedingly rejoiced because of the welfare, yea, the exceeding success which Helaman had had, in obtaining those lands which were lost.

Yea, and he did make it known unto all his people, in all the land round about in that part where he was, that they might rejoice also.

And it came to pass that he immediately sent an epistle to Pahoran, desiring that he should cause men to be gathered together to strengthen Helaman, or the armies of Helaman, insomuch that he might with ease maintain that part of the land which he had been so miraculously prospered in regaining.

And it came to pass when Moroni had sent this epistle to the land of Zarahemla, he began again to lay a plan that he might obtain the remainder of those possessions and cities which the Lamanites had taken from them.

And it came to pass that while Moroni was thus making preparations to go against the Lamanites to battle, behold, the people of Nephiah, who were gathered together from the city of Moroni and the city of Lehi and the city of Morianton, were attacked by the Lamanites.

Yea, even those who had been compelled to flee from the land of Manti, and from the land round about, had come over and joined the Lamanites in this part of the land.

And thus being exceedingly numerous, yea, and receiving strength from day to day, by the command of Ammoron they came forth against the people of Nephiah, and they did begin to slay them with an exceedingly great slaughter.

And their armies were so numerous that the remainder of the people of Nephiah were obliged to flee before them; and they came even and joined the army of Moroni.

9 Manje njengoba uMoroni wayecabanga ukuthi kwakufanele kube khona amadoda ayezothunyelwa edolobheni lakwaNefiha, ukuyosiza abantu ukugcina lelo dolobha, futhi azi ukuthi kwakulula ukuligcina idolobha ekuweleni ezandleni zamaLamani kunokulithatha futhi kuwo, wacabanga ukuthi babezolingcina lelo dolobha kalula.

10 Ngakho-ke wayigcina yonke impi yakhe ukuze igcine zonke lezo zindawo ayekade esephinde wazithola.

11 Manje, ngesikhathi uMoroni ebona ukuthi idolobha lakwaNefiha lase lilahlekile waba nosizi olukhulu, futhi waqala ukungabaza, ngenxa yobubi babantu, ukuthi ngeke yini bawele ezandleni zabafowabo.

12 Manje kwakunjalo nakuzo zonke izinduna zakhe ezinkulu. Nazo zangabaza futhi phezu kwalokho zamangala ngenxa yobubi babantu, futhi lokhu kwakungenxa yokuphumelela kwamaLamani phezu kwabo.

13 Futhi kwenzeka ukuthi uMoroni wawuthukuthelela umkhandlu ophetheyo, ngenxa yokudembesela kwawo mayelana nenkululeko yezwe labo.

And now as Moroni had supposed that there should be men sent to the city of Nephiah, to the assistance of the people to maintain that city, and knowing that it was easier to keep the city from falling into the hands of the Lamanites than to retake it from them, he supposed that they would easily maintain that city.

Therefore he retained all his force to maintain those places which he had recovered.

And now, when Moroni saw that the city of Nephiah was lost he was exceedingly sorrowful, and began to doubt, because of the wickedness of the people, whether they should not fall into the hands of their brethren.

Now this was the case with all his chief captains. They doubted and marveled also because of the wickedness of the people, and this because of the success of the Lamanites over them.

And it came to pass that Moroni was angry with the government, because of their indifference concerning the freedom of their country.

Alima 60

- 1 Futhi kwenzeka ukuthi waphinda wabhalela umbusi wezwe, owayenguPahorani, futhi lawa ngamazwi awabhalayo, ethi: Bheka, ngiqondisa incwadi yami kuPahorani, edolobheni lakwaZarahemla, ongumahluleli omkhulu kanye nombusi ezweni lonke, futhi kanjalo nakubo bonke labo abakhethwe yilabantu ukuthi babuse futhi baphathe izindaba zalempi.
- 2 Ngokuba bheka, nginokuthize engizokusho kubo ngendlela yokubasola; ngokuba bheka, nina uqobo lwenu niyazi ukuthi nibekwe ukuthi niqoqele ndawonye amadoda, futhi niwahlomise ngezinkemba; kanye nangocemba, kanye nangazo zonke izikhali zempi ezinhlobonhlobo, futhi niwathumele ayolwa namaLamani, kunanoma yiziphi izingxenyane angangena kuzo ezweni lethu.
- 3 Manje bhekani, ngithi kini mina, futhi kanjalo namadoda ami, futhi kanjalo noHelamani kanye namadoda akhe, sizwe ukuhlupheka okukhulu kakhulu; yebo, ngisho ukulamba, ukoma, kanye nokukhathala, kanye nakho konke ukuhlupheka okunhlobonhlobo.
- 4 Kodwa bhekani, ukuba bekuyilokhu kodwa ukuhlupheka esibe nakho besingeke sikhononde noma sisole.
- 5 Kodwa bhekani, kube kukhulu ukubulawa phakathi kwabantu bethu; yebo, izinkulungwane ziwe ngenkemba, obekungeke kube njalo ukuba amabutho ethu niwanike amandla kanye nosizo olwanele. Yebo, kube kukhulu ukungasinakekeli kwenu.
- 6 Manje bhekani, sifuna ukwazi imbangela yalokhu kungasinaki okukhulu kangaka; yebo, sifuna ukwazi imbangela yokungasicabangeli kwenu.
- 7 Ningafuna ukuhlala ezihlalweni zenu zobukhosi nindwaze ningacabangi, zibe izitha zenu zisakaza umsebenzi wokufa ndawo zonke na? Yebo, zibe zibulala izinkulungwane zabafowenu—
- 8 Yebo, ngisho nalabo abebethembele ukuvikelwa yini, yebo, banibeke esimweni sokuthi ngabe nibanike usizo, yebo, ngabe nithumele amabutho kubo, ukuze abaqinise, futhi ngabe nisindise izinkulungwane zabo ekuweni ngenkemba.

Alma 60

And it came to pass that he wrote again to the governor of the land, who was Pahoran, and these are the words which he wrote, saying: Behold, I direct mine epistle to Pahoran, in the city of Zarahemla, who is the chief judge and the governor over the land, and also to all those who have been chosen by this people to govern and manage the affairs of this war.

For behold, I have somewhat to say unto them by the way of condemnation; for behold, ye yourselves know that ye have been appointed to gather together men, and arm them with swords, and with cimeters, and all manner of weapons of war of every kind, and send forth against the Lamanites, in whatsoever parts they should come into our land.

And now behold, I say unto you that myself, and also my men, and also Helaman and his men, have suffered exceedingly great sufferings; yea, even hunger, thirst, and fatigue, and all manner of afflictions of every kind.

But behold, were this all we had suffered we would not murmur nor complain.

But behold, great has been the slaughter among our people; yea, thousands have fallen by the sword, while it might have otherwise been if ye had rendered unto our armies sufficient strength and succor for them. Yea, great has been your neglect towards us.

And now behold, we desire to know the cause of this exceedingly great neglect; yea, we desire to know the cause of your thoughtless state.

Can you think to sit upon your thrones in a state of thoughtless stupor, while your enemies are spreading the work of death around you? Yea, while they are murdering thousands of your brethren—

Yea, even they who have looked up to you for protection, yea, have placed you in a situation that ye might have succored them, yea, ye might have sent armies unto them, to have strengthened them, and have saved thousands of them from falling by the sword.

- 9 Kodwa bhekani, lokhu akusikho kodwa—
nikugodlile ukudla kwenu kubo, kangangokuthi
abaningi balwile futhi bopha baze bafa ngenxa
yezifiso zabo ezinkulu ababenazo zokuba kuzuze
labantu; yebo, futhi lokhu bakwenze ngesikhathi
sebezoshabalaliswa yindlala, ngenxa yokungabanaki
kwenu okukhulu.
- 10 Manje, bafowethu abathandekayo—ngokuba
kufanele nithandeki; yebo, futhi bekufanele ngabe
nizikhathazile kakhulu ngenhlalakahle kanye
nangenkululeko yalaba bantu; kodwa bhekani,
anibanakanga kangangokuthi igazi
lezinkulungwane liyokuza phezu kwamakhanda
enu ukuziphindiselela; yebo, ngokuba uNkulunkulu
uyakwazi konke ukukhala kwabo, kanye nazo
zonke izinhlupheko zabo—
- 11 Bhekani, nicabanga ukuthi ningahlala ezihlalweni
zenu zobukhosi, futhi ngenxa yobuhle obukhulu
bukaNkulunkulu ningenzi lutho futhi yena bese
eyanikhulula na? Bhekani, uma nicabange lokhu
nicabange ize leze.
- 12 Nicabanga ukuthi, njengoba bebaningi kangaka
abafowenu abafayo kungenxa yobubi babo na?
Ngithi kini, uma nicabanga kanjalo nicabanga ize;
ngokuba ngithi kini, baningi abawe ngenkamba;
futhi bhekani nizobekwa icala ngalokho;
- 13 Ngokuba iNkosi ivumela abalungileyo ukuthi
babulawe ukuze ukulunga kwayo nokwahlulela
kuze kwababi; ngakho-ke akufanele nicabange
ukuthi abalungileyo balahlekile ngoba bebulewe;
kodwa bhekani, bangena ekuphumuleni kweNkosi
uNkulunkulu wabo.
- 14 Manje bhekani, ngithi kini, ngiyesaba kakhulu
ukuthi izehlulelo zikaNkulunkulu zizoza phezu
kwalabantu, ngenxa yobuvila babo obukhulu, yebo,
ngisho nobuvila bomkhandlu ophetheyo wethu,
kanye nokungabanaki kwawo okukhulu kakhulu
abafowabo, yebo, labo ababulewe.
- 15 Ngokuba ukuba bekungeve kungenxa yobubi
obuqale kuqala ekhanda lethu, besingamelana
nezitha zethu kangangokuthi bezingenakuwathola
amandla phezu kwethu.

But behold, this is not all—ye have withheld your provisions from them, insomuch that many have fought and bled out their lives because of their great desires which they had for the welfare of this people; yea, and this they have done when they were about to perish with hunger, because of your exceedingly great neglect towards them.

And now, my beloved brethren—for ye ought to be beloved; yea, and ye ought to have stirred yourselves more diligently for the welfare and the freedom of this people; but behold, ye have neglected them insomuch that the blood of thousands shall come upon your heads for vengeance; yea, for known unto God were all their cries, and all their sufferings—

Behold, could ye suppose that ye could sit upon your thrones, and because of the exceeding goodness of God ye could do nothing and he would deliver you? Behold, if ye have supposed this ye have supposed in vain.

Do ye suppose that, because so many of your brethren have been killed it is because of their wickedness? I say unto you, if ye have supposed this ye have supposed in vain; for I say unto you, there are many who have fallen by the sword; and behold it is to your condemnation;

For the Lord suffereth the righteous to be slain that his justice and judgment may come upon the wicked; therefore ye need not suppose that the righteous are lost because they are slain; but behold, they do enter into the rest of the Lord their God.

And now behold, I say unto you, I fear exceedingly that the judgments of God will come upon this people, because of their exceeding slothfulness, yea, even the slothfulness of our government, and their exceedingly great neglect towards their brethren, yea, towards those who have been slain.

For were it not for the wickedness which first commenced at our head, we could have withstood our enemies that they could have gained no power over us.

16 Yebo, ukuba kwakungeve kungenxa yempi eyaba khona phakathi kwethu; yebo, ukuba kwakungeve kungenxa yala madoda enkosi, adala ukuchitheka kwegazi eliningi kangaka phakathi kwethu; yebo, ngesikhathi silwa sodwa, ukuba sahlanganisa amandla ethu njengoba sasenzile ngaphambili; yebo, ukuba kwakungeve kungenxa yokufuna amandla kanye negunya kwalawo madoda enkosi phezu kwethu; ukuba ayethembekile emzabalazweni wenkululeko yethu, futhi ahlanguana nathi, ahamba ayolwa nezitha zethu, esikhundleni sokuthathela thina izinkemba zawo, okwaba yimbangela yokuchitheka kwegazi eliningi kangaka phakathi kwethu; yebo, ukuba sihambe sayolwa nazo ngamandla eNkosi, besiyozihlakaza izitha zethu, ngokuba bekuyokwenzeka, njengokugcwaliseka kwezwi layo.

17 Kodwa bhekani, manje amaLamani eza kithi, azithathela amazwe ethu, futhi abulala abantu bethu ngenkemba, yebo, abesifazane bethu kanye nabantwana bethu, futhi phezu kwalokho ayabathwala ayobathumba, abazwisa zonke izinhlobo zokuhlupheka, futhi lokhu kwenzeka ngenxa yobubi obukhulu balabo abafuna amandla kanye negunya, yebo, ngisho lawo madoda enkosi.

18 Kodwa kungani ngikhuluma kangaka mayelana naloludaba? Ngokuba asazi kodwa kungenzeka ukuthi nani uqobo nifuna igunya. Asazi kodwa kungenzeka ukuthi nani futhi ningamambuka ezweni lenu.

19 Noma nisyikelele ngoba nisenkabeni yezwe lethu futhi nizungezwe ngabavikeli, ukuthi ningenzi ukuthi ukudla kulethwe kithi, futhi kanjalo namadoda ukuthi azoqinisa amabutho ethu na?

20 Ngabe seniyikhohliwe yini imiyalelo yeNkosi uNkulunkulu wenu na? Yebo, ngabe senikukhohliwe yini ukuthunjwa kobaba bethu na? Ngabe senizikhohliwe yini izikhathi eziningi sikhululwa ezandleni zezitha zethu na?

21 Noma nicabanga ukuthi iNkosi isazophinda isikhulule, sibe thina sihlezi ezihlalweni zethu zobukhosi futhi sibe singawasebenzisi amasu iNkosi esinikeze wona na?

Yea, had it not been for the war which broke out among ourselves; yea, were it not for these king-men, who caused so much bloodshed among ourselves; yea, at the time we were contending among ourselves, if we had united our strength as we hitherto have done; yea, had it not been for the desire of power and authority which those king-men had over us; had they been true to the cause of our freedom, and united with us, and gone forth against our enemies, instead of taking up their swords against us, which was the cause of so much bloodshed among ourselves; yea, if we had gone forth against them in the strength of the Lord, we should have dispersed our enemies, for it would have been done, according to the fulfilling of his word.

But behold, now the Lamanites are coming upon us, taking possession of our lands, and they are murdering our people with the sword, yea, our women and our children, and also carrying them away captive, causing them that they should suffer all manner of afflictions, and this because of the great wickedness of those who are seeking for power and authority, yea, even those king-men.

But why should I say much concerning this matter? For we know not but what ye yourselves are seeking for authority. We know not but what ye are also traitors to your country.

Or is it that ye have neglected us because ye are in the heart of our country and ye are surrounded by security, that ye do not cause food to be sent unto us, and also men to strengthen our armies?

Have ye forgotten the commandments of the Lord your God? Yea, have ye forgotten the captivity of our fathers? Have ye forgotten the many times we have been delivered out of the hands of our enemies?

Or do ye suppose that the Lord will still deliver us, while we sit upon our thrones and do not make use of the means which the Lord has provided for us?

- 22 Yebo, ngabe nizohlala ebuvileni nibe nizungezwe yizinkulungwane zalabo, yebo, kanye namashumi ezinkulungwane, nabo futhi ngokunjalo abahlezi ebuvileni, kube kukhona izinkulungwane ndawo zonke emingceleni yezwe eziwa ngenkemba, yebo, ezilimele futhi ezophayo na?
- 23 Ngabe nicabanga ukuthi uNkulunkulu akayikunibeka cala yini uma nihlezi futhi nizibukela lezi zinto zenzeka na? Bhekani ngithi kini, Cha. Manje ngifuna ukuthi nikhumbule ukuthi uNkulunkulu uthe ingaphakathi lesitsha liyohlanjwa kuqala, bese kuthi emva kwalokho nengaphandle lesitsha nalo lihlanjwe.
- 24 Manje, ngaphandle kokuthi niphenduke kulokho enikwenzile, futhi niqale nisukume futhi nenze, nithumele ukudla kanye namadoda kithi, futhi kanjalo nakuHelamani, ukuze naye asekele lezo zinxenye zezwe lethu aphinde wazithola, futhi ukuze nathi ngokunjalo sithole futhi izimpahla zethu ezisele kulezi zinxenye, bhekani kuzodingeka ukuthi singabe sisalwa namaLamani kuze kube kuqala ukuhlanza ingaphakathi lethu, yebo, ngisho ikhanda elikhulu lomkhandlu ophetheyo wethu.
- 25 Futhi ngaphandle kokuthi ninginike engikucele encwadini yami, futhi niphumele obala ningikhombise umoya weqiniso wenkululeko, futhi niphokophelele ukukhulisa kanye nokuqinisa amabutho ethu, futhi niwanikeze ukudla kokuwasekela, bhekani ngizoshiya inxenye yamadoda ami enkululeko ukuthi agcine lengxenye yezwe lethu, futhi ngizoshiya amandla kanye nezibusiso zikaNkulunkulu phezu kwawo, ukuze kungabibikho amanye amandla angasebenza ukulwa nawo—
- 26 Futhi lokhu ngenxa yokholo lwabo olukhulu, kanye nokubekezela kwabo ezinkathazweni zabo—
- 27 Futhi ngizoza kini, futhi uma kukhona lowo phakathi kwenu onesifiso senkululeko, yebo, uma nje kungaba khona ngisho nenhlansi nje yenkululeko esele, bhekani ngizophehla uthuthuva phakathi kwenu, ngisho kuze kuthi labo abanezifiso zokuthatha amandla kanye negunya baphele nya.

Yea, will ye sit in idleness while ye are surrounded with thousands of those, yea, and tens of thousands, who do also sit in idleness, while there are thousands round about in the borders of the land who are falling by the sword, yea, wounded and bleeding?

Do ye suppose that God will look upon you as guiltless while ye sit still and behold these things? Behold I say unto you, Nay. Now I would that ye should remember that God has said that the inward vessel shall be cleansed first, and then shall the outer vessel be cleansed also.

And now, except ye do repent of that which ye have done, and begin to be up and doing, and send forth food and men unto us, and also unto Helaman, that he may support those parts of our country which he has regained, and that we may also recover the remainder of our possessions in these parts, behold it will be expedient that we contend no more with the Lamanites until we have first cleansed our inward vessel, yea, even the great head of our government.

And except ye grant mine epistle, and come out and show unto me a true spirit of freedom, and strive to strengthen and fortify our armies, and grant unto them food for their support, behold I will leave a part of my freemen to maintain this part of our land, and I will leave the strength and the blessings of God upon them, that none other power can operate against them—

And this because of their exceeding faith, and their patience in their tribulations—

And I will come unto you, and if there be any among you that has a desire for freedom, yea, if there be even a spark of freedom remaining, behold I will stir up insurrections among you, even until those who have desires to usurp power and authority shall become extinct.

- 28 Yebo, bhekani angiwesabi amandla enu noma igunya lenu, kodwa nguNkulunkulu wami engimesabayo; futhi kungemiyalelo yakhe ukuthi ngithathe inkemba yami ukuze ngivikele okufunwa yizwe lami, futhi kungenxa yokungalungi kwenu ukuthi sibe nokulahlekelwa okungaka.
- 29 Bhekani sekuyisikhathi, yebo, isikhathi manje sesifikile, sokuthi ngaphandle kokuthi nivuke nivikele izwe lenu kanye nabancane benu, inkemba yokulunga ilengela phezu kwenu; yebo, futhi izowela phezu kwenu futhi inivakashele ngisho kuze kube niyabhujiswa nya.
- 30 Bhekani, ngilulindele usizo kini futhi, ngaphandle kokuthi nisinikeze usizo, bhekani, ngizofika kini, ngisho nasezweni lakwaZarahemla, nginishaye ngenkemba, kangangokuthi ningabe nisaba namandla okuvimbela inqubekela phambili yalabantu endleleni yenkululeko yethu.
- 31 Ngokuba bhekani, iNkosi ngeke ivumele ukuthi niphile nikhule niqine ebubini benu ukuthi nibulale abantu bayo abalungile.
- 32 Bhekani, nicabanga ukuthi iNkosi inganisindisa nina futhi iwahlulele amaLamani, kube kungamasiko oyise enza inzondo yabo, yebo, futhi iphinde yengezelelwa yilabo abahlubuka kithi, kube ububi benu buyisizathu sokuthanda kwenu udumo kanye nezinto eziyize zomhlaba na?
- 33 Niyazi ukuthi neqa imithetho kaNkulunkulu, futhi niyazi ukuthi niyinyathela ngaphansi kwezinyawo zenu. Bhekani, iNkosi ithi kimi: Uma ngabe labo enibabekile ukuthi babe ngababusi benu bengaphenduki ezonweni zabo kanye nasebubini babo obukhulu, niyohamba nikhuphuke niyolwa nabo.
- 34 Manje bhekani, mina, Moroni, ngiphoqelekile, ngokwesivumelwano engisenzile sokugcina imiyalelo kaNkulunkulu wami; ngakho-ke ngifuna ukuthi nilihloniphe izwi likaNkulunkulu, futhi nithumele ngokushesha kimi ukudla kanye namadoda enu, futhi ngokunjalo nakuHelamani.

Yea, behold I do not fear your power nor your authority, but it is my God whom I fear; and it is according to his commandments that I do take my sword to defend the cause of my country, and it is because of your iniquity that we have suffered so much loss.

Behold it is time, yea, the time is now at hand, that except ye do bestir yourselves in the defence of your country and your little ones, the sword of justice doth hang over you; yea, and it shall fall upon you and visit you even to your utter destruction.

Behold, I wait for assistance from you; and, except ye do administer unto our relief, behold, I come unto you, even in the land of Zarahemla, and smite you with the sword, insomuch that ye can have no more power to impede the progress of this people in the cause of our freedom.

For behold, the Lord will not suffer that ye shall live and wax strong in your iniquities to destroy his righteous people.

Behold, can you suppose that the Lord will spare you and come out in judgment against the Lamanites, when it is the tradition of their fathers that has caused their hatred, yea, and it has been redoubled by those who have dissented from us, while your iniquity is for the cause of your love of glory and the vain things of the world?

Ye know that ye do transgress the laws of God, and ye do know that ye do trample them under your feet. Behold, the Lord saith unto me: If those whom ye have appointed your governors do not repent of their sins and iniquities, ye shall go up to battle against them.

And now behold, I, Moroni, am constrained, according to the covenant which I have made to keep the commandments of my God; therefore I would that ye should adhere to the word of God, and send speedily unto me of your provisions and of your men, and also to Helaman.

35 Futhi bhekani, uma ningakwenzi lokhu ngiza kini ngokushesha; ngokuba bhekani, uNkulunkulu akanakuvuma ukuthi sibulawe yindlala; ngakho-ke uzosinika ukudla kwenu, ngisho noma ngabe kufanele ukuthi kube ngenkamba. Manje bonani ukuthi niyaligcwalisa izwi likaNkulunkulu.

36 Bhekani, nginguMoroni, induna yenu enkulu. Angifuni mandla, kodwa ukuthi ngiwadonsele phansi. Angifune kuhlonishwa ngumhlaba, kodwa udumo lukaNkulunkulu wami, kanye nenkululeko nenhlalakahle yezwe lami. Futhi ngalokho ngiyayivala incwadi yami.

And behold, if ye will not do this I come unto you speedily; for behold, God will not suffer that we should perish with hunger; therefore he will give unto us of your food, even if it must be by the sword. Now see that ye fulfil the word of God.

Behold, I am Moroni, your chief captain. I seek not for power, but to pull it down. I seek not for honor of the world, but for the glory of my God, and the freedom and welfare of my country. And thus I close mine epistle.

Alima 61

- 1 Bheka, manje kwenzeka ukuthi masinyane emva kokuthi uMoroni esethumele incwadi yakhe kumbusi omkhulu, wathola incwadi ivela ku Pahorani, umbusi omkhulu. Futhi lawa ngamazwi awathola:
- 2 Mina, Pahorani, engingumbusi omkhulu walelizwe, ngithumela lamazwi kuMoroni, induna enkulu yempi. Bheka, ngithi kuwe, Moroni, angijabuli neze ngenxa yezinhlopheko zenu ezinkulu, yebo, kuyawudabukisa umphefumulo wami.
- 3 Kodwa bheka, kukhona labo abajabulayo ngenxa yezinhlopheko zenu, yebo, kangangokuthi sebesukume bangivukela, futhi kanjalo nalabo babantu bami abangabantu abathanda inkululeko, yebo, futhi labo abangivukele baningi kakhulu.
- 4 Futhi yilabo abebe funa ukuthatha isihlalo sokwahlulela kimi ababeyimbangela yalobubi obukhulu kangaka; ngokuba basebenzise ukuthopha okukhulu, futhi bakhohlise izinhliziyi zabantu abaningi, okuzoba yimbangela yenkathazo enkulu phakathi kwethu; bakubambile ukudla kwethu, futhi besabisa abantu bethu abathanda inkululeko kangangoba abezanga kini.
- 5 Futhi bheka, bangixoshile bangikhipha, futhi ngibalekele ezweni lakwaGidiyoni, namadoda amaningi ebengingakwazi ukuwathola.
- 6 Futhi bheka, ngithumele isimemezelo kuyo yonke lenxenywe yezwe; futhi bheka, batheleka beza kithi nsuku zonke, behlomile ukuzovikela izwe labo kanye nenkululeko yabo, kanye nokuzoziphindiselela ngokoniwa kwethu.
- 7 Futhi beze kithi, kangangokuthi labo ababesivukele bayasiphika, yebo, kangangokuthi bayasesaba futhi ngeke balokothe beze ukuzolwa nathi.

Alma 61

Behold, now it came to pass that soon after Moroni had sent his epistle unto the chief governor, he received an epistle from Pahoran, the chief governor. And these are the words which he received:

I, Pahoran, who am the chief governor of this land, do send these words unto Moroni, the chief captain over the army. Behold, I say unto you, Moroni, that I do not joy in your great afflictions, yea, it grieves my soul.

But behold, there are those who do joy in your afflictions, yea, insomuch that they have risen up in rebellion against me, and also those of my people who are freemen, yea, and those who have risen up are exceedingly numerous.

And it is those who have sought to take away the judgment-seat from me that have been the cause of this great iniquity; for they have used great flattery, and they have led away the hearts of many people, which will be the cause of sore affliction among us; they have withheld our provisions, and have daunted our freemen that they have not come unto you.

And behold, they have driven me out before them, and I have fled to the land of Gideon, with as many men as it were possible that I could get.

And behold, I have sent a proclamation throughout this part of the land; and behold, they are flocking to us daily, to their arms, in the defence of their country and their freedom, and to avenge our wrongs.

And they have come unto us, insomuch that those who have risen up in rebellion against us are set at defiance, yea, insomuch that they do fear us and durst not come out against us to battle.

8 Sebethole ubunini bezwe, noma idolobha, lakwaZarahemla; sebebeke inkosi yabo, futhi isibhalele inkosi yamaLamani, eseyenze isivumelwano sokuhlangana nayo kuleyo ncwadi; kulokho kuhlangana esivumile ukuligcina izwe lakwaZarahemla, ngalokho kulingcina kwayo icabanga ukuthi kuzokwenza amaLamani alinqobe izwe elisasele, bese ibekwa iba yinkosi yalabantu uma sebenqotshwe ngamaLamani.

9 Manje, encwadini yakho ungiqekile, kodwa akunandaba; angithukuthele, kodwa ngiyathokoza ngokulunga kwenhliziyo yakho. Mina, Pahorani, angifuni mandla, ngaphandle nje kuphela kokugcina isihlalo sami sokwahlulela ukuze ngilondoloze amalungelo kanye nenkululeko yabantu bami. Umphefumulo wami umi uqinile kuleyo nkululeko uNkulunkulu asikhulule ngayo.

10 Manje, bheka, sizobuvimbela ububi ngisho nangokuchitha igazi. Ngeke silichithe igazi lamaLamani uma ezohlala ezweni lawo.

11 Ngeke silichithe igazi labafowethu uma bengeke basivukele futhi basithathele inkemba ukulwa nathi.

12 Sizozinikela ejokeni lokuthunjwa uma kudingekile ngokulunga kukaNkulunkulu, noma uma esiyala ukuthi senze njalo.

13 Kodwa bheka akasiyali ukuthi sizinikele ezitheni zethu, kodwa ukuthi sibeke ithemba lethu kuye, futhi uyosikhulula.

14 Ngakho-ke, mfowethu othandekayo, Moroni, masibuvimbele ububi, noma ngabe yibuphi ububi esingenakukwazi ukubuvimbela ngamazwi ethu, yebo, njengokuvukelwa nokuhlubuka, masibuvimbele ngezinkemba zethu, ukuze sigcine inkululeko yethu, ukuze sijabule ngenhlanhla enkulu yebandla lethu, kanye nangokufunwa nguMkhululi wethu kanye noNkulunkulu wethu.

15 Ngakho-ke, yiza kimi ngokushesha namanye amadoda akho ambalwa, bese kuthi abasalayo ubashiye babhekwe nguLehi kanye noTeyankumi; ubanike amandla okuphatha impi kuleyo nxenye yezwe, ngokuka Moya kaNkulunkulu, futhi okungumoya wenkululeko okubo.

They have got possession of the land, or the city, of Zarahemla; they have appointed a king over them, and he hath written unto the king of the Lamanites, in the which he hath joined an alliance with him; in the which alliance he hath agreed to maintain the city of Zarahemla, which maintenance he supposeth will enable the Lamanites to conquer the remainder of the land, and he shall be placed king over this people when they shall be conquered under the Lamanites.

And now, in your epistle you have censured me, but it mattereth not; I am not angry, but do rejoice in the greatness of your heart. I, Pahoran, do not seek for power, save only to retain my judgment-seat that I may preserve the rights and the liberty of my people. My soul standeth fast in that liberty in the which God hath made us free.

And now, behold, we will resist wickedness even unto bloodshed. We would not shed the blood of the Lamanites if they would stay in their own land.

We would not shed the blood of our brethren if they would not rise up in rebellion and take the sword against us.

We would subject ourselves to the yoke of bondage if it were requisite with the justice of God, or if he should command us so to do.

But behold he doth not command us that we shall subject ourselves to our enemies, but that we should put our trust in him, and he will deliver us.

Therefore, my beloved brother, Moroni, let us resist evil, and whatsoever evil we cannot resist with our words, yea, such as rebellions and dissensions, let us resist them with our swords, that we may retain our freedom, that we may rejoice in the great privilege of our church, and in the cause of our Redeemer and our God.

Therefore, come unto me speedily with a few of your men, and leave the remainder in the charge of Lehi and Teancum; give unto them power to conduct the war in that part of the land, according to the Spirit of God, which is also the spirit of freedom which is in them.

- 16 Bheka ngithumele ukudla okuncane kubo, ukuze bangafi nize nikwazi ukufika kimi.
- 17 Buthela ndawonye noma ngabe yimaphi amabutho ongakwazi ukuwabutha uze lapha, futhi sizohamba ngokushesha siyolwa nalabo bahlubuki, ngamandla kaNkulunkulu wethu ngokokholo olukithi.
- 18 Futhi sizobuthatha ubunini bezwe lakwaZarahemla, ukuze sithole ukudla okuningi ukuze sikuthumele kuLehi benoTeyankumi; yebo, sizohamba siyolwa nabo ngamandla eNkosi, futhi sizobuqeda lobubi obukhulu.
- 19 Manje, Moroni, ngiyajabula ngokuthola incwadi yakho, ngokuba benginokukhathazeka mayelana nalokho okufanele sikwenze, ukuthi bekulungile yini ukuthi siyolwa nabafowethu.
- 20 Kodwa uthe, ngaphandle kokuthi baphenduke iNkosi ikuyalile ukuthi kumele ulwe nabo.
- 21 Bona ukuthi uyabaqinisa oLehi benoTeyankumi eNkosini; batshele ukuthi bangesabi, ngokuba uNkulunkulu uzobakhulula, yebo, futhi kanjalo kanye nabo bonke labo abemi beqinile kuleyo nkululeko uNkulunkulu abakhulule ngayo. Manje ngiyayivala incwadi yami kumfowethu othandekayo, uMoroni.

Behold I have sent a few provisions unto them, that they may not perish until ye can come unto me.

Gather together whatsoever force ye can upon your march hither, and we will go speedily against those dissenters, in the strength of our God according to the faith which is in us.

And we will take possession of the city of Zarahemla, that we may obtain more food to send forth unto Lehi and Teancum; yea, we will go forth against them in the strength of the Lord, and we will put an end to this great iniquity.

And now, Moroni, I do joy in receiving your epistle, for I was somewhat worried concerning what we should do, whether it should be just in us to go against our brethren.

But ye have said, except they repent the Lord hath commanded you that ye should go against them.

See that ye strengthen Lehi and Teancum in the Lord; tell them to fear not, for God will deliver them, yea, and also all those who stand fast in that liberty wherewith God hath made them free. And now I close mine epistle to my beloved brother, Moroni.

Alima 62

- 1 Manje kwenzeka ukuthi ngesikhathi uMoroni eseyitholile lencwadi inhliziyo yakhe yaba nesibindi, futhi wagcwala injabulo enkulu kakhulu ngenxa yokwethembeka kukaPahorani, ukuthi wayengeyena naye umdayisi ngekululeko kanye nangokufunwa yizwe lakhe.
- 2 Kodwa futhi wakhala kakhulu ngenxa yobubi balabo ababesuse uPahorani esihlalweni sokwahlulela, yebo, kafushane nje ngenxa yalabo abahlubuka ezweni labo futhi kanjalo nakuNkulunkulu wabo.
- 3 Futhi kwenzeka ukuthi uMoroni wathatha isibalo esincane samadoda, njengokwesifiso sikaPahorani, futhi wanikeza uLehi kanye noTeyankumi ukuphathwa kwalabo ababesele bebutho lakhe, futhi wathatha uhambo lwakhe waya ngasezweni lakwaGidiyoni.
- 4 Futhi nempela wasiphakamisa isibonakaliso senkululeko kunanoma iyiphi indawo ayengena kuyo, futhi wathatha noma ngabe yiliphi ibutho ayengalithola ohambweni lwakhe lonke oluya ngasezweni lakwaGidiyoni.
- 5 Futhi kwenzeka ukuthi izinkulungwane nempela zabuthanela esibonakalisweni sakhe, futhi nempela zazithatha izinkemba zazo ukuze zivikele inkululeko yabo, ukuze bangangeni ekuthunjweni.
- 6 Ngakho-ke, ngesikhathi uMoroni esewabuthele ndawonye noma yimaphi amadoda ayengase akwazi ekuhambeni kwakhe konke, wafika ezweni lakwaGidiyoni; futhi ngesikhathi ehlanganisa amabutho akhe kanye nalawo kaPahorani baba namandla kakhulu, ngisho nangaphezulu kwawamadoda kaPakusi, owayeyinkosi yalabo bahlubuki ababexoshe abantu abathanda inkululeko babakhipha ezweni lakwaZarahemla futhi bathatha ubunini bezwe.
- 7 Futhi kwenzeka ukuthi uMoroni kanye noPahorani bahamba behlela ezansi namabutho abo baya ezweni lakwaZarahemla, baqhubeka balihlasela idolobha, futhi bahlangabezana nabantu baPakusi, kangangokuthi balwa.
- 8 Futhi bheka, uPakusi wabulawa kwathi abantu bakhe bathathwa baboshwa, futhi uPahorani wabuyiselwa esihlalweni sakhe sokwahlulela.

Alma 62

And now it came to pass that when Moroni had received this epistle his heart did take courage, and was filled with exceedingly great joy because of the faithfulness of Pahoran, that he was not also a traitor to the freedom and cause of his country.

But he did also mourn exceedingly because of the iniquity of those who had driven Pahoran from the judgment-seat, yea, in fine because of those who had rebelled against their country and also their God.

And it came to pass that Moroni took a small number of men, according to the desire of Pahoran, and gave Lehi and Teancum command over the remainder of his army, and took his march towards the land of Gideon.

And he did raise the standard of liberty in whatsoever place he did enter, and gained whatsoever force he could in all his march towards the land of Gideon.

And it came to pass that thousands did flock unto his standard, and did take up their swords in the defence of their freedom, that they might not come into bondage.

And thus, when Moroni had gathered together whatsoever men he could in all his march, he came to the land of Gideon; and uniting his forces with those of Pahoran they became exceedingly strong, even stronger than the men of Pachus, who was the king of those dissenters who had driven the freemen out of the land of Zarahemla and had taken possession of the land.

And it came to pass that Moroni and Pahoran went down with their armies into the land of Zarahemla, and went forth against the city, and did meet the men of Pachus, insomuch that they did come to battle.

And behold, Pachus was slain and his men were taken prisoners, and Pahoran was restored to his judgment-seat.

- 9 Futhi abantu baPakusi behlulelwa, ngokomthetho, futhi kanjalo nalabo bantu benkosi ababethathiwe baphonswa etilongweni; futhi babulawa ngokomthetho; yebo, labo bantu baPakusi kanye nalabo bantu benkosi, noma ngabe yimuphi owayengafuni ukuthatha izikhali ukuvikela izwe labo, kodwa belwa nalo, babulawa.
- 10 Futhi ngalendlela kwadingeka ukuthi lomthetho uqashelwe ngokucophelela kwenzelwa ukuphepha kwezwe labo; yebo, futhi lowo owayetholakala ephikisana nenkululeko yabo wayebulawa ngokushesha ngokomthetho.
- 11 Futhi waphela kanjalo-ke unyaka wamashumi amathathu wokubusa kwabehluleli kubantu bakwaNefi; uMoroni kanye noPahorani sebekubuyisele ukuthula ezweni lakwaZarahemla, phakathi kwabantu babo, sebebabulele bonke labo ababengenako ukuthembeka kumgomo wenkululeko.
- 12 Futhi kwenzeka ekuqaleni konyaka wamashumi amathathu nanye wokubusa kwabehluleli kubantu bakwaNefi, uMoroni masinyane wenza ukuthi ukudla kuhanjiswe, futhi kanjalo nebutho lamadoda ayizinkulungwane eziyisithupha lithunyelwe kuHelamani, ukuyomsiza ekugcineni leyo nxenye yezwe.
- 13 Futhi phezu kwalokho wenza ukuthi ibutho lamadoda ayizinkulungwane eziyisithupha, nokudla okwanele, kuthunyelwe emabuthweni kaLehi benoTeyankumi. Futhi kwenzeka ukuthi lokhu kwenziwa ukuze kuqiniseke izwe ukumelana namaLamani.
- 14 Futhi kwenzeka ukuthi uMoroni kanye noPahorani, beshiye iqembu lamadoda elikhulu ezweni lakwaZarahemla, bathatha uhambo lwabo neqembu elikhulu lamadoda baya ngasezweni lakwaNefi, bephokophelele ukuyoketula amaLamani kulelo dolobha.
- 15 Futhi kwenzeka ukuthi ngesikhathi behamba beya ngakulelozwe, babamba iqembu elikhulu lamadoda amaLamani, futhi babulala abaningi bawo, futhi bathatha ukudla kwawo kanye nezikhali zawo.

And the men of Pachus received their trial, according to the law, and also those king-men who had been taken and cast into prison; and they were executed according to the law; yea, those men of Pachus and those king-men, whosoever would not take up arms in the defence of their country, but would fight against it, were put to death.

And thus it became expedient that this law should be strictly observed for the safety of their country; yea, and whosoever was found denying their freedom was speedily executed according to the law.

And thus ended the thirtieth year of the reign of the judges over the people of Nephi; Moroni and Pahoran having restored peace to the land of Zarahemla, among their own people, having inflicted death upon all those who were not true to the cause of freedom.

And it came to pass in the commencement of the thirty and first year of the reign of the judges over the people of Nephi, Moroni immediately caused that provisions should be sent, and also an army of six thousand men should be sent unto Helaman, to assist him in preserving that part of the land.

And he also caused that an army of six thousand men, with a sufficient quantity of food, should be sent to the armies of Lehi and Teancum. And it came to pass that this was done to fortify the land against the Lamanites.

And it came to pass that Moroni and Pahoran, leaving a large body of men in the land of Zarahemla, took their march with a large body of men towards the land of Nephihah, being determined to overthrow the Lamanites in that city.

And it came to pass that as they were marching towards the land, they took a large body of men of the Lamanites, and slew many of them, and took their provisions and their weapons of war.

- 16 Futhi kwenzeka emva kokuthi sebewathathile, benza ukuthi angene esivumelwaneni sokuthi angeke esazithatha izikhali zawo zempi alwe namaNefi nanini.
- 17 Futhi ngesikhathi esengene kulesi sivumelwano bawathumela ukuthi ayohlala nabantu bakwa-Amoni, futhi ayeyisibalo cishe esiyizinkulungwane ezine lawo ayengabulawanga.
- 18 Futhi kwenzeka ukuthi ngesikhathi sebewathumele baqhubeka nohambo lwabo oluya ezweni lakwaNefiha. Futhi kwenzeka ukuthi ngesikhathi sebefike edolobheni lakwaNefiha, bagxumeka amatende abo emathafeni akwaNefiha, ayeseduze nedolobha iNefiha.
- 19 Manje uMoroni wayenesifiso sokuthi amaLamani aphume azolwa nabo, emathafeni; kodwa amaLamani, azi ngesibindi sabo esikhulu kakhulu, futhi ebona isibalo sabo esikhulu kakhulu, ngakho-ke awalokothanga nhlobo aphuma ukuyolwa nabo; ngakho-ke abazange balwe ngalolo suku.
- 20 Futhi ngesikhathu ubusuku bufika, uMoroni wahamba ebumnyameni bobusuku, futhi waze wafinyelela esicongweni sodonga ukuhlola ukuthi amaLamani ayengakuyiphi inxenye yedolobha lapho ayekanise khona nebutho lawo.
- 21 Futhi kwenzeka ukuthi ayesempumalanga, ngasekungeneni; futhi wonke ayelele. Manje uMoroni wabuyela ebuthweni lakhe, futhi wenza ukuthi lisheshise lilungise izintambo eziqinile kanye namalada, ukuthi kwehliselwe ezansi kusuka phezulu odongeni kungeniswe ngaphakathi kodonga.
- 22 Futhi kwenzeka ukuthi uMoroni wenza ukuthi amadoda akhe ahambe futhi eze phezulu odongeni, bese ehlela kuleyo nxenye yedolobha, yebo, ngisho nasentshonalanga, lapho amaLamani ayengakanisanga namabutho awo khona.
- 23 Futhi kwenzeka ukuthi bonke behliselwa edolobheni ngobusuku, ngezintambo zabo eziqinile kanye nangamalada abo; ngakho-ke ngesikhathi kufika ukusa bonke base bengaphakathi kwezindonga zedolobha.

And it came to pass after they had taken them, they caused them to enter into a covenant that they would no more take up their weapons of war against the Nephites.

And when they had entered into this covenant they sent them to dwell with the people of Ammon, and they were in number about four thousand who had not been slain.

And it came to pass that when they had sent them away they pursued their march towards the land of Nephihah. And it came to pass that when they had come to the city of Nephihah, they did pitch their tents in the plains of Nephihah, which is near the city of Nephihah.

Now Moroni was desirous that the Lamanites should come out to battle against them, upon the plains; but the Lamanites, knowing of their exceedingly great courage, and beholding the greatness of their numbers, therefore they durst not come out against them; therefore they did not come to battle in that day.

And when the night came, Moroni went forth in the darkness of the night, and came upon the top of the wall to spy out in what part of the city the Lamanites did camp with their army.

And it came to pass that they were on the east, by the entrance; and they were all asleep. And now Moroni returned to his army, and caused that they should prepare in haste strong cords and ladders, to be let down from the top of the wall into the inner part of the wall.

And it came to pass that Moroni caused that his men should march forth and come upon the top of the wall, and let themselves down into that part of the city, yea, even on the west, where the Lamanites did not camp with their armies.

And it came to pass that they were all let down into the city by night, by the means of their strong cords and their ladders; thus when the morning came they were all within the walls of the city.

24 Manje, ngesikhathi amaLamani evuka futhi ebona ukuthi amabutho kaMoroni aye sengaphakathi kwezindonga, aba nokwesaba okukhulu; kangangokuthi abaleka aphuma ngentuba.

25 Manje ngesikhathi uMoroni ebona ukuthi ayembalekela, wenza ukuthi amadoda akhe ahambe awalandele, futhi abulale abaningi, futhi azungeze abaningi abanye, futhi awathathe awabophe; futhi kwathi insalela yawo yabalekela ezweni lakwaMoroni, elaliseminceleni ngasogwini lolwandle.

26 Ngaleyondlela uMoroni kanye noPahorani babuthola ubunini bedolobha lakwaNefiha ngaphandle kokulahlekelwa nangoyedwa umuntu; futhi babe baningi bamaLamani ababulawayo.

27 Manje kwenzeka ukuthi abaningi bamaLamani ababeyiziboshwa baba nesifiso sokuhlangana nabantu ba-Amoni bese beba ngabantu abakhululekile.

28 Futhi kwenzeka ukuthi ngangobuningi balabo ababenaleso sifiso, banikwa njengokwezifiso zabo.

29 Ngakho-ke, zonke iziboshwa zamaLamani nempela zahlangana nabantu ba-Amoni, futhi baqala ukusebenza kakhulu, belima umhlabathi, bekhulisa zonke izinhlobo zokusanhlamvu, kanye nemihlambi yezimvu nemihlambi yezinkomo enhlobonhlobo; futhi ngalendlela amaNefi aphumula emthwalweni omkhulu; yebo, kangangokuthi aphumula kuzo zonke iziboshwa zamaLamani.

30 Manje kwenzeka ukuthi uMoroni, emva kokuthi esethole ubunini bedolobha lakwaNefiha, esethathe iziboshwa eziningi, lokho okwasehlisa kakhulu isibalo samabutho amaLamani, futhi esethole abaningi bamaNefi ababe boshiwe, lokho nempela okwaliqinisa kakhulu ibutho likaMoroni; ngakho-ke uMoroni wahamba esuka ezweni lakwaNefiha waya ezweni lakwaLehi.

31 Futhi kwenzeka ukuthi ngesikhathi amaLamani ebona ukuthi uMoroni wayeza ezolwa nawo, aphinda esaba futhi ayibalekela impi kaMoroni.

And now, when the Lamanites awoke and saw that the armies of Moroni were within the walls, they were affrighted exceedingly, insomuch that they did flee out by the pass.

And now when Moroni saw that they were fleeing before him, he did cause that his men should march forth against them, and slew many, and surrounded many others, and took them prisoners; and the remainder of them fled into the land of Moroni, which was in the borders by the seashore.

Thus had Moroni and Pahoran obtained the possession of the city of Nephihah without the loss of one soul; and there were many of the Lamanites who were slain.

Now it came to pass that many of the Lamanites that were prisoners were desirous to join the people of Ammon and become a free people.

And it came to pass that as many as were desirous, unto them it was granted according to their desires.

Therefore, all the prisoners of the Lamanites did join the people of Ammon, and did begin to labor exceedingly, tilling the ground, raising all manner of grain, and flocks and herds of every kind; and thus were the Nephites relieved from a great burden; yea, insomuch that they were relieved from all the prisoners of the Lamanites.

Now it came to pass that Moroni, after he had obtained possession of the city of Nephihah, having taken many prisoners, which did reduce the armies of the Lamanites exceedingly, and having regained many of the Nephites who had been taken prisoners, which did strengthen the army of Moroni exceedingly; therefore Moroni went forth from the land of Nephihah to the land of Lehi.

And it came to pass that when the Lamanites saw that Moroni was coming against them, they were again frightened and fled before the army of Moroni.

- 32 Futhi kwenzeka ukuthi uMoroni kanye nempi yakhe nempela bawaxosha idolobha nedolobha, baze bahlangana noLehi benoTeyankumi; futhi amaLamani ababalekela oLehi benoTeyankumi, ehlisa imincele ngasogwini lolwandle, aze afika ezweni lakwaMoroni.
- 33 Futhi amabutho amaLamani abuthana wonke ndawonye, kangangoba wonke aba yiqembu elilodwa ezweni lakwaMoroni. Manje u-Amoroni, inkosi yamaLamani, nayo ngokunjalo yayinawo.
- 34 Futhi kwenzeka ukuthi uMoroni noLehi kanye noTeyankumi nempela bakanisa namabutho abo bazungeza eminceleni yezwe lakwaMoroni, kangangoba amaLamani azungezwa eminceleni yehlane ngaseningizimu, kanye naseminceleni yehlane esempumalanga.
- 35 Futhi ngalendlela bakanisa ubusuku bonke. Ngokuba bheka, amaNefi kanye namaLamani ngokunjalo base bekhathele ngenxa yobude bohambo; ngakho-ke abenzanga cebo lokuhlakanipha ebusuku, ngaphandle kukaTeyankumi; ngokuba yena wayemthukuthelele kakhulu u-Amoroni, kangangokuthi wayebona ukuthi ngu-Amoroni, kanye no-Amalikiya umfowabo, ababeyimbangela yalempi enkulu nengapheli phakathi kwabo kanye namaLamani, eyayiyimbangela yokulwa kanye nokuchitheka kwegazi okukhulu kangaka, yebo, kanye nendlala engaka.
- 36 Futhi kwenzeka ukuthi uTeyankumi entukuthelweni yakhe nempela wahamba waya enkamjini yamaLamani, futhi nempela wazehlisa ngodonga lwedolobha. Futhi wahamba ngentambo, indawo ngendawo, kangangoba nempela waze wayithola inkosi; futhi nempela wayiciba ngentshumentshu, eyayibhoboza eduze nenhliziyo. Kodwa bheka, inkosi yazivusa izinceku zayo phambi kokuthi ife, kangangokuthi zamlandela uTeyankumi, futhi zambulala.

And it came to pass that Moroni and his army did pursue them from city to city, until they were met by Lehi and Teancum; and the Lamanites fled from Lehi and Teancum, even down upon the borders by the seashore, until they came to the land of Moroni.

And the armies of the Lamanites were all gathered together, insomuch that they were all in one body in the land of Moroni. Now Ammoron, the king of the Lamanites, was also with them.

And it came to pass that Moroni and Lehi and Teancum did encamp with their armies round about in the borders of the land of Moroni, insomuch that the Lamanites were encircled about in the borders by the wilderness on the south, and in the borders by the wilderness on the east.

And thus they did encamp for the night. For behold, the Nephites and the Lamanites also were weary because of the greatness of the march; therefore they did not resolve upon any stratagem in the night-time, save it were Teancum; for he was exceedingly angry with Ammoron, insomuch that he considered that Ammoron, and Amalickiah his brother, had been the cause of this great and lasting war between them and the Lamanites, which had been the cause of so much war and bloodshed, yea, and so much famine.

And it came to pass that Teancum in his anger did go forth into the camp of the Lamanites, and did let himself down over the walls of the city. And he went forth with a cord, from place to place, insomuch that he did find the king; and he did cast a javelin at him, which did pierce him near the heart. But behold, the king did awaken his servants before he died, insomuch that they did pursue Teancum, and slew him.

- 37 Manje kwenzeka ukuthi ngesikhathi uLehi kanye noMoroni bezwa ukuthi uTeyankumi wayesefile badabuka kakhulu; ngokuba bheka, wayeyindoda eyayililwele ngobuqhawe izwe layo, yebo, umngani weqiniso wenkululeko; futhi wayezwe izinhlupheko eziningi kakhulu. Kodwa bheka, wayesefile, futhi eshambe indlela yomhlaba wonke.
- 38 Manje kwenzeka ukuthi uMoroni wahamba ngakusasa, futhi waze wafika kumaLamani, kangangokuthi nempela bawabulala kakhulu; futhi bawaqhuba bawakhipha ezweni; futhi abaleka, kangangokuthi awabange esabuya ngaleso sikhathi ukuzolwa namaNefi.
- 39 Futhi waphela kanjalo-ke unyaka wamashumi amathathu nanye wokubusa kwabehluleli kubantu bakwaNefi; futhi ngalendlela base beke baba nezimpi, kanye nokuchitheka kwegazi, kanye nendlala, kanye nezinhlupheko, isikhathi esiyiminyaka eminingi.
- 40 Futhi kwakukhona ukubulalana, nemibango, nokuhlubuka, kanye nazo zonke izinhlobo zobubi phakathi kwabantu baNefi; nokho ngenxa yabalungileyo, yebo, ngenxa yemikhuleko yabalungileyo, basindiswa.
- 41 Kodwa bheka, ngenxa yokudonsa okukhulu kakhulu kwempi phakathi kwamaNefi kanye namaLamani abaningi base belukhuni, ngenxa yokudonsa okukhulu kakhulu kwempi; futhi abaningi bathamba ngenxa yezinkathazo zabo, kangangokuthi bazithoba phambi kukaNkulunkulu, ngisho nasekujuleni kokuzithoba.
- 42 Futhi kwenzeka ukuthi emva kokuthi uMoroni eseziqinisile lezo zinxenye zezwe ezazisengozini kakhulu kumaLamani, sezize zaqina ngokwaneleyo, wabuyela edolobheni lakwaZarahemla; futhi kanjalo noHelamani wabuyela endaweni eyifa lakhe; futhi kwaba khona ukuthula okwamiswa phakathi kwabantu baNefi.
- 43 Futhi uMoroni wanikela ukukhuzwa kwamabutho akhe ezandleni zendodana yakhe, igama layo okwakunguMoroniha; futhi yena wathatha umhlalaphansi ekhaya lakhe ukuze achithe insalela yezinsuku zakhe ngokuthula.

Now it came to pass that when Lehi and Moroni knew that Teancum was dead they were exceedingly sorrowful; for behold, he had been a man who had fought valiantly for his country, yea, a true friend to liberty; and he had suffered very many exceedingly sore afflictions. But behold, he was dead, and had gone the way of all the earth.

Now it came to pass that Moroni marched forth on the morrow, and came upon the Lamanites, inso-much that they did slay them with a great slaughter; and they did drive them out of the land; and they did flee, even that they did not return at that time against the Nephites.

And thus ended the thirty and first year of the reign of the judges over the people of Nephi; and thus they had had wars, and bloodsheds, and famine, and affliction, for the space of many years.

And there had been murders, and contentions, and dissensions, and all manner of iniquity among the people of Nephi; nevertheless for the righteous' sake, yea, because of the prayers of the righteous, they were spared.

But behold, because of the exceedingly great length of the war between the Nephites and the Lamanites many had become hardened, because of the exceedingly great length of the war; and many were softened because of their afflictions, insomuch that they did humble themselves before God, even in the depth of humility.

And it came to pass that after Moroni had fortified those parts of the land which were most exposed to the Lamanites, until they were sufficiently strong, he returned to the city of Zarahemla; and also Helaman returned to the place of his inheritance; and there was once more peace established among the people of Nephi.

And Moroni yielded up the command of his armies into the hands of his son, whose name was Moroniha; and he retired to his own house that he might spend the remainder of his days in peace.

44 Futhi uPahorani nempela wabuyela esihlalweni sakhe sokwahlulela; futhi uHelamani wathatha umsebenzi wokushumayela kubantu izwi likaNkulunkulu; ngokuba ngenxa yezimpi eziningi kangaka kanye nemibango kwadingeka ukuthi lihlelwe futhi ibandla.

45 Ngakho-ke, uHelamani kanye nabafowabo bahamba, futhi nempela balimemezela izwi likaNkulunkulu ngamandla amakhulu, kangangoba bakholisa abantu abaningi ngobubi babo, okwabenza ukuthi baphenduke ezonweni zabo futhi babhabhadiswe eNkosini uNkulunkulu wabo.

46 Futhi kwenzeka ukuthi nempela balimisa ibandla likaNkulunkulu futhi, kulo lonke izwe.

47 Yebo, futhi imigomo yenziwa mayelana nomthetho. Futhi abehluleli babo, kanye nabehluleli babo abakhulu bakhethwa.

48 Futhi abantu baNefi baqala baphumelela futhi ezweni, futhi baqala banda futhi baqina kakhulu ezweni. Baqala futhi bakhula banotha kakhulu.

49 Kodwa kuyo ingcebo yabo, kanye amandla abo, kanye nokuphumelela kwabo, abazange baphakame ngenxa yokuzibo kwabo; noma bephuze ukukhumbula iNkosi uNkulunkulu wabo; kodwa bazithoba kakhulu phambi kwayo.

50 Yebo, bakhumbula ukuthi zazinkulu kangakanani izinto iNkosi eyayi benzele zona, ukuthi yayibakhululile ekufeni, nasekuboshweni, nasematilongweni, kanye nakuzo zonke izinhlobo zezinhlopheko, futhi yayibakhululile baphuma ezandleni zezitha zabo.

51 Futhi bakhuleka eNkosini uNkulunkulu wabo njalonjalo, kangangokuthi iNkosi nempela yababusisa, njengokwezwi layo, kangangoba bakhula baqina futhi baphumelela ezweni.

52 Futhi kwenzeka ukuthi zonke lezi zinto zenzeka. Futhi uHelamani wafa, ngonyaka wamashumi amathathu nanhlanu wokubusa kwabehluleli kubantu bakwaNefi.

And Pahoran did return to his judgment-seat; and Helaman did take upon him again to preach unto the people the word of God; for because of so many wars and contentions it had become expedient that a regulation should be made again in the church.

Therefore, Helaman and his brethren went forth, and did declare the word of God with much power unto the convincing of many people of their wickedness, which did cause them to repent of their sins and to be baptized unto the Lord their God.

And it came to pass that they did establish again the church of God, throughout all the land.

Yea, and regulations were made concerning the law. And their judges, and their chief judges were chosen.

And the people of Nephi began to prosper again in the land, and began to multiply and to wax exceedingly strong again in the land. And they began to grow exceedingly rich.

But notwithstanding their riches, or their strength, or their prosperity, they were not lifted up in the pride of their eyes; neither were they slow to remember the Lord their God; but they did humble themselves exceedingly before him.

Yea, they did remember how great things the Lord had done for them, that he had delivered them from death, and from bonds, and from prisons, and from all manner of afflictions, and he had delivered them out of the hands of their enemies.

And they did pray unto the Lord their God continually, insomuch that the Lord did bless them, according to his word, so that they did wax strong and prosper in the land.

And it came to pass that all these things were done. And Helaman died, in the thirty and fifth year of the reign of the judges over the people of Nephi.

Alima 63

- 1 Futhi kwenzeka ekuqaleni konyaka wamashumi amathathu nesithupha wokubusa kwabehluleli kubantu bakwaNefi, ukuthi uShibiloni wathatha lezo zinto ezingcwele ezazilethwe kuHelamani ngu-Alima.
- 2 Futhi wayeyindoda elungile, futhi nempela wahamba ngobuqotho phambi kukaNkulunkulu; futhi waqaphela ukuthi enze okuhle njalonjalo, ukuthi ayigcine imiyalelo yeNkosi uNkulunkulu wakhe; futhi wenza kanjalo nomfowabo.
- 3 Futhi kwenzeka ukuthi uMoroni naye wafa. Futhi waphela kanjalo-ke unyaka wamashumi amathathu nesithupha wokubusa kwabehluleli.
- 4 Futhi kwenzeka ukuthi ngonyaka wamashumi amathathu nesikhombisa wokubusa kwabehluleli, kwabakhona iqembu elikhulu lamadoda, elalingabalelwa ngisho ezinkulungwaneni ezinhlanu namakhulu amane amadoda, nabafazi bawo kanye nezingane zawo, ahamba aphuma ezweni lakwaZarahemla aya ezweni elalingasenyakatho.
- 5 Futhi kwenzeka ukuthi uHagoti, eyindoda eyayifuna njalo ukwazi okufihlakeleyo, ngakho-ke wazakhela umkhumbi omkhulu kakhulu, eminceleni yezwe iNala, ngasezweni iNcithakalo, futhi wawungenisa olwandle olusentsholanga, ngasesiqintaneni esincane esasiholeleka ezweni elingasenyakatho.
- 6 Futhi bheka, kwakukhona abaningi bamaNefi abangena kuwo futhi nempela bahamba nokudla okuningi impela, futhi kanjalo nabesifazane abaningi kanye nezingane; futhi bathatha indlela yabo eya ngasenyakatho. Futhi waphela kanjalo-ke unyaka wamashumi amathathu nesikhombisa.
- 7 Futhi ngonyaka wamashumi amathathu nesishiyagalombili, lendoda yakha eminye imikhumbi. Futhi umkhumbi wokuqala nempela wabuya, futhi abaningi abanye abantu nempela bangena kuwo; futhi nabo ngokunjalo bathatha ukudla okuningi, futhi baphinda bahamba baya ezweni elingasenyakatho.

Alma 63

And it came to pass in the commencement of the thirty and sixth year of the reign of the judges over the people of Nephi, that Shiblon took possession of those sacred things which had been delivered unto Helaman by Alma.

And he was a just man, and he did walk uprightly before God; and he did observe to do good continually, to keep the commandments of the Lord his God; and also did his brother.

And it came to pass that Moroni died also. And thus ended the thirty and sixth year of the reign of the judges.

And it came to pass that in the thirty and seventh year of the reign of the judges, there was a large company of men, even to the amount of five thousand and four hundred men, with their wives and their children, departed out of the land of Zarahemla into the land which was northward.

And it came to pass that Hagoth, he being an exceedingly curious man, therefore he went forth and built him an exceedingly large ship, on the borders of the land Bountiful, by the land Desolation, and launched it forth into the west sea, by the narrow neck which led into the land northward.

And behold, there were many of the Nephites who did enter therein and did sail forth with much provisions, and also many women and children; and they took their course northward. And thus ended the thirty and seventh year.

And in the thirty and eighth year, this man built other ships. And the first ship did also return, and many more people did enter into it; and they also took much provisions, and set out again to the land northward.

- 8 Futhi kwenzeka ukuthi akuphindanga kwezwakala ngabo. Futhi sicabanga ukuthi baminza ekujuleni kolwandle. Futhi kwenzeka ukuthi omunye umkhumbi nawo wahamba; futhi ukuthi lowo waya kuphi asazi.
- 9 Futhi kwenzeka ukuthi ngalonyaka kwabakhona abantu abaningi abahamba baya ezweni elingasenyakatho. Futhi waphela kanjalo-ke unyaka wamashumi amathathu nesishiyagalombili.
- 10 Futhi kwenzeka ngonyaka wamashumi amathathu nesishiyagalolunye wokubusa kwabehluleli, uShibiloni naye wafa, futhi uKoriyantoni wayesehambe waqhubekela ezweni elingasenyakatho ngomkhumbi, ukuze ahambise ukudla kubantu ababehambe baya kulelozwe.
- 11 Ngakho-ke kwadingeka ukuthi uShibiloni adlulise lezo zinto ezingcwele, ngaphambi kokufa kwakhe, endodaneni ka Helamani, eyayibizwa ngokuthi nguHelamani, eyayiqanjwe ngegama likayise.
- 12 Manje bheka, yonke leyo miqopho eyayiphethwe nguHelamani yabhalwa futhi yathunyelwa phakathi kwabantwana babantu kulo lonke izwe, ngaphandle kwalezo zinxenye u-Alima ayebayale ngazo ukuthi zingembulwa.
- 13 Nokho, lezi zinto kwakufanele zigcinwe zingcwele, futhi zidluliswe zehle zisuka esizukulwaneni kuya kwesinye; ngakho-ke, ngalonyaka, zabe zinikezwe uHelamani, ngaphambi kokufa kukaShibiloni.
- 14 Futhi kwaphinde kwenzeka ngawo lo nyaka ukuthi kwabakhona abanye abahlubuki ababehambe baya kumaLamani; futhi aphinda aphehlwa ukuthi awathukuthelele amaNefi.
- 15 Futhi kuwo kanye lowo nyaka ehla nebutho eliningi kakhulu ukuzolwa nabantu ba Moroniha, noma nempi kaMoroniha, lapho ashaywa futhi aqhutshwa aphindiselwa emuva futhi emazweni awo, elahlekelwe kakhulu.
- 16 Futhi waphela kanjalo-ke unyaka wamashumi amathathu nesishiyagalolunye wokubusa kwabehluleli kubantu bakwaNefi.
- 17 Futhi yaphela kanjalo-ke indaba ka-Alima, kanye noHelamani indodana yakhe, futhi kanjalo noShibiloni, owaye yindodana yakhe.

And it came to pass that they were never heard of more. And we suppose that they were drowned in the depths of the sea. And it came to pass that one other ship also did sail forth; and whither she did go we know not.

And it came to pass that in this year there were many people who went forth into the land northward. And thus ended the thirty and eighth year.

And it came to pass in the thirty and ninth year of the reign of the judges, Shiblon died also, and Corianton had gone forth to the land northward in a ship, to carry forth provisions unto the people who had gone forth into that land.

Therefore it became expedient for Shiblon to confer those sacred things, before his death, upon the son of Helaman, who was called Helaman, being called after the name of his father.

Now behold, all those engravings which were in the possession of Helaman were written and sent forth among the children of men throughout all the land, save it were those parts which had been commanded by Alma should not go forth.

Nevertheless, these things were to be kept sacred, and handed down from one generation to another; therefore, in this year, they had been conferred upon Helaman, before the death of Shiblon.

And it came to pass also in this year that there were some dissenters who had gone forth unto the Lamanites; and they were stirred up again to anger against the Nephites.

And also in this same year they came down with a numerous army to war against the people of Moronihah, or against the army of Moronihah, in the which they were beaten and driven back again to their own lands, suffering great loss.

And thus ended the thirty and ninth year of the reign of the judges over the people of Nephi.

And thus ended the account of Alma, and Helaman his son, and also Shiblon, who was his son.

INcwadi kaHelamani

Indaba yamaNefi. Izimpi kanye nemibango yarwo, kanye nokungezwani kwarwo. Futhi phezu kwalokho neziphrofetho zabaphrofethi abaningi abangcwele, ngaphambi kokuza kukaKristu, ngokwemibhalo kaHelamani, owayeyindodana kaHelamani, futhi kanjalo nangokwemibhalo yamadodana akhe, ngisbo kwehla njalo kuze kufike ekuzeni kukaKristu. Futhi phezu kwalokho amaningi amaLamani ayaphenduka. Indaba yokuphenduka kwarwo. Indaba yokulunga kwamaLamani, kanye nobubi nezinengiso zamaNefi, ngokombhalo kaHelamani kanye namadodana akhe, kwehla njalo kuze kufike ekuzeni kukaKristu, ebizwa ngokuthi yincwadi kaHelamani, kanye nokunye.

Helamani 1

- 1 Manje bheka, kwenzeka ekuqaleni konyaka wamashumi amane wokubusa kwabehluleli ebantwini baNefi, kwaqala kwaba khona inkinga enkulu phakathi kwabantu bamaNefi.
- 2 Ngokuba bheka, uPahorani wayesefile, futhi eshambe indlela yomhlaba wonke; ngakho-ke kwaqala kwabakhona umbango omkhulu mayelana nokuthi ngubani okwakufanele athathe isihlalo sokwahlulela phakathi kwababezalwa nguye, ababe ngamadodana kaPahorani.
- 3 Manje lawa ngamagama alabo ababebanga isihlalo sokwahlulela, futhi abenza abantu ukuthi babange: UPahorani, uPanki, kanye noPakumeni.
- 4 Manje lawa akusiwo wonke amadodana kaPahorani (ngokuba wayenamaningi), kodwa lawa yiwo ayebanga isihlalo sokwahlulela; ngakho-ke, nempela enza ukuthi kube khona ukwehlukana kathathu phakathi kwabantu.
- 5 Nokho, kwenzeka ukuthi uPahorani wakhethwa ngezwi labantu ukuthi abe ngumahlaleli omkhulu kanye nombusi phezu kwabantu baNefi.
- 6 Futhi kwenzeka ukuthi uPakumeni, ngesikhathi ebona ukuthi wayengenakukwazi ukusithola isihlalo sokwahlulela, wahlangana nezwi labantu.

The Book of Helaman

An account of the Nephites. Their wars and contentions, and their dissensions. And also the prophecies of many holy prophets, before the coming of Christ, according to the records of Helaman, who was the son of Helaman, and also according to the records of his sons, even down to the coming of Christ. And also many of the Lamanites are converted. An account of their conversion. An account of the righteousness of the Lamanites, and the wickedness and abominations of the Nephites, according to the record of Helaman and his sons, even down to the coming of Christ, which is called the book of Helaman, and so forth.

Helaman 1

And now behold, it came to pass in the commencement of the fortieth year of the reign of the judges over the people of Nephi, there began to be a serious difficulty among the people of the Nephites.

For behold, Pahoran had died, and gone the way of all the earth; therefore there began to be a serious contention concerning who should have the judgment-seat among the brethren, who were the sons of Pahoran.

Now these are their names who did contend for the judgment-seat, who did also cause the people to contend: Pahoran, Paanchi, and Pacumeni.

Now these are not all the sons of Pahoran (for he had many), but these are they who did contend for the judgment-seat; therefore, they did cause three divisions among the people.

Nevertheless, it came to pass that Pahoran was appointed by the voice of the people to be chief judge and a governor over the people of Nephi.

And it came to pass that Pacumeni, when he saw that he could not obtain the judgment-seat, he did unite with the voice of the people.

- 7 Kepha bheka, uPanki, kanye naleyo nxenye yabantu eyayinesifiso sokuthi abe ngumbusi wabo, bathukuthela kakhulu; ngakho-ke, waye sezobalutha labo bantu ukuthi basukume bavukele abafowabo.
- 8 Futhi kwenzeka ngesikhathi esezokwenza lokhu, bheka, wathathwa, wayoquliswa icala ngokwezwi labantu, futhi wagwetshwa ngokufa; ngokuba wayehlubukile futhi wafuna ukuqeda inkululeko yabantu.
- 9 Manje ngesikhathi labo bantu ababenesifiso sokuthi abe ngumbusi wabo bebona ukuthi wayesegwetshwe ngokufa, ngakho-ke bathukuthela, futhi bheka, bathumela uKishikumeni, ukuthi aye esihlalweni sokwahlulela sikaPahorani, futhi wambulala uPahorani ngesikhathi ehleli esihlalweni sokwahlulela.
- 10 Futhi waxoshwa yizinceku zikaPahorani; kepha bheka, lalilikhulu ijubane likaKishikumeni kangangokuthi kwakungekho namunye umuntu owayengamfica.
- 11 Futhi waya kulabo ababemthumile, futhi bonke bangena esivumelwaneni, yebo, befunga ngoMenzi wabo waphakade, ukuthi babengeke batshele namunye umuntu ukuthi uKishikumeni wayebulele uPahorani.
- 12 Ngakho-ke, uKishikumeni akazange aziwe phakathi kwabantu baNefi, ngokuba wayezifihlile ngesikhathi ebulala uPahorani. Futhi uKishikumeni kanye neqembu lakhe, elenze isivumelwano naye, nempela lahlangana nabantu, ngendlela yokuthi abazange batholwe bonke; kepha ngobuningi balabo abatholakala bagwetshwa ngokufa.
- 13 Manje bheka, uPakumeni wabekwa, ngokwezwi labantu, ukuthi abe ngumahluleli omkhulu kanye nombusi phezu kwabantu, ukuze abuse esikhundleni somfowabo uPahorani; futhi kwakunjengokwelungelo lakhe. Futhi konke lokhu kwenzeka onyakeni wamashumi amane wokubusa kwabehluleli; futhi kwaba sekuba wukuphela kwawo.

But behold, Paanchi, and that part of the people that were desirous that he should be their governor, was exceedingly wroth; therefore, he was about to flatter away those people to rise up in rebellion against their brethren.

And it came to pass as he was about to do this, behold, he was taken, and was tried according to the voice of the people, and condemned unto death; for he had raised up in rebellion and sought to destroy the liberty of the people.

Now when those people who were desirous that he should be their governor saw that he was condemned unto death, therefore they were angry, and behold, they sent forth one Kishkumen, even to the judgment-seat of Pahoran, and murdered Pahoran as he sat upon the judgment-seat.

And he was pursued by the servants of Pahoran; but behold, so speedy was the flight of Kishkumen that no man could overtake him.

And he went unto those that sent him, and they all entered into a covenant, yea, swearing by their everlasting Maker, that they would tell no man that Kishkumen had murdered Pahoran.

Therefore, Kishkumen was not known among the people of Nephi, for he was in disguise at the time that he murdered Pahoran. And Kishkumen and his band, who had covenanted with him, did mingle themselves among the people, in a manner that they all could not be found; but as many as were found were condemned unto death.

And now behold, Pacumeni was appointed, according to the voice of the people, to be a chief judge and a governor over the people, to reign in the stead of his brother Pahoran; and it was according to his right. And all this was done in the fortieth year of the reign of the judges; and it had an end.

- 14 Futhi kwenzeka ngonyaka wamashumi amane nanye wokubusa kwabehluleli, ukuthi amaLamani ayeseqoqele ndawonye amabutho amadoda amaningi angabaleki, futhi awahlomisa ngezinkemba, kanye nangocelumba kanye nangeminsalo, kanye nangemicibisholo, kanye nangokokuvikela ikhanda, kanye nangezivikelo zesifuba, kanye nangazo zonke izinhlobo zezihlangu ezinhlobonhlobo.
- 15 Futhi aphinda ehlela ezansi ukuze aqhube impi namaNefi. Futhi ayeholwa yindoda igama layo okwakunguKoriyantuma; futhi yayingowozalo lukaZarahemla; futhi yayiyimbuka elivela kumaNefi; futhi yayiyindoda enkulu futhi enamandla.
- 16 Ngakho-ke, inkosi yamaLamani, igama layo okwakunguTubaloti, owayeyindodana ka-Amoroni, ngokucabanga ukuthi uKoriyantuma, ngoba wayeyindoda enamandla, wayengakwazi ukumelana namaNefi, ngamandla akhe futhi kanjalo nangokuhlakanipha kwakhe okukhulu, kangangokuthi ngokumthumela kwakhe phambili wayezothola amandla phezu kwamaNefi—
- 17 Ngakho-ke nempela wawaphehla ukuthi athukuthele, futhi wawaqoqela ndawonye amabutho akhe, futhi wabeka uKoriyantuma ukuthi abe ngumholi wabo, futhi wenza ukuthi bahambe behlele ezweni lakwaZarahemla ukuthi bayolwa namaNefi.
- 18 Futhi kwenzeka ukuthi ngenxa yombango omkhulu kakhulu kanye nobunzima obukhulu kangaka kumkhandlu ophetheyo, abazange babeke abaqaphi abenele ezweni lakwaZarahemla; ngokuba babecabanga ukuthi amaLamani ayengenakulokotha eze enkabeni yamazwe abo ukuthi azohlasela lelo dolobha elikhulu iZarahemla.
- 19 Kodwa kwenzeka ukuthi uKoriyantuma nempela wahamba phambili ehola impi yakhe eningi, futhi waze wafika kubahlali bedolobha, futhi ukuhamba kwabo kwakunjubane elikhulu kakhulu kangangokuthi akuzange kubekhona isikhathi sokuba amaNefi aqoqele ndawonye amabutho awo.

And it came to pass in the forty and first year of the reign of the judges, that the Lamanites had gathered together an innumerable army of men, and armed them with swords, and with cimeters and with bows, and with arrows, and with head-plates, and with breastplates, and with all manner of shields of every kind.

And they came down again that they might pitch battle against the Nephites. And they were led by a man whose name was Coriantumr; and he was a descendant of Zarahemla; and he was a dissenter from among the Nephites; and he was a large and a mighty man.

Therefore, the king of the Lamanites, whose name was Tubaloth, who was the son of Ammoron, supposing that Coriantumr, being a mighty man, could stand against the Nephites, with his strength and also with his great wisdom, insomuch that by sending him forth he should gain power over the Nephites—

Therefore he did stir them up to anger, and he did gather together his armies, and he did appoint Coriantumr to be their leader, and did cause that they should march down to the land of Zarahemla to battle against the Nephites.

And it came to pass that because of so much contention and so much difficulty in the government, that they had not kept sufficient guards in the land of Zarahemla; for they had supposed that the Lamanites durst not come into the heart of their lands to attack that great city Zarahemla.

But it came to pass that Coriantumr did march forth at the head of his numerous host, and came upon the inhabitants of the city, and their march was with such exceedingly great speed that there was no time for the Nephites to gather together their armies.

- 20 Ngakho-ke uKoriyantuma nempela wababulala abaqaphi ababesekungeneni kwedolobha, futhi wahamba waya phambili nempi yakhe yonke wayongena edolobheni, futhi bababulala bonke ababephikisana nabo, kangangokuthi balithatha idolobha lonke.
- 21 Futhi kwenzeka ukuthi uPakumeni, owayengumahluleli omkhulu, wabaleka phambi kukaKoriyantuma, waze wafika ngasezindongeni zedolobha. Futhi kwenzeka ukuthi uKoriyantuma wamshaya wamhlanganisa nodonga, kangangokuthi waze wafa. Futhi zaphela kanjalo-ke izinsuku zikaPakumeni.
- 22 Manje ngesikhathi uKoriyantuma esebona ukuthi wayeselitholile idolobha lakwaZarahemla, futhi esebona ukuthi amaNefi ayeseba balekele, futhi abulawa, athathwa, aphonswa etilongweni, nokuthi wayesebutholile ubunini bezinqaba eziqine kakhulu ezweni lonke, inhliziyo yakhe yama isibindi kangangokuthi wabe esezohamba ayolwa kulo lonke izwe.
- 23 Manje akahlalanga ezweni lakwaZarahemla, kodwa waqhubeka nebutho elikhulu, waqonda ngasedolobheni iNala; ngokuba kwaku yinhloso yakhe ukuthi ahambe futhi avule indlela yakhe ngenkemba, ukuze athole izinxenye ezisenyakatho zezwe.
- 24 Futhi, ecabanga ukuthi amandla abo amakhulu kakhulu ayephakathi naphakathi nezwe, ngakho-ke waqhubeka, engabaniki thuba lokuthi babuthane ndawonye ngaphandle nje kwamaqoqwana amancane; futhi ngalendlela nempela bawela phezu kwawo bawathela phansi othulini.
- 25 Kodwa bheka, lokhu kuhamba kukaKoriyantuma eya phakathi naphakathi nezwe kwanika uMoronihah ithuba elikhulu phezu kwawo, nakuba sasisikhulu isibalo samaNefi ayebulewe.
- 26 Ngokuba bheka, uMoronihah wayecabanga ukuthi amaLamani ayengeke alokothe eze phakathi naphakathi nezwe, kodwa ukuthi ayezohlasela amadolobha ayezungeze eminceleni njengoba ayekade nakuqala enzile; ngakho-ke uMoronihah wayenze ukuthi amabutho abo aqinile aqaphe lezo zinxenye ezazingaseminceleni.

Therefore Coriantumr did cut down the watch by the entrance of the city, and did march forth with his whole army into the city, and they did slay every one who did oppose them, insomuch that they did take possession of the whole city.

And it came to pass that Pacumeni, who was the chief judge, did flee before Coriantumr, even to the walls of the city. And it came to pass that Coriantumr did smite him against the wall, insomuch that he died. And thus ended the days of Pacumeni.

And now when Coriantumr saw that he was in possession of the city of Zarahemla, and saw that the Nephites had fled before them, and were slain, and were taken, and were cast into prison, and that he had obtained the possession of the strongest hold in all the land, his heart took courage insomuch that he was about to go forth against all the land.

And now he did not tarry in the land of Zarahemla, but he did march forth with a large army, even towards the city of Bountiful; for it was his determination to go forth and cut his way through with the sword, that he might obtain the north parts of the land.

And, supposing that their greatest strength was in the center of the land, therefore he did march forth, giving them no time to assemble themselves together save it were in small bodies; and in this manner they did fall upon them and cut them down to the earth.

But behold, this march of Coriantumr through the center of the land gave Moronihah great advantage over them, notwithstanding the greatness of the number of the Nephites who were slain.

For behold, Moronihah had supposed that the Lamanites durst not come into the center of the land, but that they would attack the cities round about in the borders as they had hitherto done; therefore Moronihah had caused that their strong armies should maintain those parts round about by the borders.

- 27 Kodwa bheka, amaLamani ayengesabi njengokwesifiso sakhe, kodwa ayesengene phakathi naphakathi nezwe, futhi ayeseyithathile inhloko dolobha owakuyidolobha lakwaZarahemla, futhi ayehamba edabula eqonde ezinxenyeni ezibalulekile zezwe, ebulala abantu abaningi kakhulu, abesilisa, nabesifazane, kanye nezingane, ethatha amadolobha amaningi kanye nezinqaba eziningi.
- 28 Kodwa ngesikhathi uMoronihah esekubonile lokhu, wathumela uLehi ngokushesha kanye nebutho ukuthi ahambe ndawo zonke awanqande ngaphambi kokuthi afike ezweni iNala.
- 29 Futhi wenza kanjalo; futhi wawanqanda ngaphambi kokuthi afike ezweni iNala, futhi wawahlasela, kangangokuthi aqala ahlehlela emuva aya ngasezweni lakwaZarahemla.
- 30 Futhi kwenzeka ukuthi uMoronihah nempela wawanqanda ekuhlehleleni kwawo emuva, futhi wawahlasela, kangangokuthi kwaba yimpi yegazi eliningi kakhulu; yebo, abaningi babulawa, futhi phakathi kwesibalo salabo ababe bulewe uKoriantumr naye ngokunjalo watholakala lapho.
- 31 Manje, bheka, amaLamani ayengasakwazi ukuhlehla noma kuphi, noma ukuya enyakatho, noma ukuya eningizimu, noma empumalanga, noma entshonalanga, ngokuba ayesezungenze ndawo zonke ngamaNefi.
- 32 Futhi uKoriantumr wawafaka ngalendlela amaLamani phakathi naphakathi kwamaNefi, kangangokuthi ayesesemandleni amaNefi, futhi naye qobo lwakhe wayesebulewe, futhi amaLamani nempela azinikela ezandleni zamaNefi.
- 33 Futhi kwenzeka ukuthi uMoronihah waphinda wabuthatha ubunini bezwe lakwaZarahemla, futhi wenza ukuthi amaLamani ayekade eboshiwe ahambe aphume ezweni ngokuthula.
- 34 Futhi waphela kanjalo-ke unyaka wamashumi amane nanye wokubusa kwabehluleli.

But behold, the Lamanites were not frightened according to his desire, but they had come into the center of the land, and had taken the capital city which was the city of Zarahemla, and were marching through the most capital parts of the land, slaying the people with a great slaughter, both men, women, and children, taking possession of many cities and of many strongholds.

But when Moronihah had discovered this, he immediately sent forth Lehi with an army round about to head them before they should come to the land Bountiful.

And thus he did; and he did head them before they came to the land Bountiful, and gave unto them battle, insomuch that they began to retreat back towards the land of Zarahemla.

And it came to pass that Moronihah did head them in their retreat, and did give unto them battle, insomuch that it became an exceedingly bloody battle; yea, many were slain, and among the number who were slain Coriantumr was also found.

And now, behold, the Lamanites could not retreat either way, neither on the north, nor on the south, nor on the east, nor on the west, for they were surrounded on every hand by the Nephites.

And thus had Coriantumr plunged the Lamanites into the midst of the Nephites, insomuch that they were in the power of the Nephites, and he himself was slain, and the Lamanites did yield themselves into the hands of the Nephites.

And it came to pass that Moronihah took possession of the city of Zarahemla again, and caused that the Lamanites who had been taken prisoners should depart out of the land in peace.

And thus ended the forty and first year of the reign of the judges.

Helamani 2

- 1 Futhi kwenzeka ngonyaka wamashumi amane nambili wokubusa kwabehluleli, emva kokuthi uMoroniha esedale ukuthula futhi phakathi kwamaNefi kanye namaLamani, bheka kwakungekho muntu owayezothatha isihlalo sokwahlulela; ngakho-ke kwaqala kwaba khona umbango futhi phakathi kwabantu mayelana nokuthi ngubani owayezothatha isihlalo sokwahlulela.
- 2 Futhi kwenzeka ukuthi uHelamani, owayeyindodana kaHelamani, wabekwa ukuthi athathe isihlalo sokwahlulela, ngezwi labantu.
- 3 Kepha bheka, uKishikumeni, owayebulele uPahorani, wabe elokhu elinde ukumbulala noHelamani futhi; futhi wayesekelwe yiqembu lakhe, elalingene esivumelwaneni sokuthi kungabi bikho namunye oyokwazi ngobubi bakhe.
- 4 Ngokuba kwakukhona uGadiyantoni othile, owayeyingcweti kakhulu ngamazwi amaningi, futhi kanjalo nangobuciko bakhe, ukuthi aqhubeke nomsebenzi wokubulala kanye nowokuphanga; ngakho-ke waba ngumholi weqembu likaKishikumeni.
- 5 Ngakho-ke nempela wabalutha, futhi kanjalo noKishikumeni, ukuthi uma bengambeka esihlalweni sokwahlulela wayezokwenza labo okwakungabeqembu lakhe ukuthi banikwe amandla kanye negunya phakathi kwabantu; ngakho-ke uKishikumeni wafuna ukumbulala uHelamani.
- 6 Futhi kwenzeka ngesikhathi esehamba eya ngasesihlalweni sokwahlulela ukuyobulala uHelamani, bheka enye yezinceku zikaHelamani, kade iphumile ebusuku, futhi isithole, ngokuzifihla, ulwazi ngalawo macebo ayekade ebekwe yileli qembu okubulala uHelamani—
- 7 Futhi kwenzeka ukuthi yahlangana noKishikumeni, futhi yamnikeza uphawu; ngakho-ke uKishikumeni wayitshela inhloso yesifiso sakhe, efuna ukuthi imhole imyise esihlalweni sokwahlulela ukuze abulale uHelamani.

Helaman 2

And it came to pass in the forty and second year of the reign of the judges, after Moronihah had established again peace between the Nephites and the Lamanites, behold there was no one to fill the judgment-seat; therefore there began to be a contention again among the people concerning who should fill the judgment-seat.

And it came to pass that Helaman, who was the son of Helaman, was appointed to fill the judgment-seat, by the voice of the people.

But behold, Kishkumen, who had murdered Pahoran, did lay wait to destroy Helaman also; and he was upheld by his band, who had entered into a covenant that no one should know his wickedness.

For there was one Gadianton, who was exceedingly expert in many words, and also in his craft, to carry on the secret work of murder and of robbery; therefore he became the leader of the band of Kishkumen.

Therefore he did flatter them, and also Kishkumen, that if they would place him in the judgment-seat he would grant unto those who belonged to his band that they should be placed in power and authority among the people; therefore Kishkumen sought to destroy Helaman.

And it came to pass as he went forth towards the judgment-seat to destroy Helaman, behold one of the servants of Helaman, having been out by night, and having obtained, through disguise, a knowledge of those plans which had been laid by this band to destroy Helaman—

And it came to pass that he met Kishkumen, and he gave unto him a sign; therefore Kishkumen made known unto him the object of his desire, desiring that he would conduct him to the judgment-seat that he might murder Helaman.

- 8 Futhi ngesikhathi inceku kaHelamani seyazile konke okusenhliziyweni kaKishikumeni, futhi nokuthi kwakuyinhloso yakhe ukubulala, futhi kanjalo nokuthi kwakuyinhloso yabo bonke labo okwakungabeqembu lakhe ukuthi babulale, futhi baphange, futhi bazuze amandla, (futhi lokhu kwakuyisu labo elifhlakele, kanye nozungu lwabo) inceku kaHelamani yathi kuKishikumeni: Masihambe siye esihlalweni sokwahlulela.
- 9 Manje lokhu kwamjabulisa kakhulu uKishikumeni, ngokuba wayecabanga ukuthi wayezolifeza isu lakhe; kepha bheka, inceku kaHelamani, ngesikhathi behamba beya esihlalweni sokwahlulela, nempela yamgwaza uKishikumeni enhliziyweni, kangangokuthi wawa wafa ngaphandle kokuquma. Futhi yagijima yayotshela uHelamani zonke izinto eyayizibonile, neyazizwile, futhi neyayizenzile.
- 10 Futhi kwenzeka ukuthi uHelamani nempela wathumela ukuthi kuyobanjwa leliqembu labaphangi kanye nababulali abafihlakele, ukuze bajeziswe ngokomthetho.
- 11 Kepha bheka, ngesikhathi uGadiyantoni esethole ukuthi uKishikumeni akabuyanga wesaba ukuthi hleze naye abulawe; ngakho-ke wenza ukuthi iqembu lakhe limlandele. Futhi babaleka baphuma ezweni, ngendlela efihlakele, baya ehlane; futhi ngenxa yalokhu ngesikhathi uHelamani esethumela ukuthi bayobanjwa ababange besatholakala ndawo.
- 12 Futhi okunye ngaloGadiyantoni ngizobuye ngikhulume ngakho emva kwalokhu. Futhi waphela kanjalo-ke unyaka wamashumi amane nambili wokubusa kwabehluleli kubantu baNefi.
- 13 Futhi bheka, ekugcineni kwalencwadi nizobona ukuthi lo Gadiyantoni nempela waba yimbangela, yebo, cishe yokonakaliswa kwabo bonke abantu baNefi.
- 14 Bheka angiqondile ekugcineni kwencwadi kaHelamani, kodwa ngiqonde ekugcineni kwencwadi kaNefi, engithathe kuyo yonke lendaba engiyibhalile.

And when the servant of Helaman had known all the heart of Kishkumen, and how that it was his object to murder, and also that it was the object of all those who belonged to his band to murder, and to rob, and to gain power, (and this was their secret plan, and their combination) the servant of Helaman said unto Kishkumen: Let us go forth unto the judgment-seat.

Now this did please Kishkumen exceedingly, for he did suppose that he should accomplish his design; but behold, the servant of Helaman, as they were going forth unto the judgment-seat, did stab Kishkumen even to the heart, that he fell dead without a groan. And he ran and told Helaman all the things which he had seen, and heard, and done.

And it came to pass that Helaman did send forth to take this band of robbers and secret murderers, that they might be executed according to the law.

But behold, when Gadianton had found that Kishkumen did not return he feared lest that he should be destroyed; therefore he caused that his band should follow him. And they took their flight out of the land, by a secret way, into the wilderness; and thus when Helaman sent forth to take them they could nowhere be found.

And more of this Gadianton shall be spoken hereafter. And thus ended the forty and second year of the reign of the judges over the people of Nephi.

And behold, in the end of this book ye shall see that this Gadianton did prove the overthrow, yea, almost the entire destruction of the people of Nephi.

Behold I do not mean the end of the book of Helaman, but I mean the end of the book of Nephi, from which I have taken all the account which I have written.

Helamani 3

- 1 Manje kwenzeka ngonyaka wamashumi amane nantathu wokubusa kwabehluleli, akuzange kube khona mbango phakathi kwabantu baNefi ngaphandle nje kokuziqhenya okuncane okwakusebandleni, okwabangela ukuhlubuka okuncane phakathi kwabantu, futhi lezi zindaba zasombululeka ekupheleni konyaka wamashumi amane nantathu.
- 2 Futhi akuzange kube khona mbango phakathi kwabantu ngonyaka wamashumi amane nane; futhi akubanga khona mbango omkhulu ngonyaka wamashumi amane nanhlanu.
- 3 Futhi kwenzeka ngonyaka wamashumi amane nesithupha, yebo, kwaba khona umbango omkhulu kanye nokuhlubuka okuningi; okwaba yimbangela yokuthi abaningi kakhulu bemuka baphuma ezweni lakwaZarahemla, futhi bahamba baya ezweni elingasenyakatho ukuyolithola njengefa.
- 4 Futhi bahamba indlela ende kakhulu, kangangokuthi baze bafika emachibini amakhulu amanzi kanye nasemifuleni eminingi.
- 5 Yebo, futhi basakazeka kuzo zonke izinxenye zezwe, kuzo zonke izinxenye ezazingenziwanga zaba yincithakalo futhi ezazingenamahlathi, ngenxa yabahlali abaningi ababehlala kulo phambilini.
- 6 Manje kwakungekho nxenye yezwe eyayi yincithakalo, ngaphandle nje kokuthi kwakungekho mahlathi; kodwa ngenxa yokubhujiswa okukhulu kwabantu ababehlala kulo phambilini labizwa ngokuthi yincithakalo.
- 7 Futhi ngenxa yokuthi kwakukhona amahlathi amancane nje ebusweni bezwe, nokho abantu abaya lapho baba yizingcweti ekusebenziseni usimende; ngakho-ke nempela bakha izindlu zikasimende, abahlala kuzo.
- 8 Futhi kwenzeka ukuthi nempela bazalana banda futhi basakazeka, futhi bahamba besuka ezweni elalingase ningizimu beya ezweni elingase nyakatho, futhi basakazeka kangangokuthi baqala ukumboza ubuso bezwe lonke, kusukela olwandle oluseningizimu kuya olwandle olusenyakatho, kusukela olwandle olusentshonalanga kuya olwandle olusempumalanga.

Helaman 3

And now it came to pass in the forty and third year of the reign of the judges, there was no contention among the people of Nephi save it were a little pride which was in the church, which did cause some little dissensions among the people, which affairs were settled in the ending of the forty and third year.

And there was no contention among the people in the forty and fourth year; neither was there much contention in the forty and fifth year.

And it came to pass in the forty and sixth, yea, there was much contention and many dissensions; in the which there were an exceedingly great many who departed out of the land of Zarahemla, and went forth unto the land northward to inherit the land.

And they did travel to an exceedingly great distance, insomuch that they came to large bodies of water and many rivers.

Yea, and even they did spread forth into all parts of the land, into whatever parts it had not been rendered desolate and without timber, because of the many inhabitants who had before inherited the land.

And now no part of the land was desolate, save it were for timber; but because of the greatness of the destruction of the people who had before inhabited the land it was called desolate.

And there being but little timber upon the face of the land, nevertheless the people who went forth became exceedingly expert in the working of cement; therefore they did build houses of cement, in the which they did dwell.

And it came to pass that they did multiply and spread, and did go forth from the land southward to the land northward, and did spread insomuch that they began to cover the face of the whole earth, from the sea south to the sea north, from the sea west to the sea east.

- 9 Futhi abantu ababesezweni elingasenyakatho babehlala ematendeni, kanye nasezindlini zikasimende, futhi bayekela nanoma yisiphi isihlahla esasivela ebusweni bezwe ukuthi sikhule, ukuze ngokuhamba kwesikhathi babe nezingodo zokwakha izindlu zabo, yebo, amadolobha abo, kanye namathempeli abo, kanye namasinagoge abo, kanye nezindlu zabo ezingcwele, kanye nazo zonke izinhlobo zezakhiwo zabo.
- 10 Futhi kwenzeka njengoba izingodo zaziyingdhlala kakhulu ezweni elingasenyakatho, bathumela eziningi ngomkhumbi.
- 11 Futhi ngaleyondlela basiza abantu ababesezweni elingasenyakatho ukuthi bakhe amaningi amadolobha amakhulu ngezingodo kanye nangosimende.
- 12 Futhi kwenzeka ukuthi kwakukhona abanengi babantu ba-Amoni, ababengamaLamani ngokuzalwa, nabo ngokunjalo abahamba baya kulelizwe.
- 13 Manje kukhona imibhalo eminingi egciniwe yezenzo zalabantu, ngabaningi balabantu, eneminingwane futhi eminingi kakhulu, mayelana nabo.
- 14 Kepha bheka, inxenye eyodwa ekhulwini yezenzo zalabantu, yebo, indaba yamaLamani kanye neyamaNefi, kanye nezimpi zabo, kanye nemibango, kanye nokuhlubuka, kanye nokushumayela kwabo, kanye neziphrofetho zabo, kanye nokuthumela kwabo izinto ngemikhumbi kanye nokwakha kwabo imikhumbi, kanye nokwakha kwabo amathempeli, namasinagoge kanye nezindlu zabo ezingcwele, kanye nokulunga kwabo, kanye nobubi babo, kanye nokubulala kwabo, kanye nokuphanga kwabo, kanye nobugebengu babo, kanye nazo zonke izinhlobo zezinengiso zabo kanye nobufebe babo, akunakukwazi ukuthi kufakwe kulomsebenzi.
- 15 Kepha bheka, kukhona eziningi izincwadi kanye neminingi imibhalo enhlobo nhlobo, futhi selokhu yagcinwa esikhathini esiningi ngamaNefi.

And the people who were in the land northward did dwell in tents, and in houses of cement, and they did suffer whatsoever tree should spring up upon the face of the land that it should grow up, that in time they might have timber to build their houses, yea, their cities, and their temples, and their synagogues, and their sanctuaries, and all manner of their buildings.

And it came to pass as timber was exceedingly scarce in the land northward, they did send forth much by the way of shipping.

And thus they did enable the people in the land northward that they might build many cities, both of wood and of cement.

And it came to pass that there were many of the people of Ammon, who were Lamanites by birth, did also go forth into this land.

And now there are many records kept of the proceedings of this people, by many of this people, which are particular and very large, concerning them.

But behold, a hundredth part of the proceedings of this people, yea, the account of the Lamanites and of the Nephites, and their wars, and contentions, and dissensions, and their preaching, and their prophecies, and their shipping and their building of ships, and their building of temples, and of synagogues and their sanctuaries, and their righteousness, and their wickedness, and their murders, and their robberings, and their plundering, and all manner of abominations and whoredoms, cannot be contained in this work.

But behold, there are many books and many records of every kind, and they have been kept chiefly by the Nephites.

16 Futhi selokhu yadluliswa ngamaNefi kusukela esizukulwaneni kuya kwesinye, kwaze kwaba awela esiphambekweni futhi abulawa, aphantwa, futhi azingelwa, futhi axoshwa, futhi asakazwa ebusweni bomhlaba, futhi axubana namaLamani aze angabe esabizwa ngamaNefi, esenobubi, futhi eseyizinhlangunhlangu, futhi esenobudlova, yebo, ngisho esengamaLamani.

17 Manje sengibuyela futhi endabeni yami; ngakho-ke, lokho engikukhulumile kwenzeka emva kokuthi sekubekhona imibango, kanye nokuphazamiseka, kanye nezimpi, kanye nokuhlubuka, phakathi kwabantu baNefi.

18 Unyaka wamashumi amane nesithupha wokubusa kwabehluleli waphela;

19 Futhi kwenzeka ukuthi wawusekhona umbango omkhulu ezweni, yebo, ngisho nangonyaka wamashumi amane nesikhombisa, futhi kanjalo nangonyaka wamashumi amane nesishiyagalombili.

20 Nokho uHelamani wasithatha isihlalo sokwahlulela ngokulunga kanye nangobuqotho; yebo, nempela waqaphela ukugcina imithetho, kanye nezahlulelo, kanye nemiyalelo kaNkulunkulu; futhi nempela wenza lokho okwakulungile emehlweni kaNkulunkulu njalonjalo; futhi wahamba ezindleleni zikayise, kangangokuthi waphumelela ezweni.

21 Futhi kwenzeka ukuthi wayenamadodana amabili. Omdala wamnikeza igama lika Nefi, kwathi omncane, igama lika Lehi. Futhi aqala akhulela eNkosini.

22 Futhi kwenzeka ukuthi izimpi kanye nemibango kwaqala kwaya ngokuphela, kancane nje, phakathi kwabantu bamaNefi, ngasekupheleni konyaka wamashumi amane nesishiyagalombili wokubusa kwabehluleli kubantu baNefi.

23 Futhi kwenzeka ngonyaka wamashumi amane nesishiyagalolunye wokubusa kwabehluleli, kwabakhona ukuthula njalonjalo ezweni, ngaphandle nje kwamaqembu ayimfihlo uGadiyantoni umphangi ayewamisile ezinxenyeni eziningi zezindawo ezazithule, ngaleso sikhathi ayengaziwa yilabo ababesezihlalweni eziphezulu zomkhandlu ophetheyo; ngakho-ke awazange aqedwe aphele ezweni.

And they have been handed down from one generation to another by the Nephites, even until they have fallen into transgression and have been murdered, plundered, and hunted, and driven forth, and slain, and scattered upon the face of the earth, and mixed with the Lamanites until they are no more called the Nephites, becoming wicked, and wild, and ferocious, yea, even becoming Lamanites.

And now I return again to mine account; therefore, what I have spoken had passed after there had been great contentions, and disturbances, and wars, and dissensions, among the people of Nephi.

The forty and sixth year of the reign of the judges ended;

And it came to pass that there was still great contention in the land, yea, even in the forty and seventh year, and also in the forty and eighth year.

Nevertheless Helaman did fill the judgment-seat with justice and equity; yea, he did observe to keep the statutes, and the judgments, and the commandments of God; and he did do that which was right in the sight of God continually; and he did walk after the ways of his father, insomuch that he did prosper in the land.

And it came to pass that he had two sons. He gave unto the eldest the name of Nephi, and unto the youngest, the name of Lehi. And they began to grow up unto the Lord.

And it came to pass that the wars and contentions began to cease, in a small degree, among the people of the Nephites, in the latter end of the forty and eighth year of the reign of the judges over the people of Nephi.

And it came to pass in the forty and ninth year of the reign of the judges, there was continual peace established in the land, all save it were the secret combinations which Gadianton the robber had established in the more settled parts of the land, which at that time were not known unto those who were at the head of government; therefore they were not destroyed out of the land.

- 24 Futhi kwenzeka ukuthi ngawo kanye lonyaka kwaba khona impumelelo enkulu kakhulu ebandleni, kangangokuthi kwaba khona izinkulungwane ezangena ebandleni futhi zabhabhadiselwa ekuphendukeni.
- 25 Futhi kwaba kukhulu kakhulu ukuphumelela ebandleni, futhi nezibusiso zaba ziningi kakhulu ezathelwa kubantu, kangangokuthi ngisho abaphristi abakhulu kanye nabafundisi bamangala kakhulu.
- 26 Futhi kwenzeka ukuthi umsebenzi weNkosi nempela waphumelela kangangoba kwabhabhadiswa futhi kwahlanganiswa ibandla likaNkulunkulu, abantu abaningi, yebo, ngisho amashumi ezinkulungwane.
- 27 Ngaleyondlela singabona ukuthi iNkosi inomusa kubo bonke abathandayo, ngobuqotho bezinhliziyi zabo, ukubiza igama layo elingcwele.
- 28 Yebo, ngaleyondlela siyabona ukuthi isango lasezulwini livulelwe bonke, ngisho nalabo abayokholwa egameni likaJesu Kristu, oyiNdodana kaNkulunkulu.
- 29 Yebo, siyabona ukuthi lowo othandayo angabambelela ezwini likaNkulunkulu, eliphilayo futhi elinamandla, eliyohlukanisa phakathi naphakathi bonke ubuqili nezithiyo kanye neziyengo zikadeveli, futhi liholele umlandeli kaKristu endleleni engumngcingo nencane awele kulowo mhosha waphakade wokuhlupheka olungiselwe ukuthi ugwinye ababi—
- 30 Futhi libeke imiphefumulo yabo, yebo, imiphefumulo yabo engafiyo, esandleni sokunene sikaNkulunkulu embusweni wasezulwini, ukuthi ihlale phansi no-Abrahama, no-Isaka, kanye no-Jakobe, kanye nabo bonke obaba bethu abangcwele, ingaphindi nanini iphumele ngaphandle.
- 31 Futhi ngalonyaka kwabakhona ukujabula okuqhubekayo ezweni lakwaZarahemla, kanye nakuzo zonke izifunda ezizungezile, ngisho nakulo lonke izwe elalingelamaNefi.

And it came to pass that in this same year there was exceedingly great prosperity in the church, inso-much that there were thousands who did join themselves unto the church and were baptized unto re-pentance.

And so great was the prosperity of the church, and so many the blessings which were poured out upon the people, that even the high priests and the teachers were themselves astonished beyond measure.

And it came to pass that the work of the Lord did prosper unto the baptizing and uniting to the church of God, many souls, yea, even tens of thousands.

Thus we may see that the Lord is merciful unto all who will, in the sincerity of their hearts, call upon his holy name.

Yea, thus we see that the gate of heaven is open unto all, even to those who will believe on the name of Jesus Christ, who is the Son of God.

Yea, we see that whosoever will may lay hold upon the word of God, which is quick and powerful, which shall divide asunder all the cunning and the snares and the wiles of the devil, and lead the man of Christ in a strait and narrow course across that everlasting gulf of misery which is prepared to engulf the wicked—

And land their souls, yea, their immortal souls, at the right hand of God in the kingdom of heaven, to sit down with Abraham, and Isaac, and with Jacob, and with all our holy fathers, to go no more out.

And in this year there was continual rejoicing in the land of Zarahemla, and in all the regions round about, even in all the land which was possessed by the Nephites.

- 32 Futhi kwenzeka ukuthi kwabakhona ukuthula kanye nokujabula okukhulu esikhathini esasisasele sonyaka wamashumi amane nesishiyagalolunye; yebo, futhi kanjalo kwaba khona ukuthula okuqhubekayo kanye nokuthokoza okukhulu ngonyaka wamashumi amahlanu wokubusa kwabehluleli.
- 33 Futhi ngonyaka wamashumi amahlanu nanye wokubusa kwabehluleli kwaba khona ukuthula futhi, ngaphandle nje kokuziqhenya okwaqala kwangena ebandleni—hhayi ebandleni likaNkulunkulu, kodwa ezinhliziyweni zabantu ababezibiza ngokuthi bangabebandla likaNkulunkulu—
- 34 Futhi babeziqhenya, kwaze kwaba bahlupha abaningi babazalwane babo. Manje lokhu kwakuwububi obukhulu, obenza inxenye yabantu abathobe kakhulu ukuthi izwe ukhulushwa okukhulu, futhi idlule enkathazweni enkulu.
- 35 Nokho nempela bazila ukudla futhi bakhuleka njalo, futhi nempela bakhula beya ngokuqina ekuzithobeni kwabo, futhi beya ngokugxila okholweni lukaKristu, yaze imiphefumulo yabo yagcwala intokozo kanye nenduduzo, yebo, ngisho kwaze kwaba izinhliziyo zabo ziyahlanjwa futhi ziyangcweliswa, ukungcweliswa lokho okuza ngenxa yokunikela izinhliziyo zabo kuNkulunkulu.
- 36 Futhi kwenzeka ukuthi unyaka wamashumi amahlanu nambili waphela nawo ngokuthula, ngaphandle kokuziqhenya okukhulu kakhulu okwasekungene ezinhliziyweni zabantu; futhi kwakungenxa yengcebo yabo enkulu kakhulu kanye nokuphumelela kwabo ezweni; futhi nempela kwakukhula kubo usuku nosuku.
- 37 Futhi kwenzeka ngonyaka wamashumi amahlanu nantathu wokubusa kwabehluleli uHelamani wafa, kwase kuthi indodana yakhe endala uNefi yaqala ukubusa esikhundleni sakhe. Futhi kwenzeka ukuthi nempela yasithatha isihlalo sokwahlulela ngokulunga nangobuqotho; yebo, yayigcina imiyalelo kaNkulunkulu, futhi nempela yahamba ezindleleni zikayise.

And it came to pass that there was peace and exceedingly great joy in the remainder of the forty and ninth year; yea, and also there was continual peace and great joy in the fiftieth year of the reign of the judges.

And in the fifty and first year of the reign of the judges there was peace also, save it were the pride which began to enter into the church—not into the church of God, but into the hearts of the people who professed to belong to the church of God—

And they were lifted up in pride, even to the persecution of many of their brethren. Now this was a great evil, which did cause the more humble part of the people to suffer great persecutions, and to wade through much affliction.

Nevertheless they did fast and pray oft, and did wax stronger and stronger in their humility, and firmer and firmer in the faith of Christ, unto the filling their souls with joy and consolation, yea, even to the purifying and the sanctification of their hearts, which sanctification cometh because of their yielding their hearts unto God.

And it came to pass that the fifty and second year ended in peace also, save it were the exceedingly great pride which had gotten into the hearts of the people; and it was because of their exceedingly great riches and their prosperity in the land; and it did grow upon them from day to day.

And it came to pass in the fifty and third year of the reign of the judges, Helaman died, and his eldest son Nephi began to reign in his stead. And it came to pass that he did fill the judgment-seat with justice and equity; yea, he did keep the commandments of God, and did walk in the ways of his father.

Helamani 4

- 1 Futhi kwenzeka ngonyaka wamashumi amahlanu nane kwabakhona abahlubuki abaningi ebandleni, futhi phezu kwalokho kwabakhona umbango phakathi kwabantu, kangangokuthi kwabakhona ukuchitheka kwegazi eliningi.
- 2 Futhi inxenye yabavukelayo yabulawa futhi yaqhutshwa yakhishelwa ngaphandle kwezwe, futhi yaya enkosini yamaLamani.
- 3 Futhi kwenzeka ukuthi bazama ukuphehla amaLamani ukuthi alwe namaNefi; kodwa bheka, amaLamani ayesaba kakhulu, kangangokuthi awawalalelanga amazwi alabo bahlubuki.
- 4 Kodwa kwenzeka ngonyaka wamashumi amahlanu nesithupha wokubusa kwabehluleli, kwabakhona abahlubuki abakhuphukela kumaLamani besuka kumaNefi; futhi baphumelela ndawonye nalabo abanye ekuwapheleni ukuthi athukuthelele amaNefi; futhi kuwo wonke lowo nyaka babelungiselela impi.
- 5 Futhi ngonyaka wamashumi amahlanu nesikhombisa nempela behla ukuzolwa namaNefi, futhi bawuqala umsebenzi wokubulala; yebo, kangangokuthi ngonyaka wamashumi amahlanu nesishiyangalombili wokubusa kwabehluleli baphumelela ukuthola ubunini bezwe lakwaZarahemla; yebo, futhi kanjalo nawo wonke amazwe, ngisho nezwe elaliseduzane nezwe iNala.
- 6 Futhi amaNefi kanye namabutho kaMoroniha aqhutshwa ayiswa ngisho nasezweni leNala;
- 7 Futhi lapho nempela baziqinisa izinqaba ngokumelene namaLamani, kusuka olwandle olusentshonalanga, ngisho kuze kuyoshaya empumalanga; okwakuwuhambo losuku kumNefi, emnceleni lapho babeqinise khona babeka amabutho abo ukuthi bavikele izwe labo elisenyakatho.
- 8 Futhi ngaleyondlela labo bahlubuki bamaNefi, ngosizo lwamabutho amaningi amaLamani, base bethole konke okungokwamaNefi okwakusezweni elingaseningizimu. Futhi konke lokho kwenzeka eminyakeni yamashumi amahlanu nesishiyangalombili kanye nesishiyagalolunye yokubusa kwabehluleli.

Helaman 4

And it came to pass in the fifty and fourth year there were many dissensions in the church, and there was also a contention among the people, insomuch that there was much bloodshed.

And the rebellious part were slain and driven out of the land, and they did go unto the king of the Lamanites.

And it came to pass that they did endeavor to stir up the Lamanites to war against the Nephites; but behold, the Lamanites were exceedingly afraid, insomuch that they would not hearken to the words of those dissenters.

But it came to pass in the fifty and sixth year of the reign of the judges, there were dissenters who went up from the Nephites unto the Lamanites; and they succeeded with those others in stirring them up to anger against the Nephites; and they were all that year preparing for war.

And in the fifty and seventh year they did come down against the Nephites to battle, and they did commence the work of death; yea, insomuch that in the fifty and eighth year of the reign of the judges they succeeded in obtaining possession of the land of Zarahemla; yea, and also all the lands, even unto the land which was near the land Bountiful.

And the Nephites and the armies of Moronihah were driven even into the land of Bountiful;

And there they did fortify against the Lamanites, from the west sea, even unto the east; it being a day's journey for a Nephite, on the line which they had fortified and stationed their armies to defend their north country.

And thus those dissenters of the Nephites, with the help of a numerous army of the Lamanites, had obtained all the possession of the Nephites which was in the land southward. And all this was done in the fifty and eighth and ninth years of the reign of the judges.

- 9 Futhi kwenzeka ngonyaka wamashumi ayisithupha wokubusa kwabehluleli, uMoroniha waphumelela namabutho akhe ekutholeni futhi izinxenye eziningi zezwe; yebo, bawabuyisa amadolobha amaningi ayesewele ezandleni zamaLamani.
- 10 Futhi kwenzeka ngonyaka wamashumi ayisithupha nanye wokubusa kwabehluleli baphumelela ekutholeni futhi ngisho nenxenye yakho konke okungokwabo.
- 11 Manje lokhu kulahlekelwa okukhulu kangaka kwamaNefi, kanye nokubulawa okukhulu okwaba phakathi kwabo, kwakungenakwenzeka ukube kwakungekona ukuthi kwakungenxa yobubi babo kanye nezinengiso zabo ezaziphakathi kwabo; yebo, futhi phezu kwalokho kwakukhona naphakathi kwalabo ababezibiza ngokuthi bangabebandla likaNkulunkulu.
- 12 Futhi kwakungenxa yokuziqhenya kwezinhliziyi zabo, ngenxa yengcebo yabo enkulu, yebo, kwakungenxa yokucindezela kwabo abampofu, begodla ukudla kwabo kwabalambile, begodla izingubo zabo kwabanqunu, futhi beshaya abazalwane babo abazithobile esihlathini, benza inhlekisa ngalokho okungcwele, bephika umoya wokuphrofetha kanye nowokwambulelwa, bebulala, bephanga, beqamba amanga, beba, bephinga, bekhula emibangweni emikhulu, futhi behlubuka beya ezweni likaNefi, phakathi kwamaLamani—
- 13 Futhi ngenxa yalobubi babo obukhulu, kanye nokuziqhayisa kwabo ngamandla abo, bashiywa emandleni abo; ngakho-ke abazange baphumelele, kodwa bahlushwa futhi bashaywa, futhi baqhutshwa phambi kwamaLamani, kwaze kwaba balahlekelwa cishe yiwo wonke amazwe abo.
- 14 Kepha bheka, uMoroniha nempela washumayela izinto eziningi kubantu ngenxa yokungalungi kwabo, futhi kanjalo no Nefi kanye noLehi, ababengamadodana kaHelamani, nempela bashumayela eziningi izinto kubantu, yebo, futhi nempela baphrofetha eziningi izinto kubo mayelana nokungalungi kwabo, kanye nalokho okwakuzokwenzeka kubo uma babengaphenduki ezonweni zabo.

And it came to pass in the sixtieth year of the reign of the judges, Moronihah did succeed with his armies in obtaining many parts of the land; yea, they regained many cities which had fallen into the hands of the Lamanites.

And it came to pass in the sixty and first year of the reign of the judges they succeeded in regaining even the half of all their possessions.

Now this great loss of the Nephites, and the great slaughter which was among them, would not have happened had it not been for their wickedness and their abomination which was among them; yea, and it was among those also who professed to belong to the church of God.

And it was because of the pride of their hearts, because of their exceeding riches, yea, it was because of their oppression to the poor, withholding their food from the hungry, withholding their clothing from the naked, and smiting their humble brethren upon the cheek, making a mock of that which was sacred, denying the spirit of prophecy and of revelation, murdering, plundering, lying, stealing, committing adultery, rising up in great contentions, and deserting away into the land of Nephi, among the Lamanites—

And because of this their great wickedness, and their boastings in their own strength, they were left in their own strength; therefore they did not prosper, but were afflicted and smitten, and driven before the Lamanites, until they had lost possession of almost all their lands.

But behold, Moronihah did preach many things unto the people because of their iniquity, and also Nephi and Lehi, who were the sons of Helaman, did preach many things unto the people, yea, and did prophesy many things unto them concerning their iniquities, and what should come unto them if they did not repent of their sins.

- 15 Futhi kwenzeka ukuthi baphenduka, futhi kangangoba babe phenduka nempela baqala ukuphumelela.
- 16 Ngokuba ngesikhathi uMoroniha esebona ukuthi base bephenduka wazinikela ekutheni abahole indawo nendawo, futhi kusukela edolobheni, kuya edolobheni ngisho kuze kube bayayithola inxenye yempahla yabo kanye nenxenye yamazwe abo onke.
- 17 Futhi waphela kanjalo-ke unyaka wamashumi ayisithupha nanye wokubusa kwabehluleli.
- 18 Futhi kwenzeka ngonyaka wamashumi ayisithupha nambili wokubusa kwabehluleli, ukuthi uMoroniha wayengasakwazi ukuthola okwakungokwabo kumaLamani.
- 19 Ngakho-ke baliyeka isu labo lokuthola amazwe abo ayesasele, ngokuba ayesemaningi kakhulu amaLamani kangangokuthi kwaba lukhuni kumaNefi ukuthi athole amanye amandla ngaphezu kwawo; ngakho-ke uMoroniha wabeka wonke amabutho akhe ukuthi agcine lezo zindawo ayezithathile.
- 20 Futhi kwenzeka, ngenxa yobukhulu besibalo samaLamani amaNefi aba nokwesaba okukhulu, hleze ehlulwe, bese enyathelwa phansi, abulawe.
- 21 Yebo, aqala azikhumbula iziphrofetho zika-Alima, futhi kanjalo namazwi kaMosiya; futhi abona ukuthi ayekade engabantu ababengontamo lukhuni, futhi nokuthi ayeyishaye indiva imiyalelo kaNkulunkulu;
- 22 Futhi nokuthi ayeseyishintshile futhi ayinyathela ngaphansi kwezinyawo zawo imithetho kaMosiya, noma lokho iNkosi eyayimiyalele ngakho ukuthi akunike abantu; futhi abona ukuthi imithetho yawo yabe seyonakele, futhi nokuthi ayesengabantu ababi, kangangokuthi ayesemabi ngisho nanjengamaLamani.
- 23 Futhi ngenxa yobubi bawo ibandla lase liqale ukuncipha; futhi aqala ukungakholelwa emoyeni wokuphrofetha kanye nasemoyeni wokwambulelwa; futhi izahlulelo zikaNkulunkulu zase zibajamele ebusweni.

And it came to pass that they did repent, and inas-much as they did repent they did begin to prosper.

For when Moronihah saw that they did repent he did venture to lead them forth from place to place, and from city to city, even until they had regained the one-half of their property and the one-half of all their lands.

And thus ended the sixty and first year of the reign of the judges.

And it came to pass in the sixty and second year of the reign of the judges, that Moronihah could obtain no more possessions over the Lamanites.

Therefore they did abandon their design to obtain the remainder of their lands, for so numerous were the Lamanites that it became impossible for the Nephites to obtain more power over them; therefore Moronihah did employ all his armies in maintaining those parts which he had taken.

And it came to pass, because of the greatness of the number of the Lamanites the Nephites were in great fear, lest they should be overpowered, and trodden down, and slain, and destroyed.

Yea, they began to remember the prophecies of Alma, and also the words of Mosiah; and they saw that they had been a stiffnecked people, and that they had set at naught the commandments of God;

And that they had altered and trampled under their feet the laws of Mosiah, or that which the Lord commanded him to give unto the people; and they saw that their laws had become corrupted, and that they had become a wicked people, insomuch that they were wicked even like unto the Lamanites.

And because of their iniquity the church had begun to dwindle; and they began to disbelieve in the spirit of prophecy and in the spirit of revelation; and the judgments of God did stare them in the face.

- 24 Futhi abona ukuthi ayesenobuthakathaka, njengabafowabo, amaLamani, futhi nokuthi uMoya weNkosi awubange usabalondoloza; yebo, wawusuhoxile kubo ngoba uMoya weNkosi awuhlali emathempelini angcolile—
- 25 Ngakho-ke iNkosi nempela yayeka ukubalondoloza ngamandla ayo angummangaliso futhi angenakulinganiswa, ngokuba ayesewele esimweni sokungakhohwa kanye nasebubini obukhulu; futhi abona ukuthi amaLamani ayeseaningi kakhulu kunawo, futhi ngaphandle kokuthi anamathele eNkosini uNkulunkulu wawo kufanele afe ngendlela engenakuvimbeleka.
- 26 Ngokuba bheka, abona ukuthi amandla amaLamani ayemakhulu njengamandla awo, ngisho indoda ngendoda. Futhi ngalendlela bawela kulokhu kona okukhulu; yebo, ngalendlela baba buthakathaka, ngenxa yokona kwabo, esikhathini nje seminyaka emincane.

And they saw that they had become weak, like unto their brethren, the Lamanites, and that the Spirit of the Lord did no more preserve them; yea, it had withdrawn from them because the Spirit of the Lord doth not dwell in unholy temples—

Therefore the Lord did cease to preserve them by his miraculous and matchless power, for they had fallen into a state of unbelief and awful wickedness; and they saw that the Lamanites were exceedingly more numerous than they, and except they should cleave unto the Lord their God they must unavoidably perish.

For behold, they saw that the strength of the Lamanites was as great as their strength, even man for man. And thus had they fallen into this great transgression; yea, thus had they become weak, because of their transgression, in the space of not many years.

Helamani 5

- 1 Futhi kwenzeka ukuthi kuwo lo nyaka, bheka, uNefi isihlalo sokwahlulela wasinika indoda igama layo okwakunguSezoramu.
- 2 Ngokuba njengokuba imithetho yabo kanye nemikhandlu yabo kwakumiswe ngezwi labantu, futhi labo ababekhetha ububi babebaningi kakhulu kunalabo ababekhetha okuhle, ngakho-ke base belungelwe ukubhujiswa, ngokuba leyo mithetho yabe seyonakele.
- 3 Yebo, futhi kwakungekona lokhu kuphela; base bengabantu abangontamo lukhuni, kangangokuthi babengasakwazi ukubuseka ngomthetho noma ngokulunga, ngaphandle kokuthi kubangele ukubhujiswa kwabo.
- 4 Futhi kwenzeka ukuthi uNefi wayesekhathele ngenxa yobubi babo; futhi wasiyekela isihlalo sokwahlulela, futhi wakubeka emahlombe akhe ukuthi ashumayele izwi likaNkulunkulu zonke izinsuku zakhe ezazisasele, futhi kanjalo nomfowabo uLehi, zonke izinsuku zakhe ezazisasele;
- 5 Ngokuba bawakhumbula amazwi uyise uHelamani awakhuluma kubo. Futhi lawa ngamazwi awakhuluma:
- 6 Bhekani, madodana ami, ngifisa ukuthi niyigcine imiyalelo kaNkulunkulu; futhi ngifuna ukuthi niwamemezele kubantu lamazwi. Bhekani, ngininikeze amagama abazali bethu bokuqala abaphuma ezweni laseJerusalema; futhi lokhu ngikwenze ukuze kuthi uma nikhumbula amagama enu nibakhumbule; futhi kuthi uma nibakhumbula niyikhumbule nemisebenzi yabo; futhi kuthi uma nikhumbula imisebenzi yabo nazi ukuthi lokho kushiwo ngani, futhi nokuthi kubhalwewani, ukuthi babelungile.
- 7 Ngakho-ke, madodana ami, ngifisa ukuthi nenze lokho okuhle, ukuze kukhulunywe ngani, futhi nokuthi kubhalwe ngani, ngisho njengoba kukhulunyiwe futhi kubhaliwe ngabo.

Helaman 5

And it came to pass that in this same year, behold, Nephi delivered up the judgment-seat to a man whose name was Cezoram.

For as their laws and their governments were established by the voice of the people, and they who chose evil were more numerous than they who chose good, therefore they were ripening for destruction, for the laws had become corrupted.

Yea, and this was not all; they were a stiffnecked people, insomuch that they could not be governed by the law nor justice, save it were to their destruction.

And it came to pass that Nephi had become weary because of their iniquity; and he yielded up the judgment-seat, and took it upon him to preach the word of God all the remainder of his days, and his brother Lehi also, all the remainder of his days;

For they remembered the words which their father Helaman spake unto them. And these are the words which he spake:

Behold, my sons, I desire that ye should remember to keep the commandments of God; and I would that ye should declare unto the people these words. Behold, I have given unto you the names of our first parents who came out of the land of Jerusalem; and this I have done that when you remember your names ye may remember them; and when ye remember them ye may remember their works; and when ye remember their works ye may know how that it is said, and also written, that they were good.

Therefore, my sons, I would that ye should do that which is good, that it may be said of you, and also written, even as it has been said and written of them.

8 Manje madodana ami, bhekani nginokunye okuthize engikufisayo kini, okungukuthi, ningazenzi lezi zinto ukuze niqhoshe, kodwa nizenze lezi zinto ukuze nizibekela ingcebo ezulwini, yebo, okungeyaphakade, futhi engashabalali; yebo, ukuze nithole isipho esiyigugu sokuphila okuphakade, esinesizathu sokucabanga ukuthi sinikwe obaba bethu.

9 O khumbulani, khumbulani, madodana ami, amazwi inkosi uBenjamini eyawakhuluma kubantu bayo; yebo, khumbulani ukuthi ayikho enye indlela noma amasu umuntu angasindiswa ngawo, kuphela ngegazi elihlwulayo likaJesu Kristu, oyokuza; yebo, khumbulani ukuthi uza ukuzokhulula umhlaba.

10 Futhi khumbulani amazwi u-Amuleki awakhuluma kuZeezromu, edolobheni lakwa-Amoniha; ngokuba washo kuye ukuthi iNkosi ngempela iyoza ukuzokhulula abantu bayo, kodwa ayiyikuza ukuzobakhulula besezonweni zabo, kodwa ukubakhulula ezonweni zabo.

11 Futhi inamandla anikwe kuyo avela kuBaba ukuthi ibakhulule ezonweni zabo ngenxa yokuphenduka; ngakho-ke ithumele izingelosi zayo ukuthi zimemezele izindaba zemibandela yokuphenduka, okuletha abantu emandleni oMkhululi, ngokwanele ukuba kusindiswe imiphefumulo yabo.

12 Manje, madodana ami, khumbulani, khumbulani ukuthi kuphezu kwedwala elinguMkhululi wethu, onguKristu, iNdodana kaNkulunkulu, lapho okufanele nakhele khona isisekelo senu; ukuze kuthi uma udeveli esethumela imimoya yakhe emikhulu, yebo, imicibisholo yakhe kuso isishingishane, yebo, ngesikhathi sonke isichotho sakhe kanye nesiphepho esinamandla sesishaya kini, singabi namandla phezu kwenu ukuthi sinihudulele phansi emhosheni wokuhlupheka kanye nasosizini olungapheliyo, ngenxa yedwala enakhele kulo, eliyisisekelo esiqinile, isisekelo uma abantu bakhele kuso bengenakuwa.

13 Futhi kwenzeka ukuthi lawa kwakungamazwi uHelamani awafundisa amadodana akhe; yebo, nempela wawafundisa eziningi izinto ezingabhaliwe, futhi kanjalo neziningi izinto ezibhaliwe.

And now my sons, behold I have somewhat more to desire of you, which desire is, that ye may not do these things that ye may boast, but that ye may do these things to lay up for yourselves a treasure in heaven, yea, which is eternal, and which fadeth not away; yea, that ye may have that precious gift of eternal life, which we have reason to suppose hath been given to our fathers.

O remember, remember, my sons, the words which king Benjamin spake unto his people; yea, remember that there is no other way nor means whereby man can be saved, only through the atoning blood of Jesus Christ, who shall come; yea, remember that he cometh to redeem the world.

And remember also the words which Amulek spake unto Zeezrom, in the city of Ammonihah; for he said unto him that the Lord surely should come to redeem his people, but that he should not come to redeem them in their sins, but to redeem them from their sins.

And he hath power given unto him from the Father to redeem them from their sins because of repentance; therefore he hath sent his angels to declare the tidings of the conditions of repentance, which bringeth unto the power of the Redeemer, unto the salvation of their souls.

And now, my sons, remember, remember that it is upon the rock of our Redeemer, who is Christ, the Son of God, that ye must build your foundation; that when the devil shall send forth his mighty winds, yea, his shafts in the whirlwind, yea, when all his hail and his mighty storm shall beat upon you, it shall have no power over you to drag you down to the gulf of misery and endless wo, because of the rock upon which ye are built, which is a sure foundation, a foundation whereon if men build they cannot fall.

And it came to pass that these were the words which Helaman taught to his sons; yea, he did teach them many things which are not written, and also many things which are written.

14 Futhi nempela awakhumbula amazwi akhe; ngakho-ke ahamba, egcina imiyalelo kaNkulunkulu, efundisa izwi likaNkulunkulu phakathi kwabo bonke abantu baNefi, eqala edolobheni iNala;

15 Futhi kusukela ngaleso sikhathi kuya edolobheni lakwaGide; futhi kusuka edolobheni lakwaGide kuya edolobheni lakwaMuleki;

16 Futhi ngisho kusuka edolobheni kuya kwelinye, kwaze kwaba ayesehambe aya phakathi kwabantu bonke bakwaNefi ababesezweni elingaseningizimu; futhi kusukela lapho kuya ezweni lakwaZarahemla, phakathi kwamaLamani.

17 Futhi kwenzeka ukuthi nempela ashumayela ngamandla amakhulu, kangangokuthi nempela abathobisa abaningi balabo bahlubuki ababe baleke basuka kumaNefi, kangangokuthi beza phambili futhi bazivuma izono zabo futhi babhabhadiselwa ekuphendukeni, futhi ngokushesha babuyela kumaNefi ukuyozama ukulungisa okubi ababekwenzile.

18 Futhi kwenzeka ukuthi uNefi kanye noLehi nempela bashumayela kumaLamani ngamandla kanye nangegunya elikhulu, ngokuba babenamandla kanye negunya ababenikezwe lona ukuze bakhulume, futhi ngokunjalo nokwakufanele bakukhulume kwakunikeziwe kubo—

19 Ngakho-ke nempela bakhuluma kumaLamani okwawamangalisa kakhulu, okwabakholwisa, kangangokuthi kwabakhona izinkulungwane eziyisishiyangalombili zamaLamani ezazisezweni lakwaZarahemla kanye nasemazweni azungezile ezabhabhadiselwa ekuphendukeni, futhi zakholiswa ngobubi bamasiko oyise.

20 Futhi kwenzeka ukuthi uNefi kanye noLehi nempela baqhubeka kusukela lapho baya ezweni lakwaNefi.

21 Futhi kwenzeka ukuthi bathathwa yibutho lamaLamani futhi baphonswa etilongweni; yebo, ngisho kulo kanye lelo tilongo u-Amoni kanye nabafowabo ababephonswe kulo yizinceku zikaLimihhi.

22 Futhi emva kokuthi sebephonswe etilongweni izinsuku eziningi ngaphandle kokudla, bheka, ahamba aya etilongweni ukuyobathatha ukuze ababulale.

And they did remember his words; and therefore they went forth, keeping the commandments of God, to teach the word of God among all the people of Nephi, beginning at the city Bountiful;

And from thenceforth to the city of Gid; and from the city of Gid to the city of Mulek;

And even from one city to another, until they had gone forth among all the people of Nephi who were in the land southward; and from thence into the land of Zarahemla, among the Lamanites.

And it came to pass that they did preach with great power, insomuch that they did confound many of those dissenters who had gone over from the Nephites, insomuch that they came forth and did confess their sins and were baptized unto repentance, and immediately returned to the Nephites to endeavor to repair unto them the wrongs which they had done.

And it came to pass that Nephi and Lehi did preach unto the Lamanites with such great power and authority, for they had power and authority given unto them that they might speak, and they also had what they should speak given unto them—

Therefore they did speak unto the great astonishment of the Lamanites, to the convincing them, insomuch that there were eight thousand of the Lamanites who were in the land of Zarahemla and round about baptized unto repentance, and were convinced of the wickedness of the traditions of their fathers.

And it came to pass that Nephi and Lehi did proceed from thence to go to the land of Nephi.

And it came to pass that they were taken by an army of the Lamanites and cast into prison; yea, even in that same prison in which Ammon and his brethren were cast by the servants of Limhi.

And after they had been cast into prison many days without food, behold, they went forth into the prison to take them that they might slay them.

23 Futhi kwenzeka ukuthi uNefi kanye noLehi babezungezwe ngokwakungathi ngumlilo, ngisho kangangokuthi awalokothanga abeka izandla zawo phezu kwabo, ngokwesaba ukuthi hleze ashe. Nokho, uNefi kanye noLehi abazange bashe; futhi kwakungathi bami phakathi naphakathi nomlilo futhi abazange bashe.

24 Futhi ngesikhathi bebona ukuthi babezungezwe yinsika yomlilo, futhi nokuthi yayingabashisi, izinhliziyi zabo nempela zaba nesibindi.

25 Ngokuba babebona ukuthi amaLamani ayengenakulokotha abeke izandla zawo kubo; noma alokotha eze eduze kwabo, kodwa ema sengathi ayeyizimungulu ngenxa yokumangala.

26 Futhi kwenzeka ukuthi uNefi kanye noLehi nempela beza phambili futhi baqala ukukhuluma kuwo, bethi: Ningesabi, ngokuba bhekani, nguNkulunkulu onikhombise lento emangalisayo, enikhonjiswa ngayo ukuthi aninakukwazi ukubeka izandla zenu kithi ukusibulala.

27 Futhi bheka, ngesikhathi sebewashilo lamazwi, iphansi lazamazama kakhulu, futhi nezindonga zetilongo zazamazama kwasengathi zazizowela phansi; kodwa bheka, aziwanga. Futhi bheka labo ababesetlongweni kwakungamaLamani kanye namaNefi ayengabahlubuki.

28 Futhi kwenzeka ukuthi bagubezelwa ngefu lobumnyama, futhi ukwesaba okukhulu okubi kweza kubo.

29 Futhi kwenzeka ukuthi kweza izwi okwakungathi lingaphezu kwefu lobumnyama, lithi: Phendukani, phendukani, futhi ningabe nisafuna nanini ukubulala izinceku zami engizithumele kini ukuthi zimemezele izindaba ezinhle.

30 Futhi kwenzeka ngesikhathi belizwa lelizwi, futhi bebona ukuthi kwakungelona izwi lokuduma, noma izwi lesiyaluyalu esikhulu somsindo, kodwa bheka, kwakuyizwi elipholile elizotha ngokuphelele, okwakungathi lalihleba, futhi nempela lahlaba ngisho nakuwo kanye umphefumulo—

31 Futhi naphezu kokuzotha kwezwi, bheka iphansi lazamazama kakhulu, futhi izindonga zetilongo zaphinde zanyakaza, sengathi zizowela phansi; futhi bheka ifu lobumnyama, elalibagubezele alizange lisuke—

And it came to pass that Nephi and Lehi were encircled about as if by fire, even insomuch that they durst not lay their hands upon them for fear lest they should be burned. Nevertheless, Nephi and Lehi were not burned; and they were as standing in the midst of fire and were not burned.

And when they saw that they were encircled about with a pillar of fire, and that it burned them not, their hearts did take courage.

For they saw that the Lamanites durst not lay their hands upon them; neither durst they come near unto them, but stood as if they were struck dumb with amazement.

And it came to pass that Nephi and Lehi did stand forth and began to speak unto them, saying: Fear not, for behold, it is God that has shown unto you this marvelous thing, in the which is shown unto you that ye cannot lay your hands on us to slay us.

And behold, when they had said these words, the earth shook exceedingly, and the walls of the prison did shake as if they were about to tumble to the earth; but behold, they did not fall. And behold, they that were in the prison were Lamanites and Nephites who were dissenters.

And it came to pass that they were overshadowed with a cloud of darkness, and an awful solemn fear came upon them.

And it came to pass that there came a voice as if it were above the cloud of darkness, saying: Repent ye, repent ye, and seek no more to destroy my servants whom I have sent unto you to declare good tidings.

And it came to pass when they heard this voice, and beheld that it was not a voice of thunder, neither was it a voice of a great tumultuous noise, but behold, it was a still voice of perfect mildness, as if it had been a whisper, and it did pierce even to the very soul—

And notwithstanding the mildness of the voice, behold the earth shook exceedingly, and the walls of the prison trembled again, as if it were about to tumble to the earth; and behold the cloud of darkness, which had overshadowed them, did not disperse—

32 Futhi bheka izwi leza futhi, lithi, Phendukani, phendukani, ngokuba umbuso wezulu ususondele; futhi ningabe nisafuna ukubulala izinceku zami nanini. Futhi kwenzeka ukuthi iphansi laphinde lazamazama, futhi nezindonga zanyakaza.

33 Futhi phezu kwalokho laphinda okwesithathu izwi leza, futhi nempela lakhuluma kubo amazwi amangalisayo angenakuphimiswa ngumuntu; futhi nempela izindonga zadikiza futhi, futhi iphansi lazamazama kwasengathi lalizohlukana phakathi naphakathi.

34 Futhi kwenzeka ukuthi amaLamani awakwazanga ukubaleka ngenxa yefu elimnyama elalibagubezele; yebo, futhi phezu kwalokho babenganyakazi ngenxa yokwesaba okwafika kubo.

35 Manje kwakukhona omunye phakathi kwabo owayengumNefi ngokuzalwa, owayeke waba ngowebandla likaNkulunkulu kodwa wahlubuka kubo.

36 Futhi kwenzeka ukuthi waphenduka, futhi wabheka, wabona efwini elimnyama ubuso bukaNefi benoLehi; futhi bheka, babukhazimula kakhulu, ngisho nanjengobuso bezingelosi. Futhi wabona ukuthi babephakamisele amehlo abo ezulwini; futhi babesesimweni sengathi babekhuluma noma kukhona ababekusho emntwini othile ababembona.

37 Futhi kwenzeka ukuthi lomuntu nempela wamemeza esixukwini, ukuze naso siphenduke sibuke. Futhi bheka, kwaba khona amandla esanikezwa wona ukuthi siphenduke futhi sibuke, futhi nempela sabubona ubuso bukaNefi benoLehi.

38 Futhi sathi kulo muntu: Bheka, zisho ukuthini zonke lezi zinto, futhi ngubani lona lamadoda akhuluma naye na?

39 Manje igama lalendoda kwaku ngu-Aminadaba. Futhi u-Aminadaba wathi kubo: Bakhuluma nezingelosi zikaNkulunkulu.

40 Futhi kwenzeka ukuthi amaLamani athi kuye: Sizokwenzenjani, ukuze lelifu lobumnyama lisuswe ekusigubezeleni na?

And behold the voice came again, saying: Repent ye, repent ye, for the kingdom of heaven is at hand; and seek no more to destroy my servants. And it came to pass that the earth shook again, and the walls trembled.

And also again the third time the voice came, and did speak unto them marvelous words which cannot be uttered by man; and the walls did tremble again, and the earth shook as if it were about to divide asunder.

And it came to pass that the Lamanites could not flee because of the cloud of darkness which did overshadow them; yea, and also they were immovable because of the fear which did come upon them.

Now there was one among them who was a Nephite by birth, who had once belonged to the church of God but had dissented from them.

And it came to pass that he turned him about, and behold, he saw through the cloud of darkness the faces of Nephi and Lehi; and behold, they did shine exceedingly, even as the faces of angels. And he beheld that they did lift their eyes to heaven; and they were in the attitude as if talking or lifting their voices to some being whom they beheld.

And it came to pass that this man did cry unto the multitude, that they might turn and look. And behold, there was power given unto them that they did turn and look; and they did behold the faces of Nephi and Lehi.

And they said unto the man: Behold, what do all these things mean, and who is it with whom these men do converse?

Now the man's name was Aminadab. And Aminadab said unto them: They do converse with the angels of God.

And it came to pass that the Lamanites said unto him: What shall we do, that this cloud of darkness may be removed from overshadowing us?

41 Futhi u-Aminadaba wathi kubo: Kufanele niphenduke, futhi nikhale kulo izwi, kuze kube niba nokholo kuKristu, enafundiswa ngaye ngu-Alima, no-Amuleki, kanye noZezromu; futhi uma niyokwenza lokhu, ifu lobumnyama liyosuswa ekunigubezeleni.

42 Futhi kwenzeka ukuthi bonke nempela baqala ukukhala ezwini lakhe lowo owayezamazamise iphansi; yebo, nempela bakhala ngisho kwaze kwaba ifu lobumnyama liyasuka.

43 Futhi kwenzeka ukuthi ngesikhathi bephonsa amehlo abo ngapha nangapha, futhi bebona ukuthi ifu lobumnyama lase lisukile ekubagubezeleni, bheka, babona ukuthi base bezungeziwe, yebo wonke umuntu, bezungezwe yinsika yomlilo.

44 Futhi uNefi kanye noLehi babe phakathi kwawo; yebo, base bezungeziwe; yebo, kwakungathi baphakathi naphakathi elangabini lomlilo, kodwa alizange libashise, noma libambelele ezindongeni zetilongo; futhi bagcwaliswa ngaleyo njabulo engachazeki futhi begcwele inkazimulo.

45 Futhi bheka, uMoya oNgcwele kaNkulunkulu nempela weza wehlela phansi uvela ezulwini, futhi nempela wangena ezinhliziyweni zabo, futhi kwakungathi bagcwaliswe ngomlilo, futhi bakwazi ukukhuluma amazwi amangalisayo.

46 Futhi kwenzeka ukuthi kweza izwi kubo, yebo, izwi elithokozisayo, okwakungathi liyanyenyeza, lithi:

47 Ukuthula, ukuthula makube kini, ngenxa yokholo lwenu koThandiweyo Kakhulu wami, owayekhona kusukela ekudabukeni komhlaba.

48 Manje ngesikhathi bekuzwa lokhu baphonsa amehlo abo sengathi babefuna ukubona ukuthi laliphuma kuphi lelozwi; futhi bheka, babona amazulu evuleka; futhi izingelosi zehlela phansi ziphuma ezulwini futhi zazobasebenzela.

49 Futhi kwakungabantu cishe abangamakhulu amathathu ababona futhi bezwa lezi izinto; futhi batshelwa ukuthi bahambe futhi bangamangali, noma bangabaze.

And Aminadab said unto them: You must repent, and cry unto the voice, even until ye shall have faith in Christ, who was taught unto you by Alma, and Amulek, and Zeezrom; and when ye shall do this, the cloud of darkness shall be removed from overshadowing you.

And it came to pass that they all did begin to cry unto the voice of him who had shaken the earth; yea, they did cry even until the cloud of darkness was dispersed.

And it came to pass that when they cast their eyes about, and saw that the cloud of darkness was dispersed from overshadowing them, behold, they saw that they were encircled about, yea every soul, by a pillar of fire.

And Nephi and Lehi were in the midst of them; yea, they were encircled about; yea, they were as if in the midst of a flaming fire, yet it did harm them not, neither did it take hold upon the walls of the prison; and they were filled with that joy which is unspeakable and full of glory.

And behold, the Holy Spirit of God did come down from heaven, and did enter into their hearts, and they were filled as if with fire, and they could speak forth marvelous words.

And it came to pass that there came a voice unto them, yea, a pleasant voice, as if it were a whisper, saying:

Peace, peace be unto you, because of your faith in my Well Beloved, who was from the foundation of the world.

And now, when they heard this they cast up their eyes as if to behold from whence the voice came; and behold, they saw the heavens open; and angels came down out of heaven and ministered unto them.

And there were about three hundred souls who saw and heard these things; and they were bidden to go forth and marvel not, neither should they doubt.

50 Futhi kwenzeka ukuthi nempela bahamba, futhi bafundisa abantu, bememezela ezifundazweni zonke ezizungezile zonke izinto ababezizwile kanye nababezibonile, kangangokuthi ingxenye eningi yamaLamani yakholiswa yibo, ngenxa yobukhulu bobufakazi ababebutholile.

51 Futhi ngobuningi balabo abakholiswa nempela bazibeka phansi izikhali zabo zempi, futhi kanjalo nenzondo yabo kanye namasiko oyise.

52 Futhi kwenzeka ukuthi nempela babuyisela kumaNefi amazwe okwakungawabo.

And it came to pass that they did go forth, and did minister unto the people, declaring throughout all the regions round about all the things which they had heard and seen, insomuch that the more part of the Lamanites were convinced of them, because of the greatness of the evidences which they had received.

And as many as were convinced did lay down their weapons of war, and also their hatred and the tradition of their fathers.

And it came to pass that they did yield up unto the Nephites the lands of their possession.

Helamani 6

- 1 Futhi kwenzeka ukuthi ngesikhathi unyaka wamashumi ayisithupha nambili wokubusa kwabehluleli sewuphelile, zonke lezi zinto zase zenzekile futhi amaLamani, inxenye enkulu yawo, yabe isingabantu abalungile, kangangokuthi ukulunga kwawo nempela kwakwedlula lokho kwamaNefi, ngenxa yokugxila kanye nokuqina kwawo okholweni.
- 2 Ngokuba bheka, kwakukhona abaningi bamaNefi abasebelukhuni futhi bengenakuphenduka futhi sebebabi kakhulu, kangangokuthi nempela baliphika izwi likaNkulunkulu kanye nazo zonke izintshumayelo kanye neziphrofetho ezeza phakathi kwabo.
- 3 Nokho, abantu bebandla baba nenjabulo enkulu ngenxa yokuphenduka kwamaLamani, yebo, ngenxa yebandla likaNkulunkulu, elase limiswe phakathi kwawo. Futhi nempela baba ngabangani omunye nomunye, futhi nempela bathokoza omunye nomunye, futhi nempela baba nokuthokoza okukhulu.
- 4 Futhi kwenzeka ukuthi abaningi bamaLamani nempela beza behlela ezweni lakwaZarahemla, futhi bamemezela kubantu bamaNefi indlela abaphenduka ngayo, futhi bawanxusa ukuba akholwe futhi nokuba aphenduke.
- 5 Yebo, futhi amaningi ashumayela ngamandla amakhulu kakhulu kanye nangegunya, kangangoba abaningi babo behlela phansi ekujuleni kokuzithoba, ukuthi babe ngabalandeli abathobileyo baNkulunkulu kanye neMvana.
- 6 Futhi kwenzeka ukuthi abaningi bamaLamani bahamba baya ezweni elingasenyakatho; futhi kanjalo uNefi kanye noLehi bahamba baya ezweni elingasenyakatho, ukuyoshumayela kubantu. Futhi waphela kanjalo-ke unyaka wamashumi ayisithupha nantathu.
- 7 Futhi bheka, kwabakhona ukuthula kulo lonke izwe, kangangokuthi amaNefi nempela ahamba kunanoma iyiphi inxenye yezwe ababefuna ukuhamba kuyo, noma phakathi kwamaNefi noma kumaLamani.

Helaman 6

And it came to pass that when the sixty and second year of the reign of the judges had ended, all these things had happened and the Lamanites had become, the more part of them, a righteous people, in-
somuch that their righteousness did exceed that of the Nephites, because of their firmness and their steadiness in the faith.

For behold, there were many of the Nephites who had become hardened and impenitent and grossly wicked, insomuch that they did reject the word of God and all the preaching and prophesying which did come among them.

Nevertheless, the people of the church did have great joy because of the conversion of the Lamanites, yea, because of the church of God, which had been established among them. And they did fellowship one with another, and did rejoice one with another, and did have great joy.

And it came to pass that many of the Lamanites did come down into the land of Zarahemla, and did declare unto the people of the Nephites the manner of their conversion, and did exhort them to faith and repentance.

Yea, and many did preach with exceedingly great power and authority, unto the bringing down many of them into the depths of humility, to be the humble followers of God and the Lamb.

And it came to pass that many of the Lamanites did go into the land northward; and also Nephi and Lehi went into the land northward, to preach unto the people. And thus ended the sixty and third year.

And behold, there was peace in all the land, insomuch that the Nephites did go into whatsoever part of the land they would, whether among the Nephites or the Lamanites.

- 8 Futhi kwenzeka ukuthi amaLamani nawo ngokunjalo ahamba noma kuphi lapho ayefuna ukuhamba khona, noma kwakuphakathi kwamaLamani noma kwakuphakathi kwamaNefi; futhi ngalendlela baba nokuhlangana okukhululekile omunye nomunye, ukuthenga kanye nokuthengisa, kanye nokuthola inzuzo, njengokufisa kwabo.
- 9 Futhi kwenzeka ukuthi banotha kakhulu, amaLamani kanye namaNefi; futhi babanegolide eliningi kakhulu, kanye nesiliva, kanye nayo yonke inhlobo yensimbi eyigugu, ezweni eliseningizimu nasezweni elisenyakatho.
- 10 Manje izwe eliseningizimu lalibizwa ngoLehi, izwe elisenyakatho libizwa ngo Muleki, elaliqanjwe ngendodana kaSedekiya; ngokuba iNkosi uMuleki yamletha ezweni elisenyakatho, uLehi ezweni eliseningizimu.
- 11 Futhi bheka, kwakukhona yonke inhlobo yegolide kuwo womabili lamazwe, kanye nesiliva, kanye nayo yonke inhlobo yensimbi eyigugu; futhi phezu kwalokho kwakukhona amaciko ayeqaphela, ayesebenza zonke izinhlobo zensimbi futhi eyicwengisisa; futhi ngaleyondlela nempela banotha.
- 12 Batshala okusanhlamvu ngobuningi bakho, enyakatho kanye naseningizimu; futhi baphumelela kakhulu, enyakatho naseningizimu. Futhi bazalana banda futhi bakhula baqina kakhulu ezweni. Futhi bakhulisa imihlambi yezinkomo kanye nemihlambi yezimvu eziningi, yebo, eziningi ezikhuluphalisiweyo.
- 13 Bheka abafazi babo basebenza beluka, futhi benza yonke inhlobo yendwangu, yelineni elilukiwe elicolekile kanye nendwangu yalo lonke uhlobo, ukwembathisa ubunqunu babo. Futhi wedlula ngalendlela-ke unyaka wamashumi ayisithupha nane kunokuthula.
- 14 Futhi onyakeni wamashumi ayisithupha nanhlanu baphinda baba nokuthokoza okukhulu kanye nokuthula, yebo, ukushumayela okukhulu kanye neziphrofetho eziningi mayelana nalokho okwakuzoza. Futhi wedlula ngalendlela-ke unyaka wamashumi ayisithupha nanhlanu.

And it came to pass that the Lamanites did also go whithersoever they would, whether it were among the Lamanites or among the Nephites; and thus they did have free intercourse one with another, to buy and to sell, and to get gain, according to their desire.

And it came to pass that they became exceedingly rich, both the Lamanites and the Nephites; and they did have an exceeding plenty of gold, and of silver, and of all manner of precious metals, both in the land south and in the land north.

Now the land south was called Lehi, and the land north was called Mulek, which was after the son of Zedekiah; for the Lord did bring Mulek into the land north, and Lehi into the land south.

And behold, there was all manner of gold in both these lands, and of silver, and of precious ore of every kind; and there were also curious workmen, who did work all kinds of ore and did refine it; and thus they did become rich.

They did raise grain in abundance, both in the north and in the south; and they did flourish exceedingly, both in the north and in the south. And they did multiply and wax exceedingly strong in the land. And they did raise many flocks and herds, yea, many fatlings.

Behold their women did toil and spin, and did make all manner of cloth, of fine-twined linen and cloth of every kind, to clothe their nakedness. And thus the sixty and fourth year did pass away in peace.

And in the sixty and fifth year they did also have great joy and peace, yea, much preaching and many prophecies concerning that which was to come. And thus passed away the sixty and fifth year.

- 15 Futhi kwenzeka ukuthi ngonyaka wamashumi ayisithupha nesithupha wokubusa kwabehluleli, bheka, uSezoramu wabulawa ngesandla esasingaziwa ngesikhathi ehlezi esihlalweni sokwahlulela. Futhi kwenzeka ukuthi ngawo lowo nyaka, ukuthi indodana yakhe, eyayibekwe ngabantu esikhundleni sakhe, nayo ngokunjalo yabulawa. Futhi waphela kanjalo-ke unyaka wamashumi ayisithupha nesithupha.
- 16 Futhi ekuqaleni konyaka wamashumi ayisithupha nesikhombisa abantu baqala ukukhula kakhulu ebubini futhi.
- 17 Ngokuba bheka, iNkosi yayibabusi kuso sonke lesi sikhathi ngengcebo yezwe kangangoba abazange baphehlelwe entukuthelweni, ezimpini, noma ekuchitheni igazi; ngakho-ke baqala ukubeka izinhliziyi zabo engcebweni yabo; yebo, baqala bafuna ukuthola inzuzo ukuze baphakame omunye ngaphezu komunye; ngakho-ke baqala ukubulala ngasese, kanye nokweba kanye nokuphanga, ukuze bathole inzuzo.
- 18 Manje bheka, labo babulali kanye nabaphangi babeyiqembu elaliqanjwe nguKishikumeni kanye no Gadiyantoni. Manje base bebaningi, ngisho naphakathi kwamaNefi, abeqembu likaGadiyantoni. Kodwa bheka, babebaningi kakhulu phakathi kwaleyo nxenye yamaLamani eyayinobubi kakhulu. Futhi babebizwa ngokuthi ngabaphangi nababulali baGadiyantoni.
- 19 Futhi kwakuyibo ababulala umahluleli omkhulu uSezoramu, kanye nendodana yakhe, ngesikhathi besesihlalweni sokwahlulela; futhi bheka, abazange batholwe.
- 20 Manje kwenzeka ukuthi ngesikhathi amaLamani ethola ukuthi kwakukhona abaphangi phakathi kwawo adabuka kakhulu; futhi enza konke okusemandleni awo ukuthi ababulale baphele ebusweni bomhlaba.

And it came to pass that in the sixty and sixth year of the reign of the judges, behold, Cezoram was murdered by an unknown hand as he sat upon the judgment-seat. And it came to pass that in the same year, that his son, who had been appointed by the people in his stead, was also murdered. And thus ended the sixty and sixth year.

And in the commencement of the sixty and seventh year the people began to grow exceedingly wicked again.

For behold, the Lord had blessed them so long with the riches of the world that they had not been stirred up to anger, to wars, nor to bloodshed; therefore they began to set their hearts upon their riches; yea, they began to seek to get gain that they might be lifted up one above another; therefore they began to commit secret murders, and to rob and to plunder, that they might get gain.

And now behold, those murderers and plunderers were a band who had been formed by Kishkumen and Gadianton. And now it had come to pass that there were many, even among the Nephites, of Gadianton's band. But behold, they were more numerous among the more wicked part of the Lamanites. And they were called Gadianton's robbers and murderers.

And it was they who did murder the chief judge Cezoram, and his son, while in the judgment-seat; and behold, they were not found.

And now it came to pass that when the Lamanites found that there were robbers among them they were exceedingly sorrowful; and they did use every means in their power to destroy them off the face of the earth.

- 21 Kepha bheka, uSathane waziphehla izinhliziyu enxenyeni enkulu yamaNefi, kangangokuthi ahlanguana nalawo maqembu abaphangi, angena esivumelwaneni nasezifungweni zabo, ukuthi bayovikelana futhi balondolozane omunye nomunye kunanoma yiziphi izimo ezinzima ababeyoba kuzo, ukuze bangezwa ubuhlungu ngenxa yokubulala kwabo, kanye nokuphanga kwabo kanye nokweba kwabo.
- 22 Futhi kwenzeka ukuthi baba nezimpawu zabo, yebo, izimpawu zabo eziyimfihlo, kanye namagama abo ayimfihlo; ukuze ngalokhu bakwazi ukwahlukanisa umfowabo ongene esivumelwaneni, ukuze kuthi noma ngabe yibuphi ububi umfowabo abenzayo angalinyazwa ngumfowabo, noma yilabo okwakungabe qembu lakhe, ababengene kulesi sivumelwano.
- 23 Futhi ngalendlela babengabulala, baphange, bebe, futhi benze ubufebe kanye nayo yonke inhlobo yobubi, ngokuphambene nomthetho wezwe labo futhi kanjalo nemithetho kaNkulunkulu wabo.
- 24 Futhi lowo owayengoweqembu labo owayengavezela umhlaba ngobubi babo kanye nangezengiso zabo, wayebekwa icala, hhayi ngokwemithetho yezwe labo, kepha ngokwemithetho yobubi babo, eyayinikezwe nguGadiyantoni kanye noKishikumeni.
- 25 Manje bheka, yilezi zifungo eziyimfihlo kanye nezivumelwano u-Alima ayala ngazo indodana yakhe ukuthi zingaphumeli ezweni, hleze zibe yindlela yokwehlisela abantu phansi ekonakalisweni.
- 26 Manje bheka, lezo zifungo eziyimfihlo kanye nezivumelwano azilethwanga kuGadiyantoni ziphuma emibhalweni eyayinikezwe uHelamani; kepha bheka, zazifakwe enhliziyweni kaGadiyantoni nguye kanye lowo muntu owayenga abazali bethu bokuqala ukuthi badle isithelo esasingavunyelwe—
- 27 Yebo, yena kanye lowo muntu owenza isu no Kayini, ukuthi uma engabulala umfowabo u-Abela akuyikwaziwa emhlabeni. Futhi nempela wenza isu noKayini kanye nabalandeli bakhe kusukela ngaleso sikhathi kuya phambili.

But behold, Satan did stir up the hearts of the more part of the Nephites, insomuch that they did unite with those bands of robbers, and did enter into their covenants and their oaths, that they would protect and preserve one another in whatsoever difficult circumstances they should be placed, that they should not suffer for their murders, and their plunderings, and their stealings.

And it came to pass that they did have their signs, yea, their secret signs, and their secret words; and this that they might distinguish a brother who had entered into the covenant, that whatsoever wickedness his brother should do he should not be injured by his brother, nor by those who did belong to his band, who had taken this covenant.

And thus they might murder, and plunder, and steal, and commit whoredoms and all manner of wickedness, contrary to the laws of their country and also the laws of their God.

And whosoever of those who belonged to their band should reveal unto the world of their wickedness and their abominations, should be tried, not according to the laws of their country, but according to the laws of their wickedness, which had been given by Gadianton and Kishkumen.

Now behold, it is these secret oaths and covenants which Alma commanded his son should not go forth unto the world, lest they should be a means of bringing down the people unto destruction.

Now behold, those secret oaths and covenants did not come forth unto Gadianton from the records which were delivered unto Helaman; but behold, they were put into the heart of Gadianton by that same being who did entice our first parents to partake of the forbidden fruit—

Yea, that same being who did plot with Cain, that if he would murder his brother Abel it should not be known unto the world. And he did plot with Cain and his followers from that time forth.

28 Futhi phezu kwalokho nguye kanye lowo muntu owakufaka ezinhliziyweni zabantu ukuthi bakhe umbhoshongo ophakeme ngokwaneleyo ukuze bafinyelele ezulwini. Futhi kwakuwuye kanye lowo muntu owahola abantu ababevela kulombhoshongo beza kulelizwe; owandisa imisebenzi yobumnyama kanye nezinengiso kubo bonke ubuso bezwe, kwaze kwaba ubahudulela phansi abantu ekubhujisweni nya, kanye nasesihogweni esingapheliyo.

29 Yebo, nguye kanye lowo muntu owakufaka enhliziyweni ka Gadiyantoni ukuthi aqhubeke njalo nomsebenzi wobumnyama, kanye nowokubulala ngasese; futhi ukusekelile lokho kusukela ekuqaleni komuntu ngisho kwehle kuze kube yilesi sikhathi samanje.

30 Futhi bheka, nguye lowo ongumqambi waso sonke isono. Futhi bheka, usaqhubeka nomsebenzi wakhe wobumnyama kanye nowokubulala ngasese, futhi udlulisa amacebo abo, nezifungo zabo, nezivumelwano zabo, kanye namasu abo obubi obukhulu, izizukulwane ngezizukulwane kangangoba engathola ukubambelela ezinhliziyweni zabantwana babantu.

31 Manje bheka, wayesethole ukubambelela okukhulu ezinhliziyweni zamaNefi; yebo, kangangokuthi ayesemabi kakhulu; yebo, inxenye enkulu yawo isiphendukile yasuka endleleni yokulunga, futhi yanyathela imiyalelo kaNkulunkulu phansi kwezinyawo zawo, futhi aphendukela ezindleleni zawo, futhi azakhela izithixo zegolide lawo kanye nesiliva lawo.

32 Futhi kwenzeka ukuthi bonke lobu bubi beza kubo ngesikhashana nje esingeminyaka mingaki, kangangokuthi inxenye enkulu yabo yeza kubo ngonyaka wamashumi ayisithupha nesikhombisa wokubusa kwabehluleli kubantu baNefi.

33 Futhi akhula eubini bawo ngonyaka wamashumi ayisithupha nesishiyangalombili futhi, okwabangela usizi nesililo esikhulu kwabalungile.

And also it is that same being who put it into the hearts of the people to build a tower sufficiently high that they might get to heaven. And it was that same being who led on the people who came from that tower into this land; who spread the works of darkness and abominations over all the face of the land, until he dragged the people down to an entire destruction, and to an everlasting hell.

Yea, it is that same being who put it into the heart of Gadianton to still carry on the work of darkness, and of secret murder; and he has brought it forth from the beginning of man even down to this time.

And behold, it is he who is the author of all sin. And behold, he doth carry on his works of darkness and secret murder, and doth hand down their plots, and their oaths, and their covenants, and their plans of awful wickedness, from generation to generation according as he can get hold upon the hearts of the children of men.

And now behold, he had got great hold upon the hearts of the Nephites; yea, insomuch that they had become exceedingly wicked; yea, the more part of them had turned out of the way of righteousness, and did trample under their feet the commandments of God, and did turn unto their own ways, and did build up unto themselves idols of their gold and their silver.

And it came to pass that all these iniquities did come unto them in the space of not many years, insomuch that a more part of it had come unto them in the sixty and seventh year of the reign of the judges over the people of Nephi.

And they did grow in their iniquities in the sixty and eighth year also, to the great sorrow and lamentation of the righteous.

34 Futhi ngalendlela siyabona ukuthi amaNefi aqala alahlekelwa wukholo, futhi akhula ebubini nasezinengisweni, ngesikhathi amaLamani wona eqala ukukhula kakhulu olwazini lukaNkulunkulu wawo; yebo, aqala ukuyigcina imithetho kanye nemiyalelo yakhe, kanye nokuhamba eqinisweni kanye nangobuqotho phambi kwakhe.

35 Futhi ngalendlela siyabona ukuthi uMoya weNkosi waqala ukuthi uhosheke kumaNefi, ngenxa yobubi kanye nobulukhuni bezinhliziyo zawo.

36 Futhi ngalendlela siyabona ukuthi iNkosi yaqala ukuthela uMoya wayo phezu kwamaLamani, ngenxa yokuthanda kwawo kanye nokufuna ukuthi akholwe emazwini ayo.

37 Futhi kwenzeka ukuthi amaLamani nempela alizingela leliqembu labaphangi baGadiyantoni; futhi alishumayela izwi likaNkulunkulu phakathi kwenxenye yawo eyayinobubi kakhulu, kangangokuthi leliqembu labaphangi lasuswa laphela nya phakathi kwamaLamani.

38 Futhi kwenzeka ukuthi ngakolunye uhlangothi, amaNefi alakha futhi alisekela, eqala kuleyo nxenye eyayinobubi kakhulu, kwaze kwaba lisabalala kulo lonke izwe lamaNefi, futhi layenga inxenye enkulu yabalungile kwaze kwaba babuyela phansi ekukholweni emisebenzini yabo futhi bacazelana ngempango yabo, futhi bahlangana nabo ekubulaleni ngasese kanye nasemaqenjini abo angasese.

39 Futhi ngalendlela bathola ukuwuphatha ngokuphelele umkhandlu ophetheyo, kangangokuthi banyathela ngaphansi kwezinyawo zabo futhi bashaya bahlupha futhi bafulathela abampofu kanye nabamnene, kanye nabalandeli abathobile baNkulunkulu.

40 Futhi ngalendlela siyabona ukuthi base besesimweni esibi kakhulu, futhi sebevuthelwa ukonakaliswa okungapheliyo.

41 Futhi kwenzeka ukuthi unyaka wamashumi ayisithupha nesishiyangalombili waphela ngalendlela wokubusa kwabehluleli kubantu baNefi.

And thus we see that the Nephites did begin to dwindle in unbelief, and grow in wickedness and abominations, while the Lamanites began to grow exceedingly in the knowledge of their God; yea, they did begin to keep his statutes and commandments, and to walk in truth and uprightness before him.

And thus we see that the Spirit of the Lord began to withdraw from the Nephites, because of the wickedness and the hardness of their hearts.

And thus we see that the Lord began to pour out his Spirit upon the Lamanites, because of their easiness and willingness to believe in his words.

And it came to pass that the Lamanites did hunt the band of robbers of Gadianton; and they did preach the word of God among the more wicked part of them, insomuch that this band of robbers was utterly destroyed from among the Lamanites.

And it came to pass on the other hand, that the Nephites did build them up and support them, beginning at the more wicked part of them, until they had overspread all the land of the Nephites, and had seduced the more part of the righteous until they had come down to believe in their works and partake of their spoils, and to join with them in their secret murders and combinations.

And thus they did obtain the sole management of the government, insomuch that they did trample under their feet and smite and rend and turn their backs upon the poor and the meek, and the humble followers of God.

And thus we see that they were in an awful state, and ripening for an everlasting destruction.

And it came to pass that thus ended the sixty and eighth year of the reign of the judges over the people of Nephi.

ISIPHROFETHO SIKANEFI, INDODANA KAHELAMANI
 —UNkulunkulu wesabisa abantu baNefi ngokuthi
 uzobavakashela ngentukuthelo yakhe, okuyobangela
 ukuba babujiswe bapbele nya ngaphandle kokuthi
 bapbenduke ebubini babo. UNkulunkulu usbaya abantu
 baNefi ngomashayabhuqe; bayapbenduka futhi babuyela
 kuye. USamuweli, umLamani, uphrofetha kumaNefi.

Helamani 7

- 1 Bheka, manje kwenzeka ngonyaka wamashumi ayisithupha nesishiyagalolunye wokubusa kwabehluleli kubantu baNefi, ukuthi uNefi, indodana kaHelamani, yabuyela ezweni lakwaZarahemla ivela ezweni elingasenyakatho.
- 2 Ngokuba wayekade ephumile ephakathi kwabantu ababesezweni elingasenyakatho, futhi walishumayela izwi likaNkulunkulu kubo, futhi waphrofetha izinto eziningi kubo;
- 3 Futhi bawenqaba wonke amazwi akhe, kangangokuthi akakwazanga ukuhlala phakathi kwabo, kepha waphinda wabuyela ezweni lakhe lokuzalwa.
- 4 Futhi ebona abantu besesimweni sobubi obukhulu kanje, kanye nalabo baphangi baGadiyantoni bethatha izihlalo zokwahlulela —Sebethe ngobuqili amandla kanye negunya lezwe; bebeka eceleni imiyalelo kaNkulunkulu, futhi bengenzi nokuncane ukulunga phambi kwakhe; bengehluleli ngokulunga kubantwana babantu;
- 5 Bebeka icala abalungileyo ngenxa yokulunga kwabo; beyekela abanecala nababi ukuthi bahambe bangajeziswa ngenxa yemali yabo; futhi ngaphezu kwalokho babekwe ezihlalweni eziphezulu zomkhandlu ophetheyo, ukuthi babuse futhi benze njengokuthanda kwabo, ukuze bathole inzuzo kanye nodumo lomhlaba, futhi, ngaphezu kwalokho, ukuze baphinge kalula, futhi bebe, futhi babulale, futhi benze njengokuthanda kwabo—
- 6 Manje lobu bubu obukhulu beza kumaNefi, esikhathini esingeminyaka mingaki; futhi ngesikhathi uNefi ekubona lokhu, inhliziyoyakhe yagcwala usizi ngaphakathi kwesifuba sakhe; futhi wamemeza ngobuhlungu obukhulu bomphumulo wakhe ethi:

THE PROPHECY OF NEPHI, THE SON OF HELAMAN—
God threatens the people of Nephi that he will visit them in his anger, to their utter destruction except they repent of their wickedness. God smiteth the people of Nephi with pestilence; they repent and turn unto him. Samuel, a Lamanite, prophesies unto the Nephites.

Helaman 7

Behold, now it came to pass in the sixty and ninth year of the reign of the judges over the people of the Nephites, that Nephi, the son of Helaman, returned to the land of Zarahemla from the land northward.

For he had been forth among the people who were in the land northward, and did preach the word of God unto them, and did prophesy many things unto them;

And they did reject all his words, insomuch that he could not stay among them, but returned again unto the land of his nativity.

And seeing the people in a state of such awful wickedness, and those Gadianton robbers filling the judgment-seats—having usurped the power and authority of the land; laying aside the commandments of God, and not in the least aright before him; doing no justice unto the children of men;

Condemning the righteous because of their righteousness; letting the guilty and the wicked go unpunished because of their money; and moreover to be held in office at the head of government, to rule and do according to their wills, that they might get gain and glory of the world, and, moreover, that they might the more easily commit adultery, and steal, and kill, and do according to their own wills—

Now this great iniquity had come upon the Nephites, in the space of not many years; and when Nephi saw it, his heart was swollen with sorrow within his breast; and he did exclaim in the agony of his soul:

- 7 O, ukube izinsuku zami zabe zingezinsuku ngesikhathi ubaba uNefi ephuma okokuqala ezweni laseJerusalema, ngabe ngangiyojabula naye ezweni lesethembiso; ngaleso sikhathi abantu bakhe kwakulula ukubancenga, beqinile ekugcineni imiyalelo kaNkulunkulu, futhi kungelula ukuthi baholelwe ekwenzeni ububi; futhi babeshesha ukuwalalela amazwi eNkosi—
- 8 Yebo, ukuba izinsuku zami zazingalezo zinsuku, ngabe umphefumulo wami wawuyothola ukuthokoza kukho ukulunga kwabafowethu.
- 9 Kodwa bheka, ngabelwe ukuthi lezi kube yizinsuku zami, futhi nokuthi umphefumulo wami uyogcwaliswa ngosizi ngenxa yalengkohlakalo yabafowethu.
- 10 Futhi bheka, manje kwenzeka ukuthi kwakuphezu kombhoshongo, owawusensimini kaNefi, eyayingasemgwaqweni omkhulu owawuya emakethe enkulu, eyayisedolobheni lakwaZarahemla; ngakho-ke, uNefi wayeguqe embhoshongweni owawusensimini yakhe, umbhoshongo owawuseduze futhi nesango lensimu lapho umgwaqo omkhulu owawudlula khona.
- 11 Futhi kwenzeka ukuthi kwakukhona amadoda athile ayedlula lapho futhi ambona uNefi ngesikhathi ekhuleka ngokushisekela okukhulu kuNkulunkulu phezu kombhoshongo; agijima ayotshela abantu ngalokho ayekubonile, futhi abantu beza babuthana beyizixuku ukuze bazi ngesizathu sokukhala okukhulu kangaka ngenkohlakalo yabantu.
- 12 Manje, ngesikhathi uNefi ephakama wazibona izixuku zabantu abase bebuthene ndawonye.
- 13 Futhi kwenzeka ukuthi wavula umlomo wakhe wathi kubo: Bhekani, kungani nibuthene ndawonye na? Ukuthi nginitshela ngobubi benu na?
- 14 Yebo, ngenxa yokuthi ngigibele embhoshongweni wami ukuze ngikhuleke ngokushisekela okukhulu kuNkulunkulu wami, ngenxa yosizi olukhulu lwenhliziyo yami, olungenxa yobubi benu!

Oh, that I could have had my days in the days when my father Nephi first came out of the land of Jerusalem, that I could have joyed with him in the promised land; then were his people easy to be entreated, firm to keep the commandments of God, and slow to be led to do iniquity; and they were quick to hearken unto the words of the Lord—

Yea, if my days could have been in those days, then would my soul have had joy in the righteousness of my brethren.

But behold, I am consigned that these are my days, and that my soul shall be filled with sorrow because of this the wickedness of my brethren.

And behold, now it came to pass that it was upon a tower, which was in the garden of Nephi, which was by the highway which led to the chief market, which was in the city of Zarahemla; therefore, Nephi had bowed himself upon the tower which was in his garden, which tower was also near unto the garden gate by which led the highway.

And it came to pass that there were certain men passing by and saw Nephi as he was pouring out his soul unto God upon the tower; and they ran and told the people what they had seen, and the people came together in multitudes that they might know the cause of so great mourning for the wickedness of the people.

And now, when Nephi arose he beheld the multitudes of people who had gathered together.

And it came to pass that he opened his mouth and said unto them: Behold, why have ye gathered yourselves together? That I may tell you of your iniquities?

Yea, because I have got upon my tower that I might pour out my soul unto my God, because of the exceeding sorrow of my heart, which is because of your iniquities!

- 15 Futhi ngenxa yokukhala kanye nokulila kwami senibuthene ndawonye, futhi niyamangala; yebo, futhi kufanele kakhulu ukuthi nimangale; yebo, nimele ukumangala ngoba senizinkele ngendlela yokuthi udeveli usethole ukubambalela okukhulu ezinhliziyweni zenu.
- 16 Yebo, nizinikele kanjani eziyengweni zalowo ofuna ukuphonsa imiphefumulo yenu phansi ekukhathazekeni okungapheliyo kanye nasosizini olungenakuphela na?
- 17 O phendukani, phendukani! Kungani nizokufa na? Guqukani, guqukelani eNkosini uNkulunkulu wenu. Kungani inilahlile na?
- 18 Kungenxa yokuthi niziqiniselele izinhliziyu zenu; yebo, anifuni ukulalela izwi lomalusi omuhle; yebo, nimchukuluzile ukuthi anithukuthelele.
- 19 Futhi bhekani, esikhundleni sokuthi aniqoqe, ngaphandle kokuthi niphenduke, bhekani, uzonisakaza ukuze nibe yinyama yezinja kanye nezilwane zasendle.
- 20 O, ngabe nimkhohlwe kanjani uNkulunkulu wenu ngalo kanye lolusuku anikhulule ngalo na?
- 21 Kodwa bhekani, kuwukuthola inzuzo, ukuze nidunyiswe ngabantu, yebo, futhi ukuze nithole igolide nesiliva. Futhi senibeke izinhliziyu zenu engcebweni kanye nasezintweni eziyize zalomhlaba, enibulala ngazo, niphange, nebe, futhi nifakaze ngamanga ngenakhelene nabo, futhi nenze zonke izinhlobo zobubi.
- 22 Futhi ngalesi sizathu usizi luzokuza kini ngaphandle kokuthi niphenduke. Ngokuba uma ningaphenduki, bhekani, lelidolobha elikhulu, futhi kanjalo nawo wonke lawo madolobha amakhulu azungezile, asezwani okungelethu, ayothathwa ukuze ningabe nisaba nandawo kuwo; ngokuba bhekani, iNkosi ayiyikuninika amandla, njengoba kade yenzile kuze kube manje, ukuze nimelane nezitha zenu.

And because of my mourning and lamentation ye have gathered yourselves together, and do marvel; yea, and ye have great need to marvel; yea, ye ought to marvel because ye are given away that the devil has got so great hold upon your hearts.

Yea, how could you have given way to the enticing of him who is seeking to hurl away your souls down to everlasting misery and endless wo?

O repent ye, repent ye! Why will ye die? Turn ye, turn ye unto the Lord your God. Why has he forsaken you?

It is because you have hardened your hearts; yea, ye will not hearken unto the voice of the good shepherd; yea, ye have provoked him to anger against you.

And behold, instead of gathering you, except ye will repent, behold, he shall scatter you forth that ye shall become meat for dogs and wild beasts.

O, how could you have forgotten your God in the very day that he has delivered you?

But behold, it is to get gain, to be praised of men, yea, and that ye might get gold and silver. And ye have set your hearts upon the riches and the vain things of this world, for the which ye do murder, and plunder, and steal, and bear false witness against your neighbor, and do all manner of iniquity.

And for this cause wo shall come unto you except ye shall repent. For if ye will not repent, behold, this great city, and also all those great cities which are round about, which are in the land of our possession, shall be taken away that ye shall have no place in them; for behold, the Lord will not grant unto you strength, as he has hitherto done, to withstand against your enemies.

- 23 Ngokuba bhekani, isho kanje iNkosi: Angizu kubakhombisa ababi amandla ami, omunye ngaphezu komunye, ngaphandle kwalabo abaphendukayo ezonweni zabo, futhi balalele amazwi ami. Manje ngakho-ke, ngifuna ukuthi nibheke, bafowethu, ukuthi kuyoba ngcono okwamaLamani kunokwenu ngaphandle kokuthi niphenduke.
- 24 Ngokuba bhekani, wona alunge kakhulu kunani, ngokuba awazange one ngokumelene nalolo lwazi olukhulu enilutholile; ngakho-ke iNkosi iyoba nomusa kuwo; yebo, izozelula izinsuku zawo futhi yandise inzalo yawo, ngisho noma ngabe nina ningabhujiswa niphele nya ngaphandle kokuthi niphenduke.
- 25 Yebo, maye kini ngenxa yalezo sinengiso esinkulu esize kini; futhi nizihlanganise naso, yebo, nalelo qembu eliyimfihlo elaqanjwa nguGadiyantoni!
- 26 Yebo, usizi luyoza kini ngenxa yalokho kuziqhenya enikuvumele ukuthi kungene ezinhliziyweni zenu, okuniphakamise ngaphezulu kwalokho okulungile ngenxa yengcebo yenu enkulu kakhulu!
- 27 Yebo, maye kini ngenxa yenkohlakalo kanye nezinengiso zenu!
- 28 Futhi ngaphandle kokuthi niphenduke niyokufa; yebo, ngisho namazwe enu ayothathwa kini, futhi niyobhujiswa niphele nya nesuswe ebusweni bomhlaba.
- 29 Bhekani manje, angisho ukuthi lezi zinto ziyokuba njalo, ngokwami, ngoba akukhona okwami ukuthi ngizazi lezi zinto; kepha bhekani, ngiyazi ukuthi lezi zinto ziyiqiniso ngoba iNkosi uNkulunkulu izembulile kimi, ngakho-ke ngiyafakaza ukuthi ziyokwenzeka.

For behold, thus saith the Lord: I will not show unto the wicked of my strength, to one more than the other, save it be unto those who repent of their sins, and hearken unto my words. Now therefore, I would that ye should behold, my brethren, that it shall be better for the Lamanites than for you except ye shall repent.

For behold, they are more righteous than you, for they have not sinned against that great knowledge which ye have received; therefore the Lord will be merciful unto them; yea, he will lengthen out their days and increase their seed, even when thou shalt be utterly destroyed except thou shalt repent.

Yea, wo be unto you because of that great abomination which has come among you; and ye have united yourselves unto it, yea, to that secret band which was established by Gadianton!

Yea, wo shall come unto you because of that pride which ye have suffered to enter your hearts, which has lifted you up beyond that which is good because of your exceedingly great riches!

Yea, wo be unto you because of your wickedness and abominations!

And except ye repent ye shall perish; yea, even your lands shall be taken from you, and ye shall be destroyed from off the face of the earth.

Behold now, I do not say that these things shall be, of myself, because it is not of myself that I know these things; but behold, I know that these things are true because the Lord God has made them known unto me, therefore I testify that they shall be.

Helamani 8

- 1 Manje kwenzeka ukuthi ngesikhathi uNefi esewakhulumile lamazwi, bheka, kwakukhona amadoda ayengabehluleli, futhi okwakungaweqembu eliyimfihlo likaGadiyantoni, futhi ayethukuthele, futhi amemeza ephikisana naye, ethi kubantu: Kungani ningayibambi lendoda futhi niyilethe phambili, ukuze ijiziswe njengokwecala elenzile na?
- 2 Kungani niyibuka lendoda, futhi niyilalela ithuka labantu kanye nomthetho wethu na?
- 3 Ngokuba bheka, uNefi wayekhulume nabo mayelana nenkohlakalo yomthetho wabo; yebo, ziningi izinto uNefi azikhuluma ezingenakubhalwa; futhi akukho akukhuluma okwakuphikisana nemiyalelo kaNkulunkulu.
- 4 Futhi labo behluleli bamthukuthelela ngenxa yokuthi wakhuluma ngokusobala kubo mayelana nemisebenzi yabo yobumnyama eyimfihlo; nokho, abazange balokotho bambambe, ngokuba babesaba abantu hleze bamemeze ngokuphikisane nabo.
- 5 Ngakho-ke bakhala ebantwini, bethi: Kungani nivumela lendoda ukuthi isithuke na? Ngokuba bhekani ibasola bonke labantu, ngisho kangangoba bezobhujiswa; yebo, futhi phezu kwalokho nokuthi lamadolobha ethu amakhulu ayothathwa kithi, nokuthi ngeke sisaba nandawo kuwo.
- 6 Manje siyazi ukuthi lokhu akunakwenzeka, ngokuba bhekani, sinamandla, futhi amadolobha ethu makhulu, ngakho-ke izitha zethu ngeke zibe namandla phezu kwethu.
- 7 Futhi kwenzeka ukuthi babaphehla ngalendlela abantu ukuthi bamthukuthelele uNefi, futhi badala imibango phakathi kwabo; ngokuba kwakukhona abathile ababekhala bethi: Iyekeni lendoda, ngokuba ingumuntu olungile, futhi lezo zinto ezikhulumile zizofezeka ngempela ngaphandle kokuthi siphenduke;
- 8 Yebo, bhekani, zonke izahlulelo zizoza kithi afakaze ngazo kithi; ngokuba siyazi ukuthi ufakaze ngokuyikho kithi mayelana nobubi bethu. Futhi bhekani buningi, futhi uyazazi futhi zonke izinto ezizosehlela njengoba azi ngobubi bethu;

Helaman 8

And now it came to pass that when Nephi had said these words, behold, there were men who were judges, who also belonged to the secret band of Gadianton, and they were angry, and they cried out against him, saying unto the people: Why do ye not seize upon this man and bring him forth, that he may be condemned according to the crime which he has done?

Why seest thou this man, and hearest him revile against this people and against our law?

For behold, Nephi had spoken unto them concerning the corruptness of their law; yea, many things did Nephi speak which cannot be written; and nothing did he speak which was contrary to the commandments of God.

And those judges were angry with him because he spake plainly unto them concerning their secret works of darkness; nevertheless, they durst not lay their own hands upon him, for they feared the people lest they should cry out against them.

Therefore they did cry unto the people, saying: Why do you suffer this man to revile against us? For behold he doth condemn all this people, even unto destruction; yea, and also that these our great cities shall be taken from us, that we shall have no place in them.

And now we know that this is impossible, for behold, we are powerful, and our cities great, therefore our enemies can have no power over us.

And it came to pass that thus they did stir up the people to anger against Nephi, and raised contentions among them; for there were some who did cry out: Let this man alone, for he is a good man, and those things which he saith will surely come to pass except we repent;

Yea, behold, all the judgments will come upon us which he has testified unto us; for we know that he has testified aright unto us concerning our iniquities. And behold they are many, and he knoweth as well all things which shall befall us as he knoweth of our iniquities;

- 9 Yebo, futhi bhekani, ukube ubengeyena umphrofethi ubengenakufakaza mayelana nalezo zinto.
- 10 Futhi kwenzeka ukuthi labo bantu ababefuna ukumbulala uNefi baphoqeleka ngenxa yokwesaba kwabo, ukuthi bangambambi; ngakho-ke waqala futhi ukukhuluma kubo, ebona ukuthi wayesethole ukwesekwa emehlweni abanye, kangangokuthi ababesele babo besaba nokwesaba.
- 11 Ngakho-ke waphoqeletwa ukuthi akhulume okunye kubo ethi: Bhekani, bafowethu, ngabe anifundanga yini ukuthi uNkulunkulu wanikeza amandla kumuntu oyedwa, ngisho kuMose, ukuthi ashaye amanzi oLwandle oluBomvu, futhi ahlukana aya ngapha nangapha, kangangokuthi ama-Israyeli, ayengobaba bethu, anqamula phakathi emhlabathini owomileyo, futhi amanzi awamukisa amabutho amaGibithe awagwinya onke na?
- 12 Manje bhekani, uma uNkulunkulu anika lendoda amandla angaka, pho kungani ninokuphikisana phakathi kwenu, futhi nithi akazange anginikeze amandla engingakwazi ukwazi ngawo mayelana nezahlulelo ezizoza kini ngaphandle kokuthi niphenduke na?
- 13 Kodwa, bhekani, aniphikisi nje amazwi ami kuphela, kodwa futhi niphikisa wonke amazwi akhulunywa ngobaba bethu, futhi kanjalo namazwi akhulunywa yilendoda, uMose, owayenamandla amakhulu kangaka aye nikezwe wona, yebo, amazwi awakhulumayo mayelana nokuza kukaMesiya.
- 14 Yebo, akazange afakaze yini ngokuthi iNdodana kaNkulunkulu kufanele ize na? Futhi njengoba aphakamisa inyoka yethusi ehlane, ngisho nakanjalo uyophakanyiswa lowo okufanele eze.
- 15 Futhi ngobuningi balabo ababeyoyibuka leyo nyoka babeyophila, futhi kanjalo ngobuningi balabo abayobuka eNdodaneni kaNkulunkulu ngokholo, benomoya wokudabuka, bayophila, ngisho ngokwanele ukuba baphile ingunaphakade.
- 16 Manje bhekani, uMose akuyena nje kuphela owafakaza ngalezi zinto, kodwa futhi bonke abaphrofethi abangcwele, kusukela ezinsukwini zakhe ngisho kuze kuya nasezinsukwini zika-Abrahama.

Yea, and behold, if he had not been a prophet he could not have testified concerning those things.

And it came to pass that those people who sought to destroy Nephi were compelled because of their fear, that they did not lay their hands on him; therefore he began again to speak unto them, seeing that he had gained favor in the eyes of some, insomuch that the remainder of them did fear.

Therefore he was constrained to speak more unto them saying: Behold, my brethren, have ye not read that God gave power unto one man, even Moses, to smite upon the waters of the Red Sea, and they parted hither and thither, insomuch that the Israelites, who were our fathers, came through upon dry ground, and the waters closed upon the armies of the Egyptians and swallowed them up?

And now behold, if God gave unto this man such power, then why should ye dispute among yourselves, and say that he hath given unto me no power whereby I may know concerning the judgments that shall come upon you except ye repent?

But, behold, ye not only deny my words, but ye also deny all the words which have been spoken by our fathers, and also the words which were spoken by this man, Moses, who had such great power given unto him, yea, the words which he hath spoken concerning the coming of the Messiah.

Yea, did he not bear record that the Son of God should come? And as he lifted up the brazen serpent in the wilderness, even so shall he be lifted up who should come.

And as many as should look upon that serpent should live, even so as many as should look upon the Son of God with faith, having a contrite spirit, might live, even unto that life which is eternal.

And now behold, Moses did not only testify of these things, but also all the holy prophets, from his days even to the days of Abraham.

- 17 Yebo, futhi bhekani, u-Abrahama wakubona ukuza kwayo, futhi wagcwala injabulo futhi wathokoza.
- 18 Yebo, futhi bhekani ngithi kini, akusiye u-Abrahama kuphela owazi ngalezi zinto, kepha kwakukhona abaningi ngaphambi kwezinsuku zika-Abrahama ababebizwe ngokohlelo lukaNkulunkulu; yebo, ngisho nangokohlelo lweNdodana yakhe; futhi lokhu ukuze kukhonjiswe kubantu, iminyaka engamakhulu eyizinkulungwane eziningi phambi kokufika kwayo, ukuthi ukukhululwa kuyoza ngisho nakubo.
- 19 Manje ngifuna ukuthi nazi, ukuthi ngisho kusukela nasezinsukwini zika-Abrahama kwakukhona abaningi abaphrofethi abazifakazela lezi zinto; yebo, bhekani, umphrofethi uZenoshe wafakaza ngesibindi; ngalokho wabulawa.
- 20 Futhi bhekani, ngokunjalo no Zenoki, futhi ngokunjalo no-Eziya, futhi kanjalo no-Isaya kanye no Jeremiya, (uJeremiya enguye kanye lowo mphrofethi owafakaza ngokubhujiswa kwe Jerusalema) manje siyazi ukuthi iJerusalema yabhujiswa njengokwamazwi kaJeremiya. Pho ke kungani ukuthi iNdodana kaNkulunkulu ingezi, njengokwesiphrofetho sakhe na?
- 21 Manje nizokuphika yini ukuthi iJerusalema yabhujiswa na? Ningasho yini ukuthi amadodana kaSedekiya awazange abulawe, wonke ngaphandle kuka Muleki na? Yebo, futhi aniboni yini ukuthi inzalo kaSedekiya inathi na, futhi yaqhutshwa yakhishwa ezweni laseJerusalema na? Kepha bhekani, lokhu akusikho kuphela—
- 22 Ubaba uLehi waqhutshwa wakhishwa eJerusalema ngenxa yokuthi wafakaza ngalezi zinto. UNefi ngokunjalo naye wafakaza ngalezi zinto, futhi phezu kwalokho cishe bonke obaba bethu, ngisho kwehle kuze kube yilesi sikhathi; yebo, bafakaza ngokuza kukaKristu, futhi babheka phambili, futhi baluthokozela usuku lwakhe oluzoza.
- 23 Futhi bhekani, unguNkulunkulu, futhi unabo, futhi wazibonakalisa kubo, ukuthi wayebakhululile; futhi bamnika udumo, ngenxa yalokho okuzoza.

Yea, and behold, Abraham saw of his coming, and was filled with gladness and did rejoice.

Yea, and behold I say unto you, that Abraham not only knew of these things, but there were many before the days of Abraham who were called by the order of God; yea, even after the order of his Son; and this that it should be shown unto the people, a great many thousand years before his coming, that even redemption should come unto them.

And now I would that ye should know, that even since the days of Abraham there have been many prophets that have testified these things; yea, behold, the prophet Zenos did testify boldly; for the which he was slain.

And behold, also Zenock, and also Ezias, and also Isaiah, and Jeremiah, (Jeremiah being that same prophet who testified of the destruction of Jerusalem) and now we know that Jerusalem was destroyed according to the words of Jeremiah. O then why not the Son of God come, according to his prophecy?

And now will you dispute that Jerusalem was destroyed? Will ye say that the sons of Zedekiah were not slain, all except it were Mulek? Yea, and do ye not behold that the seed of Zedekiah are with us, and they were driven out of the land of Jerusalem? But behold, this is not all—

Our father Lehi was driven out of Jerusalem because he testified of these things. Nephi also testified of these things, and also almost all of our fathers, even down to this time; yea, they have testified of the coming of Christ, and have looked forward, and have rejoiced in his day which is to come.

And behold, he is God, and he is with them, and he did manifest himself unto them, that they were redeemed by him; and they gave unto him glory, because of that which is to come.

24 Manje, ngokubona ukuthi niyazazi lezi zinto futhi aninakuziphika ngaphandle kokuthi niqambe amanga, ngakho-ke ngalokhu nonile, ngokuba niziphikile zonke lezi zinto, naphezu kobufakazi obuningi kangaka enibutholile; yebo, nizitholile zonke izinto, izinto ezisezulwini, kanye nazo zonke izinto ezisemhlabeni, njengobufakazi bokuthi ziyiqiniso.

25 Kodwa bhekani, niliphikile iqiniso, futhi navukela uNkulunkulu wenu ongcwele; futhi ngisho nangalesi sikhathi, esikhundleni sokuthi nizibekele ingcebo ezulwini, lapho kungekho lutho olubolisayo, futhi lapho kungekho nto engcolile engangena khona, niziqokelele intukuthelo ngosuku lokwahlulelwa.

26 Yebo, ngisho nangalesi sikhathi niyavuthwa, ngenxa yokubulala nokuhlobonga kanye nenkohlakalo yenu, ukuthi nonakaliswe inguphakade; yebo, futhi ngaphandle kokuthi niphenduke kuzofika kini masinyane.

27 Yebo, bhekani manje sekuseminyango yenu; yebo, hambani niye esihlalweni sokwahlulela, futhi nifune; futhi bhekani, umahluleli wenu ubulewe, futhi uselele egazini lakhe; futhi ubulewe ngumfowabo; ofuna ukuhlala esihlalweni sokwahlulela.

28 Futhi bhekani, bobabili bangabeqembu lenu eliyimfihlo, umqambi walo okunguGadiyantoni kanye nomubi ofuna ukubulala abantu.

And now, seeing ye know these things and cannot deny them except ye shall lie, therefore in this ye have sinned, for ye have rejected all these things, notwithstanding so many evidences which ye have received; yea, even ye have received all things, both things in heaven, and all things which are in the earth, as a witness that they are true.

But behold, ye have rejected the truth, and rebelled against your holy God; and even at this time, instead of laying up for yourselves treasures in heaven, where nothing doth corrupt, and where nothing can come which is unclean, ye are heaping up for yourselves wrath against the day of judgment.

Yea, even at this time ye are ripening, because of your murders and your fornication and wickedness, for everlasting destruction; yea, and except ye repent it will come unto you soon.

Yea, behold it is now even at your doors; yea, go ye in unto the judgment-seat, and search; and behold, your judge is murdered, and he lieth in his blood; and he hath been murdered by his brother, who seeketh to sit in the judgment-seat.

And behold, they both belong to your secret band, whose author is Gadianton and the evil one who seeketh to destroy the souls of men.

Helamani 9

- 1 Bheka, manje kwenzeka ukuthi ngesikhathi uNefi esewakhulumile lamazwi, amanye amadoda ayephakathi kwabo agijima aya esihlalweni sokwahlulela; yebo, ayemahlanu ahambayo, futhi athi omunye komunye, ngesikhathi ehamba:
- 2 Bhekani, manje sizokwazi ngeqiniso ukuthi ngabe lendoda inguye yini umphrofethi futhi nokuthi uNkulunkulu uyiyalile yini ukuthi iphrofethe izinto ezimangalisa kangaka kithi. Bhekani, asikholwa ukuthi uyiyalile; yebo, asikholwa ukuthi ingumphrofethi; nokho, uma lento eyishilo mayelana nomahluleli omkhulu iyiqiniso, ukuthi ufile, uma kunjalo sizokholwa ukuthi amanye amazwi ewakhulumileyo ayiqiniso.
- 3 Futhi kwenzeka ukuthi agijima ngamandla, aze afika esihlalweni sokwahlulela; futhi bheka, umahluleli omkhulu wayesewele phansi, futhi nempela wayelele kulo igazi lakhe.
- 4 Manje bheka, ngesikhathi esekubona lokhu ethuka kakhulu, kangangokuthi awela phansi; ngokuba ayengazange awakholwe amazwi uNefi ayewakhulumile mayelana nomahluleli omkhulu.
- 5 Kepha manje, ngesikhathi esebona akholwa, futhi afikelwa wukwesaba hleze zonke izahlulelo uNefi ayezikhulumile zenzeke kubantu; ngakho-ke athuthumela, futhi awela phansi.
- 6 Manje, khona manjalo ngesikhathi umehlululi esebulewe—egwazwe ngumfowabo owayegqoke izingubo zokuzifihla, futhi wabaleka, izinceku zagijima zayotshela abantu, zikhala isikhalo sokubulala phakathi kwabo;
- 7 Futhi bheka abantu nempela babuthana ndawonye endaweni yesihlalo sokwahlulela—futhi bheka, bethukile bawabona lawo madoda amahlanu ayesewele phansi.
- 8 Manje bheka, labantu babengazi lutho mayelana nesixuku esasibuthene ndawonye ensimini kaNefi; ngakho-ke bathi omunye komunye: Lamadoda yiwo abulele umahluleli, futhi uNkulunkulu usewashayile ukuze angabe esakwazi ukusibalekela.

Helaman 9

Behold, now it came to pass that when Nephi had spoken these words, certain men who were among them ran to the judgment-seat; yea, even there were five who went, and they said among themselves, as they went:

Behold, now we will know of a surety whether this man be a prophet and God hath commanded him to prophesy such marvelous things unto us. Behold, we do not believe that he hath; yea, we do not believe that he is a prophet; nevertheless, if this thing which he has said concerning the chief judge be true, that he be dead, then will we believe that the other words which he has spoken are true.

And it came to pass that they ran in their might, and came in unto the judgment-seat; and behold, the chief judge had fallen to the earth, and did lie in his blood.

And now behold, when they saw this they were astonished exceedingly, insomuch that they fell to the earth; for they had not believed the words which Nephi had spoken concerning the chief judge.

But now, when they saw they believed, and fear came upon them lest all the judgments which Nephi had spoken should come upon the people; therefore they did quake, and had fallen to the earth.

Now, immediately when the judge had been murdered—he being stabbed by his brother by a garb of secrecy, and he fled, and the servants ran and told the people, raising the cry of murder among them;

And behold the people did gather themselves together unto the place of the judgment-seat—and behold, to their astonishment they saw those five men who had fallen to the earth.

And now behold, the people knew nothing concerning the multitude who had gathered together at the garden of Nephi; therefore they said among themselves: These men are they who have murdered the judge, and God has smitten them that they could not flee from us.

- 9 Futhi kwenzeka ukuthi bawabamba, futhi bawabopha bawaphosa etilongweni. Futhi kwaba khona isimemezelo esathunyelwa kuzo zonke izindawo ukuthi umahluleli wayesebulewe, futhi nokuthi ababulali base bethathiwe baphoswa etilongweni.
- 10 Futhi kwenzeka ukuthi ngakusasa abantu babuthana ndawonye ukuthi bazokhala futhi bazile, emngcwabeni womahluleli omkhulu kakhulu owayebulewe.
- 11 Futhi ngalesi sizathu nalabo behluleli ababesensimini kaNefi, futhi sebewazwile amazwi akhe, nabo ngokunjalo babuthelana ndawonye emngcwabeni.
- 12 Futhi kwenzeka ukuthi babuza kubantu bethi: Baphi labo abahlanu abebethunye ukuyozwa mayelana nomahluleli omkhulu ukuthi ngabe ufile na? Futhi baphendula bathi: Mayelana nalabo abahlanu enithi nibathumile, thina asazi; kodwa kukhona abahlanu abangababulali, esibaphonse etilongweni.
- 13 Futhi kwenzeka ukuthi abehluleli bafuna ukuthi labo balethwe; futhi balethwa, futhi bheka kwakuyilabo abahlanu ababethunyiwe; futhi bheka abehluleli bababuza ukuze bazi mayelana naloludaba, futhi babatshela konke lokho ababekwenzile, bethi:
- 14 Sigijime seza endaweni yesihlalo sokwahlulela, futhi ngesikhathi sesibona zonke izinto zinjengoba uNefi kade efakazile, sethuka kangangokuthi sawela phansi; futhi ngesikhathi siphaphama ekwethukeni kwethu, bheka basiphonsa etilongweni.
- 15 Manje, ngokubulawa kwalendoda, asazi ukuthi ngubani okwenzile lokhu; futhi yilokhu kuphela esikwaziyo, sigijime seza lapha njengokufisa kwenu, futhi bheka ubese file, njengokwamazwi kaNefi.
- 16 Manje kwenzeka ukuthi abehluleli bayichaza indaba kubantu, futhi bakhala kakhulu ngokumelene noNefi, bethi: Bhekani, siyazi ukuthi loNefi kufanele ukuthi uvumelane nothile ukuthi abulale umahluleli, futhi emva kwalokho ukuze akumemezele kithi, ukuze asiphendulele okholweni lwakhe, ukuze aziphakamise ukuthi abe ngumuntu omkhulu, okhethwe nguNkulunkulu, kanye nomphrofethi.

And it came to pass that they laid hold on them, and bound them and cast them into prison. And there was a proclamation sent abroad that the judge was slain, and that the murderers had been taken and were cast into prison.

And it came to pass that on the morrow the people did assemble themselves together to mourn and to fast, at the burial of the great chief judge who had been slain.

And thus also those judges who were at the garden of Nephi, and heard his words, were also gathered together at the burial.

And it came to pass that they inquired among the people, saying: Where are the five who were sent to inquire concerning the chief judge whether he was dead? And they answered and said: Concerning this five whom ye say ye have sent, we know not; but there are five who are the murderers, whom we have cast into prison.

And it came to pass that the judges desired that they should be brought; and they were brought, and behold they were the five who were sent; and behold the judges inquired of them to know concerning the matter, and they told them all that they had done, saying:

We ran and came to the place of the judgment-seat, and when we saw all things even as Nephi had testified, we were astonished insomuch that we fell to the earth; and when we were recovered from our astonishment, behold they cast us into prison.

Now, as for the murder of this man, we know not who has done it; and only this much we know, we ran and came according as ye desired, and behold he was dead, according to the words of Nephi.

And now it came to pass that the judges did expound the matter unto the people, and did cry out against Nephi, saying: Behold, we know that this Nephi must have agreed with some one to slay the judge, and then he might declare it unto us, that he might convert us unto his faith, that he might raise himself to be a great man, chosen of God, and a prophet.

- 17 Manje bhekani, sizoyithola lendoda, futhi izolivuma icala layo futhi isitshela ngombulali wangempela womahluleli.
- 18 Futhi kwenzeka ukuthi labo abahlanu bakhululwa ngosuku lomngcwabo. Nokho, babasola abehluleli ngamazwi ababewakhulumile ngokumelene noNefi, futhi baphikisana nabo ngamunye ngamunye, kangangokuthi babehlula.
- 19 Nakuba kunjalo, benza ukuthi uNefi athathwe aboshwe futhi alethwe phambi kwesixuku, futhi baqala ukumbuza ngezindlela ezahlukenene ukuze bamdide, ukuze bambeke icala ukuze abulawe—
- 20 Bethi kuye: Wenze uzungu nothile; ngubani lomuntu obulele na? Manje sitshela, futhi ulivume icala lakho; bethi, Bheka nansi imali; futhi phezu kwalokho sizokuvumela uphile uma ungasitshela, futhi usivume leso sivumelwano osenze nalowo.
- 21 Kodwa uNefi wathi kubo: O ziwula, nina eningasokiwe ngokwenhliziyi, nina zimpumputhe, futhi nina bantu abangontamo lukhuni, ngabe niyazi yini ukuthi kuyoze kube nini iNkosi uNkulunkulu wenu inivumela ukuthi niqhubeke nalendlela yenu yokona na?
- 22 O kumele niqale nihhewule futhi nikhale, ngenxa yokubhujiswa okukhulu kulesi sikhathi okunihlalele, ngaphandle kokuthi niphenduke.
- 23 Bhekani nithi ngivumelene nomuntu ukuthi abulale uSezoramu, umahluleli wethu omkhulu. Kodwa bhekani, ngithi kini, lokhu kungenxa yokuthi ngifakaze kini ukuze nazi mayelana nalento; yebo, ukuthi kube njengobufakazi kini, ukuthi ngempela ngiyazi ngenkohlakalo kanye nangezinengiso eziphakathi kwenu.
- 24 Futhi ngenxa yokuthi ngenze lokhu, senithi ngivumelene nomuntu ukuthi enze lento; yebo, ngenxa yokuthi nginikhombise lesi sibonakaliso seningithukuthelele, futhi senifuna ukungibulala.
- 25 Manje bhekani, ngizonikhombisa esinye isibonakaliso, bese ngibona ukuthi ngokuphathelene nalento nizofuna ukungibulala yini.
- 26 Bhekani ngithi kini: Hambani niye endlini kaSeyantumi, ongumfowabo kaSezoramu, nifike nithi kuye—

And now behold, we will detect this man, and he shall confess his fault and make known unto us the true murderer of this judge.

And it came to pass that the five were liberated on the day of the burial. Nevertheless, they did rebuke the judges in the words which they had spoken against Nephi, and did contend with them one by one, insomuch that they did confound them.

Nevertheless, they caused that Nephi should be taken and bound and brought before the multitude, and they began to question him in divers ways that they might cross him, that they might accuse him to death—

Saying unto him: Thou art confederate; who is this man that hath done this murder? Now tell us, and acknowledge thy fault; saying, Behold here is money; and also we will grant unto thee thy life if thou wilt tell us, and acknowledge the agreement which thou hast made with him.

But Nephi said unto them: O ye fools, ye uncircumcised of heart, ye blind, and ye stiffnecked people, do ye know how long the Lord your God will suffer you that ye shall go on in this your way of sin?

O ye ought to begin to howl and mourn, because of the great destruction which at this time doth await you, except ye shall repent.

Behold ye say that I have agreed with a man that he should murder Sezoram, our chief judge. But behold, I say unto you, that this is because I have testified unto you that ye might know concerning this thing; yea, even for a witness unto you, that I did know of the wickedness and abominations which are among you.

And because I have done this, ye say that I have agreed with a man that he should do this thing; yea, because I showed unto you this sign ye are angry with me, and seek to destroy my life.

And now behold, I will show unto you another sign, and see if ye will in this thing seek to destroy me.

Behold I say unto you: Go to the house of Seantum, who is the brother of Sezoram, and say unto him—

27 Ngabe uNefi, ozenza umphrofethi, lona ophrofetha ngobubi obungaka mayelana nalabantu, uvumelene yini nawe, ukuthi umbulale uSezoramu, ongumfowenu na?

28 Bhekani, uzothi kini, Cha.

29 Futhi niyothi kuye: Umbulele yini umfowenu na?

30 Futhi uyokuma enokwesaba, futhi engazi ukuthi uzothoni. Futhi bhekani, uyophika kini; futhi uyokwenza sengathi wethukile; nokho, uyothi kini akanacala.

31 Kodwa bhekani, niyomhlola, futhi niyothola igazi esiketini sezingubo zakhe.

32 Futhi senikubonile lokhu, niyokuthi: Liphumaphi leligazi na? Ucabanga ukuthi asazi ukuthi yigazi lomfowenu leli na?

33 Futhi emva kwalokho uyothuthumela, futhi uyobukeka ephaphathekile, sengathi ukufa sekufike kuye.

34 Futhi emva kwalokho niyothi: Ngenxa yalokhu kwesaba kanye nalokhu kuphaphatheka okusebusweni bakho, bheka, siyazi ukuthi unecala.

35 Futhi emva kwalokho ukwesaba okukhulu kuyomfikela; futhi emva kwalokho uyovuma kini, futhi angabe esaphika ukuthi nguyena obulele.

36 Futhi emva kwalokho uyosho kini, ukuthi mina, Nefi, angazi lutho mayelana naloludaba ngaphandle kokuthi lunikezwe kimi ngamandla kaNkulunkulu. Futhi emva kwalokho niyokwazi ukuthi ngingumuntu othembekile, futhi nokuthi ngithunyelwe kini nguNkulunkulu.

37 Futhi kwenzeka ukuthi bahamba bayokwenza, ngisho njengoba uNefi ebatshelele. Futhi bheka, amazwi ayewakhulumile ayeyiqiniso; ngokuba njengokwalawo mazwi nempela waphika; futhi phezu kwalokho njengokwalawo mazwi nempela wavuma.

38 Futhi waletswa ukuthi azozivumela ukuthi nguye uqobo lwakhe owayengumbulali, kangangokuthi labo abahlanu bakhululwa, futhi kanjalo noNefi.

Has Nephi, the pretended prophet, who doth prophesy so much evil concerning this people, agreed with thee, in the which ye have murdered Sezoram, who is your brother?

And behold, he shall say unto you, Nay.

And ye shall say unto him: Have ye murdered your brother?

And he shall stand with fear, and wist not what to say. And behold, he shall deny unto you; and he shall make as if he were astonished; nevertheless, he shall declare unto you that he is innocent.

But behold, ye shall examine him, and ye shall find blood upon the skirts of his cloak.

And when ye have seen this, ye shall say: From whence cometh this blood? Do we not know that it is the blood of your brother?

And then shall he tremble, and shall look pale, even as if death had come upon him.

And then shall ye say: Because of this fear and this paleness which has come upon your face, behold, we know that thou art guilty.

And then shall greater fear come upon him; and then shall he confess unto you, and deny no more that he has done this murder.

And then shall he say unto you, that I, Nephi, know nothing concerning the matter save it were given unto me by the power of God. And then shall ye know that I am an honest man, and that I am sent unto you from God.

And it came to pass that they went and did, even according as Nephi had said unto them. And behold, the words which he had said were true; for according to the words he did deny; and also according to the words he did confess.

And he was brought to prove that he himself was the very murderer, insomuch that the five were set at liberty, and also was Nephi.

39 Futhi kwaba khona abathile abangamaNefi
abakholelwa emazwini kaNefi; futhi kwakukhona
abanye futhi, abakholwa ngenxa yobufakazi balabo
abayisihlanu, ngokuba baphenduka ngesikhathi
besetlongweni.

40 Manje kwaba khona abanye phakathi kwabantu,
abathi uNefi wayengumphrofethi.

41 Futhi kwaba khona abanye abathi: Bhekani,
ungunkulunkulu, ngokuba ngaphandle kokuthi
engunkulunkulu ubengeke azazi zonke lezi zinto.
Ngokuba bhekani, usitshela imicabango yezinhliziyi
zethu, futhi phezu kwalokho wasitshela izinto; futhi
usesazise umbulali wangempela womahluleli wethu
omkhulu.

And there were some of the Nephites who be-
lieved on the words of Nephi; and there were some
also, who believed because of the testimony of the
five, for they had been converted while they were in
prison.

And now there were some among the people, who
said that Nephi was a prophet.

And there were others who said: Behold, he is a
god, for except he was a god he could not know of all
things. For behold, he has told us the thoughts of our
hearts, and also has told us things; and even he has
brought unto our knowledge the true murderer of
our chief judge.

Helamani 10

- 1 Futhi kwenzeka ukuthi kwaba khona uqhekeko phakathi kwabantu, kangangokuthi bahlukana phakathi baya ngapha nangapha futhi bahamba izindlela zabo, beshiya uNefi yedwa, ngesikhathi esamile phakathi kwabo.
- 2 Futhi kwenzeka ukuthi uNefi naye wahamba eyakhe indlela wabheka ngasendlini yakhe, ezindla ngalezo zinto iNkosi eyayimkhombise zona.
- 3 Futhi kwenzeka ngesikhathi esazindla—futhi ekhathazekile kakhulu ngenxa yenkohlakalo yabantu bamaNefi, imisebenzi yabo efihlakele yobumnyama, kanye nokubulala kwabo, kanye nokuphanga kwabo, kanye nangazo zonke izinhlobo zobubi—futhi kwenzeka ngesikhathi esazindla enhliziyweni yakhe, bheka, kweza izwi kuye lithi:
- 4 Ubusisiwe, Nefi, ngalezo zinto ozenzile; ngokuba ngibonile ukuthi ulimemezele kanjani izwi ngokungakhathali, engikunike lona, kulaba bantu. Futhi awubesabanga, futhi awufunanga ukulondoloza impilo yakho, kodwa ufune intando yami, kanye nokugcina imiyalelo yami.
- 5 Manje, ngoba wenze lokhu ngokungakhathali okungaka, bheka, ngizokubusisa ingunaphakade; futhi ngizokwenza ube namandla ngamazwi kanye nangokwenza, ngokholo kanye nangokwemisebenzi; yebo, ngisho nokuthi zonke izinto uyokwenzelwa zona ngokwezwi lakho, ngokuba awunakucela lokho okuphambene nentando yami.
- 6 Bheka, wena unguNefi, mina nginguNkulunkulu. Bheka, ngikumemezela lokhu kuwe phambi kwezingelosi zami, ukuthi uyokuba namandla phezu kwalabantu, futhi uyoshaya umhlaba ngendlala, kanye nangomashaya bhuqe, kanye nangokuwubhubhisa, ngokuhambisana nenkohlakalo yalabantu.
- 7 Bheka, ngikunika amandla, okuthi noma ngabe yini oyoyibopha emhlabeni iyoboshwa nasezulwini; futhi noma ngabe yini oyoyikhulula emhlabeni iyokhululwa nasezulwini; futhi ngenxa yalokhu uyokuba namandla phakathi kwalabantu.

Helaman 10

And it came to pass that there arose a division among the people, insomuch that they divided hither and thither and went their ways, leaving Nephi alone, as he was standing in the midst of them.

And it came to pass that Nephi went his way towards his own house, pondering upon the things which the Lord had shown unto him.

And it came to pass as he was thus pondering—being much cast down because of the wickedness of the people of the Nephites, their secret works of darkness, and their murderings, and their plunderings, and all manner of iniquities—and it came to pass as he was thus pondering in his heart, behold, a voice came unto him saying:

Blessed art thou, Nephi, for those things which thou hast done; for I have beheld how thou hast with unwearyingness declared the word, which I have given unto thee, unto this people. And thou hast not feared them, and hast not sought thine own life, but hast sought my will, and to keep my commandments.

And now, because thou hast done this with such unwearyingness, behold, I will bless thee forever; and I will make thee mighty in word and in deed, in faith and in works; yea, even that all things shall be done unto thee according to thy word, for thou shalt not ask that which is contrary to my will.

Behold, thou art Nephi, and I am God. Behold, I declare it unto thee in the presence of mine angels, that ye shall have power over this people, and shall smite the earth with famine, and with pestilence, and destruction, according to the wickedness of this people.

Behold, I give unto you power, that whatsoever ye shall seal on earth shall be sealed in heaven; and whatsoever ye shall loose on earth shall be loosed in heaven; and thus shall ye have power among this people.

- 8 Futhi ngenxa yalokhu, uma uyokuthi kulelithempeli liyoqhekezeka kabili, kuyokwenzeka.
- 9 Futhi uma uyokuthi kulentaba, Dilikela phansi ulingane, kuyokwenzeka.
- 10 Futhi bheka, uma uyokuthi uNkulunkulu uyobashaya laba bantu, kuyokwenzeka.
- 11 Manje bheka, ngiyakuyala, ukuthi uyohamba futhi umemezele kulaba bantu, ukuthi isho kanje iNkosi uNkulunkulu, onguMnininandla Onke: Ngaphandle kokuthi niphenduke nizoshaywa, ngisho nangembubhiso.
- 12 Futhi bheka, manje kwenzeka ukuthi ngesikhathi iNkosi isiwakhulumile lamazwi kuNefi, wema futhi akabange esaya endlini yakhe, kodwa nempela wabuyela kuzo lezo zixuku ezazisakazeke yonke indawo ebusweni bezwe, futhi waqala ukumemezela kuzo izwi leNkosi elalikhulunye kuye, mayelana nokubhujiswa kwabo uma babengaphenduki.
- 13 Manje bheka, naphezu kwaleso simangaliso esikhulu uNefi ayesenzile sokubatshele mayelana nokufa komahluleli omkhulu, baziqinisa izinhliziyi zabo futhi bangawalalela amazwi eNkosi.
- 14 Ngakho-ke uNefi walimemezela kubo izwi leNkosi, ethi: Ngaphandle kokuthi niphenduke, isho kanje iNkosi, nizoshaywa ngisho nangembubhiso.
- 15 Futhi kwenzeka ukuthi ngesikhathi uNefi eselimezele kubo izwi, bheka, baqhubeka nokuqinisa izinhliziyi zabo futhi bangafuna nokuwalalela amazwi akhe; ngakho-ke bamethuka, futhi bafuna ukumbamba ukuze bamphonse etilongweni.
- 16 Kodwa bheka, amandla kaNkulunkulu ayenaye, futhi abakwazanga ukumthatha bamphonse etilongweni, ngokuba wathathwa nguMoya futhi wemukiswa waya kude waphuma phakathi kwabo.
- 17 Futhi kwenzeka ukuthi ngalendlela wahamba eseMoyeni, esuka esixukwini eya kwesinye isixuku, ememezela izwi likaNkulunkulu, kwaze kwaba ulimemezela kubo bonke, noma ulithumela kubo bonke abantu.

And thus, if ye shall say unto this temple it shall be rent in twain, it shall be done.

And if ye shall say unto this mountain, Be thou cast down and become smooth, it shall be done.

And behold, if ye shall say that God shall smite this people, it shall come to pass.

And now behold, I command you, that ye shall go and declare unto this people, that thus saith the Lord God, who is the Almighty: Except ye repent ye shall be smitten, even unto destruction.

And behold, now it came to pass that when the Lord had spoken these words unto Nephi, he did stop and did not go unto his own house, but did return unto the multitudes who were scattered about upon the face of the land, and began to declare unto them the word of the Lord which had been spoken unto him, concerning their destruction if they did not repent.

Now behold, notwithstanding that great miracle which Nephi had done in telling them concerning the death of the chief judge, they did harden their hearts and did not hearken unto the words of the Lord.

Therefore Nephi did declare unto them the word of the Lord, saying: Except ye repent, thus saith the Lord, ye shall be smitten even unto destruction.

And it came to pass that when Nephi had declared unto them the word, behold, they did still harden their hearts and would not hearken unto his words; therefore they did revile against him, and did seek to lay their hands upon him that they might cast him into prison.

But behold, the power of God was with him, and they could not take him to cast him into prison, for he was taken by the Spirit and conveyed away out of the midst of them.

And it came to pass that thus he did go forth in the Spirit, from multitude to multitude, declaring the word of God, even until he had declared it unto them all, or sent it forth among all the people.

18 Futhi kwenzeka ukuthi abafunanga ukuwalalela amazwi akhe; futhi kwaqala ukuthi kube khona imibango, kangokuthi behlukana ngempikiswano futhi baqala ukubulalana omunye nomunye ngenkemba.

19 Futhi waphela kanjalo-ke unyaka wamashumi ayisikhombisa nanye wokubusa kwabehluleli kubantu bakwaNefi.

And it came to pass that they would not hearken unto his words; and there began to be contentions, insomuch that they were divided against themselves and began to slay one another with the sword.

And thus ended the seventy and first year of the reign of the judges over the people of Nephi.

Helamani 11

- 1 Manje kwenzeka ngonyaka wamashumi ayisikhombisa nambili wokubusa kwabehluleli ukuthi imibango yakhula, kangangokuthi kwaba khona izimpi kulo lonke izwe phakathi kwabo bonke abantu baNefi.
- 2 Futhi kwakuyileli qembu eliyimfihlo labaphangi elaliqhubeka nalomsebenzi wembubhiso kanye nenkohlakalo. Futhi lempi yaqhubeka wonke lowo nyaka; futhi yaphinda yaqhubeka nangonyaka wamashumi ayisikhombisa nantathu.
- 3 Futhi kwenzeka ukuthi ngalonyaka uNefi wakhala eNkosini, ethi:
- 4 O Nkosi, ungavumi ukuthi labantu babulawe ngenkemba; kodwa O Nkosi, esikhundleni salokhu yenza kube khona indlala ezweni, ukuze ibaphehlele ekukhumbuleni iNkosi uNkulunkulu wabo, futhi mhlawumbe bazophenduka futhi babuyele kuwe.
- 5 Futhi lokho kwenzeka, njengokwamazwi kaNefi. Futhi kwaba khona indlala enkulu ezweni, phakathi kwabo bonke abantu baNefi. Futhi ngenxa yalokho ngonyaka wamashumi ayisikhombisa nane indlala yaqhubeka, futhi umsebenzi wokubulala ngenkemba nempela waphela kodwa kwaba kubi kakhulu ngendlala.
- 6 Futhi lomsebenzi wembubhiso nempela waphinda waqhubeka nangonyaka wamashumi ayisikhombisa nanhlanu. Ngokuba umhlaba washaywa kangangoba woma, futhi awuzange ukukhiphe okusanhlamvu ngesikhathi salokho okusanhlamvu; futhi umhlaba wonke washaywa, ngisho naphakathi kwamaLamani futhi kanjalo naphakathi kwamaNefi, kangangokuthi bashaywa ngendlela yokuthi bafa ngezinkulungwane kulezo zingxenywe zezwe ezazinobubi obukhulu.
- 7 Futhi kwenzeka ukuthi abantu babona ukuthi base bezofa ngenxa yendlala, futhi baqala ukukhumbula iNkosi uNkulunkulu wabo; futhi baqala bawakhumbula amazwi kaNefi.

Helaman 11

And now it came to pass in the seventy and second year of the reign of the judges that the contentions did increase, insomuch that there were wars throughout all the land among all the people of Nephi.

And it was this secret band of robbers who did carry on this work of destruction and wickedness. And this war did last all that year; and in the seventy and third year it did also last.

And it came to pass that in this year Nephi did cry unto the Lord, saying:

O Lord, do not suffer that this people shall be destroyed by the sword; but O Lord, rather let there be a famine in the land, to stir them up in remembrance of the Lord their God, and perhaps they will repent and turn unto thee.

And so it was done, according to the words of Nephi. And there was a great famine upon the land, among all the people of Nephi. And thus in the seventy and fourth year the famine did continue, and the work of destruction did cease by the sword but became sore by famine.

And this work of destruction did also continue in the seventy and fifth year. For the earth was smitten that it was dry, and did not yield forth grain in the season of grain; and the whole earth was smitten, even among the Lamanites as well as among the Nephites, so that they were smitten that they did perish by thousands in the more wicked parts of the land.

And it came to pass that the people saw that they were about to perish by famine, and they began to remember the Lord their God; and they began to remember the words of Nephi.

- 8 Futhi abantu baqala ukuncenga abehluleli babo abakhulu kanye nabaholi babo, ukuthi bathi kuNefi: Bheka, siyazi ukuthi wena ungumuntu kaNkulunkulu, ngakho-ke khala eNkosini uNkulunkulu wethu ukuthi ayisuse kithi lendlala, hleze wonke amazwi owawakhuluma mayelana nokubhujiswa kwethu afezeke.
- 9 Futhi kwenzeka ukuthi abehluleli nempela basho kuNefi, njengokwamazwi ababenesifiso sawo. Futhi kwenzeka ukuthi ngesikhathi uNefi esebona ukuthi abantu base bephendukile futhi nempela bazithoba ngezingubo zamasaka, wakhala futhi eNkosini ethi:
- 10 O Nkosi, bheka labantu baphendukile; futhi sebelishanelile iqembu likaGadiyantoni phakathi kwabo kangangokuthi selize laphela nya, futhi sebewagqibile amasu alo ayimfihlo phansi.
- 11 Manje, O Nkosi, ngenxa yalokhu kuthobeka kwabo ungayisusa yini intukuthelo yakho, bese wenza intukuthelo yakho yaneliswe ngokubhujiswa kwalabo bantu ababi ovele usubabulele.
- 12 O Nkosi, ungayisusa yini intukuthelo yakho, yebo, intukuthelo yakho enkulu kakhulu, futhi wenze ukuthi lendlala iphele kulelizwe.
- 13 O Nkosi, ungangizwa yini, futhi wenze ukuthi kwenzeke njengokwamazwi ami, futhi uthumele imvula ebusweni bomhlaba, ukuze ukhiphe izithelo zawo, kanye nokusanhlamvu kwawo ngesikhathi sokusanhlamvu.
- 14 O Nkosi, wawezwa amazwi ami ngesikhathi ngithi, Makube khona indlala, ukuze umashayabhuqe wenkemba uphele; futhi ngiyazi ukuthi, ngisho nangalesi sikhathi, uzowezwa amazwi ami, ngokuba wathi: Uma labantu bephenduka ngizobasindisa.
- 15 Yebo, O Nkosi, futhi uyabona ukuthi sebephendukile, ngenxa yendlala kanye nomashayabhuqe kanye nembubhiso eze kubo.
- 16 Manje, O Nkosi, ungayisusa yini intukuthelo yakho, ubalinge futhi ukuthi bayokusebenzela na? Futhi uma kunjalo, O Nkosi, ungababusisa ngokwamazwi akho owashilo.

And the people began to plead with their chief judges and their leaders, that they would say unto Nephi: Behold, we know that thou art a man of God, and therefore cry unto the Lord our God that he turn away from us this famine, lest all the words which thou hast spoken concerning our destruction be fulfilled.

And it came to pass that the judges did say unto Nephi, according to the words which had been desired. And it came to pass that when Nephi saw that the people had repented and did humble themselves in sackcloth, he cried again unto the Lord, saying:

O Lord, behold this people repenteth; and they have swept away the band of Gadianton from amongst them insomuch that they have become extinct, and they have concealed their secret plans in the earth.

Now, O Lord, because of this their humility wilt thou turn away thine anger, and let thine anger be appeased in the destruction of those wicked men whom thou hast already destroyed.

O Lord, wilt thou turn away thine anger, yea, thy fierce anger, and cause that this famine may cease in this land.

O Lord, wilt thou hearken unto me, and cause that it may be done according to my words, and send forth rain upon the face of the earth, that she may bring forth her fruit, and her grain in the season of grain.

O Lord, thou didst hearken unto my words when I said, Let there be a famine, that the pestilence of the sword might cease; and I know that thou wilt, even at this time, hearken unto my words, for thou saidst that: If this people repent I will spare them.

Yea, O Lord, and thou seest that they have repented, because of the famine and the pestilence and destruction which has come unto them.

And now, O Lord, wilt thou turn away thine anger, and try again if they will serve thee? And if so, O Lord, thou canst bless them according to thy words which thou hast said.

- 17 Futhi kwenzeka ukuthi ngonyaka wamashumi ayisikhombisa nesithupha iNkosi nempela yayisusa intukuthelo yayo kubantu, futhi yenza ukuthi imvula ine emhlabeni, kangangokuthi wazikhipha izithelo zawo ngesikhathi sezithelo zawo. Futhi kwenzeka ukuthi nempela wakukhipha okusanhlamvu kwawo ngesikhathi sokusanhlamvu kwawo.
- 18 Futhi bheka, abantu bathokoza futhi bamdumisa uNkulunkulu, futhi ubuso bonke bezwe bagcwala injabulo; futhi abazange besafuna nanini ukumbulala uNefi, kodwa bamthatha njengomphrofethi omkhulu, kanye nomuntu kaNkulunkulu, onamandla amakhulu kanye negunya alinikeziwe elivela kuNkulunkulu.
- 19 Futhi bheka, uLehi, umfowabo, wayengekho ngisho nakancane ngemva kwakhe ngokwezinto eziphatelene nokulunga.
- 20 Futhi ngalendlela kwenzeka ukuthi abantu baNefi baqala ukuphumelela futhi ezweni, futhi baqala ukwakha izindawo zabo ezase zichithiwe, futhi baqala ukuzalana futhi banda, kwaze kwaba bagcwala ubuso bezwe, ngasenyakatho kanye nangaseningizimu, kusukela olwandle olusentshonalanga kuya olwandle olusempumalanga.
- 21 Futhi kwenzeka ukuthi unyaka wamashumi ayisikhombisa nesithupha waphela ngokuthula. Futhi unyaka wamashumi ayisikhombisa nesikhombisa waqala ngokuthula; futhi ibandla nempela landa lagcwala ubuso bezwe lonke; futhi inxenye enkulu yabantu, amaNefi kanye namaLamani, baba ngabe bandla; futhi baba nokuthula okukhulu kakhulu ezweni; futhi waphela kanjalo-ke unyaka wamashumi ayisikhombisa nesikhombisa.
- 22 Futhi baphinda baba nokuthula ngonyaka wamashumi ayisikhombisa nesishiyangalombili, ngaphandle kwemibango emincane mayelana namaphuzu ezimfundiso ezazibekwe phansi ngabaphrofethi.

And it came to pass that in the seventy and sixth year the Lord did turn away his anger from the people, and caused that rain should fall upon the earth, insomuch that it did bring forth her fruit in the season of her fruit. And it came to pass that it did bring forth her grain in the season of her grain.

And behold, the people did rejoice and glorify God, and the whole face of the land was filled with rejoicing; and they did no more seek to destroy Nephi, but they did esteem him as a great prophet, and a man of God, having great power and authority given unto him from God.

And behold, Lehi, his brother, was not a whit behind him as to things pertaining to righteousness.

And thus it did come to pass that the people of Nephi began to prosper again in the land, and began to build up their waste places, and began to multiply and spread, even until they did cover the whole face of the land, both on the northward and on the southward, from the sea west to the sea east.

And it came to pass that the seventy and sixth year did end in peace. And the seventy and seventh year began in peace; and the church did spread throughout the face of all the land; and the more part of the people, both the Nephites and the Lamanites, did belong to the church; and they did have exceedingly great peace in the land; and thus ended the seventy and seventh year.

And also they had peace in the seventy and eighth year, save it were a few contentions concerning the points of doctrine which had been laid down by the prophets.

- 23 Futhi ngonyaka wamashumi ayisikhombisa nesishiyagalolunye kwaqala ukuthi kube khona ukungezwani okukhulu. Kodwa kwenzeka ukuthi uNefi noLehi, kanye nabaningi babazalwane babo ababazi mayelana namaphuzu ayiqiniso ezimfundiso, bethola nezambulo eziningi nsuku zonke, ngakho-ke bashumayela kubantu, kangangokuthi bakuqeda ukungezwani kwabo kuwo lowo nyaka.
- 24 Futhi kwenzeka ukuthi ngonyaka wamashumi ayisishiyangalombili wokubusa kwabehluleli kubantu baNefi, kwabakhona idlanzana elithize lamambuka elalisuka kubantu baNefi, okwase kuyiminyaka lahamba laya kumaLamani, futhi lazibiza ngamaLamani, futhi kanjalo nedlanzana elithize okwakungabe nzalo yangempela yamaLamani, bephehlelwe entukuthelweni yiwo, noma yilawo mambuka, ngakho-ke basusa impi nabafowabo.
- 25 Futhi babebulala futhi bephanga; futhi emva kwalokho babephindela emuva ezintabeni, futhi beya ehlane kanye nasezindaweni ezifihlakele, becasha ukuze bangatholakali, bethola nsuku zonke ukwengezwa esibalweni sabo, kangangoba kwakubakhona abahlubuki ababe hamba beya kubo.
- 26 Futhi ngenxa yalokhu ngokuhamba kwesikhathi, yebo, ngisho ngesikhathi esingeminyaka mingaki, base beyiqembu elikhulu kakhulu labaphangi; futhi bawacwaninga wonke amasu ayimfihlo kaGadiyantoni; futhi ngalendlela baba ngabaphangi baGadiyantoni.
- 27 Manje bheka, labaphangi benza inxushunxushu enkulu, yebo, ngisho nokonakaliswa okukhulu phakathi kwabantu baNefi, futhi kanjalo naphakathi kwabantu bamaLamani.
- 28 Futhi kwenzeka ukuthi kwadingeka ukuthi uqedwe lomsebenzi wokonakaliswa; ngakho-ke bathumela ibutho lamadoda anamandla ehlane kanye nasezintabeni ukuyofuna leli qembu labaphangi, futhi libulawe.
- 29 Kodwa bheka, kwenzeka ukuthi ngawo kanye lowo nyaka baqhutshwa baphindiswa emuva ngisho nasemazweni abo. Futhi waphela kanjalo-ke unyaka wamashumi ayisishiyangalombili wokubusa kwabehluleli kubantu baNefi.

And in the seventy and ninth year there began to be much strife. But it came to pass that Nephi and Lehi, and many of their brethren who knew concerning the true points of doctrine, having many revelations daily, therefore they did preach unto the people, insomuch that they did put an end to their strife in that same year.

And it came to pass that in the eightieth year of the reign of the judges over the people of Nephi, there were a certain number of the dissenters from the people of Nephi, who had some years before gone over unto the Lamanites, and taken upon themselves the name of Lamanites, and also a certain number who were real descendants of the Lamanites, being stirred up to anger by them, or by those dissenters, therefore they commenced a war with their brethren.

And they did commit murder and plunder; and then they would retreat back into the mountains, and into the wilderness and secret places, hiding themselves that they could not be discovered, receiving daily an addition to their numbers, inasmuch as there were dissenters that went forth unto them.

And thus in time, yea, even in the space of not many years, they became an exceedingly great band of robbers; and they did search out all the secret plans of Gadianton; and thus they became robbers of Gadianton.

Now behold, these robbers did make great havoc, yea, even great destruction among the people of Nephi, and also among the people of the Lamanites.

And it came to pass that it was expedient that there should be a stop put to this work of destruction; therefore they sent an army of strong men into the wilderness and upon the mountains to search out this band of robbers, and to destroy them.

But behold, it came to pass that in that same year they were driven back even into their own lands. And thus ended the eightieth year of the reign of the judges over the people of Nephi.

- 30 Futhi kwenzeka ekuqaleni konyaka wamashumi ayisishiyangalombili nanye bahamba futhi bayolwa naleliqembu labaphangi, futhi babulala abaningi; futhi kanjalo nabo bavakashelwa ngokubhujiswa okukhulu.
- 31 Futhi baphoqeleka ukuthi baphume futhi ehlane nasezintabeni babuyele emazweni abo, ngenxa yesibalo esikhulu kakhulu salabo baphangi abase begcwele ezintabeni kanye nasehlane.
- 32 Futhi kwenzeka ukuthi waphela kanjalo-ke lonyaka. Futhi labaphangi baqhubeka nokwanda futhi bakhula baqina, kangangokuthi bawahlakaza wonke amabutho amaNefi, futhi kanjalo nawamaLamani; futhi badala ukwesaba okukhulu kubantu ebusweni bezwe lonke.
- 33 Yebo, ngokuba babevakashela izinxenye eziningi zezwe, futhi benza ukonakaliswa okukhulu kakhulu kubantu; yebo, bebulala abaningi, futhi bethwala abanye beyobathumbela ehlane, yebo, futhi ikakhulukazi abafazi babo kanye nabantwana babo.
- 34 Manje lobubi obungaka, obeza ebantwini ngenxa yobubi babo, kwabaphelela futhi ekukhumbuleni iNkosi uNkulunkulu wabo.
- 35 Futhi waphela kanjalo-ke unyaka wamashumi ayisishiyangalombili nanye wokubusa kwabehluleli.
- 36 Futhi ngonyaka wamashumi ayisishiyangalombili nambili baqala futhi bayikhohlwa iNkosi uNkulunkulu wabo. Futhi ngonyaka wamashumi ayisishiyangalombili nantathu baqala bakhula baqina eubini. Futhi ngonyaka wamashumi ayisishiyangalombili nane abazange bazilungise izindlela zabo.
- 37 Futhi kwenzeka ngonyaka wamashumi ayisishiyangalombili nanhlanu bakhula beya ngokuqina ekuziqhenyeni kwabo, kanye nasenkohlakalweni yabo; futhi ngalendlela base bevuthelwa ukubhujiswa futhi.
- 38 Futhi waphela kanjalo-ke unyaka wamashumi ayisishiyangalombili nanhlanu.

And it came to pass in the commencement of the eighty and first year they did go forth again against this band of robbers, and did destroy many; and they were also visited with much destruction.

And they were again obliged to return out of the wilderness and out of the mountains unto their own lands, because of the exceeding greatness of the numbers of those robbers who infested the mountains and the wilderness.

And it came to pass that thus ended this year. And the robbers did still increase and wax strong, inso-much that they did defy the whole armies of the Nephites, and also of the Lamanites; and they did cause great fear to come unto the people upon all the face of the land.

Yea, for they did visit many parts of the land, and did do great destruction unto them; yea, did kill many, and did carry away others captive into the wilderness, yea, and more especially their women and their children.

Now this great evil, which came unto the people because of their iniquity, did stir them up again in remembrance of the Lord their God.

And thus ended the eighty and first year of the reign of the judges.

And in the eighty and second year they began again to forget the Lord their God. And in the eighty and third year they began to wax strong in iniquity. And in the eighty and fourth year they did not mend their ways.

And it came to pass in the eighty and fifth year they did wax stronger and stronger in their pride, and in their wickedness; and thus they were ripening again for destruction.

And thus ended the eighty and fifth year.

Helamani 12

- 1 Futhi ngalendlela siyabona ukuthi azinaqiniso kangakanani, futhi kanjalo nokungaqini kwezinhliziyzo zabantwana babantu; yebo, siyabona ukuthi iNkosi ngobuhle bayo obukhulu obungapheli iyababusisa futhi iyabaphumelelisa labo ababeka ithemba labo kuyo.
- 2 Yebo, futhi singabona ngaso kanye lesi sikhathi uma isiphumelelisa abantu bayo, yebo, ngokwanda kwamasi abo, imihlambi yezimvu zabo kanye nezinkomo zabo, kanye negolide, kanye nesiliva, kanye nazo zonke izinto eziyigugu ezinhlobonhlobo kanye nobuciko; isindisa izimpilo zabo, futhi ibakhulula ibakhipha ezandleni zezitha zabo; ithambisa izinhliziyzo zezitha zabo ukuze zingaziphaki izimpi zilwe nabo; yebo, futhi ukuphetha, yenza zonke izinto yenzela inhlalakahle kanye nenjabulo yabantu bayo; yebo, ngaleso sikhathi kuba yisikhathi lapho beqinisa izinhliziyzo zabo, futhi bakhohlwe yiNkosi uNkulunkulu wabo, futhi banyathele ngaphansi kwezinyawo zabo oNgcwele—yebo, futhi lokhu ngenxa yokukhululeka kwabo, kanye nokuphumelela kwabo okukhulu kakhulu.
- 3 Futhi ngalendlela siyabona ukuthi ngaphandle kokuthi iNkosi ibajezise abantu bayo ngezinhlupheko eziningi, yebo, ngaphandle kokuthi ibavakashele ngokufa kanye nangokwesaba, kanye nangendlala kanye nangayo yonke inhlobo kamashayabhuqe, abanakuyikhumbula.
- 4 O bayiziwula kangakanani, futhi bayize kangakanani, futhi banobubi kangakanani, futhi banobudeveli, futhi bashesha kangakanani ukwenza ububi, futhi baphuza kangakanani ukwenza okuhle, abantwana babantu; yebo, bashesha kangakanani ukulalela amazwi omubi, futhi babeke izinhliziyzo zabo ezintweni eziyize zomhlaba!
- 5 Yebo, bashesha kangakanani ukuthi baphakame baziqhenye; yebo, bashesha kangakanani ukuziqhayisa, kanye nokwenza konke okubi; futhi baphuza kangakanani ukuyikhumbula iNkosi uNkulunkulu wabo, kanye nokuthi balalele iziyalo zayo, yebo, baphuza kangakanani ukuhamba ezindleleni zokuhlakanipha!

Helaman 12

And thus we can behold how false, and also the unsteadiness of the hearts of the children of men; yea, we can see that the Lord in his great infinite goodness doth bless and prosper those who put their trust in him.

Yea, and we may see at the very time when he doth prosper his people, yea, in the increase of their fields, their flocks and their herds, and in gold, and in silver, and in all manner of precious things of every kind and art; sparing their lives, and delivering them out of the hands of their enemies; softening the hearts of their enemies that they should not declare wars against them; yea, and in fine, doing all things for the welfare and happiness of his people; yea, then is the time that they do harden their hearts, and do forget the Lord their God, and do trample under their feet the Holy One—yea, and this because of their ease, and their exceedingly great prosperity.

And thus we see that except the Lord doth chasten his people with many afflictions, yea, except he doth visit them with death and with terror, and with famine and with all manner of pestilence, they will not remember him.

O how foolish, and how vain, and how evil, and devilish, and how quick to do iniquity, and how slow to do good, are the children of men; yea, how quick to hearken unto the words of the evil one, and to set their hearts upon the vain things of the world!

Yea, how quick to be lifted up in pride; yea, how quick to boast, and do all manner of that which is iniquity; and how slow are they to remember the Lord their God, and to give ear unto his counsels, yea, how slow to walk in wisdom's paths!

6 Bheka, abafuni ukuthi iNkosi uNkulunkulu wabo, owabadalayo, abaphathe futhi abuse phezu kwabo; naphezu kobuhle bakhe obukhulu kanye nomusa wakhe kubo, bazishaya indiva iziyalo zakhe, futhi abafuni ukuthi abe ngumqondisi wabo.

7 O kukhulu kangakanani ukungabi lutho kwabantwana babantu; yebo, ngisho bayize kunothuli lomhlabathi.

8 Ngokuba bheka, uthuli lomhlabathi luyayaluza luya ngapha nangapha, luhlukana phakathi naphakathi, ngokuyalwa nguNkulunkulu wethu omkhulu futhi ongunaphakade.

9 Yebo, bheka ngezwi lakhe amagquma kanye nezintaba kuyadikiza futhi kuzamazame.

10 Futhi ngamandla ezwi lakhe ziyehlukana, futhi zilingane, yebo, zibe ngisho njengethafa.

11 Yebo, ngamandla ezwi lakhe umhlaba wonke uyamazama;

12 Yebo, ngamandla ezwi lakhe, izisekelo ziyanyakaza, ngisho phakathi naphakathi imbala.

13 Yebo, futhi uma ethi kuwo umhlaba—Phenduka—uyaphenduka.

14 Yebo, uma ethi kuwo umhlaba—Uzobuyela emuva, ukuze welule usuku ngamahora amaningi—kuyenzeka;

15 Futhi ngenxa yalokhu, ngokwezwi lakhe umhlaba uyahlehla, futhi kubonakale kumuntu sengathi ilanga limile alinyakazi; yebo, futhi bheka, lokhu kunjalo; ngokuba ngempela ngumhlaba ophendukayo hhayi ilanga.

16 Futhi bheka, futhi, uma ethi emanzini ajule kakhulu—Hwamuka—kuyenzeka.

17 Bheka, uma ethi kulentaba—Phakama, uze futhi uwele phezu kwalelo dolobha, ukuze limbozeke—bheka kuyenzeka.

18 Futhi bheka, uma umuntu efihla ingcebo phansi, futhi uma iNkosi iyothi—Mayiqalekiswe, ngenxa yobubi balowo oyifihlileyo—bheka, iyoqalekiswa.

19 Futhi uma iNkosi iyothi—Mayiqalekiswe, ukuze kungabi bikho muntu oyoyithola kusukela manje naphakade—bheka, akukho muntu oyitholayo kusuka ngaleso sikhathi naphakade.

Behold, they do not desire that the Lord their God, who hath created them, should rule and reign over them; notwithstanding his great goodness and his mercy towards them, they do set at naught his counsels, and they will not that he should be their guide.

O how great is the nothingness of the children of men; yea, even they are less than the dust of the earth.

For behold, the dust of the earth moveth hither and thither, to the dividing asunder, at the command of our great and everlasting God.

Yea, behold at his voice do the hills and the mountains tremble and quake.

And by the power of his voice they are broken up, and become smooth, yea, even like unto a valley.

Yea, by the power of his voice doth the whole earth shake;

Yea, by the power of his voice, do the foundations rock, even to the very center.

Yea, and if he say unto the earth—Move—it is moved.

Yea, if he say unto the earth—Thou shalt go back, that it lengthen out the day for many hours—it is done;

And thus, according to his word the earth goeth back, and it appeareth unto man that the sun standeth still; yea, and behold, this is so; for surely it is the earth that moveth and not the sun.

And behold, also, if he say unto the waters of the great deep—Be thou dried up—it is done.

Behold, if he say unto this mountain—Be thou raised up, and come over and fall upon that city, that it be buried up—behold it is done.

And behold, if a man hide up a treasure in the earth, and the Lord shall say—Let it be accursed, because of the iniquity of him who hath hid it up—behold, it shall be accursed.

And if the Lord shall say—Be thou accursed, that no man shall find thee from this time henceforth and forever—behold, no man getteth it henceforth and forever.

- 20 Futhi bheka, uma iNkosi iyothi kumuntu
—Ngenxa yobubi bakho, uyoqalekiswa
ingunaphakade—kuyokwenzeka.
- 21 Futhi uma iNkosi iyothi—Ngenxa yobubi bakho
uzosuswa phambi kwami—iyokwenza ukuthi kube
njalo.
- 22 Futhi maye kulowo eyokusho kuye lokhu,
ngokuba kuyoba njalo kulowo oyokwenza ububi,
futhi akanakusindiswa; ngakho-ke, ngalesi sizathu,
ukuze abantu basindiswe, ukuphenduka
kumenyezelwe.
- 23 Ngakho-ke, babusisiwe labo abazophenduka futhi
balizwe izwi leNkosi uNkulunkulu wabo; ngokuba
yibo labo abayosindiswa.
- 24 Futhi sengathi uNkulunkulu angavuma,
ngokobungcwele bakhe obukhulu, ukuthi abantu
balethwe ekuphendukeni kanye nasemisebenzini
emihle, ukuze kubuyiselwe kubo umusa ngomusa,
ngokwemisebenzi yabo.
- 25 Futhi ngifisa ukuthi bonke abantu basindiswe.
Kodwa siyafunda ukuthi ngosuku olukhulu
nolokugcina kuyoba khona abayophonswa
ngaphandle, yebo, abayokhishelwa ngaphandle
basuswe eNkosini;
- 26 Yebo, abayothunyelwa esimweni sosizi
olungapheliyo, bagcwalise amazwi athi: Labo
abenza okuhle bayokuba nokuphila okuphakade;
futhi labo abenza ububi bayothola usizi lwaphakade.
Futhi kunjalo. Amen.

And behold, if the Lord shall say unto a man—
Because of thine iniquities, thou shalt be accursed
forever—it shall be done.

And if the Lord shall say—Because of thine iniqui-
ties thou shalt be cut off from my presence—he will
cause that it shall be so.

And wo unto him to whom he shall say this, for it
shall be unto him that will do iniquity, and he cannot
be saved; therefore, for this cause, that men might be
saved, hath repentance been declared.

Therefore, blessed are they who will repent and
hearken unto the voice of the Lord their God; for
these are they that shall be saved.

And may God grant, in his great fulness, that men
might be brought unto repentance and good works,
that they might be restored unto grace for grace, ac-
cording to their works.

And I would that all men might be saved. But we
read that in the great and last day there are some who
shall be cast out, yea, who shall be cast off from the
presence of the Lord;

Yea, who shall be consigned to a state of endless
misery, fulfilling the words which say: They that
have done good shall have everlasting life; and they
that have done evil shall have everlasting damnation.
And thus it is. Amen.

Helamani 13

- 1 Manje kwenzeka ngonyaka wamashumi ayisishiyangalombili nesithupha, amaNefi ayesalokhu ehleli ebubini, yebo, ebubini obukhulu, ngesikhathi amaLamani wona ayezama ukugcina imiyalelo kaNkulunkulu ngokucophelela, ngokomthetho kaMose.
- 2 Futhi kwenzeka ukuthi ngawo lo nyaka kwaba khona othile onguSamuweli, umLamani, oweza ezweni lakwaZarahemla, futhi waqala ukushumayela kubantu. Futhi kwenzeka ukuthi washumayela, izinsuku eziningi, ukuphenduka kubantu, kodwa bamxosha bamkhiphela ngaphandle, futhi wayesezobuyela ezweni lakhe.
- 3 Kodwa bheka, izwi leNkosi leza kuye, okwaba nomphumela wokuthi kufanele abuyele futhi, futhi aphrofethe kubantu noma yiziphi izinto ezaziyo fika enhliziyweni yakhe.
- 4 Futhi kwenzeka ukuthi abazange bamvumele ukuthi angene edolobheni; ngakho-ke wahamba wayogibela odongeni lwalo, futhi welulela phambili isandla sakhe futhi wakhala ngezwi elikhulu, futhi waphrofetha kubantu lezo zinto iNkosi eyazifaka enhliziyweni yakhe.
- 5 Futhi wathi kubo: Bhekani, mina, Samuweli, umLamani, ngikhuluma amazwi iNkosi ewafaka enhliziyweni yami; futhi bhekani ikufake enhliziyweni yami ukuthi ngisho kulaba bantu ukuthi inkemba yokulunga ilengela phezu kwabo labantu; futhi iminyaka engamakhulu amane ngeke idlule ngaphandle kokuthi inkemba yokulunga iwele phezu kwalabantu.
- 6 Yebo, ukubhujiswa okunzima kulinde labantu, futhi ngempela kuyeza kulaba bantu, futhi ayikho into engasindisa labantu ngaphandle kokuphenduka kanye nokholo eNkosini uJesu Kristu, ozoza nakanjani emhlabeni, futhi uyozwa ubuhlungu bezinto eziningi futhi uyofela abantu bakhe.

Helaman 13

And now it came to pass in the eighty and sixth year, the Nephites did still remain in wickedness, yea, in great wickedness, while the Lamanites did observe strictly to keep the commandments of God, according to the law of Moses.

And it came to pass that in this year there was one Samuel, a Lamanite, came into the land of Zarahemla, and began to preach unto the people. And it came to pass that he did preach, many days, repentance unto the people, and they did cast him out, and he was about to return to his own land.

But behold, the voice of the Lord came unto him, that he should return again, and prophesy unto the people whatsoever things should come into his heart.

And it came to pass that they would not suffer that he should enter into the city; therefore he went and got upon the wall thereof, and stretched forth his hand and cried with a loud voice, and prophesied unto the people whatsoever things the Lord put into his heart.

And he said unto them: Behold, I, Samuel, a Lamanite, do speak the words of the Lord which he doth put into my heart; and behold he hath put it into my heart to say unto this people that the sword of justice hangeth over this people; and four hundred years pass not away save the sword of justice falleth upon this people.

Yea, heavy destruction awaiteth this people, and it surely cometh unto this people, and nothing can save this people save it be repentance and faith on the Lord Jesus Christ, who surely shall come into the world, and shall suffer many things and shall be slain for his people.

- 7 Futhi bhekani, ingelosi yeNkosi ikumemezele lokhu kimi, futhi ilethe izindaba zokuthokoza okukhulu emphefumulweni wami. Futhi bhekani, ngithunyelwe kini ukuthi ngizozimemezela nakini futhi, ukuze nani nibe nezindaba zokuthokoza okukhulu; kodwa bhekani anizange ningamukele.
- 8 Ngakho-ke, isho kanje iNkosi: Ngenxa yobulukhuni bezinhliziyo zabantu bamaNefi, ngaphandle kokuthi baphenduke ngizolisusa izwi lami kubo, futhi ngizowuhoxisa uMoya wami kubo, futhi ngeke ngisababekezelela nanini, futhi ngizoziguqula izinhliziyo zabafofawabo balwe nabo.
- 9 Futhi iminyaka engamakhulu amane ngeke idlule ngaphambi kokuthi ngenze ukuthi bashaywe; yebo, ngizobavakashela ngenkamba kanye nangendlala kanye nangomashayabhuqe.
- 10 Yebo, ngizobavakashela ngolaka lwami olwesabekayo, futhi kuyoba khona labo besizukulwane sesine abayophila, bezitha zenu, ukuthi babone ukubhujiswa kwenu nya; futhi lokhu kuyokwenzeka ngempela ngaphandle kokuthi niphenduke, kusho iNkosi; futhi labo besizukulwane sesine bayoletha ukubhujiswa kwenu.
- 11 Kodwa uma niphenduka futhi nibuyela eNkosini uNkulunkulu wenu ngizolususa ulaka lwami, kusho iNkosi; yebo, isho kanje iNkosi, babusisiwe labo abazophenduka futhi babuyele kimi, kodwa maye kulowo ongaphendukiyo.
- 12 Yebo, maye kuleli dolobha elikhulu lakwaZarahemla; ngokuba bhekani, kungenxa yalabo abalungile ukuthi lisindisiwe; yebo, maye kuleli dolobha elikhulu, ngokuba ngiyabona, kusho iNkosi, ukuthi baningi, yebo, ngisho ezinxenyeni eziningi zalelidolobha elikhulu, abazoginisa izinhliziyo zabo ngokumelene nami, kusho iNkosi.
- 13 Kodwa babusisiwe labo abazophenduka, ngokuba ngizobasindisa. Kodwa bhekani, ukuba kwakungekhona ngenxa yabalungile abakulelidolobha elikhulu, bhekani, bengiyokwenza ukuthi umlilo wehle uphume ezulwini futhi ulibhubhise.

And behold, an angel of the Lord hath declared it unto me, and he did bring glad tidings to my soul. And behold, I was sent unto you to declare it unto you also, that ye might have glad tidings; but behold ye would not receive me.

Therefore, thus saith the Lord: Because of the hardness of the hearts of the people of the Nephites, except they repent I will take away my word from them, and I will withdraw my Spirit from them, and I will suffer them no longer, and I will turn the hearts of their brethren against them.

And four hundred years shall not pass away before I will cause that they shall be smitten; yea, I will visit them with the sword and with famine and with pestilence.

Yea, I will visit them in my fierce anger, and there shall be those of the fourth generation who shall live, of your enemies, to behold your utter destruction; and this shall surely come except ye repent, saith the Lord; and those of the fourth generation shall visit your destruction.

But if ye will repent and return unto the Lord your God I will turn away mine anger, saith the Lord; yea, thus saith the Lord, blessed are they who will repent and turn unto me, but wo unto him that repenteth not.

Yea, wo unto this great city of Zarahemla; for behold, it is because of those who are righteous that it is saved; yea, wo unto this great city, for I perceive, saith the Lord, that there are many, yea, even the more part of this great city, that will harden their hearts against me, saith the Lord.

But blessed are they who will repent, for them will I spare. But behold, if it were not for the righteous who are in this great city, behold, I would cause that fire should come down out of heaven and destroy it.

- 14 Kodwa bhekani, kungenxa yabalungile ukuthi lisindisiwe. Kodwa bhekani, isikhathi siyeza, kusho iNkosi, ukuthi uma senibaxosha abalungile phakathi kwenu, ngaleso sikhathi niyoba senilungele ukubhujiswa; yebo, maye kulelidolobha elikhulu, ngenxa yenkohlakalo kanye nezinengiso ezikulo.
- 15 Yebo, futhi maye kulo idolobha lakwaGidiyoni, ngenxa yenkohlakalo kanye nezinengiso ezikulo.
- 16 Yebo, futhi maye kuwo wonke amadolobha asezweni elizungezile, okungawamaNefi, ngenxa yenkohlakalo kanye nezinengiso ezikuwo.
- 17 Futhi bhekani, isiqalekiso sizozaphuzu kwalelizwe, kusho iNkosi yamaBandla, ngenxa yabantu abakulelizwe, yebo, ngenxa yenkohlakalo yabo kanye nezinengiso zabo.
- 18 Futhi kuyokwenzeka, kusho iNkosi yamaBandla, yebo, uNkulunkulu wethu omkhulu noweqiniso, ukuthi lowo oyofihla amagugu phansi ngeke aphinde awathole nanini, ngenxa yesiqalekiso esikhulu sezwe, ngaphandle kokuthi engumuntu olungile futhi eyowafihlela eNkosini.
- 19 Ngokuba ngifuna, kusho iNkosi, ukuthi bafihle amagugu abo kimi; futhi baqalekisiwe labo abangawafihli amagugu abo kimi; ngokuba akekho namunye ofihla igugu lakhe kimi ngaphandle kolungileyo; futhi lowo ongalifihli igugu lakhe kimi, uqalekisiwe, futhi ngokunjalo nalelogugu, futhi akukho namunye oyolithola ngenxa yokuqalekiswa kwezwe.
- 20 Futhi usuku luyeza lapho beyofihla amagugu abo, ngenxa yokuthi babeke izinhliziyi zabo engcebweni; futhi ngenxa yokuthi babeke izinhliziyi zabo engcebweni yabo, futhi bayowafihla amagugu abo ngesikhathi bebalekela izitha zabo; ngokuba ngeke bawafihle kimi, baqalekisiwe futhi ngokunjalo namagugu abo; futhi ngalolo suku bayoshaywa, kusho iNkosi.
- 21 Bhekani nina, bantu balelidolobha elikhulu, futhi nilalele amazwi ami; yebo, lalelani amazwi iNkosi ewashoyo; ngokuba bhekani, ithi niqalekisiwe ngenxa yengcebo yenu, futhi kanjalo nengcebo yenu iqalekisiwe ngenxa yokuthi nibeke izinhliziyi zenu kuyo, futhi aniwalalanga amazwi alowo owaninika yona.

But behold, it is for the righteous' sake that it is spared. But behold, the time cometh, saith the Lord, that when ye shall cast out the righteous from among you, then shall ye be ripe for destruction; yea, wo be unto this great city, because of the wickedness and abominations which are in her.

Yea, and wo be unto the city of Gideon, for the wickedness and abominations which are in her.

Yea, and wo be unto all the cities which are in the land round about, which are possessed by the Nephites, because of the wickedness and abominations which are in them.

And behold, a curse shall come upon the land, saith the Lord of Hosts, because of the people's sake who are upon the land, yea, because of their wickedness and their abominations.

And it shall come to pass, saith the Lord of Hosts, yea, our great and true God, that whoso shall hide up treasures in the earth shall find them again no more, because of the great curse of the land, save he be a righteous man and shall hide it up unto the Lord.

For I will, saith the Lord, that they shall hide up their treasures unto me; and cursed be they who hide not up their treasures unto me; for none hideth up their treasures unto me save it be the righteous; and he that hideth not up his treasures unto me, cursed is he, and also the treasure, and none shall redeem it because of the curse of the land.

And the day shall come that they shall hide up their treasures, because they have set their hearts upon riches; and because they have set their hearts upon their riches, and will hide up their treasures when they shall flee before their enemies; because they will not hide them up unto me, cursed be they and also their treasures; and in that day shall they be smitten, saith the Lord.

Behold ye, the people of this great city, and hearken unto my words; yea, hearken unto the words which the Lord saith; for behold, he saith that ye are cursed because of your riches, and also are your riches cursed because ye have set your hearts upon them, and have not hearkened unto the words of him who gave them unto you.

- 22 Aniyikhumbuli iNkosi uNkulunkulu wenu ezintweni enibusise ngazo, kodwa ngaso sonke isikhathi nikhumbula ingcebo yenu, hhayi ukubonga iNkosi uNkulunkulu wenu ngayo; yebo, izinhliziyu zenu azihlali ziseNkosini njalo, kodwa zikhukhumala ngokuziqhenya okukhulu, ngokuziqhayisa, kanye nangokuzikhukhumeza okukhulu, umona, imibango, izinhliziyu ezimbi, ukuhlukumeza, kanye nokubulala, kanye nazo zonke izinhlobo zobubi.
- 23 Ngenxa yalesi sizathu iNkosi uNkulunkulu yenze ukuthi isiqalekiso sehlele kulelizwe, futhi kanjalo naphezu kwengcebo yenu, futhi lokhu ngenxa yobubi benu.
- 24 Yebo, maye kulaba bantu, ngenxa yalesi sikhathi esesifikile, sokuthi nixosha abaphrofethi, futhi nihlekisa ngabo, futhi nibakhande ngamatshe, futhi nibabulale, futhi nenze yonke inhlobo yobubi kubona, njengoba benza nabasemandulo.
- 25 Manje uma nikhuluma, nithi: Ukuba izinsuku zethu zazingezinsuku zobaba bethu bakudala, thina ngabe asibabulalanga abaphrofethi; thina ngabe asibakhandanga ngamatshe, futhi sibaxoshe.
- 26 Bhekani nina nibabi kakhulu kunabo; ngokuba njengoba iNkosi iphila, uma umphrofethi efika phakathi kwenu futhi ememezela kini izwi leNkosi, elifakaza ngezono zenu kanye nangobubi benu, niyamthukuthelela, futhi nimxoshe futhi nifune zonke izinhlobo zezindlela zokubulala; yebo, nithi ungumphrofethi wamanga, futhi nokuthi ungumoni, futhi ungokadeveli, ngenxa yokuthi efakaza ngezenzo zenu zobubi.
- 27 Kodwa bhekani, uma umuntu engafika phakathi kwenu futhi ethi: Yenzani lokhu, futhi abukho ububi; yenzani lokhuya futhi ngeke nizwe ubuhlungu; yebo, uzothi: Philani ngokuziqhenya okusezinhliziyweni zenu; yebo, philani ngokuziqhenya njengoba nizibona, futhi yenzani noma yini efiswa yizinhliziyu zenu—futhi uma umuntu engafika phakathi kwenu asho lokhu, niyomemukela, futhi nithi ungumphrofethi.

Ye do not remember the Lord your God in the things with which he hath blessed you, but ye do always remember your riches, not to thank the Lord your God for them; yea, your hearts are not drawn out unto the Lord, but they do swell with great pride, unto boasting, and unto great swelling, envyings, strifes, malice, persecutions, and murders, and all manner of iniquities.

For this cause hath the Lord God caused that a curse should come upon the land, and also upon your riches, and this because of your iniquities.

Yea, wo unto this people, because of this time which has arrived, that ye do cast out the prophets, and do mock them, and cast stones at them, and do slay them, and do all manner of iniquity unto them, even as they did of old time.

And now when ye talk, ye say: If our days had been in the days of our fathers of old, we would not have slain the prophets; we would not have stoned them, and cast them out.

Behold ye are worse than they; for as the Lord liveth, if a prophet come among you and declareth unto you the word of the Lord, which testifieth of your sins and iniquities, ye are angry with him, and cast him out and seek all manner of ways to destroy him; yea, you will say that he is a false prophet, and that he is a sinner, and of the devil, because he testifieth that your deeds are evil.

But behold, if a man shall come among you and shall say: Do this, and there is no iniquity; do that and ye shall not suffer; yea, he will say: Walk after the pride of your own hearts; yea, walk after the pride of your eyes, and do whatsoever your heart desireth—and if a man shall come among you and say this, ye will receive him, and say that he is a prophet.

28 Yebo, niyomphakamisa, futhi niyomnika okunye kwezinto zenu; niyomnika elinye igolide lenu, kanye nesiliva lenu, futhi niyomembathisa ngezingubo ezibizayo; futhi ngenxa yokuthi ekhuluma amazwi anithophayo, futhi ethi konke kuhle, ngalokho ngeke nilithole iphutha kuye.

29 O nina enibabi futhi nina sizukulwane esinenkani; nina bantu abalukhuni futhi abangontamo lukhuni, kuyoze kube nini nicabanga ukuthi iNkosi iyonibekezelela na? Yebo, kuyoze kube nini nizivumela ukuba niholwe ngezeluleko zobuwula kanye nobumpumputhe na? Yebo, kuyoze kube nini nikhetha ubumnyama esikhundleni sokukhanya na?

30 Yebo, bhekani, ulaka lweNkosi vele selokhelekile ngokumelene nani; bhekani, isiliqalekisile lelizwe ngenxa yobubi benu.

31 Futhi bhekani, isikhathi siyeza lapho iyoyiqalekisa ingcebo yenu, ukuze ningakwazi ukuyigcina, ukuze ningakwazi ukuyibamba; futhi kuthi ngezinsuku zokuhlupheka kwenu ningakwazi ukuyigcina.

32 Futhi ngezinsuku zokuhlupheka kwenu niyokhala eNkosini; futhi ukukhala kwenu kuyoba yize, ngokuba ukonakaliswa kwenu vele sekufikile phezu kwenu, futhi nokubhujiswa kwenu sekuqinisekile; futhi ngaleso sikhathi niyokhala futhi nihhewule ngalolo suku, kusho iNkosi yamaBandla. Futhi ngaleso sikhathi niyolila, futhi nithi:

33 O ukuba ngaphenduka, futhi ngangababulala abaphrofethi, futhi ngangabakhanda ngamatshe, futhi ngangabaxosha. Yebo, ngalolo suku niyothi: O ukuba sasiyikhumbulile iNkosi uNkulunkulu wethu ngosuku lapho isinika ingcebo yethu, futhi uma kunjalo besingeke singakwazi ukuyigcina isilahlekele; ngokuba bhekani, ingcebo yethu ayisekho kithi.

34 Bhekani, sibeka okokusebenza lapha kuthi ngakusasa akusekho; futhi bhekani, izinkemba zethu zithathiwe kithi ngosuku lapho sizifunela impi.

35 Yebo, sifihle amagugu ethu futhi asisakwazi ukuwagcina, ngenxa yokuqalekiswa kwalelizwe.

Yea, ye will lift him up, and ye will give unto him of your substance; ye will give unto him of your gold, and of your silver, and ye will clothe him with costly apparel; and because he speaketh flattering words unto you, and he saith that all is well, then ye will not find fault with him.

O ye wicked and ye perverse generation; ye hardened and ye stiffnecked people, how long will ye suppose that the Lord will suffer you? Yea, how long will ye suffer yourselves to be led by foolish and blind guides? Yea, how long will ye choose darkness rather than light?

Yea, behold, the anger of the Lord is already kindled against you; behold, he hath cursed the land because of your iniquity.

And behold, the time cometh that he curseth your riches, that they become slippery, that ye cannot hold them; and in the days of your poverty ye cannot retain them.

And in the days of your poverty ye shall cry unto the Lord; and in vain shall ye cry, for your desolation is already come upon you, and your destruction is made sure; and then shall ye weep and howl in that day, saith the Lord of Hosts. And then shall ye lament, and say:

O that I had repented, and had not killed the prophets, and stoned them, and cast them out. Yea, in that day ye shall say: O that we had remembered the Lord our God in the day that he gave us our riches, and then they would not have become slippery that we should lose them; for behold, our riches are gone from us.

Behold, we lay a tool here and on the morrow it is gone; and behold, our swords are taken from us in the day we have sought them for battle.

Yea, we have hid up our treasures and they have slipped away from us, because of the curse of the land.

36 O ukuba saphenduka ngosuku lapho izwi leNkosi lifika kithi; ngokuba bheka izwe liqalekisiwe, futhi zonke izinto asikwazi ukuzigcina, futhi asikwazi ukuzibamba.

37 Bhekani, sizungezwe ngamadimoni, yebo, sizungezwe nxazonke yizingelosi zalowo ofuna ukonakalisa imiphefumulo yethu. Bhekani, ububi bethu bukhulu. O Nkosi, ubungenakulususa yini ulaka lwakho kithi na? Lolu kuyoba wulimi lwenu ngalezo zinsuku.

38 Kodwa bhekani, izinsuku zenu zokuvivinywa sezedlule; niluhlehlisile usuku lokusindiswa kwenu kwaze kwaba sekwedlule isikhathi ingunaphakade futhi ukubhujiswa kwenu sekuqinisekisiwe; yebo, ngokuba zonke izinsuku zokuphila kwenu nifune lokho eningena kukuthola; futhi nifune intokozo ngokwenza okubi, okuyinto ephikisanayo nendalo yalokho kulunga okukuyo iNhloko yethu enkulu yaPhakade.

39 O nina bantu balelizwe, ukuba beningawezwa amazwi ami! Futhi ngiyakhuleka ukuthi ulaka lweNkosi lususwe kuni, futhi nokuthi niphenduke futhi nisindiswe.

O that we had repented in the day that the word of the Lord came unto us; for behold the land is cursed, and all things are become slippery, and we cannot hold them.

Behold, we are surrounded by demons, yea, we are encircled about by the angels of him who hath sought to destroy our souls. Behold, our iniquities are great. O Lord, canst thou not turn away thine anger from us? And this shall be your language in those days.

But behold, your days of probation are past; ye have procrastinated the day of your salvation until it is everlastingly too late, and your destruction is made sure; yea, for ye have sought all the days of your lives for that which ye could not obtain; and ye have sought for happiness in doing iniquity, which thing is contrary to the nature of that righteousness which is in our great and Eternal Head.

O ye people of the land, that ye would hear my words! And I pray that the anger of the Lord be turned away from you, and that ye would repent and be saved.

Helamani 14

- 1 Manje kwenzeka ukuthi uSamuweli, umLamani, waphrofetha izinto ezinkulu neziningi kakhulu ezingenakubhalwa.
- 2 Futhi bheka, wathi kubo: Bhekani, ngininika isibonakaliso; okungukuthi eminyakeni emihlanu ezayo, futhi bhekani, iyobe seyifika iNdodana kaNkulunkulu ukuzokhulula bonke labo abayokholwa egameni layo.
- 3 Futhi bhekani, ngizoninika lokhu ukuthi kube yisibonakaliso ngesikhathi sokufika kwayo; ngokuba bhekani, kuyoba khona ukukhanya okukhulu ezulwini, kangangokuthi ebusuku ngaphambi kokuthi ifike ngeke bube khona ubumnyama, kangangokuthi kubantu kuyoba sengathi kusemini.
- 4 Ngakho-ke, kuyoba khona usuku olulodwa kanye nobusuku kanye nosuku, kube sengathi wusuku olulodwa futhi abukho ubusuku; futhi lokhu kuyoba yisibonakaliso kini; ngokuba niyokwazi ngokuphuma kwelanga futhi kanjalo nangokushona kwalo; ngakho-ke bayokwazi ngempela ukuthi kuyoba nezinsuku ezimbili nobusuku; nokho ubusuku ngeke bube mnyama; futhi lobo kuyoba ngubusuku ngaphambi kokuthi azalwe.
- 5 Futhi bhekani, kuyoba khona inkanyezi entsha eyovela, yohlobo eningakaze nilubone; futhi nalokhu kuyoba yisibonakaliso kini.
- 6 Futhi bhekani, lokho akusikho konke, kuyoba khona eziningi izibonakaliso kanye nezimangaliso ezulwini.
- 7 Futhi kuyokwenzeka ukuthi nonke niyoshaqeka, futhi nimangale, kangangokuthi niyowela phansi.
- 8 Futhi kuyokwenzeka ukuthi lowo oyokholwa eNdodaneni kaNkulunkulu, yena kanye lowo uyoba nokuphila okuphakade.
- 9 Futhi bhekani, ingiyale kanje iNkosi, ngengelosi yayo, ukuthi kufanele ngize ngizonitshela lento; yebo, iyale ukuthi ngizoziphrofetha lezi zinto kini; yebo, ithe kimi: Khala kulaba bantu uthi, phendukani futhi nilungise indlela yeNkosi.

Helaman 14

And now it came to pass that Samuel, the Lamanite, did prophesy a great many more things which cannot be written.

And behold, he said unto them: Behold, I give unto you a sign; for five years more cometh, and behold, then cometh the Son of God to redeem all those who shall believe on his name.

And behold, this will I give unto you for a sign at the time of his coming; for behold, there shall be great lights in heaven, insomuch that in the night before he cometh there shall be no darkness, insomuch that it shall appear unto man as if it was day.

Therefore, there shall be one day and a night and a day, as if it were one day and there were no night; and this shall be unto you for a sign; for ye shall know of the rising of the sun and also of its setting; therefore they shall know of a surety that there shall be two days and a night; nevertheless the night shall not be darkened; and it shall be the night before he is born.

And behold, there shall a new star arise, such an one as ye never have beheld; and this also shall be a sign unto you.

And behold this is not all, there shall be many signs and wonders in heaven.

And it shall come to pass that ye shall all be amazed, and wonder, insomuch that ye shall fall to the earth.

And it shall come to pass that whosoever shall believe on the Son of God, the same shall have everlasting life.

And behold, thus hath the Lord commanded me, by his angel, that I should come and tell this thing unto you; yea, he hath commanded that I should prophesy these things unto you; yea, he hath said unto me: Cry unto this people, repent and prepare the way of the Lord.

- 10 Manje, ngenxa yokuthi ngingumLamani, futhi ngikhulume kini amazwi iNkosi engiyale ngawo, futhi ngenxa yokuthi abe lukhuni ngokumelene nani, niyangithukuthelela futhi nifuna ukungibulala, futhi ningixoshile phakathi kwenu.
- 11 Futhi nizowezwa amazwi ami, ngokuba, ngalenhloso ngize phezu kwalezi ndonga zaleli dolobha, ukuze nizwe futhi nazi ngezahlulelo zikaNkulunkulu ezinilindile ngenxa yobubi benu, futhi nokuthi nazi ngemibandela yokuphenduka;
- 12 Futhi nokuthi nazi ngokuza kukaJesu Kristu, iNdodana kaNkulunkulu, uBaba wezulu kanye nomhlaba, uMdali wezinto zonke kusukela ekuqaleni; futhi nokuthi nazi ngezibonakaliso zokuza kwakhe, ngenhloso yokuthi nikholwe egameni lakhe.
- 13 Futhi uma nikholwa egameni lakhe nizophenduka ezonweni zenu zonke, ukuze ngalokho nibe nokuthethelelwa kwazo ngezenzo zakhe ezinhle.
- 14 Futhi bhekani, esinye isibonakaliso ngininika sona futhi, yebo, isibonakaliso sokufa kwakhe.
- 15 Ngokuba bhekani, kufanele ngempela afe ukuze kube khona ukusindiswa; yebo, kufanelekile ukuthi afe, ukuze kube khona ukuvuka kwabafuleyo, ukuze ngalokho abantu balethwe phambi kweNkosi.
- 16 Yebo, bhekani, lokufa kwenza kube khona uvuko, futhi kukhulula sonke isintu ekufeni kokuqala—lokho kufa komoya; ngokuba sonke isintu, ngokuwa kuka-Adamu sisusiwe phambi kweNkosi, sithathwa ngokuthi sifile, ezintweni zasemhlabeni kanye nasezintweni zomoya.
- 17 Kodwa bhekani, ukuvuka kukaKristu kukhulula isintu, yebo, ngisho isintu sonke, futhi kusibuyisela phambi kweNkosi.
- 18 Yebo, futhi kuletha umbandela wokuphenduka, wokuthi lowo ophendukayo yena kanye lowo ngeke ehliselwe phansi futhi aphonswa emlilweni; kodwa lowo ongaphendukiyo uhlisewa phansi futhi aphonswa emlilweni; bese kuza kubo futhi ukufa komoya, yebo, ukufa kwesibili, ngokuba bayasuswa futhi ezintweni eziphathelele nokulunga.

And now, because I am a Lamanite, and have spoken unto you the words which the Lord hath commanded me, and because it was hard against you, ye are angry with me and do seek to destroy me, and have cast me out from among you.

And ye shall hear my words, for, for this intent have I come up upon the walls of this city, that ye might hear and know of the judgments of God which do await you because of your iniquities, and also that ye might know the conditions of repentance;

And also that ye might know of the coming of Jesus Christ, the Son of God, the Father of heaven and of earth, the Creator of all things from the beginning; and that ye might know of the signs of his coming, to the intent that ye might believe on his name.

And if ye believe on his name ye will repent of all your sins, that thereby ye may have a remission of them through his merits.

And behold, again, another sign I give unto you, yea, a sign of his death.

For behold, he surely must die that salvation may come; yea, it behooveth him and becometh expedient that he dieth, to bring to pass the resurrection of the dead, that thereby men may be brought into the presence of the Lord.

Yea, behold, this death bringeth to pass the resurrection, and redeemeth all mankind from the first death—that spiritual death; for all mankind, by the fall of Adam being cut off from the presence of the Lord, are considered as dead, both as to things temporal and to things spiritual.

But behold, the resurrection of Christ redeemeth mankind, yea, even all mankind, and bringeth them back into the presence of the Lord.

Yea, and it bringeth to pass the condition of repentance, that whosoever repenteth the same is not hewn down and cast into the fire; but whosoever repenteth not is hewn down and cast into the fire; and there cometh upon them again a spiritual death, yea, a second death, for they are cut off again as to things pertaining to righteousness.

- 19 Ngalokho-ke phendukani, phendukani, hleze ngokwazi lezi zinto kepha ningazenzi niyozivumela ukuthi nibekwe icala, bese nilethwa kulokhu kufa kwesibili.
- 20 Kodwa bhekani, njengoba ngishilo kini mayelana nesinye isibonakaliso, isibonakaliso sokufa kwayo, bhekani, ngalolo suku eyokuzwa ngalo ukufa ilanga liyofiphala futhi lale ukuveza ukukhanya kwalo kini; futhi kanjalo nenyanga kanye nezinkanyezi; futhi akuyikuba khona ukukhanya phezu kobuso balelizwe, ngisho kusukela esikhathini lesa eyokuzwa ngaso ukufa, isikhathi esiyizinsuku ezintathu, kuze kube yisikhathi eyovuka ngaso futhi ekufeni.
- 21 Yebo, ngesikhathi lesa eyokhipha ngaso umoya kuyoba khona ukuduma kanye nemibani isikhathi esingamahora amaningi, futhi umhlaba uyozamazama futhi udikize; futhi amadwala aphezu kobuso balomhlaba, akhona ngaphezulu kanye nangaphansi komhlaba, eniwazi manje njengaqinile, noma ingxenye enkulu yawo eyinto eqine kakhulu, ayoqhephuka;
- 22 Yebo, ayoqhekeka kabili, futhi emva kwalokho ayotholakala eqhekekile futhi enemifantu, futhi eyizingcezu ezihlephukile phezu kobuso bonke balesi sifunda, yebo, ngaphezulu kanye nangaphansi komhlaba.
- 23 Futhi bhekani, kuyoba khona iziphapho ezinkulu, futhi kuyoba khona izintaba eziningi eziyolaliswa phansi, zifane namathafa, futhi kuyoba khona izindawo eziningi manje ezibizwa ngamathafa eziyokuba yizintaba, ubude bazo obukhulu kakhulu.
- 24 Futhi imigwaqo emikhulu eminingi iyoqhekeka, futhi amaningi amadolobha ayosala engenamuntu.
- 25 Futhi amathuna amaningi ayovuleka, futhi akhiphe abaningi bawo asebafa; futhi abaningi abangcwele bayovela kwabaningi.
- 26 Futhi bhekani, ikhulume kanje ingelosi kimi; ngokuba ithe kimi kuyoba khona ukuduma kanye nemibani isikhathi esingamahora amaningi.
- 27 Futhi ithe kimi ngesikhathi ukuduma kanye nemibani kusaqhubeka, kanye nesiphapho, lezi zinto kufanele zibekhona, futhi nokuthi ubumnyama buyomboza ubuso besifunda sonke isikhathi esingange zinsuku ezintathu.

Therefore repent ye, repent ye, lest by knowing these things and not doing them ye shall suffer yourselves to come under condemnation, and ye are brought down unto this second death.

But behold, as I said unto you concerning another sign, a sign of his death, behold, in that day that he shall suffer death the sun shall be darkened and refuse to give his light unto you; and also the moon and the stars; and there shall be no light upon the face of this land, even from the time that he shall suffer death, for the space of three days, to the time that he shall rise again from the dead.

Yea, at the time that he shall yield up the ghost there shall be thunders and lightnings for the space of many hours, and the earth shall shake and tremble; and the rocks which are upon the face of this earth, which are both above the earth and beneath, which ye know at this time are solid, or the more part of it is one solid mass, shall be broken up;

Yea, they shall be rent in twain, and shall ever after be found in seams and in cracks, and in broken fragments upon the face of the whole earth, yea, both above the earth and beneath.

And behold, there shall be great tempests, and there shall be many mountains laid low, like unto a valley, and there shall be many places which are now called valleys which shall become mountains, whose height is great.

And many highways shall be broken up, and many cities shall become desolate.

And many graves shall be opened, and shall yield up many of their dead; and many saints shall appear unto many.

And behold, thus hath the angel spoken unto me; for he said unto me that there should be thunders and lightnings for the space of many hours.

And he said unto me that while the thunder and the lightning lasted, and the tempest, that these things should be, and that darkness should cover the face of the whole earth for the space of three days.

- 28 Futhi ingelosi ithe kimi abaningi bayobona izinto ezinkulu kakhulu kunalezi, ngenhloso yokuthi bakholwe ukuthi lezi zibonakaliso kanye nalezi zimangaliso ziyokwenzeka kubo bonke ubuso balelizwe, ngenhloso yokuthi kungabi bikho sizathu sokungakholwa phakathi kwabantwana babantu—
- 29 Futhi lokhu ngenhloso yokuthi lowo oyokholwa asindiswe, futhi nokuthi lowo ongeyukukholwa, isahlulelo esilungile size kubo; futhi phezu kwalokho uma bebekwa icala kube bazilethele bona ukubekwa icala.
- 30 Manje khumbulani, khumbulani, bafowethu, ukuthi lowo olahlekayo, uzilahlekisa yena; futhi lowo owenza ububi, ukwenza kuye uqobo; ngokuba bhekani, nikhululekile; nivunyelwe ukuthi nizenzele; ngokuba bhekani, uNkulunkulu uninike ulwazi futhi wanenza ukuthi nikhululeke.
- 31 Uninike ukuthi nazi okuhle kokubi, futhi uninike ukuthi nikhethe ukuphila noma ukufa; futhi ningenza okuhle futhi nibuyiselwe kulokho okuhle, noma kuthi lokho okuhle kubuyiselwe kini; noma ningenza okubi, futhi lokho okubi kubuyiselwe kini.

And the angel said unto me that many shall see greater things than these, to the intent that they might believe that these signs and these wonders should come to pass upon all the face of this land, to the intent that there should be no cause for unbelief among the children of men—

And this to the intent that whosoever will believe might be saved, and that whosoever will not believe, a righteous judgment might come upon them; and also if they are condemned they bring upon themselves their own condemnation.

And now remember, remember, my brethren, that whosoever perisheth, perisheth unto himself; and whosoever doeth iniquity, doeth it unto himself; for behold, ye are free; ye are permitted to act for yourselves; for behold, God hath given unto you a knowledge and he hath made you free.

He hath given unto you that ye might know good from evil, and he hath given unto you that ye might choose life or death; and ye can do good and be restored unto that which is good, or have that which is good restored unto you; or ye can do evil, and have that which is evil restored unto you.

Helamani 15

- 1 Manje, bafowethu abathandekayo, bhekani, ngimemezela kini ukuthi ngaphandle kokuthi niphenduke imizi yenu iyosala ingenamuntu.
- 2 Yebo, ngaphandle kokuthi niphenduke, abafazi benu bayoba nesizathu esikhulu sokulila ngosuku lapho beyobe bencelisa khona; ngokuba niyozama ukubaleka kodwa kuyobe kungekho ndawo yokukhosela; yebo, futhi maye kulabo abakhulelweyo, ngokuba bayosindana futhi bangakwazi ukubaleka; ngakho-ke, bayonyathelwa phansi futhi bashiywe ukuthi bafe.
- 3 Yebo, maye kulaba bantu ababizwa ngokuthi ngabantu baNefi ngaphandle kokuthi baphenduke, uma bebona zonke lezi zibonakaliso kanye nezimangaliso abayotshengiswa zona; ngokuba bhekani, bebengabantu abakhethiwe beNkosi; yebo, abantu baNefi ibathandle, futhi phezu kwalokho ibajezisile; yebo, ngezinsuku zobubi babo ibajezise ngenxa yokuthi ibathanda.
- 4 Kodwa bhekani bafowethu, amaLamani iwazondile ngenxa yokuthi izenzo zawo bezizimbi njalo-njalo, futhi lokhu ngenxa yobubi bamasiko oyise. Kodwa bhekani, insindiso ize kuwo ngokushumayela kwamaNefi; futhi ngalesi sizathu iNkosi izandisile izinsuku zawo.
- 5 Futhi ngifuna ukuthi nibone ukuthi ingxenye enkulu yawo isendleleni yomsebenzi wawo, futhi ahamba ngokuqaphela phambi kukaNkulunkulu, futhi ayaqaphela ukuthi ayigcine imiyalelo yakhe kanye nemithetho yakhe kanye nezahlulelo zakhe ngokomthetho kaMose.
- 6 Yebo, ngithi kini, ingxenye enkulu yawo yenza lokhu, futhi azabalaza ngenkuthalo ngokungakhathali ukuthi alethe insalela yabafowabo olwazini lweqiniso; ngakho-ke baningi abagcwalisa isibalo sawo nsuku zonke.

Helaman 15

And now, my beloved brethren, behold, I declare unto you that except ye shall repent your houses shall be left unto you desolate.

Yea, except ye repent, your women shall have great cause to mourn in the day that they shall give suck; for ye shall attempt to flee and there shall be no place for refuge; yea, and wo unto them which are with child, for they shall be heavy and cannot flee; therefore, they shall be trodden down and shall be left to perish.

Yea, wo unto this people who are called the people of Nephi except they shall repent, when they shall see all these signs and wonders which shall be showed unto them; for behold, they have been a chosen people of the Lord; yea, the people of Nephi hath he loved, and also hath he chastened them; yea, in the days of their iniquities hath he chastened them because he loveth them.

But behold my brethren, the Lamanites hath he hated because their deeds have been evil continually, and this because of the iniquity of the tradition of their fathers. But behold, salvation hath come unto them through the preaching of the Nephites; and for this intent hath the Lord prolonged their days.

And I would that ye should behold that the more part of them are in the path of their duty, and they do walk circumspectly before God, and they do observe to keep his commandments and his statutes and his judgments according to the law of Moses.

Yea, I say unto you, that the more part of them are doing this, and they are striving with unwearied diligence that they may bring the remainder of their brethren to the knowledge of the truth; therefore there are many who do add to their numbers daily.

- 7 Futhi bhekani, niyazazela, ngokuba nikubonile lokhu, ukuthi ngobuningi babo belethwa olwazini lweqiniso, kanye nasekwazini ngobubi kanye nangamasiko anengekile oyise, futhi baholelwa ukuthi bakholwe yimibhalo engcwele, yebo, iziphrofetho zabaphrofethi abangcwele, ezibhaliwe, ezibaholela ekukholweni eNkosini, kanye nasekuphendukeni, ukukholwa lokho kanye nokuphenduka okuletha ukuguquka kwezinhliziyi zabo—
- 8 Ngakho-ke, ngobuningi balabo abeze kulokhu, niyazazela ukuthi bagxilile futhi baqinile okholweni, kanye nakuleyonto abakhululwe ngayo.
- 9 Futhi phezu kwalokho niyazi ukuthi bazingqibile izikhali zabo zempi, futhi bayesaba ukuzithatha hleze ngandlela thize bone; yebo, niyabona ukuthi bayesaba ukona—ngokuba bhekani bavumela ukuthi banyathelwe phansi futhi babulawe yizitha zabo, futhi ngeke baziphakamise izinkemba zabo balwe nabo, futhi lokhu kungenxa yokholo lwabo kuKristu.
- 10 Manje, ngenxa yokuqina kwabo uma sebekholwa kuleyonto abakhulwa yiyo, ngokuba ngenxa yokugxila kwabo uma sebekhanyiselwe, bhekani, iNkosi iyobabusisa futhi yandise izinsuku zabo, nakuba benobubi—
- 11 Yebo, ngisho noma sebencishelwa wukholo iNkosi iyozandisa izinsuku zabo, kuze kube kufika isikhathi leso abakhuluma ngaso obaba bethu, futhi kanjalo nomphrofethi uZenoshe, kanye nabanye abaphrofethi abaningi, mayelana nokubuyiselwa kwabafowethu, amaLamani, futhi olwazini lweqiniso—
- 12 Yebo, ngithi kuni, ngezikhathi zokugcina izethembiso zeNkosi zelulelwe kubafowethu, amaLamani; futhi naphezu kwezinhlopheko eziningi abayokuba nazo, futhi naphezu kokuthi beyobalekiswa bayiswe emuva naphambili ebusweni bomhlaba, futhi bazingelwe, futhi bashaywe futhi bahlakazwe ezindaweni zonke, bengenandawo yokukhosela, iNkosi iyokuba nesihawu kubo.

And behold, ye do know of yourselves, for ye have witnessed it, that as many of them as are brought to the knowledge of the truth, and to know of the wicked and abominable traditions of their fathers, and are led to believe the holy scriptures, yea, the prophecies of the holy prophets, which are written, which leadeth them to faith on the Lord, and unto repentance, which faith and repentance bringeth a change of heart unto them—

Therefore, as many as have come to this, ye know of yourselves are firm and steadfast in the faith, and in the thing wherewith they have been made free.

And ye know also that they have buried their weapons of war, and they fear to take them up lest by any means they should sin; yea, ye can see that they fear to sin—for behold they will suffer themselves that they be trodden down and slain by their enemies, and will not lift their swords against them, and this because of their faith in Christ.

And now, because of their steadfastness when they do believe in that thing which they do believe, for because of their firmness when they are once enlightened, behold, the Lord shall bless them and prolong their days, notwithstanding their iniquity—

Yea, even if they should dwindle in unbelief the Lord shall prolong their days, until the time shall come which hath been spoken of by our fathers, and also by the prophet Zenos, and many other prophets, concerning the restoration of our brethren, the Lamanites, again to the knowledge of the truth—

Yea, I say unto you, that in the latter times the promises of the Lord have been extended to our brethren, the Lamanites; and notwithstanding the many afflictions which they shall have, and notwithstanding they shall be driven to and fro upon the face of the earth, and be hunted, and shall be smitten and scattered abroad, having no place for refuge, the Lord shall be merciful unto them.

- 13 Futhi lokhu kungokwesiphrofetho, ukuthi bayophinda futhi balethwe olwazini lweqiniso, okungulwazi loMkhululi wabo, kanye nomalusi wabo omkhulu futhi weqiniso, futhi babalwe nezimvu zakhe.
- 14 Ngakho-ke ngithi kini, kuyoba ngcono mayelana nabo kunani ngaphandle kokuthi niphenduke.
- 15 Ngokuba bhekani, ukuba imisebenzi emikhulu batshengiswa yona enatshengiswa yona, yebo, kubo labo abancishelwa wukukholwa ngenxa yamasiko oyise, niyazibonela ukuthi bebengeke nanini baphinde bancishelwe wukukholwa.
- 16 Ngakho-ke, iNkosi ithi: Ngeke ngibabulale baphele nya, kodwa ngiyokwenza ukuthi ngosuku lokuhlakanipha kwami babuyele kimi futhi, kusho iNkosi.
- 17 Manje bhekani, kusho iNkosi, mayelana nabantu bamaNefi: Uma bengaphenduki, futhi baqaphele ukwenza intando yami, ngiyobabulala baphele nya, kusho iNkosi, ngenxa yokungakhulwa kwabo naphezu kwemisebenzi eminingi emikhulu engiyenzile phakathi kwabo; futhi njengoba ngempela iNkosi iphila lezi zinto ziyoba njalo, kusho iNkosi.

And this is according to the prophecy, that they shall again be brought to the true knowledge, which is the knowledge of their Redeemer, and their great and true shepherd, and be numbered among his sheep.

Therefore I say unto you, it shall be better for them than for you except ye repent.

For behold, had the mighty works been shown unto them which have been shown unto you, yea, unto them who have dwindled in unbelief because of the traditions of their fathers, ye can see of yourselves that they never would again have dwindled in unbelief.

Therefore, saith the Lord: I will not utterly destroy them, but I will cause that in the day of my wisdom they shall return again unto me, saith the Lord.

And now behold, saith the Lord, concerning the people of the Nephites: If they will not repent, and observe to do my will, I will utterly destroy them, saith the Lord, because of their unbelief notwithstanding the many mighty works which I have done among them; and as surely as the Lord liveth shall these things be, saith the Lord.

Helamani 16

- 1 Manje, kwenzeka ukuthi babe baningi abawezwa amazwi kaSamuweli, umLamani, awakhuluma ephezulu ezindongeni zedolobha. Futhi ngobuningi balabo abakholelwa ezwini lakhe bahamba bayofuna uNefi; futhi ngesikhathi sebemtholile bazivuma kuye izono zabo futhi bangaziphika, benesifiso sokuthi babhabhadiselwe eNkosini.
- 2 Kodwa ngobuningi balabo abangazange bakholelwe emazwini kaSamuweli bamthukuthelela; futhi bamkhanda ngamatshe ephezu kodonga, futhi phezu kwalokho abanengi bamdubula ngenicibisholo ngesikhathi emi phezu kodonga; kodwa uMoya weNkosi wawunaye, kangangokuthi abakwazanga ukumshaya ngamatshe abo futhi kanjalo nangemicibisholo yabo.
- 3 Manje ngesikhathi bebona ukuthi babengakwazi ukumshaya, kwaba khona abanengi kakhulu abakholelwa emazwini akhe, kangangokuthi bahamba baya kuNefi ukuze babhabhadiswe.
- 4 Ngokuba bheka, uNefi wayebhabhadisa, futhi ephrofetha, futhi eshumayela, ememezela ukuphenduka ebantwini, ebakhombisa izimpawu kanye nezibonakaliso, enza izimangaliso phakathi kwabantu, ukuze bazi ukuthi uKristu kwase kufanele eze maduze—
- 5 Ebatshele ngezinto okwakufanele zenzeke masinyane, ukuze bazi futhi bakhumbule ngesikhathi sokuza kwazo ukuthi zazembuliwe kubo ngaphambilini, ngenhloso yokuthi bakholwe; ngakho-ke ngobuningi balabo abakholwa emazwini kaSamuweli baya kuye ukuze babhabhadiswe; ngokuba beza bephenduka futhi bezivuma izono zabo.
- 6 Kodwa iningi labo aliwakholwanga amazwi kaSamuweli; ngakho-ke ngesikhathi bebona ukuthi babengakwazi ukumshaya ngamatshe kanye nangemicibisholo yabo, bakhala ezinduneni zabo, bethi: Thathani lomuntu nimbophe, ngokuba bhokani unodeveli; futhi ngenxa yamandla kadeveli okuye asikwazi ukumshaya ngamatshe ethu kanye nangemicibisholo yethu; ngakho-ke mthatheni nimbophe, futhi nimsuse lapha.

Helaman 16

And now, it came to pass that there were many who heard the words of Samuel, the Lamanite, which he spake upon the walls of the city. And as many as believed on his word went forth and sought for Nephi; and when they had come forth and found him they confessed unto him their sins and denied not, desiring that they might be baptized unto the Lord.

But as many as there were who did not believe in the words of Samuel were angry with him; and they cast stones at him upon the wall, and also many shot arrows at him as he stood upon the wall; but the Spirit of the Lord was with him, insomuch that they could not hit him with their stones neither with their arrows.

Now when they saw that they could not hit him, there were many more who did believe on his words, insomuch that they went away unto Nephi to be baptized.

For behold, Nephi was baptizing, and prophesying, and preaching, crying repentance unto the people, showing signs and wonders, working miracles among the people, that they might know that the Christ must shortly come—

Telling them of things which must shortly come, that they might know and remember at the time of their coming that they had been made known unto them beforehand, to the intent that they might believe; therefore as many as believed on the words of Samuel went forth unto him to be baptized, for they came repenting and confessing their sins.

But the more part of them did not believe in the words of Samuel; therefore when they saw that they could not hit him with their stones and their arrows, they cried unto their captains, saying: Take this fellow and bind him, for behold he hath a devil; and because of the power of the devil which is in him we cannot hit him with our stones and our arrows; therefore take him and bind him, and away with him.

- 7 Futhi ngesikhathi sebehamba ukuze bayombamba, bheka, wagxumela phansi esuka phezulu odongeni, futhi wabaleka waphuma ezweni labo, yebo, waze wafika ezweni lakubo, futhi waqala ukushumayela kanye nokuphrofetha phakathi kwabantu bakubo.
- 8 Futhi bheka, amaNefi awaphindanga ezwa ngaye; futhi zaba kanjalo-ke lezi zindaba zabantu.
- 9 Futhi waphela kanjalo-ke unyaka wamashumi ayisishiyagalombili nesithupha wokubusa kwabehluleli kubantu baNefi.
- 10 Futhi waphela kanjalo-ke nonyaka wamashumi ayisishiyagalombili nesikhombisa wokubusa kwabehluleli, ingxenye eningi yabantu iqhubeka nokuzazisa kanye nokwenza ububi, futhi ingxenye encane ihamba ngokuqaphela phambi kukaNkulunkulu.
- 11 Futhi kwaphinde kwaba yilesi simo, nangonyaka wamashumi ayisishiyagalombili neyisishiyagalombili wokubusa kwabahluleli.
- 12 Futhi kwabakhona okuncane ukuguquka ezimweni zabantu, ngaphandle kokuthi abantu baqala ukuqina kakhulu ekwenzeni ububi, futhi benza okuningi kakhulu kwalokho okwakuphikisana nemiya lelo kaNkulunkulu, ngonyaka wamashumi ayisishiyagalombili nesishiyagalolunye wokubusa kwabehluleli.
- 13 Kodwa kwenzeka ngonyaka wamashumi ayisishiyagalolunye wokubusa kwabehluleli, kwaba khona izibonakaliso ezinkulu ezanikwa abantu, kanye nezimangaliso; futhi amazwi abaphrofethi aqala ukugcwaliseka.
- 14 Futhi izingelosi zavela kubantu, izazi, futhi zamemezela kubo izindaba ezinhle zokuthokoza okukhulu; ngakho-ke ngalonyaka imibhalo engcwele yaqala ukugcwaliseka.
- 15 Nokho, abantu baqala ukuqinisa izinhliziyi zabo, bonke ngaphandle kwaleyo nxenye yabo eyayikhola kakhulu, yamaNefi futhi kanjalo neyamaLamani, futhi baqala ukuthembela emandleni abo kanye nasekuhlakanipheni kwabo, bethi:

And as they went forth to lay their hands on him, behold, he did cast himself down from the wall, and did flee out of their lands, yea, even unto his own country, and began to preach and to prophesy among his own people.

And behold, he was never heard of more among the Nephites; and thus were the affairs of the people.

And thus ended the eighty and sixth year of the reign of the judges over the people of Nephi.

And thus ended also the eighty and seventh year of the reign of the judges, the more part of the people remaining in their pride and wickedness, and the lesser part walking more circumspectly before God.

And these were the conditions also, in the eighty and eighth year of the reign of the judges.

And there was but little alteration in the affairs of the people, save it were the people began to be more hardened in iniquity, and do more and more of that which was contrary to the commandments of God, in the eighty and ninth year of the reign of the judges.

But it came to pass in the ninetieth year of the reign of the judges, there were great signs given unto the people, and wonders; and the words of the prophets began to be fulfilled.

And angels did appear unto men, wise men, and did declare unto them glad tidings of great joy; thus in this year the scriptures began to be fulfilled.

Nevertheless, the people began to harden their hearts, all save it were the most believing part of them, both of the Nephites and also of the Lamanites, and began to depend upon their own strength and upon their own wisdom, saying:

- 16 Ezinye zezinto baziqagele kahle, phakathi kweziningi kangaka; kodwa bheka, siyazi ukuthi yonke lemisebenzi emikhulu kanye nemangalisayo ngeke igcwaliseke, okwakhulunywa ngayo.
- 17 Futhi baqala ukuxoxisana kanye nokuphikisana, bethi:
- 18 Akunamqondo ukuthi umuntu onjengoKristu uyoza; uma kunjalo, futhi eyiNdodana kaNkulunkulu, uBaba wezulu nomhlaba, njengoba kwakukhulunyiwe, kungani engenakuzibonakalisa kithi kanjalo nakulabo abayokube beseJerusalema na?
- 19 Yebo, kungani engenakuzibonakalisa kulelizwe kanjalo nasezweni laseJerusalema na?
- 20 Kodwa bhekani, siyazi ukuthi leli yisiko elibi, eladluliselwa kithi ngobaba bethu, ukusenza ukuthi sikhohle entweni ethize enkulu futhi nemangalisayo eyokwenzeka, kodwa hhayi phakathi kwethu, kodwa ezweni elikude kakhulu, izwe esingalazi; ngalokho-ke bangasigcina singenalwazi, ngokuba ngeke sikwazi ukuzibonela ngamehlo ethu ukuthi ziyiqiniso.
- 21 Futhi, ngobuqili kanye nangobuciko obunqondakali bomubi, benze izimfihlakalo ezithize ezinkulu esingenakuziqonda, eziyosigcina sisesimweni esibi ukuze sibe ngaphansi kwamazwi abo, futhi phezu kwalokho sibe ngaphansi kwabo, ngokuba sithembele kubo ukuthi basifundise izwi; futhi ngalendlela bayosigcina singenalwazi uma sizinikela kubo, izinsuku zonke zokuphila kwethu.
- 22 Futhi ziningi ezinye izinto abantu abazicabanga ezinhliziyweni zabo, ezaziwubuwula futhi ziyize; futhi babephazamisekile kakhulu, ngokuba uSathane wabaphehla ukuthi benze ububi njalonjalo; yebo, wayehamba ezulazula andisa amahemuhemu kanye nemibango ebusweni bonke bezwe, ukuze aqinise izinhliziyi zabantu ngokumelene nalokho okwakukuhle kanye nalokho okwakuzokwenzeka.
- 23 Futhi naphezu kwezimpawu kanye nezibonakaliso ezazenziwa phakathi kwabantu beNkosi, kanye nezimangaliso eziningi ababezenza, uSathane wathola ukubambelela okukhulu ezinhliziyweni zabantu ebusweni bonke bezwe.

Some things they may have guessed right, among so many; but behold, we know that all these great and marvelous works cannot come to pass, of which has been spoken.

And they began to reason and to contend among themselves, saying:

That it is not reasonable that such a being as a Christ shall come; if so, and he be the Son of God, the Father of heaven and of earth, as it has been spoken, why will he not show himself unto us as well as unto them who shall be at Jerusalem?

Yea, why will he not show himself in this land as well as in the land of Jerusalem?

But behold, we know that this is a wicked tradition, which has been handed down unto us by our fathers, to cause us that we should believe in some great and marvelous thing which should come to pass, but not among us, but in a land which is far distant, a land which we know not; therefore they can keep us in ignorance, for we cannot witness with our own eyes that they are true.

And they will, by the cunning and the mysterious arts of the evil one, work some great mystery which we cannot understand, which will keep us down to be servants to their words, and also servants unto them, for we depend upon them to teach us the word; and thus will they keep us in ignorance if we will yield ourselves unto them, all the days of our lives.

And many more things did the people imagine up in their hearts, which were foolish and vain; and they were much disturbed, for Satan did stir them up to do iniquity continually; yea, he did go about spreading rumors and contentions upon all the face of the land, that he might harden the hearts of the people against that which was good and against that which should come.

And notwithstanding the signs and the wonders which were wrought among the people of the Lord, and the many miracles which they did, Satan did get great hold upon the hearts of the people upon all the face of the land.

24 Futhi waphela kanjalo-ke unyaka wamashumi
ayisishiyagalolunye wokubusa kwabehluleli
kubantu baNefi.

And thus ended the ninetieth year of the reign of
the judges over the people of Nephi.

25 Futhi iphela kanjalo-ke incwadi kaHelamani,
ngokombhalo kaHelamani kanye namadodana akhe.

And thus ended the book of Helaman, according
to the record of Helaman and his sons.

UNefi wesiThathu

INcwadi kaNefi

Indodana kaNefi, Owayeyindodana kaHelamani

Futhi uHelamani wayeyindodana kaHelamani, owayeyindodana ka-Alima, owayeyindodana ka-Alima, ewuzalo lukaNefi owayeyindodana kaLehi, owaphuma eJerusalema ngonyaka wokuqala wokubusa kukaSedekiya, inkosi yakwaJuda.

3 Nefi 1

- 1 Manje kwenzeka ukuthi unyaka wamashumi ayisishiyagalolunye nanye wawusudlulile futhi kwase kuyiminyaka engamakhulu ayisithupha kusukela ngesikhathi uLehi ashiya eJerusalema; futhi kwakungunyaka lapho uLakonewu wayengumahluleli omkhulu kanye nombusi wezwe.
- 2 Futhi uNefi, indodana kaHelamani, wabe esamuka ezweni lakwaZarahemla, enika indodana yakhe uNefi umthwalo, owayeyindodana yakhe endala, mayelana nezingcwephe zethusi, kanye nayo yonke imibhalo eyayigciniwe, kanye nazo zonke lezo zinto ezazigcinwe zingcwele kusukela ekumukeni kukaLehi eJerusalema.
- 3 Emva kwalokho wemuka ezweni, futhi ukuthi waya kuphi, akukho muntu owaziyo; futhi indodana yakhe uNefi nempela yayigcina imibhalo esikhundleni sakhe, yebo, umbhalo walabantu.
- 4 Futhi kwenzeka ukuthi ekuqaleni konyaka wamashumi ayisishiyagalolunye nambili, bheka, iziphrofetho zabaphrofethi zaqala ukugcwaliseka ngokugcwele; ngokuba kwaqala ukuthi kube khona izibonakaliso ezinkulu kanye nezimangaliso ezinkulu ezenzekayo phakathi kwabantu.
- 5 Kodwa kwakukhona abanye abaqala ukuthi isikhathi sase sidlulile sokuthi amazwi agcwaliseke, ayekhulunywe nguSamuweli, umLamani.
- 6 Futhi baqala ukuthokoza ngokuphathelene nabafowabo, bethi: Bhekani isikhathi sesidlulile, futhi amazwi kaSamuweli awakagcwaliseki; ngakho-ke, ukujabula kwenu kanye nokholo lwenu mayelana nalento bekuyize.

Third Nephi

The Book of Nephi

the Son of Nephi, Who Was the Son of Helaman

And Helaman was the son of Helaman, who was the son of Alma, who was the son of Alma, being a descendant of Nephi who was the son of Lehi, who came out of Jerusalem in the first year of the reign of Zedekiah, the king of Judah.

3 Nephi 1

Now it came to pass that the ninety and first year had passed away and it was six hundred years from the time that Lehi left Jerusalem; and it was in the year that Lachoneus was the chief judge and the governor over the land.

And Nephi, the son of Helaman, had departed out of the land of Zarahemla, giving charge unto his son Nephi, who was his eldest son, concerning the plates of brass, and all the records which had been kept, and all those things which had been kept sacred from the departure of Lehi out of Jerusalem.

Then he departed out of the land, and whither he went, no man knoweth; and his son Nephi did keep the records in his stead, yea, the record of this people.

And it came to pass that in the commencement of the ninety and second year, behold, the prophecies of the prophets began to be fulfilled more fully; for there began to be greater signs and greater miracles wrought among the people.

But there were some who began to say that the time was past for the words to be fulfilled, which were spoken by Samuel, the Lamanite.

And they began to rejoice over their brethren, saying: Behold the time is past, and the words of Samuel are not fulfilled; therefore, your joy and your faith concerning this thing hath been vain.

- 7 Futhi kwenzeka ukuthi nempela benza isiyaluyalu esikhulu kulo lonke izwe; futhi abantu ababekholwa baqala ukuba nosizi olukhulu, hleze ngesizathu esithize lezo zinto ezazikhulunywe zingenzi.
- 8 Kodwa bheka, balubheka ngokwethembeka lolo suku kanye nalobo busuku kanye nalolo suku olwaluzoba njengosuku olulodwa kube sengathi akukho busuku, ukuze bazi ukuthi ukholo lwabo lwalungelona ize.
- 9 Manje kwenzeka ukuthi kwakukhona usuku olwalubekwe eceleni ngababengakholwa, ukuthi bonke labo ababekholelwa kulawo masiko bayiswe kwagoqanyawo ngaphandle kokuthi isibonakaliso senzeke, esasinikezwe nguSamuweli umphrofethi.
- 10 Manje kwenzeka ukuthi ngesikhathi uNefi, indodana kaNefi, ebubona lobu bubi babantu bakubo, inhliziyi yakhe yaba nosizi olukhulu.
- 11 Futhi kwenzeka ukuthi wahamba waphumela ngaphandle futhi wakhothama phansi, futhi wakhala kakhulu kuNkulunkulu wakhe ekhalela abantu bakubo, yebo, labo abase bezobulawa ngenxa yokholo lwabo emasikweni oyise.
- 12 Futhi kwenzeka ukuthi wakhala kakhulu eNkosini lonke lolo suku; futhi bheka, izwi leNkosi leza kuye, lithi:
- 13 Phakamisa ikhanda lakho futhi uthokoze; ngokuba bheka, isikhathi sesifikile, futhi ngabo lobusuku isibonakaliso sizonikwa, futhi kusasa ngiyeza emhlabeni, ukuzokhombisa umhlaba ukuthi ngizokugcwalisa konke lokho engenze ukuthi kukhulunywe ngomlomo wabaphrofethi bami abangcwele.
- 14 Bheka, ngiza kwabami, ukuzogcwalisa zonke izinto engizambule kubantwana babantu kusukela ekusekelweni somhlaba, futhi ngizokwenza intando, kaBaba kanye neyeNdodana—kaBaba ngenxa yami, futhi yeNdodana ngenxa yenyama yami. Futhi bheka, isikhathi sesifikile, futhi ngabo lobusuku isibonakaliso sizonikwa.

And it came to pass that they did make a great uproar throughout the land; and the people who believed began to be very sorrowful, lest by any means those things which had been spoken might not come to pass.

But behold, they did watch steadfastly for that day and that night and that day which should be as one day as if there were no night, that they might know that their faith had not been vain.

Now it came to pass that there was a day set apart by the unbelievers, that all those who believed in those traditions should be put to death except the sign should come to pass, which had been given by Samuel the prophet.

Now it came to pass that when Nephi, the son of Nephi, saw this wickedness of his people, his heart was exceedingly sorrowful.

And it came to pass that he went out and bowed himself down upon the earth, and cried mightily to his God in behalf of his people, yea, those who were about to be destroyed because of their faith in the tradition of their fathers.

And it came to pass that he cried mightily unto the Lord all that day; and behold, the voice of the Lord came unto him, saying:

Lift up your head and be of good cheer; for behold, the time is at hand, and on this night shall the sign be given, and on the morrow come I into the world, to show unto the world that I will fulfil all that which I have caused to be spoken by the mouth of my holy prophets.

Behold, I come unto my own, to fulfil all things which I have made known unto the children of men from the foundation of the world, and to do the will, both of the Father and of the Son—of the Father because of me, and of the Son because of my flesh. And behold, the time is at hand, and this night shall the sign be given.

- 15 Futhi kwenzeka ukuthi lawo mazwi ayeze kuNefi agcwaliseka, njengoba aye kade ekhulunyiwe; ngokuba bheka, ngokushona kwelanga abuzange bube khona ubumnyama; futhi abantu baqala ukumangala ngoba abuzange bube khona ubumnyama ngesikhathi kufika ubusuku.
- 16 Futhi kwakukhona abanengi, ababengazange bawakholwe amazwi abaphrofethi, abawela phansi kwaba sengathi bafike, ngokuba bazi ukuthi isu elikhulu lembubhiso ababekade belisungulele labo ababekholelwa emazwini abaphrofethi lase livinjelwe; ngokuba isibonakaliso esasinikiwe sase sifikile.
- 17 Futhi baqala ukwazi ukuthi iNdodana kaNkulunkulu kwase kufanele ivele masinyane; yebo, ukuphetha, bonke abantu ebusweni besifunda sonke kusukela entshonalanga kuya empumalanga, ezweni elisenyakatho kanye nasezweni eliseningizimu, bethuka kakhulu kangokuthi bawela phansi.
- 18 Ngokuba babazi ukuthi abaphrofethi babefakazile ngalezi zinto iminyaka eminingi, futhi nokuthi isibonakaliso esasinikiwe sabe sesifikile, futhi baqala ukwesaba ngenxa yobubi babo kanye nokungakhohwa kwabo.
- 19 Futhi kwenzeka ukuthi abuzange bube khona ubumnyama kubo bonke lobo busuku, kodwa kwakukhanya sengathi kusemini. Futhi kwenzeka ukuthi ilanga laphinda laphuma ekuseni futhi, njengokujwayelekile; futhi bazi ukuthi kwakuwusuku lolo iNkosi eyayizozalwa ngalo, ngenxa yaleso sibonakaliso esasinikiwe.
- 20 Futhi kwase kwenzekile, yebo, zonke izinto, ngisho nokuncane kangakanani, njengokwamazwi abaphrofethi.
- 21 Futhi kwaphinde kwenzeka ukuthi inkanyezi entsha nempela yaqhamuka, njengokwezwi.
- 22 Futhi kwenzeka ukuthi kusukela ngalesi sikhathi kuya phambili kwaqala ukuthi kube khona amanga ayekhulunywa phakathi kwabantu, nguSathane, ukuze azenze lukhuni izinhliziyi zabo, ngokuzama ukuthi bangakholelwa kulezo zibonakaliso kanye nezimangaliso ababezibonile; kodwa naphezu kwalamanga kanye nenkohliso ingxenywe enkulu yabantu yakholwa, futhi yaphendukela eNkosini.

And it came to pass that the words which came unto Nephi were fulfilled, according as they had been spoken; for behold, at the going down of the sun there was no darkness; and the people began to be astonished because there was no darkness when the night came.

And there were many, who had not believed the words of the prophets, who fell to the earth and became as if they were dead, for they knew that the great plan of destruction which they had laid for those who believed in the words of the prophets had been frustrated; for the sign which had been given was already at hand.

And they began to know that the Son of God must shortly appear; yea, in fine, all the people upon the face of the whole earth from the west to the east, both in the land north and in the land south, were so exceedingly astonished that they fell to the earth.

For they knew that the prophets had testified of these things for many years, and that the sign which had been given was already at hand; and they began to fear because of their iniquity and their unbelief.

And it came to pass that there was no darkness in all that night, but it was as light as though it was mid-day. And it came to pass that the sun did rise in the morning again, according to its proper order; and they knew that it was the day that the Lord should be born, because of the sign which had been given.

And it had come to pass, yea, all things, every whit, according to the words of the prophets.

And it came to pass also that a new star did appear, according to the word.

And it came to pass that from this time forth there began to be lyings sent forth among the people, by Satan, to harden their hearts, to the intent that they might not believe in those signs and wonders which they had seen; but notwithstanding these lyings and deceivings the more part of the people did believe, and were converted unto the Lord.

- 23 Futhi kwenzeka ukuthi uNefi wahamba waya phakathi kwabantu, futhi kanjalo nabanye abaningi, bebabhabhadisela ekuphendukeni, okwaba khona ngakho ukuthethelelwa kwezono okukhulu. Futhi ngalesi sizathu abantu baqala futhi ukuthi babe nokuthula ezweni.
- 24 Futhi kwakungekho mibango, ngaphandle nje kwabambalwa abaqala ukushumayela, bezama ukubonisa ngemibhalo engcwele ukuthi sase singasekho isidingo sokuthi bagcine umthetho kaMose. Manje kulento babephambuka, bengayiqondi imibhalo engcwele.
- 25 Kodwa kwenzeka ukuthi baphenduka ngokushesha, futhi bakholiswa ngamaphutha ababekuwo, ngokuba baziswa ukuthi umthetho wawungaka gcwaliseki, futhi nokuthi kwakufanele ugcwaliseke ngisho nokuncane kangakanani; yebo, izwi lafika kubo ukuthi kufanele ugcwaliseke; yebo, ukuthi kwakungasoze kwadlula naganyana linye nachashazana linye kuze kube konke kuyagcwaliseka; ngakho-ke ngawo kanye lowo nyaka baholelwa ekutheni bazi ngeziphambeko zabo futhi bawavuma amaphutha abo.
- 26 Futhi wadlula ngalendlela-ke unyaka wamashumi ayisishiyagalolunye nambili, uletha izindaba zokuthokoza okukhulu kubantu ngenxa yalezo zibonakaliso ezase zenzekile, njengo kwamazwi esiphrofetho sabo bonke abaphrofethi abangwcele.
- 27 Futhi kwenzeka ukuthi unyaka wamashumi ayisishiyagalolunye nantathu nawo ngokunjalo wadlula ngokuthula, ngaphandle nje kwabaphangi baGadiantoni, ababehlala ezintabeni, ababegcwele izwe; ngokuba zazinamandla izinqaba zabo kanye nezindawo zabo ezifihlakeleyo kangangokuthi abantu abakwazanga ukubanqoba; ngakho-ke babulala kakhulu, futhi badala okuningi ukufa phakathi kwabantu.
- 28 Futhi kwenzeka ukuthi ngonyaka wamashumi ayisishiyagalolunye nane baqala banda kakhulu, ngenxa yokuthi kwakukhona abahlubuki abaningi bamaNefi ababe balekele kubo, lokho okwenza usizi olukhulu kulawo maNefi ayesele ezweni.

And it came to pass that Nephi went forth among the people, and also many others, baptizing unto repentance, in the which there was a great remission of sins. And thus the people began again to have peace in the land.

And there were no contentions, save it were a few that began to preach, endeavoring to prove by the scriptures that it was no more expedient to observe the law of Moses. Now in this thing they did err, having not understood the scriptures.

But it came to pass that they soon became converted, and were convinced of the error which they were in, for it was made known unto them that the law was not yet fulfilled, and that it must be fulfilled in every whit; yea, the word came unto them that it must be fulfilled; yea, that one jot or tittle should not pass away till it should all be fulfilled; therefore in this same year were they brought to a knowledge of their error and did confess their faults.

And thus the ninety and second year did pass away, bringing glad tidings unto the people because of the signs which did come to pass, according to the words of the prophecy of all the holy prophets.

And it came to pass that the ninety and third year did also pass away in peace, save it were for the Gadianton robbers, who dwelt upon the mountains, who did infest the land; for so strong were their holds and their secret places that the people could not overpower them; therefore they did commit many murders, and did do much slaughter among the people.

And it came to pass that in the ninety and fourth year they began to increase in a great degree, because there were many dissenters of the Nephites who did flee unto them, which did cause much sorrow unto those Nephites who did remain in the land.

29 Futhi phezu kwalokho kwaba khona isizathu
sosizi olukhulu phakathi kwamaLamani; ngokuba
bheka, ayenabantwana abaningi ababe sakhula futhi
sebeqala ukuthi bakhule baqine ngeminyaka, ukuze
bazimele, futhi baholelwa kude ngabanye ababenga
maZoramu, ngamanga abo kanye nangamazwi abo
athophayo, ukuthi bahlangane nalabo baphangi
baGadiyantoni.

30 Futhi ngalendlela amaLamani nawo ahlushwa,
futhi aqala ukwehla okholweni lwawo kanye
nasekulungeni kwawo, ngenxa yobubi
besizukulwane esasisakhulayo.

And there was also a cause of much sorrow among
the Lamanites; for behold, they had many children
who did grow up and began to wax strong in years,
that they became for themselves, and were led away
by some who were Zoramites, by their lyings and
their flattering words, to join those Gadianton rob-
bers.

And thus were the Lamanites afflicted also, and
began to decrease as to their faith and righteousness,
because of the wickedness of the rising generation.

3 Nefi 2

- 1 Futhi kwenzeka ukuthi unyaka wamashumi ayisishiyagalolunye nanhlanu waphela ngalendlela nawo, futhi abantu baqala ukuzikhohlwa lezo zibonakaliso kanye nalezo zimangaliso ababezizwile, futhi baqala ukuthi kancane kancane bengabe besamangaliswa yisibonakaliso noma yisimangaliso esasivela ezulwini, kangangokuthi baqala ukuthi babe lukhuni ezinhliziyweni zabo, futhi babe yizimpumpu the emiqondweni yabo, futhi baqala ukungakukholwa konke lokho ababekuzwile futhi bekubonile—
- 2 Becabanga ezinhliziyweni zabo izinto ezithize eziyize, ukuthi zazenziwe ngabantu kanye nangamandla kadeveli, ukuze zidukise futhi zikhohlise izinhliziyo zabantu; futhi ngalendlela uSathane waphinda wazithola izinhliziyo zabantu futhi, kangangokuthi wawaphuphuthekisa amehlo abo futhi wabadukisa ukuthi bakholwe ukuthi imfundiso kaKristu yayiyinto ewubuphukuphuku futhi eyize.
- 3 Futhi kwenzeka ukuthi abantu baqala ukuthi bakhule baqine ebubini kanye nasezinengisweni; futhi abazange bakholwe ukuthi kwakuzophinda kube khona ezinye izibonakaliso noma izimangaliso ezazisazonikwa; futhi uSathane wayehamba ezulazula, edukisa izinhliziyo zabantu, ebalinga futhi ebona ukuthi benze ububi obukhulu ezweni.
- 4 Futhi waphela kanjalo-ke unyaka wamashumi ayisishiyagalolunye nesithupha; futhi kanjalo nonyaka wamashumi ayisishiyagalolunye nesikhombisa; futhi kanjalo nonyaka wamashumi ayisishiyagalolunye nesishiyagalombili; futhi kanjalo nonyaka wamashumi ayisishiyagalolunye nesishiyagalolunye;
- 5 Futhi kanjalo neminyaka eyikhulu yabe isidlulile kusukela ezinsukwini zika Mosiya, owayeyiNkosi kubantu bamaNefi.
- 6 Futhi iminyaka engamakhulu ayisithupha nesishiyagalolunye yabe isidlulile kusukela uLehi ahamba eJerusalema.
- 7 Futhi iminyaka eyisishiyagalolunye yabe isidlulile kusukela esikhathini isibonakaliso esasinikezwe ngaso, okwakukhulunye ngaso ngabaphrofethi, sokuthi uKristu wayezofika emhlabeni.

3 Nephi 2

And it came to pass that thus passed away the ninety and fifth year also, and the people began to forget those signs and wonders which they had heard, and began to be less and less astonished at a sign or a wonder from heaven, insomuch that they began to be hard in their hearts, and blind in their minds, and began to disbelieve all which they had heard and seen—

Imagining up some vain thing in their hearts, that it was wrought by men and by the power of the devil, to lead away and deceive the hearts of the people; and thus did Satan get possession of the hearts of the people again, insomuch that he did blind their eyes and lead them away to believe that the doctrine of Christ was a foolish and a vain thing.

And it came to pass that the people began to wax strong in wickedness and abominations; and they did not believe that there should be any more signs or wonders given; and Satan did go about, leading away the hearts of the people, tempting them and causing them that they should do great wickedness in the land.

And thus did pass away the ninety and sixth year; and also the ninety and seventh year; and also the ninety and eighth year; and also the ninety and ninth year;

And also an hundred years had passed away since the days of Mosiah, who was king over the people of the Nephites.

And six hundred and nine years had passed away since Lehi left Jerusalem.

And nine years had passed away from the time when the sign was given, which was spoken of by the prophets, that Christ should come into the world.

- 8 Manje amaNefi aqala ukubala isikhathi sawo kusukela ngalesi sikhathi okwakunikezwe ngaso isibonakaliso, noma kusukela ngokufika kukaKristu; ngakho-ke, iminyaka eyisishiyagalolunye yabe isidlulile.
- 9 Futhi uNefi, owayenguyise kaNefi, owayegcine imibhalo, akazange esabuyela ezweni lakwaZarahemla, futhi akazange atholakale ndawo kulo lonke izwe.
- 10 Futhi kwenzeka ukuthi abantu baqhubeka nokuhlala ebubinia, naphezu kokushumayela kanye nokuphrofetha okuningi okwakuthunyelwe phakathi kwabo; futhi ngalendlela wedlula kanjalo-ke nonyaka weshumi, futhi kanjalo nonyaka weshumi nanye wedlula ngalendlela ebubini.
- 11 Futhi kwenzeka ngonyaka weshumi nantathu kwaqala ukuthi kube khona izimpi kanye nemibango kulo lonke izwe; ngokuba abaphangi baGadiyantoni base bebaningi kakhulu, futhi base bebulele abantu abaningi kakhulu, futhi bachitha namadolobha amaningi kakhulu, futhi bandisa nokufa okuningi kakhulu kanye nokubulawa kwabantu okuningi kulo lonke izwe, kangangokuthi kwadingeka ukuthi bonke abantu, amaNefi kanye namaLamani, bathathe izikhali bayolwa nabo.
- 12 Ngakho-ke, wonke amaLamani ayephendukele eNkosini ahlangana nabafowabo, amaNefi, futhi aphoqeka, ukuthi avikele izimpilo zawo kanye nabesifazane babo kanye nabantwana babo, ukuthi athathe izikhali alwe nalabo baphangi baGadiyantoni, yebo, futhi kanjalo nokuthi agcine amalungelo awo, kanye nezinzuzo zebandla lawo kanye nokukhonza kwawo, kanye namandla awo okuzenzela, kanye nenkululeko yawo.
- 13 Futhi kwenzeka ukuthi ngaphambi kokuthi lo nyaka weshumi nantathu udlule amaNefi asatshiswa ngokubhujiswa nya ngenxa yalempi, eyaba yimbi kakhulu.
- 14 Futhi kwenzeka ukuthi lawo maLamani ayehlangene namaNefi abalwa kanye namaNefi;
- 15 Futhi isiqalekiso sawo sasuswa kuwo, futhi isikhumba sawo sase siba mhlophe njengesamaNefi;

Now the Nephites began to reckon their time from this period when the sign was given, or from the coming of Christ; therefore, nine years had passed away.

And Nephi, who was the father of Nephi, who had the charge of the records, did not return to the land of Zarahemla, and could nowhere be found in all the land.

And it came to pass that the people did still remain in wickedness, notwithstanding the much preaching and prophesying which was sent among them; and thus passed away the tenth year also; and the eleventh year also passed away in iniquity.

And it came to pass in the thirteenth year there began to be wars and contentions throughout all the land; for the Gadianton robbers had become so numerous, and did slay so many of the people, and did lay waste so many cities, and did spread so much death and carnage throughout the land, that it became expedient that all the people, both the Nephites and the Lamanites, should take up arms against them.

Therefore, all the Lamanites who had become converted unto the Lord did unite with their brethren, the Nephites, and were compelled, for the safety of their lives and their women and their children, to take up arms against those Gadianton robbers, yea, and also to maintain their rights, and the privileges of their church and of their worship, and their freedom and their liberty.

And it came to pass that before this thirteenth year had passed away the Nephites were threatened with utter destruction because of this war, which had become exceedingly sore.

And it came to pass that those Lamanites who had united with the Nephites were numbered among the Nephites;

And their curse was taken from them, and their skin became white like unto the Nephites;

16 Futhi izinsizwa zabo kanye namadodakazi abo abama mahle kakhulu, futhi abalwa kanye namaNefi, futhi abizwa ngamaNefi. Futhi waphela kanjalo-ke unyaka weshumi nantathu.

17 Futhi kwenzeka ekuqaleni konyaka weshumi nane, impi phakathi kwabaphangi kanye nabantu baNefi yaqhubeka futhi yaba yimbi kakhulu; nokho, abantu baNefi bake bathi ukuthola ukubahlula abaphangi, kangangokuthi babaphoqa ukuba babaleke baphindele emuva babakhipha emazweni abo babayisa ezintabeni kanye nasezindaweni zabo ezifihlekile.

18 Futhi waphela kanjalo-ke unyaka weshumi nane. Futhi ngonyaka weshumi nanhlanu baphuma bazolwa nabantu baNefi; futhi ngenxa yobubi babantu baNefi, kanye nemibango yabo eminingi kanye neziyaluyalu, abaphangi baGadiyantoni bathola ukubahlula kakhulu.

19 Futhi waphela kanjalo-ke unyaka weshumi nanhlanu, futhi ngalendlela abantu babe sesimweni sezinhlupheko eziningi; futhi inkemba yokubhujiswa yayisi lengela kubo, kangangokuthi base bezoshaywa yiyo, futhi lokhu ngenxa yobubi babo.

And their young men and their daughters became exceedingly fair, and they were numbered among the Nephites, and were called Nephites. And thus ended the thirteenth year.

And it came to pass in the commencement of the fourteenth year, the war between the robbers and the people of Nephi did continue and did become exceedingly sore; nevertheless, the people of Nephi did gain some advantage of the robbers, insomuch that they did drive them back out of their lands into the mountains and into their secret places.

And thus ended the fourteenth year. And in the fifteenth year they did come forth against the people of Nephi; and because of the wickedness of the people of Nephi, and their many contentions and dissensions, the Gadianton robbers did gain many advantages over them.

And thus ended the fifteenth year, and thus were the people in a state of many afflictions; and the sword of destruction did hang over them, insomuch that they were about to be smitten down by it, and this because of their iniquity.

3 Nefi 3

- 1 Manje kwenzeka ukuthi ngonyaka weshumi nesithupha kusukela ekufikeni kukaKristu, uLakonewu, umbusi wezwe, wathola incwadi evela kumholi kanye nombusi waleliqembu labaphangi; futhi lawa ngamazwi ayebhaliwe, ayethi:
- 2 Lakonewu, ophakeme kakhulu kanye nombusi omkhulu wezwe, bheka, ngikubhalela lencwadi, futhi ngikunikeza udumo olukhulu kakhulu ngenxa yokuqina kwakho, futhi kanjalo nangokuqina kwabantu bakho, ekugcineni lokho enikuthatha ngokuthi kuyilungelo kanye nenkululeko yenu; yebo, nimile impela, sengathi nisekelwe yisandla sikankulunkulu, ekuvikeleni inkululeko yenu, kanye nempahla yenu, kanye nezwe lenu, noma lokho enikubiza kanjalo.
- 3 Futhi kubonakala kungidabukisa, Lakonewu ophakeme kakhulu, ukuthi ungaba yisiwula kangaka futhi uziqhayise ngokucabanga ukuthi ungamelana namadoda anesibindi amaningi kangaka akhuzwa yimi, okumanje ami ngomumo ezikhalini zawo, futhi alindele ngentshisekelo enkulu izwi elithi—Hambani nehlele kumaNefi niwabulale.
- 4 Futhi mina, ngokwazi isibindi sabo, sengike ngabavivinya empini, futhi ngazi ngenzondo yabo engapheliyo ngani ngenxa yokungalungile okuningi enikwenze kubo, ngakho-ke uma bengehlela ezansi bazolwa nani bayonivakashela ngokunibulala niphela nya.
- 5 Ngakho-ke ngibhale lencwadi, ngayivala ngesandla sami uqobo, ngoba ngikhathazekile ngenhlalakahle yenu, ngenxa yokuqina kwenu kulokho enikholwa wukuthi kulungile, kanye nobuqhawe benu empini.
- 6 Ngakho-ke ngiyakubhalela, ngifisa ukuthi ninikele kulaba bantu bami, amadolobha enu, izindawo zenu, kanye nalokho eninakho, kunokuthi banivakashele ngenkamba futhi nokuthi ukonakaliswa kuze kini.

3 Nephi 3

And now it came to pass that in the sixteenth year from the coming of Christ, Lachoneus, the governor of the land, received an epistle from the leader and the governor of this band of robbers; and these were the words which were written, saying:

Lachoneus, most noble and chief governor of the land, behold, I write this epistle unto you, and do give unto you exceedingly great praise because of your firmness, and also the firmness of your people, in maintaining that which ye suppose to be your right and liberty; yea, ye do stand well, as if ye were supported by the hand of a god, in the defence of your liberty, and your property, and your country, or that which ye do call so.

And it seemeth a pity unto me, most noble Lachoneus, that ye should be so foolish and vain as to suppose that ye can stand against so many brave men who are at my command, who do now at this time stand in their arms, and do await with great anxiety for the word—Go down upon the Nephites and destroy them.

And I, knowing of their unconquerable spirit, having proved them in the field of battle, and knowing of their everlasting hatred towards you because of the many wrongs which ye have done unto them, therefore if they should come down against you they would visit you with utter destruction.

Therefore I have written this epistle, sealing it with mine own hand, feeling for your welfare, because of your firmness in that which ye believe to be right, and your noble spirit in the field of battle.

Therefore I write unto you, desiring that ye would yield up unto this my people, your cities, your lands, and your possessions, rather than that they should visit you with the sword and that destruction should come upon you.

- 7 Noma-ke ngamanye amazwi, zinikeleni kithi, bese nihlangana nathi futhi bese nazi ngemisebenzi yethu efihlakele, futhi nibe ngabafowethu ukuze nani nifane nathi—hhayi izigqila zethu, kodwa abafowethu futhi sihlanganyele kukho konke esinakho.
- 8 Futhi bheka, ngiyafunga kuwe, uma ningakwenza lokhu, ngokufunga, ngeke nibulawe; kodwa uma ningenakukwenza lokhu, ngiyafunga kuni ngesifungo, ukuthi ngenyanga ezayo ngizoyala amabutho ami ukuthi ehle azolwa nani, futhi awayikusibamba esawo isandla futhi awayikushiya lutho, kodwa ayonibulala, futhi ayoyidedela inkemba iwele phezu kwenu kuze kube niyaphela nya.
- 9 Futhi bheka, nginguGidiyani; futhi ngingumbusi waleli qembu eliyimfihlo likaGadiyantoni; okuyiqembu kanye nemisebenzi yalo engazi ukuthi mihle; futhi ingeyesikhathi sasendulo futhi idluliselwe kithi.
- 10 Futhi ngiyakubhalela lencwadi, Lakonewu, futhi ngiyethemba ukuthi nizozinikela izindawo zenu kanye nalokho eninakho, ngaphandle kokuchitha igazi, ukuze labantu bami babuyelwe futhi ngamalungelo abo kanye nokuphatha kwabo, abahlubuke kuni ngenxa yobubi benu ekubagodloleni amalungelo okuphatha kwabo, futhi ngaphandle kokuthi nenze lokhu, ngizobaphindiselela ngokoniwa kwabo. NginguGidiyani.
- 11 Manje kwenzeka ngesikhathi uLakonewu ethola lencwadi wethuka kakhulu, ngenxa yesibindi sikaGidiyani sokufuna ukuthi athathe izwe lamaNefi, futhi kanjalo nangokusongela abantu kanye nokufuna ukuphindisela ukoniwa kwalabo ababe ngazange boniwe, ngaphandle kokuthi babezone bona ngokuhlubukela kulabobaphangi ababi nabanengekile.

Or in other words, yield yourselves up unto us, and unite with us and become acquainted with our secret works, and become our brethren that ye may be like unto us—not our slaves, but our brethren and partners of all our substance.

And behold, I swear unto you, if ye will do this, with an oath, ye shall not be destroyed; but if ye will not do this, I swear unto you with an oath, that on the morrow month I will command that my armies shall come down against you, and they shall not stay their hand and shall spare not, but shall slay you, and shall let fall the sword upon you even until ye shall become extinct.

And behold, I am Giddianhi; and I am the governor of this the secret society of Gadianton; which society and the works thereof I know to be good; and they are of ancient date and they have been handed down unto us.

And I write this epistle unto you, Lachoneus, and I hope that ye will deliver up your lands and your possessions, without the shedding of blood, that this my people may recover their rights and government, who have dissented away from you because of your wickedness in retaining from them their rights of government, and except ye do this, I will avenge their wrongs. I am Giddianhi.

And now it came to pass when Lachoneus received this epistle he was exceedingly astonished, because of the boldness of Giddianhi demanding the possession of the land of the Nephites, and also of threatening the people and avenging the wrongs of those that had received no wrong, save it were they had wronged themselves by dissenting away unto those wicked and abominable robbers.

- 12 Manje bheka, lo Lakonewu, umbusi,
wayeyindoda elungile, futhi
wayengenakwesatshiswa ngezimfuno kanye
nangezinsongo zomphangi; ngakho-ke akazange
ayilalele incwadi kaGidiyani, umbusi wabaphangi,
kodwa wenza ukuthi abantu bakhe bakhale
eNkosini bacele amandla ngesikhathi labo baphangi
beyokwehla ngaso bezolwa nabo.
- 13 Yebo, wathumela isimemezelo kubo bonke
abantu, ukuthi baqoqele ndawonye abesifazane
babu, kanye nabantwana babu, imihlambi yezimvu
zabo kanye nemihlambi yezinkomo zabo, kanye
nakho konke okwabo, ngaphandle kwezwe labo,
endaweni eyodwa.
- 14 Futhi wenza ukuthi kwakhiwe izinqaba
zibazungeze, futhi ukuqina kwazo kube kukhulu
kakhulu. Futhi wenza ukuthi amabutho, amaNefi
kanye nawaLamani, noma abo bonke labo
ababebalwa kanye namaNefi, ukuthi abekwe
njengabaqaphi azungeze nokuthi abagade, futhi
nokuthi abavikele kubaphangi emini nasebusuku.
- 15 Yebo, wathi kubo: Njengoba iNkosi iphila,
ngaphandle kokuthi niphenduke kubo bonke ububi
benu, futhi nikhale eNkosini, anisoze nanini
nikhululwe ezandleni zalabo baphangi
baGadiyantoni.
- 16 Futhi ayemakhulu futhi emangalisa amazwi
kanye neziphrofetho zikaLakonewu kangangokuthi
zadala ukwesaba kubo bonke abantu; futhi nempela
bazinikela ngamandla abo ukuthi benze
njengokwamazwi kaLakonewu.
- 17 Futhi kwenzeka ukuthi uLakonewu wabeka
izinduna ezinkulu kuwo wonke amabutho amaNefi,
ukuthi ziwakhuze ngesikhathi labo baphangi
beyokwehla ngaso bephuma ehlane bezolwa nabo.
- 18 Manje induna enkulu kakhulu ngaphezu kwazo
zonke izinduna ezinkulu kanye nomkhuzi omkhulu
wamabutho onke amaNefi wabekwa, futhi igama
lakhe kwakungu Gidigidoni.

Now behold, this Lachoneus, the governor, was a just man, and could not be frightened by the demands and the threatenings of a robber; therefore he did not hearken to the epistle of Giddianhi, the governor of the robbers, but he did cause that his people should cry unto the Lord for strength against the time that the robbers should come down against them.

Yea, he sent a proclamation among all the people, that they should gather together their women, and their children, their flocks and their herds, and all their substance, save it were their land, unto one place.

And he caused that fortifications should be built round about them, and the strength thereof should be exceedingly great. And he caused that armies, both of the Nephites and of the Lamanites, or of all them who were numbered among the Nephites, should be placed as guards round about to watch them, and to guard them from the robbers day and night.

Yea, he said unto them: As the Lord liveth, except ye repent of all your iniquities, and cry unto the Lord, ye will in nowise be delivered out of the hands of those Gadianton robbers.

And so great and marvelous were the words and prophecies of Lachoneus that they did cause fear to come upon all the people; and they did exert themselves in their might to do according to the words of Lachoneus.

And it came to pass that Lachoneus did appoint chief captains over all the armies of the Nephites, to command them at the time that the robbers should come down out of the wilderness against them.

Now the chiefest among all the chief captains and the great commander of all the armies of the Nephites was appointed, and his name was Gidgiddoni.

- 19 Manje kwakuyisiko phakathi kwawo wonke amaNefi ukuthi kubekwe owezinduna zawo ezinkulu, (ngaphandle kwangezikhathi zabo zobubi) owayenomoya wokwambulelwa futhi kanjalo nowokuphrofetha; ngakho-ke, lo Gidigidoni wayengumphrofethi omkhulu phakathi kwabo, futhi phezu kwalokho engumahluleli omkhulu.
- 20 Manje abantu bathi kuGidigidoni: Khuleka eNkosini, bese usivumela ukuthi sihambe sikhuphukele ezintabeni siye ehlane, ukuze siwele phezu kwalabaphangi futhi sibabulalele emazweni abo uqobo.
- 21 Kepha uGidigidoni wathi kubo: INkosi iyenqaba; ngokuba uma sikhuphuka siyolwa nabo iNkosi izosinikela ezandleni zabo; ngakho-ke sizozilungiselela enkabeni yamazwe ethu, futhi sizobuthela ndawonye wonke amabutho ethu, futhi ngeke siye siyolwa nabo, kodwa sizobalinda baze beze bazolwa nathi; ngakho-ke njengoba iNkosi iphila, uma sikwenza lokhu izobanikela ezandleni zethu.
- 22 Futhi kwenzeka ngonyaka weshumi nesikhombisa, ngasekupheleni kwalowo nyaka, isimemezelo sikaLakonewu sase sikhishiwe kubo bonke ubuso bezwe, futhi base bethathe amahhashi abo, kanye nezinqola zabo, kanye nezinkomo zabo, kanye nayo yonke imihlambi yezimvu zabo, kanye nemihlambi yezinkomo zabo, kanye nokusanhlamvu kwabo, kanye nakho konke ababenakho, futhi bahamba ngezinkulungwane kanye nangamashumi ezinkulungwane, kwaze kwathi bonke bahamba baya kuleyo ndawo eyayibekiwe ukuthi babezohlangukela kuyo, ukuze bazivikele ezitheni zabo.
- 23 Futhi izwe elalibekiwe kwakuyizwe lakwaZarahemla, futhi kwakuyizwe elaliphakathi kwezwe lakwaZarahemla kanye nezwe iNala, yebo, emnceleni owawuphakathi kwezwe iNala kanye nezwe iNcithakalo.
- 24 Futhi kwabakhona izinkulungwane eziningi kakhulu zabantu ababebizwa ngamaNefi, ababuthana ndawonye kulelizwe. Manje uLakonewu wenza ukuthi babuthane ndawonye ezweni elalingaseningizimu, ngenxa yesiqalekiso esikhulu esasise zweni elingasenyakatho.

Now it was the custom among all the Nephites to appoint for their chief captains, (save it were in their times of wickedness) some one that had the spirit of revelation and also prophecy; therefore, this Gidgiddoni was a great prophet among them, as also was the chief judge.

Now the people said unto Gidgiddoni: Pray unto the Lord, and let us go up upon the mountains and into the wilderness, that we may fall upon the robbers and destroy them in their own lands.

But Gidgiddoni saith unto them: The Lord forbid; for if we should go up against them the Lord would deliver us into their hands; therefore we will prepare ourselves in the center of our lands, and we will gather all our armies together, and we will not go against them, but we will wait till they shall come against us; therefore as the Lord liveth, if we do this he will deliver them into our hands.

And it came to pass in the seventeenth year, in the latter end of the year, the proclamation of Lachoneus had gone forth throughout all the face of the land, and they had taken their horses, and their chariots, and their cattle, and all their flocks, and their herds, and their grain, and all their substance, and did march forth by thousands and by tens of thousands, until they had all gone forth to the place which had been appointed that they should gather themselves together, to defend themselves against their enemies.

And the land which was appointed was the land of Zarahemla, and the land which was between the land Zarahemla and the land Bountiful, yea, to the line which was between the land Bountiful and the land Desolation.

And there were a great many thousand people who were called Nephites, who did gather themselves together in this land. Now Lachoneus did cause that they should gather themselves together in the land southward, because of the great curse which was upon the land northward.

25 Futhi baziqinisa ngokumelene nezitha zabo; futhi bahlala ezweni elilodwa, futhi beyiqoqo elilodwa; futhi bawesaba amazwi ayekhulunywe nguLakonewu, kangangokuthi nempela baphenduka ezonweni zabo zonke; futhi imikhuleko yabo bayiphakamisela eNkosini uNkulunkulu wabo, ukuthi abakhulule ngaleso sikhathi izitha zabo zehla zizolwa nabo.

26 Futhi baba nosizi olukhulu kakhulu ngenxa yezitha zabo. Futhi uGidigidoni wenza ukuthi benze izikhali zempi ezinhlobonhlobo, futhi ziqine zibe nezivikelo, kanye nezihlangu, kanye nezihlangu ezincane, ngendlela ayebafundise ngayo.

And they did fortify themselves against their enemies; and they did dwell in one land, and in one body, and they did fear the words which had been spoken by Lachoneus, insomuch that they did repent of all their sins; and they did put up their prayers unto the Lord their God, that he would deliver them in the time that their enemies should come down against them to battle.

And they were exceedingly sorrowful because of their enemies. And Gidgidoni did cause that they should make weapons of war of every kind, and they should be strong with armor, and with shields, and with bucklers, after the manner of his instruction.

3 Nepi 4

- 1 Futhi kwenzeka ukuthi ngasekupheleni konyaka weshumi nesishiyagalombili lawo mabutho abaphangi ayesezilungiselele impi, aqala ukwehla futhi aphuma emagqumeni, kanye nasezintabeni, kanye nasehlane, kanye nasezinqabeni zawo eziqinile, kanye nase zindaweni zawo ezifihlakele, futhi aqala ukuzithathela ubunini bezindawo, ezazisezweni eliseningizimu kanye nalezo ezazisezweni elisenyakatho, futhi aqala ukuzithathela ubunini bamazwe onke ayeshiywe ngamaNefi, kanye namadolobha ayeshiywe engenamuntu.
- 2 Kepha bheka, kwakungekho zilwane zasendle nazinyamazane kulawo mazwe ayeshiywe ngamaNefi, futhi kwakungekho zinyamazane zabaphangi ngaphandle kwase hlane.
- 3 Futhi abaphangi babengenakuphila ngaphandle kokuthi babe sehlane, ngenxa yokuswela ukudla; ngokuba amaNefi ayeshiye izindawo zawo zingenalutho, futhi ayeqoqe imihlambi yezimvu zawo kanye nemihlambi yezinkomo zawo kanye nakho konke ayenakho, futhi aba yiqoqo elilodwa.
- 4 Ngakho-ke, kwakungekho thuba lokuthi abaphangi baphange futhi bathole ukudla, ngaphandle kokuthi baphumele obala balwe namaNefi; futhi amaNefi ngenxa yokuthi ayeyiqoqo elilodwa, futhi eyisibalo esikhulu kakhulu, futhi ezibekele imiphako, kanye namahashi kanye nezinkomo, kanye nemihlambi enhlobonhlobo, ukuze akwazi ukuphila isikhathi esingange minyaka eyisikhombisa, ngaleso sikhathi ayenethemba lokuthi ayobe esebabulale baphela abaphangi ebusweni bezwe; futhi wedlula kanjalo-ke unyaka weshumi nesishiyagalombili.
- 5 Futhi kwenzeka ukuthi ngonyaka weshumi nesishiyagalolunye uGidiyani wathola ukuthi kwakudingeka ukuthi akhuphuke ayolwa namaNefi, ngokuba kwakungekho ndlela yokuthi baphile ngaphandle kokuthi baphange futhi bebe futhi babulale.

3 Nepi 4

And it came to pass that in the latter end of the eighteenth year those armies of robbers had prepared for battle, and began to come down and to sally forth from the hills, and out of the mountains, and the wilderness, and their strongholds, and their secret places, and began to take possession of the lands, both which were in the land south and which were in the land north, and began to take possession of all the lands which had been deserted by the Nephites, and the cities which had been left desolate.

But behold, there were no wild beasts nor game in those lands which had been deserted by the Nephites, and there was no game for the robbers save it were in the wilderness.

And the robbers could not exist save it were in the wilderness, for the want of food; for the Nephites had left their lands desolate, and had gathered their flocks and their herds and all their substance, and they were in one body.

Therefore, there was no chance for the robbers to plunder and to obtain food, save it were to come up in open battle against the Nephites; and the Nephites being in one body, and having so great a number, and having reserved for themselves provisions, and horses and cattle, and flocks of every kind, that they might subsist for the space of seven years, in the which time they did hope to destroy the robbers from off the face of the land; and thus the eighteenth year did pass away.

And it came to pass that in the nineteenth year Giddianhi found that it was expedient that he should go up to battle against the Nephites, for there was no way that they could subsist save it were to plunder and rob and murder.

6 Futhi babengeke balokothe bagcwale ebusweni bezwe ukuze bakwazi ukuzitshalela okusanhlamvu, hleze amaNefi eze kubo futhi ababulale; ngakho-ke uGidiyani wanikeza umyalelo emabuthweni akhe wokuthi ngalowo nyaka kwakufanele bakhuphuke bayolwa namaNefi.

7 Futhi kwenzeka ukuthi nempela bakhuphuka ukuze bayolwa; futhi kwakungenyanga yesithupha; futhi bheka, lwalulukhulu futhi lwesabeka lolo suku abeza ngalo ukuzolwa; futhi babebhince ngendlela yabaphangi; futhi babenesikhumba semvu esasizungeze izinkalo zabo, futhi begcobe igazi, futhi amakhanda abo ayephuciwe, futhi bebeke izivikelo zekhanda kuwo; futhi ukubukeka kwamabutho kaGidiyani kwakwesabeka kakhulu, ngenxa yezivikelo zawo, futhi nangenxa yokuzigcoba kwawo ngegazi.

8 Futhi kwenzeka ukuthi amabutho amaNefi, ngesikhathi ebona ukubukeka kwebutho likaGidiyani, awela phansi wonke, futhi akhala eNkosini uNkulunkulu wawo, ukuthi ibalondolozwe futhi ibakhulule ezandleni zezitha zabo.

9 Futhi kwenzeka ukuthi ngesikhathi amabutho kaGidiyani ekubona lokhu aqala ukumemeza ngezwi elikhulu, ngenxa yenjabulo yawo, ngokuba ayecabanga ukuthi amaNefi ayewiswe wukwesaba ngenxa yokwesaba amabutho awo.

10 Kepha aphoxeka ngalokhu, ngokuba amaNefi ayengabesabi; kepha ayesaba uNkulunkulu wawo futhi amnxusa ukuthi awavikele; ngakho-ke, ngesikhathi amabutho kaGidiyani egijima eya kubo base bezilungiselele ukuhlangabezana nawo; yebo, ngamandla eNkosi nempela babemukela.

11 Futhi impi yaqala kulenyanga yesithupha; futhi ukulwa kwaba kukhulu futhi kwaba kubi kakhulu, yebo, kwaba kukhulu futhi kwakubi kakhulu ukubulawa kwabantu kwalapho, kangangokuthi kwakungakaze kwaziwe nanini ukubulawa kwabantu okukhulu kangaka phakathi kwabo bonke abantu baLehi selokhu ashiya eJerusalema.

12 Futhi naphezu kwezinsongo kanye nezifungo uGidiyani ayezenzile, bheka, amaNefi abashaya, kangangokuthi bahlehlele emuva ngaphambi kwawo.

And they durst not spread themselves upon the face of the land insomuch that they could raise grain, lest the Nephites should come upon them and slay them; therefore Giddianhi gave commandment unto his armies that in this year they should go up to battle against the Nephites.

And it came to pass that they did come up to battle; and it was in the sixth month; and behold, great and terrible was the day that they did come up to battle; and they were girded about after the manner of robbers; and they had a lamb-skin about their loins, and they were dyed in blood, and their heads were shorn, and they had head-plates upon them; and great and terrible was the appearance of the armies of Giddianhi, because of their armor, and because of their being dyed in blood.

And it came to pass that the armies of the Nephites, when they saw the appearance of the army of Giddianhi, had all fallen to the earth, and did lift their cries to the Lord their God, that he would spare them and deliver them out of the hands of their enemies.

And it came to pass that when the armies of Giddianhi saw this they began to shout with a loud voice, because of their joy, for they had supposed that the Nephites had fallen with fear because of the terror of their armies.

But in this thing they were disappointed, for the Nephites did not fear them; but they did fear their God and did supplicate him for protection; therefore, when the armies of Giddianhi did rush upon them they were prepared to meet them; yea, in the strength of the Lord they did receive them.

And the battle commenced in this the sixth month; and great and terrible was the battle thereof, yea, great and terrible was the slaughter thereof, insomuch that there never was known so great a slaughter among all the people of Lehi since he left Jerusalem.

And notwithstanding the threatenings and the oaths which Giddianhi had made, behold, the Nephites did beat them, insomuch that they did fall back from before them.

- 13 Futhi kwenzeka ukuthi uGidigidoni wayala ukuthi amabutho akhe abalandele aze ayofika eminceleni yehlane, futhi nokuthi bangashiyi namunye oyowela ezandleni zabo kuleyo ndlela; futhi ngaleyo ndlela nempela babalandela futhi baze bababulalela, emingceleni yehlane, baze bawugcina ngisho nomyalelo kaGidigidoni.
- 14 Futhi kwenzeka ukuthi uGidiyani, owayemi futhi elwa ngesibindi, walandelwa ngesikhathi ebaleka; futhi esekhathele ngenxa yokulwa kwakhe okukhulu wabanjwa wabulawa. Futhi kwaphela kanjalo-ke ngoGidiyani umphangi.
- 15 Futhi kwenzeka ukuthi amabutho amaNefi aphinda abuyela endaweni yawo yokuphepha. Futhi kwenzeka ukuthi lonyaka weshumi nesishiyagalolunye wedlula, futhi abaphangi abaphindanga babuya ukuthi bazolwa; ababuyanga futhi nangonyaka wamashumi amabili.
- 16 Futhi nangonyaka wamashumi amabili nanye ababuyanga ukuzolwa, kodwa beza macala onke ukuze babahaqe nxazonke abantu baNefi; ngokuba babecabanga ukuthi uma babengahle babavimbe abantu baNefi emazweni abo, futhi babazungeze macala onke, futhi uma babengabavimba kuzo zonke izenzo zabo zangaphandle, lokho kwakungabenza ukuthi bazinikele njengezifiso zabo.
- 17 Manje base bezibekele omunye umholi, igama lakhe okwakungu Zeminariha; ngakho-ke kwakunguZeminariha owenza ukuthi lokhu kuhaqa kwenziwe.
- 18 Kepha bheka, lokhu kwaba wusizo kumaNefi; ngokuba kwakulukhuni ukuthi abaphangi babavimbezele isikhathi eside ngokwanele ukuthi kube nokuzwela kumaNefi, ngenxa yomphako omningi ababewugcinile,
- 19 Futhi nangenxa yomphako omncane kubaphangi; ngokuba bheka, babengena lutho ngaphandle nje kwenyama yokuthi baziphilise, leyo nyama ababeyithola ehlane;
- 20 Futhi kwenzeka ukuthi izinyamazane zasendle zancipha ehlane kangangokuthi abaphangi base bezobulawa yindlala.

And it came to pass that Gidgiddoni commanded that his armies should pursue them as far as the borders of the wilderness, and that they should not spare any that should fall into their hands by the way; and thus they did pursue them and did slay them, to the borders of the wilderness, even until they had fulfilled the commandment of Gidgiddoni.

And it came to pass that Giddianhi, who had stood and fought with boldness, was pursued as he fled; and being weary because of his much fighting he was overtaken and slain. And thus was the end of Giddianhi the robber.

And it came to pass that the armies of the Nephites did return again to their place of security. And it came to pass that this nineteenth year did pass away, and the robbers did not come again to battle; neither did they come again in the twentieth year.

And in the twenty and first year they did not come up to battle, but they came up on all sides to lay siege round about the people of Nephi; for they did suppose that if they should cut off the people of Nephi from their lands, and should hem them in on every side, and if they should cut them off from all their outward privileges, that they could cause them to yield themselves up according to their wishes.

Now they had appointed unto themselves another leader, whose name was Zemnariyah; therefore it was Zemnariyah that did cause that this siege should take place.

But behold, this was an advantage to the Nephites; for it was impossible for the robbers to lay siege sufficiently long to have any effect upon the Nephites, because of their much provision which they had laid up in store,

And because of the scantiness of provisions among the robbers; for behold, they had nothing save it were meat for their subsistence, which meat they did obtain in the wilderness;

And it came to pass that the wild game became scarce in the wilderness insomuch that the robbers were about to perish with hunger.

- 21 Futhi amaNefi ayehamba njalo emini kanye nasebusuku, futhi ewela emabuthweni abaphangi, futhi ebulalala ngezinkulungwane kanye nangamashumi ezinkulungwane.
- 22 Futhi ngalendlela kwaba yisifiso sabantu baZeminaraha ukuthi baliyeke isu labo, ngenxa yokubhujiswa okukhulu okwakubehlela ebusuku nasemini.
- 23 Futhi kwenzeka ukuthi uZeminaraha wanika umyalelo kubantu bakhe wokuthi bakuyeke ukuvimbezela, futhi bahambe baye ezinxenyeni ezingaphandle kakhulu zezwe elingasenyakatho.
- 24 Manje, uGidgidoni elazi isu labo, futhi azi ngobuthakathaka babo ngenxa yokufuna ukudla, kanye nokubulawa okukhulu okwakwenzekile phakathi kwabo, ngakho-ke wathumela amabutho akhe ngesikhathi sasebusuku, futhi wayivala indlela yabo yokubaleka futhi wabeka amabutho akhe endleleni yabo yokubaleka.
- 25 Futhi lokhu amabutho akwenza ngesikhathi sasebusuku, futhi ahamba ayovimba ngaphambili kwabaphangi, kwathi ngakusasa, ngesikhathi abaphangi sebeqala uhambo lwabo, bahlangana namabutho amaNefi ndawo zombili ngaphambili nangasemuva.
- 26 Futhi nalabo baphangi ababeseningizimu nabo ngokunjalo bavinjezelwa ezindaweni zabo zokubaleka. Futhi zonke lezi zinto zenziwa ngokuyalelwa nguGidgidoni.
- 27 Futhi kwaba khona izinkulungwane eziningi ezazinikela ukuthi zibe yiziboshwa zamaNefi, kwathi insalela yabo yabulawa.
- 28 Futhi umholi wabo, uZeminaraha, wathathwa futhi walengiswa esihlahleni, yebo, ngisho phezulu kuso waze wafa. Futhi emva kokuthi sebemlengisile waze wafa basigawulela phansi isihlahla, futhi base bekhala ngezwi elikhulu, bethi:
- 29 Sengathi iNkosi ingabalondoloza abantu bayo ekulungeni kanye nasebungcweleni benhliziyo, ukuze benze ukuthi babathele phansi bonke labo abayofuna ukubabulala ngenxa yamandla kanye namaqembu ayimfihlo, ngisho nanjenga le ndoda ethelwe phansi.

And the Nephites were continually marching out by day and by night, and falling upon their armies, and cutting them off by thousands and by tens of thousands.

And thus it became the desire of the people of Zemnariah to withdraw from their design, because of the great destruction which came upon them by night and by day.

And it came to pass that Zemnariah did give command unto his people that they should withdraw themselves from the siege, and march into the furthest parts of the land northward.

And now, Gidgidoni being aware of their design, and knowing of their weakness because of the want of food, and the great slaughter which had been made among them, therefore he did send out his armies in the night-time, and did cut off the way of their retreat, and did place his armies in the way of their retreat.

And this did they do in the night-time, and got on their march beyond the robbers, so that on the morrow, when the robbers began their march, they were met by the armies of the Nephites both in their front and in their rear.

And the robbers who were on the south were also cut off in their places of retreat. And all these things were done by command of Gidgidoni.

And there were many thousands who did yield themselves up prisoners unto the Nephites, and the remainder of them were slain.

And their leader, Zemnariah, was taken and hanged upon a tree, yea, even upon the top thereof until he was dead. And when they had hanged him until he was dead they did fell the tree to the earth, and did cry with a loud voice, saying:

May the Lord preserve his people in righteousness and in holiness of heart, that they may cause to be felled to the earth all who shall seek to slay them because of power and secret combinations, even as this man hath been felled to the earth.

- 30 Futhi bathokoza futhi bakhala ngezwi elilodwa, bethi: Sengathi uNkulunkulu ka-Abrahama, kanye noNkulunkulu ka-Isaka, kanye noNkulunkulu kaJakobe, angabavikela labantu bahlale ekulungeni inqobo nje uma beyobiza igama likaNkulunkulu wabo ukuthi abavikele.
- 31 Futhi kwenzeka ukuthi baqhumuka, bonke kanyekanye, behlabelela, futhi bedumisa uNkulunkulu wabo ngento enkulu kangaka abenzele yona, ekubalondolozeni ukuthi bangaweli ezandleni zezitha zabo.
- 32 Yebo, bakhala bethi: Hosana kuNkulunkulu oPhakeme kaKhulu. Futhi bakhala bethi: Libusisiwe igama leNkosi uNkulunkulu uMninimandla Onke, uNkulunkulu oPhakeme kakhulu.
- 33 Futhi izinhliziyi zabo zakhukhumala ngenxa yenjabulo, kwaze kwaba khona nokuphuma kwezinyembezi okuningi, ngenxa yobuhle obukhulu bukaNkulunkulu ekubakhululeni ezandleni zezitha zabo; futhi babazi ukuthi kwakungenxa yokuphenduka kwabo kanye nokuzithoba kwabo okwenze ukuthi bakhululwe ekebhujisweni kwaphakade.

And they did rejoice and cry again with one voice, saying: May the God of Abraham, and the God of Isaac, and the God of Jacob, protect this people in righteousness, so long as they shall call on the name of their God for protection.

And it came to pass that they did break forth, all as one, in singing, and praising their God for the great thing which he had done for them, in preserving them from falling into the hands of their enemies.

Yea, they did cry: Hosanna to the Most High God. And they did cry: Blessed be the name of the Lord God Almighty, the Most High God.

And their hearts were swollen with joy, unto the gushing out of many tears, because of the great goodness of God in delivering them out of the hands of their enemies; and they knew it was because of their repentance and their humility that they had been delivered from an everlasting destruction.

3 Nepi 5

- 1 Manje bheka, kwakungasekho namunye ophilayo phakathi kwabo bonke abantu bamaNefi owayesawangabaza ngisho nakancane amazwi abo bonke abaphrofethi abangcwele ababekhulumile; ngokuba babazi ukuthi kwakufanele ukuthi agcwaliseke.
- 2 Futhi babazi ukuthi kwakufanele ukuthi uKristu ufikile, ngenxa yezibonakaliso eziningi ezase zinikiwe, ngokwamazwi abaphrofethi; futhi nangenxa yezinto ezase zivele sezenzekile babazi ukuthi kwakufanele ukuthi zonke izinto zigcwaliseke njengoba kwakukhulunyiwe.
- 3 Ngakho-ke aziyeka zonke izono zawo, kanye nezinengiso zawo, kanye nobufebe bawo, futhi amsebenzela uNkulunkulu ngokukhuthala yonke emini nasebusuku.
- 4 Manje kwenzeka ukuthi ngesikhathi esebathathile bonke abaphangi baboshwa, kangangokuthi akubanga bikho namunye oweqayo kulabo ababenga bulawanga, aziphonsa etilongweni iziboshwa zawo, futhi enza ukuthi izwi likaNKulunkulu lishunyayelwe kubo; futhi ngobuningi balabo abaphendukayo ezonweni zabo futhi bangena esivumelwaneni sokuthi babengeke besabulala nanini babekhululwa.
- 5 Kepha ngobuningi balabo ababengangenanga esivumelwaneni, futhi ababesaqhubeka nokuthi babe nezimfihlo zokubulala ezinhliziyweni zabo, yebo, ngobuningi balabo ababetholakala besongela abafowabo babe bekwa icala futhi bejeziswe ngokomthetho.
- 6 Futhi ngalendlela baziqeda zonke lezo zinhlangano ezazinobubi, futhi eziyimfihlo, futhi eziyisinengiso, okwakukhona kuzo inkohlakalo enkulu kakhulu, kanye nokubulala okuningi kakhulu.
- 7 Futhi waphela kanjalo-ke unyaka wamashumi amabili nambili, futhi kanjalo nonyaka wamashumi amabili nantathu, kanye nonyaka wamashumi amabili nane, kanye nonyaka wamashumi amabili nanhlanu; futhi kwase kudlule kanjalo iminyaka engamashumi amabili nanhlanu.

3 Nepi 5

And now behold, there was not a living soul among all the people of the Nephites who did doubt in the least the words of all the holy prophets who had spoken; for they knew that it must needs be that they must be fulfilled.

And they knew that it must be expedient that Christ had come, because of the many signs which had been given, according to the words of the prophets; and because of the things which had come to pass already they knew that it must needs be that all things should come to pass according to that which had been spoken.

Therefore they did forsake all their sins, and their abominations, and their whoredoms, and did serve God with all diligence day and night.

And now it came to pass that when they had taken all the robbers prisoners, insomuch that none did escape who were not slain, they did cast their prisoners into prison, and did cause the word of God to be preached unto them; and as many as would repent of their sins and enter into a covenant that they would murder no more were set at liberty.

But as many as there were who did not enter into a covenant, and who did still continue to have those secret murders in their hearts, yea, as many as were found breathing out threatenings against their brethren were condemned and punished according to the law.

And thus they did put an end to all those wicked, and secret, and abominable combinations, in the which there was so much wickedness, and so many murders committed.

And thus had the twenty and second year passed away, and the twenty and third year also, and the twenty and fourth, and the twenty and fifth; and thus had twenty and five years passed away.

- 8 Futhi kwase kube khona izinto eziningi ezase zenzekile, emehlweni abanye, ezazingaba ngezinkulu futhi nezimangalisayo; nokho, ngeke zabhalwa zonke kulencwadi; yebo, lencwadi ngeke yakwazi ukuqukatha ngisho ingxenye nje yokwekhulu yalokho okwenziwa phakathi kwabantu abaningi kangaka esikhathini esingange minyaka engamashumi amabili nanhlanu;
- 9 Kepha bheka kukhona imibhalo equkethe zonke izenzo zalabantu; futhi indatshana emfishane kodwa eyiqiniso yanikezwa nguNefi.
- 10 Ngakho-ke ngenze umbhalo wami ngalezi zinto ngokombhalo kaNefi, owawuqoshwe ezingcwepheni ezazibizwa ngezingcwephe zikaNefi.
- 11 Futhi bheka, ngenza umbhalo ezingcwepheni engizenze ngezami izandla uqobo.
- 12 Futhi bheka, ngibizwa ngo Mormoni, ngibizwa ngezwe lakwaMormoni, izwe u-Alima amisa kulo ibandla phakathi kwabantu, yebo, ibandla lokuqala elamiswa phakathi kwabo emva kwesiphambeko sabo.
- 13 Bheka, ngingumfundi kaJesu Kristu, iNdodana kaNkulunkulu. Ngibizwe nguye ukuthi ngimemezele izwi lakhe phakathi kwabantu bakhe, ukuze babe nokuphila okuphakade.
- 14 Futhi kuye kwadingeka ukuthi mina, ngokwentando kaNkulunkulu, ukuze imikhuleko yalabo asebahamba phambilini, ababengcwele, ukuze igcwaliseke ngokokholo lwabo, ukuthi ngenze umbhalo ngalezi zinto esezenzekile—
- 15 Yebo, umbhalo omncane walokho okwenzeka kusukela ngesikhathi uLehi esuka eJerusalema, kwehla kuze kufike kulesikhathi samanje.
- 16 Ngakho-ke ngenza umbhalo wami ngiwususela ezindabeni ezazinikezwe yilabo ababengaphambi kwami, kuze kufike ekuqaleni kosuku lwami;
- 17 Futhi emva kwalokho ngenza umbhalo wezinto engizibone ngawami amehlo.
- 18 Futhi ngiyazi umbhalo engiwenzayo ukuthi ungumbhalo olungile futhi uyiqiniso; nokho kukhona izinto eziningi, ngokolimi lwethu, esingakwazi ukuzibhala.

And there had many things transpired which, in the eyes of some, would be great and marvelous; nevertheless, they cannot all be written in this book; yea, this book cannot contain even a hundredth part of what was done among so many people in the space of twenty and five years;

But behold there are records which do contain all the proceedings of this people; and a shorter but true account was given by Nephi.

Therefore I have made my record of these things according to the record of Nephi, which was engraved on the plates which were called the plates of Nephi.

And behold, I do make the record on plates which I have made with mine own hands.

And behold, I am called Mormon, being called after the land of Mormon, the land in which Alma did establish the church among the people, yea, the first church which was established among them after their transgression.

Behold, I am a disciple of Jesus Christ, the Son of God. I have been called of him to declare his word among his people, that they might have everlasting life.

And it hath become expedient that I, according to the will of God, that the prayers of those who have gone hence, who were the holy ones, should be fulfilled according to their faith, should make a record of these things which have been done—

Yea, a small record of that which hath taken place from the time that Lehi left Jerusalem, even down until the present time.

Therefore I do make my record from the accounts which have been given by those who were before me, until the commencement of my day;

And then I do make a record of the things which I have seen with mine own eyes.

And I know the record which I make to be a just and a true record; nevertheless there are many things which, according to our language, we are not able to write.

- 19 Manje sengenza isiphetho senkulumo yami, okungeyami uqobo, futhi ngiqhubeka nokunikeza indaba yami ngezinto ezenzeka ngaphambi kwami.
- 20 NginguMormoni, futhi ngiwuzalo lwangempela lukaLehi. Nginesizathu sokumdumisa uNkulunkulu wami kanye nomSindisi wami uJesu Kristu, ukuthi wakhipha obaba bethu ezweni laseJerusalema, (futhi akekho namunye owayazi ngaphandle kwakhe kanye nalabo abakhipha kulelozwe) futhi nokuthi unike mina kanye nabantu bakithi ulwazi oluningi kangaka ngokwanele ukuba kusindiswe imiphefumulo yethu.
- 21 Ngempela uyibusisile indlu ka Jakobe, futhi waba nesihawu kuyo inzalo kaJosefa.
- 22 Futhi kangangoba abantwana baLehi beyigcinile imiyalelo yakhe ubabusisile futhi wabaphumelelisa njengokwezwi lakhe.
- 23 Yebo, futhi ngempela insali yenzalo kaJosefa uyoyiholela olwazini lweNkosi uNkulunkulu wabo.
- 24 Futhi ngempela njengoba iNkosi iphila, izoyiqoqa emagumbini amane omhlaba yonke insali yenzalo kaJakobe, ehla kazeke kubo bonke ubuso bomhlaba.
- 25 Futhi njengoba yenze isivumelwano nayo yonke indlu kaJakobe, ngisho kanjalo nesivumelwano evumelane ngaso nendlu kaJakobe siyogcwaliseka ngesikhathi sayo esifanelekile, ngokwanele ukuba kubuyiselwe yonke indlu kaJakobe ekwazini ngesivumelwano avumelane ngaso nabo.
- 26 Futhi emva kwalokho bayomazi uMkhululi wabo, onguJesu Kristu, iNdodana kaNkulunkulu; futhi emva kwalokho bayoqoqwa kuwo omane amagumbi omhlaba bayiswe emazweni abo, lapho ababekade behlakazwe kusuka khona; yebo, njengoba iNkosi iphila kuyoba njalo. Amen.

And now I make an end of my saying, which is of myself, and proceed to give my account of the things which have been before me.

I am Mormon, and a pure descendant of Lehi. I have reason to bless my God and my Savior Jesus Christ, that he brought our fathers out of the land of Jerusalem, (and no one knew it save it were himself and those whom he brought out of that land) and that he hath given me and my people so much knowledge unto the salvation of our souls.

Surely he hath blessed the house of Jacob, and hath been merciful unto the seed of Joseph.

And insomuch as the children of Lehi have kept his commandments he hath blessed them and prospered them according to his word.

Yea, and surely shall he again bring a remnant of the seed of Joseph to the knowledge of the Lord their God.

And as surely as the Lord liveth, will he gather in from the four quarters of the earth all the remnant of the seed of Jacob, who are scattered abroad upon all the face of the earth.

And as he hath covenanted with all the house of Jacob, even so shall the covenant wherewith he hath covenanted with the house of Jacob be fulfilled in his own due time, unto the restoring all the house of Jacob unto the knowledge of the covenant that he hath covenanted with them.

And then shall they know their Redeemer, who is Jesus Christ, the Son of God; and then shall they be gathered in from the four quarters of the earth unto their own lands, from whence they have been dispersed; yea, as the Lord liveth so shall it be. Amen.

3 Nepi 6

- 1 Manje kwenzeka ukuthi abantu bamaNefi bonke babuyela emazweni abo ngonyaka wamashumi amabili nesithupha, wonke umuntu, nomndeni wakhe, umhlambi wezimvu zakhe kanye nomhlambi wezinkomo zakhe, amahhashi akhe kanye nezinkomo zakhe, kanye nazo zonke izinto nanoma yini okunye okwakungokwabo.
- 2 Futhi kwenzeka ukuthi babengakakudli konke ukudla kwabo; ngakho-ke bakuthatha konke lokho ababengakakudli, konke okusanhlamvu kwabo okunhlobonhlobo, kanye negolide labo, kanye nesiliva labo, kanye nazo zonke izinto zabo eziyigugu, futhi babuyela emazweni abo kanye nakho konke ababenakho, enyakatho kanye naseningizimu, ezweni elingasenyakatho kanye nasezweni elingaseningizimu.
- 3 Futhi banika labo baphangi ababengene esivumelwaneni sokuthi bagcine ukuthula kwezwe, labo ababethanda ukuthi basale bengamaLamani, amazwe, ngokwesibalo sabo, ukuze bakwazi ukuthi ngokusebenza kwabo, babe nakho ababengaphila ngakho; futhi ngalendlela bakwazi ukuthi badale ukuthula ezweni.
- 4 Futhi baqala ukuthi baphumelele futhi bakhula kakhulu; futhi iminyaka yamashumi amabili nesithupha kanye nesikhombisa yedlula, futhi kwaba khona ukuthula okukhulu ezweni; futhi base benze imithetho yabo ngokuhambisana nokulingana kanye nokulunga.
- 5 Manje kwakungasekho lutho kulo lonke izwe okwakuvimbela abantu ekutheni baphumelele njalo njalo, ngaphandle kokuthi bawele esiphambekweni.
- 6 Futhi kwakunguGidigidoni, kanye nomahluleli, uLakonewu, kanye nalabo ababengabaholi ababekhethiwe, ababedale lokuthula okukhulu ezweni.
- 7 Futhi kwenzeka ukuthi kwaba khona amadolobha amaningi akhiwa kabusha, futhi kwaba khona amaningi amadolobha amadala alungiswayo.
- 8 Futhi kwaba khona eminingi imigwaqo emikhulu eyayisakhiwa, kanye neminingi imigwaqo eyakhiwayo, eyayisuka edolobheni iya kwelinye idolobha, futhi isuka ezweni iya kwelinye izwe, futhi isuka endaweni iya kwenye indawo.

3 Nepi 6

And now it came to pass that the people of the Nephites did all return to their own lands in the twenty and sixth year, every man, with his family, his flocks and his herds, his horses and his cattle, and all things whatsoever did belong unto them.

And it came to pass that they had not eaten up all their provisions; therefore they did take with them all that they had not devoured, of all their grain of every kind, and their gold, and their silver, and all their precious things, and they did return to their own lands and their possessions, both on the north and on the south, both on the land northward and on the land southward.

And they granted unto those robbers who had entered into a covenant to keep the peace of the land, who were desirous to remain Lamanites, lands, according to their numbers, that they might have, with their labors, wherewith to subsist upon; and thus they did establish peace in all the land.

And they began again to prosper and to wax great; and the twenty and sixth and seventh years passed away, and there was great order in the land; and they had formed their laws according to equity and justice.

And now there was nothing in all the land to hinder the people from prospering continually, except they should fall into transgression.

And now it was Gidgiddoni, and the judge, Lachoneus, and those who had been appointed leaders, who had established this great peace in the land.

And it came to pass that there were many cities built anew, and there were many old cities repaired.

And there were many highways cast up, and many roads made, which led from city to city, and from land to land, and from place to place.

- 9 Futhi wadlula kanjalo-ke unyaka wamashumi amabili nesishiyagalombili, abantu babesalokhu benokuthula njalo.
- 10 Kepha kwenzeka ngonyaka wamashumi amabili nesishiyagalolunye ukuthi kwaqala ukuthi kube khona impikiswano ethize phakathi kwabantu; futhi abanye babephakeme kangangoba baba nokuziqhenya kanye nokuziqhayisa ngenxa yengcebo yabo enkulu kakhulu, yebo, ngisho kangangoba kwaze kwaba khona ukuhluphana okukhulu;
- 11 Ngokuba kwakukhona abathengisi abanengi ezweni, futhi kanjalo nezazi mthetho eziningi, kanye nabasezikhundleni abanengi.
- 12 Futhi abantu baqala ukuthi behlukaniswe ngokwezigaba zabo, ngokunotha kwabo kanye nangamathuba abo okufunda; yebo, abanye babengenalwazi ngenxa yobuphofu babo, futhi abanye bakwazi ukufunda kakhulu ngenxa yengcebo yabo.
- 13 Abanye babephakeme kangangoba babeziqhenya, futhi abanye babezithobile kakhulu; abanye babuyisela isithuko ngesithuko, ngesikhathi abanye besemukela isithuko kanye nokuhlushwa kanye nazo zonke izinhlobo zezinhlopheko, futhi bengakuphindiseli ukuthuka, kodwa bethobile futhi bedabukile ngokona phambi kukaNkulunkulu.
- 14 Futhi ngalendlela kwaba khona ukungalingani okukhulu kulo lonke izwe, kangangokuthi ibandla laqala ukwehlukana; yebo, kangangokuthi ngonyaka wamashumi amathathu ibandla lehlukana kulo lonke izwe ngaphandle kwedlanzana nje lamaLamani elaliphendukele okholweni lweqiniso; futhi wona awazange agudluke kulo, ngokuba wona ayegxilile, futhi eqinile, futhi enganyakaziseki, efuna ngenkuthalo yawo yonke ukuthi agcine imiyalelo yeNkosi.
- 15 Manje isizathu salobu bubu babantu kwakuyilesi —USathane wayesenamandla amakhulu, ekuphehleni abantu ukuthi benze zonke izinhlobo zobubi, futhi ebakhukhumalisa ngokuziqhenya, ebalinga ukuthi bafune amandla, kanye negunya, kanye nengcebo, kanye nezinto eziyize zezwe.
- And thus passed away the twenty and eighth year, and the people had continual peace.
- But it came to pass in the twenty and ninth year there began to be some disputings among the people; and some were lifted up unto pride and boastings because of their exceedingly great riches, yea, even unto great persecutions;
- For there were many merchants in the land, and also many lawyers, and many officers.
- And the people began to be distinguished by ranks, according to their riches and their chances for learning; yea, some were ignorant because of their poverty, and others did receive great learning because of their riches.
- Some were lifted up in pride, and others were exceedingly humble; some did return railing for railing, while others would receive railing and persecution and all manner of afflictions, and would not turn and revile again, but were humble and penitent before God.
- And thus there became a great inequality in all the land, insomuch that the church began to be broken up; yea, insomuch that in the thirtieth year the church was broken up in all the land save it were among a few of the Lamanites who were converted unto the true faith; and they would not depart from it, for they were firm, and steadfast, and immovable, willing with all diligence to keep the commandments of the Lord.
- Now the cause of this iniquity of the people was this—Satan had great power, unto the stirring up of the people to do all manner of iniquity, and to the puffing them up with pride, tempting them to seek for power, and authority, and riches, and the vain things of the world.

16 Futhi ngalendlela uSathane waziholela izinhliziyi zabantu ekutheni benze zonke izinhlobo zobubi; ngakho-ke bakujabulela ukuthula iminyaka embalwa kuphela.

17 Futhi ngalendlela, ekuqaleni konyaka wamashumi amathathu—abantu sebezinikele isikhathi eside ukuthi bazulazuliswe yizilingo zikadeveli abayise noma kuphi lapho ayethanda ukuthi abayise khona, futhi nokuthi abenzise noma ngabe yibuphi ububi ayethanda ukuthi babenze—futhi ngalendlela ekuqaleni kwawo, lonyaka wamashumi amathathu, base besesimweni sobubi obukhulu.

18 Manje babengoni ngokungazi, ngokuba babeyazi intando kaNkulunkulu mayelana nabo, ngokuba yayifundisiwe kubo; ngakho-ke bamhlabuka uNkulunkulu ngokuthanda kwabo.

19 Manje kwase kusezinsukwini zikaLakonewu, indodana kaLakonewu, ngokuba uLakonewu wasithatha isihlalo sikayise futhi wababusa abantu ngalowo nyaka.

20 Futhi ngaleso sikhathi kwaqala ukuthi kube khona abantu abaholwa ngumoya ovela ezulwini futhi abathunyelwa, bama phakathi kwabantu kulo lonke izwe, beshumayela futhi befakaza ngesibindi ngezono kanye nangobubi babantu, futhi befakaza kubo mayelana nokukhululwa iNkosi eyayizokwenzela abantu bayo, noma ngamanye amazwi, ukuvuka kukaKristu; futhi bafakaza ngesibindi ngokufa kanye nangokuzwa kwayo ubuhlungu.

21 Manje kwakukhona abanengi babantu ababethukuthele kakhulu ngenxa yalabo ababefakaza ngalezi zinto; futhi labo ababethukuthele imvamisa kwakungabehluleli abakhulu, kanye nalabo ababengabaphristi abakhulu kanye nezazi mthetho; yebo, bonke labo ababeyizazi mthetho babathukuthelelabo ababefakaza ngalezi zinto.

22 Manje kwakungekho sazi mthetho namehluleli namphristi omkhulu owayengaba namandla okubeka noma ngubani icala lokuthi abulawe ngaphandle kokuthi ukubekwa kwabo icala kusayinwe ngumbusi wezwe.

And thus Satan did lead away the hearts of the people to do all manner of iniquity; therefore they had enjoyed peace but a few years.

And thus, in the commencement of the thirtieth year—the people having been delivered up for the space of a long time to be carried about by the temptations of the devil whithersoever he desired to carry them, and to do whatsoever iniquity he desired they should—and thus in the commencement of this, the thirtieth year, they were in a state of awful wickedness.

Now they did not sin ignorantly, for they knew the will of God concerning them, for it had been taught unto them; therefore they did wilfully rebel against God.

And now it was in the days of Lachoneus, the son of Lachoneus, for Lachoneus did fill the seat of his father and did govern the people that year.

And there began to be men inspired from heaven and sent forth, standing among the people in all the land, preaching and testifying boldly of the sins and iniquities of the people, and testifying unto them concerning the redemption which the Lord would make for his people, or in other words, the resurrection of Christ; and they did testify boldly of his death and sufferings.

Now there were many of the people who were exceedingly angry because of those who testified of these things; and those who were angry were chiefly the chief judges, and they who had been high priests and lawyers; yea, all those who were lawyers were angry with those who testified of these things.

Now there was no lawyer nor judge nor high priest that could have power to condemn any one to death save their condemnation was signed by the governor of the land.

- 23 Manje babebanangi abafakaza ngezinto eziphathelene noKristu abafakaza ngesibindi, abathathwa babulawa ngasese ngabehluleli, ukuze ulwazi ngokufa kwabo lungafinyeleli kumbusi wezwe kuze kube semva kokufa kwabo.
- 24 Manje bheka, lokhu kwakuphikisana nemithetho yezwe, ukuthi nanoma yimuphi umuntu abulawe ngaphandle kokuthi kutholwe imvume kumbusi wezwe—
- 25 Ngakho-ke isikhalo savela ezweni lakwaZarahemla, salethwa kumbusi wezwe, ngokumelene nalabo behluleli ababe beke icala abaphrofethi beNkosi lokuthi bafe, hhayi ngokomthetho.
- 26 Manje kwenzeka ukuthi bathathwa baletswa phambi kukamehluleli, ukuze behlulelwe ngalawo macala ababewenzile ngokomthetho owawunikwe ngabantu.
- 27 Manje kwenzeka ukuthi labo behluleli babenabangani kanye nezihlobo eziningi; futhi kwathi insali, yebo, ngisho cishe zonke izazi mthetho kanye nabaphristi abakhulu, babuthana ndawonye, futhi bahlangana nezihlobo zalabo behluleli ababezoquliswa amacala ngokomthetho.
- 28 Futhi bangena esivumelwaneni omunye nomunye, yebo, ngisho nakuleso sivumelwano esasinikwe yilabo basendulo, leso sivumelwano esanikwa futhi salawulwa ngudeveli, ukuthi simelane nakho konke ukulunga.
- 29 Ngakho-ke bahlangana ngokumelene nabantu beNkosi, futhi bangena esivumelwaneni sokubabulala, kanye nokukhulula labo ababenecala lokubulala ekutheni babanjwe yisijeziso, esase sizokhishwa ngokomthetho.
- 30 Futhi bawudelela umthetho kanye namalungelo ezwe labo; futhi bangena esivumelwaneni omunye nomunye sokuthi bambulale umbusi, futhi bamise inkosi ezweni, ukuze izwe lingabe lisaba nankululeko kodwa libe ngaphansi kwamakhosi.

Now there were many of those who testified of the things pertaining to Christ who testified boldly, who were taken and put to death secretly by the judges, that the knowledge of their death came not unto the governor of the land until after their death.

Now behold, this was contrary to the laws of the land, that any man should be put to death except they had power from the governor of the land—

Therefore a complaint came up unto the land of Zarahemla, to the governor of the land, against these judges who had condemned the prophets of the Lord unto death, not according to the law.

Now it came to pass that they were taken and brought up before the judge, to be judged of the crime which they had done, according to the law which had been given by the people.

Now it came to pass that those judges had many friends and kindreds; and the remainder, yea, even almost all the lawyers and the high priests, did gather themselves together, and unite with the kindreds of those judges who were to be tried according to the law.

And they did enter into a covenant one with another, yea, even into that covenant which was given by them of old, which covenant was given and administered by the devil, to combine against all righteousness.

Therefore they did combine against the people of the Lord, and enter into a covenant to destroy them, and to deliver those who were guilty of murder from the grasp of justice, which was about to be administered according to the law.

And they did set at defiance the law and the rights of their country; and they did covenant one with another to destroy the governor, and to establish a king over the land, that the land should no more be at liberty but should be subject unto kings.

3 Nepi 7

- 1 Manje bheka, ngizonikhombisa ukuthi abazange bayimise inkosi kulelizwe; kodwa ngawo kanye lowo nyaka, yebo, unyaka wamashumi amathathu, babulala esihlalweni sokwahlulela, yebo, bambulala umahluleli omkhulu walelizwe.
- 2 Futhi abantu behlukana omunye nomunye baba yizizwana, wonke umuntu ngokomndeni wakhe kanye nangokwezihlobo zakhe kanye nabangane; futhi ngalendlela bawuqeda umkhandlu ophetheyo walelizwe.
- 3 Futhi zonke izizwana zabeka inkosi noma umholi wazo; futhi ngalendlela baba yizizwana kanye nabaholi bezizwana.
- 4 Manje bheka, kwakungekho muntu phakathi kwabo ngaphandle kokuthi enomndeni omkhulu kanye nezihlobo eziningi kanye nabangani; ngakho-ke izizwana zabo zaba nkulu kakhulu.
- 5 Manje konke lokhu kwenziwa, futhi akuzange kube khona zimpi okwangaleso sikhathi phakathi kwabo; futhi bonke lobubi beza ebantwini ngenxa yokuthi bazinikela emandleni kaSathane.
- 6 Futhi imithetho yomkhandlu ophetheyo yaqedwa, ngenxa yeqembu eliyimfihlo labangani kanye nezihlobo zalabo ababulala abaphrofethi.
- 7 Futhi badala umbango omkhulu kulelizwe, kangangokuthi iningi labantu abalungile cishe lonke lase ligcwele ububi; yebo, kwase kukhona abambalwa kuphela abantu ababelungile phakathi kwabo.
- 8 Futhi ngalendlela iminyaka eyisithupha yayingakedluli selokhu iningi labantu likuyekile ukulunga kwabo, njengenja ibuyela emhlanzweni wayo, noma njengengulube izibhixa odakeni lwayo.
- 9 Manje leliqembu eliyimfihlo, elalilethe ububi obungaka kubantu, labuthana ndawonye, futhi labeka indoda ababeyibiza ngoJakobe ukuthi ibaphathe;
- 10 Futhi bayibiza ngenkosi yabo, ngakho-ke waba yinkosi yaleli qembu eligcwele ububi; futhi wayengomunye wabaziwayo owayekhulume ngokuphikisana nabaphrofethi ababefakaza ngoJesu.

3 Nepi 7

Now behold, I will show unto you that they did not establish a king over the land; but in this same year, yea, the thirtieth year, they did destroy upon the judgment-seat, yea, did murder the chief judge of the land.

And the people were divided one against another; and they did separate one from another into tribes, every man according to his family and his kindred and friends; and thus they did destroy the government of the land.

And every tribe did appoint a chief or a leader over them; and thus they became tribes and leaders of tribes.

Now behold, there was no man among them save he had much family and many kindreds and friends; therefore their tribes became exceedingly great.

Now all this was done, and there were no wars as yet among them; and all this iniquity had come upon the people because they did yield themselves unto the power of Satan.

And the regulations of the government were destroyed, because of the secret combination of the friends and kindreds of those who murdered the prophets.

And they did cause a great contention in the land, insomuch that the more righteous part of the people had nearly all become wicked; yea, there were but few righteous men among them.

And thus six years had not passed away since the more part of the people had turned from their righteousness, like the dog to his vomit, or like the sow to her wallowing in the mire.

Now this secret combination, which had brought so great iniquity upon the people, did gather themselves together, and did place at their head a man whom they did call Jacob;

And they did call him their king; therefore he became a king over this wicked band; and he was one of the chiefest who had given his voice against the prophets who testified of Jesus.

- 11 Futhi kwenzeka ukuthi babengaqinile kakhulu ngokwesibalo njengezizwana zabantu, ababehlangene ndawonye ngaphandle nje kokuthi abaholi babo bamisa imithetho yabo, wonke umuntu ngokwesizwana sakhe; nokho babe yizitha; naphezu kokuthi babengebona abantu abalungile, kepha babehlangene ekuzondeni labo ababengene esivumelwaneni sokuqeda umkhandlu ophetheyo.
- 12 Ngakho-ke, uJakobe ebona ukuthi izitha zabo zazi ziningi kakhulu kunabo, yena eyinkosi yeqembu, ngakho-ke wayala abantu bakhe ukuthi babaleke baye enxenyeni yezwe esekugcineni ngasenyakatho, futhi lapho bazakhela umbuso wabo, kwaze kwaba bahlangana nabahlubuki, (ngokuba wayebaluthe ngokuthi kwakuzoba khona abahlubuki abaningi) futhi kwaze kwaba bayaqina ngokwanele ukuthi baphikisane nezizwana zabantu; futhi nempela benza kanjalo.
- 13 Futhi lwashesha kakhulu uhambo lwabo kangangokuthi lwalungenakuvinjwa kwaze kwaba base behambe baya kude kakhulu ukuba abantu bakwazi ukuthi bababambe. Futhi ngalendlela unyaka wamashumi amathathu nantathu waphela kanjalo-ke; futhi zaba kanjalo-ke izimo zabantu baNefi.
- 14 Futhi kwenzeka ukuthi ngonyaka wamashumi amathathu nanye bahlukana baba yizizwana, wonke umuntu ngokomndeni wakhe, izihlobo kanye nabangani bakhe; nokho benza isivumelano sokuthi bangalwi omunye nomunye; kodwa babengahlangene ngokwemithetho yabo, kanye nangendlela yokubusa kwabo, ngokuba yayimiswe ngokwemiqondo yalabo ababe ngamakhosi kanye nabaholi babo. Kodwa bamisa imithetho eqine kakhulu yokuthi isizwana esinye singeqeli kwesinye, kangangokuthi baba nakho ukuthula okuthile ezweni; nokho, izinhliziyi zabo zaziphendukile zingekho eNkosini uNkulunkulu wabo, futhi babakhanda ngamatshe abaphrofethi futhi babaxosha babakhipha phakathi kwabo.

And it came to pass that they were not so strong in number as the tribes of the people, who were united together save it were their leaders did establish their laws, every one according to his tribe; nevertheless they were enemies; notwithstanding they were not a righteous people, yet they were united in the hatred of those who had entered into a covenant to destroy the government.

Therefore, Jacob seeing that their enemies were more numerous than they, he being the king of the band, therefore he commanded his people that they should take their flight into the northernmost part of the land, and there build up unto themselves a kingdom, until they were joined by dissenters, (for he flattered them that there would be many dissenters) and they become sufficiently strong to contend with the tribes of the people; and they did so.

And so speedy was their march that it could not be impeded until they had gone forth out of the reach of the people. And thus ended the thirtieth year; and thus were the affairs of the people of Nephi.

And it came to pass in the thirty and first year that they were divided into tribes, every man according to his family, kindred and friends; nevertheless they had come to an agreement that they would not go to war one with another; but they were not united as to their laws, and their manner of government, for they were established according to the minds of those who were their chiefs and their leaders. But they did establish very strict laws that one tribe should not trespass against another, insomuch that in some degree they had peace in the land; nevertheless, their hearts were turned from the Lord their God, and they did stone the prophets and did cast them out from among them.

- 15 Futhi kwenzeka ukuthi uNefi—ehanjelwe yizingilosi futhi ngokunjalo nezwi leNkosi, ngakho-ke ezibonile izingelosi, futhi engufakazi owazibonela, futhi enamandla awanikwa ukuthi azi mayelana nobufundisi bukaKristu, futhi phezu kwalokho engufakazi owazibonela ngokuphenduka kwabo okusheshayo ekulungeni beya ebubini kanye nasezinengisweni zabo;
- 16 Ngakho-ke, edabukile ngenxa yobulukhuni bezinhliziyo zabo kanye nobumpumpethe bezingqondo zabo—wahamba waya phakathi kwabo ngawo lowo nyaka, futhi waqala ukufakaza, ngesibindi, ukuphenduka kanye nokuthethelelwa kwezono ngokukholwa eNkosini uJesu Kristu.
- 17 Futhi wabafundisa izinto eziningi; futhi azinakubhalwa zonke, futhi inxenye yazo ayinakwenela, ngakho-ke azibhaliwe kulencwadi. Futhi uNefi wafundisa ngamandla kanye nangegunya elikhulu.
- 18 Futhi kwenzeka ukuthi bamthukuthelela, futhi ngokuba yena wayenamandla amakhulu kunabo, ngokuba kwaku ngenakwenzeka ukuthi bangawakholwa amazwi akhe, ngokuba lwalulukhulu ukholo lwakhe eNkosini uJesu Kristu kangangokuthi izingelosi zamsebenzela nsuku zonke.
- 19 Futhi ngegama likaJesu nempela wabakhipha odeveli kanye nemimoya emibi; futhi ngisho nomfowabo wamvusa ekufeni, emva kokuthi kade esekhanda ngamatshe futhi wezwa ubuhlungu bokubulawa ngabantu.
- 20 Futhi abantu bakubona lokhu, futhi nempela bafakaza ngakho, futhi bamthukuthelela ngenxa yamandla akhe; futhi phezu kwalokho wenza eziningi izimangaliso, emehlweni abantu, ngegama likaJesu.
- 21 Futhi kwenzeka ukuthi unyaka wamashumi amathathu nanye wedlula, futhi kwaba khona abambalwa nje kuphela abaphendukela eNkosini; kodwa ngobuningi balabo abaphendukayo bakhombisa kubantu ukuthi babehanjelwe ngamandla kanye nanguMoya kaNkulunkulu, owawukuJesu Kristu, ababekholelwa kuye.

And it came to pass that Nephi—having been visited by angels and also the voice of the Lord, therefore having seen angels, and being eye-witness, and having had power given unto him that he might know concerning the ministry of Christ, and also being eye-witness to their quick return from righteousness unto their wickedness and abominations;

Therefore, being grieved for the hardness of their hearts and the blindness of their minds—went forth among them in that same year, and began to testify, boldly, repentance and remission of sins through faith on the Lord Jesus Christ.

And he did minister many things unto them; and all of them cannot be written, and a part of them would not suffice, therefore they are not written in this book. And Nephi did minister with power and with great authority.

And it came to pass that they were angry with him, even because he had greater power than they, for it were not possible that they could disbelieve his words, for so great was his faith on the Lord Jesus Christ that angels did minister unto him daily.

And in the name of Jesus did he cast out devils and unclean spirits; and even his brother did he raise from the dead, after he had been stoned and suffered death by the people.

And the people saw it, and did witness of it, and were angry with him because of his power; and he did also do many more miracles, in the sight of the people, in the name of Jesus.

And it came to pass that the thirty and first year did pass away, and there were but few who were converted unto the Lord; but as many as were converted did truly signify unto the people that they had been visited by the power and Spirit of God, which was in Jesus Christ, in whom they believed.

- 22 Futhi ngobuningi balabo okwakhishwa kubo odeveli, futhi belashwa ekuguleni kanye nasebuthakathakeni babo, ngempela baveza kubantu ukuthi babethintwe nguMoya kaNkulunkulu, futhi base belashiwe; futhi nempela bakhombisa izibonakaliso phezu kwalokho futhi nempela benza ezinye izimangaliso phakathi kwabantu.
- 23 Ngalendlela wedlula kanjalo-ke unyaka wamashumi amathathu nambili. Futhi uNefi wakhala kubantu ekuqaleni konyaka wamashumi amathathu nantathu; futhi washumayela kubo ukuphenduka kanye nokuthethelelwa kwezono.
- 24 Manje ngifuna ukuthi nikhumbule futhi, ukuthi akuzange kube khona namunye owalethwa ekuphendukeni ongazange abhabhadiswe ngamanzi.
- 25 Ngakho-ke, amadoda agcotshwa nguNefi kulobu bufundisi, ukuze kuthi bonke labo ababeza kuwo babhabhadiswe ngamanzi, futhi lokhu kube njengesibonakaliso kanye nobufakazi phambi kukaNkulunkulu, kanye nakubantu, ukuthi base bephendukile futhi bazuza ukuthethelelwa kwezono zabo.
- 26 Futhi kwaba khona abaningi ekuqaleni kwalonyaka ababhabhadiselwa ekuphendukeni; futhi inxenye enkulu yonyaka yaphela kanjalo-ke.

And as many as had devils cast out from them, and were healed of their sicknesses and their infirmities, did truly manifest unto the people that they had been wrought upon by the Spirit of God, and had been healed; and they did show forth signs also and did do some miracles among the people.

Thus passed away the thirty and second year also. And Nephi did cry unto the people in the commencement of the thirty and third year; and he did preach unto them repentance and remission of sins.

Now I would have you to remember also, that there were none who were brought unto repentance who were not baptized with water.

Therefore, there were ordained of Nephi, men unto this ministry, that all such as should come unto them should be baptized with water, and this as a witness and a testimony before God, and unto the people, that they had repented and received a remission of their sins.

And there were many in the commencement of this year that were baptized unto repentance; and thus the more part of the year did pass away.

3 Nefi 8

- 1 Manje kwenzeka ukuthi ngokombhalo wethu, futhi siyazi ukuthi umbhalo wethu uyiqiniso, ngokuba bheka, kwakungumuntu olungile owayegcina umbhalo—ngokuba wayenza izimangaliso eziningi egameni likaJesu; futhi kwakungekho noyedwa umuntu owayengenza isimangaliso ngegama likaJesu ngaphandle kokuthi ehlanzwe ngisho nokuncane ububi bakhe—
- 2 Manje kwenzeka, uma kwakungazange kube khona phutha elenziwa yilendoda ekubaleni isikhathi sethu, unyaka wamashumi amathathu nantathu wase udlulile;
- 3 Futhi abantu baqala ukulindela ngentshisekelo enkulu leso sibonakaliso esasinikwe ngumphrofethi uSamuweli, umLamani, yebo, isikhathi lapho kwakuzokuba khona ubumnyama isikhathi esiyizinsuku ezintathu phezu kobuso bezwe.
- 4 Futhi kwaqala ukuthi kube khona ukungabaza okukhulu kanye nezimpikiswano phakathi kwabantu, naphezu kwezibonakaliso eziningi kangaka ezase zinikiwe.
- 5 Futhi kwenzeka ngonyaka wamashumi amathathu nane, enyangeni yokuqala, ngosuku lwesine enyangeni, kwabakhona isiphepho esikhulu, esasingakaze saziwe kulo lonke izwe.
- 6 Futhi phezu kwalokho kwaba khona isivunguvungu esesabeka kakhulu; futhi kwaba khona nokuduma okwesabekayo, kangangokuthi kwanyakazisa izwe lonke kwangathi lizohlukana kabili.
- 7 Futhi kwaba khona imibani eshesha ngokumangalisayo, eyayingakaze yaziwe nanini ezweni lonke.
- 8 Futhi idolobha lakwaZarahemla lokheleka ngomlilo.
- 9 Futhi idolobha lakwaMoroni lazika ekujuleni kolwandle, futhi ababehlala kulo baminza.
- 10 Futhi umhlabathi wathwalwa wukuzamazama komhlaba wabekwa phezu kwedolobha lakwaMoroniha, kangangokuthi esikhundleni sedolobha kwaba khona intaba enkulu.
- 11 Futhi kwaba khona imbubhiso enkulu futhi neyesabekayo ezweni elingaseningizimu.

3 Nephi 8

And now it came to pass that according to our record, and we know our record to be true, for behold, it was a just man who did keep the record—for he truly did many miracles in the name of Jesus; and there was not any man who could do a miracle in the name of Jesus save he were cleansed every whit from his iniquity—

And now it came to pass, if there was no mistake made by this man in the reckoning of our time, the thirty and third year had passed away;

And the people began to look with great earnestness for the sign which had been given by the prophet Samuel, the Lamanite, yea, for the time that there should be darkness for the space of three days over the face of the land.

And there began to be great doubtings and disputations among the people, notwithstanding so many signs had been given.

And it came to pass in the thirty and fourth year, in the first month, on the fourth day of the month, there arose a great storm, such an one as never had been known in all the land.

And there was also a great and terrible tempest; and there was terrible thunder, insomuch that it did shake the whole earth as if it was about to divide asunder.

And there were exceedingly sharp lightnings, such as never had been known in all the land.

And the city of Zarahemla did take fire.

And the city of Moroni did sink into the depths of the sea, and the inhabitants thereof were drowned.

And the earth was carried up upon the city of Moronihah, that in the place of the city there became a great mountain.

And there was a great and terrible destruction in the land southward.

- 12 Kodwa bheka, kwaba khona imbubhiso enkulu kakhulu futhi neyesabekayo ezweni elingasenyakatho; ngokuba bheka, ubuso bonke bezwe baguquka, ngenxa yesivunguvungu kanye nezishingishane, kanye nokuduma kanye nemibani, kanye nokuzamazama kwezwe lonke okukhulu kakhulu;
- 13 Futhi imigwaqo emikhulu yabhidlika, kanye nemigwaqo eqondile yonakala, kwathi izindawo eziningi ezihlelekile zaphenduka amagebhugebhu.
- 14 Futhi amadolobha amaningi amakhulu futhi abalulekile acwila, futhi amaningi ashiswa, futhi amaningi adikiza kwathi izakhiwo zawo zawela phansi, futhi abahlala kuwo babulawa, izindawo zasala zingenamuntu.
- 15 Futhi kwaba khona amanye amadolobha asalayo; kodwa umonakalo wawo wawumkhulu kakhulu, futhi babebaningi kuwo abubulawa.
- 16 Futhi kwaba khona abanye abathathwa bahamba nesishingishane; futhi ukuthi baya ngaphi akukho muntu owaziyo, ngaphandle kokuthi bona bayazi ukuthi bathathwa bayiswa kude.
- 17 Futhi ngalendlela ubuso besifunda sonke baguquka, ngenxa yezivunguvungu, kanye nokuduma, kanye nemibani, kanye nokuzamazama phansi.
- 18 Futhi bheka, amadwala aqhephuka kabili; ahlakazeka phezu kobuso bonke besifunda, kangangokuthi atholakala eyizingcezu ezihlephukileyo, futhi eyizindonga kanye nemifantu, phezu kobuso bonke bezwe.
- 19 Futhi kwenzeka ukuthi ngesikhathi ukuduma, kanye nemibani kanye nesiphapho, kanye nesivunguvungu, kanye nokuzamazama phansi kuphela—ngokuba bheka, kwathatha isikhathi esingamahora amathathu; futhi abanye bathi lesikhathi saba ngaphezulu kwalokho; noma kunjalo, zonke lezi zinto ezinkulu kanye nezesabekayo zenzeka ngesikhathi esingamahora amathathu—futhi emva kwalokho bheka, kwaba khona ubumnyama ebusweni bezwe.
- 20 Futhi kwenzeka ukuthi kwaba khona ubumnyama obukhulu ebusweni bonke bezwe, kangangokuthi ababehlala kulo ababengafanga babeyizwa inkungu yobumnyama;

But behold, there was a more great and terrible destruction in the land northward; for behold, the whole face of the land was changed, because of the tempest and the whirlwinds, and the thunderings and the lightnings, and the exceedingly great quaking of the whole earth;

And the highways were broken up, and the level roads were spoiled, and many smooth places became rough.

And many great and notable cities were sunk, and many were burned, and many were shaken till the buildings thereof had fallen to the earth, and the inhabitants thereof were slain, and the places were left desolate.

And there were some cities which remained; but the damage thereof was exceedingly great, and there were many in them who were slain.

And there were some who were carried away in the whirlwind; and whither they went no man knoweth, save they know that they were carried away.

And thus the face of the whole earth became deformed, because of the tempests, and the thunderings, and the lightnings, and the quaking of the earth.

And behold, the rocks were rent in twain; they were broken up upon the face of the whole earth, inasmuch that they were found in broken fragments, and in seams and in cracks, upon all the face of the land.

And it came to pass that when the thunderings, and the lightnings, and the storm, and the tempest, and the quakings of the earth did cease—for behold, they did last for about the space of three hours; and it was said by some that the time was greater; nevertheless, all these great and terrible things were done in about the space of three hours—and then behold, there was darkness upon the face of the land.

And it came to pass that there was thick darkness upon all the face of the land, inasmuch that the inhabitants thereof who had not fallen could feel the vapor of darkness;

21 Futhi kwakungeke kube khona kukhanya, ngenxa yobumnyama, noma amakhandlela, noma amathoshi; noma kube khona umlilo owokhelwayo ngezinkuni zabo ezinhle nezome kakhulu, kangangoba akubanga bikho nhlobo ukukhanya;

22 Futhi akuzange kube khona ngisho ukukhanya okwakubonakala, ngisho umlilo, noma ukubenyazela, noma yilanga, noma yinyanga, noma yizinkanyezi, ngokuba zazizinkulu kakhulu izinkungu zobumnyama ezaziphezu kobuso bonke bezwe.

23 Futhi kwenzeka ukuthi kwathatha isikhathi esingange zinsuku ezintathu ukuthi kungabi bikho ukukhanya okubonwayo; futhi kwabakhona ukukhala okukhulu kanye nokuhhewula kanye nokulila phakathi kwabo bonke abantu njalo-njalo, yebo, kwakukukhulu ukuquma kwabantu, ngenxa yobumnyama kanye nokubhujiswa okukhulu okwakubehlele.

24 Futhi kwenye indawo babezwakala bekhala, bethi: O ukuba saphenduka ngaphambi kwalolusuku olukhulu futhi nolwesabekayo, futhi ukuba bekunjalo abafowethu babeyosinda, futhi bebengenakushiswa kulelo dolobha elikhulu lakwa Zarahemla.

25 Futhi kwenye indawo babezwakala bekhala futhi belila, bethi: O ukuba saphenduka ngaphambi kwalolusuku olukhulu futhi nolwesabekayo, futhi sangababulala futhi sangabakhanda ngamatshe abaphrofethi, futhi sangabaxosha; ukuba bekunjalo omama bethu kanye namadodakazi ethu amahle, kanye nezingane zethu beziyosinda, futhi ngabe abangcwatshwanga kulelo dolobha elikhulu lakwaMoroniha. Futhi kwabanjalo-ke ukuhhewula kwabantu kwakukukhulu futhi kwesabeka.

And there could be no light, because of the darkness, neither candles, neither torches; neither could there be fire kindled with their fine and exceedingly dry wood, so that there could not be any light at all;

And there was not any light seen, neither fire, nor glimmer, neither the sun, nor the moon, nor the stars, for so great were the mists of darkness which were upon the face of the land.

And it came to pass that it did last for the space of three days that there was no light seen; and there was great mourning and howling and weeping among all the people continually; yea, great were the groanings of the people, because of the darkness and the great destruction which had come upon them.

And in one place they were heard to cry, saying: O that we had repented before this great and terrible day, and then would our brethren have been spared, and they would not have been burned in that great city Zarahemla.

And in another place they were heard to cry and mourn, saying: O that we had repented before this great and terrible day, and had not killed and stoned the prophets, and cast them out; then would our mothers and our fair daughters, and our children have been spared, and not have been buried up in that great city Moronihah. And thus were the howlings of the people great and terrible.

3 Nefi 9

- 1 Futhi kwenzeka ukuthi kwabakhona izwi elezwakala kubo bonke abahlala kulendawo, kubo bonke ubuso balelizwe, limemeza lithi:
- 2 Maye, maye, maye kulaba bantu; maye kwabahlala emhlabeni wonke ngaphandle kokuthi baphenduke; ngokuba udeveli uyahleka, futhi izingelosi zakhe ziyathokoza, ngenxa yokubulawa kwamadodana kanye namadodakazi amahle abantu bami, futhi kungenxa yobubi kanye nezinengiso zabo ukuthi bawile!
- 3 Bheka, lelo dolobha elikhulu iZarahemla ngilishise ngomlilo, kanye nabahlala kulo.
- 4 Futhi bheka, lelo dolobha elikhulu iMoroni ngilenze ukuthi licwile ekujuleni kolwandle, kanye nabahlala kulo ukuthi baminze.
- 5 Futhi bheka, lelo dolobha elikhulu iMoroniha ngilimboze ngomhlabathi, kanye nabahlala kulo, ukuze ngifihle ububi kanye nezinengiso zabo phambi kobuso bami, ukuze igazi labaphrofethi kanye nelabangcwele lingabe liseza nanini kimi ngokumelene nabo.
- 6 Futhi bheka, idolobha likaGiligali ngilenze ukuthi licwile, kanye nabahlala kulo ukuthi bangcwatshwe ekujuleni komhlaba;
- 7 Yebo, nedolobha lakwa-Oniha kanye nabahlala kulo, idolobha lakwaMokumu kanye nabahlala kulo, idolobha laseJerusalema kanye nabahlala kulo; futhi ngenze ukuthi kuvele amanzi esikhundleni sawo, ukuze ngifihle ububi kanye nezinengiso zabo phambi kobuso bami, ukuze igazi labaphrofethi kanye nelabangcwele lingabe liseza nanini kimi ngokumelene nabo.
- 8 Futhi bheka, idolobha lakwaGadiyandi, kanye nedolobha lakwaGadiyomina, kanye nedolobha lakwaJakobe, kanye nedolobha lakwaGimigimino, wonke lawa ngenze ukuthi acwile, futhi ngenza amagquma kanye nezigodi ezindaweni zawo; futhi abahlala kuwo ngibangcwabe ekujuleni komhlaba, ukuze ngifihle ububi kanye nezinengiso zabo phambi kobuso bami, ukuze igazi labaphrofethi kanye nelabangcwele lingabe liseza kimi nanini ngokumelene nabo.

3 Nephi 9

And it came to pass that there was a voice heard among all the inhabitants of the earth, upon all the face of this land, crying:

Wo, wo, wo unto this people; wo unto the inhabitants of the whole earth except they shall repent; for the devil laugheth, and his angels rejoice, because of the slain of the fair sons and daughters of my people; and it is because of their iniquity and abominations that they are fallen!

Behold, that great city Zarahemla have I burned with fire, and the inhabitants thereof.

And behold, that great city Moroni have I caused to be sunk in the depths of the sea, and the inhabitants thereof to be drowned.

And behold, that great city Moronihah have I covered with earth, and the inhabitants thereof, to hide their iniquities and their abominations from before my face, that the blood of the prophets and the saints shall not come any more unto me against them.

And behold, the city of Gilgal have I caused to be sunk, and the inhabitants thereof to be buried up in the depths of the earth;

Yea, and the city of Onihah and the inhabitants thereof, and the city of Mocum and the inhabitants thereof, and the city of Jerusalem and the inhabitants thereof; and waters have I caused to come up in the stead thereof, to hide their wickedness and abominations from before my face, that the blood of the prophets and the saints shall not come up any more unto me against them.

And behold, the city of Gadiandi, and the city of Gadiomnah, and the city of Jacob, and the city of Gimigimno, all these have I caused to be sunk, and made hills and valleys in the places thereof; and the inhabitants thereof have I buried up in the depths of the earth, to hide their wickedness and abominations from before my face, that the blood of the prophets and the saints should not come up any more unto me against them.

9 Futhi bheka, lelo dolobha elikhulu iJakobugati, elalihlala abantu benkosi uJakobe, ngenze ukuthi lishiswe ngomlilo ngenxa yezono zabo kanye nobubi babo, obungaphezu kwabo bonke ububi bomhlaba wonke, ngenxa yokubulala kwabo ngasese kanye namaqembu abo angasese; ngokuba kwakuyibo labo abaqeda ukuthula kwabantu bami kanye nomkhandlu owawuphethe wezwe; ngakho-ke ngenze ukuthi bashiswe, ukuze ngibabulale phambi kobuso bami, ukuze igazi labaphrofethi nelaba ngcwele lingabe liseza kimi nanini ngokumelene nabo.

10 Futhi bheka, idolobha lakwaLamani, kanye nedolobha lakwaJoshi, kanye nedolobha lakwaGadi, kanye nedolobha lakwaKishikumeni, ngenze ukuthi ashiswe ngomlilo, kanye nabahlala kuwo, ngenxa yobubi babo ekuxosheni abaphrofethi, kanye nokukhanda ngamatshe labo engabathumela ukuthi bamemezele kubo ngokumelene nobubi kanye nezinengiso zabo.

11 Futhi ngenxa yokuthi babaxosha bonke baphuma, kwakungekho namunye phakathi kwabo owayelungile, ngehlisa umlilo futhi ngaba bulala, ukuze ububi kanye nezinengiso zabo kufihleke phambi kobuso bami, ukuze igazi labaphrofethi kanye nelabangcwele engabathumela phakathi kwabo lingabe lisakhala kimi livela emhlabathini ngokumelene nabo.

12 Futhi ukubhujiswa okuningi nokukhulu ngikwenze ukuthi kwehlele phezu kwale lizwe, kanye naphezu kwalabantu, ngenxa yobubi kanye nezinengiso zabo.

13 O nina nonke enisindisiwe ngenxa yokuthi benilungile kakhulu kunabo, ningebuyele yini manje kimi, futhi niphenduke ezonweni zenu, futhi niguquke, ukuze nginiphilise na?

14 Yebo, ngiqinisile ngithi kini, uma ningeza kimi niyokuba nokuphila okuphakade. Bhekani, ingalo yami yesihawu yelulelwe kini, futhi lowo oyokuza, ngiyomemukela; futhi babusisiwe labo abeza kimi.

And behold, that great city Jacobugath, which was inhabited by the people of king Jacob, have I caused to be burned with fire because of their sins and their wickedness, which was above all the wickedness of the whole earth, because of their secret murders and combinations; for it was they that did destroy the peace of my people and the government of the land; therefore I did cause them to be burned, to destroy them from before my face, that the blood of the prophets and the saints should not come up unto me any more against them.

And behold, the city of Laman, and the city of Josh, and the city of Gad, and the city of Kishkumen, have I caused to be burned with fire, and the inhabitants thereof, because of their wickedness in casting out the prophets, and stoning those whom I did send to declare unto them concerning their wickedness and their abominations.

And because they did cast them all out, that there were none righteous among them, I did send down fire and destroy them, that their wickedness and abominations might be hid from before my face, that the blood of the prophets and the saints whom I sent among them might not cry unto me from the ground against them.

And many great destructions have I caused to come upon this land, and upon this people, because of their wickedness and their abominations.

O all ye that are spared because ye were more righteous than they, will ye not now return unto me, and repent of your sins, and be converted, that I may heal you?

Yea, verily I say unto you, if ye will come unto me ye shall have eternal life. Behold, mine arm of mercy is extended towards you, and whosoever will come, him will I receive; and blessed are those who come unto me.

- 15 Bhekani, ngingu Jesu Kristu iNdodana kaNkulunkulu. Ngadala amazulu kanye nomhlaba, kanye nazo zonke izinto ezikuwo. Ngangino Baba kusukela ekuqaleni. Ngiku Baba, futhi no Baba ukimi; futhi ngami uBaba ulidumisile igama lakhe.
- 16 Ngeza kwabami, kepha abami abangemukelanga. Futhi imibhalo engcwele mayelana nokuza kwami isigcwalisekile.
- 17 Futhi ngobuningi balabo abangemukele, kubo ngibanike ukuthi babe ngamadodana kaNkulunkulu; futhi ngizokwenza kanjalo nakulabo abayokholwa egameni lami, ngokuba bheka, ngami ukukhululwa kuyeza, futhi kimi umthetho kaMose ugcwalisekile.
- 18 Nginguku khanya nokuphila komhlaba. Ngingu-Alfa no-Omega, isiqalo nesiphetho.
- 19 Futhi ningabe nisaletha kimi nanini ukuchithwa kwegazi; yebo, imihlatshelo yenu kanye neminikelo yokushiswa iyoyekwa, ngokuba angiyukwemukela lutho lwemihlatshelo yenu kanye neminikelo yenu yokushiswa.
- 20 Futhi niyonikela umnikelo kimi wenhliziyo edabukileyo kanye nomphefumulo ophukileyo. Futhi lowo oza kimi nenhliziy o edabukileyo kanye nomphefumulo ophukileyo, ngiyombhabhadisa ngomlilo kanye nangoMoya oyiNgcwele, ngisho njenga maLamani, ngenxa yokholo lwawo kimi ngesikhathi sokuphenduka kwawo, abhabhadiswa ngomlilo kanye nangoMoya oyiNgcwele, kodwa awakwazanga lokho.
- 21 Bhekani, ngize emhlabeni ukuze ngilethe ukukhululwa emhlabeni, ukuze ngisindise umhlaba esonweni.
- 22 Ngakho-ke, lowo ophendukayo futhi eze kimi njengomntwana omncane, ngiyomemukela, ngokuba umbuso kaNkulunkulu ungowabanjalo. Bhekani, ngokuba ngibeke phansi impilo yami ngenxa yabanjalo, futhi ngaphinda ngayithatha futhi; ngakho-ke phendukani, futhi nize kimi nonke mikhawulo yomhlaba, futhi nisindiswe.

Behold, I am Jesus Christ the Son of God. I created the heavens and the earth, and all things that in them are. I was with the Father from the beginning. I am in the Father, and the Father in me; and in me hath the Father glorified his name.

I came unto my own, and my own received me not. And the scriptures concerning my coming are fulfilled.

And as many as have received me, to them have I given to become the sons of God; and even so will I to as many as shall believe on my name, for behold, by me redemption cometh, and in me is the law of Moses fulfilled.

I am the light and the life of the world. I am Alpha and Omega, the beginning and the end.

And ye shall offer up unto me no more the shedding of blood; yea, your sacrifices and your burnt offerings shall be done away, for I will accept none of your sacrifices and your burnt offerings.

And ye shall offer for a sacrifice unto me a broken heart and a contrite spirit. And whoso cometh unto me with a broken heart and a contrite spirit, him will I baptize with fire and with the Holy Ghost, even as the Lamanites, because of their faith in me at the time of their conversion, were baptized with fire and with the Holy Ghost, and they knew it not.

Behold, I have come unto the world to bring redemption unto the world, to save the world from sin.

Therefore, whoso repenteth and cometh unto me as a little child, him will I receive, for of such is the kingdom of God. Behold, for such I have laid down my life, and have taken it up again; therefore repent, and come unto me ye ends of the earth, and be saved.

3 Nefi 10

- 1 Manje bheka, kwenzeka ukuthi bonke abantu basezweni bayizwa lenkulumo, futhi bayifakazela. Futhi emva kwalezi zinkulumo kwabakhona ukuthula ezweni isikhathi esingamahora amaningi;
- 2 Ngokuba kwaba kukhulu kakhulu ukwethuka kwabantu kangangokuthi bayeka ukulila kanye nokuhhewula ngenxa yokulahlekelwa yizihlobo zabo ezazibulewe; ngakho-ke kwabakhona ukuthula kulo lonke izwe isikhathi esingamahora amaningi.
- 3 Futhi kwenzeka ukuthi kweza izwi futhi kubantu, futhi bonke abantu balizwa, futhi nempela bafakaza ngalo, lithi:
- 4 O nina bantu bakulama dolobha amakhulu awile, nina eningabe nzalo kaJakobe, yebo, nina eningabendlu ka-Israyeli, kukangaki nginiqoqa njengesikhukhukazi siqoqela amatshwele aso ngaphansi kwamaphiko aso, futhi nginondla na?
- 5 Futhi phezu kwalokho, bekuyoba kangaki nginiqoqa njengesikhukhukazi siqoqela amatshwele aso phansi kwamaphiko aso, yebo, O nina bantu bendlu ka-Israyeli, abawile; yebo, O nina bantu bendlu ka-Israyeli, nina enihlala eJerusalema, njengoba niwile; yebo, bekuyoba kangaki nginiqoqa njengesikhukhukazi siqoqa amatshwele aso, kepha ningavumi na?
- 6 O nina ndlu ka-Israyeli enginilondolozile, kuyoba kangaki nginiqoqa njengesikhukhukazi siqoqela amatshwele aso phansi kwamaphiko aso, uma ningaphenduka futhi nibuyeke kimi ngenhlonso ephelele yenhliziyi.
- 7 Kepha uma ningeke, O ndlu ka-Israyeli, izindawo zenu zokuhlala ziyokuba ngezingenamuntu kuze kube yisikhathi sokugcwaliseka kwesivumelwano soyihlo.
- 8 Manje kwenzeka ukuthi emva kokuthi abantu sebewazwile lamazwi, bheka, baqala ukulila kanye nokuhhewula futhi ngenxa yokulahlekelwa yizihlobo zabo kanye nabangani.

3 Nephi 10

And now behold, it came to pass that all the people of the land did hear these sayings, and did witness of it. And after these sayings there was silence in the land for the space of many hours;

For so great was the astonishment of the people that they did cease lamenting and howling for the loss of their kindred which had been slain; therefore there was silence in all the land for the space of many hours.

And it came to pass that there came a voice again unto the people, and all the people did hear, and did witness of it, saying:

O ye people of these great cities which have fallen, who are descendants of Jacob, yea, who are of the house of Israel, how oft have I gathered you as a hen gathereth her chickens under her wings, and have nourished you.

And again, how oft would I have gathered you as a hen gathereth her chickens under her wings, yea, O ye people of the house of Israel, who have fallen; yea, O ye people of the house of Israel, ye that dwell at Jerusalem, as ye that have fallen; yea, how oft would I have gathered you as a hen gathereth her chickens, and ye would not.

O ye house of Israel whom I have spared, how oft will I gather you as a hen gathereth her chickens under her wings, if ye will repent and return unto me with full purpose of heart.

But if not, O house of Israel, the places of your dwellings shall become desolate until the time of the fulfilling of the covenant to your fathers.

And now it came to pass that after the people had heard these words, behold, they began to weep and howl again because of the loss of their kindred and friends.

- 9 Futhi kwenzeka ukuthi izinsuku ezintathu zadlula kanje. Futhi kwakusekuseni, futhi ubumnyama basuka ebusweni bezwe, futhi iphansi layeka ukuzamazama, futhi namadwala ayeka ukuqhekezeka, nokuquma okwesabekayo kwaphela, futhi nazo zonke iziphithiphithi zomsindo zedlula.
- 10 Futhi iphansi lanamathelana ndawonye futhi, ukuze liqine; futhi usizi nokukhala, kanye nokulila kwabantu ababe londolozwe baphila kwaphela; futhi usizi lwabo lwaphenduka injabulo, futhi izililo zabo zaba yindumiso kanye nokubonga eNkosini uJesu Kristu, uMkhululi wabo.
- 11 Futhi imibhalo engcwele yabe isigcwalisekile kuze kube manje eyayikhulunywe ngabaphrofethi.
- 12 Futhi kwakuyinxenye enkulu elungile yabantu abasindiswayo, futhi kwakuyibo labo ababemukela abaphrofethi futhi bangabakhanda ngamatshe; futhi kwakuyibo labo ababengazange balichithe igazi labangcwele, abalondolozwa—
- 13 Futhi balondolozwa futhi bangacwiliswa futhi bangangcwatshwa emhlabathini; futhi abazange baminziswe ekujuleni kolwandle; futhi abazange bashiswe ngomlilo, noma kuwe okuthize phezu kwabo noma bagaywe baze bafe; futhi abazange bathwalwe yizishingishane; noma banqotshwe yinkungu yentuthu kanye neyobumnyama.
- 14 Manje, lowo ofundayo, makaqonde; lowo onemibhalo engcwele, makayicwaninge, futhi abone futhi aqonde abheke ukuthi ngabe konke lokhu kufa kanye nokubhujiswa ngomlilo, kanye nangentuthu, kanye nangezivunguvungu, kanye nangezishingishane, kanye nangokuvuleka komhlabathi ukuthi ubemukele, kanye nazo zonke lezi zinto ukuthi ngabe akugcwalisi yini iziphrofetho eziningi zabaphrofethi abangcwele.
- 15 Bhekani, ngithi kini, Yebo, baningi abafakaza ngalezi zinto ngokuza kukaKristu, futhi babulawa ngoba bafakaza ngalezi zinto.
- 16 Yebo, umphrofethi uZenoshe wafakaza ngalezi zinto, futhi kanjalo noZenoki wakhuluma mayelana nalezi zinto, ngoba bafakaza ikakhulukazi mayelana nathi, esiyinsali yenzalo yabo.

And it came to pass that thus did the three days pass away. And it was in the morning, and the darkness dispersed from off the face of the land, and the earth did cease to tremble, and the rocks did cease to rend, and the dreadful groanings did cease, and all the tumultuous noises did pass away.

And the earth did cleave together again, that it stood; and the mourning, and the weeping, and the wailing of the people who were spared alive did cease; and their mourning was turned into joy, and their lamentations into the praise and thanksgiving unto the Lord Jesus Christ, their Redeemer.

And thus far were the scriptures fulfilled which had been spoken by the prophets.

And it was the more righteous part of the people who were saved, and it was they who received the prophets and stoned them not; and it was they who had not shed the blood of the saints, who were spared—

And they were spared and were not sunk and buried up in the earth; and they were not drowned in the depths of the sea; and they were not burned by fire, neither were they fallen upon and crushed to death; and they were not carried away in the whirlwind; neither were they overpowered by the vapor of smoke and of darkness.

And now, whoso readeth, let him understand; he that hath the scriptures, let him search them, and see and behold if all these deaths and destructions by fire, and by smoke, and by tempests, and by whirlwinds, and by the opening of the earth to receive them, and all these things are not unto the fulfilling of the prophecies of many of the holy prophets.

Behold, I say unto you, Yea, many have testified of these things at the coming of Christ, and were slain because they testified of these things.

Yea, the prophet Zenos did testify of these things, and also Zenock spake concerning these things, because they testified particularly concerning us, who are the remnant of their seed.

- 17 Bhekani, ubaba uJakobe ngokunjalo naye wafakaza mayelana nensali yenzalo kaJosefa. Futhi bhekani, ngabe asiyona yini insali yenzalo kaJosefa na? Futhi lezi zinto ezifakaza ngathi, ngabe azibhaliwe yini ezingcwephezi zethusi ubaba uLehi azithatha eJerusalema na?
- 18 Futhi kwenzeka ukuthi ekupheleni konyaka wamashumi amathathu nane, bhekani, ngizonikhombisa ukuthi abantu baNefi ababelondolozile, futhi kanjalo nalabo ababebizwa ngamaLamani, ababe londolozile, kwaba nezenzo zomusa omkhulu ezenzelwa bona, kanye nezibusiso ezinkulu ezathelwa emakhanda abo, kangangokuthi masinyane emva kokwenyukela kukaKristu ezulwini wazibonakalisa ngempela kubo—
- 19 Ekhombisa umzimba wakhe kubo, futhi ebafundisa; futhi indaba yobufundisi bakhe izonikwa emva kwalokhu. Ngakho-ke okwamanje ngenza isiphetho senkulumo yami.

Behold, our father Jacob also testified concerning a remnant of the seed of Joseph. And behold, are not we a remnant of the seed of Joseph? And these things which testify of us, are they not written upon the plates of brass which our father Lehi brought out of Jerusalem?

And it came to pass that in the ending of the thirty and fourth year, behold, I will show unto you that the people of Nephi who were spared, and also those who had been called Lamanites, who had been spared, did have great favors shown unto them, and great blessings poured out upon their heads, inasmuch that soon after the ascension of Christ into heaven he did truly manifest himself unto them—

Showing his body unto them, and ministering unto them; and an account of his ministry shall be given hereafter. Therefore for this time I make an end of my sayings.

Ufesu Kristu waziveza kubantu baNefi, ngesikbathi isixuku sibuthene ndawonye ezweni iNala, futhi wabafundisa; futhi waziveza kubo ngalendlela.

3 Nepi 11

- 1 Manje kwenzeka ukuthi kwakunesixuku esikhulu esasibuthene ndawonye, sabantu baNefi, bezungeze ithempeli elalisezweni iNala; futhi babekhexile futhi bemangele omunye nomunye, futhi bekhombisana omunye nomunye uguquko olukhulu nolumangalisayo olwase lwenzekile.
- 2 Futhi phezu kwalokho babekhuluma ngalo Jesu Kristu, okwakunikwe ngaye isibonakaliso ngokufa kwakhe.
- 3 Futhi kwenzeka ukuthi ngesikhathi besakhuluma kanjalo omunye nomunye, bezwa izwi sengathi lalivela ezulwini; futhi baphonsa amehlo abo yonke indawo, ngokuba babengaliqondi lelozwi ababelizwa; futhi kwakungelona izwi elinolaka, noma izwi elikhulu; nokho, futhi naphezu kokuthi kwakuyizwi elincane labahlaba phakathi labo abalizwa, kangangokuthi akubanga bikho nxenye yohlaka lomzimba wabo elingayenzanga ukuthi ithuthumele; yebo, labahlaba emphefumulweni uqobo, futhi lenza izinhliziyi zabo ukuthi zivuthe.
- 4 Futhi kwenzeka ukuthi baphinda balizwa lelozwi, futhi abazange baliqonde.
- 5 Futhi baphinda okwesithathu balizwa futhi lelozwi, futhi bavula izindlebe zabo ukuze balizwe; futhi amehlo abo ayebheke lapho kwakuqhamuka ngakhona umsindo walo; futhi babheka ngokugxilile ngasezulwini, lapho umsindo wawuqhamuka ngakhona.
- 6 Futhi bheka, ngokwesithathu baliqonda lelozwi ababelizwa; futhi lathi kubo:
- 7 Bhekani iNdodana Yami Ethandekayo, engithokozayo ngayo, engidumise igama lami ngayo—yizweni.

Jesus Christ did show himself unto the people of Nephi, as the multitude were gathered together in the land Bountiful, and did minister unto them; and on this wise did he show himself unto them.

3 Nephi 11

And now it came to pass that there were a great multitude gathered together, of the people of Nephi, round about the temple which was in the land Bountiful; and they were marveling and wondering one with another, and were showing one to another the great and marvelous change which had taken place.

And they were also conversing about this Jesus Christ, of whom the sign had been given concerning his death.

And it came to pass that while they were thus conversing one with another, they heard a voice as if it came out of heaven; and they cast their eyes round about, for they understood not the voice which they heard; and it was not a harsh voice, neither was it a loud voice; nevertheless, and notwithstanding it being a small voice it did pierce them that did hear to the center, insomuch that there was no part of their frame that it did not cause to quake; yea, it did pierce them to the very soul, and did cause their hearts to burn.

And it came to pass that again they heard the voice, and they understood it not.

And again the third time they did hear the voice, and did open their ears to hear it; and their eyes were towards the sound thereof; and they did look steadfastly towards heaven, from whence the sound came.

And behold, the third time they did understand the voice which they heard; and it said unto them:

Behold my Beloved Son, in whom I am well pleased, in whom I have glorified my name—hear ye him.

8 Futhi kwenzeka, ngesikhathi sebeliqonda lelozwi babhekisa amehlo abo futhi phezulu ngasezulwini; futhi bheka, babona iNdoda yehla iphuma ezulwini; futhi yayigqoke ingubo emhlophe; futhi yehlela phansi futhi yema phakathi kwabo; futhi amehlo esixuku sonke ajika abheka kuyo, futhi abazange balokothe bavule imilomo yabo; ngisho omunye komunye, futhi babengazi ukuthi lokhu kwakuchazani, ngokuba babecabanga ukuthi kwakuyingelosi leyo eyayivele kubo.

9 Futhi kwenzeka ukuthi welulela isandla sakhe phambili futhi wakhuluma kubantu ethi:

10 Bhekani, NginguJesu Kristu, abaphrofethi abafakaza ngaye ukuthi uyoza emhlabeni.

11 Futhi bhekani, nginguku khanya kanye nokuphila komhlaba; futhi ngiphuze kuleso sitsha esibabayo uBaba anginike sona, futhi ngimdumisile uBaba ngokuthwala izono zomhlaba, ngalokho ngivumele intando kaBaba kuzo zonke izinto kusukela ekuqaleni.

12 Futhi kwenzeka ukuthi ngesikhathi uJesu esewakhulumile lamazwi isixuku sonke sawela phansi; ngokuba sasikhumbula ukuthi kwaku phrofethiwe phakathi kwabo ukuthi uKristu uyozibonakalisa kubo emva kokwenyukela kwakhe ezulwini.

13 Futhi kwenzeka ukuthi iNkosi yakhuluma kubo ithi:

14 Sukumani futhi nize phambili kimi, ukuze nifake izandla zenu ohlangothini lwami, futhi ukuze futhi nizwe amanxeba ezipikili ezandleni zami kanye nasezinyaweni zami, ukuze nazi ukuthi nginguNkulunkulu ka-Israyeli, kanye noNkulunkulu womhlaba wonke, futhi ngibulawelwe izono zomhlaba.

15 Futhi kwenzeka ukuthi isixuku saya phambili, futhi safaka izandla zaso ohlangothini lwakhe, futhi nempela bazizwa izibazi zezipikili ezandleni zakhe kanye nasezinyaweni zakhe; futhi lokhu bakwenza, beya phambili ngamunye ngamunye baze baya bonke phambili, futhi nempela babona ngamehlo abo futhi nempela bezwa nangezandla zabo, futhi nempela bazi ngokweqiniso futhi nempela baba nobufakazi, ukuthi kwakunguye, okwabhalwa ngaye ngabaphrofethi, ukuthi uyoza.

And it came to pass, as they understood they cast their eyes up again towards heaven; and behold, they saw a Man descending out of heaven; and he was clothed in a white robe; and he came down and stood in the midst of them; and the eyes of the whole multitude were turned upon him, and they durst not open their mouths, even one to another, and wist not what it meant, for they thought it was an angel that had appeared unto them.

And it came to pass that he stretched forth his hand and spake unto the people, saying:

Behold, I am Jesus Christ, whom the prophets testified shall come into the world.

And behold, I am the light and the life of the world; and I have drunk out of that bitter cup which the Father hath given me, and have glorified the Father in taking upon me the sins of the world, in the which I have suffered the will of the Father in all things from the beginning.

And it came to pass that when Jesus had spoken these words the whole multitude fell to the earth; for they remembered that it had been prophesied among them that Christ should show himself unto them after his ascension into heaven.

And it came to pass that the Lord spake unto them saying:

Arise and come forth unto me, that ye may thrust your hands into my side, and also that ye may feel the prints of the nails in my hands and in my feet, that ye may know that I am the God of Israel, and the God of the whole earth, and have been slain for the sins of the world.

And it came to pass that the multitude went forth, and thrust their hands into his side, and did feel the prints of the nails in his hands and in his feet; and this they did do, going forth one by one until they had all gone forth, and did see with their eyes and did feel with their hands, and did know of a surety and did bear record, that it was he, of whom it was written by the prophets, that should come.

16 Futhi ngesikhathi bonke sebehambile baya phambili futhi sebezibonele ngokwabo, bakhala ngezwi elilodwa, bethi:

17 Hosana! Libusisiwe igama likaNkulunkulu oPhezukonke! Futhi bawela ezinyaweni zikaJesu, futhi bamdumisa.

18 Futhi kwenzeka ukuthi wakhuluma ku Nefi (ngokuba uNefi wayephakathi kwesixuku) futhi wamyala ukuthi eze phambili.

19 UNefi wasukuma futhi waya phambili, futhi wakhothama phambi kweNkosi futhi wazanga izinyawo zayo.

20 INkosi yamyala ukuthi asukume. Futhi wasukuma wema phambi kwayo.

21 INkosi yathi kuye: Ngikunika amandla okuthi uyoba bhabhadisa labantu emva kokuba sengenyukele ezulwini futhi.

22 Futhi yaphinda iNkosi yabiza abanye, futhi yasho nakubo kanjalo; futhi yabanika amandla okubhabhadisa. Futhi yathi kubo: Niyobhabhadisa ngalendlela; futhi akuyikuba khona zimpikiswano phakathi kwenu.

23 Ngiqinisile ngithi kini, noma ngubani ophendukayo ezonweni zakhe ngenxa yamazwi enu, futhi afise ukubhabhadiswa egameni lami, niyobabhabhadisa ngalendlela—Bhekani, niyokwehlela phansi futhi nime emanzini, futhi niyobabhabhadisa egameni lami.

24 Manje bhekani, lawa ngamazwi eniyowasho, nibabiza ngegama, nithi:

25 Ngegunya engilini kwe nguJesu Kristu, ngiyakubhabhadisa egameni lika Baba, kanye neleNdodana, kanye nelikaMoya oyiNgcwele. Amen.

26 Futhi emva kwalokho niyobacwilisa emanzini, futhi niphinde nibakhiphe emanzini.

27 Futhi ngalendlela niyobabhabhadisa egameni lami; ngokuba bhekani, ngiqinisile ngithi kini, uBaba, kanye neNdodana, kanye noMoya oyiNgcwele bamunye; futhi ngikuBaba, futhi uBaba ukimi, futhi uBaba kanye nami simunye.

And when they had all gone forth and had witnessed for themselves, they did cry out with one accord, saying:

Hosanna! Blessed be the name of the Most High God! And they did fall down at the feet of Jesus, and did worship him.

And it came to pass that he spake unto Nephi (for Nephi was among the multitude) and he commanded him that he should come forth.

And Nephi arose and went forth, and bowed himself before the Lord and did kiss his feet.

And the Lord commanded him that he should arise. And he arose and stood before him.

And the Lord said unto him: I give unto you power that ye shall baptize this people when I am again ascended into heaven.

And again the Lord called others, and said unto them likewise; and he gave unto them power to baptize. And he said unto them: On this wise shall ye baptize; and there shall be no disputations among you.

Verily I say unto you, that whoso repenteth of his sins through your words, and desireth to be baptized in my name, on this wise shall ye baptize them— Behold, ye shall go down and stand in the water, and in my name shall ye baptize them.

And now behold, these are the words which ye shall say, calling them by name, saying:

Having authority given me of Jesus Christ, I baptize you in the name of the Father, and of the Son, and of the Holy Ghost. Amen.

And then shall ye immerse them in the water, and come forth again out of the water.

And after this manner shall ye baptize in my name; for behold, verily I say unto you, that the Father, and the Son, and the Holy Ghost are one; and I am in the Father, and the Father in me, and the Father and I are one.

28 Futhi njengoba nginiyalile niyobhabhadisa. Futhi akuyikuba khona zimpikiswano phakathi kwenu, njengoba kade zikhona kuze kube manje; noma kube khona izimpikiswano phakathi kwenu mayelana namaphuzu emfundiso yami, njengoba kade zikhona kuze kube manje.

29 Ngokuba ngiqinisile, ngiqinisile ngithi kini, ono moya wokubanga akayena owami, kepha ungoka develi, ongubaba wombango, futhi uphehla izinhliziyi zabantu ukuthi zibange ngolaka, omunye nomunye.

30 Bhekani, lena akuyona imfundiso yami, ukuphehla izinhliziyi zabantu ngolaka, omunye avukele omunye; kepha yilena imfundiso yami, ukuthi izinto ezinjena kufanele ziyekwe.

31 Bhekani, ngiqinisile, ngiqinisile, ngithi kini, ngizonicacisela imfundiso yami.

32 Futhi lena yimfundiso yami, futhi yimfundiso uBaba anginike yona; futhi ngifakaza ngoBaba, futhi uBaba ufakaza ngami, futhi uMoya oyiNgcwele ufakaza ngoBaba kanye nangami; futhi ngiyafakaza ukuthi uBaba uyala bonke abantu, yonke indawo, ukuthi baphenduke futhi bakholwe kimi.

33 Futhi lowo okholwa kimi, futhi abhabhadiswe, nguyeyo lowo oyosindiswa; futhi yiyo labo abayokudla ifa lombuso kaNkulunkulu.

34 Futhi lowo ongakholwa kimi, futhi nongabhabhadiswa, uyovinjelwa.

35 Ngiqinisile, ngiqinisile, ngithi kini, lena yimfundiso yami, futhi ngifakaza ngayo ukuthi ivela kuBaba; futhi noma ngubani okholwa kimi ukholwa nakuBaba futhi; futhi kuye uBaba uyofakaza ngami, ngokuba uyomvakashela ngomlilo kanye nango Moya oyiNgcwele.

36 Futhi ngalendlela uBaba uyofakaza ngami, futhi uMoya oyiNgcwele uyofakaza kuye ngoBaba kanye nangami; ngokuba uBaba, kanye nami, kanye noMoya oyiNgcwele simunye.

37 Futhi ngiyaphinda ngithi kini, kufanele niphenduke, futhi nibe njengengane encane, futhi nibhabhadiswe egameni lami, ngokuba ngaphandle kwalokho ayikho enye indlela eningathola ngayo lezi zinto.

And according as I have commanded you thus shall ye baptize. And there shall be no disputations among you, as there have hitherto been; neither shall there be disputations among you concerning the points of my doctrine, as there have hitherto been.

For verily, verily I say unto you, he that hath the spirit of contention is not of me, but is of the devil, who is the father of contention, and he stirreth up the hearts of men to contend with anger, one with another.

Behold, this is not my doctrine, to stir up the hearts of men with anger, one against another; but this is my doctrine, that such things should be done away.

Behold, verily, verily, I say unto you, I will declare unto you my doctrine.

And this is my doctrine, and it is the doctrine which the Father hath given unto me; and I bear record of the Father, and the Father beareth record of me, and the Holy Ghost beareth record of the Father and me; and I bear record that the Father commandeth all men, everywhere, to repent and believe in me.

And whoso believeth in me, and is baptized, the same shall be saved; and they are they who shall inherit the kingdom of God.

And whoso believeth not in me, and is not baptized, shall be damned.

Verily, verily, I say unto you, that this is my doctrine, and I bear record of it from the Father; and whoso believeth in me believeth in the Father also; and unto him will the Father bear record of me, for he will visit him with fire and with the Holy Ghost.

And thus will the Father bear record of me, and the Holy Ghost will bear record unto him of the Father and me; for the Father, and I, and the Holy Ghost are one.

And again I say unto you, ye must repent, and become as a little child, and be baptized in my name, or ye can in nowise receive these things.

38 Futhi ngiyaphinda ngithi kini, kufanele niphenduke, futhi nibhabhadiswe egameni lami, futhi nibe njengengane encane, noma ngaphandle kwalokho aninakukwazi ukudla ifa lombuso kaNkulunkulu.

39 Ngiqinisile, ngiqinisile, ngithi kini, lena yimfundiso yami, futhi lowo owakhela phezu kwalokhu wakhela phezu kwedwala lami, futhi amasango esihogo awayikubahlula.

40 Futhi lowo oyomemezela okucishe kufane nalokhu, futhi akumise njengemfundiso yami, lowo uvela ebubini, futhi akakhile phezu kwedwala lami; kodwa wakhele phezu kwesisekelo esiyisihlabathi, futhi amasango esihogo avulekile ukwemukela abanjalo ngesikhathi kufika izikhukhula kanye nemimoya isishaya kubo.

41 Ngalokho-ke, hambani niye kulaba bantu, futhi nimemezele lamazwi engiwakhulumile, kuze kube semikhawulweni yomhlaba.

And again I say unto you, ye must repent, and be baptized in my name, and become as a little child, or ye can in nowise inherit the kingdom of God.

Verily, verily, I say unto you, that this is my doctrine, and whoso buildeth upon this buildeth upon my rock, and the gates of hell shall not prevail against them.

And whoso shall declare more or less than this, and establish it for my doctrine, the same cometh of evil, and is not built upon my rock; but he buildeth upon a sandy foundation, and the gates of hell stand open to receive such when the floods come and the winds beat upon them.

Therefore, go forth unto this people, and declare the words which I have spoken, unto the ends of the earth.

3 Nepi 12

- 1 Futhi kwenzeka ukuthi emva kokuba uJesu esewakhulumile lamazwi kuNefi, kanye nakulabo ababebiziwe (manje isibalo salabo ababebiziwe, futhi benikwe amandla kanye negunya lokubhabhadisa, babeyi shumi nambili) bheka, welulela isandla sakhe esixukwini, futhi wamemeza kuso, ethi: Nibusisiwe uma niyowanaka amazwi alaba abayishumi nambili engibakhethile phakathi kwenu ukuthi banifundise, nokuthi futhi babe yizisebenzi zenu; futhi engibanike amandla okuthi banibhabhadise ngamanzi; futhi emva kokuthi senibhabhadisiwe ngamanzi, bhekani, mina ngiyonibhabhadisa ngomlilo kanye nangoMoya oyiNgcwele; ngakho-ke nibusisiwe uma niyokholwa kimi futhi nibhabhadiswe, emva kokuthi seningibonile futhi nazi ukuthi ngiyimi.
- 2 Futhi phezu kwalokho, babusisiwe kakhulu labo abayokholwa emazwini enu ngoba niyofakaza ukuthi ningibonile, futhi nokuthi niyazi ukuthi ngiyimi. Yebo, babusisiwe labo abayokholwa emazwini enu, futhi behlele phansi ekujuleni kokuzithoba futhi babhabhadiswe, ngokuba bayovakashelwa ngomlilo kanye nangoMoya oyiNgcwele, futhi bayothola ukuthethelelwa kwezono zabo.
- 3 Yebo, babusisiwe abampofu emoyeni abeza kimi, ngokuba umbuso wezulu ungowabo.
- 4 Futhi phezu kwalokho, babusisiwe bonke labo abakhalayo, ngokuba bayoduduzwa.
- 5 Futhi babusisiwe abathobileyo, ngokuba bayodla ifa lomhlaba.
- 6 Futhi babusisiwe bonke labo abalambele futhi nabomele ukulunga, ngokuba bayogcwaliswa ngoMoya oyiNgcwele.
- 7 Futhi babusisiwe abanesihawu, ngokuba bayothola ukuhawukelwa.
- 8 Futhi babusisiwe bonke abamsulwa enhliziyweni, ngokuba bayombona uNkulunkulu.
- 9 Futhi babusisiwe bonke abalamulayo, ngokuba bayobizwa ngabantwana baNkulunkulu.
- 10 Futhi babusisiwe bonke labo abahlushwa ngenxa yegama lami, ngokuba umbuso wezulu ungowabo.

3 Nepi 12

And it came to pass that when Jesus had spoken these words unto Nephi, and to those who had been called, (now the number of them who had been called, and received power and authority to baptize, was twelve) and behold, he stretched forth his hand unto the multitude, and cried unto them, saying: Blessed are ye if ye shall give heed unto the words of these twelve whom I have chosen from among you to minister unto you, and to be your servants; and unto them I have given power that they may baptize you with water; and after that ye are baptized with water, behold, I will baptize you with fire and with the Holy Ghost; therefore blessed are ye if ye shall believe in me and be baptized, after that ye have seen me and know that I am.

And again, more blessed are they who shall believe in your words because that ye shall testify that ye have seen me, and that ye know that I am. Yea, blessed are they who shall believe in your words, and come down into the depths of humility and be baptized, for they shall be visited with fire and with the Holy Ghost, and shall receive a remission of their sins.

Yea, blessed are the poor in spirit who come unto me, for theirs is the kingdom of heaven.

And again, blessed are all they that mourn, for they shall be comforted.

And blessed are the meek, for they shall inherit the earth.

And blessed are all they who do hunger and thirst after righteousness, for they shall be filled with the Holy Ghost.

And blessed are the merciful, for they shall obtain mercy.

And blessed are all the pure in heart, for they shall see God.

And blessed are all the peacemakers, for they shall be called the children of God.

And blessed are all they who are persecuted for my name's sake, for theirs is the kingdom of heaven.

11 Futhi nibusisiwe uma abantu beyonithuka futhi
banihluphe, futhi beyosho yonke inhlobo yobubi
ngokumelene nani engamanga, ngenxa yami;

12 Ngokuba niyokuba nenjabulo enkulu futhi
nithokoze kakhulu, ngokuba uyoba mkhulu umvuzo
wenu ezulwini; ngokuba babahlupha kanjalo
abaphrofethi ababengaphambi kwenu.

13 Ngiqinisile, ngiqinisile, ngithi kini, ngininika
ukuthi nibe ngusawoti womhlaba; kepha uma
usawoti uphelelwa wubusawoti bawo umhlaba
uyothelwa ngamuphi usawoti na? Lowo sawoti
kusuka ngaleso sikhathi awuyikusiza ngalutho,
kepha ukuthi ulahlwe ngaphandle futhi unyathelwe
ngaphansi kwezinyawo zabantu.

14 Ngiqinisile, ngiqinisile, ngithi kini, ngininika
ukuthi nibe ngukukhanya kwalabantu. Idolobha
elakhiwe egqumeni lingesitheliswe.

15 Bhekani, ngabe abantu bayasikhanyisa yini
isibani bese besibeka ngaphansi kwesitsha na? Cha,
kepha basibeka othini lwesibani, bese sikhanyisela
bonke abasendlini.

16 Ngakho-ke ukukhanya kwenu makukhanye
phambi kwalabantu, ukuze babone imisebenzi yenu
emihle futhi badumise uYihlo osezulwini.

17 Ningacabangi ukuthi ngize ukuzochitha
umthetho noma abaphrofethi. Angizanga
ukuzochitha kepha ukuzogcwalisa;

18 Ngokuba ngiqinisile ngithi kini, akukho ganyana
linye nachashazana linye elidlulile emthethweni,
kepha kimi konke kugcwalisekile.

19 Futhi bhekani, ngininike umthetho kanye
nemiyalelo kaBaba, yokuthi niyokholwa kimi, futhi
nokuthi niyophenduka ezonweni zenu, futhi nize
kimi nenhliziyo elusizi kanye nomoya odabukileyo.
Bhekani, ninemiyalelo phambi kwenu, futhi
umthetho ugcwalisekile.

20 Ngakho-ke wozani kimi futhi nisindiswe;
ngokuba ngiqinisile ngithi kini, ngaphandle kokuthi
nigcine imiyalelo yami, enginiyale ngayo ngalesi
sikhathi, anisoze nangena embusweni wezulu.

21 Nizwile ukuthi kushiwo ngabakudala, futhi phezu
kwalokho kulotshiwe phambi kwenu, ukuthi
ungabulali, futhi lowo oyobulala uyoba sengozini
yokwahlulelwa nguNkulunkulu;

And blessed are ye when men shall revile you and
persecute, and shall say all manner of evil against
you falsely, for my sake;

For ye shall have great joy and be exceedingly
glad, for great shall be your reward in heaven; for so
persecuted they the prophets who were before you.

Verily, verily, I say unto you, I give unto you to be
the salt of the earth; but if the salt shall lose its savor
wherewith shall the earth be salted? The salt shall be
thenceforth good for nothing, but to be cast out and
to be trodden under foot of men.

Verily, verily, I say unto you, I give unto you to be
the light of this people. A city that is set on a hill can-
not be hid.

Behold, do men light a candle and put it under a
bushel? Nay, but on a candlestick, and it giveth light
to all that are in the house;

Therefore let your light so shine before this peo-
ple, that they may see your good works and glorify
your Father who is in heaven.

Think not that I am come to destroy the law or the
prophets. I am not come to destroy but to fulfil;

For verily I say unto you, one jot nor one tittle hath
not passed away from the law, but in me it hath all
been fulfilled.

And behold, I have given you the law and the com-
mandments of my Father, that ye shall believe in me,
and that ye shall repent of your sins, and come unto
me with a broken heart and a contrite spirit. Behold,
ye have the commandments before you, and the law
is fulfilled.

Therefore come unto me and be ye saved; for ver-
ily I say unto you, that except ye shall keep my com-
mandments, which I have commanded you at this
time, ye shall in no case enter into the kingdom of
heaven.

Ye have heard that it hath been said by them of old
time, and it is also written before you, that thou shalt
not kill, and whosoever shall kill shall be in danger
of the judgment of God;

- 22 Kepha mina ngithi kini, lowo othukuthelela umfowabo uyokuba senozini yokwahlulelwa nguyey. Futhi lowo oyokuthi kumfowabo, Silima, uyokuba senozini emkhandlwini; futhi lowo oyokuthi, Wena siwula, uyokuba senozini yomlilo wesihogo.
- 23 Ngakho-ke, uma uyokuza kimi, noma uyofisa ukuza kimi, futhi ukhumbula ukuthi umfowenu unotho nawe—
- 24 Hamba uye kumfowenu, futhi uqale ubuyisane nomfowenu, bese uza kimi ngenhloso ephelele yenhliziyoy, futhi ngiyokwemukela.
- 25 Vumelana nesitha sakho ngokushesha ngesikhathi usendleleni naso, funa nangasiphi isikhathi sikuthole, bese uphonswa etilongweni.
- 26 Ngqiqinisile, ngiqinisile, ngithi kuwe, awunakukwazi nanini ukuphuma lapho kuze kube ukhokhe isenine yokugcina ngci. Futhi ngesikhathi usetilongweni ungayikhokha yini ngisho isenine eyodwa na? Ngqiqinisile, ngiqinisile, ngithi kuwe, Cha.
- 27 Bhekani, kubhaliwe yilabo abesikhathi sakudala, ukuthi ungapingey;
- 28 Kepha mina ngithi kini, lowo obuka owesifazane, bese emkhanukela, usephingile vele enhliziyweni yakhe.
- 29 Bhekani, ngininika umyalelo, wokuthi ningavumeli nayinye yalezi zinto ukuthi ingene enhliziyweni yenu;
- 30 Ngokuba kungcono ukuthi ungazivumeli lezi zinto, ngalokho uyothwala isiphambano sakho, kunokuba uphonswe esihogweni.
- 31 Kulotshiwe, ukuthi lowo oyolahla umkakhe, makamnikeze incwadi yesehlukano.
- 32 Ngqiqinisile, ngiqinisile, ngithi kini, lowo oyolahla umkakhe, ngaphandle kwesizathu sokuhlobonga, umenza ukuthi apingey; futhi lowo oyoshada lowo ohlukano esiyaphingey.
- 33 Futhi phezu kwalokho kulotshiwe ukuthi, ungapfungi ngamanga, kepha yenza izifungo zakho eNkosini;

But I say unto you, that whosoever is angry with his brother shall be in danger of his judgment. And whosoever shall say to his brother, Raca, shall be in danger of the council; and whosoever shall say, Thou fool, shall be in danger of hell fire.

Therefore, if ye shall come unto me, or shall desire to come unto me, and rememberest that thy brother hath aught against thee—

Go thy way unto thy brother, and first be reconciled to thy brother, and then come unto me with full purpose of heart, and I will receive you.

Agree with thine adversary quickly while thou art in the way with him, lest at any time he shall get thee, and thou shalt be cast into prison.

Verily, verily, I say unto thee, thou shalt by no means come out thence until thou hast paid the uttermost senine. And while ye are in prison can ye pay even one senine? Verily, verily, I say unto you, Nay.

Behold, it is written by them of old time, that thou shalt not commit adultery;

But I say unto you, that whosoever looketh on a woman, to lust after her, hath committed adultery already in his heart.

Behold, I give unto you a commandment, that ye suffer none of these things to enter into your heart;

For it is better that ye should deny yourselves of these things, wherein ye will take up your cross, than that ye should be cast into hell.

It hath been written, that whosoever shall put away his wife, let him give her a writing of divorcement.

Verily, verily, I say unto you, that whosoever shall put away his wife, saving for the cause of fornication, causeth her to commit adultery; and whoso shall marry her who is divorced committeth adultery.

And again it is written, thou shalt not forswear thyself, but shalt perform unto the Lord thine oaths;

- 34 Kepha ngiqinisile, ngiqinisile, ngithi kini,
ungafungi nakancane; noma ngezulu, ngokuba
liyisihlalo sobukhosi sikaNkulunkulu;
- 35 Noma ngomhlaba, ngokuba uyisenabelo
sezinyawo zakhe;
- 36 Noma ufunge ngekhandla lakho, ngokuba angeke
wenze nalunye unwele lube mnyama noma lube
mhlophe;
- 37 Kepha ukukhulumisana kwenu makube wukuthi
Yebo, yebo; Cha, cha; ngokuba noma yini engaphezu
kwalezi zinto yimbi.
- 38 Futhi bhekani, kulotshiwe ukuthi, iso ngeso,
kanye nezinyo ngezinyo;
- 39 Kepha mina ngithi kini, ningamelani nobubi,
kodwa lowo okumukula esihlathini
sangakwesokudla, mphendulele nesinye futhi;
- 40 Futhi uma umuntu namuphi ekumangalela
emthethweni futhi athathe ijazi lakho, mnike
nezivatho zakho futhi;
- 41 Futhi lowo oyokuphoqa ukuthi uhambe imayela,
hamba naye abe mabili.
- 42 Mnike lowo ocela kuwe, futhi nalowo otshlekayo
kuwe ungamfulatheli.
- 43 Futhi bhekani kulotshiwe futhi, ukuthi ubothanda
umakhelwane wakho futhi usizonde isitha sakho;
- 44 Kepha bhekani, mina ngithi kini, zithandeni
izitha zenu, nibabusise labo abaniqalekisayo, nenze
okuhle kulabo abanizondayo, futhi nibakhulekele
labo abanisebenzisa ngokungalungile kanye nalabo
abanihluphayo;
- 45 Ukuze nibe ngabantwana baYihlo osezulwini;
ngokuba yena wenza ilanga lakhe ukuthi liphume
komubi kanye nakomuhle.
- 46 Ngakho-ke lezo zinto okwakungezesikhathi
sakudala, ezazingaphansi komthetho, kimi zonke
zigcwalisekile.
- 47 Izinto zakudala ziyekiwe, futhi zonke izinto sezi
zintsha.
- 48 Ngakho-ke ngifuna ukuthi niphelele du njengami,
noma njengoba uYihlo osezulwini ephelele du.
- But verily, verily, I say unto you, swear not at all;
neither by heaven, for it is God's throne;
- Nor by the earth, for it is his footstool;
- Neither shalt thou swear by thy head, because
thou canst not make one hair black or white;
- But let your communication be Yea, yea; Nay, nay;
for whatsoever cometh of more than these is evil.
- And behold, it is written, an eye for an eye, and a
tooth for a tooth;
- But I say unto you, that ye shall not resist evil, but
whosoever shall smite thee on thy right cheek, turn
to him the other also;
- And if any man will sue thee at the law and take
away thy coat, let him have thy cloak also;
- And whosoever shall compel thee to go a mile, go
with him twain.
- Give to him that asketh thee, and from him that
would borrow of thee turn thou not away.
- And behold it is written also, that thou shalt love
thy neighbor and hate thine enemy;
- But behold I say unto you, love your enemies,
bless them that curse you, do good to them that hate
you, and pray for them who despitefully use you and
persecute you;
- That ye may be the children of your Father who is
in heaven; for he maketh his sun to rise on the evil
and on the good.
- Therefore those things which were of old time,
which were under the law, in me are all fulfilled.
- Old things are done away, and all things have be-
come new.
- Therefore I would that ye should be perfect even
as I, or your Father who is in heaven is perfect.

3 Nefi 13

- 1 Ngiqinisile, ngiqinisile ngithi ngifisa ukuthi nenzele abampofu izenzo zomusa; kepha niqaphele ukuthi anizenzi izenzo zenu zomusa phambi kwabantu ukuze nibukwe yibo; ngaphandle kwalokho aninamvuzo kuYihlo osezulwini.
- 2 Ngakho-ke, uma nenza izenzo zenu zomusa ningashayi cilongo phambi kwenu, njengoba kwenza abazenzisi emasinagogeni kanye nasemigwaqweni, ukuze babe nodumo lwabantu. Ngiqinisile ngithi kini, bayawuthola owabo umvuzo.
- 3 Kepha uma wena wenza izenzo zomusa isandla sakho sokhohlo masingazi ukuthi isandla sakho sokudla senzani;
- 4 Ukuze izenzo zakho zomusa zibe yimfihlo; futhi uYihlo obona ekusithekeni, uyokunika umvuzo ngokusobala.
- 5 Futhi uma ukhuleka ungenzi njengabazenzisi, ngokuba bona bayakuthanda ukukhuleka, bemi emasinagogeni kanye nasemakhoneni emigwaqo, ukuze babonwe ngabantu. Ngiqinisile ngithi kini, bayawuthola owabo umvuzo.
- 6 Kepha wena, uma ukhuleka, ngena ekhosombeni lakho, futhi uma usuwualile umnyango, khuleka kuYihlo osekusithekeni; futhi uYihlo, obona ekusithekeni, uyokuvuza ngokusobala.
- 7 Kepha uma nikhuleka, ningasebenzisi ukuthemeleza okuyize, njengabahedeni, ngokuba bona bacabanga ukuthi bayozwakala ngokukhuluma kwabo okuningi.
- 8 Ngakho-ke maningafani nabo, ngokuba uYihlo uyazazi izinto enizidingayo ngaphambi kokuthi nizicele kuye.
- 9 Ngakho-ke kufanele ukuthi nikhuleke ngalendlela: Baba wethu osezulwini, malingcweliswe igama lakho.
- 10 Intando yakho mayenziwe emhlabeni njengoba yenziwa ezulwini.
- 11 Usithethelele amacala ethu, njengoba nathi sibathethelela abanamacala kithi.
- 12 Ungasingenisi ekulingweni, kodwa usikhulule kokubi.
- 13 Ngokuba umbuso ungowakho, namandla, nobukhosi, ingunaphakade. Amen.

3 Nephi 13

Verily, verily, I say that I would that ye should do alms unto the poor; but take heed that ye do not your alms before men to be seen of them; otherwise ye have no reward of your Father who is in heaven.

Therefore, when ye shall do your alms do not sound a trumpet before you, as will hypocrites do in the synagogues and in the streets, that they may have glory of men. Verily I say unto you, they have their reward.

But when thou doest alms let not thy left hand know what thy right hand doeth;

That thine alms may be in secret; and thy Father who seeth in secret, himself shall reward thee openly.

And when thou prayest thou shalt not do as the hypocrites, for they love to pray, standing in the synagogues and in the corners of the streets, that they may be seen of men. Verily I say unto you, they have their reward.

But thou, when thou prayest, enter into thy closet, and when thou hast shut thy door, pray to thy Father who is in secret; and thy Father, who seeth in secret, shall reward thee openly.

But when ye pray, use not vain repetitions, as the heathen, for they think that they shall be heard for their much speaking.

Be not ye therefore like unto them, for your Father knoweth what things ye have need of before ye ask him.

After this manner therefore pray ye: Our Father who art in heaven, hallowed be thy name.

Thy will be done on earth as it is in heaven.

And forgive us our debts, as we forgive our debtors.

And lead us not into temptation, but deliver us from evil.

For thine is the kingdom, and the power, and the glory, forever. Amen.

14 Ngokuba, uma nibathethelela abantu iziphambeko zabo uYihlo osezulwini naye uyonithethelela nani;

15 Kepha uma ningabathetheleli abantu iziphambeko zabo noYihlo akayikunithethelela iziphambeko zenu.

16 Phezu kwalokho, uma nizila ukudla ningabi njengabazenzisi, ababa nobuso obulusizi, ngokuba bona banyukubalisa ubuso babo ukuze babonakale kubantu ukuthi bazile ukudla. Ngiqinisile ngithi kini, bayawuthola owabo umvuzo.

17 Kepha wena, uma uzila ukudla, gcoba ikhanda lakho, futhi ugeze ubuso bakho;

18 Ukuze ungabonakali kubantu ukuthi uzile ukudla, kepha kuYihlo osekusithekeni; futhi uYihlo, obona ekusithekeni, uyokuvuza ngokusobala.

19 Ningazibekeli amagugu emhlabeni, lapho inundu kanye nokugqwala kona khona, futhi nalapho amasela egqekeza khona futhi ebe;

20 Kepha zibekeleni amagugu enu ezulwini, lapho inundu nokugqwala kungenakona khona, futhi lapho amasela engenakugqekeza khona noma ebe.

21 Ngokuba lapho kukhona igugu lakho khona, nenhliziyo yakho iyokuba lapho futhi.

22 Ukukhanya komzimba yiso; ngakho-ke uma, iso lakho lizinikele, umzimba wakho wonke uyogcwala ukukhanya.

23 Kepha uma iso lakho lilibi, umzimba wakho wonke uyogcwala ubumnyama. Ngakho-ke, uma, lokho kukhanya okukuwe kungubumnyama, bukhulu kanganani lobo bumnyama!

24 Akukho muntu ongasebenzela amakhosi amabili; ngokuba kuphakathi kokuthi uyoyizonda enye athande enye, noma uyobambelela kweyodwa ayidelele enye. Aninakusebenzela uNkulunkulu kanye noMamona.

For, if ye forgive men their trespasses your heavenly Father will also forgive you;

But if ye forgive not men their trespasses neither will your Father forgive your trespasses.

Moreover, when ye fast be not as the hypocrites, of a sad countenance, for they disfigure their faces that they may appear unto men to fast. Verily I say unto you, they have their reward.

But thou, when thou fastest, anoint thy head, and wash thy face;

That thou appear not unto men to fast, but unto thy Father, who is in secret; and thy Father, who seeth in secret, shall reward thee openly.

Lay not up for yourselves treasures upon earth, where moth and rust doth corrupt, and thieves break through and steal;

But lay up for yourselves treasures in heaven, where neither moth nor rust doth corrupt, and where thieves do not break through nor steal.

For where your treasure is, there will your heart be also.

The light of the body is the eye; if, therefore, thine eye be single, thy whole body shall be full of light.

But if thine eye be evil, thy whole body shall be full of darkness. If, therefore, the light that is in thee be darkness, how great is that darkness!

No man can serve two masters; for either he will hate the one and love the other, or else he will hold to the one and despise the other. Ye cannot serve God and Mammon.

25 Manje kwenzeka ukuthi ngesikhathi uJesu esewakhulumile lamazwi wabheka kwabayishumi nambili labo ayebakhethile, futhi wathi kubo: Khumbulani amazwi engiwakhulumile. Ngokuba bhekani, niyilabo engibakhethileyo ukuthi bafundise laba bantu. Ngakho-ke ngithi kini, ningacabangi ngempilo yenu, ukuthi niyodlani, noma niyophuzani; noma nangemizimba yenu, ukuthi niyokwembathani. Ngabe impilo ayibalulekile yini kunenyama, kanye nomzimba kunezambatho na?

26 Bhekani izinyoni zezulu, ngokuba zona azihlwanyeli, futhi azivuni noma aziqoqeli ezinqolobaneni; kepha, uYihlo osezulwini uyazondla. Ngabe nina aningcono yini kakhulu kunazo na?

27 Ngumuphi kini okungathi ngokucabanga nje anezele ubude bengalo eyodwa ebudeni bakhe na?

28 Futhi kungani nikhathazeka ngezambatho na? Bhekani ukuthi iminduze yasendle imila kanjani yona; ayikhandleki, futhi ayiphothi;

29 Kodwa ngithi kini, ngisho noSolomoni, kubo bonke ubukhosi bakhe, wayengembathile njengenye yalena.

30 Ngakho-ke, uma uNkulunkulu ebembathisa kanje utshani basendle, obukhona namuhla, bese kuthi ngakusasa sebuphoswe eziko, ngisho nani niyokwembathiswa kanje, uma ningebona abokholo oluncane.

31 Ngakho-ke ningakhathazeki, nithi, Siyodlani? noma, Siyophuzani? noma, Siyokwembathani na?

32 Ngokuba uYihlo osezulwini uyazi ukuthi niyazidinga zonke lezi zinto.

33 Kepha funani kuqala umbuso kaNkulunkulu kanye nokulunga kwakhe, futhi zonke lezi zinto ziyokwenezelwa kini.

34 Ngakho-ke ningakhathazeki ngengomuso, ngokuba ingomuso liyozikhathalela ngezinto zalo. Izinkathazo zosuku zanele lona.

And now it came to pass that when Jesus had spoken these words he looked upon the twelve whom he had chosen, and said unto them: Remember the words which I have spoken. For behold, ye are they whom I have chosen to minister unto this people. Therefore I say unto you, take no thought for your life, what ye shall eat, or what ye shall drink; nor yet for your body, what ye shall put on. Is not the life more than meat, and the body than raiment?

Behold the fowls of the air, for they sow not, neither do they reap nor gather into barns; yet your heavenly Father feedeth them. Are ye not much better than they?

Which of you by taking thought can add one cubit unto his stature?

And why take ye thought for raiment? Consider the lilies of the field how they grow; they toil not, neither do they spin;

And yet I say unto you, that even Solomon, in all his glory, was not arrayed like one of these.

Wherefore, if God so clothe the grass of the field, which today is, and tomorrow is cast into the oven, even so will he clothe you, if ye are not of little faith.

Therefore take no thought, saying, What shall we eat? or, What shall we drink? or, Wherewithal shall we be clothed?

For your heavenly Father knoweth that ye have need of all these things.

But seek ye first the kingdom of God and his righteousness, and all these things shall be added unto you.

Take therefore no thought for the morrow, for the morrow shall take thought for the things of itself. Sufficient is the day unto the evil thereof.

3 Nepi 14

- 1 Manje kwenzeka ukuthi ngesikhathi uJesu esewakhulumile lamazwi waphendukela esixukwini futhi, waphinda wavula umlomo wakhe kuso, ethi: Ngqiqinisile, ngiqinisile, ngithi kini, Ningehluleli, ukuze nani ningehlulelwa.
- 2 Ngokuba ngalokho kwahlulela enahlulela ngakho, nani niyokwahlulelwa ngakho; futhi nangaleso silinganiso enilinganisa ngaso, nani niyonikwa sona futhi.
- 3 Futhi ubhekelani ucezwana olusesweni lomfowenu, kepha ube ungaluboni ugongolo olusesweni lakho na?
- 4 Noma ungasho kanjani kumfowenu ukuthi: Ngivumele ngikhiphe ucezwana olusesweni lakho—kodwa bheka, ugongolo lusesweni lakho na?
- 5 Wena mzenzisi, khipha kuqala ugongolo olusesweni lakho; futhi emva kwalokho uzobona kahle ukuze ukhiphe ucezwana olusesweni lomfowenu.
- 6 Ningaziniki izinja lokho okungcwele, noma niphonse amagugu enu phambi kwezingulube, hleze ziwanyathele ngaphansi kwezinyawo zazo, bese ziphendukela kini ziniklebhule.
- 7 Celani, futhi niyophiwa; funani, futhi niyofumana; ngqongqothani, futhi niyovulelwa.
- 8 Ngokuba yilowo nalowo ocelayo, uyonikwa; futhi nalowo ofunayo, uyafumana; futhi nalowo ongqongqothayo, uyovulelwa.
- 9 Yimuphi umuntu kini, okuthi uma indodana yakhe icela isinkwa, ayinike itshe na?
- 10 Noma uma icela inhlanzi, ngabe uzoyinika inyoka na?
- 11 Uma-ke nina, enibabi, nikwazi ukupha abantwana benu izipho ezinhle, angabanika kangakanani izinto ezinhle uYihlo osezulwini labo abacela kuye na?
- 12 Ngakho-ke, noma ngabe yini eniyothanda ukuthi abantu bayenze kini, yenzeni nani ngokunjalo kubo, ngokuba lokhu kungumthetho kanye nabaphrofethi.
- 13 Ngenani ngesango elingumngcingo, ngokuba libanzi isango, futhi nendlela ibanzi, eholela ekonakalisweni, futhi baningi abayohamba ngayo;

3 Nepi 14

And now it came to pass that when Jesus had spoken these words he turned again to the multitude, and did open his mouth unto them again, saying: Verily, verily, I say unto you, Judge not, that ye be not judged.

For with what judgment ye judge, ye shall be judged; and with what measure ye mete, it shall be measured to you again.

And why beholdest thou the mote that is in thy brother's eye, but considerest not the beam that is in thine own eye?

Or how wilt thou say to thy brother: Let me pull the mote out of thine eye—and behold, a beam is in thine own eye?

Thou hypocrite, first cast the beam out of thine own eye; and then shalt thou see clearly to cast the mote out of thy brother's eye.

Give not that which is holy unto the dogs, neither cast ye your pearls before swine, lest they trample them under their feet, and turn again and rend you.

Ask, and it shall be given unto you; seek, and ye shall find; knock, and it shall be opened unto you.

For every one that asketh, receiveth; and he that seeketh, findeth; and to him that knocketh, it shall be opened.

Or what man is there of you, who, if his son ask bread, will give him a stone?

Or if he ask a fish, will he give him a serpent?

If ye then, being evil, know how to give good gifts unto your children, how much more shall your Father who is in heaven give good things to them that ask him?

Therefore, all things whatsoever ye would that men should do to you, do ye even so to them, for this is the law and the prophets.

Enter ye in at the strait gate; for wide is the gate, and broad is the way, which leadeth to destruction, and many there be who go in thereat;

14 Ngokuba lingumngcingo isango, futhi nendlela incane, eholela ekuphileni, futhi bayingcosana abayoyifumana.

15 Baqapheleni abaphrofethi bamanga, abeza kini bembethe izingubo zezimvu, kepha ngaphakathi beyizimpisi eziphangayo.

16 Niyobazi ngezithelo zabo. Ngabe abantu bayawubutha yini umvini wameva, noma amakhiwane ekhakhasi na?

17 Ngisho kanjalo yilowo nalowo muthi omuhle uthela izithelo ezinhle; kepha umuthi omubi uthela izithelo ezimbi.

18 Umuthi omuhle awunakuthela izithelo ezimbi, noma umuthi omubi uthela izithelo ezinhle.

19 Yilowo nalowo muthi ongatheli izithelo ezinhle uyagawulwa, futhi uphonswe emlilweni.

20 Ngalokho-ke, niyobazi ngezithelo zabo.

21 Akusibo bonke abathi kimi, Nkosi, Nkosi, abayongena embusweni wezulu; kepha kuphela lowo owenza intando kaBaba osezulwini.

22 Abaningi bayokuthi kimi ngalolo suku: Nkosi, Nkosi, asiphrofethanga yini ngegama lakho, futhi ngegama lakho sakhapha odeveli, futhi ngegama lakho senza imisebenzi eminingi emangalisayo na?

23 Futhi emva kwalokho ngiyothi kubo: Angikaze nginazi; sukani kimi, nina benzi bobubi.

24 Ngakho-ke, noma ngubani ozwa lamazwi ami futhi awenze, ngizomfanisa nendoda ehlakaniphileyo, eyakha indlu yayo phezu kwedwala—

25 Futhi yehla imvula, futhi zafika nezikhukhula, wavunguza nomoya, washaya phezu kwaleyondlu; kepha ayiwanga, ngokuba yayakhelwe phezu kwedwala.

26 Futhi yilowo nalowo ozwa lamazwi ami kodwa angawenzi uzofaniswa nendoda eyisiwula, eyakha indlu yayo phezu kwesihlabathi—

27 Futhi yehla imvula, futhi zafika nezikhukhula, wavunguza nomoya, washaya phezu kwaleyondlu; futhi yawa, futhi kwaba kukhulu ukuwa kwayo.

Because strait is the gate, and narrow is the way, which leadeth unto life, and few there be that find it.

Beware of false prophets, who come to you in sheep's clothing, but inwardly they are ravening wolves.

Ye shall know them by their fruits. Do men gather grapes of thorns, or figs of thistles?

Even so every good tree bringeth forth good fruit; but a corrupt tree bringeth forth evil fruit.

A good tree cannot bring forth evil fruit, neither a corrupt tree bring forth good fruit.

Every tree that bringeth not forth good fruit is hewn down, and cast into the fire.

Wherefore, by their fruits ye shall know them.

Not every one that saith unto me, Lord, Lord, shall enter into the kingdom of heaven; but he that doeth the will of my Father who is in heaven.

Many will say to me in that day: Lord, Lord, have we not prophesied in thy name, and in thy name have cast out devils, and in thy name done many wonderful works?

And then will I profess unto them: I never knew you; depart from me, ye that work iniquity.

Therefore, whoso heareth these sayings of mine and doeth them, I will liken him unto a wise man, who built his house upon a rock—

And the rain descended, and the floods came, and the winds blew, and beat upon that house; and it fell not, for it was founded upon a rock.

And every one that heareth these sayings of mine and doeth them not shall be likened unto a foolish man, who built his house upon the sand—

And the rain descended, and the floods came, and the winds blew, and beat upon that house; and it fell, and great was the fall of it.

3 Nefi 15

- 1 Manje kwenzeka ukuthi ngesikhathi uJesu eseqedile ukukhuluma lenkulumo waphonsa amehlo akhe esixukwini, futhi wathi kuso: Bhekani, nizizwile izinto engazifundisa ngaphambi kokuthi ngenyukele kuBaba; ngakho-ke, lowo owakhumbulayo lamazwi ami futhi awenze, ngiyomvusa ngosuku lokugcina.
- 2 Futhi kwenzeka ukuthi ngesikhathi uJesu esewashilo lamazwi wabona ukuthi kwakukhona abanye phakathi kwabo abamangala, futhi becabanga ukuthi wayefuna ukuthi benzeni mayelana nomthetho kaMose; ngokuba babengawuqondi umbhalo othi izinto ezindala zase zidlulile, futhi nokuthi zonke izinto zase zizintsha.
- 3 Futhi wathi kubo: Ningamangali ukuthi ngithe kini izinto ezindala sezidlulile, futhi nokuthi zonke izinto sezizintsha.
- 4 Bhekani, ngithi kini umthetho usugcwalisiwe owawunikezwe uMose.
- 5 Bhekani, nginguye lowo owanikeza umthetho, futhi nginguye lowo owenza isivumelwano nabantu bami u-Israyeli; ngakho-ke, umthetho kimi ugcwalisekile, ngokuba ngize ukuzogcwalisa umthetho; ngakho-ke usufike esiphethweni.
- 6 Bhekani, angiphikisani nabaphrofethi, ngokuba njengoba okuningi kungakagcwaliseki kimi, ngiqinisile ngithi kini, konke kuyogcwaliseka.
- 7 Futhi ngenxa yokuthi ngithe kini izinto ezindala sezidlulile, angiphikisani nalokho okwakhulunywa mayelana nezinto ezisazokwenzeka.
- 8 Ngokuba bhekani, isivumelwano engasenza nabantu bami asikakagcwaliseki sonke; kepha umthetho owawunikezwe uMose usunesiphetho kimi.
- 9 Bhekani, ngingumthetho, kanye nokukhanya. Bhekani kimi, futhi nibekezele kuze kube sekugcineni, futhi niyophila; ngokuba lowo oyobekezela kuze kube sekugcineni, ngiyomnika ukuphila okuphakade.
- 10 Bhekani, ngininike imiyalelo; ngakho-ke gcinani imiyalelo yami. Futhi lona ngumthetho kanye nabaphrofethi, ngokuba ngempela bafakaza ngami.

3 Nephi 15

And now it came to pass that when Jesus had ended these sayings he cast his eyes round about on the multitude, and said unto them: Behold, ye have heard the things which I taught before I ascended to my Father; therefore, whoso remembereth these sayings of mine and doeth them, him will I raise up at the last day.

And it came to pass that when Jesus had said these words he perceived that there were some among them who marveled, and wondered what he would concerning the law of Moses; for they understood not the saying that old things had passed away, and that all things had become new.

And he said unto them: Marvel not that I said unto you that old things had passed away, and that all things had become new.

Behold, I say unto you that the law is fulfilled that was given unto Moses.

Behold, I am he that gave the law, and I am he who covenanted with my people Israel; therefore, the law in me is fulfilled, for I have come to fulfil the law; therefore it hath an end.

Behold, I do not destroy the prophets, for as many as have not been fulfilled in me, verily I say unto you, shall all be fulfilled.

And because I said unto you that old things have passed away, I do not destroy that which hath been spoken concerning things which are to come.

For behold, the covenant which I have made with my people is not all fulfilled; but the law which was given unto Moses hath an end in me.

Behold, I am the law, and the light. Look unto me, and endure to the end, and ye shall live; for unto him that endureth to the end will I give eternal life.

Behold, I have given unto you the commandments; therefore keep my commandments. And this is the law and the prophets, for they truly testified of me.

11 Manje kwenzeka ukuthi ngesikhathi uJesu
 esewakhulumile lamazwi, wathi kulabo abayishumi
 nambili ayebakhethile:

12 Ningabafundi bami; futhi niwukukhanya kulaba
 bantu, abayinsali yendlu ka Josefa.

13 Futhi bhekani, leli yizwe eliyifa lenu; futhi uBaba
 uninike lona.

14 Futhi asikho nesisodwa isikhathi lapho uBaba
 anginika umyalelo wokuthi ngibatshele lokhu
 abafowenu abaseJerusalema.

15 Futhi asikho nesisodwa isikhathi lapho uBaba
 anginika umyalelo wokuthi ngibatshele mayelana
 nezinye izizwana zendlu ka-Israyeli, uBaba azihola
 wazikhipha kulelozwe.

16 Wangiyala ngalokhu kuphela uBaba, ukuthi
 ngibatshele ukuthi:

17 Nginezinye izimvu okungezona ezalesi sibaya;
 futhi nazo ngokunjalo kufanele ngizihole, futhi nazo
 ziyolizwa izwi lami; futhi kuyoba khona umhlambi
 owodwa, kanye nomalusi oyedwa.

18 Manje, ngenxa yokuba ngontamo lukhuni kanye
 nokungakholwa abaliqondanga izwi lami; ngakho-
 ke ngayalwa nguBaba ukuthi ngingabe ngisasho
 lutho mayelana nalento kubo.

19 Kepha, ngiqinisile, ngithi kini uBaba ungiyalile,
 futhi ngiyanitshela, ukuthi nina nehlukaniswa nabo
 ngenxa yobubi babo; ngakho-ke kungenxa yobubi
 babo ukuthi bangazi ngani.

20 Futhi ngiqinisile, ngiyaphinda ngithi kini ezinye
 izizwana uBaba wazisusa kubo; futhi kungenxa
 yobubi babo ukuthi bangazi ngazo.

21 Futhi ngiqinisile ngithi kini, niyibo labo engathi
 ngabo: Nginezinye izimvu okungezona ezalesi
 sibaya; nazo futhi kufanele ngizihole, futhi nazo
 ziyolizwa izwi lami; futhi kuyokuba khona
 umhlambi owodwa, kanye nomalusi oyedwa.

22 Futhi abazange bangiqonde, ngokuba
 babecabanga ukuthi kwakungabeZizwe; ngokuba
 babengaqondi ukuthi abeZizwe babezophenduka
 ngokushumayela kwabo.

And now it came to pass that when Jesus had spo-
 ken these words, he said unto those twelve whom he
 had chosen:

Ye are my disciples; and ye are a light unto this
 people, who are a remnant of the house of Joseph.

And behold, this is the land of your inheritance;
 and the Father hath given it unto you.

And not at any time hath the Father given me com-
 mandment that I should tell it unto your brethren at
 Jerusalem.

Neither at any time hath the Father given me com-
 mandment that I should tell unto them concerning
 the other tribes of the house of Israel, whom the
 Father hath led away out of the land.

This much did the Father command me, that I
 should tell unto them:

That other sheep I have which are not of this fold;
 them also I must bring, and they shall hear my voice;
 and there shall be one fold, and one shepherd.

And now, because of stiffneckedness and unbelief
 they understood not my word; therefore I was com-
 manded to say no more of the Father concerning this
 thing unto them.

But, verily, I say unto you that the Father hath
 commanded me, and I tell it unto you, that ye were
 separated from among them because of their iniq-
 uity; therefore it is because of their iniquity that they
 know not of you.

And verily, I say unto you again that the other
 tribes hath the Father separated from them; and it is
 because of their iniquity that they know not of them.

And verily I say unto you, that ye are they of whom
 I said: Other sheep I have which are not of this fold;
 them also I must bring, and they shall hear my voice;
 and there shall be one fold, and one shepherd.

And they understood me not, for they supposed it
 had been the Gentiles; for they understood not that
 the Gentiles should be converted through their
 preaching.

- 23 Futhi abangiqondanga ngesikhathi ngithi ziyolizwa izwi lami; futhi abaqondanga uma ngithi abeZizwe ngeke balizwe izwi lami nangasiphi isikhathi—nokuthi angiyikuzibonakalisa kubo ngaphandle kokuthi kube ngo Moya oyiNgcwele.
- 24 Kepha bhekani, nina nilizwile izwi lami, futhi nangibona; futhi niyizimvu zami, futhi nibalwa nalabo uBaba anginike bona.

And they understood me not that I said they shall hear my voice; and they understood me not that the Gentiles should not at any time hear my voice—that I should not manifest myself unto them save it were by the Holy Ghost.

But behold, ye have both heard my voice, and seen me; and ye are my sheep, and ye are numbered among those whom the Father hath given me.

3 Nefi 16

- 1 Futhi ngiqinisile, ngiqinisile, ngithi kini nginezinye izimvu, okungezona ezalelizwe, noma izwe laseJerusalema, noma kuziphi zezinxenye zezwe ezizungeze lapho sengike ngaya khona ngayofundisa.
- 2 Ngokuba labo engikhuluma ngabo yilabo abangakalizwa izwi lami; noma engingakaze nangasiphi isikhathi ngizibonakalise kubo.
- 3 Kepha ngithole umyalelo kuBaba wokuthi ngiyohamba ngiye kubo, futhi nokuthi bayolizwa izwi lami, futhi bayobalwa kanye nezimvu zami, ukuze kube khona isibaya esisodwa kanye nomalusi oyedwa; ngakho-ke ngiyahamba ngiyozibonakalisa kubo.
- 4 Futhi ngiyaniyala ukuthi nizibhale lezi zinkulumo emva kokuthi sengihambile, ukuze kuthi uma kwenzeka ukuthi abantu bami eJerusalema, labo abangibona futhi baba nami ebufundisini bami, bengaceli kuBaba egameni lami, ukuze bathole ulwazi ngani ngoMoya oyiNgcwele, futhi kanjalo nangezinye izizwana abangazazi, ukuze kuthi lezi zinkulumo eniyozibhala zigcinwe futhi zibonakaliswe kubo ngabeZizwe, ukuze kuthi ngokuphelela kwabeZizwe, insali yenzalo yabo, eyobe ihlakazeke phezu kobuso bomhlaba ngenxa yokungakholwa kwabo, iholwe, noma iholelwe olwazini lwami, uMkhululi wabo.
- 5 Futhi ngaleso sikhathi ngiyobaqoqa emagumbini amane omhlaba; futhi ngaleso sikhathi ngiyosigcwalisa isivumelano uBaba asenza kubo bonke abantu bendlu ka-Israyeli.
- 6 Futhi babusisiwe abeZizwe, ngenxa yokukholwa kwabo kimi, kimi kanye nango Moya oyiNgcwele, ofakaza kubo ngami kanye nangoBaba.
- 7 Bhekani, ngenxa yokukholwa kwabo kimi, kusho uBaba, futhi nangenxa yokungakholwa kwenu, Ondlu ka-Israyeli, ngezinsuku zokugcina iqiniso liyokuza kwabeZizwe, ukuze ukuphelela kwalezi zinto kwambulwe kubo.

3 Nephi 16

And verily, verily, I say unto you that I have other sheep, which are not of this land, neither of the land of Jerusalem, neither in any parts of that land round about whither I have been to minister.

For they of whom I speak are they who have not as yet heard my voice; neither have I at any time manifested myself unto them.

But I have received a commandment of the Father that I shall go unto them, and that they shall hear my voice, and shall be numbered among my sheep, that there may be one fold and one shepherd; therefore I go to show myself unto them.

And I command you that ye shall write these sayings after I am gone, that if it so be that my people at Jerusalem, they who have seen me and been with me in my ministry, do not ask the Father in my name, that they may receive a knowledge of you by the Holy Ghost, and also of the other tribes whom they know not of, that these sayings which ye shall write shall be kept and shall be manifested unto the Gentiles, that through the fulness of the Gentiles, the remnant of their seed, who shall be scattered forth upon the face of the earth because of their unbelief, may be brought in, or may be brought to a knowledge of me, their Redeemer.

And then will I gather them in from the four quarters of the earth; and then will I fulfil the covenant which the Father hath made unto all the people of the house of Israel.

And blessed are the Gentiles, because of their belief in me, in and of the Holy Ghost, which witnesses unto them of me and of the Father.

Behold, because of their belief in me, saith the Father, and because of the unbelief of you, O house of Israel, in the latter day shall the truth come unto the Gentiles, that the fulness of these things shall be made known unto them.

- 8 Kepha maye, kusho uBaba, kwabangakholwa beZizwe—ngokuba naphezu kokuthi sebeze ebusweni balelizwe, futhi bahlakaza abantu bami okungabendlu ka-Israyeli; futhi abantu bami okungabendlu ka-Israyeli bakhishelwe ngaphandle kwabo, futhi banyathelwa ngaphansi kwezinyawo yibo;
- 9 Futhi ngenxa yesihawu sikaBaba kwabeZizwe, futhi phezu kwalokho nezahlulelo zikaBaba kubantu bami okungabendlu ka-Israyeli, ngiqinisile, ngiqinisile, ngithi kini, emva kwakho konke lokhu, futhi ngenze abantu bami okungabendlu ka-Israyeli ukuthi bashaywe, futhi bahlushwe, futhi babulawe, futhi nokuthi bakhishelwe ngaphandle kwabo, futhi nokuthi bazondwe yibo, futhi babe yinhlekisa kanye nesaga phakathi kwabo—
- 10 Futhi uBaba ungiyale ngalamagama ukuthi ngithi kini: Ngalolo suku lapho abeZizwe beyokona ngokumelene nevangeli lami, futhi beyoliphika ivangeli elipheleleyo lami, futhi beyoziqhenya ezinhliziyweni zabo ngaphezu kwezizwe zonke, futhi nangaphezu kwabantu bonke bomhlaba wonke, futhi beyogcwala zonke izinhlobo zamanga, kanye nezenkohliso, kanye nokuganga, kanye nazo zonke izinhlobo zokuzenzisa, kanye nezokubulala, kanye nezobuphristi-mbumbulu, kanye nezobufebe, kanye nezinengiso eziyimfihlo; futhi uma beyokwenza zonke lezo zinto, futhi beyoliphika elipheleleyo ivangeli lami, bhekani, kusho uBaba, ngiyolithatha ivangeli lami elipheleleyo phakathi kwabo.
- 11 Futhi ngaleso sikhathi ngiyosikhumbula isivumelwano sami engasenza kubantu bami, O ndlu ka-Israyeli, futhi ngiyoliletha ivangeli lami kubo.
- 12 Futhi ngiyokukhombisa, O ndlu ka-Israyeli, ukuthi abeZizwe ngeke babe namandla phezu kwakho; kepha ngiyosikhumbula isivumelano sami kuwe, O ndlu ka-Israyeli, futhi uyokuba nolwazi olupheleleyo ngevangeli lami.
- 13 Kepha uma abeZizwe beyophenduka futhi babuyele kimi, kusho uBaba, bhekani bayobalwa kanye nabantu bami, O ndlu ka-Israyeli.

But wo, saith the Father, unto the unbelieving of the Gentiles—for notwithstanding they have come forth upon the face of this land, and have scattered my people who are of the house of Israel; and my people who are of the house of Israel have been cast out from among them, and have been trodden under feet by them;

And because of the mercies of the Father unto the Gentiles, and also the judgments of the Father upon my people who are of the house of Israel, verily, verily, I say unto you, that after all this, and I have caused my people who are of the house of Israel to be smitten, and to be afflicted, and to be slain, and to be cast out from among them, and to become hated by them, and to become a hiss and a byword among them—

And thus commandeth the Father that I should say unto you: At that day when the Gentiles shall sin against my gospel, and shall reject the fulness of my gospel, and shall be lifted up in the pride of their hearts above all nations, and above all the people of the whole earth, and shall be filled with all manner of lyings, and of deceits, and of mischiefs, and all manner of hypocrisy, and murders, and priestcrafts, and whoredoms, and of secret abominations; and if they shall do all those things, and shall reject the fulness of my gospel, behold, saith the Father, I will bring the fulness of my gospel from among them.

And then will I remember my covenant which I have made unto my people, O house of Israel, and I will bring my gospel unto them.

And I will show unto thee, O house of Israel, that the Gentiles shall not have power over you; but I will remember my covenant unto you, O house of Israel, and ye shall come unto the knowledge of the fulness of my gospel.

But if the Gentiles will repent and return unto me, saith the Father, behold they shall be numbered among my people, O house of Israel.

- 14 Futhi ngeke ngivumele abantu bami,
okungabendlu ka-Israyeli, ukuthi bahambe
badabule phakathi kwabo, futhi babanyathele
phansi, kusho uBaba.
- 15 Kepha uma bengenakuphendukela kimi, futhi
balalele izwi lami, ngiyobavumela, yebo,
ngiyobavumela abantu bami, O ndlu ka-Israyeli,
ukuthi bahambe badabule phakathi kwabo, futhi
babanyathele phansi, futhi bayokuba njengosawoti
osulahlekelwe wubusawoti bawo, kusuka ngaleso
sikhathi ongasasizi ngalutho kodwa ukuthi ulahlwe
ngaphandle, futhi unyathelwe ngaphansi
kwezinyawo zabantu bami, O ndlu ka-Israyeli.
- 16 Ngiqinisile, ngiqinisile, ngithi kini, uBaba
ungiyale kanjalo—ukuthi nginike labantu lendawo
kube yifa labo.
- 17 Futhi ngaleso sikhathi amazwi omphrofethi
u-Isaya ayogcwaliseka, athi:
- 18 Abalindi bakho bayoliphakamisa izwi; ngezwi
kanye kanye bayohlabelela, ngokuba bayobona iso
neso ngesikhathi iNkosi iphinda ihola iSiyoni.
- 19 Qhumukani ngenjabulo, hlabelelani kanye kanye,
nina zindawo ezichithiweyo zaseJerusalema;
ngokuba iNkosi ibaduduzile abantu bayo,
iyikhululile iJerusalema.
- 20 INkosi iyambulile ingalo yayo engcwele
emehlweni ezizwe zonke; futhi yonke imikhawulo
yomhlaba iyoyibona insindiso kaNkulunkulu.

And I will not suffer my people, who are of the
house of Israel, to go through among them, and
tread them down, saith the Father.

But if they will not turn unto me, and hearken
unto my voice, I will suffer them, yea, I will suffer my
people, O house of Israel, that they shall go through
among them, and shall tread them down, and they
shall be as salt that hath lost its savor, which is
thenceforth good for nothing but to be cast out, and
to be trodden under foot of my people, O house of
Israel.

Verily, verily, I say unto you, thus hath the Father
commanded me—that I should give unto this people
this land for their inheritance.

And then the words of the prophet Isaiah shall be
fulfilled, which say:

Thy watchmen shall lift up the voice; with the
voice together shall they sing, for they shall see eye
to eye when the Lord shall bring again Zion.

Break forth into joy, sing together, ye waste places
of Jerusalem; for the Lord hath comforted his peo-
ple, he hath redeemed Jerusalem.

The Lord hath made bare his holy arm in the eyes
of all the nations; and all the ends of the earth shall
see the salvation of God.

3 Nepi 17

- 1 Bheka manje kwenzeka ukuthi ngesikhathi uJesu esewakhulumile lamazwi waphinda wabheka esixukwini futhi, wathi kubo: Bhekani, isikhathi sami sesifikile.
- 2 Ngiyabona ukuthi nibuthakathaka, nokuthi ngeke niwaqonde wonke amazwi ami engiyalwe nguBaba ukuthi ngiwakhulume kini ngalesi sikhathi.
- 3 Ngakho-ke, hambani niye emakhaya enu, futhi nizindle ngezinto engizishilo, futhi nicele kuBaba, egameni lami, ukuze niqonde, futhi nilungise izingqondo zenu zilungele ikusasa, futhi ngizophinda ngize kini.
- 4 Kepha manje sengiya kuBaba, futhi phezu kwalokho ngiyozibonakalisa ezizwazweni ezilahlekileyo zakwa-Israyeli, ngokuba azilahlekile kuBaba, ngokuba yena uyazi ukuthi waziyisa ngakuphi.
- 5 Futhi kwenzeka ukuthi ngesikhathi uJesu esekhulume kanjalo, waphonsa amehlo akhe futhi esixukwini, futhi bheka base bekhala, futhi babebheke kuye ngokugxilile sengathi babezomcela ukuthi ahlale nabo isikhashana eside.
- 6 Futhi wathi kubo: Bhekani, izibilini zami zigcwele isihawu ngani.
- 7 Ninabo yini abagulayo phakathi kwenu na? Baletheni lapha. Ninabo yini abayizinyonga, noma abayizimpumpethe, noma abaxhugayo, noma abayizigoga, noma abano choko, noma labo abafe izinhlangothi, noma abayizimungulu, noma labo abezwa ubuhlungu noma ngayiphi indlela na? Baletheni lapha futhi ngizobelapha, ngokuba nginesihawu ngani; izibilini zami zigcwele umusa.
- 8 Ngokuba ngiyabona ukuthi nifisa ukuthi nginitshengise ukuthi ngenzani kubafowenu eJerusema, ngokuba ngiyabona ukuthi ukholo lwenu lwenele ukuthi nginelaphe.

3 Nepi 17

Behold, now it came to pass that when Jesus had spoken these words he looked round about again on the multitude, and he said unto them: Behold, my time is at hand.

I perceive that ye are weak, that ye cannot understand all my words which I am commanded of the Father to speak unto you at this time.

Therefore, go ye unto your homes, and ponder upon the things which I have said, and ask of the Father, in my name, that ye may understand, and prepare your minds for the morrow, and I come unto you again.

But now I go unto the Father, and also to show myself unto the lost tribes of Israel, for they are not lost unto the Father, for he knoweth whither he hath taken them.

And it came to pass that when Jesus had thus spoken, he cast his eyes round about again on the multitude, and beheld they were in tears, and did look steadfastly upon him as if they would ask him to tarry a little longer with them.

And he said unto them: Behold, my bowels are filled with compassion towards you.

Have ye any that are sick among you? Bring them hither. Have ye any that are lame, or blind, or halt, or maimed, or leprous, or that are withered, or that are deaf, or that are afflicted in any manner? Bring them hither and I will heal them, for I have compassion upon you; my bowels are filled with mercy.

For I perceive that ye desire that I should show unto you what I have done unto your brethren at Jerusalem, for I see that your faith is sufficient that I should heal you.

- 9 Futhi kwenzeka ukuthi ngesikhathi esekhulume kanjalo, sonke isixuku, kanye kanye, nempela saya phambili nabagulayo babo kanye nabezwa ubuhlungu, kanye nezinyonga zabo, kanye nezimpumpethe zabo, nezimungulu zabo, kanye nabo bonke ababezwa ubuhlungu noma ngayiphi indlela; futhi nempela wabelapha bonke ngamunye ngesikhathi belethwa phambili kuye.
- 10 Futhi bonke, labo ababelashiwe kanye nalabo ababephila, baguqa phansi ezinyaweni zakhe, futhi bamkhonza; futhi ngobuningi balabo ababeza esixukwini bamanga izinyawo zakhe, kangangokuthi bazimanzisa izinyawo zakhe ngezinyembezi zabo.
- 11 Futhi kwenzeka ukuthi wabayala ukuthi balethe abantwana babo abancane.
- 12 Ngakho-ke babaletsa abantwana babo abancane futhi babahlalisa phansi bamzungeza, futhi uJesu wema phakathi; futhi isixuku savula indlela kwaze kwaba bonke balethwa kuye.
- 13 Futhi kwenzeka ukuthi ngesikhathi bonke sebelethiwe, futhi uJesu esemi phakathi, wayala isixuku ukuthi siguqe phansi.
- 14 Futhi kwenzeka ukuthi ngesikhathi sebeguqe phansi, uJesu wabubula ngaphakathi kwakhe, futhi wathi: Baba, ngikhathazekile ngenxa yobubi babantu bendlu ka-Israyeli.
- 15 Futhi ngesikhathi esewashilo lamazwi, naye uqobolwakhe waguqa phansi; futhi bheka wakhuleka kuBaba, futhi izinto azikhuluma ngeke zabhalwa, futhi isixuku sakufakazela lokho labo abamuzwa.
- 16 Futhi bafakaza ngalendlela: Iso alikaze likubone lokhu, noma indlebe ikuzwe lokhu, ngaphambili, izinto ezinkulu futhi nezimangalisa kangaka ngesikhathi sibona futhi sizwa uJesu ezikhuluma kuBaba;

And it came to pass that when he had thus spoken, all the multitude, with one accord, did go forth with their sick and their afflicted, and their lame, and with their blind, and with their dumb, and with all them that were afflicted in any manner; and he did heal them every one as they were brought forth unto him.

And they did all, both they who had been healed and they who were whole, bow down at his feet, and did worship him; and as many as could come for the multitude did kiss his feet, insomuch that they did bathe his feet with their tears.

And it came to pass that he commanded that their little children should be brought.

So they brought their little children and set them down upon the ground round about him, and Jesus stood in the midst; and the multitude gave way till they had all been brought unto him.

And it came to pass that when they had all been brought, and Jesus stood in the midst, he commanded the multitude that they should kneel down upon the ground.

And it came to pass that when they had knelt upon the ground, Jesus groaned within himself, and said: Father, I am troubled because of the wickedness of the people of the house of Israel.

And when he had said these words, he himself also knelt upon the earth; and behold he prayed unto the Father, and the things which he prayed cannot be written, and the multitude did bear record who heard him.

And after this manner do they bear record: The eye hath never seen, neither hath the ear heard, before, so great and marvelous things as we saw and heard Jesus speak unto the Father;

17 Futhi alukho ulimi olungazikhuluma, noma akukho muntu ongazibhala, noma akukho zinhliziyi zabantu ezingazicabanga izinto ezinkulu futhi nezimangalisa kangaka ngesikhathi sibona futhi sizwa uJesu ezikhuluma; futhi akekho noyedwa ongayicabanga intokozo eyagcwala imiphefumulo yethu ngesikhathi simuzwa esikhulekela kuBaba.

18 Futhi kwenzeka ukuthi ngesikhathi uJesu eseqedile ukukhuleka kuBaba, waphakama; kepha yayinkulu kakhulu intokozo esixukwini kangangokuthi senganywa.

19 Futhi kwenzeka ukuthi uJesu wakhuluma kubo, futhi wabacela ukuthi baphakame.

20 Futhi baphakama, futhi wathi kubo: Nibusisiwe ngenxa yokholo lwenu. Manje bhekani, intokozo yami igcwele.

21 Futhi ngesikhathi esewashilo lamazwi, wakhala, futhi isixuku sakufakazela lokho, futhi wathatha abantwana babo abancane, ngamunye ngamunye, futhi wababusisa, futhi wabakhulekela kuBaba.

22 Futhi ngesikhathi esekwenzile lokhu waphinda wakhala futhi;

23 Futhi wakhuluma esixukwini, wathi kuso: Bhekani abantwana benu.

24 Futhi ngesikhathi beqalaza ukuthi babone baphonsa amehlo abo ezulwini, futhi babona amazulu evuleka, futhi babona izingelosi zehla ziphuma ezulwini sengathi zaziphakathi komlilo; futhi zehlela phansi futhi zazungeza labo bantwana, futhi bazungezwa ngumlilo; futhi izingelosi zabasebenzela.

25 Futhi isixuku sabona futhi sezwa futhi sakufakazela lokhu; futhi bayazi ukuthi ubufakazi babo buyiqiniso ngokuba bonke ngamunye nempela wazibonela futhi wazizwela, wonke umuntu ngokwakhe; futhi babeyisibalo esingangezinkulungwane ezimbili kanye namakhulu amahlanu abantu; futhi kuso kwakukhona amadoda, abesifazane, kanye nabantwana.

And no tongue can speak, neither can there be written by any man, neither can the hearts of men conceive so great and marvelous things as we both saw and heard Jesus speak; and no one can conceive of the joy which filled our souls at the time we heard him pray for us unto the Father.

And it came to pass that when Jesus had made an end of praying unto the Father, he arose; but so great was the joy of the multitude that they were overcome.

And it came to pass that Jesus spake unto them, and bade them arise.

And they arose from the earth, and he said unto them: Blessed are ye because of your faith. And now behold, my joy is full.

And when he had said these words, he wept, and the multitude bare record of it, and he took their little children, one by one, and blessed them, and prayed unto the Father for them.

And when he had done this he wept again;

And he spake unto the multitude, and said unto them: Behold your little ones.

And as they looked to behold they cast their eyes towards heaven, and they saw the heavens open, and they saw angels descending out of heaven as it were in the midst of fire; and they came down and encircled those little ones about, and they were encircled about with fire; and the angels did minister unto them.

And the multitude did see and hear and bear record; and they know that their record is true for they all of them did see and hear, every man for himself; and they were in number about two thousand and five hundred souls; and they did consist of men, women, and children.

3 Nefi 18

- 1 Futhi kwenzeka ukuthi uJesu wayala abafundi bakhe ukuthi balethe kuye isinkwa kanye newayini.
- 2 Futhi ngesikhathi besahambile ukuyolanda isinkwa kanye newayini, wayala isixuku ukuthi sihlale phansi.
- 3 Futhi ngesikhathi abafundi sebefikile nesinkwa kanye newayini, wasithatha isinkwa wasihlephula futhi wasibusisa; futhi wabanika abafundi wase ebayala ukuthi basidle.
- 4 Futhi ngesikhathi sebedlile futhi sebenele, wabayala ukuthi banike isixuku.
- 5 Futhi ngesikhathi isixuku sesidlile futhi sesenele, wathi kubafundi: Bhekani kuyoba khona oyedwa oyogcotshwa phakathi kwenu, futhi ngiyomnika amandla okuthi uyohlephula isinkwa asibusise futhi asinike abantu bebandla lami, kubo bonke labo abayokholwa futhi babhabhadiswe egameni lami.
- 6 Futhi lokhu niyoqaphela njalo ukukwenza, ngisho nanjengoba nami ngikwenzile, ngisho nanjengoba ngisihlephulile isinkwa ngasibusisa futhi nganinika sona.
- 7 Futhi lokhu niyokwenza nikhumbula umzimba wami, enginitshengise wona. Futhi lokhu kuyoba wubufakazi kuBaba bokuthi ningikhumbula njalo. Futhi uma ningikhumbula njalo uMoya wami uyokuba nani njalo.
- 8 Futhi kwenzeka ukuthi ngesikhathi esewashilo lamazwi, wayala abafundi bakhe ukuthi bathathe iwayini esitsheni futhi baliphuze, futhi nokuthi banike isixuku ukuze naso ngokunjalo siphuze kulo.
- 9 Futhi kwenzeka ukuthi benze njalo, futhi nempela baliphuza futhi benela; futhi banika isixuku, futhi naso saliphuza, futhi naso senela.
- 10 Futhi ngesikhathi abafundi sebekwenzile lokhu, uJesu wathi kubo: Nibusisiwe ngalento eniyenzile, ngokuba lokhu kugcwalisa imiyalelo yami, futhi lokhu kufakazisa kuBaba ukuthi nizimisele ukwenza lokho enginiyale ngakho.

3 Nephi 18

And it came to pass that Jesus commanded his disciples that they should bring forth some bread and wine unto him.

And while they were gone for bread and wine, he commanded the multitude that they should sit themselves down upon the earth.

And when the disciples had come with bread and wine, he took of the bread and brake and blessed it; and he gave unto the disciples and commanded that they should eat.

And when they had eaten and were filled, he commanded that they should give unto the multitude.

And when the multitude had eaten and were filled, he said unto the disciples: Behold there shall one be ordained among you, and to him will I give power that he shall break bread and bless it and give it unto the people of my church, unto all those who shall believe and be baptized in my name.

And this shall ye always observe to do, even as I have done, even as I have broken bread and blessed it and given it unto you.

And this shall ye do in remembrance of my body, which I have shown unto you. And it shall be a testimony unto the Father that ye do always remember me. And if ye do always remember me ye shall have my Spirit to be with you.

And it came to pass that when he said these words, he commanded his disciples that they should take of the wine of the cup and drink of it, and that they should also give unto the multitude that they might drink of it.

And it came to pass that they did so, and did drink of it and were filled; and they gave unto the multitude, and they did drink, and they were filled.

And when the disciples had done this, Jesus said unto them: Blessed are ye for this thing which ye have done, for this is fulfilling my commandments, and this doth witness unto the Father that ye are willing to do that which I have commanded you.

- 11 Futhi lokhu niyokwenza njalo kulabo abaphendukayo futhi nababhabhadiswa egameni lami; futhi lokhu niyokwenza nikukhumbula igazi lami, engalichithela nina, ukuze nifakaze kuBaba ukuthi niyangikhumbula njalo. Futhi uma ningikhumbula njalo uMoya wami uyokuba nani njalo.
- 12 Futhi ngininika umyalelo wokuthi nizenze lezi zinto. Futhi uma niyozenza njalo lezi zinto nibusisiwe, ngokuba nakhele phezu kwedwala lami.
- 13 Kepha lowo phakathi kwenu oyokwenza okucishe kufane nalokhu akakhile phezu kwedwala lami, kepha wakhele esisekelweni esiyisihlabathi; futhi ngesikhathi imvula seyehla, kanye nezikhukhula sezifika, futhi imimoya isishaya, futhi isishaya phezu kwabo, bayokuwa, futhi amasango esihogo asevele avulekile ukubemukela.
- 14 Ngakho-ke nibusisiwe uma niyoyigcina imiyalelo yami, uBaba angiyale ukuthi ngininike yona.
- 15 Ngiqinisile, ngiqinisile, ngithi kini, kufanele niqaphele futhi nikhuleke njalo, hleze nilingwe ngudeveli, futhi bese niholelwa kude ekuthunjweni nguye.
- 16 Futhi njengoba ngikhulekile phakathi kwenu ngisho nani ngokunjalo niyokhuleka ebandleni lami, phakathi kwabantu bami labo abaphendukayo futhi nababhabhadiswa egameni lami. Bhekani ngiwukukhanya; nginenzele isibonelo.
- 17 Futhi kwenzeka ukuthi ngesikhathi uJesu esewakhulumile lamazwi kubafundi bakhe, waphinda waphendukela esixukwini futhi wathi kuso:
- 18 Bhekani, ngiqinisile, ngiqinisile, ngithi kini, kufanele niqaphele futhi nikhuleke njalo hleze ningene ekulingweni; ngokuba uSathane ufisa ukunibamba, ukuze anihlunge njengokolweni.
- 19 Ngakho-ke kufanele nikhuleke njalo kuBaba egameni lami;
- 20 Futhi noma ngabe yini eniyoyicela kuBaba egameni lami, elungile, nikholelwa ukuthi niyoyithola, bhekani niyonikwa yona.
- 21 Khulekani emindenini yenu kuBaba, njalo egameni lami, ukuze abafazi benu kanye nabantwana benu babusiswe.

And this shall ye always do to those who repent and are baptized in my name; and ye shall do it in remembrance of my blood, which I have shed for you, that ye may witness unto the Father that ye do always remember me. And if ye do always remember me ye shall have my Spirit to be with you.

And I give unto you a commandment that ye shall do these things. And if ye shall always do these things blessed are ye, for ye are built upon my rock.

But whoso among you shall do more or less than these are not built upon my rock, but are built upon a sandy foundation; and when the rain descends, and the floods come, and the winds blow, and beat upon them, they shall fall, and the gates of hell are ready open to receive them.

Therefore blessed are ye if ye shall keep my commandments, which the Father hath commanded me that I should give unto you.

Verily, verily, I say unto you, ye must watch and pray always, lest ye be tempted by the devil, and ye be led away captive by him.

And as I have prayed among you even so shall ye pray in my church, among my people who do repent and are baptized in my name. Behold I am the light; I have set an example for you.

And it came to pass that when Jesus had spoken these words unto his disciples, he turned again unto the multitude and said unto them:

Behold, verily, verily, I say unto you, ye must watch and pray always lest ye enter into temptation; for Satan desireth to have you, that he may sift you as wheat.

Therefore ye must always pray unto the Father in my name;

And whatsoever ye shall ask the Father in my name, which is right, believing that ye shall receive, behold it shall be given unto you.

Pray in your families unto the Father, always in my name, that your wives and your children may be blessed.

22 Futhi bhekani, niyohlangana ndawonye njalo; futhi ninganqabeli namunye umuntu ukuthi eze kini uma nihlange ndawonye, kepha bavumeleni ukuthi beze kini futhi ningabenqabeli;

23 Kepha niyobakhulekela, futhi ningabakhipheli ngaphandle; futhi uma kungukuthi beza kini njalo niyobakhulekela kuBaba, egameni lami.

24 Ngakho-ke, phakamisani isibani senu ukuze sikhanye emhlabeni. Bhekani ngiwuku khanya eniyokuphakamisa—lokho eningibone ngikwenza. Bhekani niyabona ukuthi ngithandaze kuBaba, futhi nonke nikufakazele.

25 Futhi niyabona ukuthi nginiyale ukuthi kungabi bikho namunye wenu ohambayo, kepha esikhundleni salokho nginiyale ukuthi nize kimi, ukuze nizwe futhi nibone; ngisho nani niyokwenza kanjalo-ke emhlabeni; futhi lowo ophula lomyalelo uzivumela ukuthi aholelwe ekulingweni.

26 Manje kwenzeka ukuthi ngesikhathi uJesu esewakhulumile lamazwi, waphinda waguqula amehlo akhe wawabhekisa kubafundi ayebakhethile, futhi wathi kubo:

27 Bhekani ngiqinisile, ngiqinsile, ngithi kini, ngininika omunye umyalelo, futhi emva kwalokho kufanele ngiye kuBaba ukuze ngigcwalise eminye imiyalelo anginike yona.

28 Manje bhekani, nanku umyalelo engininika wona, wokuthi ningavumeli namunye nibe nazi ukuthi adle umzimba wami kanye negazi lami ngokungafanele, ngesikhathi niwubusisa.

29 Ngokuba lowo odlayo futhi aphuze umzimba wami kanye negazi lami ngokungafanele udla futhi uphuza isiqalekiso emphefumulweni wakhe; ngakho-ke uma nazi ukuthi umuntu akafanelekile ukuthi adle futhi aphuze umzimba kanye negazi lami anibomenqabela.

30 Nokho, ningamkhipheli ngaphandle kwenu, kepha niyomfundisa futhi niyomkhulekela kuBaba, egameni lami; futhi uma kungukuthi uyaphenduka futhi ubhabhadiswa egameni lami, uma kunjalo niyomamukela, futhi niyomupha umzimba wami kanye negazi lami.

And behold, ye shall meet together oft; and ye shall not forbid any man from coming unto you when ye shall meet together, but suffer them that they may come unto you and forbid them not;

But ye shall pray for them, and shall not cast them out; and if it so be that they come unto you oft ye shall pray for them unto the Father, in my name.

Therefore, hold up your light that it may shine unto the world. Behold I am the light which ye shall hold up—that which ye have seen me do. Behold ye see that I have prayed unto the Father, and ye all have witnessed.

And ye see that I have commanded that none of you should go away, but rather have commanded that ye should come unto me, that ye might feel and see; even so shall ye do unto the world; and whosoever breaketh this commandment suffereth himself to be led into temptation.

And now it came to pass that when Jesus had spoken these words, he turned his eyes again upon the disciples whom he had chosen, and said unto them:

Behold verily, verily, I say unto you, I give unto you another commandment, and then I must go unto my Father that I may fulfil other commandments which he hath given me.

And now behold, this is the commandment which I give unto you, that ye shall not suffer any one knowingly to partake of my flesh and blood unworthily, when ye shall minister it;

For whoso eateth and drinketh my flesh and blood unworthily eateth and drinketh damnation to his soul; therefore if ye know that a man is unworthy to eat and drink of my flesh and blood ye shall forbid him.

Nevertheless, ye shall not cast him out from among you, but ye shall minister unto him and shall pray for him unto the Father, in my name; and if it so be that he repenteth and is baptized in my name, then shall ye receive him, and shall minister unto him of my flesh and blood.

- 31 Kepha uma engaphenduki akanakubalwa kanye nabantu bami, ukuze angonakalisi abantu bami, ngokuba bhekani ngiyazazi izimvu zami, futhi zibaliwe.
- 32 Nokho, aniyikumkhiphela ngaphandle kwamasinagoge enu, noma ezindaweni zenu zokukhonza, ngokuba kwabanjalo niyoqhubeka nokubasebenzela; ngokuba anazi ukuthi bayobuya nini futhi baphenduke, futhi beze kimi ngenhloso ephelele yenhliziyo, futhi ngiyobelapha; futhi niyokuba yindlela yokuletha insindiso kubo.
- 33 Ngakho-ke, gcinani lezi zinto enginiyale ngazo ukuze ningangeni ekubekweni icala; ngokuba maye kulowo uBaba ambeka icala.
- 34 Futhi ngininika lemiyalelo ngenxa yezimpikiswano ebezikhona phakathi kwenu. Futhi nibusisiwe uma ningenazimpikiswano phakathi kwenu.
- 35 Manje sengiyahamba ngiya kuBaba, ngokuba kudingekile ukuthi ngihambe ngiye kuBaba ngenxa yenu.
- 36 Futhi kwenzeka ukuthi ngesikhathi uJesu esenze isiphetho salezi zinkulumo, wathinta ngesandla sakhe abafundi ayebakhethile, ngamunye ngamunye, kwaze kwaba ubathinta bonke, futhi wayekhuluma kubo ngesikhathi ebathinta.
- 37 Futhi isixuku asiwezwanga amazwi awakhuluma, ngakho-ke asizange sikufakazele lokho; kepha abafundi bakufakazela ukuthi wabanika amandla okunika uMoya oyiNgcwele. Futhi ngizonikhombisa emuva kwalokhu ukuthi lombhalo uyiqiniso.
- 38 Futhi kwenzeka ukuthi ngesikhathi uJesu esebathintile bonke, kweza ifu futhi lamboza isixuku sangabe sisambona uJesu.
- 39 Futhi ngesikhathi besamboziwe wemuka kubo, futhi wenyukela ezulwini. Futhi abafundi bambona futhi bakufakazela ukuthi waphinde wenyukela ezulwini.

But if he repent not he shall not be numbered among my people, that he may not destroy my people, for behold I know my sheep, and they are numbered.

Nevertheless, ye shall not cast him out of your synagogues, or your places of worship, for unto such shall ye continue to minister; for ye know not but what they will return and repent, and come unto me with full purpose of heart, and I shall heal them; and ye shall be the means of bringing salvation unto them.

Therefore, keep these sayings which I have commanded you that ye come not under condemnation; for wo unto him whom the Father condemneth.

And I give you these commandments because of the disputations which have been among you. And blessed are ye if ye have no disputations among you.

And now I go unto the Father, because it is expedient that I should go unto the Father for your sakes.

And it came to pass that when Jesus had made an end of these sayings, he touched with his hand the disciples whom he had chosen, one by one, even until he had touched them all, and spake unto them as he touched them.

And the multitude heard not the words which he spake, therefore they did not bear record; but the disciples bare record that he gave them power to give the Holy Ghost. And I will show unto you hereafter that this record is true.

And it came to pass that when Jesus had touched them all, there came a cloud and overshadowed the multitude that they could not see Jesus.

And while they were overshadowed he departed from them, and ascended into heaven. And the disciples saw and did bear record that he ascended again into heaven.

3 Nefi 19

- 1 Manje kwenzeka ukuthi ngesikhathi uJesu esenyukele ezulwini, isixuku sahlakazeka, futhi yileyo naleyo ndoda yathatha umfazi wayo kanye nezingane zayo futhi yabuyela ekhaya layo.
- 2 Futhi kwabikwa kuzo zonke izindawo ngokushesha phakathi kwabantu, ngaphambi kokuthi kube mnyama, ukuthi isixuku sibone uJesu, futhi nokuthi wayebasebenzele, futhi nokuthi wayezoziveza futhi ngakusasa esixukwini.
- 3 Yebo, futhi ngisho ubusuku bonke kwabikwa kuzo zonke izindawo mayelana noJesu; futhi kangangokuthi bathumela kubantu ukuthi babe baningi, yebo, isibalo esikhulu kakhulu, sasebenza kakhulu bonke lobo busuku, ukuze ngakusasa babe sendaweni lapho uJesu ayezoziveza khona esixukwini.
- 4 Futhi kwenzeka ukuthi ngakusasa, ngesikhathi isixuku sesibuthene ndawonye, bheka, uNefi kanye nomfowabo ayemvuse ekufeni, igama lakhe okwakunguThimothi, futhi kanjalo nendodana yakhe, igama layo okwakunguJona, futhi kanjalo noMathoni, kanye noMathoniha, umfowabo, kanye noKumeni, noKumenonihhi, kanye noJeremiya, kanye noSheminoni, kanye noJona, kanye noSedekiya, kanye no-Isaya—manje lawa kwakungamagama abafundi uJesu ayebakhethile—futhi kwenzeka ukuthi baya phambili futhi bema phakathi kwesixuku.
- 5 Futhi bheka, isixuku sasisikhulu kakhulu kangangokuthi benza ukuthi sehlukaniswe amaqoqo ayishumi nambili.
- 6 Futhi abayishumi nambili basifundisa isixuku; futhi bheka, benza ukuthi isixuku siguqe phansi, futhi bakhuleke kuBaba egameni likaJesu.
- 7 Futhi abafundi bakhuleka kuBaba nabo egameni likaJesu. Futhi kwenzeka ukuthi basukuma futhi babasebenzela abantu.
- 8 Futhi emva kokuthi sebewafundisile lawo mazwi kanye uJesu ayewakhulumile—bengaphambuki nakwelilodwa emazwini uJesu ayewakhulumile—bheka, baphinda baguqa futhi bakhuleka kuBaba egameni likaJesu.

3 Nephi 19

And now it came to pass that when Jesus had ascended into heaven, the multitude did disperse, and every man did take his wife and his children and did return to his own home.

And it was noised abroad among the people immediately, before it was yet dark, that the multitude had seen Jesus, and that he had ministered unto them, and that he would also show himself on the morrow unto the multitude.

Yea, and even all the night it was noised abroad concerning Jesus; and insomuch did they send forth unto the people that there were many, yea, an exceedingly great number, did labor exceedingly all that night, that they might be on the morrow in the place where Jesus should show himself unto the multitude.

And it came to pass that on the morrow, when the multitude was gathered together, behold, Nephi and his brother whom he had raised from the dead, whose name was Timothy, and also his son, whose name was Jonas, and also Mathoni, and Mathonihah, his brother, and Kumen, and Kumenonihhi, and Jeremiah, and Shemnon, and Jonas, and Zedekiah, and Isaiah—now these were the names of the disciples whom Jesus had chosen—and it came to pass that they went forth and stood in the midst of the multitude.

And behold, the multitude was so great that they did cause that they should be separated into twelve bodies.

And the twelve did teach the multitude; and behold, they did cause that the multitude should kneel down upon the face of the earth, and should pray unto the Father in the name of Jesus.

And the disciples did pray unto the Father also in the name of Jesus. And it came to pass that they arose and ministered unto the people.

And when they had ministered those same words which Jesus had spoken—nothing varying from the words which Jesus had spoken—behold, they knelt again and prayed to the Father in the name of Jesus.

- 9 Futhi bakhulekela lokho ababekufisa kakhulu; futhi babefisa ukuthi banikezwe uMoya oyiNgcwele.
- 10 Futhi emva kokuthi sebekhulekile kanjalo bahamba behlela ezansi osebeni lwamanzi, futhi isixuku sabalandela.
- 11 Futhi kwenzeka ukuthi uNefi wahamba wehlela ezansi emanzini futhi wabhabhadiswa.
- 12 Futhi waphuma emanzini futhi waqala ukubhabhadisa. Futhi wababhabhadisa bonke labo uJesu ayebakhethile.
- 13 Futhi kwenzeka ukuthi ngesikhathi bonke sebebhabhadisiwe futhi sebhophume emanzini, uMoya oyiNgcwele nempela wehlela phezu kwabo, futhi bagcwaliswa ngo Moya oyiNgcwele kanye nangomlilo.
- 14 Futhi bheka, bazungezwa ngokusengathi ngumlilo; futhi wehla uvela ezulwini, futhi isixuku sakubona lokhu, futhi sakufakazela; futhi izingelosi zehlela phansi ziphuma ezulwini futhi zabasebenzela.
- 15 Futhi kwenzeka ukuthi ngesikhathi izingelosi zisabasebenzela abafundi, bheka, uJesu weza futhi wema phakathi futhi wabasebenzela.
- 16 Futhi kwenzeka ukuthi wakhuluma kuso isixuku, futhi wasiyala ukuthi siphinde siguqe phansi, futhi kanjalo nokuthi abafundi bakhe baguqe phansi.
- 17 Futhi kwenzeka ukuthi ngesikhathi bonke sebeguqe phansi, wayala abafundi bakhe ukuthi bakhuleke.
- 18 Futhi bheka, baqala ukukhuleka; futhi bakhuleka kuJesu, bembiza ngeNkosi yabo kanye noNkulunkulu wabo.
- 19 Futhi kwenzeka ukuthi uJesu wemuka waphuma phakathi kwabo, futhi wahamba ibangana nje waqhela kubo futhi wakhothama phansi, futhi wathi:
- 20 Baba, ngiyakubonga ukuthi uwunikile uMoya oyiNgcwele kulaba engibakhethile; futhi kungenxa yokholo lwabo kimi ukuthi ngibakhethile emhlabeni.
- 21 Baba, ngiyakucela ukuthi ubanike uMoya oyiNgcwele bonke labo abayokholwa emazwini abo.

And they did pray for that which they most desired; and they desired that the Holy Ghost should be given unto them.

And when they had thus prayed they went down unto the water's edge, and the multitude followed them.

And it came to pass that Nephi went down into the water and was baptized.

And he came up out of the water and began to baptize. And he baptized all those whom Jesus had chosen.

And it came to pass when they were all baptized and had come up out of the water, the Holy Ghost did fall upon them, and they were filled with the Holy Ghost and with fire.

And behold, they were encircled about as if it were by fire; and it came down from heaven, and the multitude did witness it, and did bear record; and angels did come down out of heaven and did minister unto them.

And it came to pass that while the angels were ministering unto the disciples, behold, Jesus came and stood in the midst and ministered unto them.

And it came to pass that he spake unto the multitude, and commanded them that they should kneel down again upon the earth, and also that his disciples should kneel down upon the earth.

And it came to pass that when they had all knelt down upon the earth, he commanded his disciples that they should pray.

And behold, they began to pray; and they did pray unto Jesus, calling him their Lord and their God.

And it came to pass that Jesus departed out of the midst of them, and went a little way off from them and bowed himself to the earth, and he said:

Father, I thank thee that thou hast given the Holy Ghost unto these whom I have chosen; and it is because of their belief in me that I have chosen them out of the world.

Father, I pray thee that thou wilt give the Holy Ghost unto all them that shall believe in their words.

- 22 Baba, ubanikeze uMoya oyiNgcwele ngenxa yokuthi bekhola kimi; futhi uyabona ukuthi bayakhola kimi ngenxa yokuthi uyabezwa, futhi bakhuleka kimi; futhi bakhuleka kimi ngoba nginabo.
- 23 Manje Baba, ngiyabakhulekela kuwe, futhi kanjalo nabo bonke labo abayokholwa emazwini abo, ukuze nabo bakholewe kimi, ukuze ngibe kubo njengoba nawe, Baba, ukimi, ukuze sibe munye.
- 24 Futhi kwenzeka ukuthi ngesikhathi uJesu esekhuleke kanjalo kuBaba, weza kubafundi bakhe, futhi bheka, babesaqhubeka, bengayeki, ukukhuleka kuye; futhi abazange baphindaphinde amagama amaningi, ngokuba babenikeziwe ukuthi bakhulekeleni, futhi babegcwaliswe ngesifiso.
- 25 Futhi kwenzeka ukuthi uJesu wababusisa ngesikhathi bekhuleka kuye; futhi ubuso bakhe bamamatheka phezu kwabo, futhi ukukhanya kobuso bakhe babenezela phezu kwabo, futhi bheka babe mhlophe njengobuso futhi kanjalo nanjengezingubo zikaJesu; futhi bheka ubumhlophe babo babedlula bonke ubumhlophe, yebo, futhi kwakungekho lutho emhlabeni eyayingaba mhlophe njengobumhlophe babo.
- 26 Futhi uJesu wathi kubo: Qhubekani nikhuleke; nokho abazange bayeke ukukhuleka.
- 27 Futhi waphinda wafulathela kubo, futhi wahamba ibangana waqhela futhi wakhothama phansi; futhi waphinda wakhuleka kuBaba, ethi:
- 28 Baba, ngiyakubonga ngokuba usuba ngcwelisile labo engibakhethileyo, ngenxa yokholo lwabo, futhi ngiyabakhulekela, futhi kanjalo nalabo abayokholwa emazwini abo, ukuthi nabo bangcwaliswe kimi, ngokukholwa emazwini abo, ngisho nanjengoba nabo bengcwalisiwe kimi.
- 29 Baba, angikhulekeli umhlaba, kepha labo onginike bona abasemhlabeni, ngenxa yokholo lwabo, ukuze bangcwaliswe kimi, ukuze ngibe kubo njengoba nawe, Baba, ukimi, ukuze sibe munye, ukuze ngidunyiswe kubo.
- 30 Futhi ngesikhathi uJesu esewakhulumile lamazwi waphinda futhi weza kubafundi bakhe; futhi bheka babesakhuleka ngokugxilile, ngaphandle kokuyeka, kuye; futhi waphinda wamatheka kubo; futhi bheka babe mhlophe, ngisho nanjengaye uJesu.

Father, thou hast given them the Holy Ghost because they believe in me; and thou seest that they believe in me because thou hearest them, and they pray unto me; and they pray unto me because I am with them.

And now Father, I pray unto thee for them, and also for all those who shall believe on their words, that they may believe in me, that I may be in them as thou, Father, art in me, that we may be one.

And it came to pass that when Jesus had thus prayed unto the Father, he came unto his disciples, and behold, they did still continue, without ceasing, to pray unto him; and they did not multiply many words, for it was given unto them what they should pray, and they were filled with desire.

And it came to pass that Jesus blessed them as they did pray unto him; and his countenance did smile upon them, and the light of his countenance did shine upon them, and behold they were as white as the countenance and also the garments of Jesus; and behold the whiteness thereof did exceed all the whiteness, yea, even there could be nothing upon earth so white as the whiteness thereof.

And Jesus said unto them: Pray on; nevertheless they did not cease to pray.

And he turned from them again, and went a little way off and bowed himself to the earth; and he prayed again unto the Father, saying:

Father, I thank thee that thou hast purified those whom I have chosen, because of their faith, and I pray for them, and also for them who shall believe on their words, that they may be purified in me, through faith on their words, even as they are purified in me.

Father, I pray not for the world, but for those whom thou hast given me out of the world, because of their faith, that they may be purified in me, that I may be in them as thou, Father, art in me, that we may be one, that I may be glorified in them.

And when Jesus had spoken these words he came again unto his disciples; and behold they did pray steadfastly, without ceasing, unto him; and he did smile upon them again; and behold they were white, even as Jesus.

- 31 Futhi kwenzeka ukuthi waphinda wahamba
ibangana nje waqhela futhi wakhuleka kuBaba;
- 32 Futhi ulimi ngeke liwakhulume amazwi
awakhuluma, noma abhalwe ngumuntu amagama
awakhuluma.
- 33 Futhi isixuku samuzwa futhi sakufakazela; futhi
izinhliziyi zabo zavuleka futhi bawaqonda
ezinhliziyweni zabo amazwi awakhuluma.
- 34 Nokho, ayemakhulu kakhulu futhi emangalisa
amazwi awakhuluma kangangokuthi
awanakubhalwa, noma ashiwo ngumuntu.
- 35 Futhi kwenzeka ukuthi ngesikhathi uJesu
eseqedile ukukhuleka waphinda weza futhi
kubafundi bakhe, futhi wathi kubo: Ukhulo
olukhulu kangaka angikaze ngilubone phakathi
kwawo wonke amaJuda; ngalokho-ke angikwazanga
ukuwakhombisa izimangaliso ezinkulu kangaka,
ngenxa yokungakhohwa kwawo.
- 36 Ngiqinisile ngithi kini, akekho namunye wabo
owake wabona izinto ezinkulu kangaka njengoba
nina nizibonile; noma bezwe izinto ezinkulu kanje
njengoba nina nizizwile.

And it came to pass that he went again a little way
off and prayed unto the Father;

And tongue cannot speak the words which he
prayed, neither can be written by man the words
which he prayed.

And the multitude did hear and do bear record;
and their hearts were open and they did understand
in their hearts the words which he prayed.

Nevertheless, so great and marvelous were the
words which he prayed that they cannot be written,
neither can they be uttered by man.

And it came to pass that when Jesus had made an
end of praying he came again to the disciples, and
said unto them: So great faith have I never seen
among all the Jews; wherefore I could not show unto
them so great miracles, because of their unbelief.

Verily I say unto you, there are none of them that
have seen so great things as ye have seen; neither
have they heard so great things as ye have heard.

3 Nefi 20

- 1 Futhi kwenzeka ukuthi wayala isixuku ukuthi siyeke ukukhuleka, futhi kanjalo nabafundi bakhe. Futhi wabayala ukuthi bangayeki ukukhuleka ezinhliziyweni zabo.
- 2 Futhi wabayala ukuthi baphakame futhi bame ngezinyawo zabo. Futhi baphakama bema ngezinyawo zabo.
- 3 Futhi kwenzeka ukuthi waphinda wahlephula isinkwa futhi wasibusisa, futhi wanikeza abafundi bakhe ukuthi badle.
- 4 Futhi ngesikhathi sebedlile wabayala ukuthi bahlephule isinkwa, futhi basinike isixuku.
- 5 Futhi ngesikhathi sebesinikile isixuku waphinde wabanika iwayini ukuthi baphuze, futhi wabayala ukuthi banike isixuku.
- 6 Manje, kwakungekho sinkwa, noma iwayini, okwakulethwe ngabafundi, noma yisixuku;
- 7 Kepha ngempela wabanika isinkwa ukuze badle, futhi kanjalo newayini ukuze baphuze.
- 8 Futhi wathi kubo: Lowo odla lesinkwa udla okomzimba wami emphefumulweni wakhe; futhi nalowo ophuza leliwayini uphuza okwegazi lami emphefumulweni wakhe; futhi umphefumulo wakhe awuseyikulamba noma wone, kepha uyogcwaliswa.
- 9 Manje, ngesikhathi isixuku sonke sesidlile futhi saphuza, bheka, sagcwaliswa ngoMoya; futhi sakhala ngazwi linye, futhi sanikeza udumo kuJesus, ababembona futhi bemuzwa.
- 10 Futhi kwenzeka ukuthi ngesikhathi bonke sebelunikile udumo kuJesus, wathi kubo: Bhekani manje sengiyawuqedela umyalelo uBaba angiyale ngawo mayelana nalabantu, abayinsali yendlu ka-Israyeli.
- 11 Niyakhumbula ukuthi ngikhulumile kini, futhi ngathi uma amazwi ka-Isaya esegcwaliseka—bhekani abhaliwe, ninawo phambi kwenu, ngakho-ke wacwaningeni—
- 12 Futhi ngiqinisile, ngiqinisile, ngithi kini, ngesikhathi esegcwaliseka ngaleso sikhathi kuyobe sekuwukugcwaliseka kwesivumelwano uBaba asenza kubantu bakhe, O ndlu ka-Israyeli.

3 Nephi 20

And it came to pass that he commanded the multitude that they should cease to pray, and also his disciples. And he commanded them that they should not cease to pray in their hearts.

And he commanded them that they should arise and stand up upon their feet. And they arose up and stood upon their feet.

And it came to pass that he brake bread again and blessed it, and gave to the disciples to eat.

And when they had eaten he commanded them that they should break bread, and give unto the multitude.

And when they had given unto the multitude he also gave them wine to drink, and commanded them that they should give unto the multitude.

Now, there had been no bread, neither wine, brought by the disciples, neither by the multitude;

But he truly gave unto them bread to eat, and also wine to drink.

And he said unto them: He that eateth this bread eateth of my body to his soul; and he that drinketh of this wine drinketh of my blood to his soul; and his soul shall never hunger nor thirst, but shall be filled.

Now, when the multitude had all eaten and drunk, behold, they were filled with the Spirit; and they did cry out with one voice, and gave glory to Jesus, whom they both saw and heard.

And it came to pass that when they had all given glory unto Jesus, he said unto them: Behold now I finish the commandment which the Father hath commanded me concerning this people, who are a remnant of the house of Israel.

Ye remember that I spake unto you, and said that when the words of Isaiah should be fulfilled—behold they are written, ye have them before you, therefore search them—

And verily, verily, I say unto you, that when they shall be fulfilled then is the fulfilling of the covenant which the Father hath made unto his people, O house of Israel.

- 13 Futhi ngaleso sikhathi insali, eyobe ihlakazekile ezindaweni zonke phezu kobuso bomhlaba, iyooqwa empumalanga kanye nase ntshonalanga, kanye naseningizimu kanye nasenyakatho; futhi iyofinyelela olwazini lweNkosi uNkulunkulu wabo, obakhululile.
- 14 Futhi uBaba ungiyale ukuthi ngininike lelizwe, libe yifa lenu.
- 15 Futhi ngithi kini, uma abeZizwe bengaphenduki emva kwesibusiso abayosithola, emva kokuthi sebhakaze abantu bami—
- 16 Ngaleso sikhathi nina, eniyinsali yendlu kaJakobe, niyohamba niye phakathi kwabo; futhi niyokuba phakathi kwalabo abayobe bebaningi; futhi niyokuba phakathi kwabo njengengonyama iphakathi kwezilwane zasehlathini, nanjenge wundlu lengonyama phakathi kwemihlambi yezimvu, okuthi uma lidabula phakathi kwazo lizinyathele phansi futhi lizidwengule zibe yizicucu, futhi kungekho namunye ongazihlenga.
- 17 Isandla sakho siyophakanyiselwa izitha zakho, futhi zonke izitha zakho ziyobulawa.
- 18 Futhi ngiyobabuthela ndawonye abantu bami njengomuntu ebutha izithungu zakhe phansi.
- 19 Ngokuba ngiyokwenza abantu bami uBaba enza isivumelwano nabo, yebo, ngiyokwenza uphondo lwakho lube yinsimbi, futhi ngenze izinselo zakho zibe yithusi. Futhi uyochoboza abantu abanengi babe yizicucu; futhi ngiyoyingcwelisa inzuzo yabo eNkosini, futhi ngiyongcwelisa nokungokwabo eNkosini yomhlaba wonke. Futhi bhekani, nginguye okwenzayo lokho.
- 20 Futhi kuyokwenzeka, kusho uBaba, ukuthi inkemba yokulunga kwami iyolengela phezu kwabo ngalolo suku; futhi ngaphandle kokuthi baphenduke iyowela phezu kwabo, kusho uBaba, yebo, ngisho naphezu kwazo zonke izizwe zabeZizwe.
- 21 Futhi kuyokwenzeka ukuthi ngiyobamisa abantu bami, O ndlu ka-Israyeli.
- 22 Futhi bhekani, labantu ngiyobabeka kulelizwe, ekugcwaliseni isivumelwano engasenza noyihlo uJakobe; futhi liyoba yi Jerusalema Entsha. Futhi amandla asezulwini ayoba phakathi kwalabantu; yebo, ngisho nami ngiyoba phakathi kwenu.

And then shall the remnants, which shall be scattered abroad upon the face of the earth, be gathered in from the east and from the west, and from the south and from the north; and they shall be brought to the knowledge of the Lord their God, who hath redeemed them.

And the Father hath commanded me that I should give unto you this land, for your inheritance.

And I say unto you, that if the Gentiles do not repent after the blessing which they shall receive, after they have scattered my people—

Then shall ye, who are a remnant of the house of Jacob, go forth among them; and ye shall be in the midst of them who shall be many; and ye shall be among them as a lion among the beasts of the forest, and as a young lion among the flocks of sheep, who, if he goeth through both treadeth down and teareth in pieces, and none can deliver.

Thy hand shall be lifted up upon thine adversaries, and all thine enemies shall be cut off.

And I will gather my people together as a man gathereth his sheaves into the floor.

For I will make my people with whom the Father hath covenanted, yea, I will make thy horn iron, and I will make thy hoofs brass. And thou shalt beat in pieces many people; and I will consecrate their gain unto the Lord, and their substance unto the Lord of the whole earth. And behold, I am he who doeth it.

And it shall come to pass, saith the Father, that the sword of my justice shall hang over them at that day; and except they repent it shall fall upon them, saith the Father, yea, even upon all the nations of the Gentiles.

And it shall come to pass that I will establish my people, O house of Israel.

And behold, this people will I establish in this land, unto the fulfilling of the covenant which I made with your father Jacob; and it shall be a New Jerusalem. And the powers of heaven shall be in the midst of this people; yea, even I will be in the midst of you.

- 23 Bhekani, nginguye lowo uMose akhuluma ngaye, ethi: INkosi uNkulunkulu wenu iyonivusela umphrofethi kubafowenu, onjengami; yena niyomlalela kuzo zonke izinto ayozisho kini noma ngabe yini. Futhi kuyokwenzeka ukuthi wonke umuntu ongeyukumlalela lowo mphrofethi uyosuswa phakathi kwabantu.
- 24 Ngiqinisile ngithi kini, yebo, futhi bonke abaphrofethi kusukela kuSamuweli kanye nalabo abalandela kamuva, ngobuningi babo njengokukhuluma kwabo, bafakaza ngami.
- 25 Futhi bhekani, ningabantwana babaphrofethi; futhi ningabendlu ka-Israyeli; futhi ningabesivumelwano uBaba asenza noyihlo, ethi ku-Abrahama: Futhi ngenzalo yakho yonke imindeni yomhlaba iyobusiswa.
- 26 UBaba eqale ngokungivusela kini kuqala, futhi wangithuma ukuthi nginibusise ngokuzoniphendula omunye nomunye wenu asuke ekoneni kwakhe; futhi lokhu ngenxa yokuthi ningabantwana besivumelwano—
- 27 Futhi emva kokuba senibusisiwe ngaleso sikhathi uBaba uyosigcwalisa isivumelwano asenza no-Abrahama, esithi: Ngenzalo yakho yonke imindeni yomhlaba iyobusiswa—ekutheleni uMoya oyiNgcwele ngami kwabeZizwe, okuyibusiso kwabeZizwe esiyobenza babe namandla ngaphezu kwakho konke, ekuhlakazeni abantu bami, O ndlu ka-Israyeli.
- 28 Futhi bayoba wuhlupho kubantu balelizwe. Nokho, ngesikhathi sebelamukele ivangeli lami elipheleleyo, ngaleso sikhathi uma beyoqinisa izinhliziyi zabo ngokumelene nami ngiyobubuyisela ububi babo phezu kwamakhanda abo, kusho uBaba.
- 29 Futhi ngiyosikhumbula isivumelwano engisenze nabantu bami; futhi ngivumelane nabo ukuthi ngiyobabuthela ndawonye ngesikhathi sami esifanele, nokuthi ngiyophinda futhi ngibanike izwe loyise libe yifa labo, okuyizwe lase Jerusalema, okuyizwe lesethembiso kubo ingunaphakade, kusho uBaba.
- 30 Futhi kuyokwenzeka ukuthi isikhathi sifike, lapho ivangeli lami elipheleleyo liyoshunyayelwa kubo;

Behold, I am he of whom Moses spake, saying: A prophet shall the Lord your God raise up unto you of your brethren, like unto me; him shall ye hear in all things whatsoever he shall say unto you. And it shall come to pass that every soul who will not hear that prophet shall be cut off from among the people.

Verily I say unto you, yea, and all the prophets from Samuel and those that follow after, as many as have spoken, have testified of me.

And behold, ye are the children of the prophets; and ye are of the house of Israel; and ye are of the covenant which the Father made with your fathers, saying unto Abraham: And in thy seed shall all the kindreds of the earth be blessed.

The Father having raised me up unto you first, and sent me to bless you in turning away every one of you from his iniquities; and this because ye are the children of the covenant—

And after that ye were blessed then fulfilleth the Father the covenant which he made with Abraham, saying: In thy seed shall all the kindreds of the earth be blessed—unto the pouring out of the Holy Ghost through me upon the Gentiles, which blessing upon the Gentiles shall make them mighty above all, unto the scattering of my people, O house of Israel.

And they shall be a scourge unto the people of this land. Nevertheless, when they shall have received the fulness of my gospel, then if they shall harden their hearts against me I will return their iniquities upon their own heads, saith the Father.

And I will remember the covenant which I have made with my people; and I have covenanted with them that I would gather them together in mine own due time, that I would give unto them again the land of their fathers for their inheritance, which is the land of Jerusalem, which is the promised land unto them forever, saith the Father.

And it shall come to pass that the time cometh, when the fulness of my gospel shall be preached unto them;

31 Futhi bayokholwa kimi, ukuthi nginguJesu Kristu, iNdodana kaNkulunkulu, futhi bayokhuleka kuBaba egameni lami.

32 Ngaleso sikhathi abalindi babo bayophakamisa amazwi abo, futhi ngazwi linye bayohlabelela; ngokuba bayobona iso ngeso.

33 Ngaleso sikhathi uBaba uyobabuthela ndawonye futhi, futhi abanike iJerusalema kube yizwe eliyifa labo.

34 Ngaleso sikhathi bayoqhumuka ngentokozo bethi—Hlabelelani kanye kanye, nina zindawo ezichithiweyo zaseJerusalema; ngokuba uBaba ubaduduzile abantu bakhe, uyikhululile iJerusalema.

35 UBaba uyambulile ingalo yakhe engcwele emehlweni ezizwe zonke; futhi yonke imikhawulo yomhlaba iyoyibona insindiso kaBaba; futhi uBaba kanye nami simunye.

36 Futhi ngaleso sikhathi kuyokwenzeka lokho okubhaliwe: Vuka, vuka futhi, futhi ugqoke amandla akho, O Siyoni; gqoka izembatho zakho ezinhle, O Jerusalema, dolobha elingcwele, ngokuba kusuka manje akasekho oyoza kuwe ongasokile futhi nongahlanzekile.

37 Zithintithe othulini; vuka, uhlale phansi, O Jerusalema; zikhulule kuzo izibopho zentamo yakho, O ndodakazi ethunjiweyo yaseSiyoni.

38 Ngokuba isho kanje iNkosi: Nizithengise ngeze, futhi niyokhululwa ngaphandle kwemali.

39 Ngqiqinisile, ngiqinisile, ngithi kini, abantu bami bayolazi igama lami; yebo, ngalolo suku bayokwazi ukuthi nginguye lowo okhulumayo.

40 Futhi ngaleso sikhathi bayothi: Zinhle kangakanani izinyawo phezu kwezintaba zalowo oletha izindaba ezimnandi kubo, omemezela ukuthula; oletha izindaba ezimnandi kubo zokulunga, omemezela insindiso; othi eSiyoni: UNkulunkulu wakho uyabusa!

41 Futhi ngaleso sikhathi isimemezelo siyozwakala sithi: Mukani, mukani, hambani niphume lapha, ningakuthinti lokho okungahlanzekile; hambani niphume phakathi kwakhe; hlanzekani nina eniphethe izitsha zeNkosi.

And they shall believe in me, that I am Jesus Christ, the Son of God, and shall pray unto the Father in my name.

Then shall their watchmen lift up their voice, and with the voice together shall they sing; for they shall see eye to eye.

Then will the Father gather them together again, and give unto them Jerusalem for the land of their inheritance.

Then shall they break forth into joy—Sing together, ye waste places of Jerusalem; for the Father hath comforted his people, he hath redeemed Jerusalem.

The Father hath made bare his holy arm in the eyes of all the nations; and all the ends of the earth shall see the salvation of the Father; and the Father and I are one.

And then shall be brought to pass that which is written: Awake, awake again, and put on thy strength, O Zion; put on thy beautiful garments, O Jerusalem, the holy city, for henceforth there shall no more come into thee the uncircumcised and the unclean.

Shake thyself from the dust; arise, sit down, O Jerusalem; loose thyself from the bands of thy neck, O captive daughter of Zion.

For thus saith the Lord: Ye have sold yourselves for naught, and ye shall be redeemed without money.

Verily, verily, I say unto you, that my people shall know my name; yea, in that day they shall know that I am he that doth speak.

And then shall they say: How beautiful upon the mountains are the feet of him that bringeth good tidings unto them, that publisheth peace; that bringeth good tidings unto them of good, that publisheth salvation; that saith unto Zion: Thy God reigneth!

And then shall a cry go forth: Depart ye, depart ye, go ye out from thence, touch not that which is unclean; go ye out of the midst of her; be ye clean that bear the vessels of the Lord.

42 Ngokuba aniyikuphuma ngokushesha noma nihambe ngokubaleka; ngokuba iNkosi iyohamba phambi kwenu, futhi uNkulunkulu ka-Israyeli uyoba semva kwenu.

43 Bhekani, inceku yami iyokwenza ngokuhlakanipha; iyokhuliswa futhi ibatshazwe futhi iphakanyiswe kakhulu.

44 Njengokuba abaningi bamangala ngawe—ubuso bayo babonakele kakhulu, ngaphezu kwabo bonke abantu, futhi nesimo sayo ngaphezu kwamadodana abantu—

45 Ngakho-ke iyochela izizwe eziningi; amakhosi ayovala imilomo yawo ngenxa yayo, ngokuba lokho abangazange batshelwe kona bayokubona; futhi nalokho abangazange bakuzwe bayokuqonda.

46 Ngiqinisile, ngiqinisile, ngithi kini, zonke lezi zinto ziyokwenzeka ngempela, ngisho nanjengoba uBaba engiyalile. Ngaleso sikhathi lesi sivumelwano uBaba avumelene ngaso nabantu bakhe siyogcwaliseka; futhi ngaleso sikhathi iJerusalema iyophinde futhi ibe nabantu bami, futhi iyoba yizwe eliyifa labo.

For ye shall not go out with haste nor go by flight; for the Lord will go before you, and the God of Israel shall be your rearward.

Behold, my servant shall deal prudently; he shall be exalted and extolled and be very high.

As many were astonished at thee—his visage was so marred, more than any man, and his form more than the sons of men—

So shall he sprinkle many nations; the kings shall shut their mouths at him, for that which had not been told them shall they see; and that which they had not heard shall they consider.

Verily, verily, I say unto you, all these things shall surely come, even as the Father hath commanded me. Then shall this covenant which the Father hath covenanted with his people be fulfilled; and then shall Jerusalem be inhabited again with my people, and it shall be the land of their inheritance.

3 Nepi 21

- 1 Futhi ngiqinisile ngithi kini, ngininika isibonakaliso, ukuze nisazi isikhathi lapho lezi zinto sezizokwenzeka—ukuthi ngiyobaqoqa, ekuhlakazekeni kwabo kwesikhathi eside, abantu bami, O ndlu ka-Israyeli, futhi ngiyophinda ngakhe phakathi kwabo iSiyoni yami;
- 2 Futhi bhekani, ngizoninika lokhu njengesibonakaliso—ngokuba ngiqinisile ngithi kini ngesikhathi lezi zinto engizisho kini, futhi nalezo engizozisho kini emva kwalokhu, futhi nangamandla kaMoya oyiNgcwele oyonikwa kini nguBaba, ziyokwembulelwa abeZizwe ukuze bazi mayelana nalabantu abayinsali yendlu kaJakobe, futhi mayelana nalabantu bami abayohlakazwa yibo;
- 3 Ngiqinisile, ngiqinisile, ngithi kini, ngesikhathi lezi zinto sebembulelwa zona nguBaba, futhi ziyobe zivela kuBaba, zisuka kubo ziza kini;
- 4 Ngokuba kuwukuhlakanipha kukaBaba ukuthi babekwe kulelizwe, futhi bamiswe njengabantu abakhululekile ngamandla kaBaba, nokuthi lezi zinto ziphume kubo ziye kuyo insali yenzalo yenu, ukuze isivumelwano sikaBaba sigcwaliseke avumelana ngaso nabantu bakhe, O ndlu ka-Israyeli;
- 5 Ngakho-ke, ngesikhathi lemisebenzi kanye nemisebenzi eyokwenziwa phakathi kwenu emva kwalokhu isivela kwabeZizwe, iya kuyo inzalo yenu eyoncishelwa wukholo ngenxa yobubi;
- 6 Ngokuba ngalendlela kuyisifiso sikaBaba ukuthi ivele kwabeZizwe, ukuze aveze amandla akhe kwabeZizwe, ngalesi sizathu ukuthi abeZizwe, uma bengeyukuziqinisa izinhliziyiyo zabo, ukuthi baphenduke futhi beze kimi futhi babhabhadiswe egameni lami futhi bazi ngamaphuzu ayiqiniso emfundiso yami, ukuze babalwe kanye nabantu bami, O ndlu ka-Israyeli;
- 7 Futhi ngesikhathi lezi zinto sezenzeka ukuthi inzalo yenu iqale ukuzazi lezi zinto—kuyoba yisibonakaliso kubo, ukuze bazi ukuthi umsebenzi kaBaba usuqalile ekugcwaliseni isivumelwano asenza kubantu okungabendlu ka-Israyeli.

3 Nepi 21

And verily I say unto you, I give unto you a sign, that ye may know the time when these things shall be about to take place—that I shall gather in, from their long dispersion, my people, O house of Israel, and shall establish again among them my Zion;

And behold, this is the thing which I will give unto you for a sign—for verily I say unto you that when these things which I declare unto you, and which I shall declare unto you hereafter of myself, and by the power of the Holy Ghost which shall be given unto you of the Father, shall be made known unto the Gentiles that they may know concerning this people who are a remnant of the house of Jacob, and concerning this my people who shall be scattered by them;

Verily, verily, I say unto you, when these things shall be made known unto them of the Father, and shall come forth of the Father, from them unto you;

For it is wisdom in the Father that they should be established in this land, and be set up as a free people by the power of the Father, that these things might come forth from them unto a remnant of your seed, that the covenant of the Father may be fulfilled which he hath covenanted with his people, O house of Israel;

Therefore, when these works and the works which shall be wrought among you hereafter shall come forth from the Gentiles, unto your seed which shall dwindle in unbelief because of iniquity;

For thus it behooveth the Father that it should come forth from the Gentiles, that he may show forth his power unto the Gentiles, for this cause that the Gentiles, if they will not harden their hearts, that they may repent and come unto me and be baptized in my name and know of the true points of my doctrine, that they may be numbered among my people, O house of Israel;

And when these things come to pass that thy seed shall begin to know these things—it shall be a sign unto them, that they may know that the work of the Father hath already commenced unto the fulfilling of the covenant which he hath made unto the people who are of the house of Israel.

- 8 Futhi ngesikhathi lolo suku selufika, kuyokwenzeka ukuthi amakhosi ayovala imilomo yawo; ngokuba lokho abangakaze bakutshelwe bayokubona; futhi nalokho abangakaze bakuzwe bayokuqonda.
- 9 Ngokuba ngalolo suku, ngenxa yami uBaba uyosebenza umsebenzi, oyokuba ngumsebenzi omkhulu kanye nomangalisayo phakathi kwabo; futhi kuyoba khona phakathi kwabo labo abangeyikuwukholwa, nakuba indoda iyowumemezela kubo.
- 10 Kepha bhekani, impilo yenceku yami iyoba sesandleni sami; ngakho-ke abayikuyilimaza, nakuba isimo sayo siyokonakala ngenxa yabo. Nokho ngiyoyelapha, ngokuba ngizobakhombisa ukuthi ukuhlakanipha kwami kukhulu kunobuqili bukadeveli.
- 11 Ngakho-ke kuyokwenzeka ukuthi lowo ongeyukukholwa emazwini ami, enginguJesu Kristu, uBaba ayoyenza ukuthi iwalethe kwabeZizwe, futhi uyoyinika amandla okuthi iwalethe kwabeZizwe, (kuyokwenzeka njengoba uMose asho) bayosuswa phakathi kwabantu bami okungabesivumelwano.
- 12 Futhi abantu bami abayinsali kaJakobe bayokuba phakathi kwabeZizwe, yebo, phakathi kwabo njenge ngonyama phakathi kwezilwane zasehlathini, nanjengewundlu lengonyama phakathi kwemihlambi yezimvu, okuthi uma lidabula phakathi kwazo lizinyathele phansi futhi lizidwengule zibe yizicucu, futhi kungekho namunye ongazihlenga.
- 13 Isandla sabo siyophakanyiselwa izitha zabo, futhi zonke izitha zabo ziyobulawa.
- 14 Yebo, maye kubo abeZizwe ngaphandle kokuthi baphenduke; ngokuba kuyokwenzeka ngalolo suku, kusho uBaba, ukuthi ngiyowasusa amahhashi akho phakathi kwakho, futhi ngiyozibhubhisa izinqola zakho;
- 15 Futhi ngiyowasusa amadolobha ezwe lenu, futhi ngiziwise phansi zonke izinqaba zenu;
- 16 Futhi ngiyobuqeda ubuthakathi ezweni lenu, futhi ngeke nisaba nazangoma nanini;

And when that day shall come, it shall come to pass that kings shall shut their mouths; for that which had not been told them shall they see; and that which they had not heard shall they consider.

For in that day, for my sake shall the Father work a work, which shall be a great and a marvelous work among them; and there shall be among them those who will not believe it, although a man shall declare it unto them.

But behold, the life of my servant shall be in my hand; therefore they shall not hurt him, although he shall be marred because of them. Yet I will heal him, for I will show unto them that my wisdom is greater than the cunning of the devil.

Therefore it shall come to pass that whosoever will not believe in my words, who am Jesus Christ, which the Father shall cause him to bring forth unto the Gentiles, and shall give unto him power that he shall bring them forth unto the Gentiles, (it shall be done even as Moses said) they shall be cut off from among my people who are of the covenant.

And my people who are a remnant of Jacob shall be among the Gentiles, yea, in the midst of them as a lion among the beasts of the forest, as a young lion among the flocks of sheep, who, if he go through both treadeth down and teareth in pieces, and none can deliver.

Their hand shall be lifted up upon their adversaries, and all their enemies shall be cut off.

Yea, wo be unto the Gentiles except they repent; for it shall come to pass in that day, saith the Father, that I will cut off thy horses out of the midst of thee, and I will destroy thy chariots;

And I will cut off the cities of thy land, and throw down all thy strongholds;

And I will cut off witchcrafts out of thy land, and thou shalt have no more soothsayers;

17 Izithombe zenu ezibaziweyo nazo ngokunjalo
ngiyozisusa, kanye nezithombe zenu ezimile
ngiyozisusa phakathi kwenu, futhi ngeke nanini
nisakhonza imisebenzi yezandla zenu;

18 Futhi ngiyozisiphula izigxobo zemithi yenu
phakathi kwenu; ngiyowabhuhisa kanjalo
amadolobha enu.

19 Futhi kuyokwenzeka ukuthi wonke amanga,
kanye nenkohliso, kanye nomona, kanye
nemibango, kanye nobuphristi-mbumbulu, kanye
nobufebe kuyoqedwa.

20 Ngokuba kuyokwenzeka, kusho uBaba, ukuthi
ngalolo suku lowo ongeyukuphenduka futhi eze
eNdotaneni yami eThandekayo, ngiyobasusa
phakathi kwabantu bami, O ndlu ka-Israyeli;

21 Futhi ngiyokwenza impindiselo kanye nolaka
kubo, ngisho nanjengaphezu kwabahedeni,
njengaleyo abangakaze bayizwe.

22 Kepha uma beyophenduka futhi balalele amazwi
ami, futhi bangaziqinisi izinhliziyi zabo,
ngiyolimisa ibandla lami phakathi kwabo, futhi
bayongena esivumelwaneni futhi babalwe phakathi
kwalensali kaJakobe, engiyinike lelizwe ukuthi kube
yifa layo.

23 Futhi bayosiza abantu bami, insali kaJakobe, futhi
kanjalo nabaningi bendlu ka-Israyeli njengokuza
kwabo, ukuze bakhe idolobha, eliyobizwa nge
Jerusalema Entsha.

24 Futhi ngaleso sikhathi bayosiza abantu bami
ukuze baqoqwe, abahlakazeke ebusweni bonke
bomhlaba, beze eJerusalema Entsha.

25 Futhi ngaleso sikhathi amandla asezulwini
ayokwehlela phakathi kwabo; futhi nami
ngokunjalo ngiyobe ngiphakathi.

26 Futhi ngaleso sikhathi umsebenzi kaBaba uyoqala
ngalolo suku, ngisho nangesikhathi lapho leli
vangeli liyoshunyayelwa phakathi kwensali
yalabantu. Nginqinisele ngithi kini, ngalolo suku
umsebenzi kaBaba uyoqala phakathi kwabo bonke
abantu bami abahlakazekile, yebo, ngisho
nezizwana ezilahlekile, uBaba aziholela kude
wazikhipha eJerusalema.

Thy graven images I will also cut off, and thy
standing images out of the midst of thee, and thou
shalt no more worship the works of thy hands;

And I will pluck up thy groves out of the midst of
thee; so will I destroy thy cities.

And it shall come to pass that all lyings, and de-
ceivings, and envyings, and strifes, and priestcrafts,
and whoredoms, shall be done away.

For it shall come to pass, saith the Father, that at
that day whosoever will not repent and come unto
my Beloved Son, them will I cut off from among my
people, O house of Israel;

And I will execute vengeance and fury upon them,
even as upon the heathen, such as they have not
heard.

But if they will repent and hearken unto my
words, and harden not their hearts, I will establish
my church among them, and they shall come in unto
the covenant and be numbered among this the rem-
nant of Jacob, unto whom I have given this land for
their inheritance;

And they shall assist my people, the remnant of
Jacob, and also as many of the house of Israel as shall
come, that they may build a city, which shall be
called the New Jerusalem.

And then shall they assist my people that they may
be gathered in, who are scattered upon all the face of
the land, in unto the New Jerusalem.

And then shall the power of heaven come down
among them; and I also will be in the midst.

And then shall the work of the Father commence
at that day, even when this gospel shall be preached
among the remnant of this people. Verily I say unto
you, at that day shall the work of the Father com-
mence among all the dispersed of my people, yea,
even the tribes which have been lost, which the
Father hath led away out of Jerusalem.

27 Yebo, umsebenzi uyoqala phakathi kwabo bonke abantu bami abahlakazekile, uBaba elungisa indlela abangeza ngayo kimi, ukuze bacele kuBaba egameni lami.

28 Yebo, futhi ngaleso sikhathi umsebenzi uyoqala, uBaba ephakathi kwazo zonke izizwe elungisa indlela abantu bakhe abangaqoqelwa ngayo ekhaya ezweni eliyifa labo.

29 Futhi bayophuma kuzo zonke izizwe; futhi abayikuhamba ngokushesha, noma bahambe ngokubaleka, ngokuba ngiyohamba phambi kwabo, kusho uBaba, futhi ngiyoba ngasemva kwabo.

Yea, the work shall commence among all the dispersed of my people, with the Father to prepare the way whereby they may come unto me, that they may call on the Father in my name.

Yea, and then shall the work commence, with the Father among all nations in preparing the way whereby his people may be gathered home to the land of their inheritance.

And they shall go out from all nations; and they shall not go out in haste, nor go by flight, for I will go before them, saith the Father, and I will be their rearward.

3 Nepi 22

- 1 Futhi ngaleso sikhathi lokho okubhaliweyo kuyokwenzeka: Hlabelela, O nyumba, wena ongazalanga; qhumuka uhlabelele, futhi umemeze kakhulu, wena ongabanga namihelo yomntwana; ngokuba baningi abantwana bongenamntwana kunabantwana bomfazi oshadileyo, kusho iNkosi.
- 2 Khulisa indawo yetende lakho, futhi yelula izindwangu zezindlu zakho; ungayeki, yelula izintambo zakho futhi uqinise izikhonkwane zakho;
- 3 Ngokuba uyovela esandleni sokudla kanye nasesandleni sobunxele, futhi inzalo yakho iyobathola njengefa abeZizwe futhi yenze amadolobha achithiweyo abe nabahlala kuwo.
- 4 Ungesabi, ngokuba awuyikujabha; noma ubhujiswe, ngokuba ngeke ubekwe ehlanzweni; ngokuba uyokukhohlwa ukuthotshiswa kobusha bakho, futhi ngeke usalikhumbula ihlazo lobusha bakho, futhi ngeke usalikhumbula ihlazo lobufelokazi bakho nanini.
- 5 Ngokuba umenzi wakho, umyeni wakho, iNkosi yamaBandla yigama lakhe; futhi uMkhululi wakho, oNgcwele ka-Israyeli—uNkulunkulu womhlaba wonke uyobizwa kanjalo.
- 6 Ngokuba iNkosi ikubize njengowesifazane olahliweyo futhi odabukileyo emoyeni, kanye nomfazi wobusha, ngesikhathi uphikwa, kusho uNkulunkulu wakho.
- 7 Ngokuba isikhashana esincane ngikushiyele, kodwa ngesihawu esikhulu ngiyokuqoqa.
- 8 Olakeni oluncane ngabufihla ubuso bami kuwe okwesikhashana, kodwa ngobubele obungapheliyo ngiyokuba nesihawu kuwe, kusho iNkosi uMkhululi wakho.
- 9 Ngokuba lokhu, kunjengamanzi kaNowa kimi, ngokuba njengoba ngifungile ukuthi amanzi kaNowa ngeke esaphinda nanini ahambe phezu komhlaba, kanjalo ngifungile ukuthi angiseyukukuthukuthelela.
- 10 Ngokuba izintaba ziyokwemuka kanye namagquma asuswe, kodwa ububele bami abunakususwa kuwe, noma isivumelwano soxolo lwami sisuswe, kusho iNkosi enobubele kuwe.

3 Nephi 22

And then shall that which is written come to pass: Sing, O barren, thou that didst not bear; break forth into singing, and cry aloud, thou that didst not travail with child; for more are the children of the desolate than the children of the married wife, saith the Lord.

Enlarge the place of thy tent, and let them stretch forth the curtains of thy habitations; spare not, lengthen thy cords and strengthen thy stakes;

For thou shalt break forth on the right hand and on the left, and thy seed shall inherit the Gentiles and make the desolate cities to be inhabited.

Fear not, for thou shalt not be ashamed; neither be thou confounded, for thou shalt not be put to shame; for thou shalt forget the shame of thy youth, and shalt not remember the reproach of thy youth, and shalt not remember the reproach of thy widowhood any more.

For thy maker, thy husband, the Lord of Hosts is his name; and thy Redeemer, the Holy One of Israel—the God of the whole earth shall he be called.

For the Lord hath called thee as a woman forsaken and grieved in spirit, and a wife of youth, when thou wast refused, saith thy God.

For a small moment have I forsaken thee, but with great mercies will I gather thee.

In a little wrath I hid my face from thee for a moment, but with everlasting kindness will I have mercy on thee, saith the Lord thy Redeemer.

For this, the waters of Noah unto me, for as I have sworn that the waters of Noah should no more go over the earth, so have I sworn that I would not be wroth with thee.

For the mountains shall depart and the hills be removed, but my kindness shall not depart from thee, neither shall the covenant of my peace be removed, saith the Lord that hath mercy on thee.

- 11 O wena ohluphekayo, obhengulwa yisiphepho, futhi ungaduduzwa! Bheka, ngiyobeka amatsho akho ngemibala emihle, futhi ngibeke izisekelo zakho ngamasafire.
- 12 Futhi ngiyokwenza amafasitela akho ngamarubi, kanye namasango akho ngamatshe akhazimulayo, kanye nayo yonke imincele yakho ngamatshe amahle.
- 13 Futhi bonke abantwana bakho bayofundiswa ngaNkosi; futhi kuyoba kukhulu ukuthula kwabantwana bakho.
- 14 Uyomiswa ngokulunga; uyokuba kude nokucindezelwa ngokuba awuyikwesaba, kanye novalo ngokuba aluyikusondela eduze kwakho.
- 15 Bheka, bayohlangana ndawonye ngempela ngokumelene nawe, ngokuphikisana nami; lowo oyohlangana ndawonye ngokumelene nawe uyowa ngenxa yakho.
- 16 Bheka, ngenze umcangathi ovuthela amalahle emlilweni, kanye nalowo okhiqiza okokusebenza kwakhe; futhi ngenze umchithi ukuthi abulale.
- 17 Akukho sikhali esakhelwe ukuqeda wena esiyophumelela; futhi lonke ulimi oluyokwethuka likwahlulela uyolisola. Lokhu kuyifa lezinceku zeNkosi, futhi ukulunga kwabo kuvela kimi, kusho iNkosi.

O thou afflicted, tossed with tempest, and not comforted! Behold, I will lay thy stones with fair colors, and lay thy foundations with sapphires.

And I will make thy windows of agates, and thy gates of carbuncles, and all thy borders of pleasant stones.

And all thy children shall be taught of the Lord; and great shall be the peace of thy children.

In righteousness shalt thou be established; thou shalt be far from oppression for thou shalt not fear, and from terror for it shall not come near thee.

Behold, they shall surely gather together against thee, not by me; whosoever shall gather together against thee shall fall for thy sake.

Behold, I have created the smith that bloweth the coals in the fire, and that bringeth forth an instrument for his work; and I have created the waster to destroy.

No weapon that is formed against thee shall prosper; and every tongue that shall revile against thee in judgment thou shalt condemn. This is the heritage of the servants of the Lord, and their righteousness is of me, saith the Lord.

3 Nepi 23

- 1 Manje, bhekani, ngithi kini, kufanele nizicwaninge lezi zinto. Yebo, ngininika umyalelo wokuthi nizicwaninge lezi zinto ngenkuthalo; ngokuba makhulu amazwi ka-Isaya.
- 2 Ngokuba ngempela wakhuluma ngokuphathelene nazo zonke lezi zinto mayelana nabantu bami okungabendlu ka-Israyeli; ngakho-ke kufanele ukuthi akhulume futhi kanjalo nakwabeZizwe.
- 3 Futhi zonke izinto azikhulumayo zenzeka futhi zisazokwenzeka, ngisho nanjengamazwi awakhulumayo.
- 4 Ngakho-ke lalelani amazwi ami; bhalani izinto enginitshele zona; futhi ngokwesikhathi kanye nangokwentando kaBaba ziyokwaziswa kwabeZizwe.
- 5 Futhi lowo oyowalalela amazwi ami futhi aphenduke futhi abhabhadiswe, nguye lowo oyosindiswa. Bacwaningeni abaphrofethi, ngokuba baningi abafakaza ngalezi zinto.
- 6 Manje kwenzeka ukuthi ngesikhathi uJesus esewashilo lamazwi waphinda futhi wathi kubo, emva kokuthi eseyichazile yonke imibhalo engcwele ababeyitholile, wathi kubo: Bhekani, kuneminye imibhalo engcwele engifuna ukuthi niyibhale, eningenayo.
- 7 Futhi kwenzeka ukuthi wathi kuNefi: Letha lapha umbhalo owugcinile.
- 8 Futhi ngesikhathi uNefi eseyilethile imibhalo, futhi wayendlala phambi kwakhe, wayibuka wase ethi:
- 9 Ngiqinisile ngithi kini, ngayala uSamuweli, umLamani, inceku yami ukuthi afakaze kulaba bantu, ukuthi ngosuku lapho uBaba eyodumisa igama lakhe kimi kuyoba khona abanangi abangcwele abayovuka ekufeni, futhi bayovela kwabaningi, futhi bayobasebenzela. Futhi wathi kubo: Kwakungenjalo njalo na?
- 10 Abafundi bakhe bamphendula bathi: Yebo, Nkosi, uSamuweli nempela waphrofetha njengokwamazwi akho, futhi wonke agcwaliseka.
- 11 UJesus wathi kubo: Pho kungani ningayibhalanga lento, ukuthi abanangi abangcwele nempela bavuka futhi bavela kwabaningi futhi babasebenzela na?

3 Nepi 23

And now, behold, I say unto you, that ye ought to search these things. Yea, a commandment I give unto you that ye search these things diligently; for great are the words of Isaiah.

For surely he spake as touching all things concerning my people which are of the house of Israel; therefore it must needs be that he must speak also to the Gentiles.

And all things that he spake have been and shall be, even according to the words which he spake.

Therefore give heed to my words; write the things which I have told you; and according to the time and the will of the Father they shall go forth unto the Gentiles.

And whosoever will hearken unto my words and repenteth and is baptized, the same shall be saved. Search the prophets, for many there be that testify of these things.

And now it came to pass that when Jesus had said these words he said unto them again, after he had expounded all the scriptures unto them which they had received, he said unto them: Behold, other scriptures I would that ye should write, that ye have not.

And it came to pass that he said unto Nephi: Bring forth the record which ye have kept.

And when Nephi had brought forth the records, and laid them before him, he cast his eyes upon them and said:

Verily I say unto you, I commanded my servant Samuel, the Lamanite, that he should testify unto this people, that at the day that the Father should glorify his name in me that there were many saints who should arise from the dead, and should appear unto many, and should minister unto them. And he said unto them: Was it not so?

And his disciples answered him and said: Yea, Lord, Samuel did prophesy according to thy words, and they were all fulfilled.

And Jesus said unto them: How be it that ye have not written this thing, that many saints did arise and appear unto many and did minister unto them?

12 Futhi kwenzeka ukuthi uNefi wakhumbula ukuthi lento ayizange ibhalwe.

13 Futhi kwenzeka ukuthi uJesu wayala ukuthi ibhalwe; ngakho-ke yabhalwa njengoba ayeyalile.

14 Manje kwenzeka ukuthi ngesikhathi uJesu eseyichazile yonke imibhalo engcwele, ababeyibhalile, wabayala ukuthi bazifundise lezi zinto ayezichazile kubo.

And it came to pass that Nephi remembered that this thing had not been written.

And it came to pass that Jesus commanded that it should be written; therefore it was written according as he commanded.

And now it came to pass that when Jesus had expounded all the scriptures in one, which they had written, he commanded them that they should teach the things which he had expounded unto them.

3 Nepi 24

- 1 Futhi kwenzeka ukuthi wabayala ukuthi bawabhale lawo amazwi uBaba ayewanike uMalaki, ayezobatshele wona. Futhi kwenzeka ukuthi emva kokuthi esebhaliwe wawachaza. Futhi lawa ngamazwi abatshela wona, ethi: Washo kanje uBaba kuMalaki—Bheka, ngiyothumela isithunywa sami, futhi siyolungisa indlela phambi kwami, futhi leyo Nkosi eniyifunayo iyoza ngokushesha ethempelini layo, ngisho isithunywa sesivumelwano, enijabulayo ngaso; bhekani, siyoza, kusho iNkosi yamaBandla.
- 2 Kepha ngubani ongamelana nosuku lokuza kwayo, futhi ngubani oyokuma ngesikhathi iqhamuka na? Ngokuba injengo mlilo womcwengi, futhi nanjengensipho yomhlanzi.
- 3 Futhi iyohlala njengomcwengi kanye nomhlanzi wesiliva; futhi iyohlala amadodana kaLevi, futhi iwahlanze njengegolide nesiliva, ukuze anikele eNkosini umnikelo ngokulunga.
- 4 Ngaleso sikhathi umnikelo kaJuda kanye neJerusalema uyoba muhle eNkosini, njengasezinsukwini zakudala, futhi nanjengaseminyakeni edlule.
- 5 Futhi ngiyoza eduze kwakho ngenhloso yokwahlulela; futhi ngiyoba ngufakazi osheshayo ngokumelene nabalumbi, kanye nabaphingi, kanye nabafungi bamanga, kanye nalabo abacindezela umqashwa enkokhelweni yakhe, abafelokazi kanye nezintandane, kanye nalabo abachezukisa isihambi, futhi abangangesabi mina, kusho iNkosi yamaBandla.
- 6 Ngokuba ngiyiNkosi, angiguquki; ngakho-ke nina madodana kaJakobe aniqedwa.
- 7 Ngisho kusukela ezinsukwini zoyihlo nisukile ezimisweni zami, futhi anizigcinanga. Buyelani kimi futhi nami ngizobuyela kini, kusho iNkosi yamaBandla. Kepha nithi: Siyobuyela kanjani na?
- 8 Ngabe umuntu angamphanga yini uNkulunkulu na? Nokho ningiphangile. Kepha nithi: Sikuphange kanjani na? Kokweshumi kanye naseminikelweni.
- 9 Niqalekisiwe ngesiqalekiso, ngokuba ningiphangile, ngisho nalesi sizwe sonke.

3 Nephi 24

And it came to pass that he commanded them that they should write the words which the Father had given unto Malachi, which he should tell unto them. And it came to pass that after they were written he expounded them. And these are the words which he did tell unto them, saying: Thus said the Father unto Malachi—Behold, I will send my messenger, and he shall prepare the way before me, and the Lord whom ye seek shall suddenly come to his temple, even the messenger of the covenant, whom ye delight in; behold, he shall come, saith the Lord of Hosts.

But who may abide the day of his coming, and who shall stand when he appeareth? For he is like a refiner's fire, and like fuller's soap.

And he shall sit as a refiner and purifier of silver; and he shall purify the sons of Levi, and purge them as gold and silver, that they may offer unto the Lord an offering in righteousness.

Then shall the offering of Judah and Jerusalem be pleasant unto the Lord, as in the days of old, and as in former years.

And I will come near to you to judgment; and I will be a swift witness against the sorcerers, and against the adulterers, and against false swearers, and against those that oppress the hireling in his wages, the widow and the fatherless, and that turn aside the stranger, and fear not me, saith the Lord of Hosts.

For I am the Lord, I change not; therefore ye sons of Jacob are not consumed.

Even from the days of your fathers ye are gone away from mine ordinances, and have not kept them. Return unto me and I will return unto you, saith the Lord of Hosts. But ye say: Wherein shall we return?

Will a man rob God? Yet ye have robbed me. But ye say: Wherein have we robbed thee? In tithes and offerings.

Ye are cursed with a curse, for ye have robbed me, even this whole nation.

- 10 Lethani konke okweshumi endlini yengcebo, ukuze kube khona inyama endlini yami; futhi ngilingeni manje ngalokhu, kusho iNkosi yamaBandla, ukuthi angiyikunivulela yini amafasitela ezulu, futhi nginithululele isibusiso kuze kungabi bikho ndawo eyanele yokusamukela.
- 11 Futhi ngizomkhuza umbhubhisi ngenxa yenu, futhi akayikuzibhubhisa izithelo zomhlabathi wenu; noma umvini wenu uthele izithelo zawo ngaphambi kwesikhathi emasimini, kusho iNkosi yamaBandla.
- 12 Futhi zonke izizwe ziyokuthi nibusisiwe, ngokuba niyokuba yizwe elithandekayo, kusho iNkosi yamaBandla.
- 13 Amazwi enu abeqinile ngokumelene nami, kusho iNkosi. Nokho nithi: Sikhulumeni oluphikisana nawe na?
- 14 Nithe: Kuyize ukusebenzela uNkulunkulu, futhi kusiza ngani ukuthi sizigcinile izimiso zakhe kanye nokuthi sihambe ngokudabuka phambi kweNkosi yamaBandla na?
- 15 Manje sicabanga ukuthi abaziqhenyayo bajabule; yebo, labo abenza ububi bayaphakanyiswa; yebo, labo abalinga uNkulunkulu bayakhululwa imbala.
- 16 Ngaleso sikhathi labo abesaba iNkosi bakhuluma njalo omunye nomunye, futhi iNkosi yalalela futhi yezwa; futhi incwadi yesikhumbuzo yabhalelwa bona phambi kwayo labo ababesaba iNkosi, kanye nalabo abebecabanga ngegama layo.
- 17 Futhi bayokuba ngabami, kusho iNkosi yamaBandla, ngalolo suku uma sengiqoqa amatshe ami ayigugu; futhi ngiyobahawukela njengendoda ihawukela indodana yayo eyisebenzelayo.
- 18 Ngaleso sikhathi niyobuya futhi nahlukanise phakathi kwabalungileyo kanye nababi, phakathi kwalowo osebenzela uNkulunkulu kanye nalowo ongamsebenzeli.

Bring ye all the tithes into the storehouse, that there may be meat in my house; and prove me now herewith, saith the Lord of Hosts, if I will not open you the windows of heaven, and pour you out a blessing that there shall not be room enough to receive it.

And I will rebuke the devourer for your sakes, and he shall not destroy the fruits of your ground; neither shall your vine cast her fruit before the time in the fields, saith the Lord of Hosts.

And all nations shall call you blessed, for ye shall be a delightsome land, saith the Lord of Hosts.

Your words have been stout against me, saith the Lord. Yet ye say: What have we spoken against thee?

Ye have said: It is vain to serve God, and what doth it profit that we have kept his ordinances and that we have walked mournfully before the Lord of Hosts?

And now we call the proud happy; yea, they that work wickedness are set up; yea, they that tempt God are even delivered.

Then they that feared the Lord spake often one to another, and the Lord hearkened and heard; and a book of remembrance was written before him for them that feared the Lord, and that thought upon his name.

And they shall be mine, saith the Lord of Hosts, in that day when I make up my jewels; and I will spare them as a man spareth his own son that serveth him.

Then shall ye return and discern between the righteous and the wicked, between him that serveth God and him that serveth him not.

3 Nefi 25

- 1 Ngokuba bheka, usuku luyeza oluyovutha njengeziko; futhi bonke abaziqhenyayo, yebo, kanye nabo bonke labo abenza ububi, bayokuba ngamabibi; futhi usuku oluzayo luyobashisa, kusho iNkosi yamaBandla, futhi aliyikubashiyela mpande nagatsha.
- 2 Kepha kinina enilesabayo igama lami, iNdodana yokuLunga iyovuka nokuphilisa emaphikweni ayo; futhi niyoqala nikhule njengamathole esitebeleni.
- 3 Futhi niyobanyathela phansi ababi; ngokuba bayokuba ngumlotha phansi kwezithende zezinyawo zenu ngosuku engiyokwenza ngalo lokhu, kusho iNkosi yamaBandla.
- 4 Khumbulani umthetho kaMose, inceku yami, engamyala ngawo eHorebe ngo-Israyeli wonke, ngemithetho kanye nangezahlulelo.
- 5 Bhekani, ngiyothumela kini u-Eliya umphrofethi lungakafiki usuku olukhulu nolwesabekayo lweNkosi;
- 6 Futhi uyophendulela izinhliziyoyoyise kubantwana, kanye nezinhliziyozabantwana, koyise, hleze ngize futhi ngishaye umhlaba ngesiqalekiso.

3 Nephi 25

For behold, the day cometh that shall burn as an oven; and all the proud, yea, and all that do wickedly, shall be stubble; and the day that cometh shall burn them up, saith the Lord of Hosts, that it shall leave them neither root nor branch.

But unto you that fear my name, shall the Son of Righteousness arise with healing in his wings; and ye shall go forth and grow up as calves in the stall.

And ye shall tread down the wicked; for they shall be ashes under the soles of your feet in the day that I shall do this, saith the Lord of Hosts.

Remember ye the law of Moses, my servant, which I commanded unto him in Horeb for all Israel, with the statutes and judgments.

Behold, I will send you Elijah the prophet before the coming of the great and dreadful day of the Lord;

And he shall turn the heart of the fathers to the children, and the heart of the children to their fathers, lest I come and smite the earth with a curse.

3 Nepi 26

- 1 Manje kwenzeka ukuthi ngesikhathi uJesu esezishilo lezi zinto wasichazela isixuku; futhi wabachazela zonke izinto, ezinkulu nezincane.
- 2 Futhi wathi: Lemibhalo engcwele, ebeningenayo, uBaba ungiyalile ukuthi ngininike yona; ngokuba kwakuwukuhlakanipha kwakhe ukuthi inikwe izizukulwane ezizayo.
- 3 Futhi wazichaza zonke izinto, ngisho kusukela ekuqaleni kuze kube yisikhathi lapho eyoza ngenkazimulo yakhe—yebo, ngisho nazo zonke izinto eziyokwenzeka ebusweni bomhlaba, ngisho kuze kube yilapho konke kuyoncibilikiswa wukushisa okuvuthayo, futhi nomhlaba ugoqwe ndawonye njengomqulu, futhi amazulu kanye nomhlaba kudlule;
- 4 Futhi ngisho kuze kube ngosuku olukhulu kanye nolokuphela, lapho bonke abantu, kanye nemindeni yonke, kanye nezizwe zonke, kanye nezilimi ziyoma phambi kukaNkulunkulu, ukuze zehlulelwe ngemisebenzi yazo, noma ngabe mihle noma ngabe mibi—
- 5 Uma imihle, bavukele ekuphileni kwaphakade; futhi uma imibi, bavukele osizini; njengoba kulinganisene, okunye kolunye uhlangothi nokunye kolunye uhlangothi, ngokwesihawu, kanye nokulunga, kanye nobungcwele obukuKristu, owayekhona ngaphambi kokuthi umhlaba ubekhona.
- 6 Manje akunakubhalwa kulencwadi ngisho nengxenywe eyodwa yokwekhulu yezinto uJesu azifundisa ngempela kubantu;
- 7 Kepha bheka izingcwephe zikaNefi ziqukethe ingxenywe eningi yezinto azifundisa abantu.
- 8 Futhi lezi zinto ngizibhalile, eziyingxenyana encane yezinto azifundisa abantu; futhi ngizibhale ngenhloso yokuthi zibuye ziphindwe zilethwe kulaba bantu, zivela kwabeZizwe, njengokwamazwi uJesu awakhulumayo.

3 Nephi 26

And now it came to pass that when Jesus had told these things he expounded them unto the multitude; and he did expound all things unto them, both great and small.

And he saith: These scriptures, which ye had not with you, the Father commanded that I should give unto you; for it was wisdom in him that they should be given unto future generations.

And he did expound all things, even from the beginning until the time that he should come in his glory—yea, even all things which should come upon the face of the earth, even until the elements should melt with fervent heat, and the earth should be wrapt together as a scroll, and the heavens and the earth should pass away;

And even unto the great and last day, when all people, and all kindreds, and all nations and tongues shall stand before God, to be judged of their works, whether they be good or whether they be evil—

If they be good, to the resurrection of everlasting life; and if they be evil, to the resurrection of damnation; being on a parallel, the one on the one hand and the other on the other hand, according to the mercy, and the justice, and the holiness which is in Christ, who was before the world began.

And now there cannot be written in this book even a hundredth part of the things which Jesus did truly teach unto the people;

But behold the plates of Nephi do contain the more part of the things which he taught the people.

And these things have I written, which are a lesser part of the things which he taught the people; and I have written them to the intent that they may be brought again unto this people, from the Gentiles, according to the words which Jesus hath spoken.

- 9 Futhi uma sebekutholile lokhu, okudingekile ukuthi babe nakho kuqala, ukuvivinya ukholo lwabo, futhi uma kuyokwenzeka ukuthi bazikholwe lezi zinto uma kunjalo izinto ezinkulu ziyokwembulwa kubo.
- 10 Futhi uma kwenzeka ukuthi bangazikholwa lezi zinto, uma kunjalo izinto ezinkulu ziyogodlwa kubo, kangangoba bayobekwa icala.
- 11 Bheka, ngase ngizozibhala lezi zinto, konke okwakuqoshwe ezingcwephezi zikaNefi, kepha iNkosi yakwenqaba lokho, ithi: Ngizoluvivinya ukholo lwabantu bami.
- 12 Ngakho-ke mina, Mormoni, sengibhala izinto engiyalwe ngazo yiNkosi. Manje mina, Mormoni, sengenza isiphetho senkulumo yami, futhi sengiyaqhubeka nokubhala izinto engiyalwe ngazo.
- 13 Ngakho-ke, ngifuna ukuthi nibone ukuthi iNkosi ngempela yabafundisa abantu, isikhathi esiyizinsuku ezintathu; futhi emva kwalokho yaziveza kubo njalo, futhi yahlephula isinkwa kaningi, futhi yasibusisa, futhi yabanikeza.
- 14 Futhi kwenzeka ukuthi yabafundisa futhi yabasebenzela abantwana besixuku osekukhulunywe ngaso, futhi yaluqaqa ulimi lwabo, futhi bakhuluma koyise izinto ezinkulu nezimangalisayo, ezinkulu ngisho nangaphezu kwalokho eyayikade ikwambulele abantu; futhi yaluqaqa ulimi lwabo kangangokuthi babengakwazi ukukhuluma.
- 15 Futhi kwenzeka ukuthi emva kokuthi isinyukele ezulwini—okwesibili ukuthi izibonakalise kubo, futhi isihambile yaya kuBaba, emva kokuthi isibaphilise bonke abagulayo babo, kanye nabaxhugayo babo, futhi isivule amehlo alabo ababengaboni babo futhi yavula izindlebe zezithuli, futhi seyenze yonke inhlobo yokwelapha phakathi kwabo, futhi yavusa nendoda ekufeni, futhi isiwatshengisile amandla ayo kubo, futhi isinyukele kuBaba—

And when they shall have received this, which is expedient that they should have first, to try their faith, and if it shall so be that they shall believe these things then shall the greater things be made manifest unto them.

And if it so be that they will not believe these things, then shall the greater things be withheld from them, unto their condemnation.

Behold, I was about to write them, all which were engraven upon the plates of Nephi, but the Lord forbade it, saying: I will try the faith of my people.

Therefore I, Mormon, do write the things which have been commanded me of the Lord. And now I, Mormon, make an end of my sayings, and proceed to write the things which have been commanded me.

Therefore, I would that ye should behold that the Lord truly did teach the people, for the space of three days; and after that he did show himself unto them oft, and did break bread oft, and bless it, and give it unto them.

And it came to pass that he did teach and minister unto the children of the multitude of whom hath been spoken, and he did loose their tongues, and they did speak unto their fathers great and marvelous things, even greater than he had revealed unto the people; and he loosed their tongues that they could utter.

And it came to pass that after he had ascended into heaven—the second time that he showed himself unto them, and had gone unto the Father, after having healed all their sick, and their lame, and opened the eyes of their blind and unstopped the ears of the deaf, and even had done all manner of cures among them, and raised a man from the dead, and had shown forth his power unto them, and had ascended unto the Father—

16 Bheka, kwenzeka ngakusasa ukuthi isixuku sabuthana ndawonye, futhi bonke bazibona futhi bazizwa lezi zingane; yebo, ngisho abantwana bayivula imilomo yabo futhi bakhuluma izinto ezimangalisayo; futhi izinto ezazikhulumayo akuvunyelwanga ukuthi kube khona namunye umuntu ozibhalayo.

17 Futhi kwenzeka ukuthi abafundi uJesu ayebakhethile baqala kusukela ngaleso sikhathi kuya phambili ukubhabhadisa kanye nokufundisa ngobuningi balabo abeza kubo; futhi ngobuningi balabo ababebhabhadiswa egameni likaJesu bagcwaliswa ngoMoya oyiNgcwele.

18 Futhi abaningi babo babona futhi bezwa izinto ezazingakhulumeki, ezingavunyelwe ukuthi zibhalwe.

19 Futhi bafundisa, futhi basebenzelana omunye nomunye; futhi babane zinto zonke ngokufanayo phakathi kwabo, wonke umuntu enza ngokulunga, komunye nomunye.

20 Futhi kwenzeka ukuthi benza zonke izinto ngisho nanjengoba uJesu ayebayalile.

21 Futhi labo ababhabhadiswa egameni likaJesu babizwa ngebandla likaKristu.

Behold, it came to pass on the morrow that the multitude gathered themselves together, and they both saw and heard these children; yea, even babes did open their mouths and utter marvelous things; and the things which they did utter were forbidden that there should not any man write them.

And it came to pass that the disciples whom Jesus had chosen began from that time forth to baptize and to teach as many as did come unto them; and as many as were baptized in the name of Jesus were filled with the Holy Ghost.

And many of them saw and heard unspeakable things, which are not lawful to be written.

And they taught, and did minister one to another; and they had all things common among them, every man dealing justly, one with another.

And it came to pass that they did do all things even as Jesus had commanded them.

And they who were baptized in the name of Jesus were called the church of Christ.

3 Nepi 27

- 1 Futhi kwenzeka ukuthi ngesikhathi abafundi baJesus behamba beshumayela izinto ababezizwile futhi nababezibonile, futhi bebhahhadisa egameni likaJesus, kwenzeka ukuthi abafundi babuthana ndawonye futhi bahlanganyela emkhulekweni omkhulu kanye nasekuzileni.
- 2 UJesus waphinda waziveza kubo, ngokuba babekhuleka kuBaba egameni lakhe; futhi uJesus weza wema phakathi kwabo, futhi wathi kubo: Nifuna ukuthi ngininikeni na?
- 3 Futhi bathi kuye: Nkosi, sifuna ukuthi usitshele igama esizobiza ngalo leli bandla; ngokuba kunezimpikiswano phakathi kwabantu mayelana naloludaba.
- 4 INkosi yathi kubo: Ngqiqinisile, ngiqinisile, ngithi kini, kungani ukuthi abantu bavungame futhi baphikisane ngenxa yalento na?
- 5 Abayifundanga yini imibhalo engcwele, ethi kufanele nibizwe ngegama likaKristu, okuyigama lami na? Ngokuba niyobizwa ngaleli gama ngosuku lokugcina;
- 6 Futhi lowo obizwa ngegama lami, futhi abekezele kuze kube sekugcineni, nguye lowo oyosindiswa ngosuku lokugcina.
- 7 Ngakho-ke, noma ngabe yini eniyoyenza, niyoyenza egameni lami; ngakho-ke niyolibiza ibandla ngegama lami; futhi niyobiza uBaba egameni lami ukuze alibusise ibandla ngenxa yami.
- 8 Futhi lingaba yibandla lami kanjani ngaphandle kokuthi libizwe ngegama lami na? Ngokuba uma ibandla lingabizwa ngegama likaMose uma kunjalo liyibandla likaMose; noma uma lingabizwa ngegama lomuntu uma kunjalo liyibandla lomuntu; kepha uma lingabizwa ngegama lami uma kunjalo liyibandla lami, uma kungukuthi bakhelwe phezu kwevangeli lami.
- 9 Ngqiqinisile ngithi kini, nina nakhelwe phezu kwevangeli lami; ngakho-ke niyokwetha noma ngabe yini eniyethayo, ngegama lami; ngakho-ke uma nibiza uBaba, ukuze kuzuze ibandla, uma kusegameni lami uBaba uyonizwa;

3 Nepi 27

And it came to pass that as the disciples of Jesus were journeying and were preaching the things which they had both heard and seen, and were baptizing in the name of Jesus, it came to pass that the disciples were gathered together and were united in mighty prayer and fasting.

And Jesus again showed himself unto them, for they were praying unto the Father in his name; and Jesus came and stood in the midst of them, and said unto them: What will ye that I shall give unto you?

And they said unto him: Lord, we will that thou wouldst tell us the name whereby we shall call this church; for there are disputations among the people concerning this matter.

And the Lord said unto them: Verily, verily, I say unto you, why is it that the people should murmur and dispute because of this thing?

Have they not read the scriptures, which say ye must take upon you the name of Christ, which is my name? For by this name shall ye be called at the last day;

And whoso taketh upon him my name, and endureth to the end, the same shall be saved at the last day.

Therefore, whatsoever ye shall do, ye shall do it in my name; therefore ye shall call the church in my name; and ye shall call upon the Father in my name that he will bless the church for my sake.

And how be it my church save it be called in my name? For if a church be called in Moses' name then it be Moses' church; or if it be called in the name of a man then it be the church of a man; but if it be called in my name then it is my church, if it so be that they are built upon my gospel.

Verily I say unto you, that ye are built upon my gospel; therefore ye shall call whatsoever things ye do call, in my name; therefore if ye call upon the Father, for the church, if it be in my name the Father will hear you;

- 10 Futhi uma kungukuthi ibandla lakhelwe phezu kwevangeli lami uma kunjalo uBaba uyokhombisa imisebenzi yakhe kulo.
- 11 Kepha uma lingakhelwe evangelini lami, futhi lakhelwe emisebenzini yabantu, noma emisebenzini kadaveli, ngiqinisile ngithi kini banenjabulo ngemisebenzi yabo okwesikhashana, futhi emva kwesikhashana isiphetho siyeza, futhi bagawulelwa phansi futhi baphonswe emlilweni, lapho kungasekho ukubuya.
- 12 Ngokuba imisebenzi yabo iyabalandela, ngokuba kungenxa yemisebenzi yabo ukuthi bagawulelwa phansi; ngakho-ke khumbulani izinto enginitshele zona.
- 13 Bhekani ngininikile ivangeli lami, futhi leli yivangeli engininike lona—ukuthi ngeza emhlabeni ukuzokwenza intando kaBaba, ngoba uBaba engithumile.
- 14 Futhi uBaba wangithuma ukuze ngiphakanyiselwe phezulu esiphambanweni; futhi emva kokuthi sengiphakanyiselwe phezulu esiphambanweni, ukuze ngidonsele bonke abantu kimi, ukuthi njengoba ngaphakanyiselwa phezulu ngabantu futhi kanjalo nabantu bayophakanyiswa nguBaba, ukuze bame phambi kwami, ukuze behlulelwe ngokwemisebenzi yabo, noma ngabe mihle noma ngabe mibi—
- 15 Futhi ngalesi sizathu ngiphakanyiselwe phezulu; ngakho-ke, ngokwamandla kaBaba ngiyobadonsela kimi bonke abantu, ukuze behlulelwe ngokwemisebenzi yabo.
- 16 Futhi kuyokwenzeka, ukuthi noma ngubani ophendukayo futhi abhabhadiswe egameni lami uyogcwaliswa; futhi uma ebekezela kuze kube sekugcineni, bheka, ngiyomthola engenacala phambi kukaBaba ngalolo suku lapho ngiyokuma ukuze ngehlulele umhlaba.
- 17 Futhi lowo ongabekezeli kuze kube sekugcineni, nguye kanye lowo oyogawulelwa phansi futhi aphantswe emlilweni, lapho bengasenakubuya khona nanini, ngenxa yokulunga kukaBaba.
- 18 Futhi yilo leli izwi alinikeza abantwana babantu. Futhi ngenxa yalesi sizathu uyawagcwalisa amazwi awanikeza, futhi akaqambi manga, kepha uwagcwalisa wonke amazwi akhe.

And if it so be that the church is built upon my gospel then will the Father show forth his own works in it.

But if it be not built upon my gospel, and is built upon the works of men, or upon the works of the devil, verily I say unto you they have joy in their works for a season, and by and by the end cometh, and they are hewn down and cast into the fire, from whence there is no return.

For their works do follow them, for it is because of their works that they are hewn down; therefore remember the things that I have told you.

Behold I have given unto you my gospel, and this is the gospel which I have given unto you—that I came into the world to do the will of my Father, because my Father sent me.

And my Father sent me that I might be lifted up upon the cross; and after that I had been lifted up upon the cross, that I might draw all men unto me, that as I have been lifted up by men even so should men be lifted up by the Father, to stand before me, to be judged of their works, whether they be good or whether they be evil—

And for this cause have I been lifted up; therefore, according to the power of the Father I will draw all men unto me, that they may be judged according to their works.

And it shall come to pass, that whoso repenteth and is baptized in my name shall be filled; and if he endureth to the end, behold, him will I hold guiltless before my Father at that day when I shall stand to judge the world.

And he that endureth not unto the end, the same is he that is also hewn down and cast into the fire, from whence they can no more return, because of the justice of the Father.

And this is the word which he hath given unto the children of men. And for this cause he fulfilleth the words which he hath given, and he lieth not, but fulfilleth all his words.

19 Futhi ayikho into engcolile engangena embusweni wakhe; ngakho-ke akukho nto engena ekuphumuleni kwakhe ngaphandle kwalabo abahlanze izingubo zabo egazini lami, ngenxa yokholo lwabo, kanye nokuphenduka ezonweni zabo zonke, kanye nokwethembeka kwabo kuze kube sekugcineni.

20 Manje lona ngumyalelo: Phendukani, nonke mikhawulo yomhlaba, futhi nize kimi futhi nibhabhadiswe egameni lami, ukuze ningcweliswe ngokwamukela uMoya oyiNgcwele, ukuze nime ningenasici phambi kwami ngosuku lokuphela.

21 Ngiqinisile, ngiqinisile, ngithi kini, yivangeli lami leli; futhi niyazazi izinto okufanele nizenze ebandleni lami; ngokuba imisebenzi enibone ngiyenza nani ngokunjalo niyoyenza; ngokuba lokho eningibone ngikwenza ngisho lokho nani niyokwenza;

22 Ngakhoke, uma nenza lezi zinto nibusisiwe, ngokuba niyophakanyiswa ngosuku lokuphela.

23 Zibhaleni izinto enizibonile futhi nazizwa, ngaphandle kwalezo ezingavunyelwe.

24 Yibhaleni imisebenzi yalabantu, eyokwenzeka, ngisho nanjengoba ibhaliwe, ngalokho okwenzekile.

25 Ngokuba bhekani, kulezo zincwadi ezibhaliwe, kanye nalezo eziyobhalwa, labantu bayokwahlulelwa ngazo, ngokuba ngazo imisebenzi yabo iyokwambulwa kubantu.

26 Futhi bhekani, zonke izinto zibhalwe nguBaba; ngakho-ke ngezincwadi ezisazobhalwa umhlaba uyokwahlulelwa ngazo.

27 Futhi yazini ukuthi niyokuba ngabahluleli balabantu, ngokwesahlulelo engiyoninika sona, esiyobe silungile. Ngakho-ke, kufanele nibe ngabantu abanjani na? Ngiqinisile ngithi kini, ngisho njengami.

28 Manje sengiyahamba ngiya kuBaba. Futhi ngiqinisile ngithi kini, noma ngabe yiziphi izinto eniyozicela kuBaba egameni lami niyonikwa zona.

29 Ngakho-ke, celani, futhi niyophiwa; ngqongqothani, futhi niyovulelwa; ngokuba lowo ocelayo, uyaphiwa; futhi nalowo ongqongqothayo, uyovulelwa.

And no unclean thing can enter into his kingdom; therefore nothing entereth into his rest save it be those who have washed their garments in my blood, because of their faith, and the repentance of all their sins, and their faithfulness unto the end.

Now this is the commandment: Repent, all ye ends of the earth, and come unto me and be baptized in my name, that ye may be sanctified by the reception of the Holy Ghost, that ye may stand spotless before me at the last day.

Verily, verily, I say unto you, this is my gospel; and ye know the things that ye must do in my church; for the works which ye have seen me do that shall ye also do; for that which ye have seen me do even that shall ye do;

Therefore, if ye do these things blessed are ye, for ye shall be lifted up at the last day.

Write the things which ye have seen and heard, save it be those which are forbidden.

Write the works of this people, which shall be, even as hath been written, of that which hath been.

For behold, out of the books which have been written, and which shall be written, shall this people be judged, for by them shall their works be known unto men.

And behold, all things are written by the Father; therefore out of the books which shall be written shall the world be judged.

And know ye that ye shall be judges of this people, according to the judgment which I shall give unto you, which shall be just. Therefore, what manner of men ought ye to be? Verily I say unto you, even as I am.

And now I go unto the Father. And verily I say unto you, whatsoever things ye shall ask the Father in my name shall be given unto you.

Therefore, ask, and ye shall receive; knock, and it shall be opened unto you; for he that asketh, receiveth; and unto him that knocketh, it shall be opened.

30 Manje, bhekani, intokozo yami inkulu, kangangoba igcwele, ngenxa yenu, futhi kanjalo nalesi sizukulwane; yebo, futhi ngisho noBaba uyathokoza, futhi kanjalo nazo zonke izingelosi ezingcwele, ngenxa yenu kanye nalesi sizukulwane; ngokuba akekho namunye wabo olahlekile.

31 Bhekani, ngifuna ukuthi niqonde; ngokuba ngisho laba abaphilayo manje balesi sizukulwane; futhi akekho namunye wabo olahlekile; futhi ngenxa yabo ngine njabulo egcwele.

32 Kepha bhekani, ngiyadabuka ngenxa yesizukulwane sesine kusukela kulesi sizukulwane, ngokuba bona baholelwa kude ekuthunjweni nguye ngisho nanjengayo indodana yokulahlwa; ngokuba bayongithengisa ngesiliva kanye negolide, kanye nangalokho okuyoboliswa yinundu kanye nalokho amasela angafohla futhi akwebe. Futhi ngalolo suku ngiyobahambela, ngisho nangokuphendulela imisebenzi yabo phezu kwamakhanda abo.

33 Futhi kwenzeka ukuthi ngesikhathi uJesu eseqedile ukusho lezi zinkulumo wathi kubafundi bakhe: Ngenani esangweni elingumngcingo; ngokuba lincane isango, futhi ingumngcingo nendlela eholela ekuphileni, futhi bancane abayitholayo; kepha libanzi isango, futhi ivulekile indlela eholela ekufeni, futhi baningi abahamba ngayo, kuze kufike ubusuku, lapho kungeke kusasebenza muntu khona.

And now, behold, my joy is great, even unto fullness, because of you, and also this generation; yea, and even the Father rejoiceth, and also all the holy angels, because of you and this generation; for none of them are lost.

Behold, I would that ye should understand; for I mean them who are now alive of this generation; and none of them are lost; and in them I have fulness of joy.

But behold, it sorroweth me because of the fourth generation from this generation, for they are led away captive by him even as was the son of perdition; for they will sell me for silver and for gold, and for that which moth doth corrupt and which thieves can break through and steal. And in that day will I visit them, even in turning their works upon their own heads.

And it came to pass that when Jesus had ended these sayings he said unto his disciples: Enter ye in at the strait gate; for strait is the gate, and narrow is the way that leads to life, and few there be that find it; but wide is the gate, and broad the way which leads to death, and many there be that travel therein, until the night cometh, wherein no man can work.

3 Nepi 28

- 1 Futhi kwenzeka ngesikhathi uJesu esewashilo lamazwi, wakhuluma kubafundi bakhe, ngamunye ngamunye, ethi kubo: Yini eniyifisayo kimi, emva kokuba sengihambile ngaya kuBaba na?
- 2 Futhi bonke bakhuluma, ngaphandle kwabathathu, bethi: Sifisa ukuthi emva kokuthi sesihlale saze safika eminyakeni ejwayelekile yokukhula, ukuthi ubufundisi bethu, osibizele kubo, bufike esiphethweni, ukuze size kuwe ngokushesha embusweni wakho.
- 3 Futhi wathi kubo: Nibusisiwe ngokuba nifisa lento kimi; ngakho-ke, emva kokuthi senineminyaka engamashumi ayisikhombisa neminyaka emibili yobudala niyokuza kimi embusweni wami; futhi niyothola ukuphumula kanye nami.
- 4 Ngesikhathi esekhulumile kubo, waphendukela kulabo abathathu, wathi kubo: Nina nifisa ukuthi ngingenzeleni, uma sengihambile ngaya kuBaba na?
- 5 Futhi badabuka ezinhliziyweni zabo, ngokuba abazange balokothe bayikhulume kuye leyonto ababeyifisa.
- 6 Futhi wathi kubo: Bhokani, ngiyayazi imicabango yenu, futhi nifise leyonto uJohane, othandekayo wami, owayenami ebufundisini bami, ngaphambi kokuthi ngiphakanyiselwe phezulu ngamaJuda, ayifisa kimi.
- 7 Ngakho-ke, nibusisiwe kakhulu nina, ngokuba aniyuku kuzwa ukufa; kepha niyophila ukuze nibone zonke izenzo zikaBaba kubantwana babantu, ngisho kuze kube zonke izinto ziyagcwaliseka ngokwentando kaBaba, lapho ngiyoza ngenkazimulo yami namandla asezulwini.
- 8 Futhi aniyikuzizwa nanini izinhlungu zokufa; kepha ngesikhathi sengiza ngenkazimulo yami niyoguqulwa ngokuphazima kweso esimweni sokufa niye esimweni sokungafi; futhi ngaleso sikhathi niyobusiswa embusweni kaBaba.

3 Nephi 28

And it came to pass when Jesus had said these words, he spake unto his disciples, one by one, saying unto them: What is it that ye desire of me, after that I am gone to the Father?

And they all spake, save it were three, saying: We desire that after we have lived unto the age of man, that our ministry, wherein thou hast called us, may have an end, that we may speedily come unto thee in thy kingdom.

And he said unto them: Blessed are ye because ye desired this thing of me; therefore, after that ye are seventy and two years old ye shall come unto me in my kingdom; and with me ye shall find rest.

And when he had spoken unto them, he turned himself unto the three, and said unto them: What will ye that I should do unto you, when I am gone unto the Father?

And they sorrowed in their hearts, for they durst not speak unto him the thing which they desired.

And he said unto them: Behold, I know your thoughts, and ye have desired the thing which John, my beloved, who was with me in my ministry, before that I was lifted up by the Jews, desired of me.

Therefore, more blessed are ye, for ye shall never taste of death; but ye shall live to behold all the doings of the Father unto the children of men, even until all things shall be fulfilled according to the will of the Father, when I shall come in my glory with the powers of heaven.

And ye shall never endure the pains of death; but when I shall come in my glory ye shall be changed in the twinkling of an eye from mortality to immortality; and then shall ye be blessed in the kingdom of my Father.

- 9 Futhi phezu kwalokho, aniseyikuzwa buhlungu ngesikhathi niseke nyameni, noma usizi ngaphandle kokuthi kube ngenxa yezono zomhlaba; futhi konke lokhu ngizokwenza ngenxa yalento eniyifisile kimi, ngokuba nifise ukuthi nilethe imiphefumulo yabantu kimi, ngesikhathi umhlaba usamile.
- 10 Futhi ngenxa yalesi sizathu niyoba nenjabulo egcwele; futhi niyohlala phansi embusweni kaBaba; yebo, injabulo yenu iyogcwala, ngisho njengoba uBaba enginike injabulo egcwele; futhi niyokuba ngisho njengami, futhi nami nginjengoBaba; futhi uBaba kanye nami simunye;
- 11 Futhi uMoya oyiNgcwele ufakaza ngoBaba kanye nangami; futhi uBaba unika abantwana babantu uMoya oyiNgcwele, ngenxa yami.
- 12 Futhi kwenzeka ukuthi ngesikhathi uJesu esewakhulumile lamazwi, wabathinta bonke ngamunye ngamunye ngomunwe wakhe ngaphandle kwabathathu ababezohlala, futhi emva kwalokho wabe eseyahamba.
- 13 Futhi bheka, amazulu avuleka, futhi bahlwitelwa ezulwini, futhi babona futhi bezwa izinto ezingakhulumeki.
- 14 Futhi benqatshelwa ukuthi bakhulume; futhi abanikwanga amandla okuthi bakhulume lezo zinto ababezibonile futhi bazizwa;
- 15 Futhi noma babesemzimbeni noma ngaphandle komzimba, abakwazanga ukusho; ngokuba kubo kwaba sengathi kwaba khona ukuguqulwa kwesimo sabo, ukuthi baguqulwa kulomzimba wenyama baya esimweni sokungafi, ukuze bakwazi ukubona izinto zikaNkulunkulu.
- 16 Kepha kwenzeka ukuthi baphinda futhi bafundisa ebusweni bomhlaba; nokho abazange bafundise ngezinto ababezizwile futhi bazibona, ngenxa yomyalelo abawunikwa ezulwini.
- 17 Manje, noma baba ngabafayo noma baba ngabangafi, kusukela ngosuku lokuguqulwa kwesimo sabo, angazi;

And again, ye shall not have pain while ye shall dwell in the flesh, neither sorrow save it be for the sins of the world; and all this will I do because of the thing which ye have desired of me, for ye have desired that ye might bring the souls of men unto me, while the world shall stand.

And for this cause ye shall have fulness of joy; and ye shall sit down in the kingdom of my Father; yea, your joy shall be full, even as the Father hath given me fulness of joy; and ye shall be even as I am, and I am even as the Father; and the Father and I are one;

And the Holy Ghost beareth record of the Father and me; and the Father giveth the Holy Ghost unto the children of men, because of me.

And it came to pass that when Jesus had spoken these words, he touched every one of them with his finger save it were the three who were to tarry, and then he departed.

And behold, the heavens were opened, and they were caught up into heaven, and saw and heard unspeakable things.

And it was forbidden them that they should utter; neither was it given unto them power that they could utter the things which they saw and heard;

And whether they were in the body or out of the body, they could not tell; for it did seem unto them like a transfiguration of them, that they were changed from this body of flesh into an immortal state, that they could behold the things of God.

But it came to pass that they did again minister upon the face of the earth; nevertheless they did not minister of the things which they had heard and seen, because of the commandment which was given them in heaven.

And now, whether they were mortal or immortal, from the day of their transfiguration, I know not;

- 18 Kepha yilokhu engikwaziyo, ngokombhalo onikiwe—bahamba ebusweni bezwe, futhi babafundisa bonke abantu, bebahlanganisa ngobuningi ebandleni njengokukholwa entshumayelweni yabo; bebabhabhadisa, futhi ngobuningi balabo ababhabhadiswayo banikwa uMoya oyiNgcwele.
- 19 Futhi baphonswa etilongweni yilabo okwakungebona abebandla. Futhi amatilongo awakwazanga ukubagcina, ngokuba adabuka kabili.
- 20 Futhi baphonswa ngaphansi komhlaba; kepha bawushaya umhlaba ngezwi likaNkulunkulu, kangangokuthi ngamandla akhe bakhishelwa ngaphandle kwezinzulu zomhlaba; futhi ngalokho-ke abakwazanga ukumba imigodi eyayenele ukuthi yayingababamba.
- 21 Futhi kathathu baphonswa esithandweni somlilo futhi bangathola myocu.
- 22 Futhi kabili baphonswa emphandwini wezilwane zasandle; futhi bheka badlala nezilwane kuhle kwengane nezinyane elincelayo, futhi bangathola myocu.
- 23 Futhi kwenzeka ukuthi bahamba ngalendlela phakathi kwabo bonke abantu baNefi, futhi balishumayela ivangeli likaKristu kubo bonke abantu ebusweni bezwe; futhi baphendukela eNkosini, futhi bahlanganyela ebandleni likaKristu, futhi ngalendlela abantu baleso sizukulwane babusiswa, njengokwamazwi kaJesusu.
- 24 Manje mina, Mormoni, ngenza isiphetho sokukhuluma mayelana nalezi zinto okwesikhashana.
- 25 Bheka, ngase ngizowabhala amagama alabo ababengeke bakuzwe ukufa, kodwa iNkosi yenqaba; ngakho-ke angiwabhali, ngokuba afihliwe emhlabeni.
- 26 Kepha bheka, ngibabonile, futhi bangisebenzele.
- 27 Futhi bheka bayokuba phakathi kwabeZizwe, futhi abeZizwe ngeke babazi.
- 28 Futhi phezu kwalokho bayokuba phakathi kwamaJuda, futhi amaJuda ngeke abazi.

But this much I know, according to the record which hath been given—they did go forth upon the face of the land, and did minister unto all the people, uniting as many to the church as would believe in their preaching; baptizing them, and as many as were baptized did receive the Holy Ghost.

And they were cast into prison by them who did not belong to the church. And the prisons could not hold them, for they were rent in twain.

And they were cast down into the earth; but they did smite the earth with the word of God, insomuch that by his power they were delivered out of the depths of the earth; and therefore they could not dig pits sufficient to hold them.

And thrice they were cast into a furnace and received no harm.

And twice were they cast into a den of wild beasts; and behold they did play with the beasts as a child with a suckling lamb, and received no harm.

And it came to pass that thus they did go forth among all the people of Nephi, and did preach the gospel of Christ unto all people upon the face of the land; and they were converted unto the Lord, and were united unto the church of Christ, and thus the people of that generation were blessed, according to the word of Jesus.

And now I, Mormon, make an end of speaking concerning these things for a time.

Behold, I was about to write the names of those who were never to taste of death, but the Lord forbade; therefore I write them not, for they are hid from the world.

But behold, I have seen them, and they have ministered unto me.

And behold they will be among the Gentiles, and the Gentiles shall know them not.

They will also be among the Jews, and the Jews shall know them not.

- 29 Futhi kuyokwenzeka, ngesikhathi iNkosi ibona sekulungile ngokuhlakanipha kwayo ukuthi bayosebenza kuzo zonke izizwana ezihlakazekile zakwa-Israyeli, kanye nasezizweni zonke, imindeni, izilimi kanye nakubantu, futhi bayokhipha kuzo abantu abaningi babalethe kuJesu, ukuze isifiso sabo sifezeke, futhi kanjalo nangenxa yamandla akholwisayo kaNkulunkulu akubo.
- 30 Futhi banjenge zingelosi zikaNkulunkulu, futhi uma beyokhuleka kuBaba egameni likaJesu bangazibonakalisa kunoma yimuphi umuntu ababona kulungile kubo.
- 31 Ngakho-ke, mikhulu futhi iyamangalisa imisebenzi eyokwenziwa yibo, ngaphambi kosuku olukhulu oluzayo futhi lapho bonke abantu kufanele ngempela bame ngaphambi kwesihlalo sokwahlulela sikaKristu;
- 32 Yebo ngisho naphakathi kwabeZizwe kuyoba khona omkhulu nomangalisayo umsebenzi oyokwenziwa yibo, ngaphambi kwalolo suku lokwahlulela.
- 33 Futhi ukuba beninayo yonke imibhalo engcwele elanda ngayo yonke indaba yemisebenzi emangalisayo kaKristu, beniyokwazi, ngokwamazwi kaKristu, ukuthi lezi zinto kufanele ngempela zenzeke.
- 34 Futhi maye kulowo ongeke awalalele amazwi kaJesu, futhi kanjalo nawalabo abakhethileyo futhi wabathumela phakathi kwabo; ngokuba labo abageyikuwemukela amazwi kaJesu kanye namazwi alabo abathumileyo abemukeli yena; futhi ngakho-ke akayikubemukela ngosuku lokugcina.
- 35 Futhi bekuyoba ngcono ukuba babe ngazalwanga. Ngokuba nicabanga ukuthi ningakugwema yini ukulunga kukaNkulunkulu owoniweyo, onyathelwe ngaphansi kwezinyawo zabantu, ukuze ngalokho kuze insindiso na?
- 36 Manje bheka, njengoba ngikhulumile mayelana nalabo iNkosi ebakhethile, yebo, ngisho nalabo abathathu abahlwithelwa phezulu emazulwini, engingazi noma bahlanzwa yini besuswa ekubeni ngabafayo bayiswa esimweni sokungafi—

And it shall come to pass, when the Lord seeth fit in his wisdom that they shall minister unto all the scattered tribes of Israel, and unto all nations, kindreds, tongues and people, and shall bring out of them unto Jesus many souls, that their desire may be fulfilled, and also because of the convincing power of God which is in them.

And they are as the angels of God, and if they shall pray unto the Father in the name of Jesus they can show themselves unto whatsoever man it seemeth them good.

Therefore, great and marvelous works shall be wrought by them, before the great and coming day when all people must surely stand before the judgment-seat of Christ;

Yea even among the Gentiles shall there be a great and marvelous work wrought by them, before that judgment day.

And if ye had all the scriptures which give an account of all the marvelous works of Christ, ye would, according to the words of Christ, know that these things must surely come.

And wo be unto him that will not hearken unto the words of Jesus, and also to them whom he hath chosen and sent among them; for whoso receiveth not the words of Jesus and the words of those whom he hath sent receiveth not him; and therefore he will not receive them at the last day;

And it would be better for them if they had not been born. For do ye suppose that ye can get rid of the justice of an offended God, who hath been trampled under feet of men, that thereby salvation might come?

And now behold, as I spake concerning those whom the Lord hath chosen, yea, even three who were caught up into the heavens, that I knew not whether they were cleansed from mortality to immortality—

- 37 Kepha bhekani, ngesikhathi sengibhalile, ngibuzile eNkosini, futhi ingambulele ukuthi kudingeke ukuthi kube khona uguquko olwenzekayo emizimbeni yabo, kungenjalo kudingekile ukuthi kufanele bakuzwe ukufa;
- 38 Ngakho-ke, ukuze bangakuzwa ukufa kwaba khona uguquko olwenzekayo emizimbeni yabo, ukuze bangabuzwa ubuhlungu noma usizi ngaphandle kokuthi kube ngokwezono zomhlaba.
- 39 Manje lolu guquko lwalungalingani nalolo oluyokwenzeka ngosuku lokugcina; kepha kwaba khona uguquko olwenzeka kubo, kangangokuthi uSathane wayengezukuphambili ukuba namandla phezu kwabo, wayengezukuphambili ukubalinga; futhi bangcweliswa besenyameni, ukuze babe ngcwele, futhi nokuthi amandla omhlaba ayengezukuphambili ukubabamba.
- 40 Futhi kwakufanele bahlale bekulesi simo kuze kube wusuku lokwahlulela lukaKristu; futhi ngalolo suku babezobe sebethola ukuguqulwa okukhulu, futhi bemukelwe embusweni kaBaba bangaphinde baphume nanini, kepha bahlale noNkulunkulu ingunaphakade emazulwini.

But behold, since I wrote, I have inquired of the Lord, and he hath made it manifest unto me that there must needs be a change wrought upon their bodies, or else it needs be that they must taste of death;

Therefore, that they might not taste of death there was a change wrought upon their bodies, that they might not suffer pain nor sorrow save it were for the sins of the world.

Now this change was not equal to that which shall take place at the last day; but there was a change wrought upon them, insomuch that Satan could have no power over them, that he could not tempt them; and they were sanctified in the flesh, that they were holy, and that the powers of the earth could not hold them.

And in this state they were to remain until the judgment day of Christ; and at that day they were to receive a greater change, and to be received into the kingdom of the Father to go no more out, but to dwell with God eternally in the heavens.

3 Nefi 29

- 1 Manje bhekani, ngithi kini ngesikhathi iNkosi seyibona kufanele, ngokuhlakanipha kwayo, ukuthi lemibhalo ize kwabeZizwe njengokwezwi layo, ngaleso sikhathi anokwazi ukuthi isivumelwano uBaba asenza nabantwana bakwa-Israyeli, mayelana nokubuyiselwa kwabo emazweni angamafa abo, siyobe sesiqalile ukugcwaliseka.
- 2 Futhi anokwazi ukuthi amazwi eNkosi, akhulunywe ngabaphrofethi abangcwele, wonke ayofezeka; futhi akufanele nithi iNkosi ilibazisa ukuza kwayo kubantwana bakwa-Israyeli.
- 3 Futhi akufanele nicabange ezinhliziyweni zenu ukuthi amazwi akhulunyiwe ayize, ngokuba bhekani, iNkosi iyosikhumbula isivumelwano sayo esenze kubantu bayo bendlu ka-Israyeli.
- 4 Futhi ngesikhathi senizibona lezi zinto sezenzeka phakathi kwenu, ngaleso sikhathi ningabe nisazidelela neze izenzo zeNkosi, ngokuba inkemba yokulunga kwayo isesandleni sayo sokudla; futhi bhekani, ngalolo suku, uma niyozidelela izenzo zayo iyokwenza ukuthi ize kini ngokushesha.
- 5 Maye kulowo odelela izenzo zeNkosi; yebo, maye kulowo oyomphika uKristu kanye nemisebenzi yakhe!
- 6 Yebo, maye kulowo oyoziphika izambulo zeNkosi, futhi nalowo oyothi iNkosi ayisasebenzi ngezambulo, noma ngeziphrofetho, noma ngeziphro, noma ngezilimi, noma ngokuphilisa, noma ngamandla kaMoya oNgcwele!
- 7 Yebo, futhi maye kulowo oyothi ngalolo suku, ukuze athole inzuzo, ngeke kusaba khona simangaliso esingenziwa nguJesu Kristu; ngokuba lowo owenza lokhu uyoba njenge ndodana yokulahlwa, engazange yenzelwe musa, ngokwezwi likaKristu!
- 8 Yebo, futhi akusafanele ukuthi nincimfe, noma nidelele, noma nenze ihlaya ngama Juda, noma nanganoma iyiphi insali yendlu ka-Israyeli; ngokuba bhekani, iNkosi iyasikhumbula isivumelwano sayo kubo, futhi iyokwenza kubo ngokwalokho eyayikufungile.

3 Nephi 29

And now behold, I say unto you that when the Lord shall see fit, in his wisdom, that these sayings shall come unto the Gentiles according to his word, then ye may know that the covenant which the Father hath made with the children of Israel, concerning their restoration to the lands of their inheritance, is already beginning to be fulfilled.

And ye may know that the words of the Lord, which have been spoken by the holy prophets, shall all be fulfilled; and ye need not say that the Lord delays his coming unto the children of Israel.

And ye need not imagine in your hearts that the words which have been spoken are vain, for behold, the Lord will remember his covenant which he hath made unto his people of the house of Israel.

And when ye shall see these sayings coming forth among you, then ye need not any longer spurn at the doings of the Lord, for the sword of his justice is in his right hand; and behold, at that day, if ye shall spurn at his doings he will cause that it shall soon overtake you.

Wo unto him that spurneth at the doings of the Lord; yea, wo unto him that shall deny the Christ and his works!

Yea, wo unto him that shall deny the revelations of the Lord, and that shall say the Lord no longer worketh by revelation, or by prophecy, or by gifts, or by tongues, or by healings, or by the power of the Holy Ghost!

Yea, and wo unto him that shall say at that day, to get gain, that there can be no miracle wrought by Jesus Christ; for he that doeth this shall become like unto the son of perdition, for whom there was no mercy, according to the word of Christ!

Yea, and ye need not any longer hiss, nor spurn, nor make game of the Jews, nor any of the remnant of the house of Israel; for behold, the Lord remembereth his covenant unto them, and he will do unto them according to that which he hath sworn.

9 Ngakho-ke akufanele ukuthi nicabange ukuthi ningasiguqula isandla sokudla seNkosi nisenze esobunxele, ukuze ingakwazi ukwenza isahlulelo ekugcwaliseni isivumelwano eyasenza kuyo indlu ka-Israyeli.

Therefore ye need not suppose that ye can turn the right hand of the Lord unto the left, that he may not execute judgment unto the fulfilling of the covenant which he hath made unto the house of Israel.

3 Nefi 30

- 1 Lalelani, O nina beZizwe, futhi nizwe amazwi kaJesu Kristu, iNdodana kaNkulunkulu ophilayo, angiyale ngawo ukuthi ngiwakhulume mayelana nani, ngokuba, bhekani ungiyale ukuthi ngibhale, ngithi:
- 2 Buyani, nonke nina beZizwe, ezindleleni zenu zobubi; futhi niphenduke ezenzweni zenu ezimbi, zokuqamba amanga, kanye nezenkohliso, kanye nezobufebe benu, kanye nezezinengiso zenu eziyimfihlo, kanye nasekukhonzeni kwenu izithixo, kanye nasekubulaleni kwenu, kanye nakubo ubuphristi-mbumbulu benu, kanye nakuwo umona wenu, kanye nakuyo ingxabano yenu, futhi nakuyo yonke inkohlakalo yenu kanye nezinengiso, futhi nize kimi, futhi nibhabhadiswe egameni lami, ukuze nithole ukuthethelelwa kwezono zenu, futhi nigcwaliswe ngoMoya oNgcwele, ukuze nibalwe kanye nabantu bami okungabendlu ka-Israyeli.

3 Nephi 30

Hearken, O ye Gentiles, and hear the words of Jesus Christ, the Son of the living God, which he hath commanded me that I should speak concerning you, for, behold he commandeth me that I should write, saying:

Turn, all ye Gentiles, from your wicked ways; and repent of your evil doings, of your lyings and deceivings, and of your whoredoms, and of your secret abominations, and your idolatries, and of your murders, and your priestcrafts, and your envyings, and your strifes, and from all your wickedness and abominations, and come unto me, and be baptized in my name, that ye may receive a remission of your sins, and be filled with the Holy Ghost, that ye may be numbered with my people who are of the house of Israel.

UNefi weSine

INcwadi kaNefi

Oyindodana kaNefi—Omunye wabaFundi baJesu Kristu

Umlando wabantu baNefi, ngokombhalo wakhe.

- 1 Futhi kwenzeka ukuthi unyaka wamashumi amathathu nane wedlula, futhi kanjalo nowamashumi amathathu nanhlanu, futhi bheka abafundi baJesu base bakhe ibandla likaKristu kuwo wonke amazwe ndawo zonke. Futhi ngobuningi balabo abeza kubo, futhi bephenduka ngeqiniso ezonweni zabo, babhabhadiswa egameni likaJesu; futhi phezu kwalokho bawuthola uMoya oNgcwele.
- 2 Futhi kwenzeka ngonyaka wamashumi amathathu nesithupha, bonke abantu base bephendukele eNkosini, kubo bonke ubuso bezwe, amaNefi kanye namaLamani, futhi kwakungasekho mibango kanye nazimpikiswano phakathi kwabo, futhi wonke umuntu wayenza ukulunga komunye.
- 3 Futhi babane zinto zonke ngokufanayo phakathi kwabo; ngakho-ke babengekho ababecebile nababempofu, ababegqilaziwe kanye nababekhululekile, kodwa bonke babekhululekile, futhi behlanganyela esiphweni sasezulwini.
- 4 Futhi kwenzeka ukuthi unyaka wamashumi amathathu nesikhombisa wedlula nawo, futhi kwaqhubeka nokuthi kube khona ukuthula ezweni.
- 5 Futhi kwabakhona imisebenzi emikhulu kanye nemangalisayo eyenziwa ngabafundi baJesu, kangangokuthi babelapha abagulayo, futhi bevusa abafuleyo, futhi benza izinyonga ukuthi zihambe, kanye nezimpumpethe ukuthi zithole ukubona kwazo, kanye nezithuli ukuthi zizwe; futhi benza zonke izinhlobo zezimangaliso phakathi kwabantwana babantu; futhi akukho zimangaliso abazenza ngaphandle kokuthi kube segameni likaJesu.

Fourth Nephi

The Book of Nephi

Who Is the Son of Nephi—One of the Disciples of Jesus Christ

An account of the people of Nephi, according to his record.

And it came to pass that the thirty and fourth year passed away, and also the thirty and fifth, and behold the disciples of Jesus had formed a church of Christ in all the lands round about. And as many as did come unto them, and did truly repent of their sins, were baptized in the name of Jesus; and they did also receive the Holy Ghost.

And it came to pass in the thirty and sixth year, the people were all converted unto the Lord, upon all the face of the land, both Nephites and Lamanites, and there were no contentions and disputations among them, and every man did deal justly one with another.

And they had all things common among them; therefore there were not rich and poor, bond and free, but they were all made free, and partakers of the heavenly gift.

And it came to pass that the thirty and seventh year passed away also, and there still continued to be peace in the land.

And there were great and marvelous works wrought by the disciples of Jesus, insomuch that they did heal the sick, and raise the dead, and cause the lame to walk, and the blind to receive their sight, and the deaf to hear; and all manner of miracles did they work among the children of men; and in nothing did they work miracles save it were in the name of Jesus.

6 Futhi unyaka wamashumi amathathu nesishiyagalombili wedlula kanjalo, futhi kanjalo nowamashumi amathathu nesishiyagalolunye, kanye nowamashumi amane nanye, kanye nowamashumi amane nambili, yebo, kwaze kwaba kwedlula ngisho iminyaka engamashumi amane nesishiyagalolunye, futhi kanjalo nowamashumi amahlanu nanye, kanye nowamashumi amahlanu nambili; yebo, futhi kwaze kwaba kwedlula ngisho iminyaka engamashumi amahlanu nesishiyagalolunye.

7 Futhi iNkosi yabaphumelelisa kakhulu ezweni; yebo, kangangokuthi bakha amadolobha futhi lapho okwakukade kukhona amadolobha ayeshisiwe khona.

8 Yebo, ngisho nalelo dolobha elikhulu iZarahemla benza ukuthi liphinde lakhiwe.

9 Kepha ayemaningi amadolobha ayecwilile, futhi kwavela amanzi esikhundleni sawo; ngakho-ke lamadolobha ayengeke akhiwe kabusha.

10 Manje, bheka, kwenzeka ukuthi abantu baNefi bakhula baqina, futhi banda ngokushesha okukhulu, futhi baba ngabantu abahle futhi abathandekayo.

11 Futhi baganwa, futhi bendiswa, futhi babusiswa njengokwezithembiso eziningi iNkosi eyayizenze kubo.

12 Futhi ababange besahamba nanini ngokwezenzo kanye nangokwezimiso zomthetho kaMose; kepha bahamba ngokwemiyalelo ababeyithole eNkosini yabo kanye noNkulunkulu wabo, beqhubeka nokuzila ukudla kanye nokukhuleka, kanye nasekuhlanganyeleni ndawonye njalo ukuze bakhuleke futhi balalele izwi leNkosi.

13 Futhi kwenzeka ukuthi kwakungekho mbango phakathi kwabo bonke abantu, kulo lonke izwe; kepha kwakukhona izimangaliso ezinkulu ezazenzeka phakathi kwabafundi baJesusu.

And thus did the thirty and eighth year pass away, and also the thirty and ninth, and forty and first, and the forty and second, yea, even until forty and nine years had passed away, and also the fifty and first, and the fifty and second; yea, and even until fifty and nine years had passed away.

And the Lord did prosper them exceedingly in the land; yea, insomuch that they did build cities again where there had been cities burned.

Yea, even that great city Zarahemla did they cause to be built again.

But there were many cities which had been sunk, and waters came up in the stead thereof; therefore these cities could not be renewed.

And now, behold, it came to pass that the people of Nephi did wax strong, and did multiply exceedingly fast, and became an exceedingly fair and delightful people.

And they were married, and given in marriage, and were blessed according to the multitude of the promises which the Lord had made unto them.

And they did not walk any more after the performances and ordinances of the law of Moses; but they did walk after the commandments which they had received from their Lord and their God, continuing in fasting and prayer, and in meeting together oft both to pray and to hear the word of the Lord.

And it came to pass that there was no contention among all the people, in all the land; but there were mighty miracles wrought among the disciples of Jesus.

14 Futhi kwenzeka ukuthi unyaka wamashumi ayisikhombisa nanye wedlula, futhi kanjalo nonyaka wamashumi ayisikhombisa nambili, yebo, ukuphetha, kwaze kwaba kudlula ngisho unyaka wamashumi ayisikhombisa nesishiyagalolunye; yebo, ngisho kwaze kwadlula iminyaka eyikhulu, futhi abafundi baJesus, labo ayebakhethile, base bonke bahamba baya eparadesi kaNkulunkulu, ngaphandle kwabathathu ababezohlala; futhi kwaba khona abanye abafundi ababekwa ezikhundleni zabo; futhi ngokunjalo nabaningi baleso sizukulwane base bedlule.

15 Futhi kwenzeka ukuthi kwakungekho mbango ezweni, ngenxa yothando lukaNkulunkulu olwalukhona ezinhliziyweni zabantu.

16 Futhi kwakungekho mona, nazingxabano, naziphithiphithi, nabufebe, nankohliso, nakubulala, nanhloboni yenkanuko; futhi ngempela akusoze kuze kube khona abantu ababethokoze kangaka phakathi kwabo bonke abantu abadalwa yisandla sikaNkulunkulu.

17 Kwakungekho baphangi, nababulali, noma amaLamani, noma nhloboni yabantu ababehlukaniswe ngokobuzwe; kepha bonke babe munye, abantwana baKristu, kanye nezindlalifa zombuso kaNkulunkulu.

18 Futhi babebusiseke kangakanani! Ngokuba iNkosi yababusisa kukho konke ukwenza kwabo; yebo, babusiswa futhi baphumeleliswa kwaze kwaba ngisho ikhulu neshumi leminyaka seledlule; futhi nesizukulwane sokuqala kusukela kuKristu sase sedlule, futhi kwakungekho mbango kulo lonke izwe.

19 Futhi kwenzeka ukuthi uNefi, lowo owayegcine lombhalo wokugcina, (futhi ewugcine ezingcwephehi zikaNefi) wafa, futhi indodana yakhe u-Amose wawugcina esikhundleni sakhe; futhi naye wawugcina kuzo ezingcwephehi zikaNefi.

20 Futhi wawugcina iminyaka engamashumi ayisishiyagalombili nane, futhi kwakulokhu kusekhona ukuthula ezweni, ngaphandle nje kwengxenye encane yabantu ababehlubuke ebandleni futhi bezibiza ngamaLamani; ngakho-ke kwaphinda kwaqala ukuthi kube khona amaLamani futhi ezweni.

And it came to pass that the seventy and first year passed away, and also the seventy and second year, yea, and in fine, till the seventy and ninth year had passed away; yea, even an hundred years had passed away, and the disciples of Jesus, whom he had chosen, had all gone to the paradise of God, save it were the three who should tarry; and there were other disciples ordained in their stead; and also many of that generation had passed away.

And it came to pass that there was no contention in the land, because of the love of God which did dwell in the hearts of the people.

And there were no envyings, nor strifes, nor tumults, nor whoredoms, nor lyings, nor murders, nor any manner of lasciviousness; and surely there could not be a happier people among all the people who had been created by the hand of God.

There were no robbers, nor murderers, neither were there Lamanites, nor any manner of -ites; but they were in one, the children of Christ, and heirs to the kingdom of God.

And how blessed were they! For the Lord did bless them in all their doings; yea, even they were blessed and prospered until an hundred and ten years had passed away; and the first generation from Christ had passed away, and there was no contention in all the land.

And it came to pass that Nephi, he that kept this last record, (and he kept it upon the plates of Nephi) died, and his son Amos kept it in his stead; and he kept it upon the plates of Nephi also.

And he kept it eighty and four years, and there was still peace in the land, save it were a small part of the people who had revolted from the church and taken upon them the name of Lamanites; therefore there began to be Lamanites again in the land.

- 21 Futhi kwenzeka ukuthi u-Amose naye wafa, (futhi kwase kuyiminyaka eyikhulu namashumi ayisishiyagalolunye nane kusukela ekuzeni kukaKristu) futhi indodana yakhe u-Amose yawugcina umbhalo esikhundleni sakhe; futhi nayo ngokunjalo yawugcina kuzo izingcwephe zikaNefi; futhi phezu kwalokho wawubhalwe encwadini kaNefi, okuyilencwadi.
- 22 Futhi kwenzeka ukuthi kwase kudlule iminyaka engamakhulu amabili; futhi nesizukulwane sesibili sase sidlulile sonke ngaphandle nje kwabambalwa.
- 23 Manje mina, Mormoni, ngifuna ukuthi nazi ukuthi abantu base bandile, kangangokuthi base besabalele phezu kobuso bonke bezwe, futhi nokuthi base becebe kakhulu, ngenxa yokuphumelela kwabo kuKristu.
- 24 Manje, kulonyaka wamakhulu amabili nanye kwaqala phakathi kwabo ukuthi kube khona labo abaphakama ekuziqhenyeni, njengokugqoka izingubo ezibizayo, kanye nazo zonke izinhlobo zamagugu amahle kakhulu, kanye nezinto ezinhle kakhulu zomhlaba.
- 25 Futhi kusukela ngaleso sikhathi kuya phambili ababange besaba nezimpahla kanye nezinto phakathi kwabo ngokufanayo nanini.
- 26 Futhi baqala ukuthi behlukane ngezigaba; futhi baqala ukuthi bazakhele amabandla ukuze bathole inzuzo, futhi baqala ukuliphika ibandla leqiniso likaKristu.
- 27 Futhi kwenzeka ukuthi ngesikhathi sekudlule iminyaka engamakhulu amabili neminyaka eyishumi kwase kukhona amabandla amaningi ezweni; yebo, kwakukhona amaningi amabandla ayefakaza ukuthi ayamazi uKristu, kepha ebe eziphika izingxenywe eziningi zevangeli lakhe, kangangokuthi ayevumela yonke inhlobo yenkohlakalo, futhi enika lokho okungcwele kulowo owayengavunyelwe ngenxa yokungafaneleki.
- 28 Futhi leli bandla landa kakhulu ngenxa yobubi, kanye nangenxa yamandla kaSathane owathola ukubambelela ezinhliziyweni zabo.

And it came to pass that Amos died also, (and it was an hundred and ninety and four years from the coming of Christ) and his son Amos kept the record in his stead; and he also kept it upon the plates of Nephi; and it was also written in the book of Nephi, which is this book.

And it came to pass that two hundred years had passed away; and the second generation had all passed away save it were a few.

And now I, Mormon, would that ye should know that the people had multiplied, insomuch that they were spread upon all the face of the land, and that they had become exceedingly rich, because of their prosperity in Christ.

And now, in this two hundred and first year there began to be among them those who were lifted up in pride, such as the wearing of costly apparel, and all manner of fine pearls, and of the fine things of the world.

And from that time forth they did have their goods and their substance no more common among them.

And they began to be divided into classes; and they began to build up churches unto themselves to get gain, and began to deny the true church of Christ.

And it came to pass that when two hundred and ten years had passed away there were many churches in the land; yea, there were many churches which professed to know the Christ, and yet they did deny the more parts of his gospel, insomuch that they did receive all manner of wickedness, and did administer that which was sacred unto him to whom it had been forbidden because of unworthiness.

And this church did multiply exceedingly because of iniquity, and because of the power of Satan who did get hold upon their hearts.

- 29 Futhi phezu kwalokho, kwabakhona elinye ibandla elalimphika uKristu; futhi babehlupha ibandla leqiniso likaKristu, ngenxa yokuthobeka kwabo kanye nokukholwa kwabo kuKristu; futhi babengabafuni ngenxa yezimangaliso eziningi ezazenzeka phakathi kwabo.
- 30 Ngakho-ke basebenzisa amandla kanye negunya kubafundi baJesu ababesele nabo, futhi babaphonsa etilongweni; kepha ngamandla ezwi likaNkulunkulu, ayekubo, amatilongo adabuka kabili, futhi bahamba benza izimangaliso ezinkulu phakathi kwabo.
- 31 Nakuba kunjalo, futhi naphezu kwazo zonke lezi zimangaliso, abantu baziqinisa izinhliziyi zabo, futhi bafuna ukubabulala, ngisho nanjengamaJuda eJerusalema ayefuna ukubulala uJesu, njengokwezwi lakhe.
- 32 Futhi babaphonsa ezithandweni zomlilo, futhi baphuma bengatholanga myocu.
- 33 Futhi phezu kwalokho babaphonsa emiphandwini yezilwane zasendle, futhi badlala nezilwane zasendle ngisho nanjengengane nemvu; futhi baphuma phakathi kwazo, bengatholanga myocu.
- 34 Nakuba kunjalo, abantu baziqinisa izinhliziyi zabo, ngokuba babeholwa ngabaphristi abanengi kanye nabaphrofethi bamanga ukuba bakhe amabandla amaningi, kanye nokuthi benze zonke izinhlobo zobubi. Futhi babashaya abantu baJesu; kepha abantu baJesu abazange baziphindisele. Futhi ngalendlela baya ngokonakala kukho ukungakholwa kanye nasebubini, unyaka nonyaka, kwaze kwaba iminyaka engamakhulu amabili namashumi amathathu iyedlula.
- 35 Manje kwenzeka ngalonyaka, yebo, onyakeni wamakhulu amabili namashumi amathathu nanye, kwaba khona uqhekeko olukhulu phakathi kwabantu.
- 36 Futhi kwenzeka ukuthi ngalonyaka kwaqubuka abantu ababebizwa ngokuthi ngamaNefi, futhi babekholwa ngeqiniso kuKristu; futhi phakathi kwabo kwabakhona labo ababebizwa ngamaLamani—ngamaJakobe, kanye namaJosefa, kanye namaZoramamu;

And again, there was another church which denied the Christ; and they did persecute the true church of Christ, because of their humility and their belief in Christ; and they did despise them because of the many miracles which were wrought among them.

Therefore they did exercise power and authority over the disciples of Jesus who did tarry with them, and they did cast them into prison; but by the power of the word of God, which was in them, the prisons were rent in twain, and they went forth doing mighty miracles among them.

Nevertheless, and notwithstanding all these miracles, the people did harden their hearts, and did seek to kill them, even as the Jews at Jerusalem sought to kill Jesus, according to his word.

And they did cast them into furnaces of fire, and they came forth receiving no harm.

And they also cast them into dens of wild beasts, and they did play with the wild beasts even as a child with a lamb; and they did come forth from among them, receiving no harm.

Nevertheless, the people did harden their hearts, for they were led by many priests and false prophets to build up many churches, and to do all manner of iniquity. And they did smite upon the people of Jesus; but the people of Jesus did not smite again. And thus they did dwindle in unbelief and wickedness, from year to year, even until two hundred and thirty years had passed away.

And now it came to pass in this year, yea, in the two hundred and thirty and first year, there was a great division among the people.

And it came to pass that in this year there arose a people who were called the Nephites, and they were true believers in Christ; and among them there were those who were called by the Lamanites—Jacobites, and Josephites, and Zoramites;

37 Ngakho-ke ababekholwa ngeqiniso kuKristu, kanye nababemkhonza ngeqiniso uKristu, (phakathi kwabo okwakukhona nabafundi abathathu baJesu ababezosala) babebizwa ngamaNefi, kanye namaJakobe, kanye namaJosefa, kanye namaZoramu.

38 Futhi kwenzeka ukuthi labo ababelenqaba ivangeli babizwa ngamaLamani, kanye namaLemuweli, kanye nama-Ishmayeli; futhi abazange baye ngokonakala kukho ukungakhohwa, kepha balivukela ngamabomu ivangeli likaKristu; futhi bafundisa izingane zabo ukuthi zingakhohwa, ngisho nanjengoyise, kusukela ekuqaleni, bencipha.

39 Futhi kwakungenxa yobubi kanye nezinengiso zoyise, ngisho nanjengoba kwakunjalo ekuqaleni. Futhi zafundiswa ukubazonda abantwana baNkulunkulu, ngisho nanjengoba amaLamani afundiswa ukuthi abazonde abantwana baNefi kusukela ekuqaleni.

40 Futhi kwenzeka ukuthi iminyaka engamakhulu amabili kanye namashumi amane neminyaka emine yabe isidlulile, futhi zazimi kanjalo-ke izindaba zalabantu. Futhi ingxenye enobubi kakhulu yabantu yakhula yaqina, futhi yaba ningi kakhulu kunabantu baNkulunkulu.

41 Futhi baqhubeka nokuzakhela amabandla abo, futhi bewahlobisa ngazo zonke izinhlobo zezinto ezingamagugu. Futhi yedlula ngaleyondlela-ke iminyaka engamakhulu amabili kanye namashumi amahlanu, futhi kanjalo neminyaka engamakhulu amabili kanye namashumi ayisithupha.

42 Futhi kwenzeka ukuthi ingxenye enobubi yabantu yaqala futhi ukuthi yenze izifungo eziyimfihlo kanye nezinhlango zikaGadiyantoni.

43 Futhi phezu kwalokho nabantu ababebizwa ngabantu baNefi baqala ukuzikhukhumeza ezinhliziyweni zabo, ngenxa yengcebo yabo eningi, futhi baba nokuzikhukhumeza njengabafowabo, amaLamani.

44 Futhi kusukela ngalesi sikhathi abafundi baqala ukudabuka ngezono zomhlaba.

45 Futhi kwenzeka ukuthi ngesikhathi sekudlule iminyaka engamakhulu amathathu, abantu baNefi kanye namaLamani base benobubi obukhulu ngokufanayo.

Therefore the true believers in Christ, and the true worshipers of Christ, (among whom were the three disciples of Jesus who should tarry) were called Nephites, and Jacobites, and Josephites, and Zoramites.

And it came to pass that they who rejected the gospel were called Lamanites, and Lemuelites, and Ishmaelites; and they did not dwindle in unbelief, but they did wilfully rebel against the gospel of Christ; and they did teach their children that they should not believe, even as their fathers, from the beginning, did dwindle.

And it was because of the wickedness and abomination of their fathers, even as it was in the beginning. And they were taught to hate the children of God, even as the Lamanites were taught to hate the children of Nephi from the beginning.

And it came to pass that two hundred and forty and four years had passed away, and thus were the affairs of the people. And the more wicked part of the people did wax strong, and became exceedingly more numerous than were the people of God.

And they did still continue to build up churches unto themselves, and adorn them with all manner of precious things. And thus did two hundred and fifty years pass away, and also two hundred and sixty years.

And it came to pass that the wicked part of the people began again to build up the secret oaths and combinations of Gadianton.

And also the people who were called the people of Nephi began to be proud in their hearts, because of their exceeding riches, and become vain like unto their brethren, the Lamanites.

And from this time the disciples began to sorrow for the sins of the world.

And it came to pass that when three hundred years had passed away, both the people of Nephi and the Lamanites had become exceedingly wicked one like unto another.

46 Futhi kwenzeka ukuthi abaphangi baGadiyantoni basabalala phezu kobuso bonke bezwe; futhi kwakungasekho namunye owayelungile ngaphandle kwabafundi baJesus. Futhi igolide kanye nesiliva baligcina ngobuningi, futhi bahweba ngayo yonke indlela yokuhweba.

47 Futhi kwenzeka ukuthi emva kokuthi sekudlule iminyaka engamakhulu amathathu, (futhi abantu babesalokhu behleli ebubini) u-Amose wafa; kwathi umfowabo, u-Amaroni, wawugcina umbhalo esikhundleni sakhe.

48 Futhi kwenzeka ukuthi ngesikhathi sekudlule iminyaka engamakhulu amathathu namashumi amabili, u-Amaroni, ngokuphoqwa nguMoya oNgcwele, wayifihla imibhalo engcwele—yebo, ngisho nayo yonke imibhalo engcwele eyayidlulisiwe kwehla izizukulwane ngesizukulwane, eyayingcwele—ngisho kwaze kwaba yiminyaka engamakhulu amathathu namashumi amabili kusukela ekuzeni kukaKristu.

49 Futhi wayifihlela eNkosini, ukuze ize futhi kuyo insali yendlu kaJakobe, njengokweziphrofetho kanye nezithembiso zeNkosi. Uphela kanjalo-ke umbhalo ka-Amaroni.

And it came to pass that the robbers of Gadianton did spread over all the face of the land; and there were none that were righteous save it were the disciples of Jesus. And gold and silver did they lay up in store in abundance, and did traffic in all manner of traffic.

And it came to pass that after three hundred and five years had passed away, (and the people did still remain in wickedness) Amos died; and his brother, Ammaron, did keep the record in his stead.

And it came to pass that when three hundred and twenty years had passed away, Ammaron, being constrained by the Holy Ghost, did hide up the records which were sacred—yea, even all the sacred records which had been handed down from generation to generation, which were sacred—even until the three hundred and twentieth year from the coming of Christ.

And he did hide them up unto the Lord, that they might come again unto the remnant of the house of Jacob, according to the prophecies and the promises of the Lord. And thus is the end of the record of Ammaron.

INcwadi kaMormoni

Mormoni 1

- 1 Manje mina, Mormoni, sengenza umbhalo wezinto engizibonile futhi nengizizwile, futhi ngiwubiza ngeNcwadi kaMormoni.
- 2 Futhi sekuzoba yisikhathi lapho u-Amaroni esezoyifihla imibhalo eNkosini, weza kimi, (mina cishe ngineshumi leminyaka ubudala, futhi ngaqala ukufundiswa ngandlela thize ngendlela yokufunda kwabantu bakithi) futhi u-Amaroni wathi kimi: Ngiyabona ukuthi uyingane enesizotha, futhi uyashesha ukubona;
- 3 Ngakho-ke, uma usuneminyaka cishe engamashumi amabili nane ubudala ngifuna ukuthi uzikhumbule izinto ozibonile mayelana nalabantu; futhi uma sewunaleyo minyaka uhambe uye ezweni i-Antumu, egqumeni eliyobizwa ngokuthi yi Shimi; futhi yilapho engibeke khona eNkosini yonke imiqopho engcwele emayelana nalabantu.
- 4 Futhi bheka, uyothatha izingcwephe zikaNefi zibe kuwe, bese kuthi ezisalayo uzishiye endaweni lapho zikhona; futhi uyoqopha ezingcwephezi zikaNefi zonke izinto ozibonile mayelana nalabantu.
- 5 Futhi mina, Mormoni, ngingowozalo luka Nepi, (futhi igama likababa kwakungu Mormoni) ngazikhumbula lezo zinto u-Amaroni ayengiyale ngazo.
- 6 Futhi kwenzeka ukuthi mina, sengineminyaka eyishumi nanye ubudala, ngathathwa wubaba wangiyisa ezweni elingaseningizimu, ngisho nasezweni lakwaZarahemla.
- 7 Bonke ubuso bezwe base bambozwa yizakhiwo, futhi abantu base baba baningi, cishe njengesihlabathi solwandle.
- 8 Futhi kwenzeka ukuthi ngalonyaka kwaqala ukuthi kube khona impi phakathi kwamaNefi, ayehlanganise amaNefi namaJakobe namaJosefa kanye namaZoram; futhi lempi yayiphakathi kwamaNefi, kanye namaLamani kanye namaLemuweli nama-Ishmaeli.

The Book of Mormon

Mormon 1

And now I, Mormon, make a record of the things which I have both seen and heard, and call it the Book of Mormon.

And about the time that Ammaron hid up the records unto the Lord, he came unto me, (I being about ten years of age, and I began to be learned somewhat after the manner of the learning of my people) and Ammaron said unto me: I perceive that thou art a sober child, and art quick to observe;

Therefore, when ye are about twenty and four years old I would that ye should remember the things that ye have observed concerning this people; and when ye are of that age go to the land Antum, unto a hill which shall be called Shim; and there have I deposited unto the Lord all the sacred engravings concerning this people.

And behold, ye shall take the plates of Nephi unto yourself, and the remainder shall ye leave in the place where they are; and ye shall engrave on the plates of Nephi all the things that ye have observed concerning this people.

And I, Mormon, being a descendant of Nephi, (and my father's name was Mormon) I remembered the things which Ammaron commanded me.

And it came to pass that I, being eleven years old, was carried by my father into the land southward, even to the land of Zarahemla.

The whole face of the land had become covered with buildings, and the people were as numerous almost, as it were the sand of the sea.

And it came to pass in this year there began to be a war between the Nephites, who consisted of the Nephites and the Jacobites and the Josephites and the Zoramites; and this war was between the Nephites, and the Lamanites and the Lemuelites and the Ishmaelites.

- 9 Manje amaLamani namaLemuweli kanye nama-Ishmayeli ayebizwa ngamaLamani, futhi lamaqembu amabili kwakungamaNefi kanye namaLamani.
- 10 Futhi kwenzeka ukuthi impi yaqala ukuba phakathi kwabo emingceleni yaseZarahemla, ngasemfuleni iSidoni.
- 11 Futhi kwenzeka ukuthi amaNefi ayesebuthele ndawonye isibalo esikhulu samadoda, esasedlula ngisho isibalo sezinkulungwane ezingamashumi amathathu. Futhi kwenzeka ukuthi aba nezimpi eziningi ngalowo nyaka, lapho amaNefi anqoba khona amaLamani futhi abulala abaningi bawo.
- 12 Futhi kwenzeka ukuthi amaLamani alihoxisa iqhinga lawo, futhi kwaba khona ukuthula ezweni; futhi ukuthula kwabakhona isikhathi esingangeminyaka emine, lapho kungabanga bikho khona ukuchitheka kwegazi.
- 13 Kepha ububi banda phezu kobuso bonke bezwe, kangangokuthi iNkosi yabathatha abafundi bayo abathandekayo, futhi umsebenzi wezimangaliso kanye nowokwelapha waphela ngenxa yobubi babantu.
- 14 Futhi akubange kusaba khona zipho ezivela eNkosini, futhi uMoya oNgcwele awuzange useza kumuntu, ngenxa yobubi kanye nokungakhulwa kwabo.
- 15 Futhi mina, sengineminyaka eyishumi nanhlanu ubudala futhi ndlela thize senginomqondo onesizotha, ngakho-ke ngavakashelwa yiNkosi, futhi ngezwa futhi ngabazi ubuhle bukaJesu.
- 16 Futhi ngazama ukushumayela kulaba bantu, kepha umlomo wami wawalwa, futhi ngenqatshelwa ukuthi ngishumayele kubo; ngokuba bheka base behlubukile kuNkulunkulu wabo ngamabomu; futhi abafundi abathandekayo bathathwa bakhishwa ezweni, ngenxa yobubi babo.
- 17 Kepha ngahlala phakathi kwabo, kepha ngenqatshelwa ukuthi ngishumayele kubo, ngenxa yobulukhuni bezinhliziyo zabo; futhi ngenxa yobulukhuni bezinhliziyo zabo izwe laqalekiswa ngenxa yabo.

Now the Lamanites and the Lemuelites and the Ishmaelites were called Lamanites, and the two parties were Nephites and Lamanites.

And it came to pass that the war began to be among them in the borders of Zarahemla, by the waters of Sidon.

And it came to pass that the Nephites had gathered together a great number of men, even to exceed the number of thirty thousand. And it came to pass that they did have in this same year a number of battles, in which the Nephites did beat the Lamanites and did slay many of them.

And it came to pass that the Lamanites withdrew their design, and there was peace settled in the land; and peace did remain for the space of about four years, that there was no bloodshed.

But wickedness did prevail upon the face of the whole land, insomuch that the Lord did take away his beloved disciples, and the work of miracles and of healing did cease because of the iniquity of the people.

And there were no gifts from the Lord, and the Holy Ghost did not come upon any, because of their wickedness and unbelief.

And I, being fifteen years of age and being somewhat of a sober mind, therefore I was visited of the Lord, and tasted and knew of the goodness of Jesus.

And I did endeavor to preach unto this people, but my mouth was shut, and I was forbidden that I should preach unto them; for behold they had wilfully rebelled against their God; and the beloved disciples were taken away out of the land, because of their iniquity.

But I did remain among them, but I was forbidden to preach unto them, because of the hardness of their hearts; and because of the hardness of their hearts the land was cursed for their sake.

18 Futhi labaphangi baGadiyantoni, ababephakathi kwamaLamani, baligcwalisa izwe, kangangokuthi abahlala kulo baqala ukugqiba amagugu abo phansi; futhi ashibilika, ngenxa yokuthi iNkosi yaliqalekisa izwe, ukuze bangakwazi ukuwabamba, noma bawagcine futhi.

19 Futhi kwenzeka ukuthi kwaba khona abalumbi, kanye nabathakathi, nemilingo; futhi amandla omubi asebenza phezu kobuso bonke bezwe, ngisho kwaze kwaba kugcwaliseka wonke amazwi ka-Abinadi, futhi kanjalo nakaSamuweli umLamani.

And these Gadianton robbers, who were among the Lamanites, did infest the land, insomuch that the inhabitants thereof began to hide up their treasures in the earth; and they became slippery, because the Lord had cursed the land, that they could not hold them, nor retain them again.

And it came to pass that there were sorceries, and witchcrafts, and magics; and the power of the evil one was wrought upon all the face of the land, even unto the fulfilling of all the words of Abinadi, and also Samuel the Lamanite.

Mormoni 2

- 1 Futhi kwenzeka ngawo lowo nyaka kwaqala ukuthi kube khona impi futhi phakathi kwamaNefi kanye namaLamani. Futhi naphezu kokuthi ngimncane, ngangimkhulu ngomzimba; ngakho-ke abantu baNefi bangibeka ukuthi ngibe ngumholi wabo, noma umholi wamabutho abo.
- 2 Ngakho-ke kwenzeka ukuthi ngonyaka wami weshumi nesithupha ngalwa namaLamani, ngihola amaNefi; ngakho-ke iminyaka engamakhulu amathathu neminyaka engamashumi amabili nesithupha yabe isidlule.
- 3 Futhi kwenzeka ukuthi ngonyaka wamakhulu amathathu neminyaka engamashumi amabili nesikhombisa amaLamani eza kithi ngamandla amakhulu kakhulu, kangangokuthi awesabisa amabutho ami; ngakho-ke awazange alwe, futhi aqala abalekela ngasemazweni ayengasenyakatho.
- 4 Futhi kwenzeka ukuthi saze safika edolobheni lase-Angola, futhi salithatha lelo dolobha, futhi senza amalungiselelo okuthi sizivikele kumaLamani. Futhi kwenzeka ukuthi saliqinisa lelo dolobha ngamandla ethu onke; kepha naphezu kwakho konke ukuliqinisa kwethu amaLamani atheleka phezu kwethu futhi asiphoqa ukuba sibaleke siphumele ngaphandle kwalelo dolobha.
- 5 Futhi baphinde basiphoqa ukuba sibaleke siphume nasezweni lakwaDavide.
- 6 Futhi sahamba saze safika ezweni lakwaJoshuwa, elalisemngceleni entshonalanga ngasogwini lolwandle.
- 7 Futhi kwenzeka ukuthi sabaqoqa abantu bethu ngokushesha okukhulu, ukuze sibaqoqele ndawonye babe yiqembu elilodwa.
- 8 Kepha bheka, izwe laligcwele abaphangi kanye namaLamani; futhi naphezu kokubhujiswa okukhulu okwakulengela abantu bami, abazange baphenduke ekwenzeni kwabo ububi; ngakho-ke kwaba khona igazi nokufa kwabantu abaningi kakhulu kubo bonke ubuso bezwe, nhlangothi zombili kumaNefi futhi kanjalo nakumaLamani; futhi kwaba khona ukuhlubuka okukhulu kubo bonke ubuso bezwe.

Mormon 2

And it came to pass in that same year there began to be a war again between the Nephites and the Lamanites. And notwithstanding I being young, was large in stature; therefore the people of Nephi appointed me that I should be their leader, or the leader of their armies.

Therefore it came to pass that in my sixteenth year I did go forth at the head of an army of the Nephites, against the Lamanites; therefore three hundred and twenty and six years had passed away.

And it came to pass that in the three hundred and twenty and seventh year the Lamanites did come upon us with exceedingly great power, insomuch that they did frighten my armies; therefore they would not fight, and they began to retreat towards the north countries.

And it came to pass that we did come to the city of Angola, and we did take possession of the city, and make preparations to defend ourselves against the Lamanites. And it came to pass that we did fortify the city with our might; but notwithstanding all our fortifications the Lamanites did come upon us and did drive us out of the city.

And they did also drive us forth out of the land of David.

And we marched forth and came to the land of Joshua, which was in the borders west by the seashore.

And it came to pass that we did gather in our people as fast as it were possible, that we might get them together in one body.

But behold, the land was filled with robbers and with Lamanites; and notwithstanding the great destruction which hung over my people, they did not repent of their evil doings; therefore there was blood and carnage spread throughout all the face of the land, both on the part of the Nephites and also on the part of the Lamanites; and it was one complete revolution throughout all the face of the land.

9 Manje, amaLamani ayenenkosi, igama layo okwakuwu-Aroni; futhi weza ezolwa nathi nebutho lezinkulungwane ezingamashumi amane nane. Futhi bheka, ngamelana naye ngabayizinkulungwane ezingamashumi amane nambili. Futhi kwenzeka ukuthi ngamehlula nempiyami kangangokuthi wangibalekela. Futhi bheka, konke lokhu kwenzeka, futhi kwase kudlule iminyaka engamakhulu amathathu neminyaka engamashumi amathathu.

10 Futhi kwenzeka ukuthi amaNefi aqala aphenduka ebumini bawo, futhi aqala ukukhala njengoba kwakuphrofethe uSamuweli umphrofethi; ngokuba bheka kwakungekho namunye umuntu owayekwazi ukugcina lokho okwakungokwakhe, ngenxa yamasela, kanye nabaphangi, kanye nababulali, kanye nobuciko bemilingo, kanye nobuthakathi obabukhona ezweni.

11 Ngakho-ke kwaqala ukuthi kube khona ukukhala kanye nokulila kulo lonke izwe ngenxa yalezi zinto, futhi ikakhulukazi phakathi kwabantu baNefi.

12 Futhi kwenzeka ukuthi ngesikhathi mina, Mormoni, ngibona ukulila kanye nokukhala kwabo kanye nosizi lwabo phambi kweNkosi, inhliziyo yami yaqala ukuthokoza ngaphakathi kimi, ngokwazi isihawu kanye nenhliziyo ende yeNkosi, ngakho-ke nginokucabanga ukuthi yayizoba nesihawu kubo ukuze baphinde futhi babe ngabantu abalungile.

13 Kepha bheka lokuthokoza kwami kwakuyize, ngokuba ukudabuka kwabo kwakungekona okokuphenduka, ngenxa yobuhle bukaNkulunkulu; kepha esikhundleni salokho kwakuwukudabuka kokulahlwa, ngenxa yokuthi iNkosi yayingenakuvuma njalo ukuthi bajabule besesonweni.

14 Futhi abazange beze kuJesus ngezinhliziyo ezidabukileyo kanye nangomphefumulo okhathazekileyo, kepha bamqalekisa uNkulunkulu, futhi bafisa ukufa. Nokho bazabalaza ngenkamba ukuze basindise izimpilo zabo.

And now, the Lamanites had a king, and his name was Aaron; and he came against us with an army of forty and four thousand. And behold, I withstood him with forty and two thousand. And it came to pass that I beat him with my army that he fled before me. And behold, all this was done, and three hundred and thirty years had passed away.

And it came to pass that the Nephites began to repent of their iniquity, and began to cry even as had been prophesied by Samuel the prophet; for behold no man could keep that which was his own, for the thieves, and the robbers, and the murderers, and the magic art, and the witchcraft which was in the land.

Thus there began to be a mourning and a lamentation in all the land because of these things, and more especially among the people of Nephi.

And it came to pass that when I, Mormon, saw their lamentation and their mourning and their sorrow before the Lord, my heart did begin to rejoice within me, knowing the mercies and the long-suffering of the Lord, therefore supposing that he would be merciful unto them that they would again become a righteous people.

But behold this my joy was vain, for their sorrowing was not unto repentance, because of the goodness of God; but it was rather the sorrowing of the damned, because the Lord would not always suffer them to take happiness in sin.

And they did not come unto Jesus with broken hearts and contrite spirits, but they did curse God, and wish to die. Nevertheless they would struggle with the sword for their lives.

15 Futhi kwenzeka ukuthi ukudabuka kwami kwabuyela kimi futhi, futhi ngabona ukuthi usuku lomusa lwase lwedlulile kubo, ngokwasemhlabeni kanye nangokukamoya; ngokuba ngazibona izinkulungwane zabo zigawulelwa phansi ngokuvukela uNkulunkulu wabo ngokusobala, futhi banqwabelana ndawonye njengamalongwe ebusweni bezwe. Futhi waphela ngalendlela-ke unyaka wamakhulu amathathu neminyaka engamashumi amane nane.

16 Futhi kwenzeka ukuthi ngonyaka wamakhulu amathathu neminyaka engamashumi amane nanhlane amaNefi aqala ukubalekela amaLamani; futhi alandelwa kwaze kwaba afika ezweni lakwaJashiyoni, phambi kokuthi aze anqandwe ukuba angene ezindaweni zawo zokucasha.

17 Manje, idolobha lakwaJashiyoni laliseduze nezwe lapho u-Amaroni ayebeke khona imibhalo yeNkosi, ukuze ingashatshalaliswa. Futhi bheka ngase ngihambe njengokwezwi lika-Amaroni, futhi ngazithatha izingcwephe zikaNefi, futhi ngenza umbhalo njengokwamazwi ka-Amaroni.

18 Futhi kuzo izingcwephe zikaNefi ngenze indaba egcwele ngabo bonke ububi kanye nezinengiso; kepha kulezi zingcwephe ngikugwemile ukuthi ngenze indaba egcwele ngobubi kanye nangezinengiso zabo, ngokuba bheka, izigameko eziningi ezilandelanayo zobubi kanye nezinengiso bezilokhu ziphambi kwamehlo ami selokhu ngaba mdala ngokwanele ukuthi ngiqonde izindlela zomuntu.

19 Futhi maye kimi ngenxa yobubi babo; ngokuba inhliziyo yami igcwaliswe ngosizi ngenxa yobubi babo, izinsuku zonke zami; nokho, ngiyazi ukuthi ngiyophakanyiswa ngosuku lokugcina.

20 Futhi kwenzeka ukuthi ngalonyaka abantu baNefi baphinda futhi bazingelwa futhi baphoqwa ukuthi babaleke. Futhi kwenzeka ukuthi saphoqwa ukuthi sibaleke saze safika ngasenyakatho ezweni elalibizwa ngokuthi yiShemi.

21 Futhi kwenzeka ukuthi saliqinisa idolobha iShemi, futhi sabaqoqa abantu bethu kangangoba sasingakwenza, ukuze mhlawumbe sibasindise ekufeni.

And it came to pass that my sorrow did return unto me again, and I saw that the day of grace was passed with them, both temporally and spiritually; for I saw thousands of them hewn down in open rebellion against their God, and heaped up as dung upon the face of the land. And thus three hundred and forty and four years had passed away.

And it came to pass that in the three hundred and forty and fifth year the Nephites did begin to flee before the Lamanites; and they were pursued until they came even to the land of Jashon, before it was possible to stop them in their retreat.

And now, the city of Jashon was near the land where Ammaron had deposited the records unto the Lord, that they might not be destroyed. And behold I had gone according to the word of Ammaron, and taken the plates of Nephi, and did make a record according to the words of Ammaron.

And upon the plates of Nephi I did make a full account of all the wickedness and abominations; but upon these plates I did forbear to make a full account of their wickedness and abominations, for behold, a continual scene of wickedness and abominations has been before mine eyes ever since I have been sufficient to behold the ways of man.

And wo is me because of their wickedness; for my heart has been filled with sorrow because of their wickedness, all my days; nevertheless, I know that I shall be lifted up at the last day.

And it came to pass that in this year the people of Nephi again were hunted and driven. And it came to pass that we were driven forth until we had come northward to the land which was called Shem.

And it came to pass that we did fortify the city of Shem, and we did gather in our people as much as it were possible, that perhaps we might save them from destruction.

22 Futhi kwenzeka ngonyaka wamakhulu amathathu namashumi amane nesithupha aqala ukutholeka phezu kwethu futhi.

23 Futhi kwenzeka ukuthi ngakhuluma kubantu bami, futhi ngabanxusa ngamandla amakhulu, ukuthi bame ngesibindi phambi kwamaLamani futhi balwele abafazi babo, kanye nabantwana babo, kanye nemizi yabo, kanye namakhaya abo.

24 Futhi amazwi ami ndlela thize abavuselela ukuthi baqine, kangangokuthi abazange besawabalekela amaLamani, kepha bema ngesibindi ngokumelene nawo.

25 Futhi kwenzeka ukuthi salwa ngempi yezinkulungwane ezingamashumi amathathu sibhekene nempi yezinkulungwane ezingamashumi amahlanu. Futhi kwenzeka ukuthi sema phambi kwawo ngokuqina okukhulu kangangokuthi asibakelela.

26 Futhi kwenzeka ukuthi ngesikhathi esebalekile sawalandela ngamabutho ethu, futhi saphinda sahangabezana nawo, futhi sawashaya; nokho amandla eNkosi ayengasenathi; yebo, sase sishiywe ukuthi sizilwele ngokwethu, kangangokuthi uMoya weNkosi awuzange uhlale kithi; ngakho-ke sase sibuthakathaka njengabafowethu.

27 Futhi inhliziyoyami yaba nosizi ngenxa yalesi sehlakalo esikhulu senkathazo sabantu bakithi, ngenxa yobubi kanye nezinengiso zabo. Kepha bheka, salwa namaLamani kanye nabaphangi baGadiyantoni, kwaze kwaba siyaphinda siyawathatha amazwe angamafa ethu.

28 Futhi unyaka wamakhulu amathathu neminyaka engamashumi amane nesishiyagalolunye wabe sewudlulile. Futhi ngonyaka wamakhulu amathathu neminyaka engamashumi amahlanu senza isivumelwano namaLamani kanye nabaphangi baGadiyantoni, ngaso esahlukanisa amazwe angamafa ethu.

29 Futhi amaLamani asinika izwe elingasenyakatho, yebo, ngisho kuze kuya emhubheni omncane owawuholela ezweni elingaseningizimu. Thina sawanika amaLamani lonke izwe elingaseningizimu.

And it came to pass in the three hundred and forty and sixth year they began to come upon us again.

And it came to pass that I did speak unto my people, and did urge them with great energy, that they would stand boldly before the Lamanites and fight for their wives, and their children, and their houses, and their homes.

And my words did arouse them somewhat to vigor, insomuch that they did not flee from before the Lamanites, but did stand with boldness against them.

And it came to pass that we did contend with an army of thirty thousand against an army of fifty thousand. And it came to pass that we did stand before them with such firmness that they did flee from before us.

And it came to pass that when they had fled we did pursue them with our armies, and did meet them again, and did beat them; nevertheless the strength of the Lord was not with us; yea, we were left to ourselves, that the Spirit of the Lord did not abide in us; therefore we had become weak like unto our brethren.

And my heart did sorrow because of this the great calamity of my people, because of their wickedness and their abominations. But behold, we did go forth against the Lamanites and the robbers of Gadianton, until we had again taken possession of the lands of our inheritance.

And the three hundred and forty and ninth year had passed away. And in the three hundred and fiftieth year we made a treaty with the Lamanites and the robbers of Gadianton, in which we did get the lands of our inheritance divided.

And the Lamanites did give unto us the land northward, yea, even to the narrow passage which led into the land southward. And we did give unto the Lamanites all the land southward.

Mormoni 3

- 1 Futhi kwenzeka ukuthi amaLamani awazange eze ukuzolwa futhi kwaze kwaba iminyaka eyishumi iyedlula. Futhi bheka, ngangisebenzise abantu bami, amaNefi, ekulungiseleleni amazwe awo kanye nezikhali zawo ukubhekana nesikhathi sempi.
- 2 Futhi kwenzeka ukuthi iNkosi yathi kimi: Shumayela kulaba bantu uthi—Phendukani, nize kimi, nibhabhadiswe, niphinde nakhe ibandla lami, futhi niyosindiswa.
- 3 Futhi nempela ngashumayela kulaba bantu, kepha kwaba yize; futhi abazange babone ukuthi kwakuyiNkosi eyayibasindisile, futhi yabanika ithuba lokuphenduka. Futhi bheka baziqinisa izinhliziyi zabo ngokumelene neNkosi uNkulunkulu wabo.
- 4 Futhi kwenzeka ukuthi emva kokuthi lonyaka weshumi usudlulile, okwakwenza, sekuhlangene konke, iminyaka engamakhulu amathathu namashumi ayisithupha kusukela ekuzeni kukaKristu, inkosi yamaLamani yathumela incwadi kimi, eyayingazisa ngokuthi ayelungiselela ukuthi eze futhi ukuzolwa nathi.
- 5 Futhi kwenzeka ukuthi ngenza abantu bami ukuthi babuthane ndawonye ezweni iNcithakalo, edolobheni elalisemingceleni, ngasentubeni encane eyayiholela ezweni elingaseningizimu.
- 6 Futhi sawabeka lapho amabutho ethu, ukuze sinqande amabutho amaLamani, ukuze angalitholi nanoma yiliphi lamazwe ethu; ngakho-ke saziqinisa ngokumelene nawo ngamandla ethu onke.
- 7 Futhi kwenzeka ukuthi ngonyaka wamakhulu amathathu namashumi ayisithupha nanye amaLamani nempela eza ehlela edolobheni iNcithakalo ukuze azolwa nathi; futhi kwenzeka ukuthi ngalowo nyaka sawehlula, kangangokuthi abuyela emazweni awo futhi.
- 8 Futhi ngonyaka wamakhulu amathathu namashumi ayisithupha nambili aphinda eza ehla ukuzolwa nathi. Futhi saphinda sawehlula, futhi sabulala isibalo esikhulu sawo, kwathi abafileyo bawo baphonswa olwandle.

Mormon 3

And it came to pass that the Lamanites did not come to battle again until ten years more had passed away. And behold, I had employed my people, the Nephites, in preparing their lands and their arms against the time of battle.

And it came to pass that the Lord did say unto me: Cry unto this people—Repent ye, and come unto me, and be ye baptized, and build up again my church, and ye shall be spared.

And I did cry unto this people, but it was in vain; and they did not realize that it was the Lord that had spared them, and granted unto them a chance for repentance. And behold they did harden their hearts against the Lord their God.

And it came to pass that after this tenth year had passed away, making, in the whole, three hundred and sixty years from the coming of Christ, the king of the Lamanites sent an epistle unto me, which gave unto me to know that they were preparing to come again to battle against us.

And it came to pass that I did cause my people that they should gather themselves together at the land Desolation, to a city which was in the borders, by the narrow pass which led into the land southward.

And there we did place our armies, that we might stop the armies of the Lamanites, that they might not get possession of any of our lands; therefore we did fortify against them with all our force.

And it came to pass that in the three hundred and sixty and first year the Lamanites did come down to the city of Desolation to battle against us; and it came to pass that in that year we did beat them, insomuch that they did return to their own lands again.

And in the three hundred and sixty and second year they did come down again to battle. And we did beat them again, and did slay a great number of them, and their dead were cast into the sea.

- 9 Manje, ngenxa yalento enkulu abantu bami, amaNefi, ababeyenzile, baqala ukuqhosha ngamandla abo, futhi baqala ukufunga phambi kwamazulu ukuthi babezoziphindiselela ngegazi labafowabo ababebulewe yizitha zabo.
- 10 Futhi bafunga ngamazulu, futhi kanjalo nangesihlalo sobukhosi sikaNkulunkulu, ukuthi babezohamba bakhuphuke bayolwa nezitha zabo, futhi nokuthi babezozisusa ziphele nya ebusweni bezwe.
- 11 Futhi kwenzeka ukuthi mina, Mormoni, ngenqaba ngaphetha kusukela ngalesi sikhathi kuya phambili ukuthi ngibe ngumkhuzi kanye nomholi walabantu, ngenxa yobubi kanye nezinengiso zabo.
- 12 Bheka, ngangibaholile, naphezu kobubi babo ngangibaholile izikhathi eziningi ukuze bayolwa, futhi ngangibathandile, ngokothando lukaNkulunkulu olwalukimi, ngenhliziyo yami yonke; futhi umphefumulo wami ubakhulekele ngokushisekela okukhulu kuNkulunkulu wami ubude bonke bosuku; nokho, umkhuleko wami wawungenalo ukhoho ngenxa yobulukhuni bezinhliziyi zabo.
- 13 Futhi kathathu ngibakhululile ezandleni zezitha zabo, kepha abazange baphenduke ezonweni zabo.
- 14 Futhi ngesikhathi sebefunge ngakho konke lokho abebenqatshelwe khona yiNkosi kanye nomSindisi wethu uJesu Kristu, ukuthi babezohamba bakhuphukele ezitheni zabo ukuyolwa, futhi baziphindiselele ngegazi labafowabo, bheka izwi leNkosi leza kimi, lithi:
- 15 Impindiselo ingeyami, futhi yimi engizobuyisela; futhi ngenxa yokuthi labantu abazange baphenduke emva kokuthi sengibakhululile, bheka, bayosuswa baphele nya ebusweni bomhlaba.
- 16 Futhi kwenzeka ukuthi ngenqaba ngaphetha ukuthi ngihambe ngikhuphuke ngiyolwa nezitha zami; futhi ngenza njengoba iNkosi yayingiyalile; futhi ngama njengofakazi oyisibukeli ukuze ngivezele umhlaba izinto engazibona futhi ngazizwa, njengoba zazibonakaliswe nguMoya owawufakaze ngezinto ezazizokwenzeka.

And now, because of this great thing which my people, the Nephites, had done, they began to boast in their own strength, and began to swear before the heavens that they would avenge themselves of the blood of their brethren who had been slain by their enemies.

And they did swear by the heavens, and also by the throne of God, that they would go up to battle against their enemies, and would cut them off from the face of the land.

And it came to pass that I, Mormon, did utterly refuse from this time forth to be a commander and a leader of this people, because of their wickedness and abomination.

Behold, I had led them, notwithstanding their wickedness I had led them many times to battle, and had loved them, according to the love of God which was in me, with all my heart; and my soul had been poured out in prayer unto my God all the day long for them; nevertheless, it was without faith, because of the hardness of their hearts.

And thrice have I delivered them out of the hands of their enemies, and they have repented not of their sins.

And when they had sworn by all that had been forbidden them by our Lord and Savior Jesus Christ, that they would go up unto their enemies to battle, and avenge themselves of the blood of their brethren, behold the voice of the Lord came unto me, saying:

Vengeance is mine, and I will repay; and because this people repented not after I had delivered them, behold, they shall be cut off from the face of the earth.

And it came to pass that I utterly refused to go up against mine enemies; and I did even as the Lord had commanded me; and I did stand as an idle witness to manifest unto the world the things which I saw and heard, according to the manifestations of the Spirit which had testified of things to come.

- 17 Ngakho-ke ngiyanihalela nina, beZizwe, futhi kanjalo nani, ndlu ka-Israyeli, ngesikhathi umsebenzi usuqala, kuyofanela ukuthi nizilungiselele ukubuyela ezweni eliyifa lenu;
- 18 Yebo, bhekani, ngibhalela yonke imikhawulo yomhlaba; yebo, kini, zizwana eziyishumi nambili zakwa-Israyeli, eniyokwahlulelwa ngokwemisebenzi yenu yilabo abayishumi nambili uJesus abakhethayo ukuthi babe ngabafundi bakhe ezweni laseJerusalema.
- 19 Futhi phezu kwalokho ngibhalela nensali yalabantu, nabo abayokwahlulelwa ngabayishumi nambili uJesus abakhethayo kulelizwe; futhi bona bayokwahlulelwa ngabanye abayishumi nambili uJesus abakhetha ezweni laseJerusalema.
- 20 Futhi lezi zinto uMoya uyaziveza kimi; ngakho-ke nginibhalela nonke. Futhi ngalesi sizathu ngiyanihalela, ukuze nazi ukuthi kumele nonke nime phambi kwesihlalo sokwahlulela sikaKristu, yebo, wonke umuntu ongowomndeni wonke ka-Adamu, futhi kumele nime ukuthi nahlulelwe ngemisebenzi yenu, noma ngabe mihle noma ngabe mibi.
- 21 Futhi phezu kwalokho ukuze nikhholwe yivangeli likaJesusu Kristu, eniyoba nalo phakathi kwenu; futhi phezu kwalokho ukuze amaJuda, abantu besivumelwano beNkosi, beyokuba nomunye ufakazi ngaphandle kwalowo abambona futhi bamuzwa; ukuthi uJesus, lowo abambulala, wayenguye kanye uKristu kanye noNkulunkulu uqobo.
- 22 Futhi ngifisa ukuthi nginikhholwise nonke nina mikhawulo yomhlaba ukuthi niphenduke futhi nizilungiselele ukuthi nime phambi kwesihlalo sokwahlulela sikaKristu.

Therefore I write unto you, Gentiles, and also unto you, house of Israel, when the work shall commence, that ye shall be about to prepare to return to the land of your inheritance;

Yea, behold, I write unto all the ends of the earth; yea, unto you, twelve tribes of Israel, who shall be judged according to your works by the twelve whom Jesus chose to be his disciples in the land of Jerusalem.

And I write also unto the remnant of this people, who shall also be judged by the twelve whom Jesus chose in this land; and they shall be judged by the other twelve whom Jesus chose in the land of Jerusalem.

And these things doth the Spirit manifest unto me; therefore I write unto you all. And for this cause I write unto you, that ye may know that ye must all stand before the judgment-seat of Christ, yea, every soul who belongs to the whole human family of Adam; and ye must stand to be judged of your works, whether they be good or evil;

And also that ye may believe the gospel of Jesus Christ, which ye shall have among you; and also that the Jews, the covenant people of the Lord, shall have other witness besides him whom they saw and heard, that Jesus, whom they slew, was the very Christ and the very God.

And I would that I could persuade all ye ends of the earth to repent and prepare to stand before the judgment-seat of Christ.

Mormoni 4

- 1 Manje kwenzeka ukuthi ngonyaka wamakhulu amathathu namashumi ayisithupha nantathu amaNefi enyuka namabutho awo ukuze ayokulwa namaLamani, ngaphandle kwezwe iNcithakalo.
- 2 Futhi kwenzeka ukuthi amabutho amaNefi aphoqwa ukuba abuyele emuva futhi ezweni leNcithakalo. Futhi ngesikhathi besacobekile, ibutho elisha lamaLamani lathaleka phezu kwabo; futhi baba nempi enzima kakhulu, kangangokuthi amaLamani alithatha idolobha iNcithakalo, futhi abulala abaningi bamaNefi, futhi athatha eziningi iziboshwa.
- 3 Futhi insalela yabaleka futhi yayohlangana nabahlali basedolobheni iTeyankumi. Manje idolobha iTeyankumi lalingasemngceleni eduze nogu lolwandle; futhi phezu kwalokho laliseduze nedolobha iNcithakalo.
- 4 Futhi kwakungenxa yokuthi amabutho amaNefi akhuphuka aya kumaLamani ukuthi aze ashayeke; ngokuba ukuba kwakungenjalo, amaLamani ayengeke abe namandla phezu kwabo.
- 5 Kepha, bhekani, izahlulelo zikaNkulunkulu zizoza kwababi; futhi ababi bajeziswa ngababi; ngokuba ababi baphehla izinhliziyi zabantwana babantu ukuba bachithe igazi.
- 6 Futhi kwenzeka ukuthi amaLamani enza amalungiselelo okuthi ayohlasela idolobha iTeyankumi.
- 7 Futhi kwenzeka ngonyaka wamakhulu amathathu namashumi ayisithupha nane amaLamani alihlasela idolobha iTeyankumi, ukuze aphinde alithathe lelo dolobha.
- 8 Futhi kwenzeka ukuthi akhalinywa futhi abuyiselwa emuva ngamaNefi. Futhi ngesikhathi amaNefi ebona ukuthi ayesewabuyisele emuva amaLamani aphinda futhi aziqhayisa ngamandla awo; futhi ahamba ngamandla awo, futhi aphinda alithatha idolobha iNcithakalo.
- 9 Manje zonke lezi zinto zase zenzekile, futhi kwase kubulewe izinkulungwane nhlangothi zombili, kumaNefi kanye nakumaLamani.

Mormon 4

And now it came to pass that in the three hundred and sixty and third year the Nephites did go up with their armies to battle against the Lamanites, out of the land Desolation.

And it came to pass that the armies of the Nephites were driven back again to the land of Desolation. And while they were yet weary, a fresh army of the Lamanites did come upon them; and they had a sore battle, insomuch that the Lamanites did take possession of the city Desolation, and did slay many of the Nephites, and did take many prisoners.

And the remainder did flee and join the inhabitants of the city Teancum. Now the city Teancum lay in the borders by the seashore; and it was also near the city Desolation.

And it was because the armies of the Nephites went up unto the Lamanites that they began to be smitten; for were it not for that, the Lamanites could have had no power over them.

But, behold, the judgments of God will overtake the wicked; and it is by the wicked that the wicked are punished; for it is the wicked that stir up the hearts of the children of men unto bloodshed.

And it came to pass that the Lamanites did make preparations to come against the city Teancum.

And it came to pass in the three hundred and sixty and fourth year the Lamanites did come against the city Teancum, that they might take possession of the city Teancum also.

And it came to pass that they were repulsed and driven back by the Nephites. And when the Nephites saw that they had driven the Lamanites they did again boast of their own strength; and they went forth in their own might, and took possession again of the city Desolation.

And now all these things had been done, and there had been thousands slain on both sides, both the Nephites and the Lamanites.

- 10 Futhi kwenzeka ukuthi kwase kudlule unyaka wamakhulu amathathu namashumi ayisithupha nesithupha, futhi amaLamani aphinda abuya futhi ukuzohlasela amaNefi ukuze alwe nawo; nokho amaNefi awaphendukanga ebubini ayebenzile, kepha aphikelela ebubini bawo njalonjalo.
- 11 Futhi ngeke lukwazi ulimi ukuchaza, noma umuntu abhale incazelo ephelele ngeshlakalo esinyantisayo segazi kanye nokufa kwabantu abaningi okwaba phakathi kwalabantu, amaNefi kanye namaLamani; futhi zonke izinhliziyi zaba lukhuni, kangangoba bakujabulela ukuchitha igazi njalonjalo.
- 12 Futhi kwakungakaze kube khona ububi obukhulu kangaka phakathi kwabantwana bonke baLehi, noma ngisho phakathi kwawo wonke umuzi ka-Israyeli, ngokwamazwi eNkosi, njengoba baba khona phakathi kwalabantu.
- 13 Futhi kwenzeka ukuthi amaLamani alithatha idolobha iNcithakalo, futhi lokhu kwakungenxa yokuthi isibalo sawo sasisedlula leso samaNefi.
- 14 Futhi aphinda ahamba ayohlasela idolobha iTeyankumi, futhi abakhipha abahlali bakhona kulo, futhi athatha eziningi iziboshwa zabesifazane kanye nabantwana, futhi anikela ngabo njengeminikelo konkulunkulu bawo abayizithombe.
- 15 Futhi kwenzeka ukuthi ngonyaka wamakhulu amathathu namashumi ayisithupha nesikhombisa, amaNefi ethukuthele ngenxa yokuthi amaLamani ayenikele ngabesifazane bawo kanye nabantwana bawo, kangangokuthi awahlasela amaLamani ngentukuthelo enkulu kakhulu, kangangokuthi aphinda awahlula amaLamani, futhi awaphoqa ukuthi abaleke emazweni awo.
- 16 Futhi amaLamani awabange esabuya futhi ukuzohlasela amaNefi kwaze kwaba ngunyaka wamakhulu amathathu namashumi ayisikhombisa nanhlanu.
- 17 Futhi ngalonyaka ehla azohlasela amaNefi ngamandla awo wonke; futhi ayengabaleki ngenxa yobuningi besibalo sawo.
- 18 Futhi kusukela ngalesi sikhathi kuya phambili amaNefi awabange esaba namandla phezu kwamaLamani, kepha aqala ashanelwa yiwo ngisho nanjengamazolo phambi kwelanga.

And it came to pass that the three hundred and sixty and sixth year had passed away, and the Lamanites came again upon the Nephites to battle; and yet the Nephites repented not of the evil they had done, but persisted in their wickedness continually.

And it is impossible for the tongue to describe, or for man to write a perfect description of the horrible scene of the blood and carnage which was among the people, both of the Nephites and of the Lamanites; and every heart was hardened, so that they delighted in the shedding of blood continually.

And there never had been so great wickedness among all the children of Lehi, nor even among all the house of Israel, according to the words of the Lord, as was among this people.

And it came to pass that the Lamanites did take possession of the city Desolation, and this because their number did exceed the number of the Nephites.

And they did also march forward against the city Teancum, and did drive the inhabitants forth out of her, and did take many prisoners both women and children, and did offer them up as sacrifices unto their idol gods.

And it came to pass that in the three hundred and sixty and seventh year, the Nephites being angry because the Lamanites had sacrificed their women and their children, that they did go against the Lamanites with exceedingly great anger, insomuch that they did beat again the Lamanites, and drive them out of their lands.

And the Lamanites did not come again against the Nephites until the three hundred and seventy and fifth year.

And in this year they did come down against the Nephites with all their powers; and they were not numbered because of the greatness of their number.

And from this time forth did the Nephites gain no power over the Lamanites, but began to be swept off by them even as a dew before the sun.

- 19 Futhi kwenzeka ukuthi amaLamani ehla alihlasela idolobha iNcithakalo; futhi kwaba nempi enzima kakhulu eyaliwa ezweni iNcithakalo, lapho amaNefi ehlulwa khona.
- 20 Futhi aphinda awabalekela, futhi aze ayofika edolobheni iBowazi; futhi lapho ema alwa namaLamani ngesibindi esikhulu, kangangokuthi amaLamani awawehlulanga kwaze kwaba abuyela okwesibili futhi.
- 21 Futhi ngesikhathi esebuyela okwesibili, amaNefi axoshwa futhi abulawa kakhulu; abesifazane bawo kanye nabantwana bawo baphinda benziwa umhlathshelo wezithombe.
- 22 Futhi kwenzeka ukuthi amaNefi aphinda futhi awabalekela, ehamba nabo bonke ababehlala emadolobheni kanye nasezigodini.
- 23 Manje mina, Mormoni, ngokubona ukuthi amaLamani ayesezolibhubhisa izwe, ngakho-ke ngaya egqumeni iShimi, futhi ngathatha yonke imibhalo u-Amaroni ayeyifihlele eNkosini.

And it came to pass that the Lamanites did come down against the city Desolation; and there was an exceedingly sore battle fought in the land Desolation, in the which they did beat the Nephites.

And they fled again from before them, and they came to the city Boaz; and there they did stand against the Lamanites with exceeding boldness, in-somuch that the Lamanites did not beat them until they had come again the second time.

And when they had come the second time, the Nephites were driven and slaughtered with an exceedingly great slaughter; their women and their children were again sacrificed unto idols.

And it came to pass that the Nephites did again flee from before them, taking all the inhabitants with them, both in towns and villages.

And now I, Mormon, seeing that the Lamanites were about to overthrow the land, therefore I did go to the hill Shim, and did take up all the records which Ammaron had hid up unto the Lord.

Mormoni 5

- 1 Futhi kwenzeka ukuthi ngaya phakathi kwamaNefi, futhi ngasihoxisa isifungo engangisenzile sokuthi ngeke nanini ngisaphinda ngiwasize; futhi angibeka ukuthi ngiphinde ngikhuze amabutho awo, ngokuba ayengithatha njengomuntu owayengakwazi ukuthi awakhulule ezinhluphekweni zawo.
- 2 Kepha bheka, ngangingenathemba, ngokuba ngangizazi izahlulelo zeNkosi ezazizoza kuwo; ngokuba awaphendukanga ebubini bawo, kepha azabalazela izimpilo zawo ngaphandle kokubiza lowo Muntu owawadalayo.
- 3 Futhi kwenzeka ukuthi amaLamani eza azosihlasela njengoba sase sibalekele edolobheni iJordan; kepha bheka, aphoqwa ukuthi abuyele emuva kangangokuthi awazange alithathe idolobha ngaleso sikhathi.
- 4 Futhi kwenzeka ukuthi aphinda eza azosihlasela futhi, kodwa saligcina idolobha. Futhi phezu kwalokho kwakukhona amanye amadolobha ayegcinwe ngamaNefi, izinqaba zawo ezaziqinile ezawanjanda ukuthi angakwazi ukungena ezweni elaliphambi kwethu, ukuze abulale ababehlala ezweni lethu.
- 5 Kepha kwenzeka ukuthi noma ngabe yimaphi amazwe esasidlule kuwo, futhi ababehlala khona ababengaqoqwanga kuwo, babulawa ngamaLamani, kanye nemizana yabo, kanye nezigodi zabo, futhi amadolobha ashiswa ngomlilo; wedlula kanjalo-ke unyaka wamakhulu amathathu namashumi ayisikhombisa kanye nesishiyagalolunye.
- 6 Futhi kwenzeka ukuthi ngonyaka wamakhulu amathathu nesishiyagalombili amaLamani eza futhi azolwa nathi, futhi sema salwa nawo ngesibindi; kepha konke kwaba yize, ngokuba sasisikhulu kakhulu isibalo sawo kangangokuthi abanyathela abantu baNefi phansi kwezinyawo zawo.
- 7 Futhi kwenzeka ukuthi saphinda sabaleka, futhi labo ababenejubane elikhulu kunelamaLamani baphunyuka, futhi labo ababenejubane elalingaledluli elamaLamani babanjwa futhi babulawa.

Mormon 5

And it came to pass that I did go forth among the Nephites, and did repent of the oath which I had made that I would no more assist them; and they gave me command again of their armies, for they looked upon me as though I could deliver them from their afflictions.

But behold, I was without hope, for I knew the judgments of the Lord which should come upon them; for they repented not of their iniquities, but did struggle for their lives without calling upon that Being who created them.

And it came to pass that the Lamanites did come against us as we had fled to the city of Jordan; but behold, they were driven back that they did not take the city at that time.

And it came to pass that they came against us again, and we did maintain the city. And there were also other cities which were maintained by the Nephites, which strongholds did cut them off that they could not get into the country which lay before us, to destroy the inhabitants of our land.

But it came to pass that whatsoever lands we had passed by, and the inhabitants thereof were not gathered in, were destroyed by the Lamanites, and their towns, and villages, and cities were burned with fire; and thus three hundred and seventy and nine years passed away.

And it came to pass that in the three hundred and eightieth year the Lamanites did come again against us to battle, and we did stand against them boldly; but it was all in vain, for so great were their numbers that they did tread the people of the Nephites under their feet.

And it came to pass that we did again take to flight, and those whose flight was swifter than the Lamanites' did escape, and those whose flight did not exceed the Lamanites' were swept down and destroyed.

- 8 Manje bheka, mina, Mormoni, angifuni ukukhathaza imiphefumulo yabantu ngokubeka phambi kwabo isimo esibi kanjena segazi kanye nokubulawa okukhulu kwabantu njengoba kwaku phambi kwamehlo ami; kepha mina, ngazi ukuthi lezi zinto kufanele ngempela zambulwe, futhi nokuthi zonke izinto ezifihlakele kufanele zivezwe phezu kwezicongo zezindlu—
- 9 Futhi phezu kwalokho nokuthi ulwazi lwalezi zinto kufanele luze kuyo insali yalabantu, futhi kanjalo nakubo abeZizwe, iNkosi eyathi bayobahlakaza labantu, futhi nokuthi labantu bayothathwa njengento engelutho phakathi kwabo—ngakho-ke ngibhala okufingqiwe okuncane, ngingenakulokotha ukuthi nginikeze nakancane nje udaba olugcwele lwalezi zinto engizibonile, ngenxa yomyalelo engiwutholile, futhi nokuthi ningabi nosizi olukhulu ngenxa yobubi balabantu.
- 10 Manje bheka, lokhu sengikukhuluma kuyo inzalo yabo, futhi kanjalo nakubo abeZizwe labo abayikhathalele indlu ka-Israyeli, labo ababonayo futhi abaziyo ukuthi izibusiso zabo zivelaphi.
- 11 Ngokuba ngiyazi ukuthi abanjalo bayoba nosizi ngenxa yokuhlupheka kwendlu ka-Israyeli; yebo, bayoba nosizi ngenxa yokubulawa kwalabantu; bayoba nosizi ukuthi labantu abazange baphenduke ukuze basingathwe ezingalweni zikaJesu.
- 12 Manje lezi zinto zibhalelwe insali yendlu kaJakobe; futhi zibhalwe ngalendlela, ngenxa yokuthi uNkulunkulu uyazi ukuthi ububi abunakuziletha kubo; futhi kufanele zifihlelwe eNkosini ukuze zivele ngesikhathi sayo esifanelekile.
- 13 Futhi lona ngumyalelo engiwutholile; futhi bheka, ziyovela ngokomyalelo weNkosi, ngesikhathi isibona ukuthi sekufanele, ngokuhlakanipha kwayo.

And now behold, I, Mormon, do not desire to harrow up the souls of men in casting before them such an awful scene of blood and carnage as was laid before mine eyes; but I, knowing that these things must surely be made known, and that all things which are hid must be revealed upon the housetops—

And also that a knowledge of these things must come unto the remnant of these people, and also unto the Gentiles, who the Lord hath said should scatter this people, and this people should be counted as naught among them—therefore I write a small abridgment, daring not to give a full account of the things which I have seen, because of the commandment which I have received, and also that ye might not have too great sorrow because of the wickedness of this people.

And now behold, this I speak unto their seed, and also to the Gentiles who have care for the house of Israel, that realize and know from whence their blessings come.

For I know that such will sorrow for the calamity of the house of Israel; yea, they will sorrow for the destruction of this people; they will sorrow that this people had not repented that they might have been clasped in the arms of Jesus.

Now these things are written unto the remnant of the house of Jacob; and they are written after this manner, because it is known of God that wickedness will not bring them forth unto them; and they are to be hid up unto the Lord that they may come forth in his own due time.

And this is the commandment which I have received; and behold, they shall come forth according to the commandment of the Lord, when he shall see fit, in his wisdom.

- 14 Futhi bheka, ziyoya kwabangakholwayo bamaJuda; futhi ziyoya ngenxa yalesi sizathu —ukuze bakhohlwisa ukuthi uJesu unguKristu, iNdodana kaNkulunkulu ophilayo; ukuze uBaba afeze, ngaye oThandiweyo kakhulu wakhe, inhloso yakhe enkulu futhi yaphakade, ukuthi kubuyiswe amaJuda, noma yonke indlu ka-Israyeli, ezweni labo eliyifa, iNkosi uNkulunkulu wabo abanika lona, ukuze agcwalise isivumelwano sakhe;
- 15 Futhi phezu kwalokho ukuze inzalo yalabantu ilikhohlwe ngokuphelele ivangeli lakhe, eliyiza kubo livela kwabeZizwe; ngokuba labantu bayohlakazwa, futhi bayoba ngabantu abamnyama, abangcolile, futhi abanengekile, babe babi kakhulu kunalokho abake baba yikho phakathi kwethu, yebo, ngisho kunalokho abake baba yikho phakathi kwamaLamani, futhi lokhu ngenxa yokungakholwa kwabo kanye nokukhonza izithixo—
- 16 Ngokuba bheka, uMoya weNkosi sewayeka vele ukuthi uhlale noyise; futhi abanaye uKristu noNkulunkulu emhlabeni; futhi bayazulazula njengamakhoba emoyeni.
- 17 Bake baba ngabantu abathandekayo, futhi babe noKristu njengomalusi wabo; yebo, babeholwa ngisho nawuBaba uNkulunkulu.
- 18 Kepha manje, bheka, sebehola nguSathane, ngisho nanjengamakhoba ezungeziswa wumoya, noma njengesikebhe siphonseka lapha nalaphaya emagagasini, ngaphandle koseyili noma ihange, noma kungekho nto yokusiqondisa; futhi njengaso-ke, nabo banjalo.
- 19 Futhi bheka, iNkosi izibekile izibusiso zabo, okungabe bazithola kulelizwe, ukuze zitholwe ngabeZizwe abayoba ngabanini balelizwe.
- 20 Kepha bheka, kuyokwenzeka ukuthi bayophoqwa ukuthi babaleke futhi bahlakazwe ngabeZizwe; futhi emva kokuthi sebephoqwe ukuthi babaleke futhi bahlakazwa ngabeZizwe, bheka, ngaleso sikhathi iNkosi iyosikhumbula isivumelwano eyasenza ku-Abrahama kanye nakuyo yonke indlu ka-Israyeli.
- 21 Futhi phezu kwalokho iNkosi iyoyikhumbula imikhuleko yabalungile, eyalethwa kuyo ilethelwa bona.

And behold, they shall go unto the unbelieving of the Jews; and for this intent shall they go—that they may be persuaded that Jesus is the Christ, the Son of the living God; that the Father may bring about, through his most Beloved, his great and eternal purpose, in restoring the Jews, or all the house of Israel, to the land of their inheritance, which the Lord their God hath given them, unto the fulfilling of his covenant;

And also that the seed of this people may more fully believe his gospel, which shall go forth unto them from the Gentiles; for this people shall be scattered, and shall become a dark, a filthy, and a loathsome people, beyond the description of that which ever hath been amongst us, yea, even that which hath been among the Lamanites, and this because of their unbelief and idolatry.

For behold, the Spirit of the Lord hath already ceased to strive with their fathers; and they are without Christ and God in the world; and they are driven about as chaff before the wind.

They were once a delightful people, and they had Christ for their shepherd; yea, they were led even by God the Father.

But now, behold, they are led about by Satan, even as chaff is driven before the wind, or as a vessel is tossed about upon the waves, without sail or anchor, or without anything wherewith to steer her; and even as she is, so are they.

And behold, the Lord hath reserved their blessings, which they might have received in the land, for the Gentiles who shall possess the land.

But behold, it shall come to pass that they shall be driven and scattered by the Gentiles; and after they have been driven and scattered by the Gentiles, behold, then will the Lord remember the covenant which he made unto Abraham and unto all the house of Israel.

And also the Lord will remember the prayers of the righteous, which have been put up unto him for them.

- 22 Futhi uma kunjalo, O nina beZizwe, ningama kanjani phambi kwamandla kaNkulunkulu, ngaphandle kokuthi niphenduke futhi nibuye ezindleleni zenu ezimbi na?
- 23 Anazi yini ukuthi nisezandleni zikaNkulunkulu na? Anazi yini ukuthi unamandla onke, futhi ngokuyala kwakhe okukhulu umhlaba uyogoqwa ndawonye njengomqulu na?
- 24 Ngakho-ke, phendukani, futhi nizithobe phambi kwakhe, hleze eze ngokulunga ehlisele isijeziso sakhe kini—hleze insali yenzalo kaJakobe ihambe phakathi kwenu njenge ngonyama, futhi inidabule nibe yizicucu, futhi kungabi bikho namunye oyonikhulula.

And then, O ye Gentiles, how can ye stand before the power of God, except ye shall repent and turn from your evil ways?

Know ye not that ye are in the hands of God? Know ye not that he hath all power, and at his great command the earth shall be rolled together as a scroll?

Therefore, repent ye, and humble yourselves before him, lest he shall come out in justice against you—lest a remnant of the seed of Jacob shall go forth among you as a lion, and tear you in pieces, and there is none to deliver.

Mormoni 6

- 1 Manje sengiyawuqedela umbhalo wami omayelana nokubhujiswa kwabantu bami, amaNefi. Futhi kwenzeka ukuthi sahamba saya phambi kwamaLamani.
- 2 Futhi mina, Mormoni, ngabhalela inkosi yamaLamani incwadi, futhi nginesifiso sokuthi isivumele ukuthi sibuthele ndawonye abantu bethu ezweni laseKumora, ngasegqumeni elalibizwa ngokuthi yiKumora, futhi lapho sasizolwa nawo.
- 3 Futhi kwenzeka ukuthi inkosi yamaLamani yanginika leyonto engangiyifisa.
- 4 Futhi kwenzeka ukuthi sahamba saya ezweni laseKumora, futhi sagxumeka amatende ethu azungeza igquma iKumora; futhi kwakusezweni lamanzi amaningi, imifula, kanye nemithombo; futhi lapha sasinethemba lokuthi sasizowehlula amaLamani.
- 5 Futhi ngesikhathi sekudlule iminyaka engamakhulu amathathu namashumi ayisishiyagalombili nane, sase sibuthele bonke abantu bethu ababesasele ezweni laseKumora.
- 6 Futhi kwenzeka ukuthi ngesikhathi sesibuthele ndawonye bonke abantu bethu baba yiqoqo elilodwa ezweni laseKumora, bheka mina, Mormoni, ngaqala ukuthi ngibe mdala; futhi ngazi ukuthi kwase kuzoba wumzabalazo wokugcina wabantu bakithi, futhi ngiyalwe yiNkosi ukuthi ngingavumeli imibhalo eyayidluliselwe ngobaba bethu, eyayingcwele, ukuthi iwele ezandleni zamaLamani, (ngokuba amaLamani ayezoyishabalalisa) ngakho-ke ngenza lombhalo ngiwususela ezingcwephezi zikaNefi, futhi ngayifihla egqumeni iKumora yonke imibhalo enganginikezwe yona ngesandla seNkosi, ngaphandle kwalezi zingcwephe ezimbalwa engazinika indodana yami uMoroni.
- 7 Futhi kwenzeka ukuthi abantu bami, kanye nabafazi babo kanye nabantwana babo, manje bawabona amabutho amaLamani ehamba eza ngakubo; futhi bawalinda ngalokho kwesaba okukhulu kokufa okugcwalisa izifuba zabo bonke ababi, ukuze balwe nawo.

Mormon 6

And now I finish my record concerning the destruction of my people, the Nephites. And it came to pass that we did march forth before the Lamanites.

And I, Mormon, wrote an epistle unto the king of the Lamanites, and desired of him that he would grant unto us that we might gather together our people unto the land of Cumorah, by a hill which was called Cumorah, and there we could give them battle.

And it came to pass that the king of the Lamanites did grant unto me the thing which I desired.

And it came to pass that we did march forth to the land of Cumorah, and we did pitch our tents around about the hill Cumorah; and it was in a land of many waters, rivers, and fountains; and here we had hope to gain advantage over the Lamanites.

And when three hundred and eighty and four years had passed away, we had gathered in all the remainder of our people unto the land of Cumorah.

And it came to pass that when we had gathered in all our people in one to the land of Cumorah, behold I, Mormon, began to be old; and knowing it to be the last struggle of my people, and having been commanded of the Lord that I should not suffer the records which had been handed down by our fathers, which were sacred, to fall into the hands of the Lamanites, (for the Lamanites would destroy them) therefore I made this record out of the plates of Nephi, and hid up in the hill Cumorah all the records which had been entrusted to me by the hand of the Lord, save it were these few plates which I gave unto my son Moroni.

And it came to pass that my people, with their wives and their children, did now behold the armies of the Lamanites marching towards them; and with that awful fear of death which fills the breasts of all the wicked, did they await to receive them.

- 8 Futhi kwenzeka ukuthi eza azolwa nathi, futhi wonke umuntu wayegcwele ukwesaba ngenxa yobukhulu besibalo sawo.
- 9 Futhi kwenzeka ukuthi awela phezu kwabantu bami ngenkemba, kanye nangomtsalo, kanye nangomcibisholo, kanye nangembazo, kanye nangazo zonke izinhlobo zezikhali zempi.
- 10 Futhi kwenzeka ukuthi abantu bami bagawulelwa phansi, yebo, ngisho nezinkulungwane eziyishumi zami ezazinami, futhi nami ngawela phakathi kwazo ngilimele; futhi edlula ngakimi kangangokuthi awazange ayiqede impilo yami.
- 11 Futhi ngesikhathi esedlulile futhi agawulela phansi bonke abantu bami ngaphandle kwabangamashumi amabili nane bethu, (phakathi kwabo okwakukhona nendodana yami uMoroni) futhi sisindile ekubulaweni kwabantu bethu, sabona ngakusasa, ngesikhathi amaLamani esephindele ezinkanjini zawo, siphezulu egqumeni iKumora, abantu bami abayizinkulungwane eziyishumi ababegawulelwe phansi, ababeholwa yimi phambili.
- 12 Futhi saphinde sabona izinkulungwane eziyishumi zabantu bami ababeholwa yindodana yami uMoroni.
- 13 Futhi bheka, izinkulungwane eziyishumi zikaGidigidona zaziwile, futhi naye ngokunjalo ephakathi.
- 14 Futhi uLama wayewile nezinkulungwane zakhe eziyishumi; futhi noGiligali wayewile nezinkulungwane zakhe eziyishumi; noLimiha wayewile nezinkulungwane zakhe eziyishumi; kanjalo noJenewumu wayewile nezinkulungwane zakhe eziyishumi; kanye noKumeniha, kanye noMoroniha, kanye no-Antiyonumu, kanye noShibilomu, kanye noShemi, kanye noJoshi, babewile nezinkulungwane zabo eziyishumi ngamunye.

And it came to pass that they came to battle against us, and every soul was filled with terror because of the greatness of their numbers.

And it came to pass that they did fall upon my people with the sword, and with the bow, and with the arrow, and with the ax, and with all manner of weapons of war.

And it came to pass that my men were hewn down, yea, even my ten thousand who were with me, and I fell wounded in the midst; and they passed by me that they did not put an end to my life.

And when they had gone through and hewn down all my people save it were twenty and four of us, (among whom was my son Moroni) and we having survived the dead of our people, did behold on the morrow, when the Lamanites had returned unto their camps, from the top of the hill Cumorah, the ten thousand of my people who were hewn down, being led in the front by me.

And we also beheld the ten thousand of my people who were led by my son Moroni.

And behold, the ten thousand of Gidgiddonah had fallen, and he also in the midst.

And Lamah had fallen with his ten thousand; and Gilgal had fallen with his ten thousand; and Limhah had fallen with his ten thousand; and Jeneum had fallen with his ten thousand; and Cumenihah, and Moronihah, and Antionum, and Shiblom, and Shem, and Josh, had fallen with their ten thousand each.

- 15 Futhi kwenzeka ukuthi kwakukhona abanye abayishumi abawa ngenkamba, kanye nezinkulungwane zabo eziyishumi ngamunye; yebo, ngisho nabo bonke abantu bami, ngaphandle kwalabo abangamashumi amabili nane ababenami, futhi kanjalo nabambalwa ababebalekele emazweni aseningizimu, futhi nalabo abambalwa ababembukele kumaLamani, babewile; futhi izidumbu zabo; kanye namathambo; kanye negazi kwakulele phansi, kushiywe yizandla zalabo abababulala ukuze kubole ezweni, futhi nokuthi kubhudluke futhi kubuyele kunina wakho umhlabathi.
- 16 Futhi umphefumulo wami wadabuka wubuhlungu, ngenxa yokubulawa kwabantu bami, futhi ngakhala ngathi:
- 17 O nina enibahle, ngabe niphambuke kanjani ezindleleni zeNkosi! O nina enibahle, ngabe nimphike kanjani lowo Jesu, owayemi nezandla ezivulekile ukuze anemukele!
- 18 Bhekani, ukuba anikwenzanga lokhu, beningezukuwa. Kepha bhekani, seniwile, futhi sengikhalela ukulahleka kwenu.
- 19 O nina madodana kanye namadodakazi amahle, nina bobaba kanye nomama, nina madoda kanye nabafazi, nina enibahle, niwe kanjani!
- 20 Kepha bhekani, senihambile, futhi izinsizi zami ngeke zisanibuyisa.
- 21 Futhi usuku luyeza masinyane lapho umzimba wenu ofayo kufanele wembathe ukungafi, futhi lemizimba manje ebolayo kufanele masinyane ibe yimizimba engenakubola; futhi ngaleso sikhathi kufanele nime phambi kwesihlalo sokwahlulela sikaKristu, ukuze nahlulelwe ngokwemisebenzi yenu; futhi uma kuwukuthi nilungile, ngaleso sikhathi niyobusiswa noyihlo asebahamba phambi kwenu.
- 22 O ukuba beniphendukile ngaphambi kokuthi lokubhubha okukhulu kuze phezu kwenu. Kepha bhekani, senihambile, futhi noBaba, yebo, uBaba oPhakade wasezulwini, uyasazi isimo senu; futhi uzoniphatha njengoko kulunga kanye nangoko musa wakhe.

And it came to pass that there were ten more who did fall by the sword, with their ten thousand each; yea, even all my people, save it were those twenty and four who were with me, and also a few who had escaped into the south countries, and a few who had deserted over unto the Lamanites, had fallen; and their flesh, and bones, and blood lay upon the face of the earth, being left by the hands of those who slew them to molder upon the land, and to crumble and to return to their mother earth.

And my soul was rent with anguish, because of the slain of my people, and I cried:

O ye fair ones, how could ye have departed from the ways of the Lord! O ye fair ones, how could ye have rejected that Jesus, who stood with open arms to receive you!

Behold, if ye had not done this, ye would not have fallen. But behold, ye are fallen, and I mourn your loss.

O ye fair sons and daughters, ye fathers and mothers, ye husbands and wives, ye fair ones, how is it that ye could have fallen!

But behold, ye are gone, and my sorrows cannot bring your return.

And the day soon cometh that your mortal must put on immortality, and these bodies which are now moldering in corruption must soon become incorruptible bodies; and then ye must stand before the judgment-seat of Christ, to be judged according to your works; and if it so be that ye are righteous, then are ye blessed with your fathers who have gone before you.

O that ye had repented before this great destruction had come upon you. But behold, ye are gone, and the Father, yea, the Eternal Father of heaven, knoweth your state; and he doeth with you according to his justice and mercy.

Mormoni 7

- 1 Manje, bheka, sengizokhuluma okuthile kuyo insali yalabantu abasindisiwe, uma kuwukuthi uNkulunkulu angabanika amazwi ami, ukuze bazi ngezinto zoyise; yebo, ngikhuluma kini, nina nsali yendlu ka-Israyeli; futhi yilawa amazwi engiwakhulumayo:
- 2 Yazini ukuthi ninga bendlu ka-Israyeli.
- 3 Yazini ukuthi kufanele nize ekuphendukeni, noma ngeke nisindiswe.
- 4 Yazini ukuthi kufanele nizibeke phansi izikhali zenu zempi, futhi ningabe nisaphinde nithokoze ekuchitheni igazi, futhi ningaphinde nizithathe, ngaphandle uma uNkulunkulu eyoniyala ukuthi nizithathe izikhali zempi.
- 5 Yazini ukuthi kufanele nithole ulwazi loyihlo, futhi niphenduke ezonweni kanye nasebubini benu bonke, futhi nikholwe kuJesu Kristu, ukuthi uyiNdodana kaNkulunkulu, futhi nokuthi wabulawa ngamaJuda, futhi ngamandla kaBaba uvukile futhi, ngalokho uzuze ukunqoba phezu kwethuna; futhi nokuthi kuye udosi lokufa lugwinyiwe.
- 6 Futhi ufeze ukuvuka kwabafileyo, ngakho umuntu okufanele avuswe ukuba ame phambi kwesihlalo sokwahlulelwa.
- 7 Futhi ufeze nokukhululwa komhlaba, ngakho lowo oyotholakala engenacala phambi kwakhe ngosuku lokwahlulela uyonikwa ukuthi ahlale noNkulunkulu embusweni wakhe, ukuze ahlabelele indumiso engapheliyo namakhwaya aphezulu, kuBaba, kanye nakuyo iNdodana, kanye nakuwo uMoya oyiNgcwele, abanguNkulunkulu emunye, esesimweni senjabulo engenasiphelo.
- 8 Ngakho-ke phendukani, futhi nibhabhadiswe egameni likaJesu, futhi nibambelele evangelini likaKristu, eniyokwaziswa ngalo, hhayi kulombhalo kuphela kepha futhi nasembhalweni oyoza kwabeZizwe uvela kuwo amaJuda, okungumbhalo oyovela kwabeZizwe uza kini.

Mormon 7

And now, behold, I would speak somewhat unto the remnant of this people who are spared, if it so be that God may give unto them my words, that they may know of the things of their fathers; yea, I speak unto you, ye remnant of the house of Israel; and these are the words which I speak:

Know ye that ye are of the house of Israel.

Know ye that ye must come unto repentance, or ye cannot be saved.

Know ye that ye must lay down your weapons of war, and delight no more in the shedding of blood, and take them not again, save it be that God shall command you.

Know ye that ye must come to the knowledge of your fathers, and repent of all your sins and iniquities, and believe in Jesus Christ, that he is the Son of God, and that he was slain by the Jews, and by the power of the Father he hath risen again, whereby he hath gained the victory over the grave; and also in him is the sting of death swallowed up.

And he bringeth to pass the resurrection of the dead, whereby man must be raised to stand before his judgment-seat.

And he hath brought to pass the redemption of the world, whereby he that is found guiltless before him at the judgment day hath it given unto him to dwell in the presence of God in his kingdom, to sing ceaseless praises with the choirs above, unto the Father, and unto the Son, and unto the Holy Ghost, which are one God, in a state of happiness which hath no end.

Therefore repent, and be baptized in the name of Jesus, and lay hold upon the gospel of Christ, which shall be set before you, not only in this record but also in the record which shall come unto the Gentiles from the Jews, which record shall come from the Gentiles unto you.

9 Ngokuba bhekani, lokhu kubhalwe ngenhloso yokuthi nikholwe yilokho; futhi uma nikholwa yilokho niyokholwa nayilokhu futhi; futhi uma nikholwa yilokhu, niyokwazi mayelana noyihlo, futhi kanjalo nangemisebenzi emangalisayo eyenziwa ngamandla kaNkulunkulu phakathi kwabo.

10 Futhi phezu kwalokho niyokwazi ukuthi niyinsali yenzalo kaJakobe; ngakho-ke nibalwa nabantu besivumelwano sokuqala; futhi uma kuwukuthi niyakholwa kuKristu, futhi nibhabhadiswe, okokuqala ngamanzi, bese kuba ngomlilo kanye nangoMoya oyiNgcwele, nilandela isibonelo somSindisi wethu, ngokwalokho asiyala ngakho, kuyoba kuhle kini ngosuku lokwahlulelwa. Amen.

For behold, this is written for the intent that ye may believe that; and if ye believe that ye will believe this also; and if ye believe this ye will know concerning your fathers, and also the marvelous works which were wrought by the power of God among them.

And ye will also know that ye are a remnant of the seed of Jacob; therefore ye are numbered among the people of the first covenant; and if it so be that ye believe in Christ, and are baptized, first with water, then with fire and with the Holy Ghost, following the example of our Savior, according to that which he hath commanded us, it shall be well with you in the day of judgment. Amen.

Mormoni 8

- 1 Bheka mina, Moroni, ngiyawuqedela umbhalo kababa, uMormoni. Bheka, ngingezinto ezimbalwa nje engizozibhala, engiyalwe ngazo ngubaba.
- 2 Manje kwenzeka ukuthi emva kwempi enkulu neyesabekayo eyayiseKumora, bheka, lawomaNefi ayebalekele ezweni elingaseningizimu azingelwa ngamaLamani, kwaze kwaba wonke ayabulawa.
- 3 Futhi nobaba naye ngokunjalo wabulawa yiwo, futhi sengisele ngedwa ukuze ngibhale indaba edabukisayo yokubhujiswa kwabantu bakithi. Kepha bheka, abasekho, futhi ngiyawufeza umyalelo kababa. Futhi noma bazongibulala nami, angazi.
- 4 Ngakho-ke ngizobhala futhi ngiyifihle lemibhalo phansi; futhi noma ngabe ngiya kuphi akusho lutho.
- 5 Bheka, ngubaba owenze lombhalo, futhi uyibhalile nenhloso yawo. Futhi bheka, bengizoyibhala nami futhi ukuba benginendawo ezingcwephezi, kepha anginayo; futhi nensimbi anginayo, ngokuba ngingedwa. Ubaba ubulewe empini, kanye nabo bonke abomndeni wami, futhi anginabo nabangani angazi nokuthi ngizoyaphi; futhi ukuthi iNkosi izongivumela ngihlale isikhathi esingakanani angazi.
- 6 Bheka, iminyaka engamakhulu amane isidlulile kusukela ekuzeni kweNkosi nomSindisi wethu.
- 7 Futhi bheka, amaLamani abazingele abantu bami, amaNefi, idolobha nedolobha futhi indawo nendawo, kwaze kwaba bayaphela nya; futhi kube kukhulu ukubhujiswa kwabo; yebo, kukhulu futhi kuyamangalisa ukubhujiswa kwabantu bami, amaNefi.
- 8 Futhi bheka, yisandla seNkosi esikwenzile lokhu. Futhi bheka phezu kwalokho, namaLamani asempini omunye nomunye; futhi bonke ubuso balelizwe bugcwele ukubulala okuqhubekayo kanye nokuchitheka kwegazi; futhi akekho osaziyo isiphetho salempi.
- 9 Manje, bheka, angisasho lutho mayelana nabo, ngokuba akusekho namunye ngaphandle kwamaLamani kanye nabaphangi abasekhona ebusweni balelizwe.

Mormon 8

Behold I, Moroni, do finish the record of my father, Mormon. Behold, I have but few things to write, which things I have been commanded by my father.

And now it came to pass that after the great and tremendous battle at Cumorah, behold, the Nephites who had escaped into the country southward were hunted by the Lamanites, until they were all destroyed.

And my father also was killed by them, and I even remain alone to write the sad tale of the destruction of my people. But behold, they are gone, and I fulfil the commandment of my father. And whether they will slay me, I know not.

Therefore I will write and hide up the records in the earth; and whither I go it mattereth not.

Behold, my father hath made this record, and he hath written the intent thereof. And behold, I would write it also if I had room upon the plates, but I have not; and ore I have none, for I am alone. My father hath been slain in battle, and all my kinsfolk, and I have not friends nor whither to go; and how long the Lord will suffer that I may live I know not.

Behold, four hundred years have passed away since the coming of our Lord and Savior.

And behold, the Lamanites have hunted my people, the Nephites, down from city to city and from place to place, even until they are no more; and great has been their fall; yea, great and marvelous is the destruction of my people, the Nephites.

And behold, it is the hand of the Lord which hath done it. And behold also, the Lamanites are at war one with another; and the whole face of this land is one continual round of murder and bloodshed; and no one knoweth the end of the war.

And now, behold, I say no more concerning them, for there are none save it be the Lamanites and robbers that do exist upon the face of the land.

- 10 Futhi akukho namunye omaziyo uNkulunkulu weqiniso ngaphandle kwabafundi baJesu, labo abasala ezweni kwaze kwaba ububi babantu buba bukhulu kakhulu kangangoba iNkosi ayibange isabavumela ukuthi bahlale nabantu; futhi noma basebusweni balelizwe akukho muntu owaziyo.
- 11 Kepha bheka, ubaba kanye nami sibabonile, futhi basisebenzele.
- 12 Futhi lowo othola lombhalo, futhi angawusoli ngenxa yamaphutha akuwo, nguye uyokwazi ngezinto ezinkulu kunalezi. Bheka, nginguMoroni; futhi ukuba bekungenzeka, bengizonambulela zonke izinto.
- 13 Bheka, sengenza isiphetho senkulumo mayelana nalabantu. Ngiyindodana kaMormoni, futhi ubaba wayengowo zalo lukaNefi.
- 14 Futhi nginguye lowo owafihlela lombhalo eNkosini; izingcwephe zawo azibalulekile, ngenxa yomyalelo weNkosi. Ngokuba ngempela yathi akukho namunye oyozithola ukuze athole inzuzo; kepha umbhalo okuzo uyigugu elikhulu; futhi lowo oyowuveza, iNkosi iyombusisa.
- 15 Ngokuba akekho namunye ongaba namandla okuwuveza ngaphandle kokuthi ekunikwe nguNkulunkulu; ngokuba uNkulunkulu ufuna ukuthi kwenziwe ngeso elizinikele lokuletha udumo lwakhe, noma ngeso elizinikele ukuze kuzuze abantu basendulo kanye nalabo bantu besivumelwano seNkosi abahlakazwa kudala.
- 16 Futhi ubusisiwe lowo oyoveza lento; ngokuba iyokhishwa ebumnyameni ilethwe ekukhanyeni, ngokwezwi likaNkulunkulu; yebo, iyokhishwa phansi, futhi iyokhazimula iphume ebumnyameni, futhi yaziwe ngabantu; futhi lokhu kuyokwenziwa ngamandla kaNkulunkulu.
- 17 Futhi uma ngabe kunamaphutha kuyoba ngamaphutha omuntu. Kepha bheka, thina asazi phutha; nokho uNkulunkulu wazi zonke izinto; ngakho-ke, lowo osolayo, makaqaphele hleze abe sengozi yomlilo wesihogo.
- 18 Futhi nalowo othi: Ngitshengise, noma kungenjalo uzoshaywa—makaqaphele hleze ayale ngalokho okungavunyelwe yiNkosi.

And there are none that do know the true God save it be the disciples of Jesus, who did tarry in the land until the wickedness of the people was so great that the Lord would not suffer them to remain with the people; and whether they be upon the face of the land no man knoweth.

But behold, my father and I have seen them, and they have ministered unto us.

And whoso receiveth this record, and shall not condemn it because of the imperfections which are in it, the same shall know of greater things than these. Behold, I am Moroni; and were it possible, I would make all things known unto you.

Behold, I make an end of speaking concerning this people. I am the son of Mormon, and my father was a descendant of Nephi.

And I am the same who hideth up this record unto the Lord; the plates thereof are of no worth, because of the commandment of the Lord. For he truly saith that no one shall have them to get gain; but the record thereof is of great worth; and whoso shall bring it to light, him will the Lord bless.

For none can have power to bring it to light save it be given him of God; for God wills that it shall be done with an eye single to his glory, or the welfare of the ancient and long dispersed covenant people of the Lord.

And blessed be he that shall bring this thing to light; for it shall be brought out of darkness unto light, according to the word of God; yea, it shall be brought out of the earth, and it shall shine forth out of darkness, and come unto the knowledge of the people; and it shall be done by the power of God.

And if there be faults they be the faults of a man. But behold, we know no fault; nevertheless God knoweth all things; therefore, he that condemneth, let him be aware lest he shall be in danger of hell fire.

And he that saith: Show unto me, or ye shall be smitten—let him beware lest he commandeth that which is forbidden of the Lord.

- 19 Ngokuba bheka, lowo owehlulela ngokushesha naye uyokwehlulelwa ngokushesha futhi; ngokuba inkokhelo yakhe iyoba njengokwemisebenzi yakhe; ngakho-ke, lowo oshayayo naye uyoshaywa futhi, yiNkosi.
- 20 Bheka ukuthi umbhalo ongcwele uthini—umuntu makangashayi, noma ehlulele; ngokuba ukwahlulela kungokwami, kusho iNkosi, futhi nempindiselo ingeyami, futhi yimi engizobuyisela.
- 21 Futhi lowo oyokhuluma ngolaka kanye nangokulwa ngokumelene nomsebenzi weNkosi, futhi nangokumelene nabantu besivumelwano beNkosi abayindlu ka-Israyeli, futhi noyothi: Sizowubhubhisa umsebenzi weNkosi, futhi iNkosi ngeke isikhumbule isivumelwano sayo eyasenza kuyo indlu ka-Israyeli—nguye lowo osengozini yokuthi agawulelwe phansi futhi aphonswa emlilweni;
- 22 Ngokuba izinjongo zaphakade zeNkosi ziyohubeka njalo, kuze kube zonke izethembiso zayo ziyagcwaliseka.
- 23 Zicwaningeni iziphrofetho zika-Isaya. Bhekani ngeke ngikwazi ukuzibhala. Yebo, bhekani ngithi kini, labo bangcwele asebahamba phambi kwami, ababengabanikazi balelizwe, bayokhala, yebo, ngisho besothulini bayokhala eNkosini; futhi njengoba iNkosi iphila iyosikhumbula isivumelwano esenze nabo.
- 24 Futhi iyayazi imikhuleko yabo, ukuthi yayenzelwe abafowabo. Futhi iyalwazi ukholo lwabo, ngokuba ngegama layo babengasusa izintaba; futhi ngegama layo babengenza phansi kuzamazame; futhi ngamandla ezwi layo benza amatilongo ukuthi adilikele phansi; yebo, abatholanga myocu ngisho nasesithandweni somlilo esesabekayo, ngisho nezilwane zasendle nezinyoka ezinobuthi, ngenxa yamandla ezwi lakhe.
- 25 Futhi bhekani, imikhuleko yabo futhi yayenzelwe lowo iNkosi eyomvumela ukuthi aveze lezi zinto.

For behold, the same that judgeth rashly shall be judged rashly again; for according to his works shall his wages be; therefore, he that smiteth shall be smitten again, of the Lord.

Behold what the scripture says—man shall not smite, neither shall he judge; for judgment is mine, saith the Lord, and vengeance is mine also, and I will repay.

And he that shall breathe out wrath and strifes against the work of the Lord, and against the covenant people of the Lord who are the house of Israel, and shall say: We will destroy the work of the Lord, and the Lord will not remember his covenant which he hath made unto the house of Israel—the same is in danger to be hewn down and cast into the fire;

For the eternal purposes of the Lord shall roll on, until all his promises shall be fulfilled.

Search the prophecies of Isaiah. Behold, I cannot write them. Yea, behold I say unto you, that those saints who have gone before me, who have possessed this land, shall cry, yea, even from the dust will they cry unto the Lord; and as the Lord liveth he will remember the covenant which he hath made with them.

And he knoweth their prayers, that they were in behalf of their brethren. And he knoweth their faith, for in his name could they remove mountains; and in his name could they cause the earth to shake; and by the power of his word did they cause prisons to tumble to the earth; yea, even the fiery furnace could not harm them, neither wild beasts nor poisonous serpents, because of the power of his word.

And behold, their prayers were also in behalf of him that the Lord should suffer to bring these things forth.

- 26 Futhi akukho namunye okufanele athi ngeke kwenzeka, ngokuba ngempela kuyokwenzeka, ngokuba iNkosi ikukhulumile lokhu, ngokuba ziyovela phansi, ngesandla seNkosi, futhi akukho namunye oyokuvimba; futhi kuyokwenzeka ngosuku lapho kuyobe sekuthiwa izimangaliso azisenzeki; futhi kuyokwenzeka kube sengathi kukhona okhuluma esekufeni.
- 27 Futhi kuyokwenzeka ngosuku lapho igazi labangcwele liyokhala eNkosini, ngenxa yamaqembu ayimfihlo kanye nemisebenzi yobumnyama.
- 28 Yebo, kuyokwenzeka ngosuku lapho amandla kaNkulunkulu esephikwa, futhi amabandla esenkohlakalo futhi benokuziqhenya ezinhliziyweni zabo; yebo, ngisho nangosuku lapho abaholi bamabandla kanye nabefundisi beyophakama ngenxa yokuziqhenya okusezinhliziyweni zabo, babe nomona ngisho namalungu amabandla abo.
- 29 Yebo, kuyokwenzeka ngosuku lapho abantu beyozwa ngemililo, kanye nangeziphepho, kanye nangezinkungu zentuthu emazweni angaphandle;
- 30 Futhi phezu kwalokho abantu bayozwa ngezimpi, amahemuhemu ezimpi, kanye nangokuzamazama komhlaba ezindaweni ngezindawo.
- 31 Yebo, kuyokwenzeka ngosuku lapho kuyobe kukhona ukungcola okukhulu ebusweni bomhlaba; kuyoba khona ukubulalana, kanye nokuphanga, kanye nokuqamba amanga, kanye nenkohliso, kanye nobufebe, kanye nazo zonke izinhlobo zezinengiso; lapho beyoba baningi abayothi, Yenza lokhu, noma yenza lokhuya, futhi akusho lutho, ngokuba iNkosi iyobasekela abanjalo ngosuku lokugcina. Kepha maye kulabo, ngokuba basenyongweni ebabayo futhi basezibophweni zobubi.
- 32 Yebo, kuyokwenzeka ngosuku lapho kuyoba khona amabandla akhiweyo ayokuthi: Woza kimi, futhi ngemali yakho uzothethelelwa izono zakho.

And no one need say they shall not come, for they surely shall, for the Lord hath spoken it; for out of the earth shall they come, by the hand of the Lord, and none can stay it; and it shall come in a day when it shall be said that miracles are done away; and it shall come even as if one should speak from the dead.

And it shall come in a day when the blood of saints shall cry unto the Lord, because of secret combinations and the works of darkness.

Yea, it shall come in a day when the power of God shall be denied, and churches become defiled and be lifted up in the pride of their hearts; yea, even in a day when leaders of churches and teachers shall rise in the pride of their hearts, even to the envying of them who belong to their churches.

Yea, it shall come in a day when there shall be heard of fires, and tempests, and vapors of smoke in foreign lands;

And there shall also be heard of wars, rumors of wars, and earthquakes in divers places.

Yea, it shall come in a day when there shall be great pollutions upon the face of the earth; there shall be murders, and robbing, and lying, and deceivings, and whoredoms, and all manner of abominations; when there shall be many who will say, Do this, or do that, and it mattereth not, for the Lord will uphold such at the last day. But wo unto such, for they are in the gall of bitterness and in the bonds of iniquity.

Yea, it shall come in a day when there shall be churches built up that shall say: Come unto me, and for your money you shall be forgiven of your sins.

33 O nina bantu enibabi futhi eniphambene futhi neningontamo lukhuni, kungani nizakhele amabandla ukuze nithole inzuzo na? Kungani seniguqule izwi elingcwele likaNkulunkulu, ukuze nilethe usizi emiphefumulweni yenu na? Bhekani, thembelani ezambulweni zikaNkulunkulu; ngokuba bhekani, isikhathi siyeza ngalolo suku lapho zonke lezi zinto kuyofanela zigwaliseke.

34 Bhekani, iNkosi ingitshengisile izinto ezinkulu futhi nezimangalisayo mayelana nalokho okufanele kwenzeke masinyane, ngalolo suku lapho lezi zinto ziyovela phakathi kwenu.

35 Bhekani, ngikhuluma kini sengathi nanikhona, kanti anikho. Kepha bhekani, uJesu Kristu ungitshengisile nina, futhi ngiyazazi izenzo zenu.

36 Futhi ngiyazi ukuthi nihamba ngokuziqhenya okusezinhliziyweni zenu; futhi akukho namunye ngaphandle nje kwabambalwa kuphela abangaziphakamisi ngokuziqhenya okusezinhliziyweni zabo, okubangela ukuba bagqoke izingubo ezinhle kakhulu, okubangela umona, nengxabano, nenzondo, nokuhlupha, kanye nayo yonke inhlobo yobubi; futhi amabandla enu, yebo, ngisho wonke, angcolile ngenxa yokuziqhenya kwezinhliziyu zenu.

37 Ngokuba bhekani, nithanda imali, kanye nezinto zenu, kanye nezingubo zenu ezinhle kakhulu, kanye nokuhlotoshiswa kwamabandla enu, ngaphezu kokuthi nithande abampofu, kanye nabantulayo, abagulayo kanye nabahluphekile.

38 O nina eningcolile, nina bazenzisi, nina bafundisi, eniziyekelela kulokho okuyogqwala, kungani nilingcolisile ibandla elingcwele likaNkulunkulu na? Kungani ninamahloni okuthi nibizwe ngegama likaKristu na? Kungani ningacabangi ukuthi inkulu leyo ntokozi engapheliyo kunosizi olungasoze lwaphela—ngenxa yodumo lwezwe na?

39 Kungani nizihlobisa ngalokho okungenampilo, kepha nibe nivumela abalambile, kanye nabantulayo, kanye nabanqunu, kanye nabagulayo kanye nabahluphekayo ukuthi badlule kini, futhi ningabanaki na?

O ye wicked and perverse and stiffnecked people, why have ye built up churches unto yourselves to get gain? Why have ye transfigured the holy word of God, that ye might bring damnation upon your souls? Behold, look ye unto the revelations of God; for behold, the time cometh at that day when all these things must be fulfilled.

Behold, the Lord hath shown unto me great and marvelous things concerning that which must shortly come, at that day when these things shall come forth among you.

Behold, I speak unto you as if ye were present, and yet ye are not. But behold, Jesus Christ hath shown you unto me, and I know your doing.

And I know that ye do walk in the pride of your hearts; and there are none save a few only who do not lift themselves up in the pride of their hearts, unto the wearing of very fine apparel, unto envying, and strifes, and malice, and persecutions, and all manner of iniquities; and your churches, yea, even every one, have become polluted because of the pride of your hearts.

For behold, ye do love money, and your substance, and your fine apparel, and the adorning of your churches, more than ye love the poor and the needy, the sick and the afflicted.

O ye pollutions, ye hypocrites, ye teachers, who sell yourselves for that which will canker, why have ye polluted the holy church of God? Why are ye ashamed to take upon you the name of Christ? Why do ye not think that greater is the value of an endless happiness than that misery which never dies—because of the praise of the world?

Why do ye adorn yourselves with that which hath no life, and yet suffer the hungry, and the needy, and the naked, and the sick and the afflicted to pass by you, and notice them not?

40 Yebo, kungani nakha izinengiso zenu zangasese ukuze nithole inzuzo, futhi nenze ukuthi abafelokazi balile phambi kweNkosi, futhi ngokunjalo nezintandane ukuthi zilile phambi kweNkosi, futhi ngokunjalo negazi loyise kanye nabayeni babo ukuthi likhale eNkosini lisuka phansi, ukuthi kube khona impindiselo phezu kwamakhanda enu na?

41 Bhekani, inkemba yempindiselo ilengela phezu kwenu; futhi isikhathi siyeza masinyane lapho iyoliphindiselela igazi labangcwele kini, ngokuba ngeke isakuvumela ukukhala kwabo nanini.

Yea, why do ye build up your secret abominations to get gain, and cause that widows should mourn before the Lord, and also orphans to mourn before the Lord, and also the blood of their fathers and their husbands to cry unto the Lord from the ground, for vengeance upon your heads?

Behold, the sword of vengeance hangeth over you; and the time soon cometh that he avengeth the blood of the saints upon you, for he will not suffer their cries any longer.

Mormoni 9

- 1 Manje, sengikhuluma futhi mayelana nalabo abangakholwa kuKristu.
- 2 Bheka, niyokholwa yini osukwini lokuhanjelwa kwenu—bhekani, ngesikhathi iNkosi isiza, yebo, ngisho nangalolo suku olukhulu lapho umhlaba uyogoqwa ndawonye njengomqulu, futhi konke kuyoncibilikiswa wukushisa okuvuthayo, yebo, ngalolo suku olukhulu lapho niyoethwa ukuba nizoma phambi kweMvana kaNkulunkulu—ngaleso sikhathi niyosho yini ukuthi akekho uNkulunkulu na?
- 3 Ngaleso sikhathi niyoqhubeka yini nokumphika uKristu, noma niyoyibona yini iMvana kaNkulunkulu na? Ngabe nicabanga ukuthi ningahlala yini naye ninonembeza onecala na? Ngabe nicabanga ukuthi ningathokoza yini ukuhlala nalowo Muntu ongcwele, ibe imiphefumulo yenu yonakaliswe wunembeza onecala lokuthi selokhu kwathi nhlo niyayiphula imithetho yakhe na?
- 4 Bhekani, ngithi kini niyoba nosizi kakhulu ukuthi nihlale noNkulunkulu ongcwele futhi nolungile, ninonembeza wokungcola kwenu phambi kwakhe, kunokuba nihlale nabajezisiwe esihogweni.
- 5 Ngokuba bhekani, ngesikhathi niyobona ubuze benu phambi kukaNkulunkulu, futhi kanjalo nenkazimulo kaNkulunkulu, kanye nobungcwele bukaJesu Kristu, kuyokokheleka ilangabi lomlilo ongacisheki kini.
- 6 O uma kunjalo-ke nina eningakholwayo, phendukelani eNkosini; khalani kakhulu kuBaba egameni likaJesu, ukuze mhlawumbe nitholakale ningenasici, nimsulwa, nibahle, futhi nimhlophe, nihlanzwe yigazi le Mvana, ngalolo suku olukhulu nolokugcina.
- 7 Futhi phezu kwalokho ngikhuluma kini nina eniphika izambulo zikaNkulunkulu, futhi enithi sezaphela, nokuthi akusekho zambulo, naziphrofetho, nazipho, nakuphiliswa, nakukhuluma ngezilimi, kanye nokuhunyushwa kwezilimi;
- 8 Bhekani ngithi kini, lowo oziphikayo lezi zinto akalazi ivangeli likaKristu; yebo, akayifundile imibhalo engcwele; uma kunjalo, akayiqondi.

Mormon 9

And now, I speak also concerning those who do not believe in Christ.

Behold, will ye believe in the day of your visitation—behold, when the Lord shall come, yea, even that great day when the earth shall be rolled together as a scroll, and the elements shall melt with fervent heat, yea, in that great day when ye shall be brought to stand before the Lamb of God—then will ye say that there is no God?

Then will ye longer deny the Christ, or can ye behold the Lamb of God? Do ye suppose that ye shall dwell with him under a consciousness of your guilt? Do ye suppose that ye could be happy to dwell with that holy Being, when your souls are racked with a consciousness of guilt that ye have ever abused his laws?

Behold, I say unto you that ye would be more miserable to dwell with a holy and just God, under a consciousness of your filthiness before him, than ye would to dwell with the damned souls in hell.

For behold, when ye shall be brought to see your nakedness before God, and also the glory of God, and the holiness of Jesus Christ, it will kindle a flame of unquenchable fire upon you.

O then ye unbelieving, turn ye unto the Lord; cry mightily unto the Father in the name of Jesus, that perhaps ye may be found spotless, pure, fair, and white, having been cleansed by the blood of the Lamb, at that great and last day.

And again I speak unto you who deny the revelations of God, and say that they are done away, that there are no revelations, nor prophecies, nor gifts, nor healing, nor speaking with tongues, and the interpretation of tongues;

Behold I say unto you, he that denieth these things knoweth not the gospel of Christ; yea, he has not read the scriptures; if so, he does not understand them.

- 9 Ngokuba asifundi yini ukuthi uNkulunkulu uyafana izolo, namuhla, futhi naphakade, futhi kuye akukho kuguquka futhi nokuncane ukushintsha na?
- 10 Manje, uma nizicabangele unkulunkulu oqukayo, futhi kuye okukhona okuncane ukushintsha, uma kunjalo nizicabangele unkulunkulu ongeyena uNkulunkulu wezimangaliso.
- 11 Kepha bhekani, ngizonikhombisa uNkulunkulu wezimangaliso, ngisho uNkulunkulu ka-Abrahama, kanye noNkulunkulu ka-Isaka, kanye noNkulunkulu kaJakobe; futhi kusenguye lowo Nkulunkulu owadala amazulu kanye nomhlaba, kanye nazo zonke izinto ezikuwo.
- 12 Bhekani, wadala u-Adamu, futhi ngo-Adamu kweza ukuwa komuntu. Futhi ngenxa yokuwa komuntu kweza uJesu Kristu, ngisho uBaba kanye neNdodana; futhi ngenxa kaJesu Kristu kweza ukukhululwa komuntu.
- 13 Futhi ngenxa yokukhululwa komuntu, okweza ngoJesu Kristu, babuyiselwa phambi kweNkosi; yebo, kungalendlela lapho bonke abantu bekhululwa, ngokuba ukufa kukaKristu kufeza uvuko, olufeza ukukhululwa ekulaleni okungapheliyo, lapho bonke abantu beyovuswa kulokho kulala ngamandla kaNkulunkulu ngesikhathi kukhala icilongo; futhi bayovuka, abancane kanye nabakhulu, futhi bonke bayokuma phambi kwesihlalo sakhe, sebhlelgiwe futhi bakhululwa kulesi sibopho sokufa saphakade, okungukufa kwenyama.
- 14 Futhi emva kwalokho kuyobe sekuza ukwahlulela koNgcwele kubo; futhi emva kwalokho kuza isikhathi lapho lowo ongcolileyo eyohlala engcolile, futhi lowo olungileyo ahlale elungile; kuthi lowo othokozile ahlale ethokozile; kuthi lowo ongathokozile ahlale engathokozile.
- 15 Manje, O nina nonke enizicabangela unkulunkulu ongenakwenza zimangaliso, ngifuna ukunibuza ukuthi, ngabe zonke lezi zinto sezedlule, lezo engikhulume ngazo na? Ngabe isiphetho sesifikile na? Bhekani ngithi kini, Cha; futhi uNkulunkulu akakayeki ukuthi abe nguNkulunkulu wezimangaliso.

For do we not read that God is the same yesterday, today, and forever, and in him there is no variable-ness neither shadow of changing?

And now, if ye have imagined up unto yourselves a god who doth vary, and in whom there is shadow of changing, then have ye imagined up unto yourselves a god who is not a God of miracles.

But behold, I will show unto you a God of miracles, even the God of Abraham, and the God of Isaac, and the God of Jacob; and it is that same God who created the heavens and the earth, and all things that in them are.

Behold, he created Adam, and by Adam came the fall of man. And because of the fall of man came Jesus Christ, even the Father and the Son; and because of Jesus Christ came the redemption of man.

And because of the redemption of man, which came by Jesus Christ, they are brought back into the presence of the Lord; yea, this is wherein all men are redeemed, because the death of Christ bringeth to pass the resurrection, which bringeth to pass a redemption from an endless sleep, from which sleep all men shall be awakened by the power of God when the trump shall sound; and they shall come forth, both small and great, and all shall stand before his bar, being redeemed and loosed from this eternal band of death, which death is a temporal death.

And then cometh the judgment of the Holy One upon them; and then cometh the time that he that is filthy shall be filthy still; and he that is righteous shall be righteous still; he that is happy shall be happy still; and he that is unhappy shall be unhappy still.

And now, O all ye that have imagined up unto yourselves a god who can do no miracles, I would ask of you, have all these things passed, of which I have spoken? Has the end come yet? Behold I say unto you, Nay; and God has not ceased to be a God of miracles.

16 Bhekani, ngabe izinto uNkulunkulu azenzile azimangalisi yini emehlweni ethu na? Yebo, futhi ngabe ngubani ongaqonda imisebenzi emangalisayo kaNkulunkulu na?

17 Ngubani ongathi kwakungesona isimangaliso ukuthi ngezwi lakhe izulu kanye nomhlaba kwabakhona; futhi ngamandla ezwi lakhe umuntu wadalwa ngothuli lomhlabathi; futhi ngamandla ezwi lakhe izimangaliso zenzeka na?

18 Futhi ngubani ongathi uJesu Kristu akazange enze zimangaliso ezinkulu neziningi na? Futhi kwaba khona izimangaliso ezinkulu neziningi ezenziwa ngezandla zabaphostoli.

19 Futhi uma ngabe kwaba khona izimangaliso ngaleso sikhathi, pho kungani uNkulunkulu eseyekile ukuthi abe nguNkulunkulu wezimangaliso kepha ebe enguMuntu ongaguquki na? Futhi bhekani, ngithi kini, akaguquki; uma kunjalo uyoyeka ukuba nguNkulunkulu; kepha akayekile ukuba nguNkulunkulu, futhi usenguye uNkulunkulu wezimangaliso.

20 Futhi isizathu sokuthi ayeke ukwenza izimangaliso phakathi kwabantwana babantu kungenxa yokuthi bancishelwe wukholo, futhi baphambukile endleleni okuyiyo, futhi abamazi uNkulunkulu okufanele bamethembe.

21 Bhekani, ngithi kini lowo okholwa kuKristu, engangabazi lutho, noma ngabe yini ayoyicela kuBaba egameni likaKristu uyonikwa yona; futhi lesi sethembiso esikawonke wonke, ngisho nasemikhawulweni yomhlaba.

22 Ngokuba bhekani, usho kanje uJesu Kristu, iNdodana kaNkulunkulu, kulabo bafundi bakhe abazohlala, yebo, futhi kunjalo nakubo bonke abafundi bakhe, ngesikhathi silalele isixuku: Hambani niye emhlabeni wonke, futhi nishumaye ivangeli kukho konke okudaliweyo;

23 Futhi lowo okholwayo futhi abhabhadiswe uyosindiswa, kepha lowo ongakholwa uyoba ngaphansi kwamandla kaSathane;

Behold, are not the things that God hath wrought marvelous in our eyes? Yea, and who can comprehend the marvelous works of God?

Who shall say that it was not a miracle that by his word the heaven and the earth should be; and by the power of his word man was created of the dust of the earth; and by the power of his word have miracles been wrought?

And who shall say that Jesus Christ did not do many mighty miracles? And there were many mighty miracles wrought by the hands of the apostles.

And if there were miracles wrought then, why has God ceased to be a God of miracles and yet be an unchangeable Being? And behold, I say unto you he changeth not; if so he would cease to be God; and he ceaseth not to be God, and is a God of miracles.

And the reason why he ceaseth to do miracles among the children of men is because that they dwindle in unbelief, and depart from the right way, and know not the God in whom they should trust.

Behold, I say unto you that whoso believeth in Christ, doubting nothing, whatsoever he shall ask the Father in the name of Christ it shall be granted him; and this promise is unto all, even unto the ends of the earth.

For behold, thus said Jesus Christ, the Son of God, unto his disciples who should tarry, yea, and also to all his disciples, in the hearing of the multitude: Go ye into all the world, and preach the gospel to every creature;

And he that believeth and is baptized shall be saved, but he that believeth not shall be damned;

- 24 Futhi lezi zibonakaliso ziyobalandela labo abakhulwayo—ngegama lami bayokhipha odeveli; bayokhuluma ngezilimi ezintsha; bayothatha izinyoka; futhi uma bephuze noma yini ebulalayo ayiyikubagulisa; bayobeka izandla kwabagulayo futhi bayolulama;
- 25 Futhi lowo oyokholwa egameni lami, engangabazi lutho, kuye ngizowaqinisa onke amazwi ami, kuze kube semikhawulweni yomhlaba.
- 26 Manje, bhekani, ngubani ongamelana nemisebenzi yeNkosi na? Ngubani ongakuphika ekushilo na? Ngubani ongaphikisana namandla amakhulu eNkosi na? Ngubani ongadelela imisebenzi yeNkosi na? Ngubani ongadelela abantwana baKristu na? Bhekani, nonke nina enidelela imisebenzi yeNkosi, ngokuba niyomangala futhi nilahleke.
- 27 O ngakho-ke ungadeleli, futhi ungamangali, kepha yizwa amazwi eNkosi, futhi ucele kuBaba egameni likaJesus noma yikuphi okudingayo. Ungangabazi kepha kholwa, futhi qala njengasezikhathini zasemandulo, futhi uze eNkosini ngenhliziyo yakho yonke, futhi ufeze ukusindiswa kwakho ngokwesaba kanye nangokuthuthumela phambi kwayo.
- 28 Hlakaniphani ezinsukwini zokuvivinywa kwenu; zihlambululeni kukho konke ukungahlanzeki; ningaceli, ukuze ninelise izinkanuko zenu, kepha celani ngokuqina okungenakunyakaziswa, ukuthi ningakuvumeli ukulingwa, kepha ukuthi nisebenzele uNkulunkulu weqiniso nophilayo.
- 29 Bonani ukuthi anibhabhadiswa ngokungafanelekile; bonani ukuthi anidli isidlo sikaKristu ngokungafanelekile; kepha bonani ukuthi nenza zonke izinto ngokufanelekile, futhi nikwenze egameni likaJesus Kristu, iNdodana kaNkulunkulu ophilayo; futhi uma nikwenza lokhu, futhi nibekezela kuze kube sekugcineni, ngeke nize nilahlwe ngaphandle.
- 30 Bhekani, ngikhuluma kini sengathi ngikhuluma ngisekufeni; ngokuba ngiyazi ukuthi niyowathola amazwi ami.

And these signs shall follow them that believe—in my name shall they cast out devils; they shall speak with new tongues; they shall take up serpents; and if they drink any deadly thing it shall not hurt them; they shall lay hands on the sick and they shall recover;

And whosoever shall believe in my name, doubting nothing, unto him will I confirm all my words, even unto the ends of the earth.

And now, behold, who can stand against the works of the Lord? Who can deny his sayings? Who will rise up against the almighty power of the Lord? Who will despise the works of the Lord? Who will despise the children of Christ? Behold, all ye who are despisers of the works of the Lord, for ye shall wonder and perish.

O then despise not, and wonder not, but hearken unto the words of the Lord, and ask the Father in the name of Jesus for what things soever ye shall stand in need. Doubt not, but be believing, and begin as in times of old, and come unto the Lord with all your heart, and work out your own salvation with fear and trembling before him.

Be wise in the days of your probation; strip yourselves of all uncleanness; ask not, that ye may consume it on your lusts, but ask with a firmness unshaken, that ye will yield to no temptation, but that ye will serve the true and living God.

See that ye are not baptized unworthily; see that ye partake not of the sacrament of Christ unworthily; but see that ye do all things in worthiness, and do it in the name of Jesus Christ, the Son of the living God; and if ye do this, and endure to the end, ye will in nowise be cast out.

Behold, I speak unto you as though I spake from the dead; for I know that ye shall have my words.

- 31 Ningangisoli ngenxa yephutha lami, ngisho nobaba, ngenxa yephutha lakhe, noma labo ababhala ngaphambi kwakhe; kepha esikhundleni salokho mbongeni uNkulunkulu ukuthi uwavezile amaphutha ethu kini, ukuze nifunde ukuthi nihlakaniphe ngaphezu kwethu.
- 32 Manje, bhekani, siwubhale lombhalo ngokolwazi lwethu, ngemifanekiso eqoshiwe yasendulo esiyibiza ngokuthi yisiGibithe esiguquliwe, eyadluliswa futhi sayiguqula, ngokwendlela yokukhuluma kwethu.
- 33 Futhi ukuba izingcwephe zethu bezinkulu ngokwanele besiyobhala ngesiHeberu; kepha isiHeberu saguqulwa yithi naso futhi, futhi ukuba sasingakwazi ukubhala ngesiHeberu, bhekani, beningezukuba namaphutha embhalweni wethu.
- 34 Kepha iNkosi iyazazi izinto esizibhalile, futhi nokuthi akukho namunye umuntu owazi ulimi lwethu; futhi ngenxa yokuthi abekho abanye abantu abazi ulimi lwethu, ngakho-ke ilungise izindlela zokuhunyushwa kwalo.
- 35 Futhi lezi zinto zibhalelwe ukuthi sihlanze igazi labafowethu ezingutsheni zethu, asebehlezi kukho ukungakholwa.
- 36 Futhi bhekani, lezi zinto ebesizifisa mayelana nabafowethu, yebo, ngisho ukubuyiselwa kwabo olwazini lukaKristu, zingokwemikhuleko yabo bonke abangcwele abahlala kulelizwe.
- 37 Futhi sengathi iNkosi uJesusu Kristu angavuma ukuthi imikhuleko yabo iphendulwe ngokokholo lwabo; futhi sengathi uNkulunkulu uBaba angasikhumbula isivumelwano asenza nendlu ka-Israyeli; futhi sengathi angababusisa ingunaphakade, ngokukholwa egameni likaJesusu Kristu. Amen.

Condemn me not because of mine imperfection, neither my father, because of his imperfection, neither them who have written before him; but rather give thanks unto God that he hath made manifest unto you our imperfections, that ye may learn to be more wise than we have been.

And now, behold, we have written this record according to our knowledge, in the characters which are called among us the reformed Egyptian, being handed down and altered by us, according to our manner of speech.

And if our plates had been sufficiently large we should have written in Hebrew; but the Hebrew hath been altered by us also; and if we could have written in Hebrew, behold, ye would have had no imperfection in our record.

But the Lord knoweth the things which we have written, and also that none other people knoweth our language; and because that none other people knoweth our language, therefore he hath prepared means for the interpretation thereof.

And these things are written that we may rid our garments of the blood of our brethren, who have dwindled in unbelief.

And behold, these things which we have desired concerning our brethren, yea, even their restoration to the knowledge of Christ, are according to the prayers of all the saints who have dwelt in the land.

And may the Lord Jesus Christ grant that their prayers may be answered according to their faith; and may God the Father remember the covenant which he hath made with the house of Israel; and may he bless them forever, through faith on the name of Jesus Christ. Amen.

INcwadi ka-Etere

Umbhalo wamaFarede, othabwe ezingcwepheni ezingamashumi amabili nane ezatholwa ngabantu baLimbi ezinsukwini zeNkosi uMosiya.

Etere 1

- 1 Manje mina, Moroni, sengiyaqhubeka nokubhala indaba yalabo bantu basendulo ababhujiswa ngesandla seNkosi ebusweni balelizwe elisenyakatho.
- 2 Futhi indaba yami ngiyithatha ezingcwepheni ezingamashumi amabili nane ezatholwa ngabantu baLimhi, ezibizwa ngokuthi yiNcwadi ka-Etere.
- 3 Futhi njengoba ngicabanga ukuthi ingxenye yokuqala yalombhalo, ekhuluma ngokudalwa komhlaba, futhi kanjalo nokuka-Adamu, futhi nangendaba kusukela ngaleso sikhathi ngisho kuze kufike embhoshongweni omkhulu, futhi nanganoma yiziphi izinto ezenzeka phakathi kwabantwana babantu kuze kube yilesi sikhathi, zikumaJuda—
- 4 Ngakho-ke angizibhali lezo zinto ezenzeka kusukela ezinsukwini zika-Adamu kuze kube yilesi sikhathi; kepha zikhona kulezi zingcwephe; futhi lowo ozitholayo, uyoba namandla okuthi athole indaba egcwele.
- 5 Kepha bheka, angibhali indaba egcwele, kepha ngibhala ingxenye yendaba, kusukela embhoshongweni kwehla kuze kube bayabhujiswa.
- 6 Futhi ngiyibhala ngalendlela indaba. Lowo owabhala lombhalo kwakungu Etere, futhi wayengowozalo lukaKoriyantori.
- 7 UKoriyantori wayeyindodana kaMoroni.
- 8 Futhi uMoroni wayeyindodana ka-Etemi.
- 9 Futhi u-Etemi wayeyindodana ka-Aha.
- 10 Futhi u-Aha wayeyindodana ka-Seti.
- 11 Futhi uSeti wayeyindodana kaShibiloni.
- 12 Futhi uShibiloni wayeyindodana kaKomu.
- 13 Futhi uKomu wayeyindodana kaKoriyantumu.
- 14 Futhi uKoriyantumu wayeyindodana ka-Amnigada.
- 15 Futhi u-Amnigada wayeyindodana ka-Aroni.

The Book of Ether

The record of the Jaredites, taken from the twenty-four plates found by the people of Limbi in the days of King Mosiah.

Ether 1

And now I, Moroni, proceed to give an account of those ancient inhabitants who were destroyed by the hand of the Lord upon the face of this north country.

And I take mine account from the twenty and four plates which were found by the people of Limhi, which is called the Book of Ether.

And as I suppose that the first part of this record, which speaks concerning the creation of the world, and also of Adam, and an account from that time even to the great tower, and whatsoever things transpired among the children of men until that time, is had among the Jews—

Therefore I do not write those things which transpired from the days of Adam until that time; but they are had upon the plates; and whoso findeth them, the same will have power that he may get the full account.

But behold, I give not the full account, but a part of the account I give, from the tower down until they were destroyed.

And on this wise do I give the account. He that wrote this record was Ether, and he was a descendant of Coriantor.

Coriantor was the son of Moron.

And Moron was the son of Ethem.

And Ethem was the son of Ahah.

And Ahah was the son of Seth.

And Seth was the son of Shiblon.

And Shiblon was the son of Com.

And Com was the son of Coriantum.

And Coriantum was the son of Amnigaddah.

And Amnigaddah was the son of Aaron.

16 Futhi u-Aroni wayengowozalo lukaHeti,
owayeyindodana kaHehartomu.

17 Futhi uHehartomu wayeyindodana kaLibi.

18 Futhi uLibi wayeyindodana kaKishi.

19 Futhi uKishi wayeyindodana kaKoromu.

20 Futhi uKoromu wayeyindodana kaLevi.

21 Futhi uLevi wayeyindodana kaKimi.

22 Futhi uKimi wayeyindodana kaMoriyantoni.

23 Futhi uMoriyantoni wayengowozalo
lukaRiplakishi.

24 Futhi uRiplakishi wayeyindodana kaShezi.

25 Futhi uShezi wayeyindodana kaHeti.

26 Futhi uHeti wayeyindodana kaKomu.

27 Futhi uKomu wayeyindodana kaKoriyantumu.

28 Futhi uKoriyantumu wayeyindodana ka-Emeri.

29 Futhi u-Emeri wayeyindodana kaYomere.

30 Futhi uYomere wayeyindodana kaShule.

31 Futhi uShule wayeyindodana kaKibi.

32 Futhi uKibi wayeyindodana ka-Oriha,
owayeyindodana kaJarede.

33 Lowo Jaredede owaphuma nomfowabo kanye
nemindeni yabo, kanye nabanye nemindeni yabo,
embhoshongweni omkhulu, ngesikhathi iNkosi
iphambanisa ulimi lwabantu, futhi yafunga
isentukuthelweni yayo ukuthi bayohlakazwa kubo
bonke ubuso bomhlaba; futhi ngokwezwi leNkosi
abantu bahlakazwa.

34 Futhi umfowabo kaJarede eyindoda enkulu futhi
enamandla, futhi eyindoda eyayithandwa kakhulu
yiNkosi, uJarede, umfowabo, wathi kuye: Khala
eNkosini, ukuze ingasiphambanisi ukuthi
singawaqondi amazwi ethu.

35 Futhi kwenzeka ukuthi umfowabo kaJarede
nempela wakhala eNkosini, futhi iNkosi
yamhawukela uJarede; ngakho-ke ayizange
iluphambanise ulimi lukaJarede; futhi uJarede kanye
nomfowabo abazange baphanjaniswe.

36 Ngaleso sikhathi uJarede wathi kumfowabo:
Khala futhi eNkosini, ukuze isuse intukuthelo yayo
kulabo abangabangani bethu, ukuze
ingaluphambanisi ulimi lwabo.

And Aaron was a descendant of Heth, who was the
son of Hearthom.

And Hearthom was the son of Lib.

And Lib was the son of Kish.

And Kish was the son of Corom.

And Corom was the son of Levi.

And Levi was the son of Kim.

And Kim was the son of Morianton.

And Morianton was a descendant of Riplakish.

And Riplakish was the son of Shez.

And Shez was the son of Heth.

And Heth was the son of Com.

And Com was the son of Coriantum.

And Coriantum was the son of Emer.

And Emer was the son of Omer.

And Omer was the son of Shule.

And Shule was the son of Kib.

And Kib was the son of Orihah, who was the son
of Jared;

Which Jared came forth with his brother and their
families, with some others and their families, from
the great tower, at the time the Lord confounded the
language of the people, and swore in his wrath that
they should be scattered upon all the face of the
earth; and according to the word of the Lord the peo-
ple were scattered.

And the brother of Jared being a large and mighty
man, and a man highly favored of the Lord, Jared,
his brother, said unto him: Cry unto the Lord, that
he will not confound us that we may not understand
our words.

And it came to pass that the brother of Jared did
cry unto the Lord, and the Lord had compassion
upon Jared; therefore he did not confound the lan-
guage of Jared; and Jared and his brother were not
confounded.

Then Jared said unto his brother: Cry again unto
the Lord, and it may be that he will turn away his
anger from them who are our friends, that he con-
found not their language.

37 Futhi kwenzeka ukuthi umfowabo kaJarede nempela wakhala eNkosini, futhi iNkosi yabahawukela abangani babo futhi kanjalo nemindeni yabo, kangangoba nabo abaphanjaniswanga.

38 Futhi kwenzeka ukuthi uJarede waphinda wakhuluma kumfowabo, ethi: Hamba futhi uyobuza eNkosini ukuthi ngabe izosikhipha yini kulelizwe, futhi uma izosikhipha kulelizwe, khala kuyo ukuthi siyoya kuphi. Futhi ngubani owaziyo ukuthi kungenzeka iNkosi isithwale isiyise ezweni elikhethekileyo ngaphezu kwawo wonke emhlabeni na? Futhi uma kunjalo, masethembeke eNkosini, ukuze silithole libe yifa lethu.

39 Futhi kwenzeka ukuthi umfowabo kaJarede nempela wakhala eNkosini ngalokho okwakukhulunye ngomlomo kaJarede.

40 Futhi kwenzeka ukuthi iNkosi yamuzwa umfowabo kaJarede, futhi yaba nesihawu kuye, futhi yathi kuye:

41 Hamba futhi ubuthele ndawonye imihlambi yakho, iduna nensikazi, kwalo lonke uhlobo; futhi kanjalo nembewu yomhlaba yalo lonke uhlobo; kanye nemindeni yenu, futhi kanjalo noJarede umfowenu kanye nomndeni wakhe; futhi kanjalo nabangani bakho kanye nemindeni yabo, kanye nabangani baJarede nemindeni yabo.

42 Futhi uma usukwenzile lokhu uyobahola wehle uye esigodini esingasenyakatho. Futhi ngiyohlangana nawe lapho, futhi ngiyohamba phambi kwakho ukuya ezweni elikhethekileyo phezu kwawo wonke amazwe omhlaba.

43 Futhi lapho ngizokubusisa kanye nenzalo yakho, futhi ngizikhulisele enzalweni yakho, kanye nasenzalweni yomfowenu, kanye nakulabo abayohamba nawe, isizwe esikhulu. Futhi akuyikuba bikho nasinye esiyokuba sikhulu kunaleso sizwe engiyozikhulisele sona enzalweni yakho, kubo bonke ubuso bomhlaba. Futhi ngizokwenza kanjalo kuwe ngoba sonke lesi sikhathi eside ukhalile kimi.

And it came to pass that the brother of Jared did cry unto the Lord, and the Lord had compassion upon their friends and their families also, that they were not confounded.

And it came to pass that Jared spake again unto his brother, saying: Go and inquire of the Lord whether he will drive us out of the land, and if he will drive us out of the land, cry unto him whither we shall go. And who knoweth but the Lord will carry us forth into a land which is choice above all the earth? And if it so be, let us be faithful unto the Lord, that we may receive it for our inheritance.

And it came to pass that the brother of Jared did cry unto the Lord according to that which had been spoken by the mouth of Jared.

And it came to pass that the Lord did hear the brother of Jared, and had compassion upon him, and said unto him:

Go to and gather together thy flocks, both male and female, of every kind; and also of the seed of the earth of every kind; and thy families; and also Jared thy brother and his family; and also thy friends and their families, and the friends of Jared and their families.

And when thou hast done this thou shalt go at the head of them down into the valley which is northward. And there will I meet thee, and I will go before thee into a land which is choice above all the lands of the earth.

And there will I bless thee and thy seed, and raise up unto me of thy seed, and of the seed of thy brother, and they who shall go with thee, a great nation. And there shall be none greater than the nation which I will raise up unto me of thy seed, upon all the face of the earth. And thus I will do unto thee because this long time ye have cried unto me.

Etere 2

- 1 Futhi kwenzeka ukuthi uJarede kanye nomfowabo, kanye nemindeni yabo, futhi kanjalo nabangani baJarede kanye nabomfowabo kanye nemindeni yabo, bahamba behlela esigodini esasingasenyakatho, (futhi igama laleso sigodi kwakuyi Nimrode, siqanjwe ngomzingeli omkhulu) nemihlambi yabo ababeyiqoqele ndawonye, iduna kanye nensikazi, yalo lonke uhlobo.
- 2 Futhi baphinde babeka imigogo futhi babamba izinyoni zezulu; futhi baphinde balungisa isitsha, abathwala ngaso izinhlanzi zamanzi.
- 3 Futhi baphinde bathwala idezurethi, ngokuhunyushwa ebizwa ngokuthi yizinyosi zoju; futhi baphinde bathwala amaqulo ezinyosi, kanye nazo zonke izinhlobo zalokho okwakukhona ebusweni bezwe, imbewu yalo lonke uhlobo.
- 4 Futhi kwenzeka ukuthi ngesikhathi sebhlele ezansi esigodini sikaNimrode iNkosi yehla yazokhuluma nomfowabo kaJarede; futhi yayisefwini, futhi umfowabo kaJarede akayibonanga.
- 5 Futhi kwenzeka ukuthi iNkosi yabayala ukuthi bahambe baye ehlane, yebo, kuleyo ngxenye lapho kwakungakaze kube khona muntu kuyo. Futhi kwenzeka ukuthi iNkosi yahamba phambi kwabo, futhi yakhuluma nabo ngesikhathi yona imi efwini, futhi yabayalela ukuthi baye ngakuphi.
- 6 Futhi kwenzeka ukuthi bahamba ehlane, futhi bakha izikebhe; okwathi ngazo bawela amanzi amaningi, beyalelwa njalo yisandla seNkosi.
- 7 Futhi iNkosi ayibavumelanga ukuthi bame ngaphesheya kolwandle ehlane, kepha yayifuna ukuthi bahambe baze bafike ngisho ezweni lesethembiso, elalikhethekile ngaphezu kwawo wonke amanye amazwe, iNkosi uNkulunkulu eyayili londolozele abantu abalungileyo.
- 8 Futhi yayifungile isentukuthelweni yayo kumfowabo kaJarede, ukuthi lowo owayeyothola lelizwe lesethembiso, kusukela ngaleso sikhathi kuya phambili futhi ingunaphakade, kumele asebenzele yona, uNkulunkulu weqiniso nokunguye yedwa, noma bashanelwe baphele ngesikhathi intukuthelo yayo yonke isiza kubo.

Ether 2

And it came to pass that Jared and his brother, and their families, and also the friends of Jared and his brother and their families, went down into the valley which was northward, (and the name of the valley was Nimrod, being called after the mighty hunter) with their flocks which they had gathered together, male and female, of every kind.

And they did also lay snares and catch fowls of the air; and they did also prepare a vessel, in which they did carry with them the fish of the waters.

And they did also carry with them deseret, which, by interpretation, is a honey bee; and thus they did carry with them swarms of bees, and all manner of that which was upon the face of the land, seeds of every kind.

And it came to pass that when they had come down into the valley of Nimrod the Lord came down and talked with the brother of Jared; and he was in a cloud, and the brother of Jared saw him not.

And it came to pass that the Lord commanded them that they should go forth into the wilderness, yea, into that quarter where there never had man been. And it came to pass that the Lord did go before them, and did talk with them as he stood in a cloud, and gave directions whither they should travel.

And it came to pass that they did travel in the wilderness, and did build barges, in which they did cross many waters, being directed continually by the hand of the Lord.

And the Lord would not suffer that they should stop beyond the sea in the wilderness, but he would that they should come forth even unto the land of promise, which was choice above all other lands, which the Lord God had preserved for a righteous people.

And he had sworn in his wrath unto the brother of Jared, that whoso should possess this land of promise, from that time henceforth and forever, should serve him, the true and only God, or they should be swept off when the fulness of his wrath should come upon them.

- 9 Manje, siyakubona okushiwo nguNkulunkulu mayelana nalelizwe, ukuthi liyizwe lesethembiso; futhi leso sizwe esiyolithola siyosebenzela uNkulunkulu, noma bayoshanelwa baphele nya ngesikhathi intukuthelo yayo yonke isiza kubo. Futhi intukuthelo yayo yonke iza kubo uma sebevuthiwe ebubini.
- 10 Ngokuba bheka, leli yizwe elikhethekileyo ngaphezu kwawo wonke amanye amazwe; ngalokho-ke lowo olitholayo uyosebenzela uNkulunkulu noma uyoshanelwa aphele; ngokuba lokhu ngokushiwo nguNkulunkulu ingunaphakade. Futhi akuzukwenzeka kuze kube khona ububi obungenamkhawuko phakathi kwabantwana balelizwe, ukuthi bashanelwe baphele.
- 11 Futhi lokhu kuza kini, O nina beZizwe, ukuze nikwazi okushiwo nguNkulunkulu—ukuze niphenduke, futhi ningabe nisaqhubeka ebubini benu kuze kube ulaka lonke luyeza, ukuze ningalwehliseli ulaka lonke lukaNkulunkulu phezu kwenu njengoba abantu balelizwe benze njalo phambilini.
- 12 Bheka, leli yizwe elikhethekileyo, futhi leso sizwe esiyolithola siyokhululeka ebugqilini, kanye nasekuthunjweni, kanye nakuzo zonke izizwe eziphansi kwezulu, uma nje kuphela bengamsebenzela uNkulunkulu walelizwe, okunguJesu Kristu, osebonakaliswe ngalezo zinto esizibhalile.
- 13 Manje sengiyaqhubeka nendaba yami; ngokuba bheka, kwenzeka ukuthi iNkosi yamletha uJarede kanye nomfowabo ngisho nakulolo lwandle olukhulu olwehlukana amazwe. Futhi ngesikhathi befika olwandle bagxumeka amatende abo; futhi bayibiza lendawo ngegama elithi yiMoriyankumeri; futhi bahlala ematendeni, futhi bahlala ematendeni ogwini lolwandle isikhathi esingangeminyaka emine.
- 14 Futhi kwenzeka ekupheleni kweminyaka emine ukuthi iNkosi yeza futhi kumfowabo kaJarede, futhi yema efwini yakhuluma naye. Futhi iNkosi yakhuluma nomfowabo kaJarede isikhathi esingangamahora amathathu, futhi yamthobisa ngoba engakhumbulanga ukubiza igama leNkosi.

And now, we can behold the decrees of God concerning this land, that it is a land of promise; and whatsoever nation shall possess it shall serve God, or they shall be swept off when the fulness of his wrath shall come upon them. And the fulness of his wrath cometh upon them when they are ripened in iniquity.

For behold, this is a land which is choice above all other lands; wherefore he that doth possess it shall serve God or shall be swept off; for it is the everlasting decree of God. And it is not until the fulness of iniquity among the children of the land, that they are swept off.

And this cometh unto you, O ye Gentiles, that ye may know the decrees of God—that ye may repent, and not continue in your iniquities until the fulness come, that ye may not bring down the fulness of the wrath of God upon you as the inhabitants of the land have hitherto done.

Behold, this is a choice land, and whatsoever nation shall possess it shall be free from bondage, and from captivity, and from all other nations under heaven, if they will but serve the God of the land, who is Jesus Christ, who hath been manifested by the things which we have written.

And now I proceed with my record; for behold, it came to pass that the Lord did bring Jared and his brethren forth even to that great sea which divideth the lands. And as they came to the sea they pitched their tents; and they called the name of the place Moriancumer; and they dwelt in tents, and dwelt in tents upon the seashore for the space of four years.

And it came to pass at the end of four years that the Lord came again unto the brother of Jared, and stood in a cloud and talked with him. And for the space of three hours did the Lord talk with the brother of Jared, and chastened him because he remembered not to call upon the name of the Lord.

- 15 Futhi umfowabo kaJarede waphenduka kulobo bubu ayebenzile, futhi nempela walibiza igama leNkosi enzela abafowabo ababe naye. Futhi iNkosi yathi kuye: Ngizokuxolela wena kanye nabafowenu ezonweni zabo; kepha ningabe nisona nanini, ngokuba niyokhumbula ukuthi uMoya wami awunakuhlala kumuntu njalo; ngalokho-ke, uma nizokona kuze kube nivuthwa ngokuphelele niyosuswa phambi kweNkosi. Futhi lena yimicabango yami ngezwe engiyoninika lona ukuthi libe yifa lenu; ngokuba liyokuba yizwe elikhethekileyo ngaphezu kwawo wonke amanye amazwe.
- 16 Futhi iNkosi yathi: Hamba uyosebenza futhi wakhe izikebhe ngaleyondlela obuzakha ngayo kuze kube manje. Futhi kwenzeka ukuthi umfowabo kaJarede nempela wahamba wayosebenza, futhi kanjalo nabafowabo, futhi bakha izikebhe ngendlela abebazakhe ngayo, ngokwemiyalelo yeNkosi, futhi zazizincane, futhi zazilula phezu kwamanzi, ngisho njengoba inyoni ilula phezu kwamanzi.
- 17 Futhi zazakhiwe ngendlela yokuthi zaziqine kakhulu, ngisho kangangoba zazingamumatha amanzi njengesitsha; futhi ingaphansi lazo laliqine njengelesitsha; futhi amacala azo ayeqine njengesitsha; futhi amachopho azo ayephakeme; futhi ingaphezulu lazo laliqine njengesitsha; futhi ubude bazo babungangobude besihlahla; futhi umnyango wazo, uma uvaliwe, wawuqine njengesitsha.
- 18 Futhi kwenzeka ukuthi umfowabo kaJarede wakhala eNkosini, ethi: O Nkosi, sengiwenzile umsebenzi ongiyale ngawo, futhi sengizenzile izikebhe njengokuba ungiyalile.
- 19 Futhi bheka, O Nkosi, kuzo akukho ukukhanya; sizogwedla siye ngakuphi na? Futhi phezu kwalokho sizofa, ngokuba kuzo asinakukwazi ukuphefumula, ngaphandle kwalowomoya okuzo; ngakho-ke sizofa.
- 20 INkosi yathi kumfowabo kaJarede: Bheka, uyokwenza imbobo ngaphezulu, futhi kanjalo nangaphansi; futhi uma nidinga umoya uyovula imbobo bese nithola umoya. Futhi uma kungukuthi amanzi ayaningenela, bheka, uyoyivala imbobo, ukuze ningafi ezikhukhuleni.

And the brother of Jared repented of the evil which he had done, and did call upon the name of the Lord for his brethren who were with him. And the Lord said unto him: I will forgive thee and thy brethren of their sins; but thou shalt not sin any more, for ye shall remember that my Spirit will not always strive with man; wherefore, if ye will sin until ye are fully ripe ye shall be cut off from the presence of the Lord. And these are my thoughts upon the land which I shall give you for your inheritance; for it shall be a land choice above all other lands.

And the Lord said: Go to work and build, after the manner of barges which ye have hitherto built. And it came to pass that the brother of Jared did go to work, and also his brethren, and built barges after the manner which they had built, according to the instructions of the Lord. And they were small, and they were light upon the water, even like unto the lightness of a fowl upon the water.

And they were built after a manner that they were exceedingly tight, even that they would hold water like unto a dish; and the bottom thereof was tight like unto a dish; and the sides thereof were tight like unto a dish; and the ends thereof were peaked; and the top thereof was tight like unto a dish; and the length thereof was the length of a tree; and the door thereof, when it was shut, was tight like unto a dish.

And it came to pass that the brother of Jared cried unto the Lord, saying: O Lord, I have performed the work which thou hast commanded me, and I have made the barges according as thou hast directed me.

And behold, O Lord, in them there is no light; whither shall we steer? And also we shall perish, for in them we cannot breathe, save it is the air which is in them; therefore we shall perish.

And the Lord said unto the brother of Jared: Behold, thou shalt make a hole in the top, and also in the bottom; and when thou shalt suffer for air thou shalt unstop the hole and receive air. And if it be so that the water come in upon thee, behold, ye shall stop the hole, that ye may not perish in the flood.

- 21 Futhi kwenzeka ukuthi umfowabo kaJarede wenze njalo, njengoba iNkosi yayiyalile.
- 22 Futhi waphinda wakhala eNkosini ethi: O Nkosi, bheka sengenzile ngisho njengoba ungiyalile; futhi sengibalungiselele abantu bami izikebhe, futhi bheka akukho ukukhanya kuzo. Bheka, O Nkosi, uzosivumela yini ukuthi siqamule lamanzi amakhulu ebumnyameni na?
- 23 INkosi yathi kumfowabo kaJarede: Ufuna ukuthi ngenzeni ukuze nibe nokukhanya ezikebheni zenu na? Ngokuba bheka, aninakukwazi ukuthi nibe namafasitela, ngokuba ayophahlazeka abe yizicucu; futhi aniyukuhamba nomlilo, ngokuba anizukuhamba ngokukhanya komlilo.
- 24 Ngokuba bheka, niyoba njengomkhoma maphakathi nolwandle; ngokuba izintaba zamagagasi ziyonishaya. Nokho, ngiyonikhipha futhi ezinzulwini zolwandle; ngokuba imimoya ngiyithumele, futhi kanjalo nezimvula kanye nezikhukhula ngizithumele.
- 25 Futhi bheka, ngiyanilungiselela ukuze nimelane nalezi zinto; ngokuba aninakukwazi ukunqamula lamanzi amakhulu ngaphandle kokuthi nginilungiselele ukuze nimelana namagagasi olwandle, kanye naleyo mimoya engiyithumele, kanye nalezo zikhukhula eziyoza. Ngakho-ke ufuna ukuthi nginilungiseleleni ukuze nibe nokukhanya ngesikhathi nigwinywa ekujuleni kolwandle na?

And it came to pass that the brother of Jared did so, according as the Lord had commanded.

And he cried again unto the Lord saying: O Lord, behold I have done even as thou hast commanded me; and I have prepared the vessels for my people, and behold there is no light in them. Behold, O Lord, wilt thou suffer that we shall cross this great water in darkness?

And the Lord said unto the brother of Jared: What will ye that I should do that ye may have light in your vessels? For behold, ye cannot have windows, for they will be dashed in pieces; neither shall ye take fire with you, for ye shall not go by the light of fire.

For behold, ye shall be as a whale in the midst of the sea; for the mountain waves shall dash upon you. Nevertheless, I will bring you up again out of the depths of the sea; for the winds have gone forth out of my mouth, and also the rains and the floods have I sent forth.

And behold, I prepare you against these things; for ye cannot cross this great deep save I prepare you against the waves of the sea, and the winds which have gone forth, and the floods which shall come. Therefore what will ye that I should prepare for you that ye may have light when ye are swallowed up in the depths of the sea?

Etere 3

- 1 Futhi kwenzeka ukuthi umfowabo kaJarede, (manje isibalo sezikebhe ezase zilungisiwe zaziysisishiyagalombili) wahamba waya entabeni, ababeyibiza ngentaba iShelema, ngenxa yobude bayo obukhulu, futhi wancibilikisa edwaleni amatshe amancane ayishumi nesithupha; futhi ayemhlophe futhi ecacile, ngisho njengengilazi ekhanyayo; futhi wawathwala ngezandla zakhe waya nawo phezulu entabeni, futhi waphinda wakhala eNkosini, ethi:
- 2 O Nkosi, uthe sizozungezwa yizikhukhula. Manje bheka, O Nkosi, futhi ungasinwa yinceku yakho ngenxa yobuthakathaka bayo phambi kwakho; ngokuba siyazi ukuthi wena ungcewele futhi uhlala emazulwini, futhi nokuthi thina asifanelekile phambi kwakho; ngenxa yokuwa imvelo yethu selokhu yaba nobubi njalo; nokho, O Nkosi, usinike umyalelo wokuthi kufanele sicele kuwe, ukuze kuwe sithole njengokwezifiso zethu.
- 3 Bheka, O Nkosi, usishayile ngenxa yobubi bethu, futhi wasiqhuba, futhi kuleminyaka eminingi besisehlane; nokho, ube nomusa kithi. O Nkosi, ngibheke ngokungihawukela, futhi ususe intukuthelo yakho kulaba bantu bakho, futhi ungavumi ukuthi bahambe banqamule kulamanzi anesivunguvungu ebumnyameni; kepha bheka lezi zinto engizincibilikisile ngazikhipha edwaleni.
- 4 Futhi ngiyazi, O Nkosi, ukuthi wena unamandla onke, futhi ungenza noma yini oyifisayo ukuthi kuzuze umuntu; ngakho-ke thinta lamatshe, O Nkosi, ngomunwe wakho, futhi uwalungisele ukuthi akhanye ebumnyameni; futhi ayosikhanyisela ezikebheni esizilungisile, ukuze sibe nokukhanya ngesikhathi sinqamula ulwandle.
- 5 Bheka, O Nkosi, ungakwenza lokhu. Siyazi ukuthi wena uyakwazi ukukhombisa amandla akho amakhulu, abukeka emancane ngokuqonda kwabantu.

Ether 3

And it came to pass that the brother of Jared, (now the number of the vessels which had been prepared was eight) went forth unto the mount, which they called the mount Shelem, because of its exceeding height, and did molten out of a rock sixteen small stones; and they were white and clear, even as transparent glass; and he did carry them in his hands upon the top of the mount, and cried again unto the Lord, saying:

O Lord, thou hast said that we must be encompassed about by the floods. Now behold, O Lord, and do not be angry with thy servant because of his weakness before thee; for we know that thou art holy and dwellest in the heavens, and that we are unworthy before thee; because of the fall our natures have become evil continually; nevertheless, O Lord, thou hast given us a commandment that we must call upon thee, that from thee we may receive according to our desires.

Behold, O Lord, thou hast smitten us because of our iniquity, and hast driven us forth, and for these many years we have been in the wilderness; nevertheless, thou hast been merciful unto us. O Lord, look upon me in pity, and turn away thine anger from this thy people, and suffer not that they shall go forth across this raging deep in darkness; but behold these things which I have molten out of the rock.

And I know, O Lord, that thou hast all power, and can do whatsoever thou wilt for the benefit of man; therefore touch these stones, O Lord, with thy finger, and prepare them that they may shine forth in darkness; and they shall shine forth unto us in the vessels which we have prepared, that we may have light while we shall cross the sea.

Behold, O Lord, thou canst do this. We know that thou art able to show forth great power, which looks small unto the understanding of men.

6 Futhi kwenzeka ukuthi ngesikhathi umfowabo kaJarede esewashilo lamazwi, bheka, iNkosi yelula isandla sayo futhi yawathinta amatshe ngalinye ngalinye ngomunwe wayo. Futhi isisitho sasuswa emehlweni omfowabo kaJarede, futhi wabona umunwe weNkosi; futhi wawunjengomunwe womuntu, njengenyama kanye negazi; futhi umfowabo kaJarede wawa phansi phambi kweNkosi, ngokuba washaywa wukwesaba.

7 Futhi iNkosi yabona ukuthi umfowabo kaJarede wayesewele phansi; yase iNkosi ithi kuye: Sukuma, uwiswa yini na?

8 Futhi wathi eNkosini: Ngibone umunwe weNkosi, futhi ngesabile hleze ingishaye; ngokuba bengingazi ukuthi iNkosi inenyama kanye negazi.

9 INkosi yathi kuye: Ngenxa yokholo lwakho ubonile ukuthi ngiyongena emzimbeni wenyama kanye negazi; futhi akukaze nanini umuntu eze phambi kwami ngokholo olukhulu kangaka njengoba wena wenzile; ngokuba ukuba bekungenjalo ubungenakuwubona umunwe wami. Ngabe ubona okuningi kunalokhu na?

10 Futhi waphendula wathi: Cha; Nkosi, ziveze kimi.

11 INkosi yathi kuye: Uzowakholwa yini amazwi engizowakhuluma na?

12 Waphendula wathi: Yebo, Nkosi, ngiyazi ukuthi wena ukhuluma iqiniso, ngokuba unguNkulunkulu weqiniso, futhi awunakuwaqamba amanga.

13 Futhi ngesikhathi esewashilo lamazwi, bheka, iNkosi yaziveza kuye, futhi yathi: Ngenxa yokuthi uyazazi lezi zinto usukhululiwe ekuweni; ngakho-ke ubuyiselwa phambi bami; ngakho-ke ngiyaziveza kuwe.

14 Bheka, nginguye lowo owalungiselelwa kusukela ekusekelweni komhlaba ukuze ngikhulule abantu bami. Bheka, nginguJesu Kristu. Ngingu Baba kanye neNdodana. Kimi sonke isintu siyokuba nokuphila, futhi lokho kuyoba okwaphakade, ngisho nalabo abayokholwa egameni lami; futhi bayokuba ngamadodana kanye namadodakazi ami.

And it came to pass that when the brother of Jared had said these words, behold, the Lord stretched forth his hand and touched the stones one by one with his finger. And the veil was taken from off the eyes of the brother of Jared, and he saw the finger of the Lord; and it was as the finger of a man, like unto flesh and blood; and the brother of Jared fell down before the Lord, for he was struck with fear.

And the Lord saw that the brother of Jared had fallen to the earth; and the Lord said unto him: Arise, why hast thou fallen?

And he saith unto the Lord: I saw the finger of the Lord, and I feared lest he should smite me; for I knew not that the Lord had flesh and blood.

And the Lord said unto him: Because of thy faith thou hast seen that I shall take upon me flesh and blood; and never has man come before me with such exceeding faith as thou hast; for were it not so ye could not have seen my finger. Sawest thou more than this?

And he answered: Nay; Lord, show thyself unto me.

And the Lord said unto him: Believest thou the words which I shall speak?

And he answered: Yea, Lord, I know that thou speakest the truth, for thou art a God of truth, and canst not lie.

And when he had said these words, behold, the Lord showed himself unto him, and said: Because thou knowest these things ye are redeemed from the fall; therefore ye are brought back into my presence; therefore I show myself unto you.

Behold, I am he who was prepared from the foundation of the world to redeem my people. Behold, I am Jesus Christ. I am the Father and the Son. In me shall all mankind have life, and that eternally, even they who shall believe on my name; and they shall become my sons and my daughters.

- 15 Futhi angikaze nanini ngiziveze kumuntu engimdalile, ngokuba umuntu akakaze nanini akholwe kimi njengoba wena wenzile. Uyabona yini ukuthi wenziwe ngomfanekiso wami na? Yebo, ngisho bonke abantu badalwa ekuqaleni ngomfanekiso wami.
- 16 Bheka, lomzimba, owubonayo manje, ngumzimba womoya wami; futhi umuntu ngamdala ngomfanekiso womzimba womoya wami; futhi njengoba ngivela kuwe ngisemoyeni ngiyovela kubantu bami enyameni.
- 17 Manje, njengoba mina, Moroni, ngithe ngeke ngikwazi ukwenza indaba ephelele yalezi zinto ezibhaliwe, ngakho-ke kuyangenelisa ukusho ukuthi uJesus waziveza kulendoda esemoyeni, ngisho nangaleyo ndlela futhi nangokufana nalowo mzimba azibonakalisa ngawo kumaNefi.
- 18 Futhi wamsebenzela ngisho nanjengoba asebenzela amaNefi; futhi konke lokhu, ukuze kuthi lendoda yazi ukuthi wayenguNkulunkulu, ngenxa yemisebenzi eminingi nemikhulu iNkosi eyambonisa yona.
- 19 Futhi ngenxa yolwazi lwalendoda ayibange isavinjelwa ukuthi ibone ngaphakathi kwesisitho; futhi yabona umunwe kaJesus, okwathi uma iwubona, yawa ngokwesaba; ngokuba yazi ukuthi kwakungumunwe weNkosi; futhi ayibange isaba nokholo, ngokuba yaseyazi, ingasangabazi lutho.
- 20 Ngalokho-ke, esenalolulwazi oluphelele lukaNkulunkulu, akabange esavinjelwa ukuthi abe ngaphakathi kwesisitho; ngakho-ke wambona uJesus; futhi nempela wamsebenzela.
- 21 Futhi kwenzeka ukuthi iNkosi yathi kumfowabo kaJared: Bheka, ungazivumeli lezi zinto ozibonile futhi nozizwile ukuthi ziye emhlabeni, kuze kufike isikhathi engiyodumisa ngaso igama lami enyameni; ngalokho-ke, uyozogcina lezi zinto ozibonile futhi nozizwile, futhi ungazikhombisi muntu.
- 22 Futhi bheka, ngesikhathi usuhlangana nami, uyozibhala futhi uzigcine zilondekile, ukuze kungabi bikho namunye ongazihumusha; ngokuba uyozibhala ngolimi ukuze zingafundeki.

And never have I showed myself unto man whom I have created, for never has man believed in me as thou hast. Seest thou that ye are created after mine own image? Yea, even all men were created in the beginning after mine own image.

Behold, this body, which ye now behold, is the body of my spirit; and man have I created after the body of my spirit; and even as I appear unto thee to be in the spirit will I appear unto my people in the flesh.

And now, as I, Moroni, said I could not make a full account of these things which are written, therefore it sufficeth me to say that Jesus showed himself unto this man in the spirit, even after the manner and in the likeness of the same body even as he showed himself unto the Nephites.

And he ministered unto him even as he ministered unto the Nephites; and all this, that this man might know that he was God, because of the many great works which the Lord had showed unto him.

And because of the knowledge of this man he could not be kept from beholding within the veil; and he saw the finger of Jesus, which, when he saw, he fell with fear; for he knew that it was the finger of the Lord; and he had faith no longer, for he knew, nothing doubting.

Wherefore, having this perfect knowledge of God, he could not be kept from within the veil; therefore he saw Jesus; and he did minister unto him.

And it came to pass that the Lord said unto the brother of Jared: Behold, thou shalt not suffer these things which ye have seen and heard to go forth unto the world, until the time cometh that I shall glorify my name in the flesh; wherefore, ye shall treasure up the things which ye have seen and heard, and show it to no man.

And behold, when ye shall come unto me, ye shall write them and shall seal them up, that no one can interpret them; for ye shall write them in a language that they cannot be read.

23 Futhi bheka, lamatshe amabili ngizokunika wona, futhi uyowagcina elondekile nawo futhi nalezo zinto oyozi bhala.

24 Ngokuba bheka, lolo limi oyolubhala ngiluphambanisile; ngalokho-ke ngiyokwenza ngesikhathi sami esifanele ukuthi lamatshe azicacise emehlweni abantu lezi zinto oyozi bhala.

25 Futhi ngesikhathi iNkosi isiwakhulumile lamazwi, yakhombisa umfowabo kaJarede bonke abantu bomhlaba ababe kade bekhona, futhi kanjalo nabo bonke labo ababesazoba khona; futhi ayibagodlanga emehlweni akhe, kwaze kwaba ngisho nasemikhawulweni yomhlaba.

26 Ngokuba yayishilo kuye ngezikhathi eziphambili, ukuthi uma wayezo kholwa kuyo ukuthi yayizokhombisa zonke izinto—lokho kwakuzokhonjiswa kuye; ngakho-ke iNkosi yayingasenakugodla nanoma yini kuye, ngokuba wayazi ukuthi iNkosi yayingamkhombisa zonke izinto.

27 Futhi iNkosi yathi kuye: Bhala lezi zinto bese uzigcina zilondekile; futhi ngiyoziveza ngesikhathi sami esifanele kubantwana babantu.

28 Futhi kwenzeka ukuthi iNkosi yamyala ukuthi awagcine elondekile nalawo matshe amabili ayewatholile, futhi angawavezi, kuze kube iNkosi iwaveza yona kubantwana babantu.

And behold, these two stones will I give unto thee, and ye shall seal them up also with the things which ye shall write.

For behold, the language which ye shall write I have confounded; wherefore I will cause in my own due time that these stones shall magnify to the eyes of men these things which ye shall write.

And when the Lord had said these words, he showed unto the brother of Jared all the inhabitants of the earth which had been, and also all that would be; and he withheld them not from his sight, even unto the ends of the earth.

For he had said unto him in times before, that if he would believe in him that he could show unto him all things—it should be shown unto him; therefore the Lord could not withhold anything from him, for he knew that the Lord could show him all things.

And the Lord said unto him: Write these things and seal them up; and I will show them in mine own due time unto the children of men.

And it came to pass that the Lord commanded him that he should seal up the two stones which he had received, and show them not, until the Lord should show them unto the children of men.

Etere 4

- 1 INkosi yayala umfowabo kaJarede ukuthi ehlele ezansi asuke entabeni phambi kweNkosi, futhi azibhale lezo izinto ayezibonile; futhi ayivumamnga ukuthi ziye kubantwana babantu kuze kube semva kokuthi iphakanyiselwe phezulu esiphambanweni; futhi ngalesi sizathu iNkosi uMosiya yazigcina, ukuze zingayi emhlabeni kuze kube semva kokuthi uKristu esezivezile kubantu bakhe.
- 2 Futhi emva kokuthi uKristu esezivezile ngempela kubantu bakhe wayala ukuthi zambulwe.
- 3 Manje, emva kwalokho, bonke sebencishelwe wukholo; futhi akusekho namunye ngaphandle kwamaLamani, futhi balenqabile ivangeli likaKristu; ngakho-ke ngiyalwe ukuthi ngiphinde ngizifihle futhi phansi.
- 4 Bheka, ngibhale kulezingcwephe zona kanye lezo zinto umfowabo kaJarede azibona; futhi akukaze nanini kube khona izinto ezinkulu ezake zambulwa kunalezo ezambulwa kumfowabo kaJarede.
- 5 Ngalokho-ke iNkosi ingiyale ukuthi ngizibhale; futhi ngizibhalile. Futhi ingiyale ukuthi ngizigcine zilondekile; futhi phezu kwalokho iyale ukuthi ngikugcine kulondekile ukuhunyushwa kwazo; ngalokho-ke ngizigcine zilondekile izihumushi, njengokomyalelo weNkosi.
- 6 Ngokuba iNkosi yathi kimi: Aziyikuya kwabeZizwe kuze kube wusuku lapho beyophenduka ebubini babo, futhi bahlanzeke phambi kweNkosi.
- 7 Futhi ngalolo suku lapho beyosebenzisa ukholo kimi, kusho iNkosi, ngisho nanjengoba umfowabo kaJarede enza, ukuze bangcweliswe kimi, emva kwalokho ngiyozembula kubo lezo zinto umfowabo kaJarede azibona, kangangoba ngiyokwembula zonke izambulo zami, kusho uJesu Kristu, iNdodana kaNkulunkulu, uBaba wamazulu kanye nomhlaba, kanye nazo zonke izinto ezikuwo.
- 8 Futhi lowo oyophikisana nezwi leNkosi, makaqalekiswe; futhi lowo oyoziphika lezi zinto, makaqalekiswe; ngokuba kulabo angiyikubakhombisa izinto ezinkulu, kusho uJesu Kristu; ngokuba nginguye okhulumayo.

Ether 4

And the Lord commanded the brother of Jared to go down out of the mount from the presence of the Lord, and write the things which he had seen; and they were forbidden to come unto the children of men until after that he should be lifted up upon the cross; and for this cause did king Mosiah keep them, that they should not come unto the world until after Christ should show himself unto his people.

And after Christ truly had showed himself unto his people he commanded that they should be made manifest.

And now, after that, they have all dwindled in unbelief; and there is none save it be the Lamanites, and they have rejected the gospel of Christ; therefore I am commanded that I should hide them up again in the earth.

Behold, I have written upon these plates the very things which the brother of Jared saw; and there never were greater things made manifest than those which were made manifest unto the brother of Jared.

Wherefore the Lord hath commanded me to write them; and I have written them. And he commanded me that I should seal them up; and he also hath commanded that I should seal up the interpretation thereof; wherefore I have sealed up the interpreters, according to the commandment of the Lord.

For the Lord said unto me: They shall not go forth unto the Gentiles until the day that they shall repent of their iniquity, and become clean before the Lord.

And in that day that they shall exercise faith in me, saith the Lord, even as the brother of Jared did, that they may become sanctified in me, then will I manifest unto them the things which the brother of Jared saw, even to the unfolding unto them all my revelations, saith Jesus Christ, the Son of God, the Father of the heavens and of the earth, and all things that in them are.

And he that will contend against the word of the Lord, let him be accursed; and he that shall deny these things, let him be accursed; for unto them will I show no greater things, saith Jesus Christ; for I am he who speaketh.

- 9 Futhi ngokuyala kwami amazulu ayavuleka futhi avaleke; futhi ngezwi lami umhlaba uyozamama; futhi ngokuyala kwami abantu bakhona bayodlula, ngisho kanjalo nangomlilo.
- 10 Futhi lowo ongawakholwa amazwi ami akabakholwa nabafundi bami; futhi uma kungukuthi akusimi engikhulumayo, solani; ngokuba niyokwazi ukuthi yimi okhulumayo, ngosuku lokugcina.
- 11 Kepha lowo okholwayo yilezi zinto engizikhulumile, ngiyomvakashela ngezambulo zikaMoya wami, futhi uyokwazi futhi afakaze. Ngokuba ngenxa yoMoya wami uyokwazi ukuthi lezi zinto ziyiqiniso; ngokuba zikhohisa abantu ukuthi benze okuhle.
- 12 Futhi noma ngabe yini ekholisa abantu ukuthi benze okuhle ivela kimi; ngokuba okuhle akuveli komunye ngaphandle kokuthi kuvele kimi. Nginguye kanye lowo oholela abantu kubo bonke ubuhle; lowo ongezukuwakhohwa amazwi ami akazukungikhohwa nami—ukuthi nginguye; futhi lowo ongezukungikhohwa akazukumkhohwa noBaba ongithumileyo. Ngokuba bheka, nginguBaba, ngiwuku khanya, kanye nokuphila, kanye neqiniso lomhlaba.
- 13 Wozani kimi, O nina beZizwe, futhi ngizonikhombisa izinto ezinkulu, ulwazi olufihlakele ngenxa yokungakhohwa.
- 14 Wozani kimi, O nina ndlu ka-Israyeli, futhi kuyokwembulwa kini ukuthi zinkulu kangakanani izinto uBaba anibekele zona, kusukela ekuselweni komhlaba; futhi azizanga kini, ngenxa yokungakhohwa.
- 15 Bhekani, uma niyosidabula leso sisitho sokungakhohwa esenza ukuthi nihlale nisesimweni senu sobubi obesabekayo, kanye nobulukhuni benhliziyo, kanye nobumpumpu the bengqondo, emva kwalokho izinto ezinkulu kanye nezimangalisayo enafihlelwa zona kusukela ekusekelweni komhlaba—yebo, uma niyobiza uBaba egameni lami, ngenhliziyo edabukileyo kanye nangomoya okhathazekileyo, emva kwalokho niyokwazi ukuthi uBaba usikhumbulile isivumelwano asenza koyihlo, O ndlu ka-Israyeli.

And at my command the heavens are opened and are shut; and at my word the earth shall shake; and at my command the inhabitants thereof shall pass away, even so as by fire.

And he that believeth not my words believeth not my disciples; and if it so be that I do not speak, judge ye; for ye shall know that it is I that speaketh, at the last day.

But he that believeth these things which I have spoken, him will I visit with the manifestations of my Spirit, and he shall know and bear record. For because of my Spirit he shall know that these things are true; for it persuadeth men to do good.

And whatsoever thing persuadeth men to do good is of me; for good cometh of none save it be of me. I am the same that leadeth men to all good; he that will not believe my words will not believe me—that I am; and he that will not believe me will not believe the Father who sent me. For behold, I am the Father, I am the light, and the life, and the truth of the world.

Come unto me, O ye Gentiles, and I will show unto you the greater things, the knowledge which is hid up because of unbelief.

Come unto me, O ye house of Israel, and it shall be made manifest unto you how great things the Father hath laid up for you, from the foundation of the world; and it hath not come unto you, because of unbelief.

Behold, when ye shall rend that veil of unbelief which doth cause you to remain in your awful state of wickedness, and hardness of heart, and blindness of mind, then shall the great and marvelous things which have been hid up from the foundation of the world from you—yea, when ye shall call upon the Father in my name, with a broken heart and a contrite spirit, then shall ye know that the Father hath remembered the covenant which he made unto your fathers, O house of Israel.

- 16 Futhi emva kwalokho izambulo zami engenze ukuthi zibhalwe yinceku yami uJohane ziyokwambulwa emehlweni abo bonke abantu. Khumbulani, ngesikhathi senizibona lezi zinto, niyobe seniyazi ukuthi isikhathi sesiseduze ukuthi zambulwe ngezenzo uqobo.
- 17 Ngakho-ke, ngesikhathi seniwuthola lombhalo niyobe seniyazi ukuthi umsebenzi kaBaba usuqalile kubo bonke ubuso bezwe.
- 18 Ngakho-ke, phendukani nonke nina mikhawulo yomhlaba, futhi nize kimi, futhi nikholwe evangelini lami, futhi nibhabhadiswe egameni lami; ngokuba lowo okholwayo futhi abhabhadiswe uyosindiswa; kepha lowo ongakholwayo uyovinjelwa ukusondela kuNkulunkulu; futhi izibonakaliso ziyobalandela labo abakholwa egameni lami.
- 19 Futhi ubusisiwe lowo otholwa ethembekile egameni lami ngosuku lokugcina, ngokuba uyophakanyiswa ukuze ahlale embusweni olungiselelwe yena kusukela ekusekelweni komhlaba. Futhi bhekani yimi okukhulumile lokhu. Amen.

And then shall my revelations which I have caused to be written by my servant John be unfolded in the eyes of all the people. Remember, when ye see these things, ye shall know that the time is at hand that they shall be made manifest in very deed.

Therefore, when ye shall receive this record ye may know that the work of the Father has commenced upon all the face of the land.

Therefore, repent all ye ends of the earth, and come unto me, and believe in my gospel, and be baptized in my name; for he that believeth and is baptized shall be saved; but he that believeth not shall be damned; and signs shall follow them that believe in my name.

And blessed is he that is found faithful unto my name at the last day, for he shall be lifted up to dwell in the kingdom prepared for him from the foundation of the world. And behold it is I that hath spoken it. Amen.

Etere 5

- 1 Manje mina, Moroni, sengiwabhalile amazwi engangiyalwe ngawo, njengokukhumbula kwami; futhi sengikutshelile izinto engizigcine zilondekile; ngakho-ke ungazithinti ukuze uzihumushe; ngokuba leyonto wenqatshelwe yona, ngaphandle kokuthi emva kwesikhashana kuyoba ngokuhlakanipha kukaNkulunkulu.
- 2 Futhi bheka, ungaba nenhlanhla yokuthi izingcwephe uzikhombise labo abayosiza ukuthi kumiswe lomsebenzi;
- 3 Futhi ziyokhonjiswa kwabathathu ngamandla kaNkulunkulu; ngalokho-ke bayokwazi ngaphandle kokungabaza ukuthi lezi zinto ziyiqiniso.
- 4 Futhi ngomlomo wofakazi abathathu lezi zinto ziyomiswa; futhi ubufakazi babathathu, kanye nalomsebenzi, kuwo okuyokhonjiswa amandla kaNkulunkulu futhi kanjalo nezwi lakhe, uBaba, kanye neNdodana, kanye noMoya oyiNgcwele abafakaza ngalo—futhi konke lokhu kuyoma njengobufakazi ngokumelene nomhlaba ngosuku lokugcina.
- 5 Futhi uma kungukuthi bayaphenduka futhi beza kuBaba egameni likaJesusu, bayokwamukelwa embusweni kaNkulunkulu.
- 6 Manje, uma ngingenalo igunya lalezi zinto, zenqabeni, ngokuba niyokwazi ukuthi nginegunya ngesikhathi seningibona, futhi siyokuma phambi kukaNkulunkulu ngosuku lokugcina. Amen.

Ether 5

And now I, Moroni, have written the words which were commanded me, according to my memory; and I have told you the things which I have sealed up; therefore touch them not in order that ye may translate; for that thing is forbidden you, except by and by it shall be wisdom in God.

And behold, ye may be privileged that ye may show the plates unto those who shall assist to bring forth this work;

And unto three shall they be shown by the power of God; wherefore they shall know of a surety that these things are true.

And in the mouth of three witnesses shall these things be established; and the testimony of three, and this work, in the which shall be shown forth the power of God and also his word, of which the Father, and the Son, and the Holy Ghost bear record—and all this shall stand as a testimony against the world at the last day.

And if it so be that they repent and come unto the Father in the name of Jesus, they shall be received into the kingdom of God.

And now, if I have no authority for these things, judge ye; for ye shall know that I have authority when ye shall see me, and we shall stand before God at the last day. Amen.

Etere 6

- 1 Manje mina, Moroni, sengiyaqhubeka nokubhala umbhalo kaJarede kanye nomfowabo.
- 2 Ngokuba kwenzeka emva kokuthi iNkosi isiwalungisile lawo matshe umfowabo kaJarede ayewathwale waya nawo entabeni, umfowabo kaJarede wehlela ezansi wasuka entabeni, futhi nempela wawabeka amatshe kulezo zikebhe ezazilungisiwe, ngalinye ekugcineni kwaso ngasinye; futhi bheka, azikhanyisa izikebhe.
- 3 Futhi ngaleyo ndlela iNkosi yenza amatshe ukuthi akhanye ebumnyameni, ukuze anike ukukhanya emadodeni, kwabesifazane, kanye nasezinganeni, ukuze bangawanqamuli amanzi amakhulu ebumnyameni.
- 4 Futhi kwenzeka ukuthi ngesikhathi sebelungise yonke inhlobo yokudla, ukuze baphile ngakho emanzini, futhi kanjalo nokudla kwemihlambi yezimvu kanye neyezinkomo zabo, kanye nokwanoma yisiphi isilwane noma inyoni ababezoyithwala bahambe nayo—kwenzeka ukuthi ngesikhathi sebenzile zonke lezi zinto bangena emikhunjini noma ezikebheni zabo, futhi bahamba baya olwandle, bezinikela eNkosini uNkulunkulu wabo.
- 5 Futhi kwenzeka ukuthi iNkosi uNkulunkulu yenza ukuthi kube khona umoya onamandla ohamba ebusweni bamanzi, oya ngasezweni lesethembiso; futhi ngaleyo ndlela baphonseka ngapha nangapha kuwo amagagasi olwandle phambi komoya.
- 6 Futhi kwenzeka ukuthi izikhathi eziningi bacwila ekujuleni kolwandle, ngenxa yezintaba zamagagasi ayewela kubo, futhi kanjalo nezivunguvungu ezinkulu nezimbi kakhulu ezazibangwa wumoya omubi kakhulu.
- 7 Futhi kwenzeka ukuthi ngesikhathi sebecwile ekujuleni kwakungekho manzi ayengabalimaza, ngenxa yokuthi izikebhe zabo zaziqine njengesitsha, futhi phezu kwalokho zaziqine njengo mkhumbi kaNowa; ngakho-ke ngesikhathi sebezungezwa ngamanzi amaningi bakhala eNkosini, futhi nempela yabakhiphela ngaphezulu kwamanzi futhi.

Ether 6

And now I, Moroni, proceed to give the record of Jared and his brother.

For it came to pass after the Lord had prepared the stones which the brother of Jared had carried up into the mount, the brother of Jared came down out of the mount, and he did put forth the stones into the vessels which were prepared, one in each end thereof; and behold, they did give light unto the vessels.

And thus the Lord caused stones to shine in darkness, to give light unto men, women, and children, that they might not cross the great waters in darkness.

And it came to pass that when they had prepared all manner of food, that thereby they might subsist upon the water, and also food for their flocks and herds, and whatsoever beast or animal or fowl that they should carry with them—and it came to pass that when they had done all these things they got aboard of their vessels or barges, and set forth into the sea, commending themselves unto the Lord their God.

And it came to pass that the Lord God caused that there should be a furious wind blow upon the face of the waters, towards the promised land; and thus they were tossed upon the waves of the sea before the wind.

And it came to pass that they were many times buried in the depths of the sea, because of the mountain waves which broke upon them, and also the great and terrible tempests which were caused by the fierceness of the wind.

And it came to pass that when they were buried in the deep there was no water that could hurt them, their vessels being tight like unto a dish, and also they were tight like unto the ark of Noah; therefore when they were encompassed about by many waters they did cry unto the Lord, and he did bring them forth again upon the top of the waters.

- 8 Futhi kwenzeka ukuthi umoya awuyekanga ukuhamba uye ngasezweni lesethembiso ngesikhathi besemanzini; futhi ngalendlela baqhutshwa baya phambili phambi komoya.
- 9 Futhi bahlabelela bedumisa iNkosi; yebo, umfowabo kaJarede wahlabelela edumisa iNkosi, futhi wayibonga futhi wayidumisa iNkosi bonke ubude bosuku; futhi ngesikhathi kufika ubusuku, abayekanga ukudumisa iNkosi.
- 10 Futhi ngaleyo ndlela baqhutshwa baya phambili; futhi kwakungekho nasilwane esesabekayo solwandle esasingabanqamula, noma umkhoma owawungabalimaza; futhi baba nokukhanya njalo, noma kwakungaphezu kwamanzi noma ngaphansi kwamanzi.
- 11 Futhi ngaleyo ndlela baqhutshwa baya phambili, izinsuku ezingamakhulu amathathu namashumi amane nane emanzini.
- 12 Futhi bafika ogwini lwezwe lesethembiso. Futhi ngesikhathi sebebeke izinyawo zabo ogwini lwezwe lwesethembiso bakhothama ebusweni bezwe, futhi bazithoba phambi kweNkosi, futhi bakhala izinyembezi zenjabulo phambi kweNkosi, ngenxa yobukhulu besihawu sayo esimnene kubo.
- 13 Futhi kwenzeka ukuthi bahamba baya ebusweni bezwe, futhi baqala ukulima umhlabathi.
- 14 Futhi uJarede wayenamadodana amane; futhi ayebizwa ngokuthi wuJakomu, noGiliga, noMaha, kanye no-Oriha.
- 15 Futhi umfowabo kaJarede naye wazala amadodana kanye namadodakazi.
- 16 Futhi abangani baJarede kanye nomfowabo babeyisibalo sabantu cishe esingamashumi amabili nambili; futhi nabo ngokunjalo bazala amadodana kanye namadodakazi ngaphambi kokuthi bafike ezweni lesethembiso; ngakho-ke baqala ukuthi babe baningi.
- 17 Futhi bafundiswa ukuthi bahambe ngokuzithoba phambi kweNkosi; futhi phezu kwalokho bafundiswa kusuka phezulu.
- 18 Futhi kwenzeka ukuthi baqala ukusabalala ebusweni bezwe, futhi banda futhi balima umhlabathi; futhi bakhula baba namandla ezweni.

And it came to pass that the wind did never cease to blow towards the promised land while they were upon the waters; and thus they were driven forth before the wind.

And they did sing praises unto the Lord; yea, the brother of Jared did sing praises unto the Lord, and he did thank and praise the Lord all the day long; and when the night came, they did not cease to praise the Lord.

And thus they were driven forth; and no monster of the sea could break them, neither whale that could mar them; and they did have light continually, whether it was above the water or under the water.

And thus they were driven forth, three hundred and forty and four days upon the water.

And they did land upon the shore of the promised land. And when they had set their feet upon the shores of the promised land they bowed themselves down upon the face of the land, and did humble themselves before the Lord, and did shed tears of joy before the Lord, because of the multitude of his tender mercies over them.

And it came to pass that they went forth upon the face of the land, and began to till the earth.

And Jared had four sons; and they were called Jacom, and Gilgah, and Mahah, and Orihah.

And the brother of Jared also begat sons and daughters.

And the friends of Jared and his brother were in number about twenty and two souls; and they also begat sons and daughters before they came to the promised land; and therefore they began to be many.

And they were taught to walk humbly before the Lord; and they were also taught from on high.

And it came to pass that they began to spread upon the face of the land, and to multiply and to till the earth; and they did wax strong in the land.

19 Futhi umfowabo kaJarede waqala ukuba mdala, futhi wabona ukuthi kwase kufanele masinyane ahambe ehlele ethuneni; ngalokho-ke wathi kuJarede: Masiqoqe ndawonye abantu bethu ukuze sibabale, ukuze sizwe kubo ukuthi bazofunani kithi ngaphambi kokuthi sihambe sehlele emathuneni ethu.

20 Futhi ngokohlelo abantu baqoqelwa ndawonye. Manje inani lamadodana kanye namadodakazi omfowabo kaJarede kwakungabantu ababengamashumi amabili nambili; futhi inani lamadodana kanye namadodakazi kaJarede ayeyishumi nambili, yena enamadodana amane.

21 Futhi kwenzeka ukuthi bababala abantu babo; futhi emva kokuthi sebebabalile, bafuna ukwazi kubo ukuthi yiziphi izinto ababefuna ukuthi bazenze ngaphambi kokuthi bahambe behlele emathuneni abo.

22 Futhi kwenzeka ukuthi abantu bafuna kubo ukuthi bagcobe oyedwa wamadodana abo ukuthi abe yinkosi yabo.

23 Manje bheka, lokhu kwabakhathaza. Futhi umfowabo kaJarede wathi kubo: Ngempela lento iholela ekuthunjweni.

24 Kepha uJarede wathi kumfowabo: Bavumele ukuthi babe nenkosi. Ngakho-ke wathi kubo: Khethani-ke phakathi kwamadodana ethu inkosi, leyo eniyifunayo.

25 Futhi kwenzeka ukuthi bakhetha izibulo lomfowabo kaJarede; futhi igama lalo kwakunguPagagi. Futhi kwenzeka ukuthi wenqaba futhi akafunanga ukuthi abe yinkosi yabo. Futhi abantu bafuna ukuthi uyise amphoqelele, kepha uyise akafunanga; futhi wabayala ukuthi bangaphoqi namunye umuntu ukuthi abe yinkosi yabo.

26 Futhi kwenzeka ukuthi babakhetha bonke abafowabo baPagagi, kepha abavumanga.

27 Futhi kwenzeka ukuthi ngisho namadodana kaJarede awavumanga, wonke ngaphandle kweyodwa; futhi u-Oriha wagcotshwa ukuthi abe yinkosi yalabantu.

28 Futhi waqala wabusa, futhi abantu baqala ukuphumelela; futhi banotha kakhulu.

And the brother of Jared began to be old, and saw that he must soon go down to the grave; wherefore he said unto Jared: Let us gather together our people that we may number them, that we may know of them what they will desire of us before we go down to our graves.

And accordingly the people were gathered together. Now the number of the sons and the daughters of the brother of Jared were twenty and two souls; and the number of sons and daughters of Jared were twelve, he having four sons.

And it came to pass that they did number their people; and after that they had numbered them, they did desire of them the things which they would that they should do before they went down to their graves.

And it came to pass that the people desired of them that they should anoint one of their sons to be a king over them.

And now behold, this was grievous unto them. And the brother of Jared said unto them: Surely this thing leadeth into captivity.

But Jared said unto his brother: Suffer them that they may have a king. And therefore he said unto them: Choose ye out from among our sons a king, even whom ye will.

And it came to pass that they chose even the first-born of the brother of Jared; and his name was Pagag. And it came to pass that he refused and would not be their king. And the people would that his father should constrain him, but his father would not; and he commanded them that they should constrain no man to be their king.

And it came to pass that they chose all the brothers of Pagag, and they would not.

And it came to pass that neither would the sons of Jared, even all save it were one; and Orihah was anointed to be king over the people.

And he began to reign, and the people began to prosper; and they became exceedingly rich.

29 Futhi kwenzeka ukuthi uJarede wafa, futhi kanjalo nomfowabo.

30 Futhi kwenzeka ukuthi u-Oriha wahamba ngokuzithoba phambi kweNkosi, futhi wakhumbula ukuthi zazinkulu kangakanani izinto iNkosi eyayizenzele uyise, futhi phezu kwalokho wabafundisa abantu bakhe ukuthi zazizinkulu kangakanani izinto iNkosi eyayizenzele oyise.

And it came to pass that Jared died, and his brother also.

And it came to pass that Orihah did walk humbly before the Lord, and did remember how great things the Lord had done for his father, and also taught his people how great things the Lord had done for their fathers.

Etere 7

- 1 Futhi kwenzeka ukuthi u-Oriha wakwenza ngokulunga ukwahlulela ezweni lonke ngezinsuku zakhe, izinsuku zakhe ezaba ziningi kakhulu.
- 2 Futhi wazala amadodana kanye namadodakazi; yebo, wazala abangamashumi amathathu nanye, phakathi kwabo okwakunamadodana angamashumi amabili nantathu.
- 3 Futhi kwenzeka ukuthi phezu kwalokho wazala uKibi ebudaleni bakhe. Futhi kwenzeka ukuthi uKibi wabusa esikhundleni sakhe; futhi uKibi wazala uKorihori.
- 4 Futhi ngesikhathi uKorihori eseneminyaka yobudala engamashumi amathathu nambili wavukela uyise, futhi wahamba wawela wayohlala ezweni lakwaNehori; futhi wazala amadodana kanye namadodakazi, futhi baba bahle kakhulu; ngalokho-ke uKorihori wadonsa abaningi abantu bamlandela.
- 5 Futhi ngesikhathi eseqoqele ndawonye ibutho wakhuphukela ezweni lakwaMoroni lapho inkosi yayihlala khona, futhi wayithumba, lokho okwenza ukuthi kugcwaliseke okwakushiwo ngumfowabo kaJarede ukuthi bayolethwa ekuthunjweni.
- 6 Manje izwe lakwaMoroni, lapho kwakuhlala khona inkosi, laliseduzane nalelozwe elalibizwa ngamaNefi ngokuthi yiNcithakalo.
- 7 Futhi kwenzeka ukuthi uKibi wahlala ekuthunjweni, kanye nabantu bakhe bengaphansi kukaKorihori indodana yakhe, kwaze kwaba uba mdala kakhulu; nokho uKibi wazala uShule ebudaleni bakhe, ngesikhathi esekuthunjweni.
- 8 Futhi kwenzeka ukuthi uShule wamthukuthelela umfowabo; futhi uShule wakhula waba namandla, futhi waba namandla ngokwamandla endoda; futhi phezu kwalokho wayekwazi ukwehlulela ngokuyikho.

Ether 7

And it came to pass that Orihah did execute judgment upon the land in righteousness all his days, whose days were exceedingly many.

And he begat sons and daughters; yea, he begat thirty and one, among whom were twenty and three sons.

And it came to pass that he also begat Kib in his old age. And it came to pass that Kib reigned in his stead; and Kib begat Corihor.

And when Corihor was thirty and two years old he rebelled against his father, and went over and dwelt in the land of Nehor; and he begat sons and daughters, and they became exceedingly fair; wherefore Corihor drew away many people after him.

And when he had gathered together an army he came up unto the land of Moron where the king dwelt, and took him captive, which brought to pass the saying of the brother of Jared that they would be brought into captivity.

Now the land of Moron, where the king dwelt, was near the land which is called Desolation by the Nephites.

And it came to pass that Kib dwelt in captivity, and his people under Corihor his son, until he became exceedingly old; nevertheless Kib begat Shule in his old age, while he was yet in captivity.

And it came to pass that Shule was angry with his brother; and Shule waxed strong, and became mighty as to the strength of a man; and he was also mighty in judgment.

- 9 Ngalokho-ke, waya egqumeni i-Efrayimi, futhi wancibilikisa insimbi kulelo gquma, futhi wenza izinkemba ngensimbi zalabo ayebadonsile bahamba naye; futhi emva kokuthi esebahlomisile ngezinkemba wabuyela ezweni lakwaNehori, futhi wayolwa nomfowabo uKorihori, ngaleyo ndlela wawuthola umbuso futhi wawubuyisela kuyise uKibi.
- 10 Manje ngenxa yalento uShule ayeyenzile, uyise wamnika umbuso; ngakho-ke waqala ukubusa esikhundleni sikayise.
- 11 Futhi kwenzeka ukuthi wehlulela ngokulunga; futhi wawusabalalisa umbuso wakhe kubo bonke ubuso bezwe, ngokuba abantu base bebaningi kakhulu.
- 12 Futhi kwenzeka ukuthi uShule naye wazala amadodana kanye namadodakazi amaningi.
- 13 Futhi uKorihori waphenduka eubini obuningi ayebenzile; ngalokho-ke uShule wamnika amandla embusweni wakhe.
- 14 Futhi kwenzeka ukuthi uKorihori wayenamadodana kanye namadodakazi amaningi. Futhi phakathi kwamadodana kaKorihori kwakukhona oyedwa ogama lakhe kwakunguNowa.
- 15 Futhi kwenzeka ukuthi uNowa wavukela uShule, inkosi, futhi kanjalo noyise uKorihori, futhi wadonsela kude umfowabo uKohori, futhi kanjalo nabo bonke abafowabo kanye nabaningi abantu.
- 16 Futhi walwa noShule, inkosi, okwenza athola izwe elaba yifa labo lokuqala; futhi waba yinkosi kuleyo ngxenye yezwe.
- 17 Futhi kwenzeka ukuthi waphinda futhi walwa noShule inkosi, futhi wamthatha uShule, inkosi, futhi wamthwala wayomthumbela eMoroni.
- 18 Futhi kwenzeka ngesikhathi esezombulala, amadodana kaShule acathama angena endlini kaNowa ebusuku futhi ambulala, futhi ephula umnyango wetilongo futhi amkhipha uyise, futhi ambeka esihlalweni sakhe sobukhosi embusweni wakhe.

Wherefore, he came to the hill Ephraim, and he did molten out of the hill, and made swords out of steel for those whom he had drawn away with him; and after he had armed them with swords he returned to the city Nehor, and gave battle unto his brother Corihor, by which means he obtained the kingdom and restored it unto his father Kib.

And now because of the thing which Shule had done, his father bestowed upon him the kingdom; therefore he began to reign in the stead of his father.

And it came to pass that he did execute judgment in righteousness; and he did spread his kingdom upon all the face of the land, for the people had become exceedingly numerous.

And it came to pass that Shule also begat many sons and daughters.

And Corihor repented of the many evils which he had done; wherefore Shule gave him power in his kingdom.

And it came to pass that Corihor had many sons and daughters. And among the sons of Corihor there was one whose name was Noah.

And it came to pass that Noah rebelled against Shule, the king, and also his father Corihor, and drew away Cohor his brother, and also all his brethren and many of the people.

And he gave battle unto Shule, the king, in which he did obtain the land of their first inheritance; and he became a king over that part of the land.

And it came to pass that he gave battle again unto Shule, the king; and he took Shule, the king, and carried him away captive into Moron.

And it came to pass as he was about to put him to death, the sons of Shule crept into the house of Noah by night and slew him, and broke down the door of the prison and brought out their father, and placed him upon his throne in his own kingdom.

19 Ngalokho-ke, indodana kaNowa yawakha umbuso wakhe esikhundleni sakhe; nokho bona ababange besawathola amandla nanini phezu kukaShule inkosi, futhi abantu ababe ngaphansi kombuso kaShule inkosi baphumelela kakhulu futhi bakhula kakhulu.

20 Futhi izwe lahlukana; futhi kwaba khona imibuso emibili, umbuso kaShule, kanye nombuso kaKohori, indodana kaNowa.

21 Futhi uKohori, indodana kaNowa, yenza ukuthi abantu bayo balwe noShule, lapho uShule abehlula khona futhi wambulala uKohori.

22 Manje uKohori wayenendodana eyayibizwa ngokuthi nguNimrode; futhi uNimrode wawuyeka umbuso kaKohori wawunika uShule, futhi wemukeleka emehlweni kaShule; ngalokho-ke uShule wamenzela okuhle, futhi wenza embusweni kaShule njengokuthanda kwakhe.

23 Futhi phezu kwalokho embusweni kaShule kwafika abaphrofethi phakathi kwabantu, ababethunyiwe bevela eNkosini, bephrofetha ukuthi ububi kanye nokukhonza izithixo kwabantu kwakuletha isiqalekiso kulelizwe, futhi nokuthi kwakufanele babhujiswe uma babengaphenduki.

24 Futhi kwenzeka ukuthi abantu babethuka abaphrofethi, futhi babahleka usulu. Futhi kwenzeka ukuthi inkosi uShule yabehlulela bonke labo ababethuka abaphrofethi.

25 Futhi wabeka umthetho kulo lonke izwe, owawunikeza amandla kubaphrofethi ukuthi babengaya noma kuphi lapho babefuna ukuya khona; futhi ngenxa yalokhu abantu baphenduka.

26 Futhi ngenxa yokuthi abantu baphenduka eubini babo kanye nasekukhonzeni izithixo iNkosi yabasindisa, futhi baqala baphumelela futhi kulelizwe. Futhi kwenzeka ukuthi uShule wazala amadodana kanye namadodakazi ebudaleni bakhe.

27 Futhi kwakungasekho zimpi ezinsukwini zikaShule; futhi wazikhumbula izinto ezinkulu iNkosi eyayizenzele oyise ekubaletheni ngaphesheya kolwandle yabayisa ezweni lesethembiso; ngalokho-ke wehlulela ngokulunga zonke izinsuku zakhe.

Wherefore, the son of Noah did build up his kingdom in his stead; nevertheless they did not gain power any more over Shule the king, and the people who were under the reign of Shule the king did prosper exceedingly and wax great.

And the country was divided; and there were two kingdoms, the kingdom of Shule, and the kingdom of Cohor, the son of Noah.

And Cohor, the son of Noah, caused that his people should give battle unto Shule, in which Shule did beat them and did slay Cohor.

And now Cohor had a son who was called Nimrod; and Nimrod gave up the kingdom of Cohor unto Shule, and he did gain favor in the eyes of Shule; wherefore Shule did bestow great favors upon him, and he did do in the kingdom of Shule according to his desires.

And also in the reign of Shule there came prophets among the people, who were sent from the Lord, prophesying that the wickedness and idolatry of the people was bringing a curse upon the land, and they should be destroyed if they did not repent.

And it came to pass that the people did revile against the prophets, and did mock them. And it came to pass that king Shule did execute judgment against all those who did revile against the prophets.

And he did execute a law throughout all the land, which gave power unto the prophets that they should go whithersoever they would; and by this cause the people were brought unto repentance.

And because the people did repent of their iniquities and idolatries the Lord did spare them, and they began to prosper again in the land. And it came to pass that Shule begat sons and daughters in his old age.

And there were no more wars in the days of Shule; and he remembered the great things that the Lord had done for his fathers in bringing them across the great deep into the promised land; wherefore he did execute judgment in righteousness all his days.

Etere 8

- 1 Futhi kwenzeka ukuthi wazala uYomere, futhi uYomere wabusa esikhundleni sakhe. Futhi uYomere wazala uJarede; futhi uJarede wazala amadodana kanye namadodakazi.
- 2 Futhi uJarede wavukela uyise, futhi weza wazohlala ezweni lakwaHeti. Futhi kwenzeka ukuthi wakhohlisa abantu abaningi, ngenxa yamazwi akhe anobuqili, kwaze kwaba uthola ingxenye yombuso.
- 3 Futhi ngesikhathi esethole ingxenye yombuso walwa noyise, futhi wamthwala uyise wamyisa ekuthunjweni, futhi wamenza ukuthi asebenze ekuthunjweni;
- 4 Manje, ngezinsuku zokubusa kukaYomere wayesekuthunjweni ingxenye yezinsuku zakhe. Futhi kwenzeka ukuthi wazala amadodana kanye namadodakazi, phakathi kwabo okwakukhona u-Esiromu kanye noKoriyantuma;
- 5 Futhi bathukuthela kakhulu ngenxa yezenzo zikaJarede umfowabo, kangangokuthi bahlanganisa ibutho futhi bayolwa noJarede. Futhi kwenzeka ukuthi balwa naye ngobusuku.
- 6 Futhi kwenzeka ukuthi ngesikhathi sebelibulele ibutho likaJarede base bezombulala naye futhi; wabancenga ukuthi bangambulali, futhi nokuthi wayezowuyekela kuyise umbuso. Futhi kwenzeka ukuthi bamyeka ukuthi aphile.
- 7 Manje uJarede waba buhlungu kakhulu ngenxa yokulahlekelwa wumbuso, ngokuba inhliziyo yakhe wayeyibeke kuwo umbuso kanye nakulo udumo lomhlaba.
- 8 Manje indodakazi kaJarede yayinobuqili kakhulu, futhi ibona ubuhlungu bukayise, yacabanga ukwenza isu eyayizobuyisela ngalo umbuso kuyise.
- 9 Manje indodakazi kaJarede yayiyinhle kakhulu. Futhi kwenzeka ukuthi yakhuluma noyise, futhi yathi kuye: Kungani ubaba enobuhlungu obungakana? Akazange awufunde yini umbhalo obaba bethu abawuletha ngaphesheya kolwandle na? Bheka, ayikho yini indaba mayelana nalabo basendulo, ukuthi ngamasu abo ayimfihlo bathola imibuso kanye nodumo olukhulu na?

Ether 8

And it came to pass that he begat Omer, and Omer reigned in his stead. And Omer begat Jared; and Jared begat sons and daughters.

And Jared rebelled against his father, and came and dwelt in the land of Heth. And it came to pass that he did flatter many people, because of his cunning words, until he had gained the half of the kingdom.

And when he had gained the half of the kingdom he gave battle unto his father, and he did carry away his father into captivity, and did make him serve in captivity;

And now, in the days of the reign of Omer he was in captivity the half of his days. And it came to pass that he begat sons and daughters, among whom were Esrom and Coriantumr;

And they were exceedingly angry because of the doings of Jared their brother, insomuch that they did raise an army and gave battle unto Jared. And it came to pass that they did give battle unto him by night.

And it came to pass that when they had slain the army of Jared they were about to slay him also; and he pled with them that they would not slay him, and he would give up the kingdom unto his father. And it came to pass that they did grant unto him his life.

And now Jared became exceedingly sorrowful because of the loss of the kingdom, for he had set his heart upon the kingdom and upon the glory of the world.

Now the daughter of Jared being exceedingly expert, and seeing the sorrows of her father, thought to devise a plan whereby she could redeem the kingdom unto her father.

Now the daughter of Jared was exceedingly fair. And it came to pass that she did talk with her father, and said unto him: Whereby hath my father so much sorrow? Hath he not read the record which our fathers brought across the great deep? Behold, is there not an account concerning them of old, that they by their secret plans did obtain kingdoms and great glory?

- 10 Ngakho-ke, ubaba makathumele ku-Akishi, indodana kaKimnori; futhi bheka, ngimuhle, futhi ngizodansa phambi kwakhe, futhi ngizomthokozisa, ukuze afune ukuthi ngimgane; ngalokho-ke uma eyofuna ukuthi umnike mina ukuthi ngimgane, uma kunjalo uyobe sewuthi: Ngizokunika yena uma uzoletha kimi ikhanda likababa, inkosi.
- 11 Manje uYomere wayengumngane ka-Akishi; ngalokho-ke, ngesikhathi uJarede esethumele ku-Akishi, indodakazi kaJarede yadansa phambi kwakhe ukuze imthokozise, kangangokuthi wafuna ukuthi imgane. Futhi kwenzeka ukuthi wathi kuJarede: Nginike yena ukuthi angigane.
- 12 Futhi uJarede wathi kuye: Ngizokunika yena, uma uzoletha kimi ikhanda likababa, inkosi.
- 13 Futhi kwenzeka ukuthi u-Akishi waqoqela endlini kaJarede zonke izihlobo zakhe, futhi wathi kuzo: Nizofunga yini kimi ukuthi nizothembeka kimi kuleyonto engizoyicela kini na?
- 14 Futhi kwenzeka ukuthi bonke bafunga kuye, ngoNkulunkulu wasezulwini, futhi kanjalo nangamazulu, futhi kanjalo nangomhlaba, kanye nangamakhanda abo, ukuthi lowo oyokwenza okuhlukile kunalolo sizo u-Akishi ayelufuna uyolahlekelwa yikhanda lakhe; futhi lowo oyodalula noma ngabe yini u-Akishi ayembule kubo, lowo uyolahlekelwa yimpilo yakhe.
- 15 Futhi kwenzeka ukuthi bavumelana kanjalo-ke no-Akishi. Futhi u-Akishi wabafungisa ngezifungo ezazinikwe yilabo basendulo nabo ababefuna amandla, ezazidluliswe zehla zisuka ngisho ku Kayini, owayengumbulali kusukela ekuqaleni.
- 16 Futhi zazigcinwe ngamandla kadeveli ukuze zifungiswe abantu, ukubagcina besebumnyameni, ukusiza labo abafuna amandla ukuze bazuze amandla, kanye nokuthi babulale, futhi baphange, futhi baqambe amanga, futhi benze zonke izihlobo zobubi kanye nobufebe.
- 17 Futhi kwakuyindodakazi kaJarede eyakufaka enhliziyweni yakhe ukuthi azicwaninge lezi zinto zakudala; futhi uJarede wakufaka enhliziyweni ka-Akishi; ngalokho-ke, u-Akishi wafungisa izihlobo kanye nabangani bakhe, ebakhohlisa ngezethembiso ezinhle ukuthi benze noma yini ayeyifuna.

And now, therefore, let my father send for Akish, the son of Kimnor; and behold, I am fair, and I will dance before him, and I will please him, that he will desire me to wife; wherefore if he shall desire of thee that ye shall give unto him me to wife, then shall ye say: I will give her if ye will bring unto me the head of my father, the king.

And now Omer was a friend to Akish; wherefore, when Jared had sent for Akish, the daughter of Jared danced before him that she pleased him, insomuch that he desired her to wife. And it came to pass that he said unto Jared: Give her unto me to wife.

And Jared said unto him: I will give her unto you, if ye will bring unto me the head of my father, the king.

And it came to pass that Akish gathered in unto the house of Jared all his kinsfolk, and said unto them: Will ye swear unto me that ye will be faithful unto me in the thing which I shall desire of you?

And it came to pass that they all swore unto him, by the God of heaven, and also by the heavens, and also by the earth, and by their heads, that whoso should vary from the assistance which Akish desired should lose his head; and whoso should divulge whatsoever thing Akish made known unto them, the same should lose his life.

And it came to pass that thus they did agree with Akish. And Akish did administer unto them the oaths which were given by them of old who also sought power, which had been handed down even from Cain, who was a murderer from the beginning.

And they were kept up by the power of the devil to administer these oaths unto the people, to keep them in darkness, to help such as sought power to gain power, and to murder, and to plunder, and to lie, and to commit all manner of wickedness and whoredoms.

And it was the daughter of Jared who put it into his heart to search up these things of old; and Jared put it into the heart of Akish; wherefore, Akish administered it unto his kindred and friends, leading them away by fair promises to do whatsoever thing he desired.

- 18 Futhi kwenzeka ukuthi basungula iqembu eliyimfihlo, ngisho njengalabo basendulo; lelo qembu elinengeke kakhulu futhi nelikhohlakele ngaphezu kwakho konke, emehlweni kaNkulunkulu.
- 19 Ngokuba iNkosi ayisebenzi ngamaqembu ayimfihlo, futhi ayizange iyale ukuthi umuntu achithe igazi, kepha kuzo zonke izinto yakwenqabela lokho, kusukela ekuqaleni komuntu.
- 20 Manje mina, Moroni, angibhali ngezinhlobo zezifungo kanye namaqembu abo, ngokuba kwembuliwe kimi ukuthi akhona phakathi kwabantu bonke, futhi akhona naphakathi kwamaLamani.
- 21 Futhi adale ukubhujiswa kwalabantu engikhuluma ngabo manje, futhi kanjalo nokubhujiswa kwabantu baNefi.
- 22 Futhi leso sizwe esiyosekela amaqembu anjena ayimfihlo, ukuze sithole amandla kanye nenzuzo, kuze kuthi asabalale nesizwe sonke, bheka, siyobhujiswa; ngokuba iNkosi ngeke ivume ukuthi igazi labangcwele bayo, eliyochithwa yibo, ukuthi likhale njalo kuyo lisuka phansi likhalele impindiselo kubo kodwa yona ingabaphindiseleli.
- 23 Ngalokho-ke, O nina beZizwe, kuwukuhlakanipha kuNkulunkulu ukuthi lezi zinto zivezwe kini, ukuze ngazo niphenduke ezonweni zenu, futhi ningavumi ukuthi lamaqembu ababulali aninqobe, akhelwe ukuthi athole amandla kanye nenzuzo—futhi nokuthi umsebenzi, yebo, ngisho nomsebenzi wokubhubhisa uze kini, yebo, ngisho nenkemba yokwahlulela ngokulunga kaNkulunkulu oPhakade iwele kini, ukuze niwe futhi nibhujiswe uma niyovumela lezi zinto ukuthi zenzeke.
- 24 Ngalokho-ke, iNkosi iyaniyala ukuthi, ngesikhathi senizibona lezi zinto ziza phakathi kwenu ukuthi nazi ngesimo esibi senu, ngenxa yaleliqembu eliyimfihlo eliyoba phakathi kwenu; noma maye kulo, ngenxa yegazi lalabo ababulawayo; ngokuba bakhala besothulini bekhalela impindiselo kulo, futhi kanjalo nakulabo abalakhayo.

And it came to pass that they formed a secret combination, even as they of old; which combination is most abominable and wicked above all, in the sight of God;

For the Lord worketh not in secret combinations, neither doth he will that man should shed blood, but in all things hath forbidden it, from the beginning of man.

And now I, Moroni, do not write the manner of their oaths and combinations, for it hath been made known unto me that they are had among all people, and they are had among the Lamanites.

And they have caused the destruction of this people of whom I am now speaking, and also the destruction of the people of Nephi.

And whatsoever nation shall uphold such secret combinations, to get power and gain, until they shall spread over the nation, behold, they shall be destroyed; for the Lord will not suffer that the blood of his saints, which shall be shed by them, shall always cry unto him from the ground for vengeance upon them and yet he avenge them not.

Wherefore, O ye Gentiles, it is wisdom in God that these things should be shown unto you, that thereby ye may repent of your sins, and suffer not that these murderous combinations shall get above you, which are built up to get power and gain—and the work, yea, even the work of destruction come upon you, yea, even the sword of the justice of the Eternal God shall fall upon you, to your overthrow and destruction if ye shall suffer these things to be.

Wherefore, the Lord commandeth you, when ye shall see these things come among you that ye shall awake to a sense of your awful situation, because of this secret combination which shall be among you; or wo be unto it, because of the blood of them who have been slain; for they cry from the dust for vengeance upon it, and also upon those who built it up.

25 Ngokuba kuyenzeka ukuthi lowo olakhayo usuke efuna ukuqeda inkululeko yezindawo zonke, izizwe, kanye namazwe; futhi lifeza ukubhujiswa kwabantu bonke, ngokuba lakhiwe ngudeveli, ongubaba wamanga onke; ngisho lowo mqambi manga owakhohlisa abazali bethu bokuqala, yebo, ngisho lowo mqambi manga owenza umuntu ukuthi abulale kusukela ekuqaleni; oqinise izinhliziyi zabantu ukuthi babulale abaphrofethi, futhi babakhande ngamatshe, futhi babaxoshe kusukela ekuqaleni.

26 Ngalokho-ke, mina, Moroni, ngiyalwe ukuthi ngizibhale lezi zinto ukuze ububi buyekwe, futhi nokuthi isikhathi sifike sokuthi uSathane angabe esaba namandla ezinhliziyweni zabantwana babantu, kepha ukuze bakholwiswe ukuthi benze okuhle njalo, ukuze beze emthonjeni wokulunga konke futhi basindiswe.

For it cometh to pass that whoso buildeth it up seeketh to overthrow the freedom of all lands, nations, and countries; and it bringeth to pass the destruction of all people, for it is built up by the devil, who is the father of all lies; even that same liar who beguiled our first parents, yea, even that same liar who hath caused man to commit murder from the beginning; who hath hardened the hearts of men that they have murdered the prophets, and stoned them, and cast them out from the beginning.

Wherefore, I, Moroni, am commanded to write these things that evil may be done away, and that the time may come that Satan may have no power upon the hearts of the children of men, but that they may be persuaded to do good continually, that they may come unto the fountain of all righteousness and be saved.

Etere 9

- 1 Manje mina, Moroni, ngiyaqhubeka nombhalo wami. Ngakho-ke, bheka, kwenzeka ukuthi ngenxa yamaqembu ayimfihlo ka-Akishi kanye nabangani bakhe, bheka, nempela bawuketula umbuso kaYomere.
- 2 Nokho, iNkosi yaba nomusa kuYomere, futhi kanjalo nakumadodana akhe kanye nakumadodakazi akhe ayengazange afune ukumbhubhisa.
- 3 Futhi iNkosi yamxwayisa uYomere ephusheni ukuthi emuke ezweni; ngalokho-ke uYomere wemuka ezweni kanye nomndeni wakhe, futhi wahamba izinsuku eziningi, futhi wawela wazodlula ngasegqumeni lika Shimi, futhi wawelela ngasendaweni lapho amaNefi ayebhujiselwe khona, futhi ukusuka lapho waya ngasempumalanga, futhi waze wafika endaweni eyayibizwa ngokuthi yi-Ablomu, ngasogwini lolwandle, futhi lapho wagxumeka itende lakhe, futhi kanjalo namadodana akhe kanye namadodakazi akhe, kanye nabo bonke abendlu yakhe, ngaphandle kukaJarede nomndeni wakhe.
- 4 Futhi kwenzeka ukuthi uJarede wagcotshwa waba yinkosi phezu kwabantu, ngesandla senkohlakalo; futhi wanikeza u-Akishi indodakazi yakhe ukuthi imgane.
- 5 Futhi kwenzeka ukuthi u-Akishi wayifuna impilo yomukhwe wakhe; futhi wacela labo ayekade efunge nabo ngesifungo sabasendulo, futhi balithola ikhanda lomukhwe wakhe, ngesikhathi ehlezi esihlalweni sakhe sobukhosi, elalela abantu bakhe.
- 6 Ngokuba kwase kukukhulu ukwanda kwalezi zihlangano eziyimfihlo nezikhohlakele kangangokuthi kwase konakalise izinhliziyi zabantu bonke; ngakho-ke uJarede wabulawa esesihlalweni sakhe sobukhosi, kwathi u-Akishi wabusa esikhundeni sakhe.
- 7 Futhi kwenzeka ukuthi u-Akishi waqala ukuba nomona nendodana yakhe, ngakho-ke wayivalela etilongweni, futhi wayondla ngokudla okuncane noma engayiphi kudla nhlobo kwaze kwaba iyafa.

Ether 9

And now I, Moroni, proceed with my record. Therefore, behold, it came to pass that because of the secret combinations of Akish and his friends, behold, they did overthrow the kingdom of Omer.

Nevertheless, the Lord was merciful unto Omer, and also to his sons and to his daughters who did not seek his destruction.

And the Lord warned Omer in a dream that he should depart out of the land; wherefore Omer departed out of the land with his family, and traveled many days, and came over and passed by the hill of Shim, and came over by the place where the Nephites were destroyed, and from thence eastward, and came to a place which was called Ablom, by the seashore, and there he pitched his tent, and also his sons and his daughters, and all his household, save it were Jared and his family.

And it came to pass that Jared was anointed king over the people, by the hand of wickedness; and he gave unto Akish his daughter to wife.

And it came to pass that Akish sought the life of his father-in-law; and he applied unto those whom he had sworn by the oath of the ancients, and they obtained the head of his father-in-law, as he sat upon his throne, giving audience to his people.

For so great had been the spreading of this wicked and secret society that it had corrupted the hearts of all the people; therefore Jared was murdered upon his throne, and Akish reigned in his stead.

And it came to pass that Akish began to be jealous of his son, therefore he shut him up in prison, and kept him upon little or no food until he had suffered death.

- 8 Manje umfowabo walowo owafayo, (futhi igama lakhe kwakunguNimra) wamthukuthelela uyise ngenxa yalokho uyise ayekwenzile kumfowabo.
- 9 Futhi kwenzeka ukuthi uNimra wabuthela ndawonye idlanzana labantu, futhi wabaleka waphuma kulelizwe, futhi wawela wayohlala noYomere.
- 10 Futhi kwenzeka ukuthi u-Akishi wazala amanye amadodana, futhi azizuza izinhliziyi zabantu, naphezu kokuthi babefungile kuye ukwenza zonke izinhlobo zobubi ngaleyo ndlela ayefisa ngayo.
- 11 Manje abantu ba-Akishi babefuna inzuzo, ngisho njengoba no-Akishi ayefuna amandla; ngalokho-ke, amadodana ka-Akishi abanikeza imali, ngaleyo ndlela badonsa ingxenye eningi yabantu ukuthi babalandele.
- 12 Futhi kwaqala kwabakhona impi phakathi kwamadodana ka-Akishi kanye no-Akishi, eyadonsa isikhathi esiyiminyaka eminingi, yebo, eyaholela ekubhujisweni cishe kwabo bonke abantu bombuso, yebo, ngisho bonke, ngaphandle nje kwabantu abangamashumi amathathu, kanye nalabo ababebaleke nendlu kaYomere.
- 13 Ngalokho-ke, uYomere wabuyiselwa futhi ezweni eliyifa lakhe.
- 14 Futhi kwenzeka ukuthi uYomere waqala ukuba mdala; nokho, eminyakeni yakhe yobudala wazala u-Emeri; futhi wamgcoba u-Emeri ukuthi abe yinkosi ukuze abuse esikhundleni sakhe.
- 15 Futhi emva kokuthi esegcobe u-Emeri ukuthi abe yinkosi wabona ukuthula ezweni isikhathi esingange minyaka emibili, wabe esefa, esebone izinsuku eziningi kakhulu, ezazigcwele usizi. Futhi kwenzeka ukuthi u-Emeri nempela wabusa esikhundleni sakhe, futhi nempela wahamba ezinyathelweni zikayise.
- 16 Futhi iNkosi yaqala ukuthi isisuse isiqalekiso ezweni, futhi indlu ka-Emeri yaphumelela kakhulu phansi kombuso ka-Emeri; futhi isikhathi esingangeminyaka engamashumi ayisithupha nambili base beqine kakhulu, kangangokuthi banotha kakhulu—

And now the brother of him that suffered death, (and his name was Nimrah) was angry with his father because of that which his father had done unto his brother.

And it came to pass that Nimrah gathered together a small number of men, and fled out of the land, and came over and dwelt with Omer.

And it came to pass that Akish begat other sons, and they won the hearts of the people, notwithstanding they had sworn unto him to do all manner of iniquity according to that which he desired.

Now the people of Akish were desirous for gain, even as Akish was desirous for power; wherefore, the sons of Akish did offer them money, by which means they drew away the more part of the people after them.

And there began to be a war between the sons of Akish and Akish, which lasted for the space of many years, yea, unto the destruction of nearly all the people of the kingdom, yea, even all, save it were thirty souls, and they who fled with the house of Omer.

Wherefore, Omer was restored again to the land of his inheritance.

And it came to pass that Omer began to be old; nevertheless, in his old age he begat Emer; and he anointed Emer to be king to reign in his stead.

And after that he had anointed Emer to be king he saw peace in the land for the space of two years, and he died, having seen exceedingly many days, which were full of sorrow. And it came to pass that Emer did reign in his stead, and did fill the steps of his father.

And the Lord began again to take the curse from off the land, and the house of Emer did prosper exceedingly under the reign of Emer; and in the space of sixty and two years they had become exceedingly strong, insomuch that they became exceedingly rich—

- 17 Benezinhlobo zonke zezithelo, kanye nokusanhlamvu, kanye nosilika, kanye nelineni elicolekileyo, kanye negolide, kanye nesiliva, kanye nezinto eziyigugu;
- 18 Futhi phezu kwalokho nazo zonke izinhlobo zezinkomo, nezinkabi, kanye nezinkomazi, kanye nezimvu, kanye nezingulube, kanye nezimbuzi, futhi kanjalo kanye nazo zonke ezinye izinhlobo zezilwane ezaziwusizo ukuba wukudla kwabantu.
- 19 Futhi phezu kwalokho baba namahhashi, kanye nezimbongolo, futhi kwakukhona nezindlovu kanye namakurulomu kanye namakumoni; zonke ezaziwusizo kumuntu, futhi ikakhulukazi izindlovu kanye namakurulomu kanye namakumoni.
- 20 Futhi ngalendlela iNkosi yazithela izibusiso zayo kulelizwe, elalikhethekile ngaphezu kwawo wonke amanye amazwe; futhi yayala ukuthi labo abayolithola lelizwe bayolitholela iNkosi, ngaphandle kwalokho bayobhujiswa uma sebevuthiwe ebubini; ngokuba kwabanjalo, ithi iNkosi: Ngizokwehlisela intukuthelo yami yonke.
- 21 Futhi u-Emeri wahlulela ngokulunga ngazo zonke izinsuku zakhe, futhi wazala amadodana namadodakazi amaningi; futhi wazala uKoriyantumu, futhi wamgcoba uKoriyantumu ukuthi abuse esikhundleni sakhe.
- 22 Futhi emva kokuthi esegcobe uKoriyantumu ukuthi abuse esikhundleni sakhe waphila iminyaka emine, futhi wabona ukuthula ezweni; yebo, futhi waze wabona ngisho neNdodana yokuLunga, futhi wathokoza futhi wadumisa ngezinsuku zakhe; futhi wafa ngokuthula.
- 23 Futhi kwenzeka ukuthi uKoriyantumu wahamba ezinyathelweni zikayise, futhi wakha amadolobha amaningi amakhulu, futhi wabanika lokho okwakukuhle abantu bakhe ezinsukwini zakhe zonke. Futhi kwenzeka ukuthi akazange abe nabantwana ngisho waze waba mdala kakhulu.
- 24 Futhi kwenzeka ukuthi umkakhe wafa, eneminyaka eyikhulu neminyaka emibili ubudala. Futhi kwenzeka ukuthi uKoriyantumu wathatha umfazi, ebudaleni bakhe, incekekazi encane, futhi wazala amadodana kanye namadodakazi; ngalokho ke waphila waze waba neminyaka eyikhulu namashumi amane nambili yobudala.
- Having all manner of fruit, and of grain, and of silks, and of fine linen, and of gold, and of silver, and of precious things;
- And also all manner of cattle, of oxen, and cows, and of sheep, and of swine, and of goats, and also many other kinds of animals which were useful for the food of man.
- And they also had horses, and asses, and there were elephants and cureloms and cumoms; all of which were useful unto man, and more especially the elephants and cureloms and cumoms.
- And thus the Lord did pour out his blessings upon this land, which was choice above all other lands; and he commanded that whoso should possess the land should possess it unto the Lord, or they should be destroyed when they were ripened in iniquity; for upon such, saith the Lord: I will pour out the fulness of my wrath.
- And Emer did execute judgment in righteousness all his days, and he begat many sons and daughters; and he begat Coriantum, and he anointed Coriantum to reign in his stead.
- And after he had anointed Coriantum to reign in his stead he lived four years, and he saw peace in the land; yea, and he even saw the Son of Righteousness, and did rejoice and glory in his day; and he died in peace.
- And it came to pass that Coriantum did walk in the steps of his father, and did build many mighty cities, and did administer that which was good unto his people in all his days. And it came to pass that he had no children even until he was exceedingly old.
- And it came to pass that his wife died, being an hundred and two years old. And it came to pass that Coriantum took to wife, in his old age, a young maid, and begat sons and daughters; wherefore he lived until he was an hundred and forty and two years old.

25 Futhi kwenzeka ukuthi wazala uKomu, futhi uKomu wabusa esikhundleni sakhe; futhi wabusa iminyaka engamashumi amane nesishiyagalolunye, futhi wazala uHeti; futhi waphinde wazala amanye amadodana kanye namadodakazi.

26 Futhi abantu base bephinde basabalala futhi ebusweni bonke bezwe, futhi kwaphinda kwaqala futhi kwaba nobubi obukhulu ebusweni bezwe, futhi uHeti waqala wemukela amacebo ayimfihlo futhi asendulo, ukuze abhubhise uyise.

27 Futhi kwenzeka ukuthi nempela wamketula uyise esihlalweni sobukhosi, ngokuba wambulala ngenkomba yakhe uqobo; futhi wabusa esikhundleni sakhe.

28 Futhi kwaphinda kwafika abaphrofethi futhi kukelizwe, beshumayela ngokuphenduka kubo—ukuthi kufanele balungise indlela yeNkosi ngaphandle kwalokho kuyoza isiqalekiso ebusweni balelizwe; yebo, ngisho nokuthi kuyoba khona indlala enkulu, ngayo bayobhujiswa uma bengaphenduki.

29 Kepha abantu abawakholwanga amazwi abaphrofethi, kepha babaxosha babakhiphela ngaphandle; futhi abanye babo babafaka emigodini futhi babashiya khona ukuze bafe. Futhi kwenzeka ukuthi bazenza zonke lezi zinto njengokwemiyalelo yenkosi, uHeti.

30 Futhi kwenzeka ukuthi kwaqala ukuthi kube khona indlala enkulu kukelizwe, futhi abahlala khona baqala ukuthi babhubhe ngokushesha okukhulu ngenxa yendlala, ngokuba kwakungekho mvula ebusweni balelizwe.

31 Futhi kwaphinde kwavela izinyoka ebusweni balelizwe, futhi zafaka ubuthi kwabaningi abantu. Futhi kwenzeka ukuthi imihlambi yabo yaqala yazibalekela izinyoka, yaya ngasezweni elingaseningizimu, elalibizwa ngamaNefi ngokuthi yi Zarahemla.

32 Futhi kwenzeka ukuthi kwaba khona abanengi babo abafa endleleni; nokho, kwakukhona abanye ababalekela ezweni elingaseningizimu.

And it came to pass that he begat Com, and Com reigned in his stead; and he reigned forty and nine years, and he begat Heth; and he also begat other sons and daughters.

And the people had spread again over all the face of the land, and there began again to be an exceedingly great wickedness upon the face of the land, and Heth began to embrace the secret plans again of old, to destroy his father.

And it came to pass that he did dethrone his father, for he slew him with his own sword; and he did reign in his stead.

And there came prophets in the land again, crying repentance unto them—that they must prepare the way of the Lord or there should come a curse upon the face of the land; yea, even there should be a great famine, in which they should be destroyed if they did not repent.

But the people believed not the words of the prophets, but they cast them out; and some of them they cast into pits and left them to perish. And it came to pass that they did all these things according to the commandment of the king, Heth.

And it came to pass that there began to be a great dearth upon the land, and the inhabitants began to be destroyed exceedingly fast because of the dearth, for there was no rain upon the face of the earth.

And there came forth poisonous serpents also upon the face of the land, and did poison many people. And it came to pass that their flocks began to flee before the poisonous serpents, towards the land southward, which was called by the Nephites Zarahemla.

And it came to pass that there were many of them which did perish by the way; nevertheless, there were some which fled into the land southward.

33 Futhi kwenzeka ukuthi iNkosi yenza izinyoka ukuthi zingabe zisabalandela, kepha ukuthi zivimbe indlela ukuze abantu bangakwazi ukudlula, ukuze kuthi lowo ozama ukudlula abulawe yizinyoka.

34 Futhi kwenzeka ukuthi abantu balandela indlela yezilwane, futhi badla izidumbu zazo ezaziwe ngendlela, kwaze kwaba bazidla zonke. Manje ngesikhathi abantu sebona ukuthi base bezofa baqala ukuphenduka eubini babo futhi bakhala eNkosini.

35 Futhi kwenzeka ukuthi ngesikhathi sebezithobile ngokwanele phambi kweNkosi yayithumela imvula ebusweni balelizwe; futhi abantu baqala ukuswabuluka futhi, futhi kwaqala ukuthi kube khona izithelo emazweni angasenyakatho, kanye nakuwo wonke amazwe azungezile. Futhi iNkosi yawakhombisa amandla ayo kubo ekubasindiseni endlaleni.

And it came to pass that the Lord did cause the serpents that they should pursue them no more, but that they should hedge up the way that the people could not pass, that whoso should attempt to pass might fall by the poisonous serpents.

And it came to pass that the people did follow the course of the beasts, and did devour the carcasses of them which fell by the way, until they had devoured them all. Now when the people saw that they must perish they began to repent of their iniquities and cry unto the Lord.

And it came to pass that when they had humbled themselves sufficiently before the Lord he did send rain upon the face of the earth; and the people began to revive again, and there began to be fruit in the north countries, and in all the countries round about. And the Lord did show forth his power unto them in preserving them from famine.

Etere 10

- 1 Futhi kwenzeka ukuthi uShesi, owayewuzalo lukaHeti—ngokuba uHeti wayebulawe yindlala, kanye nabo bonke abomuzi wakhe ngaphandle kukaShesi—ngalokho-ke, uShesi waqala futhi wakha abantu ababecishe babulawa wukonakala nendlala.
- 2 Futhi kwenzeka ukuthi uShesi wakukhumbula ukubhujiswa koyise, futhi wakha umbuso olungileyo; ngokuba wakukhumbula lokho iNkosi eyayikwenzile ekuletheni uJarede kanye nomfowabo ngaphesheya kolwandle, futhi wahamba ezindleleni zeNkosi; futhi wazala amadodana kanye namadodakazi.
- 3 Futhi indodana yakhe endala, igama layo okwakunguShesi, yamvukela; nokho, uShesi washaywa yisandla somphangi, ngenxa yengcebo yakhe eningi, okwaletha ukuthula futhi kuyise.
- 4 Futhi kwenzeka ukuthi uyise wakha amadolobha amaningi ebusweni balelizwe, futhi abantu baqala futhi ukusabalala ebusweni bonke bezwe. Futhi uShesi waphila waze waba mdala kakhulu; futhi wazala uRiplakishi. Futhi wafa, kwathi uRiplakishi wabusa esikhundleni sakhe.
- 5 Futhi kwenzeka ukuthi uRiplakishi akakwenzanga lokho okwakulungile emehlweni eNkosi, ngokuba yena waba nabafazi abanengi kanye nezanciza, futhi wabeka lokho emahlombe abantu okwakunzima ukuthi bakuthwale; yebo, wabathelisa ngentela enzima; futhi ngentela wakha izakhiwo eziningi ezivulekile.
- 6 Futhi wazakhela isihlalo sobukhosi esihle kakhulu; futhi wakha amaningi amatilongo, futhi lowo owayengafuni ukukhokha intela wayemfaka etilongweni; futhi lowo owayengakwazi ukuthi akhokhe intela naye wayefakwa etilongweni; futhi wenza ukuthi basebenze njalo ukuze bondliwe; futhi lowo owayenqaba ukusebenza wenza ukuthi abulawe.
- 7 Ngalokho-ke wawuthola wonke umsebenzi wakhe omuhle, yebo, ngisho negolide lakhe elicolekileyo wenza ukuthi licwengwe etilongweni; futhi zonke izinhlobo zemisebenzi emihle wenza ukuthi isetshenzwe etilongweni. Futhi kwenzeka ukuthi wabahlupha abantu ngobufebe kanye nangezinengiso zakhe.

Ether 10

And it came to pass that Shez, who was a descendant of Heth—for Heth had perished by the famine, and all his household save it were Shez—wherefore, Shez began to build up again a broken people.

And it came to pass that Shez did remember the destruction of his fathers, and he did build up a righteous kingdom; for he remembered what the Lord had done in bringing Jared and his brother across the deep; and he did walk in the ways of the Lord; and he begat sons and daughters.

And his eldest son, whose name was Shez, did rebel against him; nevertheless, Shez was smitten by the hand of a robber, because of his exceeding riches, which brought peace again unto his father.

And it came to pass that his father did build up many cities upon the face of the land, and the people began again to spread over all the face of the land. And Shez did live to an exceedingly old age; and he begat Riplakish. And he died, and Riplakish reigned in his stead.

And it came to pass that Riplakish did not do that which was right in the sight of the Lord, for he did have many wives and concubines, and did lay that upon men's shoulders which was grievous to be borne; yea, he did tax them with heavy taxes; and with the taxes he did build many spacious buildings.

And he did erect him an exceedingly beautiful throne; and he did build many prisons, and whoso would not be subject unto taxes he did cast into prison; and whoso was not able to pay taxes he did cast into prison; and he did cause that they should labor continually for their support; and whoso refused to labor he did cause to be put to death.

Wherefore he did obtain all his fine work, yea, even his fine gold he did cause to be refined in prison; and all manner of fine workmanship he did cause to be wrought in prison. And it came to pass that he did afflict the people with his whoredoms and abominations.

- 8 Futhi kwathi esebuse isikhathi esiyiminyaka engamashumi amane nambili abantu bamvukela; futhi kwaqala ukuthi kube khona impi futhi kulelizwe, kangangokuthi uRiplakishi wabulawa, futhi abozalo lwakhe baphoqwa ukuba babaleke kelelizwe.
- 9 Futhi kwenzeka emva kwesikhathi seminyaka eminingi, uMoriyantoni (owayengowozalo lukaRiplakishi) wabuthela ndawonye ibutho labaxoshwa, futhi wahamba wayolwa nabantu; futhi wawazuza amandla phezu kwamaningi amadolobha; futhi impi yaqala yaba yimbi kakhulu, futhi yadonsa isikhathi esiyiminyaka eminingi; futhi wawazuza amandla phezu kwalo lonke izwe, futhi wazibeka waba yinkosi ezweni lonke.
- 10 Futhi emva kokuthi esezibeke waba yinkosi wawuxegisa umthwalo ebantwini, ngalokho wazuza ukuthandwa ngabantu, futhi bamgcoba ukuthi abe yinkosi yabo.
- 11 Futhi wenza ukulunga kubantu, kepha hhayi kuye ngenxa yobufebe bakhe obuningi; ngalokho-ke wahlukaniswa neNkosi.
- 12 Futhi kwenzeka ukuthi uMoriyantoni wakha amadolobha amaningi, futhi abantu banotha kakhulu phansi kombuso wakhe, ngenxa yezakhiwo, nangenxa yegolide nesiliva, nangenxa yokukhulisa okusanhlamvu, nangenxa yemihlambi yezimvu, nangenxa yemihlambi yezinkomo, nangenxa yezinto ezithile ezazibuyiselwe kubo.
- 13 Futhi uMoriyantoni waphila waze waba mdala kakhulu, futhi ngaleso sikhathi wazala uKimi; futhi uKimi wabusa esikhundleni sikayise; futhi wabusa iminyaka eyisishiyagalombili, futhi uyise wafa. Futhi kwenzeka ukuthi uKimi akazange abuse ngokulunga, ngalokho-ke akazange athandwe yiNkosi.
- 14 Futhi umfowabo wamvukela, okwathi ngalokho wamfaka ekuthunjweni; futhi wahlala ekuthunjweni zonke izinsuku zakhe; futhi wazala amadolobha kanye namadolobha esekuthunjweni, futhi ebudaleni bakhe wazala uLevi; futhi wabe esefa.

And when he had reigned for the space of forty and two years the people did rise up in rebellion against him; and there began to be war again in the land, insomuch that Riplakish was killed, and his descendants were driven out of the land.

And it came to pass after the space of many years, Morianton, (he being a descendant of Riplakish) gathered together an army of outcasts, and went forth and gave battle unto the people; and he gained power over many cities; and the war became exceedingly sore, and did last for the space of many years; and he did gain power over all the land, and did establish himself king over all the land.

And after that he had established himself king he did ease the burden of the people, by which he did gain favor in the eyes of the people, and they did anoint him to be their king.

And he did do justice unto the people, but not unto himself because of his many whoredoms; wherefore he was cut off from the presence of the Lord.

And it came to pass that Morianton built up many cities, and the people became exceedingly rich under his reign, both in buildings, and in gold and silver, and in raising grain, and in flocks, and herds, and such things which had been restored unto them.

And Morianton did live to an exceedingly great age, and then he begat Kim; and Kim did reign in the stead of his father; and he did reign eight years, and his father died. And it came to pass that Kim did not reign in righteousness, wherefore he was not favored of the Lord.

And his brother did rise up in rebellion against him, by which he did bring him into captivity; and he did remain in captivity all his days; and he begat sons and daughters in captivity, and in his old age he begat Levi; and he died.

15 Futhi kwenzeka ukuthi uLevi wasebenza esekuthunjweni emva kokufa kukayise, isikhathi esingangeminyaka engamashumi amane nambili. Futhi walwa nenkosi yezwe, okwathi ngayo wazitholela umbuso.

16 Futhi emva kokuthi esezitholele umbuso wenza lokho okwakulungile emehlweni eNkosi; futhi abantu baphumelela kulelizwe; futhi waphila waze waba mdala impela, futhi wazala amadodana kanye namadodakazi; futhi phezu kwalokho wazala uKoromu, amgcoba waba yinkosi esikhundleni sakhe.

17 Futhi kwenzeka ukuthi uKoromu wenza lokho okwakukuhle emehlweni eNkosi zonke izinsuku zakhe; futhi wazala amadodana namadodakazi amaningi; futhi emva kokuthi esebone izinsuku eziningi wedlula, ngisho nanjengawo wonke umhlaba; futhi uKishi wabusa esikhundleni sakhe.

18 Futhi kwenzeka ukuthi uKishi wedlula naye ngokunjalo, kwathi uLibi wabusa esikhundleni sakhe.

19 Futhi kwenzeka ukuthi uLibi naye wenza lokho okwakukuhle emehlweni eNkosi. Futhi ngezinsuku zikaLibi izinyoka ezinobuthi zabhujiswa. Ngalokho ke bahamba baya ezweni elingaseningizimu, ukuyozingela ukudla kwabantu basezweni, ngokuba izwe lalimbozwe yizilwane zasehlathini. Futhi uLibi naye uqobo waba ngumzingeli omkhulu.

20 Futhi bakha idolobha elikhulu esiqintaneni esincane sezwe, eduze nendawo lapho ulwandle lwalwehlukanisa khona izwe.

21 Futhi balilondoloza izwe elingaseningizimu ukuthi libe yihlane, ukuze bathole izinyamazane. Futhi ubuso bonke bezwe elingasenyakatho babumbozwe ngabantu ababehlala khona.

22 Futhi babesebenza kakhulu, futhi babethenga futhi bethengisa futhi bahwebelana omunye nomunye, ukuze bathole inzuzo.

And it came to pass that Levi did serve in captivity after the death of his father, for the space of forty and two years. And he did make war against the king of the land, by which he did obtain unto himself the kingdom.

And after he had obtained unto himself the kingdom he did that which was right in the sight of the Lord; and the people did prosper in the land; and he did live to a good old age, and begat sons and daughters; and he also begat Corom, whom he anointed king in his stead.

And it came to pass that Corom did that which was good in the sight of the Lord all his days; and he begat many sons and daughters; and after he had seen many days he did pass away, even like unto the rest of the earth; and Kish reigned in his stead.

And it came to pass that Kish passed away also, and Lib reigned in his stead.

And it came to pass that Lib also did that which was good in the sight of the Lord. And in the days of Lib the poisonous serpents were destroyed. Wherefore they did go into the land southward, to hunt food for the people of the land, for the land was covered with animals of the forest. And Lib also himself became a great hunter.

And they built a great city by the narrow neck of land, by the place where the sea divides the land.

And they did preserve the land southward for a wilderness, to get game. And the whole face of the land northward was covered with inhabitants.

And they were exceedingly industrious, and they did buy and sell and traffic one with another, that they might get gain.

23 Futhi babesebenza ngalo lonke uhlobo lwensimbi esatshe, futhi benza igolide, kanye nesiliva, kanye nensimbi, kanye nethusi, kanye nalo lonke uhlobo lwezinsimbi; futhi babeyimba emhlabathini; ngalokho-ke, benza izindunduma ezinkulu zomhlabathi ukuze bathole insimbi esatshe, yegolide, kanye neyesiliva, kanye neyensimbi, kanye neyethusi. Futhi babenza zonke izinhlobo zemisebenzi emihle kakhulu.

24 Futhi baba nosilika, kanye nelineni elicolekileyo elilukiwe; futhi babenza zonke izinhlobo zendwangu, ukuze bazigqokise.

25 Futhi babenza zonke izinhlobo zezinto zokusebenza ukuze balime umhlabathi, ukuze balime futhi batshale, ukuze bavune futhi bahlakule, futhi kanjalo nokuze babhule.

26 Futhi babenza zonke izinhlobo zezinto zokusebenza abasebenzisa ngazo izilwane zabo.

27 Futhi babenza zonke izinhlobo zezikhali zempi. Futhi babenza zonke izinhlobo zomsebenzi wobuciko obukhulu.

28 Futhi kwakungakaze nanini abantu babusiswe kangaka njengabo, futhi baphumelele kakhulu ngesandla seNkosi. Futhi babesezweni elalikhethekile ngaphezu kwawo wonke amazwe, ngokuba iNkosi yayikukhulumile lokho.

29 Futhi kwenzeka ukuthi uLibi waphila iminyaka eminingi, futhi wazala amadodana namadodakazi; futhi phezu kwalokho wazala uHehartomu.

30 Futhi kwenzeka ukuthi uHehartomu wabusa esikhundleni sikayise. Futhi ngesikhathi uHehartomu esebuse iminyaka engamashumi amabili nane, bheka, umbuso wathathwa kuye. Futhi wasebenza iminyaka eminingi esekuthunjweni, yebo, ngisho nangazo zonke izinsuku zakhe ezazisasele.

31 Futhi wazala uHeti, futhi uHeti waphila esekuthunjweni zonke izinsuku zakhe. Futhi uHeti wazala u-Aroni, futhi no-Aroni wahlala ekuthunjweni zonke izinsuku zakhe; futhi yena wazala u-Amnigada, futhi u-Amnigada naye wahlala ekuthunjweni zonke izinsuku zakhe; futhi yena wazala uKoriantumu, futhi noKoriantumu wahlala ekuthunjweni zonke izinsuku zakhe; futhi yena wazala uKomu.

And they did work in all manner of ore, and they did make gold, and silver, and iron, and brass, and all manner of metals; and they did dig it out of the earth; wherefore, they did cast up mighty heaps of earth to get ore, of gold, and of silver, and of iron, and of copper. And they did work all manner of fine work.

And they did have silks, and fine-twined linen; and they did work all manner of cloth, that they might clothe themselves from their nakedness.

And they did make all manner of tools to till the earth, both to plow and to sow, to reap and to hoe, and also to thrash.

And they did make all manner of tools with which they did work their beasts.

And they did make all manner of weapons of war. And they did work all manner of work of exceedingly curious workmanship.

And never could be a people more blessed than were they, and more prospered by the hand of the Lord. And they were in a land that was choice above all lands, for the Lord had spoken it.

And it came to pass that Lib did live many years, and begat sons and daughters; and he also begat Hearthom.

And it came to pass that Hearthom reigned in the stead of his father. And when Hearthom had reigned twenty and four years, behold, the kingdom was taken away from him. And he served many years in captivity, yea, even all the remainder of his days.

And he begat Heth, and Heth lived in captivity all his days. And Heth begat Aaron, and Aaron dwelt in captivity all his days; and he begat Amnigaddah, and Amnigaddah also dwelt in captivity all his days; and he begat Coriantum, and Coriantum dwelt in captivity all his days; and he begat Com.

32 Futhi kwenzeka ukuthi uKomu wadonsa ingxenye yombuso. Futhi wabusa phezu kwengxenye yombuso iminyaka engamashumi amane nambili; futhi wahamba wayolwa nenkosi, u-Amgide, futhi balwa isikhathi esiyiminyaka eminingi, okwathi ngaleso sikhathi uKomu wamngqoba u-Amgide, futhi wazuza amandla phezu kombuso owawusele.

33 Futhi ngezinsuku zikaKomu kwaqala ukuthi kube khona abaphangi kulelizwe; futhi baqhuba ngamacebo akudala, futhi babafungisa izifungo ngendlela yabasendulo, futhi baphinda bafuna ukubhubhisa umbuso.

34 Manje uKomu walwa nabo kakhulu; nokho, akazange abehlule.

And it came to pass that Com drew away the half of the kingdom. And he reigned over the half of the kingdom forty and two years; and he went to battle against the king, Amgid, and they fought for the space of many years, during which time Com gained power over Amgid, and obtained power over the remainder of the kingdom.

And in the days of Com there began to be robbers in the land; and they adopted the old plans, and administered oaths after the manner of the ancients, and sought again to destroy the kingdom.

Now Com did fight against them much; nevertheless, he did not prevail against them.

Etere 11

- 1 Futhi ezinsukwini zikaKomu kweza abaphrofethi abaningi, baphrofetha ngokubhujiswa kwalabo bantu abanamandla ngaphandle kokuthi baphenduke, futhi babuyele eNkosini, futhi bayeke ukubulala kanye nobubi babo.
- 2 Futhi kwenzeka ukuthi abaphrofethi benqatshwa ngabantu, futhi babalekela kuKomu ukuze abavikele, ngokuba abantu babefuna ukubabulala.
- 3 Futhi baphrofetha kuKomu eziningi izinto; futhi wabusiseka kuzo zonke izinsuku zakhe ezazisasele.
- 4 Futhi waphila waze waba mdala kakhulu, futhi wazala uShiblomu; kwase kuthi uShiblomu wabusa esikhundleni sakhe. Umfowabo kaShiblomu wamvukela, futhi kwaqala ukuthi kube khona impi enkulu kakhulu ezweni lonke.
- 5 Futhi kwenzeka ukuthi umfowabo kaShiblomu wenza ukuthi bonke labo baphrofethi ababephrofethe ngokubhujiswa kwabantu babulawe;
- 6 Futhi kwaba khona usizi olukhulu ezweni lonke, ngokuba babefakaze ngokuthi isiqalekiso esikhulu sasizoza kulelizwe, futhi kanjalo nakubantu, futhi nokuthi kwakuzoba khona ukubhujiswa okukhulu phakathi kwabo, okwakuzobe kungakaze kube khona nanini ebusweni balelizwe, futhi amathambo abo ayezoba njengezindunduma zomhlabathi ebusweni balelizwe ngaphandle kokuthi baphenduke eubini babo.
- 7 Kodwa abalilalelanga izwi leNkosi, ngenxa yamaqembu abo amabi; ngalokho-ke, kwaqala ukuthi kube khona izimpi kanye nemibango ezweni lonke, futhi kanjalo nendlala kanye nezifo eziningi, kangangokuthi kwaba khona ukubhujiswa okukhulu, okwakungakaze kwaziwe nanini ebusweni balelizwe; futhi konke lokhu kwenzeka ngezinsuku zikaShiblomu.
- 8 Futhi abantu baqala ukuphenduka eubini babo; futhi kangangoba benze njalo iNkosi yaba nomusa kubo.
- 9 Futhi kwenzeka ukuthi uShiblomu wabulawa, futhi uSeti wafakwa ekuthunjweni, futhi wahlala ekuthunjweni zonke izinsuku zakhe.

Ether 11

And there came also in the days of Com many prophets, and prophesied of the destruction of that great people except they should repent, and turn unto the Lord, and forsake their murders and wickedness.

And it came to pass that the prophets were rejected by the people, and they fled unto Com for protection, for the people sought to destroy them.

And they prophesied unto Com many things; and he was blessed in all the remainder of his days.

And he lived to a good old age, and begat Shiblom; and Shiblom reigned in his stead. And the brother of Shiblom rebelled against him, and there began to be an exceedingly great war in all the land.

And it came to pass that the brother of Shiblom caused that all the prophets who prophesied of the destruction of the people should be put to death;

And there was great calamity in all the land, for they had testified that a great curse should come upon the land, and also upon the people, and that there should be a great destruction among them, such an one as never had been upon the face of the earth, and their bones should become as heaps of earth upon the face of the land except they should repent of their wickedness.

And they hearkened not unto the voice of the Lord, because of their wicked combinations; wherefore, there began to be wars and contentions in all the land, and also many famines and pestilences, in-somuch that there was a great destruction, such an one as never had been known upon the face of the earth; and all this came to pass in the days of Shiblom.

And the people began to repent of their iniquity; and inasmuch as they did the Lord did have mercy on them.

And it came to pass that Shiblom was slain, and Seth was brought into captivity, and did dwell in captivity all his days.

- 10 Futhi kwenzeka ukuthi u-Aha, indodana yakhe, yawuthatha umbuso; futhi yabusa phezu kwabantu izinsuku zonke zayo. Futhi yenza lonke uhlobo lobubi ezinsukwini zayo, okwathi ngakho yadala ukuchitheka kwegazi eliningi; futhi zaba mbalwa izinsuku zayo.
- 11 Futhi u-Etemi, engowozalo luka-Aha, wawuthatha umbuso; futhi naye ngokunjalo wenza lokho okwakukubi ezinsukwini zakhe.
- 12 Futhi kwenzeka ukuthi ezinsukwini zika-Etemi kweza abaphrofethi abaningi, futhi baphinda baphrofetha kubantu; yebo, baphrofetha ukuthi iNkosi yayizobabhubhisa baphele nya ebusweni bomhlaba ngaphandle kokuthi baphenduke ebubini babo.
- 13 Futhi kwenzeka ukuthi abantu bazenza lukhuni izinhliziyi zabo, futhi bangafuna ukuthi bawalalele amazwi abo; futhi abaphrofethi bakhala futhi baphuma phakathi kwabantu.
- 14 Futhi kwenzeka ukuthi u-Etemi wenza ukwahlulela ngobubi zonke izinsuku zakhe, futhi wazala uMoroni. Futhi kwenzeka ukuthi uMoroni wabusa esikhundleni sakhe; futhi uMoroni wenza lokho okwakukubi phambi kweNkosi.
- 15 Futhi kwenzeka ukuthi kwaqubuka ukuvukelana phakathi kwabantu, ngenxa yalelo qembu eliyimfihlo elalakhelwe ukuthi kutholakale amandla kanye nenzuzo; futhi kwavela indoda eyayinamandla ebubini phakathi kwabo, futhi yalwa noMoroni, lapho eyaketula khona ingxenye yombuso; futhi yayigcina leyo ngxenye yombuso iminyaka eminingi.
- 16 Futhi kwenzeka ukuthi uMoroni wayiketula, futhi waphinda wawuthatha umbuso futhi.
- 17 Futhi kwenzeka ukuthi kwavela enye indoda eyayinamandla; futhi yayingowozalo lomfowabo kaJarede.
- 18 Futhi kwenzeka ukuthi yamketula uMoroni futhi yawuthatha umbuso; ngakho-ke, uMoroni wahlala ekuthunjweni zonke izinsuku zakhe ezazisasele; futhi wazala uKoriyantori.
- 19 Futhi kwenzeka ukuthi uKoriyantori wahlala ekuthunjweni zonke izinsuku zakhe.

And it came to pass that Ahah, his son, did obtain the kingdom; and he did reign over the people all his days. And he did do all manner of iniquity in his days, by which he did cause the shedding of much blood; and few were his days.

And Ethem, being a descendant of Ahah, did obtain the kingdom; and he also did do that which was wicked in his days.

And it came to pass that in the days of Ethem there came many prophets, and prophesied again unto the people; yea, they did prophesy that the Lord would utterly destroy them from off the face of the earth except they repented of their iniquities.

And it came to pass that the people hardened their hearts, and would not hearken unto their words; and the prophets mourned and withdrew from among the people.

And it came to pass that Ethem did execute judgment in wickedness all his days; and he begat Moron. And it came to pass that Moron did reign in his stead; and Moron did that which was wicked before the Lord.

And it came to pass that there arose a rebellion among the people, because of that secret combination which was built up to get power and gain; and there arose a mighty man among them in iniquity, and gave battle unto Moron, in which he did overthrow the half of the kingdom; and he did maintain the half of the kingdom for many years.

And it came to pass that Moron did overthrow him, and did obtain the kingdom again.

And it came to pass that there arose another mighty man; and he was a descendant of the brother of Jared.

And it came to pass that he did overthrow Moron and obtain the kingdom; wherefore, Moron dwelt in captivity all the remainder of his days; and he begat Coriantor.

And it came to pass that Coriantor dwelt in captivity all his days.

20 Futhi ezinsukwini zikaKoriyantori kweza abaningi abaphrofethi, futhi bephrofetha ngezinto ezinkulu futhi nezimangalisayo, futhi bashumayela ngokuphenduka kubantu, futhi nokuthi ngaphandle kokuthi baphenduke iNkosi uNkulunkulu yayizokwehlisela ukwahlulela ngokumelene nabo kuze kube babhujiswa nya.

21 Futhi nokuthi iNkosi uNkulunkulu yayizothumela noma ilethe abanye abantu ukuthi balithathe lelizwe, ngamandla akhe, ngaleyondlela eyaletha ngayo oyise.

22 Futhi bawenqaba wonke amazwi abaphrofethi, ngenxa yenhlangano yabo eyimfihlo kanye nezinengiso zabo ezimbi.

23 Futhi kwenzeka ukuthi uKoriyantori wazala u-Etere, futhi wafa, ehlale ekuthunjweni zonke izinsuku zakhe.

And in the days of Coriantor there also came many prophets, and prophesied of great and marvelous things, and cried repentance unto the people, and except they should repent the Lord God would execute judgment against them to their utter destruction;

And that the Lord God would send or bring forth another people to possess the land, by his power, after the manner by which he brought their fathers.

And they did reject all the words of the prophets, because of their secret society and wicked abominations.

And it came to pass that Coriantor begat Ether, and he died, having dwelt in captivity all his days.

Etere 12

- 1 Futhi kwenzeka ukuthi izinsuku zika-Etere zazisezinsukwini zikaKoriyantuma; futhi uKoriyantuma wayeyinkosi kulo lonke izwe.
- 2 Futhi u-Etere wayengumphrofethi weNkosi; ngalokho-ke u-Etere wafika ngezinsuku zikaKoriyantuma, futhi waqala ukuphrofetha kubantu, ngokuba wayengakwazi ukuzibamba ngenxa yoMoya weNkosi owawukuye.
- 3 Ngokuba washumayela kusukela ekuseni, ngisho kwaze kwaba wukushona kwelanga, encenga abantu ukuthi bakholwe kuNkulunkulu ngokwanele ukuba baphenduke hleze babhujiswe, ethi kubo ngokholo zonke izinto ziyagcwaliseka—
- 4 Ngalokho-ke, lowo okholwa kuNkulunkulu ngempela angaba nethemba lomhlaba ongcono, yebo, ngisho nendawo esandleni sokunene sikaNkulunkulu, lelo themba elivela ngokholo, elenza abantu ukuba bagxile, okuyobenza babambelele futhi baqine, benze imisebenzi emihle njalo, beholelwa ekudumiseni uNkulunkulu.
- 5 Futhi kwenzeka ukuthi u-Etere waphrofetha izinto ezinkulu futhi nezimangalisayo kubantu, ababengazikholwa, ngenxa yokuthi babengaziboni.
- 6 Manje, mina, Moroni, ngizokhuluma ngokuthize mayelana nalezi zinto; ngizowukhombisa umhlaba ukuthi ukholo yizinto ezithenjwayo kepha ezingabonakaliyo; ngalokho-ke, ungaphikisi ngoba ungaboni, ngokuba awutholi bufakazi kuze kube semva kokulingwa kokholo lwakho.
- 7 Ngokuba kwakungenxa yokholo ukuthi uKristu wazibonakalisa kobaba bethu, emva kokuthi esevuke kwabafuleyo; futhi akazibonakalisanga kubo kwaze kwaba semva kokuthi babe nokholo kuye; ngalokho-ke, kufanele ukuthi abanye baba nokholo kuye, ngokuba akazibonakalisi emhlabeni.
- 8 Kepha ngenxa yokholo lwabantu usezibonakalisile emhlabeni, futhi wadumisa igama likaBaba, futhi walungisa indlela ukuze ngayo abanye babe ngabahlanganyela esiphweni sasezulwini, ukuze bathembele kulezo zinto abangakaziboni.

Ether 12

And it came to pass that the days of Ether were in the days of Coriantumr; and Coriantumr was king over all the land.

And Ether was a prophet of the Lord; wherefore Ether came forth in the days of Coriantumr, and began to prophesy unto the people, for he could not be restrained because of the Spirit of the Lord which was in him.

For he did cry from the morning, even until the going down of the sun, exhorting the people to believe in God unto repentance lest they should be destroyed, saying unto them that by faith all things are fulfilled—

Wherefore, whoso believeth in God might with surety hope for a better world, yea, even a place at the right hand of God, which hope cometh of faith, maketh an anchor to the souls of men, which would make them sure and steadfast, always abounding in good works, being led to glorify God.

And it came to pass that Ether did prophesy great and marvelous things unto the people, which they did not believe, because they saw them not.

And now, I, Moroni, would speak somewhat concerning these things; I would show unto the world that faith is things which are hoped for and not seen; wherefore, dispute not because ye see not, for ye receive no witness until after the trial of your faith.

For it was by faith that Christ showed himself unto our fathers, after he had risen from the dead; and he showed not himself unto them until after they had faith in him; wherefore, it must needs be that some had faith in him, for he showed himself not unto the world.

But because of the faith of men he has shown himself unto the world, and glorified the name of the Father, and prepared a way that thereby others might be partakers of the heavenly gift, that they might hope for those things which they have not seen.

- 9 Ngalokho-ke, nani futhi ningaba nethemba, futhi nibe ngabahlanganyela kulesi siphso, uma kuphela ningaba nokholo.
- 10 Bheka kwakungenxa yokholo ukuthi labo basendulo babizwa ngokohlelo olungcwele lukaNkulunkulu.
- 11 Ngalokho-ke, ngokholo umthetho kaMose wanikwa. Kepha ngesiphso seNdodana yakhe uNkulunkulu ulungise indlela enhle kakhulu; futhi kungenxa yokholo ukuthi ugcalisekile.
- 12 Ngokuba uma lungekho ukholo phakathi kwabantwana babantu uNkulunkulu akanakukwazi ukwenza izimangaliso phakathi kwabo; ngalokho-ke, akazibonakalisanga kwaze kwaba semva kokholo lwabo.
- 13 Bheka, kwakuwukholo luka-Alima kanye no-Amuleki olwenza ukuthi itilongo liwele phansi.
- 14 Bheka, kwakuwukholo lukaNefi kanye noLehi olwenza ushintsho kumaLamani, ukuthi abhabhadiswe ngomlilo kanye nango Moya oNgcwele.
- 15 Bheka, kwakuwukholo luka-Amoni kanye nabafowabo olwenza isimangaliso esinkulu phakathi kwamaLamani.
- 16 Yebo, futhi ngisho nabo bonke labo abenza izimangaliso bazenza ngokholo, ngisho nalabo ababe ngaphambili kukaKristu futhi kanjalo nalabo ababengemuva kwakhe.
- 17 Futhi kwakungokholo ukuthi abafundi abathathu bathole isethembiso sokuthi bona babengezukuluzwa ukufa; futhi abazange basithole lesi sethembiso kwaze kwaba semva kokholo lwabo.
- 18 Futhi akukaze nangasiphi isikhathi kube khona namunye owenza izimangaliso kuze kube semva kokholo lwabo; ngalokho-ke kuqala bakholwa kuyo iNdodana kaNkulunkulu.
- 19 Futhi kwakukhona abaningi ababenokholo olwaluqine kakhulu, ngisho nangaphambi kokuthi uKristu afike, ababengenakuvinjelwa ukuthi babone ngaphakathi kwesisitho, kepha ngempela ababona ngamehlo abo izinto ababe zibone ngamehlo okholo, futhi bajabula.

Wherefore, ye may also have hope, and be partakers of the gift, if ye will but have faith.

Behold it was by faith that they of old were called after the holy order of God.

Wherefore, by faith was the law of Moses given. But in the gift of his Son hath God prepared a more excellent way; and it is by faith that it hath been fulfilled.

For if there be no faith among the children of men God can do no miracle among them; wherefore, he showed not himself until after their faith.

Behold, it was the faith of Alma and Amulek that caused the prison to tumble to the earth.

Behold, it was the faith of Nephi and Lehi that wrought the change upon the Lamanites, that they were baptized with fire and with the Holy Ghost.

Behold, it was the faith of Ammon and his brethren which wrought so great a miracle among the Lamanites.

Yea, and even all they who wrought miracles wrought them by faith, even those who were before Christ and also those who were after.

And it was by faith that the three disciples obtained a promise that they should not taste of death; and they obtained not the promise until after their faith.

And neither at any time hath any wrought miracles until after their faith; wherefore they first believed in the Son of God.

And there were many whose faith was so exceedingly strong, even before Christ came, who could not be kept from within the veil, but truly saw with their eyes the things which they had beheld with an eye of faith, and they were glad.

- 20 Futhi bheka, sesibonile kulombhalo ukuthi omunye walaba kwakungumfowabo kaJarede; ngokuba lwalulukhulu kakhulu ukhoho lwakhe kuNkulunkulu, ngendlela yokuthi ngesikhathi uNkulunkulu elula umunwe wakhe akakwazanga ukuwufihla ekutheni ubonwe ngumfowabo kaJarede, ngenxa yezwi lakhe ayelikhulume kuye, alithola ngokhoho.
- 21 Futhi emva kokuthi umfowabo kaJarede esebone umunwe weNkosi, ngenxa yaleso sethembiso umfowabo kaJarede ayesithole ngokhoho, iNkosi ayikwazanga ukuthi igodle nanoma yini ekutheni ayibone; ngalokho-ke yamkhombisa zonke izinto, ngokuba wayengasenakugcinwa engaphandle kwesisitho.
- 22 Futhi kungenxa yokhoho ukuthi obaba bathole isethembiso sokuthi lezi zinto kumele zize kubafowabo ngabeZizwe; ngakho-ke iNkosi ingiyalile, yebo, ngisho uJesu Kristu.
- 23 Futhi ngathi kuye: Nkosi, abeZizwe bazohlekisa ngalezi zinto, ngenxa yobuthakathaka bethu ekubhaleni; ngokuba Nkosi usenze sanamandla ezwini ngenxa yokhoho, kepha awusenzanga ukuthi sibe namandla ekubhaleni; ngokuba wenza bonke labantu ukuthi bakhulume okuningi, ngenxa kaMoya oyiNgcwele obanikeze wona.
- 24 Futhi usenze ukuthi sibhale okuncane kuphela, ngenxa yobunzima bokubhala ngezandla zethu. Bheka, awusenzanga sanamandla ekubhaleni njengomfowabo kaJarede, ngokuba umenze ukuthi lezo zinto azibhalayo zibe namandla ngisho njengawe, kangangoba ziphoqa umuntu ukuthi azifunde.
- 25 Uphinde futhi wenza amazwi ethu ukuba angene enhliziyweni futhi abe namandla, ngisho nangendlela yokuthi asikwazi ukuwabhala; ngakho-ke, ngesikhathi sibhala siyabubona ubuthakathaka bethu, futhi siyakhubeka ngenxa yokubekeka kwamagama ethu; futhi ngiyesaba hleze abeZizwe bahlekise ngamazwi ethu.
- 26 Futhi ngesikhathi sengikushilo lokhu, iNkosi yakhuluma kimi ithi: Iziwula ziyahlekisa, kepha ziyokhala; futhi umusa wami ubenele abamnene, ukuthi bangasizakali ngobuthakathaka benu;

And behold, we have seen in this record that one of these was the brother of Jared; for so great was his faith in God, that when God put forth his finger he could not hide it from the sight of the brother of Jared, because of his word which he had spoken unto him, which word he had obtained by faith.

And after the brother of Jared had beheld the finger of the Lord, because of the promise which the brother of Jared had obtained by faith, the Lord could not withhold anything from his sight; wherefore he showed him all things, for he could no longer be kept without the veil.

And it is by faith that my fathers have obtained the promise that these things should come unto their brethren through the Gentiles; therefore the Lord hath commanded me, yea, even Jesus Christ.

And I said unto him: Lord, the Gentiles will mock at these things, because of our weakness in writing; for Lord thou hast made us mighty in word by faith, but thou hast not made us mighty in writing; for thou hast made all this people that they could speak much, because of the Holy Ghost which thou hast given them;

And thou hast made us that we could write but little, because of the awkwardness of our hands. Behold, thou hast not made us mighty in writing like unto the brother of Jared, for thou madest him that the things which he wrote were mighty even as thou art, unto the overpowering of man to read them.

Thou hast also made our words powerful and great, even that we cannot write them; wherefore, when we write we behold our weakness, and stumble because of the placing of our words; and I fear lest the Gentiles shall mock at our words.

And when I had said this, the Lord spake unto me, saying: Fools mock, but they shall mourn; and my grace is sufficient for the meek, that they shall take no advantage of your weakness;

- 27 Futhi uma abantu beza kimi ngizobakhombisa ubuthakathaka babo. Nginika abantu ubuthakathaka ukuze bathobe; futhi umusa wami ubenele bonke abantu abazithobayo phambi kwami; ngokuba uma bezithoba phambi kwami, futhi benokholo kimi, uma kunjalo ngizokwenza izinto ezibuthakathaka zibe namandla kubo.
- 28 Bheka, ngizobakhombisa abeZizwe ubuthakathaka babo, futhi ngizobakhombisa ukuthi ukholo, ithemba kanye nesihe kubaletsa kimi—engiwumthombo wakho konke ukulunga.
- 29 Futhi mina, Moroni, sengiwezile lamazwi, ngaduduzeka, futhi ngathi: O Nkosi, ukulunga kwakho kuzokwenziwa, ngokuba ngiyazi ukuthi wena usebenza kubantwana babantu ngokokholo lwabo;
- 30 Ngokuba umfowabo kaJared wathi entabeni iZerini, Suka—futhi yasuka. Futhi ukuba wayengenalo ukholo yayingeke isuke; ngalokho-ke wena usebenza emva kokuthi abantu sebebe nokholo.
- 31 Ngokuba wazibonakalisa ngalendlela kubafundi bakho; ngokuba emva kokuthi sebebe nokholo, futhi bakhuluma ngegama lakho, wazibonakalisa kubo ngamandla amakhulu.
- 32 Futhi phezu kwalokho ngiyakhumbula ukuthi wathi ulungisele umuntu indlu, yebo, ngisho phakathi kwezindlu eziningi zikaBaba wakho, lapho umuntu engaba nethemba elikhulu kakhulu; ngalokho-ke umuntu kufanele ethembe, noma akanakulithola ifa kuleyo ndawo oyilungisile.
- 33 Kanti futhi, ngiyakhumbula ukuthi ushilo ukuthi uwuthandile umhlaba, kwaze kwaba ngiso ubeka phansi impilo yakho ngenxa yomhlaba, ukuze uyithathe futhi ukuze ulungiselele abantwana babantu indawo.
- 34 Manje ngiyazi ukuthi loluthando onalo ngabantwana babantu yisihe; ngalokho-ke, ngaphandle kokuthi abantu babe nesihe abanakuyithola leyo ndawo oyilungisile ezindlini zikaBaba wakho.

And if men come unto me I will show unto them their weakness. I give unto men weakness that they may be humble; and my grace is sufficient for all men that humble themselves before me; for if they humble themselves before me, and have faith in me, then will I make weak things become strong unto them.

Behold, I will show unto the Gentiles their weakness, and I will show unto them that faith, hope and charity bringeth unto me—the fountain of all righteousness.

And I, Moroni, having heard these words, was comforted, and said: O Lord, thy righteous will be done, for I know that thou workest unto the children of men according to their faith;

For the brother of Jared said unto the mountain Zerin, Remove—and it was removed. And if he had not had faith it would not have moved; wherefore thou workest after men have faith.

For thus didst thou manifest thyself unto thy disciples; for after they had faith, and did speak in thy name, thou didst show thyself unto them in great power.

And I also remember that thou hast said that thou hast prepared a house for man, yea, even among the mansions of thy Father, in which man might have a more excellent hope; wherefore man must hope, or he cannot receive an inheritance in the place which thou hast prepared.

And again, I remember that thou hast said that thou hast loved the world, even unto the laying down of thy life for the world, that thou mightest take it again to prepare a place for the children of men.

And now I know that this love which thou hast had for the children of men is charity; wherefore, except men shall have charity they cannot inherit that place which thou hast prepared in the mansions of thy Father.

- 35 Ngalokho-ke, ngiyazi ngenxa yalento oyishilo, ukuthi uma abeZizwe bengenaso isihe, ngenxa yobuthakathaka bethu, ukuthi uzobalinga, futhi uthathe amathalente abo, yebo, ngisho nalokho asebekutholile, bese unika labo abayoba nokuningi.
- 36 Futhi kwenzeka ukuthi ngakhuleka eNkosini ukuthi ibe nomusa kwabeZizwe, ukuze babe nesihe.
- 37 Futhi kwenzeka ukuthi iNkosi yathi kimi: Uma bengenaso isihe akusho lutho lokho kuwe, wena wethembekile; ngalokho-ke, izingubo zakho ziyokwenziwa zihlanzeke. Futhi ngenxa yokuthi ububonile ubuthakathaka bakho uyokwenziwa uqine, ngisho kangangoba uzohlala phansi endaweni engiyilungisile ezindlini eziningi zikaBaba.
- 38 Manje mina, Moroni, sengiyavalelisa kwabeZizwe, yebo, futhi kanjalo nakubafowethu engibathandayo, kuze kube sihlangu phambi kwesihlalo sokwahlulela sikaKristu, lapho bonke abantu beyokwazi ukuthi izingubo zami azichaphazelekanga ngegazi lenu.
- 39 Futhi ngaleso sikhathi niyokwazi ukuthi ngimbonile uJesus, futhi nokuthi ukhulumile nami ubuso nobuso, futhi nokuthi wangitshela ngokuthobeka, ngisho njengomuntu ekhuluma nomunye ngolimi lwami, mayelana nalezi zinto;
- 40 Futhi ngibhale okumbalwa kuphela, ngenxa yobuthakathaka bami ekubhaleni.
- 41 Manje, ngizoninxusa ukuthi nimfune loJesus abaphrofethi kanye nabaphostoli ababhale ngaye, ukuze umusa kaNkulunkulu uBaba, futhi kanjalo neNkosi uJesus Kristu, kanye noMoya oyiNgcwele, ofakaza ngabo, sengathi ungaba kini futhi uhlale kini ingunaphakade. Amen.

Wherefore, I know by this thing which thou hast said, that if the Gentiles have not charity, because of our weakness, that thou wilt prove them, and take away their talent, yea, even that which they have received, and give unto them who shall have more abundantly.

And it came to pass that I prayed unto the Lord that he would give unto the Gentiles grace, that they might have charity.

And it came to pass that the Lord said unto me: If they have not charity it mattereth not unto thee, thou hast been faithful; wherefore, thy garments shall be made clean. And because thou hast seen thy weakness thou shalt be made strong, even unto the sitting down in the place which I have prepared in the mansions of my Father.

And now I, Moroni, bid farewell unto the Gentiles, yea, and also unto my brethren whom I love, until we shall meet before the judgment-seat of Christ, where all men shall know that my garments are not spotted with your blood.

And then shall ye know that I have seen Jesus, and that he hath talked with me face to face, and that he told me in plain humility, even as a man telleth another in mine own language, concerning these things;

And only a few have I written, because of my weakness in writing.

And now, I would commend you to seek this Jesus of whom the prophets and apostles have written, that the grace of God the Father, and also the Lord Jesus Christ, and the Holy Ghost, which beareth record of them, may be and abide in you forever. Amen.

Etere 13

- 1 Manje mina, Moroni, sengiyaqhubeka nokuqedela umbhalo wami mayelana nokubhujiswa kwalabo bantu ebengibhala ngabo.
- 2 Ngokuba bheka, bawenqaba wonke amazwi ka-Etere; ngokuba ngempela wabatshela ngazo zonke izinto, kusukela ekuqaleni komuntu; futhi nokuthi emva kokuthi amanzi esephele nya ebusweni balelizwe laba yizwe elikhethekileyo ngaphezu kwawo wonke amanye amazwe, izwe elikhetheziweyo leNkosi; ngalokho-ke iNkosi ifuna ukuthi bonke abantu bayisebenzele abahlala ebusweni balo;
- 3 Futhi nokuthi kwakuyindawo ye Jerusalema eNtsha, eyokwehlela phansi ivela ezulwini, kanye nendawo engcwele yeNkosi.
- 4 Bheka, u-Etere wazibona izinsuku zikaKristu, futhi wakhuluma mayelana ne Jerusalema eNtsha kulelizwe.
- 5 Futhi waphinde wakhuluma mayelana nendlu ka-Israyeli, kanye ne Jerusalema lapho uLehi eyophuma khona—emva kokuthi isibhujisiwe iyophinde yakhiwe futhi, idolobha elingcwele eNkosini; ngalokho-ke, ayiyukuba yiJerusalema entsha ngokuba yayisesikhathini sakudala; kepha iyophinde yakhiwe futhi, futhi ibe yidolobha elingcwele leNkosi; futhi iyokwaxhiwa endlini ka-Israyeli—
- 6 Futhi nokuthi iJerusalema eNtsha kufanele yakhiwe kulelizwe, yakhelwe insali yenzalo ka Josefa, obekunesibonelo ngokuphathelele nalezi zinto.
- 7 Ngokuba njengoba uJosefa aletha uyise ezweni lase Gibithe, ngisho kanjalo wafela khona; ngalokho-ke, iNkosi yayikhipha insali yenzalo kaJosefa ezweni laseJerusalema, ukuze ibe nomusa kuyo inzalo kaJosefa ukuze ingabhubhi, ngisho nanjengoba yaba nomusa kuyise kaJosefa ukuthi angabhubhi.
- 8 Ngalokho-ke, insali yendlu kaJosefa iyomiswa kulelizwe; futhi liyokuba yizwe lefa layo; futhi iyokwakhela iNkosi idolobha elingcwele, njengeJerusalema yakudala; futhi ayiseyikuxutshwa nabanye nanini, kuze kube ngumhla wokuphela lapho sekudlula umhlaba.

Ether 13

And now I, Moroni, proceed to finish my record concerning the destruction of the people of whom I have been writing.

For behold, they rejected all the words of Ether; for he truly told them of all things, from the beginning of man; and that after the waters had receded from off the face of this land it became a choice land above all other lands, a chosen land of the Lord; wherefore the Lord would have that all men should serve him who dwell upon the face thereof;

And that it was the place of the New Jerusalem, which should come down out of heaven, and the holy sanctuary of the Lord.

Behold, Ether saw the days of Christ, and he spake concerning a New Jerusalem upon this land.

And he spake also concerning the house of Israel, and the Jerusalem from whence Lehi should come—after it should be destroyed it should be built up again, a holy city unto the Lord; wherefore, it could not be a new Jerusalem for it had been in a time of old; but it should be built up again, and become a holy city of the Lord; and it should be built unto the house of Israel—

And that a New Jerusalem should be built up upon this land, unto the remnant of the seed of Joseph, for which things there has been a type.

For as Joseph brought his father down into the land of Egypt, even so he died there; wherefore, the Lord brought a remnant of the seed of Joseph out of the land of Jerusalem, that he might be merciful unto the seed of Joseph that they should perish not, even as he was merciful unto the father of Joseph that he should perish not.

Wherefore, the remnant of the house of Joseph shall be built upon this land; and it shall be a land of their inheritance; and they shall build up a holy city unto the Lord, like unto the Jerusalem of old; and they shall no more be confounded, until the end come when the earth shall pass away.

- 9 Futhi kuyoba khona izulu elisha kanye nomhlaba omusha; futhi kuyoba njengakudala ngaphandle nje kokuthi okudala sekudlule, futhi zonke izinto sezizintsha.
- 10 Futhi emva kwalokho kuza iJerusalema eNtsha; futhi babusisiwe abahlala kuyo, ngokuba yibo labo izingubo zabo ezimhlophe ngenxa yegazi leMvana; futhi yibo labo ababalwa nensali yenzalo kaJosefa, okwakungeyendlu ka-Israyeli.
- 11 Futhi emva kwalokho kuza iJerusalema yakudala; kanye nabahlala kuyo, babusisiwe, ngokuba bahlanzwe egazini leMvana; futhi yibo labo ababe hlakaziwe futhi baqoqwa babuyiswa emagumbini amane omhlaba, kanye nasemazweni asenyakatho, futhi bahlanganyela ekugcwalisekeni kwesivumelwano uNkulunkulu asenza noyise, u-Abrahama.
- 12 Futhi ngesikhathi lezi zinto sezenzeka, zigcwalisa umbhalo ongcwele othi, yibo labo ababengaboku qala, abayokuba ngabokugcina; futhi yibo labo okwakungabokugcina, abayokuba ngabokuqala.
- 13 Futhi ngase ngizobhala okuningi, kepha ngenqatshelwa; kepha zazizinkulu futhi zimangalisa iziphrofetho zika-Etere; kepha bamthatha njengento engelutho, futhi bamxosha; futhi wazifihla emgodini wedwala emini, kwathi ebusuku waphuma wabuka lezo zinto ezazizokwenzeka kubantu.
- 14 Futhi ngesikhathi ehleli emgodini wedwala waqedela insalela yalombhalo, ebuka ukubhujiswa okwehlela abantu, ebusuku.
- 15 Futhi kwenzeka ukuthi ngawo lowo nyaka axoshwa ngawo phakathi kwabantu kwaqala kwaba khona impi enkulu phakathi kwabantu, ngokuba babebaningi abeza phambili, okwakungabantu abanamandla, futhi bafuna ukubulala uKoriyantuma ngamacebo abo obubi ayimfihlo, osekukhulunye ngawo.
- 16 Manje uKoriyantuma, esezifundisile, ngabo bonke ubuciko bempi kanye nangabo bonke ubuqili bomhlaba, ngalokho-ke walwa nabo labo ababefuna ukumbulala.

And there shall be a new heaven and a new earth; and they shall be like unto the old save the old have passed away, and all things have become new.

And then cometh the New Jerusalem; and blessed are they who dwell therein, for it is they whose garments are white through the blood of the Lamb; and they are they who are numbered among the remnant of the seed of Joseph, who were of the house of Israel.

And then also cometh the Jerusalem of old; and the inhabitants thereof, blessed are they, for they have been washed in the blood of the Lamb; and they are they who were scattered and gathered in from the four quarters of the earth, and from the north countries, and are partakers of the fulfilling of the covenant which God made with their father, Abraham.

And when these things come, bringeth to pass the scripture which saith, there are they who were first, who shall be last; and there are they who were last, who shall be first.

And I was about to write more, but I am forbidden; but great and marvelous were the prophecies of Ether; but they esteemed him as naught, and cast him out; and he hid himself in the cavity of a rock by day, and by night he went forth viewing the things which should come upon the people.

And as he dwelt in the cavity of a rock he made the remainder of this record, viewing the destructions which came upon the people, by night.

And it came to pass that in that same year in which he was cast out from among the people there began to be a great war among the people, for there were many who rose up, who were mighty men, and sought to destroy Coriantumr by their secret plans of wickedness, of which hath been spoken.

And now Coriantumr, having studied, himself, in all the arts of war and all the cunning of the world, wherefore he gave battle unto them who sought to destroy him.

- 17 Kepha akazange aphenduke, ngokunjalo namadodana akhe namadodakazi akhe amahle; ngokunjalo namadodana namadodakazi amahle kaKohori; ngokunjalo namadodana namadodakazi amahle kaKorihori; futhi ukuphetha, akuzange kube khona namunye wamadodana namadodakazi amahle kubo bonke ubuso balelizwe owaphenduka ezonweni zakhe.
- 18 Ngalokho-ke, kwenzeka ukuthi ngonyaka wokuqala u-Etere ehlala emgodini wedwala, kwabakhona abanengi abantu ababulawa ngenkemba yalawo maqembu ayimfihlo, ayelwa noKoriyantuma ukuze athole umbuso.
- 19 Futhi kwenzeka ukuthi amadodana kaKoriyantuma alwa kakhulu futhi opha kakhulu.
- 20 Futhi ngonyaka wesibili izwi leNkosi leza ku-Etere, lithi makahambe ayophrofetha ku Koriyantuma ukuthi, uma engaphenduka, kanye nabo bonke abomuzi wakhe, iNkosi yayizomnika umbuso wakhe futhi ibasindise abantu—
- 21 Ngaphandle kwalokho bayobhujiswa, kanye nabo bonke abomuzi wakhe ngaphandle kwakhe. Futhi nguyey kuphela owayezophila ukuze abone ukugcwaliseka kwalezo ziphrofetho ezakhulunywa mayelana nabanye abantu ababezothola izwe ukuze libe yifa labo; futhi uKoriyantuma wayezongcwatshwa yibo; futhi wonke umuntu uyobhujiswa ngaphandle kuka Koriyantuma.
- 22 Futhi kwenzeka ukuthi uKoriyantuma akaphendukanga, ngokunjalo nabomuzi wakhe, ngokunjalo nabantu; futhi izimpi aziphelanga; futhi bafuna ukumbulala u-Etere, kepha wababalekela waphinda wayocasha emgodini wedwala.
- 23 Futhi kwenzeka ukuthi kwavela uSharedi, futhi naye ngokunjalo walwa noKoriyantuma; futhi wamehlula, kangangokuthi ngonyaka wesithathu wamletha ekuthunjweni.
- 24 Futhi amadodana kaKoriyantuma, ngonyaka wesine, amehlula uSharedi, futhi aphinda awubuyisela futhi umbuso kuyise.
- 25 Manje kwaqala kwaba khona impi ebusweni bonke balelizwe, wonke umuntu neqembu lakhe elwela lokho ayekufuna.

But he repented not, neither his fair sons nor daughters; neither the fair sons and daughters of Cohor; neither the fair sons and daughters of Corihor; and in fine, there were none of the fair sons and daughters upon the face of the whole earth who repented of their sins.

Wherefore, it came to pass that in the first year that Ether dwelt in the cavity of a rock, there were many people who were slain by the sword of those secret combinations, fighting against Coriantumr that they might obtain the kingdom.

And it came to pass that the sons of Coriantumr fought much and bled much.

And in the second year the word of the Lord came to Ether, that he should go and prophesy unto Coriantumr that, if he would repent, and all his household, the Lord would give unto him his kingdom and spare the people—

Otherwise they should be destroyed, and all his household save it were himself. And he should only live to see the fulfilling of the prophecies which had been spoken concerning another people receiving the land for their inheritance; and Coriantumr should receive a burial by them; and every soul should be destroyed save it were Coriantumr.

And it came to pass that Coriantumr repented not, neither his household, neither the people; and the wars ceased not; and they sought to kill Ether, but he fled from before them and hid again in the cavity of the rock.

And it came to pass that there arose up Shared, and he also gave battle unto Coriantumr; and he did beat him, insomuch that in the third year he did bring him into captivity.

And the sons of Coriantumr, in the fourth year, did beat Shared, and did obtain the kingdom again unto their father.

Now there began to be a war upon all the face of the land, every man with his band fighting for that which he desired.

26 Futhi kwakukhona abaphangi, futhi ukuphetha, zonke izinhlobo zobubi kubo bonke ubuso balelizwe.

27 Futhi kwenzeka ukuthi uKoriyantuma wamthukuthelela kakhulu uSharedi, futhi wahamba namabutho akhe wayolwa naye; futhi bahlangana ngolaka olukhulu, futhi bahlanganela esigodini sikaGiligali; futhi impi yaba nzima kakhulu.

28 Futhi kwenzeka ukuthi uSharedi walwa naye isikhathi esingange zinsuku ezintathu. Futhi kwenzeka ukuthi uKoriyantuma wamehlula, futhi wamxosha kwaze kwaba ufika emathafeni aseHeshiloni.

29 Futhi kwenzeka ukuthi uSharedi waphinda walwa naye futhi kulawo mathafa; futhi bheka, wamehlula uKoriyantuma, wamphoqa ukuba abaleke abuyele emuva futhi esigodini sakwaGiligali.

30 Futhi uKoriyantuma waphinda walwa noSharedi esigodini sakwaGiligali, lapho amehlula khona uSharedi futhi wambulala.

31 Futhi uSharedi wamlimaza uKoriyantuma ethangeni lakhe, kangangokuthi akazange aphindele ukuyolwa isikhathi esingangeminyaka emibili, ngaleso sikhathi bonke abantu ebusweni bezwe babechitha igazi, futhi kwakungekho namunye owayengabavimba.

And there were robbers, and in fine, all manner of wickedness upon all the face of the land.

And it came to pass that Coriantumr was exceedingly angry with Shared, and he went against him with his armies to battle; and they did meet in great anger, and they did meet in the valley of Gilgal; and the battle became exceedingly sore.

And it came to pass that Shared fought against him for the space of three days. And it came to pass that Coriantumr beat him, and did pursue him until he came to the plains of Heshlon.

And it came to pass that Shared gave him battle again upon the plains; and behold, he did beat Coriantumr, and drove him back again to the valley of Gilgal.

And Coriantumr gave Shared battle again in the valley of Gilgal, in which he beat Shared and slew him.

And Shared wounded Coriantumr in his thigh, that he did not go to battle again for the space of two years, in which time all the people upon the face of the land were shedding blood, and there was none to restrain them.

Etere 14

- 1 Manje kwaqala kwaba khona isiqalekiso esikhulu kulo lonke izwe ngenxa yobubi babantu, ngendlela yokuthi, uma umuntu ayebeka into yakhe yokusebenza noma inkemba yakhe ethala lakhe, noma endaweni lapho ayezoyigcina khona, bheka, ngakusasa, wayengeke esayithola, sasisikhulu kakhulu isiqalekiso ezweni.
- 2 Ngalokho-ke wonke umuntu wanamathela kulokho okwakungokwakhe, ngezandla zakhe, futhi wayengaboleki noma abolekise; futhi wonke umuntu wayegcina umphini wenkemba yakhe esandleni sokunene, ukuze avikele okungokwakhe kanye nempilo yakhe kanye nabafazi nabantwana bakhe.
- 3 Manje, emva kwesikhathi esingangeminyaka emibili, futhi emva kokufa kukaSharedi, bheka, kwavela umfowabo kaSharedi futhi walwa noKoriyantuma, lapho uKoriyantuma amehlula khona futhi wamxosha waze wayomfaka ehlane lakwa-Akishi.
- 4 Futhi kwenzeka ukuthi umfowabo kaSharedi walwa naye ehlane lakwa-Akishi; futhi impi yaba nzima kakhulu, futhi izinkulungwane eziningi zawa ngenkemba.
- 5 Futhi kwenzeka ukuthi uKoriyantuma wavimba ehlane; futhi umfowabo kaSharedi wahamba waphuma ehlane ngobusuku, futhi wabulala ingxenye yebutho likaKoriyantuma, ngesikhathi besadakiwe.
- 6 Futhi weza ezweni lakwaMoroni, futhi wazozibeka esihlalweni sobukhosi sikaKoriyantuma.
- 7 Futhi kwenzeka ukuthi uKoriyantuma wahlala nebutho lakhe ehlane isikhathi esingangeminyaka emibili, lapho athola khona amandla amakhulu ebuthweni lakhe.
- 8 Manje umfowabo kaSharedi, igama lakhe okwakunguGileyadi, naye ngokunjalo wathola amandla amakhulu ebuthweni lakhe, ngenxa yamaqembu ayimfihlo.
- 9 Futhi kwenzeka ukuthi umphristi wakhe omkhulu wambulala ngesikhathi ehlezi esihlalweni sakhe sobukhosi.

Ether 14

And now there began to be a great curse upon all the land because of the iniquity of the people, in which, if a man should lay his tool or his sword upon his shelf, or upon the place whither he would keep it, behold, upon the morrow, he could not find it, so great was the curse upon the land.

Wherefore every man did cleave unto that which was his own, with his hands, and would not borrow neither would he lend; and every man kept the hilt of his sword in his right hand, in the defence of his property and his own life and of his wives and children.

And now, after the space of two years, and after the death of Shared, behold, there arose the brother of Shared and he gave battle unto Coriantumr, in which Coriantumr did beat him and did pursue him to the wilderness of Akish.

And it came to pass that the brother of Shared did give battle unto him in the wilderness of Akish; and the battle became exceedingly sore, and many thousands fell by the sword.

And it came to pass that Coriantumr did lay siege to the wilderness; and the brother of Shared did march forth out of the wilderness by night, and slew a part of the army of Coriantumr, as they were drunken.

And he came forth to the land of Moron, and placed himself upon the throne of Coriantumr.

And it came to pass that Coriantumr dwelt with his army in the wilderness for the space of two years, in which he did receive great strength to his army.

Now the brother of Shared, whose name was Gilead, also received great strength to his army, because of secret combinations.

And it came to pass that his high priest murdered him as he sat upon his throne.

- 10 Futhi kwenzeka ukuthi omunye wamaqembu ayimfihlo wambulala ngentuba eyimfihlo, futhi wazithathela umbuso; futhi igama lakhe kwakunguLibi; futhi uLibi wayeyindoda ende kakhulu, ngaphezu kwawo wonke amadoda phakathi kwabo bonke abantu.
- 11 Futhi kwenzeka ukuthi ngonyaka wokuqala kaLibi, uKoriyantuma weza ezweni lakwaMoroni, futhi walwa noLibi.
- 12 Futhi kwenzeka ukuthi walwa noLibi; lapho uLibi wamshaya engalweni kangangoba wamlimaza; nokho, ibutho likaKoriyantuma lamhlasela uLibi, kangangokuthi wabalekela eminceleni ngasogwini lolwandle.
- 13 Futhi kwenzeka ukuthi uKoriyantuma wamlandela; futhi uLibi walwa naye khona ngasogwini lolwandle.
- 14 Futhi kwenzeka ukuthi uLibi wayishaya impi kaKoriyantuma, kangangokuthi babalekela ehlane lika-Akishi futhi.
- 15 Futhi kwenzeka ukuthi uLibi wamlandela kwaze kwaba ufika emathafeni ase-Agoshi. Futhi uKoriyantuma wayesethathe bonke abantu wabaleka nabo ngesikhathi ebalekela uLibi kuleyo ngxenye yezwe lapho ayebalekele khona.
- 16 Futhi ngesikhathi esefike emathafeni ase-Agoshi walwa noLibi, futhi wamshaya kwaze kwaba uyafa; nokho, umfowabo kaLibi wabuya wazolwa noKoriyantuma esikhundleni sakhe, futhi impi yaba nzima kakhulu, lapho uKoriyantuma aphinda wayibalekela futhi impi yomfowabo kaLibi.
- 17 Manje igama lomfowabo kaLibi kwakunguShizi. Futhi kwenzeka ukuthi uShizi walandela uKoriyantuma, futhi wabhubhisa amaningi amadolobha, futhi wabulala abesifazane kanye nezingane, futhi washisa namadolobha.
- 18 Futhi ukwesatshwa kukaShizi kwagcwala izwe lonke; yebo, ukukhala kwagcwala izwe lonke— Ngubani ongama phambi kwempi kaShizi na? Bhekani, uyalishanela lelizwe phambi kwakhe!
- 19 Futhi kwenzeka ukuthi abantu baqala ukubuthana ndawonye ngamabutho, kubo bonke ubuso bezwe.

And it came to pass that one of the secret combinations murdered him in a secret pass, and obtained unto himself the kingdom; and his name was Lib; and Lib was a man of great stature, more than any other man among all the people.

And it came to pass that in the first year of Lib, Coriantumr came up unto the land of Moron, and gave battle unto Lib.

And it came to pass that he fought with Lib, in which Lib did smite upon his arm that he was wounded; nevertheless, the army of Coriantumr did press forward upon Lib, that he fled to the borders upon the seashore.

And it came to pass that Coriantumr pursued him; and Lib gave battle unto him upon the seashore.

And it came to pass that Lib did smite the army of Coriantumr, that they fled again to the wilderness of Akish.

And it came to pass that Lib did pursue him until he came to the plains of Agosh. And Coriantumr had taken all the people with him as he fled before Lib in that quarter of the land whither he fled.

And when he had come to the plains of Agosh he gave battle unto Lib, and he smote upon him until he died; nevertheless, the brother of Lib did come against Coriantumr in the stead thereof, and the battle became exceedingly sore, in the which Coriantumr fled again before the army of the brother of Lib.

Now the name of the brother of Lib was called Shiz. And it came to pass that Shiz pursued after Coriantumr, and he did overthrow many cities, and he did slay both women and children, and he did burn the cities.

And there went a fear of Shiz throughout all the land; yea, a cry went forth throughout the land— Who can stand before the army of Shiz? Behold, he sweepeth the earth before him!

And it came to pass that the people began to flock together in armies, throughout all the face of the land.

- 20 Futhi behlukana; kwathi enye ingxenye yabo yabalekela ebuthweni likaShizi, kwathi enye ingxenye yabo yabalekela ebuthweni likaKoriyantuma.
- 21 Futhi yayisibe nkulu futhi yadonsa kakhulu impi, futhi sase sibe side kakhulu isehlakalo sokuchitheka kwegazi kanye nokubulawa okuningi kwabantu, kangangokuthi bonke ubuso bezwe base bumbozwe yizidumbu zabafleyo.
- 22 Futhi impi yaba ngesivinini nangokushesha okukhulu kangangokuthi akubanga bikho namunye owasalayo ukuthi angcwabe abafleyo, kepha babehamba besuka ekuchitheni igazi beya kokunye ukuchitha igazi, beshiya izidumbu zamadoda, abesifazane, kanye nezingane zisakazeke ebusweni bezwe, ukuthi zibe wukudla kwezi mpethu zenyama.
- 23 Futhi ukunuka kwazo kwagcwala ebusweni bezwe, ngisho nakubo bonke ubuso bezwe; ngalokho-ke abantu bakhathazeka emini kanye nasebusuku, ngenxa yokunuka kwazo.
- 24 Nokho, uShizi akayekanga ukumxosha uKoriyantuma; ngokuba wayefungile ukuziphindiselela kuKoriyantuma ngegazi lomfowabo, owayebulewe, kanye nasezwini leNkosi eleza ku-Etere ukuthi uKoriyantuma akayikuwa ngenkemba.
- 25 Ngakho-ke siyabona ukuthi iNkosi nempela yabahambela ngentukuthelo yayo yonke, futhi ububi kanye nezinengiso zabo kwase kuyilungisile indlela yokubhujiswa kwabo okungapheliyo.
- 26 Futhi kwenzeka ukuthi uShizi wamxosha uKoriyantuma waya ngase mpumalanga, ngisho naseminceleni ngasogwini lolwandle, futhi lapho walwa noShizi isikhathi esingangezinsuku ezintathu.
- 27 Futhi kwaba kubi kakhulu ukubhujiswa phakathi kwamabutho kaShizi kangangokuthi abantu baqala ukwesaba, futhi baqala ukuwabalekela amabutho kaKoriyantuma; futhi babalekela ezweni lakwaKorihori, futhi beshanela ababehlala khona ababephambi kwabo, bonke labo ababengafuni ukuhlangana nabo.

And they were divided; and a part of them fled to the army of Shiz, and a part of them fled to the army of Coriantumr.

And so great and lasting had been the war, and so long had been the scene of bloodshed and carnage, that the whole face of the land was covered with the bodies of the dead.

And so swift and speedy was the war that there was none left to bury the dead, but they did march forth from the shedding of blood to the shedding of blood, leaving the bodies of both men, women, and children strewed upon the face of the land, to become a prey to the worms of the flesh.

And the scent thereof went forth upon the face of the land, even upon all the face of the land; wherefore the people became troubled by day and by night, because of the scent thereof.

Nevertheless, Shiz did not cease to pursue Coriantumr; for he had sworn to avenge himself upon Coriantumr of the blood of his brother, who had been slain, and the word of the Lord which came to Ether that Coriantumr should not fall by the sword.

And thus we see that the Lord did visit them in the fulness of his wrath, and their wickedness and abominations had prepared a way for their everlasting destruction.

And it came to pass that Shiz did pursue Coriantumr eastward, even to the borders by the seashore, and there he gave battle unto Shiz for the space of three days.

And so terrible was the destruction among the armies of Shiz that the people began to be frightened, and began to flee before the armies of Coriantumr; and they fled to the land of Corihor, and swept off the inhabitants before them, all them that would not join them.

28 Futhi bagxumeka amatende abo esigodini sikaKorihori; futhi uKoriyantuma wagxumeka awakhe amatende esigodini sikaShuri. Manje isigodi sikaShuri sasiseduze negquma iKominori; ngalokho-ke, uKoriyantuma wabuthela amabutho akhe ndawonye egqumeni iKominori, futhi washayela amabutho kaShizi icilongo ukuwamema ukuthi aphume bazolwa.

29 Futhi kwenzeka ukuthi baphuma, kepha baphoqwa ukuba babaleke baphindele emuva; futhi babuya okwesibili, futhi baphoqwa ukuba babaleke baphindele emuva futhi okwesibili. Futhi kwenzeka ukuthi baphinda futhi beza okwesithathu, futhi impi yaba nzima kakhulu.

30 Futhi kwenzeka ukuthi uShizi wamshaya uKoriyantuma kangangokuthi wamlimaza kakhulu; futhi uKoriyantuma, eselahlekelwe yigazi lakhe, waquleka, futhi wathwalwa sengathi wayesefile.

31 Manje ukulahleka kwamadoda, abesifazane kanye nabantwana nhlangothi zombili kwase kukukhulu kakhulu kangangokuthi uShizi wayala abantu bakhe ukuthi bengabe besawaxosha amabutho kaKoriyantuma; ngalokho-ke, babuyela enkanjini yabo.

And they pitched their tents in the valley of Corihor; and Coriantumr pitched his tents in the valley of Shurr. Now the valley of Shurr was near the hill Comnor; wherefore, Coriantumr did gather his armies together upon the hill Comnor, and did sound a trumpet unto the armies of Shiz to invite them forth to battle.

And it came to pass that they came forth, but were driven again; and they came the second time, and they were driven again the second time. And it came to pass that they came again the third time, and the battle became exceedingly sore.

And it came to pass that Shiz smote upon Coriantumr that he gave him many deep wounds; and Coriantumr, having lost his blood, fainted, and was carried away as though he were dead.

Now the loss of men, women and children on both sides was so great that Shiz commanded his people that they should not pursue the armies of Coriantumr; wherefore, they returned to their camp.

Etere 15

- 1 Futhi kwenzeka ngesikhathi uKoriyantuma eseluleme emanxebeni akhe, waqala wawakhumbula amazwi u-Etere ayewakhulume kuye.
- 2 Wabona ukuthi kwasekuvele sekubulewe ngenkemba cishe izigidi ezimbili zabantu bakhe, futhi waqala waba lusizi enhliziyweni yakhe; yebo, kwase kubulewe izigidi ezimbili zamadoda anamandla, futhi kanjalo nabafazi babo kanye nabantwana babo.
- 3 Waqala ukuphenduka eubini ayebenzile; waqala wawakhumbula lawo mazwi ayekhulunye ngomlomo wabo bonke abaphrofethi, futhi wabona ukuthi ayeseqwalisekile kuze kube manje, wonke ngisho nokuncane kangakanani; futhi umphefumulo wakhe wakhala futhi wenqaba ukududuzeka.
- 4 Futhi kwenzeka ukuthi wabhalela uShizi incwadi, emcela ukuthi asindise abantu, futhi nokuthi wayezowuyeka umbuso ngenxa yezimpilo zabantu.
- 5 Futhi kwenzeka ukuthi ngesikhathi uShizi eseyitholile incwadi yakhe wabhalela uKoriyantuma incwadi, ethi uma ayezozinikela yena, ukuze ambulale ngenkemba yakhe uqobo, wayezozisindisa izimpilo zabantu.
- 6 Futhi kwenzeka ukuthi abantu abaphendukanga eubini babo; futhi abantu baKoriyantuma baphehlelwa ekuthukutheleleni abantu baShizi; futhi nabantu baShizi baphehlelwa ekuthukutheleleni abantu baKoriyantuma; ngalokho ke, abantu baShizi balwa nabantu baKoriyantuma.
- 7 Futhi ngesikhathi uKoriyantuma esebona ukuthi wayesezowa wababalekela futhi abantu baShizi.
- 8 Futhi kwenzeka ukuthi weza emanzini aseRipliyankumi, okungukuthi, ngokuhunyushwa, amakhulu, noma okwedlula konke; ngalokho-ke, ngesikhathi befika kulamanzi bagxumeka amatende abo; futhi noShizi ngokunjalo wagxumeka awakhe amatende eduze kwabo; ngakho-ke ngakusasa balwa futhi.

Ether 15

And it came to pass when Coriantumr had recovered of his wounds, he began to remember the words which Ether had spoken unto him.

He saw that there had been slain by the sword already nearly two millions of his people, and he began to sorrow in his heart; yea, there had been slain two millions of mighty men, and also their wives and their children.

He began to repent of the evil which he had done; he began to remember the words which had been spoken by the mouth of all the prophets, and he saw them that they were fulfilled thus far, every whit; and his soul mourned and refused to be comforted.

And it came to pass that he wrote an epistle unto Shiz, desiring him that he would spare the people, and he would give up the kingdom for the sake of the lives of the people.

And it came to pass that when Shiz had received his epistle he wrote an epistle unto Coriantumr, that if he would give himself up, that he might slay him with his own sword, that he would spare the lives of the people.

And it came to pass that the people repented not of their iniquity; and the people of Coriantumr were stirred up to anger against the people of Shiz; and the people of Shiz were stirred up to anger against the people of Coriantumr; wherefore, the people of Shiz did give battle unto the people of Coriantumr.

And when Coriantumr saw that he was about to fall he fled again before the people of Shiz.

And it came to pass that he came to the waters of Ripliancum, which, by interpretation, is large, or to exceed all; wherefore, when they came to these waters they pitched their tents; and Shiz also pitched his tents near unto them; and therefore on the morrow they did come to battle.

- 9 Futhi kwenzeka ukuthi balwa impi enzima kakhulu, kuyo uKoriyantuma waphinda walimala futhi, futhi waquleka ngenxa yokulahlekelwa yigazi.
- 10 Futhi kwenzeka ukuthi amabutho kaKoriyantuma awacindezela amabutho kaShizi kangangokuthi awehlula, kangangokuthi babenza ukuthi baba balekele; futhi babalekela ngaseningizimu, futhi bagxumeka amatende abo endaweni eyayibizwa ngokuthi yi-Ogathi.
- 11 Futhi kwenzeka ukuthi impi kaKoriyantuma yagxumeka amatende ayo ngasegqumeni iRama; futhi kwakuyilo kanye lelo gquma lapho ubaba uMormoni afihla khona imibhalo eNkosini, eyayingcwele.
- 12 Futhi kwenzeka ukuthi babuthela ndawonye bonke abantu kubo bonke ubuso bezwe, ababengakabulawa, ngaphandle kuka-Etere.
- 13 Futhi kwenzeka ukuthi u-Etere wazibona zonke izenzo zabantu; futhi wabona ukuthi labo bantu ababethanda uKoriyantuma babebuthene ndawonye ebuthweni likaKoriyantuma; futhi abantu ababethanda uShizi babebuthene ndawonye ebuthweni likaShizi.
- 14 Ngalokho-ke, isikhathi esingangeminyaka emine babebuthela ndawonye abantu, ukuze baqoqe bonke ababesebusweni balelizwe, futhi nokuthi bathole wonke amandla okwakungenzeka ukuthi bawathole.
- 15 Futhi kwenzeka ukuthi ngesikhathi bonke seabebuthene ndawonye, wonke umuntu kulelo butho ayethanda ukuba kulo, kanye nabafazi babo kanye nabantwana babo—amadoda, abesifazane kanye nabantwana behlonyiswe ngezikhali zempi, benezihlangu, kanye nezivikelo zesifuba, kanye nezivikelo zekhanda, futhi begqokiswe ngendlela yempi—bahamba omunye ebhekene nomunye ukuze balwe; futhi balwa lonke lolo suku, kepha abanqobanga.

And it came to pass that they fought an exceedingly sore battle, in which Coriantumr was wounded again, and he fainted with the loss of blood.

And it came to pass that the armies of Coriantumr did press upon the armies of Shiz that they beat them, that they caused them to flee before them; and they did flee southward, and did pitch their tents in a place which was called Ogath.

And it came to pass that the army of Coriantumr did pitch their tents by the hill Ramah; and it was that same hill where my father Mormon did hide up the records unto the Lord, which were sacred.

And it came to pass that they did gather together all the people upon all the face of the land, who had not been slain, save it was Ether.

And it came to pass that Ether did behold all the doings of the people; and he beheld that the people who were for Coriantumr were gathered together to the army of Coriantumr; and the people who were for Shiz were gathered together to the army of Shiz.

Wherefore, they were for the space of four years gathering together the people, that they might get all who were upon the face of the land, and that they might receive all the strength which it was possible that they could receive.

And it came to pass that when they were all gathered together, every one to the army which he would, with their wives and their children—both men, women and children being armed with weapons of war, having shields, and breastplates, and headplates, and being clothed after the manner of war—they did march forth one against another to battle; and they fought all that day, and conquered not.

- 16 Futhi kwenzeka ukuthi ngesikhathi sekuhlwile base bekhathele, futhi baphumula ezinkanjini zabo; futhi emva kokuthi sebethumule ezinkanjini zabo baqala ukuhhewula kanye nokulila ngenxa yokulahleka kwalabo ababulawa babantu babo; futhi kwaba kukhulu ukukhala kwabo, ukuhhewula kwabo kanye nokulila kwabo, kangangokuthi badazuluka kakhulu emoyeni.
- 17 Futhi kwenzeka ukuthi ngakusasa baphinda bayolwa futhi, futhi lwaba lukhulu futhi lwaba lubi lolo suku; nokho, abanqobanga, futhi ngesikhathi ubusuku bufika badazuluka emoyeni ngokukhala kwabo, kanye nokuhhewula kwabo, kanye nangesililo sabo, ngenxa yokulahleka kwalabo ababebulewe babantu babo.
- 18 Futhi kwenzeka ukuthi uKoriyantuma waphinda futhi wabhalela uShizi incwadi, emcela ukuthi angabe esaphinda futhi azolwa, kepha ukuthi wayegawuthatha umbuso, futhi asindise izimpilo zabantu.
- 19 Kepha bheka, uMoya weNkosi wawusuyekile ukusebenza kubo, futhi uSathane wayesenamandla onke ezinhliziyweni zabantu; ngokuba base bezinikele kubo ubulukhuni bezinhliziyabo, kanye nasekuphuphuthakeni kwemiqondo yabo ukuze babhujiswe; ngalokho-ke baphinda bahamba bayolwa.
- 20 Futhi kwenzeka ukuthi balwa lonke lolo suku, futhi ngesikhathi kufika ubusuku balala phezu kwezinkemba zabo.
- 21 Futhi ngakusasa balwa kwaze kwaba kufika ubusuku futhi.
- 22 Futhi ngesikhathi kufika ubusuku base bedakiwe yintukuthelo, ngisho njengomuntu odakwe yiwayini; futhi baphinda balala phezu kwezinkemba zabo futhi.
- 23 Futhi ngakusasa baphinda balwa futhi; futhi ngesikhathi kufika ubusuku bonke base bewe ngenkemba ngaphandle kwabangamashumi amahlanu nambili babantu baKoriyantuma, kanye nabangamashumi ayisithupha nesishiyagalolunye babantu baShizi.

And it came to pass that when it was night they were weary, and retired to their camps; and after they had retired to their camps they took up a howling and a lamentation for the loss of the slain of their people; and so great were their cries, their howlings and lamentations, that they did rend the air exceedingly.

And it came to pass that on the morrow they did go again to battle, and great and terrible was that day; nevertheless, they conquered not, and when the night came again they did rend the air with their cries, and their howlings, and their mournings, for the loss of the slain of their people.

And it came to pass that Coriantumr wrote again an epistle unto Shiz, desiring that he would not come again to battle, but that he would take the kingdom, and spare the lives of the people.

But behold, the Spirit of the Lord had ceased striving with them, and Satan had full power over the hearts of the people; for they were given up unto the hardness of their hearts, and the blindness of their minds that they might be destroyed; wherefore they went again to battle.

And it came to pass that they fought all that day, and when the night came they slept upon their swords.

And on the morrow they fought even until the night came.

And when the night came they were drunken with anger, even as a man who is drunken with wine; and they slept again upon their swords.

And on the morrow they fought again; and when the night came they had all fallen by the sword save it were fifty and two of the people of Coriantumr, and sixty and nine of the people of Shiz.

24 Futhi kwenzeka ukuthi balala phezu
kwezinkemba zabo ngalobo busuku, futhi
ngakusasa baphinda balwa futhi, futhi balwa
ngamandla abo onke ngezinkemba zabo kanye
nagezihlangu zabo, lonke lolo suku.

25 Futhi ngesikhathi kufika ubusuku kwase kusele
amashumi amathathu nambili abantu baShizi,
kanye namashumi amabili nesikhombisa abantu
baKoriyantuma.

26 Futhi kwenzeka ukuthi badla futhi balala,
bazilungiselela ukufa ngakusasa. Futhi
babengamadoda amakhulu futhi anamandla
ngokwamandla abantu.

27 Futhi kwenzeka ukuthi balwa isikhathi
esingamahora amathathu, futhi baquleka ngenxa
yokulahlekelwa yigazi.

28 Futhi kwenzeka ukuthi ngesikhathi abantu
baKoriyantuma sebethole amandla anele okuthi
bangahamba, base bezobaleka ukusindisa izimpilo
zabo; kepha bheka, uShizi waphakama, futhi
kanjalo nabantu bakhe, futhi wafunga
ngentukuthelo yakhe ukuthi wayezombulala
uKoriyantuma noma yena abhubhe ngenkemba.

29 Ngalokho-ke, wabalandela, futhi ngakusasa
wabafica; futhi baphinda balwa ngenkemba. Futhi
kwenzeka ukuthi ngesikhathi bonke sebewe
ngenkemba, ngaphandle kukaKoriyantuma kanye
noShizi, bheka uShizi wayesequlekile ngenxa
yokulahlekelwa yigazi.

30 Futhi kwenzeka ukuthi ngesikhathi
uKoriyantuma esancike ngenkemba yakhe, ukuze
aphumule kancane, walishaya walisusa ikhanda
likaShizi.

31 Futhi kwenzeka ukuthi emva kokuthi eselishaye
walisusa ikhanda likaShizi, uShizi wasukuma
ngezandla zakhe waphinda wawa, futhi emva
kwalokho wazabalaza ukuthola umoya, wafa.

32 Futhi kwenzeka ukuthi uKoriyantuma wawela
phansi, futhi kwaba sengathi wayengasenampilo.

33 Futhi iNkosi yakhuluma ku-Etere, futhi yathi
kuye: Hamba. Futhi wahamba, futhi wabona ukuthi
amazwi eNkosi wonke ayeseqwalisekile; futhi wabe
eseqedela umbhalo wakhe; (futhi ingxenye encane
angizange ngiyibhale) futhi wawufihla ngendlela
abantu baLimhi abawuthola ngayo.

And it came to pass that they slept upon their
swords that night, and on the morrow they fought
again, and they contended in their might with their
swords and with their shields, all that day.

And when the night came there were thirty and
two of the people of Shiz, and twenty and seven of
the people of Coriantumr.

And it came to pass that they ate and slept, and
prepared for death on the morrow. And they were
large and mighty men as to the strength of men.

And it came to pass that they fought for the space
of three hours, and they fainted with the loss of
blood.

And it came to pass that when the men of
Coriantumr had received sufficient strength that
they could walk, they were about to flee for their
lives; but behold, Shiz arose, and also his men, and
he swore in his wrath that he would slay Coriantumr
or he would perish by the sword.

Wherefore, he did pursue them, and on the mor-
row he did overtake them; and they fought again
with the sword. And it came to pass that when they
had all fallen by the sword, save it were Coriantumr
and Shiz, behold Shiz had fainted with the loss of
blood.

And it came to pass that when Coriantumr had
leaned upon his sword, that he rested a little, he
smote off the head of Shiz.

And it came to pass that after he had smitten off
the head of Shiz, that Shiz raised up on his hands
and fell; and after that he had struggled for breath,
he died.

And it came to pass that Coriantumr fell to the
earth, and became as if he had no life.

And the Lord spake unto Ether, and said unto
him: Go forth. And he went forth, and beheld that
the words of the Lord had all been fulfilled; and he
finished his record; (and the hundredth part I have
not written) and he hid them in a manner that the
people of Limhi did find them.

34 Manje amazwi okugcina abhalwa ngu-Etere
yilawa: Noma ngabe iNkosi ifuna ukuthi
ngiguqulwe, noma ukuthi ngibekezelele intando
yeNkosi enyameni, akunandaba, uma nje
kungukuthi ngisindisiwe embusweni
kaNkulunkulu. Amen.

Now the last words which are written by Ether are
these: Whether the Lord will that I be translated, or
that I suffer the will of the Lord in the flesh, it mat-
tereth not, if it so be that I am saved in the kingdom
of God. Amen.

INcwadi kaMoroni

Moroni 1

- 1 Manje mina, Moroni, emva kokuthi sengiqedile ukufinyeza indaba yabantu baJarede, bengingacabangi ukuthi ngizobuye ngibhale okunye, kepha nokho angikafi; futhi angizivezi kumaLamani hleze angibulale.
- 2 Ngokuba bhekani, izimpi zawo ziyesabeka kakhulu phakathi kwawo uqobo; futhi ngenxa yenzondo yawo abulala wonke amaNefi angenakumphika uKristu.
- 3 Futhi mina, Moroni, anginaku mphika uKristu; ngalokho-ke, ngizulela noma yikuphi lapho ngingaya khona ukuze ngisindise impilo yami.
- 4 Ngalokho-ke, ngibhala ezinye futhi izinto ezimbalwa, ngokuphikisana nalokho ebengikucabanga; ngokuba bengingacabangi ukuthi ngizobuye ngibhale okunye; kepha ngibhala ezinye izinto ezimbalwa, ukuze mhlawumbe zibe wusizo kubafowethu, amaLamani, ngolunye usuku oluzayo, ngokwentando yeNkosi.

The Book of Moroni

Moroni 1

Now I, Moroni, after having made an end of abridging the account of the people of Jared, I had supposed not to have written more, but I have not as yet perished; and I make not myself known to the Lamanites lest they should destroy me.

For behold, their wars are exceedingly fierce among themselves; and because of their hatred they put to death every Nephite that will not deny the Christ.

And I, Moroni, will not deny the Christ; wherefore, I wander whithersoever I can for the safety of mine own life.

Wherefore, I write a few more things, contrary to that which I had supposed; for I had supposed not to have written any more; but I write a few more things, that perhaps they may be of worth unto my brethren, the Lamanites, in some future day, according to the will of the Lord.

Moroni 2

- 1 Amazwi kaKristu, awakhuluma kuba fundi bakhe, abayishumi nambili ayebakhethile, ngesikhathi ebeka izandla zakhe kubo—
- 2 Futhi wababiza ngamagama, ethi: Niyobiza uBaba egameni lami, emkhulekweni onamandla; futhi emva kokuthi senikwenzile lokhu niyoba namandla okuthi lowo eniyombeka izandla, niyomnika uMoya oyiNgcwele; futhi niyowunika egameni lami, ngokuba benza kanjalo abaphostoli bami.
- 3 Manje uKristu wakhuluma lamazwi kubo ngesikhathi evela kubo okokuqala; futhi isixuku asiwezwanga, kepha abafundi bawezwa; futhi ngobuningi balabo abababeka izandla zabo, bawuthola uMoya oyiNgcwele.

Moroni 2

The words of Christ, which he spake unto his disciples, the twelve whom he had chosen, as he laid his hands upon them—

And he called them by name, saying: Ye shall call on the Father in my name, in mighty prayer; and after ye have done this ye shall have power that to him upon whom ye shall lay your hands, ye shall give the Holy Ghost; and in my name shall ye give it, for thus do mine apostles.

Now Christ spake these words unto them at the time of his first appearing; and the multitude heard it not, but the disciples heard it; and on as many as they laid their hands, fell the Holy Ghost.

Moroni 3

- 1 Indlela abafundi, ababebizwa ngamagosa ebandla, ababebeka ngayo abaphristi kanye nabafundisi—
- 2 Emva kokuthi sebekhulekile kuBaba egameni likaKristu, babeka izandla zabo phezu kwabo, base bethi:
- 3 Egameni likaJesu Kristu ngikubeka ukuthi ube ngumphristi (noma uma engumfundisi, ngikubeka ukuthi ube ngumfundisi) ukuthi ushumayele ukuphenduka kanye noku thethelwa kwezono ngoJesu Kristu, ngokubekezela ngokholo egameni lakhe kuze kube sekugcineni. Amen.
- 4 Futhi bababeka ngalendlela abaphristi kanye nabafundisi, ngokwe zipho kanye nokubizwa kwabantu nguNkulunkulu; futhi bababeka ngamandla kaMoya oyiNgcwele, owawukubo.

Moroni 3

The manner which the disciples, who were called the elders of the church, ordained priests and teachers—

After they had prayed unto the Father in the name of Christ, they laid their hands upon them, and said:

In the name of Jesus Christ I ordain you to be a priest (or if he be a teacher, I ordain you to be a teacher) to preach repentance and remission of sins through Jesus Christ, by the endurance of faith on his name to the end. Amen.

And after this manner did they ordain priests and teachers, according to the gifts and callings of God unto men; and they ordained them by the power of the Holy Ghost, which was in them.

Moroni 4

- 1 Indlela amagosa kanye nabaphristi babo ababebusisela ngayo ibandla umzimba kanye negazi likaKristu; futhi babekubusisa ngokwemiyalelo kaKristu; ngalokho-ke siyazi ukuthi lendlela iyiqiniso; futhi yigosa noma ngumphristi owayekubusisa.
- 2 Futhi babeguqa phansi nebandla, futhi bakhuleke kuBaba egameni likaKristu, bethi:
- 3 O Nkulunkulu, Baba waPhakade, siyakucela egameni leNdodana yakho, uJesu Kristu, ukuthi ubusise futhi ungcwelise lesi sinkwa emiphefumulweni yabo bonke labo abasidlayo; ukuze basidle bekhumbula umzimba weNdodana yakho, futhi bakhombise kuwe, O Nkulunkulu, Baba waPhakade, ukuthi bayafisa ukubizwa ngegama leNdodana yakho, futhi bayikhumbule njalo, futhi bagcine imiyalelo yayo ebanikeze yona, ukuze babe no Moya wayo njalo. Amen.

Moroni 4

The manner of their elders and priests administering the flesh and blood of Christ unto the church; and they administered it according to the commandments of Christ; wherefore we know the manner to be true; and the elder or priest did minister it—

And they did kneel down with the church, and pray to the Father in the name of Christ, saying:

O God, the Eternal Father, we ask thee in the name of thy Son, Jesus Christ, to bless and sanctify this bread to the souls of all those who partake of it; that they may eat in remembrance of the body of thy Son, and witness unto thee, O God, the Eternal Father, that they are willing to take upon them the name of thy Son, and always remember him, and keep his commandments which he hath given them, that they may always have his Spirit to be with them. Amen.

Moroni 5

- 1 Indlela yokubusisa iwayini—Bheka, babethatha isitsha, bese bethi:
- 2 O Nkulunkulu, Baba waPhakade, siyakucela, egameni leNdodana yakho, uJesu Kristu, ukuba ubusise futhi ungcwelise leli wayini emiphefumulweni yabo bonke abaliphuzayo, ukuze bakwenze bekhumbula igazi leNdodana yakho, elachithelwa bona; ukuze bakhombise kuwe, O Nkulunkulu, Baba waPhakade, ukuthi bayayikhumbula njalo, ukuze babe noMoya wayo njalo. Amen.

Moroni 5

The manner of administering the wine—Behold, they took the cup, and said:

O God, the Eternal Father, we ask thee, in the name of thy Son, Jesus Christ, to bless and sanctify this wine to the souls of all those who drink of it, that they may do it in remembrance of the blood of thy Son, which was shed for them; that they may witness unto thee, O God, the Eternal Father, that they do always remember him, that they may have his Spirit to be with them. Amen.

Moroni 6

- 1 Manje sengikhuluma ngokuphathelene nombhabhadiso. Bheka, amagosa, abaphristi, kanye nabafundisi babebhabhadiswa; futhi babengabhabhadiswa ngaphandle kokuthi balethe izithelo ezifanele zokuthi bakhombise ukuthi bafanelekile.
- 2 Futhi babengemukeli namunye embhabhadisweni ngaphandle kokuthi beza ngenhliziyo edabukileyo nangomoya ophukileyo, futhi bekhombisa ebandleni ukuthi base bephenduke ngeqiniso ezonweni zabo zonke.
- 3 Futhi akukho namunye owayemukelwa embhabhadisweni ngaphandle kokuthi bemukele uKristu futhi babizwe ngaye, bephokophelele ukumsebenzela kuze kube sekugcineni.
- 4 Futhi emva kokuthi sebemukelwe embhabhadisweni, futhi sebethintwe futhi bahlanzwa ngamandla kaMoya oyiNgcwele, babebalwa kanye nabantu bebandla likaKristu; futhi amagama abo ayethathwa, ukuze bakhunjulwe futhi bondliwe ngezwi elihle likaNkulunkulu, ukuze babagcine besendleleni eyiyo, ukuze babagcine njalo behlala bekhuleka, bethembele kuphela ezenzweni ezinhle zikaKristu, owayengu mqambi kanye nomphelelisi wokholo lwabo.
- 5 Futhi ibandla lalihlangana ndawonye njalo, ukuze lizile ukudla futhi likhuleke, kanye nokuthi baxoxisane omunye nomunye mayelana nokuzuza kwemiphefumulo yabo.
- 6 Futhi babehlangana njalo ukuze badle isinkwa kanye newayini, ukukhumbula iNkosi uJesus.
- 7 Futhi babeqikelela ukuthi babheke ukuthi bungabibikho ububi phakathi kwabo; futhi lowo owayetholwa enze ububi, ofakazi abathathu bebandla babebalahla ngecala phambi kwamagosa, futhi uma babengaphenduki, futhi bengavumi, amagama abo ayesulwa, futhi babengabalwa nabantu baKristu.
- 8 Kepha ngokuphenduka kwabo njalo futhi becela intethelelo, ngenhloso okuyiyo, babethethelelwa.

Moroni 6

And now I speak concerning baptism. Behold, elders, priests, and teachers were baptized; and they were not baptized save they brought forth fruit meet that they were worthy of it.

Neither did they receive any unto baptism save they came forth with a broken heart and a contrite spirit, and witnessed unto the church that they truly repented of all their sins.

And none were received unto baptism save they took upon them the name of Christ, having a determination to serve him to the end.

And after they had been received unto baptism, and were wrought upon and cleansed by the power of the Holy Ghost, they were numbered among the people of the church of Christ; and their names were taken, that they might be remembered and nourished by the good word of God, to keep them in the right way, to keep them continually watchful unto prayer, relying alone upon the merits of Christ, who was the author and the finisher of their faith.

And the church did meet together oft, to fast and to pray, and to speak one with another concerning the welfare of their souls.

And they did meet together oft to partake of bread and wine, in remembrance of the Lord Jesus.

And they were strict to observe that there should be no iniquity among them; and whoso was found to commit iniquity, and three witnesses of the church did condemn them before the elders, and if they repented not, and confessed not, their names were blotted out, and they were not numbered among the people of Christ.

But as oft as they repented and sought forgiveness, with real intent, they were forgiven.

9 Futhi imihlangano yabo yayiqhutshwa yibandla ngendlela yokusebenza kukaMoya, kanye nangamandla ka Moya oyiNgcwele; ngokuba njengoba amandla kaMoya oyiNgcwele ayebahola ukuthi bashumayeke, noma bakhuthaze, noma bakhuleke, noma banxuse, noma bacule, kwakwenziwa lokho.

And their meetings were conducted by the church after the manner of the workings of the Spirit, and by the power of the Holy Ghost; for as the power of the Holy Ghost led them whether to preach, or to exhort, or to pray, or to supplicate, or to sing, even so it was done.

Moroni 7

- 1 Manje mina, Moroni, sengibhala ambalwa amazwi kababa uMormoni, awakhuluma mayelana nokholo, ithemba, kanye nesihe; ngokuba wakhuluma ngalendlela kubantu, ngesikhathi ebafundisa esinagogeni ababelakhele ukuthi kube yindawo yokukhonza.
- 2 Manje mina, Mormoni, ngikhuluma kini, bafowethu abathandekayo; futhi kungomusa kaNkulunkulu uBaba, kanye neNkosi yethu uJesu Kristu, kanye nentando yakhe engcwele, ngenxa yesipho sobizo lwakhe kimi, ukuthi ngivunyelwe ukuba ngikhulume kini ngalesi sikhathi.
- 3 Ngalokho-ke, ngizokhuluma kini nina eningabebandla, nina eningabalandeli abanokuthula baKristu, futhi enithole ithemba elanele ngalo eningangena ekuphumuleni kweNkosi, kusukela kulesi sikhathi kuya phambili kuze kube niphumula naye ezulwini.
- 4 Manje bafowethu, ngibona lezi zinto ngani ngenxa yokuhamba kwenu okunokuthula nabantwana babantu.
- 5 Ngokuba ngiyalikhumbula izwi likaNkulunkulu elithi ngemisebenzi yabo niyobazi; ngokuba uma imisebenzi yabo imihle, kanjalo nabo bahle futhi.
- 6 Ngokuba bhekani, uNkulunkulu wathi umuntu uma emubi ngeke akwenze lokho okuhle; ngokuba uma epha isipho, noma ekhuleka kuNkulunkulu, ngaphandle kokuthi akwenze ngenhloso okuyiyo akumsizi ngalutho.
- 7 Ngokuba bhekani, akuthathwa njengokulunga kwakhe.
- 8 Ngokuba bhekani, uma umuntu omubi enika isipho, ukwenza lokho engathandi; ngalokho-ke kuthathwa ngokufanayo nokuthi usibambile isipho; ngalokho-ke uthathwa njengomubi phambi kukaNkulunkulu.
- 9 Futhi ngokufanayo kuthathwa njengobubi kumuntu, uma eyokhuleka kepha ebe engena nhloso okuyiyo yenhliziyo; yebo, futhi akumsizi ngalutho, ngokuba uNkulunkulu akabemukeli abanjalo.
- 10 Ngalokho-ke, umuntu uma emubi akanakukwazi ukwenza lokho okuhle; noma aphe isipho esihle.

Moroni 7

And now I, Moroni, write a few of the words of my father Mormon, which he spake concerning faith, hope, and charity; for after this manner did he speak unto the people, as he taught them in the synagogue which they had built for the place of worship.

And now I, Mormon, speak unto you, my beloved brethren; and it is by the grace of God the Father, and our Lord Jesus Christ, and his holy will, because of the gift of his calling unto me, that I am permitted to speak unto you at this time.

Wherefore, I would speak unto you that are of the church, that are the peaceable followers of Christ, and that have obtained a sufficient hope by which ye can enter into the rest of the Lord, from this time henceforth until ye shall rest with him in heaven.

And now my brethren, I judge these things of you because of your peaceable walk with the children of men.

For I remember the word of God which saith by their works ye shall know them; for if their works be good, then they are good also.

For behold, God hath said a man being evil cannot do that which is good; for if he offereth a gift, or prayeth unto God, except he shall do it with real intent it profiteth him nothing.

For behold, it is not counted unto him for righteousness.

For behold, if a man being evil giveth a gift, he doeth it grudgingly; wherefore it is counted unto him the same as if he had retained the gift; wherefore he is counted evil before God.

And likewise also is it counted evil unto a man, if he shall pray and not with real intent of heart; yea, and it profiteth him nothing, for God receiveth none such.

Wherefore, a man being evil cannot do that which is good; neither will he give a good gift.

- 11 Ngokuba bhekani, umthombo obabayo awunakukwazi ukuthi ukhiphe amanzi amahle; noma umthombo omuhle ukhiphe amanzi ababayo; ngalokho-ke, umuntu uma eyinceku kadeveli akanakukwazi ukulandela uKristu; futhi uma elandela uKristu akanakukwazi ukuthi abe yinceku kadeveli.
- 12 Ngalokho-ke, zonke izinto ezinhle zivela kuNkulunkulu; futhi lokho okubi kuvela kudeveli; ngokuba udeveli uyisitha kuNkulunkulu, futhi ulwa naye njalo, futhi umema futhi ayenge abantu ukuthi bone, futhi nokuthi benze lokho okubi njalo.
- 13 Kepha bhekani, lokho okungokuka Nkulunkulu kumema futhi kuyengela ekwenzeni okuhle njalo; ngalokho-ke, yonke into emema futhi iyenge ukuthi wenze okuhle, futhi uthande uNkulunkulu, futhi umsebenzele, ishisekeliswa nguNkulunkulu.
- 14 Ngalokho-ke, qaphelani, bafowethu abathandekayo, ukuthi ningakuboni lokho okubi ukuthi ngokuka Nkulunkulu, noma lokho okuhle futhi okungokuka Nkulunkulu ukuthi ngokukadeveli.
- 15 Ngokuba bhekani, bafowethu, ninikiwe ukuthi nikwazi ukwahlulela, ukuze nazi okuhle kokubi; futhi indlela yokwahlulela icacile, ukuze nazi ngolwazi olupheleleyo, njengoba nazi ukukhanya kwemini uma nibuqhathanisa nobumnyama bobusuku.
- 16 Ngokuba bhekani, uMoya kaKristu unikwe kuwo wonke umuntu, ukuthi azi okuhle kokubi; ngalokho-ke, nginikhombisa indlela yokwahlulela; ngokuba yonke into ekumema ukuthi wenze okuhle, futhi ekuvumisa ukuthi ukholwe kuKristu, ithunyelwe ngamandla kanye nangesipho sikaKristu; ngalokho-ke ningazi ngolwazi olupheleleyo ukuthi kungokukaNkulunkulu.
- 17 Kepha noma ngabe yini evumisa umuntu ukuthi enze okubi, futhi angakholwa kuKristu, futhi amphike, futhi angamsebenzeli uNkulunkulu, uma kunjalo ningazi ngolwazi olupheleleyo ukuthi lokho kungokukadeveli; ngokuba udeveli usebenza ngalendlela, ngokuba yena akavumisi muntu ukuthi enze okuhle, cha, namuye; futhi kunjalo nezingelosi zakhe; futhi kunjalo nalabo abazibeka phansi kwakhe.

For behold, a bitter fountain cannot bring forth good water; neither can a good fountain bring forth bitter water; wherefore, a man being a servant of the devil cannot follow Christ; and if he follow Christ he cannot be a servant of the devil.

Wherefore, all things which are good cometh of God; and that which is evil cometh of the devil; for the devil is an enemy unto God, and fighteth against him continually, and inviteth and enticeth to sin, and to do that which is evil continually.

But behold, that which is of God inviteth and enticeth to do good continually; wherefore, every thing which inviteth and enticeth to do good, and to love God, and to serve him, is inspired of God.

Wherefore, take heed, my beloved brethren, that ye do not judge that which is evil to be of God, or that which is good and of God to be of the devil.

For behold, my brethren, it is given unto you to judge, that ye may know good from evil; and the way to judge is as plain, that ye may know with a perfect knowledge, as the daylight is from the dark night.

For behold, the Spirit of Christ is given to every man, that he may know good from evil; wherefore, I show unto you the way to judge; for every thing which inviteth to do good, and to persuade to believe in Christ, is sent forth by the power and gift of Christ; wherefore ye may know with a perfect knowledge it is of God.

But whatsoever thing persuadeth men to do evil, and believe not in Christ, and deny him, and serve not God, then ye may know with a perfect knowledge it is of the devil; for after this manner doth the devil work, for he persuadeth no man to do good, no, not one; neither do his angels; neither do they who subject themselves unto him.

- 18 Manje, bafowethu, ngokubona ukuthi niyakwazi ukukhanya eningahlulela ngakho, okungu kukhanya kukaKristu, bonani ukuthi anihluleli ngokungeyikho; ngokuba ngalokho kwahlulela enihlulela ngakho nani futhi niyokwehlulelwa ngakho.
- 19 Ngalokho-ke, ngiyanincenga, bafowethu, ukuthi nicwaninge ngokukhuthala kukho ukukhanya kukaKristu ukuze nazi okuhle kokubi; futhi uma ningabambeleva kuyo yonke into enhle, futhi ningayilahli, ngempela niyoba ngabantwana baKristu.
- 20 Manje, bafowethu, kungenzeka kanjani ukuthi nibambeleva kuyo yonke into enhle na?
- 21 Manje sengiza kulolo kholo, engithe ngizokhuluma ngalo; futhi ngizonitshela indlela eningabambeleva ngayo kuyo yonke into enhle.
- 22 Ngokuba bhekani, uNkulunkulu wazi zonke izinto, kusukela phakade kuze kube phakade, bhekani, wathumela izingelosi ukuba zisebenzele abantwana babantu, ukuze zambule izinto mayelana nokuza kukaKristu; futhi nokuthi kuKristu kuyovela yonke into enhle.
- 23 Futhi uNkulunkulu phezu kwalokho washo kubaphrofethi, ngomlomo wakhe uqobo, ukuthi uKristu kufanele eze.
- 24 Futhi bhekani, kwakukhona izinhlobonhlobo zezindlela ambula ngazo izinto kubantwana babantu, ezazizinhle; futhi zonke izinto ezinhle zivela kuKristu; kungenjalo abantu babewile, futhi kwakungeke kube khona nto enhle eza kubo.
- 25 Ngalokho-ke, ngokusetshenzelwa yizingelosi, futhi nangamazwi onke aphuma emlonyeni kaNkulunkulu, abantu baqala ukusebenzisa ukholo kuKristu; ngakho-ke ngokhoyo, babambeleva kuzo zonke izinto ezinhle; futhi kwabanjalo kwaze kwaba wukufika kukaKristu.
- 26 Futhi emva kokuthi esefikile abantu nabo basindiswa ngokhoyo egameni lakhe; futhi ngokhoyo, baba ngamadodana kaNkulunkulu. Futhi njengoba ngempela uKristu ephila wakhuluma lamazwi kobaba bethu, ethi: Noma ngabe yini eniyoyicela kuBaba egameni lami, enhle, ngokhoyo nikhola ukuthi niyoyithola, bhekani, niyokwenzelwa yona.

And now, my brethren, seeing that ye know the light by which ye may judge, which light is the light of Christ, see that ye do not judge wrongfully; for with that same judgment which ye judge ye shall also be judged.

Wherefore, I beseech of you, brethren, that ye should search diligently in the light of Christ that ye may know good from evil; and if ye will lay hold upon every good thing, and condemn it not, ye certainly will be a child of Christ.

And now, my brethren, how is it possible that ye can lay hold upon every good thing?

And now I come to that faith, of which I said I would speak; and I will tell you the way whereby ye may lay hold on every good thing.

For behold, God knowing all things, being from everlasting to everlasting, behold, he sent angels to minister unto the children of men, to make manifest concerning the coming of Christ; and in Christ there should come every good thing.

And God also declared unto prophets, by his own mouth, that Christ should come.

And behold, there were divers ways that he did manifest things unto the children of men, which were good; and all things which are good cometh of Christ; otherwise men were fallen, and there could no good thing come unto them.

Wherefore, by the ministering of angels, and by every word which proceeded forth out of the mouth of God, men began to exercise faith in Christ; and thus by faith, they did lay hold upon every good thing; and thus it was until the coming of Christ.

And after that he came men also were saved by faith in his name; and by faith, they become the sons of God. And as surely as Christ liveth he spake these words unto our fathers, saying: Whatsoever thing ye shall ask the Father in my name, which is good, in faith believing that ye shall receive, behold, it shall be done unto you.

- 27 Ngalokho-ke, bafowethu abathandekayo, ngabe izimangaliso sezaphela yini ngenxa yokuthi uKristu usenyukela ezulwini, futhi wahlala phansi esandleni sokunene sikaNkulunkulu, ukuze afune kuBaba amalungelo omusa wakhe abe nawo kubantwana babantu na?
- 28 Ngokuba uzanelisile izimfuno zomthetho, futhi ufuna bonke labo abanokholo kuye; futhi labo abanokholo kuye bazonamathela kuzo zonke izinto ezinhle; ngalokho-ke umele isimo sabantwana babantu; futhi uhlala phakade emazulwini.
- 29 Futhi ngenxa yokuthi usekwenzile lokhu, bafowethu abathandekayo, ngabe izimangaliso sezaphela na? Bhekani ngithi kini, Cha; futhi nezingelosi aziyekile ukusebenzela abantwana babantu.
- 30 Ngokuba bhekani, zingaphansi kwakhe, ukuthi zisebenze ngokwezwi lokuyala kwakhe, zizibonakalisa kulabo abanokholo oluqinile kanye nengqondo egxilile kulo lonke uhlobo lobunkulunkulu.
- 31 Futhi umsebenzi wazo wukubizela abantu ekuphendukeni, kanye nokugcwalisa kanye nokwenza umsebenzi wezivumelwano zikaBaba, azenza kubantwana babantu, ukuze alungise indlela phakathi kwabantwana babantu, ngokumemezela izwi likaKristu ezitsheni ezikhethiweyo zeNkosi, ukuze zifakaze ngaye.
- 32 Futhi ngokwenze njalo, iNkosi uNkulunkulu ilungisa indlela yokuthi insalela yabantu ibe nokholo kuKristu, ukuze uMoya oyiNgcwele ube nendawo ezinhliziyweni zabo, ngokwamandla awo; futhi ngalendlela uBaba ugcwalisa izivumelwano azenza kubantwana babantu.
- 33 Futhi uKristu wathi: Uma ningaba nokholo kimi niyoba namandla okwenza noma yini into efanele kimi.
- 34 Futhi uthe: Phendukani nonke nina mikhawulo yomhlaba, futhi nize kimi, futhi nibhabhadiswe egameni lami, futhi nikhholwe kimi, ukuze nisindiswe.

Wherefore, my beloved brethren, have miracles ceased because Christ hath ascended into heaven, and hath sat down on the right hand of God, to claim of the Father his rights of mercy which he hath upon the children of men?

For he hath answered the ends of the law, and he claimeth all those who have faith in him; and they who have faith in him will cleave unto every good thing; wherefore he advocateth the cause of the children of men; and he dwelleth eternally in the heavens.

And because he hath done this, my beloved brethren, have miracles ceased? Behold I say unto you, Nay; neither have angels ceased to minister unto the children of men.

For behold, they are subject unto him, to minister according to the word of his command, showing themselves unto them of strong faith and a firm mind in every form of godliness.

And the office of their ministry is to call men unto repentance, and to fulfil and to do the work of the covenants of the Father, which he hath made unto the children of men, to prepare the way among the children of men, by declaring the word of Christ unto the chosen vessels of the Lord, that they may bear testimony of him.

And by so doing, the Lord God prepareth the way that the residue of men may have faith in Christ, that the Holy Ghost may have place in their hearts, according to the power thereof; and after this manner bringeth to pass the Father, the covenants which he hath made unto the children of men.

And Christ hath said: If ye will have faith in me ye shall have power to do whatsoever thing is expedient in me.

And he hath said: Repent all ye ends of the earth, and come unto me, and be baptized in my name, and have faith in me, that ye may be saved.

- 35 Manje, bafowethu abathandekayo, uma kuwukuthi lezi zinto ziyiqiniso engizikhulume kini, futhi uNkulunkulu uzonikhombisa, ngamandla kanye nangenkazimulo enkulu ngosuku lokugcina, ukuthi ziyiqiniso, futhi uma ziyiqiniso ngabe usuku lwezimangaliso luphelile na?
- 36 Noma izingelosi seziyekile yini ukuvela kubantwana babantu na? Noma uwagodlile yini amandla kaMoya oyiNgcwele kubo na? Noma uzowagodla yini, uma nje isikhathi sisaqhubeka, noma umhlaba usamile, noma nje kuse khona umuntu oyedwa ebusweni bawo ukuthi asindiswe na?
- 37 Bhekani ngithi kini, Cha; ngokuba kungokholo ukuthi kwenzekile izimangaliso; futhi kungokholo ukuthi izingelosi zivele futhi zisebenzele abantu; ngalokho-ke, uma lezi zinto seziyekile maye kubantwana babantu, ngokuba kungenxa yokungakhulwa, futhi konke kuyize.
- 38 Ngokuba akukho muntu ongasindiswa, ngokwamazwi kaKristu, ngaphandle kokuthi akholwe egameni lakhe; ngalokho-ke, uma lezi zinto seziyekile, kanjalo nokholo alusekho futhi; futhi siyesabeka isimo somuntu, ngokuba kuba sengathi akuzange kube khona kukhululwa okwenziwayo.
- 39 Kepha bhekani, bafowethu abathandekayo, ngibona izinto ezingcono kini, ngokuba ngibona ukuthi ninalo ukholo kuKristu ngenxa yokuthoba kwenu; ngokuba uma ningenalokho kuye anifanele ukuthi nibalwe nabantu bebandla lakhe.
- 40 Futhi phezu kwalokho, bafowethu abathandekayo, sengizokhuluma kini mayelana nethemba. Kungenzeka kanjani ukuthi nibe nokholo, ngaphandle kokuthi nibe nethemba na?
- 41 Futhi yini lena enizoyethemba na? Bhekani ngithi kini niyoba nethemba ngenhlawulo kaKristu kanye nangamandla okuvuka kwakhe, ukuthi nivuselwe ekuphileni okuphakade, futhi lokhu kuyoba ngenxa yokholo lwenu kuye njengokwesethembiso.
- 42 Ngalokho-ke, uma umuntu enokholo kufanele ukuthi abe nethemba; ngokuba ngaphandle kokholo ngeke libe khona ithemba.
- 43 Futhi phezu kwalokho, bhekani ngithi kini ngeke abe nokholo kanye nethemba, ngaphandle kokuthi eyoba mnene, futhi athobe ngenhliziyo.

And now, my beloved brethren, if this be the case that these things are true which I have spoken unto you, and God will show unto you, with power and great glory at the last day, that they are true, and if they are true has the day of miracles ceased?

Or have angels ceased to appear unto the children of men? Or has he withheld the power of the Holy Ghost from them? Or will he, so long as time shall last, or the earth shall stand, or there shall be one man upon the face thereof to be saved?

Behold I say unto you, Nay; for it is by faith that miracles are wrought; and it is by faith that angels appear and minister unto men; wherefore, if these things have ceased wo be unto the children of men, for it is because of unbelief, and all is vain.

For no man can be saved, according to the words of Christ, save they shall have faith in his name; wherefore, if these things have ceased, then has faith ceased also; and awful is the state of man, for they are as though there had been no redemption made.

But behold, my beloved brethren, I judge better things of you, for I judge that ye have faith in Christ because of your meekness; for if ye have not faith in him then ye are not fit to be numbered among the people of his church.

And again, my beloved brethren, I would speak unto you concerning hope. How is it that ye can attain unto faith, save ye shall have hope?

And what is it that ye shall hope for? Behold I say unto you that ye shall have hope through the atonement of Christ and the power of his resurrection, to be raised unto life eternal, and this because of your faith in him according to the promise.

Wherefore, if a man have faith he must needs have hope; for without faith there cannot be any hope.

And again, behold I say unto you that he cannot have faith and hope, save he shall be meek, and lowly of heart.

44 Uma kungenjalo, ukholo lwakhe nethemba lakhe kuyize, ngokuba akekho namunye omukelekile phambi kukaNkulunkulu, ngaphandle kwabamnene nabathobile ngenhliziyo; futhi uma umuntu emnene futhi ethobile ngenhliziyo, futhi evuma ngamandla kaMoya oyiNgcwele ukuthi uJesu unguKristu, kufanele ukuthi abe nesihe; ngokuba uma engenaso isihe akalutho; ngalokho-ke kufanele ukuthi abe nesihe.

45 Futhi isihe sinenhliziyo ende, sinomusa, futhi asinamhawu, asizikhukhumezi, asizifuneli okwaso, asicasuki kalula, asicabangi okubi, futhi asithokozi kokubi kepha sithokozela iqiniso, sibekezelela izinto zonke, sikholwa yizinto zonke, sethemba izinto zonke, sibekezelela izinto zonke.

46 Ngalokho-ke, bafowethu abathandekayo, uma ningenaso isihe, anilutho, ngokuba isihe asehluleki nanini. Ngalokho-ke, namathelani kuso isihe, esikhulu kunakho konke, ngokuba zonke izinto zizokwehluleka—

47 Kepha isihe wuthando olumsulwa lukaKristu, futhi lubekwezela ingunaphakade; futhi noma ngubani otholwa enaso ngosuku lokugcina, kuyoba kuhle kuye.

48 Ngalokho-ke, bafowethu abathandekayo, khulekani kuBaba ngamandla onke enhliziyo, ukuze nigcwaliswe ngaloluthando, alunika bonke labo abangabalandeli beqiniso beNdodana yakhe, uJesu Kristu; ukuze nibe ngamadodana kaNkulunkulu; ukuze kuthi nxa esebonakala sibenjengaye, ngokuba siyombona njengoba enjalo; ukuze sibe nalelithemba; ukuze senziwe msulwa njengoba naye emsulwa. Amen.

If so, his faith and hope is vain, for none is acceptable before God, save the meek and lowly in heart; and if a man be meek and lowly in heart, and confesses by the power of the Holy Ghost that Jesus is the Christ, he must needs have charity; for if he have not charity he is nothing; wherefore he must needs have charity.

And charity suffereth long, and is kind, and envieth not, and is not puffed up, seeketh not her own, is not easily provoked, thinketh no evil, and rejoiceth not in iniquity but rejoiceth in the truth, beareth all things, believeth all things, hopeth all things, endureth all things.

Wherefore, my beloved brethren, if ye have not charity, ye are nothing, for charity never faileth. Wherefore, cleave unto charity, which is the greatest of all, for all things must fail—

But charity is the pure love of Christ, and it endureth forever; and whoso is found possessed of it at the last day, it shall be well with him.

Wherefore, my beloved brethren, pray unto the Father with all the energy of heart, that ye may be filled with this love, which he hath bestowed upon all who are true followers of his Son, Jesus Christ; that ye may become the sons of God; that when he shall appear we shall be like him, for we shall see him as he is; that we may have this hope; that we may be purified even as he is pure. Amen.

Moroni 8

- 1 Incwadi kababa uMormoni, angibhalela yona mina, Moroni; futhi wangibhalela yona masinyane nje emva kokubizelwa kwami ebufundisini. Futhi wangibhalela ngalendlela, ethi:
- 2 Ndodana yami ethandekayo, Moroni, ngiyajabula kakhulu ukuthi iNkosi yakho uJesu Kristu ibilokhu ikukhumbula, futhi yakubizela ebufundisini bayo, kanye nasemsebenzini wayo ongcwele.
- 3 Ngiyakukhumbula njalo emikhulekweni yami, njalo ngikhuleka kuNkulunkulu uBaba egameni loMntwana wakhe oNgcwele, uJesu, ukuthi, ngobuhle bakhe obungapheliyo kanye nomusa, akugcine ekubekezeleni kokholo egameni lakhe kuze kube sekugcineni.
- 4 Manje, ndodana yami, sengikhuluma kuwe mayelana nalokho okungikhathaza kakhulu; ngokuba kuyangikhathaza ukuthi kube khona impikiswano equbukayo phakathi kwenu.
- 5 Ngokuba, uma ngifunde iqiniso, bekulokhu kukhona impikiswano phakathi kwenu mayelana nokubhabhadiswa kwabantwana benu abancane.
- 6 Manje, ndodana yami, ngifisa ukuthi nisebenze ngenkuthalo, ukuze leliphutha elibi lisuswe phakathi kwenu; ngokuba, kungalesi sizathu ukuthi ngibhale lencwadi.
- 7 Ngokuba masinyane emva kokuthi sengizizwile lezi zinto ngani ngibuze eNkosini mayelana naloludaba. Futhi izwi leNkosi lifike kimi ngamandla kaMoya oyiNgcwele, lithi:
- 8 Lalela amazwi kaKristu, uMkhululi wakho, iNkosi yakho kanye noNkulunkulu wakho. Bheka, ngeza emhlabeni hhayi ukuzobiza abalungile kepha izoni ukuthi ziphenduke; abaphilayo abadingi nyanga, kepha labo abagulayo; ngalokho-ke, abantwana abancane bamsulwa, ngokuba abakwazi ukwenza isono; ngalokho-ke isiqalekiso sika-Adamu sisusiwe kubo ngenxa yami, ukuthi singabi namandla phezu kwabo; futhi umthetho wokusoka usuqediwe ngenxa yami.

Moroni 8

An epistle of my father Mormon, written to me, Moroni; and it was written unto me soon after my calling to the ministry. And on this wise did he write unto me, saying:

My beloved son, Moroni, I rejoice exceedingly that your Lord Jesus Christ hath been mindful of you, and hath called you to his ministry, and to his holy work.

I am mindful of you always in my prayers, continually praying unto God the Father in the name of his Holy Child, Jesus, that he, through his infinite goodness and grace, will keep you through the endurance of faith on his name to the end.

And now, my son, I speak unto you concerning that which grieveth me exceedingly; for it grieveth me that there should disputations rise among you.

For, if I have learned the truth, there have been disputations among you concerning the baptism of your little children.

And now, my son, I desire that ye should labor diligently, that this gross error should be removed from among you; for, for this intent I have written this epistle.

For immediately after I had learned these things of you I inquired of the Lord concerning the matter. And the word of the Lord came to me by the power of the Holy Ghost, saying:

Listen to the words of Christ, your Redeemer, your Lord and your God. Behold, I came into the world not to call the righteous but sinners to repentance; the whole need no physician, but they that are sick; wherefore, little children are whole, for they are not capable of committing sin; wherefore the curse of Adam is taken from them in me, that it hath no power over them; and the law of circumcision is done away in me.

- 9 Futhi kungalendlela uMoya oyiNgcwele
owembula ngayo izwi likaNkulunkulu kimi;
ngalokho-ke, ndodana yami ethandekayo, ngiyazi
ukuthi kuyinhlekisa embi phambi kukaNkulunkulu,
ukuthi nibhabhadise abantwana abancane.
- 10 Bheka ngithi kuwe yilento ozoyifundisa
—ukuphenduka kanye nombhabhadiso kulabo
okufanele baziphendulele kanye nakulabo
asebekwazi ukwenza isono; yebo, fundisa abazali
ukuthi kufanele baphenduke futhi babhabhadiswe,
futhi bazithobe njengabantwana babo abancane,
futhi bonke bayosindiswa kanye nabantwana babo.
- 11 Futhi abantwana babo abancane abakudingi
ukuphenduka, noma umbhabhadiso. Bheka,
ukubhabhadiswa kungokokuphenduka ukugcwalisa
imiyalelo ngokwanele ukuba kuthethelelwe izono.
- 12 Kepha abantwana abancane bayaphila kuKristu,
ngisho kusukela ekusekelweni komhlaba; uma
kungenjalo, uNkulunkulu unguNkulunkulu
wobandlululo, futhi kanjalo noNkulunkulu
ogukukayo, futhi obheka ubuso babantu; ngokuba
bangakanani abantwana abancane asebafa
ngaphandle kombhabhadiso!
- 13 Ngalokho-ke, uma abantwana abancane
bengenakusindiswa ngaphandle kombhabhadiso,
laba-ke kufanele ukuthi baya esihogweni
esingapheliyo.
- 14 Bheka ngithi kuwe, lowo ocabanga ukuthi
abantwana abancane badinga umbhabhadiso,
usenyongweni ebabayo kanye nasezibophweni
zobubi; ngokuba akanalo ukholo, nathemba, nasihe;
ngalokho-ke, uma engafa ngesikhathi esakholelwa
yilokho, kufanele aye phansi esihogweni.
- 15 Ngokuba kuwububi obesabekayo ukucabanga
ukuthi uNkulunkulu angasindisa ingane eyodwa
ngenxa yombhabhadiso, bese kuthi enye kufanele
ilahleke ngenxa yokuthi ingawutholanga
umbhabhadiso.
- 16 Maye kulabo abayophendukezela izindlela
zeNkosi ngalendlela, ngokuba bayolahleka
ngaphandle kokuthi baphenduke. Bheka,
ngikhuluma ngesibindi, ngingenunya elivela
kuNkulunkulu; futhi angesabi ukuthi umuntu
angenzani; ngokuba uthando olupheleleyo luxosha
konke ukwesaba.

And after this manner did the Holy Ghost manifest
the word of God unto me; wherefore, my beloved
son, I know that it is solemn mockery before God,
that ye should baptize little children.

Behold I say unto you that this thing shall ye
teach—repentance and baptism unto those who are
accountable and capable of committing sin; yea,
teach parents that they must repent and be baptized,
and humble themselves as their little children, and
they shall all be saved with their little children.

And their little children need no repentance, nei-
ther baptism. Behold, baptism is unto repentance to
the fulfilling the commandments unto the remission
of sins.

But little children are alive in Christ, even from
the foundation of the world; if not so, God is a partial
God, and also a changeable God, and a respecter to
persons; for how many little children have died
without baptism!

Wherefore, if little children could not be saved
without baptism, these must have gone to an endless
hell.

Behold I say unto you, that he that supposeth that
little children need baptism is in the gall of bitterness
and in the bonds of iniquity; for he hath neither
faith, hope, nor charity; wherefore, should he be cut
off while in the thought, he must go down to hell.

For awful is the wickedness to suppose that God
saveth one child because of baptism, and the other
must perish because he hath no baptism.

Wo be unto them that shall pervert the ways of the
Lord after this manner, for they shall perish except
they repent. Behold, I speak with boldness, having
authority from God; and I fear not what man can do;
for perfect love casteth out all fear.

17 Futhi ngigcwele isihe, esiwuthando lwaphakade; ngalokho-ke, bonke abantwana bayefana kimi, ngalokho-ke, abantwana abancane ngibathanda ngothando olupheleleyo; futhi bonke bayefana futhi bahlanganyela ensindisweni.

18 Ngokuba ngiyazi ukuthi uNkulunkulu akayena uNkulunkulu obandlululayo, noma umuntu oguqukayo; kepha akaguquki kusuka kulo lonke iphakade kuya kulo lonke iphakade.

19 Abantwana abancane abakwazi ukuphenduka; ngalokho-ke, kuwububi obesabekayo ukuphika umusa omsulwa kaNkulunkulu kubo, ngokuba bonke bayaphila kuye ngenxa yomusa wakhe.

20 Futhi lowo othi abantwana abancane badinga umbhabhadiso uphika umusa kaKristu, futhi uyenza ize inhlawulo yakhe kanye namandla okukhulula kwakhe.

21 Maye kwabanjalo, ngokuba basengozini yokufa, yesihogo, kanye nokuhlushwa okungapheliyo. Ngikukhuluma ngesibindi; uNkulunkulu ungiyalile. Walaleleni lamazwi futhi niwanake, kungenjalo ayokuma ngokumelene nani esihlalweni sokwahlulela sikaKristu.

22 Ngokuba bheka bonke abantwana abancane bayaphila kuKristu, futhi kanjalo nabo bonke labo abangena mthetho. Ngokuba amandla okukhululwa eza kubo bonke labo abangenamthetho; ngalokho-ke, lowo ongalahliwe ngecala, noma lowo ongekho ngaphansi kokulahlwa ngecala, akanakuphenduka; futhi kwabanjalo umbhabhadiso awusizi ngalutho—

23 Kepha kuyinhlekisa phambi kukaNkulunkulu, ukuphika umusa kaKristu, kanye namandla kaMoya wakhe oyiNgcwele, kanye nokubeka ithemba emisebenzini efile.

24 Bheka, ndodana yami, lento akufanele ibe khona; ngokuba ukuphenduka kungokwalabo abangaphansi kokulahlwa ngecala kanye nabangaphansi kwesiqalekiso somthetho ophuliweyo.

25 Futhi izithelo zokuqala zokuphenduka ngumbhabhadiso; futhi umbhabhadiso uza ngokholo ekugcwaliseni imiyalelo; futhi ukugcwalisa imiyalelo kuletha ukuthethelelwa kwezono;

And I am filled with charity, which is everlasting love; wherefore, all children are alike unto me; wherefore, I love little children with a perfect love; and they are all alike and partakers of salvation.

For I know that God is not a partial God, neither a changeable being; but he is unchangeable from all eternity to all eternity.

Little children cannot repent; wherefore, it is awful wickedness to deny the pure mercies of God unto them, for they are all alive in him because of his mercy.

And he that saith that little children need baptism denieth the mercies of Christ, and setteth at naught the atonement of him and the power of his redemption.

Wo unto such, for they are in danger of death, hell, and an endless torment. I speak it boldly; God hath commanded me. Listen unto them and give heed, or they stand against you at the judgment-seat of Christ.

For behold that all little children are alive in Christ, and also all they that are without the law. For the power of redemption cometh on all them that have no law; wherefore, he that is not condemned, or he that is under no condemnation, cannot repent; and unto such baptism availeth nothing—

But it is mockery before God, denying the mercies of Christ, and the power of his Holy Spirit, and putting trust in dead works.

Behold, my son, this thing ought not to be; for repentance is unto them that are under condemnation and under the curse of a broken law.

And the first fruits of repentance is baptism; and baptism cometh by faith unto the fulfilling the commandments; and the fulfilling the commandments bringeth remission of sins;

- 26 Futhi ukuthethelelwa kwezono kuletha ubumnene, kanye nokuthobeka kwenhliziyo; futhi ngenxa yobumnene kanye nokuthobeka kwenhliziyo kuza ukuvakashelwa ngu Moya oyiNgcwele, uMduduzi ogcwalisa ngethemba kanye nango thando olupheleleyo, uthando olubekezela ngenkuthalo ekukhulekeni, kuze kufike isikhathi sokugcina, lapho bonke abangcwele beyohlala noNkulunkulu.
- 27 Bheka, ndodana yami, ngizophinda ngikubhalele futhi uma ngingaphumanga masinyane ukuyolwa namaLamani. Bheka, ukuzikhukhumeza kwalesi sizwe, noma abantu bamaNefi, sekubangele ukubhujiswa kwabo ngaphandle kokuthi baphenduke.
- 28 Bakhulekele, ndodana yami, ukuze ukuphenduka kuze kubo. Kepha bheka, ngiyesaba hleze uMoya useyekile ukusebenza kubo; futhi kulengxenywe yezwe bafuna ukubeka phansi wonke amandla kanye negunya elivela kuNkulunkulu; futhi baphika uMoya oyiNgcwele.
- 29 Futhi emva kokuphika ulwazi olukhulu kangaka, ndodana yami, kufanele babhubhe masinyane, ukuze kungcwaliseke iziphrofetho ezakhulunywa ngabaphrofethi, kanjalo namazwi omSindisi wethu uqobo lwakhe.
- 30 Sala kahle, ndodana yami, ngize ngikubhalele, noma sihlangane futhi. Amen.

And the remission of sins bringeth meekness, and lowliness of heart; and because of meekness and lowliness of heart cometh the visitation of the Holy Ghost, which Comforter filleth with hope and perfect love, which love endureth by diligence unto prayer, until the end shall come, when all the saints shall dwell with God.

Behold, my son, I will write unto you again if I go not out soon against the Lamanites. Behold, the pride of this nation, or the people of the Nephites, hath proven their destruction except they should repent.

Pray for them, my son, that repentance may come unto them. But behold, I fear lest the Spirit hath ceased striving with them; and in this part of the land they are also seeking to put down all power and authority which cometh from God; and they are denying the Holy Ghost.

And after rejecting so great a knowledge, my son, they must perish soon, unto the fulfilling of the prophecies which were spoken by the prophets, as well as the words of our Savior himself.

Farewell, my son, until I shall write unto you, or shall meet you again. Amen.

Moroni 9

- 1 Ndodana yami ethandekayo, ngiyaphinda futhi ngiyakubhalela ukuze wazi ukuthi ngisaphila; kepha ngibhala ngalokho okuthize okungikhathazayo.
- 2 Ngokuba bheka, ngibe nempi enzima namaLamani, esinganqobanga kuyo; futhi u-Akhiyentasi usewile ngenkemba, futhi kanjalo noLuramu kanye no-Emroni; yebo, futhi silahlekelwe ngabaningi bamadoda ethu akhethekileyo.
- 3 Manje bheka, ndodana yami, ngiyesaba hleze amaLamani azobabhuhisa laba bantu; ngokuba abaphenduki, futhi uSathane ubaphehla njalo ukuthi bathukuthelelane omunye nomunye.
- 4 Bheka, ngisebenza nabo njalo; futhi uma ngikhuluma izwi likaNkulunkulu ngokuqina bayaqhaq hazela futhi bangithukuthelele; futhi uma ngingakusebenzisi ukuqina baqinisa izinhliziyi zabo ngokumelene nalo; ngalokho-ke, ngiyesaba hleze uMoya weNkosi useyekile ukusebenza kubo.
- 5 Ngokuba sebethukuthela kakhulu ngendlela yokuthi kimi sekubonakala sengathi abasakwesabi ukufa; futhi sebelahlekelwe wukuthandana; futhi bomele igazi kanye nempindiselo njalo.
- 6 Manje, ndodana yami ethandekayo, naphezu kobulukhuni babo, thina masisebenze ngokukhuthala; ngokuba uma siyeka ukusebenza, siyoethwa ekulahlweni ngecala; ngokuba sinomsebenzi okufanele siwenze ngesikhathi sisekulelidokodo lobumba, ukuze sisingqobe isitha sakho konke ukulunga, futhi siphumuze imiphefumulo yethu embusweni kaNkulunkulu.
- 7 Manje sengibhala okuthile mayelana nezinhlopheko zalaba bantu. Ngokuba ngokolwazi engiluthole ku-Amoroni, bheka, amaLamani aneziboshwa eziningi, azithatha embhoshongweni kaSheriza; futhi kwakungamadoda, abesifazane, kanye nabantwana.

Moroni 9

My beloved son, I write unto you again that ye may know that I am yet alive; but I write somewhat of that which is grievous.

For behold, I have had a sore battle with the Lamanites, in which we did not conquer; and Archeantus has fallen by the sword, and also Luram and Emron; yea, and we have lost a great number of our choice men.

And now behold, my son, I fear lest the Lamanites shall destroy this people; for they do not repent, and Satan stirreth them up continually to anger one with another.

Behold, I am laboring with them continually; and when I speak the word of God with sharpness they tremble and anger against me; and when I use no sharpness they harden their hearts against it; wherefore, I fear lest the Spirit of the Lord hath ceased striving with them.

For so exceedingly do they anger that it seemeth me that they have no fear of death; and they have lost their love, one towards another; and they thirst after blood and revenge continually.

And now, my beloved son, notwithstanding their hardness, let us labor diligently; for if we should cease to labor, we should be brought under condemnation; for we have a labor to perform whilst in this tabernacle of clay, that we may conquer the enemy of all righteousness, and rest our souls in the kingdom of God.

And now I write somewhat concerning the sufferings of this people. For according to the knowledge which I have received from Amoron, behold, the Lamanites have many prisoners, which they took from the tower of Sherrizah; and there were men, women, and children.

8 Futhi abayeni kanye noyise balabo besifazane kanye nabantwana bababulala; futhi bondla abesifazane ngenyama yabayeni babo, kanye nabantwana ngenyama yoyise; futhi akukho manzi, ngaphandle kwamancane nje, ababanika wona.

9 Futhi naphezu kwezingaka izinengiso zamaLamani, azizedluli ezabantu bethu eMoriyantumu. Ngokuba bheka, amaningi amadodakazi amaLamani bawathatha bawabopha; futhi emva kokubaphuca lokho okwakuthandeka kakhulu futhi kuyigugu ngaphezu kwezinto zonke, okungubumsulwa—

10 Futhi emva kokuthi sebenze lento, bababulala ngendlela enonya kakhulu, bebazwisa ubuhlungu emizimbeni yabo beze befa; futhi emva kokuthi sebekwenzile lokhu, badla inyama yabo njengezilwane zasendle, ngenxa yobulukhuni bezinhliziyo zabo; futhi bakwenza lokhu njengophawu lokuba nesibindi.

11 O ndodana yami ethandekayo, kungenzeka kanjani ukuthi abantu abanjengalaba, abangena mpucuko—

12 (Futhi yiminyaka embalwa nje kuphela esidlulile, futhi babengabantu abaphucuzekile kanye nabathandekayo)

13 Kepha O ndodana yami, kungenzeka kanjani ukuthi abantu abanjengalaba, abathokoza ezinengisweni kangaka—

14 Singalindela kanjani ukuthi uNkulunkulu uzosimisa isandla sakhe ekusahluleleni na?

15 Bheka, inhliziyo yami iyakhala ithi: Maye kulaba bantu. Woza ngokwahlulela, O Nkulunkulu, futhi ufihle izono zabo, nobubi babo, kanye nezinengiso phambi kobuso bakho!

16 Futhi phezu kwalokho, ndodana yami, kukhona abafelokazi abaningi kanye namadodakazi abo abasele eSheriza; kanye naleyo ngxenye yokudla amaLamani angayithathanga, bheka, impi kaZenefi ithathiwe, futhi bashiywa ukuthi bazulazule baye noma kuphi lapho bengaya khona ukuyofuna ukudla; futhi abaningi abesifazane abadala bayaquleka endleleni bafe.

And the husbands and fathers of those women and children they have slain; and they feed the women upon the flesh of their husbands, and the children upon the flesh of their fathers; and no water, save a little, do they give unto them.

And notwithstanding this great abomination of the Lamanites, it doth not exceed that of our people in Moriantum. For behold, many of the daughters of the Lamanites have they taken prisoners; and after depriving them of that which was most dear and precious above all things, which is chastity and virtue—

And after they had done this thing, they did murder them in a most cruel manner, torturing their bodies even unto death; and after they have done this, they devour their flesh like unto wild beasts, because of the hardness of their hearts; and they do it for a token of bravery.

O my beloved son, how can a people like this, that are without civilization—

(And only a few years have passed away, and they were a civil and a delightsome people)

But O my son, how can a people like this, whose delight is in so much abomination—

How can we expect that God will stay his hand in judgment against us?

Behold, my heart cries: Wo unto this people. Come out in judgment, O God, and hide their sins, and wickedness, and abominations from before thy face!

And again, my son, there are many widows and their daughters who remain in Sherrizah; and that part of the provisions which the Lamanites did not carry away, behold, the army of Zenephi has carried away, and left them to wander whithersoever they can for food; and many old women do faint by the way and die.

- 17 Futhi ibutho enginalo libuthakathaka; futhi amabutho amaLamani aphakathi kweSheriza nami; futhi ngobuningi balabo ababalekele empini ka-Aroni babulawe yiwo ngesihluku esibi.
- 18 O ukonakala kwabantu bami! Abanakuhleleka nasihawu. Bheka, ngingumuntu nje, futhi nginamandla omuntu nje, futhi ngeke ngisayiphoqelela imiyalelo yami.
- 19 Futhi sebeginile eubini babo; futhi sebegcwele unya ngokufanayo, abashiyi lutho, omdala noma omncane; futhi bathokozela zonke izinto ngaphandle kwalokho okuhle; futhi ukuhlupheka kwabesifazane bethu kanye nezingane zethu kubo bonke ubuso balelizwe kwedlula izinto zonke; yebo, ulimi alunakukuchaza, futhi akunakubhalwa.
- 20 Manje, ndodana yami, angisezukuhlala kulesimo esibi kangaka. Bheka, uyabazi ububi balaba bantu; uyazi ukuthi abanamigomo, futhi nemizwa seyithuntubezekile; futhi ububi babo sebedlula lobo bamaLamani.
- 21 Bheka, ndodana yami, ngeke ngibakhulumele kuNkulunkulu hleze angishaye.
- 22 Kepha bheka, ndodana yami, wena ngiyakukhulumela kuNkulunkulu, futhi ngethemba kuKristu ukuthi uyosindiswa; futhi ngiyakhuleka kuNkulunkulu ukuthi ayisindise impilo yakho, ukuze uzibonele ukubuyela kwabantu bakhe kuye, noma ukubhujiswa kwabo nya; ngokuba ngiyazi ukuthi kufanele babhubhe ngaphandle kokuthi baphenduke futhi babuyele kuye.
- 23 Futhi uma bebhubha kuyokuba njengokwamaJarede, ngenxa yentando yezinhliziyi zabo, befuna igazi kanye nempindiselo.
- 24 Futhi uma kungukuthi bayabhubha, siyazi ukuthi iningi labafowethu lembukele kumaLamani, futhi baningi abanye nabo abasazokwembukela kuwo; ngalokho-ke, bhala izinto ezithile ezimbalwa, uma kwenzeka usinda futhi mina ngifa futhi ngingabe ngisakubona; kepha ngiyethemba ukuthi ngisazokubona masinyane; ngokuba nginemibhalo engcwele engizoyiletha kuwe.

And the army which is with me is weak; and the armies of the Lamanites are betwixt Sherrizah and me; and as many as have fled to the army of Aaron have fallen victims to their awful brutality.

O the depravity of my people! They are without order and without mercy. Behold, I am but a man, and I have but the strength of a man, and I cannot any longer enforce my commands.

And they have become strong in their perversion; and they are alike brutal, sparing none, neither old nor young; and they delight in everything save that which is good; and the suffering of our women and our children upon all the face of this land doth exceed everything; yea, tongue cannot tell, neither can it be written.

And now, my son, I dwell no longer upon this horrible scene. Behold, thou knowest the wickedness of this people; thou knowest that they are without principle, and past feeling; and their wickedness doth exceed that of the Lamanites.

Behold, my son, I cannot recommend them unto God lest he should smite me.

But behold, my son, I recommend thee unto God, and I trust in Christ that thou wilt be saved; and I pray unto God that he will spare thy life, to witness the return of his people unto him, or their utter destruction; for I know that they must perish except they repent and return unto him.

And if they perish it will be like unto the Jaredites, because of the wilfulness of their hearts, seeking for blood and revenge.

And if it so be that they perish, we know that many of our brethren have deserted over unto the Lamanites, and many more will also desert over unto them; wherefore, write somewhat a few things, if thou art spared and I shall perish and not see thee; but I trust that I may see thee soon; for I have sacred records that I would deliver up unto thee.

25 Ndodana yami, thembeka kuKristu; futhi sengathi lezi zinto engizibhalile zingekukhathaze, ukuthi zikudonsele phansi ekufeni; kepha sengathi uKristu angakuphakamisa, futhi sengathi ukuhlupheka kwakhe kanye nokufa, nokukhombisa umzimba wakhe kobaba bethu, kanye nesihawu sakhe nokuba nenhliziyo ende kwakhe, nethemba lenkazimulo yakhe kanye nelokuphila okuphakade, kungahlala engqondweni yakho ingunaphakade.

26 Futhi sengathi umusa kaNkulunkulu uBaba, isihlalo sakhe sobukhosi esiphezulu emazulwini, kanye neNkosi yethu uJesu Kristu, ohlezi ngakwesokunene samandla akhe, kuze kube zonke izinto ziba phansi kwakhe, ungaba nawe, futhi uhlale nawe ingunaphakade. Amen.

My son, be faithful in Christ; and may not the things which I have written grieve thee, to weigh thee down unto death; but may Christ lift thee up, and may his sufferings and death, and the showing his body unto our fathers, and his mercy and long-suffering, and the hope of his glory and of eternal life, rest in your mind forever.

And may the grace of God the Father, whose throne is high in the heavens, and our Lord Jesus Christ, who sitteth on the right hand of his power, until all things shall become subject unto him, be, and abide with you forever. Amen.

Moroni 10

- 1 Manje mina, Moroni, sengibhala okuthile njengoba ngibona kukuhle kimi; futhi ngibhalela abafowethu, amaLamani; futhi ngifuna ukuthi bazi ukuthi sekudlule iminyaka engaphezulu kwamakhulu amane namashumi amabili selokhu isibonakaliso sokuza kukaKristu sanikwa.
- 2 Futhi sengiyayivala lemibhalo, emva kokuthi sengikhulume amazwi ambalwa ngendlela yokunikhuthaza.
- 3 Bhekani, ngizonikhuthaza ukuthi ngesikhathi senizifunda lezi zinto, uma kungukuhlakanipha kuNkulunkulu ukuthi nizifunde, ukuthi nikhumbule ukuthi iNkosi ibe nesihawu esingakanani kubantwana babantu, kusukela ekudalweni kuka-Adamu kwehle kuze kube yisikhathi lapho niyozithola khona lezi zinto, futhi nizindle ngazo ezinhliziyweni zenu.
- 4 Futhi ngesikhathi senizithola lezi zinto, ngizonikhuthaza ukuthi nibuze kuNkulunkulu, uBaba waPhakade, egameni likaKristu, ukuthi ngabe lezi zinto ziliqiniso na; futhi uma niyobuza ngeqiniso, nangenhloso okuyiyo, ninokholo kuKristu, uyolibonakalisa iqiniso lazo kini, ngamandla kaMoya oyiNgcwele.
- 5 Futhi ngamandla kaMoya oyiNgcwele ningalazi iqiniso lazo zonke izinto.
- 6 Futhi noma ngabe yini enhle ilungile futhi iyiqiniso; ngalokho-ke, akukho lutho oluhle oluphika uKristu, kepha kuyavuma ukuthi unguye.
- 7 Futhi ningazi ukuthi unguye, ngamandla kaMoya oyiNgcwele; ngalokho-ke ngizonikhuthaza ukuthi ningawaphiki amandla kaNkulunkulu; ngokuba usebenza ngamandla, ngokokholo lwabantwana babantu, ngokufanayo namhlanje nakusasa, futhi zikhathi zonke.
- 8 Futhi phezu kwalokho, ngizonikhuthaza, bafowethu, ukuthi ningaziphiki iziphokazi zikaNkulunkulu, ngokuba ziningi; futhi zivela kuye kanye lowo Nkulunkulu. Futhi ziningi izindlela lezi zipho ezinikwa ngazo; kepha nguye kanye lowo Nkulunkulu osebenza yonke indawo ezintweni zonke; futhi zinikwa ngezibonakaliso zikaMoya kaNkulunkulu kubantu, ukuba bazuze.

Moroni 10

Now I, Moroni, write somewhat as seemeth me good; and I write unto my brethren, the Lamanites; and I would that they should know that more than four hundred and twenty years have passed away since the sign was given of the coming of Christ.

And I seal up these records, after I have spoken a few words by way of exhortation unto you.

Behold, I would exhort you that when ye shall read these things, if it be wisdom in God that ye should read them, that ye would remember how merciful the Lord hath been unto the children of men, from the creation of Adam even down until the time that ye shall receive these things, and ponder it in your hearts.

And when ye shall receive these things, I would exhort you that ye would ask God, the Eternal Father, in the name of Christ, if these things are not true; and if ye shall ask with a sincere heart, with real intent, having faith in Christ, he will manifest the truth of it unto you, by the power of the Holy Ghost.

And by the power of the Holy Ghost ye may know the truth of all things.

And whatsoever thing is good is just and true; wherefore, nothing that is good denieth the Christ, but acknowledgeth that he is.

And ye may know that he is, by the power of the Holy Ghost; wherefore I would exhort you that ye deny not the power of God; for he worketh by power, according to the faith of the children of men, the same today and tomorrow, and forever.

And again, I exhort you, my brethren, that ye deny not the gifts of God, for they are many; and they come from the same God. And there are different ways that these gifts are administered; but it is the same God who worketh all in all; and they are given by the manifestations of the Spirit of God unto men, to profit them.

- 9 Ngokuba bhekani, komunye kunikwe ngoMoya kaNkulunkulu, ukuthi afundise izwi lokuhlakanipha;
- 10 Futhi komunye, ukuthi afundise izwi lolwazi ngoMoya ofanayo;
- 11 Futhi komunye, ukhohlo olukhulu kakhulu; futhi komunye, izipho zokuphilisa ngalowo Moya ofanayo;
- 12 Futhi phezu kwalokho, komunye, ukuthi enze izimangaliso ezinkulu;
- 13 Futhi phezu kwalokho, komunye, ukuthi aphrofethe mayelana nazo zonke izinto;
- 14 Futhi phezu kwalokho, komunye, ukuthi abone izingelosi kanye nemimoya esebenzelayo;
- 15 Futhi phezu kwalokho, komunye, zonke izinhlobo zezilimi;
- 16 Futhi phezu kwalokho, komunye, ukuhunyushwa kwezilimi kanye nezinhlobonhlobo zezilimi.
- 17 Futhi zonke lezi zipho ziza ngoMoya kaKristu; futhi ziza kuwo wonke umuntu ngamunye, njengoba ethanda.
- 18 Futhi ngizonikhuthaza, bafowethu abathandekayo, ukuthi nikhumbule ukuthi zonke izipho ezihle zivela kuKristu.
- 19 Futhi ngizonikhuthaza, bafowethu abathandekayo, ukuthi nikhumbule ukuthi uyefana izolo, namhlanje, naphakade, futhi nokuthi zonke lezi zipho esengikhulume ngazo, ezingezikamoya, aziyikuphela nanini, ngisho uma nje umhlaba usamile, kuphela ngokungakholwa kwabantwana babantu.
- 20 Ngalokho-ke, kufanele kube khona ukhohlo; futhi uma kufanele kube khona ukhohlo kufanele futhi kube khona ithemba; futhi uma kufanele kube khona ithemba kufanele futhi kube khona isihe.
- 21 Futhi ngaphandle kokuthi nibe nesihe aninakukwazi ukuthi nisindiswe embusweni kaNkulunkulu; futhi aninakukwazi ukuthi nisindiswe embusweni kaNkulunkulu uma ningenalalo ukhohlo; futhi aninakukwazi uma ningenalalo ithemba.
- 22 Futhi uma ningenalalo ithemba kufanele ukuthi niphele inhliziyi; futhi ukuphela inhliziyi kuza ngenxa yobubi.
- For behold, to one is given by the Spirit of God, that he may teach the word of wisdom;
- And to another, that he may teach the word of knowledge by the same Spirit;
- And to another, exceedingly great faith; and to another, the gifts of healing by the same Spirit;
- And again, to another, that he may work mighty miracles;
- And again, to another, that he may prophesy concerning all things;
- And again, to another, the beholding of angels and ministering spirits;
- And again, to another, all kinds of tongues;
- And again, to another, the interpretation of languages and of divers kinds of tongues.
- And all these gifts come by the Spirit of Christ; and they come unto every man severally, according as he will.
- And I would exhort you, my beloved brethren, that ye remember that every good gift cometh of Christ.
- And I would exhort you, my beloved brethren, that ye remember that he is the same yesterday, today, and forever, and that all these gifts of which I have spoken, which are spiritual, never will be done away, even as long as the world shall stand, only according to the unbelief of the children of men.
- Wherefore, there must be faith; and if there must be faith there must also be hope; and if there must be hope there must also be charity.
- And except ye have charity ye can in nowise be saved in the kingdom of God; neither can ye be saved in the kingdom of God if ye have not faith; neither can ye if ye have no hope.
- And if ye have no hope ye must needs be in despair; and despair cometh because of iniquity.

23 Futhi uKristu nempela wathi kobaba bethu: Uma ninokholo ningenza zonke izinto ezifanele kimi.

24 Manje sengikhuluma kini nonke mikhawulo yomhlaba—ukuthi uma usuku lufika lapho amandla kanye neziphho zikaNkulunkulu ziyophela phakathi kwenu, kuyoba ngenxa yokungakholwa.

25 Futhi maye kubantwana babantu uma kunjalo; ngokuba akuyikuba bikho namunye owenza okuhle phakathi kwenu, cha noyedwa. Ngokuba uma kungaba khona oyedwa phakathi kwenu owenza okuhle, uyosebenza ngamandla kanye nangeziphho zikaNkulunkulu.

26 Futhi maye kulabo abayosusa lezi zinto bese befa, ngokuba bafela ezonweni zabo, futhi abanakusindiswa embusweni kaNkulunkulu; futhi ngikhuluma lokhu njengokwamazwi kaKristu; futhi angiqambi manga.

27 Futhi ngiyanikhuthaza ukuthi nizikhumbule lezi zinto; ngokuba isikhathi siyeza ngokushesha lapho niyokwazi ukuthi angiqambi manga, ngokuba niyongibona esihlalweni sikaNkulunkulu; futhi iNkosi uNkulunkulu iyothi kini: Ngabe angiwashongo yini amazwi ami kini, ayebhalwe yilendoda, njengalowo okhala ekwabafileyo, yebo, ngisho nanjengalowo okhuluma esothulini na?

28 Ngisho lezi zinto ukuze ngicwalise iziphrofetho. Futhi bhekani, ziyophuma emlonyeni kaNkulunkulu waphakade; futhi izwi lakhe liyohamba ngamandla izizukulwane ngezizukulwane.

29 Futhi uNkulunkulu uyonikhombisa, ukuthi lokhu engikubhalile kuyiqiniso.

30 Futhi phezu kwalokho ngizonikhuthaza ukuthi nize kuKristu, futhi nibambebele kuzo zonke iziphho ezinhle, futhi ningasithinti isiphho esibi, noma into engahlanzekile.

31 Futhi vuka, usukume othulini, O Jerusalema; yebo, futhi gqoka izingubo zakho ezinhle, O Ndodakazi yase Siyoni; futhi uqinise izikhonkwane zakho futhi wandise imingcele yakho ingunaphakade, ukuze ungabe usaphanjaniswa nanini, ukuze izivumelwano zikaBaba waPhakade azenza kuwe, O ndlu ka-Israyeli, zigcwaliseke.

And Christ truly said unto our fathers: If ye have faith ye can do all things which are expedient unto me.

And now I speak unto all the ends of the earth—that if the day cometh that the power and gifts of God shall be done away among you, it shall be because of unbelief.

And wo be unto the children of men if this be the case; for there shall be none that doeth good among you, no not one. For if there be one among you that doeth good, he shall work by the power and gifts of God.

And wo unto them who shall do these things away and die, for they die in their sins, and they cannot be saved in the kingdom of God; and I speak it according to the words of Christ; and I lie not.

And I exhort you to remember these things; for the time speedily cometh that ye shall know that I lie not, for ye shall see me at the bar of God; and the Lord God will say unto you: Did I not declare my words unto you, which were written by this man, like as one crying from the dead, yea, even as one speaking out of the dust?

I declare these things unto the fulfilling of the prophecies. And behold, they shall proceed forth out of the mouth of the everlasting God; and his word shall hiss forth from generation to generation.

And God shall show unto you, that that which I have written is true.

And again I would exhort you that ye would come unto Christ, and lay hold upon every good gift, and touch not the evil gift, nor the unclean thing.

And awake, and arise from the dust, O Jerusalem; yea, and put on thy beautiful garments, O daughter of Zion; and strengthen thy stakes and enlarge thy borders forever, that thou mayest no more be confounded, that the covenants of the Eternal Father which he hath made unto thee, O house of Israel, may be fulfilled.

32 Yebo, wozani kuKristu, futhi niphelisiwe kuye, futhi ningakuvumeli konke okungahambisani noNkulunkulu; futhi uma ningezuku kuvumela okungahambisani noNkulunkulu, futhi nithande uNkulunkulu ngamandla enu onke, ngengqondo kanye nangokuqina kwenu, uma kunjalo umusa wakhe unanele, ukuze ngomusa wakhe niphelisiwe kuKristu; futhi uma ngomusa kaNkulunkulu niphelisiwa kuKristu, ngeke nanini niwaphike amandla kaNkulunkulu.

33 Futhi phezu kwalokho, uma ngomusa kaNkulunkulu niphelisiwe kuKristu, futhi ningawaphiki amandla akhe, uma kunjalo seningcwelisiwe kuKristu ngomusa kaNkulunkulu, ngokuchitheka kwegazi likaKristu, okusesivumelwaneni sikaBaba kangangoba kuthethelelwa izono zenu, ukuze nibe ngcwele, ningabi nabala.

34 Manje sengiyavalelisa kini nonke, salani kahle. Masinyane ngizohamba ngiyophumula eparadesi likaNkulunkulu, kuze kuthi umoya wami kanye nomzimba kuphinde kuhlanguke futhi, futhi ngize ngikhishwe nginqobile emoyeni, ukuze ngihlangane nani phambi kwesihlalo esithokozisayo sika Jehova omkhulu, uMahluleli waPhakade wabaphilayo kanye nabafileyo. Amen.

Isiphetho

Yea, come unto Christ, and be perfected in him, and deny yourselves of all ungodliness; and if ye shall deny yourselves of all ungodliness, and love God with all your might, mind and strength, then is his grace sufficient for you, that by his grace ye may be perfect in Christ; and if by the grace of God ye are perfect in Christ, ye can in nowise deny the power of God.

And again, if ye by the grace of God are perfect in Christ, and deny not his power, then are ye sanctified in Christ by the grace of God, through the shedding of the blood of Christ, which is in the covenant of the Father unto the remission of your sins, that ye become holy, without spot.

And now I bid unto all, farewell. I soon go to rest in the paradise of God, until my spirit and body shall again reunite, and I am brought forth triumphant through the air, to meet you before the pleasing bar of the great Jehovah, the Eternal Judge of both quick and dead. Amen.

The End